TITLE 46—SHIPPING

This title was enacted by Pub. L. 98–89, §1, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 500; Pub. L. 99–509, title V, subtitle B, §5101, Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1913; Pub. L. 100–424, §6, Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1591; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102, Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4738; Pub. L. 109–304, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1485

Subtitle		Sec.
I.	**GENERAL**	**101**
II.	**VESSELS AND SEAMEN**	**2101**
III.	**MARITIME LIABILITY**	**30101**
IV.	**REGULATION OF OCEAN SHIPPING**	**40101**
V.	**MERCHANT MARINE**	**50101**
VI.	**CLEARANCE, TONNAGE TAXES, AND DUTIES**	**60101**
VII.	**SECURITY AND DRUG ENFORCEMENT**	**70101**
VIII.	**MISCELLANEOUS**	**80101**

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–304, §3, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1485, amended title analysis generally, adding item IV, substituting "50101" for "53101" in item V, adding item VI, substituting "SECURITY AND DRUG ENFORCEMENT" for "MISCELLANEOUS" in item VII, and adding item VIII.

Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(k)(2), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 565, redesignated item VI "MISCELLANEOUS" as item VII.

2003—Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(b), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1817, added item V.

2002—Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(b), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2084, added item VI.

1988—Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(b), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4738, amended title analysis generally, substituting "GENERAL" for "[Reserved—general]" in item I and adding item III.

Disposition Table
(Showing Disposition of Former Sections of Title 46 or Title 46 Appendix)

Title 46 or Title 46 Appendix Former Sections	*Title 46 New Sections*
1	Rep.
2	2103
3 note prec. (Act 12-27-1950, §§1, 2)	501
3	Rep.
4	2105
5, 6	Rep.
7	2107
8	2108
9(a), (b)	3316
9(c)	Rep.
9(d)	3316
11, 12	Rep.
13	Rep.
14 (words before last proviso)	12107
14 (last proviso)	12151
15–41	Rep.
42	60103

43–56	Rep.
57	60102
58	Rep.
59	Rep.
60–63	Rep.
65(1)	2101(10)
65(2)	2101(11)
65(3)	2101(34)
65a	12113
65b	12102
65c	12114
65d	12115
65e	12103
65f	12116
65g	12104
65h	12105
65i	12106
65j	12107
65k	12108
65*l*	12109
65m	12110
65n	12122
65*o*	12111
65p	12112
65q	12117
65r	12118
65s	12119
65t	12120
65u	2107, 12122(a)
65v(1)	2104
65v(2)	12121
65w	12101
71	12102, 14102, 14104, 14501, 14502, 14504, 14511, 14521, 14522
72	14503
73, 74	Rep.
75	14512
76	Rep.
77	14502, 14512
78, 79	Rep.
80	(See former 660–1)
81	14306
82	3101
83	14502, 14513
83a–83g	14513
83h	14102
83i	14702
83j	14701

83k	2107
85–85g	Rep.
86	5114, 5115
86a	5101
86b	5102
86c	5102, 5103, 5104, 5106
86d	5107
86e	5108
86f	5109
86g	5112
86h	5113
86i	5116
88	5102
88a	5104, 5108
88b	5103, 5107
88c	5112
88d	5109
88e	5112
88f	5113
88g	5116
88h, 88i	Rep.
91	60105
91a–96	Rep.
97	60106
98	60109
99	Rep.
100	60107
101, 102	Rep.
103	Rep.
104	60504
105–110	Rep.
111	Elim.
112, 113	Rep.
121 (1st sentence)	60302
121 (2d sentence)	60301
121 (3d sentence related to distress)	60305
121 (3d sentence related to trade)	60306
121 (4th sentence)	60302
121 (5th sentence words before semicolon)	60302
121 (5th sentence words after semicolon)	60304
121 (last sentence words before semicolon)	60312
121 (last sentence words after semicolon)	60302
122	60307
123	60308
124	60309
125	60310
126, 127	Rep.
128, 129	60303

130, 131	Rep.
132	60301
133, 134	60311
135	60312
141	60503
142	60505
143	60506
144, 145	60507
146	60502
151–162	Rep.
163	60101
170	3306(a)(5), Rep. in part
170(14)	2106
170a, 170b	Rep.
171–175	Rep.
178, 179	Rep.
181	30503
182	30504
183(a)	30505
183(b) (1st sentence)	30506
183(b) (last sentence)	30507
183(c)–(e)	30506
183(f) (related to 46 App.:183(b)–(e))	30506
183(f) (related to 46 App.:183b)	30508
183(g)	30510
183a	Rep.
183b	30508
183c	30509
184	30507
185	30511
186	30501
187	30512
188	30502
189	30505
190	30704
191	30705
192	30706
193	30703
194	30707
195	30702
196	Rep.
201	11301
202	11302
203	11303
211	8501(a)
212	8501(b)
213	8501(c), (e)
214	7101

214(c)	7106
215	8501(d), 8502
216(a)	9301(2)
216(b)	2101(34)
216(c)	9301(3)
216(d)	9301(1)
216(e), (f)	Rep.
216a	9302(a), (b), (d)
216b(a)–(c)	9303
216b(d)	9305
216b(e)	9304
216c	9303
216d	9305
216e(a)–(c)	9308
216e(d)	2107
216e(e)	2106
216f	9302(c)
216g	9306
216h	9307
216i	Rep.
221	8103
222	8101
223	8301
224	7101, 8101
224a	8303, 8304
224a(2)	7111
225	7106, 7109, 7113
226	7101, 7106, 7703
227	Rep.
228	7101, 7106, 7703
229	7101, 7106, 7703
229a	7101, 7103
229b	7101, 7103
229c	7106, 7108, 7318
229d	Rep.
229e	7105
229f	7110
229g	7103, 7318
229h	Rep.
230	7112
231	7105
232	7110
233	7109
234	3315
235	8104
236	8103
237, 238	Rep.
239	6101, 6301, 7703

239(d)	6303
239(e)	6304, 7705
239(f)	6304
239(g)	6305, 7701
239(i)	6306
239(j)	6301, 6307
239(k)	6305
239a(a)	7503(a), 7704(a)
239a(b)	2101(34)
239a(c)	7302
239b(a)	7503(b)
239b(b)	7704(b), (c)
240	7703
241	8304
242	7101, 7102, 8302(a)–(d)
243	7101, 7104, 7107, 7108
244	7101, 7105
245	8302(g), (h)
246(a)	8302(a)–(d)
246(b)	Rep.
246(c)	7703
247	7101
248	8302
249–249c	Rep.
251, 251a	55114
251b	Rep.
252–262	Rep.
263–276	Rep.
277	12133
278–288	Rep.
289	55103
289a, 289b	55121
289c	55104
290	Rep.
291	55120
292	55109
293–293b	Rep.
294–315	Rep.
316(a), (b)	55111
316(c)	55118
316(d), (e)	80104
316a	55112
317, 318	Rep.
319	T. 19 §1706a
320–325	Rep.
326	502
327	503
328	Rep.

329, 330	Rep.
331	2110
332–336	Rep.
351–353	Rep.
354, 355	60104
361	2101(16), (37)
362	2109, 3301(9), 3314
362(a)	3303
362(b)	3504
362(c)	3505
363	2109
364	8502
365	Rep.
366	3306
367	2101(16), (33), 2303, 3301(7), 3302
369	3305, 3306, 3316
369(b)	3503
369(e)	3318
371	Rep.
372	2103
373–374a	Rep.
375	3306
376–382a–1	Rep.
382b	2104, 2111, 2112
382b–1	3317(b)
382c–385	Rep.
390	3302, 3304
390(a)	2101(21)(B)
390(b)	2101(35)
390(d)	2101(34)
390(e)	2101(13)
390(f)	2101(27)
390(g)	2101(30)
390(h)	2101(28)
390(i)	2101(29)
390a	3301(4), (5), (8), 3305
390a(a)	3307(2)
390a(b)	3317(a), 7114
390b	3306, 8901, 8902
390c	3303(a), 3309, 3311
390c(b), (c)	3313
390d	2106, 3318(a), 8906
390e–390g	Rep.
391	3301(1), (4), (9), 3304, 3305
391(b)	3307(3)
391(c)	2101(22), 3307(1)
391(e)	3302
391a	3301(10), 3702, 8502

391a(2)(A)	2101(9)
391a(2)(B)	2101(12)
391a(2)(C)	2101(14)
391a(2)(D)	2101(15)
391a(2)(E)	2101(20)
391a(2)(F)	3701(4)
391a(2)(G)	2101(24)
391a(2)(H)	2101(5)
391a(2)(I)	2101(34)
391a(2)(J)	3701(5)
391a(2)(K)	3701(6)
391a(2)(L)	2101(46)
391a(2)(M)	2101(38)
391a(2)(N)	2101(8)
391a(2)(O)	2101(23)
391a(2)(P)	3701(2)
391a(2)(Q)	3701(3)
391a(2)(R)	3701(1)
391a(2)(S)	2101(7)
391a(3)	2101(39), 2301, 3303, 3702(a)
391a(4)	2109
391a(4)(B)	8703(c)
391a(5)	3702
391a(6)	3703
391a(7)	3704–3709
391a(8)	3309, 3313
391a(8)(A)	3710, 3712
391a(8)(B)	3711, 3712
391a(8)(C)	3711
391a(8)(D)	3710
391a(8)(E)	3710, 3711
391a(9)	9102
391a(10)(A)	8703(a)
391a(10)(B)	9101(b)
391a(10)(C)	7317, 8703(b)
391a(10)(D)	Rep. See 7701 et seq.
391a(11)	9101(a)
391a(12)	3703
391a(13)	3713
391a(14)	2107, 3718
391a(14)(C)	2106
391a(15)	3714
391a(16)	3717
391a(17)	3715
391a(18)	3716
391b	Rep.
392	3304–3306
392(b)	3307(3)

393, 394	Rep.
395	3301(6), 3305, 3311
395(d)	3309
395(e)	2101(32)
396, 397	Rep.
398	3318
399	3309, 3311, 3314
400	3312
401, 402	Rep.
403	3318
404	2101(13), (16), (17), 3301(1), 3302, 3306, 3307
404–1	3301(3), 3305, 3501
404–1(1)	2101(19)
404–1(4)	2101(21)(C)
404–1(6)	3307(2), (3)
404–1(8)	8301
404a	Rep.
405	2101(40), 3301(9), 3305
405(b)	8104
405(b)(1)(A)	2101(34)
405(b)(2)	8904
405(b)(3)	8905(b)
406	3305
407	3305, 3318
408	3305, 3306, 3318
409	Rep.
410	3318
411, 412	3306
413	3318
414	3310, 7502
415	Rep.
416	2104, 3306
417	(See former 416)
418, 419	Rep.
420	3302, 3306
431–434	Rep.
435	3308, 3313
436	2106, 3318
437–440	Rep.
441(1)	2101(18), 50503
441(2)	2101(31), 50503
442	3302
443	50503
444	8701, 50503
445	2113, 3306
446–446c	50504
446 note (Pub. L. 97–322, §201)	Rep.

446d	8101
451	3501
452	3501(b), (c)
453	2113
454–457	T. 33 §§1233–1236
458	Rep.
459	3306
460, 460a, 461	3502
462	2106, 3501, 3502
463, 463a, 464	Rep.
465	(See former 170)
466	Rep.
466a	3901
466b	3902
466c	T. 15 §1824a
467–469	Rep.
470, 471	8102
472	Rep.
473	3306
474–476	Rep.
477–479	3306
480	2301
481	2106, 3306
481(a)	2101(34)
481(c)	2106
481(d)	3318
482, 483	3306
484–488	Rep.
489	3306
490	Rep.
491 (words before semicolon)	30102
491 (words after semicolon)	30103
492	3506
493–496	Rep.
497	2106, 3318, 8502
498	Rep.
511–522	Rep.
526	2101(43)
526a–526d	Rep.
526e	4102(b)
526f	Rep.
526g	4102(a)
526h	4103
526i	4102(c)
526j	4102(d)
526k–526n	Rep.
526*o*	2106, 2107, 4106
526p	2107, 3306, 4104

526q–526t	Rep.
526u	4101
527–527h	Rep.
531	10601
532	Rep. See 11501
533, 534	10602
541–542a	Rep.
543	2104
544, 545	Rep.
546	10102
547–549	Rep.
561, 562	Rep.
563	11110
564	10301, 10302
565	10305
566	10301
567, 568	10321
569	10309
570	10308
571	10321
572, 573	Rep.
574	10301, 10501, 10502
575	10508
576	10509
577	10307
578	11107
579	Rep.
591	10313(a)
592	10313(b)
593	10313(b)
594	10313(c)
595	10313(d)
596	10313(e)–(i), 10504
597	2101(12), 10313(e)–(i), 10504
598	10313(e), 10504(a), (d), 10505(d)
599	2101(12), 10314, 10315, 10505, 10506
599(g)	10316
600	10317
601	11108, 11109
602	11111
603–608, 611	Rep.
621	10701, 10702
622	10703
623	10711
624	10704, 10705
625	10706
626	10707
627	10709

628	10708, 10710
641, 642	10310
643	8701, 8702, 10102(c), 10311, 10503
643(a)	7302, 7303, 7318
643(b)	7304
643(c)	7302, 10306
643(e)	10311
643(f)	7319, 7502
643(h)	7501
643(*l*)	7316, 10103
643a	8701
643b	Rep.
644	10312(a), (b), (d)–(f)
645, 646, 651	Rep.
652	10312(c)
653	10901, 10902(a), 10907
654	10901, 10903(a), (b)
655	10901, 10904
656	10901, 10905
657	10905
658	10901, 10906, 10908
659	10903(c)
660	10903(d)
660–1	11101
660a	3305, 3308
660b	3308
661	10321
662	10902(b)
663	Rep.
664	10907
665	10321, 11106(b)–(d)
666	11102(a)
667	11102(b)
668, 669	Rep.
670, 671	11103
672	8701, 8702
672(a)	2101(34)
672(b)	7306
672(b)(1)	7307
672(b)(2)	7308
672(b)(3)	7309, 7310
672(b)(4)	7311
672(c)	7301, 7315
672(d)	8702(d)
672(e)	8702(b), (c)
672(f)	7312
672(g)	7313, 7314
672(h)	8103

672(i)	7302
672(j)	2106, 8702(e)
672–1, 672–2	Rep.
672a	8103
672b, 672b–1, 672c	Rep.
673	8104
674–677	Rep.
678	11104(a)
679	11104(b)–(d)
680, 681	Rep.
682	10318, 10507
683	10318, 10507
684	11105
685	11106(a)
686, 687	Rep.
688(a)	30104
688(b)	30105
689	2103, 2104
690	8103
691	Sec. 2(f) of Pub. L. 98–89
692	Rep.
701	11501
702	11502
703	11503
704	T. 18 §2196
705	11504
706	11505
707	10319
708	T. 18 §2279
709	Rep.
710	11506
710a	Rep.
710b	(See former 239a)
710c	(See former 239b)
711	Rep.
712	11507
713	10101, 10303, 10304
721	80101
722, 723	80103
724	80102
725	80105
726	80106
727	80107
728	2304
729, 730	80107
731	2304, 80107
732–735	Rep.
738	80301

738a	80302
738b	Rep.
738c	80303
738d	Rep.
740	30101
741 (11th–26th words)	30902
741 (less 11th–26th words)	30908
742 (1st sentence)	30903
742 (2d sentence)	30906
742 (3d sentence)	30903
742 (last sentence)	30906
743 (1st sentence)	30907
743 (2d, 3d sentences)	30911
743 (4th–6th sentences)	30907
743 (last sentence)	30909
743a	Rep.
744	30914
745 (words before 1st proviso)	30905
745 (1st proviso)	30904
745 (2d proviso)	Rep.
745 (last proviso)	30911
746	30910
747	30915
748	30913
749	30912
750	30916
751	30917
752	30918
761(a)	30302
761(b)	30307
762(a)	30303
762(b)	30307
763	Rep.
763a	30106
764	30306
765	30305
766	30304
767	30308
768	Rep.
781	31102
782 (1st sentence)	31104
782 (last sentence words before last comma)	31103
782 (last sentence words after last comma)	31107
783 (words before proviso)	31102
783 (proviso)	31105
784	31110
785	31111
786	31108

787	31109
788	31112
789	31106
790	31113
791–799	Rep.
801	Rep.
802	50501
803	50502
804	Rep.
804a	Rep.
805–807	Rep.
808(4th par., prior to amendment by Pub. L. 100–710)	31328
808(a)	Rep.
808(b)	57109
808(c)–(f)	56101
808a	56101
809–810a	Rep.
811 (1st sentence words before 1st comma)	50105
811 (1st sentence words after 1st comma)	50106
811 (2d sentence words before 2d comma)	50105
811 (2d sentence words after 2d comma)	50107
811 (3d sentence)	50106
811 (4th sentence)	50109
811 (last sentence)	50111
812–817c	Rep.
817d(a) (1st–5th, 29th–last words)	44103
817d(a) (6th–28th words)	44101
817d(b)	44103
817d(c)	44104
817d(d)	44106
817d(e)	44105
817e(a) (1st–14th, 37th–last words)	44102
817e(a) (15th–36th words)	44101
817e(b)	44102
817e(c)	44104
817e(d)	44106
817e(e)	44105
818–832	Rep.
833, 833a	Rep.
834	60108
835	56102
836, 837	56105
838	31306
839 (1st par.)	56103
839 (last par.)	56104
840–841c	Rep.
842	Rep.

843–848	Rep.
861	50101
862–864	Rep.
864a	Rep.
864b	57108
865	Rep.
865a	53101 note
866	Rep.
867	50302
868, 869	Rep.
870–870d	Rep.
871	57106
872	50304
873, 874	Rep.
875	50304
876(a)(1)	Rep.
876(a)(2)	42101
876(a)(3)	42102
876(b), (c)	42102
876(d)	42103
876(e)	42101
876(f), (g)	42104
876(h)	42105
876(i)	42106
876(j)	42107
876(k)	42108
876(*l*)	42109
877	55101
877 note (Proc. No. 3215, Dec. 12, 1957)	55101
878–880	Rep.
881	3305, 3316, 12119
882	3304
883 (words before 1st proviso)	55102
883 (1st proviso, 2d proviso less meaning of "rebuilt")	12132
883 (2d proviso related to meaning of "rebuilt")	12101
883 (3d proviso)	55116
883 (4th proviso)	55119
883 (5th proviso)	55117
883 (6th proviso)	55107
883 (7th proviso)	55106
883 (8th proviso)	Rep.
883 (2d–6th sentences, last sentence less provisos)	55105
883 (10th proviso)	55115
883 (11th proviso)	55102
883 (12th proviso)	55110

883 (last proviso)	55108
883 note (Pub. L. 104–324, §1120(f))	12120
883–1	12118
883a (1st sentence)	12139
883a (2d, last sentences)	12151
883b	Rep.
884	58108
885	T. 15 §38
886	Rep.
887–889	Rep.
891	50101
891a	Rep.
891b	57106
891c–891y	Rep.
911(1), (2)	30101(1)
911(3)	Rep.
911(4)	30101(1)
911(5)	31301(3)
921	31321(a)(1), (e)
922(a), (b)	31322(a)(1)
922(b)	31301(6)(A)
922(c), (d)	Rep.
922(e), (f)	31322(c)
923	31324
924	31323(a), (b)
925	31343
925(b)	31321(f), (h)
926(a), (b)	31321(b)
926(c)	Rep.
926(d)	31322(b)
927	31302(1), (2)
941(a)	Rep.
941(b) (1st sentence)	31330(a), (c)
941(b) (last sentence)	31323(c)
941(c)	31304
951 (1st par.)	31325(a), (b)(1), (c), (d)
951 (2d par. less proviso)	31301(6)(B)
951 (2d par. proviso)	31326(b)(2)
952 (1st, 2d sentences)	31325(e)
952 (last sentence)	31308
953(a)	31301(5)
953(b)	31326(a), (b)(1)
954(a)	31325(b)(2)
954(b)	31303
961(a)	Rep.
961(b)	31327
961(c)	31326(a)
961(d), (e)	31328

961(f)	31329
971	31342
972	31341
973	31341(a)
974	31305
975	31307
981–984	Rep.
1011	Rep.
1012	31321(a)(2)
1013, 1014	Rep.
1101	50101
1111(a), (b)	Rep.
1111(c) (related to seal)	301
1111(c) (related to records)	303
1111(c) (related to rules and regulations)	305
1111(d) (related to Commission)	307
1111(d) (related to Secretary)	Rep.
1111(e)	Rep.
1111(f) (1st, last sentences)	Rep.
1111(f) (2d sentence related to Commission)	Rep.
1111(f) (2d sentence related to Secretary)	T. 49 §109
1111 note (Pub. L. 89–56)	301
1111 note (Reorg. Plan No. 6 of 1949)	301
1111 note (Reorg. Plan No. 21 of 1950, §§201, 203, 204)	T. 49 §109
1111 note (Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1961, §§101, 102(a)–(c), 104, 105(d))	301
1111 note (Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1961, §102(d))	302
1111 note (Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1961, §105(a)–(c))	304
1111 note (Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1961, §201)	T. 49 §109
1111a–1111c	Rep.
1112	50303
1113	Rep.
1114	Rep.
1115	58107
1116, 1116a	Rep.
1117 (related to Commission)	Rep.
1117 (related to Secretary)	T. 49 §109
1118 (related to Commission)	306
1118 (related to Secretary)	50111
1118 note (Pub. L. 106–398, [§3506])	50111
1119	T. 49 §109
1119a, 1119b	Rep.
1120	50102
1121(a)–(c)	50103
1121(d)	50105

1121(e)	50106
1121(f)	50109
1121(g)	50106
1121(h), (i)	50109
1121(j) (words before 1st semicolon)	50105
1121(j) (words between 1st and 2d semicolons)	50110
1121(j) (words after 2d semicolon)	50109
1121–1	55301
1121–2	50112
1122(a)	50104
1122(b)(1)	50110
1122(b)(2)	50105
1122(c)	50105
1122(d)	50110, T. 49 §109
1122(e)	Rep.
1122(f)	50108
1122(g)	50111
1122a	50113
1122b	55501
1123	50109
1124	50306
1125	57105
1125 note (Pub. L. 86–518, §9)	57105, 57506
1125a	57107
1126	Rep.
1126–1(a) (1st sentence)	51101
1126–1(a) (last sentence), (b)	51104
1126a, 1126a–1	Rep.
1126b, 1126b–1	Rep.
1126c, 1126d	Rep.
1127–1128h	Rep.
1131	53101 note
1132 (prior provision)	8103
1132(a) (prior provision)	7102
1132 (added by Pub. L. 104–239)	52101
1141–1144	Rep.
1145	Rep.
1151–1155	53101 note
1155a	Rep.
1156, 1157	53101 note
1158(a)	57102
1158(b)	57103
1159	53101 note
1160(a)	57301
1160(b) (1st sentence)	57302
1160(b) (2d sentence)	57304
1160(b) (3d sentence)	57305

1160(b) (4th–7th sentences)	57306
1160(b) (last sentence)	57302
1160(c)	57303
1160(d)	57305
1160(e)	57307
1160(f)	50111
1160(g)	57308
1160(h)	Rep.
1160(i)	57104
1160(j)	57101
1161(a)	53301
1161(b) (1st sentence words before 6th comma)	53302
1161(b) (1st sentence words between 6th and 10th commas)	53303
1161(b) (1st sentence between 10th and 16th commas)	53302
1161(b) (1st sentence words after 16th comma)	53305
1161(b) (last sentence)	53302
1161(c)	53306
1161(d)	53307
1161(e)	53308
1161(f)	53309
1161(g), (h)	53310
1161(i)	53311
1161(j)	53312
1161(k)	Rep.
1161(*l*)	53304
1161(m)–(*o*)	53301
1162, 1171–1176	53101 note
1177(a) (1st sentence)	53503
1177(a) (2d sentence related to purpose)	53503
1177(a) (2d sentence related to deposits)	53504
1177(a) (last sentence)	53504
1177(b)(1), (2)	53505
1177(b)(3)	53501
1177(c)	53506
1177(d)	53507
1177(e)	53508
1177(f)	53509
1177(g)	53510
1177(h) (less (2) (last sentence))	53511
1177(h)(2) (last sentence)	53512
1177(i)	53513
1177(j)	53514
1177(k)(1)–(3)	53501
1177(k)(4)	Rep.

1177(k)(5)–(9)	53501
1177(*l*) (1st sentence)	53515
1177(*l*) (2d sentence)	53502
1177(*l*) (last sentence)	53516
1177(m)	53517
1177–1	53501
1177a	Rep.
1178–1181	53101 note
1182	Rep.
1183–1185a	53101 note
1187–1187e	Rep.
1191	57501
1192	57502
1193(a)	57503
1193(b)	57502
1193(c) (related to construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning)	57503
1193(c) (related to chartering)	57512
1194	57504
1195 (1st, 2d sentences)	57505
1195 (last sentence)	57506
1196(a)	57512
1196(b) (1st sentence related to announcement)	57512
1196(b) (1st sentence related to authority)	57515
1196(b) (last sentence)	57513
1197	57515
1198	57516
1199	57517
1200	57518
1201	57511
1202(a)	57519
1202(b), (c)	57520
1202(d)	57521
1203	57514
1204	57531
1205	57532
1206	Rep.
1211, 1212	53101 note
1213(a) (less 3d sentence as related to 1121(a))	53101 note
1213(a) (3d sentence related to 1121(a))	50103
1213(b)	T. 49 §109
1214	Rep.
1221	Rep.
1222	Rep.
1223(a)	58101
1223(b)	58102

1223(c)	Rep.
1223(d)	58103
1223(e)	Rep.
1223(f)	58104
1224, 1225	Rep.
1226	58105
1227	58106
1228 (1st, 2d pars.)	58109
1228 (last par.)	505
1241(a)	55302
1241(b)	55305
1241(c)	55303
1241–1	55304
1241a, 1241b	50301
1241b note (limitation on funds for fiscal year 1957)	50301
1241c	50301
1241d	55311
1241e	55313
1241f(a)–(d)	55314
1241f(e)	55312
1241g	55315
1241h	55316
1241h note (Pub. L. 100–202, §101(a) [title V, §501])	55316
1241i	Rep.
1241j	55317
1241k–1241n	Rep.
1241*o*	55314
1241p	55318
1241q	55333
1241r	55332
1241s	55334
1241t(a), (c)	55335
1241t(b)	55336
1241u	Rep.
1241v	55331
1242(a) (1st, 2d sentences)	56301
1242(a) (3d sentence)	56303
1242(a) (4th sentence)	56307
1242(a) (last sentence)	56303
1242(b)	56303
1242(c) (1st sentence)	56302
1242(c) (2d sentence)	56304
1242(c) (last sentence)	56303
1242(d) (1st par. words before 2d comma)	56303
1242(d) (1st par. words after 2d comma)	56304
1242(d) (last par.)	56305

1242(e)	56306
1242–1	Rep.
1242a(a)	56501
1242a(b)	56502
1242a(c)	56503
1242a(d)	56504
1242a(e)	56502
1243	Rep.
1244(a)	109
1244(b)	Rep.
1244(c)	50501
1244(d)–(f)	Rep.
1244(g)	114
1245 (1st sentence)	Rep.
1245 (last sentence)	101 note
1246	Rep.
1247	50305
1248, 1249	53101 note
1251–1262	Rep.
1271	53701
1272	53717
1273(a)	53702
1273(b)	53711
1273(c)	53709
1273(d)	53705
1273(e) (1st sentence)	53705
1273(e) (last sentence)	53721, 53722
1273(f)	53704
1273(g)	53732
1273(h)	53704
1273(i), (j)	53706
1273a	53707
1274(a)	53706
1274(b)(1)	53707
1274(b)(2)	53709
1274(b)(3)–(7)	53710
1274(b) (last 2 sentences)	53709
1274(c)(1) (1st sentence)	53711
1274(c)(1) (last sentence)	53709
1274(c)(2)	53711
1274(d)(1), (2)	53708
1274(d)(3)	53732
1274(d)(4)	53707
1274(d)(5)	Rep.
1274(e)	53714
1274(f)(1)	53713
1274(f)(2), (3)	53708
1274(f)(4)	53713

1274(g)	53717
1274(h)	53710
1274(i)	53709
1274(j)	53732
1274(k)	53712
1274(*l*)	53703
1274(m)	53712
1274(n)	53703
1274a	53734
1275(a)	53721
1275(b)	53722
1275(c)	53724
1275(d)	53723
1275(e)	53725
1275(f)	53722
1276–1279	Rep.
1279a	53715
1279b (prior provision)	Rep.
1279b (added by Pub. L. 107–107)	53716
1279c	53731
1279d	53732
1279e	53733
1279f	53735
1279g	53702
1280	53717
1280a	53733
1280b	53718
1281(a)–(c)	53901
1281(d), (e)	Rep.
1282	53902
1283(a) (1st, 2d sentences)	53903
1283(a) (last sentence)	53910
1283(b) (1st sentence)	53903
1283(b) (last sentence)	53901
1283(c)–(f)	53903
1284	53903
1285	53905
1286	53904
1287	53907
1288, 1288a	53909
1289(a)(1)	53910
1289(a)(2)	53906
1289(b)–(f)	53910
1290	Rep.
1291	50111
1292	53911
1293	53908
1294	53912

1295 (1st sentence)	51101
1295 (last sentence cl. (1))	51103
1295 (last sentence cl. (2))	51104
1295a	51102
1295b(a)	51301
1295b(b)(1)–(3)(C)	51302
1295b(b)(3)(D)	51303
1295b(b)(3)(E)	51305
1295b(b)(3)(F)	51311
1295b(b)(3)(G)	Rep.
1295b(b)(4)	Rep.
1295b(b)(5)–(7)	51304
1295b(b)(8)	51309
1295b(c)	51311
1295b(d)	51308
1295b(e)(1)–(4)	51306
1295b(e)(5)	51310
1295b(f)	51307
1295b(g)	51309
1295b(h)	51312
1295b(i)	51313
1295b(j)	51314
1295c(a)	51501
1295c(b)	51503
1295c(c)(1), (2)	51504
1295c(c)(3)(A)	51507
1295c(c)(3)(B)	51508
1295c(d)(1)	51505
1295c(d)(2)	51501
1295c(e)	51502
1295c(f)	51506
1295c(g)(1)–(6)	51509
1295c(g)(7)	51510
1295c(g)(8)	51509
1295c(h)	51511
1295c note (Pub. L. 101–115, §4)	51504
1295c–1	T. 49 §109
1295d(a), (b)	51703
1295d(c)	51704
1295e	51701
1295f(a), (b)	51702
1295f(c)	2101(17), 3301(2), 3306, 3307(1)
1295f(d)(1)	51702
1295f(d)(2), (3)	3318(g)
1295g(a)	Rep.
1295g(b)–(d)	51103
1295g(e)(1)	2101(17)
1295g(e)(2)–(5)	Rep.

1300–1315	30701 note
1331–1341	Rep.
1351–1364	Rep.
1381–1388	Rep.
1401–1413	Rep.
1451	Rep.
1452(1)(A), (B)	2101(25)
1452(1)(C)	2101(42)
1452(2)	2101(45)
1452(3)	2101(41)
1452(5)	2101(21)(D)
1452(7)	2101(26)
1452(8)	2101(1)
1452(9)	2101(34)
1452(10)	2102(2)
1452(11)	2102(1)
1452(12)	2102(4)
1452(13)	2102(5)
1452(14)	2102(3)
1453	4105, 4301
1454, 1455	4302
1456	4302(a)(3)
1457	4303
1458	4305
1459	4306
1460	4304, 4306
1461(a)	4307(a)
1461(b)	4311(f)
1461(c)	4307(b)
1461(d)	2302(a), (b)
1461(e)	8903
1461(f)	8903, 8905(a)
1462	4308
1463	4309
1464	4310
1464(g)	4302
1465	2303
1466	12301
1467	12302
1468	12303
1469	12304
1470	12305
1471	12306
1472	12307
1473	12308
1474	13101
1475	13102
1476	13103

1477	13104
1478	13105
1479	13106
1479a	13107
1480	13108
1481	13109
1482	13110
1483	2302(b), 4311(a), 12309(a)
1484(a)	4311(b)
1484(b)	2106, 2302(a), (c), 4311(c), 12309(b)
1484(c)	2107
1484(d)	4311(d), 12309(c)
1485	2305, 4311(e)
1486	6101, 6102
1487	Rep.
1488	4302
1489	4311(g)
1501	80501
1502(a) (related to application of Convention)	80502
1502(a) (related to approval and examination)	80504
1502(b)	Rep.
1503(a)–(c)(1)	80503
1503(c)(2)	80506
1503(c)(3)	80503
1503(d)	80506
1503(e)	80503
1504	80505
1505	80509
1506	80507
1507	80508
1508	Rep.
1601–1603	T. 49 §109
1604–1608	Rep.
1609	T. 49 §109 note
1610	Elim.
1701	40101
1702	40102
1703	40301
1704(a)	40302
1704(b)–(d)	40303
1704(e) (less last sentence)	40305
1704(e) (last sentence)	40301
1704(f)	40301
1704(g)	40303
1705(a)–(f)	40304
1705(g)–(i)	41307
1705(j)	40306
1705(k)	41307

1706	40307
1707(a), (b)	40501
1707(c)	40502
1707(d)	40501
1707(e)	40503
1707(f), (g)	40501
1707a	Rep.
1708(a)	40701
1708(b)	40702
1708(c) (1st sentence)	40703
1708(c) (last sentence), (d)	40704
1708(e)	40705
1708(f)	40706
1709(a)	41102
1709(b)(1)–(12)	41104
1709(b)(13), (words after cl. (13))	41103
1709(c)	41105
1709(d)(1)	41102
1709(d)(2)	41106
1709(d)(3) (related to (b)(10))	41106
1709(d)(3) (related to (b)(13))	41103
1709(d)(4)	41106
1709(d)(5)	41103
1709(e)	41101
1710(a), (b)	41301
1710(c) (1st–3d sentences)	41302
1710(c) (last sentence)	41307
1710(d)–(f)	41302
1710(g) (related to time limit)	41301
1710(g) (less time limit)	41305
1710(h)(1)	41307
1710(h)(2)	41306
1710a(a)	42301
1710a(b), (c)	42302
1710a(d)	42303
1710a(e)(1), (2)	42304
1710a(e)(3)	42306
1710a(f)	42305
1710a(g)	306
1710a(h) (related to 876(a)(2))	42101
1710a(h) (related to 1712(b)(6))	41108
1710a(i)	42307
1711	41303
1712(a)	41107
1712(b)	41108
1712(c)–(f)	41109
1713(a), (b)	41304
1713(c)	41308

1713(d)	41309
1713(e)	41308, 41309
1714	40104
1715	40103
1716	305
1717	Rep.
1718(a)	40901
1718(b)	40902
1718(c)	40903
1718(d)	40901
1718(e)	40904
1719(a)–(c)	Rep.
1719(d)	40101 note
1719(e)	Rep.
1720	Rep.
1721	Rep.
1801	70302
1802	70306
1803	70303
1804	70304
1805	70305
1806	Rep.
1807	70301
1808	Rep.
1809	70306
1901	Rep.
1902	70501
1903(a)	70503
1903(b), (c)	70502
1903(d)	70505
1903(e)	70503
1903(f)	70504
1903(g)	70506
1903(h)	70503
1903(i)	70502
1903(j)	70506
1904	70507
2001	51901
2002	51901
2003	51902
2004(a)	51903
2004(b)	51904
2004(c)	51907
2004(d)	51901
2005	51905
2006	51906
2007	51908
12101 note (Pub. L. 104–324, §1117)	55113

12102 note (Pub. L. 105–277, §203(b)–(e))	12113
12106 note (Pub. L. 105–383, §§502–504)	12121
12119 note (Pub. L. 107–295, §403)	12138

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

ENACTING CLAUSES

Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4738, provided that: "Certain general and permanent laws of the United States, related to definitions and maritime commercial instruments and liens, are revised, consolidated, and enacted by paragraph (3) of this subsection [probably means subsection (c) of this section] as subtitle III of title 46, United States Code, 'Shipping'."

Pub. L. 98–89, §1, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 500, provided in part that: "Certain general and permanent laws of the United States, related to vessels and seamen, are revised, consolidated, and enacted as title 46, United States Code, 'Shipping' ".

LEGISLATIVE PURPOSE AND CONSTRUCTION

Pub. L. 109–304, §2, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1485, provided that:

"(a) PURPOSE.—The purpose of this Act [see Tables for classification] is to complete the codification of title 46, United States Code, "Shipping", as positive law, by reorganizing and restating the laws currently in the appendix to title 46.

"(b) CONFORMITY WITH ORIGINAL INTENT.—In the codification of laws by this Act, the intent is to conform to the understood policy, intent, and purpose of the Congress in the original enactments, with such amendments and corrections as will remove ambiguities, contradictions, and other imperfections, in accordance with section 205(c)(1) of House Resolution No. 988, 93d Congress, as enacted into law by Public Law 93–554 (2 U.S.C. 285b(1))."

Pub. L. 109–304, §18, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1709, provided that:

"(a) CUTOFF DATE.—This Act [see Tables for classification] replaces certain provisions enacted on or before April 30, 2005. If a law enacted after that date amends or repeals a provision replaced by this Act, that law is deemed to amend or repeal, as the case may be, the corresponding provision enacted by this Act. If a law enacted after that date is otherwise inconsistent with this Act, it supersedes this Act to the extent of the inconsistency.

"(b) ORIGINAL DATE OF ENACTMENT UNCHANGED.—For purposes of determining whether one provision supersedes another based on enactment later in time, the date of enactment of a provision enacted by this Act is deemed to be the date of enactment of the provision it replaced.

"(c) REFERENCES TO PROVISIONS REPLACED.—A reference to a provision replaced by this Act is deemed to refer to the corresponding provision enacted by this Act.

"(d) LAWS GOVERNING APPLICABILITY OF PRIOR AMENDMENTS.—This Act does not affect any law governing the applicability of an amendment to a provision replaced by this Act, notwithstanding the repeal by this Act of the provision that was amended. To the extent that any such law governed the applicability of a provision replaced by this Act, that law governs the applicability of the corresponding provision enacted by this Act.

"(e) REGULATIONS, ORDERS, AND OTHER ADMINISTRATIVE ACTIONS.—A regulation, order, or other administrative action in effect under a provision replaced by this Act continues in effect under the corresponding provision enacted by this Act.

"(f) ACTIONS TAKEN AND OFFENSES COMMITTED.—An action taken or an offense committed under a provision replaced by this Act is deemed to have been taken or committed under the corresponding provision enacted by this Act."

Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §105, Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4751, provided that:

"(a) A reference to a law replaced by section 102 of this Act [see Tables for classification], including a reference in a regulation, order, or other law, is deemed to refer to the corresponding provision of this Act.

"(b) An order, rule, or regulation in effect under a law replaced by section 102 of this Act continues in effect under the corresponding provision of this Act until repealed, amended, or superseded.

"(c) An action taken or an offense committed under a law replaced by section 102 of this Act is deemed to have been taken or committed under the corresponding provision of this Act.

"(d) An inference of legislative construction is not to be drawn by reason of the caption or catch line of a

provision enacted by section 102 of this Act.

"(e) If a provision of this Act is held invalid, all valid provisions that are severable from the invalid provision remain in effect. If a provision of this Act is held invalid in any of its applications, the provision remains valid for all valid applications that are severable from any of the invalid applications."

Pub. L. 99–509, title V, subtitle B, §5103(a)–(f), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1927, provided that:

"(a) Laws effective after January 1, 1986, that are inconsistent with this subtitle [see Tables for classification] supersede this subtitle to the extent of the inconsistency.

"(b) A reference to a law replaced by this subtitle, including a reference in a regulation, order, or other law, is deemed to refer to the corresponding provision of this subtitle.

"(c) An order, rule, or regulation in effect under a law replaced by this subtitle continues in effect under the corresponding provision of this subtitle until repealed, amended, or superseded.

"(d) An action taken or an offense committed under a law replaced by this subtitle is deemed to have been taken or committed under the corresponding provision of this subtitle.

"(e) An inference of legislative construction is not to be drawn by reason of the caption or catch line of a provision enacted by this subtitle.

"(f) If a provision enacted by this subtitle is held invalid, all valid provisions that are severable from the invalid provision remain in effect. If a provision of this subtitle is held invalid in one or more of its applications, the provision remains in effect in all valid applications that are severable from the invalid application or applications."

Pub. L. 98–89, §2(a)–(f), Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 598, provided that:

"(a) Laws effective after December 31, 1982, that are inconsistent with this Act [see Tables for classification] supersede this Act to the extent of the inconsistency.

"(b) A reference to a law replaced by this Act, including a reference in a regulation, order, or other law, is deemed to refer to the corresponding provision of this Act.

"(c) An order, rule, or regulation in effect under a law replaced by this Act continues in effect under the corresponding provision of this Act until repealed, amended, or superseded.

"(d) An action taken or an offense committed under a law replaced by this Act is deemed to have been taken or committed under the corresponding provision of this Act.

"(e) An inference of legislative construction is not to be drawn by reason of the caption or catch line of a provision enacted by this Act.

"(f) If a provision enacted by this Act is held invalid, all valid provisions that are severable from the invalid provision remain in effect. If a provision of this Act is held invalid in one or more of its applications, the provision remains in effect in all valid applications that are severable from the invalid application or applications."

CODIFICATION OF SHIPPING AND MARITIME LAWS BY FEDERAL MARITIME COMMISSION AND SECRETARY OF TRANSPORTATION

Pub. L. 98–89, §2(j), Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 599, provided that: "Within 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 26, 1983], the Federal Maritime Commission and the Secretary of Transportation each shall submit to Congress a proposed codification of the laws within their respective jurisdictions related to shipping and maritime matters."

TRANSITIONAL AND SAVINGS PROVISIONS

Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §403, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4264, provided that:

"(a) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

"(1) SOURCE PROVISION.—The term 'source provision' means a provision of law that is replaced by a title 46 provision under this title.

"(2) TITLE 46 PROVISION.—The term 'title 46 provision' means a provision of title 46, United States Code, that is enacted by section 402 [probably means "section 401", which enacted chapter 700 (§70001 et seq.) of this title].

"(b) CUTOFF DATE.—The title 46 provisions replace certain provisions of law enacted before the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 4, 2018]. If a law enacted after that date amends or repeals a source provision, that law is deemed to amend or repeal, as the case may be, the corresponding title 46 provision. If a law enacted after that date is otherwise inconsistent with a title 46 provision or a provision of this title, that law supersedes the title 46 provision or provision of this title to the extent of the inconsistency.

"(c) ORIGINAL DATE OF ENACTMENT UNCHANGED.—For purposes of determining whether one provision of law supersedes another based on enactment later in time, a title 46 provision is deemed to have been enacted on the date of enactment of the source provision that the title 46 provision replaces.

"(d) REFERENCES TO TITLE 46 PROVISIONS.—A reference to a title 46 provision, including a

reference in a regulation, order, or other law, is deemed to refer to the corresponding source provision.

"(e) REFERENCES TO SOURCE PROVISIONS.—A reference to a source provision, including a reference in a regulation, order, or other law, is deemed to refer to the corresponding title 46 provision.

"(f) REGULATIONS, ORDERS, AND OTHER ADMINISTRATIVE ACTIONS.—A regulation, order, or other administrative action in effect under a source provision continues in effect under the corresponding title 46 provision.

"(g) ACTIONS TAKEN AND OFFENSES COMMITTED.—An action taken or an offense committed under a source provision is deemed to have been taken or committed under the corresponding title 46 provision."

REPEALS AND SAVINGS PROVISIONS

Pub. L. 109–304, §19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1710, as amended by Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3529(b)(1)(C), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 603, repealed specified laws relating to shipping, except with respect to rights and duties that matured, penalties that were incurred, or proceedings that were begun before Oct. 6, 2006.

Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §106(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4752, provided that: "The repeal of a law by this title may not be construed as a legislative implication that the provision was or was not in effect before its repeal."

Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §106(b), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4752, repealed specified laws relating to shipping, except for rights and duties that matured, penalties that were incurred, and proceedings that were begun before the effective date of this title, which is Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as an Effective Date note under section 31301 of this title.

Pub. L. 99–509, title V, subtitle B, §5104(a), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1928, provided that: "The repeal of a law by this subtitle may not be construed as a legislative implication that the provision was or was not in effect before its repeal."

Pub. L. 99–509, title V, subtitle B, §5104(b), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1928, repealed specified laws relating to shipping, except for rights and duties that matured, penalties that were incurred, and proceedings that were begun before Oct. 21, 1986.

Pub. L. 98–89, §4(a), Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 599, provided that: "The repeal of a law by this Act may not be construed as a legislative implication that the provision was or was not in effect before its repeal."

Pub. L. 98–89, §4(b), Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 599, repealed specified laws relating to shipping, except for rights and duties that matured, penalties that were incurred, and proceedings that were begun before Aug. 26, 1983, and except as provided by section 2 of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as notes above and notes under sections 3101, 3302, 3715, and 6301 of this title.

RULE OF CONSTRUCTION

Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §404, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4265, provided that: "This title [see Tables for classification], including the amendments made by this title, is intended only to transfer provisions of the Ports and Waterways Safety Act [Pub. L. 92–340, former 33 U.S.C. 1221 et seq.] to title 46, United States Code, and may not be construed to alter—

"(1) the effect of a provision of the Ports and Waterways Safety Act, including any authority or requirement therein;

"(2) a department or agency interpretation with respect to the Ports and Waterways Safety Act; or

"(3) a judicial interpretation with respect to the Ports and Waterways Safety Act."

Subtitle I—General

Chapter		Sec.
1.	**Definitions**	**101**
3.	**Automatic Execution of Conforming Changes**	**301**
5.	**Other General Provisions**	**501**

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, §7103(b), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1662, added item for chapter 3. Amendment was made pursuant to operation of section 301 of this title.

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXVI [LXXXVI], §8605(b)(4), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4765, struck out item for chapter 3 "Federal Maritime Commission".

CHAPTER 1—DEFINITIONS

Sec.

101. Agency.
102. Barge.
103. Boundary Line.
104. Citizen of the United States.
105. Consular officer.
106. Documented vessel.
107. Exclusive economic zone.
108. Fisheries.
109. Foreign commerce or trade.
110. Foreign vessel.
111. Numbered vessel.
112. State.
113. Undocumented.
114. United States.
115. Vessel.
116. Vessel of the United States.

§101. Agency

In this title, the term "agency" means a department, agency, or instrumentality of the United States Government.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1486.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
101	(no source).	

A definition of "agency" is added to avoid having to repeat the substance of the definition at various places in the revised title.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

SHORT TITLE OF 2023 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 118–7, §1, June 30, 2023, 137 Stat. 52, provided that: "This Act [amending section 51509 of this title] may be cited as the 'Changing Age-Determined Eligibility To Student Incentive Payments Act' or the 'CADETS Act'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2022 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 117–146, §1, June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1272, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Ocean Shipping Reform Act of 2022'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2021 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 117–14, §1, May 24, 2021, 135 Stat. 273, provided that: "This Act [enacting section 3510 of this title] may be cited as the 'Alaska Tourism Restoration Act'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2019 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(a), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1980, provided that: "This section [amending section 50302 of this title, enacting provisions set out as a note under section 50302 of this title, and amending provisions set out as notes under section 51318 of this title and section 9620 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare] may be cited as the 'Ports Improvement Act'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2018 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 115–265, §1, Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3742, provided that: "This Act [enacting section 6309 of this title, amending sections 2116, 3306, 3316, and 6101 of this title and sections 1952, 1954, and 1958 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section, sections 2101, 2116, 3201, 3203, 3306, 3315, and 3316 of this title, sections 1, 58, 88, and 93 of Title 14, Coast Guard, and section 822 of Title 45, Railroads] may be cited as the 'Save Our Seas Act of 2018'."

Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §201, Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3744, provided that: "This title [enacting section 6309 of this title, amending sections 2116, 3306, 3316, and 6101 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 2101, 2116, 3201, 3203, 3306, 3315, and 3316 of this title, sections 88 and 93 of Title 14, Coast Guard, and section 822 of Title 45, Railroads] may be cited as the 'Hamm Alert Maritime Safety Act of 2018'."

Pub. L. 115–254, div. J, §1801, Oct. 5, 2018, 132 Stat. 3533, provided that: "This division [div. J (§§1801–1816) of Pub. L. 115–254, enacting sections 243 and 244 of Title 6, Domestic Security, amending sections 70101 to 70103, and 70112 of this title, and sections 921, 941, 945, and 983 of Title 6, repealing sections 70107A and 70116 of this title and sections 922 and 984 of Title 6, enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 70101, 70102, 70107A, and 70112 of this title, and amending provisions set out as a note under section 70107A of this title] may be cited as the 'Maritime Security Improvement Act of 2018'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2012 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 112–213, title V, §501, Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1574, provided that: "This title [enacting section 51705 of this title, amending section 55305 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 51705 of this title] may be cited as the 'Piracy Suppression Act of 2012'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §601, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2959, provided that: "This title [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Maritime Safety Act of 2010'."

Pub. L. 111–207, §1(a), July 27, 2010, 124 Stat. 2243, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 3507 and 3508 of this title, amending section 676 of Title 14, Coast Guard, and section 355 of Title 37, Pay and Allowances of the Uniformed Services, enacting provisions set out as notes under section 3507 of this title and section 1828 of Title 16, Conservation, amending provisions set out as a note under section 2720 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters, and repealing provisions set out as notes under section 70101 of this title and section 637 of Title 14] may be cited as the 'Cruise Vessel Security and Safety Act of 2010'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111–83, title V, §561(a), Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2182, provided that: "This section [amending section 70103 of this title and sections 114 and 40119 of Title 49, Transportation] may be cited as the 'American Communities' Right to Public Information Act'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2003 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3501, Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1789, provided that: "This title [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Maritime Security Act of 2003'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 107–295, §1(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2064, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Maritime Transportation Security Act of 2002'."

Pub. L. 107–295, title II, §201, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2093, provided that: "This title [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Maritime Policy Improvement Act of 2002'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1999 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 106–65, div. C, title XXXVI, §3601, Oct. 5, 1999, 113 Stat. 975, provided that: "This title [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Maritime Administration Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2000'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 105–277, div. C, title II, §201, Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–616, provided that: "This title [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'American Fisheries Act'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1996 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §601, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3927, provided that: "This title [see Tables for

classification] may be cited as the 'Coast Guard Regulatory Reform Act of 1996'."

Pub. L. 104–297, title III, §301, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3615, provided that: "This title [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Fisheries Financing Act'."

Pub. L. 104–239, §1, Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3118, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Maritime Security Act of 1996'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 103–206, title V, §501, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2439, provided that: "This title [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Passenger Vessel Safety Act of 1993'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5301, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5081, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle C (§§5301–5305) of title V of Pub. L. 102–587, see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Abandoned Barge Act of 1992'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §601, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2990, provided that: "This title [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Aleutian Trade Act of 1990'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 100–424, §1, Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1585, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Commercial Fishing Industry Vessel Safety Act of 1988'."

Pub. L. 100–418, title X, §10001, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1570, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle A (§§10001–10003) of title X of Pub. L. 100–418, see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Foreign Shipping Practices Act of 1988'."

Pub. L. 100–239, §1, Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1778, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Commercial Fishing Industry Vessel Anti-Reflagging Act of 1987'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 99–626, §1, Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3504, provided that: "This act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Recreational Boating Safety Act of 1986'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 98–498, title II, §210, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2303, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle A (§§210–214) of title II of Pub. L. 98–498, see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Maritime Safety Act of 1984'."

Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §401, July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 445, provided that: "This title [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Commercial Fishing Industry Vessel Act'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 97–31, §1, Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 151, provided: "That this Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Maritime Act of 1981'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 94–372, §1, July 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 1042, provided: "That this Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Negotiated Shipbuilding Contracting Act of 1976'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1970 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 91–469, §44, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1039, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the 'Merchant Marine Act of 1970'."

SHORT TITLE OF 1936 AMENDMENT

Act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §906, 49 Stat. 2016, as amended by Pub. L. 109–304, §19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1710, provided that: "This Act [see Tables for classification] may be cited as the Merchant Marine Act, 1936."

§102. Barge

In this title, the term "barge" means a non-self-propelled vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1486.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
102	46:2101(2).	

§103. Boundary Line

In this title, the term "Boundary Line" means a line established under section 2(b) of the Act of February 19, 1895 (33 U.S.C. 151(b)).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1486; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §306(a)(1), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 54.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
103	46:2101(3).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2016—Pub. L. 114–120 substituted "(33 U.S.C. 151(b))." for "(33 U.S.C. 151)."

§104. Citizen of the United States

In this title, the term "citizen of the United States", when used in reference to a natural person, means an individual who is a national of the United States as defined in section 101(a)(22) of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1101(a)(22)).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1486.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
104	46:2101(3a).	

The words "when used in reference to a natural person" are added because of provisions in the title which treat entities as citizens. The words "or an individual citizen of the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands who is exclusively domiciled in the Northern Mariana Islands within the meaning of section 1005(e) of the Covenant to Establish a Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands in Political Union with the United States of America (48 U.S.C. 1801 note)" are omitted because the Covenant referred to became effective November 4, 1986, making citizens of the Northern Mariana Islands citizens or non-citizen nationals of the United States.

§105. Consular officer

In this title, the term "consular officer" means an officer or employee of the United States Government designated under regulations to issue visas.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1486.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
105	46:2101(6).	

§106. Documented vessel

In this title, the term "documented vessel" means a vessel for which a certificate of documentation has been issued under chapter 121 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1486.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
106	46:2101(10).	

§107. Exclusive economic zone

In this title, the term "exclusive economic zone" means the zone established by Presidential Proclamation 5030 of March 10, 1983 (16 U.S.C. 1453 note).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1487.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
107	46:2101(10a).	

§108. Fisheries

In this title, the term "fisheries" includes processing, storing, transporting (except in foreign commerce), planting, cultivating, catching, taking, or harvesting fish, shellfish, marine animals, pearls, shells, or marine vegetation in the navigable waters of the United States or in the exclusive economic zone.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1487.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
108	46:12101(a)(1).	

§109. Foreign commerce or trade

(a) IN GENERAL.—In this title, the terms "foreign commerce" and "foreign trade" mean commerce or trade between a place in the United States and a place in a foreign country.

(b) CAPITAL CONSTRUCTION FUNDS AND CONSTRUCTION-DIFFERENTIAL SUBSIDIES.—In the context of capital construction funds under chapter 535 of this title, and in the context of construction-differential subsidies under title V of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, the terms "foreign commerce" and "foreign trade" also include, in the case of liquid and dry bulk cargo

carrying services, trading between foreign ports in accordance with normal commercial bulk shipping practices in a manner that will permit bulk vessels of the United States to compete freely with foreign bulk vessels in their operation or competition for charters, subject to regulations prescribed by the Secretary of Transportation.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1487.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
109	46 App.:1244(a).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §905(a), 49 Stat. 2016; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §39(a), 52 Stat. 964; Pub. L. 91–469, §28, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1034; Pub. L. 92–402, §2, Aug. 22, 1972, 86 Stat. 617; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(133)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165.

In subsection (a), the words "its Territories or possessions, or the District of Columbia" are omitted because of the definition of "United States" in this chapter.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Merchant Marine Act, 1936, referred to in subsec. (b), is act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, 49 Stat. 1985. Title V of the Act enacted provisions set out as notes under section 53101 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1936 Amendment note set out under section 101 of this title and Tables.

§110. Foreign vessel

In this title, the term "foreign vessel" means a vessel of foreign registry or operated under the authority of a foreign country.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1487.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
110	46:2101(12).	

§111. Numbered vessel

In this title, the term "numbered vessel" means a vessel for which a number has been issued under chapter 123 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1487.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
111	46:2101(17b).	

§112. State

In this title, the term "State" means a State of the United States, the District of Columbia, Guam, Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, the Northern Mariana Islands, and any other territory or possession of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1487.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
112	46:2101(36).	

§113. Undocumented

In this title, the term "undocumented" means not having and not required to have a certificate of documentation issued under chapter 121 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1487.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
113	46:2101(41).	

The words "certificate of documentation" are substituted for "document" for consistency with chapter 121.

§114. United States

In this title, the term "United States", when used in a geographic sense, means the States of the United States, the District of Columbia, Guam, Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, the Northern Mariana Islands, and any other territory or possession of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1487.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
114	46:2101(44). 46 App.:1244(g).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §905(g), 49 Stat. 2016; as added Pub. L. 96–453, §3(b), Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2008.

The language in 46 App. U.S.C. 1244(g) relating to the areas and installations in the Republic of Panama is omitted because those areas and installations were turned over to Panama by the end of 1999.

§115. Vessel

In this title, the term "vessel" has the meaning given that term in section 3 of title 1.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1487.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
115	46:2101(45).	

§116. Vessel of the United States

In this title, the term "vessel of the United States" means a vessel documented under chapter 121 of this title (or exempt from documentation under section 12102(c) of this title), numbered under chapter 123 of this title, or titled under the law of a State.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1488.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
116	46:2101(46).	

CHAPTER 3—AUTOMATIC EXECUTION OF CONFORMING CHANGES

Sec.
301. Automatic execution of conforming changes

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior chapter 3, consisting of sections 301 to 308, was renumbered chapter 461 and sections 301 to 308 were renumbered sections 46101 to 46108, respectively.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, §7103(b), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1662, added item 301. Amendment was made pursuant to operation of section 301 of this title.

§301. Automatic execution of conforming changes

(a) IN GENERAL.—When an amendment to a covered maritime law adds a section or larger organizational unit to the covered maritime law, repeals or transfers a section or larger organizational unit in the covered maritime law, or amends the designation or heading of a section or larger organizational unit in the covered maritime law, that amendment also shall have the effect of amending any analysis, table of contents, or similar tabular entries in the covered maritime law to alter the table to conform to the changes made by the amendment.

(b) EXCEPTIONS.—Subsection (a) shall not apply to an amendment described in such subsection when—

(1) the amendment or a clerical amendment enacted at the same time expressly amends a table of sections, table of contents, or similar tabular entries in the covered maritime law to alter the table to conform to the changes made by the amendment; or

(2) the amendment otherwise expressly exempts itself from the operation of this section.

(c) COVERED MARITIME LAW DEFINED.—In this section, the term "covered maritime law" means—

(1) this title;

(2) any Maritime Administration authorization Act that authorizes funds to be appropriated for a fiscal year to the Maritime Administration; and

(3) any other law designated in the text thereof as a covered maritime law for purposes of application of this section.

(Added Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, §7103(b), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1662.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 301 was renumbered section 46101 of this title.

[§§302 to 308. Renumbered §§46102 to 46108]

CHAPTER 5—OTHER GENERAL PROVISIONS

Sec.

501. Waiver of navigation and vessel-inspection laws.
502. Cargo exempt from forfeiture.
503. Notice of seizure.
504. Remission of fees and penalties.
505. Penalty for violating regulation or order.

§501. Waiver of navigation and vessel-inspection laws

(a) ON REQUEST OF SECRETARY OF DEFENSE.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—On request of the Secretary of Defense, the head of an agency responsible for the administration of the navigation or vessel-inspection laws shall waive compliance with those laws to the extent the Secretary considers necessary in the interest of national defense to address an immediate adverse effect on military operations.

(2) SUBMITTAL OF EXPLANATION TO CONGRESS.—Not later than 24 hours after making a request under paragraph (1), the Secretary of Defense shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the Committee on Armed Services of the Senate a written explanation of the circumstances requiring such a waiver in the interest of national defense, including a confirmation that there are insufficient qualified vessels to meet the needs of national defense without such a waiver.

(b) BY HEAD OF AGENCY.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Upon a determination by the President that a waiver of the navigation or vessel-inspection laws is necessary in the interest of national defense, the head of an agency responsible for the administration of such laws,[1] may waive compliance with such laws—

(A) following a determination in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (3) by the Maritime Administrator, acting in the Administrator's capacity as Director, National Shipping Authority, of the non-availability of qualified United States flag capacity to meet national defense requirements;

(B) not earlier than 48 hours after a waiver request is published under paragraph (6)(A); and

(C) on a vessel specific basis to the extent, in the manner, and on the terms the head of such agency, in consultation with the Administrator, acting in such capacity, prescribes.

(2) DURATION OF WAIVER.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Subject to subparagraphs (B) and (C), a waiver issued under this subsection shall be for a period of not more than 10 days.

(B) WAIVER EXTENSION.—Upon the termination of the period of a waiver issued under this subsection, the head of an agency may extend the waiver for an additional period of not more than 10 days, if the Maritime Administrator makes the determination referred to in paragraph (1)(A).

(C) AGGREGATE DURATION.—The aggregate duration of the period of all waivers and extensions of waivers under this subsection with respect to any one set of events shall not exceed 45 days.

(3) DETERMINATIONS.—The Maritime Administrator shall—

(A) for each determination referred to in paragraph (1)(A)—

(i) identify any actions that could be taken to enable qualified United States flag capacity to meet national defense requirements prior to the issuance of a waiver; and

(ii) not assess the non-availability of qualified United States flag capacity to meet national defense requirements retrospectively after the date on which a waiver is requested;

(B) provide notice of each such determination to the Secretary of Transportation and the head of the agency referred to in paragraph (1) for which the determination is made; and

(C) publish each such determination on the Internet Web site of the Department of Transportation not later than 48 hours after notice of the determination is provided to the Secretary of Transportation.

(4) NOTICE TO CONGRESS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The head of an agency referred to in paragraph (1) shall notify the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the Committee on Armed Services of the Senate—

(i) of any request for a waiver of the navigation or vessel-inspection laws under this section not later than 48 hours after receiving such a request; and

(ii) of the issuance of any such waiver not later than 48 hours after such issuance.

(B) CONTENTS.—Such head of an agency shall include in each notification under subparagraph (A)(ii) an explanation of—

(i) the reasons the waiver is necessary; and

(ii) the reasons actions referred to in paragraph (3)(A) are not feasible.

(C) NOTIFICATION REQUIRED FOR EXTENSIONS.—For purposes of this paragraph, an extension requested or issued under paragraph (2)(B) shall be treated in the same manner as a waiver requested or issued under this subsection.

(5) PROSPECTIVE APPLICATION.—No waiver shall be issued for a vessel if, at the time of the waiver request under this section, such vessel is laden with merchandise that, pursuant to the requested waiver, could be unladen at points or places to which the coastwise laws apply.

(6) PUBLICATION REQUIREMENTS.—

(A) PUBLICATION OF WAIVER REQUESTS.—Upon receiving a request for a waiver under this subsection, the head of an agency referred to in paragraph (1) shall publish such request on the website of such agency.

(B) PUBLICATION OF WAIVER DENIAL.—Not later than 48 hours after denying a waiver requested under this subsection, the head of an agency referred to in paragraph (1) shall publish on the website of such agency an explanation for denying such waiver, including applicable findings to support the denial.

(c) REPORT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 10 days after the date of the conclusion of the voyage of a

vessel that, during such voyage, operated under a waiver issued under this section, the owner or operator of the vessel and the individual requesting such waiver (if not the owner or operator of the vessel) shall submit to the Maritime Administrator a report that includes—

(A) the name and flag of the vessel;
(B) the name of the owner and operator of the vessel;
(C) the dates of the voyage;
(D) any relevant ports of call;
(E) a description of the cargo carried;
(F) an explanation as to why the waiver was in the interest of national defense; and
(G) any other information the Maritime Administrator determines necessary.

(2) PUBLICATION.—Not later than 48 hours after receiving a report under paragraph (1), the Maritime Administrator shall publish such report on an appropriate website of the Department of Transportation.

(d) TERMINATION OF AUTHORITY.—The authority granted by this section shall terminate at such time as the Congress by concurrent resolution or the President may designate.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1490; Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3510, Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4769; Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §301, Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1562; Pub. L. 112–239, div. C, title XXXV, §3517(a)(2), Jan. 2, 2013, 126 Stat. 2229; Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(a)(1), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4397; Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3541, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3093.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
501	46 App.:3 note prec.	Dec. 27, 1950, ch. 1155, §§1, 2, 64 Stat. 1120.

In subsection (b), the words "When the head of an agency . . . considers it necessary" are substituted for "either upon his own initiative or upon the written recommendation of the head of any other Government agency, when he deems that such action is necessary" to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 117–263, §3541(1)(A), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "When the head of an agency responsible for the administration of the navigation or vessel-inspection laws considers it necessary in the interest of national defense, the individual, following a determination by the Maritime Administrator, acting in the Administrator's capacity as Director, National Shipping Authority, of the non-availability of qualified United States flag capacity to meet national defense requirements, may waive compliance with those laws to the extent, in the manner, and on the terms the individual, in consultation with the Administrator, acting in that capacity, prescribes."

Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 117–263, §3541(1)(B), substituted "determination referred to in paragraph (1)(A)" for "determinations referred to in paragraph (1)".

Subsec. (b)(3)(A). Pub. L. 117–263, §3541(1)(C), added subpar. (A) and struck out former subpar. (A). Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows: "for each determination referred to in paragraph (1), identify any actions that could be taken to enable qualified United States flag capacity to meet national defense requirements;".

Subsec. (b)(5), (6). Pub. L. 117–263, §3541(1)(D), added pars. (5) and (6).

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 117–263, §3541(2), inserted "and the individual requesting such waiver (if not the owner or operator of the vessel)" before "shall submit" in introductory provisions, added subpars. (B), (E), and (F), and redesignated former subpars. (B), (C), and (D) as (C), (D), and (G), respectively.

2021—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–283, §3502(a)(1)(A), added subsec. (a) and struck out former subsec. (a). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "On request of the Secretary of Defense, the head of an agency

responsible for the administration of the navigation or vessel-inspection laws shall waive compliance with those laws to the extent the Secretary considers necessary in the interest of national defense."

Subsec. (b)(2), (3). Pub. L. 116–283, §3502(a)(1)(B)(i), (ii), added par. (2) and redesignated former par. (2) as (3). Former par. (3) redesignated (4).

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 116–283, §3502(a)(1)(B)(i), redesignated par. (3) as (4).

Subsec. (b)(4)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 116–283, §3502(a)(1)(B)(ii)(I), substituted "paragraph (3)(A)" for "paragraph (2)(A)".

Subsec. (b)(4)(C). Pub. L. 116–283, §3502(a)(1)(B)(ii)(II), added subpar. (C).

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 116–283, §3502(a)(1)(C), (D), added subsec. (c) and redesignated former subsec. (c) as (d).

2013—Subsec. (b)(3)(A). Pub. L. 112–239 substituted "the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the Committee on Armed Services of the Senate" for "the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate" in introductory provisions.

2012—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 112–213 designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted par. (1) heading, and added pars. (2) and (3).

2008—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 110–417 reenacted heading without change and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "When the head of an agency responsible for the administration of the navigation or vessel-inspection laws considers it necessary in the interest of national defense, the individual may waive compliance with those laws to the extent, in the manner, and on the terms the individual prescribes."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2021 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(a)(2), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4398, provided that: "The amendments made by paragraph (1) [amending this section] shall apply with respect to waivers issued after the date of the enactment of this Act [Jan. 1, 2021]."

[1] *So in original. The comma probably should not appear.*

§502. Cargo exempt from forfeiture

Cargo on a vessel is exempt from forfeiture under this title if—

(1) the cargo is owned in good faith by a person not the owner, master, or crewmember of the vessel; and

(2) the customs duties on the cargo have been paid or secured for payment as provided by law.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1490.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
502	46 App.:326.	R.S. §4378.

§503. Notice of seizure

When a forfeiture of a vessel or cargo accrues, the official of the United States Government required to give notice of the seizure of the vessel or cargo shall include in the notice, if they are known to that official, the name and the place of residence of the owner or consignee at the time of the seizure.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1490.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
503	46 App.:327.	R.S. §4379.

§504. Remission of fees and penalties

Any part of a fee, tax, or penalty paid or a forfeiture incurred under a law or regulation relating to vessels or seamen may be remitted if—

(1) application for the remission is made within one year after the date of the payment or forfeiture; and

(2) it is found that the fee, tax, penalty, or forfeiture was improperly or excessively imposed.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1491.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
504	46:2108.	

This section replaces 46 U.S.C. 2108, which was enacted as part of the codification of subtitle II of title 46 in 1983. That provision was based on section 26 of the Act of June 26, 1884, ch. 121, 23 Stat. 59, which prior to the subtitle II codification appeared at 46 U.S.C. 8 (1982 ed.). In the enactment of 46 U.S.C. 2108, the scope of the 1884 provision was narrowed, presumably inadvertently. This section restores the remissions authority to its prior scope. Note that 19 C.F.R. §4.24 (2003) still refers to "the authority to make refunds in accordance with section 26 of the Act of June 26, 1884 (46 U.S.C. 8)" as if that provision had not been replaced by 46 U.S.C. 2108 in 1983.

§505. Penalty for violating regulation or order

A person convicted of knowingly and willfully violating a regulation or order of the Federal Maritime Commission or the Secretary of Transportation under subtitle IV or V of this title, for which no penalty is expressly provided, shall be fined not more than $500. Each day of a continuing violation is a separate offense.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1491.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
505	46 App.:1228 (last par.).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VIII, §806(d); as added Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §13, 53 Stat. 1187; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(125), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 164.

Subtitle II—Vessels and Seamen

PART A—GENERAL PROVISIONS

Chapter		Sec.
21.	**General**	**2101**
23.	**Operation of Vessels Generally**	**2301**

PART B—INSPECTION AND REGULATION OF VESSELS

31.	**General**	**3101**
32.	**Management of Vessels**	**3201**
33.	**Inspection Generally**	**3301**
35.	**Carriage of Passengers**	**3501**
37.	**Carriage of Liquid Bulk Dangerous Cargoes**	**3701**
[39.	**Repealed.]**	
41.	**Uninspected Vessels Generally**	**4101**
43.	**Recreational Vessels**	**4301**
45.	**Uninspected Commercial Fishing Industry Vessels**	**4501**
47.	**Abandonment of Vessels**	**4701**
49.	**Oceangoing Non-Passenger Commercial Vessels**	**4901**

PART C—LOAD LINES OF VESSELS

51.	**Load Lines**	**5101**

PART D—MARINE CASUALTIES

61.	**Reporting Marine Casualties**	**6101**
63.	**Investigating Marine Casualties**	**6301**

PART E—MERCHANT SEAMEN LICENSES, CERTIFICATES, AND DOCUMENTS

71.	**Licenses and Certificates of Registry**	**7101**
73.	**Merchant Mariners' Documents**	**7301**
75.	**General Procedures for Licensing, Certification, and Documentation**	**7501**
77.	**Suspension and Revocation**	**7701**

PART F—MANNING OF VESSELS

81.	**General**	**8101**
83.	**Masters and Officers**	**8301**
85.	**Pilots**	**8501**
87.	**Unlicensed Personnel**	**8701**
89.	**Small Vessel Manning**	**8901**
91.	**Tank Vessel Manning Standards**	**9101**
93.	**Great Lakes Pilotage**	**9301**

PART G—MERCHANT SEAMEN PROTECTION AND RELIEF

101.	**General**	**10101**
103.	**Foreign and Intercoastal Voyages**	**10301**
105.	**Coastwise Voyages**	**10501**
106.	**Fishing Voyages**	**10601**
107.	**Effects of Deceased Seamen**	**10701**
109.	**Proceedings on Unseaworthiness**	**10901**
111.	**Protection and Relief**	**11101**
112.	**Merchant Mariner Benefits**	**11201**
113.	**Official Logbooks**	**11301**
115.	**Offenses and Penalties**	**11501**

PART H—IDENTIFICATION OF VESSELS

121.	**Documentation of Vessels**	**12101**
123.	**Numbering Undocumented Vessels**	**12301**
125.	**Vessel Identification System**	**12501**

PART I—STATE BOATING SAFETY PROGRAMS

131.	**Recreational Boating Safety**	**13101**

PART J—MEASUREMENT OF VESSELS

141.	**General**	**14101**
143.	**Convention Measurement**	**14301**

145. Regulatory Measurement 14501
147. Penalties 14701
PART K—NATIONAL MARITIME TRANSPORTATION ADVISORY COMMITTEES
151. National Maritime Transportation Advisory Committees 15101

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7347(a)(1), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1779, substituted "Vessels" for "Barges" in item 47. Amendment was made pursuant to operation of section 301 of this title.

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11607(b), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4151, added item 49.

2018—Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(b), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4289, added item for part K.

2006—Pub. L. 109–304, §15(1), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1702, in each chapter item, capitalized first letter of each word containing 4 or more letters, struck out item for chapter 39 "Carriage of animals", and substituted "Uninspected Commercial Fishing Industry Vessels" for "Fish processing vessels" in item 45.

2000—Pub. L. 106–398, §1 [[div. A], title X, §1087(g)(6)], Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1654, 1654A–294, substituted "mariner benefits" for "Mariner Benefits" in item 112.

1998—Pub. L. 105–368, title IV, §402(b), Nov. 11, 1998, 112 Stat. 3337, added item 112.

1996—Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §602(b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3930, added item 32.

1992—Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5304, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5083, added item 47.

1988—Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §101(b), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4738, added item 125.

Pub. L. 100–424, §6(b), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1592, added item 106.

1986—Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(1), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1913, inserted items for parts C and J.

1985—Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(9)(A), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 67, substituted "Merchant Seamen Licenses, Certifications, and" for "Licenses, Certificates, and Merchant Mariners' " in heading for part E.

1984—Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(7)(A), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 446, inserted "generally" in item 41, reenacted item 43 without change, and added item 45.

PART A—GENERAL PROVISIONS

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Part A contains general provisions that apply throughout the subtitle and provisions that apply generally to the operation of all vessels.

CHAPTER 21—GENERAL

Sec.

2101. General definitions.
2102. Limited definitions.
2103. Superintendence of the merchant marine.
2104. Delegation.
2105. Report.
2106. Liability in rem.
2107. Civil penalty procedures.
[2108. Repealed.]
2109. Public vessels.
2110. Fees.
2111. Pay for overtime services.
2112. Authority to change working hours.
2113. Authority to exempt certain vessels.
2114. Protection of seamen against discrimination.
2115. Civil penalty to enforce alcohol and dangerous drug testing.
2116. Marine safety strategy, goals, and performance assessments.
2117. Termination for unsafe operation.

2118. Establishment of equipment standards.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 21 contains definitions that are general in nature and applicable to all references within Subtitle II—Vessels and Seamen. The chapter provides the basic authority and responsibility for the enforcement and administration of this subtitle with appropriate delegation and reporting requirements.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Pub. L. 111–281, title V, §522(b), title VI, §608(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2957, 2968, added items 2116 to 2118.

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3529(a)(1), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 603, struck out item 2108 "Refund of penalties".

1996—Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §303(b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3917, added item 2115.

1990—Pub. L. 101–508, title X, §10401(b), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–398, substituted "Fees" for "Fees prohibited" in item 2110.

1984—Pub. L. 98–557, §13(b), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2864, added item 2114.

§2101. General definitions

In this subtitle—

(1) "associated equipment"—

(A) means—

(i) a system, accessory, component, or appurtenance of a recreational vessel; or

(ii) a marine safety article intended for use on board a recreational vessel; but

(B) with the exception of emergency locator beacons for recreational vessels operating beyond 3 nautical miles from the baselines from which the territorial sea of the United States is measured or beyond 3 nautical miles from the coastline of the Great Lakes, does not include radio equipment.

(2) "Coast Guard" means the organization established and continued under section 101 of title 14.

(3) "Commandant" means the Commandant of the Coast Guard.

(4) "commercial service" includes any type of trade or business involving the transportation of goods or individuals, except service performed by a combatant vessel.

(5) "consideration" means an economic benefit, inducement, right, or profit including pecuniary payment accruing to an individual, person, or entity, but not including a voluntary sharing of the actual expenses of the voyage, by monetary contribution or donation of fuel, food, beverage, or other supplies.

(6) "crude oil" means a liquid hydrocarbon mixture occurring naturally in the earth, whether or not treated to render it suitable for transportation, and includes crude oil from which certain distillate fractions may have been removed, and crude oil to which certain distillate fractions may have been added.

(7) "crude oil tanker" means a tanker engaged in the trade of carrying crude oil.

(8) "dangerous drug" means a narcotic drug, a controlled substance, or a controlled substance analog (as defined in section 102 of the Comprehensive Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Act of 1970 (21 U.S.C. 802)).

(9) "discharge", when referring to a substance discharged from a vessel, includes spilling, leaking, pumping, pouring, emitting, emptying, or dumping, however caused.

(10) "ferry" means a vessel that is used on a regular schedule—

(A) to provide transportation only between places that are not more than 300 miles apart; and

(B) to transport only—

(i) passengers; or

(ii) vehicles, or railroad cars, that are being used, or have been used, in transporting passengers or goods.

(11) "fish" means finfish, mollusks, crustaceans, and all other forms of marine animal and plant life, except marine mammals and birds.

(12) "fishing vessel" means a vessel that commercially engages in the catching, taking, or harvesting of fish or an activity that can reasonably be expected to result in the catching, taking, or harvesting of fish.

(13) "fish processing vessel" means a vessel that commercially prepares fish or fish products other than by gutting, decapitating, gilling, skinning, shucking, icing, freezing, or brine chilling.

(14) "fish tender vessel" means a vessel that commercially supplies, stores, refrigerates, or transports fish, fish products, or materials directly related to fishing or the preparation of fish to or from a fishing, fish processing, or fish tender vessel or a fish processing facility.

(15) "freight vessel" means a motor vessel of more than 15 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title that carries freight for hire, except an oceanographic research vessel or an offshore supply vessel.

(16) "Great Lakes barge" means a non-self-propelled vessel of at least 3,500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title operating on the Great Lakes.

(17) "hazardous material" means a liquid material or substance that is—

(A) flammable or combustible;

(B) designated a hazardous substance under section 311(b) of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1321); or

(C) designated a hazardous material under section 5103(a) of title 49.

(18) "major conversion" means a conversion of a vessel that—

(A) substantially changes the dimensions or carrying capacity of the vessel;

(B) changes the type of the vessel;

(C) substantially prolongs the life of the vessel; or

(D) otherwise so changes the vessel that it is essentially a new vessel, as decided by the Secretary.

(19) "marine environment" means—

(A) the navigable waters of the United States and the land and resources in and under those waters;

(B) the waters and fishery resources of an area over which the United States asserts exclusive fishery management authority;

(C) the seabed and subsoil of the outer Continental Shelf of the United States, the resources of the Shelf, and the waters superjacent to the Shelf; and

(D) the recreational, economic, and scenic values of the waters and resources referred to in subclauses (A)–(C) of this clause.

(20) "merchant mariner credential" means a merchant mariner license, certificate, or document that the Secretary is authorized to issue pursuant to this title.

(21) "mobile offshore drilling unit" means a vessel capable of engaging in drilling operations for the exploration or exploitation of subsea resources.

(22) "motor vessel" means a vessel propelled by machinery other than steam.

(23) "nautical school program" means a program that—

(A) offers a comprehensive program of training that includes substantial sea service on nautical school vessels or merchant vessels of the United States primarily to train individuals

for service in the merchant marine; and

(B) is approved by the Secretary for purposes of section 7315, in accordance with regulations promulgated by the Secretary.

(24) "nautical school vessel" means a vessel operated by or in connection with a nautical school or an educational institution under section 558 of title 40.

(25) "navigable waters of the United States" includes all waters of the territorial sea of the United States as described in Presidential Proclamation No. 5928 of December 27, 1988.

(26) "oceanographic research vessel" means a vessel that the Secretary finds is being employed only in instruction in oceanography or limnology, or both, or only in oceanographic or limnological research, including studies about the sea such as seismic, gravity meter, and magnetic exploration and other marine geophysical or geological surveys, atmospheric research, and biological research.

(27) "offshore supply vessel" means a motor vessel that regularly carries goods, supplies, individuals in addition to the crew, or equipment in support of exploration, exploitation, or production of offshore mineral or energy resources.

(28) "oil" includes oil of any type or in any form, including petroleum, fuel oil, sludge, oil refuse, and oil mixed with wastes except dredged spoil.

(29) "oil spill response vessel" means a vessel that is designated in its certificate of inspection as such a vessel, or that is adapted to respond to a discharge of oil or a hazardous material.

(30) "overall in length" means—

(A) for a foreign vessel or a vessel engaged on a foreign voyage, the greater of—

(i) 96 percent of the length on a waterline at 85 percent of the least molded depth measured from the top of the keel (or on a vessel designed with a rake of keel, on a waterline parallel to the designed waterline); or

(ii) the length from the fore side of the stem to the axis of the rudder stock on that waterline; and

(B) for any other vessel, the horizontal distance of the hull between the foremost part of the stem and the aftermost part of the stern, excluding fittings and attachments.

(31) "passenger"—

(A) means an individual carried on the vessel except—

(i) the owner or an individual representative of the owner or, in the case of a vessel under charter, an individual charterer or individual representative of the charterer;

(ii) the master; or

(iii) a member of the crew engaged in the business of the vessel who has not contributed consideration for carriage and who is paid for on board services;

(B) on an offshore supply vessel, means an individual carried on the vessel except—

(i) an individual included in clause (i), (ii), or (iii) of subparagraph (A) of this paragraph;

(ii) an employee of the owner, or of a subcontractor to the owner, engaged in the business of the owner;

(iii) an employee of the charterer, or of a subcontractor to the charterer, engaged in the business of the charterer; or

(iv) an individual employed in a phase of exploration, exploitation, or production of offshore mineral or energy resources served by the vessel;

(C) on a fishing vessel, fish processing vessel, or fish tender vessel, means an individual carried on the vessel except—

(i) an individual included in clause (i), (ii), or (iii) of subparagraph (A) of this paragraph;

(ii) a managing operator;

(iii) an employee of the owner, or of a subcontractor to the owner, engaged in the business

of the owner;

(iv) an employee of the charterer, or of a subcontractor to the charterer, engaged in the business of the charterer; or

(v) an observer or sea sampler on board the vessel pursuant to a requirement of State or Federal law; or

(D) on a sailing school vessel, means an individual carried on the vessel except—

(i) an individual included in clause (i), (ii), or (iii) of subparagraph (A) of this paragraph;

(ii) an employee of the owner of the vessel engaged in the business of the owner, except when the vessel is operating under a demise charter;

(iii) an employee of the demise charterer of the vessel engaged in the business of the demise charterer; or

(iv) a sailing school instructor or sailing school student.

(32) "passenger for hire" means a passenger for whom consideration is contributed as a condition of carriage on the vessel, whether directly or indirectly flowing to the owner, charterer, operator, agent, or any other person having an interest in the vessel.

(33) "passenger vessel" means a vessel of at least 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title—

(A) carrying more than 12 passengers, including at least one passenger for hire;

(B) that is chartered and carrying more than 12 passengers;

(C) that is a submersible vessel carrying at least one passenger for hire; or

(D) that is a ferry carrying a passenger.

(34) "product carrier" means a tanker engaged in the trade of carrying oil except crude oil.

(35) "public vessel" means a vessel that—

(A) is owned, or demise chartered, and operated by the United States Government or a government of a foreign country; and

(B) is not engaged in commercial service.

(36) "recreational vessel" means a vessel—

(A) being manufactured or operated primarily for pleasure; or

(B) leased, rented, or chartered to another for the latter's pleasure.

(37) "recreational vessel manufacturer" means a person engaged in the manufacturing, construction, assembly, or importation of recreational vessels, components, or associated equipment.

(38) "riding gang member" means an individual who—

(A) has not been issued a merchant mariner document under chapter 73;

(B) does not perform—

(i) watchstanding, automated engine room duty watch, or personnel safety functions; or

(ii) cargo handling functions, including any activity relating to the loading or unloading of cargo, the operation of cargo-related equipment (whether or not integral to the vessel), and the handling of mooring lines on the dock when the vessel is made fast or let go;

(C) does not serve as part of the crew complement required under section 8101;

(D) is not a member of the steward's department; and

(E) is not a citizen or temporary or permanent resident of a country designated by the United States as a sponsor of terrorism or any other country that the Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of State and the heads of other appropriate United States agencies, determines to be a security threat to the United States.

(39) "sailing instruction" means teaching, research, and practical experience in operating vessels propelled primarily by sail and may include—

(A) any subject related to that operation and to the sea, including seamanship, navigation, oceanography, other nautical and marine sciences, and maritime history and literature; and

(B) only when in conjunction with a subject referred to in subclause (A) of this clause, instruction in mathematics and language arts skills to sailing school students having learning disabilities.

(40) "sailing school instructor" means an individual who is on board a sailing school vessel to provide sailing instruction, but does not include an operator or crewmember who is among those required to be on board the vessel to meet a requirement established under part F of this subtitle.

(41) "sailing school student" means an individual who is on board a sailing school vessel to receive sailing instruction.

(42) "sailing school vessel" means a vessel—

(A) that is less than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title;

(B) carrying more than 6 individuals who are sailing school instructors or sailing school students;

(C) principally equipped for propulsion by sail, even if the vessel has an auxiliary means of propulsion; and

(D) owned or demise chartered, and operated by an organization described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 501(c)(3)) and exempt from tax under section 501(a) of that Code, or by a State or political subdivision of a State, during times that the vessel is operated by the organization, State, or political subdivision only for sailing instruction.

(43)(A) Subject to subparagraph (B), "scientific personnel" means individuals on board an oceanographic research vessel only to engage in scientific research, or to instruct or receive instruction in oceanography or limnology.

(B)(i) Such term includes an individual who is on board an oceanographic research vessel only to—

(I) engage in scientific research;

(II) instruct in oceanography or limnology; or

(III) receive instruction in oceanography or limnology.

(ii) For purposes of clause (i), the age of an individual may not be considered in determining whether the individual is described in such clause.

(44) "seagoing barge" means a non-self-propelled vessel of at least 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title making voyages beyond the Boundary Line.

(45) "seagoing motor vessel" means a motor vessel of at least 300 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title making voyages beyond the Boundary Line.

(46) "Secretary" means the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating.

(47) "sexual assault" means any form of abuse or contact as defined in chapter 109A of title 18, or a substantially similar offense under State, local, or Tribal law.

(48) "sexual harassment" means—

(A) conduct that—

(i) involves unwelcome sexual advances, requests for sexual favors, or deliberate or repeated offensive comments or gestures of a sexual nature if any—

(I) submission to such conduct is made either explicitly or implicitly a term or condition of employment, pay, career, benefits, or entitlements of the individual;

(II) submission to, or rejection, of such conduct by an individual is used as a basis for decisions affecting that individual's job, pay, career, benefits, or entitlements;

(III) such conduct has the purpose or effect of unreasonably interfering with an individual's work performance or creates an intimidating, hostile, or offensive work environment; or

(IV) conduct may have been by an individual's supervisor, a supervisor in another area, a co-worker, or another credentialed mariner; and

(ii) is so severe or pervasive that a reasonable person would perceive, and the victim does perceive, the environment as hostile or offensive;

(B) any use or condonation associated with first-hand or personal knowledge, by any individual in a supervisory or command position, of any form of sexual behavior to control, influence, or affect the career, pay, benefits, entitlements, or employment of a subordinate; or

(C) any intentional or repeated unwelcome verbal comment or gesture of a sexual nature towards or about an individual by the individual's supervisor, a supervisor in another area, a coworker, or another credentialed mariner.

(49) "small passenger vessel" means a wing-in-ground craft, regardless of tonnage, carrying at least one passenger for hire, and a vessel of less than 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title—

(A) carrying more than 6 passengers, including at least one passenger for hire;

(B) that is chartered with the crew provided or specified by the owner or the owner's representative and carrying more than 6 passengers;

(C) that is chartered with no crew provided or specified by the owner or the owner's representative and carrying more than 12 passengers;

(D) that is a submersible vessel carrying at least one passenger for hire; or

(E) that is a ferry carrying more than 6 passengers.

(50) "steam vessel" means a vessel propelled in whole or in part by steam, except a recreational vessel of not more than 40 feet in length.

(51) "submersible vessel" means a vessel that is capable of operating below the surface of the water.

(52) "tanker" means a self-propelled tank vessel constructed or adapted primarily to carry oil or hazardous material in bulk in the cargo spaces.

(53) "tank vessel" means a vessel that is constructed or adapted to carry, or that carries, oil or hazardous material in bulk as cargo or cargo residue, and that—

(A) is a vessel of the United States;

(B) operates on the navigable waters of the United States; or

(C) transfers oil or hazardous material in a port or place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

(54) "towing vessel" means a commercial vessel engaged in or intending to engage in the service of pulling, pushing, or hauling along side, or any combination of pulling, pushing, or hauling along side.

(55) "uninspected passenger vessel" means an uninspected vessel—

(A) of at least 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title—

(i) carrying not more than 12 passengers, including at least one passenger for hire; or

(ii) that is chartered with the crew provided or specified by the owner or the owner's representative and carrying not more than 12 passengers; and

(B) of less than 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title—

(i) carrying not more than 6 passengers, including at least one passenger for hire; or

(ii) that is chartered with the crew provided or specified by the owner or the owner's representative and carrying not more than 6 passengers.

(56) "uninspected vessel" means a vessel not subject to inspection under section 3301 of this title that is not a recreational vessel.

(57) "vessel of war" means a vessel—

(A) belonging to the armed forces of a country;

(B) bearing the external marks distinguishing vessels of war of that country;

(C) under the command of an officer commissioned by the government of that country and whose name appears in the appropriate service list or its equivalent; and

(D) staffed by a crew under regular armed forces discipline.

(58) "wing-in-ground craft" means a vessel that is capable of operating completely above the surface of the water on a dynamic air cushion created by aerodynamic lift due to the ground effect between the vessel and the water's surface.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 501; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(1), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 445; Pub. L. 98–454, title III, §301(a), Oct. 5, 1984, 98 Stat. 1734; Pub. L. 98–557, §34(a), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2876; Pub. L. 99–307, §1(1), (2), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 444; Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5102(b)(1), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1926; Pub. L. 99–514, §2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095; Pub. L. 99–640, §§10(b)(1), 11(a), 13(d), Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3549–3551; Pub. L. 100–239, §6(a)(1), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1781; Pub. L. 100–424, §8(c)(1), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1593; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(a)(1), (2), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4749; Pub. L. 101–225, title II, §209, Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1913; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4103(a)(2)(A), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 511; Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §603(1), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2993; Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5208(a), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5075; Pub. L. 103–206, title V, §§502–510, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2439–2441; Pub. L. 103–272, §5(l), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 1375; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §709, title XI, §1104(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3934, 3966; Pub. L. 105–383, title III, §301(b)(1), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3417; Pub. L. 107–217, §3(m)(1), Aug. 21, 2002, 116 Stat. 1302; Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §419, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2124; Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §§301, 312(b), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 526, 533; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(2), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1702; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §§617(a)(1)(A), 618, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2972, 2975; Pub. L. 111–330, §1(9), Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3570; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3541(a)(1), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2322; Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §515, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4279; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11601(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4145; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(a), (k)(1)(A), title LXXVII, §7701(f)(1), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1751, 1759, 1835.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

A number of definitions are provided because of the need to define jurisdictional and applicability limits of various sections to the many types and classes of vessels.

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2101(1)	46:1452(8)
2101(2)	.....
2101(3)	.....
2101(4)	14:1

2101(5)	46:391a(2)(H)
2101(6)	.....
2101(7)	46:391a(2)(S)
2101(8)	46:391a(2)(N)
2101(9)	46:391a(2)(A)
2101(10)	46:65(1)
2101(11)	46:65(2)
2101(12)	46:391a(2)(B) 46:597 46:599
2101(13)	46:404 46:390(e)
2101(14)	46:391a(2)(C)
2101(15)	46:391a(2)(D)
2101(16)	46:361 46:367 46:404
2101(17)	46:404 46:1295f(c) 46:1295g(e)(1)
2101(18)	46:441(1)
2101(19)	46:404–1(1)
2101(20)	46:391a(2)(E)
2101(21)	46:390(a) 46:404–1(4) 46:1452(5)
2101(22)	46:391(c)
2101(23)	46:391a(2)(O)
2101(24)	46:391a(2)(G)
2101(25)	46:1452(1)(A), (B)
2101(26)	46:1452(7)
2101(27)	46:390(f)
2101(28)	46:390(h)
2101(29)	46:390(i)
2101(30)	46:390(g)
2101(31)	46:441(2)
2101(32)	46:395(e)
2101(33)	46:367
2101(34)	33:151 46:216(b) 46:239a(b) 46:390(d) 46:391a(2)(I) 46:405(b)(1)(A) 46:481(a) 46:672(a) 46:1452(9)
2101(35)	46:390(b)
2101(36)	.....
2101(37)	46:361

2101(38)	46:391a(2)(M)
2101(39)	46:391a(3)
2101(40)	46:405
2101(41)	46:1452(3)
2101(42)	46:1452(1)(C)
2101(43)	46:526
2101(44)	.....
2101(45)	1:3 46:1452(2)
2101(46)	46:391a(2)(L)

Section 2101(1) defines the type of "associated equipment" that is involved in the use of recreational boats that are subject to Federal regulatory authority. This equipment is subject to a number of controls under federally established construction and performance standards. Radio equipment is exempt from these regulatory controls, since this equipment continues to be regulated by the Federal Communications Commission.

Section 2101(2) defines "barge" as a vessel that is non-self-propelled and that is often pushed ahead, towed alongside, or towed astern on a hawser by a towing vessel. It does not include a vessel that is propelled by sail only.

Section 2101(3) defines "boundary line" for the establishment of jurisdictional parameters for various maritime safety laws. Public Law 96–324, codified at 33 U.S.C. 151, permits the Secretary to establish appropriate identifiable lines dividing inland waters of the U.S. from the high seas for the purpose of determining the applicability of these laws. These laws will now be included within subtitle II of title 46—Shipping. These lines may not be located more than twelve nautical miles seaward of the baseline from which the territorial sea is measured and may differ in position for the purposes of different parts or sections of subtitle II.

Section 2101(4) defines "Coast Guard".

Section 2101(5) provides that wherever the term "commercial service" is used it is to include all vessels except those that are primarily used for combatant purposes. This is to make sure that vessels that are engaged in the transportation of goods or individuals are subject to the applicable maritime and environmental safety laws, even if they are sovereign controlled vessels.

Section 2101(6) defines "consular officer" as one who has authority to issue visas. Traditionally this person is knowledgeable and familiar with the maritime safety and seamen's welfare laws.

Section 2101(7) defines "crude oil" because certain equipment requirements like inert gas systems, segregated ballast tanks, crude oil washing systems or special ballast arrangements are applicable only to tank vessels that carry crude oil. Crude oil is still included within the definition of "hazardous material" and "oil".

Section 2101(8) defines a "crude oil tanker" as one engaged in carrying crude oil. The definition does not include a tank barge since a tanker is defined as a self-propelled tank vessel. See also 2101(38).

Section 2101(9) makes it clear that the term "discharge" when referring to a substance that emanates from a vessel and is related to the marine environmental laws concerning pollution by oil or hazardous substances.

Section 2101(10) defines a "documented vessel" as any vessel of the United States that has been issued a certificate of documentation that might include a register, enrollment, license, or enrollment and license for various trades.

Section 2101(11) lists what is included in the term "fisheries" for the purpose of documentation of vessels and is intended to be all-inclusive of the numerous types of fishing activities.

Section 2101(12) defines "foreign vessel" as any foreign flag or foreign operated vessel that is operated under the jurisdiction or authority of a government other than the United States.

Section 2101(13) defines a "freight vessel" as a motor vessel or any vessel propelled by diesel or other internal combustion engines and that carries freight for hire.

Section 2101(14) defines "hazardous materials" as a broad range of materials that are not only flammable or combustible but are also designated under related maritime safety and environmental laws.

Section 2101(15) defines "marine environment" as an all-inclusive term that was developed to cover land and water areas that could be affected by pollution from all vessels and not only tank vessels.

Section 2101(16) defines "motor vessel" as a vessel propelled by machinery other than steam to make it clear that these vessels are not steam vessels.

Section 2101(17) defines "nautical school vessel" as a vessel that can be a privately owned and operated as well as a publicly owned and operated school vessel.

Section 2101(18) defines "oceanographic research vessel" as a vessel employed in oceanography or limnology research or instruction. It is defined because this type of vessel, while not inspected and certified as such, is subject to a number of special statutory and regulatory requirements.

Section 2101(19) defines "offshore supply vessel" as a class of vessel that is limited by tonnage and its employment in the mineral and oil industry and while so employed it is not a small passenger vessel.

Section 2101(20) defines "oil" to include oil of any type, in any form, or in any mixture. This is the definition that originated with marine environment and pollution laws and continues the definition that was adopted by port and tanker safety laws.

Section 2101(21) defines the term "passengers" in relation to various types of vessels. Due to the complexity of existing laws with respect to the definitions of "passenger" on various categories of vessels and the need to not make any changes of a substantive nature that could be construed as controversial, four definitions of "passenger" have been included.

Section 2101(22) defines "passenger vessel" as one that is at least 100 gross tons and carries at least one passenger for hire.

Section 2101(23) defines "product carrier" as a tanker that is engaged in carrying oil. This definition when read with the definition of tanker means that it is a self-propelled vessel. A tank barge carrying oil products is a tank vessel but is not subject to the special standards or requirements for a product carrier.

Section 2101(24) defines a "public vessel" as a governmental vessel that is not in commercial service. It should be noted that a sovereign-controlled foreign-flag vessel that is engaged in commercial service is not a public vessel and is subject to maritime safety and environment laws.

Section 2101(25) defines a "recreational vessel" as a class of vessel whose primary purpose is for pleasure. These vessels while not subject to inspection are subject to certain requirements of law to improve boating safety.

Section 2101(26) defines a "recreational vessel manufacturer" as one that is involved with not only the recreational vessels themselves but also with their components or associated equipment.

Section 2101(27), (28), (29), and (30) provides a number of definitions that define the type of instruction, instructor, student, and vessel that is involved in the teaching of sailing.

Section 2101(31) defines "scientific personnel" as individuals engaged in oceanography or limnology because they are specially treated under various maritime safety requirements.

Section 2101(32) defines a "seagoing barge" as a vessel that is at least 100 gross tons making voyages to sea beyond the boundary line.

Section 2101(33) defines a "seagoing motor vessel" as a vessel that must be a motor vessel, as defined in 2101(15), of at least 300 gross tons making voyages to sea beyond the boundary line.

Section 2101(34) defines "Secretary" so that maritime safety and seamen's welfare jurisdiction remains within the Coast Guard at all times.

Section 2101(35) defines "small passenger vessel" as one that is less than 100 gross tons carrying more than six passengers as defined in section 2101(21).

Section 2101(36) defines "State" as a State, territory or possession of the United States and is used to establish jurisdictional limits for the application of the various maritime safety and environmental safety laws of this subtitle. This definition is further limited by definitions in section 2102 that relate to recreational boating safety and facility improvement programs.

Section 2101(37) defines a "steam vessel" as a vessel propelled by steam. However, steam vessels of not more than 40 feet that are used exclusively for pleasure are not included.

Section 2101(38) defines "tanker" as a self-propelled tank vessel that has been constructed or primarily adapted to carry oil or hazardous material in bulk in the cargo spaces. This vessel is a subclass of tank vessel, which is defined in section 2101(39). This subclass definition is necessary because certain statutory minimum requirements that are consistent with internationally accepted standards are solely applicable to these vessels.

Section 2101(39) defines a "tank vessel" as a vessel carrying oil or hazardous materials in bulk or residue including a tanker as defined in section 2101(38).

Section 2101(40) defines "towing vessel" as a vessel in commercial service that pushes, pulls, or tows alongside and includes what is traditionally known as a tug.

Section 2101(41) defines "undocumented" which, in part, facilitates the classification of vessels that may be numbered by the proper issuing authority in a State.

Section 2101(42) defines an "uninspected passenger vessel" as a vessel carrying six or less passengers.

Section 2101(43) defines an "uninspected vessel" as a vessel not subject to inspection and certification by the Coast Guard under section 3301. Recreational vessels and inland towing vessels are typical uninspected

vessels.

Section 2101(44) defines "United States" to establish geographical boundaries for the applicability of the various maritime safety and environmental safety laws of this subtitle. This definition is further limited by definitions in section 2102 that relate to recreational boating safety and facility improvement programs.

Section 2101(45) makes it clear that "vessel" as used in this subtitle has the same meaning as is provided in section 3 of title 1, of the U.S.C.

Section 2101(46) defines "vessel of the United States" as a vessel that is documented or numbered under the laws of the United States. A documented vessel and those vessels that are numbered by a State or Federal authority are afforded the protection of the laws of the United States.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Presidential Proclamation No. 5928, referred to in par. (25), is set out under section 1331 of Title 43, Public Lands.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Par. (2). Pub. L. 119–60, §7701(f)(1), substituted "section 101" for "section 1".

Pars. (20) to (58). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(a), (k)(1)(A), added pars. (20) and (23), redesignated former pars. (20) to (56) as (21), (22), and (24) to (58), respectively, and substituted "subordinate; or"; for "subordinate; and" in par. (48)(B).

2022—Pars. (45) to (56). Pub. L. 117–263 added pars. (45) and (46) and redesignated former pars. (45) to (54) as (47) to (56), respectively.

2018—Pub. L. 115–232 added undesignated par. defining "Commandant" after par. (4), substituted period for semicolon at end of par. (14), and redesignated pars. (1) to (48) as (1) to (54), respectively.

Par. (41). Pub. L. 115–282 designated existing provisions as subpar. (A), inserted "Subject to subparagraph (B)," before " 'scientific personnel' " and added subpar. (B).

2010—Par. (1)(B). Pub. L. 111–281, §618, as amended by Pub. L. 111–330, inserted "with the exception of emergency locator beacons for recreational vessels operating beyond 3 nautical miles from the baselines from which the territorial sea of the United States is measured or beyond 3 nautical miles from the coastline of the Great Lakes," before "does not include".

Par. (19). Pub. L. 111–281, §617(a)(1)(A), struck out "of more than 15 gross tons but less than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "means a motor vessel".

2006—Pars. (2) to (3a). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(2)(A), struck out pars. (2), (3), and (3a), which defined "barge", "Boundary Line", and "citizen of the United States", respectively. See sections 102, 103, and 104 of this title.

Par. (6). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(2)(A), struck out par. (6) which read as follows: " 'consular officer' means an officer or employee of the United States Government designated under regulations to grant visas." See section 105 of this title.

Par. (8a). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(2)(B), inserted "Prevention" after "Abuse".

Pars. (10), (10a). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(2)(A), struck out pars. (10) and (10a) which defined "documented vessel" and "Exclusive Economic Zone", respectively. See sections 106 and 107 of this title.

Par. (10b). Pub. L. 109–241, §301(a), added par. (10b).

Par. (12). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(2)(A), struck out par. (12) which read as follows: " 'foreign vessel' means a vessel of foreign registry or operated under the authority of a country except the United States." See section 110 of this title.

Par. (17b). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(2)(A), struck out par. (17b) which read as follows: " 'numbered vessel' means a vessel for which a number has been issued under chapter 123 of this title." See section 111 of this title.

Par. (18). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(2)(C), struck out "those" after "including".

Par. (22)(D). Pub. L. 109–241, §301(b), added subpar. (D).

Par. (26a). Pub. L. 109–241, §312(b), added par. (26a).

Par. (34). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(2)(D), struck out ", except in part H," before "means" and substituted "Secretary of" for "head of".

Par. (35)(E). Pub. L. 109–241, §301(c), added subpar. (E).

Par. (36). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(2)(A), struck out par. (36) which read as follows: " 'State' means a State of the United States, Guam, Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, the District of Columbia, the

Northern Mariana Islands, and any other territory or possession of the United States." See section 112 of this title.

Par. (41). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(2)(A), struck out par. (41) which read as follows: " 'undocumented' means not having and not required to have a document issued under chapter 121 of this title." See section 113 of this title.

Pars. (44) to (46). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(2)(A), struck out pars. (44) to (46), which defined "United States", "vessel", and "vessel of the United States", respectively. See sections 114, 115, and 116 of this title.

2002—Par. (17). Pub. L. 107–217 substituted "section 558 of title 40" for "section 13 of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 1986".

Par. (35). Pub. L. 107–295, §419(a), inserted "a wing-in-ground craft, regardless of tonnage, carrying at least one passenger for hire, and" after " 'small passenger vessel' means" in introductory provisions.

Par. (48). Pub. L. 107–295, §419(b), added par. (48).

1998—Pars. (17a), (17b). Pub. L. 105–383 added par. (17a) and redesignated former par. (17a) as (17b).

1996—Par. (13). Pub. L. 104–324, §709(1), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "15 gross tons".

Par. (13a). Pub. L. 104–324, §709(2), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "3,500 gross tons".

Par. (19). Pub. L. 104–324, §709(3), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "500 gross tons".

Par. (20a). Pub. L. 104–324, §1104(a)(2), added par. (20a). Former par. (20a) redesignated (20b).

Par. (20b). Pub. L. 104–324, §1104(a)(1), redesignated par. (20a) as (20b).

Par. (22). Pub. L. 104–324, §709(4), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons".

Par. (30)(A). Pub. L. 104–324, §709(5), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "500 gross tons".

Par. (32). Pub. L. 104–324, §709(6), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons".

Par. (33). Pub. L. 104–324, §709(7), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "300 gross tons".

Par. (35). Pub. L. 104–324, §709(8), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons".

Par. (42). Pub. L. 104–324, §709(9), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons" in subpars. (A) and (B).

1994—Par. (14)(C). Pub. L. 103–272 substituted "section 5103(a) of title 49" for "section 104 of the Hazardous Materials Transportation Act (49 App. U.S.C. 1803)".

1993—Par. (5a). Pub. L. 103–206, §507, added par. (5a).

Par. (19). Pub. L. 103–206, §508, inserted "individuals in addition to the crew," after "supplies," and struck out "and is not a small passenger vessel" after "resources".

Par. (21). Pub. L. 103–206, §502, amended par. (21) generally, substituting subpars. (A) to (D) defining "passenger" for former subpars. (A) to (F) defining "passenger".

Par. (21a). Pub. L. 103–206, §506, added par. (21a).

Par. (22). Pub. L. 103–206, §503, amended par. (22) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (22) read as follows: " 'passenger vessel' means a vessel of at least 100 gross tons carrying at least one passenger for hire."

Par. (30)(B). Pub. L. 103–206, §509, substituted "more than 6" for "at least 6".

Par. (35). Pub. L. 103–206, §504, amended par. (35) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (35) read as follows: " 'small passenger vessel' means a vessel of less than 100 gross tons carrying more than 6 passengers (as defined in clause (21)(B) and (C) of this section)."

Par. (37a). Pub. L. 103–206, §510, added par. (37a).

Par. (42). Pub. L. 103–206, §505, amended par. (42) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (42) read as

follows: " 'uninspected passenger vessel' means an uninspected vessel carrying not more than 6 passengers."

1992—Par. (13a). Pub. L. 102–587 added par. (13a).

1990—Par. (8a). Pub. L. 101–380 added par. (8a).

Par. (14)(C). Pub. L. 101–595 substituted "(49 App. U.S.C. 1803)" for "(49 U.S.C. 1803)".

1989—Par. (17a). Pub. L. 101–225 added par. (17a).

1988—Par. (10a). Pub. L. 100–239 added par. (10a).

Par. (14a). Pub. L. 100–424 added par. (14a).

Par. (34). Pub. L. 100–710, §104(a)(1), inserted ", except in part H," before "means".

Par. (46). Pub. L. 100–710, §104(a)(2), inserted "or titled under the law of a State" before period at end.

1986—Par. (11b). Pub. L. 99–640, §10(b)(1), inserted "freezing,".

Par. (14)(C). Pub. L. 99–307, §1(1), substituted "Materials" for "Material".

Par. (15a). Pub. L. 99–640, §11(a), added par. (15a).

Par. (17). Pub. L. 99–640, §13(d), inserted "or an educational institution under section 13 of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 1986".

Par. (20a). Pub. L. 99–509, §5102(b)(1)(A), added par. (20a).

Par. (21)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 99–307, §1(2)(A), inserted "or other individual engaged in the business of the vessel who has not contributed consideration for carriage on board the vessel" after "crewmember".

Par. (21)(B). Pub. L. 99–307, §1(2)(D), struck out "or a sailing school vessel," after "passenger vessel".

Par. (21)(B)(v) to (vii). Pub. L. 99–307, §1(2)(B), added cls. (v) and (vi) and struck out former cls. (v) to (vii) which read as follows:

"(v) a guest on board a vessel that is being operated only for pleasure, or a guest on board a sailing school vessel, who has not contributed consideration for carriage on board;

"(vi) an individual on board a towing vessel of at least 50 gross tons who has not contributed consideration for carriage on board; or

"(vii) a sailing school instructor or sailing school student."

Par. (21)(F). Pub. L. 99–307, §1(2)(C), added subpar. (F).

Par. (30)(D). Pub. L. 99–514 substituted "Internal Revenue Code of 1986" for "Internal Revenue Code of 1954".

Par. (47). Pub. L. 99–509, §5102(b)(1)(B), added par. (47).

1984—Par. (3a). Pub. L. 98–454 added par. (3a).

Par. (11). Pub. L. 98–364, §402(1)(A), substituted " 'fish' means finfish, mollusks, crustaceans, and all other forms of marine animal and plant lift, except marine mammals and birds" for " 'fisheries' includes planting, cultivating, catching, taking, or harvesting fish, shellfish, marine animals, pearls, shells, or marine vegetation at a place in the fishery conservation zone established by section 101 of the Magnuson Fishery Conservation and Management Act of 1976 (16 U.S.C. 1811)", which is now covered in section 12101 of this title.

Pars. (11a) to (11c). Pub. L. 98–364, §402(1)(B), added pars. (11a) to (11c).

Par. (21)(B). Pub. L. 98–557, §34(a)(1), inserted reference to a sailing school vessel in provisions preceding cl. (i).

Par. (21)(E). Pub. L. 98–364, §402(1)(C), added subpar. (E).

Par. (27). Pub. L. 98–557, §34(a)(2), designated existing provisions as subpar. (A) and added subpar. (B).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111–330, §1, Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3569, provided that the amendment made by section 1(9) is effective with the enactment of Pub. L. 111–281.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5208(c), (d), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5076, provided that:

"(c) For Great Lakes barges placed in operation after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 4, 1992], the amendments made by this section [amending this section and section 3301 of this title] take effect on the date of enactment of this Act.

"(d)(1) For Great Lakes barges in operation on the date of enactment of this Act, the amendments made by this section take effect one year after the date of enactment of this Act.

"(2) The Secretary of Transportation may impose reasonable interim requirements to assure safe operation of the barges affected by paragraph (1)."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100–710 effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as an Effective Date note under section 31301 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

TOWING VESSELS OPERATING OUTSIDE BOUNDARY LINE

Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIV [LXXXIV], §8402, Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4720, provided that:

"(a) DEFINITIONS.—In this section—

"(1) the term 'Boundary Line' has the meaning given the term in section 103 of title 46, United States Code;

"(2) the term 'Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection' has the meaning given the term in section 3305(d)(4) of title 46, United States Code; and

"(3) the term 'Secretary' means the Secretary of the Department in which the Coast Guard is operating.

"(b) INTERIM EXEMPTION.—A towing vessel described in subsection (c) and a response vessel included on a vessel response plan are exempt from any additional requirements of subtitle II of title 46, United States Code, and chapter I of title 33 and chapter I of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations (as in effect on the date of the enactment of this Act [Jan. 1, 2021]), that would result solely from such vessel operating outside the Boundary Line, if—

"(1) the vessel is—

"(A) operating outside the Boundary Line solely to perform regular harbor assist operations; or

"(B) listed as a response vessel on a vessel response plan and is operating outside the Boundary Line solely to perform duties of a response vessel;

"(2) the vessel is approved for operations outside the Boundary Line by the Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection and the Coast Guard Marine Safety Center; and

"(3) the vessel has sufficient manning and lifesaving equipment for all persons on board, in accordance with part 15 and section 141.225 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations (or any successor regulation).

"(c) APPLICABILITY.—This section applies to a towing vessel—

"(1) that is subject to inspection under chapter 33 of title 46, United States Code, and subchapter M of chapter I of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations (or any successor regulation);

"(2) with only 'Lakes, Bays, and Sounds' or 'Rivers' routes recorded on such vessel's certificate of inspection pursuant to section 136.230 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations (or any successor regulation);

"(3) that, with respect to a vessel described in subsection (b)(1)(A), is operating as a harbor assist vessel and regularly engaged in harbor assist operations, including the docking, undocking, mooring, unmooring, and escorting of vessels with limited maneuverability; and

"(4) that, with respect to a vessel that is described in subsection (b)(1)(B), is listed—

"(A) on a vessel response plan under part 155 of title 33, Code of Federal Regulations, on the date of approval of the vessel response plan; or

"(B) by name or reference in the vessel response plan's geographic-specific appendix on the date of approval of the vessel response plan.

"(d) LIMITATIONS.—A vessel exempted under subsection (b) is subject to the following operating limitations:

"(1) The voyage of a vessel described in subsection (b)(1)(A) shall—

"(A) be less than 12 hours in total duration;

"(B) originate and end in the inspection zone of a single Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection; and

"(C) occur no further than 10 nautical miles from the Boundary Line.

"(2) The voyage of a vessel described in subsection (b)(1)(B) shall—

"(A) originate and end in the inspection zone of a single Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection;

and

"(B) either—

"(i) in the case of a voyage in the territorial waters of Alaska, Guam, Hawaii, American Samoa, and the Northern Mariana Islands, have sufficient manning as determined by the Secretary; or

"(ii) be less than 12 hours.

"(e) SAFETY.—

"(1) SAFETY RESTRICTIONS.—The Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection for an inspection zone may restrict operations under the interim exemption provided under subsection (b) for safety purposes.

"(2) COMPREHENSIVE LISTS.—The Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection for an inspection zone shall maintain and periodically update a comprehensive list of all towing vessels described in subsection (c) that operate in the inspection zone.

"(3) NOTIFICATION.—Not later than 24 hours prior to intended operations outside of the Boundary Line, a towing vessel exempted under subsection (b) shall notify the Office in Charge, Marine Inspection for the inspection zone of such operations. Such notification shall include—

"(A) the date, time, and length of voyage;

"(B) a crew list, with each crew member's credentials and work hours; and

"(C) an attestation from the master of the towing vessel that the vessel has sufficient manning and lifesaving equipment for all persons on board.

"(f) BRIEFING.—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this Act, the Commandant of the Coast Guard shall brief the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives regarding the following:

"(1) The impacts of the interim exemption provided under this section.

"(2) Any safety concerns regarding the expiration of such interim exemption.

"(3) Whether such interim exemption should be extended.

"(g) TERMINATION.—The interim exemption provided under subsection (b) shall terminate on the date that is 2 years after the date of the enactment of this Act."

FISHING AND FISH TENDER VESSELS

Pub. L. 103–206, title III, §321, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2427, provided that:

"(a) In this section, 'fish tender vessel', 'fishing vessel', and 'tank vessel' have the meanings given those terms under section 2101 of title 46, United States Code.

"(b) A fishing vessel or fish tender vessel of not more than 750 gross tons, when engaged only in the fishing industry, shall not be deemed to be a tank vessel for the purposes of any law.

"(c)(1) This section does not affect the authority of the Secretary of Transportation under chapter 33 of title 46, United States Code, to regulate the operation of the vessels listed in subsection (b) to ensure the safe carriage of oil and hazardous substances.

"(2) This section does not affect the requirement for fish tender vessels engaged in the Aleutian trade to comply with chapters 33, 45, 51, 81, and 87 of title 46, United States Code, as provided in the Aleutian Trade Act of 1990 (Public Law 101–595) [see Short Title of 1990 Amendment note set out under section 101 of this title]."

APPLICABILITY DATE FOR REVISED REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 103–206, title V, §513, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2443, provided that:

"(a) APPLICABILITY DATE FOR CERTAIN CHARTERED VESSELS.—Revised regulations governing small passenger vessels and passenger vessels (as the definitions of those terms in section 2101 of title 46, United States Code, are amended by this Act) shall not, before the date that is 6 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 20, 1993], apply to such vessels when chartered with no crew provided.

"(b) EXTENSION OF PERIOD.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall extend for up to 30 additional months or until issuance of a certificate of inspection, whichever occurs first, the period of inapplicability specified in subsection (a) if the owner of the vessel concerned carries out the provisions of subsection (c) to the satisfaction of the Secretary.

"(c) CONDITIONS FOR EXTENSION.—To receive an extension authorized by subsection (b), the owner of the vessel shall—

"(1) make application for inspection with the Coast Guard within 6 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 20, 1993];

"(2) make the vessel available for examination by the Coast Guard prior to the carriage of passengers;

"(3)(A) correct especially any hazardous conditions involving the vessel's structure, electrical system, and machinery installation, such as (i) grossly inadequate, missing, unsound, or severely deteriorated frames or major structural members; (ii) wiring systems or electrical appliances without proper grounding

or overcurrent protection; and (iii) significant fuel or exhaust system leaks;

"(B) equip the vessel with lifesaving and fire fighting equipment, or the portable equivalent, required for the route and number of persons carried; and

"(C) verify through stability tests, calculations, or other practical means (which may include a history of safe operations) that the vessel's stability is satisfactory for the size, route, and number of passengers; and

"(4) develop a work plan approved by the Coast Guard to complete in a good faith effort all requirements necessary for issuance of a certificate of inspection as soon as practicable.

"(d) OPERATION OF VESSEL DURING EXTENSION PERIOD.—The owner of a vessel receiving an extension under this section shall operate the vessel under the conditions of route, service, number of passengers, manning, and equipment as may be prescribed by the Coast Guard for the extension period."

TANK VESSEL DEFINITION CLARIFICATION

Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5209, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5076, as amended by Pub. L. 105–383, title IV, §422, Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3439; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §617(a)(1)(B), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2972, provided that:

"(a) In this section, 'offshore supply vessel', 'fish tender vessel', 'fishing vessel', and 'tank vessel' have the meanings given those terms under section 2101 of title 46, United States Code.

"(b) The following vessels are deemed not to be a tank vessel for the purposes of any law:

"(1) An offshore supply vessel of less than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of such title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of such title.

"(2) A fishing or fish tender vessel of not more than 750 gross tons that transfers without charge to a fishing vessel owned by the same person.

"(3) A vessel—

"(A) configured, outfitted, and operated primarily for dredging operations; and

"(B) engaged in dredging operations which transfers fuel to other vessels engaged in the same dredging operations without charge.

"(c)(1) This section does not affect the authority of the Secretary of Transportation under chapter 33 of title 46, United States Code, to regulate the operation of the vessels listed in subsection (b) to ensure the safe carriage of oil and hazardous substances.

"(2) This section does not affect the requirement for fish tender vessels engaged in the Aleutian trade to comply with chapters 33, 45, 51, 81, and 87 of title 46, United States Code, as provided in the Aleutian Trade Act of 1990 ([title VI of] Public Law 101–595) [see Short Title of 1990 Amendment note set out under section 101 of this title].

"(d) Current regulations governing the vessels in subsection (b) remain in effect."

DEFINITIONS OF TERMS USED IN TITLE II OF PUB. L. 115–265

Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §203, Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3745, provided that: "In this title [see section 201 of Pub. L. 115–265, set out as a Short Title of 2018 Amendment note under section 101 of this title]:

"(1) COMMANDANT.—The term 'Commandant' means the Commandant of the Coast Guard.

"(2) RECOGNIZED ORGANIZATION.—The term 'recognized organization' has the meaning given that term in section 2.45–1 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 2018].

"(3) SECRETARY.—The term 'Secretary' means the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating."

§2102. Limited definitions

In chapters 33, 45, 51, 81, and 87 of this title, "Aleutian trade" means the transportation of cargo (including fishery related products) for hire on board a fish tender vessel to or from a place in Alaska west of 153 degrees west longitude and east of 172 degrees east longitude, if that place receives weekly common carrier service by water, to or from a place in the United States (except a place in Alaska).

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 505; Pub. L. 98–369, div. A, title X, §1011(a), July 18, 1984, 98 Stat. 1013; Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5102(b)(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1926; Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §602(a), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2990; Pub. L. 109–304, §§15(3), 16(a), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1702, 1705.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2102	46:1452(10)–(14)

Section 2102 contains a number of definitions that are limited to recreational vessels in Chapter 43 of Part B and the numbering of these vessels in Chapter 123 of Part H.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–304 redesignated subsec. (b) as entire section, substituted "west" for "West" and "east" for "East", and struck out subsec. (a) which defined "eligible State", "State", "United States", and "State recreational boating safety program" in chapters 37, 43, 51, and 123 of this title and part I of this subtitle.

1990—Pub. L. 101–595 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

1986—Pub. L. 99–509 inserted reference to chapters 37 and 51.

1984—Par. (1). Pub. L. 98–369, §1011(a)(1), struck out "and facilities improvement" after "recreational boating safety".

Par. (3). Pub. L. 98–369, §1011(a)(2), (3), redesignated par. (5) as (3) and struck out former par. (3) which defined a State recreational boating facilities improvement program.

Par. (4). Pub. L. 98–369, §1011(a)(2), struck out par. (4) which defined State recreational boating safety and facilities improvement program.

Par. (5). Pub. L. 98–369, §1011(a)(3), redesignated par. (5) as (3).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–369 effective Oct. 1, 1984, to apply with respect to fiscal years beginning after Sept. 30, 1984, see section 1013 of Pub. L. 98–369, set out as a note under section 13101 of this title.

§2103. Superintendence of the merchant marine

The Secretary has general superintendence over the merchant marine of the United States and of merchant marine personnel insofar as the enforcement of this subtitle is concerned and insofar as those vessels and personnel are not subject, under other law, to the supervision of another official of the United States Government. In the interests of marine safety and seamen's welfare, the Secretary shall enforce this subtitle and shall carry out correctly and uniformly administer this subtitle. The Secretary may prescribe regulations to carry out the provisions of this subtitle.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 506; Pub. L. 99–307, §9, May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 447.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2103	46:2 46:372 46:689

Section 2103 provides the Secretary with the authority to superintend the merchant marine and those involved personnel insofar as the vessels and personnel are not subject, under other laws, to the supervision of another official. The Secretary has the duty to enforce the laws with respect to vessels and seamen and to carry

out correctly and uniformly these laws and regulations. The term "superintendence" is used to indicate the Secretary's broad responsibility for overseeing maritime safety and seamen's welfare, including employment, shipping, navigation, and protection of the marine environment.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1986—Pub. L. 99–307 substituted "subtitle. The Secretary may prescribe regulations to carry out the provisions of this subtitle" for "subtitle and regulations prescribed under this subtitle".

§2104. Delegation

(a) The Secretary may delegate the duties and powers conferred by this subtitle to any officer, employee, or member of the Coast Guard, and may provide for the subdelegation of those duties and powers.

(b) When this subtitle authorizes an officer or employee of the Customs Service to act in place of a Coast Guard official, the Secretary may designate that officer or employee subject to the approval of the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 506.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2104	46:65v(1) 46:382b 46:416 46:543 46:689

Section 2104 provides the Secretary with authority to delegate duties and powers to others. It also contains the authority to designate an officer or employee of the United States Customs Service to act in the place of a Coast Guard official.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

For transfer of functions, personnel, assets, and liabilities of the United States Customs Service of the Department of the Treasury, including functions of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto, to the Secretary of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 203(1), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6. For establishment of U.S. Customs and Border Protection in the Department of Homeland Security, treated as if included in Pub. L. 107–296 as of Nov. 25, 2002, see section 211 of Title 6, as amended generally by Pub. L. 114–125, and section 802(b) of Pub. L. 114–125, set out as a note under section 211 of Title 6.

§2105. Report

The Secretary shall provide for the investigation of the operation of this subtitle and of all laws

related to marine safety, and shall require that a report be made to the Secretary annually about those matters that may require improvement or amendment.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 506.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2105	46:4

Section 2105 requires the Secretary to investigate the operation of this subtitle and all laws related to maritime safety and requires appropriate reports to ensure that the Secretary is attentive to all the shipping laws under the Secretary's superintendence.

§2106. Liability in rem

When a vessel is made liable in rem under this subtitle, the vessel may be libeled and proceeded against in the district court of the United States for any district in which the vessel is found.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 506; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(4), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1702.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2106	46:170(14) 46:216e(e) 46:390d 46:391a(14)(C) 46:436 46:462 46:481(c) 46:497 46:526*o* 46:672(j) 46:1484(b)

Section 2106 provides that when a vessel is made liable in rem the vessel may be libeled and proceeded against in a United States district court.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–304 substituted "the district court of the United States for any district" for "a district court of the United States".

§2107. Civil penalty procedures

(a) After notice and an opportunity for a hearing, a person found by the Secretary to have violated this subtitle or subtitle VII or a regulation prescribed under this subtitle or subtitle VII for which a civil penalty is provided, is liable to the United States Government for the civil penalty provided. The amount of the civil penalty shall be assessed by the Secretary by written notice. In determining the amount of the penalty, the Secretary shall consider the nature, circumstances, extent, and gravity

of the prohibited acts committed and, with respect to the violator, the degree of culpability, any history of prior offenses, ability to pay, and other matters that justice requires.

(b) The Secretary may compromise, modify, or remit, with or without consideration, a civil penalty under this subtitle or subtitle VII until the assessment is referred to the Attorney General.

(c) If a person fails to pay an assessment of a civil penalty after it has become final, the Secretary may refer the matter to the Attorney General for collection in an appropriate district court of the United States.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 506; Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §306(b), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 528.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2107	33:364 46:7 46:65u 46:216e(d) 46:391a(14) 46:526 *o* 46:526p 46:1484(c)

Section 2107 provides for standard procedures for the handling of civil penalties for infractions of law or regulation. Some changes were made to increase some antiquated and inadequate penalties.

The assessment of civil penalties under this section should not require an "on the record" hearing within the meaning of the Administrative Procedures Act (APA). It is intended that these civil penalties be assessed in a fair manner. However, the Committee recognizes that statutes passed in the last decade have involved the Coast Guard in tens of thousands of civil penalty enforcement cases and that it is necessary that the penalties be assessed efficiently. The Coast Guard's procedural regulations for assessing civil penalties ensure that the essential elements of due process, notice, and opportunity to be heard, are provided to alleged violators (see 33 CFR Subpart 1.07). The more rigid and time-consuming procedures applicable to APA adjudications are unwarranted in the case of Coast Guard civil penalty assessment procedures and would seriously hamper the orderly enforcement of these administrative penalties.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–241 substituted "this subtitle or subtitle VII" for "this subtitle" in two places in subsec. (a) and in one place in subsec. (b).

[§2108. Repealed. Pub. L. 109–304, §15(5), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1702]

Section, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 507, related to refund of penalties unlawfully, improperly, or excessively imposed. See section 504 of this title.

§2109. Public vessels

Except as otherwise provided, this subtitle does not apply to a public vessel of the United States. However, this subtitle does apply to a vessel (except a Great Lakes St. Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation vessel) owned or operated by the Department of Transportation or by any corporation organized or controlled by the Department.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 507; Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5102(b)(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1927; Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §902(e)(1), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 567; Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §903(a)(5)(A), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3010; Pub. L. 116–260, div. AA, title V, §512(c)(6)(A), Dec. 27, 2020, 134 Stat. 2756.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2109	46:362 46:363 46:391a(4)

Section 2109 exempts public vessels from the applicability of the maritime safety and seamen's welfare laws of this subtitle although some public vessels are inspected under interagency voluntary agreements.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2020—Pub. L. 116–260 substituted "Great Lakes St. Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation" for "Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation".

2010—Pub. L. 111–281 amended directory language of Pub. L. 109–241, §902(e)(1). See 2006 Amendment note below.

2006—Pub. L. 109–241, §902(e)(1), as amended by Pub. L. 111–281, struck out "a Coast Guard or" after "(except".

1986—Pub. L. 99–509 substituted "Except as otherwise provided, this" for "This".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §903(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3010, provided that the amendment by section 903(a)(5)(A) is effective with enactment of Pub. L. 109–241.

§2110. Fees

(a)(1) Except as otherwise provided in this title, the Secretary shall establish a fee or charge for a service or thing of value provided by the Secretary under this subtitle, in accordance with section 9701 of title 31.

(2) The Secretary may not establish a fee or charge under paragraph (1) for inspection or examination of a non-self-propelled tank vessel under part B of this subtitle that is more than $500 annually. The Secretary may not establish a fee or charge under paragraph (1) for inspection or examination of a small passenger vessel under this title that is more than $300 annually for such vessels under 65 feet in length, or more than $600 annually for such vessels 65 feet in length and greater. The Secretary may not establish a fee or charge under paragraph (1) for inspection or examination under this title for any publicly-owned ferry.

(3) The Secretary may, by regulation, adjust a fee or charge collected under this subsection to accommodate changes in the cost of providing a specific service or thing of value, but the adjusted fee or charge may not exceed the total cost of providing the service or thing of value for which the fee or charge is collected, including the cost of collecting the fee or charge.

(4) The Secretary may not collect a fee or charge under this subsection that is in conflict with the international obligations of the United States.

(5) The Secretary may not collect a fee or charge under this subsection for any search or rescue service.

(b)(1) In addition to the collection of fees and charges established under subsection (a), in

providing a service or thing of value under this subtitle the Secretary may accept in-kind transportation, travel, and subsistence.

(2) The value of in-kind transportation, travel, and subsistence accepted under this paragraph may not exceed applicable per diem rates set forth in regulations prescribed under section 464 of title 37.

(c) In addition to the collection of fees and charges established under subsection (a), the Secretary may recover appropriate collection and enforcement costs associated with delinquent payments of the fees and charges.

(d)(1) The Secretary may employ any Federal, State, or local agency or instrumentality, or any private enterprise or business, to collect a fee or charge established under this section. A private enterprise or business selected by the Secretary to collect fees or charges—

(A) shall be subject to reasonable terms and conditions agreed to by the Secretary and the enterprise or business;

(B) shall provide appropriate accounting to the Secretary; and

(C) may not institute litigation as part of that collection.

(2) A Federal agency shall account for the agency's costs of collecting the fee or charge under this subsection as a reimbursable expense, and the costs shall be credited to the account from which expended.

(e) A person that violates this section by failing to pay a fee or charge established under this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000 for each violation.

(f) When requested by the Secretary, the Secretary of Homeland Security shall deny the clearance required by section 60105 of this title to a vessel for which a fee or charge established under this section has not been paid until the fee or charge is paid or until a bond is posted for the payment.

(g) The Secretary may exempt a person from paying a fee or charge established under this section if the Secretary determines that it is in the public interest to do so.

(h) Fees and charges collected by the Secretary under this section shall be deposited in the general fund of the Treasury as offsetting receipts of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating and ascribed to Coast Guard activities.

(i) The collection of a fee or charge under this section does not alter or expand the functions, powers, responsibilities, or liability of the United States under any law for the performance of services or the provision of a thing of value for which a fee or charge is collected under this section.

(j) The Secretary may not establish or collect a fee or charge for the inspection under part B of this subtitle of training vessels operated by State maritime academies.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 507; Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5102(b)(4), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1927; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(a)(3), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4749; Pub. L. 101–508, title X, §10401(a), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–397; Pub. L. 102–241, §53, Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2232; Pub. L. 102–582, title V, §501(a), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4909; Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5207, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5075; Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1112, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3970; Pub. L. 105–383, title II, §207, Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3416; Pub. L. 107–295, title III, §344, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2106; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(6), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1702; Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §311(a), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3047; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(a), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2326.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2110	46:331

Section 2110 prevents the assessment of user fees for certain maritime safety and seamen's welfare services unless otherwise provided for by law. These include:

Measurement of tonnage and certifying the same, except that the compensation and necessary travel and subsistence expenses of the officers so measuring or certifying such vessels at the request of the owners

thereof at a place other than a port of entry or a customs station shall be paid by such owners; issuing of license or granting of certificate of registry, record, or enrollment, including all indorsements on the same and oath; indorsement of change of master; certifying and receiving manifest, including master's oath and permit; granting permit to vessels licensed for the fisheries to touch and trade; granting certificate of payment of tonnage dues; recording bill of sale, mortgage, hypothecation or conveyance, or the discharge of such mortgage or hypothecation; furnishing certificate of title; furnishing the crew list; certificate of protection to seamen; bill of health; shipping or discharging of seamen; apprenticing boys to the merchant service; inspecting, examining, and licensing steam vessels, including inspection certificate and copies thereof; and licensing of master, engineer, pilot, or mate of a vessel.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1990, referred to in subsec. (b)(5), is Pub. L. 101–508, Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 115–232 struck out subsec. (k) which read as follows: "The Secretary may not plan, implement or finalize any regulation that would promulgate any new maritime user fee which was not implemented and collected prior to January 1, 1998, including a fee or charge for any domestic icebreaking service or any other navigational assistance service. This subsection expires on September 30, 2006."

2014—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 113–281, §311(a)(1), amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) related to fees and charges in fiscal years 1993 and 1994.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 113–281, §311(a)(2), substituted "subsection (a)," for "subsections (a) and (b),".

2006—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(6)(A), substituted "part B of this subtitle" for "part B of this title".

Subsec. (b)(2)(A)(iii). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(6)(B), substituted "; and" for period at end.

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(6)(C), substituted "The fee" for "The fees".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(6)(D), substituted "Secretary of Homeland Security shall deny the clearance required by section 60105 of this title" for "Secretary of the Treasury shall deny the clearance required by section 4197 of the Revised Statutes of the United States (46 App. U.S.C. 91)".

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(6)(E), substituted "State" for "state".

2002—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 107–295 substituted "2006" for "2001".

1998—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 105–383 added subsec. (k).

1996—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 104–324, §1112, which directed amendment of section 10401(g) of Pub. L. 101–508 by inserting "The Secretary may not establish a fee or charge under paragraph (1) for inspection or examination of a small passenger vessel under this title that is more than $300 annually for such vessels under 65 feet in length, or more than $600 annually for such vessels 65 feet in length and greater. The Secretary may not establish a fee or charge under paragraph (1) for inspection or examination under this title for any publicly-owned ferry." after "annually.", was executed by making insertion in subsec. (a)(2) of this section to reflect the probable intent of Congress, because section 10401(a) of Pub. L. 101–508 amended this section generally, and section 10401 of Pub. L. 101–508 did not contain a subsec. (g).

1992—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 102–582, §501(a)(1), substituted "1993 and 1994" for "1991, 1992, 1993, 1994, and 1995" and "to which paragraph (2) of this subsection applies" for "that is greater than 16 feet in length".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 102–582, §501(a)(2), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "The fee or charge established under paragraph (1) of this subsection is as follows:

"(A) for vessels greater than 16 feet in length but less than 20 feet, not more than $25;

"(B) for vessels of at least 20 feet in length but less than 27 feet, not more than $35;

"(C) for vessels of at least 27 feet in length but less than 40 feet, not more than $50; and

"(D) for vessels of at least 40 feet in length, not more than $100."

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 102–587 added subsec. (j).

1991—Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 102–241 added par. (5).

1990—Pub. L. 101–508, as amended by Pub. L. 104–324, substituted "Fees" for "Fees prohibited" as section catchline and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Fees may not be charged or collected by the Secretary for services provided for in this subtitle related to the engagement and

discharge of seamen, the inspection and examination of vessels under part B of this subtitle, and the licensing of masters, mates, pilots, and engineers, except when specifically provided for in this subtitle." See 1996 Amendment note above.

1988—Pub. L. 100–710 substituted "and the licensing of masters, mates, pilots, and engineers" for "the licensing of masters, mates, pilots, and engineers, and the documentation of vessels".

1986—Pub. L. 99–509 substituted "examination of vessels under part B of this subtitle" for "examination of vessels" and struck out "measurement or" before "documentation".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 102–582, title V, §501(b), Nov. 2, 1992, 106 Stat. 4910, provided that: "The amendments made by this section [amending this section] are effective October 1, 1992."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100–710 effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as an Effective Date note under section 31301 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

ACCEPTANCE OF EVIDENCE OF PAYMENT OF COAST GUARD FEES

Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5214, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5077, provided that: "The Secretary of Transportation may not issue a citation for failure to pay a fee or charge established under section 2110 of title 46, United States Code, to an owner or operator of a recreational vessel who provides reasonable evidence of prior payment of the fee or charge to a Coast Guard boarding officer."

§2111. Pay for overtime services

(a) The Secretary may prescribe a reasonable rate of extra pay for overtime services of civilian officers and employees of the Coast Guard required to remain on duty between 5 p.m. and 8 a.m., or on Sundays or holidays, to perform services related to—

(1) the inspection of vessels or their equipment;
(2) the engagement and discharge of crews of vessels;
(3) the measurement of vessels; and
(4) the documentation of vessels.

(b) Except for Sundays and holidays, the overtime rate provided under subsection (a) of this section is one-half day's additional pay for each 2 hours of overtime (or part of 2 hours of at least one hour). The total extra pay may be not more than 2 and one-half days' pay for any one period from 5 p.m. to 8 a.m.

(c) The overtime rate provided under subsection (a) of this section for Sundays and holidays is 2 additional days' pay.

(d) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of the vessel shall pay the amount of the overtime pay provided under this section to the official designated by regulation. The official shall deposit the amount paid to the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts. Payment to the officer or employee entitled to the pay shall be made from the annual appropriations for salaries and expenses of the Coast Guard.

(e) The overtime pay provided under this section shall be paid if the authorized officers and employees have been ordered to report for duty and have reported, even if services requested were not performed.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 507.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2111	46:382b

Section 2111 provides for the payment of overtime rates for work performed by civilian officers and employees of the Coast Guard for certain specified activities.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

§2112. Authority to change working hours

In a port at which the customary working hours begin before 8 a.m. or end after 5 p.m., the Secretary may regulate the working hours of the officers and employees referred to in section 2111 of this title so that those hours conform to the prevailing working hours of the port. However—

(1) the total period for which overtime pay may be required under section 2111 of this title may not be more than 15 hours between any 2 periods of ordinary working hours on other than Sundays and holidays;

(2) the length of the working day for the officers and employees involved may not be changed; and

(3) the rate of overtime pay may not be changed.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 508.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2112	46:382b

Section 2112 provides the Secretary with the authority to regulate the working hours of civilian officers and employees of the Coast Guard to conform with the prevailing working hours of a port.

§2113. Authority to exempt certain vessels

If the Secretary decides that the application of a provision of part B, C, F, or G of this subtitle is not necessary in performing the mission of the vessel engaged in excursions or an oceanographic research vessel, or not necessary for the safe operation of certain vessels carrying passengers, the Secretary by regulation may—

(1) for a vessel, issue a special permit specifying the conditions of operation and equipment;

(2) exempt an oceanographic research vessel from that provision under conditions the Secretary may specify;

(3) establish different operating and equipment requirements for vessels defined in section 2101(55)(A) of this title; and

(4) maintain different structural fire protection, manning, operating, and equipment

requirements for vessels that satisfied requirements set forth in the Passenger Vessel Safety Act of 1993 (Public Law 103–206) before June 21, 1994.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 508; Pub. L. 103–206, title V, §511(a), Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2441; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §710, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3935; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §§3541(b)(6), 3542(a), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2323, 2324; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11601(c)(1), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4146; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(k)(1)(B), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1759.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2113	46:445 46:453

Section 2113 provides the Secretary with the authority to exempt certain vessels from the inspection and manning requirements of law when vessels are engaged in excursions or oceanographic research. This is the authority of the issuance of excursion permits when special circumstances justify the waiver of certain maritime safety and seamen's welfare laws for a short period of time. It also contains flexible exemption authority for regulation of oceanographic research vessels.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Passenger Vessel Safety Act of 1993, referred to in par. (4), is Pub. L. 103–206, title V, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2439. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1993 Amendment note set out under section 101 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Par. (3). Pub. L. 119–60 substituted "section 2101(55)(A)" for "section 2101(53)(A)".

2022—Par. (3). Pub. L. 117–263 substituted "section 2101(53)(A)" for "section 2101(51)(A)".

2018—Par. (3). Pub. L. 115–232, §3541(b)(6), substituted "section 2101(51)(A)" for "section 2101(42)(A)".

Par. (4). Pub. L. 115–232, §3542(a), added par. (4) and struck out former par. (4) which related to establishing different structural fire protection, manning, operating, and equipment requirements for vessels between 100 gross tons and 300 gross tons.

Par. (5). Pub. L. 115–232, §3542(a)(2), struck out par. (5) which related to establishing different structural fire protection, manning, operating, and equipment requirements for former public vessels of the United States between 100 gross tons and 500 gross tons.

1996—Par. (4). Pub. L. 104–324, §710(1), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "less than 300 gross tons".

Par. (5). Pub. L. 104–324, §710(2), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "less than 500 gross tons".

1993—Pub. L. 103–206 amended section catchline and text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "If the Secretary decides that the application of a provision of part B or F of this subtitle is not necessary in performing the mission of a vessel engaged in excursions or an oceanographic research vessel, the Secretary by regulation may—

"(1) for an excursion vessel, issue a special permit specifying the conditions of operation and equipment; and

"(2) exempt the oceanographic research vessel from that provision under conditions the Secretary may specify."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

§2114. Protection of seamen against discrimination

(a)(1) A person may not discharge or in any manner discriminate against a seaman because—

(A) the seaman in good faith has reported or is about to report to the Coast Guard or other appropriate Federal agency or department that the seaman believes that a violation of a maritime safety law or regulation prescribed under that law or regulation has occurred;

(B) the seaman in good faith has reported or is about to report to the vessel owner, Coast Guard or other appropriate Federal agency or department sexual harassment or sexual assault against the seaman or knowledge of sexual harassment or sexual assault against another seaman;

(C) the seaman has refused to perform duties ordered by the seaman's employer because the seaman has a reasonable apprehension or expectation that performing such duties would result in serious injury to the seaman, other seamen, or the public;

(D) the seaman testified in a proceeding brought to enforce a maritime safety law or regulation prescribed under that law;

(E) the seaman notified, or attempted to notify, the vessel owner or the Secretary of a work-related personal injury or work-related illness of a seaman;

(F) the seaman cooperated with a safety investigation by the Secretary or the National Transportation Safety Board;

(G) the seaman furnished information to the Secretary, the National Transportation Safety Board, or any other public official as to the facts relating to any marine casualty resulting in injury or death to an individual or damage to property occurring in connection with vessel transportation; or

(H) the seaman accurately reported hours of duty under this part.

(2) The circumstances causing a seaman's apprehension of serious injury under paragraph (1)(C) must be of such a nature that a reasonable person, under similar circumstances, would conclude that there is a real danger of an injury or serious impairment of health resulting from the performance of duties as ordered by the seaman's employer.

(3) To qualify for protection against the seaman's employer under paragraph (1)(C), the employee must have sought from the employer, and been unable to obtain, correction of the unsafe condition.

(b) A seaman alleging discharge or discrimination in violation of subsection (a) of this section, or another person at the seaman's request, may file a complaint with respect to such allegation in the same manner as a complaint may be filed under subsection (b) of section 31105 of title 49. Such complaint shall be subject to the procedures, requirements, and rights described in that section, including with respect to the right to file an objection, the right of a person to file for a petition for review under subsection (c) of that section, and the requirement to bring a civil action under subsection (d) of that section.

(Added Pub. L. 98–557, §13(a), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2863; amended Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §428, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2127; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §611(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2969; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11605, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4148.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (a)(1)(B) to (H). Pub. L. 117–263, §11605(1), added subpar. (B) and redesignated former subpars. (B) to (G) as (C) to (H), respectively.

Subsec. (a)(2), (3). Pub. L. 117–263, §11605(2), substituted "paragraph (1)(C)" for "paragraph (1)(B)".

2010—Subsec. (a)(1)(C) to (G). Pub. L. 111–281, §611(a)(1)–(3), added subpars. (C) to (G).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–281, §611(a)(4), amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: "A seaman discharged or otherwise discriminated against in violation of this section may bring an action in an appropriate district court of the United States. In that action, the court may order any appropriate relief, including—

"(1) restraining violations of this section;

"(2) reinstatement to the seaman's former position with back pay;

"(3) an award of costs and reasonable attorney's fees to a prevailing plaintiff not exceeding $1,000; and

"(4) an award of costs and reasonable attorney's fees to a prevailing employer not exceeding $1,000 if the court finds that a complaint filed under this section is frivolous or has been brought in bad faith."

2002—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 107–295, §428(a), amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as follows: "An owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel may not discharge or in any manner discriminate against a seaman because the seaman in good faith has reported or is about to report to the Coast Guard that the seaman believes that a violation of this subtitle, or a regulation issued under this subtitle, has occurred."

Subsec. (b)(3), (4). Pub. L. 107–295, §428(b), added pars. (3) and (4).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

SAVINGS PROVISION

Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §611(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2970, provided that: "This section [amending this section] shall not affect the application of section 2114(b) of title 46, United States Code, as in effect before the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 15, 2010], to an action filed under that section before that date."

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

§2115. Civil penalty to enforce alcohol and dangerous drug testing

Any person who fails to implement or conduct, or who otherwise fails to comply with the requirements prescribed by the Secretary for, chemical testing for dangerous drugs or for evidence of alcohol use, as prescribed under this subtitle or a regulation prescribed by the Secretary to carry out the provisions of this subtitle, is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000 for each violation. Each day of a continuing violation shall constitute a separate violation.

(Added Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §303(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3917; amended Pub. L. 105–383, title III, §304(b), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3419.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1998—Pub. L. 105–383 substituted "$5,000" for "$1,000".

§2116. Marine safety strategy, goals, and performance assessments

(a) LONG-TERM STRATEGY AND GOALS.—In conjunction with existing federally required strategic planning efforts, the Secretary shall develop a long-term strategy for improving vessel safety and the safety of individuals on vessels. The 5-year strategy shall include the issuance of a plan and schedule for achieving the following goals:

(1) Reducing the number and rates of marine casualties.

(2) Improving the consistency and effectiveness of vessel and operator enforcement and compliance programs.

(3) Identifying and targeting enforcement efforts at high-risk vessels and operators.

(4) Improving research efforts to enhance and promote vessel and operator safety and performance.

(b) 5-YEAR STRATEGY AND PLAN.—

(1) MEASURABLE GOALS.—The 5-year strategy and plan shall include specific numeric or measurable goals designed to achieve the goals set forth in subsection (a). The purposes of the numeric or measurable goals are the following:

(A) To increase the number of safety examinations on all high-risk vessels.

(B) To eliminate the backlog of marine safety-related rulemakings.

(C) To improve the quality and effectiveness of marine safety information databases by ensuring that all Coast Guard personnel accurately and effectively report all safety, casualty, and injury information.

(D) To provide for a sufficient number of Coast Guard marine safety personnel, and provide adequate facilities and equipment to carry out the functions referred to in section 504(c) of title 14.

(2) RESOURCE NEEDS.—The 5-year strategy and plan shall include estimates of—

(A) the funds and staff resources needed to accomplish each activity included in the strategy and plan; and

(B) the staff skills and training needed for timely and effective accomplishment of each goal.

(c) SUBMISSION WITH THE PRESIDENT'S BUDGET.—Not later than 5 years after the date of the enactment of the Elijah E. Cummings Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2020, and every 5 years thereafter, the Secretary shall submit to Congress the strategy and plan not later than 60 days following the transmission of the President's budget submission under section 1105 of title 31.

(d) ACHIEVEMENT OF GOALS.—

(1) PROGRESS ASSESSMENT.—In conjunction with the submission of the 5-year strategy and plan, the Commandant shall assess the progress of the Coast Guard toward achieving the goals set forth in subsection (b). The Commandant shall convey the Commandant's assessment to the employees of the marine safety workforce and shall identify any deficiencies that should be remedied before the next progress assessment.

(2) PERIODIC BRIEFINGS.—The Secretary shall periodically brief the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives—

(A) on the performance of the marine safety program in achieving the goals of the marine safety strategy and plan under subsection (a) for the period covered by the briefing;

(B) on the program's mission performance in achieving numerical measurable goals established under subsection (b), including—

(i) the number of civilian and military Coast Guard personnel assigned to marine safety positions; and

(ii) an identification of marine safety positions that are understaffed to meet the workload required to accomplish each activity included in the strategy and plan under subsection (a); and

(C) recommendations on how to improve performance of the program.

(Added Pub. L. 111–281, title V, §522(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2956; amended Pub. L. 113–281, title II, §221(b)(1)(A), title III, §307(a), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3037, 3045; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §§3541(b)(7), 3546(b), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2323, 2326; Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §214, Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3751; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXII [LXXXII],

§8240(c), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4666; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXVII, §7701(f)(2), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1835.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of the Elijah E. Cummings Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2020, referred to in subsec. (c), is the date of enactment of div. G of Pub. L. 116–283, which was approved Jan. 1, 2021.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (b)(1)(D). Pub. L. 119–60 substituted "section 504(c)" for "section 93(c)".

2021—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–283, §8240(c)(1), substituted "The 5-year strategy shall include the issuance of a plan" for "The strategy shall include the issuance of a triennial plan" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 116–283, §8240(c)(2)(A), substituted "5-Year Strategy and Plan" for "Contents of Strategy and Triennial Plans" in heading.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 116–283, §8240(c)(2)(B), substituted "5-year strategy and plan" for "strategy and triennial plans" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 116–283, §8240(c)(2)(C)(i), substituted "5-year strategy and plan" for "strategy and triennial plans" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(2)(A). Pub. L. 116–283, §8240(c)(2)(C)(ii), substituted "plan" for "plans".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 116–283, §8240(c)(3), substituted "Not later than 5 years after the date of the enactment of the Elijah E. Cummings Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2020, and every 5 years thereafter, the Secretary" for "Beginning with fiscal year 2020 and triennially thereafter, the Secretary" and struck out "triennial" after "the strategy and".

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 116–283, §8240(c)(4)(A), substituted "In conjunction with the submission of the 5-year strategy and plan" for "No less frequently than semiannually".

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 116–283, §8240(c)(4)(B)(i), (ii), substituted "Periodic briefings" for "Report to congress" in heading and "periodically brief the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives" for "report triennially to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (d)(2)(A). Pub. L. 116–283, §8240(c)(4)(B)(iii), struck out "annual" after "safety strategy and" and substituted "for the period covered by the briefing" for "for the year covered by the report".

Subsec. (d)(2)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 116–283, §8240(c)(4)(B)(iv), substituted "plan" for "plans".

2018—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 115–265, §214(1), substituted "of a triennial" for "each year of an annual" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 115–265, §214(2), substituted "Triennial" for "Annual" in heading and "triennial" for "annual" in introductory provisions of pars. (1) and (2).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 115–265, §214(3)(B), substituted "triennial plan" for "annual plan".

Pub. L. 115–265, §214(3)(A), which directed substitution of "fiscal year 2020 and triennially" for "fiscal year 2011 and each fiscal year", was executed by substituting "Beginning with fiscal year 2020 and triennially thereafter, the" for "The", to reflect the probable intent of Congress and the intervening amendment by Pub. L. 115–232, §3546(b). See below.

Pub. L. 115–232, §3546(b), substituted "The" for "Beginning with fiscal year 2011 and each fiscal year thereafter, the".

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 115–232, §3541(b)(7), substituted "the Commandant shall assess" for "the Coast Guard Commandant shall assess".

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 115–265, §214(4), substituted "triennially" for "annually" in introductory provisions.

2014—Subsec. (b)(1)(D). Pub. L. 113–281, §307(a), substituted "section 93(c) of title 14" for "section 93(c)".

Subsec. (d)(2)(B). Pub. L. 113–281, §221(b)(1)(A), amended subpar. (B) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (B) read as follows: "on the program's mission performance in achieving numerical measurable goals established under subsection (b); and".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

DOMESTIC VESSEL COMPLIANCE

Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §204, Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3745, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 60 days after the date on which the President submits to the Congress a budget each year pursuant to section 1105 of title 31, United States Code, the Commandant [of the Coast Guard] shall publish on a publicly accessible Website information documenting domestic vessel compliance with the requirements of subtitle II of title 46, United States Code.

"(b) CONTENT.—The information required under subsection (a) shall—

"(1) include flag-State detention rates for each type of inspected vessel; and

"(2) identify any recognized organization that inspected or surveyed a vessel that was later subject to a Coast Guard-issued control action attributable to a major nonconformity that the recognized organization failed to identify in such inspection or survey."

[For definition of "recognized organization" as used in section 204 of Pub. L. 115–265, set out above, see section 203 of Pub. L. 115–265, set out as a note under section 2101 of this title.]

§2117. Termination for unsafe operation

An individual authorized to enforce this title—

(1) may remove a certificate required by this title from a vessel that is operating in a condition that does not comply with the provisions of the certificate;

(2) may order the individual in charge of a vessel that is operating that does not have on board the certificate required by this title to return the vessel to a mooring and to remain there until the vessel is in compliance with this title; and

(3) may direct the individual in charge of a vessel to which this title applies to immediately take reasonable steps necessary for the safety of individuals on board the vessel if the official observes the vessel being operated in an unsafe condition that the official believes creates an especially hazardous condition, including ordering the individual in charge to return the vessel to a mooring and to remain there until the situation creating the hazard is corrected or ended.

(Added Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §608(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2967.)

§2118. Establishment of equipment standards

(a) In establishing standards for approved equipment required on vessels subject to part B of this subtitle, the Secretary shall establish standards that are—

(1) based on performance using the best available technology that is economically achievable; and

(2) operationally practical.

(b) Using the standards established under subsection (a), the Secretary may also certify lifesaving equipment that is not required to be carried on vessels subject to part B of this subtitle to ensure that such equipment is suitable for its intended purpose.

(c) At least once every 10 years the Secretary shall review and revise the standards established under subsection (a) to ensure that the standards meet the requirements of this section.

(Added Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §608(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2968; amended Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §306(a)(2), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 54.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 114–120, §306(a)(2)(A), substituted "subtitle," for "title,".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 114–120, §306(a)(2)(B), substituted "subtitle" for "title".

CHAPTER 23—OPERATION OF VESSELS GENERALLY

Sec.
2301. Application.
2302. Penalties for negligent operations and interfering with safe operation.
2303. Duties related to marine casualty assistance and information.
2303a. Post serious marine casualty alcohol testing.
2304. Duty to provide assistance at sea.
2305. Injunctions.
2306. Vessel reporting requirements.
[2307. Repealed.]

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 23 lists requirements that relate to the general operation of all vessels. These include penalties and injunctive relief for negligent operation of a vessel. It also provides penalties for failure to render assistance.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §402(d), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4264, struck out item 2307 "Limitation of liability for Coast Guard Vessel Traffic Service pilots and non-Federal vessel traffic service operators".

2012—Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §302(b), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1563, substituted "Limitation of liability for Coast Guard Vessel Traffic Service pilots and non-Federal vessel traffic service operators" for "Limitation of liability for Coast Guard Vessel Traffic Service pilots" in item 2307.

2002—Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §431(b), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2128, added item 2307.

1998—Pub. L. 105–383, title III, §§302(b), 304(d)(2), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3418, 3420, added item 2302, struck out former item 2302 "Penalties for negligent operations", and added item 2303a.

1984—Pub. L. 98–498, title II, §212(a)(1), Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2305, added item 2306.

§2301. Application

Except as provided in sections 2304 and 2306 of this title, this chapter applies to a vessel operated on waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States (including the territorial sea of the United States as described in Presidential Proclamation No. 5928 of December 27, 1988) and, for a vessel owned in the United States, on the high seas.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 508; Pub. L. 98–498, title II, §212(a)(2), Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2305; Pub. L. 105–383, title III, §301(b)(2), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3417; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(7), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1702.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2301	46:480

Section 2301 provides that this chapter is applicable to all vessels, including foreign flag vessels, when operating on waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States. Any vessel owned in the United States while operating on the high seas would be included. By ownership the Committee means those vessels that are documented or numbered under United States laws and those other vessels that are neither documented or numbered but are of national origin and are not documented under the laws of a foreign nation. This chapter is applicable to a foreign flag vessel that is in innocent passage through territorial waters of the United States, presently 3 miles seaward, whether or not it is bound to or from a port subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Presidential Proclamation No. 5928, referred to in text, is set out under section 1331 of Title 43, Public Lands.

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–304 substituted "sections 2304 and" for "section".

1998—Pub. L. 105–383 inserted "(including the territorial sea of the United States as described in Presidential Proclamation No. 5928 of December 27, 1988)" after "of the United States".

1984—Pub. L. 98–498 substituted "Except as provided in section 2306 of this title, this chapter" for "This chapter".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–498 effective 180 days after Oct. 19, 1984, see section 214 of Pub. L. 98–498, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2306 of this title.

§2302. Penalties for negligent operations and interfering with safe operation

(a) A person operating a vessel in a negligent manner or interfering with the safe operation of a vessel, so as to endanger the life, limb, or property of a person is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000 in the case of a recreational vessel, or $25,000 in the case of any other vessel.

(b) GROSSLY NEGLIGENT OPERATION.—

(1) MISDEMEANOR.—A person operating a vessel in a grossly negligent manner that endangers the life, limb, or property of a person commits a class A misdemeanor.

(2) FELONY.—A person operating a vessel in a grossly negligent manner that results in serious bodily injury, as defined in section 1365(h)(3) of title 18—

(A) commits a class E felony; and

(B) may be assessed a civil penalty of not more than $35,000.

(c) An individual who is under the influence of alcohol, or a dangerous drug in violation of a law of the United States when operating a vessel, as determined under standards prescribed by the Secretary by regulation—

(1) is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000; or

(2) commits a class A misdemeanor.

(d) For a penalty imposed under this section, the vessel also is liable in rem unless the vessel is—

(1) owned by a State or a political subdivision of a State;

(2) operated principally for governmental purposes; and

(3) identified clearly as a vessel of that State or subdivision.

(e)(1) A vessel may not transport Government-impelled cargoes if—

(A) the vessel has been detained and determined to be substandard by the Secretary for violation of an international safety convention to which the United States is a party, and the Secretary has published notice of that detention and determination in an electronic form, including the name of the owner of the vessel; or

(B) the operator of the vessel has on more than one occasion had a vessel detained and determined to be substandard by the Secretary for violation of an international safety convention to which the United States is a party, and the Secretary has published notice of that detention and determination in an electronic form, including the name of the owner of the vessel.

(2) The prohibition in paragraph (1) expires for a vessel on the earlier of—

(A) 1 year after the date of the publication in electronic form on which the prohibition is based; or

(B) any date on which the owner or operator of the vessel prevails in an appeal of the violation of the relevant international convention on which the detention is based.

(3) As used in this subsection, the term "Government-impelled cargo" means cargo for which a Federal agency contracts directly for shipping by water or for which (or the freight of which) a Federal agency provides financing, including financing by grant, loan, or loan guarantee, resulting in shipment of the cargo by water.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 508; Pub. L. 98–557, §7(a), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2862; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §§4105(b)(2), 4302(a), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 513, 537; Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5102, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5071; Pub. L. 105–383, title III, §§302(a), 304(c), title IV, §408(a), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3417, 3419, 3430; Pub. L. 107–295, title III, §325, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2105; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7311, Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1759.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2302(a)	46:1461(d) 46:1484(b)
2302(b)	46:1461(d) 46:1483
2302(c)	46:1484(b)

Section 2302 states that the negligent operation of a vessel is prohibited. These acts are subject to civil and criminal penalties and the involved vessel is subject to an in rem action. The negligent operation provisions have their genesis in the Act of April 25, 1940, 54 Stat. 167, when Congress prescribed that no person shall operate any motorboat or *any vessel* in a reckless or negligent manner. This provision was directed at all vessels and not those solely engaged in recreational boating. When the Federal Boat Safety Act of 1971, P.L. 92–75, 85 Stat. 217 (46 U.S.C. 1461) was enacted it adopted the reckless or negligent operation provisions of the 1940 Act. It adopted for the first time a provision for assessing civil penalties in addition to criminal penalties. It dropped the word "reckless" because of redundancy. It also combined the two classes of vessels; "any motorboat or any vessel" into one class by using the word "vessel" and defined vessel as including every description of watercraft.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 119–60 amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: "A person operating a vessel in a grossly negligent manner that endangers the life, limb, or property of a person commits a class A misdemeanor."

2002—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 107–295 substituted "$5,000 in the case of a recreational vessel, or $25,000 in the case of any other vessel" for "$1,000"

1998—Pub. L. 105–383, §302(a)(1), substituted "Penalties for negligent operations and interfering with safe operation" for "Penalties for negligent operations" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 105–383, §302(a)(2), substituted "or interfering with the safe operation of a vessel, so as to endanger" for "that endangers".

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 105–383, §304(c), substituted "$5,000; or" for "$1,000 for a first violation and not more than $5,000 for a subsequent violation; or".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 105–383, §408(a), added subsec. (e).

1992—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 102–587 substituted "$1,000 for a first violation and not more than $5,000 for a subsequent violation" for "$1,000".

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(a)(1), substituted "commits a class A misdemeanor" for "shall be fined not more than $5,000, imprisoned for not more than one year, or both".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101–380, §§4105(b)(2), 4302(a)(2)(A), substituted "under the influence of alcohol, or a

dangerous drug in violation of a law of the United States" for "intoxicated" and struck out ", shall be" after "by the Secretary by regulation".

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(a)(2)(B), substituted "is liable" for "liable".

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(a)(2)(C), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "fined not more than $5,000, imprisoned for not more than one year, or both."

1984—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 98–557 added subsec. (c) and redesignated former subsec. (c) as (d).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 105–383, title IV, §408(b), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3431, provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] takes effect January 1, 1999."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

§2303. Duties related to marine casualty assistance and information

(a) The master or individual in charge of a vessel involved in a marine casualty shall—

(1) render necessary assistance to each individual affected to save that affected individual from danger caused by the marine casualty, so far as the master or individual in charge can do so without serious danger to the master's or individual's vessel or to individuals on board; and

(2) give the master's or individual's name and address and identification of the vessel to the master or individual in charge of any other vessel involved in the casualty, to any individual injured, and to the owner of any property damaged.

(b) An individual violating this section or a regulation prescribed under this section shall be fined not more than $1,000 or imprisoned for not more than 2 years. The vessel also is liable in rem to the United States Government for the fine.

(c) An individual complying with subsection (a) of this section or gratuitously and in good faith rendering assistance at the scene of a marine casualty without objection by an individual assisted, is not liable for damages as a result of rendering assistance or for an act or omission in providing or arranging salvage, towage, medical treatment, or other assistance when the individual acts as an ordinary, reasonable, and prudent individual would have acted under the circumstances.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 509.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2303(a)	33:367 46:1465(a)
2303(b)	33:368
2303(c)	46:1465(b)

Section 2303 requires a master or anyone in charge of a vessel to provide assistance and render aid to those involved in a marine casualty and to exchange information in a manner similar to automobile accident cases. It also includes a "Good Samaritan" clause that exonerates anyone from liability when rendering assistance in an ordinary, reasonable, or prudent manner.

§2303a. Post serious marine casualty alcohol testing

(a) The Secretary shall establish procedures to ensure that after a serious marine casualty occurs, alcohol testing of crew members or other individuals responsible for the operation or other safety-sensitive functions of the vessel or vessels involved in such casualty is conducted no later than 2 hours after the casualty occurs, unless such testing cannot be completed within that time due to safety concerns directly related to the casualty.

(b) The procedures in subsection (a) shall require that if alcohol testing cannot be completed within 2 hours of the occurrence of the casualty, such testing shall be conducted as soon thereafter as the safety concerns in subsection (a) have been adequately addressed to permit such testing, except that such testing may not be required more than 8 hours after the casualty occurs.

(Added Pub. L. 105–383, title III, §304(d)(1), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3419; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8505(b)(1), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4751.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "individuals" for "persons".

§2304. Duty to provide assistance at sea

(a)(1) A master or individual in charge of a vessel shall render assistance to any individual found at sea in danger of being lost, so far as the master or individual in charge can do so without serious danger to the master's or individual's vessel or individuals on board.

(2) Paragraph (1) does not apply to a vessel of war or a vessel owned by the United States Government appropriated only to a public service.

(b) A master or individual violating this section shall be fined not more than $1,000, imprisoned for not more than 2 years, or both.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 509; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(8), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1703.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2304	46:728

Section 2304 requires a master or individual in charge of a vessel to render assistance to those in danger at sea if able to do so without seriously endangering the vessel or crew.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–304 designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

§2305. Injunctions

(a) The district courts of the United States have jurisdiction to enjoin the negligent operation of vessels prohibited by this chapter on the petition of the Attorney General for the United States Government.

(b) When practicable, the Secretary shall—

(1) give notice to any person against whom an action for injunctive relief is considered under this section an opportunity to present that person's views; and

(2) except for a knowing and willful violation, give the person a reasonable opportunity to achieve compliance.

(c) The failure to give notice and opportunity to present views under subsection (b) of this section does not preclude the court from granting appropriate relief.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 509.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
2305	46:1485

Section 2305 provides injunctive authority to enjoin the negligent operation of vessels. This authority can also be used to enjoin the operation of foreign or domestic vessels on our waters when they are unsuitable for the voyage intended.

§2306. Vessel reporting requirements

(a)(1) An owner, charterer, managing operator, or agent of a vessel of the United States, having reason to believe (because of lack of communication with or nonappearance of a vessel or any other incident) that the vessel may have been lost or imperiled, immediately shall—

(A) notify the Coast Guard; and

(B) use all available means to determine the status of the vessel.

(2) When more than 48 hours have passed since the owner, charterer, managing operator, or agent of a vessel required to report to the United States Flag Merchant Vessel Location Filing System under authority of section 50113 of this title has received a communication from the vessel, the owner, charterer, managing operator, or agent immediately shall—

(A) notify the Coast Guard; and

(B) use all available means to determine the status of the vessel.

(3) An owner, charterer, managing operator, or agent of a vessel of the United States notifying the Coast Guard under paragraph (1) or (2) shall—

(A) provide the name and identification number of the vessel, the names of individuals on board, and other information that may be requested by the Coast Guard; and

(B) submit written confirmation to the Coast Guard within 24 hours after nonwritten notification to the Coast Guard under such paragraphs.

(4) An owner, charterer, managing operator, or agent violating this subsection is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000 for each day during which the violation occurs.

(b)(1) The master of a vessel of the United States required to report to the System shall report to the owner, charterer, managing operator, or agent at least once every 48 hours.

(2) A master violating this subsection is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $1,000 for each day during which the violation occurs.

(c) The Secretary may prescribe regulations to carry out this section.

(Added Pub. L. 98–498, title II, §212(a)(3), Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2305; amended Pub. L. 109–304, §15(9), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1703; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8505(b)(2), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4751.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 116–283 amended par. (3) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (3) read as

follows: "A person notifying the Coast Guard under paragraph (1) or (2) of this subsection shall provide the name and identification number of the vessel, the names of individuals on board, and other information that may be requested by the Coast Guard. The owner, charterer, managing operator, or agent also shall submit written confirmation to the Coast Guard within 24 hours after nonwritten notification to the Coast Guard under those paragraphs."

2006—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 109–304 substituted "section 50113 of this title" for "section 212(A) of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 App. U.S.C. 1122a),".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 98–498, title II, §214, Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2306, provided that: "Sections 211(a) and 212 of this subtitle [enacting this section and amending sections 2302, 3309, 6101, and 6103 of this title] are effective one hundred and eighty days after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 19, 1984]."

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

[§2307. Repealed. Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §402(d), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4264]

Section, added Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §431(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2128; amended Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §302(a), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1562, related to limitation of liability for Coast Guard Vessel Traffic Service pilots and non-Federal vessel traffic service operators.

PART B—INSPECTION AND REGULATION OF VESSELS

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Part B provides authority and responsibility for the inspection and regulation of vessels by the Coast Guard. This part specifies those vessels subject to inspection, those that are specifically exempt from inspection, and related inspection requirements and procedures. Due to the need for special requirements for the inspection and regulation of passenger vessels and those vessels carrying liquid bulk dangerous cargoes separate chapters have been developed. Additional chapters provide for recreational vessels and those other vessels that are regulated but are not subject to inspection and certification by the Coast Guard. It should also be noted that the United States is signatory to a number of international treaties on maritime safety and seamen's welfare, such as the various Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS) treaties, and that their provisions and requirements are part of United States maritime law and in many cases are quite extensive.

CHAPTER 31—GENERAL

Sec.

3101. Authority to suspend inspection.
3102. Immersion suits.
3103. Use of reports, documents, and records.
3104. Survival craft.
3105. Electronic charts.
3106. Master key control system.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11608(b), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4152, added item 3106.

2018—Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §402(a)(2), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4264, added item 3105.
2010—Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §609(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2968, added item 3104.
1996—Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §603(b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3930, added item 3103.
1988—Pub. L. 100–424, §8(a)(3), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1593, substituted "Immersion" for "Exposure" in item 3102.
1985—Pub. L. 99–36, §2, May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 68, repealed section 22 of Pub. L. 98–557 and the amendments made by that section, which added first identical item 3102, effective Nov. 8, 1984, thereby leaving Pub. L. 98–623 as the sole authority for the addition of item 3102. See 1984 Amendment note below.
1984—Pub. L. 98–557, §22(a)(2), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2871, and Pub. L. 98–623, title VII, §701(a)(2), Nov. 8, 1984, 98 Stat. 3413, added identical item 3102. See 1985 Amendment note above.

§3101. Authority to suspend inspection

When the President decides that the needs of foreign commerce require, the President may suspend a provision of this part for a foreign-built vessel registered as a vessel of the United States on conditions the President may specify.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 510.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3101	46:82

Section 3101 provides the President with the authority to suspend the inspection laws for a foreign-built reflagged U.S. vessel when the needs of foreign commerce require this. For example, if a foreign-flag vessel is reflagged in the U.S. but does not meet the specific Coast Guard inspection requirements, the President could suspend these requirements.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 98–89, §2(g)(1), Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 599, provided that: "Part B [chapters 31 to 43] of subtitle II and sections 7306 (related to able seaman sail) and 7311 of title 46 (as enacted by section 1 of this Act) take effect April 15, 1984, or when regulations for sailing school vessels under part B are effective, whichever is earlier." [Part B of subtitle II and sections 7306 (related to able seaman sail) and 7311 of title 46 effective Apr. 15, 1984, in absence of regulations for sailing school vessels under part B on that date.]

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS

For delegation to Secretary of the Treasury of authority vested in President by this section, see Ex. Ord. No. 10289, Sept. 17, 1951, 16 F.R. 9499, set out as a note under section 301 of Title 3, The President.

§3102. Immersion suits

(a) The Secretary shall by regulation require immersion suits on vessels designated by the Secretary that operate in the Atlantic Ocean north of 32 degrees North latitude or south of 32 degrees South latitude and in all other waters north of 35 degrees North latitude or south of 35 degrees South latitude. The Secretary may not exclude a vessel from designation under this section only because that vessel carries other lifesaving equipment.

(b) The Secretary shall establish standards for an immersion suit required by this section, including standards to guarantee adequate thermal protection, buoyance, and flotation stability.

(c)(1) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel

violating this section or a regulation prescribed under this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(2) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel violating this section or a regulation prescribed under this section may be fined not more than $25,000, imprisoned for not more than 5 years, or both.

(Added Pub. L. 98–557, §22(a)(1), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2871; amended Pub. L. 98–623, title VII, §701(a)(1), Nov. 8, 1984, 98 Stat. 3413; Pub. L. 99–36, §2, May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 68; Pub. L. 100–424, §8(a)(1), (2), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1592, 1593.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Pub. L. 98–557 and Pub. L. 98–623 enacted identical section 3102 of this title. Section 22 of Pub. L. 98–557, which enacted first identical section 3102 of this title, was repealed by section 2 of Pub. L. 99–36, set out below as a Repeal of Duplicate Section note.

AMENDMENTS

1988—Pub. L. 100–424 substituted "Immersion" for "Exposure" in section catchline, and "immersion" for "exposure" in subsecs. (a) and (b).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

REPEAL OF DUPLICATE SECTION 3102; REFERENCES THERETO AND REGULATIONS AND ACTIONS THEREUNDER

Pub. L. 99–36, §2, May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 68, provided that: "Section 22 of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 1984 (Public Law 98–557; 98 Stat. 2871), and the amendments made by such section [enacting first identical section 3102 of this title and provisions set out as a note under this section and amending the analysis of chapter 31 of this title], are repealed as of November 8, 1984. Regulations prescribed and actions taken under, and references to, such section and the amendments made by such section are deemed to be regulations prescribed and actions taken under, and references to, section 701 of the Act of November 8, 1984 (Public Law 98–623; 98 Stat. 3413), and the amendments made by such section 701 [enacting second identical section 3102 of this title and provisions set out as a note under this section and amending the analysis of chapter 31 of this title]."

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 98–623, title VII, §701(b), (c), Nov. 8, 1984, 98 Stat. 3413, provided:

"(b) Section 3102 of title 46, United States Code (as added by subsection (a) of this section), does not limit the authority of the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating to prescribe regulations requiring exposure suits on vessels not required by section 3102 to have exposure suits.

"(c) The regulations prescribed under section 3102 of title 46, United States Code (as added by subsection (a) of this section), shall be effective not later than 60 days after the date of enactment of this title [Nov. 8, 1984]." [Regulations effective Dec. 30, 1984, see 49 F.R. 50722, Dec. 31, 1984.]

[For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.]

Similar provisions were contained in section 22(b), (c) of Pub. L. 98–557, which was repealed by section 2 of Pub. L. 99–36, set out above as a Repeal of Duplicate Section note.

§3103. Use of reports, documents, and records

The Secretary may rely, as evidence of compliance with this subtitle, on—

(1) reports, documents, and records of other persons who have been determined by the

Secretary to be reliable; and

(2) other methods the Secretary has determined to be reliable.

(Added Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §603(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3930.)

§3104. Survival craft

(a) REQUIREMENT TO EQUIP.—The Secretary shall require that a passenger vessel be equipped with survival craft that ensures that no part of an individual is immersed in water, if—

(1) such vessel is built or undergoes a major conversion after January 1, 2016; and

(2) operates in cold waters as determined by the Secretary.

(b) HIGHER STANDARD OF SAFETY.—The Secretary may revise part 117 or part 180 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect before January 1, 2016, if such revision provides a higher standard of safety than is provided by the regulations in effect on or before the date of the enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2016.

(c) INNOVATIVE AND NOVEL DESIGNS.—The Secretary may, in lieu of the requirements set out in part 117 or part 180 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on the date of the enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2016, allow a passenger vessel to be equipped with a life-saving appliance or arrangement of an innovative or novel design that—

(1) ensures no part of an individual is immersed in water; and

(2) provides an equal or higher standard of safety than is provided by such requirements as in effect before such date of the enactment.

(d) BUILT DEFINED.—In this section, the term "built" has the meaning that term has under section 4503(d).

(Added Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §609(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2968; amended Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §303, Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1563; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §301(a), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 50; Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3503(a), Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2775; Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §508(e), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4273.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2016, referred to in subsecs. (b) and (c), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 114–120, which was approved Feb. 8, 2016.

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 115–282 substituted "section 4503(d)" for "section 4503(e)".

2016—Pub. L. 114–120 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section related to survival craft.

Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 114–328 substituted "Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2016" for "Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2015".

2012—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 112–213, §303(1), substituted "the date that is 30 months after the date on which the report described in subsection (c) is submitted" for "January 1, 2015" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 112–213, §303(2), added subsec. (c).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2016 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 114–328 effective as if included in the enactment of Pub. L. 114–120, see section 3503(e) of Pub. L. 114–328, set out as a note under section 2182 of Title 14, Coast Guard.

REVIEW; REVISION OF REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §301(b), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 50, provided that:

"(1) REVIEW.—Not later than December 31, 2016, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a review of—

"(A) the number of casualties for individuals with disabilities, children, and the elderly as a result of immersion in water, reported to the Coast Guard over the preceding 30-year period, by vessel type and area of operation;

"(B) the risks to individuals with disabilities, children, and the elderly as a result of immersion in water, by passenger vessel type and area of operation;

"(C) the effect that carriage of survival craft that ensure that no part of an individual is immersed in water has on—

"(i) passenger vessel safety, including stability and safe navigation;

"(ii) improving the survivability of individuals, including individuals with disabilities, children, and the elderly; and

"(iii) the costs, the incremental cost difference to vessel operators, and the cost effectiveness of requiring the carriage of such survival craft to address the risks to individuals with disabilities, children, and the elderly;

"(D) the efficacy of alternative safety systems, devices, or measures in improving survivability of individuals with disabilities, children, and the elderly; and

"(E) the number of small businesses and nonprofit vessel operators that would be affected by requiring the carriage of such survival craft on passenger vessels to address the risks to individuals with disabilities, children, and the elderly.

"(2) SCOPE.—In conducting the review under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall include an examination of passenger vessel casualties that have occurred in the waters of other nations.

"(3) UPDATES.—The Secretary shall update the review required under paragraph (1) every 5 years.

"(4) REVISION.—Based on the review conducted under paragraph (1), including updates thereto, the Secretary shall revise regulations concerning the carriage of survival craft under section 3104(c) of title 46, United States Code."

§3105. Electronic charts

(a) SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS.—

(1) ELECTRONIC CHARTS IN LIEU OF MARINE CHARTS, CHARTS, AND MAPS .—Subject to paragraph (2), the following vessels, while operating on the navigable waters of the United States, equipped with and operating electronic navigational charts that are produced by a government hydrographic office or conform to a standard acceptable to the Secretary, shall be deemed in compliance with any requirement under title 33 or title 46, Code of Federal Regulations, to have a chart, marine chart, or map on board such vessel:

(A) A self-propelled commercial vessel of at least 65 feet in overall length.

(B) A vessel carrying more than a number of passengers for hire determined by the Secretary.

(C) A towing vessel of more than 26 feet in overall length and 600 horsepower.

(D) Any other vessel for which the Secretary decides that electronic charts are necessary for the safe navigation of the vessel.

(2) EXEMPTIONS AND WAIVERS.—The Secretary may—

(A) exempt a vessel from paragraph (1), if the Secretary finds that electronic charts are not necessary for the safe navigation of the vessel on the waters on which the vessel operates;

(B) waive the application of paragraph (1) with respect to operation of vessels on navigable waters of the United States specified by the Secretary, if the Secretary finds that electronic charts are not needed for safe navigation on those waters; and

(C) permit vessels described in subparagraphs (A) through (D) of paragraph (1) that operate solely landward of the baseline from which the territorial sea of the United States is measured to utilize software-based, platform-independent electronic chart systems that the Secretary determines are capable of displaying electronic navigational charts with necessary scale and detail to ensure safe navigation for the intended voyage.

(b) LIMITATION ON APPLICATION.—Except pursuant to an international treaty, convention, or agreement, to which the United States is a party, this section shall not apply to any foreign vessel that is not destined for, or departing from, a port or place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States and that is in—

(1) innocent passage through the territorial sea of the United States; or

(2) transit through the navigable waters of the United States that form a part of an international strait.

(Added and amended Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §402(a)(1), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4263, 4264; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8301, Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4691.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Section, as added and amended by Pub. L. 115–282, is based on Pub. L. 92–340, §4A, as added Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §410, Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1045, which was formerly classified to section 1223a of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters, before being transferred to this chapter and renumbered as this section.

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 116–283, §8301(a), amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Subject to paragraph (2), the following vessels, while operating on the navigable waters of the United States, shall be equipped with and operate electronic charts under regulations prescribed by the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating:

"(A) A self-propelled commercial vessel of at least 65 feet overall length.

"(B) A vessel carrying more than a number of passengers for hire determined by the Secretary.

"(C) A towing vessel of more than 26 feet in overall length and 600 horsepower.

"(D) Any other vessel for which the Secretary decides that electronic charts are necessary for the safe navigation of the vessel."

Subsec. (a)(2)(C). Pub. L. 116–283, §8301(b), added subpar. (C).

2018—Pub. L. 115–282, §402(a)(1)(A), transferred section 4A of Pub. L. 92–340 to this chapter and renumbered it as this section. See Codification note above.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 115–282, §402(a)(1)(B), added subsec. (b) and struck out former subsec. (b). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall prescribe regulations implementing subsection (a) before January 1, 2007, including requirements for the operation and maintenance of the electronic charts required under subsection (a)."

§3106. Master key control system

(a) IN GENERAL.—The owner of a vessel subject to inspection under section 3301 shall—

(1) ensure that such vessel is equipped with a vessel master key control system, manual or electronic, which provides controlled access to all copies of the vessel's master key of which access shall only be available to the individuals described in paragraph (2);

(2) establish a list of all crew, identified by position, allowed to access and use the master key and maintain such list upon the vessel, within owner records and included in the vessel safety management system;

(3) record in a log book information on all access and use of the vessel's master key, including—

(A) dates and times of access;

(B) the room or location accessed; and

(C) the name and rank of the crew member that used the master key; and

(4) make the list under paragraph (2) and the log book under paragraph (3) available upon request to any agent of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, any member of the Coast Guard, and any law enforcement officer performing official duties in the course and scope of an investigation.

(b) PROHIBITED USE.—Crew not included on the list described in subsection (a)(2) shall not have access to or use the master key unless in an emergency and shall immediately notify the master and owner of the vessel following use of such key.

(c) REQUIREMENTS FOR LOG BOOK.—The log book described in subsection (a)(3) and required to be included in a safety management system under section 3203(a)(6)—

(1) may be electronic; and

(2) shall be located in a centralized location that is readily accessible to law enforcement personnel.

(d) PENALTY.—Any crew member who uses the master key without having been granted access pursuant to subsection (a)(2) shall be liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $1,000 and may be subject to suspension or revocation under section 7703.

(e) EXEMPTION.—This section shall not apply to vessels subject to section 3507(f).

(Added Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11608(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4151.)

CHAPTER 32—MANAGEMENT OF VESSELS

Sec.
3201. Definitions.
3202. Application.
3203. Safety management system.
3204. Implementation of safety management system.
3205. Certification.

§3201. Definitions

In this chapter—

(1) "International Safety Management Code" has the same meaning given that term in chapter IX of the Annex to the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974;

(2) "responsible person" means—

(A) the owner of a vessel to which this chapter applies; or

(B) any other person that has—

(i) assumed the responsibility for operation of a vessel to which this chapter applies from the owner; and

(ii) agreed to assume with respect to the vessel responsibility for complying with all the requirements of this chapter and the regulations prescribed under this chapter.

(3) "vessel engaged on a foreign voyage" means a vessel to which this chapter applies—

(A) arriving at a place under the jurisdiction of the United States from a place in a foreign country;

(B) making a voyage between places outside the United States; or

(C) departing from a place under the jurisdiction of the United States for a place in a foreign country.

(Added Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §602(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3928.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

SAFETY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §205, Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3745, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Comptroller General of the United States shall conduct an audit regarding the implementation and effectiveness of the Coast Guard's oversight and enforcement of safety management plans required under chapter 32 of title 46, United States Code.

"(b) SCOPE.—The audit conducted under subsection (a) shall include an evaluation of—

"(1) the effectiveness and implementation of safety management plans, including such plans for—

"(A) a range of vessel types and sizes; and

"(B) vessels that operate in a cross-section of regional operating areas; and

"(2) the effectiveness and implementation of safety management plans in addressing the impact of heavy weather.

"(c) REPORT.—Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 2018], the Comptroller General shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives a report detailing the results of the audit and providing recommendations related to such results, including ways to streamline and focus such plans on ship safety.

"(d) MARINE SAFETY ALERT.—Not later than 60 days after the date the report is submitted under subsection (c), the Commandant [of the Coast Guard] shall publish a Marine Safety Alert providing notification of the completion of the report and including a link to the report on a publicly accessible website.

"(e) ADDITIONAL ACTIONS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Upon completion of the report under subsection (c), the Commandant shall consider additional guidance or a rulemaking to address any deficiencies identified, and any additional actions recommended, in the report.

"(2) REPORT.—Not later than 1 year after the date the report is submitted under subsection (c), the Commandant shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives a report on the actions the Commandant has taken to address any deficiencies identified, and any additional actions recommended, in the report submitted under subsection (c)."

TIMELY WEATHER FORECASTS AND HAZARD ADVISORIES FOR MERCHANT MARINERS

Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §216, Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3751, provided that: "Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 2018], the Commandant [of the Coast Guard] shall seek to enter into negotiations through the International Maritime Organization to amend the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea to require that vessels subject to the requirements of such Convention receive—

"(1) timely synoptic and graphical chart weather forecasts; and

"(2) where available, timely hazard advisories for merchant mariners, including broadcasts of tropical cyclone forecasts and advisories, intermediate public advisories, and tropical cyclone updates to mariners via appropriate technologies."

SAFETY MANAGEMENT CODE REPORT AND POLICY

Pub. L. 105–383, title III, §306, Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3420, provided that:

"(a) REPORT ON IMPLEMENTATION AND ENFORCEMENT OF THE INTERNATIONAL SAFETY MANAGEMENT CODE.—

"(1) The Secretary of Transportation (in this section referred to as the 'Secretary') shall conduct a study—

"(A) reporting on the status of implementation of the International Safety Management Code (hereafter referred to in this section as 'Code');

"(B) detailing enforcement actions involving the Code, including the role documents and reports produced pursuant to the Code play in such enforcement actions;

"(C) evaluating the effects the Code has had on marine safety and environmental protection, and identifying actions to further promote marine safety and environmental protection through the Code;

"(D) identifying actions to achieve full compliance with and effective implementation of the Code; and

"(E) evaluating the effectiveness of internal reporting and auditing under the Code, and recommending actions to ensure the accuracy and candidness of such reporting and auditing.

These recommended actions may include proposed limits on the use in legal proceedings of documents produced pursuant to the Code.

"(2) The Secretary shall provide opportunity for the public to participate in and comment on the study conducted under paragraph (1).

"(3) Not later than 18 months after the date of the enactment of this Act [Nov. 13, 1998], the Secretary shall submit to the Congress a report on the results of the study conducted under paragraph (1).

"(b) POLICY.—

"(1) Not later than 9 months after submission of the report in subsection (a)(3), the Secretary shall

develop a policy to achieve full compliance with and effective implementation of the Code. The policy may include—

"(A) enforcement penalty reductions and waivers, limits on the use in legal proceedings of documents produced pursuant to the Code, or other incentives to ensure accurate and candid reporting and auditing;

"(B) any other measures to achieve full compliance with and effective implementation of the Code; and

"(C) if appropriate, recommendations to Congress for any legislation necessary to implement one or more elements of the policy.

"(2) The Secretary shall provide opportunity for the public to participate in the development of the policy in paragraph (1).

"(3) Upon completion of the policy in paragraph (1), the Secretary shall publish the policy in the Federal Register and provide opportunity for public comment on the policy."

VESSEL MANAGEMENT METHODS STUDY

Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §602(c), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3930, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall conduct, in cooperation with the owners, charterers, and managing operators of vessels documented under chapter 121 of title 46, United States Code, and other interested persons, a study of the methods that may be used to implement and enforce the International Management Code for the Safe Operation of Ships and for Pollution Prevention under chapter IX of the Annex to the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974.

"(2) REPORT.—The Secretary shall submit to the Congress a report of the results of the study required under paragraph (1) before the earlier of—

"(A) the date that final regulations are prescribed under section 3203 of title 46, United States Code (as enacted by subsection (a)[]); or

"(B) the date that is 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 19, 1996]."

INTERNATIONAL CONVENTION FOR SAFETY OF LIFE AT SEA

For International Conventions for the Safety of Life at Sea to which the United States has been a party, see section 1602 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters, and notes thereunder.

§3202. Application

(a) FOREIGN VOYAGES AND FOREIGN VESSELS.—This chapter applies to a vessel that—

(1)(A) is transporting more than 12 passengers described in section 2101(31)(A) of this title; or

(B) is of at least 500 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of this title and is a tanker, freight vessel, bulk freight vessel, high speed freight vessel, or self-propelled mobile offshore drilling unit; and

(2)(A) is engaged on a foreign voyage; or

(B) is a foreign vessel departing from a place under the jurisdiction of the United States on a voyage, any part of which is on the high seas.

(b) OTHER PASSENGER VESSELS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—This chapter applies to a vessel that is—

(A) a passenger vessel or small passenger vessel; and

(B) is transporting more passengers than a number prescribed by the Secretary based on the number of individuals on the vessel that could be killed or injured in a marine casualty.

(2) SAFETY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM.—Notwithstanding any other provision in this chapter, including paragraph (1)(B), any regulations under section 3203, including the safety management system established by such regulations, issued on or after the date of enactment of the Elijah E. Cummings Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2020, shall apply to all covered small passenger vessels, as defined in section 3306(n)(5).

(c) VOLUNTARY APPLICATION.—This chapter applies to a vessel not described in subsection (a) of this section if the owner of the vessel requests the Secretary to apply this chapter to the vessel.

(d) EXCEPTION.—Except as provided in subsection (c) of this section, this chapter does not apply to—

(1) a barge;

(2) a recreational vessel not engaged in commercial service;

(3) a fishing vessel;

(4) a vessel operating on the Great Lakes or its tributary and connecting waters that is not described in subsection (b) of this section; or

(5) a public vessel.

(Added Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §602(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3928; amended Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §405(a), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1043; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §610(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2969; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3541(b)(8), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2323; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIV [LXXXIV], §8441(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4744; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(k)(1)(C), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1759.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of the Elijah E. Cummings Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2020, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is the date of enactment of div. G of Pub. L. 116–283, which was approved Jan. 1, 2021.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 119–60 substituted "section 2101(31)(A)" for "section 2101(29)(A)".

2021—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 116–283 designated existing provisions as par. (1) and inserted heading, redesignated former pars. (1) and (2) as subpars. (A) and (B), respectively, of par. (1) and realigned margins, and added par. (2).

2018—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 115–232 substituted "section 2101(29)(A)" for "section 2101(21)(A)".

2010—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–281, §610(a)(1), substituted "FOREIGN VOYAGES AND FOREIGN VESSELS.—" for "MANDATORY APPLICATION.—" in heading.

Subsecs. (b) to (d). Pub. L. 111–281, §610(a)(2)–(4), added subsec. (b), redesignated former subsecs. (b) and (c) as (c) and (d), respectively, and, in introductory provisions of subsec. (d), substituted "subsection (c)" for "subsection (b)".

Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 111–281, §610(a)(5), inserted "that is not described in subsection (b) of this section" after "connecting waters".

2004—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 108–293 reenacted heading without change and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "This chapter applies to the following vessels engaged on a foreign voyage:

"(1) Beginning July 1, 1998—

"(A) a vessel transporting more than 12 passengers described in section 2101(21)(A) of this title; and

"(B) a tanker, bulk freight vessel, or high-speed freight vessel, of at least 500 gross tons.

"(2) Beginning July 1, 2002, a freight vessel and a self-propelled mobile offshore drilling unit of at least 500 gross tons."

§3203. Safety management system

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall prescribe regulations which establish a safety management system for responsible persons and vessels to which this chapter applies (including, for purposes of this section, all covered small passenger vessels, as defined in section 3306(n)(5)), including—

(1) a safety and environmental protection policy;

(2) instructions and procedures to ensure safe operation of those vessels and protection of the environment in compliance with international and United States law;

(3) defined levels of authority and lines of communications between, and among, personnel on shore and on the vessel;

(4) procedures for reporting accidents and nonconformities with this chapter;

(5) with respect to sexual harassment and sexual assault, procedures for, and annual training requirements for all responsible persons and vessels to which this chapter applies on—

(A) prevention;

(B) bystander intervention;

(C) reporting;

(D) response; and

(E) investigation;

(6) the list required under section 3106(a)(2) and the log book required under section 3106(a)(3);

(7) procedures for preparing for and responding to emergency situations; and

(8) procedures for internal audits and management reviews of the system.

(b) PROCEDURES AND TRAINING REQUIREMENTS.—In prescribing regulations for the procedures and training requirements described in subsection (a)(5), such procedures and requirements shall be consistent with the requirements to report sexual harassment or sexual assault under section 10104.

(c) AUDITS.—

(1) CERTIFICATES.—

(A) SUSPENSION.—During an audit of a safety management system of a vessel required under section 10104(e), the Secretary may suspend the Safety Management Certificate issued for the vessel under section 3205 and issue a separate Safety Management Certificate for the vessel to be in effect for a 3-month period beginning on the date of the issuance of such separate certificate.

(B) REVOCATION.—At the conclusion of an audit of a safety management system required under section 10104(e), the Secretary shall revoke the Safety Management Certificate issued for the vessel under section 3205 if the Secretary determines—

(i) that the holder of the Safety Management Certificate knowingly, or repeatedly, failed to comply with section 10104; or

(ii) other failure of the safety management system resulted in the failure to comply with such section.

(2) DOCUMENTS OF COMPLIANCE.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Following an audit of the safety management system of a vessel required under section 10104(e), the Secretary may audit the safety management system of the responsible person for the vessel.

(B) SUSPENSION.—During an audit under subparagraph (A), the Secretary may suspend the Document of Compliance issued to the responsible person under section 3205 and issue a separate Document of Compliance to such person to be in effect for a 3-month period beginning on the date of the issuance of such separate document.

(C) REVOCATION.—At the conclusion of an assessment or an audit of a safety management system under subparagraph (A), the Secretary shall revoke the Document of Compliance issued to the responsible person if the Secretary determines—

(i) that the holder of the Document of Compliance knowingly, or repeatedly, failed to comply with section 10104; or

(ii) that other failure of the safety management system resulted in the failure to comply with such section.

(d) COMPLIANCE WITH CODE.—Regulations prescribed under this section shall be consistent with the International Safety Management Code with respect to vessels to which this chapter applies under section 3202(a) of this title.

(e) In prescribing regulations for passenger vessels and small passenger vessels, the Secretary shall consider—

(1) the characteristics, methods of operation, and nature of the service of these vessels; and

(2) with respect to vessels that are ferries, the sizes of the ferry systems within which the vessels operate.

(Added Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §602(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3928; amended Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §405(b), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1043; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §610(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2969; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIV [LXXXIV], §8441(c), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4744; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11610(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4154.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (a)(5) to (8). Pub. L. 117–263, §11610(a)(1), added pars. (5) and (6) and redesignated former pars. (5) and (6) as (7) and (8), respectively.

Subsecs. (b) to (e). Pub. L. 117–263, §11610(a)(2), (3), added subsecs. (b) and (c) and redesignated former subsecs. (b) and (c) as (d) and (e), respectively.

2021—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–283 inserted "(including, for purposes of this section, all covered small passenger vessels, as defined in section 3306(n)(5))" after "vessels to which this chapter applies" in introductory provisions.

2010—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–281 added subsec. (c).

2004—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 108–293 substituted "vessels to which this chapter applies under section 3202(a) of this title" for "vessels engaged on a foreign voyage".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

FLAG-STATE GUIDANCE AND SUPPLEMENTS

Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §213, Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3750, provided that:

"(a) FREIGHT VESSELS; DAMAGE CONTROL INFORMATION.—Within 1 year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 2018], the Secretary shall issue flag-State guidance for all freight vessels documented under chapter 121 of title 46, United States Code, built before January 1, 1992, regarding the inclusion of comprehensive damage control information in safety management plans required under chapter 32 of title 46, United States Code.

"(b) RECOGNIZED ORGANIZATIONS; UNITED STATES SUPPLEMENT.—The Commandant [of the Coast Guard] shall—

"(1) work with recognized organizations to create a single United States Supplement to rules of such organizations for classification of vessels; and

"(2) by not later than 1 year after the date of the enactment of this Act, provide to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives a briefing on whether it is necessary to revise part 8 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations, to authorize only one United States Supplement to such rules."

[For definitions of "Secretary" and "recognized organizations" as used in section 213 of Pub. L. 115–265, set out above, see section 203 of Pub. L. 115–265, set out as a note under section 2101 of this title.]

§3204. Implementation of safety management system

(a) SAFETY MANAGEMENT PLAN.—Each responsible person shall establish and submit to the Secretary for approval a safety management plan describing how that person and vessels of the person to which this chapter applies will comply with the regulations prescribed under section 3203(a) of this title.

(b) APPROVAL.—Upon receipt of a safety management plan submitted under subsection (a), the Secretary shall review the plan and approve it if the Secretary determines that it is consistent with and will assist in implementing the safety management system established under section 3203.

(c) PROHIBITION ON VESSEL OPERATION.—A vessel to which this chapter applies under section 3202(a) may not be operated without having on board a Safety Management Certificate and a copy of a Document of Compliance issued for the vessel under section 3205 of this title.

(Added Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §602(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3929.)

§3205. Certification

(a) ISSUANCE OF CERTIFICATE AND DOCUMENT.—After verifying that the responsible person for a vessel to which this chapter applies and the vessel comply with the applicable requirements under this chapter, the Secretary shall issue for the vessel, on request of the responsible person, a Safety Management Certificate and a Document of Compliance.

(b) MAINTENANCE OF CERTIFICATE AND DOCUMENT.—A Safety Management Certificate and a Document of Compliance issued for a vessel under this section shall be maintained by the responsible person for the vessel as required by the Secretary.

(c) VERIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE.—The Secretary shall—

(1) periodically, or upon discovery from other sources of information acquired by the Coast Guard, including a discovery made during an audit or systematic review conducted under section 10104(e) of a failure of a responsible person or vessel to comply with a requirement of a safety management system for which a Safety Management Certificate and a Document of compliance [1] has been issued under this section, including a failure to comply with regulations prescribed under section 3203(a)(7) and (8), review whether a responsible person having a safety management plan approved under section 3204(b) and each vessel to which the plan applies is complying with the plan; and

(2) revoke the Secretary's approval of the plan and each Safety Management Certificate and Document of Compliance issued to the person for a vessel to which the plan applies, if the Secretary determines that the person or a vessel to which the plan applies has not complied with the plan.

(d) ENFORCEMENT.—At the request of the Secretary, the Secretary of Homeland Security shall withhold or revoke the clearance required by section 60105 of this title of a vessel that is subject to this chapter under section 3202(a) of this title or to the International Safety Management Code, if the vessel does not have on board a Safety Management Certificate and a copy of a Document of Compliance for the vessel. Clearance may be granted on filing a bond or other surety satisfactory to the Secretary.

(Added Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §602(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3929; amended Pub. L. 109–304, §15(10), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1703; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3529(b)(1)(A), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 603; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11610(b), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4155.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 117–263 inserted ", or upon discovery from other sources of information acquired by the Coast Guard, including a discovery made during an audit or systematic review conducted under section 10104(e) of a failure of a responsible person or vessel to comply with a requirement of a safety management system for which a Safety Management Certificate and a Document of compliance has been issued under this section, including a failure to comply with regulations prescribed under section 3203(a)(7) and (8)," after "periodically".

2008—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 110–181 amended Pub. L. 109–304, §15(10). See 2006 Amendment note below.

2006—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(10), as amended by Pub. L. 110–181, substituted "Secretary of Homeland Security shall withhold or revoke the clearance required by section 60105 of this title" for "Secretary of the Treasury shall withhold or revoke the clearance required by section 4197 of the Revised Statutes (46 U.S.C. App. 91)".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3529(b)(2), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 603, provided that: "The amendments made by paragraph (1) [amending this section and section 31325 of this title] shall be effective as if included in the enactment of Public Law 109–304."

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "Compliance".*

CHAPTER 33—INSPECTION GENERALLY

Sec.

3301. Vessels subject to inspection.
3302. Exemptions.
3303. Reciprocity for foreign vessels.
3304. Transporting individuals in addition to crew.
3305. Scope and standards of inspection.
3306. Regulations.
3307. Frequency of inspection.
3308. Examinations.
3309. Certificate of inspection.
3310. Records of certification.
3311. Certificate of inspection required.
3312. Display of certificate of inspection.
3313. Compliance with certificate of inspection.
3314. Expiration of certificate of inspection.
3315. Disclosure of defects and protection of informants.
3316. Classification societies.
3317. Fees.
3318. Penalties.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 33 consolidates the laws governing the inspection and certification of vessels by the Coast Guard that have developed over a period in excess of 140 years. The original laws were directed to the safety of the relatively new and potentially dangerous steam vessel. The demand for Federal remedial legislation began during the early 1800's after frequent and disastrous explosions of steam boilers on passenger vessels. This directly led to the first maritime safety laws in 1838 that required periodic inspection and certification of vessels engaged in the transportation of passengers and freight on the waters of the United States. This was followed by a more extensive steamboat inspection law in 1852 which adopted for the first time the principle of licensing for river pilots and engineers. It also created a new Federal maritime safety inspection service called the Federal Inspection Service that eventually became the Bureau of Marine Inspection and Navigation, whose duties were temporarily assumed in 1941 and permanently assumed in 1946 by the United States Coast Guard.

In 1864 the principal inspection and licensing provisions of the 1852 act were made applicable to ferries, towing vessels, and canal boats. However, steamboat explosions continued with high loss of life and property. One of the greatest of all disasters, the destruction of the passenger vessel *Sultana* by explosion and fire with a loss of life estimated at more than 1500 lives in April 1865, led to renewed legislation efforts. In 1871 this culminated with legislation that combined a number of new requirements into a coherent and unified body of maritime safety laws. At the time of the adoption of the Revised Statutes in 1874, a maritime safety code was well established for vessels propelled in whole or in part by steam.

In the more than 100 years since then, as the public recognized the need for vessel safety legislation, primarily as the result of maritime disasters, other classes of vessels were subjected to Federal inspection or regulatory control. These included vessels propelled by gas, fluid, naphtha, or electric motors in 1897; sail vessels and barges carrying passengers for hire in 1898; seagoing barges in 1908; motorboats in 1910; steam vessels owned by the Department of Commerce in 1919; seagoing vessels of 300 gross tons and over on June 20, 1936; all tank vessels carrying flammable or combustible liquid cargo in bulk regardless of size or means of propulsion of June 23, 1936; motorboats again in 1940; all vessels carrying more than six passengers in

1956; tank vessels again in 1978; and offshore supply vessels in 1980. There was also considerable legislation that amended or supplemented these primary maritime safety laws.

The net result has been a patchwork quilt of categories and classifications that requires a tabulation of more than seventy different classes of inspected vessels. This revision gathers into one section of the law all classes of vessels that are subject to inspection and certification without changing the application of present law as to any one class of vessel. The revision does not alter the application of the present law so as to expand inspection requirements to any vessel presently not subject to inspection nor to remove from inspection any vessel that is presently subject to inspection.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §607(b)(2), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3932, substituted "Classification societies" for "United States classification societies" in item 3316.

1986—Pub. L. 99–307, §1(5)(B), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 445, substituted "Transporting" for "Carrying" in item 3304.

§3301. Vessels subject to inspection

The following categories of vessels are subject to inspection under this part:

(1) freight vessels.
(2) nautical school vessels.
(3) offshore supply vessels.
(4) passenger vessels.
(5) sailing school vessels.
(6) seagoing barges.
(7) seagoing motor vessels.
(8) small passenger vessels.
(9) steam vessels.
(10) tank vessels.
(11) fish processing vessels.
(12) fish tender vessels.
(13) Great Lakes barges.
(14) oil spill response vessels.
(15) towing vessels.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 510; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(2), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 445; Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5208(b), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5076; Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1104(g), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3967; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §415(a), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1047.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3301(1)	46:391 46:404
3301(2)	46:1295f(c)
3301(3)	46:404–1
3301(4)	46:390a 46:391
3301(5)	46:390a
3301(6)	46:395
3301(7)	46:367
3301(8)	46:390a

3301(9)	46:362 46:391 46:405
3301(10)	46:391a

Section 3301 lists all classes of vessels that are subject to inspection and certification by the Coast Guard. This section represents one of the sought-after advantages of the bill to simplify access to the provisions of law governing the regulation of vessels. Under the present law, a vessel's inspection status must be determined by examining a table appearing at section 2.01–7A of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations that divides all vessels into more than 70 separate classes.

It is important to note that while the classes of vessels are now limited to ten, there is no prohibition against developing regulations to meet the special needs of various size vessels within any one category. For example, it is expected that the Coast Guard will continue the practice of establishing standards for freight vessels of not more than 100 gross tons and other standards for larger freight vessels.

It should also be noted that a particular vessel can, when engaged in various types of operations, be subject to varying inspection laws. For example, an offshore supply vessel could be classed as a small passenger vessel or a passenger vessel when it operates as a crew boat carrying individuals other than those defined in section 2101(21). If the offshore supply vessel is 500 gross tons and over it would then be subject to inspection as a seagoing motor vessel, a freight vessel, or a passenger vessel.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2004—Par. (15). Pub. L. 108–293 added par. (15).
1996—Par. (14). Pub. L. 104–324 added par. (14).
1992—Par. (13). Pub. L. 102–587 added par. (13).
1984—Pars. (11), (12). Pub. L. 98–364 added pars. (11) and (12).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102–587 effective Nov. 4, 1992, for Great Lakes barges placed in operation after Nov. 4, 1992, and effective one year after Nov. 4, 1992, for Great Lakes barges in operation on Nov. 4, 1992, with provision for interim safety requirements, see section 5208(c), (d) of Pub. L. 102–587, set out as a note under section 2101 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

PILOT PROGRAM

Pub. L. 105–383, title IV, §412(b), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3432, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may establish a pilot program to exempt a vessel of at least 300 gross tons as measured under chapter 143 or chapter 145 of title 46, United States Code, from the requirement to be inspected under section 3301(7) of title 46, United States Code, as a seagoing motor vessel, if—

"(A) the vessel does not carry any cargo or passengers for hire;

"(B) the vessel does not engage in commercial service, commercial fisheries, or oceanographic research; and

"(C) the vessel does not engage in towing.

"(2) EXPIRATION OF AUTHORITY.—The authority to grant the exemptions under this subsection expires 2 years after the date of the enactment of this Act [Nov. 13, 1998]. Any specific exemptions granted under this subsection shall nonetheless remain in effect."

SMALL PASSENGER VESSEL PILOT INSPECTION PROGRAM WITH STATE OF MINNESOTA

Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1122, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3979, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may enter into an agreement with the State under which the State may

inspect small passenger vessels operating in waters of that State designated by the Secretary, if—

"(1) the State plan for the inspection of small passenger vessels meets such requirements as the Secretary may require to ensure the safety and operation of such vessels in accordance with the standards that would apply if the Coast Guard were inspecting such vessels; and

"(2) the State will provide such information obtained through the inspection program to the Secretary annually in such form and in such detail as the Secretary may require.

"(b) FEES.—The Secretary may adjust or waive the user fee imposed under section 3317 of title 46, United States Code, for the inspection of small passenger vessels inspected under the State program.

"(c) TERMINATION.—The authority provided by subsection (a) terminates on December 31, 1999.

"(d) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section—

"(1) SECRETARY.—The term 'Secretary' means the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating.

"(2) STATE.—The term 'State' means the State of Minnesota.

"(3) SMALL PASSENGER VESSEL.—The term 'small passenger vessel' means a small passenger vessel (as defined in section 2101(35) [now 2101(49)] of title 46, United States Code) of not more than 40 feet overall in length."

[For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.]

§3302. Exemptions

(a) A vessel is not excluded from one category only because the vessel is—

(1) included in another category of section 3301 of this title; or

(2) excluded by this section from another category of section 3301 of this title.

(b) Except as provided in subsection (c)(3) of this section, a fishing vessel, including a vessel chartered part-time as a fish tender vessel, is exempt from section 3301(1), (7), (11), and (12) of this title.

(c)(1) Except as provided in paragraph (3) of this subsection, a fish processing vessel of not more than 5,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title is exempt from section 3301(1), (6), (7), (11), and (12) of this title.

(2) Except as provided in paragraphs (3) and (4) of this subsection, the following fish tender vessels are exempt from section 3301(1), (6), (7), (11), and (12) of this title:

(A) A vessel of not more than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title.

(B) A vessel engaged in the Aleutian trade that is not more than 2,500 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of this title.

(3)(A) A fishing vessel or fish processing vessel is exempt from section 3301(1), (6), and (7) of this title when transporting cargo (including fisheries-related cargo) to or from a place in Alaska if—

(i) that place does not receive weekly common carrier service by water from a place in the United States;

(ii) that place receives such common carrier service and the cargo is of a type not accepted by that common carrier service; or

(iii) the cargo is proprietary cargo owned by the owner of the vessel or any affiliated entity or subsidiary.

(B) A fish tender vessel of not more than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or less than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or is less than 2,500 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of this title, which is qualified to engage in the Aleutian

trade is exempt from section 3301(1), (6), and (7) of this title when transporting cargo (including fisheries-related cargo) to or from a place in Alaska outside the Aleutian trade geographic area if—

(i) that place does not receive weekly common carrier service by water from a place in the United States;

(ii) that place receives such common carrier service and the cargo is of a type not accepted by that common carrier service; or

(iii) the cargo is proprietary cargo owned by the owner of the vessel or any affiliated entity or subsidiary.

(C) In this paragraph, the term "proprietary cargo" means cargo that—

(i) is used by the owner of the vessel or any affiliated entity or subsidiary in activities directly related to fishing or the processing of fish;

(ii) is consumed by employees of the owner of the vessel or any affiliated entity or subsidiary who are engaged in fishing or in the processing of fish; or

(iii) consists of fish or fish products harvested or processed by the owner of the vessel or any affiliated entity or subsidiary.

(D) Notwithstanding the restrictions in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, vessels qualifying under subparagraph (B) may transport cargo (including fishery-related products) from a place in Alaska receiving weekly common carrier service by water to a final destination in Alaska not receiving weekly service by water from common carriers.

(4) A fish tender vessel is exempt from section 3301(1), (6), and (7) of this title when engaged in the Aleutian trade if the vessel—

(A) is not more than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or less than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or is less than 2,500 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of this title;

(B) has an incline test performed by a marine surveyor; and

(C) has written stability instructions posted on board the vessel.

(d)(1) A motor vessel of less than 150 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title, constructed before August 23, 1958, is not subject to inspection under section 3301(1) of this title if the vessel is owned or demise chartered to a cooperative or association that only transports cargo owned by at least one of its members on a nonprofit basis between places within the waters of—

(A) southeastern Alaska shoreward of the Boundary Line; or

(B) southeastern Alaska shoreward of the Boundary Line and—

(i) Prince Rupert, British Columbia; or

(ii) waters of Washington shoreward of the Boundary Line, via sheltered waters, as defined in article I of the treaty dated December 9, 1933, between the United States and Canada defining certain waters as sheltered waters.

(2) The transportation authorized under this subsection is limited to and from places not receiving annual weekly transportation service from any part of the United States by an established water common carrier. However, the limitation does not apply to transporting cargo of a character not accepted for transportation by that carrier.

(e) A vessel laid up, dismantled, or out of commission is exempt from inspection.

(f) Section 3301(4) and (8) of this title does not apply to an oceanographic research vessel because it is carrying scientific personnel.

(g)(1) Except when compliance with major structural or major equipment requirements is necessary to remove an especially hazardous condition, an offshore supply vessel is not subject to regulations or standards for those requirements if the vessel—

(A) was operating as an offshore supply vessel before January 2, 1979; or

(B) was contracted for before January 2, 1979, and entered into service as an offshore supply vessel before October 6, 1980.

(2) This subsection does not apply to an offshore supply vessel that is at least 20 years of age.

(h) An offshore supply vessel operating on January 1, 1979, under a certificate of inspection issued by the Secretary, is subject to an inspection standard or requirement only if the standard or requirement could have been prescribed for the vessel under authority existing under law on October 5, 1980.

(i)(1) The Secretary may issue a permit exempting a vessel from any part of the requirements of this part for vessels transporting cargo, including bulk fuel, from one place in Alaska to another place in Alaska only if the vessel—

(A) is not more than 300 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title;

(B) is in a condition that does not present an immediate threat to the safety of life or the environment; and

(C) was operating in the waters off Alaska as of June 1, 1976, or the vessel is a replacement for a vessel that was operating in the waters off Alaska as of June 1, 1976, if the vessel being replaced is no longer in service.

(2) Except in a situation declared to be an emergency by the Secretary, a vessel operating under a permit may not transport cargo to or from a place if the cargo could be transported by another commercial vessel that is reasonably available and that does not require exemptions to operate legally or if the cargo could be readily transported by overland routes.

(3) A permit may be issued for a specific voyage or for not more than one year. The permit may impose specific requirements about the amount or type of cargo to be carried, manning, the areas or specific routes over which the vessel may operate, or other similar matters. The duration of the permit and restrictions contained in the permit shall be at the sole discretion of the Secretary.

(4) A designated Coast Guard official who has reason to believe that a vessel issued a permit is in a condition or is operated in a manner that creates an immediate threat to the safety of life or the environment or is operated in a manner that is inconsistent with the terms of the permit, may direct the master or individual in charge to take immediate and reasonable steps to safeguard life and the environment, including directing the vessel to a port or other refuge.

(5) If a vessel issued a permit creates an immediate threat to the safety of life or the environment, or is operated in a manner inconsistent with the terms of the permit or the requirements of paragraph (2) of this subsection, the permit may be revoked. The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel issued a permit, that willfully permits the vessel to be operated, or operates, the vessel in a manner inconsistent with the terms of the permit, is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $1,000.

(j) Notwithstanding another provision of this chapter, the Secretary is not required to inspect or prescribe regulations for a nautical school vessel of not more than 15 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title—

(1) when used in connection with a course of instruction dealing with any aspect of maritime education or study; and

(2) operated by—

(A) the United States Merchant Marine Academy; or

(B) a State maritime academy assisted under chapter 515 of this title.

(k) Only the boiler, engine, and other operating machinery of a steam vessel that is a recreational vessel of not more than 65 feet overall in length are subject to inspection under section 3301(9) of this title.

(l)(1) The Secretary may issue a permit exempting the following vessels from the requirements of

this part for passenger vessels so long as the vessels are owned by nonprofit organizations and operated as nonprofit memorials to merchant mariners:

(A) The steamship John W. Brown (United States official number 242209), owned by Project Liberty Ship Baltimore, Incorporated, located in Baltimore, Maryland.

(B) The steamship Lane Victory (United States official number 248094), owned by the United States Merchant Marine Veterans of World War II, located in San Pedro, California.

(C) The steamship Jeremiah O'Brien (United States official number 243622), owned by the National Liberty Ship Memorial, Inc.

(D) The SS Red Oak Victory (United States official number 249410), owned by the Richmond Museum Association, located in Richmond, California.

(E) The SS American Victory (United States official number 248005), owned by Victory Ship, Inc., of Tampa, Florida.

(F) The LST–325, owned by USS LST Ship Memorial, Incorporated, located in Mobile, Alabama.

(2) The Secretary may issue a permit for a specific voyage or for not more than one year. The Secretary may impose specific requirements about the number of passengers to be carried, manning, the areas or specific routes over which the vessel may operate, or other similar matters.

(3) A designated Coast Guard official who has reason to believe that a vessel operating under this subsection is in a condition or is operated in a manner that creates an immediate threat to life or the environment or is operated in a manner that is inconsistent with this section, may direct the master or individual in charge to take immediate and reasonable steps to safeguard life and the environment, including directing the vessel to a port or other refuge.

(m) A seagoing barge or a Great Lakes barge is not subject to inspection under paragraph (6) or (13) of section 3301 of this title if the vessel is unmanned and does not carry—

(1) a hazardous material as cargo; or

(2) a flammable or combustible liquid, including oil, in bulk.

(n)(1) A seagoing motor vessel is not subject to inspection under section 3301(7) of this title if the vessel—

(A) is a recreational vessel (as defined in section 2101 of this title) over 300 gross tons as measured under section 14502, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title;

(B) does not carry any cargo or passengers for hire; and

(C) is found by the Secretary to comply with large recreational vessel regulations issued by the Secretary.

(2) This subsection shall apply only on and after the effective date of regulations referred to in paragraph (1)(C).

(o) ADDITIONAL RESPONSE ASSETS.—

(1) VESSELS EXEMPT FROM INSPECTION.—Except as otherwise provided in this subsection, a qualified vessel engaged in a qualified oil spill response shall not be subject to inspection if the qualified vessel—

(A) has—

(i) an agreement by contract or other approved means with an oil spill removal organization to support a response plan under section 311(j) of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1321(j)), including training and exercises related to oil spill response activities; or

(ii) been approved by the Secretary to respond to a discharge of oil or to participate in training and exercises related to oil spill response activities;

(B) is normally and substantially involved in activities other than, and not adapted to, spill response;

(C) complies with all applicable laws for the use of such vessel in the activities for which such vessel is normally and substantially operated, including any inspection requirement under this title for such use; and

(D) has at least 1 person aboard possessing certifications for, or who are in training for, applicable hazardous waste operations and emergency response.

(2) ALLOWANCES.—A qualified vessel under paragraph (1) may—

(A) unless otherwise inspected as a towing vessel under this title, tow only—

(i) another vessel or a device, including a bladder, designed to carry oil or oil residues with the capacity of less than 250 barrels; or

(ii) oil spill response equipment, including boom, skimmers, or other response equipment;

(B) carry—

(i) temporary storage containers on board for recovered oil or oil-contaminated materials collected during an oil spill response, including bags, drums, and totes as approved by the Secretary;

(ii) oil spill response equipment; or

(iii) no more than 6 passengers for hire in support of a response plan under Section 311(j) of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1321(j)) approved by the Secretary unless the vessel has been inspected under paragraph (4) or (8) of section 3301 or is authorized by the Secretary to carry more than 6 passengers for hire;

(C) if the qualified vessel is a tank vessel, be used for storage of recovered oil;

(D) conduct any other operation, or engage in training or exercises, in support of a response plan under section 311(j) of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1321(j)) approved by the Secretary.

(3) DEFINITIONS.—In this subsection:

(A) QUALIFIED VESSEL.—The term "qualified vessel" means a vessel operating in Coast Guard District Arctic.

(B) QUALIFIED OIL SPILL.—The term "qualified oil spill" means an oil spill occurring in waters subject to the jurisdiction of Coast Guard District Arctic.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 510; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(3), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 445; Pub. L. 99–307, §1(3), (4), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 444; Pub. L. 101–595, title III, §303(a), title VI, §§602(b), 603(2), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2983, 2990, 2993; Pub. L. 103–206, title III, §311, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2426; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §711, title XI, §1110, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3935, 3969; Pub. L. 106–65, div. C, title XXXVI, §3604, Oct. 5, 1999, 113 Stat. 976; Pub. L. 107–295, title II, §208, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2098; Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §311, July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 530; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(11), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1703; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §§3529(b), 3546(c), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2319, 2326; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXII, §11216, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4017; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIV, §7406(a), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1786.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3302	46:367 46:390 46:391(e) 46:404 46:420 46:442

Section 3302 does three things. It makes clear that a vessel included in one of the ten categories of vessels subject to inspection is not necessarily excluded from another category of vessel that is subject to inspection. For example, a vessel inspected and certified as a small passenger vessel would, when carrying oil or hazardous materials in bulk as cargo or cargo residue, also have to be inspected as a tank vessel. It makes it clear that a vessel excluded by section 3302 from the requirements of inspection in any one of the ten categories is not necessarily excluded from inspection as a vessel in another category. This section also contains a number of exemptions for certain classes of vessels and for those vessels engaged in a specific trade that have been considered to be of a special circumstance.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (o). Pub. L. 119–60 added subsec. (o).

2022—Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 117–263, in introductory provisions, inserted "or a Great Lakes barge" after "seagoing barge" and substituted "paragraph (6) or (13) of section 3301 of this title" for "section 3301(6) of this title".

2018—Subsec. (g)(2). Pub. L. 115–232, §3546(c), substituted "This" for "After December 31, 1988, this".

Subsec. (n). Pub. L. 115–232, §3529(b), added subsec. (n).

2006—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(11)(A), inserted comma after "fishing vessel".

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 109–241, §311(a), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "Except as provided in paragraphs (3) and (4) of this subsection, a fish tender vessel of not more than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title is exempt from section 3301(1), (6), (7), (11), and (12) of this title."

Subsec. (c)(3)(B), (4)(A). Pub. L. 109–241, §311(b), substituted "or less than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or is less than 2,500 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of this title" for "or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title".

Subsec. (j)(2)(B). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(11)(B), substituted "chapter 515 of this title" for "section 1304 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 App. U.S.C. 1295c)".

Subsec. (l)(1)(C). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(11)(C), substituted "Inc." for "Inc..".

2002—Subsec. (l)(1)(D) to (F). Pub. L. 107–295 added subpars. (D) to (F).

1999—Subsec. (l)(1)(C). Pub. L. 106–65 substituted "owned by the National Liberty Ship Memorial, Inc." for "owned by the United States Maritime Administration".

1996—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 104–324, §1110(1), substituted "Except as provided in subsection (c)(3) of this section, a fishing vessel" for "A fishing vessel,".

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 104–324, §§711(1), 1110(2), substituted "Except as provided in paragraph (3) of this subsection, a fish processing vessel" for "A fish processing vessel" and inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "5,000 gross tons".

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 104–324, §§711(2), 1110(3), substituted "Except as provided in paragraphs (3) and (4) of this subsection, a fish tender vessel" for "A fish tender vessel" and inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "500 gross tons".

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 104–324, §1110(4), amended par. (3) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (3) read as follows: "A fishing, fish processing, or fish tender vessel of not more than 500 gross tons is exempt from section 3301(1), (6), and (7) of this title if—

"(A) when transporting cargo to or from a place in Alaska—

"(i) that place does not receive weekly common carrier service by water from a place in the United States; or

"(ii) the cargo is of a type not accepted by that common carrier service; or

"(B) in the case of a fish tender vessel, the vessel is not engaged in the Aleutian trade."

Subsec. (c)(4)(A). Pub. L. 104–324, §711(3), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "500 gross tons".

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 104–324, §711(4), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section

14104 of this title" after "150 gross tons".

Subsec. (i)(1)(A). Pub. L. 104–324, §711(5), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "300 gross tons".

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 104–324, §711(6), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "15 gross tons".

1993—Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 103–206 added subsec. (m).

1990—Subsec. (c)(3), (4). Pub. L. 101–595, §602(b), added pars. (3) and (4).

Subsec. (j)(2)(B). Pub. L. 101–595, §603(2), substituted "(46 App. U.S.C. 1295c)" for "(46 App. U.S.C. 1295(c))".

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 101–595, §303(a), added subsec. (l).

1986—Subsec. (i)(5). Pub. L. 99–307, §1(3), substituted "charterer" for "charter".

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 99–307, §1(4), added subsec. (k).

1984—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 98–364 amended subsec. (b) generally, which prior to amendment read as follows: "A motor vessel engaged in fishing as a regular business, including oystering, clamming, crabbing, or the kelp or sponge industry, is exempt from section 3301(1), (4), and (7) of this title."

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98–364 amended subsec. (c) generally, which prior to amendment read as follows:

"(1) Before January 1, 1988, a motor vessel is exempt from section 3301(1), (4), and (7) of this title if the vessel is not more than 500 gross tons and—

"(A) is a cannery tender or a fishing tender in the salmon or crab fisheries of Alaska, Oregon, and Washington; and

"(B) only carries cargo to or from vessels in those fisheries or a facility used in processing or assembling fishery products, or transports cannery or fishing personnel to or from operating locations.

"(2) Before January 1, 1988, a vessel is exempt from section 3301(1), (4), (6), and (7) of this title if the vessel is not more than 5,000 gross tons and is used only in processing and assembling fishery products in the fisheries of Alaska, Oregon, and Washington."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 602(b) of Pub. L. 101–595 effective Nov. 16, 1990, except that requirements imposed by subsec. (c)(4)(B) and (C), effective six months after Nov. 16, 1990, see section 602(f) of Pub. L. 101–595, set out as a note under section 4502 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

SAVINGS CLAUSE

Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIV, §7406(c), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1787, provided that: "Nothing in this section [amending this section and repealing provisions formerly set out in a note under section 3306 of this title] shall nullify or invalidate the authorities and responsibilities prescribed in section 50.10-10 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations, for the Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection."

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

EXCEPTIONS TO REGULATIONS FOR TOWING VESSELS

Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7316(a), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1763, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating, acting through the relevant Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection, may grant temporary waivers from the towing vessel requirements of chapters 33 and 89 of title 46, United States Code, including the regulations issued under such chapters, for fishing vessels and fish tender vessels.

"(2) APPLICATION.—A temporary waiver issued under paragraph (1) shall be issued at the discretion of the relevant Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection to a fishing vessel or fish tender vessel that—

"(A) performs towing operations of net pens, and associated work platforms, to or from aquaculture or hatchery worksites;

"(B) is less than 200 gross tons;

"(C) does not tow a net pen, or associated work platform, that is carrying cargo or hazardous material, including oil, on board;

"(D) is operating shoreward of the Boundary Line in either—

"(i) Southeast Alaska; or

"(ii) Prince William Sound; and

"(E) complies with all applicable laws for its use in the usual purpose for which it is normally and substantially operated, including any applicable inspection requirements under section 3301 of title 46, United States Code, and exemptions under section 3302 of such title.

"(3) IMPLEMENTATION.—

"(A) REQUEST PROCESS.—The owner or operator of a fishing vessel or fish tender vessel seeking a waiver under paragraph (1) shall submit a request to the relevant Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection.

"(B) CONTENTS.—The request submitted under subparagraph (A) shall include—

"(i) a description of the intended towing operations;

"(ii) the time periods and frequency of the intended towing operations;

"(iii) the location of the intended operations;

"(iv) a description of the manning of the fishing vessel or fish tender vessel during the intended operations; and

"(v) any additional safety, operational, or other relevant information requested by the relevant Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection.

"(4) POLICY.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating may issue policy to facilitate the implementation of this subsection.

"(5) DEFINITIONS.—In this subsection:

"(A) BOUNDARY LINE.—The term 'Boundary Line' has the meaning given such term in section 103 of title 46, United States Code.

"(B) FISHING VESSEL.—The term 'fishing vessel' has the meaning given such term in section 2101 of title 46, United States Code.

"(C) FISH TENDER VESSEL.—The term 'fish tender vessel' has the meaning given such term in section 2101 of title 46, United States Code.

"(D) OFFICER IN CHARGE, MARINE INSPECTION.—The term 'Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection' has the meaning given such term in section 3305 of title 46, United States Code.

"(E) PRINCE WILLIAM SOUND.—The term 'Prince William Sound' means all State and Federal waters within Prince William Sound, Alaska, including the approach to Hinchenbrook Entrance out to, and encompassing, Seal Rocks.

"(F) SOUTHEAST ALASKA.—The term 'Southeast Alaska' means the area along the coast of the State of Alaska from latitude 54 degrees 40 minutes 00 seconds North to 60 degrees 18 minutes 24 seconds North.

"(6) SUNSET.—The authorities under this section shall expire on January 1, 2027."

VESSELS REPAIRED OR RETROFITTED FOR MOBILE TRADE FAIR PURPOSES DEEMED OUT OF COMMISSION

Pub. L. 100–418, title X, §10003(b), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1573, provided that: "For one year after the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 23, 1988], a vessel that is undergoing repair or retrofitting for use solely for mobile trade fair purposes is deemed to be out of commission under section 3302(e) of title 46, United States Code, during the repair or retrofitting."

EXEMPTION OF CERTAIN FISHING AND FISH PROCESSING VESSELS

Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §403, July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 450, as amended by Pub. L. 99–36, §3, May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 68; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §306, Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1925, provided that:

"(a) Except as provided in chapter 37 of title 46, United States Code, and before January 1, 1991, a fishing, fish processing, or fish tender vessel, that is (1) not more than 500 gross tons and (2) in operation, or contracted for purchase to be used as a vessel of this type, before July 1, 1984, may transport cargo to or from a place in Alaska not receiving weekly transportation service from a port of the United States by an established water common carrier, except that the service limitation does not apply to transporting cargo of a type not accepted by that carrier.

"(b) A fish processing vessel entered into service before January 1, 1988, and more than 1,600 gross tons or entered into service after December 31, 1987, and having more than 16 individuals on board primarily employed in the preparation of fish or fish products is exempt from section 8702(b) of title 46, United States Code, until 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act [July 17, 1984].

"(c) As used in subsections (a) and (b) of this section, the terms 'fishing vessel', 'fish processing vessel' and 'fish tender vessel' shall have the meaning given to such terms in section 2101 of title 46, United States Code."

OFFSHORE SUPPLY VESSELS; TRANSITION PERIOD FOR COMPLIANCE WITH VESSEL INSPECTION PROVISIONS

Pub. L. 98–89, §2(i), Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 599, provided that: "Each offshore supply vessel described in section 3302(g) of title 46 (as enacted by section 1 of this Act), that was registered with the Secretary of Transportation under section 4426a(7) of the Revised Statutes [former 46 U.S.C. 404–1(7)] but that has not been inspected by the Secretary shall be held to be in compliance with all applicable vessel inspection laws pending verification by actual inspection or until one year after the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 26, 1983], whichever is earlier."

§3303. Reciprocity for foreign vessels

Except as provided in chapter 37 and section 3505 of this title, a foreign vessel of a country having inspection laws and standards similar to those of the United States and that has an unexpired certificate of inspection issued by proper authority of its respective country, is subject to an inspection to ensure that the condition of the vessel is as stated in its current certificate of inspection. A foreign country is considered to have inspection laws and standards similar to those of the United States when it is a party to an International Convention for Safety of Life at Sea to which the United States Government is currently a party. A foreign certificate of inspection may be accepted as evidence of lawful inspection only when presented by a vessel of a country that has by its laws accorded to vessels of the United States visiting that country the same privileges accorded to vessels of that country visiting the United States.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 512; Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5210(a), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5076; Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1111, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3970; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §411(b), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1046.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3303	46:362(a) 46:390c 46:391a(3)

Section 3303 acknowledges the international concept of comity with respect to recognizing inspection laws and standards for foreign flag vessels that are similar to those of the United States. If a foreign nation is signatory to the International Convention for Safety of Life at Sea, it is presumed to have similar standards. However, reciprocity requirements for foreign flag tank vessels are included in chapter 37. Subsection (b) provides for a mutual waiver of fees for the inspection of foreign vessels carrying passengers from the United States.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2004—Pub. L. 108–293 inserted "and section 3505" after "chapter 37".

1996—Pub. L. 104–324 struck out subsec. (a) designation and subsec. (b) which read as follows: "The Secretary shall collect and pay to the Treasury the same fees for the inspection of foreign vessels carrying passengers from the United States that a foreign country charges vessels of the United States trading to the ports of that country. The Secretary may waive at any time the collection of the fees on notice of the proper

authorities of any country concerned that the collection of fees for the inspection of vessels of the United States has been discontinued."

1992—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102–587, in first sentence, struck out "only" after "is subject" and substituted "the condition of the vessel is" for "the condition of the vessel's propulsion equipment and lifesaving equipment are".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

INTERNATIONAL CONVENTION FOR SAFETY OF LIFE AT SEA

For International Conventions for the Safety of Life at Sea to which the United States has been a party, see section 1602 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters, and notes thereunder.

§3304. Transporting individuals in addition to crew

(a) A documented vessel transporting cargo that transports not more than 12 individuals in addition to the crew on international voyages, or not more than 16 individuals in addition to the crew on other voyages, is not subject to inspection as a passenger vessel or a small passenger vessel if the vessel is otherwise subject to inspection under this chapter.

(b) Except when subsection (e) of this section applies, before an individual in addition to the crew is transported on a vessel as permitted by this section, the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of the vessel first shall notify the individual of the presence on board of dangerous articles as defined by law, and of other conditions or circumstances that would constitute a risk of safety to the individual on board.

(c) A privilege authorized by this section applies to a vessel of a foreign country that affords a similar privilege to vessels of the United States in trades not restricted to vessels under its own flag.

(d) A fishing, fish processing, or fish tender vessel that transports not more than 12 individuals employed in the fishing industry in addition to the crew is not subject to inspection as a passenger or small passenger vessel.

(e) The Secretary may by regulation allow individuals in addition to the crew to be transported in an emergency or under section 2304 of this title.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 513; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(4), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 446; Pub. L. 99–307, §1(5)(A), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 444.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3304	46:390–393 46:882

Section 3304 permits the carriage of not more than 12 individuals in addition to the crew on international voyages or not more than 16 individuals in addition to the crew on other voyages without subjecting a documented vessel carrying cargo to the inspection requirements of a passenger vessel. This section permits the bulk of vessels subject to the International Convention for Safety of Life at Sea to carry up to 12 passengers and to permit other cargo vessels, primarily those engaged in the coastwise trade, to carry up to 16 passengers without being categorized as passenger vessels. It also requires that these individuals be notified of the presence of dangerous articles or other conditions or circumstances that constitute a risk of safety. This is of prime importance on tank vessels that carry flammable or hazardous cargoes.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1986—Pub. L. 99–307, §1(5)(A)(i), substituted "Transporting" for "Carrying" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99–307, §1(5)(A)(ii), substituted "transporting cargo that transports" for "carrying cargo that carries" and inserted "if the vessel is otherwise subject to inspection under this chapter".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99–307, §1(5)(A)(iii), substituted "Except when subsection (e) of this section applies, before" for "Before" and "transported" for "carried".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99–307, §1(5)(A)(iv), substituted "A privilege" for "The privilege".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 99–307, §1(5)(A)(v), added subsec. (e).

1984—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 98–364 added subsec. (d).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

§3305. Scope and standards of inspection

(a)(1) The inspection process shall ensure that a vessel subject to inspection—

(A) is of a structure suitable for the service in which it is to be employed;

(B) is equipped with proper appliances for lifesaving, fire prevention, and firefighting;

(C) has suitable accommodations for the crew, sailing school instructors, and sailing school students, and for passengers on the vessel if authorized to carry passengers;

(D) has an adequate supply of potable water for drinking and washing by passengers and crew;

(E) is in a condition to be operated with safety to life and property; and

(F) complies with applicable marine safety laws and regulations.

(2) In determining the adequacy of the supply of potable water under paragraph (1)(D), the Secretary shall consider—

(A) the size and type of vessel;

(B) the number of passengers or crew on board;

(C) the duration and routing of voyages; and

(D) guidelines for potable water recommended by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and the Public Health Service.

(b) If an inspection, or examination under section 3308 of this title, reveals that a life preserver, lifesaving device, or firehose is defective and incapable of being repaired, the owner or master shall destroy the life preserver, lifesaving device, or firehose in the presence of the official conducting the inspection or examination.

(c) A nautical school vessel operated by a civilian nautical school or by an educational institution under section 558 of title 40 shall be inspected like a small passenger vessel or a passenger vessel, depending on its tonnage.

(d)(1) The Commandant of the Coast Guard shall ensure that Officers in Charge, Marine Inspections consistently interpret regulations and standards under this subtitle and chapter 700 to avoid disruption and undue expense to industry.

(2)(A) Subject to subparagraph (B), in the event of a disagreement regarding the condition of a vessel or the interpretation of a regulation or standard referred to in subsection (a) between a local Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection conducting an inspection of the vessel and the Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection that issued the most recent certificate of inspection for the vessel, such Officers shall seek to resolve such disagreement.

(B) If a disagreement described in subparagraph (A) involves vessel design or plan review, the Coast Guard marine safety center shall be included in all efforts to resolve such disagreement.

(C) If a disagreement described in subparagraph (A) or (B) cannot be resolved, the local Officer in

Charge, Marine Inspection shall submit to the Commandant of the Coast Guard, through the cognizant Coast Guard district commander, a request for a final agency determination of the matter in disagreement.

(3) The Commandant of the Coast Guard shall—

(A) provide to each person affected by a decision or action by an Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection or by the Coast Guard marine safety center all information necessary for such person to exercise any right to appeal such decision or action; and

(B) if such an appeal is filed, process such appeal under parts 1 through 4 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on the date of enactment of the Frank LoBiondo Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2018.

(4) In this section, the term "Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection" means any person from the civilian or military branch of the Coast Guard who—

(A) is designated as such by the Commandant; and

(B) under the superintendence and direction of the cognizant Coast Guard district commander, is in charge of an inspection zone for the performance of duties with respect to the inspections under, and enforcement and administration of, subtitle II, chapter 700, and regulations under such laws.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 513; Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(1), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 67; Pub. L. 99–640, §13(e), Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3551; Pub. L. 107–217, §3(m)(2), Aug. 21, 2002, 116 Stat. 1302; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §416, Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1047; Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(f), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 564; Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §501(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4268; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8507(a)(1), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4752.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3305	46:369
	46:390a
	46:391
	46:392
	46:395
	46:404–1
	46:405
	46:406
	46:407
	46:408
	46:660a
	46:881

Section 3305 consolidates, at one place, the basic scope of coverage of the inspection process. It is to be noted that the time difference in enactment of various statutes has resulted in some anomalies. Thus, for example, R.S. 4417 (46 U.S.C. 391) which had originally set periods of inspection and vested authority in "local inspectors" was expanded over the years to provide the base for inspection of certain classes of vessels as well as setting out the periods and scope. The distillation of inspection objectives and standards in later laws and the transfer of all functions of separately created bureaus and functionaries to the Coast Guard permit this consolidation. There are those who have a desire to see the scope and standards of inspection be more specific in law similar to those presently applicable to boilers and boiler plating that predate 1871. The Committee believes this serves no useful purpose since the specifics are either antiquated or too limiting and have, in fact, been superceded by the statutorily authorized adoption of various industrial specifications, standards, and codes by the Coast Guard. These include the American Bureau of Shipping (ABS), American

Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), American National Standards Institute (ANSI), American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), American Welding Society (AWS), Underwriters Laboratories (UL), and many others. In addition, Coast Guard regulations must also implement and conform to the numerous international maritime safety treaties to which the United States is signatory. The Committee expects that the regulatory flexibility being provided will not reduce the present vessel inspection requirements that have been historically developed.

Section 3305(a) establishes the statutory scope of the Coast Guard's vessel inspection authority and duty. The inspection process shall ensure that a vessel is of suitable structure, equipment, and accommodations, is maintained in an operating condition consistent with safety of life and property, and complies with applicable marine safety laws and regulations.

Subsection (b) requires that defective life preservers and firehose be destroyed in the presence of the inspecting official, normally a qualified Coast Guard marine inspector. The Committee believes that if this equipment is defective for use on an inspected vessel, it should be destroyed so that it cannot be used on an uninspected or recreational vessel.

Subsection (c) provides flexibility in the inspection of various sizes of nautical school vessels.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of the Frank LoBiondo Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2018, referred to in subsec. (d)(3)(B), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 115–282, which was approved Dec. 4, 2018.

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (d)(3)(B). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "Frank LoBiondo Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2018" for "Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2017".

2018—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 115–282 added subsec. (d).

2006—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 109–241 realigned margins.

2004—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 108–293, §416(b), designated existing provisions as par. (1), redesignated former pars. (1) to (6) as subpars. (A) to (F), respectively, of par. (1), and added par. (2).

Subsec. (a)(4) to (6). Pub. L. 108–293, §416(a), added par. (4) and redesignated former pars. (4) and (5) as (5) and (6), respectively.

2002—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 107–217 substituted "section 558 of title 40" for "section 13 of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 1986".

1986—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99–640 inserted "or by an educational institution under section 13 of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 1986".

1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99–36 substituted "lifesaving" and "life preserver, lifesaving device, or firehose" for "life-saving" and "life preserver or firehose", respectively.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

§3306. Regulations

(a) To carry out this part and to secure the safety of individuals and property on board vessels subject to inspection, including covered small passenger vessels (as defined in subsection (n)(5)), the Secretary shall prescribe necessary regulations to ensure the proper execution of, and to carry out, this part in the most effective manner for—

(1) the design, construction, alteration, repair, and operation of those vessels, including superstructures, hulls, fittings, equipment, appliances, propulsion machinery, auxiliary machinery, boilers, unfired pressure vessels, piping, electric installations, and accommodations for passengers and crew, sailing school instructors, and sailing school students;

(2) lifesaving equipment and its use;

(3) firefighting equipment, its use, and precautionary measures to guard against fire;
(4) inspections and tests related to paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of this subsection; and
(5) the use of vessel stores and other supplies of a dangerous nature, including rechargeable devices utilized for personal or commercial electronic equipment.

(b)(1) Equipment and material subject to regulation under this section may not be used on any vessel without prior approval of the Secretary.
(2) Except with respect to use on a public vessel, the Secretary may treat an approval of equipment or materials by a foreign government as approval by the Secretary for purposes of paragraph (1) if the Secretary determines that—
(A) the design standards and testing procedures used by that government meet the requirements of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974;
(B) the approval of the equipment or material by the foreign government will secure the safety of individuals and property on board vessels subject to inspection; and
(C) for lifesaving equipment, the foreign government—
(i) has given equivalent treatment to approvals of lifesaving equipment by the Secretary; and
(ii) otherwise ensures that lifesaving equipment approved by the Secretary may be used on vessels that are documented and subject to inspection under the laws of that country.

(c) In prescribing regulations for sailing school vessels, the Secretary shall consult with representatives of the private sector having experience in the operation of vessels likely to be certificated as sailing school vessels. The regulations shall—
(1) reflect the specialized nature of sailing school vessel operations, and the character, design, and construction of vessels operating as sailing school vessels; and
(2) include requirements for notice to sailing school instructors and sailing school students about the specialized nature of sailing school vessels and applicable safety regulations.

(d) In prescribing regulations for nautical school vessels operated by the United States Merchant Marine Academy or by a State maritime academy (as defined in section 51102 of this title), the Secretary shall consider the function, purpose, and operation of the vessels, their routes, and the number of individuals who may be carried on the vessels.
(e) When the Secretary finds it in the public interest, the Secretary may suspend or grant exemptions from the requirements of a regulation prescribed under this section related to lifesaving and firefighting equipment, muster lists, ground tackle and hawsers, and bilge systems.
(f) In prescribing regulations for offshore supply vessels, the Secretary shall consider the characteristics, methods of operation, and the nature of the service of offshore supply vessels.
(g) In prescribing regulations for fish processing or fish tender vessels, the Secretary shall consult with representatives of the private sector having experience in the operation of these vessels. The regulations shall reflect the specialized nature and economics of fish processing or fish tender vessel operations and the character, design, and construction of fish processing or fish tender vessels.
(h) The Secretary shall establish appropriate structural fire protection, manning, operating, and equipment requirements for vessels of at least 100 gross tons but less than 300 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title carrying not more than 150 passengers on domestic voyages, which meet the eligibility criteria of section 2113(4) of this title.
(i) The Secretary shall establish appropriate structural fire protection, manning, operating, and equipment requirements for former public vessels of the United States of at least 100 gross tons but less that 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title carrying not more than 150 passengers on domestic voyages, which meet the eligibility criteria of section 2113(4) of this title.
(j) The Secretary may establish by regulation a safety management system appropriate for the characteristics, methods of operation, and nature of service of towing vessels.

(k)(1) Each vessel of the United States that is constructed under a contract entered into after the date of enactment of the Maritime Safety Act of 2010, or that is delivered after January 1, 2011, with an aggregate capacity of 600 cubic meters or more of oil fuel, shall comply with the requirements of Regulation 12A under Annex I to the Protocol of 1978 relating to the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, entitled "Oil Fuel Tank Protection".

(2) The Secretary may prescribe regulations to apply the requirements described in Regulation 12A to vessels described in paragraph (1) that are not otherwise subject to that convention. Any such regulation shall be considered to be an interpretive rule for the purposes of section 553 of title 5.

(3) In this subsection the term "oil fuel" means any oil used as fuel in connection with the propulsion and auxiliary machinery of the vessel in which such oil is carried.

(l)(1) The Secretary shall require that a freight vessel inspected under this chapter be outfitted with distress signaling and location technology for the higher of—

(A) the minimum complement of officers and crew specified on the certificate of inspection for such vessel; or

(B) the number of persons onboard the vessel; and

(2) the requirement described in paragraph (1) shall not apply to vessels operating within the baseline from which the territorial sea of the United States is measured.

(m)(1) The Secretary shall promulgate regulations requiring companies to maintain records of all incremental weight changes made to freight vessels inspected under this chapter, and to track weight changes over time to facilitate rapid determination of the aggregate total.

(2) Records maintained under paragraph (1) shall be stored, in paper or electronic form, onboard such vessels for not less than 3 years and shoreside for the life of the vessel.

(n) COVERED SMALL PASSENGER VESSELS.—

(1) REGULATIONS.—The Secretary shall prescribe additional regulations to secure the safety of individuals and property on board covered small passenger vessels.

(2) COMPREHENSIVE REVIEW.—In order to prescribe the regulations under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall conduct a comprehensive review of all requirements (including calculations), in existence on the date of enactment of the Elijah E. Cummings Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2020, that apply to covered small passenger vessels, with respect to fire detection, protection, and suppression systems, and avenues of egress, on board such vessels.

(3) REQUIREMENTS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Subject to subparagraph (B), the regulations prescribed under paragraph (1) shall include, with respect to covered small passenger vessels, regulations for—

(i) marine firefighting training programs to improve crewmember training and proficiency, including emergency egress training for each member of the crew, to occur for all members on the crew—

(I) at least monthly while such members are employed on board the vessel; and

(II) each time a new crewmember joins the crew of such vessel;

(ii) in all areas on board the vessel where passengers and crew have access, including dining areas, sleeping quarters, and lounges—

(I) interconnected fire detection equipment, including audible and visual alarms; and

(II) additional fire extinguishers and other firefighting equipment;

(iii) the installation and use of monitoring devices to ensure the wakefulness of the required night watch;

(iv) increased fire detection and suppression systems (including additional fire extinguishers) on board such vessels in unmanned areas with machinery or areas with other potential heat sources;

(v) all general areas accessible to passengers to have no less than 2 independent avenues of escape that are—

(I) constructed and arranged to allow for free and unobstructed egress from such areas;

(II) located so that if one avenue of escape is not available, another avenue of escape is available; and

(III) not located directly above, or dependent on, a berth;

(vi) the handling, storage, and operation of flammable items, such as rechargeable batteries, including lithium ion batteries utilized for commercial purposes on board such vessels;

(vii) passenger emergency egress drills for all areas on the vessel to which passengers have access, which shall occur prior to the vessel beginning each excursion; and

(viii) all passengers to be provided a copy of the emergency egress plan for the vessel.

(B) APPLICABILITY TO CERTAIN COVERED SMALL PASSENGER VESSELS.—The requirements described in clauses (iii), (v), (vii), and (viii) of subparagraph (A) shall only apply to a covered small passenger vessel that has overnight passenger accommodations.

(4) INTERIM REQUIREMENTS.—

(A) INTERIM REQUIREMENTS.—The Secretary shall, prior to issuing final regulations under paragraph (1), implement interim requirements to enforce the requirements under paragraph (3).

(B) IMPLEMENTATION.—The Secretary shall implement the interim requirements under subparagraph (A) without regard to chapters 5 and 6 of title 5 and Executive Order Nos. 12866 and 13563 (5 U.S.C. 601 note; relating to regulatory planning and review and relating to improving regulation and regulatory review).

(5) DEFINITION OF COVERED SMALL PASSENGER VESSEL.—In this subsection, the term "covered small passenger vessel"—

(A) except as provided in subparagraph (B), means a small passenger vessel (as defined in section 2101) that—

(i) has overnight passenger accommodations; or

(ii) is operating on a coastwise or oceans route; and

(B) does not include a ferry (as defined in section 2101) or fishing vessel (as defined in section 2101).

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 513; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(5), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 446; Pub. L. 103–206, title V, §512(a), Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2442; Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §604(a), (c), title VII, §712, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3930, 3931, 3936; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §415(b), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1047; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(12), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1703; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §612, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2970; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3542(b), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2324; Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §206(a)(1), Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3746; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIV [LXXXIV], §8441(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4742.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3306	46:366
	46:369
	46:375
	46:390b
	46:392
	46:404
	46:408
	46:411

46:412
46:416
46:420
46:445
46:459
46:473
46:477
46:478
46:479
46:481
46:482
46:483
46:489
46:526p
46:1295f(c)

Section 3306 contains broad authority to prescribe regulations for the proper inspection and certification of vessels. It provides regulatory flexibility for meeting technological changes. The section also permits flexibility in prescribing regulations for nautical school vessels operated by the United States Merchant Marine Academy or by a State maritime academy. The Secretary may suspend or grant exemptions to certain limited inspection requirements when the Secretary finds that this is necessary in the public interest. It also contains the requirement that in regulating offshore supply vessels consideration must be given to the special nature of their operations.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of the Maritime Safety Act of 2010, referred to in subsec. (k)(1), is the date of enactment of title VI of Pub. L. 111–281, which was approved Oct. 15, 2010.

The date of enactment of the Elijah E. Cummings Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2020, referred to in subsec. (n)(2), is the date of enactment of div. G of Pub. L. 116–283, which was approved Jan. 1, 2021.

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–283, §8441(a)(1)(A), inserted ", including covered small passenger vessels (as defined in subsection (n)(5))" after "vessels subject to inspection" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 116–283, §8441(a)(1)(B), inserted ", including rechargeable devices utilized for personal or commercial electronic equipment" before period at end.

Subsec. (n). Pub. L. 116–283, §8441(a)(2), added subsec. (n).

2018—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 115–232 substituted "section 2113(4)" for "section 2113(5)".

Subsecs. (l), (m). Pub. L. 115–265 added subsecs. (l) and (m).

2010—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 111–281 added subsec. (k).

2006—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 109–304 substituted "section 51102 of this title" for "section 1302(3) of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 App. U.S.C. 1295a(3))".

2004—Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 108–293 added subsec. (j).

1996—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 104–324, §604(c), substituted "paragraphs (1), (2), and (3)" for "clauses (1)–(3)".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 104–324, §604(a), amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: "Equipment subject to regulation under this section may not be used on any vessel without prior approval as prescribed by regulation."

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 104–324, §712(1), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "300 gross tons".

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 104–324, §712(2), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an

alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "500 gross tons".

1993—Subsecs. (h), (i). Pub. L. 103–206 added subsecs. (h) and (i).

1984—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 98–364 added subsec. (g).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

SMALL PASSENGER VESSELS WITH OVERNIGHT ACCOMMODATIONS

Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(b), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 826, provided that:

"(1) EXTENSION AUTHORITY.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—The Commandant of the Coast Guard shall not enforce the requirements of section 3306(n)(3)(A)(v) of title 46, United States Code, against an operator of an overnight fishing charter before April 1, 2024.

"(B) PLAN REQUIRED.—Not later than April 1, 2024, an operator of an overnight fishing charter not in compliance with such section 3306(n)(3)(A)(v) shall submit to the Commandant a plan for complying with such requirements.

"(C) EXTENSION.—On and after April 1, 2024, with respect to an operator of an overnight fishing charter which has submitted a plan for compliance in accordance with subparagraph (B), a captain of the port may extend the period described under subparagraph (A) until a date not later than January 1, 2026.

"(2) LIMITATION.—Without further Congressional action, a captain of the port may not extend the period of nonenforcement of the requirements of section 3306(n)(3)(A)(v) of title 46, United States Code, with respect to an overnight fishing charter, to a date later than January 1, 2026.

"(3) NOTICE TO PASSENGERS.—Beginning on the date on which the requirements under section 3306(n)(3)(A)(v) of title 46, United States Code, take effect, the owner or operator of a vessel for which an extension is granted under paragraph (1)(C) shall provide on the website of such owner or operator of the vessel, the vessel, and each ticket for a passenger a prominently displayed notice that the vessel is exempt from meeting the Coast Guard safety compliance standards concerning egress as described in such section.

"(4) OVERNIGHT FISHING CHARTER DEFINED.—In this section, the term 'overnight fishing charter' means a vessel that—

"(A) is engaged in 'charter fishing' as such term is defined in section 3 of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1802); and

"(B) has overnight accommodations for passengers."

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 103–206, title V, §512(b), (c), Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2442, provided that:

"(b) The Secretary of Transportation shall, within twenty-four months of the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 20, 1993], prescribe regulations establishing the structural fire protection, manning, operating, and equipment requirements for vessels which meet the requirements of subsections (h) and (i) of section 3306 of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this Act.

"(c) Before the Secretary of Transportation prescribes regulations under subsections (h) and (i) of section 3306 of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this Act, the Secretary may prescribe the route, service, manning, and equipment for those vessels based on existing passenger vessel and small passenger vessel regulations."

DEADLINES FOR IMPLEMENTATION OF DISTRESS SIGNALING AND LOCATION TECHNOLOGY REQUIREMENT AND PROMULGATION OF INCREMENTAL WEIGHT CHANGE RECORDS REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §206(a)(2), Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3746, provided that: "The Secretary shall—

"(A) begin implementing the requirement under section 3306(l) of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this subsection, by not later than 1 year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 2018]; and

"(B) promulgate the regulations required under section 3306(m) of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this subsection, by not later than 1 year after the date of the enactment of this Act."

[For definition of "Secretary" as used in section 206(a)(2) of Pub. L. 115–265, set out above, see section

203 of Pub. L. 115–265, set out as a note under section 2101 of this title.]

OIL SPILL RESPONSE; EXCEPTIONS TO REGULATIONS FOR TOWING VESSELS

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXIII, §11316, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4089, which related to updating Coast Guard policies with respect to exceptions to the applicability of subchapter M of chapter I of this title for certain oil spill response vessels, was repealed by Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIV, §7406(b), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1787.

REQUIREMENTS FOR DUKW AMPHIBIOUS PASSENGER VESSELS

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11502, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4127, provided that:

"(a) RULEMAKING REQUIRED.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 6 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022], the Commandant [of the Coast Guard] shall initiate a rulemaking to establish additional safety standards for DUKW amphibious passenger vessels.

"(2) DEADLINE FOR REGULATIONS.—The regulations issued under paragraph (1) shall take effect not later than 18 months after the Commandant promulgates a final rule pursuant to such paragraph.

"(b) REQUIREMENTS.—The regulations required under subsection (a) shall include the following:

"(1) A requirement that operators of DUKW amphibious passenger vessels provide reserve buoyancy for such vessels through passive means, including watertight compartmentalization, built-in flotation, or such other means as determined appropriate by the Commandant, in order to ensure that such vessels remain afloat and upright in the event of flooding, including when carrying a full complement of passengers and crew.

"(2) An identification, in consultation with the Under Secretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere, of limiting environmental conditions, such as weather, in which DUKW amphibious passenger vessels may safely operate and a requirement that such limiting conditions be described in the certificate of inspection of each DUKW amphibious passenger vessel.

"(3) Requirements that an operator of a DUKW amphibious passenger vessel—

"(A) proceed to the nearest harbor or safe refuge in any case in which a watch or warning is issued for wind speeds exceeding the wind speed equivalent used to certify the stability of such DUKW amphibious passenger vessel; and

"(B) maintain and monitor a weather monitor radio receiver at the operator station of the vessel that is automatically activated by the warning alarm device of the National Weather Service.

"(4) A requirement that—

"(A) operators of DUKW amphibious passenger vessels inform passengers that seat belts may not be worn during waterborne operations;

"(B) before the commencement of waterborne operations, a crew member shall visually check that the seatbelt of each passenger is unbuckled; and

"(C) operators or crew maintain a log recording the actions described in subparagraphs (A) and (B).

"(5) A requirement for annual training for operators and crew of DUKW amphibious passenger vessels, including—

"(A) training for personal flotation and seat belt requirements, verifying the integrity of the vessel at the onset of each waterborne departure, identification of weather hazards, and use of National Weather Service resources prior to operation; and

"(B) training for crew to respond to emergency situations, including flooding, engine compartment fires, man-overboard situations, and in water emergency egress procedures.

"(c) CONSIDERATION.—In issuing the regulations required under subsection (a), the Commandant shall consider whether personal flotation devices should be required for the duration of the waterborne transit of a DUKW amphibious passenger vessel.

"(d) WAIVER.—The Commandant may waive the reserve buoyancy requirements described in subsection (b)(1) for a DUKW amphibious passenger vessel if the Commandant certifies in writing, using the best available science, to the appropriate congressional committees that such requirement is not practicable or technically or practically achievable for such vessel.

"(e) NOTICE TO PASSENGERS.—A DUKW amphibious passenger vessel that receives a waiver under subsection (d) shall provide a prominently displayed notice on its website, ticket counter, and each ticket for passengers that the vessel is exempt from meeting Coast Guard safety compliance standards concerning reserve buoyancy.

"(f) INTERIM REQUIREMENTS.—Prior to issuing final regulations pursuant to subsection (a) and not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022], the Commandant shall require that

operators of DUKW amphibious passenger vessels implement the following requirements:

"(1) Remove the canopies and any window coverings of such vessels for waterborne operations, or install in such vessels a canopy that does not restrict horizontal or vertical escape by passengers in the event of flooding or sinking.

"(2) If a canopy and window coverings are removed from any such vessel pursuant to paragraph (1), require that all passengers wear a personal flotation device approved by the Coast Guard before the onset of waterborne operations of such vessel.

"(3) Reengineer such vessels to permanently close all unnecessary access plugs and reduce all through-hull penetrations to the minimum number and size necessary for operation.

"(4) Install in such vessels independently powered electric bilge pumps that are capable of dewatering such vessels at the volume of the largest remaining penetration in order to supplement an operable Higgins pump or a dewatering pump of equivalent or greater capacity.

"(5) Install in such vessels not fewer than 4 independently powered bilge alarms.

"(6) Conduct an in-water inspection of any such vessel after each time a through-hull penetration of such vessel has been removed or uncovered.

"(7) Verify through an in-water inspection the watertight integrity of any such vessel at the outset of each waterborne departure of such vessel.

"(8) Install underwater LED lights that activate automatically in an emergency.

"(9) Otherwise comply with any other provisions of relevant Coast Guard guidance or instructions in the inspection, configuration, and operation of such vessels.

"(g) IMPLEMENTATION.—The Commandant shall implement the interim requirements under subsection (f) without regard to chapters 5 and 6 of title 5, United States Code, and Executive Order Nos. 12866 and 13563 (5 U.S.C. 601 note).

"(h) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

"(1) APPROPRIATE CONGRESSIONAL COMMITTEES.—The term 'appropriate congressional committees' means the Committee Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate.

"(2) DUKW AMPHIBIOUS PASSENGER VESSEL.—The term 'DUKW amphibious passenger vessel' means a vessel that uses, modifies, or is derived from the GMC DUKW–353 design, and which is operating as a small passenger vessel in waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, as defined in section 2.38 of title 33, Code of Federal Regulations (or a successor regulation)."

HISTORIC WOOD SAILING VESSELS

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11505, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4134, provided that:

"(a) REPORT ON HISTORIC WOOD SAILING VESSELS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022], the Comptroller General of the United States shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives a report evaluating the practicability of the application of section 3306(n)(3)(A)(v) of title 46, United States Code, to historic wood sailing vessels.

"(2) ELEMENTS.—The report required under paragraph (1) shall include the following:

"(A) An assessment of the compliance, as of the date on which the report is submitted under paragraph (1), of historic wood sailing vessels with section 3306(n)(3)(A)(v) of title 46, United States Code.

"(B) An assessment of the safety record of historic wood sailing vessels.

"(C) An assessment of any risk that modifying the requirements under such section would have on the safety of passengers and crew of historic wood sailing vessels.

"(D) An evaluation of the economic practicability of requiring the compliance of historic wood sailing vessels with such section and whether such compliance would meaningfully improve safety of passengers and crew in a manner that is both feasible and economically practicable.

"(E) Any recommendations to improve safety in addition to, or in lieu of, applying such section to historic wood sailing vessels.

"(F) Any other recommendations as the Comptroller General determines are appropriate with respect to the applicability of such section to historic wood sailing vessels.

"(G) An assessment to determine if historic wood sailing vessels could be provided an exemption to such section and the changes to legislative or rulemaking requirements, including modifications to

section 177.500(q) of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations (as in effect on the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022]), that are necessary to provide the Commandant [of the Coast Guard] the authority to make such exemption or to otherwise provide for such exemption.

"(b) CONSULTATION.—In completing the report required under subsection (a), the Comptroller General may consult with—

"(1) the National Transportation Safety Board;

"(2) the Coast Guard; and

"(3) the maritime industry, including relevant federally funded research institutions, nongovernmental organizations, and academia.

"(c) WAIVER FOR COVERED HISTORIC VESSELS.—The captain of a port may waive the requirements of section 3306(n)(3)(A)(v) of title 46, United States Code, with respect to covered historic vessels for not more than 2 years after the date on which the report required under subsection (a) is submitted.

"(d) WAIVER FOR OTHER HISTORIC WOOD SAILING VESSELS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The captain of a port may, upon the request of the owner or operator of a historic wood sailing vessel that is not a covered historic vessel, waive the requirements of section 3306(n)(3)(A)(v) of title 46, United States Code, with respect to the historic wood sailing vessel for not more than 2 years after date on which the report required under subsection (a) is submitted, if the captain of the port—

"(A) determines that it is technically infeasible for the historic wood sailing vessel to comply with the requirements described in section 3306(n)(3)(A)(v) of title 46, United States Code, due to its age; and

"(B) approves the alternative arrangements proposed for the historic wood sailing vessel in accordance with paragraph (2).

"(2) REQUEST AND ALTERNATIVE ARRANGEMENTS.—An owner or operator of a historic wood sailing vessel requesting a waiver under paragraph (1) shall submit such a request to the captain of a port that includes the alternative arrangements the owner or operator will take to ensure an equivalent level of safety, to the maximum extent practicable, to the requirements under section 3306(n)(3)(A)(v) of title 46, United States Code.

"(e) SAVINGS CLAUSE.—Nothing in this section shall limit any authority available, as of the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022], to the captain of a port with respect to safety measures or any other authority as necessary for the safety of historic wood sailing vessels.

"(f) NOTICE TO PASSENGERS.—Any vessel that receives a waiver under subsection (c) or subsection (d) shall, beginning on the date on which the requirements under section 3306(n)(3)(v) of title 46, United States Code, take effect, provide a prominently displayed notice on its website, ticket counter, and each ticket for a passenger that the vessel is exempt from meeting the Coast Guard safety compliance standards concerning egress as described under such section.

"(g) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

"(1) COVERED HISTORIC VESSELS.—The term 'covered historic vessels' means each of the following:

"(A) Adventuress (Official Number 210877).

"(B) American Eagle (Official Number 229913).

"(C) Angelique (Official Number 623562).

"(D) Heritage (Official Number 649561).

"(E) J & E Riggin (Official Number 226422).

"(F) Ladona (Official Number 222228).

"(G) Lady Washington (Official Number 944970).

"(H) Lettie G. Howard (Official Number 222838).

"(I) Lewis R. French (Official Number 015801).

"(J) Mary Day (Official Number 288714).

"(K) Stephen Taber (Official Number 115409).

"(L) Victory Chimes (Official Number 136784).

"(M) Grace Bailey (Official Number 085754).

"(N) Mercantile (Official Number 214388).

"(O) Mistress (Official Number 509004).

"(P) Wendameen (Official Number 210173).

"(2) HISTORIC WOOD SAILING VESSEL.—The term 'historic wood sailing vessel' means a covered small passenger vessel, as defined in section 3306(n)(5) of title 46, United States Code, that—

"(A) has overnight passenger accommodations;

"(B) is a wood sailing vessel;

"(C) has a hull constructed of wood;

"(D) is principally equipped for propulsion by sail, even if the vessel has an auxiliary means of production;

"(E) has no fewer than three masts; and

"(F) was constructed before 1986."

ALCOHOL AT SEA

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11606, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4149, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Commandant [of the Coast Guard] shall seek to enter into an agreement with the National Academy of Sciences not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022] under which the National Academy of Sciences shall prepare an assessment to determine safe levels of alcohol consumption and possession by crew members aboard vessels of the United States engaged in commercial service, except when such possession is associated with the commercial sale to individuals aboard the vessel who are not crew members.

"(b) ASSESSMENT.—The assessment prepared pursuant to subsection (a) shall—

"(1) take into account the safety and security of every individual on the vessel;

"(2) take into account reported incidences of sexual harassment or sexual assault, as defined in section 2101 of title 46, United States Code; and

"(3) provide any appropriate recommendations for any changes to laws, regulations, or employer policies.

"(c) SUBMISSION.—Upon completion of the assessment under this section, the National Academy of Sciences shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate, the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives, the Commandant, and the Secretary the assessment prepared pursuant to subsection (a).

"(d) REGULATIONS.—The Commandant—

"(1) shall, not later than 180 days after receiving the submission of the assessment under subsection (c), review the changes to regulations recommended in such assessment; and

"(2) taking into account the safety and security of every individual on vessels of the United States engaged in commercial service, may issue regulations relating to alcohol consumption on such vessels.

"(e) SAVINGS CLAUSE.—To the extent the Commandant issues regulations establishing safe levels of alcohol consumption in accordance with subsection (d), the Commandant may not issue regulations which prohibit—

"(1) the owner or operator of a vessel from imposing additional restrictions on the consumption of alcohol, including the prohibition of the consumption of alcohol on such vessels; and

"(2) possession of alcohol associated with the commercial sale to individuals aboard the vessel who are not crew members.

"(f) REPORT REQUIRED.—If, by the date that is 2 years after the receipt of the assessment under subsection (c), the Commandant does not issue regulations under subsection (d), the Commandant shall provide a report by such date to the committees described in subsection (c)—

"(1) containing the rationale for not issuing such regulations; and

"(2) providing other recommendations as necessary to ensure safety at sea."

[For definition of "Secretary" as used in section 11606 of Pub. L. 117–263, set out above, see section 11002 of Pub. L. 117–263, set out as a note under section 106 of Title 14, Coast Guard.]

NEGOTIATIONS TO AMEND INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS RELATED TO VESSEL EQUIPMENT

Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §206(b), Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3746, provided that: "Not later than 1 year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 2018], the Commandant [of the Coast Guard] shall seek to enter into negotiations through the International Maritime Organization to amend regulation 25 of chapter II–1 of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea to require a high-water alarm sensor in each cargo hold of a freight vessel (as that term is defined in section 2101 of title 46, United States Code), that connects with audible and visual alarms on the navigation bridge of the vessel."

Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §208(a)(1), Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3747, provided that: "Not later than 1 year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 2018], the Commandant [of the Coast Guard] shall seek to enter into negotiations through the International Maritime Organization to amend regulation 20 of chapter V of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea to require that all voyage data recorders are installed in a float-free arrangement and contain an integrated emergency position indicating radio beacon."

TOWING VESSELS

Pub. L. 111–281, title VII, §701(c), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2980, provided that: "No later than 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 15, 2010], the Secretary shall issue a notice of proposed rulemaking regarding inspection requirements for towing vessels required under section 3306(j) of title 46, United States Code. The Secretary shall issue a final rule pursuant to that rulemaking no later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act."

["Secretary" as used in section 701(c) of Pub. L. 111–281, set out above, probably means the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating, see section 701(a)(1) of Pub. L. 111–281, set out as a note under section 1321 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.]

FOREIGN APPROVALS

Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §604(b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3931, provided that: "The Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with other interested Federal agencies, shall work with foreign governments to have those governments approve the use of the same equipment and materials on vessels documented under the laws of those countries that the Secretary requires on United States documented vessels."

INTERNATIONAL CONVENTION FOR SAFETY OF LIFE AT SEA

For International Conventions for the Safety of Life at Sea to which the United States has been a party, see section 1602 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters, and notes thereunder.

§3307. Frequency of inspection

Each vessel subject to inspection under this part shall undergo an initial inspection for certification before being put into service. After being put into service—

(1) each passenger vessel, nautical school vessel, and small passenger vessel allowed to carry more than 12 passengers on a foreign voyage shall be inspected at least once a year; and

(2) any other vessel shall be inspected at least once every 5 years.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 514; Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §605(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3931.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3307(1)	46:391(c) 46:1295f(c)
3307(2)	46:390a(a) 46:404–1(6)(i)
3307(3)	46:391(b) 46:392(b) 46:404–1(6)(ii)

Section 3307 requires each vessel subject to inspection to undergo an initial inspection prior to being placed in service. This is normally started during the construction or reconstruction phase and is a continuing process until final certification for operation in a particular trade. Subsequent periodic inspections are also required for various types of vessels. It is to be noted that a freight vessel of less than 100 gross tons shall be inspected at 3 year intervals while the larger freight vessel has a 2 year inspection period. This is being done to retain the existing procedure of issuing 3 year certificates of inspection to smaller vessels, however, this does not prevent periodic inspections or examinations at intervening periods.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Par. (1). Pub. L. 104–324, §605(a)(1), substituted ", nautical school vessel, and small passenger vessel allowed to carry more than 12 passengers on a foreign voyage" for "and nautical school vessel" and inserted "and" at end.

Pars. (2), (3). Pub. L. 104–324, §605(a)(2), (3), redesignated par. (3) as (2), substituted "5 years" for "2 years", and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: "each small passenger vessel, freight vessel or offshore supply vessel of less than 100 gross tons, and sailing school vessel shall be inspected at least once every 3 years; and".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

§3308. Examinations

In addition to inspections required by section 3307 of this title, the Secretary shall examine or have examined—

(1) each vessel subject to inspection at proper times to ensure compliance with law and regulations; and

(2) crewmember accommodations on each vessel subject to inspection at least once a month or when the vessel enters United States ports to ensure that the accommodations are—

(A) of the size required by law and regulations;

(B) properly ventilated and in a clean and sanitary condition; and

(C) equipped with proper plumbing and mechanical appliances required by law and regulations, and the appliances are in good working condition.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 514; Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §603(c), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3930.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3308	46:435 46:660a 46:660b

Section 3308 requires the Secretary to carry out additional inspections as might be necessary to ensure compliance with applicable laws and regulations, and to ensure that accommodations are maintained in a sanitary condition and that all appliances are in good working order.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "or have examined" after "examine" in introductory provisions.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

§3309. Certificate of inspection

(a) When an inspection under section 3307 of this title has been made and a vessel has been found to be in compliance with the requirements of law and regulations, a certificate of inspection, in a

form prescribed by the Secretary, shall be issued to the vessel.

(b) The Secretary may issue a temporary certificate of inspection in place of a regular certificate of inspection issued under subsection (a) of this section.

(c) At least 30 days before the current certificate of inspection issued to a vessel under subsection (a) of this section expires, the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of the vessel shall submit to the Secretary in writing a notice that the vessel—

(1) will be required to be inspected; or

(2) will not be operated so as to require an inspection.

(d) A certificate of inspection issued under this section shall be signed by the senior Coast Guard member or civilian employee who inspected the vessel, in addition to the officer in charge of marine inspection.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 515; Pub. L. 98–498, title II, §211(a), Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2303; Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §606, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3931; Pub. L. 111–281, title V, §522(c), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2957.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3309	46:390c 46:391a(8) 46:395(d) 46:399

Section 3309 provides for the issuance of a certificate of inspection that attests to the fact that the vessel has been found to be in compliance with the applicable maritime safety laws and regulations. Under this provision the Coast Guard can issue a temporary certificate of inspection upon compliance with the applicable laws or regulations to facilitate the preparation, processing, and forwarding of the regular certificate of inspection to the vessel. A temporary certificate does not imply less than satisfactory compliance.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–281 added subsec. (d).

1996—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 104–324 struck out "(but not more than 60 days)" after "30 days" in introductory provisions.

1984—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98–498 added subsec. (c).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–498 effective 180 days after Oct. 19, 1984, see section 214 of Pub. L. 98–498, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2306 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

§3310. Records of certification

The Secretary shall keep records of certificates of inspection of vessels and of all acts in the examination and inspection of vessels, whether of approval or disapproval.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 515.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3310	46:414

Section 3310 contains the requirement for maintaining inspection records.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

§3311. Certificate of inspection required

(a) Except as provided in subsection (b), a vessel subject to inspection under this part may not be operated without having on board a certificate of inspection issued under section 3309 of this title.

(b) The Secretary may direct the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel subject to inspection under this chapter and not having on board a certificate of inspection—

(1) to have the vessel proceed to mooring and remain there until a certificate of inspection is issued;

(2) to take immediate steps necessary for the safety of the vessel, individuals on board the vessel, or the environment; or

(3) to have the vessel proceed to a place to make repairs necessary to obtain a certificate of inspection.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 515; Pub. L. 98–498, title II, §211(b), Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2304.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3311	46:390c 46:395 46:399

Section 3311 prohibits the operation of a vessel subject to inspection without having on board a valid certificate of inspection.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1984—Pub. L. 98–498 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), substituted "Except as provided in subsection (b), a vessel" for "A vessel", struck out "valid" before "certificate of inspection", and added subsec. (b).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

§3312. Display of certificate of inspection

The certificate of inspection issued to a vessel under section 3309 of this title shall be displayed, suitably framed, in a conspicuous place on the vessel. When it is not practicable to so display the certificate, it shall be carried in the manner prescribed by regulation.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 515.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3312	46:400

Section 3312 requires the conspicuous display of the certificate of inspection to provide notice that the vessel is in compliance with applicable maritime safety laws and regulations. The section also applies to the posting of the temporary certificate of inspection.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

§3313. Compliance with certificate of inspection

(a) During the term of a vessel's certificate of inspection, the vessel must be in compliance with its conditions, unless relieved by a suspension or an exemption granted under section 3306(e) of this title.

(b) When a vessel is not in compliance with its certificate or fails to meet a standard prescribed by this part or a regulation prescribed under this part—

(1) the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge shall be ordered in writing to correct the noted deficiencies promptly;

(2) the Secretary may permit any repairs to be made at a place most convenient to the owner, charterer, or managing operator when the Secretary decides the repairs can be made with safety to those on board and the vessel;

(3) the vessel may be required to cease operating at once; and

(4) if necessary, the certificate shall be suspended or revoked.

(c) The vessel's certificate of inspection shall be revoked if a condition unsafe to life that is ordered to be corrected under this section is not corrected at once.

(d) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel whose certificate has been suspended or revoked shall be given written notice immediately of the suspension or revocation. The owner or master may appeal to the Secretary the suspension or revocation within 30 days of receiving the notice, as provided by regulations prescribed by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 515.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3313	46:390c 46:391a(8)

Section 3313 requires a vessel to be maintained in a condition so as to always be in compliance with the applicable laws and regulations. Here the master, owner, or other responsible party is required to maintain the vessel to inspection standards and to correct all deficiencies observed. When a vessel is not in compliance with its certificate the responsible parties shall be ordered in writing to correct the deficiencies promptly. The section provides flexibility as to when and where these deficiencies may be corrected consistent with the safety of the vessel and crew. The section provides authority to require the vessel to cease operating or, if necessary, to suspend or revoke its certificate of inspection when found not to be in compliance with its certificate or regulations. The owner or master, or other responsible party must be given written notice and may appeal this action within 30 days of receiving the notice.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

§3314. Expiration of certificate of inspection

(a) If the certificate of inspection of a vessel expires when the vessel is on a foreign voyage, the vessel may complete the voyage to a port of the United States within 30 days of the expiration of the certificate without incurring the penalties for operating without a certificate of inspection.

(b) If the certificate of inspection would expire within 15 days of sailing on a foreign voyage from a United States port, the vessel shall secure a new certificate of inspection before sailing, unless the voyage is scheduled to be completed prior to the expiration date of the certificate. If a voyage scheduled to be completed in that time is not so completed, the applicable penalties may be enforced unless the failure to meet the schedule was beyond the control of the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of the vessel.

(c) When the certificate of inspection of a foreign vessel carrying passengers, operated on a regularly established line, expires at sea after leaving the country to which it belongs or when the vessel is in the United States, the Secretary may permit the vessel to sail on its regular route without further inspection than would have been required had the certificate not expired. This permission applies only when the vessel will be regularly inspected and issued a certificate before the vessel's next return to the United States.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 516.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3314	46:362 46:399

Section 3314 contains the procedures for when a vessel's certificate of inspection expires while on a foreign voyage.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

§3315. Disclosure of defects and protection of informants

(a) Each individual licensed under part E of this subtitle shall assist in the inspection or examination under this part of the vessel on which the individual is serving, and shall point out defects and imperfections known to the individual in matters subject to regulations and inspection. The individual also shall make known to officials designated to enforce this part, at the earliest opportunity, any marine casualty producing serious injury to the vessel, its equipment, or individuals on the vessel.

(b) An official may not disclose the name of an individual providing information under this section, or the source of the information, to a person except a person authorized by the Secretary. An official violating this subsection is liable to disciplinary action under applicable law.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 516.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3315	46:234

Section 3315 requires an individual holding a license issued by the Coast Guard to assist inspection authorities and to make defects and imperfections known to those authorities. Anyone licensed also has a duty to report any marine casualty producing serious injury to the vessel, its equipment, or individuals on board the vessel. These licensed individuals who have this statutorily imposed duty to disclose are also protected by prohibiting any government official from disclosing the identity or source of the information except as authorized by the Secretary.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

ANONYMOUS SAFETY ALERT SYSTEM

Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §217, Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3752, provided that:

"(a) PILOT PROGRAM.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 2018], the Commandant [of the Coast Guard] shall establish an anonymous safety alert pilot program.

"(b) REQUIREMENTS.—The pilot program established under subsection (a) shall provide an anonymous reporting mechanism to allow crew members to communicate urgent and dire safety concerns directly and in a timely manner with the Coast Guard."

§3316. Classification societies

(a) Each department, agency, and instrumentality of the United States Government shall recognize the American Bureau of Shipping as its agent in classifying vessels owned by the Government and in matters related to classification, as long as the Bureau is maintained as an organization having no capital stock and paying no dividends. The Secretary and the Secretary of Transportation each shall appoint one representative (except when the Secretary is the Secretary of Transportation, in which case the Secretary shall appoint both representatives) who shall represent the Government on the executive committee of the Bureau. The Bureau shall agree that the representatives shall be accepted by it as active members of the committee. The representatives shall serve without compensation, except for necessary traveling expenses.

(b)(1) The Secretary may delegate to the American Bureau of Shipping or another classification society recognized by the Secretary as meeting acceptable standards for such a society, for a vessel documented or to be documented under chapter 121 of this title, the authority to—

(A) review and approve plans required for issuing a certificate of inspection required by this part;

(B) conduct inspections and examinations; and

(C) issue a certificate of inspection required by this part and other related documents.

(2) The Secretary may make a delegation under paragraph (1) to a foreign classification society only—

(A) to the extent that the government of the foreign country in which the society is headquartered delegates authority and provides access to the American Bureau of Shipping to inspect, certify, and provide related services to vessels documented in that country;

(B) if the foreign classification society has offices and maintains records in the United States; and

(C) if the Secretary of State determines that the foreign classification society does not provide comparable services in or for a state sponsor of terrorism.

(3) When an inspection or examination has been delegated under this subsection, the Secretary's delegate—

(A) shall maintain in the United States complete files of all information derived from or necessarily connected with the inspection or examination for at least 2 years after the vessel ceases to be certified; and

(B) shall permit access to those files at all reasonable times to any officer, employee, or member of the Coast Guard designated—

(i) as a marine inspector and serving in a position as a marine inspector; or

(ii) in writing by the Secretary to have access to those files.

(c)(1) A classification society (including an employee or agent of that society) may not review, examine, survey, or certify the construction, repair, or alteration of a vessel in the United States unless the society has applied for approval under this subsection and the Secretary has reviewed and approved that society with respect to the conduct of that society under paragraph (2).

(2) The Secretary may approve a person for purposes of paragraph (1) only if the Secretary determines that—

(A) the vessels surveyed by the person while acting as a classification society have an adequate safety record; and

(B) the person has an adequate program to—

(i) develop and implement safety standards for vessels surveyed by the person;

(ii) make the safety records of the person available to the Secretary in an electronic format;

(iii) provide the safety records of a vessel surveyed by the person to any other classification society that requests those records for the purpose of conducting a survey of the vessel; and

(iv) request the safety records of a vessel the person will survey from any classification society that previously surveyed the vessel.

(d)(1) The Secretary may delegate to the American Bureau of Shipping or another classification society recognized by the Secretary as meeting acceptable standards for such a society, for a United States offshore facility, the authority to—

(A) review and approve plans required for issuing a certificate of inspection, a certificate of compliance, or any other certification and related documents issued by the Coast Guard pursuant to regulations issued under section 30 of the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act (43 U.S.C. 1356); and

(B) conduct inspections and examinations.

(2) The Secretary may make a delegation under paragraph (1) to a foreign classification society only if—

(A) the foreign society has offices and maintains records in the United States;

(B)(i) the government of the foreign country in which the foreign society is headquartered—

(I) delegates that authority to the American Bureau of Shipping; or

(II) does not delegate that authority to any classification society; or

(ii) the Secretary has entered into an agreement with the government of the foreign country in which the foreign society is headquartered that—

(I) ensures the government of the foreign country will accept plan review, inspections, or examinations conducted by the American Bureau of Shipping and provide equivalent access to inspect, certify, and provide related services to offshore facilities located in that country or operating under the authority of that country; and

(II) is in full accord with principles of reciprocity in regards to any delegation contemplated by the Secretary under paragraph (1); and

(C) the Secretary of State determines that the foreign classification society does not provide comparable services in or for a state sponsor of terrorism.

(3) If an inspection or examination is conducted under authority delegated under this subsection, the person to which the authority was delegated—

(A) shall maintain in the United States complete files of all information derived from or necessarily connected with the inspection or examination for at least 2 years after the United States offshore facility ceases to be certified; and

(B) shall permit access to those files at all reasonable times to any officer, employee, or member of the Coast Guard designated—

(i) as a marine inspector and serving in a position as a marine inspector; or

(ii) in writing by the Secretary to have access to those files.

(4) For purposes of this subsection—

(A) the term "offshore facility" means any installation, structure, or other device (including any vessel not documented under chapter 121 of this title or the laws of another country), fixed or floating, that dynamically holds position or is temporarily or permanently attached to the seabed or subsoil under the sea; and

(B) the term "United States offshore facility" means any offshore facility, fixed or floating, that dynamically holds position or is temporarily or permanently attached to the seabed or subsoil under the territorial sea of the United States or the outer Continental Shelf (as that term is defined in section 2 of the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act (43 U.S.C. 1331)), including any vessel, rig, platform, or other vehicle or structure subject to regulation under section 30 of the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act (43 U.S.C. 1356).

(5) CLARIFICATION ON AUTHORITY.—Nothing in this subsection authorizes the Secretary to make a delegation under paragraph (2) to a classification society from the People's Republic of China.

(e) The Secretary shall revoke a delegation made to a classification society under subsection (b) or (d) if the Secretary of State determines that the classification society provides comparable services in or for a state sponsor of terrorism.

(f)(1) Upon request of an owner or operator of an offshore supply vessel, the Secretary shall delegate the authorities set forth in paragraph (1) of subsection (b) with respect to such vessel to a classification society to which a delegation is authorized under that paragraph. A delegation by the Secretary under this subsection shall be used for any vessel inspection and examination function carried out by the Secretary, including the issuance of certificates of inspection and all other related documents.

(2) If the Secretary determines that a certificate of inspection or related document issued under authority delegated under paragraph (1) of this subsection with respect to a vessel has reduced the operational safety of that vessel, the Secretary may terminate the certificate or document,

respectively.

(3) Not later than 2 years after the date of the enactment of the Howard Coble Coast Guard and Maritime Transportation Act of 2014, and for each year of the subsequent 2-year period, the Secretary shall provide to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report describing—

(A) the number of vessels for which a delegation was made under paragraph (1);

(B) any savings in personnel and operational costs incurred by the Coast Guard that resulted from the delegations; and

(C) based on measurable marine casualty and other data, any impacts of the delegations on the operational safety of vessels for which the delegations were made, and on the crew on those vessels.

(g)(1) There shall be within the Coast Guard an office that conducts comprehensive and targeted oversight of all recognized organizations that act on behalf of the Coast Guard.

(2) The staff of the office shall include subject matter experts, including inspectors, investigators, and auditors, who possess the capability and authority to audit all aspects of such recognized organizations.

(3) In this subsection the term "recognized organization" has the meaning given that term in section 2.45–1 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on the date of the enactment of the Hamm Alert Maritime Safety Act of 2018.

(h) In this section, the term "state sponsor of terrorism" means any country the government of which the Secretary of State has determined has repeatedly provided support for acts of international terrorism pursuant to section 6(j) [1] of the Export Administration Act of 1979 (as continued in effect under the International Emergency Economic Powers Act), section 620A of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, section 40 of the Arms Export Control Act, or any other provision of law.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 516; Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §607(a), (b)(1), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3931, 3932; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §413(a), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1046; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §622, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2978; Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §304, Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1563; Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §315, Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3050; Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §215(a), Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3751; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7346, Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1778.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3316	46:9 (less (c)) 46:369 46:881

Section 3316 prescribes the relationship between certain classification societies and the Federal Government with respect to the promotion of maritime safety and the security of life and property at sea. Briefly stated, a classification society, like the American Bureau of Shipping (ABS), establishes and administers standards for the design, construction, and periodic survey of commercial vessels, yachts, and other marine structures. Classification certifies adherence to these standards, thus representing that a vessel or structure possesses the structural and mechanical fitness required for its intended service.

The section requires that a Federal department, agency, or instrumentality recognize the American Bureau of Shipping as its agent for classing vessels owned by the Federal Government and in any matters related to classification. In effect, the ABS has a statutory monopoly on classing vessels of the United States Government. Additionally, the section contains the authority to permit the Secretary to rely on reports, documents, and certificates issued by a classification society that is similar to the American Bureau of Shipping. However, a "similar classification society" continues to mean one that is organized like the American Bureau of Shipping with attendant governmental representation.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of the Howard Coble Coast Guard and Maritime Transportation Act of 2014, referred to in subsec. (f)(3), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 113–281, which was approved Dec. 18, 2014.

The date of the enactment of the Hamm Alert Maritime Safety Act of 2018, referred to in subsec. (g)(3), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 115–265, which was approved Oct. 11, 2018.

Section 6(j) of the Export Administration Act of 1979, referred to in subsec. (h), was classified to section 4605(j) of Title 50, War and National Defense, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 115–232, div. A, title XVII, §1766(a), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2232.

The International Emergency Economic Powers Act, referred to in subsec. (h), is title II of Pub. L. 95–223, Dec. 28, 1977, 91 Stat. 1626, which is classified generally to chapter 35 (§1701 et seq.) of Title 50, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1701 of Title 50 and Tables.

Section 620A of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (h), is classified to section 2371 of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse.

Section 40 of the Arms Export Control Act, referred to in subsec. (h), is classified to section 2780 of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (d)(2)(B)(i). Pub. L. 119–60, §7346(1), amended cl. (i) generally. Prior to amendment, cl. (i) read as follows: "the government of the foreign country in which the foreign society is headquartered delegates that authority to the American Bureau of Shipping; or".

Subsec. (d)(5). Pub. L. 119–60, §7346(2), added par. (5).

2018—Subsecs. (g), (h). Pub. L. 115–265 added subsec. (g) and redesignated former subsec. (g) as (h).

2014—Subsecs. (f), (g). Pub. L. 113–281 added subsec. (f) and redesignated former subsec. (f) as (g).

2012—Subsec. (b)(2)(C). Pub. L. 112–213, §304(1), added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (d)(2)(C). Pub. L. 112–213, §304(2), added subpar. (C).

Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 112–213, §304(3), added subsecs. (e) and (f).

2010—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–281, §622(b), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: "A classification society (including an employee or agent of that society) may not review, examine, survey, or certify the construction, repair, or alteration of a vessel in the United States unless—

"(A) the society has applied for approval under this subsection and the Secretary has reviewed and approved that society with respect to the conduct of that society under paragraph (2); or

"(B) the society is a full member of the International Association of Classification Societies."

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–281, §622(a), added subsec. (d).

2004—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 108–293 added subsec. (c).

1996—Pub. L. 104–324, §607(b)(1), substituted "Classification societies" for "United States classification societies" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–324, §607(a)(3), which directed the substitution of "American Bureau of Shipping" for "Bureau", was executed by making the substitution the first place appearing, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 104–324, §607(a)(1), (2), redesignated subsec. (b) as (a) and struck out former subsec. (a) which read as follows: "In carrying out this part, the Secretary may rely on reports, documents, and certificates issued by the American Bureau of Shipping or a similar United States classification society, or an agent of the Bureau or society."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 104–324, §607(a)(2), (4), redesignated subsec. (c) as (b), added pars. (1) and (2), redesignated former par. (2) as (3), and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: "To the maximum extent practicable, the Secretary may delegate to the Bureau or a similar United States classification society, or an agent of the Bureau or society, the inspection or examination, in the United States or in a foreign country, of a vessel documented or to be documented as a vessel of the United States. The Bureau, society, or agent may issue the certificate of inspection required by this part and other certificates essential to documentation." Former subsec. (b) redesignated (a).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 104–324, §607(a)(2), redesignated subsec. (c) as (b).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 104–324, §607(a)(1), struck out subsec. (d) which read as follows: "The Secretary also may make an agreement with or use the Bureau or a similar United States classification society, or an agent of the Bureau or society, for reviewing and approving plans required for issuing a certificate of inspection."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2004 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §413(b), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1046, provided that: "Section 3316(c)(1) of title 46, United States Code, shall apply with respect to operation as a classification society on or after January 1, 2005."

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

DEADLINE FOR ESTABLISHMENT OF RECOGNIZED ORGANIZATION OVERSIGHT OFFICE

Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §215(b), Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3751, provided that: "The Commandant of the Coast Guard shall establish the office required by the amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] by not later than 2 years after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 2018]."

REVIEW OF AUTHORITIES DELEGATED TO RECOGNIZED ORGANIZATIONS FOR ALTERNATIVE COMPLIANCE PROGRAM

Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §219, Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3752, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 1 year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 2018], the Commandant [of the Coast Guard] shall review the authorities that have been delegated to recognized organizations for the alternative compliance program as described in subpart D of part 8 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations, and, if necessary, revise or establish policies and procedures to ensure those delegated authorities are being conducted in a manner to ensure safe maritime transportation.

"(b) BRIEFING.—Not later than 1 year after the date of the enactment of this Act, the Commandant shall provide to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives a briefing on the implementation of subsection (a)."

[For definition of "recognized organizations" as used in section 219 of Pub. L. 115–265, set out above, see section 203 of Pub. L. 115–265, set out as a note under section 2101 of this title.]

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§3317. Fees

(a) The Secretary may prescribe by regulation fees for inspecting or examining a small passenger vessel or a sailing school vessel.

(b) When an inspection or examination under this part of a documented vessel or a foreign vessel is conducted at a foreign port or place at the request of the owner or managing operator of the vessel, the owner or operator shall reimburse the Secretary for the travel and subsistence expenses incurred by the personnel assigned to perform the inspection or examination. Amounts received as reimbursement for these expenses shall be credited to the appropriation for operations and support of the Coast Guard.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 517; Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5211, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5076; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8513(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4761.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3317	46:390a(b) 46:382b–1

Section 3317 provides the regulatory authority for prescribing fees for the inspection of small passenger vessels and sailing school vessels. Although section 2110 generally prohibits fees of this nature, this provision is consistent with the exception that permits specific statutory authorization for fee collection. Subsection (b) requires the reimbursement of expenses for the conduct of an inspection or examination at a foreign port or place when done there for the convenience of the owner or operator of the vessel.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "operations and support" for "operating expenses".

1992—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102–587 substituted "under this part of a documented vessel or a foreign vessel" for "under this chapter of a documented vessel".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

§3318. Penalties

(a) Except as otherwise provided in this part, the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel operated in violation of this part or a regulation prescribed under this part, and a person violating a regulation that applies to a small passenger vessel, freight vessel of less than 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title, or sailing school vessel, are liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(b)(1) A person that knowingly manufactures, sells, offers for sale, or possesses with intent to sell, any equipment subject to this part, and the equipment is so defective as to be insufficient to accomplish the purpose for which it is intended, commits a class D felony.

(2) A person commits a class D felony if the person—

(A) alters or services lifesaving, fire safety, or any other equipment subject to this part for compensation; and

(B) by that alteration or servicing, intentionally renders that equipment unsafe and unfit for the purpose for which it is intended.

(c) A person that employs a means or device whereby a boiler may be subjected to a pressure greater than allowed by the terms of the vessel's certificate of inspection commits a class D felony.

(d) A person that deranges or hinders the operation of any machinery or device employed on a vessel to denote the state of steam or water in any boiler or to give warning of approaching danger, or permits the water level of any boiler when in operation of a vessel to fall below its prescribed

low-water line, commits a class D felony.

(e) A person that alters, defaces, obliterates, removes, or destroys any plans or specifications required by and approved under a regulation prescribed under section 3306 of this title, with intent to deceive or impede any official of the United States in carrying out that official's duties, commits a class A misdemeanor.

(f) A person commits a class D felony if the person—

(1) forges or counterfeits with intent to make it appear genuine any mark or stamp prescribed for material to be tested and approved under section 3306 of this title or a regulation prescribed under section 3306;

(2) knowingly uses, affixes, or causes to be used or affixed, any such forged or counterfeited mark or stamp to or on material of any description;

(3) with fraudulent intent, possesses any such mark, stamp, or other device knowing it to be forged or counterfeited; or

(4) with fraudulent intent, marks or causes to be marked with the trademark or name of another, material required to be tested and approved under section 3306 of this title or a regulation prescribed under section 3306.

(g) A person is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000, if the person—

(1) interferes with the inspection of a nautical school vessel;

(2) violates a regulation prescribed for a nautical school vessel;

(3) is an owner of a nautical school vessel operated in violation of this part; or

(4) is an officer or member of the board of directors of a school, organization, association, partnership, or corporation owning a nautical school vessel operated in violation of a regulation prescribed for a nautical school vessel.

(h) An owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel that fails to give the notice required by section 3304(b) of this title is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $1,000. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(i) A person violating section 3309(c) of this title is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $1,000.

(j)(1) An owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel required to be inspected under this chapter operating the vessel without the certificate of inspection is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 for each day during which the violation occurs, except when the violation involves operation of a vessel of less than 1,600 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title, the penalty is not more than $2,000 for each day during which the violation occurs. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(2) A person is not liable for a penalty under this subsection if—

(A) the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of the vessel has notified the Secretary under section 3309(c) of this title;

(B) the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of the vessel has complied with all other directions and requirements for obtaining an inspection under this part; and

(C) the Secretary believes that unforeseen circumstances exist so that it is not feasible to conduct a scheduled inspection before the expiration of the certificate of inspection.

(k) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel failing to comply with a direction issued by the Secretary under section 3311(b) of this title is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 for each day during which the violation occurs. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(l) A person committing an act described by subsections (b)–(f) of this section is liable to the

Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000. If the violation involves the operation of a vessel, the vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 517; Pub. L. 98–498, title II, §211(c), Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2304; Pub. L. 99–307, §1(6), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 445; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4302(b), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 538; Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §310, title VII, §713, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3919, 3936; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(13), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1703.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3318	46:369(e) 46:390d 46:398 46:403 46:407 46:408 46:410 46:413 46:436 46:481(d) 46:1295f(d)(2), (3)

Section 3318 provides for a number of specific civil and criminal penalties.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 109–304 struck out period after "felony".

1996—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–324, §713(1), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 104–324, §310, designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

Subsec. (j)(1). Pub. L. 104–324, §713(2), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "1,600 gross tons".

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(b)(1), substituted "commits a class D felony" for "shall be fined not more than $10,000, imprisoned for not more than 5 years, or both".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(b)(2), substituted "commits a class D felony" for "shall be fined not more than $5,000, imprisoned for not more than 5 years, or both".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(b)(3), substituted "commits a class D felony" for "shall be fined not more than $5,000, imprisoned for not more than 5 years, or both".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(b)(4), substituted "commits a class A misdemeanor" for "shall be fined not more than $10,000, imprisoned for not more than 2 years, or both".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(b)(5), substituted "commits a class D felony." for "shall be fined not less than $1,000 but not more than $10,000, and imprisoned for not less than 2 years but not more than 5 years,".

1986—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 99–307 in provision preceding par. (1) substituted "than" for "then" in two places.

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98–498, §211(c)(1), substituted "Except as otherwise provided in this part, the" for "The" and "not more than $5,000" for "$1,000, except that when the violation involves operation of a barge, the penalty is $500".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98–498, §211(c)(2), substituted "$5,000" for "$2,000".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 98–498, §211(c)(3), substituted "$5,000" for "$2,000".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 98–498, §211(c)(4), substituted "$10,000" for "$2,000".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 98–498, §211(c)(5), substituted "$10,000" for "$5,000".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 98–498, §211(c)(6), substituted "is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000" for "shall be fined not more than $10,000, imprisoned for not more than one year, or both".

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 98–498, §211(c)(7), substituted "Government for a civil penalty of not more than $1,000." for "United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $500."

Subsecs. (i) to (l). Pub. L. 98–498, §211(c)(8), added subsecs. (i) to (l).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

CHAPTER 35—CARRIAGE OF PASSENGERS

Sec.

3501. Number of passengers.
3502. List or count of passengers.
3503. Fire-retardant materials.
3504. Notification to passengers.
3505. Prevention of departure.
3506. Copies of laws.
3507. Passenger vessel security and safety requirements.
3508. Crime scene preservation training for passenger vessel crewmembers.
3509. Medical standards.
3510. Additional medical and safety standards.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 35 consolidates the laws that have specific application to the carriage of passengers. They provide special provisions for listing and counting the number of passengers on board a vessel, for notifying the general public of the safety standards that are applicable, and for related control measures.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 117–14, §3(b), May 24, 2021, 135 Stat. 276, added item 3510.

Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8322(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4702, added item 3509.

2016—Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §306(a)(3), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 54, inserted a period at end of items 3507 and 3508.

2010—Pub. L. 111–207, §3(b), July 27, 2010, 124 Stat. 2251, added items 3507 and 3508.

§3501. Number of passengers

(a) Each certificate of inspection issued to a vessel carrying passengers (except a ferry) shall include a statement on the number of passengers that the vessel is permitted to carry.

(b) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel is liable to a person suing them for carrying more passengers than the number of passengers permitted by the certificate of inspection in an amount equal to—

(1) passage money; and

(2) $100 for each passenger in excess of the number of passengers permitted.

(c) An owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel that knowingly carries more passengers than the number of passengers permitted by the certificate of inspection also shall be fined not more than $100, imprisoned for not more than 30 days, or both.

(d) The vessel also is liable in rem for a penalty under this section.

(e) An offshore supply vessel may not carry passengers except in an emergency.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 519; Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(2), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 67.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3501	46:404–1
	46:451
	46:452
	46:462

Section 3501 requires that a vessel carrying passengers, including a passenger vessel as well as a small passenger vessel (except a ferry), shall have on the certificate of inspection a statement as to the number of passengers the vessel is permitted to carry. It also provides penalties for carrying passengers in excess of the number permitted.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(2)(A), struck out the comma after "(except a ferry)".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(2)(B), substituted "carries more passengers than the number of passengers permitted by the certificate of inspection" for "violates subsection (b) of this section".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Chapter effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

§3502. List or count of passengers

(a) The owner, charterer, managing operator, master, or individual in charge of the following categories of vessels carrying passengers shall keep a correct list of passengers received and delivered from day to day:

(1) vessels arriving from foreign ports (except at United States Great Lakes ports from Canadian Great Lakes ports).

(2) seagoing vessels in the coastwise trade.

(3) passenger vessels making voyages of more than 300 miles on the Great Lakes except from a Canadian to a United States port.

(b) The master of a vessel carrying passengers (except a vessel listed in subsection (a) of this section) shall keep a correct count of all passengers received and delivered.

(c) Lists and counts required under this section shall be open to the inspection of designated officials of the Coast Guard and the Customs Service at all times. The total number of passengers shall be provided to the Coast Guard when requested.

(d) This section applies to a foreign vessel arriving at a United States port.

(e) The owner, charterer, managing operator, master, or individual in charge of a passenger vessel failing to make a list or count of passengers as required by this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $100. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 519.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3502	46:460 46:460a 46:461 46:462

Section 3502 is related to section 3501 and requires the listing or counting of passengers on certain vessels. This requirement applies to large as well as small passenger vessels when operating on the types of voyages enumerated. This section also applies to a foreign vessel arriving at a port or place in the United States.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

For transfer of functions, personnel, assets, and liabilities of the United States Customs Service of the Department of the Treasury, including functions of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto, to the Secretary of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 203(1), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6. For establishment of U.S. Customs and Border Protection in the Department of Homeland Security, treated as if included in Pub. L. 107–296 as of Nov. 25, 2002, see section 211 of Title 6, as amended generally by Pub. L. 114–125, and section 802(b) of Pub. L. 114–125, set out as a note under section 211 of Title 6.

§3503. Fire-retardant materials

(a)(1) A passenger vessel of the United States having berth or stateroom accommodations for at least 50 passengers shall be granted a certificate of inspection only if—

(A) the vessel is constructed of fire-retardant materials; and

(B) the vessel—

(i) is operating engines, boilers, main electrical distribution panels, fuel tanks, oil tanks, and generators that meet current Coast Guard regulations; and

(ii) is operating boilers and main electrical generators that are contained within noncombustible enclosures equipped with fire suppression systems.

(2) Before December 1, 2028, this subsection does not apply to any vessel in operation before January 1, 1968, and operating only within the Boundary Line.

(b)(1) The owner or managing operator of an exempted vessel described in subsection (a)(2) shall—

(A) notify in writing prospective passengers, prior to purchase, and each crew member that the vessel does not comply with applicable fire safety standards due primarily to the wooden construction of passenger berthing areas;

(B) display in clearly legible font prominently throughout the vessel, including in each state

room the following: "THIS VESSEL FAILS TO COMPLY WITH SAFETY RULES AND REGULATIONS OF THE U.S. COAST GUARD.";

(C) acquire prior to the vessel entering service, and maintain, liability insurance in an amount to be prescribed by the Federal Maritime Commission;

(D) make annual structural alteration to not less than 10 percent of the areas of the vessel that are not constructed of fire retardant materials;

(E) prioritize alterations in galleys, engineering areas of the vessel, including all spaces and compartments containing, or adjacent to spaces and compartments containing, engines, boilers, main electrical distribution panels, fuel tanks, oil tanks, and generators;

(F) ensure, to the satisfaction of the Secretary, that the combustible fire-load has been reduced pursuant to subparagraph (D) during each annual inspection for certification;

(G) ensure the vessel has multiple forms of egress off the vessel's bow and stern;

(H) provide advance notice to the Coast Guard regarding the structural alterations made pursuant to subparagraph (D) and comply with any noncombustible material requirements prescribed by the Coast Guard;

(I) annually notify all ports of call and State emergency management offices of jurisdiction that the vessel does not comply with the requirement under subsection (a)(1);

(J) provide crewmembers manning such vessel shipboard training that—

(i) is specialized for exempted vessels;

(ii) exceeds requirements related to standards for firefighting training under chapter I of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on October 1, 2017; and

(iii) is approved by the Coast Guard; and

(K) to the extent practicable, take all steps to retain previously trained crew knowledgeable of such vessel or to hire crew trained in operations aboard exempted vessels.

(2) The owner or managing operator of an exempted vessel described in subsection (a)(2) may not disclaim liability to a passenger or crew member of such vessel for death, injury, or any other loss caused by fire due to the negligence of the owner or managing operator.

(3) The Secretary shall—

(A) conduct an annual audit and inspection of each exempted vessel described in subsection (a)(2);

(B) in implementing subparagraph (b)(1)(F), consider, to the extent practicable, the goal of preservation of the historic integrity of such vessel in areas carrying or accessible to passengers or generally visible to the public; and

(C) prescribe regulations to carry out this section, including to prescribe the manner in which prospective passengers are to be notified under paragraph (1)(A).

(4) The penalties provided in section 3504(c) of this title shall apply to a violation of this subsection.

(c) In addition to otherwise applicable penalties, the Secretary may immediately withdraw a certificate of inspection for an exempted vessel described in subsection (a)(2) that does not comply with any requirement under subsection (b).

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 519; Pub. L. 99–307, §1(7)(A), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 445; Pub. L. 102–241, §20, Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2216; Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1133, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3985; Pub. L. 115–282, title VIII, §834, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4318.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3503	46:369(b)

Section 3503 requires the use of fire retardant materials on a vessel having berthing facilities for at least 50

passengers. This requirement in the case of vessels engaged in foreign trade is consistent with our international treaty obligations, which impose extensive and additional fire safety standards. A waiver that grandfathers existing inland river passenger vessels is also included.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Pub. L. 115–282 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows:

"(a) A passenger vessel of the United States having berth or stateroom accommodations for at least 50 passengers shall be granted a certificate of inspection only if the vessel is constructed of fire-retardant materials. Before November 1, 2008, this section does not apply to any vessel in operation before January 1, 1968, and operating only within the Boundary Line.

"(b)(1) When a vessel is exempted from the fire-retardant standards of this section—

"(A) the owner or managing operator of the vessel shall notify prospective passengers that the vessel does not comply with applicable fire safety standards due primarily to the wooden construction of passenger berthing areas;

"(B) the owner or managing operator of the vessel may not disclaim liability to a passenger for death, injury, or any other loss caused by fire due to the negligence of the owner or managing operator;

"(C) the penalties provided in section 3504(c) of this title apply to a violation of this subsection; and

"(D) the owner or managing operator of the vessel shall notify the Coast Guard of structural alterations to the vessel, and with regard to those alterations comply with any noncombustible material requirements that the Coast Guard prescribes for nonpublic spaces. Coast Guard requirements shall be consistent with preservation of the historic integrity of the vessel in areas carrying or accessible to passengers or generally visible to the public.

"(2) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations under this subsection on the manner in which prospective passengers are to be notified."

1996—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–324 substituted "Before November 1, 2008, this section does not apply to any vessel in operation before January 1, 1968, and operating only within the Boundary Line." for "Before November 1, 1998, this section does not apply to a vessel in operation before January 1, 1968, and operating only on the inland rivers."

1991—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102–241, §20(1), substituted "1998" for "1993".

Subsec. (b)(1)(D). Pub. L. 102–241, §20(2), added subpar. (D).

1986—Pub. L. 99–307 designated existing provision as subsec. (a), substituted "November 1, 1993" for "November 1, 1988" and inserted "in operation before January 1, 1968, and" after "to a vessel", and added subsec. (b).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

NOTIFICATION TO PROSPECTIVE PASSENGERS OF NONCOMPLIANCE WITH FIRE-RETARDANT STANDARDS

Pub. L. 99–307, §1(7)(B), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 445, required notification to prospective passengers of a vessel's noncompliance with certain standards until regulations became effective.

§3504. Notification to passengers

(a) A person selling passage on a foreign or domestic passenger vessel having berth or stateroom accommodations for at least 50 passengers and embarking passengers at United States ports for a coastwise or an international voyage shall notify each prospective passenger of the safety standards applicable to the vessel in a manner prescribed by regulation.

(b) All promotional literature or advertising through any medium of communication in the United States offering passage or soliciting passengers for ocean voyages anywhere in the world shall include information similar to the information described in subsection (a) of this section, and shall specify the registry of each vessel named, as a part of the advertisement or description of the voyage. Except for the inclusion of the country of registry of the vessel, this subsection does not apply to voyages by vessels meeting the safety standards described in section 3505 of this title.

(c) A person violating this section or a regulation prescribed under this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $10,000. If the violation involves the sale of tickets for passage, the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, individual in charge, or any other person involved in each violation also is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of $500 for each ticket sold. The vessel on which passage is sold also is liable in rem for a violation of this section or a regulation prescribed under this section.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 519.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3504	46:362(b)

Section 3504 requires notification to the public of the safety standards that are applicable to certain foreign flag or United States passenger vessels. In addition, all promotional literature or advertising that offers passage or solicits passengers for ocean voyages anywhere in the world shall include a safety standard statement and shall specify the registry of the vessel. If the vessel meets the international standards to which the United States adheres, then the safety standard statement need not be included. In all other cases the type of safety standard statement that must be included is as prescribed by regulation. This section is intended to place the United States public on notice as to the degree of fire safety compliance of a foreign-flag passenger vessel that does not operate or depart from a port or place in the United States but does embark passengers from the United States at nearby foreign ports. Departures from foreign ports are undertaken because the foreign-flag passenger vessel cannot comply with the safety standards applicable to a United States flag passenger vessel.

§3505. Prevention of departure

Notwithstanding section 3303 of this title, a foreign vessel carrying a citizen of the United States as a passenger or embarking passengers from a United States port may not depart from a United States port if the Secretary finds that the vessel does not comply with the standards stated in the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea to which the United States Government is currently a party.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 520; Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5210(b), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5076; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §411(a), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1045.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3505	46:362(c)

Section 3505 prohibits the departure from a United States port or place of any passenger vessel of more than 100 gross tons having berthing for at least 50 passengers, if the vessel does not comply with the international maritime safety standards applicable to United States vessels.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2004—Pub. L. 108–293 reenacted section catchline without change and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Notwithstanding section 3303(a) of this title, a foreign vessel may not depart from a United States port with passengers who are embarked at that port, if the Secretary finds that the vessel does not comply with the standards stated in the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea to which the United States Government is currently a party."

1992—Pub. L. 102–587 substituted "foreign vessel may not depart" for "foreign or domestic vessel of more than 100 gross tons having berth or stateroom accommodations for at least 50 passengers may not depart".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

INTERNATIONAL CONVENTION FOR SAFETY OF LIFE AT SEA

For International Conventions for the Safety of Life at Sea to which the United States has been a party, see section 1602 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters, and notes thereunder.

§3506. Copies of laws

A master of a passenger vessel shall keep on board a copy of this subtitle, to be provided by the Secretary at reasonable cost. If the master fails to do so, the master is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $200.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 520.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3506	46:492

Section 3506 requires the master of a passenger vessel to keep on board a copy of subtitle II of title 46, U.S.C. Copies of the subtitle shall be provided by the Secretary at reasonable cost.

§3507. Passenger vessel security and safety requirements

(a) VESSEL DESIGN, EQUIPMENT, CONSTRUCTION, AND RETROFITTING REQUIREMENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Each vessel to which this subsection applies shall comply with the following design and construction standards:

(A) The vessel shall be equipped with ship rails that are located not less than 42 inches above the cabin deck.

(B) Each passenger stateroom and crew cabin shall be equipped with entry doors that include peep holes or other means of visual identification.

(C) For any vessel the keel of which is laid after the date of enactment of the Cruise Vessel Security and Safety Act of 2010, each passenger stateroom and crew cabin shall be equipped with—

(i) security latches; and

(ii) time-sensitive key technology.

(D) The vessel shall integrate technology that can be used for capturing images of passengers or detecting passengers who have fallen overboard, to the extent that such technology is available.

(E) The vessel shall be equipped with a sufficient number of operable acoustic hailing or other such warning devices to provide communication capability around the entire vessel when operating in high risk areas (as defined by the United States Coast Guard).

(2) FIRE SAFETY CODES.—In administering the requirements of paragraph (1)(C), the Secretary shall take into consideration fire safety and other applicable emergency requirements established by the U.S. Coast Guard and under international law, as appropriate.

(b) VIDEO RECORDING.—

(1) REQUIREMENT TO MAINTAIN SURVEILLANCE.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The owner of a vessel to which this section applies shall maintain a video surveillance system to assist in documenting crimes on the vessel and in providing evidence for the prosecution of such crimes.

(B) PLACEMENT OF VIDEO SURVEILLANCE EQUIPMENT.—

(i) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 18 months after the date of the enactment of the Elijah E. Cummings Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2020, the Commandant in consultation with other relevant Federal agencies or entities as determined by the Commandant, shall establish guidance for performance of the risk assessment described in paragraph (2) regarding the appropriate placement of video surveillance equipment in passenger and crew common areas where there is no reasonable expectation of privacy.

(ii) RISK ASSESSMENT.—Not later than 1 year after the Commandant establishes the guidance described in paragraph (1), the owner shall conduct the risk assessment required under paragraph (1) and shall—

(I) evaluate the placement of video surveillance equipment to deter, prevent, and record a sexual assault aboard the vessel considering factors such as: ship layout and design, itinerary, crew complement, number of passengers, passenger demographics, and historical data on the type and location of prior sexual assault incident allegations;

(II) incorporate to the maximum extent practicable the video surveillance guidance established by the Commandant regarding the appropriate placement of video surveillance equipment;

(III) arrange for the risk assessment to be conducted by an independent third party with expertise in the use and placement of camera surveillance to deter, prevent and record criminal behavior; and

(IV) the independent third party referred to in paragraph (C) shall be a company that has been accepted by a classification society that is a member of the International Association of Classification Societies (hereinafter referred to as "IACS") or another classification society recognized by the Secretary as meeting acceptable standards for such a society pursuant to section 3316(b).

(C) SURVEILLANCE PLAN.—Not later than 180 days after completion of the risk assessment conducted under subparagraph (B)(ii), the owner of a vessel shall develop a plan to install video surveillance equipment in places determined to be appropriate in accordance with the results of the risk assessment conducted under subparagraph (B)(ii), except in areas where a person has a reasonable expectation of privacy. Such plan shall be evaluated and approved by an independent third party with expertise in the use and placement of camera surveillance to deter, prevent and record criminal behavior that has been accepted as set forth in paragraph (2)(D).

(D) INSTALLATION.—The owner of a vessel to which this section applies shall, consistent with the surveillance plan approved under subparagraph (C), install appropriate video surveillance equipment aboard the vessel not later than 2 years after approval of the plan, or during the next scheduled drydock, whichever is later.

(E) ATTESTATION.—At the time of initial installation under subparagraph (D), the vessel owner shall obtain written attestations from—

(i) an IACS classification society that the video surveillance equipment is installed in accordance with the surveillance plan required under subparagraph (C); and

(ii) the company security officer that the surveillance equipment and associated systems

are operational, which attestation shall be obtained each year thereafter.

(F) UPDATES.—The vessel owner shall ensure the risk assessment described in subparagraph (B)(ii) and installation plan in subparagraph (C) are updated not later than 5 years after the initial installation conducted under subparagraph (D), and every 5 years thereafter. The updated assessment and plan shall be approved by an independent third party with expertise in the use and placement of camera surveillance to deter, prevent, and record criminal behavior that has been accepted by an IACS classification society. The vessel owner shall implement the updated installation plan not later than 180 days after approval.

(G) AVAILABILITY.—Each risk assessment, installation plan and attestation shall be protected from disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act, section 552 of title 5 but shall be available to the Coast Guard—

(i) upon request, and

(ii) at the time of the certificate of compliance or certificate of inspection examination.

(H) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section a "ship security officer" is an individual that, with the master's approval, has full responsibility for vessel security consistent with the International Ship and Port Facility Security Code.

(2) NOTICE OF VIDEO SURVEILLANCE.—The owner of a vessel to which this section applies shall provide clear and conspicuous signs on board the vessel notifying the public of the presence of video surveillance equipment.

(3) ACCESS TO VIDEO RECORDS.—

(A) LAW ENFORCEMENT.—The owner of a vessel to which this section applies shall provide to any law enforcement official performing official duties in the course and scope of an investigation, upon request, a copy of all records of video surveillance that the official believes may provide evidence of a crime reported to law enforcement officials.

(B) CIVIL ACTIONS.—Except as proscribed by law enforcement authorities or court order, the owner of a vessel to which this section applies shall, upon written request, provide to any individual or the individual's legal representative a copy of all records of video surveillance—

(i) in which the individual is a subject of the video surveillance; and

(ii) that may provide evidence of any sexual assault incident in a civil action.

(C) LIMITED ACCESS.—The owner of a vessel to which this section applies shall ensure that access to records of video surveillance is limited to the purposes described in this paragraph.

(4) RETENTION REQUIREMENTS.—The owner of a vessel to which this section applies shall retain all records of video surveillance for not less than 20 days after the footage is obtained. The vessel owner shall include a statement in the security guide required by subsection (c)(1)(A) that the vessel owner is required by law to retain video surveillance footage for the period specified in this paragraph. If an incident described in subsection (g)(3)(A)(i) is alleged and reported to law enforcement, all records of video surveillance from the voyage that the Federal Bureau of Investigation determines are relevant shall—

(A) be provided to the Federal Bureau of Investigation; and

(B) be preserved by the vessel owner for not less than 4 years from the date of the alleged incident.

(c) SAFETY INFORMATION.—

(1) CRIMINAL ACTIVITY PREVENTION AND RESPONSE GUIDE.—The owner of a vessel to which this section applies (or the owner's designee) shall—

(A) have available for each passenger a guide (referred to in this subsection as the "security guide"), written in commonly understood English, which—

(i) provides a description of medical and security personnel designated on board to prevent and respond to criminal and medical situations with 24 hour contact instructions;

(ii) describes the jurisdictional authority applicable, and the law enforcement processes available, with respect to the reporting of homicide, suspicious death, a missing United States national, kidnapping, assault with serious bodily injury, any offense to which section 2241, 2242, 2243, or 2244(a) or (c) of title 18 applies, firing or tampering with the vessel, or theft of money or property in excess of $10,000, together with contact information for the appropriate law enforcement authorities for missing persons or reportable crimes which arise—

(I) in the territorial waters of the United States;

(II) on the high seas; or

(III) in any country to be visited on the voyage;

(B) provide a copy of the security guide to the Federal Bureau of Investigation for comment; and

(C) publicize the security guide on the website of the vessel owner.

(2) EMBASSY AND CONSULATE LOCATIONS.—The owner of a vessel to which this section applies shall provide in each passenger stateroom, and post in a location readily accessible to all crew and in other places specified by the Secretary, information regarding the locations of the United States embassy and each consulate of the United States for each country the vessel will visit during the course of the voyage.

(d) SEXUAL ASSAULT.—The owner of a vessel to which this section applies shall—

(1) maintain on the vessel adequate, in-date supplies of anti-retroviral medications and other medications designed to prevent sexually transmitted diseases after a sexual assault (taking into consideration the length of the voyage and the number of passengers and crewmembers that the vessel can accommodate);

(2) maintain on the vessel equipment and materials for performing a medical examination in sexual assault cases to evaluate the patient for trauma, provide medical care, and preserve relevant medical evidence;

(3) make available on the vessel at all times medical staff who have undergone a credentialing process to verify that he or she—

(A) possesses a current physician's or registered nurse's license and—

(i) has at least 3 years of post-graduate or post-registration clinical practice in general and emergency medicine; or

(ii) holds board certification in emergency medicine, family practice medicine, or internal medicine;

(B) is able to provide assistance in the event of an alleged sexual assault, has received training in conducting forensic sexual assault examination, and is able to promptly perform such an examination upon request and provide proper medical treatment of a victim, including administration of anti-retroviral medications and other medications that may prevent the transmission of human immunodeficiency virus and other sexually transmitted diseases; and

(C) meets guidelines established by the American College of Emergency Physicians relating to the treatment and care of victims of sexual assault;

(4) prepare, provide to the patient, and maintain written documentation of the findings of such examination that is signed by the patient; and

(5) provide the patient free and immediate access to—

(A) contact information for local law enforcement, the Federal Bureau of Investigation, the United States Coast Guard, the nearest United States consulate or embassy, and the National Sexual Assault Hotline program or other third party victim advocacy hotline service; and

(B) a private telephone line and Internet-accessible computer terminal by which the individual may confidentially access law enforcement officials, an attorney, and the information and support services available through the National Sexual Assault Hotline program or other third party victim advocacy hotline service.

(e) CONFIDENTIALITY OF SEXUAL ASSAULT EXAMINATION AND SUPPORT INFORMATION.—The master or other individual in charge of a vessel to which this section applies shall—

(1) treat all information concerning an examination under subsection (d) confidential, so that no medical information may be released to the cruise line or other owner of the vessel or any legal representative thereof without the prior knowledge and approval in writing of the patient, or, if the patient is unable to provide written authorization, the patient's next-of-kin, except that nothing in this paragraph prohibits the release of—

(A) information, other than medical findings, necessary for the owner or master of the vessel to comply with the provisions of subsection (g) or other applicable incident reporting laws;

(B) information to secure the safety of passengers or crew on board the vessel; or

(C) any information to law enforcement officials performing official duties in the course and scope of an investigation; and

(2) treat any information derived from, or obtained in connection with, post-assault counseling or other supportive services as confidential, so no such information may be released to the cruise line or any legal representative thereof without the prior knowledge and approval in writing of the patient, or, if the patient is unable to provide written authorization, the patient's next-of-kin.

(f) CREW ACCESS TO PASSENGER STATEROOMS.—The owner of a vessel to which this section applies shall—

(1) establish and implement procedures and restrictions concerning—

(A) which crewmembers have access to passenger staterooms;

(B) the periods during which they have that access; and

(C) a system that electronically records the date, time, and identity of each crew member accessing each passenger stateroom; and

(2) ensure that the procedures and restrictions are—

(A) fully and properly implemented;

(B) reviewed annually; and

(C) updated as necessary.

(g) LOG BOOK AND REPORTING REQUIREMENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The owner of a vessel to which this section applies shall—

(A) record in a log book, either electronically or otherwise, in a centralized location readily accessible to law enforcement personnel, a report on—

(i) all complaints of crimes described in paragraph (3)(A)(i),

(ii) all complaints of theft of property valued in excess of $1,000, and

(iii) all complaints of other crimes,

committed on any voyage that embarks or disembarks passengers in the United States; and

(B) make such log book available upon request to any agent of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, any member of the United States Coast Guard, and any law enforcement officer performing official duties in the course and scope of an investigation.

(2) DETAILS REQUIRED.—The information recorded under paragraph (1) shall include, at a minimum—

(A) the vessel operator;

(B) the name of the cruise line;
(C) the flag under which the vessel was operating at the time the reported incident occurred;
(D) the age and gender of the victim and the accused assailant;
(E) the nature of the alleged crime or complaint, as applicable, including whether the alleged perpetrator was a passenger or a crewmember;
(F) the vessel's position at the time of the incident, if known, or the position of the vessel at the time of the initial report;
(G) the time, date, and method of the initial report and the law enforcement authority to which the initial report was made;
(H) the time and date the incident occurred, if known;
(I) the total number of passengers and the total number of crew members on the voyage; and
(J) the case number or other identifier provided by the law enforcement authority to which the initial report was made.

(3) REQUIREMENT TO REPORT CRIMES AND OTHER INFORMATION.—
(A) IN GENERAL.—The owner of a vessel to which this section applies (or the owner's designee)—
(i) shall contact the nearest Federal Bureau of Investigation Field Office or Legal Attache by telephone as soon as possible after the occurrence on board the vessel of an incident involving homicide, suspicious death, a missing United States national, kidnapping, assault with serious bodily injury, any offense to which section 2241, 2242, 2243, or 2244(a) or (c) of title 18 applies, firing or tampering with the vessel, or theft of money or property in excess of $10,000 to report the incident;
(ii) shall furnish a written report of each incident specified in clause (i) to the Internet website maintained by the Secretary of Transportation under paragraph (4)(A);
(iii) may report any serious incident that does not meet the reporting requirements of clause (i) and that does not require immediate attention by the Federal Bureau of Investigation via the Internet website maintained by the Secretary of Transportation under paragraph (4)(A); and
(iv) may report any other criminal incident involving passengers or crewmembers, or both, to the proper State or local government law enforcement authority.

(B) INCIDENTS TO WHICH SUBPARAGRAPH (A) APPLIES.—Subparagraph (A) applies to an incident involving criminal activity if—
(i) the vessel, regardless of registry, is owned, in whole or in part, by a United States person, regardless of the nationality of the victim or perpetrator, and the incident occurs when the vessel is within the admiralty and maritime jurisdiction of the United States and outside the jurisdiction of any State;
(ii) the incident concerns an offense by or against a United States national committed outside the jurisdiction of any nation;
(iii) the incident occurs in the Territorial Sea of the United States, regardless of the nationality of the vessel, the victim, or the perpetrator; or
(iv) the incident concerns a victim or perpetrator who is a United States national on a vessel during a voyage that departed from or will arrive at a United States port.

(4) AVAILABILITY OF INCIDENT DATA VIA INTERNET.—
(A) WEBSITE.—
(i) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall maintain a statistical compilation of all incidents on board a cruise vessel specified in paragraph (3)(A)(i) on an Internet website that provides a numerical accounting of the missing persons and alleged crimes reported under that paragraph without regard to the investigative status of the incident.
(ii) UPDATES AND OTHER REQUIREMENTS.—The compilation under clause (i) shall—

(I) be updated not less frequently than quarterly;
(II) be able to be sorted by cruise line;
(III) identify each cruise line by name;
(IV) identify each crime or alleged crime committed or allegedly committed by a passenger or crewmember;
(V) identify the number of individuals alleged overboard; and
(VI) include the approximate number of passengers and crew carried by each cruise line during each quarterly reporting period.

(iii) USER-FRIENDLY FORMAT.—The Secretary of Transportation shall ensure that the compilation, data, and any other information provided on the Internet website maintained under this subparagraph are in a user-friendly format. The Secretary shall, to the greatest extent practicable, use existing commercial off the shelf technology to transfer and establish the website, and shall not independently develop software, or acquire new hardware in operating the site.

(B) ACCESS TO WEBSITE.—Each cruise line taking on or discharging passengers in the United States shall include a link on its Internet website to the website maintained by the Secretary of Transportation under subparagraph (A).

(h) ENFORCEMENT.—
(1) PENALTIES.—
(A) CIVIL PENALTY.—Any person that violates this section or a regulation under this section shall be liable for a civil penalty of not more than $25,000 for each day during which the violation continues, except that the maximum penalty for a continuing violation is $50,000.
(B) CRIMINAL PENALTY.—Any person that willfully violates this section or a regulation under this section shall be fined not more than $250,000 or imprisoned not more than 1 year, or both.

(2) DENIAL OF ENTRY.—The Secretary may deny entry into the United States to a vessel to which this section applies if the owner of the vessel—
(A) commits an act or omission for which a penalty may be imposed under this subsection; or
(B) fails to pay a penalty imposed on the owner under this subsection.

(i) PROCEDURES.—The Secretary shall maintain guidelines, training curricula, and inspection and certification procedures necessary to carry out the requirements of this section.
(j) REGULATIONS.—The Secretary and the Commandant shall each issue such regulations as are necessary to implement this section.
(k) APPLICATION.—
(1) IN GENERAL.—This section and section 3508 apply to a passenger vessel (as defined in section 2101(33)) that—
(A) is authorized to carry 250 or more passengers;
(B) has overnight accommodations for 250 or more passengers; and
(C) is on a voyage that embarks or disembarks passengers in the United States.

(2) FEDERAL AND STATE VESSELS.—This section and section 3508 do not apply to a vessel of the United States operated by the Federal Government or a vessel owned and operated by a State.

(l) DEFINITION.—In this section and section 3508, the term "owner" means the owner, charterer, managing operator, master, or other individual in charge of a vessel.

(Added Pub. L. 111–207, §3(a), July 27, 2010, 124 Stat. 2244; amended Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §321, Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3054; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §§3541(b)(9), 3543(a),

Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2323, 2324; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8311, div. G, title LVXXXIV [LXXXIV], §8440(a)–(c)(1), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4697, 4739–4741; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVIII, §11802, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4163; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §§7301(k)(1)(D), 7343, Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1759, 1778.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of the Cruise Vessel Security and Safety Act of 2010, referred to in subsec. (a)(1)(C), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 111–207, which was approved July 27, 2010.

The date of the enactment of the Elijah E. Cummings Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2020, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(B)(i), is the date of enactment of div. G of Pub. L. 116–283, which was approved Jan. 1, 2021.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 119–60, §7343(a), inserted "(taking into consideration the length of the voyage and the number of passengers and crewmembers that the vessel can accommodate)" after "a sexual assault".

Subsec. (f)(1)(C). Pub. L. 119–60, §7343(b)(1), added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 119–60, §7343(b)(2), added par. (2) and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: "ensure that the procedures and restrictions are fully and properly implemented and periodically reviewed."

Subsec. (k)(1). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(k)(1)(D), substituted "section 2101(33)" for "section 2101(31)" in introductory provisions.

2022—Subsec. (k)(1)(A). Pub. L. 117–263, §11802(1), substituted "250 or more" for "at least 250".

Subsec. (k)(1)(B). Pub. L. 117–263, §11802(2), added subpar. (B) and struck out former subpar. (B). Prior to amendment, subpar. (B) read as follows: "has onboard sleeping facilities for each passenger; and".

2021—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 116–283, §8440(a), designated existing provisions as subpar. (A), inserted heading, struck out ", as determined by the Secretary" before the period, and added subpars. (B) to (H).

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 116–283, §8440(b)(2), added par. (2). Former par. (2) redesignated (3).

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 116–283, §8440(b)(1), (3), redesignated par. (2) as (3), designated existing provisions as subpar. (A), inserted heading, and added subpars. (B) and (C).

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 116–283, §8440(c)(1), added par. (4).

Subsec. (k)(1)(D). Pub. L. 116–283, §8311, struck out subpar. (D) which read as follows: "is not engaged on a coastwise voyage."

2018—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 115–232, §3543(a)(1), struck out par. (3) which related to effective date of par. (1) requirements.

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 115–232, §3543(a)(2), substituted "services as confidential" for "services confidential".

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 115–232, §3543(a)(3), substituted "The Secretary shall maintain" for "Within 6 months after the date of enactment of the Cruise Vessel Security and Safety Act of 2010, the Secretary shall issue".

Subsec. (k)(1). Pub. L. 115–232, §3541(b)(9)(A), substituted "section 2101(31)" for "section 2101(22)" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 115–232, §3541(b)(9)(B), added subsec. (l) and struck out former subsec. (l) which defined "Commandant" and "owner".

2014—Subsec. (g)(3)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 113–281, §321(a)(1), substituted "each incident specified in clause (i) to the Internet website maintained by the Secretary of Transportation under paragraph (4)(A)" for "the incident to an Internet based portal maintained by the Secretary".

Subsec. (g)(3)(A)(iii). Pub. L. 113–281, §321(a)(2), substituted "Internet website maintained by the Secretary of Transportation under paragraph (4)(A)" for "Internet based portal maintained by the Secretary".

Subsec. (g)(4)(A). Pub. L. 113–281, §321(b)(1), added subpar. (A) and struck out former subpar. (A). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Secretary shall maintain a statistical compilation of all incidents described in paragraph (3)(A)(i) on an Internet site that provides a numerical accounting of the missing persons and alleged crimes recorded in each report filed under paragraph (3)(A)(i) that are no longer under investigation by the Federal Bureau of Investigation. The data shall be updated no less frequently than quarterly, aggregated by cruise line, each cruise line shall be identified by name, and each crime shall be identified as to whether it was committed by a passenger or a crew member."

Subsec. (g)(4)(B). Pub. L. 113–281, §321(b)(2), substituted "Secretary of Transportation" for "Secretary".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS

Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIV [LXXXIV], §8440(c)(2), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4742, provided that:

"(A) STUDY AND REPORT.—Each owner of a vessel to which section 3507 of title 46, United States Code, applies shall, not later than March 1, 2023, submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report detailing the total number of voyages for the preceding year and the percentage of those voyages that were 30 days or longer.

"(B) INTERIM STANDARDS.—Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Jan. 1, 2021], the Commandant [of the Coast Guard], in consultation with the Federal Bureau of Investigation, shall promulgate interim standards for the retention of records of video surveillance.

"(C) FINAL STANDARDS.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act, the Commandant, in consultation with the Federal Bureau of Investigation, shall promulgate final standards for the retention of records of video surveillance.

"(D) CONSIDERATIONS.—In promulgating standards under subparagraphs (B) and (B) [probably should be '(C)'], the Commandant shall—

"(i) consider factors that would aid in the investigation of serious crimes, including the results of the report by the Commandant provided under subparagraph (A), as well as crimes that go unreported until after the completion of a voyage;

"(ii) consider the different types of video surveillance systems and storage requirements in creating standards both for vessels currently in operation and for vessels newly built;

"(iii) consider privacy, including standards for permissible access to and monitoring and use of the records of video surveillance; and

"(iv) consider technological advancements, including requirements to update technology."

FINDINGS

Pub. L. 111–207, §2, July 27, 2010, 124 Stat. 2243, provided that: "The Congress makes the following findings:

"(1) There are approximately 200 overnight ocean-going cruise vessels worldwide. The average ocean-going cruise vessel carries 2,000 passengers with a crew of 950 people.

"(2) In 2007 alone, approximately 12,000,000 passengers were projected to take a cruise worldwide.

"(3) Passengers on cruise vessels have an inadequate appreciation of their potential vulnerability to crime while on ocean voyages, and those who may be victimized lack the information they need to understand their legal rights or to know whom to contact for help in the immediate aftermath of the crime.

"(4) Sexual violence, the disappearance of passengers from vessels on the high seas, and other serious crimes have occurred during luxury cruises.

"(5) Over the last 5 years, sexual assault and physical assaults on cruise vessels were the leading crimes investigated by the Federal Bureau of Investigation with regard to cruise vessel incidents.

"(6) These crimes at sea can involve attacks both by passengers and crewmembers on other passengers and crewmembers.

"(7) Except for United States flagged vessels, or foreign flagged vessels operating in an area subject to the direct jurisdiction of the United States, there are no Federal statutes or regulations that explicitly require cruise lines to report alleged crimes to United States Government officials.

"(8) It is not known precisely how often crimes occur on cruise vessels or exactly how many people have disappeared during ocean voyages because cruise line companies do not make comprehensive, crime-related data readily available to the public.

"(9) Obtaining reliable crime-related cruise data from governmental sources can be difficult, because multiple countries may be involved when a crime occurs on the high seas, including the flag country for the vessel, the country of citizenship of particular passengers, and any countries having special or maritime jurisdiction.

"(10) It can be difficult for professional crime investigators to immediately secure an alleged crime scene on a cruise vessel, recover evidence of an onboard offense, and identify or interview potential witnesses to the alleged crime.

"(11) Most cruise vessels that operate into and out of United States ports are registered under the laws of another country, and investigations and prosecutions of crimes against passengers and crewmembers may

involve the laws and authorities of multiple nations.

"(12) The Department of Homeland Security has found it necessary to establish 500-yard security zones around cruise vessels to limit the risk of terrorist attack. Recently piracy has dramatically increased throughout the world.

"(13) To enhance the safety of cruise passengers, the owners of cruise vessels could upgrade, modernize, and retrofit the safety and security infrastructure on such vessels by installing peep holes in passenger room doors, installing security video cameras in targeted areas, limiting access to passenger rooms to select staff during specific times, and installing acoustic hailing and warning devices capable of communicating over distances."

§3508. Crime scene preservation training for passenger vessel crewmembers

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary, in consultation with the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation and the Maritime Administration, shall maintain training standards and curricula to allow for the certification of passenger vessel security personnel, crewmembers, and law enforcement officials on the appropriate methods for prevention, detection, evidence preservation, and reporting of criminal activities in the international maritime environment. The Administrator of the Maritime Administration may certify organizations in the United States and abroad that offer the curriculum for training and certification under subsection (c).

(b) MINIMUM STANDARDS.—The standards established by the Secretary under subsection (a) shall include—

(1) the training and certification of vessel security personnel, crewmembers, and law enforcement officials in accordance with accepted law enforcement and security guidelines, policies, and procedures, including recommendations for incorporating a background check process for personnel trained and certified in foreign ports;

(2) the training of students and instructors in all aspects of prevention, detection, evidence preservation, and reporting of criminal activities in the international maritime environment; and

(3) the provision or recognition of off-site training and certification courses in the United States and foreign countries to develop and provide the required training and certification described in subsection (a) and to enhance security awareness and security practices related to the preservation of evidence in response to crimes on board passenger vessels.

(c) CERTIFICATION REQUIREMENT.—No vessel to which this section applies may enter a United States port on a voyage (or voyage segment) on which a United States citizen is a passenger unless there is at least 1 crewmember onboard who is certified as having successfully completed training in the prevention, detection, evidence preservation, and reporting of criminal activities in the international maritime environment on passenger vessels under subsection (a).

(d) CIVIL PENALTY.—Any person that violates this section or a regulation under this section shall be liable for a civil penalty of not more than $50,000.

(e) DENIAL OF ENTRY.—The Secretary may deny entry into the United States to a vessel to which this section applies if the owner of the vessel—

(1) commits an act or omission for which a penalty may be imposed under subsection (d); or

(2) fails to pay a penalty imposed on the owner under subsection (d).

(Added Pub. L. 111–207, §3(a), July 27, 2010, 124 Stat. 2250; amended Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3543(b), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2324.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 115–232, §3543(b)(1), substituted "The Secretary" for "Within 1 year after the date of enactment of the Cruise Vessel Security and Safety Act of 2010, the Secretary" and "maintain" for "develop".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 115–232, §3543(b)(2), substituted "No" for "Beginning 2 years after the standards are

established under subsection (b), no".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 115–232, §3543(b)(3), redesignated subsec. (e) as (d) and struck out former subsec. (d) which related to interim training requirement.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 115–232, §3543(b)(3), (4), redesignated subsec. (f) as (e) and substituted "subsection (d)" for "subsection (e)" in pars. (1) and (2). Former subsec. (e) redesignated (d).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 115–232, §3543(b)(3), redesignated subsec. (f) as (e).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EXEMPTIONS FOR CERTAIN PASSENGER VESSELS

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11510, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4137, provided that: "Notwithstanding any other provision of law, requirements authorized under sections 3508 and 3509 of title 46, United States Code, shall not apply to any passenger vessel, as defined in section 2101 of such title—

"(1) that carries in excess of 250 passengers;

"(2) that is, or was, in operation exclusively within the inland rivers and internal waters of the United States on voyages inside the Boundary Line, as defined in section 103 of such title, on or before July 27, 2030; and

"(3) the operators or charterers of which operated any documented vessels with a coastwise endorsement prior to January 1, 2024."

DEFINITIONS

For definition of "owner" as used in this section, see section 3507(l) of this title.

§3509. Medical standards

The owner of a vessel to which section 3507 applies shall ensure that—

(1) a physician is always present and available to treat any passengers who may be on board the vessel in the event of an emergency situation;

(2) the vessel is in compliance with the Health Care Guidelines for Cruise Ship Medical Facilities established by the American College of Emergency Physicians; and

(3) the initial safety briefing given to the passengers on board the vessel includes—

(A) the location of the vessel's medical facilities; and

(B) the appropriate steps passengers should follow during a medical emergency.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8322(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4702.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EXEMPTIONS FOR CERTAIN PASSENGER VESSELS

For provisions exempting certain passenger vessels from the requirements authorized under this section, see section 11510 of Pub. L. 117–263, set out as a note under section 3508 of this title.

§3510. Additional medical and safety standards

(a) AUTOMATED EXTERNAL DEFIBRILLATORS.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this section, the Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Health and Human Services and other appropriate Federal agencies, shall promulgate regulations to—

(1) require that the owner of a vessel to which section 3507 applies install, and maintain in working order, automated external defibrillators on such vessel;

(2) require that such defibrillators be placed throughout such vessel in clearly designated locations;

(3) require that such defibrillators are available for passenger and crew access in the event of an emergency; and

(4) require that automated external defibrillators, or adjacent equipment, allow passengers and crew to easily contact medical staff of the vessel.

(b) DEFINITION OF OWNER.—In this section, the term "owner" has the meaning given such term in section 3507.

(Added Pub. L. 117–14, §3(a), May 24, 2021, 135 Stat. 275.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of this section, referred to in subsec. (a), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 117–14, which was approved May 24, 2021.

CHAPTER 37—CARRIAGE OF LIQUID BULK DANGEROUS CARGOES

Sec.

3701. Definitions.
3702. Application.
3703. Regulations.
3703a. Tank vessel construction standards.
3704. Coastwise trade vessels.
3705. Crude oil tanker minimum standards.
3706. Product carrier minimum standards.
3707. Tanker minimum standards.
3708. Self-propelled tank vessel minimum standards.
3709. Exemptions.
3710. Evidence of compliance by vessels of the United States.
3711. Evidence of compliance by foreign vessels.
3712. Notification of noncompliance.
3713. Prohibited acts.
3714. Inspection and examination.
3715. Lightering.
3716. Tank washings.
3717. Marine safety information system.
3718. Penalties.
3719. Reduction of oil spills from single hull non-self-propelled tank vessels.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 37 consolidates the laws that are applicable to vessels that transport oil or hazardous material in bulk as cargo or cargo residue.

The history of Federal authority to carry out a tank vessel safety program begins with the enactment of the so-called Tank Vessel Act of 1936 which, as amended, is presently codified in section 391a of title 46, United States Code. The 1936 Act remained essentially the same until it was amended by the Ports and Waterways Safety Act of 1972. The 1972 amendment contained more specific standards for the protection of a tank vessel and its crew and added vessel standards to improve the quality of the marine environment. After a rash of tank vessel accidents during the latter part of 1976 and early 1977 within our territorial seas and in nearby coastal waters, there was an outpouring of public attention to the need to protect United States ports and waterways, for the safety of tank vessels, and for the protection of the marine environment. This led to the enactment of the Port and Tanker Safety Act of 1978, which provided broader and more extensive regulatory authority over areas already regulated and over many areas not previously regulated. It provided for improvements in the supervision and control of vessels of all types operating in the navigable waters of the United States, and in the safety of all tank vessels, foreign or domestic, that transport or transfer oil or hazardous cargoes in ports or

places subject to the jurisdiction of the United States. The 1978 amendments also reflect, in part, certain tank vessel standards and requirements that have been accepted internationally, in particular those developed by the International Conference on Tanker Safety and Pollution Prevention held in London in February, 1978.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–304, §15(14), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1703, inserted "single hull" before "non-self-propelled" in item 3719.

1996—Pub. L. 104–324, title IX, §901(c), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3947, added item 3719.

1990—Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4115(c), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 520, added item 3703a.

§3701. Definitions

In this chapter—

(1) "existing", when referring to a type of vessel to which this chapter applies, means a vessel that is not a new vessel.

(2) "new", when referring to a type of vessel to which this chapter applies, means a vessel—

(A) for which the building contract is placed after June 1, 1979;

(B) in the absence of a building contract, the keel of which is laid, or which is at a similar stage of construction, after January 1, 1980;

(C) the delivery of which is after June 1, 1982; or

(D) that has undergone a major conversion under a contract made after June 1, 1979, or construction work that began after January 1, 1980, or was completed after June 1, 1982.

(3) "person" means an individual (even if not a citizen or national of the United States), a corporation, partnership, association, or other entity (even if not organized or existing under the laws of a State), the United States Government, a State or local government, a government of a foreign country, or an entity of one of those governments.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 521; Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5102(b)(5), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1927; Pub. L. 100–424, §8(c)(2), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1593; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3541(a)(2), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2323.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3701(1)	46:391a(2)(R)
3701(2)	46:391a(2)(P)
3701(3)	46:391a(2)(Q)
3701(4)	46:391a(2)(F)
3701(5)	46:391a(2)(J)
3701(6)	46:391a(2)(K)

Section 3701 contains definitions that are of a special nature with limited applicability to this chapter.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Pars. (2) to (4). Pub. L. 115–232 redesignated pars. (3) and (4) as (2) and (3), respectively.

1988—Par. (2). Pub. L. 100–424 struck out par. (2) which read as follows: " 'major conversion' means a conversion of an existing vessel that substantially changes the dimensions or carrying capacity of the vessel or changes the type of vessel or substantially prolongs its life or that otherwise so changes the vessel that it is

essentially a new vessel, as decided by the Secretary."

1986—Pars. (5), (6). Pub. L. 99–509 struck out par. (5) defining "State" as including Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands in addition to its meaning under section 2101(36) of this title, and struck out par. (6) defining "United States" as including the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands in addition to its meaning under section 2101(44) of this title.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Chapter effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

§3702. Application

(a) Subject to subsections (b)–(e) of this section, this chapter applies to a tank vessel.

(b) This chapter does not apply to a documented vessel that would be subject to this chapter only because of the transfer of fuel from the fuel supply tanks of the vessel to exploration, development, or production of offshore drilling or production facilities in the oil industry and non-mineral energy production if the vessel is—

(1) not a tanker; and

(2) in the service of exploration, development, or production of offshore energy resources.

(c) This chapter does not apply to a fishing or fish tender vessel of not more than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title when engaged only in the fishing industry.

(d) This chapter does not apply to a fish processing vessel of not more than 5,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title. However, the vessel is subject to regulation by the Secretary when carrying flammable or combustible liquid cargo in bulk.

(e) This chapter does not apply to a foreign vessel on innocent passage on the navigable waters of the United States.

(f) This chapter does not apply to an oil spill response vessel if—

(1) the vessel is used only in response-related activities; or

(2) the vessel is—

(A) not more than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title;

(B) designated in its certificate of inspection as an oil spill response vessel; and

(C) engaged in response-related activities.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 521; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(6), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 446; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §714, title XI, §1104(b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3936, 3966; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §617(a)(2), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2973; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7348(a), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1781.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3702	46:391a

Section 3702, with certain exceptions, makes this chapter applicable to any tank vessel operating in the navigable waters of the United States or transferring oil or hazardous materials in any port or place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, and which carries oil or any hazardous materials in bulk as cargo or in

residue, regardless of tonnage, size or manner of propulsion; whether it is self-propelled or not; whether it is carrying freight or passengers for hire or not; and whether it is a vessel of the United States or a foreign vessel.

It exempts certain small vessels documented in the service of oil exploitation, certain small tender and fishing vessels used in the Northwest salmon or crab fisheries, certain vessels used in the processing and assembling of fishery products used in the Northwest fisheries, public vessels, and foreign vessels engaged on innocent passage on the navigable waters of the United States. However, processing vessels, while not treated as tank vessels, are still subject to regulation when carrying flammable or combustible liquid cargo in bulk.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 119–60, §7348(a)(1), substituted "exploration, development, or production of offshore drilling or production facilities in the oil industry and non-mineral energy production" for "offshore drilling or production facilities in the oil industry" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 119–60, §7348(a)(2), substituted "exploration, development, or production of offshore energy resources" for "oil exploitation".

2010—Subsec. (b)(1) to (3). Pub. L. 111–281 redesignated pars. (2) and (3) as (1) and (2), respectively, and struck out former par. (1), which read as follows: "not more than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title;".

1996—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 104–324, §714(1), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "500 gross tons".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 104–324, §714(2), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "500 gross tons".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 104–324, §714(3), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "5,000 gross tons".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 104–324, §1104(b), added subsec. (f).

1984—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98–364, §402(6)(A), substituted "This chapter does not apply to a fishing or fish tender vessel of not more than 500 gross tons when engaged only in the fishing industry" for "This chapter does not apply to a cannery tender, fishing tender, or fishing vessel of not more than 500 gross tons, used in the salmon or crab fisheries of Alaska, Oregon, or Washington, when engaged only in the fishing industry".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 98–364, §402(6)(B), substituted "This chapter does not apply to a fish processing vessel of not more than 5,000 gross tons" for "This chapter does not apply to a vessel of not more than 5,000 gross tons used in processing and assembling fishery products of the fisheries of Alaska, Oregon, and Washington".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

OFFSHORE OPERATIONS

Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7348(b), (c), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1782, provided that:

"(b) OIL FUEL TANK PROTECTION.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law and not later than 60 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 18, 2025], the Commandant [of the Coast Guard] shall amend section 125.115(b) of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations (as in effect on such date of enactment), to reflect the amendment made in subsection (a) [amending this section].

"(2) APPLICATION.—If the Commandant fails to amend the section described in paragraph (1) by the date that is 60 days after the date of enactment of this Act, then, in lieu of the application of such section, the Secretary shall allow vessels to which section 3702 of title 46, United States Code, applies to transfer fuel from the fuel supply tanks of such vessel to offshore facilities in support of exploration, development, or production of offshore energy resources.

"(c) OUTER CONTINENTAL SHELF ACTIVITIES.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 60 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the Commandant shall amend section G6.3.a of the United States Coast Guard Marine Safety Manual, Volume II titled 'Materiel Inspection: Outer Continental Shelf Activities', issued September 20, 2021 (COMDTINST

M16000.76) (as in effect on such date of enactment), to reflect the amendment made in subsection (a).

"(2) APPLICATION.—If the Commandant fails to amend the section described in paragraph (1) by the date that is 60 days after the date of enactment of this Act, then the Secretary shall in lieu of such section not apply section 3702 of title 46, United States Code, to a documented vessel transferring fuel from the fuel supply tanks of such vessel to an offshore facility if such vessel is not a tanker and is in the service of exploration, development, or production of offshore energy resources."

§3703. Regulations

(a) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations for the design, construction, alteration, repair, maintenance, operation, equipping, personnel qualification, and manning of vessels to which this chapter applies, that may be necessary for increased protection against hazards to life and property, for navigation and vessel safety, and for enhanced protection of the marine environment. The Secretary may prescribe different regulations applicable to vessels engaged in the domestic trade, and also may prescribe regulations that exceed standards set internationally. Regulations prescribed by the Secretary under this subsection are in addition to regulations prescribed under other laws that may apply to any of those vessels. Regulations prescribed under this subsection shall include requirements about—

(1) superstructures, hulls, cargo holds or tanks, fittings, equipment, appliances, propulsion machinery, auxiliary machinery, and boilers;

(2) the handling or stowage of cargo, the manner of handling or stowage of cargo, and the machinery and appliances used in the handling or stowage;

(3) equipment and appliances for lifesaving, fire protection, and prevention and mitigation of damage to the marine environment;

(4) the manning of vessels and the duties, qualifications, and training of the officers and crew;

(5) improvements in vessel maneuvering and stopping ability and other features that reduce the possibility of marine casualties;

(6) the reduction of cargo loss if a marine casualty occurs; and

(7) the reduction or elimination of discharges during ballasting, deballasting, tank cleaning, cargo handling, or other such activity.

(b) In prescribing regulations under subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary shall consider the types and grades of cargo permitted to be on board a tank vessel.

(c) In prescribing regulations under subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary shall establish procedures for consulting with, and receiving and considering the views of—

(1) interested departments, agencies, and instrumentalities of the United States Government;

(2) officials of State and local governments;

(3) representatives of port and harbor authorities and associations;

(4) representatives of environmental groups; and

(5) other interested parties knowledgeable or experienced in dealing with problems involving vessel safety, port and waterways safety, and protection of the marine environment.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 522.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3703	46:391a(6) 46:391a(12)

Section 3703 requires the Secretary to issue regulations to implement this section. Specific items are listed to be included within the regulations issued. The regulatory authority must be exercised under the Administrative Procedure Act and, in prescribing these regulations, the Secretary must consider the kinds and grades of cargo carried on board. Furthermore, in addition to any requirements of the Administrative

Procedure Act, the Secretary must establish specific consultation procedures for considering the views of various specified interested officials, groups, and individuals. The procedures are intended to provide for consultation as early as possible in the regulatory process.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

OIL FUEL TANK PROTECTION

Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §617(e), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2973, provided that:

"(1) APPLICATION.—An offshore supply vessel of at least 6,000 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of title 46, United States Code, that is constructed under a contract entered into after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 15, 2010], or that is delivered after August 1, 2010, with an aggregate capacity of 600 cubic meters or more of oil fuel, shall comply with the requirements of Regulation 12A under Annex I to the Protocol of 1978 relating to the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, entitled Oil Fuel Tank Protection, regardless of whether such vessel is engaged in the coastwise trade or on an international voyage.

"(2) DEFINITION.—In this subsection the term 'oil fuel' means any oil used as fuel in connection with the propulsion and auxiliary machinery of the vessel in which such oil is carried."

REGULATIONS FOR OFFSHORE SUPPLY VESSELS OF AT LEAST 6,000 GROSS TONS

Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §617(f), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2974, as amended by Pub. L. 111–330, §1(8), Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3569, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than January 1, 2012, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall promulgate regulations to implement the amendments and authorities enacted by this section [amending sections 2101, 3702, 7312, and 8104 of this title, enacting provisions set out as a note under this section, and amending provisions set out as a note under section 2101 of this title] for offshore supply vessels of at least 6,000 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of title 46, United States Code, and to ensure the safe carriage of oil, hazardous substances, and individuals in addition to the crew on such vessels. The final rule issued pursuant to such rulemaking may supersede the interim final rule promulgated under paragraph (2) of this subsection. In promulgating regulations under this subsection, the Secretary shall take into consideration the characteristics of offshore supply vessels, their methods of operation, and their service in support of exploration, exploitation, or production of offshore mineral or energy resources.

"(2) INTERIM FINAL RULE AUTHORITY.—As soon as is practicable and without regard to the provisions of chapters 5 and 6 of title 5, United States Code, the Secretary shall issue an interim final rule as a temporary regulation implementing this section (including the amendments made by this section) for offshore supply vessels of at least 6,000 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of title 46, United States Code, and to ensure the safe carriage of oil, hazardous substances, and individuals in addition to the crew on such vessels.

"(3) INTERIM PERIOD.—After the effective date of this Act [Oct. 15, 2010], prior to the effective date of the regulations prescribed by paragraph (2) of this subsection, and without regard to the provisions of chapters 5 and 6 of title 5, United States Code, and the offshore supply vessel tonnage limits of applicable regulations and policy guidance promulgated prior to the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 15, 2010], the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating may—

"(A) issue a certificate of inspection under section 3309 of title 46, United States Code, to an offshore supply vessel of at least 6,000 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of that title if the Secretary determines that such vessel's arrangements and equipment meet the current Coast Guard requirements for certification as a cargo and miscellaneous vessel;

"(B) authorize a master, mate, or engineer who possesses an ocean or near coastal license and endorsement under part 11 of subchapter B of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations, (or any successor regulation) that qualifies the licensed officer for service on offshore supply vessels of at least 3,000 gross tons but less than 6,000 gross tons, as measured under section 14302 of title 46, United States Code, to operate offshore supply vessels of at least 6,000 gross tons, as measured under such section; and

"(C) authorize any such master, mate, or engineer who also possesses an ocean or near coastal license and endorsement under such part that qualifies the licensed officer for service on non trade-restricted vessels of at least 1,600 gross tons but less than 3,000 gross tons, as measured under such section, to increase the tonnage limitation of such license and endorsement under section 11.402(c) of such part, using service on vessels certificated under both subchapters I and L of such title and measured only under such section, except that such tonnage limitation shall not exceed 10,000 gross tons as measured under such section."

OIL TRANSFERS FROM VESSELS

Pub. L. 111–281, title VII, §702, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2980, as amended by Pub. L. 111–330, §1(10), Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3570, provided that:

"(a) REGULATIONS.—Within 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 15, 2010], the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall promulgate regulations to reduce the risks of oil spills in operations involving the transfer of oil from or to a tank vessel. The regulations—

"(1) shall focus on operations that have the highest risks of discharge, including operations at night and in inclement weather;

"(2) shall consider—

"(A) requirements for the use of equipment, such as putting booms in place for transfers, safety, and environmental impacts;

"(B) operational procedures such as manning standards, communications protocols, and restrictions on operations in high-risk areas; or

"(C) both such requirements and operational procedures; and

"(3) shall take into account the safety of personnel and effectiveness of available procedures and equipment for preventing or mitigating transfer spills.

"(b) APPLICATION WITH STATE LAWS.—The regulations promulgated under subsection (a) do not preclude the enforcement of any State law or regulation the requirements of which are at least as stringent as requirements under the regulations (as determined by the Secretary) that—

"(1) applies in State waters; and

"(2) does not conflict with, or interfere with the enforcement of, requirements and operational procedures under the regulations."

IMPROVEMENTS TO REDUCE HUMAN ERROR AND NEAR MISS INCIDENTS

Pub. L. 111–281, title VII, §703, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2981, as amended by Pub. L. 111–330, §1(11), Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3570, provided that:

"(a) REPORT.—Within 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 15, 2010], the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall transmit a report to the Senate Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the House Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure that, using available data—

"(1) identifies the types of human errors that, combined, could cause oil spills, with particular attention to human error caused by fatigue, in the past 10 years;

"(2) in consultation with representatives of industry and labor and experts in the fields of marine casualties and human factors, identifies the most frequent types of near-miss oil spill incidents involving vessels such as collisions, allisions, groundings, and loss of propulsion in the past 10 years;

"(3) describes the extent to which there are gaps in the data required under paragraphs (1) and (2), including gaps in the ability to define and identify fatigue, and explains the reason for those gaps; and

"(4) includes recommendations by the Secretary and representatives of industry and labor and experts in the fields of marine casualties and human factors to address the identified types of errors and any such gaps in the data.

"(b) MEASURES.—Based on the findings contained in the report required by subsection (a), the Secretary shall take appropriate action to reduce the risk of oil spills caused by human error.

"(c) CONFIDENTIALITY OF VOLUNTARILY SUBMITTED INFORMATION.—The identity of a person making a voluntary disclosure under this section, and any information obtained from any such voluntary disclosure, shall be treated as confidential.

"(d) DISCOVERY OF VOLUNTARILY SUBMITTED INFORMATION.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in this subsection, a party in a judicial proceeding may not use discovery to obtain information or data collected or received by the Secretary for use in the report required in subsection (a).

"(2) EXCEPTION.—

"(A) Notwithstanding paragraph (1), a court may allow discovery by a party in a judicial proceeding of data described in paragraph (1) if, after an in camera review of the information or data, the court decides that there is a compelling reason to allow the discovery.

"(B) When a court allows discovery in a judicial proceeding as permitted under this paragraph, the court shall issue a protective order—

"(i) to limit the use of the data to the judicial proceeding; and

"(ii) to prohibit dissemination of the data to any person who does not need access to the data for the proceeding.

"(C) A court may allow data it has decided is discoverable under this paragraph to be admitted into evidence in a judicial proceeding only if the court places the data under seal to prevent the use of the data for a purpose other than for the proceeding.

"(3) APPLICATION.—Paragraph (1) shall not apply to—

"(A) any disclosure made with actual knowledge that the disclosure was false, inaccurate, or misleading; or

"(B) any disclosure made with reckless disregard as to the truth or falsity of that disclosure.

"(e) RESTRICTION ON USE OF DATA.—Data that is voluntarily submitted for the purpose of the study required under subsection (a) shall not be used in an administrative action under chapter 77 of title 46, United States Code."

[Pub. L. 111–330, §1(11), Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3570, which directed amendment of section 703(a) of Pub. L. 111–281, set out above, by inserting "of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating" after "Secretary", was executed by making the insertion after "Secretary" the first place appearing, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.]

PRESERVATION OF STATE AUTHORITY

Pub. L. 111–281, title VII, §711(c), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2987, provided that: "Nothing in this Act [see Tables for classification] or in any other provision of Federal law related to the regulation of maritime transportation of oil shall affect, or be construed or interpreted as preempting, the authority of any State or political subdivision thereof which require the escort by one or more tugs of laden oil tankers in the areas which are specified in section 4116(c) of the Oil Pollution Act of 1990 [Pub. L. 101–380] (46 U.S.C. 3703 note)."

STUDIES ADDRESSING VARIOUS SOURCES OF OIL SPILL RISK

Pub. L. 104–324, title IX, §903, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3947, provided that:

"(a) STUDY OF GROUP-5 FUEL OIL SPILLS.—

"(1) DEFINITION.—In this subsection, the term 'group-5 fuel oil' means a petroleum-based oil that has a specific gravity of greater than 1.0.

"(2) COORDINATION OF STUDY.—The Secretary of Transportation shall coordinate with the Marine Board of the National Research Council to conduct a study of the relative environmental and public health risks posed by discharges of group-5 fuel oil.

"(3) MATTERS TO BE INCLUDED.—The study under this subsection shall include a review and analysis of—

"(A) the specific risks posed to the public health or welfare of the United States, including fish, shellfish and wildlife, public and private property, shorelines, beaches, habitat, and other natural resources under the jurisdiction or control of the United States, as a result of an actual or threatened discharge of group-5 fuel oil from a vessel or facility;

"(B) cleanup technologies currently available to address actual or threatened discharge of group-5 fuel oil; and

"(C) any technological and financial barriers that prevent the prompt remediation of discharges of group-5 fuel oil.

"(4) REPORT.—Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 19, 1996], the Secretary of Transportation shall submit to the Committee on Environment and Public Works and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate, and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives a report on the results of the study under this subsection.

"(5) RULEMAKING.—If the Secretary of Transportation determines, based on the results of the study under this subsection, that there are significant risks to public health or the environment resulting from the actual or threatened discharge of group-5 fuel oil from a vessel or facility that cannot be technologically or economically addressed by existing or anticipated cleanup efforts, the Secretary may initiate a rulemaking to take such action as is necessary to abate the threat.

"(b) STUDY OF AUTOMATIC FUELING SHUTOFF EQUIPMENT.—

"(1) COORDINATION OF STUDY.—The Secretary of Transportation shall coordinate with the Marine Board of the National Research Council to conduct a study of the unintentional or accidental discharge of fuel oil during lightering or fuel loading or off-loading activity.

"(2) MATTERS TO BE INCLUDED.—The study under this subsection shall include a review and analysis of current monitoring and fueling practices to determine the need for automatic fuel shutoff equipment to prevent the accidental discharge of fuel oil, and whether such equipment is needed as a supplement to or replacement of existing preventive equipment or procedures.

"(3) REPORT.—Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 19, 1996], the

Secretary of Transportation shall submit to the Committee on Environment and Public Works and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives a report on the results of the study under this subsection.

"(4) RULEMAKING.—If the Secretary of Transportation determines, based on the results of the study conducted under this subsection, that the use of automatic oil shutoff equipment is necessary to prevent the actual or threatened discharge of oil during lightering or fuel loading or off[-]loading activity, the Secretary may initiate a rulemaking to take such action as is necessary to abate a threat to public health or the environment.

"(c) LIGHTERING STUDY.—The Secretary of Transportation shall coordinate with the Marine Board of the National Research Council on a study into the actual incidence and risk of oil spills from lightering operations off the coast of the United States. Among other things, the study shall address the manner in which existing regulations are serving to reduce oil spill risks. The study shall take into account current or proposed international rules and standards and also include recommendations on measures that would be likely to further reduce the risks of oil spills from lightering operations. Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 19, 1996], the Secretary shall submit a report on the study to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives."

EXISTING TANK VESSEL RESEARCH

Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1134, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3985, provided that:

"(a) FUNDING.—The Secretary of Transportation shall take steps to allocate funds appropriated for research, development, testing, and evaluation, including the combination of funds from any source available and authorized for this purpose, to ensure that any Government-sponsored project intended to evaluate double hull alternatives that provide equal or greater protection to the marine environment, or interim solutions to remediate potential environmental damage resulting from oil spills from existing tank vessels, commenced prior to the date of enactment of this section [Oct. 19, 1996], is fully funded for completion by the end of fiscal year 1997. Any vessel construction or repair necessary to carry out the purpose of this section must be performed in a shipyard located in the United States.

"(b) USE OF PUBLIC VESSELS.—The Secretary may provide vessels owned by, or demise chartered to, and operated by the Government and not engaged in commercial service, without reimbursement, for use in and the support of projects sponsored by the Government for research, development, testing, evaluation, and demonstration of new or improved technologies that are effective in preventing or mitigating oil discharges and protecting the environment."

OIL SPILL PREVENTION AND RESPONSE TECHNOLOGY TEST AND EVALUATION PROGRAM

Pub. L. 103–206, title III, §310, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2425, provided that:

"(a) Not later than 6 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 20, 1993], the Secretary of Transportation shall establish a program to evaluate the technological feasibility and environmental benefits of having tank vessels carry oil spill prevention and response technology. To implement the program the Secretary shall—

"(1) publish in the Federal Register an invitation for submission of proposals including plans and procedures for testing; and

"(2) review and evaluate technology using, to the maximum extent possible, existing evaluation and performance standards.

"(b) The Secretary shall, to the maximum extent possible, incorporate in the program established in subsection (a), the results of existing studies and evaluations of oil spill prevention and response technology carried on tank vessels.

"(c) Not later than 2 years after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 20, 1993], the Secretary shall evaluate the results of the program established in subsection (a) and submit a report to Congress with recommendations on the feasibility and environmental benefits of, and appropriate equipment and utilization standards for, requiring tank vessels to carry oil spill prevention and response equipment.

"(d) Not later than 6 months after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 20, 1993], the Secretary shall evaluate and report to the Congress on the feasibility of using segregated ballast tanks for emergency transfer of cargo and storage of recovered oil."

REGULATIONS REQUIRING PERIODIC GAUGING OF PLATING THICKNESS FOR OIL CARRYING COMMERCIAL VESSELS

Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4109, Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 515, provided that: "Not later than 1 year after

the date of the enactment of this Act [Aug. 18, 1990], the Secretary shall issue regulations for vessels constructed or adapted to carry, or that carry, oil in bulk as cargo or cargo residue—

"(1) establishing minimum standards for plating thickness; and

"(2) requiring, consistent with generally recognized principles of international law, periodic gauging of the plating thickness of all such vessels over 30 years old operating on the navigable waters or the waters of the exclusive economic zone."

REGULATIONS REQUIRING USE OF OVERFILL AND TANK LEVEL OR MONITORING DEVICES ON OIL CARRYING COMMERCIAL VESSELS

Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4110, Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 515, as amended by Pub. L. 108–293, title VII, §702(a), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1068, provided that:

"(a) STANDARDS.—The Secretary may establish, by regulation, minimum standards for devices for warning persons of overfills and tank levels of oil in cargo tanks and devices for monitoring the pressure of oil cargo tanks.

"(b) USE.—No sooner than 1 year after the Secretary prescribes regulations under subsection (a), the Secretary may issue regulations establishing, consistent with generally recognized principles of international law, requirements concerning the use of—

"(1) overfill devices, and

"(2) tank level or pressure monitoring devices,

which are referred to in subsection (a) and which meet any standards established by the Secretary under subsection (a), on vessels constructed or adapted to carry, or that carry, oil in bulk as cargo or cargo residue on the navigable waters and the waters of the exclusive economic zone."

TANKER NAVIGATION SAFETY STANDARDS STUDY

Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4111, Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 515, directed Secretary, not later than 2 years after Aug. 18, 1990, to conduct a study and report to Congress on whether existing laws and regulations are adequate to ensure safe navigation of vessels transporting oil or hazardous substances in bulk on navigable waters and waters of the exclusive economic zone.

RULES GOVERNING OPERATION OF VESSELS ON AUTO-PILOT OR WITH UNATTENDED ENGINE ROOM

Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4114(a), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 517, provided that: "In order to protect life, property, and the environment, the Secretary shall initiate a rulemaking proceeding within 180 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Aug. 18, 1990] to define the conditions under, and designate the waters upon, which tank vessels subject to section 3703 of title 46, United States Code, may operate in the navigable waters with the auto-pilot engaged or with an unattended engine room."

REGULATIONS REQUIRING ESCORTS FOR CERTAIN TANKERS; "TANKER" DEFINED

Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4116(c), (d), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 523, as amended by Pub. L. 111–281, title VII, §711(b)(1), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2987, provided that:

"(c) ESCORTS FOR CERTAIN TANKERS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall initiate issuance of regulations under section 3703(a)(3) of title 46, United States Code, to define those areas, including Prince William Sound, Alaska, and Rosario Strait and Puget Sound, Washington (including those portions of the Strait of Juan de Fuca east of Port Angeles, Haro Strait, and the Strait of Georgia subject to United States jurisdiction), on which single hulled tankers over 5,000 gross tons transporting oil in bulk shall be escorted by at least two towing vessels (as defined under section 2101 of title 46, United States Code) or other vessels considered appropriate by the Secretary.

"(2) PRINCE WILLIAM SOUND, ALASKA.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—The requirement in paragraph (1) relating to single hulled tankers in Prince William Sound, Alaska, described in that paragraph being escorted by at least 2 towing vessels or other vessels considered to be appropriate by the Secretary (including regulations promulgated in accordance with section 3703(a)(3) of title 46, United States Code, as set forth in part 168 of title 33, Code of Federal Regulations (as in effect on March 1, 2009) implementing this subsection with respect to those tankers) shall apply to double hulled tankers over 5,000 gross tons transporting oil in bulk in Prince William Sound, Alaska.

"(B) IMPLEMENTATION OF REQUIREMENTS.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall prescribe interim final regulations to carry out subparagraph (A) as soon as practicable without notice and hearing pursuant to section 553 of title 5 of the United States

Code."

"(d) TANKER DEFINED.—In this section [amending section 8502 of this title] the term 'tanker' has the same meaning the term has in section 2101 of title 46, United States Code."

[Pub. L. 111–281, title VII, §711(b)(2), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2987, provided that: "The amendments made by subsection (b) [amending section 4116(c) of Pub. L. 101–380, set out above] take effect on the date that is 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 15, 2010]."]

§3703a. Tank vessel construction standards

(a) Except as otherwise provided in this section, a vessel to which this chapter applies shall be equipped with a double hull—

(1) if it is constructed or adapted to carry, or carries, oil in bulk as cargo or cargo residue; and

(2) when operating on the waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, including the Exclusive Economic Zone.

(b) This section does not apply to—

(1) a vessel used only to respond to a discharge of oil or a hazardous substance;

(2) a vessel of less than 5,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title equipped with a double containment system determined by the Secretary to be as effective as a double hull for the prevention of a discharge of oil;

(3) a vessel documented under chapter 121 of this title that was equipped with a double hull before August 12, 1992;

(4) a barge of less than 1,500 gross tons (as measured under chapter 145 of this title) carrying refined petroleum product in bulk as cargo in or adjacent to waters of the Bering Sea, Chukchi Sea, and Arctic Ocean and waters tributary thereto and in the waters of the Aleutian Islands and the Alaskan Peninsula west of 155 degrees west longitude; or

(5) a vessel in the National Defense Reserve Fleet pursuant to section 57100.

(c)(1) In this subsection, the age of a vessel is determined from the later of the date on which the vessel—

(A) is delivered after original construction;

(B) is delivered after completion of a major conversion; or

(C) had its appraised salvage value determined by the Coast Guard and is qualified for documentation as a wrecked vessel under section 12112 of this title.

(2) A vessel of less than 5,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title for which a building contract or contract for major conversion was placed before June 30, 1990, and that was delivered under that contract before January 1, 1994, and a vessel of less than 5,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title that had its appraised salvage value determined by the Coast Guard before June 30, 1990, and that qualified for documentation as a wrecked vessel under section 12112 of this title before January 1, 1994, may not operate in the navigable waters or the Exclusive Economic Zone of the United States unless the vessel is equipped with a double hull or with a double containment system determined by the Secretary to be as effective as a double hull for the prevention of a discharge of oil.

(3) A vessel for which a building contract or contract for major conversion was placed before June 30, 1990, and that was delivered under that contract before January 1, 1994, and a vessel that had its appraised salvage value determined by the Coast Guard before June 30, 1990, and that qualified for

documentation as a wrecked vessel under section 12112 of this title before January 1, 1994, may not operate in the navigable waters or Exclusive Economic Zone of the United States unless equipped with a double hull—

(A) in the case of a vessel of at least 5,000 gross tons but less than 15,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104, if the vessel is 25 years old or older and has a single hull, or is 30 years old or older and has a double bottom or double sides;

(B) in the case of a vessel of at least 15,000 gross tons but less than 30,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104, if the vessel is 25 years old or older and has a single hull, or is 30 years old or older and has a double bottom or double sides; and

(C) in the case of a vessel of at least 30,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104, if the vessel is 23 years old or older and has a single hull, or is 28 years old or older and has a double bottom or double sides.

(4) Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section—

(A) a vessel that has a single hull may not operate after January 1, 2010; and

(B) a vessel that has a double bottom or double sides may not operate after January 1, 2015.

(d) The operation of barges described in subsection (b)(5) outside waters described in that subsection shall be on any conditions as the Secretary may require.

(e)(1) For the purposes of this section, the gross tonnage of a vessel shall be the gross tonnage that would have been recognized by the Secretary on July 1, 1997, as the tonnage measured under section 14502 of this title, or as an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title.

(2) This subsection does not apply to a tank vessel that, before July 1, 1997, had undergone, or was the subject of a contract for, alterations that reduce the gross tonnage of the tank vessel, as shown by reliable evidence acceptable to the Secretary.

(Added Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4115(a), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 517; amended Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §715, title XI, §1103, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3937, 3966; Pub. L. 105–85, div. C, title XXXVI, §3606, Nov. 18, 1997, 111 Stat. 2077; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(15), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1703; Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(b)(3), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1910; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3544(a), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2324.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (b)(3) to (6). Pub. L. 115–232, §3544(a)(1), redesignated pars. (4) to (6) as (3) to (5), respectively, and struck out former par. (3) which related to certain vessels before January 1, 2015, unloading oil in bulk or offloading in lightering activities.

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 115–232, §3544(a)(2), substituted "that was delivered" for "that is delivered" and "that qualified" for "that qualifies" and struck out "after January 1, 2015," after "the United States".

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 115–232, §3544(a)(3), in introductory provisions, substituted "that was delivered" for "that is delivered" and "that qualified" for "that qualifies".

Subsec. (c)(3)(A). Pub. L. 115–232, §3544(a)(4), added subpar. (A) and struck out former subpar. (A) which set various age limits for vessels between 5,000 and 15,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title.

Subsec. (c)(3)(B). Pub. L. 115–232, §3544(a)(5), added subpar. (B) and struck out former subpar. (B) which set various age limits for vessels between 15,000 and 30,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title.

Subsec. (c)(3)(C). Pub. L. 115–232, §3544(a)(6), added subpar. (C) and struck out former subpar. (C) which set various age limits for vessels of at least 30,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title.

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 115–232, §3544(a)(7)(A), stuck out "and except as otherwise provided in paragraphs (2) and (3) of this subsection" after "purposes of this section".

Subsec. (e)(2), (3). Pub. L. 115–232, §3544(a)(7)(B), redesignated par. (3) as (2) and struck out former par. (2) which related to waiver of the application of paragraph (1) to certain tank vessels.

2017—Subsec. (b)(6). Pub. L. 115–91 substituted "section 57100" for "section 11 of the Merchant Ship Sales Act of 1946 (50 App. U.S.C. 1744)".

2006—Subsec. (c)(1)(C), (2), (3). Pub. L. 109–304 substituted "documentation as a wrecked vessel under section 12112 of this title" for "documentation under section 4136 of the Revised Statutes of the United States (46 App. U.S.C. 14)".

1997—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 105–85 added subsec. (e).

1996—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 104–324, §715(1), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "5,000 gross tons".

Subsec. (b)(4) to (6). Pub. L. 104–324, §1103(1), added pars. (4) to (6).

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 104–324, §715(2), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "5,000 gross tons" in two places.

Subsec. (c)(3)(A). Pub. L. 104–324, §715(3), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "15,000 gross tons".

Subsec. (c)(3)(B). Pub. L. 104–324, §715(4), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "30,000 gross tons".

Subsec. (c)(3)(C). Pub. L. 104–324, §715(5), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "30,000 gross tons".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 104–324, §1103(2), added subsec. (d).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as a note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

TANK VESSELS OVER 5,000 GROSS TONS TO COMPLY UNTIL JANUARY 1, 2015, WITH ENVIRONMENTALLY PROTECTIVE STRUCTURAL AND OPERATIONAL REQUIREMENTS

Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4115(b), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 520, provided that: "The Secretary shall, within 12 months after the date of the enactment of this Act [Aug. 18, 1990], complete a rulemaking proceeding and issue a final rule to require that tank vessels over 5,000 gross tons affected by section 3703a of title 46, United States Code, as added by this section, comply until January 1, 2015, with structural and operational requirements that the Secretary determines will provide as substantial protection to the environment as is economically and technologically feasible."

STUDY ON OTHER STRUCTURAL AND OPERATIONAL TANK VESSEL REQUIREMENTS

Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4115(e), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 520, as amended by Pub. L. 105–383, title IV, §423, Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3440; Pub. L. 108–293, title VII, §705, Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1075; Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(n), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 565, provided that:

"(1) OTHER REQUIREMENTS.—Not later than 6 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 18, 1990], the Secretary shall determine, based on recommendations from the National Academy of Sciences or other qualified organizations, whether other structural and operational tank vessel requirements will provide

protection to the marine environment equal to or greater than that provided by double hulls, and shall report to the Congress that determination and recommendations for legislative action.

"(2) REVIEW AND ASSESSMENT.—The Secretary shall—

"(A) periodically review recommendations from the National Academy of Sciences and other qualified organizations on methods for further increasing the environmental and operational safety of tank vessels;

"(B) not later than 5 years after the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 18, 1990], assess the impact of this section on the safety of the marine environment and the economic viability and operational makeup of the maritime oil transportation industry; and

"(C) report the results of the review and assessment to the Congress with recommendations for legislative or other action.

"(3) No later than one year after the date of enactment of the Coast Guard and Maritime Transportation Act of 2004 [Aug. 9, 2004], the Secretary shall, taking into account the recommendations contained in the report by the Marine Board of the National Research Council entitled 'Environmental Performance of Tanker Design in Collision and Grounding' and dated 2001, establish and publish an environmental equivalency evaluation index (including the methodology to develop that index) to assess overall outflow performance due to collisions and groundings for double hull tank vessels and alternative designs."

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TERRITORIAL SEA OF UNITED STATES

For extension of territorial sea of United States, see Proc. No. 5928, set out as a note under section 1331 of Title 43, Public Lands.

§3704. Coastwise trade vessels

A segregated ballast tank, a crude oil washing system, or an inert gas system, required by this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter, on a vessel entitled to engage in the coastwise trade under chapter 551 of this title shall be installed in the United States (except the trust territories). A vessel failing to comply with this section may not engage in the coastwise trade.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 522; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(16), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1703.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3704	46:391a(7)

Section 3704 requires any tank vessel that is entitled to engage in the coastwise trade to install certain equipment in the United States under the penalty of losing coastwise trading privileges if the installation work is done in a foreign country.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–304 substituted "chapter 551 of this title" for "section 27 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 (46 App. U.S.C. 883),".

§3705. Crude oil tanker minimum standards

(a) A new crude oil tanker of at least 20,000 deadweight tons shall be equipped with—

(1) protectively located segregated ballast tanks;

(2) a crude oil washing system; and

(3) a cargo tank protection system consisting of a fixed deck froth system and a fixed inert gas

system.

(b) An existing crude oil tanker of at least 40,000 deadweight tons shall be equipped with—
(1) segregated ballast tanks; or
(2) a crude oil washing system.

(c) An existing crude oil tanker of at least 20,000 deadweight tons but less than 40,000 deadweight tons, and at least 15 years of age, shall be equipped with segregated ballast tanks or a crude oil washing system.

(d) An existing crude oil tanker of at least 20,000 deadweight tons shall be equipped with an inert gas system. However, for a crude oil tanker of less than 40,000 deadweight tons not fitted with high capacity tank washing machines, the Secretary may grant an exemption if the vessel's owner can show clearly that compliance would be unreasonable and impracticable due to the vessel's design characteristics.

(e) A crude oil tanker engaged in transferring oil from an offshore oil exploitation or production facility on the Outer Continental Shelf of the United States shall be equipped with segregated ballast tanks, or may operate with dedicated clean ballast tanks or special ballast arrangements. However, the tanker shall comply with other applicable minimum standards of this section.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 523; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3544(b), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2325.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3705(a)	46:391a(7)(A)
3705(b)	46:391a(7)(D)
3705(c)	46:391a(7)(E)
3705(d)	46:391a(7)(F)
3705(e)	46:391a(7)(M)

Section 3705 requires compliance with certain minimum standards by a crude oil tanker, which is self-propelled. In general, the minimum required standards are consistent with those international standards that have been adopted as Protocols to the 1974 Safety of Life at Sea Convention and the 1973 Marine Pollution Convention.

Section 3705(a) requires new crude oil tankers of 20,000 deadweight tons or above to have protectively located segregated ballast tanks, a crude oil washing system, and a specified cargo tank protection system.

Section 3705(b) requires existing crude oil tankers of 40,000 deadweight tons or above to have segregated ballast tanks or a crude oil washing system. Compliance may be delayed until June 1, 1985 for smaller tankers that have dedicated clean ballast tanks.

Section 3705(c) requires existing crude oil tankers of 20,000 deadweight tons or above, but less than 40,000 deadweight tons, that are 15 years or older, to have segregated ballast tanks or a crude oil washing system by January 1, 1985 or if less than 15 years old, by the date on which it reaches 15 years of age.

Section 3705(d) requires existing crude oil tankers of 20,000 deadweight tons or above, to install an inert gas system. An exemption for crude oil tankers of less than 40,000 deadweight tons not fitted with high-capacity tank washing machines may be granted by the Secretary, only if it is demonstrated that compliance would be unreasonable and impracticable due to the vessel's design characteristics.

Section 3705(e) requires existing crude oil tankers of 20,000 deadweight tons or above, engaged in the transfer of oil from Outer Continental Shelf oil exploitation or production facilities, to have segregated ballast tanks or be operated with dedicated clean ballast tanks or special ballast arrangements.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 115–232, §3544(b)(1), struck out par. (1) designation after "(b)", redesignated

subpars. (A) and (B) of former par. (1) as pars. (1) and (2), respectively, and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: "Compliance with paragraph (1) of this subsection may be delayed until June 1, 1985, for any tanker of less than 70,000 deadweight tons that has dedicated clean ballast tanks."

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 115–232, §3544(b)(2), struck out "before January 2, 1986, or the date on which the tanker reaches 15 years of age, whichever is later" before period at end.

§3706. Product carrier minimum standards

(a) A new product carrier of at least 30,000 deadweight tons shall be equipped with protectively located segregated ballast tanks.

(b) A new product carrier of at least 20,000 deadweight tons shall be equipped with a cargo tank protection system consisting of a fixed deck froth system and a fixed inert gas system or, if the product carrier carries dedicated products incompatible with the cargo tank protection system, an alternate protection system authorized by the Secretary.

(c) An existing product carrier of at least 40,000 deadweight tons shall be equipped with segregated ballast tanks or may operate with dedicated clean ballast tanks.

(d) An existing product carrier of at least 20,000 deadweight tons but less than 40,000 deadweight tons, and at least 15 years of age, shall be equipped with segregated ballast tanks or may operate with dedicated clean ballast tanks.

(e) An existing product carrier of at least 40,000 deadweight tons, or an existing product carrier of at least 20,000 deadweight tons but less than 40,000 deadweight tons that is fitted with high-capacity tank washing machines, shall be equipped with an inert gas system.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 523; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3544(c), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2325.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3706(a)	46:391a(7)(B)
3706(b)	46:391a(7)(C)
3706(c)	46:391a(7)(G)
3706(d)	46:391a(7)(H)
3706(e)	46:391a(7)(I)

Section 3706 requires compliance with certain minimum standards by a product carrier, which is a self-propelled tank vessel.

Section 3706(a) requires new product carriers of 30,000 deadweight tons or above, to have protectively located segregated ballast tanks.

Section 3706(b) requires new product carriers of 20,000 deadweight tons or above, to have a cargo tank protection system consisting of a fixed deck froth system or a fixed inert gas system. If the products carried are incompatible with the cargo tank protection system, then an alternative protection system may be authorized.

Section 3706(c) requires existing product carriers of 40,000 deadweight tons or above, to have segregated ballast tanks or to operate with dedicated clean ballast tanks.

Section 3706(d) requires existing product carriers of 20,000 deadweight tons or above, but less than 40,000 deadweight tons, that are 15 years or older, to have segregated ballast tanks by January 1, 1985, or on the date on which it reaches 15 years of age or, in the alternative, that the vessel operate with dedicated clean ballast tanks.

Section 3706(e) requires existing product carriers of 40,000 deadweight tons or above, or to existing product carriers, fitted with high-capacity tank washing machines, of 20,000 deadweight tons but less than 40,000 deadweight tons, to install an inert gas system.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 115–232 struck out "before January 2, 1986, or the date on which it reaches 15 years of age, whichever is later" before period at end.

§3707. Tanker minimum standards

(a) A new tanker of at least 10,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title shall be equipped with—

(1) 2 remote steering gear control systems operable separately from the navigating bridge;

(2) the main steering gear control in the steering gear compartment;

(3) means of communications and rudder angle indicators on the navigating bridge, a remote steering gear control station, and the steering gear compartment;

(4) at least 2 identical and adequate power units for the main steering gear;

(5) an alternative and adequate power supply, either from an emergency source of electrical power or from another independent source of power located in the steering gear compartment; and

(6) means of automatic starting and stopping of power units with attendant alarms at all steering stations.

(b) An existing tanker of at least 10,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title shall be equipped with—

(1) 2 remote steering gear control systems operable separately from the navigating bridge;

(2) the main steering gear control in the steering gear compartment; and

(3) means of communications and rudder angle indicators on the navigating bridge, a remote steering gear control station, and the steering gear compartment.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 524; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §716, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3937.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3707(a)	46:391a(7)(K)
3707(b)	46:391a(7)(L)

Section 3707 requires compliance with certain minimum standards by a tanker, which is a self-propelled tank vessel.

Section 3707(a) requires new tankers of 10,000 gross tons or above, to have two remote steering gear control systems, a main steering gear control in the steering gear compartment, a means of communications and rudder angle indicators at specified locations, two or more specified power units for the main steering gear, an alternative and adequate power supply of specified characteristics, and a means of automatic operation of power units, with attendant alarms at all steering stations.

Section 3707(b) requires existing tankers of 10,000 gross tons or above, to have two remote steering gear control systems, a main steering gear control in the steering gear compartment, and a means of communication and rudder angle indicators at specified locations.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–324, §716(1), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "10,000 gross tons" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 104–324, §716(2), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an

alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "10,000 gross tons".

§3708. Self-propelled tank vessel minimum standards

A self-propelled tank vessel of at least 10,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title shall be equipped with—

(1) a dual radar system with short-range and long-range capabilities, each with true-north features;

(2) an electronic relative motion analyzer that is at least functionally equivalent to equipment complying with specifications established by the Secretary of Transportation;

(3) an electronic position-fixing device;

(4) adequate communications equipment;

(5) a sonic depth finder;

(6) a gyrocompass; and

(7) up-to-date charts.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 524; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §717, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3937.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3708	46:391a(7)(J)

Section 3708 requires compliance with certain minimum standards by a self-propelled tank vessel. These requirements apply to any tank vessel of 10,000 gross tons or above with no distinction being made as to whether or not the vessel is "primarily" constructed or adapted to carry oil or hazardous material in bulk in the cargo spaces. These vessels are required to be equipped with a dual radar system, a computerized relative motion analyzer, an electronic position fixing device, adequate communications equipment, a sonic depth finder, a gyrocompass, and up-to-date charts.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "10,000 gross tons".

§3709. Exemptions

The Secretary may exempt a vessel from the minimum requirements established by sections 3704–3706 of this title for segregated ballast, crude oil washing, and dedicated clean ballast if the Secretary decides that shore-based reception facilities are a preferred method of handling ballast and that adequate facilities are readily available.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 524.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3709	46:391a(7)(N)

Section 3709 provides the Secretary with the authority to exempt certain minimum tanker requirements of sections 3704, 3705, and 3706 when shorebased reception facilities are a better way of handling ballast and when the facilities are adequate and readily available.

§3710. Evidence of compliance by vessels of the United States

(a) A vessel of the United States to which this chapter applies that has on board oil or hazardous material in bulk as cargo or cargo residue must have a certificate of inspection issued under this part, endorsed to indicate that the vessel complies with regulations prescribed under this chapter.

(b) Each certificate endorsed under this section is valid for not more than 5 years and may be renewed as specified by the Secretary. In appropriate circumstances, the Secretary may issue a temporary certificate valid for not more than 30 days. A certificate shall be suspended or revoked if the Secretary finds that the vessel does not comply with the conditions under which the certificate was issued.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 524; Pub. L. 104–324, title VI, §605(b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3931.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3710	46:391a(8)(A) 46:391a(8)(E)

Section 3710 prohibits any vessels of the United States subject to this chapter from having on board oil or hazardous material in bulk as cargo or in residue, unless it has a required Certificate of Inspection endorsed to indicate vessel compliance with applicable regulations. Certificates shall be valid for a period not to exceed two years and may be renewed as specified by the Secretary. The Secretary may issue temporary certificates of not more than thirty days duration and may revoke or suspend any certificate under designated circumstances.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 104–324 substituted "5 years" for "24 months".

§3711. Evidence of compliance by foreign vessels

(a) A foreign vessel to which this chapter applies may operate on the navigable waters of the United States, or transfer oil or hazardous material in a port or place under the jurisdiction of the United States, only if the vessel has been issued a certificate of compliance by the Secretary. The Secretary may issue the certificate only after the vessel has been examined and found to be in compliance with this chapter and regulations prescribed under this chapter. The Secretary may accept any part of a certificate, endorsement, or document, issued by the government of a foreign country under a treaty, convention, or other international agreement to which the United States is a party, as a basis for issuing a certificate of compliance.

(b) A certificate issued under this section is valid for not more than 24 months and may be renewed as specified by the Secretary. In appropriate circumstances, the Secretary may issue a temporary certificate valid for not more than 30 days.

(c) A certificate shall be suspended or revoked if the Secretary finds that the vessel does not comply with the conditions under which the certificate was issued.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 525.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3711	46:391a(8)(B) 46:391a(8)(C) 46:391a(8)(E)

Section 3711 prohibits any foreign vessel from operating on the navigable waters of the United States or from transferring oil or hazardous material in any port or place under the jurisdiction of the United States, unless it has a certificate of compliance issued by the Secretary indicating that the vessel has been examined and found to be in compliance with the provisions of the applicable regulations. It also authorizes the Secretary to accept, in whole or in part, an appropriate foreign certificate issued pursuant to any international agreement to which the United States is a party, as a basis for issuing the certificate of compliance. This means that the Secretary does not have to accept foreign certificates as evidence of compliance, but may take additional action to assure compliance with applicable domestic laws and regulations and international treaty provisions.

§3712. Notification of noncompliance

The Secretary shall notify the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel found not to be in compliance with a regulation prescribed under this part and state how compliance may be achieved.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 525.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3712	46:391a(8)(A) 46:391a(8)(B)

Section 3712 requires the Secretary to notify appropriate parties when a vessel is found not to be in compliance with applicable requirements, standards, or regulations and what remedial steps must be taken in order to comply with them.

§3713. Prohibited acts

(a) A person may not—

(1) violate this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter;

(2) refuse to permit any official, authorized by the Secretary to enforce this chapter, to board a vessel or to enter a shore area, place, or premises, under a person's control to make an inspection under this chapter; or

(3) refuse to obey a lawful directive issued under this chapter.

(b) A vessel to which this chapter applies may not—

(1) operate on the navigable waters of the United States or use a port or place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States when not in compliance with this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter;

(2) fail to comply with a lawful directive issued under this chapter; or

(3) carry a type or grade of oil or hazardous material in bulk as cargo or cargo residue unless its certificate is endorsed to allow that carriage.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 525.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3713	46:391a(13)

Section 3713(a) prohibits any person from violating any provision of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under its authority. It prohibits the refusal to permit authorized officials to board a vessel or to enter a shore area for the purposes of inspection of the vessel or premises. It also prohibits the refusal to obey any lawful directive issued under this chapter.

Section 3713(b) prohibits any vessel, subject to the provisions of this chapter from operating on the navigable waters of the United States, or from using any port or place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States while not in compliance with any provision of applicable law or regulation. It further prohibits any vessel from failing to comply with a lawful directive issued pursuant to the authority of this chapter. It also prohibits the vessel from carrying oil or hazardous material as cargo or cargo residue unless its certificate is so endorsed to permit its carriage.

§3714. Inspection and examination

(a)(1) Except as provided in subsection (c), the Secretary shall have each vessel to which this chapter applies inspected or examined at least once each year.

(2) Each of those vessels that is more than 10 years of age shall undergo a special and detailed inspection of structural strength and hull integrity as specified by the Secretary.

(3) The Secretary may make contracts for conducting inspections or examinations in the United States and in foreign countries. An inspector conducting an inspection or examination under contract may not issue a certificate of inspection or a certificate of compliance, but the inspector may issue a temporary certificate.

(4) The Secretary shall prescribe by regulation reasonable fees for an inspection or examination conducted under this section outside the United States, or which, when involving a foreign vessel, is conducted under a contract authorized by paragraph (3) of this subsection. The owner, charterer, or managing operator of a vessel inspected or examined by the Secretary is liable for the fees. Amounts received as fees shall be deposited in the Treasury.

(5) The Secretary may allow provisional entry of a vessel to conduct an inspection or examination under this chapter.

(b) Each vessel to which this chapter applies shall have on board those documents the Secretary considers necessary for inspection and enforcement, including documents listing—

(1) the type, grade, and approximate quantities of cargo on board;

(2) the shipper and consignee of the cargo;

(3) the places of origin and destination of the vessel; and

(4) the name of an agent in the United States authorized to accept service of legal process.

(c) PERFORMANCE-DRIVEN EXAMINATION SCHEDULE.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—With respect to examinations of foreign vessels to which this chapter applies, and subject to paragraph (3), the Secretary may adopt a performance-driven examination schedule to which such vessels are to be examined and the frequency with which such examinations occur, including the frequency of examinations for each vessel. Such schedule shall be consistent with the Secretary's assessment of the safety performance of such vessels, including each vessel participating in the performance-driven examination schedule, in accordance with paragraph (2).

(2) CONSIDERATIONS.—In developing an examination schedule under paragraph (1) and subject to paragraph (3), with respect to each vessel in determining eligibility to participate in the performance based examination schedule—

(A) the Secretary shall consider—

(i) certificate of compliance and examination history, to include those conducted by foreign countries;

(ii) history of violations, vessel detentions, incidents, and casualties;
(iii) history of notices of violation issued by the Coast Guard;
(iv) safety related information provided by the flag state of the vessel;
(v) owner and operator history;
(vi) historical classification society data, which may include relevant surveys;
(vii) cargo-specific documentation;
(viii) data from port state control safety exams; and
(ix) relevant repair and maintenance history; and

(B) the Secretary may consider—
(i) data from relevant vessel quality assurance and risk assessment programs including Quality Shipping for the 21st Century (QUALSHIP 21);
(ii) data from industry inspection regimes;
(iii) data from vessel self assessments submitted to the International Maritime Organization or other maritime organizations; and
(iv) other safety relevant data or information as determined by the Secretary.

(3) ELIGIBILITY.—In developing an examination schedule under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall not consider a vessel eligible to take part in a performance-driven examination schedule under paragraph (1) if, within the last 36 months, the vessel has—
(A) been detained by the Coast Guard;
(B) a record of a violation issued by the Coast Guard against the owners or operators with a finding of proved; or
(C) suffered a marine casualty that, as determined by the Secretary, involves the safe operation of the vessel and overall performance of the vessel.

(4) RESTRICTIONS.—The Secretary may not adopt a performance-driven examination schedule under paragraph (1) until the Secretary has—
(A) conducted the assessment recommended in the Government Accountability Office report submitted under section 8254(a) of the William M. (Mac) Thornberry National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2021 (Public Law 116–283);
(B) concluded through such assessment that a performance-driven examination schedule provides not less than the level of safety provided by the annual examinations required under subsection (a)(1); and
(C) provided the results of such assessment to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives.

(d) Each vessel to which this chapter applies that operates in the United States shall have a person designated as authorized to accept service of legal process for the vessel.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 526; Pub. L. 99–307, §1(8), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 445; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7312(a), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1759.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3714	46:391a(15)

Section 3714(a) requires the Secretary to establish a program for the inspection of tank vessels, foreign or domestic, at least once each year. The Committee contemplates that United States vessels will be issued a 2 year certificate of inspection with a mid-period examination. The Committee also contemplates that foreign-flag vessels will continue to be tracked and boarded at least once a year or when they first arrive in the United States. The Secretary may examine the foreign-flag tank vessel but may accept, as a basis for the issuance of a certificate of compliance, in whole or in part a foreign-issued certificate.

Each vessel over 10 years of age must undergo a special and detailed inspection of structural strength and hull integrity, as specified by the Secretary. An inspection or examination may be conducted by any officer authorized by the Secretary. The Committee expects that, whenever possible, a qualified marine inspector will be used wherever the vessel undergoes these 10-year inspections. The Secretary may also contract for inspections or examinations in the United States and in foreign countries.

The primary reason for including a provision that permits the contracting for the conduct of inspections and examinations is to provide flexibility in foreign areas where Coast Guard marine inspectors are not normally available.

A contract inspector may be authorized to act on behalf of the Secretary, but may not issue a certificate of inspection or compliance. The inspector may, however, issue a temporary certificate.

The Committee understands that the 10-year inspections of United States-flag and foreign-flag vessels may occur at the time the vessel is scheduled for shipyard availability to complete the periodic classification society survey.

The Secretary is also authorized and directed to prescribe by regulation reasonable fees for certain inspections or examinations conducted pursuant to this section based on the cost incurred. The owner of any vessel inspected or examined by the Secretary or his designee shall be liable for the fee. Amounts received as fees under this section are to be deposited in the Treasury.

Section 3714(b) requires each vessel subject to this chapter to have on board those documents the Secretary declares are necessary for inspection or enforcement, including, but not limited to documents indicating the kind, grade, and approximate quantities of any cargo on board; the shipper and consignee of the cargo; the points of origin and destination of the vessel; and the name of an agent in the United States authorized to accept legal process.

Section 3714(c) requires each vessel subject to this chapter to have a person authorized to accept service of legal process for the vessel.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 8254(a) of the William M. (Mac) Thornberry National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2021, referred to in subsec. (d)(4)(A), is section 8254 of Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXII [LXXXII], Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4674, which is not set out in the Code.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 119–60, §7312(a)(1), substituted "Except as provided in subsection (c), the Secretary" for "The Secretary".

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 119–60, §7312(a)(2), (3), added subsec. (c) and redesignated former subsec. (c) as (d).

1986—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 99–307 substituted "charterer" for "charter".

§3715. Lightering

(a) A vessel may transfer oil or hazardous material in a port or place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, when the cargo has been transferred from another vessel on the navigable waters of the United States or in the marine environment, only if—

(1) the transfer was conducted consistent with regulations prescribed by the Secretary;

(2) both the delivering and receiving vessels had on board, at the time of transfer, a certificate of inspection or a certificate of compliance, as would have been required under section 3710 or 3711 of this title, had the transfer taken place in a port or place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States;

(3) the delivering and the receiving vessel had on board at the time of transfer, a certificate of financial responsibility as would have been required under section 1016 of the Oil Pollution Act of 1990, had the transfer taken place in a place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States;

(4) the delivering and the receiving vessel had on board at the time of transfer, evidence that each vessel is operating in compliance with section 311(j) of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1321(j)); and

(5) the delivering and the receiving vessel are operating in compliance with section 3703a of

this title.

(b) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations to carry out subsection (a) of this section. The regulations shall include provisions on—

(1) minimum safe operating conditions, including sea state, wave height, weather, proximity to channels or shipping lanes, and other similar factors;

(2) the prevention of spills;

(3) equipment for responding to a spill;

(4) the prevention of any unreasonable interference with navigation or other reasonable uses of the high seas, as those uses are defined by treaty, convention, or customary international law;

(5) the establishment of lightering zones; and

(6) requirements for communication and prearrival messages.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 526; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4115(d), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 520; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §306(a)(4), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 54.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3715	46:391a(17)

Section 3715 requires the Secretary to control lightering operations; that is, the transferring of cargoes at sea from large deep-draft vessels to shallow-draft vessels for subsequent transfer to shoreside terminals due to the inability of the larger tank vessels to enter shallow ports. It prohibits a tank vessel from unloading any cargo of oil or hazardous material at any port or terminal under the jurisdiction of the United States, unless the cargo has been transferred in accordance with lightering regulations. It also prohibits the shoreside transfer unless both the delivering and receiving vessels involved in the prior lightering had on board at the time of the offshore transfer, the certificates that would have been required had the transfer taken place in a port or place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

The regulations to be prescribed by the Secretary shall include a number of specific considerations but may include any related matters deemed necessary to promote navigation and vessel safety and protection of the marine environment. The Secretary must consider standards for minimum safe operating conditions, including sea state, wave height, weather, vessel traffic, the prevention of oil spills, and oil spill response equipment. In regulating this operation, there must not be any unreasonable interference with international navigation or reasonable uses of the high seas, and there must be established lightering zones with attendant communications and prearrival message requirements.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1016 of the Oil Pollution Act of 1990, referred to in subsec. (a)(3), is classified to section 2716 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 114–120 struck out "and" at end.

1990—Subsec. (a)(3) to (5). Pub. L. 101–380 added pars. (3) to (5).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 98–89, §2(g)(2), Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 599, provided that: "Section 3715(a) of title 46 (as enacted

by section 1 of this Act) is effective on the day after the effective date of the regulations prescribed by the Secretary under section 3715(b) of title 46." [Regulations effective Apr. 26, 1984, see 49 F.R. 11170, Mar. 26, 1984.]

§3716. Tank washings

(a) A vessel may not transfer cargo in a port or place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States if, before arriving, the vessel has discharged tank washings containing oil or hazardous material in preparation for loading at that port or place in violation of the laws of the United States or in a manner or quantities inconsistent with a treaty to which the United States is a party.

(b) The Secretary shall establish effective control and supervisory measures to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 527.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3716	46:391a(18)

Section 3716 requires the Secretary to establish effective control and supervisory measures to prohibit the discharge of tank washings by dumping at sea. The section also prohibits the dumping vessel from subsequently loading any cargo at a port or terminal subject to the jurisdiction of the United States. This section is intended to prohibit the practice of discharging a cargo of oil or hazardous substance, then going to sea to clean tanks by pumping tank washing mixtures overboard, and then returning to a port or terminal subject to the jurisdiction of the United States for the purpose of loading a cargo that was incompatible with the prior cargo.

§3717. Marine safety information system

(a) The Secretary shall establish a marine safety information system that shall contain information about each vessel to which this chapter applies that operates on the navigable waters of the United States, or that transfers oil or hazardous material in a port or place under the jurisdiction of the United States. In acquiring this information, the Secretary shall make full use of publicly available information. The Secretary may by regulation require the vessel to provide information that the Secretary considers necessary to carry out this subsection, including—

(1) the name of each person with an ownership interest in the vessel;

(2) details of compliance with the financial responsibility requirements of applicable laws or regulations;

(3) registration information, including all changes in the name of the vessel;

(4) the history of marine casualties and serious repair problems of the vessel; and

(5) a record of all inspections and examinations of a vessel conducted under section 3714 of this title.

(b) On written request from the Secretary, the head of each department, agency, or instrumentality of the United States Government shall provide available information that the Secretary considers necessary to confirm the information received under subsection (a) of this section.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 527.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3717	46:391a(16)

Section 3717 requires the Secretary to establish a marine safety information system which is to contain selected information on any tank vessel, foreign or domestic, that comes within the jurisdiction of the United States. This information must be recorded and maintained up-to-date and is available from a number of sources. In some instances, this information is required as a condition of entry. This information shall include certain ownership interests, financial responsibility information, all registered names that the vessel has had since it was built, the present and prior countries of registry, history of accidents or serious repair problems, record of the various inspections or examinations required, and any other data the Secretary deems appropriate to carry out the intent of the section. The section also provides for interagency cooperation and the furnishing of available data and information.

§3718. Penalties

(a)(1) A person violating this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $25,000. Each day of a continuing violation is a separate violation.

(2) Each vessel to which this chapter applies that is operated in violation of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter is liable in rem for a civil penalty under this subsection.

(b) A person willfully and knowingly violating this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter commits a class D felony.

(c) Instead of the penalties provided by subsection (b) of this section, a person willfully and knowingly violating this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter, and using a dangerous weapon, or engaging in conduct that causes bodily injury or fear of imminent bodily injury to an official authorized to enforce this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter, commits a class C felony.

(d) The district courts of the United States have jurisdiction to restrain a violation of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter.

(e)(1) If any owner, operator, or individual in charge of a vessel is liable for any penalty or fine under this section, or if reasonable cause exists to believe that the owner, operator, or individual in charge may be subject to any penalty or fine under this section, the Secretary of Homeland Security, upon the request of the Secretary, shall with respect to such vessel refuse or revoke any clearance required by section 60105 of this title.

(2) Clearance or a permit refused or revoked under this subsection may be granted upon filing of a bond or other surety satisfactory to the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 527; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4302(c), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 538; Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §312(d), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3921; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(17), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1703.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
3718	46:391a(14)

Section 3718 provides the authority to assess civil penalties for violation of the chapter or regulations. Each violation subjects the violator to a penalty not to exceed $25,000 for each violation and, in the case of a continuing violation, each day shall constitute a separate violation and the vessel is liable in rem. The procedures for assessing penalties are found in section 2107 of part A.

With respect to criminal penalties, a willful or knowing violation of the section or a regulation subjects the offender, upon conviction, to a criminal fine of not more than $50,000 for each violation or imprisonment for not more than 1 year, or both. If the willful and knowing violation involves the use of a dangerous weapon or constitutes an assault or battery, the offender is subjected to a fine of not more than $100,000 or imprisonment of not more than 10 years, or both.

In addition, where the owner or operator of the vessel is subject to any of the penalties prescribed, the Secretary of the Treasury is directed to withhold required Customs clearance, at the request of the Secretary.

Clearance may be granted upon the filing of a bond or other surety satisfactory to the Secretary.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 109–304 substituted "Secretary of Homeland Security" and "section 60105 of this title" for "Secretary of the Treasury" and "section 4197 of the Revised Statutes of the United States (46 App. U.S.C. 91)", respectively.

1996—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 104–324 amended subsec. (e) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (e) read as follows: "At the request of the Secretary, the Secretary of the Treasury shall withhold or revoke the clearance required by section 4197 of the Revised Statutes (46 App. U.S.C. 91) of a vessel the owner or operator of which is subject to a penalty under this section. Clearance may be granted on filing a bond or other surety satisfactory to the Secretary."

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(c)(1), substituted "commits a class D felony" for "shall be fined not more than $50,000, imprisoned for not more than 5 years, or both".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(c)(2), substituted "commits a class C felony" for "shall be fined not more than $100,000, imprisoned for not more than 10 years, or both".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

§3719. Reduction of oil spills from single hull non-self-propelled tank vessels

The Secretary shall, in consultation with the National Towing Safety Advisory Committee and taking into consideration the characteristics, methods of operation, and the size and nature of service of single hull non-self-propelled tank vessels and towing vessels, prescribe regulations requiring a single hull non-self-propelled tank vessel that operates in the open ocean or coastal waters, or the vessel towing it, to have at least one of the following:

(1) A crew member and an operable anchor on board the tank vessel that together are capable of arresting the tank vessel without additional assistance under reasonably foreseeable sea conditions.

(2) An emergency system on the tank vessel or towing vessel that without additional assistance under reasonably foreseeable sea conditions will allow the tank vessel to be retrieved by the towing vessel if the tow line ruptures.

(3) Any other measure or combination of measures that the Secretary determines will provide protection against grounding of the tank vessel comparable to that provided by the measures described in paragraph (1) or (2).

(Added Pub. L. 104–324, title IX, §901(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3946; amended Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(c)(6)(B)(i), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4290.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Pub. L. 115–282 inserted "National" before "Towing Safety" in introductory provisions.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 104–324, title IX, §901(b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3946, provided that: "The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall issue regulations required under section 3719 of title

46, United States Code, as added by subsection (a), by not later than October 1, 1997."

[CHAPTER 39—REPEALED]

[§§3901, 3902. Repealed. Pub. L. 107–171, title X, §10418(a)(20), May 13, 2002, 116 Stat. 508]

Section 3901, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 528, related to regulations for accommodations for export animals.

Section 3902, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 528, related to penalties.

CHAPTER 41—UNINSPECTED VESSELS GENERALLY

Sec.

4101. Application.
4102. Safety equipment.
4103. Exemptions.
[4104. Repealed.]
4105. Uninspected passenger vessels.
4106. Penalties.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 41 applies to vessels that are not subject to inspection and certification under chapter 33.

The Federal authority to regulate uninspected vessels originated with the Motorboat Act of 1910 (Public Law 61–201, 36 Stat. 462) when Congress established standards with respect to navigation lights, machinery requirements, life preservers, and for the licensing of operators on small vessels carrying passengers. This was an extension of Federal regulatory authority over certain non-steam-propelled vessels, that is, those recreational vessels and commercial vessels that are propelled by machinery other than steam.

Thirty years later, the 1910 Act was amended by the Motorboat Act of 1940 (Public Law 76–484, 54 Stat. 163), which added to the equipment that was required and provided for other regulatory controls. In this manner the Federal Government continued to exercise some degree of maritime safety supervision over the commercial and recreational vessel sector that was "uninspected". This was important because steam towing vessels were converting to diesel propulsion and were therefore no longer subject to the detailed periodic and extensive hull, machinery, and equipment inspections of a Federal agency. In addition, the number of recreational vessels primarily propelled by gasoline were increasing and were also suffering casualties from explosions and fires.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1990—Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §603(3)(B), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2993, struck out item 4104 "Regulations".

1984—Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(7)(B), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 446, inserted "GENERALLY" in chapter heading.

§4101. Application

This chapter applies to an uninspected vessel not subject to chapter 45 of this title—

(1) on the navigable waters of the United States; or

(2) owned in the United States and operating on the high seas.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 528; Pub. L. 100–424, §8(b), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1593.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
4101	46:526u

Section 4101 makes this chapter applicable to uninspected vessels, as defined in section 2101(43), that operate on the navigable waters of the United States or that are owned in the United States and while operating on the high seas. Therefore a vessel that operates on waters that are considered to be solely State waters would not be subject to these Federal requirements.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1988—Pub. L. 100–424 inserted "not subject to chapter 45 of this title" after "an uninspected vessel".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Chapter effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

§4102. Safety equipment

(a) Each uninspected vessel propelled by machinery shall be provided with the number, type, and size of fire extinguishers, capable of promptly and effectively extinguishing burning liquid fuel, that may be prescribed by regulation. The fire extinguishers shall be kept in condition for immediate and effective use and so placed as to be readily accessible.

(b) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations requiring the installation, maintenance, and use of life preservers and other lifesaving devices for individuals on board uninspected vessels.

(c) Each uninspected vessel shall have the carburetors of each engine of the vessel (except an outboard motor) using gasoline as fuel, equipped with an efficient flame arrestor, backfire trap, or other similar device prescribed by regulation.

(d) Each uninspected vessel using a volatile liquid as fuel shall be provided with the means prescribed by regulation for properly and efficiently ventilating the bilges of the engine and fuel tank compartments, so as to remove any explosive or flammable gases.

(e) Each manned uninspected vessel owned in the United States and operating beyond 3 nautical miles from the baselines from which the territorial sea of the United States is measured or beyond three nautical miles from the coastline of the Great Lakes shall be equipped with the number and type of alerting and locating equipment, including emergency position indicating radio beacons, prescribed by the Secretary.

(f)(1) The Secretary, in consultation with the National Towing Safety Advisory Committee and taking into consideration the characteristics, methods of operation, and nature of service of towing vessels, may require the installation, maintenance, and use of a fire suppression system or other measures to provide adequate assurance that fires on board towing vessels can be suppressed under reasonably foreseeable circumstances.

(2) The Secretary shall require under paragraph (1) the use of a fire suppression system or other measures to provide adequate assurance that a fire on board a towing vessel that is towing a non-self-propelled tank vessel can be suppressed under reasonably foreseeable circumstances.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 528; Pub. L. 99–640, §16, Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3552; Pub. L. 100–424, §2(c), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1590; Pub. L. 100–540, §1(a), Oct. 28, 1988, 102 Stat. 2719; Pub. L. 104–324, title IX, §902(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3947; Pub. L. 105–383, title

III, §301(b)(3), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3417; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §619, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2975; Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(c)(6)(B)(ii), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4290.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
4102(a)	46:526g
4102(b)	46:526e
4102(c)	46:526i
4102(d)	46:526j

Section 4102 requires uninspected vessels to comply with certain provisions that incorporate minimum safety equipment and construction requirements. The Committee intends that the term life preserver include all types of personal equipment, including exposure suits with floatation characteristics.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 115–282 inserted "National" before "Towing Safety".

2010—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–281 amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: "Each uninspected vessel propelled by machinery shall carry at least one readily accessible life preserver or other lifesaving device, of the type prescribed by regulation, for each individual on board."

1998—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 105–383 substituted "owned in the United States and operating beyond 3 nautical miles from the baselines from which the territorial sea of the United States is measured" for "operating on the high seas".

1996—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 104–324 added subsec. (f).

1988—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100–540 amended subsec. (e) generally without regard to the prior repeal of subsec. (e) by Pub. L. 100–424.

Pub. L. 100–424 struck out subsec. (e) which read as follows: "Each uninspected fishing, fish processing, or fish tender vessel operating on the high seas shall be equipped with the number and type of emergency position indicating radio beacons prescribed by regulation." See section 4502(a)(7) of this title.

1986—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 99–640 added subsec. (e).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 104–324, title IX, §902(b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3947, provided that: "The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall issue regulations establishing the requirement described in subsection (f)(2) of section 4102 of title 46, United States Code, as added by this section, by not later than October 1, 1997."

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TERRITORIAL SEA OF UNITED STATES

For extension of territorial sea of United States, see Proc. No. 5928, set out as a note under section 1331 of Title 43, Public Lands.

§4103. Exemptions

(a) The Secretary may exempt a vessel from any part of this chapter if, under regulations prescribed by the Secretary (including regulations on special operating conditions), the Secretary finds that—

(1) good cause exists for granting an exemption; and

(2) the safety of the vessel and individuals on board will not be adversely affected.

(b) Section 4102(a) of this title does not apply to a vessel propelled by outboard motors when competing in a race previously arranged and announced or, if the vessel is designed and intended only for racing, when operated incidental to tuning up the vessel and its engines for the race.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 529; Pub. L. 100–540, §2, Oct. 28, 1988, 102 Stat. 2719.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
4103	46:525h

Section 4103 contains an exemption from carrying fire extinguishers, for on a vessel competing in an organized race or a vessel designed and intended for racing only.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1988—Pub. L. 100–540 added subsec. (a) and designated existing provisions as subsec. (b).

[§4104. Repealed. Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §603(3)(A), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2993]

Section, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 529, required Secretary to prescribe regulations to carry out provisions of this chapter.

§4105. Uninspected passenger vessels

(a) Chapter 43 of this title applies to an uninspected passenger vessel.

(b)(1) In applying this title with respect to an uninspected vessel of less than 24 meters overall in length that carries passengers to or from a port in the United States Virgin Islands, the Secretary shall substitute "12 passengers" for "6 passengers" each place it appears in section 2101 if the Secretary determines that the vessel complies with, as applicable to the vessel—

(A) the Code of Practice for the Safety of Small Commercial Motor Vessels (commonly referred to as the "Yellow Code"), as published by the U.K. Maritime and Coastguard Agency and in effect on January 1, 2014; or

(B) the Code of Practice for the Safety of Small Commercial Sailing Vessels (commonly referred to as the "Blue Code"), as published by such agency and in effect on such date.

(2) If the Secretary establishes standards to carry out this subsection—

(A) such standards shall be identical to those established in the Codes of Practice referred to in paragraph (1); and

(B) on any dates before the date on which such standards are in effect, the Codes of Practice referred to in paragraph (1) shall apply with respect to the vessels referred to in paragraph (1).

(c) In applying this title with respect to an uninspected vessel of less than 25 feet overall in length that carries passengers on Crane Lake or waters contiguous to such lake in St. Louis County, Minnesota, the Secretary shall substitute "12 passengers" for "6 passengers" each place it appears in section 2101.

(d) The Secretary shall, by regulation, require certain additional equipment which may include liferafts or other lifesaving equipment, construction standards, or specify additional operating

standards for those uninspected passenger vessels defined in section 2101(55)(A) of this title.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 529; Pub. L. 103–206, title V, §511(b), Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2442; Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §319, Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3051; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3541(b)(10), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2323; Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §502, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4269; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11601(c)(2), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4146; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(k)(1)(E), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1759.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
4105	46:1452 46:1453

Section 4105 provides that an uninspected passenger vessel is subject to Chapter 43, as a recreational vessel even when it is carrying not more than six passengers.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 119–60 substituted "section 2101(55)(A)" for "section 2101(53)(A)".

2022—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 117–263, §11601(c)(2)(A), substituted "section 2101" for "section 2101(51)" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 117–263, §11601(c)(2)(A), substituted "section 2101" for "section 2101(51)".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 117–263, §11601(c)(2)(B), substituted "section 2101(53)(A)" for "section 2101(51)(A)".

2018—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 115–232, §3541(b)(10)(A), substituted "section 2101(51)" for "section 2101(42)" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 115–282, §502(2), added subsec. (c). Former subsec. (c) redesignated (d).

Pub. L. 115–232, §3541(b)(10)(B), substituted "section 2101(51)(A)" for "section 2101(42)(A)".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 115–282, §502(1), redesignated subsec. (c) as (d).

2014—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 113–281 added subsec. (b), redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c), and in subsec. (c) substituted "The" for "Within twenty-four months of the date of enactment of this subsection, the".

1993—Pub. L. 103–206 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

§4106. Penalties

If a vessel to which this chapter applies is operated in violation of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter, the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, and individual in charge are each liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 529; Pub. L. 100–540, §3, Oct. 28, 1988, 102 Stat. 2719.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
4106	46:526*o*

Section 4106 provides a civil penalty of $100 for a violation of this chapter or a regulation under this chapter. The vessel also is liable in rem.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1988—Pub. L. 100–540 substituted "not more than $5,000" for "$100".

CHAPTER 43—RECREATIONAL VESSELS

Sec.

4301. Application.
4302. Regulations.
4303. Inspection and testing.
4304. Importation of nonconforming vessels and equipment.
4305. Exemptions and equivalents.
4306. Federal preemption.
4307. Prohibited acts.
4308. Termination of unsafe operation.
4309. Investigation and reporting.
4310. Repair and replacement of defects.
4311. Penalties and injunctions.
4312. Engine cut-off switches.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 43 contains the laws applicable to recreational vessels, which originated primarily with the enactment of the Federal Boat Safety Act of 1971 (Public Law 92–75, 85 Stat. 213). That Act embraced a number of activities, but the portion restated in this chapter deals with the establishment of national construction and performance standards for recreational vessels and their associated equipment, the necessary flexible regulatory authority for inspection and testing, Federal preemption, certain necessary prohibited acts, enforcement authority, investigation and reporting requirements, procedures for repair and defect notification, and attendant penalties and injunctive relief. These laws are a direct response to the dramatic increase in the number of recreational boats and the Congressional recognition of the maritime safety problems that recreational boating has imposed upon our more than 25 million miles of waterways.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8318(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4700, substituted "Exemptions and equivalents" for "Exemptions" in item 4305.

2018—Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §503(b), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4271, added item 4312.

§4301. Application

(a) This chapter applies to a recreational vessel and associated equipment carried in the vessel on waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States (including the territorial sea of the United States as described in Presidential Proclamation No. 5928 of December 27, 1988) and, for a vessel owned in the United States, on the high seas.

(b) Except when expressly otherwise provided, this chapter does not apply to a foreign vessel temporarily operating on waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

(c) Until there is a final judicial decision that they are navigable waters of the United States, the following waters lying entirely in New Hampshire are declared not to be waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States within the meaning of this section: Lake Winnisquam, Lake Winnipesaukee, parts of the Merrimack River, and their tributary and connecting waters.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 529; Pub. L. 105–383, title III, §301(b)(4), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3417.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
4301	46:1453

Section 4301 provides that this chapter is applicable to a recreational vessel that operates on waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States or that is owned in the United States and while operating on the high seas.

It also provides that a foreign recreational vessel that temporarily uses our waters is not subject to the requirements of this chapter. However, if the vessel remains permanently in the United States, it would be subject to the provisions of this chapter.

Section 4301(c) recognizes the ongoing controversy over the navigability of certain waters of New Hampshire. While a recreational vessel operating on these waters need not meet the requirements of this chapter, it would be prohibited from operating on any other waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States if it does not comply with these requirements.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Presidential Proclamation No. 5928, referred to in subsec. (a), is set out under section 1331 of Title 43, Public Lands.

AMENDMENTS

1998—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 105–383 inserted "(including the territorial sea of the United States as described in Presidential Proclamation No. 5928 of December 27, 1988)" after "of the United States".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Chapter effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

§4302. Regulations

(a) The Secretary may prescribe regulations—

(1) establishing minimum safety standards for recreational vessels and associated equipment, and establishing procedures and tests required to measure conformance with those standards, with each standard—

(A) meeting the need for recreational vessel safety; and

(B) being stated, insofar as practicable, in terms of performance;

(2) requiring the installation, carrying, or use of associated equipment (including fuel systems, ventilation systems, electrical systems, sound-producing devices, firefighting equipment, lifesaving devices, signaling devices, ground tackle, life- and grab-rails, and navigational equipment) on recreational vessels and classes of recreational vessels subject to this chapter, and prohibiting the installation, carrying, or use of associated equipment that does not conform with safety standards established under this section; and

(3) requiring or permitting the display of seals, labels, plates, insignia, or other devices for certifying or evidencing compliance with safety regulations and standards of the United States Government for recreational vessels and associated equipment.

(b) Each regulation prescribed under this section shall specify an effective date that is not earlier than 180 days from the date the regulation was published, unless the Secretary finds that there exists

a recreational vessel safety hazard so critical as to require an earlier effective date. However, this period may not be more than 24 months for cases involving, in the discretion of the Secretary, major product design, retooling, or major changes in the manufacturing process.

(c) In prescribing regulations under this section, the Secretary shall, among other things—

(1) consider the need for and the extent to which the regulations will contribute to recreational vessel safety;

(2) consider relevant available recreational vessel safety standards, statistics, and data, including public and private research, development, testing, and evaluation;

(3) not compel substantial alteration of a recreational vessel or item of associated equipment that is in existence, or the construction or manufacture of which is begun before the effective date of the regulation, but subject to that limitation may require compliance or performance, to avoid a substantial risk of personal injury to the public, that the Secretary considers appropriate in relation to the degree of hazard that the compliance will correct; and

(4) consult with the National Boating Safety Advisory Committee established under section 15105 of this title about the considerations referred to in clauses (1)–(3) of this subsection.

(d) Section 8903 of this title does not apply to a vessel being operated for bona fide dealer demonstrations provided without fee to business invitees. However, if on the basis of substantial evidence, the Secretary decides under this section that requiring vessels so operated to be under the control of licensed individuals is necessary for boating safety, then the Secretary may prescribe regulations requiring the licensing of individuals controlling these vessels in the same manner as provided in chapter 89 of this title for individuals in control of vessels carrying passengers for hire.

(e)(1) Under this section, a model year for recreational vessels and associated equipment shall, except as provided in paragraph (2)—

(A) begin on June 1 of a year and end on July 31 of the following year; and

(B) be designated by the year in which it ends.

(2) Upon the request of a recreational vessel manufacturer to which this chapter applies, the Secretary may alter a model year for a model of recreational vessel of the manufacturer and associated equipment, by no more than 6 months from the model year described in paragraph (1).

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 530; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §303(a), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 53; Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(c)(4)(B)(i), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4290.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
4302	46:1454 46:1455 46:1456 46:1464(g) 46:1488

Section 4302 authorizes the Secretary to prescribe regulations to carry out the provisions of this chapter. In lieu of establishing specific statutory safety requirements, subsection (a) provides flexible regulatory authority to establish uniform standards for the design, construction, materials, and performance of the boats themselves and all associated equipment. It also provides for the display of seals and other devices for certifying or evidencing compliance with applicable safety regulations or standards.

Section 4302(b) requires a regulation prescribed under this section to have an effective date that is not earlier than 180 days from publication. However, in those instances where a safety hazard may be critical an earlier effective date is authorized.

Section 4302(c) requires the Secretary to consider certain objectives in developing regulatory controls and regulations or standards and that there must be an effective consultation process.

Section 4302(d) exempts dealer demonstration boats from the requirement of having to be named by a licensed individual when demonstrating boats to prospective purchasers or other business invitees when no

fees are charged. The Secretary may require that boats so used be under control of a licensed individual.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 115–282 substituted "Committee established under section 15105 of this title" for "Council established under section 13110 of this title".

2016—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 114–120 added subsec. (e).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2016 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §303(b), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 53, provided that: "This section [amending this section] shall only apply with respect to recreational vessels and associated equipment constructed or manufactured, respectively, on or after the date of enactment of this Act [Feb. 8, 2016]."

EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS; EXEMPTION FROM THROWABLE PERSONAL FLOTATION DEVICES REQUIREMENT

Pub. L. 115–282, title VIII, §827, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4314, provided that: "Not later than one year after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 4, 2018], the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall—

"(1) prescribe regulations in part 160 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations, that treat a marine throw bag, as that term is commonly used in the commercial whitewater rafting industry, as a type of lifesaving equipment; and

"(2) revise section 175.17 of title 33, Code of Federal Regulations, to exempt rafts that are 16 feet or more overall in length from the requirement to carry an additional throwable personal flotation device when such a marine throw bag is onboard and accessible."

VISUAL DISTRESS SIGNALS AND ALTERNATIVE USE

Pub. L. 115–282, title VIII, §828, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4314, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall develop a performance standard for the alternative use and possession of visual distress alerting and locating signals as mandated by carriage requirements for recreational boats in subpart C of part 175 of title 33, Code of Federal Regulations.

"(b) REGULATIONS.—Not later than 180 days after the performance standard for alternative use and possession of visual distress alerting and locating signals is finalized, the Secretary shall revise part 175 of title 33, Code of Federal Regulations, to allow for carriage of such alternative signal devices."

LARGE RECREATIONAL VESSEL REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3529(a), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2318, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—

"(1) ISSUANCE.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall issue large recreational vessel regulations applicable to any recreational vessel (as defined in section 2101 of title 46, United States Code) over 300 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of such title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of such title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of such title, that does not carry any cargo or passengers for hire.

"(2) SCOPE AND CONTENT OF REGULATIONS.—The regulations issued under this subsection—

"(A) subject to subparagraph (B), shall be comparable to the code set forth in Merchant Shipping Notice 1851(M) (commonly referred to as the 'Large Commercial Yacht Code (LY3)'), as published by the Maritime and Coastguard Agency of the United Kingdom on August 20, 2013, or an equivalent code, regulation, or standard that is acceptable to the Secretary; and

"(B) shall require that, as part of the review of an application for documentation of a vessel that is subject to the regulations, the owner shall disclose to the Coast Guard—

"(i) the identification and place of residence of such owner; and

"(ii) if the owner is an entity described in paragraph (2), (3), or (4) of section 12103(b) of title 46, United States Code, the beneficial owners of such entity.

"(3) DEADLINE.—The Secretary shall issue regulations required by paragraph (1) by not later than

one year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Aug. 13, 2018].

"(4) INTERIM COMPLIANCE.—Until the effective date of regulations issued under paragraph (1), a recreational vessel described in paragraph (1) shall not be subject to inspection under section 3301(7) of title 46, United States Code, if the Secretary determines, as part of the review of the application for documentation submitted for the vessel by the owner of the vessel and other materials as considered necessary by the Secretary, that the vessel complies with the code set forth in Merchant Shipping Notice 1851(M) (commonly referred to as the 'Large Commercial Yacht Code (LY3)'), as published by the Maritime and Coastguard Agency of the United Kingdom on August 20, 2013, or an equivalent code, regulation, or standard that is acceptable to the Secretary.

"(5) DEFINITIONS.—

"(A) BENEFICIAL OWNER.—In this subsection the term 'beneficial owner'—

"(i) means, with respect to an entity, each natural person who, directly or indirectly—

"(I) exercises control over the entity through ownership interests, voting rights, agreements, or otherwise; or

"(II) has an interest in or receives substantial economic benefits from the assets of the entity; and

"(ii) does not include, with respect to an entity—

"(I) a minor child;

"(II) a person acting as a nominee, intermediary, custodian, or agent on behalf of another person;

"(III) a person acting solely as an employee of the entity and whose control over or economic benefits from the entity derives solely from the employment status of the person;

"(IV) a person whose only interest in the entity is through a right of inheritance, unless the person otherwise meets the definition of 'beneficial owner' under this subparagraph; and

"(V) a creditor of the entity, unless the creditor otherwise meets the requirements of 'beneficial owner' under this subparagraph.

"(B) OWNER.—In this subsection, other than in subparagraph (A) of this paragraph, the term 'owner' means the person who is the eligible owner of the vessel for purposes of section 12103(b) of title 46, United States Code."

AVAILABILITY AND USE OF EPIRBS FOR RECREATIONAL VESSELS

Pub. L. 105–383, title III, §309, Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3422, provided that: "The Secretary of Transportation, through the Coast Guard and in consultation with the National Transportation Safety Board and recreational boating organizations, shall, within 24 months of the date of the enactment of this Act [Nov. 13, 1998], assess and report to Congress on the use of emergency position indicating beacons (EPIRBs) and similar devices by operators of recreational vessels on the Intracoastal Waterway and operators of recreational vessels beyond the Boundary Line. The assessment shall at a minimum—

"(1) evaluate the current availability and use of EPIRBs and similar devices by the operators of recreational vessels and the actual and potential contribution of such devices to recreational boating safety; and

"(2) provide recommendations on policies and programs to encourage the availability and use of EPIRBS [sic] and similar devices by the operators of recreational vessels."

§4303. Inspection and testing

(a) Subject to regulations, supervision, and reviews that the Secretary may prescribe, the Secretary may delegate to a person, private or public agency, or organization, or to an officer or employee under the supervision of that person or agency, any work, business, or function related to the testing, inspection, and examination necessary for compliance enforcement and for the development of data to enable the Secretary to prescribe regulations under section 4302 of this title.

(b) The Secretary may—

(1) conduct research, testing, and development necessary to carry out this chapter, including the procurement by negotiation or otherwise of experimental and other recreational vessels or associated equipment for research and testing purposes; and

(2) subsequently sell those vessels.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 531.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
4303	46:1457

Section 4303 authorizes the Secretary to delegate to certain persons or agencies or organizations any work, business, or function related to the testing, inspection, and examination necessary for compliance enforcement. The Secretary may also conduct research, testing, and development necessary to carry out this chapter, including procurement of vessels and equipment and their subsequent sale. The Committee wishes to make clear that the Secretary may sell anything that was purchased to test.

§4304. Importation of nonconforming vessels and equipment

The Secretary and the Secretary of the Treasury may authorize by joint regulations the importation of any nonconforming recreational vessel or associated equipment on conditions, including providing a bond, that will ensure that the recreational vessel or associated equipment will be brought into conformity with applicable safety regulations and standards of the Government before the vessel or equipment is operated on waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 531.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
4304	46:1460

Section 4304 requires the regulation and control of the importation of nonconforming recreational vessels and associated equipment. This is to assure United States manufacturers that foreign imports comply with those regulations and standards in effect for United States products so that all manufacturers will be on this same competitive footing. This is being done in lieu of providing a specific prohibition against the importation of these vessels and equipment that might be considered an imposition of a non-tariff barrier to trade.

§4305. Exemptions and equivalents

(a) EXEMPTIONS.—If the Secretary considers that recreational vessel safety will not be adversely affected, the Secretary may issue an exemption from this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter.

(b) EQUIVALENTS.—The Secretary may accept a substitution for associated equipment performance or other safety standards for a recreational vessel if the substitution provides an equivalent level of safety.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 531; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8318(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4700.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
4305	46:1458

Section 4305 permits the Secretary to grant appropriate exemptions from the requirements of this chapter when recreational vessel safety will not be adversely affected.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "Exemptions and equivalents" for "Exemptions" in section catchline, designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and inserted heading, and added subsec. (b).

§4306. Federal preemption

Unless permitted by the Secretary under section 4305 of this title, a State or political subdivision of a State may not establish, continue in effect, or enforce a law or regulation establishing a recreational vessel or associated equipment performance or other safety standard or imposing a requirement for associated equipment (except insofar as the State or political subdivision may, in the absence of the Secretary's disapproval, regulate the carrying or use of marine safety articles to meet uniquely hazardous conditions or circumstances within the State) that is not identical to a regulation prescribed under section 4302 of this title.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 531.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
4306	46:1459 46:1460

Section 4306 establishes the Federal preemption of recreational boating standards and requirements. A State or a political subdivision may not establish, continue, or enforce a law or regulation establishing a performance or other safety standard that is not identical to a Federal standard. The Secretary may grant an exemption to a State when the State requirement is one that is needed to meet uniquely hazardous conditions or circumstances within a State. This is to provide uniform standards without the imposition of excessive special requirements by individual States.

§4307. Prohibited acts

(a) A person may not—

(1) manufacture, construct, assemble, sell or offer for sale, introduce or deliver for introduction into interstate commerce, or import into the United States, a recreational vessel, associated equipment, or component of the vessel or equipment unless—

(A)(i) it conforms with this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter; and

(ii) it does not contain a defect which has been identified, in any communication to such person by the Secretary or the manufacturer of that vessel, equipment or component, as creating a substantial risk of personal injury to the public; or

(B) it is intended only for export and is so labeled, tagged, or marked on the recreational vessel or equipment, including any markings on the outside of the container in which it is to be exported;

(2) affix, attach, or display a seal, document, label, plate, insignia, or other device indicating or suggesting compliance with standards of the United States Government on, in, or in connection with, a recreational vessel or item of associated equipment that is false or misleading; or

(3) fail to provide a notification as required by this chapter or fail to exercise reasonable diligence in carrying out the notification and reporting requirements of this chapter.

(b) A person may not operate a vessel in violation of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 531; Pub. L. 98–557, §8(a), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2862.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
4307(a)	46:1461(a)
4307(b)	46:1461(c)

Section 4307 prohibits certain acts in the manufacture and operation of recreational vessels.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1984—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 98–557 designated existing provisions as cl. (i), substituted "and" for "or", and added cl. (ii).

§4308. Termination of unsafe operation

If an official charged with the enforcement of this chapter observes a recreational vessel being operated without sufficient lifesaving or firefighting devices or in an overloaded or other unsafe condition (as defined in regulations prescribed under this chapter) and, in the judgment of the official, the operation creates an especially hazardous condition, the official may direct the individual in charge of the recreational vessel to take immediate and reasonable steps necessary for the safety of individuals on board the vessel, including directing the individual in charge to return to a mooring and to remain there until the situation creating the hazard is corrected or ended.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 532; Pub. L. 99–307, §1(9), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 445.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
4308	46:1462

Section 4308 authorizes an appropriate official to terminate the unsafe operation of recreational vessels. If the official observes the vessel being operated without sufficient lifesaving or firefighting devices or in an overloaded or other unsafe condition (as defined in regulations) and believes the operation creates an especially hazardous condition, the operator may be directed to take immediate and reasonable steps necessary for safety, including returning to a mooring and remaining there until the hazard is corrected or ended. This does not prevent the assessment of any applicable civil penalties nor the pursuing of appropriate criminal action.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1986—Pub. L. 99–307 substituted "individual in charge" for "operator" in two places.

§4309. Investigation and reporting

(a) A recreational vessel manufacturer to whom this chapter applies shall establish and maintain records and reports and provide information the Secretary may require to enable the Secretary to decide whether the manufacturer has acted or is acting in compliance with this chapter and regulations prescribed under this chapter. On request of an officer, employee, or agent authorized by the Secretary, a recreational vessel manufacturer shall permit the officer, employee, or agent to inspect, at reasonable times, factories or other facilities, and records related to deciding whether the manufacturer has acted or is acting in compliance with this chapter and regulations prescribed under this chapter.

(b) Information reported to or otherwise obtained by the Secretary or the representative of the Secretary under this section containing or related to a trade secret or other matter referred to in section 1905 of title 18, or authorized to be exempt from public disclosure by section 552(b) of title 5, is confidential under section 1905. However, on approval of the Secretary, the information may be disclosed to other officers, employees, or agents concerned with carrying out this chapter or when it is relevant in a proceeding under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 532.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
4309	46:1463

Section 4309 requires the establishment and maintenance of certain records by manufacturers, and the inspection and access to these records by the Secretary, at reasonable times, so as to assure Federal enforcement officials that the manufacturer has acted or is in compliance with applicable laws and regulations. It also provides protection for matters related to trade secrets and exemptions from public disclosure.

§4310. Repair and replacement of defects

(a) In this section, "associated equipment" includes only items or classes of associated equipment that the Secretary shall prescribe by regulation after deciding that the application of the requirements of this section to those items or classes of associated equipment is reasonable and in furtherance of this chapter.

(b) If a recreational vessel or associated equipment has left the place of manufacture and the recreational vessel manufacturer discovers or acquires information that the manufacturer decides, in the exercise of reasonable and prudent judgment, indicates that a recreational vessel or associated equipment subject to an applicable regulation prescribed under section 4302 of this title either fails to comply with the regulation, or contains a defect that creates a substantial risk of personal injury to the public, the manufacturer shall provide notification of the defect or failure of compliance as provided by subsections (c) and (d) of this section within a reasonable time after the manufacturer has discovered the defect.

(c)(1) The notification required by subsection (b) of this section shall be given to the following persons in the following manner:

(A) by first class mail or by certified mail to the first purchaser for other than resale, except that the requirement for notification of the first purchaser shall be satisfied if the recreational vessel manufacturer exercises reasonable diligence in establishing and maintaining a list of those purchasers and their current addresses, and sends the required notice to each person on that list at the address appearing on the list.

(B) by first class mail or by certified mail to subsequent purchasers if known to the manufacturer.

(C) by first class mail or by certified mail or other more expeditious means to the dealers and distributors of the recreational vessels or associated equipment.

(2) The notification required by subsection (b) of this section is required to be given only for a defect or failure of compliance discovered by the recreational vessel manufacturer within a reasonable time after the manufacturer has discovered the defect or failure, except that the manufacturer's duty of notification under paragraph (1)(A) and (B) of this subsection applies only to a defect or failure of compliance discovered by the manufacturer within one of the following appropriate periods:

(A) if a recreational vessel or associated equipment required by regulation to have a date of certification affixed, 10 years from the date of certification.

(B) if a recreational vessel or associated equipment not required by regulation to have a date of certification affixed, 10 years from the date of manufacture.

(d) The notification required by subsection (b) of this section shall contain a clear description of the defect or failure to comply, an evaluation of the hazard reasonably related to the defect or failure, a statement of the measures to correct the defect or failure, and an undertaking by the recreational vessel manufacturer to take those measures only at the manufacturer's cost and expense.

(e) Each recreational vessel manufacturer shall provide the Secretary with a copy of all notices, bulletins, and other communications to dealers and distributors of that manufacturer, and to purchasers of recreational vessels or associated equipment of that manufacturer, about a defect related to safety in the recreational vessels or associated equipment, and any failure to comply with the regulation or order applicable to the recreational vessels or associated equipment. The Secretary may publish or otherwise disclose to the public information in the notices or other information the Secretary has that the Secretary considers will assist in carrying out this chapter. However, the Secretary may disclose any information that contains or relates to a trade secret only if the Secretary decides that the information is necessary to carry out this chapter.

(f) If, through testing, inspection, investigation, or examination of reports, the Secretary decides that a recreational vessel or associated equipment to which this chapter applies contains a defect related to safety or fails to comply with an applicable regulation prescribed under this chapter and notification under this chapter is appropriate, the Secretary shall notify the recreational vessel manufacturer of the defect or failure. The notice shall contain the findings of the Secretary and shall include a synopsis of the information on which they are based. The manufacturer may then provide the notification required by this chapter to the persons designated in this chapter or dispute the Secretary's decision. If disputed, the Secretary shall provide the manufacturer with an opportunity to present views and establish that there is no such defect or failure. When the Secretary considers it to be in the public interest, the Secretary may publish notice of the proceeding in the Federal Register and provide interested persons, including the National Boating Safety Advisory Committee, with an opportunity to comment. If, after presentation by the manufacturer, the Secretary decides that the recreational vessel or associated equipment contains a defect related to safety or fails to comply with an applicable regulation, the Secretary may direct the manufacturer to provide the notifications specified in this chapter.

(g) The Secretary may prescribe regulations to carry out this section, including the establishment of procedures that require dealers and distributors to assist manufacturers in obtaining information required by this section. A regulation prescribed under this subsection does not relieve a manufacturer of any obligation imposed by this section.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 532; Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §433, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2129; Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(c)(4)(B)(ii), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4290.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
4310	46:1464

Section 4310 imposes certain requirements on a recreational vessel and associated equipment manufacturer to provide notification of a defect or the failure of compliance after a manufacturer discovers the defect or failure. This section spells out the procedure for notification and who shall be notified. It assures the public of notification while protecting the manufacturer from the potential of damaging and inaccurate disclosures.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 115–282 substituted "Advisory Committee" for "Advisory Council".

2002—Subsec. (c)(1)(A) to (C). Pub. L. 107–295, §433(2), inserted "by first class mail or" before "by

certified mail".

Subsec. (c)(2)(A), (B). Pub. L. 107–295, §433(1), substituted "10" for "5".

§4311. Penalties and injunctions

(a) A person willfully operating a recreational vessel in violation of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter shall be fined not more than $5,000, imprisoned for not more than one year, or both.

(b)(1) A person violating section 4307(a) of this title is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000, except that the maximum civil penalty may be not more than $250,000 for a related series of violations.

(2) If the Secretary decides under section 4310(f) that a recreational vessel or associated equipment contains a defect related to safety or fails to comply with an applicable regulation and directs the manufacturer to provide the notifications specified in this chapter, any person, including a director, officer or executive employee of a corporation, who knowingly and willfully fails to comply with that order, may be fined not more than $10,000, imprisoned for not more than one year, or both.

(3) When a corporation violates section 4307(a), or fails to comply with the Secretary's decision under section 4310(f), any director, officer, or executive employee of the corporation who knowingly and willfully ordered, or knowingly and willfully authorized, a violation is individually liable to the Government for a penalty under paragraphs (1) or (2) in addition to the corporation. However, the director, officer, or executive employee is not liable individually under this subsection if the director, officer, or executive employee can demonstrate by a preponderance of the evidence that—

(A) the order or authorization was issued on the basis of a decision, in exercising reasonable and prudent judgment, that the defect or the nonconformity with standards and regulations constituting the violation would not cause or constitute a substantial risk of personal injury to the public; and

(B) at the time of the order or authorization, the director, officer, or executive employee advised the Secretary in writing of acting under this subparagraph and subparagraph (A).

(c) A person violating section 4312(b) of this title is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than—

(1) $100 for the first offense;

(2) $250 for the second offense; and

(3) $500 for any subsequent offense.

(d) A person violating any other provision of this chapter or other regulation prescribed under this chapter is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $1,000. If the violation involves the operation of a vessel, the vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(e) When a civil penalty of not more than $200 has been assessed under this chapter, the Secretary may refer the matter of collection of the penalty directly to the United States magistrate judge of the jurisdiction in which the person liable may be found for collection procedures under supervision of the district court and under an order issued by the court delegating this authority under section 636(b) of title 28.

(f) The district courts of the United States have jurisdiction to restrain a violation of this chapter, or to restrain the sale, offer for sale, introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce, or importation into the United States, of a recreational vessel or associated equipment that the court decides does not conform to safety standards of the Government. A civil action under this subsection shall be brought by filing a petition by the Attorney General for the Government. When practicable, the Secretary shall give notice to a person against whom an action for injunctive relief is contemplated and provide the person with an opportunity to present views and, except for a knowing and willful violation, shall provide the person with a reasonable opportunity to achieve compliance. The failure to give notice and provide the opportunity does not preclude the granting of appropriate relief by the district court.

(g) A person is not subject to a penalty under this chapter if the person—

(1) establishes that the person did not have reason to know, in exercising reasonable care, that a recreational vessel or associated equipment does not conform with the applicable safety standards of the Government or that the person was not advised by the Secretary or the manufacturer of that vessel, equipment or component that the vessel, equipment or component contains a defect which creates a substantial risk of personal injury to the public; or

(2) holds a certificate issued by the manufacturer of that recreational vessel or associated equipment to the effect that the recreational vessel or associated equipment conforms to all applicable recreational vessel safety standards of the Government, unless the person knows or reasonably should have known that the recreational vessel or associated equipment does not so conform.

(h) Compliance with this chapter or standards, regulations, or orders prescribed under this chapter does not relieve a person from liability at common law or under State law.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 534; Pub. L. 98–557, §8(b), (c), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2862; Pub. L. 101–650, title III, §321, Dec. 1, 1990, 104 Stat. 5117; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §406, Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1043; Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(e), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 564; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8316(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4699.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
4311(a)	46:1483
4311(b)	46:1484(a)
4311(c)	46:1484(b)
4311(d)	46:1484(d)
4311(e)	46:1485
4311(f)	46:1461(b)
4311(g)	46:1489

Section 4311 provides penalties for violating any of the provisions of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter. For a willful violation the penalty is a criminal fine; all other penalties are civil in nature.

A person violating any of the prohibited acts specified in section 4307(a)(1) is subject to a maximum civil penalty that can go as high as a $100,000 for a related series of violations. However, the section provides for no liability for good faith reliance on certifications of compliance by others within the chain of responsibility and for defects that are not within an individual's responsibility or control.

This section also contains an alternate procedure for the collection of a civil penalty of not more than $200 through a U.S. magistrate in lieu of the civil penalty procedures of the Coast Guard. It also directs the district courts of the United States to restrain the sale, offer for sale, introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce, or importation of a recreational vessel or associated equipment that does not conform to applicable safety standards. Finally, compliance with this chapter or standards, regulations, or orders does not relieve a person from liability at common law or under State law.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsecs. (c) to (h). Pub. L. 116–283 added subsec. (c) and redesignated former subsecs. (c) to (g) as (d) to (h), respectively.

2006—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 109–241 inserted a space after "4307(a)".

2004—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 108–293 amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: "A person violating section 4307(a)(1) of this title is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $2,000, except that the maximum civil penalty may be not more than $100,000 for a related series of violations. When a corporation violates section 4307(a)(1), any director, officer, or

executive employee of the corporation who knowingly and willfully ordered, or knowingly and willfully authorized, a violation is individually liable to the Government for the penalty, in addition to the corporation. However, the director, officer, or executive employee is not liable individually under this subsection if the director, officer, or executive employee can demonstrate by a preponderance of the evidence that—

"(1) the order or authorization was issued on the basis of a decision, in exercising reasonable and prudent judgment, that the defect or the nonconformity with standards and regulations constituting the violation would not cause or constitute a substantial risk of personal injury to the public; and

"(2) at the time of the order or authorization, the director, officer, or executive employee advised the Secretary in writing of acting under this clause and clause (1) of this subsection."

1984—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 98–557, §8(b), inserted "defect or the" before "nonconformity".

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 98–557, §8(c), inserted provisions relating to advice by the Secretary or manufacturer of the vessel, equipment or component respecting defects creating substantial risk of personal injury to the public.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

CHANGE OF NAME

"United States magistrate judge" substituted for "United States magistrate" in subsec. (d) pursuant to section 321 of Pub. L. 101–650, set out as a note under section 631 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2021 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8316(c), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4700, provided that: "The amendments made in subsections (a) and (b) [amending this section and section 4312 of this title] shall take effect 90 days after the date of the enactment of this section [Jan. 1, 2021], unless the Commandant [of the Coast Guard], prior to the date that is 90 days after the date of the enactment of this section, determines that the use requirement enacted in subsection (a) [see section 4312(b) of this title] would not promote recreational boating safety."

§4312. Engine cut-off switches

(a) INSTALLATION REQUIREMENT.—A manufacturer, distributor, or dealer that installs propulsion machinery and associated starting controls on a covered recreational vessel shall equip such vessel with an engine cut-off switch and engine cut-off switch link that meet American Boat and Yacht Council Standard A–33, as in effect on the date of the enactment of the Frank LoBiondo Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2018 (Public Law 115–282).

(b) USE REQUIREMENT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—An individual operating a covered recreational vessel shall use an engine cut-off switch link while operating on plane or above displacement speed.

(2) EXCEPTIONS.—The requirement under paragraph (1) shall not apply if—

(A) the main helm of the covered vessel is installed within an enclosed cabin; or

(B) the vessel does not have an engine cut-off switch and is not required to have one under subsection (a).

(c) EDUCATION ON CUT-OFF SWITCHES.—The Commandant of the Coast Guard, through the National Boating Safety Advisory Committee established under section 15105, may initiate a boating safety program on the use and benefits of cut-off switches for recreational vessels.

(d) AVAILABILITY OF STANDARD FOR INSPECTION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 90 days after the date of the enactment of this section, the Commandant shall transmit American Boat and Yacht Council Standard A–33, as in effect on the date of enactment of the Frank LoBiondo Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2018 (Public Law 115–282), to—

(A) the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives;

(B) the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate; and

(C) the Coast Guard Office of Design and Engineering Standards; and

(D) the National Archives and Records Administration.

(2) AVAILABILITY.—The standard submitted under paragraph (1) shall be kept on file and available for public inspection at such Coast Guard office and the National Archives and Records Administration.

(e) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

(1) COVERED RECREATIONAL VESSEL.—The term "covered recreational vessel" means a recreational vessel that is—

(A) less than 26 feet overall in length; and

(B) capable of developing 115 pounds or more of static thrust.

(2) DEALER.—The term "dealer" means any person who is engaged in the sale and distribution of recreational vessels or associated equipment to purchasers whom the seller in good faith believes to be purchasing any such vessel or associated equipment for purposes other than resale.

(3) DISTRIBUTOR.—The term "distributor" means any person engaged in the sale and distribution of recreational vessels and associated equipment for the purposes of resale.

(4) MANUFACTURER.—The term "equipment manufacturer" means any person engaged in the manufacture, construction, or assembly of recreational vessels or associated equipment, or the importation of recreational vessels into the United States for subsequent sale.

(5) PROPULSION MACHINERY.—The term "propulsion machinery" means a self-contained propulsion system, and includes, but is not limited to, inboard engines, outboard motors, and sterndrive engines.

(6) STATIC THRUST.—The term "static thrust" means the forward or backwards thrust developed by propulsion machinery while stationary.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §503(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4270; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8316(a), title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8507(a)(2), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4699, 4752.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of the Frank LoBiondo Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2018, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (d)(1), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 115–282, which was approved Dec. 4, 2018.

The date of the enactment of this section, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 115–282, which was approved Dec. 4, 2018.

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, §8507(a)(2), substituted "Frank LoBiondo Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2018 (Public Law 115–282)" for "Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2017" in two places.

Subsecs. (b) to (e). Pub. L. 116–283, §8316(a), added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsecs. (b) to (d) as (c) to (e), respectively.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2021 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 116–283 effective 90 days after Jan. 1, 2021, unless the Commandant of the Coast Guard, prior to the date that is 90 days after Jan. 1, 2021, determines that the use requirement enacted in section 8316(a) of Pub. L. 116–283 (amending this section) would not promote recreational boating safety. See section 8316(c) of Pub. L. 116–283, set out as a note under section 4311 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §503(c), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4271, provided that: "Section 4312 of title 46, United States Code, as amended [probably should be "enacted"] by this section, shall take effect one year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 4, 2018]."

CHAPTER 45—UNINSPECTED COMMERCIAL FISHING INDUSTRY VESSELS

Sec.
4501. Application.
4502. Safety standards.
4503. Fishing, fish tender, and fish processing vessel certification.
[4503a. Repealed.]
4504. Prohibited acts.
4505. Termination of unsafe operations.
4506. Exemptions.
4507. Penalties.
[4508. Repealed.]

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11509(c), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4137, struck out item 4503a "Alternate safety compliance program".

2018—Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §508(d), title VI, §601(c)(1), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4273, 4289, added item for 4503a and struck out item 4508 "Commercial Fishing Safety Advisory Committee".

2010—Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §604(c)(4), (e)(2), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2965, 2966, substituted "Fishing, fish tender, and fish processing vessel certification" for "Fish processing vessel certification" in item 4503 and "Commercial Fishing Safety Advisory Committee" for "Commercial Fishing Industry Vessel Safety Advisory Committee" in item 4508.

2002—Pub. L. 107–295, title III, §331(b), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2105, inserted "Safety" before "Advisory Committee" in item 4508.

1988—Pub. L. 100–424, §2(a), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1585, in chapter heading substituted "UNINSPECTED COMMERCIAL FISHING INDUSTRY VESSELS" for "FISH PROCESSING VESSELS", substituted "Safety standards" for "Regulations" in item 4502, "Fish processing vessel certification" for "Equivalency" in item 4503, "Prohibited acts" for "Penalties" in item 4504, and added items 4505 to 4508.

§4501. Application

(a) This chapter applies to an uninspected vessel which is a fishing vessel, fish processing vessel, or fish tender vessel.

(b) This chapter does not apply to the carriage of bulk dangerous cargoes regulated under chapter 37 of this title.

(Added Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(7)(C), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 446; amended Pub. L. 100–424, §2(a), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1585.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1988—Pub. L. 100–424 amended section generally, in subsec. (a) substituting provisions which related to uninspected fish processing vessel entered into service after Dec. 31, 1987, having more than 16 individuals on board primarily employed in preparation of fish on navigable waters of United States or owned in United States and operating on high seas, for provisions which related to uninspected fishing vessel, fish processing vessel, or fish tender vessel, and in subsec. (b) substituting "carriage of bulk" for "carriage of liquid bulk".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

FOREIGN BUILT VESSELS, EQUIVALENT COMPLIANCE UNTIL JULY 28, 1990

Pub. L. 100–424, §7, Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1592, provided that: "Until July 28, 1990, a foreign built fish processing vessel subject to chapter 45 of title 46, United States Code, is deemed to comply with the requirements of that chapter if—

"(1) it has an unexpired certificate of inspection issued by a foreign country that is a party to an International Convention for Safety of Life at Sea to which the United States Government is a party; and

"(2) it is in compliance with the safety requirements of that foreign country that apply to that vessel."

§4502. Safety standards

(a) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations which require that each vessel to which this chapter applies shall be equipped with—

(1) readily accessible fire extinguishers capable of promptly and effectively extinguishing a flammable or combustible liquid fuel fire;

(2) at least one readily accessible life preserver or other lifesaving device for each individual on board;

(3) an efficient flame arrestor, backfire trap, or other similar device on the carburetors of each inboard engine which uses gasoline as fuel;

(4) the means to properly and efficiently ventilate enclosed spaces, including engine and fuel tank compartments, so as to remove explosive or flammable gases;

(5) visual distress signals;

(6) other equipment required to minimize the risk of injury to the crew during vessel operations, if the Secretary determines that a risk of serious injury exists that can be eliminated or mitigated by that equipment; and

(7) a placard as required by regulations prescribed under section 10603(b) of this title.

(b)(1) In addition to the requirements of subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary shall prescribe regulations requiring the installation, maintenance, and use of the equipment in paragraph (2) of this subsection for vessels to which this chapter applies that—

(A) operate beyond 3 nautical miles from the baseline from which the territorial sea of the United States is measured or beyond 3 nautical miles from the coastline of the Great Lakes;

(B) operate with more than 16 individuals on board; or

(C) in the case of a fish tender vessel, engage in the Aleutian trade.

(2) The equipment to be required is as follows:

(A) alerting and locating equipment, including emergency position indicating radio beacons;

(B) subject to paragraph (3), a survival craft that ensures that no part of an individual is immersed in water sufficient to accommodate all individuals on board;

(C) at least one readily accessible immersion suit for each individual on board that vessel when operating on the waters described in section 3102 of this title;

(D) marine radio communications equipment sufficient to effectively communicate with land-based search and rescue facilities;

(E) navigation equipment, including compasses, nautical charts, and publications;

(F) first aid equipment and medical supplies sufficient for the size and area of operation of the vessel; and

(G) ground tackle sufficient for the vessel.

(3) Except for a nonapplicable vessel, an auxiliary craft shall satisfy the equipment requirement under paragraph (2)(B) if such craft is—

(A) necessary for normal fishing operations;

(B) readily accessible during an emergency; and

(C) capable, in accordance with the Coast Guard capacity rating, when applicable, of safely holding all individuals on board the vessel to which the craft functions as an auxiliary.

(c)(1) In addition to the requirements described in subsections (a) and (b) of this section, the Secretary may prescribe regulations establishing the standards in paragraph (2) of this subsection for vessels to which this chapter applies that—

(A)(i) were built after December 31, 1988, or undergo a major conversion completed after that date; and

(ii) operate with more than 16 individuals on board; or

(B) in the case of a fish tender vessel, engage in the Aleutian trade.

(2) The standards shall be minimum safety standards, including standards relating to—

(A) navigation equipment, including radars and fathometers;

(B) lifesaving equipment, immersion suits, signaling devices, bilge pumps, bilge alarms, life rails, and grab rails;

(C) fire protection and firefighting equipment, including fire alarms and portable and semiportable fire extinguishing equipment;

(D) use and installation of insulation material;

(E) storage methods for flammable or combustible material; and

(F) fuel, ventilation, and electrical systems.

(d)(1) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations for the operating stability of a vessel to which this chapter applies—

(A) that was built after December 31, 1989; or

(B) the physical characteristics of which are substantially altered after December 31, 1989, in a manner that affects the vessel's operating stability.

(2) The Secretary may accept, as evidence of compliance with this subsection, a certification of compliance issued by the person providing insurance for the vessel or by another qualified person approved by the Secretary.

(e) In prescribing regulations under this chapter, the Secretary—

(1) shall consider the specialized nature and economics of the operations and the character, design, and construction of the vessel; and

(2) may not require the alteration of a vessel or associated equipment that was constructed or manufactured before the effective date of the regulation.

(f) To ensure compliance with the requirements of this chapter, the Secretary—

(1) shall require the individual in charge of a vessel described in subsection (b) to keep a record of equipment maintenance, and required instruction and drills;

(2) shall examine at dockside a vessel described in subsection (b) at least once every 5 years, but may require an exam at dockside every 2 years for vessels described in subsection (b) if—

(A) requested by an owner or operator; or

(B) the vessel is—

(i) at least 50 feet overall in length;

(ii) built before July 1, 2013; and

(iii) 25 years of age or older; and

(3) shall issue a certificate of compliance to a vessel meeting the requirements of this chapter and satisfying the requirements in paragraph (2).

(g)(1) The individual in charge of a vessel described in subsection (b) must pass a training program approved by the Secretary that meets the requirements in paragraph (2) of this subsection and hold a valid certificate issued under that program.

(2) The training program shall—

(A) be based on professional knowledge and skill obtained through sea service and hands-on training, including training in seamanship, stability, collision prevention, navigation, fire fighting

and prevention, damage control, personal survival, emergency medical care, emergency drills, and weather;

(B) require an individual to demonstrate ability to communicate in an emergency situation and understand information found in navigation publications;

(C) recognize and give credit for recent past experience in fishing vessel operation; and

(D) provide for issuance of a certificate to an individual that has successfully completed the program.

(3) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations implementing this subsection. The regulations shall require that individuals who are issued a certificate under paragraph (2)(D) must complete refresher training at least once every 5 years as a condition of maintaining the validity of the certificate.

(4) The Secretary shall establish an electronic database listing the names of individuals who have participated in and received a certificate confirming successful completion of a training program approved by the Secretary under this section.

(h) A vessel to which this chapter applies shall be constructed in a manner that provides a level of safety equivalent to the minimum safety standards the Secretary may establish for recreational vessels under section 4302, if—

(1) subsection (b) of this section applies to the vessel;

(2) the vessel is less than 50 feet overall in length; and

(3) the vessel is built after January 1, 2010.

(i)(1) The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall establish a Fishing Safety Training Grants Program to provide funding to municipalities, port authorities, other appropriate public entities, not-for-profit organizations, and other qualified persons that provide commercial fishing safety training—

(A) to conduct fishing vessel safety training for vessel operators and crewmembers that—

(i) in the case of vessel operators, meets the requirements of subsection (g); and

(ii) in the case of crewmembers, meets the requirements of subsection (g)(2)(A), such requirements of subsection (g)(2)(B) as are appropriate for crewmembers, and the requirements of subsections (g)(2)(D), (g)(3), and (g)(4); and

(B) for purchase of safety equipment and training aids for use in those fishing vessel safety training programs.

(2) The Secretary of Health and Human Services, in consultation with and based on criteria established by the Commandant of the Coast Guard [1] shall award grants under this subsection on a competitive basis.

(3) The Federal share of the cost of any activity carried out with a grant under this subsection shall not exceed 75 percent.

(4) There is authorized to be appropriated $3,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2026, and 2027 for grants under this subsection.

(j)(1) The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall establish a Fishing Safety Research Grant Program to provide funding to individuals in academia, members of non-profit organizations and businesses involved in fishing and maritime matters, and other persons with expertise in fishing safety, to conduct research on methods of improving the safety of the commercial fishing industry, including vessel design, emergency and survival equipment, enhancement of vessel monitoring systems, communications devices, de-icing technology, and severe weather detection.

(2) The Secretary of Health and Human Services, in consultation with and based on criteria established by the Commandant of the Coast Guard, shall award grants under this subsection on a competitive basis.

(3) The Federal share of the cost of any activity carried out with a grant under this subsection shall not exceed 75 percent.

(4) There is authorized to be appropriated $3,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2026, and 2027. [2] for

activities under this subsection.

(k) For the purposes of this section, the term "auxiliary craft" means a vessel that is carried onboard a fishing vessel and is normally used to support fishing operations.

(Added Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(7)(C), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 447; amended Pub. L. 98–557, §33(a), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2876; Pub. L. 100–424, §2(a), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1585; Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §602(c), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2990; Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §307, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3918; Pub. L. 105–383, title III, §301(b)(5), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3417; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §604(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2962; Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §305(a), (b), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1564; Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §309, Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3045; Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §§504–506, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4271; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8321(a), (b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4701; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXIII, §11328(a), title CXV, §11509(a)(1), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4098, 4137; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7313, Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1761.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (i)(4). Pub. L. 119–60, §7313(1), substituted "each of fiscal years 2026, and 2027" for "fiscal year 2023".

Subsec. (j)(4). Pub. L. 119–60, §7313(2), substituted "each of fiscal years 2026, and 2027." for "fiscal year 2023".

2022—Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 117–263, §11509(a)(1), substituted "vessels described in subsection (b) if—" and subpars. (A) and (B) for "certain vessels described in subsection (b) if requested by the owner or operator; and".

Subsec. (i)(4). Pub. L. 117–263, §11328(a)(1), substituted "fiscal year 2023" for "each of fiscal years 2018 through 2021".

Subsec. (j)(4). Pub. L. 117–263, §11328(a)(2), substituted "fiscal year 2023" for "each of fiscal years 2018 through 2021".

2021—Subsec. (i)(3). Pub. L. 116–283, §8321(a)(1), substituted "75 percent" for "50 percent".

Subsec. (i)(4). Pub. L. 116–283, §8321(a)(2), substituted "2021" for "2019".

Subsec. (j)(3). Pub. L. 116–283, §8321(b)(1), substituted "75 percent" for "50 percent".

Subsec. (j)(4). Pub. L. 116–283, §8321(b)(2), substituted "2021" for "2019".

2018—Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 115–282, §504(1), substituted "subject to paragraph (3), a survival craft" for "a survival craft".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 115–282, §504(2), added par. (3).

Subsec. (f)(2), (3). Pub. L. 115–282, §505, added pars. (2) and (3) and struck out former pars. (2) and (3) which read as follows:

"(2) shall examine at dockside a vessel described in subsection (b) at least once every 5 years, and shall issue a certificate of compliance to a vessel meeting the requirements of this chapter; and

"(3) shall complete the first dockside examination of a vessel under this subsection not later than October 15, 2015."

Subsec. (i)(1). Pub. L. 115–282, §506(1), substituted "Secretary of Health and Human Services" for "Secretary" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (i)(2). Pub. L. 115–282, §506(1), (2), substituted "Secretary of Health and Human Services" for "Secretary" and inserted ", in consultation with and based on criteria established by the Commandant of the Coast Guard" before "shall award".

Subsec. (i)(3). Pub. L. 115–282, §506(3), substituted "50" for "75".

Subsec. (i)(4). Pub. L. 115–282, §506(4), substituted "$3,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2018 through 2019" for "$3,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2015 through 2017".

Subsec. (j)(1). Pub. L. 115–282, §506(1), substituted "Secretary of Health and Human Services" for "Secretary".

Subsec. (j)(2). Pub. L. 115–282, §506(1), (5), substituted "Secretary of Health and Human Services" for "Secretary" and inserted ", in consultation with and based on criteria established by the Commandant of the Coast Guard," before "shall award".

Subsec. (j)(3). Pub. L. 115–282, §506(6), substituted "50" for "75".

Subsec. (j)(4). Pub. L. 115–282, §506(7), substituted "$3,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2018 through

2019" for "$3,000,000 for each fiscal years 2015 through 2017".

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 115–282, §504(3), added subsec. (k).

2014—Subsec. (i)(4). Pub. L. 113–281, §309(a), substituted "2015 through 2017" for "2010 through 2014".

Subsec. (j)(4). Pub. L. 113–281, §309(b), substituted "2015 through 2017" for "2010 through 2014".

2012—Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 112–213, §305(a)(2)(A), substituted "at least once every 5 years" for "at least once every 2 years".

Subsec. (f)(3). Pub. L. 112–213, §305(a)(1), (2)(B), (3), added par. (3).

Subsec. (g)(4). Pub. L. 112–213, §305(b), substituted "an electronic" for "a publicly accessible electronic".

2010—Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 111–281, §604(a)(1)(A), added par. (6) and struck out former par. (6) which read as follows: "a buoyant apparatus, if the vessel is of a type required by regulations prescribed by the Secretary to be equipped with that apparatus;".

Subsec. (a)(7), (8). Pub. L. 111–281, §604(a)(1), redesignated par. (8) as (7) and struck out former par. (7) which read as follows: "alerting and locating equipment, including emergency position indicating radio beacons, on vessels that operate beyond 3 nautical miles from the baselines from which the territorial sea of the United States is measured, and which are owned in the United States or beyond 3 nautical miles from the coastline of the Great Lakes; and".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–281, §604(a)(2)(A), struck out "documented" before "vessels".

Subsec. (b)(1)(A). Pub. L. 111–281, §604(a)(2)(B), substituted "3 nautical miles from the baseline from which the territorial sea of the United States is measured or beyond 3 nautical miles from the coastline of the Great Lakes" for "the Boundary Line".

Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–281, §604(a)(2)(C), substituted "a survival craft that ensures that no part of an individual is immersed in water" for "lifeboats or liferafts".

Subsec. (b)(2)(D). Pub. L. 111–281, §604(a)(2)(D), inserted "marine" before "radio communications".

Subsec. (b)(2)(E). Pub. L. 111–281, §604(a)(2)(E), substituted "nautical charts, and publications" for "radar reflectors, nautical charts, and anchors".

Subsec. (b)(2)(F). Pub. L. 111–281, §604(a)(2)(F), substituted "and medical supplies sufficient for the size and area of operation of the vessel" for ", including medicine chests".

Subsec. (b)(2)(G). Pub. L. 111–281, §604(a)(2)(G), amended subpar. (G) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (G) read as follows: "other equipment required to minimize the risk of injury to the crew during vessel operations, if the Secretary determines that a risk of serious injury exists that can be eliminated or mitigated by that equipment."

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 111–281, §604(a)(3), amended subsec. (f) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (f) read as follows: "To ensure compliance with the requirements of this chapter, at least once every 2 years the Secretary shall examine—

"(1) a fish processing vessel; and

"(2) a fish tender vessel engaged in the Aleutian trade."

Subsecs. (g) to (j). Pub. L. 111–281, §604(a)(4), added subsecs. (g) to (j).

1998—Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 105–383 substituted "beyond 3 nautical miles from the baselines from which the territorial sea of the United States is measured, and which are owned in the United States" for "on the high seas".

1996—Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "or beyond 3 nautical miles from the coastline of the Great Lakes" after "high seas".

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101–595, §602(c)(1), amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: "In addition to the requirements of subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary shall prescribe regulations for documented vessels to which this chapter applies that operate beyond the Boundary Line or that operate with more than 16 individuals on board, for the installation, maintenance, and use of—

"(1) alerting and locating equipment, including emergency position indicating radio beacons;

"(2) lifeboats or liferafts sufficient to accommodate all individuals on board;

"(3) at least one readily accessible immersion suit for each individual on board that vessel when operating on the waters described in section 3102 of this title;

"(4) radio communications equipment sufficient to effectively communicate with land-based search and rescue facilities;

"(5) navigation equipment, including compasses, radar reflectors, nautical charts, and anchors;

"(6) first aid equipment, including medicine chests; and

"(7) other equipment required to minimize the risk of injury to the crew during vessel operations, if the Secretary determines that a risk of serious injury exists that can be eliminated or mitigated by that equipment."

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101–595, §602(c)(1), amended subsec. (c) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (c) read as follows: "In addition to the requirements described in subsections (a) and (b) of this section, the Secretary may prescribe regulations establishing minimum safety standards for vessels to which this chapter applies that were built after December 31, 1988, or that undergo a major conversion completed after that date, and that operate with more than 16 individuals on board, including standards relating to—

"(1) navigation equipment, including radars and fathometers;

"(2) life saving equipment, immersion suits, signaling devices, bilge pumps, bilge alarms, life rails, and grab rails;

"(3) fire protection and firefighting equipment, including fire alarms and portable and semiportable fire extinguishing equipment;

"(4) use and installation of insulation material;

"(5) storage methods for flammable or combustible material; and

"(6) fuel, ventilation, and electrical systems."

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 101–595, §602(c)(2), amended subsec. (f) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (f) read as follows: "The Secretary shall examine a fish processing vessel at least once every two years to ensure that the vessel complies with the requirements of this chapter."

1988—Pub. L. 100–424 amended section generally, substituting "Safety standards" for "Regulations" in section catchline, adding subsecs. (a) and (b), redesignating former subsec. (a) as (c) and establishing list of standards as minimum safety standards, in addition to requirements of subsecs. (a) and (b), for vessels built after Dec. 31, 1988, or that undergo major conversion completed after that date, that operate with more than 16 individuals on board, adding subsec. (d), redesignating former subsec. (b) as (e) and striking out provisions which required Secretary to consult with representatives of private sector, experienced in operation of these vessels, to ensure practicability of regulations, and adding subsec. (f).

1984—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 98–557 substituted "this chapter" for "the exemption".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §602(f), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2992, provided that: "This section [amending this section and sections 2102, 3302, 5102, 8104, and 8702 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 7306 of this title] is effective on the date of enactment of this section [Nov. 16, 1990] except as follows:

"(1) The requirements imposed by section 3302(c)(4)(B) and (C) of title 46, United States Code, (as enacted by subsection (b) of this section) is effective 6 months after the date of enactment of this Act.

"(2) Before January 1, 1993, section 4502(c) (as amended by subsection (c) of this section) does not apply to a fish tender vessel engaged in the Aleutian trade, if the vessel—

"(A)(i) before September 8, 1990, operated in that trade; or

"(ii) before September 8, 1990, was purchased to be used in that trade and, before June 1, 1992, entered into service in that trade; and

"(B) does not undergo a major conversion.

"(3) Before January 1, 2003, a fish tender vessel is exempt from chapter 51 of title 46, United States Code, (as amended by subsection (d) of this section) when engaged in the Aleutian trade, if the vessel—

"(A)(i) before September 8, 1990, operated in that trade; or

"(ii) before September 8, 1990, was purchased to be used in this trade and, before June 1, 1992, entered into service in that trade;

"(B) does not undergo a major conversion; and

"(C) did not have a load line assigned at any time before the date of enactment of this Act.

"(4) The requirements imposed by section 8702(b)(2) of title 46, United States Code, (as amended by subsection (e)(2)(B) of this section) are effective 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act."

CONSTRUCTION OF 2022 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11509(b), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4137, provided that: "Nothing in this section [amending this section and section 4503 of this title and repealing section 4503a of this title] or the amendments made by this section shall be construed to affect or apply to any alternative compliance and safety agreement entered into by the Coast Guard that is in effect on the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022]."

IMPROVEMENTS TO COMMUNICATION WITH FISHING INDUSTRY AND RELATED

STAKEHOLDERS

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXIII, §11322, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4094, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Commandant [of the Coast Guard], in coordination with the National Commercial Fishing Safety Advisory Committee established by section 15102 of title 46, United States Code, shall develop a publicly accessible website that contains all information related to fishing industry activities, including vessel safety, inspections, enforcement, hazards, training, regulations (including proposed regulations), outages of the Rescue 21 system in Alaska and similar outages, and any other fishing-related activities.

"(b) AUTOMATIC COMMUNICATIONS.—The Commandant shall provide methods for regular and automatic email communications with stakeholders who elect, through the website developed under subsection (a), to receive such communications."

FISHING SAFETY GRANTS

Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8321(c), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4702, provided that: "The cap on the Federal share of the cost of any activity carried out with a grant under subsections (i) and (j) of section 4502 of title 46, United States Code, as in effect prior to the date of enactment of the Frank LoBiondo Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2018 [Dec. 4, 2018], shall apply to any funds appropriated under the Consolidated Appropriations Act, 2017 (Public Law 115–31) [see Tables for classification] for the purpose of making such grants."

COMMERCIAL FISHING VESSEL SAFETY NATIONAL COMMUNICATIONS PLAN

Pub. L. 115–282, title VIII, §830, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4315, provided that:

"(a) REQUIREMENT FOR PLAN.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 4, 2018], the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall develop and submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives a national communications plan for the purposes of—

"(1) disseminating information to the commercial fishing vessel industry;

"(2) conducting outreach with the commercial fishing vessel industry;

"(3) facilitating interaction with the commercial fishing vessel industry; and

"(4) releasing information collected under section 15102 of title 46, United States Code, as added by this Act, to the commercial fishing vessel industry.

"(b) CONTENT.—The plan required by subsection (a), and each annual update, shall—

"(1) identify staff, resources, and systems available to the Secretary to ensure the widest dissemination of information to the commercial fishing vessel industry;

"(2) include a means to document all communication and outreach conducted with the commercial fishing vessel industry; and

"(3) include a mechanism to measure effectiveness of such plan.

"(c) IMPLEMENTATION.—Not later than one year after submission of the initial plan, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall implement the plan and shall at a minimum—

"(1) leverage Coast Guard staff, resources, and systems available;

"(2) monitor implementation nationwide to ensure adherence to plan contents;

"(3) allow each Captain of the Port to adopt the most effective strategy and means to communicate with [the] commercial fishing vessel industry in that Captain of the Port Zone;

"(4) document communication and outreach; and

"(5) solicit feedback from the commercial fishing vessel industry.

"(d) REPORT AND UPDATES.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall—

"(1) submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives a report on the effectiveness of the plan to date and any updates to ensure maximum impact of the plan one year after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 4, 2018], and every 4 years thereafter; and

"(2) include in such report input from individual Captains of the Port and any feedback received from the commercial fishing vessel industry."

STUDIES REGARDING SAFETY OF FISHING VESSELS

Pub. L. 100–424, §5(a), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1591, directed Secretary of Transportation, utilizing National Academy of Engineering and in consultation with National Transportation Safety Board, Commercial Fishing Industry Vessel Advisory Committee, and fishing industry, to conduct a study of safety problems on fishing industry vessels, and to make recommendations regarding whether a vessel inspection

program could be implemented for fishing vessels, fish tender vessels, and fish processing vessels, including recommendations on nature and scope of that inspection, and further provided for submission of the study and recommendations to Congress before Jan. 1, 1990.

Pub. L. 100–424, §5(b), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1591, directed Secretary of department in which Coast Guard is operating, in consultation with Commercial Fishing Industry Vessel Advisory Committee established under former section 4508 of this title, and with representatives of persons operating fish processing vessels to conduct a study of fish processing vessels that are not surveyed and classed by an organization approved by Secretary, and to make recommendations regarding what hull and machinery requirements could apply to such vessels to ensure that those vessels are operated and maintained in a condition in which they are safe to operate at sea, and further provided for submission of such study and recommendations to Congress before July 28, 1991.

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TERRITORIAL SEA OF UNITED STATES

For extension of territorial sea of United States, see Proc. No. 5928, set out as a note under section 1331 of Title 43, Public Lands.

[1] So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.

[2] So in original. Period probably should not appear.

§4503. Fishing, fish tender, and fish processing vessel certification

(a) A vessel to which this subsection applies may not be operated unless the vessel—

(1) meets all survey and classification requirements prescribed by the American Bureau of Shipping or another similarly qualified organization approved by the Secretary; and

(2) has on board a certificate issued by the American Bureau of Shipping or that other organization evidencing compliance with this subsection.

(b) Subsection (a) applies to a fish processing vessel to which this chapter applies that—

(1) is built after July 27, 1990; or

(2) undergoes a major conversion completed after that date.

(c)(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), subsection (a) applies to a vessel to which section 4502(b) of this title applies that is at least 50 feet overall in length and is built after July 1, 2013.

(2) Subsection (a) does not apply to a fishing vessel or fish tender vessel to which section 4502(b) of this title applies, if the vessel—

(A) is at least 50 feet overall in length, and not more than 180 feet overall in length as listed on the vessel's certificate of documentation or certificate of number; and

(B)(i) is built after the date of the enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2016; and

(ii) complies with—

(I) the requirements described in subsection (d); or

(II) the alternative requirements established by the Secretary under subsection (e).

(d) The requirements referred to in subsection (c)(2)(B)(ii)(I) are the following:

(1) The vessel is designed by an individual licensed by a State as a naval architect or marine engineer, and the design incorporates standards equivalent to those prescribed by a classification society to which the Secretary has delegated authority under section 3316 or another qualified organization approved by the Secretary for purposes of this paragraph.

(2) Construction of the vessel is overseen and certified as being in accordance with its design by a marine surveyor of an organization accepted by the Secretary.

(3) The vessel—

(A) completes a stability test performed by a qualified individual;

(B) has written stability and loading instructions from a qualified individual that are provided to the owner or operator; and

(C) has an assigned loading mark.

(4) The vessel is not substantially altered without the review and approval of an individual licensed by a State as a naval architect or marine engineer before the beginning of such substantial alteration.

(5) The vessel undergoes a condition survey at least twice in 5 years, not to exceed 3 years between surveys, to the satisfaction of a marine surveyor of an organization accepted by the Secretary.

(6) The vessel undergoes an out-of-water survey at least once every 5 years to the satisfaction of a certified marine surveyor of an organization accepted by the Secretary.

(7) Once every 5 years and at the time of a substantial alteration to such vessel, compliance of the vessel with the requirements of paragraph (3) is reviewed and updated as necessary.

(8) For the life of the vessel, the owner of the vessel maintains records to demonstrate compliance with this subsection and makes such records readily available for inspection by an official authorized to enforce this chapter.

(e)(1) Not later than 10 years after the date of the enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2016, the Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report that provides an analysis of the adequacy of the requirements under subsection (d) in maintaining the safety of the fishing vessels and fish tender vessels which are described in subsection (c)(2) and which comply with the requirements of subsection (d).

(2) If the report required under this subsection includes a determination that the safety requirements under subsection (d) are not adequate or that additional safety measures are necessary, then the Secretary may establish an alternative safety compliance program for fishing vessels or fish tender vessels (or both) which are described in subsection (c)(2) and which comply with the requirements of subsection (d).

(3) The alternative safety compliance program established under this subsection shall include requirements for—

(A) vessel construction;

(B) a vessel stability test;

(C) vessel stability and loading instructions;

(D) an assigned vessel loading mark;

(E) a vessel condition survey at least twice in 5 years, not to exceed 3 years between surveys;

(F) an out-of-water vessel survey at least once every 5 years;

(G) maintenance of records to demonstrate compliance with the program, and the availability of such records for inspection; and

(H) such other aspects of vessel safety as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(f)(1) For purposes of this section and section 4503a,[1] the term "built" means, with respect to a vessel, that the vessel's construction has reached any of the following stages:

(A) The vessel's keel is laid.

(B) Construction identifiable with the vessel has begun and assembly of that vessel has commenced comprising of at least 50 metric tons or one percent of the estimated mass of all structural material, whichever is less.

(2) In the case of a vessel greater than 79 feet overall in length, for purposes of paragraph (1)(A) a keel is deemed to be laid when a marine surveyor affirms that a structure adequate for serving as a keel for such vessel is in place and identified for use in the construction of such vessel.

(Added Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(7)(C), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 447; amended Pub. L. 98–557,

§33(b), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2876; Pub. L. 100–424, §2(a), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1587; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §604(e)(1), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2966; Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §305(c), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1564; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §318(a), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 63; Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3503(a), (b)(2), Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2775; Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §§507, 508(a), (b), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4272; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11509(a)(2), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4137.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2016, referred to in subsecs. (c)(2)(B)(i) and (e)(1), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 114–120, which was approved Feb. 8, 2016.

Section 4503a, referred to in subsec. (f)(1), was repealed by Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11509(a)(3), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4137.

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 117–263 substituted "Subsection (a)" for "Except as provided in section 4503a, subsection (a)" in introductory provisions.

2018—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 115–282, §508(b)(2), substituted "section 4503a" for "subsection (d)" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(2)(A). Pub. L. 115–282, §507(a), substituted "180" for "79".

Subsec. (c)(2)(B)(ii)(I). Pub. L. 115–282, §508(b)(3), substituted "subsection (d)" for "subsection (e)".

Subsec. (c)(2)(B)(ii)(II). Pub. L. 115–282, §508(b)(4), substituted "subsection (e)" for "subsection (f)".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 115–282, §508(b)(1), redesignated subsec. (e) as (d).

Pub. L. 115–282, §508(a), redesignated subsec. (d) as section 4503a of this title.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 115–282, §508(b)(1), redesignated subsec. (f) as (e). Former subsec. (e) redesignated (d).

Subsec. (e)(1), (2). Pub. L. 115–282, §508(b)(5), (6), substituted "subsection (d)" for "subsection (e)" wherever appearing.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 115–282, §508(b)(1), redesignated subsec. (g) as (f). Former subsec. (f) redesignated (e).

Pub. L. 115–282, §507(b), generally amended subsec. (f), as redesignated by Pub. L. 115–282, §508(b)(1). Prior to amendment, subsec. (f) read as follows: "For the purposes of this section, the term 'built' means, with respect to a vessel, that the vessel's construction has reached any of the following stages:

"(1) The vessel's keel is laid.

"(2) Construction identifiable with the vessel has begun and assembly of that vessel has commenced comprising of at least 50 metric tons or one percent of the estimated mass of all structural material, whichever is less."

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 115–282, §508(b)(1), redesignated subsec. (g) as (f).

2016—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 114–120, §318(a)(1), substituted "this subsection" for "this section" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 114–120, §318(a)(2), substituted "Except as provided in subsection (d), subsection (a)" for "This section" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 114–120, §318(a)(3), designated existing provisions as par. (1), substituted "Except as provided in paragraph (2), subsection (a)" for "This section", and added par. (2).

Subsec. (c)(2)(B)(i). Pub. L. 114–328, §3503(a), substituted "Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2016" for "Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2015".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 114–120, §318(a)(4), added subsec. (e). Former subsec. (e) redesignated (g).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 114–120, §318(a)(4), added subsec. (f).

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 114–328, §3503(a), substituted "Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2016" for "Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2015".

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 114–328, §3503(b)(2), substituted ", then" for ", that".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 114–120, §318(a)(4), redesignated subsec. (e) as (g).

2012—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 112–213, §305(c)(1), substituted "July 1, 2013." for "July 1, 2012."

Subsec. (d)(1)(B). Pub. L. 112–213, §305(c)(2)(A), substituted "July 1, 2013;" for "July 1, 2012;".

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 112–213, §305(c)(2)(B), substituted "July 1, 2013," for "July 1, 2012," in two places and substituted "major conversion" for "substantial change to the dimension of or type of vessel".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 112–213, §305(c)(3), added subsec. (e).

2010—Pub. L. 111–281, §604(e)(1)(A), substituted "Fishing, fish tender, and fish processing vessel certification" for "Fish processing vessel certification" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–281, §604(e)(1)(B), struck out "fish processing" before "vessel to which this section applies" in introductory provisions.

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 111–281, §604(e)(1)(C), added subsecs. (c) and (d).

1988—Pub. L. 100–424 amended section generally, substituting "Fish processing vessel certification" for "Equivalency" in section catchline, and provisions which require certification issued by American Bureau of Shipping or similar organization for fish processing vessel built after July 27, 1990, or undergoes major conversion completed after that date, for provisions which deemed compliance with this chapter if vessel has unexpired certificate of inspection issued by foreign country that is party to International Convention for Safety of Life at Sea to which United States is party.

1984—Pub. L. 98–557 substituted "is deemed" for "shall be deemed".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2016 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 114–328 effective as if included in the enactment of Pub. L. 114–120, see section 3503(e) of Pub. L. 114–328, set out as a note under section 2182 of Title 14, Coast Guard.

FINAL RULE

Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §508(f), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4273, provided that: "Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 4, 2018], the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall issue a final rule implementing the requirements enumerated in section 4503(d) of title 46, as amended by subsection (b)(1) of this section."

CONSTRUCTION OF 2022 AMENDMENT

Nothing in amendment by Pub. L. 117–263 to be construed to affect or apply to any alternative compliance and safety agreement entered into by the Coast Guard that is in effect on Dec. 23, 2022, see section 11509(b) of Pub. L. 117–263, set out as a note under section 4502 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

[§4503a. Repealed. Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11509(a)(3), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4137]

Section, added and amended Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §508(a), (c), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4272, provided for an alternate safety compliance program for certain fishing vessels.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

CONSTRUCTION OF REPEAL

Nothing in repeal by Pub. L. 117–263 to be construed to affect or apply to any alternative compliance and safety agreement entered into by the Coast Guard that is in effect on Dec. 23, 2022, see section 11509(b) of Pub. L. 117–263, set out as a Construction of 2022 Amendment note under section 4502 of this title.

§4504. Prohibited acts

A person may not operate a vessel in violation of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter.

(Added Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(7)(C), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 447; amended Pub. L. 100–424, §2(a), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1587.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1988—Pub. L. 100–424 amended section generally, substituting "Prohibited acts" for "Penalties" in section catchline, and provisions prohibiting operation of vessel in violation of this chapter, for provisions which imposed civil penalty not more than $1,000 for operation of vessel in violation of chapter, and liability in rem for penalty.

§4505. Termination of unsafe operations

An official authorized to enforce this chapter—

(1) may direct the individual in charge of a vessel to which this chapter applies to immediately take reasonable steps necessary for the safety of individuals on board the vessel if the official observes the vessel being operated in an unsafe condition that the official believes creates an especially hazardous condition, including ordering the individual in charge to return the vessel to a mooring and to remain there until the situation creating the hazard is corrected or ended; and

(2) may order the individual in charge of an uninspected fish processing vessel that does not have on board the certificate required under section 4503(a)(2) of this title to return the vessel to a mooring and to remain there until the vessel is in compliance with that section, except that this paragraph shall not apply with respect to a vessel to which section 4503a [1] applies.

(Added Pub. L. 100–424, §2(a), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1587; amended Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §509, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4274.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 4503a, referred to in par. (2), was repealed by Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11509(a)(3), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4137.

AMENDMENTS

2018—Par. (2). Pub. L. 115–282 substituted "4503(a)(2)" for "4503(1)" and inserted ", except that this paragraph shall not apply with respect to a vessel to which section 4503a applies" before period at end.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§4506. Exemptions

The Secretary may exempt a vessel from any part of this chapter if, under regulations prescribed by the Secretary (including regulations on special operating conditions), the Secretary finds that—

(1) good cause exists for granting an exemption; and

(2) the safety of the vessel and those on board will not be adversely affected.

(Added Pub. L. 100–424, §2(a), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1587; amended Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5222, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5081; Pub. L. 105–383, title III, §301(b)(6), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3417; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §604(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2964; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §306(a)(5), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 54.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2016—Pub. L. 114–120 struck out subsec. (a) designation before "The Secretary may".

2010—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–281 struck out subsec. (b) which read as follows: "A vessel to which this chapter applies is exempt from section 4502(b)(2)(B) of this title if it—

"(1) is less than 36 feet in length; and
"(2) is operating—
"(A) in internal waters of the United States; or
"(B) within 3 nautical miles from the baselines from which the territorial sea of the United States is measured."

1998—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 105–383 added par. (2) and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: "is not operating on the high seas."

1992—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102–587 substituted "4502(b)(2)(B)" for "4502(b)(2)".

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TERRITORIAL SEA OF UNITED STATES

For extension of territorial sea of United States, see Proc. No. 5928, set out as a note under section 1331 of Title 43, Public Lands.

§4507. Penalties

(a) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, and individual in charge of a vessel to which this chapter applies which is operated in violation of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter may each be assessed a civil penalty by the Secretary of not more than $5,000. Any vessel with respect to which a penalty is assessed under this subsection is liable in rem for the penalty.

(b) A person willfully violating this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter shall be fined not more than $5,000, imprisoned for not more than one year, or both.

(Added Pub. L. 100–424, §2(a), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1588.)

[§4508. Repealed. Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(c)(1), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4289]

Section, added Pub. L. 100–424, §2(a), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1588; amended Pub. L. 101–225, title I, §106, Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1910; Pub. L. 102–241, §25, Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2217; Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §304(b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3917; Pub. L. 107–295, title III, §331(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2105; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §418(a), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1049; Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(g), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 564; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §604(c)(1)–(3), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2964, 2965, established the Commercial Fishing Safety Advisory Committee. See section 15102 of this title.

CHAPTER 47—ABANDONMENT OF VESSELS

SUBCHAPTER I—BARGES

Sec.
4701. Definitions.
4702. Abandonment of barge prohibited.
4703. Penalty for unlawful abandonment of barge.
4704. Removal of abandoned barges.
4705. Liability of barge removal contractors.

SUBCHAPTER II—NON-BARGE VESSELS

4710. Definitions.
4712. Abandonment of vessels prohibited.
Inventory of abandoned vessels.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7347(a)(1), (d), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1779, 1781, substituted "VESSELS" for "BARGES" in chapter heading and inserted headings for subchapters I and II and items 4710 to 4712.

SUBCHAPTER I—BARGES

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7347(a)(2), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1779, inserted subchapter heading.

§4701. Definitions

In this subchapter—

(1) "abandon" means to moor, strand, wreck, sink, or leave a barge of more than 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title unattended for longer than forty-five days.

(2) "barge removal contractor" means a person that enters into a contract with the United States to remove an abandoned barge under this subchapter.

(3) "navigable waters of the United States" means waters of the United States, including the territorial sea.

(4) "removal" or "remove" means relocation, sale, scrapping, or other method of disposal.

(Added Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5302, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5081; amended Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §718, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3937; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7347(c)(1), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1781.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, §7347(c)(1)(A), substituted "subchapter" for "chapter" in introductory provisions. Par. (2). Pub. L. 119–60, §7347(c)(1)(B), substituted "subchapter" for "chapter".

1996—Par. (1). Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

APPLICATION TO CERTAIN BARGES

Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5303, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5083, provided that: "Chapter 47 of title 46, United States Code, as added by subsection (a) [section 5302], does not apply to a barge abandoned before June 11, 1992, if the barge was removed before the date that is 1 year after the date of enactment of this title [Nov. 4, 1992]."

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TERRITORIAL SEA OF UNITED STATES

For extension of territorial sea of United States, see Proc. No. 5928, set out as a note under section 1331 of Title 43, Public Lands.

§4702. Abandonment of barge prohibited

An owner or operator of a barge may not abandon it on the navigable waters of the United States. A barge is deemed not to be abandoned if—

(1) it is located at a Federally- or State-approved mooring area;

(2) it is on private property with the permission of the owner of the property; or

(3) the owner or operator notifies the Secretary that the barge is not abandoned and the location of the barge.

(Added Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5302, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5082; amended Pub. L. 109–304, §15(18), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1703.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–304 struck out subsec. (a) designation before "An owner".

§4703. Penalty for unlawful abandonment of barge

Thirty days after the notification procedures under section 4704(a)(1) are completed, the Secretary may assess a civil penalty of not more than $1,000 for each day of the violation against an owner or operator that violates section 4702. A vessel with respect to which a penalty is assessed under this subchapter is liable in rem for the penalty.

(Added Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5302, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5082; amended Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7347(c)(2), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1781.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60 substituted "subchapter" for "chapter".

§4704. Removal of abandoned barges

(a)(1) The Secretary may remove a barge that is abandoned after complying with the following procedures:

(A) If the identity of the owner or operator can be determined, the Secretary shall notify the owner or operator by certified mail—

(i) that if the barge is not removed it will be removed at the owner's or operator's expense; and

(ii) of the penalty under section 4703.

(B) If the identity of the owner or operator cannot be determined, the Secretary shall publish an announcement in—

(i) a notice to mariners; and

(ii) an official journal of the county in which the barge is located

that if the barge is not removed it will be removed at the owner's or operator's expense.

(2) The United States, and any officer or employee of the United States is not liable to an owner or operator for damages resulting from removal of an abandoned barge under this subchapter.

(b) The owner or operator of an abandoned barge is liable, and an abandoned barge is liable in rem, for all expenses that the United States incurs in removing an abandoned barge under this

subchapter.

(c)(1) The Secretary may, after providing notice under subsection (a)(1), solicit by public advertisement sealed bids for the removal of an abandoned barge.

(2) After solicitation under paragraph (1) the Secretary may award a contract. The contract—

(A) may be subject to the condition that the barge and all property on the barge is the property of the barge removal contractor; and

(B) must require the barge removal contractor to submit to the Secretary a plan for the removal.

(3) Removal of an abandoned barge may begin thirty days after the Secretary completes the procedures under subsection (a)(1).

(Added Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5302, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5082; amended Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7347(c)(3), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1781.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsecs. (a)(2), (b). Pub. L. 119–60 substituted "subchapter" for "chapter".

§4705. Liability of barge removal contractors

(a) A barge removal contractor and its subcontractor are not liable for damages that result from actions taken or omitted to be taken in the course of removing a barge under this subchapter.

(b) Subsection (a) does not apply—

(1) with respect to personal injury or wrongful death; or

(2) if the contractor or subcontractor is grossly negligent or engages in willful misconduct.

(Added Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5302, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5083; amended Pub. L. 109–304, §15(19), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1703; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7347(c)(4), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1781.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 119–60 substituted "subchapter" for "chapter".

2006—Pub. L. 109–304 in subsec. (a) struck out par. (1) designation before "A barge removal" and substituted "subcontractor are not" for "subcontractor not", redesignated par. (2) as subsec. (b) and subpars. (A) and (B) of former par. (2) as pars. (1) and (2) of subsec. (b), respectively, and substituted "Subsection (a)" for "Paragraph (1)".

SUBCHAPTER II—NON-BARGE VESSELS

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7347(a)(3), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1779, inserted subchapter heading.

§4710. Definitions

In this subchapter:

(1) ABANDON.—The term "abandon" means to moor, strand, wreck, sink, or leave a covered

vessel unattended for longer than 45 days.

(2) COVERED VESSEL.—The term "covered vessel" means a vessel that is not a barge to which subchapter I applies.

(3) INDIAN TRIBE.—The term "Indian Tribe" has the meaning given such term in section 4 of the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act (25 U.S.C. 5304).

(4) NATIVE HAWAIIAN ORGANIZATION.—The term "Native Hawaiian organization" has the meaning given such term in section 6207 of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 7517) except the term includes the Department of Hawaiian Home Lands and the Office of Hawaiian Affairs.

(Added Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7347(a)(3), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1779.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7347(b), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1781, provided that: "The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating, in consultation with the Secretary of the Army, acting through the Chief of Engineers, and the Secretary of Commerce, acting through the Under Secretary for Oceans and Atmosphere, shall issue regulations with respect to the procedures for determining that a vessel is abandoned for the purposes of subchapter II of chapter 47 of title 46, United States Code (as added by this section)."

§4711. Abandonment of vessels prohibited

(a) IN GENERAL.—An owner or operator of a covered vessel may not abandon such vessel on the navigable waters of the United States.

(b) DETERMINATION OF ABANDONMENT.—

(1) NOTIFICATION.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—With respect to a covered vessel that appears to be abandoned, the Commandant of the Coast Guard shall—

(i) attempt to identify the owner using the vessel registration number, hull identification number, or any other information that can be reasonably inferred or gathered; and

(ii) notify such owner—

(I) of the penalty described in subsection (c); and

(II) that the vessel will be removed at the expense of the owner if the Commandant determines that the vessel is abandoned and the owner does not remove or account for the vessel.

(B) FORM.—The Commandant shall provide the notice required under subparagraph (A)—

(i) if the owner can be identified, via certified mail or other appropriate forms determined by the Commandant; or

(ii) if the owner cannot be identified, via an announcement in a local publication and on a website maintained by the Coast Guard.

(2) DETERMINATION.—The Commandant shall make a determination not earlier than 45 days after the date on which the Commandant provides the notification required under paragraph (1) of whether a covered vessel described in such paragraph is abandoned.

(c) PENALTY.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Commandant may assess a civil penalty of not more than $500 against an owner or operator of a covered vessel determined to be abandoned under subsection (b) for a violation of subsection (a).

(2) LIABILITY IN REM.—The owner or operator of a covered vessel shall also be liable in rem for a penalty imposed under paragraph (1).

(3) LIMITATION.—The Commandant shall not assess a penalty if the Commandant determines the vessel was abandoned due to major extenuating circumstances of the owner or operator of the vessel, including long term medical incapacitation of the owner or operator.

(d) VESSELS NOT ABANDONED.—The Commandant may not determine that a covered vessel is abandoned under this section if—

(1) such vessel is located at a federally approved or State approved mooring area;

(2) such vessel is located on private property with the permission of the owner of such property;

(3) the owner or operator of such vessel provides a notification to the Commandant that—

(A) indicates the location of the vessel;

(B) indicates that the vessel is not abandoned; and

(C) contains documentation proving that the vessel is allowed to be in such location; or

(4) the Commandant determines that such an abandonment determination would not be in the public interest.

(Added Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7347(a)(3), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1779.)

§4712. Inventory of abandoned vessels

(a) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2025, the Commandant, in consultation with the Administrator of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration and relevant State agencies, shall establish and maintain a national inventory of covered vessels that are abandoned.

(b) CONTENTS.—The inventory established and maintained under subsection (a) shall include data on each vessel, including geographic information system data related to the location of each such vessel.

(c) PUBLICATION.—The Commandant shall make the inventory established under subsection (a) publicly available on a website of the Coast Guard.

(d) REPORTING OF POTENTIALLY ABANDONED VESSELS.—In carrying out this section, the Commandant shall develop a process by which—

(1) a State, Indian Tribe, Native Hawaiian organization, or person may report a covered vessel that may be abandoned to the Commandant for potential inclusion in the inventory established under subsection (a);

(2) the Commandant shall review any such report and add such vessel to the inventory if the Commandant determines that the reported vessel is abandoned pursuant to section 4711.

(e) CLARIFICATION.—Except in a response action carried out under section 311(j) of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1321) or in the case of imminent threat to life and safety, the Commandant shall not be responsible for removing any covered vessels listed on the inventory established and maintained under subsection (a).

(Added Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7347(a)(3), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1780.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2025, referred to in subsec. (a), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 119–60, which was approved Dec. 18, 2025.

CHAPTER 49—OCEANGOING NON-PASSENGER COMMERCIAL VESSELS

Sec.
4901. Surveillance requirements.

§4901. Surveillance requirements

(a) IN GENERAL.—A vessel engaged in commercial service that does not carry passengers, shall maintain a video surveillance system.

(b) APPLICABILITY.—The requirements in this section shall apply to—

(1) documented vessels with overnight accommodations for at least 10 individuals on board that are—

(A) on a voyage of at least 600 miles and crosses seaward of the Boundary Line; or

(B) at least 24 meters (79 feet) in overall length and required to have a load line under chapter 51;

(2) documented vessels of at least 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 on an international voyage; and

(3) vessels with overnight accommodations for at least 10 individuals on board that are operating for no less than 72 hours on waters superjacent to the outer Continental Shelf (as defined in section 2(a) of the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act (43 U.S.C. 1331(a)).[1]

(c) PLACEMENT OF VIDEO AND AUDIO SURVEILLANCE EQUIPMENT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The owner of a vessel to which this section applies shall install video and audio surveillance equipment aboard the vessel not later than 2 years after enactment of the Don Young Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2022, or during the next scheduled drydock, whichever is later.

(2) LOCATIONS.—Video and audio surveillance equipment shall be placed in passageways on to which doors from staterooms open. Such equipment shall be placed in a manner ensuring the visibility of every door in each such passageway.

(d) NOTICE OF VIDEO AND AUDIO SURVEILLANCE.—The owner of a vessel to which this section applies shall provide clear and conspicuous signs on board the vessel notifying the crew of the presence of video and audio surveillance equipment.

(e) ACCESS TO VIDEO AND AUDIO RECORDS.—The owner of a vessel to which this section applies shall ensure that access to records of video and audio surveillance is not used as part of a labor action against a crew member or employment dispute unless used in a criminal or civil action.

(f) RETENTION REQUIREMENTS.—The owner of a vessel to which this section applies shall retain all records of audio and video surveillance for not less than 1 year after the footage is obtained. Any video and audio surveillance found to be associated with an alleged incident should be preserved for not less than 5 years from the date of the alleged incident.

(g) PERSONNEL TRAINING.—A vessel owner or employer of a seafarer shall provide training for all individuals employed by the owner or employer for the purpose of responding to incidents of sexual assault or sexual harassment, including—

(1) such training to ensure the individuals—

(A) retain audio and visual records and other evidence objectively; and

(B) act impartially without influence from the company or others; and

(2) training on applicable Federal, State, Tribal, and local laws and regulations regarding sexual assault and sexual harassment investigations and reporting requirements.

(g) DEFINITION OF OWNER.—In this section, the term "owner" means the owner, charterer, managing operator, master, or other individual in charge of a vessel.

(h) EXEMPTION.—Fishing vessels, fish processing vessels, and fish tender vessels are exempt

from this section.

(Added Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11607(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4150.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Enactment of the Don Young Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2022, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), means enactment of div. K of Pub. L. 117–263, which was approved Dec. 23, 2022.

[1] So in original. Another closing parenthesis probably should precede the period.

PART C—LOAD LINES OF VESSELS

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Part C contains provisions that apply to load lines. A load line is a mark drawn on a vessel that indicates whether a vessel is overloaded. Load line requirements for international voyages are based not only on domestic law but also the 1966 International Load Line Convention.

CHAPTER 51—LOAD LINES

Sec.

5101. Definitions.
5102. Application.
5103. Load line requirements.
5104. Assignment of load lines.
5105. Load line surveys.
5106. Load line certificate.
5107. Delegation of authority.
5108. Special exemptions.
5109. Reciprocity for foreign vessels.
5110. Submersible vessels.
5111. Providing loading information.
5112. Loading restrictions.
5113. Detention of vessels.
5114. Use of Customs Service officers and employees for enforcement.
[5115. Repealed.]
5116. Penalties.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 51 provides for the assignment of load lines and issuance of load line certificates to vessels, and requires that certain classes of vessels be marked with load lines.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1990—Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §603(5)(B), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2993, struck out item 5115 "Regulations".

§5101. Definitions

In this chapter—

(1) "domestic voyage" means movement of a vessel between places in, or subject to the

jurisdiction of, the United States, except movement between—

(A) a place in a territory or possession of the United States or the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands; and

(B) a place outside that territory, possession, or Trust Territory.

(2) "economic benefit of the overloading" means the amount obtained by multiplying the weight of the overload (in tons) by the lesser of—

(A) the average freight rate value of a ton of the vessel's cargo for the voyage; or

(B) $50.

(3) "existing vessel" means—

(A) a vessel on a domestic voyage, the keel of which was laid, or that was at a similar stage of construction, before January 1, 1986; and

(B) a vessel on a foreign voyage, the keel of which was laid, or that was at a similar stage of construction, before July 21, 1968.

(4) "freeboard" means the distance from the mark of the load line assigned under this chapter to the freeboard deck.

(5) "freeboard deck" means the deck or other structure the Secretary prescribes by regulation.

(6) "minimum safe freeboard" means the freeboard that the Secretary decides cannot be reduced safely without limiting the operation of the vessel.

(7) "weight of the overload" means the amount obtained by multiplying the number of inches that the vessel is submerged below the applicable assigned freeboard by the tons-an-inch immersion factor for the vessel at the assigned minimum safe freeboard.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1913.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 5101

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 86a.

Section 5101 contains definitions that are limited to Chapter 51—Load Lines. Existing Section 46 App. U.S.C. 86a (which defines only the terms "new ship" and "existing ship") will be replaced by section 5101. Definitions of technical terms ("freeboard", "freeboard deck", and "minimum safe freeboard") have been added for clarity. The definition of the term "new ship" has been deleted because the term is not used in Chapter 51. The definition of "domestic voyage" includes the phrase "places in or subject to the jurisdiction of the United States." "Places subject to the jurisdiction of the United States" include deep water ports, production platforms, mining sites outside of territorial waters of the United States but within the United States' Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) that was established by Presidential Proclamation 5030, dated March 10, 1983, or on the outer continental shelf. The phrases "economic benefit of overloading" and "weight of the overload" have been defined for purposes of establishing a standard method of determining the value of the cargo with which a vessel is overloaded. The value of the cargo will in turn affect the maximum penalty assessed for overloading the vessel. The definition of "freeboard deck" provides the Secretary with the authority to designate as the freeboard deck either the actual deck (on standard vessels) or another structure (on non-standard vessels). Non-standard vessels, for which this regulatory flexibility is necessary, include shelter deck vessels, semi-submersible multi-hull units, container ships, surface effect vessels, and commercial submarines.

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TERMINATION OF TRUST TERRITORY OF THE PACIFIC ISLANDS

For termination of Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, see note set out preceding section 1681 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions.

§5102. Application

(a) Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, this chapter applies to the following:
(1) a vessel of the United States.
(2) a vessel on the navigable waters of the United States.
(3) a vessel—
(A) owned by a citizen of the United States or a corporation established by or under the laws of the United States or a State; and
(B) not registered in a foreign country.

(4) a public vessel of the United States.
(5) a vessel otherwise subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

(b) This chapter does not apply to the following:
(1) a vessel of war.
(2) a recreational vessel when operated only for pleasure.
(3) a fishing vessel, unless the vessel is built after July 1, 2013.
(4) a fish processing vessel of not more than 5,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title that—
(A)(i) was constructed as a fish processing vessel before August 16, 1974; or
(ii) was converted for use as a fish processing vessel before January 1, 1983; and
(B) is not on a foreign voyage.

(5) a fish tender vessel of not more than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title that—
(A)(i) was constructed, under construction, or under contract to be constructed as a fish tender vessel before January 1, 1980; or
(ii) was converted for use as a fish tender vessel before January 1, 1983; and
(B)(i) is not on a foreign voyage; or
(ii) is not engaged in the Aleutian trade (except a vessel in that trade assigned a load line at any time before June 1, 1992).

(6) a vessel of the United States on a domestic voyage that does not cross the Boundary Line, except a voyage on the Great Lakes.
(7) a vessel of less than 24 meters (79 feet) overall in length.
(8) a public vessel of the United States on a domestic voyage.
(9) a vessel excluded from the application of this chapter by an international agreement to which the United States Government is a party.
(10) an existing vessel of not more than 150 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title that is on a domestic voyage.
(11) a small passenger vessel on a domestic voyage.
(12) a vessel of the working fleet of the Panama Canal Commission not on a foreign voyage.
(13) a vessel of the United States on a domestic voyage that is within the Gulf of Mexico and operating not more than 15 nautical miles seaward of the base line from which the territorial sea of the United States is measured between Crystal Bay, Florida and Hudson Creek, Florida.

(c) On application by the owner and after a survey under section 5105 of this title, the Secretary may assign load lines for a vessel excluded from the application of this chapter under subsection (b) of this section. A vessel assigned load lines under this subsection is subject to this chapter until the surrender of its load line certificate and the removal of its load line marks.
(d) This chapter does not affect an international agreement to which the Government is a party that is not in conflict with the International Convention on Load Lines currently in force for the United

States.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1914; Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §602(d), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2991; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §719, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3938; Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §436(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2129; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §604(d)(1), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2965; Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §305(d)(1), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1565; Pub. L. 114–120, title VI, §612, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 85.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 5102

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 86b, 86c, 88.

The delineation of the vessels that will be subject to load line requirements is made in section 5102 as follows: subsection (a) is an all-inclusive list of vessels subject to load line requirements, followed by subsection (b) which specifically exempts those vessels to which the requirements do not apply.

Section 5102(a) lists five categories of vessels which are subject to load line requirements. They are as follows:

Clause (1) regarding "a vessel of the United States" includes all vessels documented under Chapter 121 of title 46 or numbered under Chapter 123 of title 46.

Clause (2) regarding "a vessel on the navigable waters of the United States" includes all domestic or foreign vessels found in or on the navigable waters of the United States.

Clause (3) regarding "a vessel owned by a citizen of the United States or a corporation established by or under the laws of the United States or a State, and not registered in a foreign country" includes all vessels owned by citizens of the United States (as defined in 5107(7)) [sic] and not registered under the laws of a foreign country, wherever the vessels may be located.

Clause (4) regarding "a public vessel of the United States" includes all United States public vessels.

Clause (5) regarding "a vessel otherwise subject to the jurisdiction of the United States" includes foreign vessels that are subject to United States jurisdiction as a result of bilateral agreements, licenses, customary international law or other means, including those using deepwater port or outer continental shelf or EEZ facilities located in areas subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

Section 5102(b) lists the specific exemptions from load line requirements. The specific exemptions may be grouped as follows:

(a) Vessel type (ships of war, pleasure vessels, fishing vessels, small passenger vessels on domestic voyages);

(b) Area of operation (rivers, harbors, bays, sounds, etc.);

(c) Minimum size (length); and

(d) Treaty exclusions.

Clause (1) exempts vessels of war from load line requirements.

Clause (2) exempts recreational vessels operated only for pleasure from load line requirements.

Clause (3) exempts fishing vessels from load line requirements.

Clauses (4) and (5) exempt certain existing fish processing and fish tender vessels not on a foreign voyage from load line requirements. The exception is limited to those vessels not on international voyages to ensure compliance with United States obligations under the International Load Line Convention.

Clause (6) exempts from load line requirements all U.S. vessels operating on domestic voyages within the Boundary Line, as defined in section 2101 of this title, except vessels operating on the Great Lakes.

Clause (7) exempts all vessels that are less than 24 meters (79 feet) in length from load line requirements whether on international or domestic voyages.

Clause (8) exempts from load line requirements those public vessels that are on domestic voyages.

Clause (9) exempts from load line requirements those vessels which have been excluded from the requirements "by specific action of a treaty of the United States." The only current treaty which excludes vessels from load line requirements is the Convention Between the United States of America and the Dominion of Canada Concerning Load Lines (49 Stat. 2685), which entered into force on August 11, 1934.

Clause (10) exempts from load line requirements existing U.S. vessels that are under 150 gross tons while engaged on a domestic voyage. This is a grandfather provision, continuing the existing exemption for these vessels. Vessels built after January 1, 1986 must be marked with a load line, however, if they are over 79 feet long and do not qualify for any other exemption.

Clause (11) exempts small passenger vessels engaged on domestic voyages from load line requirements. Small passenger vessels are inspected under Subchapter T of Title 46 of the Code of Federal Regulations. Under Subchapter T, the Coast Guard regulates these vessels with regard to safety; the requirements are based

on the number of passengers, length, and gross tonnage of the vessel. Safety-related requirements in Subchapter T regulations include hull structure and watertightness, stability, weathertight integrity, and safe movement of persons on deck, the principal safety features covered by load line regulations. This specific exemption from load line requirements for small passenger vessels is consistent with existing law and does not alter in any way the Coast Guard's authority to regulate small passenger vessels under Subchapter T.

Clause (12) exempts vessels of the working voyages from the requirement to have load lines.

Section 5102(c) authorizes the Secretary to assign load lines for any vessel exempted from load line requirements by subsection (b) upon the request of the owner. It also provides that any exempted vessel for which load lines are assigned will remain subject to the load line requirements until its load line certificate is surrendered and the load line marks are removed.

Section 5102(d) provides that this chapter shall not be construed as abrogating the provisions of other treaties and conventions to which the United States is a party, which are not in conflict with the International Convention on Load Lines.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (b)(13). Pub. L. 114–120 added par. (13).

2012—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 112–213 substituted "July 1, 2013." for "July 1, 2012."

2010—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 111–281 inserted ", unless the vessel is built after July 1, 2012" after "vessel".

2002—Subsec. (b)(5)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 107–295 inserted "is not" after "(ii)".

1996—Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 104–324, §719(1), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "5,000 gross tons" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 104–324, §719(2), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "500 gross tons" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(10). Pub. L. 104–324, §719(3), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "150 gross tons".

1990—Subsec. (b)(5)(B). Pub. L. 101–595 amended subpar. (B) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (B) read as follows: "is not on a foreign voyage."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–595 effective Nov. 16, 1990, with provision that before Jan. 1, 2003, a fish tender vessel is exempt from this chapter when engaged in Aleutian trade if the vessel either operated in that trade before Sept. 8, 1990, or was purchased before that date to be used in such trade and entered into service in that trade before June 1, 1992, did not undergo a major conversion, and did not have a load line assigned at any time before Nov. 16, 1990, see section 602(f) of Pub. L. 101–595, set out as a note under section 4502 of this title.

FISH TENDER VESSELS IN ALEUTIAN TRADE

Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §436(b), (c), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2129, provided that:

"(b) IMPLEMENTATION.—Except as provided in subsection (c), a fish tender vessel that before January 1, 2003, transported cargo (not including fishery related products) in the Aleutian trade is subject to chapter 51 of title 46, United States Code (as amended by subsection (a) of this section [amending this section]).

"(c) EXCEPTION.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Before December 31, 2006, the BOWFIN (United States official number 604231) is exempt from chapter 51 of title 46, United States Code (as amended by subsection (a) of this section) when engaged in the Aleutian trade, if the vessel does not undergo a major conversion.

"(2) ENSURING SAFETY.—Before the date referred to in paragraph (1), a Coast Guard official who has reason to believe that the vessel referred to in paragraph (1) operating under this subsection is in a condition or is operated in a manner that creates an immediate threat to life or the environment or is operated in a manner that is inconsistent with section 3302 of title 46, United States Code, may direct the

master or individual in charge to take immediate and reasonable steps to safeguard life and the environment, including directing the vessel to a port or other refuge."

[For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.]

§5103. Load line requirements

(a) A vessel may be operated only if the vessel has been assigned load lines.

(b) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, and individual in charge of a vessel shall mark and maintain the load lines permanently and conspicuously in the way prescribed by the Secretary.

(c) A fishing vessel built on or before July 1, 2013, that undergoes a major conversion completed after the later of July 1, 2013, or the date the Secretary establishes standards for an alternate loadline compliance program, shall comply with such an alternative loadline compliance program that is developed in cooperation with the commercial fishing industry and prescribed by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1915; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §604(d)(2), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2965; Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §305(d)(2), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1565.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 5103

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 86c, 88b.

Section 5103(a) prohibits a vessel that is subject to load line requirements from operating, unless it has load lines assigned by the Secretary.

Section 5103(b) requires that load lines be permanently and conspicuously maintained in the manner prescribed by the Secretary.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2012—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 112–213 substituted "July 1, 2013," for "July 1, 2012," in two places and substituted "major conversion" for "substantial change to the dimension of or type of the vessel".

2010—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–281 added subsec. (c).

§5104. Assignment of load lines

(a) The Secretary shall assign load lines for a vessel so that they indicate the minimum safe freeboard to which the vessel may be loaded. However, if the owner requests, the Secretary may assign load lines that result in greater freeboard than the minimum safe freeboard.

(b) In assigning load lines for a vessel, the Secretary shall consider—

(1) the service, type, and character of the vessel;

(2) the geographic area in which the vessel will operate; and

(3) applicable international agreements to which the United States Government is a party.

(c) An existing vessel may retain its load lines assigned before January 1, 1986, unless the Secretary decides that a substantial change in the vessel after those load lines were assigned requires that new load lines be assigned under this chapter.

(d) The minimum freeboard of an existing vessel may be reduced only if the vessel complies with every applicable provision of this chapter.

(e) The Secretary may designate by regulation specific geographic areas that have less severe

weather or sea conditions and from which there is adequate time to return to available safe harbors. The Secretary may reduce the minimum freeboard of a vessel operating in these areas.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1915.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 5104

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 86c, 88a.

Section 5104(a) requires the Secretary to assign load lines indicating the minimum safe freeboard to which a vessel may be loaded. It also authorizes the Secretary to assign a load line that results in a freeboard that is greater than the minimum freeboard, if the owner requests.

Section 5104(b) sets forth guidelines that the Secretary must consider when assigning load lines on vessels.

Section 5104(c) allows an existing vessel to retain its load line assigned before January 1, 1986, unless the Secretary decides that a change made in the vessel requires the assignment of a new load line.

Section 5104(d) is a new provision that requires that a vessel comply with all the provisions of this chapter before the Secretary will consider a reduction in its minimum freeboard. This provision is similar to Article 4(4) of the International Convention on Load Lines.

Section 5104(e) is a new provision that authorized the Secretary to designate specific geographic areas having relatively non-severe weather or sea conditions and from which there is adequate time to return to safe harbors. Section 5104(e) also authorizes the Secretary to reduce the minimum freeboard of vessels operating in these areas. Regulations that have been issued under this authority (46 C.F.R. 44) authorize special service load lines for vessels operating not more than 20 nautical miles offshore or between islands in a group.

§5105. Load line surveys

(a) The Secretary may provide for annual, renewal, and other load line surveys.

(b) In conducting a load line survey, the Secretary shall consider whether—

(1) the hull and fittings of the vessel—

(A) are adequate to protect the vessel from the sea; and

(B) meet other requirements the Secretary may prescribe by regulation;

(2) the strength of the hull is adequate for all loading conditions;

(3) the stability of the vessel is adequate for all loading conditions;

(4) the topsides of the vessel are arranged and constructed to allow rapid overboard drainage of deck water in heavy weather; and

(5) the topsides of the vessel are adequate in design, arrangement, and equipment to protect crewmembers performing outside tasks necessary for safe operation of the vessel.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1916.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 5105

Section 5105 authorizes the Secretary of Transportation to provide for load line surveys and requires that while conducting a load line survey, the Secretary must consider various strength, stability, design, and construction features of the vessel.

§5106. Load line certificate

(a) On finding that a load line survey of a vessel under this chapter is satisfactory and that the vessel's load lines are marked correctly, the Secretary shall issue the vessel a load line certificate and deliver it to the owner, master, or individual in charge of the vessel.

(b) The certificate shall be maintained as required by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1916.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 5106

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 86c.

Section 5106(a) requires the Secretary to issue a load line certificate upon finding that a vessel has received a satisfactory load line survey and that the vessel's load line is marked correctly.

Section 5106(b) requires that the load line certificate be maintained as required by the Secretary of Transportation. It is expected that the Secretary will require in most cases that the certificate be carried on board the vessel. However, certain types of vessels such as barges do not have facilities for the carriage of certificates. In this case, this provision would give the Secretary the discretion to require that the certificates for the barges be carried on the towing vessels.

§5107. Delegation of authority

(a) The Secretary shall delegate to the American Bureau of Shipping or other similarly qualified organizations the authority to assign load lines, survey vessels, determine that load lines are marked correctly, and issue load line certificates under this chapter.

(b) Under regulations prescribed by the Secretary, a decision of an organization delegated authority under subsection (a) of this section related to the assignment of a load line may be appealed to the Secretary.

(c) For a vessel intended to be engaged on a foreign voyage, the Secretary may delegate to another country that is a party to the International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, the authority to assign load lines, survey vessels, determine that the load lines are marked correctly, and issue an International Load Line Certificate (1966).

(d) The Secretary may terminate a delegation made under this section after giving written notice to the organization.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1916.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 5107

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 86d, 88b.

Section 5107(a) requires the Secretary to delegate the performance of various load line functions to the American Bureau of Shipping or other similarly qualified organizations. In providing for the delegation to a "similarly qualified organization," the Committee expects that the Secretary will ensure that that organization complies with the same stringent standards and requirements for conducting business that apply to the American Bureau of Shipping.

Section 5107(b) permits an appeal to the Secretary of a decision by an organization that has received delegated authority. This ensures that the Secretary has full oversight of the delegated load line functions.

Section 5107(c) permits the Secretary to delegate various load line functions to another country for vessels that are engaged on a foreign voyage, provided that the country is a party to the International Convention on Load Lines, 1966.

Section 5107(d) clarifies the Secretary's authority to revoke a delegation at any time without cause. This authority is given so that no delay occurs administratively in revoking a delegation whenever the Secretary decides a revocation is warranted.

§5108. Special exemptions

(a) The Secretary may exempt a vessel from any part of this chapter when—

(1) the vessel is entitled to an exemption under an international agreement to which the United States Government is a party; or

(2) under regulations (including regulations on special operations conditions) prescribed by the Secretary, the Secretary finds that good cause exists for granting an exemption.

(b) When the Secretary grants an exemption under this section, the Secretary may issue a certificate of exemption stating the extent of the exemption.

(c) A certificate of exemption issued under subsection (b) of this section shall be maintained as

required by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1916.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 5108

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 86e, 88a.

Section 5108(a) authorizes the Secretary to exempt a vessel from load line requirements if the vessel is entitled to an exemption under an international agreement to which the United States is a party. It also provides the Secretary with the new authority to exempt a vessel from load line requirements if the Secretary finds that there is good reason for granting the exemption. A specific exemption from load line requirements was authorized in Public Law 98–557 for barges operating close to shore between Calumet Harbor, Illinois and Burns Harbor, Indiana, because the geographic area and type of operation in this case did not warrant a requirement for load lines. Additional exemptions currently must be made by an Act of Congress. Section 5108(a) authorizes the Secretary to make such exemptions through regulation, and the Committee expects the Secretary to continue the exemption under this provision for vessels operating close to shore between Calumet Harbor, Illinois and Burns Harbor, Indiana.

Section 5108(b) authorizes the Secretary to issue a certificate of exemption when an exemption is granted.

Section 5108(c) requires that the certificate of exemption be maintained as required by the Secretary in a similar manner as under section 5106(b).

§5109. Reciprocity for foreign vessels

(a) When the Secretary finds that the laws and regulations of a foreign country related to load lines are similar to those of this chapter and the regulations prescribed under this chapter, or when a foreign country is a party to an international load line agreement to which the United States Government is a party, the Secretary shall accept the load line marks and certificate of a vessel of that foreign country as complying with this chapter and the regulations prescribed under this chapter. The Secretary may control the vessel as provided for in the applicable international agreement.

(b) Subsection (a) of this section does not apply to a vessel of a foreign country that does not recognize load lines assigned under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1917.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 5109

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 86f, 88d.

Section 5109(a) requires the Secretary to accept the load line mark and load line certificate of a vessel of a foreign country if the Secretary finds that the load line laws and regulations of that country are similar to those of this chapter, or if that country is a party to an international load line agreement to which the United States is a party.

§5110. Submersible vessels

Notwithstanding sections 5103–5105 of this title, the Secretary may prescribe regulations for submersible vessels to provide a minimum level of safety. In developing the regulations, the Secretary shall consider factors relevant to submersible vessels, including the structure, stability, and watertight integrity of those vessels.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1917.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 5110

Section 5110 authorizes the Secretary to prescribe regulations for the marking of load lines of submersible vessels. This general authority has been included in anticipation of the commercial development of submersibles.

§5111. Providing loading information

The Secretary may prescribe regulations requiring the owner, charterer, managing operator, and agent of a vessel to provide loading information (including information on loading distribution, stability, and margin of strength) to the master or individual in charge of the vessel in a language the master or individual understands.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1917.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Section 5111 authorizes the Secretary to prescribe regulations requiring that the master of a vessel be provided with loading and stability information for the vessel that the master understands.

§5112. Loading restrictions

(a) A vessel may not be loaded in a way that submerges the assigned load line or the place at which the load line is required to be marked on the vessel.

(b) If the loading or stability conditions of a vessel change, the master or individual in charge of the vessel, before moving the vessel, shall record in the official logbook or other permanent record of the vessel—

(1) the position of the assigned load line relative to the water surface; and

(2) the draft of the vessel fore and aft.

(c) A vessel may be operated only if the loading distribution, stability, and margin of strength are adequate for the voyage or movement intended.

(d) Subsections (a) and (b) of this section do not apply to a submersible vessel.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1917.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 5112

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 86g, 88c, 88e.

Section 5112(a) prohibits a vessel from being loaded in a manner that submerges its load line.

Section 5112(b) requires that whenever the loading or stability conditions of a vessel change, the master or individual in charge of the vessel must record in the official logbook the position of the load line and the draft of the vessel.

Section 5112(c) is a new provision that provides that a vessel may be operated only if the loading distribution, stability, and margin of strength are adequate for the intended voyage or movement.

Section 5112(d) provides that subsections (a) and (b) do not apply to a submersible vessel.

§5113. Detention of vessels

(a) When the Secretary believes that a vessel is about to leave a place in the United States in violation of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter, the Secretary may detain the vessel by giving notice to the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of the vessel.

(b) A detained vessel may be cleared under section 60105 of this title only after the violation has been corrected. If the vessel was cleared before being detained, the clearance shall be withdrawn.

(c) Under regulations prescribed by the Secretary, the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a detained vessel may petition the Secretary to review the detention order.

(d) After reviewing a petition, the Secretary may affirm, withdraw, or change the detention order. Before acting on the petition, the Secretary may require any independent survey that may be necessary to determine the condition of the vessel.

(e) The owner of a vessel is liable for the cost incident to a petition for review and any required survey if the vessel is found to be in violation of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1918; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(20), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1703.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 5113

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 86h, 88f.

Section 5113 authorizes the Secretary to detain a vessel if the Secretary believes that the vessel is in violation of the load line requirements, and describes the process through which a vessel may be cleared. It also states that a vessel owner is liable for certain costs resulting from a petition for review and load line survey that is made pursuant to a violation of load line requirements.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 109–304 substituted "section 60105 of this title" for "section 4197 of the Revised Statutes (46 App. U.S.C. 91)".

§5114. Use of Customs Service officers and employees for enforcement

(a) With the approval of the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary may use an officer or employee of the United States Customs Service to enforce this chapter and the regulations prescribed under this chapter.

(b) The Secretary shall consult with the Secretary of the Treasury before prescribing a regulation that affects the enforcement responsibilities of an officer or employee of the Customs Service.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1918; Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §603(4), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2993.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 5114

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 86

Section 5114(a) authorizes the Secretary to use a Customs Service officer or employee to enforce load line requirements. The expected role of a Customs Service officer or employee in this regard is to ensure that a vessel is carrying a load line certificate and that the load line is not submerged.

Section 5114(b) requires the Secretary to consult with the Secretary of the Treasury before prescribing a regulation that affects the enforcement responsibilities of a Customs Service officer or employee.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1990—Pub. L. 101–595 substituted "officers and employees" for "officers employees" in section catchline.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions, personnel, assets, and liabilities of the United States Customs Service of the Department of the Treasury, including functions of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto, to the Secretary of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 203(1), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6. For establishment of U.S. Customs and Border Protection in the Department of Homeland Security, treated as if included in Pub. L.

107–296 as of Nov. 25, 2002, see section 211 of Title 6, as amended generally by Pub. L. 114–125, and section 802(b) of Pub. L. 114–125, set out as a note under section 211 of Title 6.

[§5115. Repealed. Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §603(5)(A), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2993]

Section, Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1918, authorized Secretary to prescribe regulations to carry out this chapter.

§5116. Penalties

(a) Except as otherwise provided in this section, the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, and individual in charge of a vessel violating this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter are each liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000. Each day of a continuing violation is a separate violation. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(b) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, and individual in charge of a vessel allowing, causing, attempting to cause, or failing to take reasonable care to prevent a violation of section 5112(a) of this title are each liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 plus an additional amount equal to twice the economic benefit of the overloading. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(c) The master or individual in charge of a vessel violating section 5112(b) of this title is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(d) A person causing or allowing the departure of a vessel from a place within the jurisdiction of the United States in violation of a detention order issued under section 5113 of this title commits a class A misdemeanor.

(e) A person causing or allowing the alteration, concealment, or removal of a mark placed on a vessel under section 5103(b) of this title and the regulations prescribed under this chapter, except to make a lawful change or to escape enemy capture in time of war, commits a class A misdemeanor.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(2), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1918; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4302(d), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 538.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 5116

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 86i, 88g.

Section 5116 provides penalties for violations of load line requirements. The penalties are raised substantially from existing law to provide a sufficient deterrence against violations of the load line requirements and to conform with the level of penalties throughout the subtitle. The monetary penalties have not been changed since the 1930's.

Section 5116(a) raises from $1,000 to $5,000 the maximum penalty for violation of a load line provision under this chapter or a regulation promulgated under this chapter.

Section 5116(b) raises from $1,000 to $10,000 the maximum penalty for loading a vessel in such a way as to submerge the load line. In addition, a violator must pay up to two times the amount of the economic benefit of the overloading.

Section 5116(c) raises from $500 to $5,000 the maximum penalty for a violation of the requirement in section 5112(b) that the load line position and draft of a vessel be noted in the logbook.

Section 5116(a)–(c) also states that the vessel is liable in rem for the penalty.

Section 5116(d) raises from $1,000 to $10,000 the maximum penalty for a violation of a detention order and may also include imprisonment for up to one year.

Section 5116(e) raises from $2,000 to $10,000 the maximum penalty for the alteration, removal, or concealment of a load line mark and may also include imprisonment for two years.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(d)(1), substituted "commits a class A misdemeanor" for "shall be fined not more than $10,000, imprisoned for not more than one year, or both".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(d)(2), substituted "commits a class A misdemeanor" for "shall be fined not more than $10,000, imprisoned for not more than 2 years, or both".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

PART D—MARINE CASUALTIES

CHAPTER 61—REPORTING MARINE CASUALTIES

Sec.

6101. Marine casualties and reporting.
6102. State marine casualty reporting system.
6103. Penalty.
6104. Commercial fishing industry vessel casualty statistics.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 61 provides for the reporting of marine casualties and incidents involving all United States flag vessels occurring anywhere in the world and any foreign flag vessel operating on waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1988—Pub. L. 100–424, §4(c), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1591, added item 6104.

§6101. Marine casualties and reporting

(a) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations on the marine casualties to be reported and the manner of reporting. The regulations shall require reporting the following marine casualties:

(1) death of an individual.
(2) serious injury to an individual.
(3) material loss of property.
(4) material damage affecting the seaworthiness or efficiency of the vessel.
(5) significant harm to the environment.

(b) A marine casualty shall be reported within 5 days as provided in this part and regulations prescribed under this part. Each report filed under this section shall include information as to whether the use of alcohol contributed to the casualty.

(c) NOTICE TO STATE AND TRIBAL GOVERNMENTS.—Not later than 24 hours after receiving a notice of a major marine casualty under this section, the Secretary shall notify each State or federally recognized Indian tribe that is, or may reasonably be expected to be, affected by such marine casualty.

(d)(1) This part applies to a foreign vessel when involved in a marine casualty on the navigable

waters of the United States.

(2) This part applies, to the extent consistent with generally recognized principles of international law, to a foreign vessel constructed or adapted to carry, or that carries, oil in bulk as cargo or cargo residue involved in a marine casualty described under subsection (a)(4) or (5) in waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, including the Exclusive Economic Zone.

(e) A marine casualty not resulting in the death of an individual shall be classified according to the gravity of the casualty, as prescribed by regulation, giving consideration to the extent of injuries to individuals, the extent of property damage, the dangers that the casualty creates, and the size, occupation, and means of propulsion of each vessel involved.

(f)(1) This chapter applies to a marine casualty involving a United States citizen on a foreign passenger vessel operating south of 75 degrees north latitude, west of 35 degrees west longitude, and east of the International Date Line; or operating in the area south of 60 degrees south latitude that—

(A) embarks or disembarks passengers in the United States; or

(B) transports passengers traveling under any form of air and sea ticket package marketed in the United States.

(2) When there is a marine casualty described in paragraph (1) of this subsection and an investigation is conducted, the Secretary shall ensure that the investigation—

(A) is thorough and timely; and

(B) produces findings and recommendations to improve safety on passenger vessels.

(3) When there is a marine casualty described in paragraph (1) of this subsection, the Secretary may—

(A) seek a multinational investigation of the casualty under auspices of the International Maritime Organization; or

(B) conduct an investigation of the casualty under chapter 63 of this title.

(g) To the extent consistent with generally recognized practices and procedures of international law, this part applies to a foreign vessel involved in a marine casualty or incident, as defined in the International Maritime Organization Code for the Investigation of Marine Casualties and Incidents, where the United States is a Substantially Interested State and is, or has the consent of, the Lead Investigating State under the Code.

(h) The Secretary shall publish all major marine casualty reports prepared in accordance with this section in an electronic form, and shall provide information electronically regarding how other marine casualty reports can be obtained.

(i) For purposes of this section, the term "major marine casualty" means a casualty involving a vessel, other than a public vessel, that results in—

(1) the loss of 6 or more lives;

(2) the loss of a mechanically propelled vessel of 100 or more gross tons;

(3) property damage initially estimated at $2,000,000 or more; or

(4) serious threat, as determined by the Commandant with concurrence by the Chairman of the National Transportation Safety Board, to life, property, or the environment by hazardous materials.

(j) The Secretary shall publish all marine casualty reports prepared in accordance with this section in an electronic form.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 536; Pub. L. 98–498, title II, §212(b)(1), Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2306; Pub. L. 98–557, §7(b)(1), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2862; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4106(b), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 513; Pub. L. 102–241, §33, Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2222; Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §§423, 442(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2125, 2132; Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(o), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 565; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(21), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1704; Pub.

L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3529(c)(1), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 603; Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §312, Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3048; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §§3541(b)(11), 3546(d), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2323, 2326; Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §211, Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3749.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
6101	46:239
	46:1486
	33:361
	33:365
6101(b)	33:362

Section 6101(a) requires the Secretary to prescribe regulations on the types and manner of reporting of marine casualties to be reported under subsection (b) and incidents to be reported under subsection (c). The casualties to be reported must include casualties involving death to an individual, serious injury to an individual, material loss of property, and any damage affecting the seaworthiness or efficiency of the vessel, in addition to the other casualties (if any) the Secretary feels should be reported.

Subsection (b) requires the owner, charterer, agent, master, operator, or individual in charge of a vessel to report within 5 days, any casualty required in subsection (a) or by regulation.

Subsection (c) requires the owner, charterer, managing operator, or agent of a U.S. vessel to immediately determine the status of their vessel if they have not heard from the vessel, if it has not passed a scheduled point, or for any other reason which may indicate the vessel may have been lost or imperiled. If the owner, charterer, managing operator, or agent cannot reach the vessel and determine that it is operating safely, then they shall immediately notify the Coast Guard and provide the Coast Guard with the name and number of the vessel, the names of individuals on board, and any other information that the Coast Guard may request. If communication with the vessel indicates the vessel was involved in a casualty, then the owner, charterer, or agent of the vessel must immediately notify the Coast Guard under subsection (b). Notification to the Coast Guard does not impose or create any additional responsibility for the Coast Guard to take search and rescue action beyond those already existing under title 14, United States Code.

Subsection (d) makes it clear that the reporting requirements under subsection (b) are applicable to foreign vessels involved in a marine casualty when operating on the navigable waters of the United States, whether in innocent passage or not.

Subsection (e) provides for the classification of marine casualties by regulation according to the gravity of the casualty, injuries to individuals, property damage, dangers created, and size, occupation, and means of propulsion of each vessel.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (i)(3). Pub. L. 115–265 substituted "$2,000,000" for "$500,000".

Subsec. (i)(4). Pub. L. 115–232, §3541(b)(11), struck out "of the Coast Guard" after "Commandant".

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 115–232, §3546(d), struck out ", as soon as possible, and no later than January 1, 2005," after "The Secretary shall".

2014—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 113–281, §312(1), added subsec. (c).

Subsecs. (h), (i). Pub. L. 113–281, §312(2), in subsec. (h), struck out "(1)" before "The Secretary" and redesignated par. (2) as subsec. (i) and, in subsec. (i), substituted "section" for "paragraph" in introductory provisions and redesignated former subpars. (A) to (D) as pars. (1) to (4), respectively. Former subsec. (i) redesignated (j).

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 113–281, §312(3), resesignated subsec. (i) as (j).

2008—Subsecs. (g) to (i). Pub. L. 110–181 repealed Pub. L. 109–304, §15(21). See 2006 Amendment notes below.

2006—Subsecs. (g) to (i). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(21), which directed amendment identical to that made by Pub. L. 109–241, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181. See Construction of 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 109–241 redesignated the second subsec. (g), relating to electronic publishing of marine casualty reports, and subsec. (h) as subsecs. (h) and (i), respectively.

2002—Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 107–295, §423(1), redesignated subsec. (e), relating to passenger vessel investigations, as subsec. (f).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 107–295, §442(a), added subsec. (g) relating to electronic publishing of marine casualty reports.

Pub. L. 107–295, §423(2), added subsec. (g) relating to applicability of this part to a foreign vessel involved in a marine casualty or incident.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 107–295, §442(a), added subsec. (h).

1991—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 102–241 added subsec. (e) relating to passenger vessel investigations.

1990—Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 101–380, §4106(b)(1), added par. (5).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101–380, §4106(b)(2), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98–498, §212(b)(1)(A), struck out "and incidents" after "marine casualties" in provisions preceding par. (1).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 98–557 inserted provisions relating to alcohol as a contributing factor to the casualty.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98–498, §212(b)(1)(B), struck out subsec. (c) which related to determination of status of a vessel that may be lost or imperiled and notification of the Coast Guard.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §442(b), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2132, provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] applies to all marine casualty reports completed after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 25, 2002]."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–498 effective 180 days after Oct. 1, 1984, see section 214 of Pub. L. 98–498, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2306 of this title.

CONSTRUCTION OF 2006 AMENDMENT

Provisions of Pub. L. 109–304 repealed by section 3529(c)(1) of Pub. L. 110–181 to be treated as if never enacted, see section 3529(c)(2) of Pub. L. 110–181, set out as a note under section 9504 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

§6102. State marine casualty reporting system

(a) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations for a uniform State marine casualty reporting system for vessels. Regulations shall prescribe the casualties to be reported and the manner of reporting. A State shall compile and submit to the Secretary reports, information, and statistics on casualties reported to the State, including information and statistics concerning the number of casualties in which the use of alcohol contributed to the casualty.

(b) The Secretary shall collect, analyze, and publish reports, information, and statistics on marine casualties together with findings and recommendations the Secretary considers appropriate. If a State marine casualty reporting system provides that information derived from casualty reports (except

statistical information) may not be publicly disclosed, or otherwise prohibits use by the State or any person in any action or proceeding against a person, the Secretary may use the information provided by the State only in the same way that the State may use the information.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 536; Pub. L. 98–557, §7(b)(2), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2862.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
6102	46:1486

Section 6102(a) requires the Secretary to prescribe regulations for a uniform State marine casualty reporting system for vessels. The Secretary may limit the scope and types of casualties to be investigated and reported by the State. It also requires the State to submit to the Secretary reports, information, and statistics on casualties reported to the State.

Subsection (b) requires the Secretary to analyze the information that is received from the State. It also prohibits the Secretary from disclosing the information, proceeding against any person based on this information, or otherwise using the information, if the State cannot use the information in the same way.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98–557 inserted provisions relating to alcohol as a contributing factor to the casualty.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

PLAN TO INCREASE MARINE CASUALTY REPORTING

Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §314(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3922, provided that: "Not later than one year after enactment of this Act [Oct. 19, 1996], the Secretary of Transportation shall, in consultation with appropriate State agencies, submit to the Committee on Resources [now Committee on Natural Resources] of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a plan to increase reporting of vessel accidents to appropriate State law enforcement officials."

§6103. Penalty

(a) An owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel failing to report a casualty as required under section 6101 of this title or a regulation prescribed under section 6101 or 6102 is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $25,000.

(b) A person failing to comply with section 6104 of this title or a regulation prescribed under that section is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 536; Pub. L. 98–498, title II, §212(b)(2), Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2306; Pub. L. 100–424, §4(b), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1590; Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §§306(a), 314(b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3918, 3922.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
6103	33:361 33:362

Section 6103 provides for a civil penalty of $1,000 for any owner, charterer, managing operator, agent,

master, or individual in charge of a vessel that fails to report a casualty required to be reported under subsection (b) of section 6101 or an incident required to be reported under subsection (c) of section 6101.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "or 6102" before "is liable" and substituted "not more than $25,000" for "$1,000".

1988—Pub. L. 100–424 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

1984—Pub. L. 98–498 struck out "or incident" after "a casualty".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–498 effective 180 days after Oct. 19, 1984, see section 214 of Pub. L. 98–498, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2306 of this title.

§6104. Commercial fishing industry vessel casualty statistics

(a) The Secretary shall compile statistics concerning marine casualties from data compiled from insurers of fishing vessels, fish processing vessels, and fish tender vessels.

(b) A person underwriting primary insurance for a fishing vessel, fish processing vessel, or fish tender vessel shall submit periodically to the Secretary data concerning marine casualties that is required by regulations prescribed by the Secretary.

(c) After consulting with the insurance industry, the Secretary shall prescribe regulations under this section to gather a statistical base for analyzing vessel risks.

(d) The Secretary may delegate to a qualified person that has knowledge and experience in the collection of statistical insurance data the authority of the Secretary under this section to compile statistics from insurers.

(Added Pub. L. 100–424, §4(a), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1590.)

CHAPTER 63—INVESTIGATING MARINE CASUALTIES

Sec.

6301. Investigation of marine casualties.
6302. Public investigations.
6303. Rights of parties in interest.
6304. Subpoena authority.
6305. Reports of investigations.
6306. Penalty.
6307. Notifications to Congress.
6308. Information barred in legal proceedings.
6309. Voyage data recorder access.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 63 sets forth the scope and procedures for the investigation of marine casualties and incidents that are required to be reported by Chapter 61, as well as the rights of parties involved in a casualty.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVIII, §11807(b), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4165, added item 6304 and struck out former item 6304 "Subpena authority".

2018—Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §207(b), Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3747, added item 6309.
1996—Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §313(b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3922, added item 6308.

§6301. Investigation of marine casualties

The Secretary shall prescribe regulations for the immediate investigation of marine casualties under this part to decide, as closely as possible—

(1) the cause of the casualty, including the cause of any death;

(2) whether an act of misconduct, incompetence, negligence, unskillfulness, or willful violation of law committed by any individual licensed, certificated, or documented under part E of this subtitle has contributed to the cause of the casualty, or to a death involved in the casualty, so that appropriate remedial action under chapter 77 of this title may be taken;

(3) whether an act of misconduct, incompetence, negligence, unskillfulness, or willful violation of law committed by any person, including an officer, employee, or member of the Coast Guard, contributed to the cause of the casualty, or to a death involved in the casualty;

(4) whether there is evidence that an act subjecting the offender to a civil penalty under the laws of the United States has been committed, so that appropriate action may be undertaken to collect the penalty;

(5) whether there is evidence that a criminal act under the laws of the United States has been committed, so that the matter may be referred to appropriate authorities for prosecution; and

(6) whether there is need for new laws or regulations, or amendment or repeal of existing laws or regulations, to prevent the recurrence of the casualty.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 537.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
6301	46:239

Section 6301 requires the Secretary to prescribe regulations for the immediate investigation of marine casualties in order to determine, as closely as possible, the cause of the casualty; whether the actions of individuals licensed, certificated, or documented have contributed to the cause of the casualty, whether the action of an individual in the Coast Guard contributed to the cause of the casualty, whether there is evidence that an act subjecting the offender to civil or criminal penalty has been committed, and whether there is a need for new laws or to amend or repeal existing laws or regulations in order to prevent a recurrence of the casualty.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

CONSTRUCTION

Pub. L. 98–89, §2(h), Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 599, provided that: "Chapter 63 of title 46 (as enacted by section 1 of this Act) does not supersede section 304(a)(1)(E) of the Independent Safety Board Act of 1974 (49 App. U.S.C. 1903(a)(1)(E)) [see 49 U.S.C. 1131(a)(1)(E), (b)]."

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

§6302. Public investigations

Each investigation conducted under this chapter and regulations prescribed under this chapter shall be open to the public, except when evidence affecting the national security is to be received.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 537.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
6302	.....

Section 6302 provides that each investigation conducted under this chapter shall be open to the public, except when evidence affecting the national security of the United States is to be received.

§6303. Rights of parties in interest

In an investigation conducted under this chapter, the following shall be allowed to be represented by counsel, to cross-examine witnesses, and to call witnesses:

(1) an owner,
(2) any holder of a license or certificate of registry,
(3) any holder of a merchant mariner's document,
(4) any other person whose conduct is under investigation, and
(5) any other party in interest.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 537.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
6303	46:239(d)

Section 6303 provides for the rights of parties in interest to an investigation by allowing them to be represented by counsel, to cross examine witnesses, and to call witnesses. This section merely states the rights of a party in interest but does not necessarily determine who is to be considered a party in interest. Clause (4) states that these rights are to be afforded to "any *other* person whose conduct is under investigation" (emphasis added). This implies that clauses (1) through (3) apply to individuals whose conduct is under investigation. If any individual does not qualify for these rights under clauses (1) through (4), that individual can still be entitled to these rights under clause (5), if designated as a party in interest. Since parties in interest are not clearly set out by statute, the Secretary has the authority to do this by regulation under section 6301. Thus the rights of these parties as presently provided for in existing law have been retained.

§6304. Subpoena authority

(a) In an investigation under this chapter, the attendance and testimony of witnesses, including parties in interest, and the production of any evidence may be compelled by subpoena. The subpoena authority granted by this section is coextensive with that of a district court of the United States, in civil matters, for the district in which the investigation is conducted.

(b) When a person fails to obey a subpoena issued under this section, the district court of the United States for the district in which the investigation is conducted or in which the person failing to obey is found, shall on proper application issue an order directing that person to comply with the subpoena. The court may punish as contempt any disobedience of its order.

(c) A witness complying with a subpoena issued under this section may be paid for actual travel and attendance at the rate provided for witnesses in the district courts of the United States.

(d) An official designated to conduct an investigation under this part may issue subpoenas as provided in this section and administer oaths to witnesses.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 538; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVIII, §11807(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4165.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
6304	46:239(e) 46:239(f)

Section 6304 provides an officer investigating a marine casualty with the necessary subpena authority to require the attendance and testimony of witnesses and the production of evidence. It also authorizes a district court of the United States to direct compliance with a subpena.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263 substituted "subpoena" for "subpena" wherever appearing in text, "subpoenas" for "subpenas" in subsec. (d), and, to reflect the probable intent of Congress, "Subpoena" for "Subpena" in section catchline.

§6305. Reports of investigations

(a) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations about the form and manner of reports of investigations conducted under this part.

(b) Reports of investigations conducted under this part shall be made available to the public. This subsection does not require the release of information described by section 552(b) of title 5 or protected from disclosure by another law of the United States.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 538; Pub. L. 105–383, title III, §305, Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3420.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
6305	46:239(g) 46:239(k)

Section 6305 requires the Secretary to prescribe regulations about the form and manner of reports of investigations of marine casualties. It also provides that the reports shall be available to the public, except for any information they contain related to national security.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1998—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 105–383 substituted ". This subsection does not require the release of information described by section 552(b) of title 5 or protected from disclosure by another law of the United States." for ", except to the extent that they contain information related to the national security."

§6306. Penalty

A person attempting to coerce a witness, or to induce a witness, to testify falsely in connection with a marine casualty, or to induce a witness to leave the jurisdiction of the United States, shall be

fined $5,000, imprisoned for one year, or both.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 538.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
6306	46:239(i)

Section 6306 provides for a $5,000 criminal penalty for anyone attempting to coerce or to induce a witness to a marine casualty investigation to testify falsely or to leave the jurisdiction of the United States.

§6307. Notifications to Congress

(a) The Secretary shall notify the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives of any hearing, before the hearing occurs, investigating a major marine casualty involving a death under section 6301 of this title.

(b) The Secretary shall submit to a committee referred to in subsection (a) of this section information on a major marine casualty that is requested by that committee or the chairman of the committee if the submission of that information is not prohibited by a law of the United States.

(c) The Secretary shall submit annually to Congress a summary of the marine casualties reported during the prior fiscal year, together with a brief statement of action taken concerning those casualties.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 538; Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §408(c)(1), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2117.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
6307	46:239(j) 33:366

Subsection (a) requires the Secretary to notify the Merchant Marine and Fisheries Committee and the Senate Commerce Committee in advance of any hearing concerning a major marine accident (as defined by regulation) where there has been a loss of life.

Subsection (b) requires the Coast Guard to supply the Merchant Marine and Fisheries Committee and the Senate Commerce Committee with any requested marine casualty information, if its release is not specifically prohibited by law.

Subsection (c) requires the Secretary to submit an annual report to Congress summarizing the marine casualties reported during the prior fiscal year, with a brief statement of action taken concerning those casualties.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 107–295 substituted "Transportation and Infrastructure" for "Merchant Marine and Fisheries".

§6308. Information barred in legal proceedings

(a) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, no part of a report of a marine casualty investigation conducted under section 6301 of this title, including findings of fact, opinions,

recommendations, deliberations, or conclusions, shall be admissible as evidence or subject to discovery in any civil or administrative proceedings, other than an administrative proceeding conducted by the United States.

(b) Any member or employee of the Coast Guard investigating a marine casualty pursuant to section 6301 of this title shall not be subject to deposition or other discovery, or otherwise testify in such proceedings relevant to a marine casualty investigation, without the permission of the Secretary. The Secretary shall not withhold permission for such employee or member to testify, either orally or upon written questions, on solely factual matters at a time and place and in a manner acceptable to the Secretary if the information is not available elsewhere or is not obtainable by other means.

(c) Nothing in this section prohibits the United States from calling the employee or member as an expert witness to testify on its behalf. Further, nothing in this section prohibits the employee or member from being called as a fact witness in any case in which the United States is a party. If the employee or member is called as an expert or fact witness, the applicable Federal Rules of Civil Procedure govern discovery. If the employee or member is called as a witness, the report of a marine casualty investigation conducted under section 6301 of this title shall not be admissible, as provided in subsections (a) and (b), and shall not be considered the report of an expert under the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(d) The information referred to in subsections (a), (b), and (c) of this section shall not be considered an admission of liability by the United States or by any person referred to in those conclusions and statements.

(e) For purposes of this section, an administrative proceeding conducted by the United States includes proceedings under section 7701 and claims adjudicated under section 1013 of the Oil Pollution Act of 1990 (33 U.S.C. 2713).

(Added Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §313(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3921; amended Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §902(e)(2), formerly §902(e)(2)–(4), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 567, renumbered §902(e)(2) and amended Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §903(a)(5)(B)–(7), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3010; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIV, §7402, Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1784.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, referred to in subsec. (c), are set out in the Appendix to Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 119–60, §7402(1), substituted "proceeding conducted" for "proceeding initiated".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 119–60, §7402(2), added subsec. (e).

2010—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 111–281 made technical amendment to directory language of Pub. L. 109–241, §902(e). See 2006 Amendment notes below.

2006—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–241, §902(e)(2)(B), added subsec. (a) and struck out former subsec. (a) which read as follows: "Notwithstanding any other provision of law, no part of a report of a marine casualty investigation conducted under section 6301 of this title, including findings of fact, opinions, recommendations, deliberations, or conclusions, shall be admissible as evidence or subject to discovery in any civil or administrative proceedings, other than an administrative proceeding initiated by the United States. Any employee of the Department of Transportation, and any member of the Coast Guard, investigating a marine casualty pursuant to section 6301 of this title, shall not be subject to deposition or other discovery, or otherwise testify in such proceedings relevant to a marine casualty investigation, without the permission of the Secretary of Transportation. The Secretary shall not withhold permission for such employee or member to testify, either orally or upon written questions, on solely factual matters at a time and place and in a manner acceptable to the Secretary if the information is not available elsewhere or is not obtainable by other means."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 109–241, §902(e)(2)(B), added subsec. (b). Former subsec. (b) redesignated (c).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 109–241, §902(e)(2)(A), (C), formerly §902(e)(2)(A), (3), renumbered §902(e)(2)(A), (C) and amended Pub. L. 111–281, §903(a)(5)(B), (C), (6), redesignated subsec. (b) as (c) and substituted "subsections (a) and (b)" for "subsection (a)". Former subsec. (c) redesignated (d).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 109–241, §902(e)(2)(A), (D), formerly §902(e)(2)(A), (4), renumbered §902(e)(2)(A), (D) and amended Pub. L. 111–281, §903(a)(5)–(7), redesignated subsec. (c) as (d) and substituted "subsections (a), (b), and (c)" for "subsections (a) and (b)".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §903(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3010, provided that the amendment by section 903(a)(5)(B)–(7), is effective with enactment of Pub. L. 109–241.

§6309. Voyage data recorder access

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Coast Guard shall have full, concurrent, and timely access to and ability to use voyage data recorder data and audio held by any Federal agency in all marine casualty investigations, regardless of which agency is the investigative lead.

(Added Pub. L. 115–265, title II, §207(a), Oct. 11, 2018, 132 Stat. 3747.)

PART E—MERCHANT SEAMEN LICENSES, CERTIFICATES, AND DOCUMENTS

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Part E establishes the authority for the Coast Guard to issue, suspend, and revoke licenses, certificates of registry, and merchant mariner's documents for individuals who are to be engaged on vessels of the United States.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1985—Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(9)(B), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 67, substituted "Merchant Seamen Licenses, Certificates, and" for "Licenses, Certificates, and Merchant Mariners' " in part E heading.

CHAPTER 71—LICENSES AND CERTIFICATES OF REGISTRY

Sec.

7101. Issuing and classifying licenses and certificates of registry.
7102. Citizenship or noncitizen nationality.
7103. Licenses for radio officers.
7104. Certificates for medical doctors and nurses.
7105. Oaths.
7106. Duration of licenses.
7107. Duration of certificates of registry.
7108. Termination of licenses and certificates of registry.
7109. Review of criminal records.
7110. Exhibiting licenses.
7111. Oral examinations for licenses.
7112. Licenses of masters or mates as pilots.
7113. Exemption from draft.
7114. Fees.
[7115. Repealed.]
7116. Examinations for merchant mariner credentials.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(b)(3)(A), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1753, substituted "Citizenship or noncitizen nationality" for "Citizenship" in item 7102.

2018—Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(c)(2), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4289, struck out item 7115 "Merchant Mariner Medical Advisory Committee".

2016—Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §315(b)(2), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 62, added item 7116.

2010—Pub. L. 111–281, title II, §210(c), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2914, added item 7115.

1990—Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4102(e)(2), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 510, substituted "Review of criminal records" for "Renewal of licenses" in item 7109.

1984—Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(8)(A), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 447, substituted "Oral examinations for licenses" for "Licenses for fishing vessels not subject to inspection" in item 7111.

§7101. Issuing and classifying licenses and certificates of registry

(a) Licenses and certificates of registry are established for individuals who are required to hold licenses or certificates under this subtitle.

(b) Under regulations prescribed by the Secretary, the Secretary—

(1) issues the licenses and certificates of registry; and

(2) may classify the licenses and certificates of registry as provided in subsections (c) and (f) of this section, based on—

(A) the tonnage, means of propulsion, and horsepower of machine-propelled vessels;

(B) the waters on which vessels are to be operated; or

(C) other reasonable standards.

(c) The Secretary may issue licenses in the following classes to applicants found qualified as to age, character, habits of life, experience, professional qualifications, and physical fitness:

(1) masters, mates, and engineers.

(2) pilots.

(3) operators.

(4) radio officers.

(d) In classifying individuals under subsection (c)(1) of this section, the Secretary shall establish, when possible, suitable career patterns and service and other qualifying requirements appropriate to the particular service or industry in which the individuals are engaged.

(e) An individual may be issued a license under subsection (c)(2) of this section only if the applicant—

(1) is at least 21 years of age;

(2) is of sound health and has no physical limitations that would hinder or prevent the performance of a pilot's duties;

(3) has a thorough physical examination each year while holding the license, except that this requirement does not apply to an individual who will serve as a pilot only on a vessel of less than 1,600 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title;

(4) demonstrates, to the satisfaction of the Secretary, that the applicant has the requisite general knowledge and skill to hold the license;

(5) demonstrates proficiency in the use of electronic aids to navigation;

(6) maintains adequate knowledge of the waters to be navigated and knowledge of regulations for the prevention of collisions in those waters;

(7) has sufficient experience, as decided by the Secretary, to evidence ability to handle any vessel of the type and size which the applicant may be authorized to pilot; and

(8) meets any other requirement the Secretary considers reasonable and necessary.

(f) The Secretary may issue certificates of registry in the following classes to applicants found

qualified as to character, knowledge, skill, and experience:

(1) pursers.

(2) medical doctors.

(3) professional nurses.

(g) The Secretary may not issue a license or certificate of registry under this section unless an individual applying for the license or certificate makes available to the Secretary, under section 206(b)(7) of the National Driver Register Act of 1982 (23 U.S.C. 401 note), any information contained in the National Driver Register related to an offense described in section 205(a)(3)(A) or (B) of that Act committed by the individual.

(h) The Secretary may review the criminal record of an individual who applies for a license or certificate of registry under this section.

(i) The Secretary shall require the testing of an individual who applies for issuance or renewal of a license or certificate of registry under this chapter for use of a dangerous drug in violation of law or Federal regulation.

(j) The Secretary may issue a license under this section in a class under subsection (c) to an applicant that—

(1) has at least 3 months of qualifying service on vessels of the uniformed services (as that term is defined in section 101(a) of title 10) of appropriate tonnage or horsepower within the 7-year period immediately preceding the date of application; and

(2) satisfies all other requirements for such a license.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 539; Pub. L. 98–557, §29(a), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2873; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4101(a), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 509; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §720, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3938; Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §305(a), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3043.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7101	46:214
	46:224
	46:226
	46:228
	46:229
	46:229a
	46:229b
	46:242
	46:243
	46:244
	46:247

Section 7101(a) provides the authority for the establishment of licenses and certificates of registry for officers and individuals operating vessels who are required to hold them under Subtitle II.

Subsection (b) authorizes the Secretary to issue licenses and certificates of registry based on tonnage, means of propulsion, horsepower, vessel operating area, and other reasonable standards.

Subsection (c) authorizes the Secretary to issue licenses to masters, mates, engineers, pilots, operators, and radio officers when found qualified as to age, character, habits of life, experience, professional qualifications, and physical fitness. These qualifying standards must by necessity be reasonable and related to the rigors of the profession.

Subsection (d) requires the Secretary to establish, when possible, suitable career patterns and service for and other qualifying requirements appropriate to the particular service or industry for the individuals so engaged.

Subsection (e) sets forth the requirements that pilots must meet before being issued a license.

Subsection (f) authorizes the Secretary to issue certificates of registry to qualified individuals as pursers,

medical doctors, and professional nurses.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 205(a)(3)(A) or (B) and 206(b)(7) of the National Driver Register Act of 1982, referred to in subsec. (g), are sections 205(a)(3)(A), (B) and 206(b)(7) of Pub. L. 97–364, which are set out as a note under section 401 of Title 23, Highways.

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 113–281 added subsec. (j).

1996—Subsec. (e)(3). Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "1,600 gross tons".

1990—Subsecs. (g) to (i). Pub. L. 101–380 added subsecs. (g) to (i).

1984—Subsec. (e)(3). Pub. L. 98–557 inserted exemption for pilots on a vessel of less than 1,600 gross tons.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

PLAN FOR LICENSING OPERATORS OF FISHING INDUSTRY VESSELS

Pub. L. 100–424, §3, Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1590, required the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating, within two years after Sept. 9, 1988, to prepare and submit to the Congress a plan for the licensing of operators of documented fishing, fish processing, and fish tender vessels.

§7102. Citizenship or noncitizen nationality

Licenses and certificates of registry for individuals on documented vessels may be issued only to citizens or noncitizen nationals (as such term is described in section 308 of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1408)) of the United States.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 540; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(b)(1), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1751.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7102	46:242 46:1132(a)

Section 7102 requires that any individual issued a license or certificate of registry allowing the individual to be engaged on a documented vessel must be a U.S. citizen.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60 inserted "or noncitizen nationality" after "Citizenship" in section catchline and "or noncitizen nationals (as such term is described in section 308 of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1408))" after "citizens" in text.

§7103. Licenses for radio officers

(a) A license as radio officer may be issued only to an applicant who has a first-class or second-class radiotelegraph operator license issued by the Federal Communications Commission.

(b) Except as provided in section 7318 of this title, this part does not affect the status of radiotelegraph operators serving on board vessels operating only on the Great Lakes.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 540.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7103	46:229a 46:229b 46:229g

Section 7103 requires an applicant for a license as a radio officer to have, as a prerequisite, a first-class or second-class radiotelegraph operator license issued by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC). It also excepts radiotelegraph operators that are engaged on Great Lakes vessels from the requirement of having to obtain a radio officer's license.

§7104. Certificates for medical doctors and nurses

A certificate of registry as a medical doctor or professional nurse may be issued only to an applicant who has a license as a medical doctor or registered nurse, respectively, issued by a State.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 540.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7104	46:243

Section 7104 requires an applicant for a certificate of registry as a medical doctor or professional nurse to have, as a prerequisite, a license as a medical doctor or registered nurse issued by a State.

§7105. Oaths

An applicant for a license or certificate of registry shall take, before the issuance of the license or certificate, an oath, without concealment or reservation, that the applicant will perform faithfully and honestly, according to the best skill and judgment of the applicant, all the duties required by law.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 540; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §613, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2970.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7105	46:229e 46:231 46:244

Section 7105 requires all individuals who wish to be issued a license or certificate of registry to take an oath

before a government official that they will perform all the duties required by law according to their best skill and judgment.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Pub. L. 111–281 struck out "before a designated official" after "an oath".

§7106. Duration of licenses

(a) IN GENERAL.—A license issued under this part is valid for a 5-year period and may be renewed for additional 5-year periods; except that the validity of a license issued to a radio officer is conditioned on the continuous possession by the holder of a first-class or second-class radiotelegraph operator license issued by the Federal Communications Commission.

(b) ADVANCE RENEWALS.—A renewed license issued under this part may be issued up to 8 months in advance but is not effective until the date that the previously issued license expires or until the completion of any active suspension or revocation of that previously issued license, whichever is later.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 540; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4102(a), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 509; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §614(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2970; Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §510(1), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4274.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7106	46:214(c) 46:225 46:226 46:228 46:229 46:229c

Section 7106 sets a 5 year time limit on the validity of a license. It also requires a licensed radio officer to be in continuous possession of an FCC license.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 115–282 substituted "license, whichever" for "merchant mariner's document, whichever".

2010—Pub. L. 111–281 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "A license issued under this part is valid for 5 years and may be renewed for additional 5-year periods. However, the validity of a license issued to a radio officer is conditioned on the continuous possession by the holder of a first-class or second-class radiotelegraph operator license issued by the Federal Communications Commission."

1990—Pub. L. 101–380 inserted "and may be renewed for additional 5-year periods" after "for 5 years".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

TERMINATION OF EXISTING LICENSES, CERTIFICATES, AND DOCUMENTS; APPLICABILITY OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4102(d), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 510, provided that: "A license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document issued before the date of the enactment of this section [Aug. 18, 1990] terminates on the day it would have expired if—

"(1) subsections (a), (b), and (c) [amending this section and sections 7107 and 7302 of this title] were in effect on the date it was issued; and

"(2) it was renewed at the end of each 5-year period under section 7106, 7107, or 7302 of title 46, United States Code."

§7107. Duration of certificates of registry

(a) IN GENERAL.—A certificate of registry issued under this part is valid for a 5-year period and may be renewed for additional 5-year periods; except that the validity of a certificate issued to a medical doctor or professional nurse is conditioned on the continuous possession by the holder of a license as a medical doctor or registered nurse, respectively, issued by a State.

(b) ADVANCE RENEWALS.—A renewed certificate of registry issued under this part may be issued up to 8 months in advance but is not effective until the date that the previously issued certificate of registry expires or until the completion of any active suspension or revocation of that previously issued certificate of registry, whichever is later.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 540; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4102(b), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 509; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §614(c), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2971; Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §510(2), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4274.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7107	46:243

Section 7107 specifies that there is no time limit on the validity of a certificate of registry issued to a medical doctor or a professional nurse but is conditioned on the continuous possession of the appropriate license issued by a State.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 115–282 substituted "certificate of registry, whichever" for "merchant mariner's document, whichever".

2010—Pub. L. 111–281 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "A certificate of registry issued under this part is valid for 5 years and may be renewed for additional 5-year periods. However, the validity of a certificate issued to a medical doctor or professional nurse is conditioned on the continuous possession by the holder of a license as a medical doctor or registered nurse, respectively, issued by a State."

1990—Pub. L. 101–380 substituted "is valid for 5 years and may be renewed for additional 5-year periods" for "is not limited in duration".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

TERMINATION OF EXISTING LICENSES, CERTIFICATES, AND DOCUMENTS; APPLICABILITY OF 1990 AMENDMENT

For provisions that a certificate of registry issued before Aug. 18, 1990, terminates on the day it would have expired if the amendment to this section by Pub. L. 101–380 were in effect on date it was issued and was renewed at the end of each 5-year period under this section, see section 4102(d) of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as a note under section 7106 of this title.

§7108. Termination of licenses and certificates of registry

When the holder of a license or certificate of registry, the duration of which is conditioned under section 7106 or 7107 of this title, fails to hold the license required as a condition, the license or certificate of registry issued under this part is terminated.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 540.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7108	46:229c 46:243

Section 7108 specifies if any individual issued a license or certificate of registry fails to have the required FCC or appropriate State medical license, the license or certificate is automatically terminated. The suspension and revocation procedures provided in chapter 77 are not applicable in these cases.

§7109. Review of criminal records

The Secretary may review the criminal record of each holder of a license or certificate of registry issued under this part who applies for renewal of that license or certificate of registry.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 540; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4102(e)(1), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 510.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7109	46:225 46:233

Section 7109 authorizes the Secretary to renew licenses and certificates of registry for additional 5 year periods.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1990—Pub. L. 101–380 substituted "Review of criminal records" for "Renewal of licenses" in section catchline and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "A license issued under this part may be renewed for additional 5-year periods."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of

Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

§7110. Exhibiting licenses

Each holder of a license issued under this part shall display, within 48 hours after employment on a vessel for which that license is required, the license in a conspicuous place on the vessel.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 541.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7109	46:229f 46:232

Section 7110 requires licensed individuals to display the license in a conspicuous place on the vessel within 48 hours after they are employed.

§7111. Oral examinations for licenses

An individual may take an oral examination for a license to serve on a fishing, fish processing, or fish tender vessel not required to be inspected under part B of this subtitle.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 541; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(8)(B), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 447; Pub. L. 99–307, §1(10), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 445.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7109	46:224a(2)

Section 7111 provides for oral tests for licenses for individuals on fishing vessels that are not required to be inspected under part B.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1986—Pub. L. 99–307 substituted "part" for "Part".

1984—Pub. L. 98–364 substituted in section catchline "Oral examinations for licenses" for "Licenses for fishing vessels not subject to inspection" and in text "An individual may take an oral examination for a license to serve on a fishing, fish processing, or fish tender vessel not required to be inspected under Part B of this subtitle" for "Examinations for licensing individuals on fishing vessels not required to be inspected under part B of this subtitle shall be oral".

§7112. Licenses of masters or mates as pilots

A master or mate licensed under this part who also qualifies as a pilot is not required to hold 2 licenses. Instead, the qualification of the master or mate as pilot shall be endorsed on the master's or mate's license.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 541.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7112	46:230

Section 7112 provides for the endorsement of a master's or mate's license as a pilot if they meet those specifications. These individuals do not have to hold two separate licenses.

§7113. Exemption from draft

A licensed master, mate, pilot, or engineer of a vessel inspected under part B of this subtitle, propelled by machinery or carrying hazardous liquid cargoes in bulk, is not liable to draft in time of war, except for performing duties authorized by the license. When performing those duties in the service of the United States Government, the master, mate, pilot, or engineer is entitled to the highest rate of wages paid in the merchant marine of the United States for similar services. If killed or wounded when performing those duties, the master, mate, pilot, or engineer, or the heirs or legal representatives of the master, mate, pilot, or engineer, are entitled to all the privileges under the pension laws of the United States provided to members of the Armed Forces.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 541.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7113	46:225

Section 7113 exempts licensed masters, mates, pilots, and engineers of inspected vessels that are propelled by machinery or carrying hazardous liquid cargo from the Selective Service draft in time of war.

This section also provides that, while serving in that capacity during war, they shall be entitled to the highest rate of pay paid in the U.S. merchant marine for similar services.

If a master, mate, pilot, or engineer is killed or wounded when performing those duties during a war, these individuals, their heirs or legal representatives, are entitled to all the privileges provided to members of the Armed Forces under the pension laws of the United States.

§7114. Fees

The Secretary may prescribe by regulation reasonable fees for the inspection of and the issuance of a certificate, license, or permit related to small passenger vessels and sailing school vessels.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 541.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7114	46:390a(b)

Section 7114 allows the Secretary to prescribe reasonable fees for the issuance of a certificate of inspection, license, or registry, or permits related to small passenger vessels and sailing school vessels.

[§7115. Repealed. Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(c)(2), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4289]

Section, added Pub. L. 111–281, title II, §210(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2913, established the Merchant Mariner Medical Advisory Committee. See section 15104 of this title.

§7116. Examinations for merchant mariner credentials

(a) REQUIREMENT FOR SAMPLE EXAMS.—The Secretary shall develop a sample merchant mariner credential examination and outline of merchant mariner examination topics on an annual basis.

(b) PUBLIC AVAILABILITY.—Each sample examination and outline of topics developed under subsection (a) shall be readily available to the public.

(Added Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §315(b)(1), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 62; amended Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(c), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1753.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 119–60 struck out subsec. (c). Text read as follows: "In this section, the term 'merchant mariner credential' has the meaning that term has in section 7510."

CHAPTER 73—MERCHANT MARINERS' DOCUMENTS

Sec.

7301. General.
7302. Issuing merchant mariners' documents and continuous discharge books.
7303. Possession and description of merchant mariners' documents.
7304. Citizenship or noncitizen nationality notation on merchant mariners' documents.
7305. Oaths for holders of merchant mariners' documents.
7306. General requirements and classifications for members of deck departments.
7307. Able seamen—unlimited.
7308. Able seamen—limited.
7309. Able seamen—special.
7310. Able seamen—offshore supply vessels.
7311. Able seamen—sail.
7311a. Able seamen—fishing industry.
7312. Scale of employment.
7313. General requirements for members of engine departments.
[7314. Repealed.]
7315. Training.
7316. Lifeboatmen.
7317. Tankermen.
7318. Radiotelegraph operators on Great Lakes.
7319. Records of merchant mariners' documents.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 73 establishes the general requirements for the issuance of a merchant mariners' document to those individuals who are required to have a document prior to engagement or employment on certain vessels of the United States.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(b)(3)(B), (f), (j)(1), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1753, 1755, 1758, subtituted "Citizenship or noncitizen nationality notation on merchant mariners' documents" for "Citizenship notation on merchant mariners' documents" in item 7304 and "General requirements and classifications for members of deck departments" for "General requirements and classifications for able

seamen" in item 7306, and struck out item 7314 "Service requirements for qualified members of engine departments".

1984—Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(9)(A), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 448, added item 7311a.

§7301. General

(a) In this chapter—

(1) "service on deck" means service in the deck department in work related to the work usually performed on board vessels by able seamen and may include service on fishing, fish processing, fish tender vessels and on public vessels of the United States;

(2) 360 days is equal to one year's service; and

(3) a day is equal to 8 hours of labor or duty.

(b) The Secretary may prescribe regulations to carry out this chapter.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 541; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(9)(B), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 448.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7301	46:672(c)

Section 7301 defines "service on deck", "one year's service" and "day" with respect to the qualifying time for the issuance of various types of endorsements as able seamen. This section also provides the Secretary with the authority to prescribe regulations to carry out this chapter.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1984—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 98–364 substituted "fishing, fish processing, fish tender vessels" for "decked fishing vessels".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

MERCHANT MARINE POST-SERVICE CAREER OPPORTUNITIES

Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §305(d), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3044, provided that: "Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 18, 2014], the Commandant of the Coast Guard shall take steps to promote better awareness, on an ongoing basis, among Coast Guard personnel regarding post-service use of Coast Guard training, education, and practical experience in satisfaction of requirements for merchant mariner credentials under section 11.213 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations."

§7302. Issuing merchant mariners' documents and continuous discharge books

(a) The Secretary shall issue a merchant mariner's document to an individual required to have that document under part F of this subtitle if the individual satisfies the requirements of this part. The document serves as a certificate of identification and as a certificate of service, specifying each rating in which the holder is qualified to serve on board vessels on which that document is required under part F.

(b) The Secretary also may issue a continuous discharge book to an individual issued a merchant mariner's document if the individual requests.

(c) The Secretary may not issue a merchant mariner's document under this chapter unless the individual applying for the document makes available to the Secretary, under section 30305(b)(5) of

title 49, any information contained in the National Driver Register related to an offense described in section 30304(a)(3)(A) or (B) of title 49 committed by the individual.

(d) The Secretary may review the criminal record of an individual who applies for a merchant mariner's document under this section.

(e) The Secretary shall require the testing of an individual applying for issuance or renewal of a merchant mariner's document under this chapter for the use of a dangerous drug in violation of law or Federal regulation.

(f) PERIODS OF VALIDITY AND RENEWAL OF MERCHANT MARINERS' DOCUMENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsection (g), a merchant mariner's document issued under this chapter is valid for a 5-year period and may be renewed for additional 5-year periods.

(2) ADVANCE RENEWALS.—A renewed merchant mariner's document may be issued under this chapter up to 8 months in advance but is not effective until the date that the previously issued merchant mariner's document expires or until the completion of any active suspension or revocation of that previously issued merchant mariner's document, whichever is later.

(g)(1) The Secretary may, pending receipt and review of information required under subsections (c) and (d), immediately issue an interim merchant mariner's document valid for a period not to exceed 120 days, to—

(A) an individual to be employed as gaming personnel, entertainment personnel, wait staff, or other service personnel on board a passenger vessel not engaged in foreign service, with no duties, including emergency duties, related to the navigation of the vessel or the safety of the vessel, its crew, cargo or passengers; or

(B) an individual seeking renewal of, or qualifying for a supplemental endorsement to, a valid merchant mariner's document issued under this section.

(2) No more than one interim document may be issued to an individual under paragraph (1)(A) of this subsection.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 542; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §§4101(b), 4102(c), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 509; Pub. L. 107–295, title III, §324(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2104; Pub. L. 108–293, title VI, §609(1), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1058; Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(h)(1), (2), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 564; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §614(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2970.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7302	46:239a(c) 46:643(a) 46:643(c) 46:672(i)

Section 7302(a) requires the Secretary to issue a merchant mariner's document to qualified individuals required to have that document as a prerequisite to employment on certain vessels of the United States. The purpose of the document is to serve as positive identification and to specify each rating in which the individual is qualified to serve on vessels.

Subsection (b) allows the Secretary to issue a continuous discharge book to an individual who requests a book.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 111–281 amended subsec. (f) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (f) read as

follows: "Except as provided in subsection (g), a merchant mariner's document issued under this chapter is valid for 5 years and may be renewed for additional 5-year periods."

2006—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 109–241, §901(h)(1), amended directory language of Pub. L. 108–293, §609(1). See 2004 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 109–241, §901(h)(2), inserted "section" before "30305(b)(5)" and before "30304(a)(3)(A)".

2004—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 108–293, §609(1), as amended by Pub. L. 109–241, §901(h)(1), substituted "30305(b)(5) of title 49" for "section 206(b)(7) of the National Driver Register Act of 1982 (23 U.S.C. 401 note)" and "30304(a)(3)(A) or (B) of title 49" for "section 205(a)(3)(A) or (B) of that Act".

2002—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 107–295, §324(a)(1), substituted "Except as provided in subsection (g), a" for "A".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 107–295, §324(a)(2), added subsec. (g).

1990—Subsecs. (c) to (e). Pub. L. 101–380, §4101(b), added subsecs. (c) to (e).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 101–380, §4102(c), added subsec. (f).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2006 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(h)(1), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 564, provided that the amendment made by section 901(h)(1) is effective Aug. 9, 2004.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

MILITARY TO MARINER

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11514, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4139, provided that:

"(a) SHORT TITLE.—This section may be cited as the 'Military to Mariners Act of 2022'.

"(b) MODIFICATION OF SEA SERVICE REQUIREMENTS FOR MERCHANT MARINER CREDENTIALS FOR VETERANS AND MEMBERS OF THE UNIFORMED SERVICES.—

"(1) REVIEW AND REGULATIONS.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022], the Secretary shall—

"(A) review and examine—

"(i) the timeframes and impediments for veterans and members of the uniformed services to receive a merchant mariner credential;

"(ii) the classifications of sea service acquired through training and service as a member of the Uniformed Services and level of equivalence such service has with respect to sea service on merchant vessels; and

"(iii) the amount of sea service, including percent of the total time onboard for purposes of equivalent underway service, that will be accepted as required experience for all endorsements for applicants for a merchant mariner credential who are veterans or members of the Uniformed Services; and

"(B) issue new regulations to—

"(i) streamline, ensure the accuracy of, and expedite the transfer, review and acceptance of information pertaining to training and sea time for applicants for a merchant mariner credential who are veterans or members of the Uniformed Services;

"(ii) increase the acceptable percentages of time equivalent to sea service for such applicants pursuant to findings of the review and examination conducted under subparagraph (A); and

"(iii) reduce burdens and create a means of alternative compliance to demonstrate instructor competency for Standards of Training, Certification and Watchkeeping for Seafarers courses.

"(2) CONSULTATION.—In carrying out paragraph (2) [probably should be "paragraph (1)"], the Secretary shall consult with the National Merchant Marine Personnel Advisory Committee and shall take into account the present and future needs of the United States Merchant Marine labor workforce.

"(3) REPORT.—Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022], the United States Committee on the Marine Transportation System shall submit to the Committees on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and Armed Services of the Senate and the Committees on Transportation and Infrastructure and Armed Services of the House of Representatives, a report that contains an update on the activities carried out to implement—

"(A) the July 2020 report by the Committee on the Marine Transportation System to the White House Office of Trade and Manufacturing Policy on the implementation of Executive Order 13860 (84 Fed. Reg. 8407; relating to supporting the transition of active duty servicemembers and military veterans into the Merchant Marine); and

"(B) section 3511 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2020 (46 U.S.C. 3702 [7302] note).

"(c) ASSESSMENT OF SKILLBRIDGE FOR EMPLOYMENT AS A MERCHANT MARINER.—The Secretary, in collaboration with the Secretary of Defense, shall assess the use of the SkillBridge program of the Department of Defense as a means for transitioning active duty sea service personnel to employment as merchant mariners."

[For definitions of terms used in section 11514 of Pub. L. 117–263, set out above, see section 11515 of Pub. L. 117–263, set out below.]

Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3511, Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1978, provided that:

"(a) CREDENTIALING SUPPORT.—Not later than one year after the date of enactment of this title [Dec. 20, 2019], the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of the Department in which the Coast Guard is operating when it is not operating as a service in the Department of the Navy, the Secretary of Commerce, and the Secretary of Health and Human Services, with respect to the applicable services in their respective departments, and in coordination with one another and with the United States Committee on the Marine Transportation System, and in consultation with the Merchant Marine Personnel Advisory Committee, shall, consistent with applicable law, identify all training and experience within the applicable service that may qualify for merchant mariner credentialing and submit a list of all identified training and experience to the United States Coast Guard National Maritime Center for a determination of whether such training and experience counts for credentialing purposes.

"(b) REVIEW OF APPLICABLE SERVICE.—The United States Coast Guard Commandant shall make a determination of whether training and experience counts for credentialing purposes, as described in subsection (a), not later than 6 months after the date on which the United States Coast Guard National Maritime Center receives a submission under subsection (a) identifying a training or experience and requesting such a determination.

"(c) FEES AND SERVICES.—The Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of the Department in which the Coast Guard is operating when it is not operating as a service in the Department of the Navy, and the Secretary of Commerce, with respect to the applicable services in their respective departments, shall—

"(1) take all necessary and appropriate actions to provide for the waiver of fees through the National Maritime Center license evaluation, issuance, and examination for members of the uniformed services on active duty, if a waiver is authorized and appropriate, and, if a waiver is not granted, take all necessary and appropriate actions to provide for the payment of fees for members of the uniformed services on active duty by the applicable service to the fullest extent permitted by law;

"(2) direct the applicable services to take all necessary and appropriate actions to provide for Transportation Worker Identification Credential cards for members of the uniformed services on active duty pursuing or possessing a mariner credential, such as implementation of an equal exchange process for members of the uniformed services on active duty at no or minimal cost;

"(3) ensure that members of the applicable services who are to be discharged or released from active duty and who request certification or verification of sea service be provided such certification or verification no later than one month after discharge or release;

"(4) ensure the applicable services have developed, or continue to operate, as appropriate, the online resource known as Credentialing Opportunities On-Line to support separating members of the uniformed services who are seeking information and assistance on merchant mariner credentialing; and

"(5) not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this section [Dec. 20, 2019], take all necessary and appropriate actions to review and implement service-related medical certifications to merchant mariner credential requirements.

"(d) ADVANCING MILITARY TO MARINER WITHIN THE EMPLOYER AGENCIES.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of the Department in which the Coast Guard is operating when it is not operating as a service in the Department of the Navy, and the Secretary of Commerce shall have direct hiring authority to employ separated members of the uniformed services with valid merchant mariner licenses or sea service experience in support of United States national maritime needs, including the Army Corps of Engineers, U.S. Customs and Border Protection, and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

"(2) APPOINTMENTS OF RETIRED MEMBERS OF THE ARMED FORCES.—Except in the case of positions in the Senior Executive Service, the requirements of section 3326(b) of title 5, United States

Code, shall not apply with respect to the hiring of a separated member of the uniformed services under paragraph (1).

"(e) SEPARATED MEMBER OF THE UNIFORMED SERVICES.—In this section, the term 'separated member of the uniformed services' means an individual who—

"(1) is retiring or is retired as a member of the uniformed services;

"(2) is voluntarily separating or voluntarily separated from the uniformed services at the end of enlistment or service obligation; or

"(3) is administratively separating or has administratively separated from the uniformed services with an honorable or general discharge characterization."

RADAR REFRESHER TRAINING

Pub. L. 115–282, title VIII, §829, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4314, provided that: "Not later than 60 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 4, 2018], the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall prescribe a final rule eliminating the requirement that a mariner actively using the mariner's credential complete an approved refresher or recertification course to maintain a radar observer endorsement. This rulemaking shall be exempt from chapters 5 and 6 of title 5, United States Code, and Executive Orders 12866 and 13563 [5 U.S.C. 601 notes]."

MERCHANT MARINER CREDENTIAL EXPIRATION HARMONIZATION

Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §304, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 53, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsection (c) and not later than 1 year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Feb. 8, 2016], the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall establish a process to harmonize the expiration dates of merchant mariner credentials, mariner medical certificates, and radar observer endorsements for individuals applying to the Secretary for a new merchant mariner credential or for renewal of an existing merchant mariner credential.

"(b) REQUIREMENTS.—The Secretary shall ensure that the process established under subsection (a)—

"(1) does not require an individual to renew a merchant mariner credential earlier than the date on which the individual's current credential expires; and

"(2) results in harmonization of expiration dates for merchant mariner credentials, mariner medical certificates, and radar observer endorsements for all individuals by not later than 6 years after the date of the enactment of this Act [Feb. 8, 2016].

"(c) EXCEPTION.—The process established under subsection (a) does not apply to individuals—

"(1) holding a merchant mariner credential with—

"(A) an active Standards of Training, Certification, and Watchkeeping endorsement; or

"(B) Federal first-class pilot endorsement; or

"(2) who have been issued a time-restricted medical certificate."

CREDITING OF UNITED STATES ARMED FORCES SERVICE, TRAINING, AND QUALIFICATIONS

Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §305(c), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3044, provided that:

"(1) MAXIMIZING CREDITABILITY.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating, in implementing United States merchant mariner license, certification, and document laws and the International Convention on Standards of Training, Certification and Watchkeeping for Seafarers, 1978, shall maximize the extent to which United States Armed Forces service, training, and qualifications are creditable toward meeting the requirements of such laws and such Convention.

"(2) NOTIFICATION.—Not later than 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 18, 2014], the Secretary shall notify the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate on the steps taken to implement this subsection."

MERCHANT MARINERS' DOCUMENTS PILOT PROGRAM

Pub. L. 108–293, title VI, §611, Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1058, provided that: "The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating may conduct a pilot program to demonstrate methods to improve processes and procedures for issuing merchant mariners' documents."

TERMINATION OF EXISTING LICENSES, CERTIFICATES, AND DOCUMENTS; APPLICABILITY OF 1990 AMENDMENT

For provisions that a merchant mariner's document issued before Aug. 18, 1990, terminates on the day it would have expired if the amendment to this section by section 4102(c) of Pub. L. 101–380 were in effect on

date it was issued and was renewed at the end of each 5-year period under this section, see section 4102(d) of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as a note under section 7106 of this title.

DEFINITIONS

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11515, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4141, provided that:

"In this subtitle [subtitle B (§§11511–11515) of title CXV of Pub. L. 117–263, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and section 7502 of this title]:

"(1) CREDENTIALED MARINER.—The term 'credentialed mariner' means an individual with a merchant mariner credential.

"(2) MERCHANT MARINER CREDENTIAL.—The term 'merchant mariner credential' has the meaning given such term in section 7510(d) of title 46, United States Code.

"(3) UNIFORMED SERVICES.—The term 'uniformed services' has the meaning given the term 'uniformed services' in section 2101 of title 5, United States Code."

§7303. Possession and description of merchant mariners' documents

A merchant mariner's document shall be retained by the individual to whom issued. The document shall contain the signature, notations of nationality, age, and physical description, the photograph, and the home address of the individual. In addition, the document shall specify the rate or ratings in which the individual is qualified to serve.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 542; Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §421, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2125; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8505(b)(3), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4751.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7303	46:643(a)

Section 7303 requires seamen to retain their merchant mariner's documents. It also specifies the information that is to be contained in the document.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "individual" for "seaman" wherever appearing.

2002—Pub. L. 107–295 struck out "the thumbprint," after "photograph,".

§7304. Citizenship or noncitizen nationality notation on merchant mariners' documents

An individual applying for a merchant mariner's document shall provide satisfactory proof that the individual is a citizen or noncitizen national (as such term is described in section 308 of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1408)) of the United States before that notation is made on the document.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 542; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(b)(2)(A), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1751.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7304	46:643(b)

Section 7304 specifies, that before a merchant mariner's document is noted to specify that the individual is a U.S. citizen, the individual must provide satisfactory proof that he is a citizen. This does not impose a requirement of United States citizenship as a condition for issuance of a document.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60 inserted "or noncitizen nationality" after "Citizenship" in section catchline and "or noncitizen national (as such term is described in section 308 of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1408))" after "citizen" in text.

§7305. Oaths for holders of merchant mariners' documents

An applicant for a merchant mariner's document shall take, before issuance of the document, an oath that the applicant will perform faithfully and honestly all the duties required by law, and will carry out the lawful orders of superior officers.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 542.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7305	.....

The requirement for an oath, drawn from a clause which had appeared in 46 U.S.C. 672(g), and administered by the Coast Guard to all applicants, was repealed in a 1980 amendment by section 4 of Public Law 96–378 (94 Stat. 1516). Since no specific comment was made regarding the elimination in 1980 and the agency has continued to administer an oath to all applicants, this provision is being reinstated. The Committee believes the oath will contribute to the discipline and order necessary in the merchant marine.

§7306. General requirements and classifications for members of deck departments

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may issue a merchant mariner credential, to members of the deck department in the following classes:

(1) Able Seaman-Unlimited.
(2) Able Seaman-Limited.
(3) Able Seaman-Special.
(4) Able Seaman-Offshore Supply Vessels.
(5) Able Seaman-Sail.
(6) Able Seaman-Fishing Industry.
(7) Ordinary Seaman.

(b) CLASSIFICATION OF CREDENTIALS.—The Secretary may classify the merchant mariner credential issued under subsection (a) based on—

(1) the tonnage and means of propulsion of vessels;
(2) the waters on which vessels are to be operated; or
(3) other appropriate standards.

(c) QUALIFICATIONS.—To qualify for a credential under this section, an applicant shall provide satisfactory proof that the applicant—

(1) is at least 18 years of age;

(2) has the service required by the applicable section of this part;

(3) is qualified professionally as demonstrated by an applicable examination or educational requirements;

(4) is qualified as to sight, hearing, and physical condition to perform the seafarer's duties; and

(5) has satisfied any additional requirements established by the Secretary, including career patterns and service appropriate to the particular service, industry, or job functions the individual is engaged.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 542; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(9)(C), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 448; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(d)(1), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1753.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7306	46:672(b)

Section 7306(a) establishes the minimum requirements an individual must meet before being issued a merchant mariner's document endorsed for able seamen.

Subsection (b) establishes the classifications of able seamen—unlimited, able seamen—limited, able seamen—special, able seamen—offshore supply vessels, and able seamen—sail.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section related to general requirements and classifications for able seamen.

1984—Subsec. (b)(6). Pub. L. 98–364 added par. (6).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Provisions of this section (related to able seaman—sail) effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

IMPLEMENTATION OF 2025 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(e)(1), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1755, provided that: "The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall implement the requirements under subsection (c) of section 7306 of title 46, United States Code (as amended by this section), without regard to chapters 5 and 6 of title 5, United States Code, and Executive Orders 12866 and 13563 (5 U.S.C. 601 note)."

ACCEPTANCE OF CERTAIN SERVICES TOWARD ENDORSEMENT AS ABLE SEAMAN

Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §602(e)(3), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2992, provided that: "For the purposes of chapter 73 of title 46, United States Code, the Secretary of Transportation shall accept the service used by an individual to qualify for an endorsement as able seaman—fishing industry as qualifying service toward an endorsement as an able seaman—

"(A) under sections 7307 and 7309 of that title; or

"(B) if the service is on board a vessel of at least 100 gross tons, under section 7308 of that title."

§7307. Able seamen—unlimited

The required service for the endorsement of able seaman—unlimited, qualified for unlimited service on a vessel on any waters, is at least 18 months [1] service on deck on board vessels operating at sea or on the Great Lakes.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 543; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(d)(2), Dec.

18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1753.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7307	46:672(b)(1)

Section 7307 requires individuals to have at least 3 years service on deck on vessels operating at sea or on the Great Lakes before their merchant mariner's documents can be endorsed as able seamen—unlimited.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, which directed amendment of this section by substituting "18 months" for "3 years", was executed by making the substitution for "3 years' " to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TEMPORARY REDUCTION OF LENGTHS OF CERTAIN PERIODS OF SERVICE

Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3534(j), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 833, provided that: "For the 3-year period beginning on the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 2023]—

"(1) section 7307 of title 46, United States Code, shall be applied by substituting '18 months' for '3 years';

"(2) section 7308 of such title shall be applied by substituting '12 months' for '18 months'; and

"(3) section 7309 of such title shall be applied by substituting '6 months' for '12 months'."

ACCEPTANCE OF CERTAIN SERVICES TOWARD ENDORSEMENT AS ABLE SEAMAN

Service used to qualify for endorsement as able seaman—fishing industry to be accepted as qualifying service toward an endorsement under this section, see section 602(e)(3) of Pub. L. 101–595, set out as a note under section 7306 of this title.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "18 months' ".*

§7308. Able seamen—limited

The required service for the endorsement of able seaman—limited, qualified for limited service on a vessel on any waters, is at least 12 months [1] service on deck on board vessels of at least 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title operating on the oceans or navigable waters of the United States (including the Great Lakes).

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 543; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §721, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3938; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(d)(3), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1754.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7308	46:672(b)(2)

Section 7308 establishes the minimum service requirements for an individual to qualify for an endorsement as able seamen—limited.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, which directed amendment of this section by substituting "12 months" for "18 months", was executed by making the amendment for "18 months' " to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

1996—Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TEMPORARY REDUCTION OF LENGTHS OF CERTAIN PERIODS OF SERVICE

Section to be applied by substituting "12 months" for "18 months" for the 3-year period beginning on Dec. 22, 2023, see section 3534(j) of Pub. L. 118–31, set out as a note under section 7307 of this title.

ACCEPTANCE OF CERTAIN SERVICES TOWARD ENDORSEMENT AS ABLE SEAMAN

Service used to qualify for endorsement as able seaman—fishing industry to be accepted as qualifying service toward an endorsement under this section, see section 602(e)(3) of Pub. L. 101–595, set out as a note under section 7306 of this title.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "12 months' ".*

§7309. Able seamen—special

The required service for the endorsement of able seaman—special, qualified for special service on a vessel on any waters, is at least 6 months [1] service on deck on board vessels operating on the oceans or the navigable waters of the United States (including the Great Lakes).

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 543; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(d)(4), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1754.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7309	46:672(b)(3)

Section 7309 establishes the minimum service requirements for an individual to qualify as able seamen—special.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, which directed amendment of this section by substituting "6 months" for "12 months", was executed by making the substitution for "12 months' " to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TEMPORARY REDUCTION OF LENGTHS OF CERTAIN PERIODS OF SERVICE

Section to be applied by substituting "6 months" for "12 months" for the 3-year period beginning on Dec. 22, 2023, see section 3534(j) of Pub. L. 118–31, set out as a note under section 7307 of this title.

ACCEPTANCE OF CERTAIN SERVICES TOWARD ENDORSEMENT AS ABLE SEAMAN

Service used to qualify for endorsement as able seaman—fishing industry to be accepted as qualifying service toward an endorsement under this section, see section 602(e)(3) of Pub. L. 101–595, set out as a note under section 7306 of this title.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "6 months' ".*

§7310. Able seamen—offshore supply vessels

For service on a vessel of less than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title engaged in support of exploration, exploitation, or production of offshore mineral or energy resources, an individual may be rated as able seaman—offshore supply vessels if the individual has at least 6 months' service on deck on board vessels operating on the oceans or the navigable waters of the United States (including the Great Lakes).

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 543; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §722, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3938.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7310	46:672(b)(3)

Section 7310 establishes the minimum service requirements for an individual to serve as able seamen—offshore supply vessels on vessels of less than 500 gross tons engaged in the exploration, exploitation, or production of offshore mineral or energy resources.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "500 gross tons".

§7311. Able seamen—sail

For service on a sailing school vessel on any waters, an individual may be rated as able seaman—sail if the individual has at least 6 months' service on deck on sailing school vessels, oceanographic research vessels powered primarily by sail, or equivalent sailing vessels operating on the oceans or navigable waters of the United States (including the Great Lakes).

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 543.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7311	46:672(b)(4)

Section 7311 establishes the minimum service requirements for an individual to qualify as able seamen—sail on board sailing vessels.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Apr. 15, 1984, see section 2(g)(1) of Pub. L. 98–89, set out as a note under section 3101 of this title.

§7311a. Able seamen—fishing industry

For service on a fish processing vessel, an individual may be rated as able seaman—fishing industry if the individual has at least 6 months' service on deck on board vessels operating on the oceans or the navigable waters of the United States (including the Great Lakes).

(Added Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(9)(D), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 448.)

§7312. Scale of employment

(a) Individuals qualified as able seamen—unlimited under section 7307 of this title may constitute all of the able seamen required on a vessel.

(b) Individuals qualified as able seamen—limited under section 7308 of this title may constitute all of the able seamen required on a vessel of less than 1,600 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title or on a vessel operating on the Great Lakes and the Saint Lawrence River as far east as Sept Iles. Individuals qualified as able seamen—limited may constitute not more than 50 percent of the number of able seamen required on board other vessels.

(c) Individuals qualified as able seamen—special under section 7309 of this title may constitute—

(1) all of the able seamen required on a vessel of not more than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title or on a seagoing barge or towing vessel; and

(2) not more than 50 percent of the number of able seamen required on board other vessels.

(d) Individuals qualified as able seamen—offshore. supply vessel under section 7310 of this title may constitute all of the able seamen required on board a vessel of less than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title or 6,000 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of this title engaged in support of exploration, exploitation, or production of offshore mineral or energy resources. Individuals qualified as able seamen—limited under section 7308 of this title may constitute all of the able seamen required on board a vessel of at least 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title or 6,000 gross tons as measured under section as measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title engaged in support of exploration, exploitation, or production of offshore mineral or energy resources.

(e) When the service of able seamen—limited or able seamen—special is authorized for only a part of the required number of able seamen on board a vessel, the combined percentage of those individuals so qualified may not be greater than 50 percent of the required number.

(f) Individuals qualified as able seamen—fishing industry under section 7311a of this title may constitute—

(1) all of the able seamen required on a fish processing vessel entered into service before January 1, 1988, and of more than 1,600 gross tons but not more than 5,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title; and

(2) all of the able seamen required on a fish processing vessel entered into service after December 31, 1987, and having more than 16 individuals on board primarily employed in the preparation of fish or fish products but of not more than 5,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 543; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(9)(E), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 448; Pub. L. 99–307, §1(11), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 445; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §723, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3938; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §617(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2973.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7312	46:672(f)

Section 7312(a) provides that able seamen—unlimited may constitute all of the able seamen required on a vessel.

Subsection (b) provides that able seamen—limited may constitute 100 percent of the able seamen required on board vessels of less than 600 gross tons operating on the Great Lakes and 50 percent of the number of able seamen required on the larger vessels.

Subsection (c) provides that able seamen—special may constitute 100 percent of the able seamen required on vessels not more than 500 gross tons, or a seagoing barge or towing vessel. Able seamen—special may only constitute up to 50 percent of the number of able seamen required on other vessels.

Subsection (d) provides that able seamen—offshore supply vessels may constitute 100 percent of the number of able seamen required on vessels of less than 500 gross tons engaged in support of exploration, exploitation, or production of offshore mineral or energy facilities. They may not serve on board other vessels as an able seaman until they have the appropriate required document.

Subsection (e) provides that the total number of able seamen—limited or able seamen—special may not be greater than 50 percent of the required number of able seamen on a vessel.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–281 amended subsec. (d) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (d) read as follows: "Individuals qualified as able seamen—offshore supply vessels under section 7310 of this title may constitute all of the able seamen required on board a vessel of less than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title engaged in support of exploration, exploitation, or production of offshore mineral or energy resources."

1996—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 104–324, §723(1), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "1,600 gross tons".

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 104–324, §723(2), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "500 gross tons".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 104–324, §723(3), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "500 gross tons".

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 104–324, §723(4), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "5,000 gross tons".

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 104–324, §723(5), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "5,000 gross tons".

1986—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 99–307 substituted "able seamen—limited" for "able seaman—limited".

1984—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 98–364 added subsec. (f).

§7313. General requirements for members of engine departments

(a) Classes of endorsement as qualified members of the engine department on vessels of at least 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title (except vessels operating on rivers or lakes (except the Great Lakes)) may be prescribed by regulation.

(b) The ratings of wiper are entry ratings and are not ratings as qualified members of the engine department.[1]

(c) CLASSIFICATION OF CREDENTIALS.—The Secretary may classify the merchant mariner

credential issued under subsection (a) based on—

(1) the tonnage and means of propulsion of vessels;

(2) the waters on which vessels are to be operated; or

(3) other appropriate standards.

(d) QUALIFICATIONS.—To qualify for a credential under this section, an applicant shall provide satisfactory proof that the applicant—

(1) is at least 18 years of age;

(2) has a minimum of 6-months service in the related entry rating;

(3) is qualified professionally as demonstrated by an applicable examination or educational requirements; and

(4) is qualified as to sight, hearing, and physical condition to perform the member's duties.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 544; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §724, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3939; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(d)(5), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1754.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7313	46:672(g)

Section 7313(a) authorizes the Secretary to establish classes of endorsement for qualified members of the engine department on vessels of 100 gross tons or more (except on vessels operating on rivers and lakes (except the Great Lakes)).

Subsection (b) establishes the entry ratings of wiper and coal passer, but specifically excludes them as qualified members of the engine department.

Subsection (c) establishes the minimum qualifications individuals must meet in order to have their documents endorsed as a qualified member of engine department.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(d)(5)(A), struck out "and coal passer" after "wiper".

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(d)(5)(B), added subsecs. (c) and (d) and struck out former subsec. (c) which read as follows: "An applicant for an endorsement as qualified member of the engine department must provide satisfactory proof that the applicant—

"(1) has the service required by section 7314 of this title;

"(2) is qualified professionally as demonstrated by an applicable examination; and

"(3) is qualified as to sight, hearing, and physical condition to perform the member's duties."

1996—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons".

[1] *So in original.*

[§7314. Repealed. Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(f), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1755]

Section, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 544, related to service requirements for qualified members of engine departments.

§7315. Training

(a) NAUTICAL SCHOOL PROGRAM.—Graduation from a nautical school program may be substituted for the sea service requirements under sections 7307 through 7311a and 7313 of this title.

(b) OTHER APPROVED TRAINING PROGRAMS.—The satisfactory completion of a training program approved by the Secretary may be substituted for not more than one-half of the sea service requirements under sections 7307 through 7311a and 7313 of this title in accordance with subsection (c).

(c) TRAINING DAYS.—For purposes of subsection (b), training days undertaken in connection with training programs approved by the Secretary may be substituted for days of required sea service under sections 7307 through 7311a and 7313 of this title as follows:

(1) Each shore-based training day in the form of classroom lectures may be substituted for 2 days of sea service requirements.

(2) Each training day of laboratory training, practical demonstrations, and other similar training, may be substituted for 4 days of sea service requirements.

(3) Each training day of full mission simulator training may be substituted for 6 days of sea service requirements.

(4) Each training day underway on a vessel while enrolled in an approved training program may be substituted for 1½ days of sea service requirements, as long as—

(A) the structured training provided while underway on a vessel is—

(i) acceptable to the Secretary as part of the approved training program; and

(ii) fully completed by the individual; and

(B) the tonnage of such vessel is appropriate to the endorsement being sought.

(d) DEFINITION.—In this section, the term "training day" means a day that consists of not less than 7 hours of training.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 544; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(d)(6), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1754.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7315	46:672(c)

Section 7315 specifies the training or course work that may be substituted for service requirements for an endorsement as an able seaman or a qualified member of the engine department.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows:

"(a) Graduation from a nautical school vessel approved under law and regulation may be substituted for the service requirements under section 7307 or 7314 of this title.

"(b) The satisfactory completion of other courses of instruction approved by the Secretary may be substituted for not more than one-third of the required service on deck at sea under sections 7307–7311 of this title.

"(c) The satisfactory completion of other courses of instruction approved by the Secretary may be substituted for not more than one-half of the required service at sea under section 7314 of this title."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

IMPLEMENTATION OF 2025 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(e)(2), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1755, provided that: "The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall implement the requirements of section 7315 of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this subsection, without regard to chapters 5 and 6 of title

5, United States Code, and Executive Orders 12866 and 13563 (5 U.S.C. 601 note) and 14094 (88 Fed. Reg. 21879) [former 5 U.S.C. 601 note]."

§7316. Lifeboatmen

To qualify for an endorsement as lifeboatman, an applicant must provide satisfactory proof that the applicant—

(1) has the service or training required by regulation;

(2) is qualified professionally as demonstrated by examination; and

(3) is qualified professionally by actual demonstration.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 544.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7316	46:643(*l*)

Section 7316 establishes the minimum standards an individual must meet in order to qualify for an endorsement as lifeboatman.

§7317. Tankermen

(a) The Secretary shall prescribe procedures, standards, and qualifications for the issuance of certificates or endorsements as tankerman, stating the types of oil or hazardous material that can be handled with safety to the vessel and the marine environment.

(b) An endorsement as tankerman shall indicate the grades or types of cargo the holder is qualified and authorized to handle with safety on board vessels.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 545.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7317(a)	46:391a(10)(C)

Section 7317(a) establishes the minimum standards an individual must meet in order to qualify for an endorsement as tankerman for various types of oil or hazardous substances.

Subsection (b) specifies that the tankerman's endorsement must specify the grades or types of cargo the holder is qualified and allowed to handle.

§7318. Radiotelegraph operators on Great Lakes

(a) A radiotelegraph operator on the Great Lakes only shall have a first-class or second-class radiotelegraph operator's license issued by the Federal Communications Commission.

(b) An endorsement as radiotelegraph operator on the Great Lakes only ends if the holder ceases to hold the license issued by the Commission.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 545.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7318	46:229c

46:229g
46:643(a)

Section 7318 specifies that radiotelegraph operators on the Great Lakes shall have a first-class or second-class radiotelegraph operator's license issued by the FCC and need not be licensed as a radio operator by the Coast Guard. However, an endorsement as radio telegraph operator has to be noted on his merchant mariners' document. If the holder ceases to have a valid FCC license, then the endorsement is terminated automatically without recourse to suspension and revocation proceedings.

§7319. Records of merchant mariners' documents

The Secretary shall maintain records on each merchant mariner's document issued, including the name and address of the individual to whom issued and the next of kin of the individual.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 545; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §403, Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1043; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8505(b)(4), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4751.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7319	46:643(f)

Section 7319 requires the Secretary to maintain records on each merchant mariner's document issued and the seaman's next of kin. However, these records are not open for general or public inspection.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "individual" for "seaman" in two places.
2004—Pub. L. 108–293 struck out at end "The records are not open to general or public inspection."

CHAPTER 75—GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR LICENSING, CERTIFICATION, AND DOCUMENTATION

Sec.
7501. Duplicates.
7502. Records.
7503. Dangerous drugs as grounds for denial.
7504. Travel and expense reimbursement.
7505. Review of information in National Driver Register.
7506. Convention tonnage for licenses, certificates, and documents.
7507. Authority to extend the duration of licenses, certificates of registry, and merchant mariner documents.
7508. Authority to extend the duration of medical certificates.
7509. Medical certification by trusted agents.
7510. Examinations for merchant mariner credentials.
7511. Convicted sex offender as grounds for denial.
7512. Requirements of electronic merchant mariner credentialing system.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(j)(2), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1758, added item 7512.
2022—Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11602(b), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4147, added item 7511.
2016—Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §§309(c), 315(a)(2), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 57, 62, added items 7509 and 7510.
2012—Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §306(b), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1565, added item 7508.
2010—Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §615(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2972, added item 7507.
1996—Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §745(b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3943, added item 7506.
1990—Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4105(c), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 513, added item 7505.
1986—Pub. L. 99–640, §10(b)(2)(B), Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3550, added item 7504.

§7501. Duplicates

(a) If a license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document issued under this part is lost as a result of a marine casualty, the holder shall be supplied with a duplicate without cost.

(b) For any other loss, the holder may obtain a duplicate on payment of reasonable costs prescribed by regulation by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 545; Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(9)(C), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 68; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8505(b)(5), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4751.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7501	46:643(h)

Section 7501(a) provides that if a license, certificate or document issued to an individual is lost due to a marine casualty, the individual will be supplied with a duplicate without cost.

Subsection (b) provides that if a license, certificate or document is lost for any reason other than a marine casualty, the seaman must pay a reasonable cost for the replacement.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "holder" for "seaman".
1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99–36 substituted "certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document" for "certificate, or document".

§7502. Records

(a) The Secretary shall maintain records, including electronic records, on the issuances, denials, suspensions, and revocations of licenses, certificates of registry, merchant mariners' documents, and endorsements on those licenses, certificates, and documents.

(b) The Secretary may prescribe regulations requiring a vessel owner or managing operator of a commercial vessel, or the employer of a seaman on that vessel, to maintain records of each individual engaged on the vessel subject to inspection under chapter 33 on matters of engagement, discharge, and service for not less than 5 years after the date of the completion of the service of that individual on the vessel. The regulations may require that a vessel owner, managing operator, or employer shall make these records available to the individual and the Coast Guard on request.

(c) A person violating this section, or a regulation prescribed under this section, is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 545; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4114(e), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 517; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §605, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2967.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7502	46:414 46:643(f)

Section 7502 requires the Secretary to maintain records on the issuances, denials, suspensions, and revocations of licenses, certificates of registry, merchant mariner's documents, and endorsements.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 111–281 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), substituted "records, including electronic records," for "computerized records", and added subsecs. (b) and (c).

1990—Pub. L. 101–380 substituted "maintain computerized records" for "maintain records".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

MODERNIZING MERCHANT MARINER CREDENTIALING SYSTEM

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11511, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4138, provided that:

"(a) REPORT.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022], the Commandant shall submit to the Committees on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and Appropriations of the Senate, and the Committees on Transportation and Infrastructure and Appropriations of the House of Representatives, a report on the financial, human, and information technology infrastructure resources needed to establish an electronic merchant mariner licensing and documentation system.

"(2) LEGISLATIVE AND REGULATORY SUGGESTIONS.—In preparing the report described in paragraph (1), the Commandant—

"(A) shall include recommendations for any legislative or administrative actions as the Commandant determines necessary to establish the electronic merchant mariner licensing and documentation system described in paragraph (1) as soon as possible; and

"(B) may include findings, conclusions, or recommendations from the study conducted under subsection (b).

"(b) STUDY.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—In preparing the report required under subsection (a), the Commandant and the Administrator of the Maritime Administration, in coordination with the Commander of the United States Transportation Command, shall conduct a study on the feasibility of developing and maintaining a database as part of an electronic merchant mariner licensing and documentation system that—

"(A) contains records with respect to each credentialed mariner, including credential validity, drug and alcohol testing results, and information on any final adjudicated agency action involving a credentialed mariner or regarding any involvement in a marine casualty; and

"(B) maintains such records in a manner that allows data to be readily accessed by the Federal Government for the purpose of assessing workforce needs and for the purpose of the economic and national security of the United States.

"(2) CONTENTS.—The study required under paragraph (1) shall—

"(A) include an assessment of the resources, including information technology, and authorities necessary to develop and maintain the database described in such paragraph;

"(B) specifically address ways to protect the privacy interests of any individual whose information may be contained within such database, which shall include limiting access to the database or having access to the database be monitored by, or accessed through, a member of the Coast Guard; and

"(C) address the feasibility of incorporating in such database a reporting mechanism to alert the Administrator of the Maritime Administration each time a mariner's credential is reinstated upon

completion of a period of suspension as the result of a suspension and revocation proceeding under section 7702 of title 46, United States Code, with details about the violation that led to such suspension.

"(c) ELECTRONIC MERCHANT MARINER LICENSING AND DOCUMENTATION SYSTEM .—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary shall implement an electronic merchant mariner licensing and documentation system."

[For definitions of terms used in section 11511 of Pub. L. 117–263, set out above, see section 11002 of Pub. L. 117–263, set out as a note under section 106 of Title 14, Coast Guard, and section 11515 of Pub. L. 117–263, set as as note under section 7302 of this title.]

ELECTRONIC RECORDS ON MARINER AVAILABILITY TO MEET NATIONAL SECURITY NEEDS

Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3510, Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2310, provided that: "The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall ensure that electronic records maintained under section 7502 of title 46, United States Code, are able to be used by the Secretary of Transportation—

"(1) to determine the potential availability of mariners credentialed under part E of subtitle II of title 46, United States Code, to meet national security sealift needs; and

"(2) to receive information on the qualification of such mariners."

§7503. Dangerous drugs as grounds for denial

A license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document authorized to be issued under this part may be denied to an individual who—

(1) within 10 years before applying for the license, certificate, or document, has been convicted of violating a dangerous drug law of the United States or of a State; or

(2) when applying, has ever been a user of, or addicted to, a dangerous drug unless the individual provides satisfactory proof that the individual is cured.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 545; Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(9)(D), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 68; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4103(a)(2)(B), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 511; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3545(a), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2326.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7503(a)	46:239a(a) 46:239b(a)

Section 7503 provides that the issuance of a license, certificate, or document may be denied by the Secretary to any individual who has been convicted, within 10 years, of violating a dangerous drug law of the United States or to any individual who has been a user of a dangerous drug, unless the individual provides satisfactory proof of being cured. This includes PCP and LSD. See also the note to section 7704. However, the Secretary may deny issuing a license, certificate or document to the individual who has used or been convicted of a "controlled substance" such as LSD if that use or conviction occurred before the date of enactment of this Act.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Pub. L. 115–232 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section consisted of repealed subsec. (a) and subsec. (b) identical to present provisions.

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101–380 struck out subsec. (a) which defined "dangerous drug" for purpose of this section as narcotic drug, controlled substance, and marihuana.

1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99–36 substituted "certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document" for first reference to "certificate, or document".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

§7504. Travel and expense reimbursement

When a requirement to qualify for the issuance of, or endorsement on, a certificate, license, or document under this part is administered at a place at the request of an applicant or an applicant's representative, the applicant or representative may reimburse the Secretary for the travel and subsistence expenses incurred by the personnel assigned to perform the administration of the requirement. Amounts received as reimbursement under this section shall be credited to the appropriation for operations and support of the Coast Guard.

(Added Pub. L. 99–640, §10(b)(2)(A), Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3549; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8513(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4761.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "operations and support" for "operating expenses".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

§7505. Review of information in National Driver Register

The Secretary shall make information received from the National Driver Register under section 30305(b)(7) of title 49 available to an individual for review and written comment before denying, suspending, revoking, or taking any other action relating to a license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document authorized to be issued for that individual under this part, based on that information.

(Added Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4105(b)(1), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 512; amended Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(e), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2326.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Pub. L. 115–232 substituted "section 30305(b)(7) of title 49" for "section 206(b)(7) of the National Driver Register Act of 1982 (23 U.S.C. 401 note)".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out

as a note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

§7506. Convention tonnage for licenses, certificates, and documents

Notwithstanding any provision of section 14302(c) or 14305 of this title, the Secretary may—

(1) evaluate the service of an individual who is applying for a license, a certificate of registry, or a merchant mariner's document by using the tonnage as measured under chapter 143 of this title for the vessels on which that service was acquired, and

(2) issue the license, certificate, or document based on that service.

(Added Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §745(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3942.)

§7507. Authority to extend the duration of licenses, certificates of registry, and merchant mariner documents

(a) LICENSES AND CERTIFICATES OF REGISTRY.—Notwithstanding sections 7106 and 7107, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating may—

(1) extend for not more than one year an expiring license or certificate of registry issued for an individual under chapter 71 if the Secretary determines that the extension is required to enable the Coast Guard to eliminate a backlog in processing applications for those licenses or certificates of registry or in response to a national emergency or natural disaster, as deemed necessary by the Secretary; or

(2) issue for not more than five years an expiring license or certificate of registry issued for an individual under chapter 71 for the exclusive purpose of aligning the expiration date of such license or certificate of registry with the expiration date of a merchant mariner's document.

(b) MERCHANT MARINER DOCUMENTS.—Notwithstanding section 7302(g), the Secretary may—

(1) extend for not more than one year an expiring merchant mariner's document issued for an individual under chapter 73 if the Secretary determines that the extension is required to enable the Coast Guard to eliminate a backlog in processing applications for those merchant mariner documents or in response to a national emergency or natural disaster, as deemed necessary by the Secretary; or

(2) issue for not more than five years an expiring merchant mariner's document issued for an individual under chapter 73 for the exclusive purpose of aligning the expiration date of such merchant mariner's document with the expiration date of a license or certificate of registry.

(c) MANNER OF EXTENSION.—Any extensions granted under this section may be granted to individual seamen or a specifically identified group of seamen.

(d) RENEWAL.—With respect to any renewal of an active merchant mariner credential issued under this part that is not an extension under subsection (a) or (b), such credential shall begin the day after the expiration of the active credential of the credential holder.

(Added Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §615(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2971; amended Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §311, Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1569; Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §510(3), (4), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4274; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(g)(1), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1755.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 119–60 added subsec. (d).

2018—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 115–282, §510(3), substituted "merchant mariner documents" for "licenses or certificates of registry".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 115–282, §510(4), substituted "license or certificate of registry." for "merchant

mariner's document."

2012—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 112–213 substituted "chapter 71" for "chapter 73" in pars. (1) and (2).

§7508. Authority to extend the duration of medical certificates

(a) GRANTING OF EXTENSIONS.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Secretary may extend for not more than one year a medical certificate issued to an individual holding a license, merchant mariner's document, or certificate of registry issued under chapter 71 or 73 if the Secretary determines that the extension is required to enable the Coast Guard to eliminate a backlog in processing applications for medical certificates or is in response to a national emergency or natural disaster.

(b) MANNER OF EXTENSION.—An extension under this section may be granted to an individual or a specifically identified group of individuals.

(Added Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §306(a), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1565; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8505(b)(6), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4751.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "an individual or a specifically identified group of individuals" for "individual seamen or a specifically identified group of seamen".

§7509. Medical certification by trusted agents

(a) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law and pursuant to regulations prescribed by the Secretary, a trusted agent may issue a medical certificate to an individual who—

(1) must hold such certificate to qualify for a license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document, or endorsement thereto under this part; and

(2) is qualified as to sight, hearing, and physical condition to perform the duties of such license, certificate, document, or endorsement, as determined by the trusted agent.

(b) PROCESS FOR ISSUANCE OF CERTIFICATES BY SECRETARY.—A final rule implementing this section shall include a process for—

(1) the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating to issue medical certificates to mariners who submit applications for such certificates to the Secretary; and

(2) a trusted agent to defer to the Secretary the issuance of a medical certificate.

(c) TRUSTED AGENT DEFINED.—In this section the term "trusted agent" means a medical practitioner certified by the Secretary to perform physical examinations of an individual for purposes of a license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document under this part.

(Added Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §309(a), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 56.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

IMPLEMENTATION DEADLINE

Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §309(b), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 57, provided that: "Not later than 5 years after the date of the enactment of this Act [Feb. 8, 2016], the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall issue a final rule implementing section 7509 of title 46, United States Code, as added by this section."

§7510. Examinations for merchant mariner credentials

(a) DISCLOSURE NOT REQUIRED.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Secretary is not required to disclose to the public—

(1) a question from any examination for a merchant mariner credential;

(2) the answer to such a question, including any correct or incorrect answer that may be presented with such question; and

(3) any quality or characteristic of such a question, including—

(A) the manner in which such question has been, is, or may be selected for an examination;

(B) the frequency of such selection; and

(C) the frequency that an examinee correctly or incorrectly answered such question.

(b) EXCEPTION FOR CERTAIN QUESTIONS.—Notwithstanding subsection (a), the Secretary may, for the purpose of preparation by the general public for examinations required for merchant mariner credentials, release an examination question and answer that the Secretary has retired or is not presently on or part of an examination, or that the Secretary determines is appropriate for release.

(c) WORKING GROUP.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2025, and once every two years thereafter, the Commandant shall commission a working group to review questions, content, and relevancy of examinations required for merchant mariner credentials, composed of—

(A) 1 subject matter expert from the Coast Guard;

(B) representatives from training facilities and the maritime industry, of whom—

(i) one-half shall be representatives from approved training facilities; and

(ii) one-half shall be representatives from the appropriate maritime industry;

(C) at least 1 representative from the National Merchant Marine Personnel Advisory Committee;

(D) at least 2 representatives from the State maritime academies, of whom one shall be a representative from the deck training track and one shall be a representative of the engineer license track;

(E) at least 2 individuals that have taken and passed the examination in the 5 years before the commissioning of the working group;

(F) at least 1 representative from the United States Merchant Marine Academy;

(G) representatives from other Coast Guard Federal advisory committees, as appropriate, for the industry segment associated with the subject examinations;

(H) at least 1 subject matter expert from the Maritime Administration; and

(I) at least 1 human performance technology representative.

(2) INCLUSION OF PERSONS KNOWLEDGEABLE ABOUT EXAMINATION TYPE .—The working group shall include representatives knowledgeable about the examination type under review.

(3) MEETING OF WORKING GROUP.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Commandant shall convene the working group annually or at the creation of new examination questions, whichever occurs sooner.

(B) REMOTE PARTICIPATION.—The Commandant shall allow any member of the working group to participate remotely if the member of the working group does not have the means to participate in person.

(4) USE OF QUESTIONS.—The Commandant may not use questions developed for use in the Merchant Mariner Credentialing Examination until such questions are reviewed and approved by the working group.

(5) REVIEW.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 270 days after the date of the enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2025, the Commandant shall convene the working group to

complete a baseline review of the Coast Guard's Merchant Mariner Credentialing Examination, including review of—

(i) industry standards, practices, and technology to be considered in the Merchant Mariner Credentialing Examination;

(ii) the accuracy of examination questions;

(iii) the accuracy and availability of examination references;

(iv) the length of merchant mariner examinations;

(v) the relevancy of examination topics and contents;

(vi) any redundancy of core competencies between the Merchant Mariner Credentialing Examination and Standards of Training, Certification, and Watchingkeeping competencies; and

(vii) the use of standard technologies in administering, scoring, and analyzing the examinations.

(B) REPORT TO COMMANDANT.—Upon completion of the review under this paragraph, a report shall be provided to the Commandant which shall include findings of the review with recommendations for updates to the Merchant Marine Credentialling Examination.

(6) NONDISCLOSURE AGREEMENT.—The Secretary shall require all members of the working group to sign a nondisclosure agreement with the Secretary.

(7) TREATMENT OF MEMBERS AS FEDERAL EMPLOYEES.—A member of the working group who is not a Federal Government employee shall not be considered a Federal employee in the service or the employment of the Federal Government, except that such a member shall be considered a special government employee, as defined in section 202(a) of title 18 for purposes of sections 203, 205, 207, 208, and 209 of such title and shall be subject to any administrative standards of conduct applicable to an employee of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating.

(8) CHAPTER 10 OF TITLE 5.—Chapter 10 of title 5 shall not apply to any working group created under this section to review the Coast Guard's merchant mariner credentialing examinations.

(d) MERCHANT MARINER CREDENTIAL DEFINED.—In this section, the term "merchant mariner credential" means a merchant mariner license, certificate, or document that the Secretary is authorized to issue pursuant to this title.

(Added Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §315(a)(1), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 60; amended Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3503(a), (b)(1), Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2775; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3541(b)(12), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2323; Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(c)(3)(B), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4289; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8505(b)(7), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4751; Pub. L. 117–286, §4(a)(290), Dec. 27, 2022, 136 Stat. 4337; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(g)(2), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1755.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2025, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), (5)(A), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 119–60, which was approved Dec. 18, 2025.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(g)(2)(A), substituted "Working Group" for "Exam Review" in heading.

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(g)(2)(B)(i)–(iii), substituted "180 days" for "90 days", "Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2025" for "Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2016", and "questions, content, and relevancy of" for "new questions for inclusion in" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(1)(E) to (I). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(g)(2)(B)(iv), (v), added subpars. (E) and (F) and

redesignated former subpars. (E) to (G) as (G) to (I), respectively.

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(g)(2)(D), (F), added par. (3) and struck out former par. (3). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The requirement to convene a working group under paragraph (1) does not apply unless there are new examination questions to review."

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(g)(2)(F), added par. (4). Former par. (4) redesignated (5).

Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(g)(2)(C)(i), substituted "Review" for "Baseline review" in heading.

Subsec. (c)(4)(A). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(g)(2)(C)(ii)(IV)–(VII), added cl. (i), redesignated former cls. (i) to (iii) as (ii) to (iv), respectively, added cls. (v) and (vi), and redesignated former cl. (iv) as (vii).

Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(g)(2)(C)(ii)(I)–(III), substituted "Not later than 270 days" for "Within 1 year", "Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2025" for "Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2016", and "Commandant" for "Secretary" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(4)(B). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(g)(2)(C)(iii), added subpar. (B) and struck out former subpar. (B). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Coast Guard shall provide a progress report to the appropriate congressional committees on the review under this paragraph."

Subsec. (c)(5). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(g)(2)(D), (E), redesignated par. (4) as (5) and struck out par. (5). Text read as follows: "The Coast Guard may convene the working group without all members present if any non-Coast-Guard representative is present."

Subsec. (c)(8). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(g)(2)(D), (E), redesignated par. (9) as (8) and struck out par. (8). Text read as follows: "The Secretary shall ensure that the Coast Guard Performance Technology Center—

"(A) prioritizes the review of examinations required for merchant mariner credentials; and

"(B) not later than 3 years after the date of enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2016, completes a formal review, including an appropriate analysis, of the topics and testing methodology employed by the National Maritime Center for merchant mariner licensing."

Subsec. (c)(9). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(g)(2)(E), redesignated par. (9) as (8).

2022—Subsec. (c)(9). Pub. L. 117–286 substituted "Chapter 10 of title 5" for "FACA" in heading and "Chapter 10 of title 5" for "The Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.)" in text.

2021—Subsec. (c)(8)(B). Pub. L. 116–283, §8505(b)(7)(A), substituted "merchant mariner" for "merchant seamen".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 116–283, §8505(b)(7)(B), substituted "merchant mariner license" for "merchant seaman license".

2018—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 115–232 substituted "Commandant" for "Commandant of the Coast Guard" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(1)(C). Pub. L. 115–282 inserted "National" before "Merchant Marine".

2016—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 114–328, §3503(a), in introductory provisions, substituted "Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2016" for "Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2015".

Subsec. (c)(1)(D). Pub. L. 114–328, §3503(b)(1)(A), substituted "engineer" for "engine".

Subsec. (c)(4)(A), (8)(B). Pub. L. 114–328, §3503(a), substituted "Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2016" for "Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2015".

Subsec. (c)(9). Pub. L. 114–328, §3503(b)(1)(B), inserted a period after "App".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2016 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 114–328 effective as if included in the enactment of Pub. L. 114–120, see section 3503(e) of Pub. L. 114–328, set out as a note under section 2182 of Title 14, Coast Guard.

DISCLOSURE TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §315(c), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 62, provided that: "Nothing in this section [enacting this section and section 7116 of this title] may be construed to authorize the withholding of information from an appropriate inspector general, the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate, or the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives."

§7511. Convicted sex offender as grounds for denial

(a) SEXUAL ABUSE.—A license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document authorized to be issued under this part shall be denied to an individual who has been convicted of a sexual offense prohibited under—

(1) chapter 109A of title 18, except for subsection (b) of section 2244 of title 18;

(2) section 920 or 920b of title 10 (article 120 and 120b of the Uniform Code of Military Justice); or

(3) a substantially similar offense under Federal, State, local, or Tribal law.

(b) ABUSIVE SEXUAL CONTACT.—A license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document authorized to be issued under this part may be denied to an individual who within 5 years before applying for the license, certificate, or document, has been convicted of a sexual offense prohibited under subsection (b) of section 2244 of title 18, or a substantially similar offense under State, local, or Tribal law.

(Added Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11602(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4147; amended Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(g)(3), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1756.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(g)(3)(A), struck out "or" after "title 18;".

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(g)(3)(D), added par. (2). Former par. (2) redesignated (3).

Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(g)(3)(B), substituted "Federal, State, local, or Tribal law" for "State, local, or Tribal law".

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(g)(3)(C), redesignated par. (2) as (3).

§7512. Requirements of electronic merchant mariner credentialing system

(a) DEFINITION OF MERCHANT MARINER CREDENTIAL.—In this section, the term "merchant mariner credential" means a merchant mariner license, certificate, or document that the Secretary is authorized to issue pursuant to this title.

(b) NECESSARY CONSIDERATIONS.—In implementing any electronic merchant mariner credentialing system for purposes of this chapter, the Secretary shall consider how to allow, to the maximum extent practicable—

(1) the electronic submission of the components of merchant mariner credential applications (such as sea service documentation, professional qualifications, course completion certificates, safety and suitability documents, and medical records) and course approval requests;

(2) the direct electronic and secure submission of—

(A) sea service verification documentation from employers;

(B) course completion certificates from training providers; and

(C) necessary documentation from other stakeholders; and

(3) the electronic processing and evaluation of information for the issuance of merchant mariner credentials and course approvals, including the capability for the Secretary to complete remote evaluation of information submitted through the system.

(c) ACCESS TO DATA.—The Secretary shall ensure that the Maritime Administration and other Federal agencies, as authorized by the Secretary, have access to anonymized and aggregated data from the electronic system described in subsection (b) and that such data include, at a minimum—

(1) the total amount of sea service for individuals with a valid merchant mariner credential;

(2) the number of mariners with valid merchant mariner credentials for each rating, including the capability to filter data based on credential endorsements;

(3) demographic information including age, gender, and region or address;

(4) the estimated times for the Coast Guard to process merchant mariner credential applications, mariner medical certificates, and course approvals;

(5) the number of providers approved to provide training for purposes of this part and, for each such training provider, the number of classes taken by individuals with, or applying for, a

merchant mariner credential; and

(6) if applicable, the branch of the uniformed services (as defined in section 101(a) of title 10) and duty status of applicants for a merchant mariner credential.

(d) PRIVACY REQUIREMENTS.—The Secretary shall collect the information required under subsection (b) in a manner that protects the privacy rights of individuals who are the subjects of such information.

(Added Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(g)(4), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1757.)

CHAPTER 77—SUSPENSION AND REVOCATION

Sec.
7701. General.
7702. Administrative procedure.
7703. Bases for suspension or revocation.
7704. Dangerous drugs as grounds for revocation.
7704a. Sexual harassment or sexual assault as grounds for suspension or revocation.
7705. Subpenas and oaths.
7706. Drug testing reporting.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11603(b), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4148, added item 7704a.
2004—Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §414(b), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1047, added item 7706.

§7701. General

(a) The purpose of suspension and revocation proceedings is to promote safety at sea.

(b) Licenses, certificates of registry, and merchant mariners' documents may be suspended or revoked for acts described in section 7703 of this title.

(c) When a license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document has been revoked under this chapter, the former holder may be issued a new license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document only after—

(1) the Secretary decides, under regulations prescribed by the Secretary, that the issuance is compatible with the requirement of good discipline and safety at sea; and

(2) the former holder provides satisfactory proof that the bases for revocation are no longer valid.

(d) The Secretary may prescribe regulations to carry out this chapter.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 546; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4103(c), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 511.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7701	46:239(g)

Section 7701 establishes the general purpose of suspension and revocation proceedings, which is to promote safety at sea. This section also provides the Secretary with the authority to suspend or revoke licenses, certificates, and documents, as well as the authority to issue a new license, certificate or document to an individual when the issuance is compatible with the requirements of good discipline and safety at sea. It also provides for necessary regulatory authority to carry out its purposes.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101–380 amended subsec. (c) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (c) read as follows: "When a license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document has been revoked under this chapter, the former holder may be issued a new license, certificate, or document only after it has been decided, under regulations prescribed by the Secretary, that the issuance is compatible with the requirements of good discipline and safety at sea."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

§7702. Administrative procedure

(a) Sections 551–559 of title 5 apply to each hearing under this chapter about suspending or revoking a license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document.

(b) The individual whose license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document has been suspended or revoked under this chapter may appeal, within 30 days, the suspension or revocation to the Secretary.

(c)(1) The Secretary shall request a holder of a license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document to make available to the Secretary, under section 30305(b)(7) of title 49, all information contained in the National Driver Register related to an offense described in section 205(a)(3)(A) or (B) of that Act [1] committed by the individual.

(2) The Secretary shall require the testing of the holder of a license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document for use of alcohol and dangerous drugs in violation of law or Federal regulation. The testing may include preemployment (with respect to dangerous drugs only), periodic, random, and reasonable cause testing, and shall include post-accident testing.

(d)(1) The Secretary may temporarily, for not more than 45 days, suspend and take possession of the license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document held by 'an [2] individual—

(A) if—

(i) that individual performs a safety sensitive function on a vessel, as determined by the Secretary; and

(ii) there is probable cause to believe that the individual—

(I) has, while acting under the authority of that license, certificate, or document, performed the safety sensitive function in violation of law or Federal regulation regarding use of alcohol or a dangerous drug;

(II) has been convicted of an offense that would prevent the issuance or renewal of the license, certificate, or document;

(III) within the 3-year period preceding the initiation of a suspension proceeding, has been convicted of an offense described in section 30304(a)(3)(A) or (B) of title 49; or

(IV) is a security risk that poses a threat to the safety or security of a vessel or a public or commercial structure located within or adjacent to the marine environment; or

(B) if there is probable cause to believe that the individual has violated company policy and is a security risk that poses a threat to other individuals on the vessel.

(2) If a license, certificate, or document is temporarily suspended under this section, an expedited hearing under subsection (a) of this section shall be held within 30 days after the temporary

suspension.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 546; Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(3), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 67; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4103(a)(1), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 510; Pub. L. 105–383, title III, §304(a), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3419; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §407, title VI, §609(2), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1044, 1058; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(f), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2326; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(i), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1758.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7702	.....

Section 7702(a) provides that Sections 551–559 of title 5 of the United States Code shall apply to each involving the suspension or revocation of a license, certificate, or document.

Subsection (b) allows an individual whose license, certificate, or document has been suspended or revoked to appeal it to the Secretary within 30 days.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 205(a)(3)(A) or (B) of that Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), means section 205(a)(3)(A), (B) of the National Driver Register Act of 1982, Pub. L. 97–364, which was set out in a note under section 401 of Title 23, Highways, and was repealed and restated in section 30304 of Title 49, Transportation, by Pub. L. 103–272, §§1(e), 7(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 975, 1379.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 119–60 substituted "an individual—" for "an individual" in introductory provisions, inserted subpar. (A) designation before "if—", redesignated former subpars. (A) and (B) as cls. (i) and (ii), respectively, of subpar. (A), and added subpar. (B),

2018—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 115–232 substituted "section 30305(b)(7) of title 49" for "section 206(b)(4) of the National Driver Register Act of 1982 (23 U.S.C. 401 note)".

2004—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 108–293, §407(1), substituted "if—" for "if, when acting under the authority of that license, certificate, or document—" in introductory provisions.

Subsec.(d)(1)(B)(i). Pub. L. 108–293, §407(2), inserted ", while acting under the authority of that license, certificate, or document," after "has".

Subsec. (d)(1)(B)(iii). Pub. L. 108–293, §609(2), substituted "section 30304(a)(3)(A) or (B) of title 49" for "section 205(a)(3)(A) or (B) of the National Driver Register Act of 1982".

Subsec. (d)(1)(B)(iv). Pub. L. 108–293, §407(3)–(5), added cl. (iv).

1998—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 105–383 inserted second sentence and struck out former second sentence which read as follows: "The testing may include preemployment (with respect to dangerous drugs only), periodic, random, reasonable cause, and post accident testing."

1990—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 101–380 added subsecs. (c) and (d).

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99–36 substituted "mariner's" for "mariners' ".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

[2] *So in original. Opening single quotation mark probably should not appear.*

§7703. Bases for suspension or revocation

A license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document issued by the Secretary may be suspended or revoked if the holder—

(1) when acting under the authority of that license, certificate, or document—

(A) has violated or fails to comply with this subtitle, a regulation prescribed under this subtitle, or any other law or regulation intended to promote marine safety or to protect navigable waters; or

(B) has committed an act of misconduct or negligence;

(2) is convicted of an offense that would prevent the issuance or renewal of a license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document;

(3) within the 3-year period preceding the initiation of the suspension or revocation proceeding is convicted of an offense described in section 30304(a)(3)(A) or (B) of title 49;

(4) has committed an act of incompetence relating to the operation of a vessel; or

(5) is a security risk that poses a threat to the safety or security of a vessel or a public or commercial structure located within or adjacent to the marine environment.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 546; Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(9)(E), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 68; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4103(b), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 511; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §408, title VI, §609(3), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1044, 1058; Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(h)(3), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 564.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7703	46:226 46:239 46:240 46:246(c)

This section provides the bases for suspension and revocation of a license, certificate or document. The individual must have been operating under the authority of the required license, certificate, or document and has violated a law or regulation intended to promote marine safety or to protect the navigable waters or has committed an act of incompetence, misconduct, or negligence.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Par. (3). Pub. L. 109–241 struck out "(23 U.S.C. 401 note)" after "of title 49".

2004—Par. (1)(B). Pub. L. 108–293, §408(1), substituted "misconduct or" for "incompetence, misconduct, or".

Par. (3). Pub. L. 108–293, §609(3), substituted "section 30304(a)(3)(A) or (B) of title 49" for "section 205(a)(3)(A) or (B) of the National Driver Register Act of 1982".

Pars. (4), (5). Pub. L. 108–293, §408(2)–(4), added pars. (4) and (5).

1990—Pub. L. 101–380 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: "A license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document issued by the Secretary may be suspended or revoked if, when acting under the authority of that license, certificate, or document, the holder—

"(1) has violated or failed to comply with this subtitle, a regulation prescribed under this subtitle, or any other law or regulation intended to promote marine safety or to protect navigable waters.

"(2) has committed an act of incompetence, misconduct, or negligence."

1985—Pub. L. 99–36 substituted "certificate of registry," for first reference to "certificate,".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

§7704. Dangerous drugs as grounds for revocation

(a) If it is shown at a hearing under this chapter that a holder of a license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document issued under this part, within 10 years before the beginning of the proceedings, has been convicted of violating a dangerous drug law of the United States or of a State, the license, certificate, or document shall be suspended or revoked.

(b) If it is shown that a holder has been a user of, or addicted to, a dangerous drug, the license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document shall be revoked unless the holder provides satisfactory proof that the holder is cured.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 546; Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(9)(F), (G), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 68; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4103(a)(2)(B), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 511; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §402, Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1043; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3545(b), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2326.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
7704(a)	46:239a(a)
7704(b)	46:239b(b)(1)
7704(c)	46:239b(b)(2)

Section 7704 requires the Secretary to revoke the license, certificate, or document of any individual who has been convicted of a dangerous drug law within 10 years before the beginning of the suspension or revocation procedures. This section has expanded current law to incorporate violations involving "controlled substances" which are not narcotic. This includes PCP and LSD. Unless it can be done under existing law, the suspension or revocation of an individual's license based on the use of a "controlled substance" only applies to the use or conviction after the date of enactment of this Act.

This section also provides that anyone who has been a user of or addicted to a dangerous drug since July 14, 1954, may be subjected to revocation procedures unless the individual provides satisfactory proof of being cured.

In sections 7503(b)(2) and 7704(c), the term "use", when applying to "narcotic drugs" or "controlled substances", is not intended to include the use of "off the shelf" drugs or drugs acquired with a prescription lawfully issued by a medical doctor, as long as the drugs are used by the individual in the recommended amounts and the drugs will not impair the individual's ability to perform duties.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsecs. (a) to (c). Pub. L. 115–232 redesignated subsecs. (b) and (c) as (a) and (b), respectively.

2004—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 108–293 inserted "suspended or" after "shall be".

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101–380 struck out subsec. (a) which defined "dangerous drug" for purpose of this section as narcotic drug, controlled substance, and marihuana.

1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(9)(F), substituted "merchant mariner's document" for first reference to "document".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(9)(G), substituted "certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document" for "certificate, or document".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

§7704a. Sexual harassment or sexual assault as grounds for suspension or revocation

(a) SEXUAL HARASSMENT.—If it is shown at a hearing under this chapter that a holder of a license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document issued under this part, within 5 years before the beginning of the suspension and revocation proceedings, is the subject of an official finding of sexual harassment, then the license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document may be suspended or revoked.

(b) SEXUAL ASSAULT.—If it is shown at a hearing under this chapter that a holder of a license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document issued under this part, within 10 years before the beginning of the suspension and revocation proceedings, is the subject of an official finding of sexual assault, then the license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document shall be revoked.

(c) OFFICIAL FINDING.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—In this section, the term "official finding" means—

(A) a legal proceeding or agency finding or decision that determines the individual committed sexual harassment or sexual assault in violation of any Federal, State, local, or Tribal law or regulation; or

(B) a determination after an investigation by the Coast Guard that, by a preponderance of the evidence, the individual committed sexual harassment or sexual assault if the investigation affords appropriate due process rights to the subject of the investigation.

(2) ADMINISTRATIVE LAW JUDGE REVIEW.—

(A) COAST GUARD INVESTIGATION.—A determination under paragraph (1)(B) shall be reviewed and affirmed by an administrative law judge within the same proceeding as any suspension or revocation of a license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document under subsection (a) or (b).

(B) LEGAL PROCEEDING.—A determination under paragraph (1)(A) that an individual committed sexual harassment or sexual assault is conclusive in suspension and revocation proceedings.

(Added Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11603(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4147.)

§7705. Subpenas and oaths

(a) An official designated to investigate or preside at a hearing on matters that are grounds for suspension or revocation of licenses, certificates of registry, and merchant mariners' documents may administer oaths and issue subpenas to compel the attendance and testimony of witnesses and the production of records or other evidence during investigations and at hearings.

(b) The jurisdictional limits of a subpena issued under this section are the same as, and are enforceable in the same manner as, subpenas issued under chapter 63 of this title.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 547; Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(9)(H), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 68.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*

Section 7705 allows officials designated to investigate or preside at hearings on matters that are grounds for suspension and revocation proceedings to administer oaths and issue subpenas.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1985—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99–36 substituted "certificates of registry, and merchant mariners' documents" for "certificates, and documents".

§7706. Drug testing reporting

(a) RELEASE OF DRUG TEST RESULTS TO COAST GUARD.—Not later than 2 weeks after receiving from a Medical Review Officer a report of a verified positive drug test or verified test violation by a civilian employee of a Federal agency, an applicant for employment by a Federal agency, an officer in the Public Health Services, or an officer in the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Commissioned Officer Corps, who is employed in any capacity on board a vessel operated by the agency, the head of the agency shall release to the Commandant the report.

(b) STANDARDS, PROCEDURES, AND REGULATIONS.—The head of a Federal agency shall carry out a release under subsection (a) in accordance with the standards, procedures, and regulations applicable to the disclosure and reporting to the Coast Guard of drug tests results and drug test records of individuals employed on vessels documented under the laws of the United States.

(c) WAIVER.—Notwithstanding section 503(e) of the Supplemental Appropriations Act, 1987 (5 U.S.C. 7301 note), the report of a drug test of an employee or an applicant for employment by a Federal agency may be released under this section without the prior written consent of the employee or the applicant.

(Added Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §414(a), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1046; amended Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §304, Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3043; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3541(b)(13), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2323.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 503(e) of the Supplemental Appropriations Act, 1987, referred to in subsec. (c), is section 503(e) of Pub. L. 100–71, which is set out as a note under section 7301 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 115–232 struck out "of the Coast Guard" after "Commandant".

2014—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 113–281, §304(1), inserted "an applicant for employment by a Federal agency," after "Federal agency,".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 113–281, §304(2), inserted "or an applicant for employment by a Federal agency" after "an employee" and substituted "the employee or the applicant" for "the employee".

PART F—MANNING OF VESSELS

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Part F provides for the manning of vessels including requirements generally for the number of individuals required, qualifications and conditions of employment, and duties; for masters and other licenses and

registered individuals; for pilots; for unlicensed personnel; for small vessels; for tank vessels; and for pilotage on the Great Lakes. The Committee intends that all manning provisions throughout this subtitle will be interpreted to be consistent with one another.

CHAPTER 81—GENERAL

Sec.

8101. Complement of inspected vessels.
8102. Watchmen.
8103. Citizenship or noncitizen nationality and Navy Reserve requirements.
8104. Watches.
8105. Fishing vessel exemption.
8106. Riding gangs.
8107. Use of force against piracy.
[8108. Repealed.]

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 81 provides for the composition, citizenship, working hours, and other limitations affecting the complement of licensed individuals and crew on certain vessels, a safety watch onboard passenger vessels, membership in the Naval Reserve for certain deck and engineer officers, and penalties for violating, and regulatory authority for implementing its provisions.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(b)(3)(C), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1753, substituted "Citizenship or noncitizen nationality and Navy Reserve requirements" for "Citizenship and Navy Reserve requirements" in item 8103.

2018—Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(c)(3)(A), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4289, struck out item 8108 "Merchant Marine Personnel Advisory Committee".

2014—Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §310(b), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3047, added item 8108.

2010—Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §§903(c)(1), 912(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3011, 3017, inserted period at end of item 8106 and added item 8107.

2006—Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §312(d), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 534, added item 8106.

Pub. L. 109–163, div. A, title V, §515(f)(3)(C), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3236, substituted "Citizenship and Navy Reserve requirements" for "Citizenship and Naval Reserve requirements" in item 8103.

1996—Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1146(b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3993, added item 8105.

1990—Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §603(7)(B), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2993, struck out item 8105 "Regulations".

§8101. Complement of inspected vessels

(a) The certificate of inspection issued to a vessel under part B of this subtitle shall state the complement of licensed individuals and crew (including lifeboatmen) considered by the Secretary to be necessary for safe operation. A manning requirement imposed on—

(1) a sailing school vessel shall consider the participation of sailing school instructors and sailing school students in the operation of that vessel;

(2) a mobile offshore drilling unit shall consider the specialized nature of the unit; and

(3) a tank vessel shall consider the navigation, cargo handling, and maintenance functions of that vessel for protection of life, property, and the environment.

(b) The Secretary may modify the complement, by endorsement on the certificate, for reasons of changed conditions or employment.

(c) A requirement made under this section by an authorized official may be appealed to the

Secretary under prescribed regulations.

(d) A vessel to which this section applies may not be operated without having in its service the complement required in the certificate of inspection.

(e) When a vessel is deprived of the service of a member of its complement without the consent, fault, or collusion of the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of the vessel, the master shall engage, if obtainable, a number of members equal to the number of those of whose services the master has been deprived. The replacements must be of the same or a higher grade or rating than those whose places they fill. If the master finds the vessel is sufficiently manned for the voyage, and replacements are not available to fill all the vacancies, the vessel may proceed on its voyage. Within 12 hours after the vessel arrives at its destination, the master shall report in writing to the Secretary the cause of each deficiency in the complement. A master failing to make the report is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $1,000 for each deficiency.

(f) The owner, charterer, or managing operator of a vessel not manned as required by this section is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of $10,000.

(g) A person may not employ an individual as, and an individual may not serve as, a master, mate, engineer, radio officer, or pilot of a vessel to which this part applies or which is subject to inspection under chapter 33 of this title if the individual is not licensed by the Secretary. A person (including an individual) violating this subsection is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $10,000. Each day of a continuing violation is a separate offense.

(h) The owner, charterer, or managing operator of a freight vessel of less than 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title, a small passenger vessel, or a sailing school vessel not manned as required by this section is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of $1,000. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(i) When the 2 next most senior licensed officers on a vessel reasonably believe that the master or individual in charge of the vessel is under the influence of alcohol or a dangerous drug and is incapable of commanding the vessel, the next most senior master, mate, or operator licensed under section 7101(c)(1) or (3) of this title shall—

(1) temporarily relieve the master or individual in charge;

(2) temporarily take command of the vessel;

(3) in the case of a vessel required to have a log under chapter 113 of this title, immediately enter the details of the incident in the log; and

(4) report those details to the Secretary—

(A) by the most expeditious means available; and

(B) in written form transmitted within 12 hours after the vessel arrives at its next port.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 547; Pub. L. 98–557, §29(b), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2873; Pub. L. 99–640, §11(b), Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3550; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §§4104, 4114(c), 4302(e), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 511, 517, 538; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §725, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3939.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
8101	46:222 46:224 46:446d

Section 8101 provides for the required composition of the complement of licensed individuals and crew of an inspected vessel when being operated.

Subsection (a) requires that the certificate of inspection for a vessel state the manning necessary for safe navigation. Manning means the complement of licensed officers and crew (including lifeboatmen). Any manning requirements for sailing school vessels shall take into account the participation of sailing school

instructors and sailing school students in the operation of those vessels.

Subsection (b) permits the Secretary to modify the manning requirements for reasons of changed conditions or employment.

Subsection (c) permits an appeal to the Secretary of any manning requirements made by an authorized official.

Subsection (d) prohibits the operation of a vessel without the manning required in the vessel's certificate of inspection.

When a vessel has a vacancy in the manning required by its certificate of inspection without the consent, fault, or collusion of anyone responsible for the management or operation of the vessel, subsection (e) requires that the master hire replacements, if possible, in the same or higher grade or rating. However, if the master finds the vessel sufficiently manned and replacements are not available, the vessel may proceed on its voyage. Within 12 hours of arrival at its destination, the master is required to file a written report with the Secretary stating the cause of each deficiency or be liable for a civil penalty. The report of deficiency should include both the reason for the vacancy in the first instance and the reason for the unavailability of a qualified replacement.

Subsections (f), (g) and (h) prescribe civil penalties for noncompliance with manning requirements. Subsection (g) also prohibits the employment or service of an individual in a licensed capacity who is not licensed by the Secretary.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons".

1990—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 101–380, §4114(c), added par. (3).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(e)(1), substituted "$1,000" for "$50".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(e)(2), substituted "$10,000" for "$100, or, for a deficiency of a licensed individual, a penalty of $500".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(e)(3), substituted "$10,000" for "$500".

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 101–380, §4104, added subsec. (i).

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99–640 amended subsec. (a) generally, inserting cl. (1) designation before "a sailing school" and adding cl. (2).

1984—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 98–557 substituted provisions relating to inspection under chapter 33 of this title, for provisions relating to applicability of part B of this subtitle.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

§8102. Watchmen

(a) The owner, charterer, or managing operator of a vessel carrying passengers during the nighttime shall keep a suitable number of watchmen in the vicinity of the cabins or staterooms and on each deck to guard against and give alarm in case of a fire or other danger. An owner, charterer, or managing operator failing to provide watchmen required by this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $1,000.

(b) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a fish processing vessel of more than 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title shall keep a suitable number of watchmen trained in firefighting on board when hotwork is being done to guard against and give alarm in case of a fire.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 548; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(10), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 448; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §726, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3939.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
8102	46:470 46:471

Section 8102 requires the person responsible for the management of a vessel carrying passengers to have a suitable watch at night to guard against, and to sound an alarm in case of fire or other danger, or be liable for a civil penalty.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons".

1984—Pub. L. 98–364 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

§8103. Citizenship or noncitizen nationality and Navy Reserve requirements

(a) Except as otherwise provided in this title, only a citizen or noncitizen national of the United States may serve as master, chief engineer, radio officer, or officer in charge of a deck watch or engineering watch on a documented vessel.

(b)(1) Except as otherwise provided in this section, on a documented vessel—

(A) each unlicensed seaman must be—

(i) a citizen or noncitizen national of the United States;

(ii) an alien lawfully admitted to the United States for permanent residence; or

(iii) a foreign national who is enrolled in the United States Merchant Marine Academy; and

(B) not more than 25 percent of the total number of unlicensed seamen on the vessel may be aliens lawfully admitted to the United States for permanent residence.

(2) Paragraph (1) of this subsection does not apply to—

(A) a yacht;

(B) a fishing vessel fishing exclusively for highly migratory species (as that term is defined in section 3 of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1802)); and

(C) a fishing vessel fishing outside of the exclusive economic zone.

(3) The Secretary may waive a citizenship or noncitizen nationality requirement under this section, other than a requirement that applies to the master of a documented vessel, with respect to—

(A) an offshore supply vessel or other similarly engaged vessel of less than 1,600 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title that operates from a foreign port;

(B) a mobile offshore drilling unit or other vessel engaged in support of exploration, exploitation, or production of offshore mineral energy resources operating beyond the water above the outer Continental Shelf (as that term is defined in section 2(a) of the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act (43 U.S.C. 1331(a)); and

(C) any other vessel if the Secretary determines, after an investigation, that qualified seamen

who are citizens or noncitizen nationals of the United States are not available.

(c) On each departure of a vessel (except a passenger vessel) for which a construction differential subsidy has been granted, all of the seamen of the vessel must be citizens or noncitizen nationals of the United States.

(d)(1) On each departure of a passenger vessel for which a construction differential subsidy has been granted, at least 90 percent of the entire complement (including licensed individuals) must be citizens or noncitizen nationals of the United States.

(2) An individual not required by this subsection to be a citizen or noncitizen national of the United States may be engaged only if the individual has a declaration of intention to become a citizen or noncitizen national of the United States or other evidence of admission to the United States for permanent residence. An alien may be employed only in the steward's department of the passenger vessel.

(e) If a documented vessel is deprived for any reason of the services of an individual (except the master and the radio officer) when on a foreign voyage and a vacancy consequently occurs, until the vessel's return to a port at which in the most expeditious manner a replacement who is a citizen or noncitizen national of the United States can be obtained, an individual not a citizen or noncitizen national of the United States may serve in—

(1) the vacancy; or

(2) a vacancy resulting from the promotion of another individual to fill the original vacancy.

(f) A person employing an individual in violation of this section or a regulation prescribed under this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $500 for each individual so employed.

(g) A deck or engineer officer employed on a vessel on which an operating differential subsidy is paid, or employed on a vessel (except a vessel of the Coast Guard or Great Lakes St. Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation) owned or operated by the Department of Transportation or by a corporation organized or controlled by the Department, if eligible, shall be a member of the Navy Reserve.

(h) The President may—

(1) suspend any part of this section during a proclaimed national emergency; and

(2) when the needs of commerce require, suspend as far and for a period the President considers desirable, subsection (a) of this section for crews of vessels of the United States documented for foreign trade.

(i)(1) Except as provided in paragraph (3) of this subsection, each unlicensed seaman on a fishing, fish processing, or fish tender vessel that is engaged in the fisheries in the navigable waters of the United States or the exclusive economic zone must be—

(A) a citizen or noncitizen national of the United States;

(B) an alien lawfully admitted to the United States for permanent residence;

(C) any other alien allowed to be employed under the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.); or

(D) an alien allowed to be employed under the immigration laws of the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands if the vessel is permanently stationed at a port within the Commonwealth and the vessel is engaged in the fisheries within the exclusive economic zone surrounding the Commonwealth or another United States territory or possession.

(2) Not more than 25 percent of the unlicensed seamen on a vessel subject to paragraph (1) of this subsection may be aliens referred to in clause (C) of that paragraph.

(3) This subsection does not apply to a fishing vessel fishing exclusively for highly migratory species (as that term is defined in section 3 of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1802)).

(j) RIDING GANG MEMBER.—This section does not apply to an individual who is a riding gang

member.

(k) CREW REQUIREMENTS FOR LARGE PASSENGER VESSELS.—

(1) CITIZENSHIP AND NATIONALITY.—Each unlicensed seaman on a large passenger vessel shall be—

(A) a citizen or noncitizen national of the United States;

(B) an alien lawfully admitted to the United States for permanent residence;

(C) an alien allowed to be employed in the United States under the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.), including an alien crewman described in section 101(a)(15)(D)(i) of that Act (8 U.S.C. 1101(a)(15)(D)(i)), who meets the requirements of paragraph (3)(A) of this subsection; or

(D) a foreign national who is enrolled in the United States Merchant Marine Academy.

(2) PERCENTAGE LIMITATION FOR ALIEN SEAMEN.—

(A) Not more than 25 percent of the unlicensed seamen on a vessel described in paragraph (1) of this subsection may be aliens referred to in subparagraph (B) or (C) of that paragraph.

(B) Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), for the period beginning on the date of enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2025 and ending on December 31, 2065, not more than 50 percent of the unlicensed seamen on a vessel described in paragraph (1) may be aliens referred to in subparagraph (B) or (C) of such paragraph.

(3) SPECIAL RULES FOR CERTAIN UNLICENSED SEAMEN.—

(A) QUALIFICATIONS.—An unlicensed seaman described in paragraph (1)(C) of this subsection—

(i) shall have been employed, for a period of not less than 1 year, on a passenger vessel under the same common ownership or control as the vessel described in paragraph (1) of this subsection, as certified by the owner or managing operator of such vessel to the Secretary;

(ii) shall have no record of material disciplinary actions during such employment, as verified in writing by the owner or managing operator of such vessel to the Secretary;

(iii) shall have successfully completed a United States Government security check of the relevant domestic and international databases, as appropriate, or any other national security-related information or database;

(iv) shall have successfully undergone an employer background check—

(I) for which the owner or managing operator provides a signed report to the Secretary that describes the background checks undertaken that are reasonably and legally available to the owner or managing operator including personnel file information obtained from such seaman and from databases available to the public with respect to the seaman;

(II) that consisted of a search of all information reasonably available to the owner or managing operator in the seaman's country of citizenship and any other country in which the seaman receives employment referrals, or resides;

(III) that is kept on the vessel and available for inspection by the Secretary; and

(IV) the information derived from which is made available to the Secretary upon request; and

(v) may not be a citizen or temporary or permanent resident of a country designated by the United States as a sponsor of terrorism or any other country that the Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of State and the heads of other appropriate United States agencies, determines to be a security threat to the United States.

(B) RESTRICTIONS.—An unlicensed seaman described in paragraph (1)(C) of this subsection—

(i) may be employed only in the steward's department of the vessel; and

(ii) may not perform watchstanding, automated engine room duty watch, or vessel navigation functions.

(C) STATUS, DOCUMENTATION, AND EMPLOYMENT.—An unlicensed seaman described in subparagraph (C) or (D) of paragraph (1) of this subsection—

(i) is deemed to meet the nationality requirements necessary to qualify for a merchant mariner's document notwithstanding the requirements of part 12 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations;

(ii) is deemed to meet the proof-of-identity requirements necessary to qualify for a merchant mariner's document, as prescribed under regulations promulgated by the Secretary, if the seaman possesses—

(I) an unexpired passport issued by the government of the country of which the seaman is a citizen or subject; and

(II) an unexpired visa issued to the seaman, as described in paragraph (1)(C);

(iii) shall, if eligible, be issued a merchant mariner's document with an appropriate annotation reflecting the restrictions of subparagraph (B) of this paragraph; and

(iv) may be employed for a period of service on board not to exceed 36 months in the aggregate as a nonimmigrant crewman described in section 101(a)(15)(D)(i) of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1101(a)(15)(D)(i)) on vessels engaged in domestic voyages notwithstanding the departure requirements and time limitations of such section and section 252 of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1282) and the regulations and rules promulgated thereunder.

(4) MERCHANT MARINER'S DOCUMENT REQUIREMENTS NOT AFFECTED.—This subsection shall not be construed to affect any requirement under Federal law that an individual must hold a merchant mariner's document.

(5) DEFINITIONS.—In this subsection:

(A) STEWARD'S DEPARTMENT.—The term "steward's department" means the department that includes entertainment personnel and all service personnel, including wait staff, housekeeping staff, and galley workers, as defined in the vessel security plan approved by the Secretary pursuant to section 70103(c) of this title.

(B) LARGE PASSENGER VESSEL.—The term "large passenger vessel" means a vessel of more than 70,000 gross tons, as measured under section 14302 of this title, with capacity for at least 2,000 passengers and documented with a coastwise endorsement under chapter 121 of this title.

(l) NONCITIZEN NATIONAL DEFINED.—In this section, the term "noncitizen national" means an individual described in section 308 of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1408).

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 548; Pub. L. 100–239, §§5(a)(1), (2), (b)–(d)(1), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1780; Pub. L. 100–255, Mar. 4, 1988, 102 Stat. 23; Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §603(6), title VII, §711, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2993, 2997; Pub. L. 104–208, div. A, title I, §101(a) [title II, §211(b)], Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009, 3009–41; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §727, title XI, §1123, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3939, 3980; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §412, Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1046; Pub. L. 109–163, div. A, title V, §515(f)(3)(A), (B), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §312(c)(1), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 533; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(22), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1704; Pub. L. 109–364, div. C, title XXXV, §3509, Oct. 17, 2006, 120 Stat. 2518; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3529(d), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 604; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §§306(a)(6), 313(d), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 54, 59; Pub. L. 116–260, div. AA, title V, §512(c)(6)(B), Dec. 27, 2020, 134 Stat. 2757; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8505(b)(8), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4751; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(b)(2)(B), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1752.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
8103	46:221

46:236
46:672(h)
46:672a
46:690
46:1132

Section 8103 sets forth the requirements for citizenship and Naval Reserve membership for the complement on a vessel documented under the laws of the United States.

Subsection (a) requires that the master, chief engineer, or officer in charge of a deck or engineering watch on a United States documented vessel be a United States citizen.

Subsection (b) requires that 75 percent of the seamen, excluding licensed individuals, on a United States documented vessel be United States citizens, except for a fishing or whaling vessel or yacht. The Secretary may reduce the percentage if the Secretary decides on investigation that United States seamen are not available. This investigation and percentage reduction authority is the sole responsibility of the Secretary of Transportation and accordingly the Secretary is to make these decisions expeditiously, promptly, and independently so as not to be dependent on any other agency to make this reduction. The Committee believes the Secretary is capable of this decision and need not delay or fail to make the decision because some other agency does not have the information or would require an extended period to acquire that information. The phrase "for any reason" is used merely to emphasize the complete discretion of the Secretary in making this decision. In addition, because this decision is based on an investigation, formal procedures of the Administrative Procedure Act do not apply.

Subsections (c) and (d) provide that a vessel, except a passenger vessel, on departure from the United States that has been granted a construction or operating differential subsidy have a higher percentage citizenship requirement. Subsection (c) requires all of the crew and employees of a cargo vessel be United States citizens. Subsection (d) requires at least 90 percent of the entire complement of a passenger vessel be United States citizens. The phrase "including all licensed individuals" emphasizes that all licensed individuals are required to be United States citizens as required by subsection (a) and that they compose part of the 90 percent requirement under this subsection. Further, under subsection (d), the balance of the complement must be individuals who have a declaration of intention to become a United States citizen or evidence of admission to the United States as a permanent resident and may only be employed in the steward's department of the passenger vessel.

Except for the master, subsection (e) permits a non-United States citizen to fill a vacancy that occurs for any reason on a United States documented vessel during a foreign voyage until the vessel returns to a United States port where a United States citizen replacement can be obtained. The phrase "for any reason" is used merely for emphasis.

Subsection (f) provides for the penalty for violation of this section.

Subsection (g) requires a deck or engineer officer on a vessel that has been granted an operating differential subsidy or is under the control by the Department of Transportation to be, if eligible, a member of the Naval Reserve. This section does not apply to a vessel of the Coast Guard or the Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation.

Subsection (h) permits the President to suspend the requirements of this section during a proclaimed national emergency or the requirement of subsection (a) for United States vessels documented for foreign trade when the needs of commerce require.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Immigration and Nationality Act, referred to in subsecs. (i)(1)(C) and (k)(1)(C), is act June 27, 1952, ch. 477, 66 Stat. 163, which is classified principally to chapter 12 (§1101 et seq.) of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1101 of Title 8 and Tables.

The date of enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2025, referred to in subsec. (k)(2)(B), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 119–60, which was approved Dec. 18, 2025.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(b)(2)(B)(i), inserted "or noncitizen nationality" after "Citizenship" in section

catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(b)(2)(B)(ii), inserted "or noncitizen national" after "citizen".

Subsec. (b)(1)(A)(i). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(b)(2)(B)(iii)(I), inserted "or noncitizen national" after "citizen".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(b)(2)(B)(iii)(II), inserted "or noncitizen nationality" after "citizenship" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(3)(C). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(b)(2)(B)(iii)(III), inserted "or noncitizen nationals" after "citizens".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(b)(2)(B)(iv), inserted "or noncitizen nationals" after "citizens".

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(b)(2)(B)(v)(I), inserted "or noncitizen nationals" after "citizens".

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(b)(2)(B)(v)(II), inserted "or noncitizen national" after "citizen" in two places.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(b)(2)(B)(vi), inserted "or noncitizen national" after "citizen" in two places in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (i)(1)(A). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(b)(2)(B)(vii), inserted "or noncitizen national" after "citizen".

Subsec. (k)(1)(A). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(b)(2)(B)(viii)(I), inserted "or noncitizen national" after "citizen".

Subsec. (k)(2). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(b)(2)(B)(viii)(II), designated existing provisions as subpar. (A) and added subpar. (B).

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 119–60, §7301(b)(2)(B)(ix), added subsec. (l).

2021—Subsec. (k)(3)(C). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "merchant mariner's document" for "merchant mariners document" wherever appearing.

2020—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 116–260 substituted "Great Lakes St. Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation" for "Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation".

2016—Subsec. (b)(1)(A)(iii). Pub. L. 114–120, §306(a)(6), substituted "Academy; and" for "Academy."

Subsecs. (c), (d)(1). Pub. L. 114–120, §313(d), struck out "or operating" before "differential subsidy".

2008—Subsec. (k)(3)(C)(iv). Pub. L. 110–181 inserted "and section 252 of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1282)" after "limitations of such section".

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §515(f)(3)(B), substituted "Navy Reserve" for "Naval Reserve" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–304 substituted "Except as otherwise provided in this title, only" for "Only".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 109–163, §515(f)(3)(A), substituted "Navy Reserve" for "Naval Reserve".

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 109–241 added subsec. (j).

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 109–364 added subsec. (k).

2004—Subsec. (b)(1)(A). Pub. L. 108–293 amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows: "each unlicensed seaman must be a citizen of the United States or an alien lawfully admitted to the United States for permanent residence; and".

1996—Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 104–208 substituted "Magnuson-Stevens Fishery" for "Magnuson Fishery".

Subsec. (b)(3)(A). Pub. L. 104–324, §727, inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "1,600 gross tons".

Subsec. (i)(1)(D). Pub. L. 104–324, §1123, added subpar. (D).

Subsec. (i)(3). Pub. L. 104–208 substituted "Magnuson-Stevens Fishery" for "Magnuson Fishery".

1990—Subsec. (i)(3)(C). Pub. L. 101–595, §§603(6) and 711, amended subpar. (C) identically, substituting "Nationality" for "Naturalization".

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100–239, §5(a)(1), inserted "radio officer," after "chief engineer,".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100–255 substituted "section," for "subsection," in par. (3).

Pub. L. 100–239, §5(a)(2), amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: "On each departure of a documented vessel (except a fishing or whaling vessel or yacht) from a port of the United States, 75 percent of the seamen (excluding licensed individuals) must be citizens of the United States. If the Secretary decides, on investigation, that qualified citizen seamen are not available, the Secretary may reduce the percentage."

Subsecs. (c), (d)(1). Pub. L. 100–239, §5(b), struck out "from the United States" after "On each departure".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100–239, §5(c), inserted "and the radio officer" after "the master" and substituted "until the vessel's return to a port at which in the most expeditious manner" for "until the vessel's first return to a United States port at which".

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 100–239, §5(d)(1), added subsec. (i).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1996 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 104–208, div. A, title I, §101(a) [title II, §211(b)], Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009, 3009–41, provided that the amendment made by that section is effective 15 days after Oct. 11, 1996.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 100–239, §5(a)(3), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1780, provided that: "Paragraph (2) of this subsection [amending this section] is effective 30 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Jan. 11, 1988]."

Pub. L. 100–239, 5(d)(2), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1781, provided that: "This subsection [amending this section] is effective 360 days after the day of the enactment of this Act [Jan. 11, 1988]."

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

DISTANT WATER TUNA FLEET

Pub. L. 109–241, title IV, §421, July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 547, as amended by Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §904, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3011; Pub. L. 112–213, title VII, §701, Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1579; Pub. L. 113–281, title VI, §601, Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3060; Pub. L. 114–120, title VI, §601(a), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 79; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8507(f), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4754, provided that:

"(a) MANNING REQUIREMENTS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding section 8103(a) of title 46, United States Code, United States purse seine fishing vessels fishing exclusively for highly migratory species in the treaty area under a fishing license issued pursuant to the 1987 Treaty on Fisheries Between the Governments of Certain Pacific Islands States and the Government of the United States of America, or transiting to or from the treaty area exclusively for such purpose, may engage foreign citizens to meet the manning requirement (except for the master) until the date of expiration of this section if, after timely notice of a vacancy to meet the manning requirement, no United States citizen personnel are readily available to fill such vacancy.

"(2) DEFINITION.—In this subsection, the term 'treaty area' has the meaning given the term in the Treaty on Fisheries Between the Governments of Certain Pacific Island States and the Government of the United States of America as in effect on the date of the enactment of the Coast Guard and Maritime Transportation Act of 2006 (Public Law 109–241) [July 11, 2006].

"(b) LICENSING RESTRICTIONS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Subsection (a) only applies to a foreign citizen who holds a credential that is equivalent to the credential issued by the Coast Guard to a United States citizen for the position, with respect to requirements for experience, training, and other qualifications.

"(2) TREATMENT OF CREDENTIAL.—An equivalent credential under paragraph (1) shall be considered as meeting the requirements of section 8304 of title 46, United States Code, but only while a person holding the credential is in the service of the vessel to which this section applies.

"(c) EXPIRATION.—This section expires on the date the Treaty on Fisheries Between the Governments of Certain Pacific Island States and the Government of the United States of America ceases to have effect for any party under Article 13.6 of such treaty, as in effect on the date of enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2020 [Jan. 1, 2021].

"(d) REPORTS.—Not later than July 1 of each year until the date of expiration of this section, the Coast Guard and the National Marine Fisheries Service shall submit a report to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committees on Transportation and Infrastructure and Resources [now Natural Resources] of the House of Representatives, providing the following information on the United States purse seine fleet referred to in subsection (a):

"(1) The number and identity of vessels in the fleet using foreign citizens to meet manning requirements pursuant to this section and any marine casualties involving such vessel.

"(2) The number of vessels in the fishery under United States flag as of January 1 of the year in which the report is submitted, the percentage ownership or control of such vessels by non-United States citizens, and the nationality of such ownership or control.

"(3) Description of any transfers or sales of United States flag vessels in the previous calendar year,

and the disposition of such vessel, including whether the vessel was scrapped or sold, and, if sold, the nationality of the new owner and location of any fishery to which the vessel will be transferred.

"(4) Landings of tuna by vessels under flag in the 2 previous calendar years, including an assessment of landing trends, and a description of landing percentages and totals—

"(A) delivered to American Samoa and any other port in a State or territory of the United States; and

"(B) delivered to ports outside of a State or territory of the United States, including the identity of the port.

"(5) An evaluation of capacity and trends in the purse seine fleet fishing in the area covered by the South Pacific Regional Fisheries Treaty, and any transfer of capacity from such fleet or area to other fisheries, including those governed under the Western and Central Pacific Fisheries Convention and the Inter-American Tropical Tuna Convention."

APPLICATION OF SECTION TO FISHING VESSELS IN CALIFORNIA

Pub. L. 101–595, title III, §317, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2988, as amended by Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §301(d)(2)(B), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3916, provided that:

"(a) DEFINITION.—For purposes of the application of sections 8103(a), 12102, 12110, 12111, and 12122(b) of title 46, United States Code, to a fishing vessel operating in waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States off the coast of the State of California, the term 'citizen of the United States' includes an alien lawfully admitted to the United States for permanent residence.

"(b) TERMINATION.—This section shall terminate on October 1, 2000."

§8104. Watches

(a) An owner, charterer, managing operator, master, individual in charge, or other person having authority may permit an officer to take charge of the deck watch on a vessel when leaving or immediately after leaving port only if the officer has been off duty for at least 6 hours within the 12 hours immediately before the time of leaving.

(b) On an oceangoing or coastwise vessel of not more than 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title (except a fishing, fish processing, or fish tender vessel), a licensed individual may not be required to work more than 9 of 24 hours when in port, including the date of arrival, or more than 12 of 24 hours at sea, except in an emergency when life or property are endangered.

(c) On a towing vessel (except a towing vessel operated only for fishing, fish processing, fish tender, or engaged in salvage operations) operating on the Great Lakes, harbors of the Great Lakes, and connecting or tributary waters between Gary, Indiana, Duluth, Minnesota, Niagara Falls, New York, and Ogdensburg, New York, an individual in the deck or engine department may not be required to work more than 8 hours in one day or permitted to work more than 15 hours in any 24-hour period, or more than 36 hours in any 72-hour period, except in an emergency when life or property are endangered.

(d) On a merchant vessel of more than 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title (except a vessel only operating on rivers, harbors, lakes (except the Great Lakes), bays, sounds, bayous, and canals, a fishing, fish tender, or whaling vessel, a fish processing vessel of not more than 5,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title, yacht, or vessel engaged in salvage operations), the licensed individuals, sailors, and oilers shall be divided, when at sea, into at least 3 watches, and shall be kept on duty successively to perform ordinary work incident to the operation and management of the vessel. The requirement of this subsection applies to radio officers only when at least 3 radio officers are employed. An individual in the deck or engine department may not be required to work more than 8 hours in one day.

(e) On a vessel designated by subsection (d) of this section—

(1) an individual may not be—

(A) engaged to work alternately in the deck and engine departments; or

(B) required to work in the engine department if engaged for deck department duty or required to work in the deck department if engaged for engine department duty;

(2) an individual may not be required to do unnecessary work on Sundays, New Year's Day, July 4th, Labor Day, Thanksgiving Day, or Christmas Day, when the vessel is in a safe harbor, but this clause does not prevent dispatch of a vessel on a voyage; and

(3) when the vessel is in a safe harbor, 8 hours (including anchor watch) is a day's work.

(f) Subsections (d) and (e) of this section do not limit the authority of the master or other officer or the obedience of the seamen when, in the judgment of the master or other officer, any part of the crew is needed for—

(1) maneuvering, shifting the berth of, mooring, or unmooring, the vessel;

(2) performing work necessary for the safety of the vessel, or the vessel's passengers, crew, or cargo;

(3) saving life on board another vessel in jeopardy; or

(4) performing fire, lifeboat, or other drills in port or at sea.

(g)(1) On a towing vessel, an offshore supply vessel, or a barge to which this section applies, that is engaged on a voyage of less than 600 miles, the licensed individuals and crewmembers may be divided, when at sea, into at least 2 watches.

(2) Paragraph (1) applies to an offshore supply vessel of at least 6,000 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of this title if the individuals engaged on the vessel are in compliance with hours of service requirements (including recording and recordkeeping of that service) as prescribed by the Secretary.

(h) On a vessel to which section 8904 of this title applies, an individual licensed to operate a towing vessel may not work for more than 12 hours in a consecutive 24-hour period except in an emergency.

(i) A person violating subsection (a) or (b) of this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $10,000.

(j) The owner, charterer, or managing operator of a vessel on which a violation of subsection (c), (d), (e), or (h) of this section occurs is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of $10,000. The individual is entitled to discharge from the vessel and receipt of wages earned.

(k) On a fish processing vessel subject to inspection under part B of this subtitle, the licensed individuals and deck crew shall be divided, when at sea, into at least 3 watches.

(l) Except as provided in subsection (k) of this section, on a fish processing vessel, the licensed individuals and deck crew shall be divided, when at sea, into at least 2 watches if the vessel—

(1) entered into service before January 1, 1988, and is more than 1,600 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title; or

(2) entered into service after December 31, 1987, and has more than 16 individuals on board primarily employed in the preparation of fish or fish products.

(m) This section does not apply to a fish processing vessel—

(1) entered into service before January 1, 1988, and not more than 1,600 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title; or

(2) entered into service after December 31, 1987, and having not more than 16 individuals on board primarily employed in the preparation of fish or fish products.

(n) On a tanker, a licensed individual or seaman may not be permitted to work more than 15 hours in any 24-hour period, or more than 36 hours in any 72-hour period, except in an emergency or a drill. In this subsection, "work" includes any administrative duties associated with the vessel whether

performed on board the vessel or onshore.

(o)(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2) of this subsection, on a fish tender vessel of not more than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or less than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or is less than 2,500 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of this title engaged in the Aleutian trade, the licensed individuals and crewmembers shall be divided, when at sea, into at least 3 watches.

(2) On a fish tender vessel of not more than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or less than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or is less than 2,500 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of this title engaged in the Aleutian trade, the licensed individuals and crewmembers shall be divided, when at sea, into at least 2 watches, if the vessel—

(A) before September 8, 1990, operated in that trade; or

(B)(i) before September 8, 1990, was purchased to be used in that trade; and

(ii) before June 1, 1992, entered into service in that trade.

(p) The Secretary may prescribe the watchstanding and work hours requirements for an oil spill response vessel.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 549; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(11), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 448; Pub. L. 98–557, §33(c), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2876; Pub. L. 99–307, §1(12), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 445; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §§4114(b), 4302(f), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 517, 538; Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §602(e)(1), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2991; Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5212, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5077; Pub. L. 103–206, title III, §322(a), Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2428; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §728, title XI, §§1104(c), 1114, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3939, 3967, 3971; Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §311(b), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 530; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §617(d), title IX, §903(a)(1), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2973, 3010; Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §316, Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3050; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8505(b)(9), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4751.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
8104	46:235 46:405(b) 46:673

Section 8104 prescribes certain working hours and conditions under which working hours are set. The Committee intends that these sections be interpreted in a manner consistent with one another.

Subsection (a) permits an individual to take charge of the deck watch on leaving port and immediately thereafter only if the individual has been off duty for 6 of the 12 hours immediately prior to departure.

Subsection (b) prohibits a licensed individual from being required to work more than 9 of 24 hours in port or more than 12 of 24 hours at sea on an oceangoing or coastwise vessel of not more than 100 gross tons, except in an emergency.

Subsection (c) prescribes a maximum 8-hour day for licensed individuals and seamen on towing vessels operating on the Great Lakes and certain connecting or tributary waters.

Subsection (d) requires certain members of the complement of certain merchant vessels of more than 100 gross tons to be divided into at least 3 successive watches when at sea. This requirement applies to radio officers only when at least 3 radio officers are employed. Subsection (d) also prescribes a maximum 8-hour work day for licensed individuals and seamen on these vessels.

For the Great Lakes towing vessels and merchant vessels in subsections (c) and (d), subsection (e) requires that seamen be hired only for work in either the deck or the engine department. When in a safe harbor, seamen may be required to do only necessary work on Sundays and certain holidays, unless the vessel is getting underway on a voyage. Further, when in a safe harbor, this subsection restates the maximum 8-hour work day which applies even for anchor watch.

Subsection (f) states that the limitations in subsections (d) and (e) do not apply if the master or other officer

decides the crew is needed for certain routine, safety, or rescue activities.

Subsection (g) provides that for a towing vessel (except a Great Lakes towing vessel under subsection (c)), offshore supply vessel, or barge on a voyage of less than 600 miles, the licensed officers and certain crewmembers may be divided into not less than two watches when at sea.

Subsection (h) provides that the licensed operator for a towing vessel at least 26 feet long may not be required to work more than 12 of 24 hours, except in an emergency.

Subsections (i) and (j) prescribe penalties for violations of the provisions of this section and, in certain instances, entitles the seaman to discharge and payment of wages.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 116–283, §8505(b)(9)(A), substituted "an individual" for "a licensed individual or seaman".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 116–283, §8505(b)(9)(B), substituted "An individual" for "A licensed individual or seaman".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 116–283, §8505(b)(9)(C), substituted "an individual" for "a seaman" in pars. (1) and (2).

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 116–283, §8505(b)(9)(D), substituted "individual" for "seaman".

2014—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 113–281, §316(1), substituted "and oilers" for "coal passers, firemen, oilers, and water tenders".

Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 113–281, §316(2), struck out "(except the coal passers, firemen, oilers, and water tenders)" after "crewmembers".

2010—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111–281, §617(d), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

Subsec. (o). Pub. L. 111–281, §903(a)(1), made technical amendment to directory language of Pub. L. 109–241, §311(b). See 2006 Amendment note below.

2006—Subsec. (o). Pub. L. 109–241, as amended by Pub. L. 111–281, §903(a)(1), substituted "or less than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or is less than 2,500 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of this title" for "or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" in pars. (1) and (2).

1996—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 104–324, §728(1), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 104–324, §1114(a), struck out "or permitted" after "required" and inserted "or permitted to work more than 15 hours in any 24-hour period, or more than 36 hours in any 72-hour period" after "day".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 104–324, §728(2), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons" and after "5,000 gross tons".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 104–324, §1114(b), substituted "subsection (d)" for "subsections (c) and (d)" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 104–324, §1114(c), struck out "(except a vessel to which subsection (c) of this section applies)" after "On a towing vessel".

Subsec. (l)(1). Pub. L. 104–324, §728(3), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "1,600 gross tons".

Subsec. (m)(1). Pub. L. 104–324, §728(4), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "1,600 gross tons".

Subsec. (o)(1). Pub. L. 104–324, §728(5), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "500 gross tons".

Subsec. (o)(2). Pub. L. 104–324, §728(6), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "500 gross tons".

Subsec. (p). Pub. L. 104–324, §1104(c), amended subsec. (p) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (p) read as follows: "On a vessel used only to respond to a discharge of oil or a hazardous substance, the licensed individuals and crewmembers may be divided into at least two watches when the vessel is engaged in an

operation less than 12 hours in duration."

1993—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 103–206, §322(a)(1), struck out "a vessel used only to respond to a discharge of oil or a hazardous substance," after "an offshore supply vessel,".

Subsec. (p). Pub. L. 103–206, §322(a)(2), added subsec. (p).

1992—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 102–587, §5212(1), inserted "a vessel used only to respond to a discharge of oil or a hazardous substance," after "an offshore supply vessel,".

Subsecs. (n), (o). Pub. L. 102–587, §5212(2), redesignated subsec. (n), relating to fish tender vessels of not more than 500 gross tons engaged in Aleutian trade, as (o).

1990—Subsecs. (i), (j). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(f), substituted "$10,000" for "$100" in subsec. (i) and for "$500" in subsec. (j).

Subsec. (n). Pub. L. 101–595 added subsec. (n) relating to fish tender vessels of not more than 500 gross tons engaged in Aleutian trade.

Pub. L. 101–380, §4114(b), added subsec. (n) relating to tankers.

1986—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 99–307 substituted "watches" for "watchers".

1984—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 98–364, §402(11)(A), substituted "100 gross tons (except a fishing, fish processing, or fish tender vessel)" for "100 gross tons".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98–364, §402(11)(B), substituted "fishing, fish processing, fish tender," for "fishing".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 98–364, §402(11)(C), substituted "a fishing, fish tender, or whaling vessel, a fish processing vessel of not more than 5,000 gross tons" for "a fishing or whaling vessel".

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 98–557 substituted "shall" for "may".

Pub. L. 98–364, §402(11)(D), added subsec. (k).

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 98–557 substituted "shall" for "may" in provisions preceding par. (1).

Pub. L. 98–364, §402(11)(D), added subsec. (l).

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 98–364, §402(11)(D), added subsec. (m).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §903(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3010, provided that the amendment by section 903(a)(1) is effective with enactment of Pub. L. 109–241.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

ARTICULATED TUG-BARGE MANNING

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11508, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4137, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding the watch setting requirements set forth in section 8104 of title 46, United States Code, the Secretary shall authorize an Officer in Charge, Marine Inspection to issue an amended certificate of inspection that does not require engine room watch setting to inspected towing vessels certificated prior to July 19, 2022, forming part of an articulated tug-barge unit, provided that such vessels are equipped with engineering control and monitoring systems of a type accepted for no engine room watch setting under a previously approved minimum safe manning document or certificate of inspection for articulated tug-barge units.

"(b) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

"(1) CERTIFICATE OF INSPECTION.—The term 'certificate of inspection' means a certificate of inspection under subchapter M of chapter I of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations.

"(2) INSPECTED TOWING VESSEL.—The term 'inspected towing vessel' means a vessel issued a certificate of inspection."

[For definition of "Secretary" as used in section 11598 of Pub. L. 117–263, set out above, see section 11002 of Pub. L. 117–263, set out as a note under section 106 of Title 14, Coast Guard.]

§8105. Fishing vessel exemption

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, neither the International Convention on Standards of Training, Certification and Watchkeeping for Seafarers, 1978, nor any amendment to such

convention, shall apply to a fishing vessel, including a fishing vessel used as a fish tender vessel. (Added Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1146(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3992.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 8105, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 550, authorized Secretary to prescribe regulations to carry out this part prior to repeal by Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §603(7)(A), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2993.

§8106. Riding gangs

(a) IN GENERAL.—The owner or managing operator of a freight vessel of the United States on voyages covered by the International Convention for Safety of Life at Sea, 1974 (32 UST 47m) shall—

(1) ensure that—

(A) subject to subsection (d), each riding gang member on the vessel—

(i) is a United States citizen or an alien lawfully admitted to the United States for permanent residence; or

(ii) possesses a United States nonimmigrant visa for individuals desiring to enter the United States temporarily for business, employment-related and personal identifying information, and any other documentation required by the Secretary;

(B) all required documentation for such member is kept on the vessel and available for inspection by the Secretary; and

(C) each riding gang member is identified on the vessel's crew list;

(2) ensure that—

(A) the owner or managing operator attests in a certificate that the background of each riding gang member has been examined and found to be free of any credible information indicating a material risk to the security of the vessel, the vessel's cargo, the ports the vessel visits, or other individuals onboard the vessel;

(B) the background check consisted of a search of all information reasonably available to the owner or managing operator in the riding gang member's country of citizenship and any other country in which the riding gang member works, receives employment referrals, or resides;

(C) the certificate required under subparagraph (A) is kept on the vessel and available for inspection by the Secretary; and

(D) the information derived from any such background check is made available to the Secretary upon request;

(3) ensure that each riding gang member, while on board the vessel, is subject to the same random chemical testing and reporting regimes as crew members;

(4) ensure that each such riding gang member receives basic safety familiarization and basic safety training approved by the Coast Guard as satisfying the requirements for such training under the International Convention of Training, Certification, and Watchkeeping for Seafarers, 1978;

(5) prevent from boarding the vessel, or cause the removal from the vessel at the first available port, and disqualify from future service on board any other vessel owned or operated by that owner or operator, any riding gang member—

(A) who has been convicted in any jurisdiction of an offense described in paragraph (2) or (3) of section 7703;

(B) whose license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document has been suspended or revoked under section 7704; or

(C) who otherwise constitutes a threat to the safety of the vessel;

(6) ensure and certify to the Secretary that the sum of—

(A) the number of riding gang members on board a freight vessel, and

(B) the number of individuals in addition to crew permitted under section 3304,

does not exceed 12;

(7) ensure that every riding gang member is employed on board the vessel under conditions that meet or exceed the minimum international standards of all applicable international labor conventions to which the United States is a party, including all of the merchant seamen protection and relief provided under United States law; and

(8) ensure that each riding gang member—

(A) is supervised by an individual who holds a license issued under chapter 71; and

(B) only performs work in conjunction with individuals who hold merchant mariners documents issued under chapter 73 and who are part of the vessel's crew.

(b) PERMITTED WORK.—Subject to subsection (f), a riding gang member on board a vessel to which subsection (a) applies who is neither a United States citizen nor an alien lawfully admitted to the United States for permanent residence may not perform any work on board the vessel other than—

(1) work in preparation of a vessel entering a shipyard located outside of the United States;

(2) completion of the residual repairs after departing a shipyard located outside of the United States; or

(3) technical in-voyage repairs, in excess of any repairs that can be performed by the vessel's crew, in order to advance the vessel's useful life without having to actually enter a shipyard.

(c) WORKDAY LIMIT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The maximum number of days in any calendar year that the owner or operator of a vessel to which subsection (a) applies may employ on board riding gang members who are neither United States citizens nor aliens lawfully admitted to the United States for permanent residence for work on board that vessel is 60 days. If the vessel is at sea on the 60th day, each riding gang member shall be discharged from the vessel at the next port of call reached by the vessel after the date on which the 60-workday limit is reached.

(2) CALCULATION.—For the purpose of calculating the 60-workday limit under this subsection, each day worked by a riding gang member who is neither a United States citizen nor an alien lawfully admitted to the United States for permanent residence shall be counted against the limitation.

(d) EXCEPTIONS FOR WARRANTY WORK.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Subsections (b), (c), (e), and (f) do not apply to a riding gang member employed exclusively to perform, and who performs only, work that is—

(A) customarily performed by original equipment manufacturers' technical representatives;

(B) required by a manufacturer's warranty on specific machinery and equipment; or

(C) required by a contractual guarantee or warranty on actual repairs performed in a shipyard located outside of the United States.

(2) CITIZENSHIP REQUIREMENT.—Subsection (a)(1)(A) applies only to a riding gang member described in paragraph (1) who is on the vessel when it calls at a United States port.

(e) RECORDKEEPING.—In addition to the requirements of subsection (a), the owner or managing operator of a vessel to which subsection (a) applies shall ensure that all information necessary to ensure compliance with this section, as determined by the Secretary, is entered into the vessel's official logbook required by chapter 113.

(f) FAILURE TO EMPLOY QUALIFIED AVAILABLE U.S. CITIZENS OR RESIDENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The owner or operator of a vessel to which subsection (a) applies may not employ a riding gang member who is neither a United States citizen nor an alien lawfully admitted to the United States for permanent residence to perform work described in subsection (b) unless the owner or operator determines, in accordance with procedures established by the Secretary to carry out section 8103(b)(3)(C), that there is not a sufficient number of United States citizens or individuals lawfully admitted to the United States for permanent residence who are qualified and available for the work for which the riding gang member is to be employed.

(2) CIVIL PENALTY.—A violation of paragraph (1) is punishable by a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 for each day during which the violation continues.

(3) CONTINUING VIOLATIONS.—The maximum amount of a civil penalty for a violation under this subsection shall be $100,000.

(4) DETERMINATION OF AMOUNT.—In determining the amount of the penalty, the Secretary shall take into account the nature, circumstances, extent, and gravity of the violation committed and, with respect to the violator, the degree of culpability, the history of prior offenses, the ability to pay, and such other matters as justice may require.

(5) COMPROMISE, MODIFICATION, AND REMITTAL.—The Secretary may compromise, modify, or remit, with or without conditions, any civil penalty imposed under this section.

(Added Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §312(a), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 530; amended Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(g), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2326.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (f)(3). Pub. L. 115–232 added par. (3) and struck out former par. (3) which related to continuing violations in fiscal years 2006 and 2007 and after fiscal year 2007.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

INTERNATIONAL CONVENTION FOR SAFETY OF LIFE AT SEA

For International Conventions for the Safety of Life at Sea to which the United States has been a party, see section 1602 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters, and notes thereunder.

§8107. Use of force against piracy

(a) LIMITATION ON LIABILITY.—An owner, operator, time charterer, master, mariner, or individual who uses force or authorizes the use of force to defend a vessel of the United States against an act of piracy shall not be liable for monetary damages for any injury or death caused by such force to any person engaging in an act of piracy if such force was in accordance with standard rules for the use of force in self-defense of vessels prescribed by the Secretary.

(b) PROMOTION OF COORDINATED ACTION.—To carry out the purpose of this section, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall work through the International Maritime Organization to establish agreements to promote coordinated action among flag- and port-states to deter, protect against, and rapidly respond to piracy against the vessels of, and in the waters under the jurisdiction of, those nations, and to ensure limitations on liability similar to those established by subsection (a).

(c) DEFINITION.—For the purpose of this section, the term "act of piracy" means any act of aggression, search, restraint, depredation, or seizure attempted against a vessel of the United States by an individual not authorized by the United States, a foreign government, or an international organization recognized by the United States to enforce law on the high seas.

(Added Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §912(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3016.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

STANDARD RULES FOR THE USE OF FORCE FOR SELF-DEFENSE OF VESSELS OF THE UNITED STATES

Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §912(c), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3017, provided that: "Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this act [Oct. 15, 2010], the secretary [sic] of the department in which the coast guard [sic] is operating, in consultation with representatives of industry and labor, shall develop standard rules for the use of force for self-defense of vessels of the United States."

[§8108. Repealed. Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(c)(3)(A), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4289]

Section, added Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §310(a), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3045; amended Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3541(b)(14), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2323, established the Merchant Marine Personnel Advisory Committee. See section 15103 of this title.

CHAPTER 83—MASTERS AND OFFICERS

Sec.

8301. Minimum number of licensed individuals.
8302. Staff department.
[8303. Repealed.]
8304. Implementing the Officers' Competency Certificates Convention, 1936.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

For certain vessels of the United States, chapter 83 prescribes the minimum number of licensed individuals (including masters), establishes the staff department consisting of medical and clerical personnel, restricts service under certain licenses issued without examination, and implements the Officers' Competency Certificates Convention of 1936.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8503(a)(1), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4747, struck out item 8303 "Service under licenses issued without examination".

§8301. Minimum number of licensed individuals

(a) Except as provided in chapter 89 of this title and except for a vessel operating only on rivers, harbors, lakes (except the Great Lakes), bays, sounds, bayous, and canals, a vessel subject to inspection under chapter 33 of this title shall engage a minimum of licensed individuals as follows:

(1) Each of those vessels propelled by machinery or carrying passengers shall have a licensed master.

(2) A vessel of at least 1,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title and propelled by machinery shall have 3 licensed mates, except—

(A) in the case of a vessel other than a mobile offshore drilling unit, if on a voyage of less than 400 miles from port of departure to port of final destination, the vessel shall have 2 licensed mates; and

(B) in the case of a mobile offshore drilling unit, the vessel shall have licensed individuals as provided by regulations prescribed by the Secretary under section 8101 of this title.

(3) A vessel of at least 200 gross tons but less than 1,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed

by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title and propelled by machinery shall have 2 licensed mates.

(4) A vessel of at least 100 gross tons but less than 200 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title and propelled by machinery shall have one licensed mate. However, if the vessel is on a voyage of more than 24 hours, it shall have 2 licensed mates.

(5) A freight vessel or a passenger vessel of at least 300 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title and propelled by machinery shall have a licensed engineer.

(b)(1) An offshore supply vessel of less than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title or 6,000 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of this title on a voyage of less than 600 miles shall have a licensed mate. If the vessel is on a voyage of at least 600 miles, however, the vessel shall have 2 licensed mates.

(2) An offshore supply vessel of at least 6,000 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of this title on a voyage of less than 600 miles shall have at least two licensed mates, provided the offshore supply vessel meets the requirements of section 8104(g)(2). An offshore supply vessel of at least 6,000 gross tons as measured under section 14302 of this title on a voyage of at least 600 miles shall have three licensed mates.

(3) An offshore supply vessel of more than 200 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title, may not be operated without a licensed engineer.

(c) Subsection (a) of this section does not apply to a fishing or whaling vessel, a mobile offshore drilling unit when on location, or a yacht.

(d) The Secretary may—

(1) suspend any part of this chapter during a national emergency proclaimed by the President; and

(2) increase the number of licensed individuals on a vessel to which this chapter applies if, in the Secretary's judgment, the vessel is not sufficiently manned for safe operation.

(e) The Secretary may prescribe the minimum number of licensed individuals for an oil spill response vessel.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 550; Pub. L. 98–557, §29(c), (d), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2873, 2874; Pub. L. 99–640, §11(d), Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3550; Pub. L. 100–448, §7, Sept. 28, 1988, 102 Stat. 1842; Pub. L. 103–206, title III, §322(b), Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2428; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §729, title XI, §1104(d), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3940, 3967; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §617(c), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2973.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
8301	46:223 46:404–1(8)

Section 8301 prescribes the minimum number of licensed individuals on board certain vessels based on the vessel's size or propulsion, length of voyage by distance or time, or any combination of these factors.

Subsection (a) applies to certain merchant and passenger carrying vessels of the United States, each of which must have a licensed master regardless of the factors listed above. Subsection (b) applies to offshore supply vessels. Subsection (c) exempts fishing or whaling vessels or yachts from these requirements.

Subsection (d) permits the Secretary to suspend any part of this chapter during a declared national emergency or to increase the number of licensed individuals required by this chapter if required for safe

operation of a vessel.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–281 amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: "An offshore supply vessel on a voyage of less than 600 miles shall have a licensed mate. However, if the vessel is on a voyage of at least 600 miles, the vessel shall have 2 licensed mates. An offshore supply vessel of more than 200 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title may not be operated without a licensed engineer."

1996—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 104–324, §729(1), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "1,000 gross tons".

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 104–324, §729(2), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "1,000 gross tons".

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 104–324, §729(3), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "200 gross tons".

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 104–324, §729(4), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "300 gross tons".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 104–324, §729(5), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "200 gross tons".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 104–324, §1104(d), amended subsec. (e) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (e) read as follows: "A vessel used only to respond to a discharge of oil or a hazardous substance shall have—

"(1) two licensed mates when the vessel is engaged in an operation over 12 hours in duration;

"(2) one licensed mate when the vessel is engaged in an operation less than 12 hours in duration; and

"(3) if the vessel is more than 200 gross tons, a licensed engineer when the vessel is operating."

1993—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 103–206 added subsec. (e).

1988—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 100–448 amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "A vessel of at least 1,000 gross tons and propelled by machinery shall have 3 licensed mates. However, if the vessel is on a voyage of less than 400 miles from port of departure to port of final destination, it shall have 2 licensed mates."

1986—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99–640 inserted ", a mobile offshore drilling unit when on location,".

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98–557, §29(c), in provisions preceding par. (1) inserted exception for the Great Lakes and substituted provisions relating to inspection under chapter 33 of this title for provisions relating to applicability of part B of this subtitle.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 98–557, §29(d), inserted "propelled by machinery or carrying passengers".

§8302. Staff department

(a) This section applies to a vessel of the United States except—

(1) a fishing or whaling vessel or a yacht;

(2) a vessel operated only on bays, sounds, inland waters, and lakes (except the Great Lakes); and

(3) a vessel ferrying passengers and cars on the Great Lakes.

(b) The staff department on a vessel is a separate and independent department. It consists of individuals registered under section 7101 of this title, clerks, and individuals assigned to the senior registered medical doctor.

(c) The staff department is composed of a medical division and a purser's division. The officer in charge of each division is responsible only to the master. The senior registered medical doctor is in charge of the medical division. The senior registered purser is in charge of the purser's division.

(d) The officer in charge of the purser's division of the staff department on an oceangoing passenger vessel licensed to carry more than 100 passengers shall be a registered chief purser. When more than 3 individuals are employed in the purser's division of that vessel, there also shall be at least one registered senior assistant purser and one registered junior assistant purser.

(e) A person may not employ an individual to serve in, and an individual may not serve in, a grade of staff officer on a vessel, when that staff officer is required by this section to be registered, if the individual does not have a certificate of registry as staff officer in that grade. A person (including an individual) violating this subsection is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $100. However, if a registered staff officer is not available at the time of sailing, the vessel may sail with an unregistered staff officer or without a staff officer.

(f) A staff officer may not be included in a vessel's certificate of inspection.

(g) A registered staff officer serving under this section who is a member of the Navy Reserve may wear on the officer's uniform special distinguishing insignia prescribed by the Secretary of the Navy.

(h) The uniform stripes, decoration, or other insignia worn by a staff officer shall be of gold braid or woven gold or silver material. A crewmember (except a staff officer) may not wear any uniform with a staff officer's identifying insignia.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 551; Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(4), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 67; Pub. L. 109–163, div. A, title V, §515(f)(3)(A), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8505(b)(10), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4751.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
8302(a)–(d)	46:242 46:248
8302(e), (f)	46:246(a)
8302(g)	46:245(a)
8302(h)	46:245(b)

Section 8302 sets forth the organization and manning requirements of the staff department of a vessel. The staff department has medical and clerical responsibilities.

Subsection (a) applies this section to every United States vessel except a yacht, a fishing, whaling, or certain types of inland waterway vessel, and a ferry carrying passengers or cars on the Great Lakes. A ferry is a vessel that primarily carries passengers, cars, or trains from shore to shore as a means to connect existing points on a transportation route so that the same type of transportation mode may continue to be used upon arrival at either point. Vessels carrying cars as cargo would not be included in this type of vessel.

Subsection (b) establishes the staff department as a separate one consisting of registered individuals (pursers, medical doctors, and professional nurses), clerks, and medical assistants. Subsection (c) divides the department into a medical division and a purser's division and designates the individual in charge of each division. Subsection (d) prescribes particular requirements of the purser's division based on size of the vessel or number of individuals employed in the division.

Subsection (e) prohibits the employment or service of an individual who is not registered or of the grade as required under this section and prescribes a penalty for violation of the subsection. This penalty applies to both the employer and the individual employed. If a registered staff officer is unavailable at the time of departure for a voyage, the vessel may proceed on its voyage with either an unregistered staff officer or without a staff officer.

Subsection (f) prohibits including a staff officer on a vessel's certificate of inspection.

Subsections (g) and (h) prescribe the type and restrictions for the uniform accouterments of a staff officer.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "3 individuals" for "3 persons".

2006—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 109–163 substituted "Navy Reserve" for "Naval Reserve".

1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99–36 inserted a comma after "clerks".

[§8303. Repealed. Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8503(a)(1), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4747]

Section, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 552, related to individuals issued a license without examination before Oct. 29, 1941.

§8304. Implementing the Officers' Competency Certificates Convention, 1936

(a) In this section, "high seas" means waters seaward of the Boundary Line.

(b) The Officers' Competency Certificates Convention, 1936 (International Labor Organization Draft Convention Numbered 53, on the minimum requirement of professional capacity for masters and officers on board merchant vessels), as ratified by the President on September 1, 1938, with understandings appended, and this section apply to a documented vessel operating on the high seas except—

(1) a public vessel;

(2) a wooden vessel of primitive build, such as a dhow or junk;

(3) a barge; and

(4) a vessel of less than 200 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title.

(c) A person may not engage or employ an individual to serve as, and an individual may not serve as, a master, mate, or engineer on a vessel to which this section applies, if the individual does not have a license issued under section 7101 of this title authorizing service in the capacity in which the individual is to be engaged or employed.

(d) A person (including an individual) violating this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $100.

(e) A license issued to an individual to whom this section applies is a certificate of competency.

(f) A designated official may detain a vessel to which this section applies (by written order served on the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of the vessel) when there is reason to believe that the vessel is about to proceed from a port of the United States to the high seas in violation of this section or a provision of the convention described in subsection (b) of this section. The vessel may be detained until the vessel complies with this section. Clearance may not be granted to a vessel ordered detained under this section.

(g) A foreign vessel to which the convention described in subsection (b) of this section applies, on the navigable waters of the United States, is subject to detention under subsection (f) of this section, and to an examination that may be necessary to decide if there is compliance with the convention.

(h) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel detained under subsection (f) or (g) of this section may appeal the order within 5 days as provided by regulation.

(i) An officer or employee of the Customs Service may be designated to enforce this section.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 552; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §730, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3940.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
8304	46:224a 46:241

Section 8304 implements the Officers' Competency Certificates Convention, 1936, as ratified by the President on September 1, 1938, with understandings appended.

Subsection (a) defines "high seas" for this section. Subsection (b) implements the Convention, applies the Convention to United States vessels on the high seas, and exempts certain vessels.

Subsection (c) prohibits the employment or service of an individual as a master, mate, or engineer on a vessel under this section unless the individual has a license issued under section 7101 for the particular capacity in which the individual is employed.

Subsection (d) prescribes a civil penalty for violating this section.

Subsection (e) states that the license referred to in subsection (c) is a certificate of competency for purposes of the Convention.

Subsection (f) provides for the detention of a vessel in violation of this section or the Convention.

Subsection (g) applies the detention provision to a foreign vessel on the navigable waters of the United States and subjects it to an examination for compliance with the Convention.

Subsection (h) provides for an appeal of the detention order.

Subsection (i) permits the designation of a Customs Service officer or employee to enforce this section.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Officers' Competency Certificates Convention, 1936, referred to in subsec. (b), is set out in 54 Stat. Pt. 2, p. 1683.

AMENDMENTS

1996—Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "200 gross tons".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions, personnel, assets, and liabilities of the United States Customs Service of the Department of the Treasury, including functions of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto, to the Secretary of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 203(1), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6. For establishment of U.S. Customs and Border Protection in the Department of Homeland Security, treated as if included in Pub. L. 107–296 as of Nov. 25, 2002, see section 211 of Title 6, as amended generally by Pub. L. 114–125, and section 802(b) of Pub. L. 114–125, set out as a note under section 211 of Title 6.

CHAPTER 85—PILOTS

Sec.

8501. State regulation of pilots.
8502. Federal pilots required.
8503. Federal pilots authorized.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 85 provides for State pilotage to be regulated by the States and only in conformity with the laws of the States. It clearly spells out the preeminence of the State's role in regulating pilots for vessels operating on the bays, rivers, harbors, and ports of the United States. However, those vessels that are required to have a Federally licensed pilot, those that operate on waters outside the territorial sea of the United States, and those that operate on waters of the Great Lakes are not subject to State pilotage laws or requirements. In essence this chapter, with minor changes, confirms the State and Federal relationship with respect to pilotage that has evolved since the founding of the Nation.

This chapter permits the continuation of Federal pilotage requirements for vessels that are not required to obtain compulsory State pilotage. It confirms the practice of allowing anyone with a Federal pilotage

endorsement for the waters in which the vessel is operating to be in control of a vessel when engaged in the coastwide trade. It also confirms the practice of using Federal pilots that are often organized into groups or working organizations who offer their expertise and services to vessels that are not required to obtain compulsory State pilotage.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1984—Pub. L. 98–557, §29(f)(3)(B), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2874, added item 8503.

§8501. State regulation of pilots

(a) Except as otherwise provided in this subtitle, pilots in the bays, rivers, harbors, and ports of the United States shall be regulated only in conformity with the laws of the States.

(b) The master of a vessel entering or leaving a port on waters that are a boundary between 2 States, and that is required to have a pilot under this section, may employ a pilot licensed or authorized by the laws of either of the 2 States.

(c) A State may not adopt a regulation or provision that discriminates in the rate of pilotage or half-pilotage between vessels sailing between the ports of one State and vessels sailing between the ports of different States, or against vessels because of their means of propulsion, or against public vessels of the United States.

(d) A State may not adopt a regulation or provision that requires a coastwise vessel to take a pilot licensed or authorized by the laws of a State if the vessel—

(1) is propelled by machinery and subject to inspection under part B of this subtitle; or

(2) is subject to inspection under chapter 37 of this title.

(e) Any regulation or provision violating this section is void.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 553; Pub. L. 98–557, §29(e), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2874.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
8501(a)	46:211
8501(b)	46:212
8501(c), (e)	46:213
8501(d)	46:215

Section 8501 establishes the general proposition that the States regulate pilots in the bays, rivers, harbors, and ports of the United States, unless otherwise specifically provided by law.

Subsection (a) states this general proposition and uses the word "only" for emphasis on this point. Further, except as specifically provided in law, the Committee intends that this chapter not be construed to annul or affect any regulation established by the laws of a State requiring a vessel entering or leaving a port in that State to employ a pilot licensed or authorized by the laws of that State. In at least two places in current law, this general proposition is stated in both a positive and negative manner. The Committee intends to consolidate those separate statements into one provision to avoid ambiguity and redundancy.

Subsections (b) and (c) contain provisions regarding pilotage in waters between two States.

Subsection (d) prohibits a State from requiring a State licensed pilot on certain coastwise vessels.

Subsection (e) voids any regulation or provision violating this section.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98–557 substituted "subtitle" for "part".

§8502. Federal pilots required

(a) Except as provided in subsections (g) and (i) of this section, a coastwise seagoing vessel shall be under the direction and control of a pilot licensed under section 7101 of this title if the vessel is—

(1) not sailing on register;

(2) underway;

(3) not beyond 3 nautical miles from the baselines from which the territorial sea of the United States is measured; and

(4)(A) propelled by machinery and subject to inspection under part B of this subtitle; or

(B) subject to inspection under chapter 37 of this title.

(b) The fees charged for pilotage by pilots required under this section may not be more than the customary or legally established rates in the States in which the pilotage is performed.

(c) A State or political subdivision of a State may not impose on a pilot licensed under this subtitle an obligation to procure a State or other license, or adopt any other regulation that will impede the pilot in the performance of the pilot's duties under the laws of the United States.

(d) A State or political subdivision of a State may not levy pilot charges on a vessel lawfully piloted by a pilot required under this section.

(e) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel operated in violation of this section or a regulation prescribed under this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $10,000. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(f) An individual serving as a pilot without having a license required by this section or a regulation prescribed under this section is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of $10,000.

(g)(1) The Secretary shall designate by regulation the areas of the approaches to and waters of Prince William Sound, Alaska, if any, on which a vessel subject to this section is not required to be under the direction and control of a pilot licensed under section 7101 of this title.

(2) In any area of Prince William Sound, Alaska, where a vessel subject to this section is required to be under the direction and control of a pilot licensed under section 7101 of this title, the pilot may not be a member of the crew of that vessel and shall be a pilot licensed by the State of Alaska who is operating under a Federal license, when the vessel is navigating waters between 60°49 North latitude and the Port of Valdez, Alaska.

(h) The Secretary shall designate waters on which tankers over 1,600 gross tons subject to this section shall have on the bridge a master or mate licensed to direct and control the vessel under section 7101(c)(1) of this title who is separate and distinct from the pilot required under subsection (a) of this section.

(i)(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), a dredge to which this section would otherwise apply is exempt from the requirements of this section.

(2) If the Secretary determines, after notice and comment, that the exemption under paragraph (1) creates a hazard to navigational safety in a specified area, the Secretary may require that a dredge exempted by paragraph (1) which is operating in that area shall comply with this section.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 553; Pub. L. 98–557, §29(f)(1), (2), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2874; Pub. L. 99–307, §1(13), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 446; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §§4116(a), (b), 4302(g), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 522, 539; Pub. L. 101–595, title III, §307, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2985; Pub. L. 105–383, title III, §301(b)(7), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3417.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
8502	46:215 46:364 46:391a

Section 8502 sets forth the provisions and requirements for pilots licensed under section 7101. It is an exception provided by law envisioned under section 8501(a).

Subsection (a) applies the requirement for a Federal pilot to coastwise seagoing vessels if propelled by machinery and inspected under part B or if inspected under chapter 37, including a tank barge. The section has been carefully worded to clearly set out those vessels that are required at times to have a Federal pilot.

Subsection (b) prohibits Federal pilot fees from being higher than those required for State pilots. Subsections (c) and (d) prohibit States from imposing impediments to the proper performance of, or levying charges related to, Federal pilotage.

Subsections (e) and (f) prescribe civil penalties for violation of this section.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1998—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 105–383 substituted "not beyond 3 nautical miles from the baselines from which the territorial sea of the United States is measured" for "not on the high seas".

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101–595, §307(1), substituted "subsections (g) and (i)" for "subsection (g)" in introductory provisions.

Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 101–380, §4302(g), substituted "$10,000" for "$500".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 101–380, §4116(a), amended subsec. (g) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (g) read as follows: "The Secretary shall designate by regulation the areas of the approaches to and waters of Prince William Sound, Alaska, on which a vessel subject to this section is not required to be under the direction and control of a pilot licensed under section 7101 of this title."

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 101–380, §4116(b), added subsec. (h).

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 101–595, §307(2), added subsec. (i).

1986—Subsec. (a)(4)(A). Pub. L. 99–307 substituted "part" for "Part".

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98–557, §29(f)(1), amended subsec. (a) generally, which prior to amendment read as follows: "A coastwise seagoing vessel, when not sailing on register and when underway (except on the high seas), shall be under the direction and control of a pilot licensed under section 7101 of this title if the vessel is—

"(1) propelled by machinery and subject to inspection under part B of this subtitle; or

"(2) subject to inspection under chapter 37 of this title."

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 98–557, §29(f)(2), added subsec. (g).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TERRITORIAL SEA OF UNITED STATES

For extension of territorial sea of United States, see Proc. No. 5928, set out as a note under section 1331 of Title 43, Public Lands.

§8503. Federal pilots authorized

(a) The Secretary may require a pilot licensed under section 7101 of this title on a self-propelled vessel when a pilot is not required by State law and the vessel is—

(1) engaged in foreign commerce; and

(2) operating—

(A) in internal waters of the United States; or

(B) within 3 nautical miles from the baselines from which the territorial sea of the United States is measured.

(b) A requirement prescribed under subsection (a) of this section is terminated when the State having jurisdiction over the area involved—

(1) establishes a requirement for a State licensed pilot; and

(2) notifies the Secretary of that fact.

(c) For the Saint Lawrence Seaway, the Secretary may not delegate the authority under this section to an agency except the Great Lakes St. Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation.

(d) A person violating this section or a regulation prescribed under this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $25,000. Each day of a continuing violation is a separate violation. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(e) A person that knowingly violates this section or a regulation prescribed under this section commits a class D felony.

(Added Pub. L. 98–557, §29(f)(3)(A), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2874; amended Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4302(h), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 539; Pub. L. 105–383, title III, §301(b)(8), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3417; Pub. L. 116–260, div. AA, title V, §512(c)(6)(C), Dec. 27, 2020, 134 Stat. 2757.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2020—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 116–260 substituted "Great Lakes St. Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation" for "Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation".

1998—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 105–383 added par. (2) and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: "operating on the navigable waters of the United States."

1990—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101–380 substituted "commits a class D felony" for "shall be fined not more than $50,000, imprisoned for not more than five years, or both".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TERRITORIAL SEA OF UNITED STATES

For extension of territorial sea of United States, see Proc. No. 5928, set out as a note under section 1331 of Title 43, Public Lands.

CHAPTER 87—UNLICENSED PERSONNEL

Sec.

8701. Merchant mariners' documents required.
8702. Certain crew requirements.
8703. Tankermen on tank vessels.
8704. Alien deemed to be employed in the United States.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 87 prescribes certain requirements for unlicensed personnel on vessels of at least 100 gross tons

and on certain tank vessels.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1988—Pub. L. 100–239, §5(f)(2), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1781, added item 8704.

§8701. Merchant mariners' documents required

(a) This section applies to a merchant vessel of at least 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title except—

(1) a vessel operating only on rivers and lakes (except the Great Lakes);

(2) a barge (except a seagoing barge or a barge to which chapter 37 of this title applies);

(3) a fishing, fish tender, or whaling vessel or a yacht;

(4) a sailing school vessel with respect to sailing school instructors and sailing school students;

(5) an oceanographic research vessel with respect to scientific personnel;

(6) a fish processing vessel entered into service before January 1, 1988, and not more than 1,600 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title or entered into service after December 31, 1987, and having not more than 16 individuals on board primarily employed in the preparation of fish or fish products;

(7) a fish processing vessel (except a vessel to which clause (6) of this subsection applies) with respect to individuals on board primarily employed in the preparation of fish or fish products or in a support position not related to navigation;

(8) a mobile offshore drilling unit with respect to individuals, other than crew members required by the certificate of inspection, engaged on board the unit for the sole purpose of carrying out the industrial business or function of the unit;

(9) a passenger vessel not engaged in a foreign voyage with respect to individuals on board employed for a period of not more than 30 service days within a 12 month period as entertainment personnel, with no duties, including emergency duties, related to the navigation of the vessel or the safety of the vessel, its crew, cargo or passengers; and

(10) the Secretary may prescribe the individuals required to hold a merchant mariner's document serving onboard an oil spill response vessel.

(b) A person may not engage or employ an individual, and an individual may not serve, on board a vessel to which this section applies if the individual does not have a merchant mariner's document issued to the individual under section 7302 of this title. Except for an individual required to be licensed or registered under this part, the document must authorize service in the capacity for which the holder of the document is engaged or employed.

(c) On a vessel to which section 10306 or 10503 of this title does not apply, an individual required by this section to hold a merchant mariner's document must exhibit it to the master of the vessel before the individual may be employed.

(d) A person (including an individual) violating this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $500.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 554; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(12)(A), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 449; Pub. L. 99–640, §11(c), Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3550; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §731, title XI, §1104(e), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3940, 3967; Pub. L. 107–295, title III, §324(b), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2104.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*

8701	46:444 46:643 46:643a 46:672

Section 8701 requires an individual to have a merchant mariner's document before that individual can be engaged or employed on certain vessels.

Subsection (a) makes this documentation requirement applicable to United States merchant vessels of at least 100 gross tons except for certain inland vessels and barges, fishing or whaling vessels, yachts, and, in certain circumstances, to sailing school vessels or oceanographic research vessels.

Subsection (b) prohibits the engagement or employment of an individual required to have a document prescribed under section 7302 if the individual does not have one. Except for licensed or registered individuals, the document must specify the capacity in which the individual is engaged or employed.

Subsection (c) requires an individual to exhibit the required document to the master, if not otherwise required to do so in some other manner before that individual may be employed.

Subsection (d) prescribes the penalty for violation of this section.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (a)(9), (10). Pub. L. 107–295 added par. (9) and redesignated former par. (9) as (10).

1996—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–324, §731(1), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 104–324, §731(2), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "1,600 gross tons".

Subsec. (a)(9). Pub. L. 104–324, §1104(e), added par. (9).

1986—Subsec. (a)(8). Pub. L. 99–640 added par. (8).

1984—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 98–364, §402(12)(A)(i), substituted "fishing, fish tender, or whaling" for "fishing or whaling".

Subsec. (a)(6), (7). Pub. L. 98–364, §402(12)(A)(ii)– (iv), added pars. (6) and (7).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

NON-OPERATING INDIVIDUAL

Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8313(a), (b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4697, 4698, as amended by Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11516, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4141; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7302, Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1759, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall not enforce section 8701 of title 46, United States Code, with respect to the following:

"(1) A vessel with respect to individuals, other than crew members required by the Certificate of Inspection or to ensure the safe navigation of the vessel and not a member of the steward's department, engaged on board for the sole purpose of carrying out spill response activities, salvage, marine firefighting, or commercial diving business or functions from or on any vessel, including marine firefighters, spill response personnel, salvage personnel, and commercial divers and diving support personnel.

"(2) An offshore supply vessel, an industrial vessel (as such term is defined in section 90.10–16 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations), or other similarly engaged vessel with respect to persons engaged in the business of the ship on board the vessel—

"(A) for—

"(i) supporting or executing the industrial business or function of the vessel;

"(ii) brief periods to conduct surveys or investigations, assess crew competence, conduct vessel trials, provide extraordinary security resources, or similar tasks not traditionally performed by the vessel crew; or

"(iii) performing maintenance tasks on equipment under warranty, or on equipment not

owned by the vessel owner, or maintenance beyond the capability of the vessel crew to perform; and

"(B) not the master or crew members required by the certificate of inspection and not a member of the steward's department.

"(b) SUNSET.—The prohibition in subsection (a) shall terminate on January 1, 2027."

§8702. Certain crew requirements

(a) This section applies to a vessel of at least 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title except—

(1) a vessel operating only on rivers and lakes (except the Great Lakes);

(2) a barge (except a seagoing barge or a barge to which chapter 37 of this title applies);

(3) a fishing, fish tender, or whaling vessel (except a fish tender vessel engaged in the Aleutian trade) or a yacht;

(4) a sailing school vessel with respect to sailing school instructors and sailing school students;

(5) an oceanographic research vessel with respect to scientific personnel;

(6) a fish processing vessel entered into service before January 1, 1988, and not more than 1,600 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title or entered into service after December 31, 1987, and having not more than 16 individuals on board primarily employed in the preparation of fish or fish products; and

(7) a fish processing vessel (except a vessel to which clause (6) of this subsection applies) with respect to individuals on board primarily employed in the preparation of fish or fish products or in a support position not related to navigation.

(b) A vessel may operate only if at least—

(1) 75 percent of the crew in each department on board is able to understand any order spoken by the officers, and

(2) 65 percent of the deck crew (excluding licensed individuals) have merchant mariners' documents endorsed for a rating of at least able seaman, except that this percentage may be reduced to 50 percent—

(i) on a vessel permitted under section 8104 of this title to maintain a 2-watch system; or

(ii) on a fish tender vessel engaged in the Aleutian trade.

(c) An able seaman is not required on a towing vessel operating on bays and sounds connected directly with the seas.

(d) An individual having a rating of less than able seaman may not be permitted at the wheel in ports, harbors, and other waters subject to congested vessel traffic, or under conditions of reduced visibility, adverse weather, or other hazardous circumstances.

(e) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel operated in violation of this section or a regulation prescribed under this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $10,000.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 554; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(12)(B), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 449; Pub. L. 100–239, §5(e), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1781; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4302(i), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 539; Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §602(e)(2), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2992; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §732, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3941.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
8702	46:643 46:672

Section 8702 specifies certain crew requirements.

Subsection (a) applies this section to the same vessels to which section 8701 applies.

Subsection (b) requires that 75 percent of the crew in each department on board a vessel understand any order spoken by the officers and that 65 percent of the deck crew be at least able seamen, except for the licensed officers. For 2-watch system vessels under section 8104, the 65-percent deck crew requirement may be reduced to 50 percent.

Subsection (c) exempts certain inland towing vessels from the able seaman requirement.

Subsection (d) prohibits anyone having a rating of less than able seamen from serving as a helmsman in congested vessel traffic or under hazardous conditions.

Subsection (e) prescribes the penalty for violation of this section.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–324, §732(1), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 104–324, §732(2), inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "1,600 gross tons".

1990—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 101–595, §602(e)(2)(A), substituted "vessel (except a fish tender vessel engaged in the Aleutian trade)" for "vessel".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 101–595, §602(e)(2)(B), inserted provisions authorizing reduction to 50 percent of the deck crew in the case of a fish tender vessel engaged in the Aleutian trade.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101–380 substituted "$10,000" for "$500".

1988—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100–239 substituted "operate" for "depart from a port of the United States".

1984—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 98–364, §402(12)(B)(i), substituted "fishing, fish tender, or whaling" for "fishing or whaling".

Subsec. (a)(6), (7). Pub. L. 98–364, §402(12)(B)(ii)– (iv), added pars. (6) and (7).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENTS

Amendment by section 602(e)(2)(A) of Pub. L. 101–595 effective Nov. 16, 1990, and requirements imposed by subsec. (b)(2), as amended by section 602(e)(2)(B) of Pub. L. 101–595, effective 1 year after Nov. 16, 1990, see section 602(f) of Pub. L. 101–595, set out as a note under section 4502 of this title.

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

EXEMPTION OF CERTAIN FISH PROCESSING VESSELS

Certain fish processing vessels exempt from crew requirements of subsec. (b) of this section, see section 403(b) of Pub. L. 98–364, as amended, set out as a note under section 3302 of this title.

§8703. Tankermen on tank vessels

(a) A vessel of the United States to which chapter 37 of this title applies, that has on board oil or hazardous material in bulk as cargo or cargo residue, shall have a specified number of the crew certified as tankermen as required by the Secretary. This requirement shall be noted on the certificate of inspection issued to the vessel.

(b) A vessel to which section 3702(b) of this title applies shall have on board as a crewmember in charge of the transfer operation an individual certified as a tankerman (qualified for the grade of fuel transferred), unless a master, mate, pilot, engineer, or operator licensed under section 7101 of this title is present in charge of the transfer. If the vessel does not have that individual on board, chapter 37 of this title applies to the vessel.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 555; Pub. L. 98–557, §18, Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2869; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(h), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2326.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
8703(a)	46:391a(10)(A)
8703(b)	46:391a(10)(C)
8703(c)	46:391a(4)(B)

Section 8703 sets requirements for tankermen on board vessels carrying oil or hazardous material in bulk as cargo or cargo residue.

Subsection (a) requires a specified number of the crew certified as tankermen on board these vessels and a notation be made to that effect on the vessel's certificate of inspection. A tankerman is an individual who is experienced and trained in the procedures for transferring oil or hazardous material to or from a vessel and is responsible for carrying out these duties and responsibilities.

Subsection (b) authorizes the Secretary to regulate tankermen and restrict the types of oil or hazardous materials on the basis of safety to the vessel and the marine environment.

Subsection (c) requires a tankerman or licensed master, pilot, engineer, or operator to be present and in charge of a transfer of oil or hazardous material on certain vessels in the service of oil exploitation. If this individual is not on board, then the tank vessel requirements of chapter 37 apply to the vessel.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 115–232 redesignated subsec. (c) as (b).

1984—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 98–557 struck out subsec. (b) which contained duplicate tankerman manning requirements. See section 7317(a) of this title.

§8704. Alien deemed to be employed in the United States

An alien is deemed to be employed in the United States for purposes of section 274A of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1324a) if the alien is an unlicensed individual employed on a fishing, fish processing, or fish tender vessel that—

(1) is a vessel of the United States engaged in the fisheries in the navigable waters of the United States or the exclusive economic zone; and

(2) is not engaged in fishing exclusively for highly migratory species (as that term is defined in section 3 of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1802).

(Added Pub. L. 100–239, §5(f)(1), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1781; amended Pub. L. 104–208, div. A, title I, §101(a) [title II, §211(b)], Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009, 3009–41.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Par. (2). Pub. L. 104–208 substituted "Magnuson-Stevens Fishery" for "Magnuson Fishery".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1996 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 104–208, div. A, title I, §101(a) [title II, §211(b)], Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009, 3009–41, provided that the amendment made by that section is effective 15 days after Oct. 11, 1996.

CONSTRUCTION

Pub. L. 100–239, §5(f)(3), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1781, provided that: "With respect to an alien who is deemed to be employed in the United States under section 8704 of title 46, United States Code (as amended by this subsection), the term 'date of the enactment of this section' [translated as "November 6, 1986"] as used in section 274A(i) of the Immigration and Nationality Act [former 8 U.S.C. 1324a(i)] means the date 180 days after the enactment of this section [Jan. 11, 1988]."

CHAPTER 89—SMALL VESSEL MANNING

Sec.

8901. Freight vessels.
8902. Small passenger vessels.
8903. Self-propelled, uninspected passenger vessels.
8904. Towing vessels.
8905. Exemptions.
8906. Penalty.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 89 provides for the manning of freight vessels, small passenger vessels, uninspected passenger vessels, and towing vessels. It permits a licensed operator to be in charge of a vessel in lieu of a licensed master or pilot. It also sets forth exemption and civil penalties.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1986—Pub. L. 99–307, §1(14)(A), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 446, substituted "Self-propelled, uninspected" for "Uninspected" in item 8903.

§8901. Freight vessels

A freight vessel of less than 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title shall be operated by an individual licensed by the Secretary to operate that type of vessel in the particular geographic area, under prescribed regulations.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 555; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §733, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3941.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
8901	46:390b

Section 8901 requires that a freight vessel of less than 100 gross tons be operated by a licensed individual for that type vessel and for a particular geographic area.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons".

§8902. Small passenger vessels

A small passenger vessel shall be operated by an individual licensed by the Secretary to operate that type of vessel in the particular geographic area, under prescribed regulations.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 555.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
8902	46:390b

Section 8902 requires that a small passenger vessel of less than 100 gross tons be operated by a licensed individual for that type vessel and for a particular geographic area.

§8903. Self-propelled, uninspected passenger vessels

A self-propelled, uninspected passenger vessel shall be operated by an individual licensed by the Secretary to operate that type of vessel, under prescribed regulations.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 555; Pub. L. 99–307, §1(14)(B), (C), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 446.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
8903	46:1461(e), (f)

Section 8903 requires that an uninspected passenger vessel be operated by a licensed individual for that type of vessel.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1986—Pub. L. 99–307 substituted "Self-propelled, uninspected" for "Uninspected" in section catchline and "A self-propelled," for "An" in text.

§8904. Towing vessels

(a) A towing vessel that is at least 26 feet in length measured from end to end over the deck (excluding sheer), shall be operated by an individual licensed by the Secretary to operate that type of vessel in the particular geographic area, under prescribed regulations.

(b) A vessel that tows a disabled vessel for consideration shall be operated by an individual licensed by the Secretary to operate that type of vessel in the particular geographic area, under prescribed regulations.

(c) The Secretary may prescribe by regulation requirements for maximum hours of service (including recording and recordkeeping of that service) of individuals engaged on a towing vessel that is at least 26 feet in length measured from end to end over the deck (excluding the sheer).

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 555; Pub. L. 99–640, §12(a), Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3550; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §409(a), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1044.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*

Section 8904 requires that a 26-foot or larger towing vessel be operated by a licensed individual for that type of vessel and for a particular geographic area.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2004—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 108–293 added subsec. (c).
1986—Pub. L. 99–640 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 99–640, §12(b), Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3551, provided that: "The amendments made by subsection (a) of this section [amending this section] shall take effect on January 1, 1988."

DEMONSTRATION PROJECT

Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §409(b), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1045, provided that: "Prior to prescribing regulations under this section [amending this section] the Secretary shall conduct and report to the Congress on the results of a demonstration project involving the implementation of Crew Endurance Management Systems on towing vessels. The report shall include a description of the public and private sector resources needed to enable implementation of Crew Endurance Management Systems on all United States-flag towing vessels."

§8905. Exemptions

(a) Section 8903 of this title applies to a recreational vessel operated in dealer demonstrations only if the Secretary decides that the application of section 8903 is necessary for recreational vessel safety under section 4302(d) of this title.

(b) Section 8904 of this title does not apply to an oil spill response vessel while engaged in oil spill response or training activities.

(c) After consultation with the Governor of Alaska and the State boating law administrator of Alaska, the Secretary may exempt an individual operating a self-propelled uninspected passenger vessel from the requirements of section 8903 of this title, if—

(1) the individual only operates such vessel wholly within waters located in Alaska; and

(2) such vessel is—

(A) 26 feet or less in length; and

(B) carrying not more than 6 passengers.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 556; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §734, title XI, §1104(f), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3941, 3967; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §606, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2967; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8317, Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4700.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
8905(a)	46:1461(f)
8905(b)	46:405(b)(3)

Section 8905 provides for certain exemptions from the requirements of this chapter.

Subsection (a) exempts dealer demonstration recreational vessels from the licensed operator requirement in section 8903 unless the Secretary decides that safety considerations require the application of that section.

Subsection (b) exempts an offshore supply vessel of less than 200 gross tons from the licensed operator requirement under section 8904 when used in the offshore mineral and oil industry.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 116–283 added subsec. (c).

2010—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 111–281 redesignated subsec. (c) as (b) and struck out former subsec. (b) which read as follows: "Section 8904 of this title does not apply to a vessel of less than 200 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title engaged in the offshore mineral and oil industry if the vessel has offshore mineral and oil industry sites or equipment as its ultimate destination or place of departure."

1996—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 104–324, §734, inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "200 gross tons".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 104–324, §1104(f), added subsec. (c).

§8906. Penalty

An owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel operated in violation of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $25,000. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 556; Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §306(b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3918.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
8906	46:390d

Section 8906 prescribes the penalties for violations of this chapter.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Pub. L. 104–324 substituted "not more than $25,000" for "$1,000".

CHAPTER 91—TANK VESSEL MANNING STANDARDS

Sec.

9101. Standards for foreign tank vessels.
9102. Standards for tank vessels of the United States.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 91 prescribes manning standards for certain foreign and United States tank vessels carrying oil or hazardous materials.

§9101. Standards for foreign tank vessels

(a)(1) The Secretary shall evaluate the manning, training, qualification, and watchkeeping

standards of a foreign country that issues documentation for any vessel to which chapter 37 of this title applies—

(A) on a periodic basis; and

(B) when the vessel is involved in a marine casualty required to be reported under section 6101(a)(4) or (5) of this title.

(2) After each evaluation made under paragraph (1) of this subsection, the Secretary shall determine whether—

(A) the foreign country has standards for licensing and certification of seamen that are at least equivalent to United States law or international standards accepted by the United States; and

(B) those standards are being enforced.

(3) If the Secretary determines under this subsection that a country has failed to maintain or enforce standards at least equivalent to United States law or international standards accepted by the United States, the Secretary shall prohibit vessels issued documentation by that country from entering the United States until the Secretary determines those standards have been established and are being enforced.

(4) The Secretary may allow provisional entry of a vessel prohibited from entering the United States under paragraph (3) of this subsection if—

(A) the owner or operator of the vessel establishes, to the satisfaction of the Secretary, that the vessel is not unsafe or a threat to the marine environment; or

(B) the entry is necessary for the safety of the vessel or individuals on the vessel.

(b) A foreign vessel to which chapter 37 of this title applies that has on board oil or hazardous material in bulk as cargo or cargo residue shall have a specified number of personnel certified as tankerman or equivalent, as required by the Secretary, when the vessel transfers oil or hazardous material in a port or place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States. The requirement of this subsection shall be noted in applicable terminal operating procedures. A transfer operation may take place only if the crewmember in charge is capable of clearly understanding instructions in English.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 556; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4106(a), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 513.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
9101(a)	46:391a(11)
9101(b)	46:391a(10)(B)

Section 9101 requires monitoring of manning standards for foreign tank vessels operating on the navigable waters of the United States and transferring oil or hazardous material in the United States.

Subsection (a) requires the Secretary of Transportation to evaluate the manning, training, qualification, and watchkeeping standards of foreign countries whose tank vessels operate on United States waters, or use transfer facilities, and to decide if the standards are equivalent or more stringent than United States standards.

Subsection (b) authorizes the Secretary to specify the number of tankermen required on a foreign tank vessel and to have certified tankermen who can understand English when transferring oil or hazardous material in the United States. This requirement is to be made part of the terminal operating procedures.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101–380 amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as follows: "The Secretary shall—

"(1) periodically evaluate the manning, training, qualification, and watchkeeping standards prescribed

by the certificating country of a foreign vessel to which chapter 37 of this title applies, that operates on the navigable waters of the United States and transfers oil or hazardous material in a port or place under the jurisdiction of the United States; and

"(2) after each evaluation made under clause (1) of this subsection, decide whether the foreign country, whose system for licensing and certification of seamen was evaluated, has standards that are equivalent to or more stringent than United States standards or international standards accepted by the United States."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

§9102. Standards for tank vessels of the United States

The Secretary shall prescribe standards for the manning of each vessel of the United States to which chapter 37 of this title applies, related to the duties, qualifications, and training of the officers and crew of the vessel, including standards related to—

(1) instruction in vessel and cargo handling and vessel navigation under normal operating conditions in coastal and confined waters and on the high seas;

(2) instruction in vessel and cargo handling and vessel navigation in emergency situations and under marine casualty or potential casualty conditions;

(3) qualifications for licenses by specific type and size of vessels;

(4) qualifications for licenses by use of simulators for the practice or demonstration of marine-oriented skills;

(5) minimum health and physical fitness criteria for various grades of licenses and certificates;

(6) periodic retraining and special training for upgrading positions, changing vessel type or size, or assuming new responsibilities;

(7) decisions about licenses and certificates, conditions of licensing or certification, and periods of licensing or certification by reference to experience, amount of training completed, and regular performance testing; and

(8) instruction in vessel maintenance functions.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 556; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4114(d), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 517; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8503(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4747.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
9102	46:391a(9)

Section 9102 prescribes manning standards for United States tank vessels.

Subsection (a) requires the Secretary of Transportation to prescribe certain standards for the duties, qualifications, and training of the officers and crew of United States tank vessels.

Subsection (b) provides for a waiver of any health and physical fitness criteria prescribed under subsection (a).

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 struck out subsec. (a) designation before "The Secretary shall" and struck out subsec. (b) which read as follows: "The Secretary shall waive the application of criteria required by subsection

(a)(5) of this section for an individual having a license or certificate (including a renewal of the license or certificate) in effect on October 17, 1978. When the waiver is granted, the Secretary may prescribe conditions for the license or certificate and its renewal, as the Secretary decides are reasonable and necessary for the safety of a vessel on which the individual may be employed."

1990—Par. (8). Pub. L. 101–380 added par. (8).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

CHAPTER 93—GREAT LAKES PILOTAGE

Sec.

9301. Definitions.
9302. Great Lakes pilots required.
9303. United States registered pilot service.
9304. Pilotage pools.
9305. Agreements with Canada.
9306. State regulation prohibited.
9307. Great Lakes Pilotage Advisory Committee.
9308. Penalties.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 93 contains the pilotage requirements for United States vessels sailing under register and foreign flag vessels operating on the Great Lakes, qualifications for a registered pilot for the Great Lakes, authority for agreements with Canada, prohibition of State regulation, establishment of an advisory committee, and imposition of civil penalties.

§9301. Definitions

In this chapter—

(1) "Canadian registered pilot" means an individual (except a regular crewmember of a vessel) who is registered by Canada on the same basis as an individual registered under section 9303 of this title.

(2) "Great Lakes" means Lakes Superior, Michigan, Huron, Erie, and Ontario, their connecting and tributary waters, the Saint Lawrence River as far east as Saint Regis, and adjacent port areas.

(3) "United States registered pilot" means an individual (except a regular crewmember of a vessel) who is registered under section 9303 of this title.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 557.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
9301(1)	46:216(d)
9301(2)	46:216(a)
9301(3)	46:216(c)

Section 9301 contains definitions which pertain to this chapter only.

Clause (1) defines "Canadian registered pilot" as an individual registered as a pilot in Canada on the same basis as the United States.

Clause (2) defines "Great Lakes" as the five lakes plus their connecting and tributary waters, a certain part of the Saint Lawrence River, and adjacent ports.

Clause (3) defines "United States registered pilot" as an individual registered under regulations for competency under section 9303.

§9302. Great Lakes pilots required

(a)(1) Except as provided in subsections (d), (e), and (f) of this section, each vessel of the United States operating on register and each foreign vessel shall engage a United States or Canadian registered pilot for the route being navigated who shall—

(A) in the Straits of Mackinac and in all other waters of the Great Lakes designated by the President, direct the navigation of the vessel subject to the customary authority of the master; and

(B) in waters of the Great Lakes not designated by the President, be on board and available to direct the navigation of the vessel at the discretion of and subject to the customary authority of the master.

(2) The President shall make water designations under this subsection with regard to the public interest, the effective use of navigable waters, marine safety, and the foreign relations of the United States.

(b) A member of the complement of a vessel of the United States operating on register or of a vessel of Canada may serve as the pilot required on waters not designated by the President if the member is licensed under section 7101 of this title, or under equivalent provisions of Canadian law, to direct the navigation of the vessel on the waters being navigated.

(c) The authority extended under subsections (a) and (b) of this section to a Canadian registered pilot or other Canadian licensed officer to serve on certain vessels in United States waters of the Great Lakes shall continue as long as Canada extends reciprocity to United States registered pilots and other individuals licensed by the United States for pilotage service in Canadian waters of the Great Lakes.

(d) A vessel may be operated on the United States waters of the Great Lakes without a United States or Canadian registered pilot when—

(1) the Secretary notifies the master that a registered pilot is not available; or

(2) the vessel or its cargo is in distress or jeopardy.

(e) A Canadian vessel regularly operating on the Great Lakes or between ports on the Great Lakes and the Saint Lawrence River, with only an occasional voyage to ports in the maritime provinces of Canada in the Canadian coastal trade, is exempt from subsection (a) of this section as long as Canada permits enrolled vessels of the United States to be operated on Canadian waters of the Great Lakes under the direction of individuals licensed under section 7101 of this title.

(f) A documented vessel regularly operating on the Great Lakes or between ports on the Great Lakes and the St. Lawrence River is exempt from the requirements of subsection (a) of this section.

(g) DEFINITION OF THE STRAITS OF MACKINAC.—In this section, the term "Straits of Mackinac" includes all of the United States navigable waters bounded by longitudes 84 degrees 20 minutes west and 85 degrees 10 minutes west and latitudes 45 degrees 39 minutes north and 45 degrees 54 minutes north, including Gray's Reef Passage, the South Channel, and Round Island Passage, and approaches thereto.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 557; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4108(a), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 514; Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1115(b)(5)–(7), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3972; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7314, Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1762.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
9302(a), (b), (d)	46:216a

Section 9302 sets forth the requirements for pilots on the waters of the Great Lakes under the jurisdiction of the United States or Canada.

Subsection (a) requires each United States vessel sailing on register and each foreign vessel to engage a United States or Canadian registered pilot who shall direct the navigation of the vessel in designated waters of the Great Lakes or be available to direct the navigation of the vessel in undesignated waters of the Great Lakes. The President must make the designation with regard to public interest, effective use of navigable waters, marine safety, and United States foreign relations. The direction of the vessel by an authorized pilot is subject to the customary authority of the master.

Subsection (b) provides that a crewmember licensed for Great Lakes navigation under section 7101 or equivalent Canadian law may serve as the pilot on undesignated waters.

Subsection (c) provides for reciprocity of recognizing United States and Canadian pilots.

Subsections (d) and (e) are exceptions to subsection (a). Subsection (d) permits operation of a vessel on the Great Lakes without a registered pilot if notice is given that one is not available or if the vessel or cargo is in distress or jeopardy. Subsection (e) exempts a Canadian vessel in the coastwise or Great Lakes trade from the requirement of having a registered pilot if similar United States vessels are extended the same exemption by Canada.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 119–60, §7314(a), substituted "in the Straits of Mackinac and in all other waters" for "in waters".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 119–60, §7314(b), added subsec. (g).

1996—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 104–324, §1115(b)(5), substituted "subsections (d), (e), and (f)" for "subsections (d) and (e)".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 104–324, §1115(b)(6), substituted "subsection (a)" for "subsections (a) and (b)".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 104–324, §1115(b)(7), added subsec. (f).

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101–380 amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: "An individual of a vessel licensed for navigation on the Great Lakes under section 7101 of this title, or equivalent provisions of Canadian law, and qualified for the route being navigated, may serve as the pilot required on waters not designated by the President."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

PROC. NO. 3385. DESIGNATION OF RESTRICTED WATERS

Proc. No. 3385, Dec. 22, 1960, 25 F.R. 13681, as amended by Proc. No. 3855, June 10, 1968, 33 F.R. 8535, provided:

WHEREAS, pursuant to section 3(a) of the Great Lakes Pilotage Act of 1960 (Public Law 86–555; 74 Stat. 259) [46 U.S.C. 9302(a)], the President is directed to designate and by proclamation announce those United States waters of the Great Lakes in which registered vessels of the United States and foreign vessels shall be required to have in their service a United States registered pilot or a Canadian registered pilot for the waters concerned; and

WHEREAS the aforesaid section 3(a) [46 U.S.C. 9302(a)] provides that these designations shall be made with due regard to the public interest, the effective utilization of navigable waters, marine safety, and the foreign relations of the United States:

NOW, THEREFORE, I, DWIGHT D. EISENHOWER, President of the United States of America, acting

under and by virtue of the authority vested in me by section 3(a) of the Great Lakes Pilotage Act of 1960 [46 U.S.C. 9302(a)], do hereby designate and proclaim the following areas in which registered vessels of the United States and foreign vessels shall be required to have in their service a United States registered pilot or a Canadian registered pilot for the waters concerned, on and after the effective date of regulations issued by the Secretary of Transportation pursuant to the Act:

(1) *District 1*. All United States waters of the St. Lawrence River between the international boundary at St. Regis and a line at the head of the river running (at approximately 127° true) between Carruthers Point Light and South Side Light extended to the New York shore.

(2) *District 2*. All United States waters of Lake Erie westward of a line running (at approximately 026° true) from Sandusky Pierhead Light at Cedar Point to Southeast Shoal Light; all waters contained within the arc of a circle of one mile radius eastward of Sandusky Pierhead Light; the Detroit River; Lake St. Clair; the St. Clair River, and northern approaches thereto south of latitude 43°0530 N.

(3) *District 3*. All United States waters of the St. Marys River, Sault Sainte Marie Locks and approaches thereto between latitude 45°59 N. at the southern approach and longitude 84°33 W. at the northern approach.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my hand and caused the Seal of the United States of America to be affixed.

DONE at the City of Washington this twenty-second day of December in the year of our Lord nineteen hundred and sixty, and of the Independence of the United States of America the one hundred and eighty-fifth.

[SEAL]

DWIGHT D. EISENHOWER.

§9303. United States registered pilot service

(a) The Secretary shall prescribe by regulation standards of competency to be met by each applicant for registration under this chapter. An applicant must—

(1) have a license as master, mate, or pilot issued under section 7101 of this title;

(2) have acquired at least 24 months licensed service or equivalent experience on vessels or integrated towing vessels and tows of at least 4,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title, operating on the Great Lakes or oceans, with a minimum of 6 months of that service or experience having been on the Great Lakes; and

(3) agree that, if appointed as a United States registered pilot, the applicant will be available for service when required.

(b) The Secretary shall issue to each registered pilot under this chapter a certificate of registration describing the areas within which the pilot may serve. The pilot shall carry the certificate when in the service of a vessel.

(c) The Secretary shall prescribe by regulation the duration of validity of registration.

(d) The Secretary may prescribe by regulation the conditions for service by United States registered pilots, including availability for service.

(e) Subject to sections 551–559 of title 5, the Secretary may suspend or revoke a certificate of registration issued under this section if the holder fails to comply with a regulation prescribed under this chapter. Suspension or revocation of the holder's license under chapter 77 of this title includes the holder's certificate of registration.

(f) The Secretary shall prescribe by regulation rates and charges for pilotage services, giving consideration to the public interest and the costs of providing the services. The Secretary shall establish new pilotage rates by March 1 of each year. The Secretary shall establish base pilotage rates by a full ratemaking at least once every 5 years and shall conduct annual reviews of such base pilotage rates, and make adjustments to such base rates, in each intervening year.

(g) The Secretary shall ensure that a sufficient number of individuals are assigned to carrying out subsection (f).

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 558; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §735, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3941; Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §302, July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 527.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
9303(a)	46:216b(a)
9303(b)	46:216b(b)
9303(c)	46:216b(c)
9303(e)	46:216b(c)
9303(f)	46:216c

Section 9303 authorizes the Secretary to prescribe regulatory standards of competency for registered pilots.

Subsection (a) requires an applicant for registration as a pilot to have a master's, mate's, or pilot's license, 24 months of licensed service, or equivalent, on vessels on the oceans or Great Lakes, with a minimum of 6 months on the Great Lakes, and agree to be available for service as a United States registered pilot if appointed.

Subsection (b) requires the Secretary to issue a certificate of registration describing the areas of service of a registered pilot who must carry the certificate when in a vessel's service.

Subsection (c) authorizes the Secretary to prescribe the duration of the validity of registration, while subsection (d) authorizes the Secretary to prescribe conditions for service by United States registered pilots.

Subsection (e) provides for the suspension or revocation of a certificate or registration by the Secretary.

Subsection (f) provides for setting the rates and charges for pilotage services.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 109–241, §302(1), inserted at end "The Secretary shall establish new pilotage rates by March 1 of each year. The Secretary shall establish base pilotage rates by a full ratemaking at least once every 5 years and shall conduct annual reviews of such base pilotage rates, and make adjustments to such base rates, in each intervening year."

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 109–241, §302(2), added subsec. (g).

1996—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "4,000 gross tons".

§9304. Pilotage pools

(a) The Secretary may authorize the formation of a pool by a voluntary association of United States registered pilots to provide for efficient dispatching of vessels and rendering of pilotage services.

(b) For pilotage pools, the Secretary may—

(1) limit the number of the pools;

(2) prescribe regulations for their operation and administration;

(3) prescribe a uniform system of accounts;

(4) perform audits and inspections; and

(5) require coordination on a reciprocal basis with similar pool arrangements authorized by the appropriate agency of Canada.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 559.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
9304	46:216b(e)

Section 9304 provides for the formation of a pool by a voluntary association of United States registered pilots to provide for efficient pilotage services.

Subsection (a) permits the Secretary to authorize formation of United States pilotage pools.

Subsection (b) sets forth the restrictions and conditions that the Secretary may prescribe for these pools.

§9305. Agreements with Canada

To provide for a coordinated system of pilotage service on the Great Lakes, the Secretary, subject to the concurrence of the Secretary of State, may make agreements with the appropriate agency of Canada to—

(1) fix the number of pilots to be registered in each country;
(2) provide for participation on an equitable basis;
(3) prescribe joint or identical rates and charges;
(4) coordinate pool operations; and
(5) establish conditions for services by registered pilots.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 559.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
9305	46:216b(d) 46:216d

Section 9305 authorizes the Secretary of Transportation, subject to the concurrence of the Secretary of State, to make agreements with Canada for a coordinated system of pilotage service on the Great Lakes. The agreements may fix the number of registered pilots, provide for equitable participation, prescribe rates and charges, coordinate pool operations, and establish conditions for service.

§9306. State regulation prohibited

A State or political subdivision of a State may not regulate or impose any requirement on pilotage on the Great Lakes.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 559.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
9306	46:216g

Section 9306 prohibits State or local regulations of pilotage on the Great Lakes and is part of the exception provided by law envisioned under section 8501(a).

§9307. Great Lakes Pilotage Advisory Committee

(a) The Secretary shall establish a Great Lakes Pilotage Advisory Committee. The Committee—

(1) may review proposed Great Lakes pilotage regulations and policies and make recommendations to the Secretary that the Committee considers appropriate;

(2) may advise, consult with, report to, and make recommendations to the Secretary on matters relating to Great Lakes pilotage;

(3) may make available to the Congress recommendations that the Committee makes to the Secretary; and

(4) shall meet at the call of—

(A) the Secretary, who shall call such a meeting at least once during each calendar year; or

(B) a majority of the Committee.

(b)(1) The Committee shall consist of 8 members appointed by the Secretary in accordance with this subsection, each of whom has at least 5 years practical experience in maritime operations. The term of each member is for a period of not more than 5 years, specified by the Secretary. Before filling a position on the Committee, the Secretary shall publish a notice in the Federal Register soliciting nominations for membership on the Committee.

(2) The membership of the Committee shall include—

(A) the President of each of the 3 Great Lakes pilotage districts, or the President's representative;

(B) one member chosen from among nominations made by vessel operators that contract for Great Lakes pilotage services;

(C) one member chosen from among nominations made by Great Lakes port authorities and marine terminals;

(D) one member chosen from among nominations made by shippers whose cargoes are transported through Great Lakes ports;

(E) one member chosen from among nominations made by Great Lakes maritime labor organizations; and

(F) a member who—

(i) must have been recommended to the Secretary by a unanimous vote of the other members of the Committee, and

(ii) may be appointed without regard to requirement in paragraph (1) that each member have 5 years of practical experience in maritime operations.

(c)(1) The Committee shall elect one of its members as the Chairman and one of its members as the Vice Chairman. The Vice Chairman shall act as Chairman in the absence or incapacity of the Chairman, or in the event of a vacancy in the office of the Chairman.

(2) The Secretary shall, and any other interested agency may, designate a representative to participate as an observer with the Committee. The Secretary's designated representative shall act as the executive secretary of the Committee and shall perform the duties set forth in section 1009(c) of title 5.

(d)(1) The Secretary shall, whenever practicable, consult with the Committee before taking any significant action relating to Great Lakes pilotage.

(2) The Secretary shall consider the information, advice, and recommendations of the Committee in formulating policy regarding matters affecting Great Lakes pilotage.

(3) Any recommendations to the Secretary under subsection (a)(2) must have been approved by at least all but one of the members then serving on the committee.

(e)(1) A member of the Committee, when attending meetings of the Committee or when otherwise engaged in the business of the Committee, is entitled to receive—

(A) compensation at a rate fixed by the Secretary, not exceeding the daily equivalent of the current rate of basic pay in effect for GS–18 of the General Schedule under section 5332 of title 5 including travel time; and

(B) travel or transportation expenses under section 5703 of title 5, United States Code.

(2) A member of the Committee shall not be considered to be an officer or employee of the United States for any purpose based on their receipt of any payment under this subsection.

(f)(1) Chapter 10 of title 5 applies to the Committee, except that the Committee terminates on September 30, 2030.

(2) 2 years before the termination date set forth in paragraph (1) of this subsection, the Committee shall submit to the Congress its recommendation regarding whether the Committee should be renewed and continued beyond the termination date.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 559; Pub. L. 105–383, title III, §303, Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3418; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(4) [div. A, §1118], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–209; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §418(d), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1049; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(23), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1704; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §621(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2976; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8334(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4705; Pub. L. 117–286, §4(a)(291), Dec. 27, 2022, 136 Stat. 4337.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
9307	46:216h

Section 9307 permits the Secretary to establish a Great Lakes Pilotage Advisory Committee. This Committee is to be established consistent with the Federal Advisory Committee Act (P.L. 92–463; 5 App. U.S.C.) and with the requirements imposed by section 19 [118(e)] of P.L. 97–322 (14 U.S.C. 631 note).

Subsection (a) authorizes the Committee to review and make recommendations on Great Lakes pilotage regulation and policies and to make the recommendations available to Congress and requires the Committee to meet at the call of the Secretary.

Subsection (b) establishes the membership of the Committee as 3 members with 5 years of practical maritime experience appointed by the Secretary for a term of not more than 5 years. A Federal Register notice of solicitation for membership nominations for filling a position is required.

Subsection (c) provides for pay and travel expenses, including per diem, for the members.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 117–286, §4(a)(291)(A), substituted "section 1009(c) of title 5." for "section 10(c) of the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.)."

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 117–286, §4(a)(291)(B), substituted "Chapter 10 of title 5" for "The Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.)".

2021—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 116–283, §8334(a)(1)(A), substituted "8 members" for "seven members".

Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 116–283, §8334(a)(1)(B)(i), substituted "chosen from among nominations made by" for "representing the interests of".

Subsec. (b)(2)(C). Pub. L. 116–283, §8334(a)(1)(B)(ii), substituted "chosen from among nominations made by Great Lakes port authorities and marine terminals" for "representing the interests of Great Lakes ports".

Subsec. (b)(2)(D). Pub. L. 116–283, §8334(a)(1)(B)(iii)(I), substituted "chosen from among nominations made by" for "representing the interests of" and "ports;" for "ports; and".

Subsec. (b)(2)(E). Pub. L. 116–283, §8334(a)(1)(B)(v), added subpar. (E). Former subpar. (E) redesignated (F).

Subsec. (b)(2)(F). Pub. L. 116–283, §8334(a)(1)(B)(iv), (vi), redesignated subpar. (E) as (F) and struck out "with a background in finance or accounting," after "a member" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 116–283, §8334(a)(2), substituted "2030" for "2020".

2010—Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 111–281 substituted "September 30, 2020" for "September 30, 2010".

2006—Subsec. (b)(2)(A). Pub. L. 109–304 substituted "the President" for "The President".

2004—Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 108–293 substituted "September 30, 2010" for "September 30, 2005".

2000—Subsec. (b)(2)(A). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(4) [div. A, §1118(1)], amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows: "three members who are practicing Great Lakes pilots and who reflect a regional balance;".

Subsec. (b)(2)(E). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(4) [div. A, §1118(2)], amended subpar. (E) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (E) read as follows: "one member representing the interests of the general public, who is an independent expert on the Great Lakes maritime industry."

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(4) [div. A, §1118(3)], which directed the striking out of second sentence in subsec. (C)(2), was executed by striking out the second sentence in subsec. (c)(2), "The representatives shall, as appropriate, report to and advise the Committee on matters relating to Great Lakes pilotage.", to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(4) [div. A, §1118(4)], added par. (3).

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(4) [div. A, §1118(5)], substituted "September 30, 2005" for "September 30, 2003".

1998—Pub. L. 105–383 amended section generally, substituting provisions consisting of subsecs. (a) to (f) for former provisions consisting of subsecs. (a) to (c).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

CONSTRUCTION OF 2021 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8334(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4706, provided that: "Notwithstanding section 9307(f)(1) of title 46, United States Code, in any case in which the date of enactment of this Act [Jan. 1, 2021] occurs after September 30, 2020, the Great Lakes Pilotage Advisory Committee in existence as of September 30, 2020, shall be deemed not expired during the period beginning on September 30, 2020 through the date of enactment of this Act. Accordingly, the committee membership, charter, and the activities of such Committee shall continue as though such Committee had not expired."

REFERENCES IN OTHER LAWS TO GS–16, 17, OR 18 PAY RATES

References in laws to the rates of pay for GS–16, 17, or 18, or to maximum rates of pay under the General Schedule, to be considered references to rates payable under specified sections of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, see section 529 [title I, §101(c)(1)] of Pub. L. 101–509, set out in a note under section 5376 of Title 5.

§9308. Penalties

(a) An owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or individual in charge of a vessel knowingly allowing the vessel to be operated in violation of section 9302 of this title is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of no more than $10,000 for each day during which the vessel is in violation. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(b) An individual who directs the navigation of a vessel in violation of section 9302 of this title is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of no more than $10,000 for each day during which the violation occurs.

(c) A person violating a regulation prescribed under section 9303 of this title is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of no more than $10,000.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 560; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4108(b), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 515.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
9308	46:216e(a)–(c)

Section 9308 prescribes the penalties for violations of sections 9302 and 9303.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsecs. (a) to (c). Pub. L. 101–380 substituted "no more than $10,000" for "$500".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–380 applicable to incidents occurring after Aug. 18, 1990, see section 1020 of Pub. L. 101–380, set out as an Effective Date note under section 2701 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

PART G—MERCHANT SEAMEN PROTECTION AND RELIEF

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Part G provides for a number of measures for the protection and relief of merchant seamen by requiring certain contractual obligations between the master who represents the vessel owner's interest and the seamen who are engaged or employed on board a vessel, by requiring certain proceedings when a seaman dies or a vessel is suspected of being unseaworthy, by requiring certain standards for accommodations, medicine, clothing, miscellaneous merchandise, and for the handling of special and unique problems of seamen. It also provides for a method of imposing disciplinary controls through the logging of offenses and provides penalties for specified offenses, and certain related disciplinary procedures. The provisions of this part generally do not apply to fishing vessels, whaling vessels, or yachts.

CHAPTER 101—GENERAL

Sec.

10101. Definitions.
[10102. Repealed.]
10103. Reports.
10104. Requirement to report sexual offenses.
10105. Reports to Congress.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11611(b), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4156, added item 10105.

1993—Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §422(c)(2), Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2439, struck out item 10102 "Designations and duties of shipping commissioners".

1989—Pub. L. 101–225, title II, §214(b), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1914, substituted "Requirement to report sexual offenses" for "Regulations" in item 10104.

§10101. Definitions

In this part—

(1) "master" means the individual having command of a vessel.

(2) "owner" means the person to whom the vessel belongs.

(3) "seaman" means an individual (except scientific personnel, a sailing school instructor, or a sailing school student) engaged or employed in any capacity on board a vessel.

(4) "fishing vessel" includes—

(A) a fish tender vessel; or

(B) a fish processing vessel entered into service before January 1, 1988, and not more than 1,600 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title or entered into service after December 31, 1987, and having not more than 16 individuals on board primarily employed in the preparation of fish or fish products.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 560; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(13), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 449; Pub. L. 98–557, §33(d), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2876; Pub. L. 99–640, §10(b)(3), Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3550; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §736, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3941.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10101	46:713

Section 10101 defines the terms master, seaman, and owner as they apply to merchant seamen's protection and relief.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Par. (4)(B). Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "1,600 gross tons".

1986—Pars. (1), (3). Pub. L. 99–640 struck out "owned by a citizen of the United States" after "vessel".

1984—Par. (4). Pub. L. 98–364, as amended Pub. L. 98–557, added par. (4).

[§10102. Repealed. Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §422(c)(1), Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2439]

Section, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 560, related to designations and duties of shipping commissioners.

§10103. Reports

(a) A master of a vessel to which section 8701(a) of this title applies, who engages or discharges a seaman, shall submit reports to the vessel owner in the form, content, and manner of filing as prescribed by regulation, to ensure compliance with laws related to manning and the engagement and discharge of seamen.

(b) This section does not apply to a ferry or towing vessel operated in connection with a ferry operation, employed only in trades other than with foreign ports, lakes, bays, sounds, bayous, canals, or harbors.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 560; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §417, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2438.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10103	46:643(*l*)

Section 10103 requires that masters who engage or discharge seamen submit to the Coast Guard reports of the manning of the vessel, and reports of shipping agreements which are not supervised by a shipping commissioner. It also contains a number of exceptions for specified vessels.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–206 struck out "without a shipping commissioner being present" after "discharges a seaman" and inserted "to the vessel owner" after "shall submit reports".

§10104. Requirement to report sexual offenses

(a) MANDATORY REPORTING BY RESPONSIBLE ENTITY OF A VESSEL.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The responsible entity of a vessel shall report to the Commandant any complaint or incident of sexual harassment or sexual assault in violation of employer policy or law

or harassment, of which such entity is made aware.

(2) PENALTY.—A responsible entity of a vessel who knowingly fails to report in compliance with paragraph (1) is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $50,000.

(b) REPORTING PROCEDURES.—

(1) RESPONSIBLE ENTITY OF A VESSEL REPORTING.—A report required under subsection (a) shall be made immediately after the responsible entity of a vessel gains knowledge of a sexual assault or sexual harassment incident by the fastest telecommunication channel available to—

(A) a single entity in the Coast Guard designated by the Commandant to receive such reports; and

(B) the appropriate officer or agency of the government of the country in whose waters the incident occurs.

(2) CONTENTS.—Such shall include, to the best of the knowledge of the individual making the report—

(A) the name, official position or role in relation to the vessel, and contact information of such individual;

(B) the name and official number of the documented vessel;

(C) the time and date of the incident;

(D) the geographic position or location of the vessel when the incident occurred; and

(E) a brief description of the alleged sexual harassment or sexual assault being reported.

(3) RECEIVING REPORTS; COLLECTION OF INFORMATION.—

(A) RECEIVING REPORTS.—With respect to reports submitted under subsection (a), the Commandant—

(i) may establish additional reporting procedures, including procedures for receiving reports through—

(I) a single telephone number that is continuously manned at all times; and

(II) a single email address that is continuously monitored; and

(ii) shall use procedures that include preserving evidence in such reports and providing emergency service referrals.

(B) COLLECTION OF INFORMATION.—After receipt of the report made under subsection (a), the Coast Guard shall collect information related to the identity of each alleged victim, alleged perpetrator, and any witnesses identified in the report through means designed to protect, to the extent practicable, the personal identifiable information of such individuals.

(c) SUBPOENA AUTHORITY.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Commandant may compel the testimony of witnesses and the production of any evidence by subpoena to determine compliance with this section.

(2) JURISDICTIONAL LIMITS.—The jurisdictional limits of a subpoena issued under this section are the same as, and are enforceable in the same manner as, subpoenas issued under chapter 63 of this title.

(d) COMPANY AFTER-ACTION SUMMARY.—

(1) A responsible entity of a vessel that makes a report under subsection (a) shall—

(A) submit to the Commandant a document with detailed information to describe the actions taken by such entity after becoming aware of the sexual assault or sexual harassment incident, including the results of any investigation into the complaint or incident and any action taken against the offending individual; and

(B) make such submission not later than 10 days after such entity made the report under subsection (a).

(2) CIVIL PENALTY.—A responsible entity of a vessel that fails to comply with paragraph (1) is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $25,000 and $500 shall be added for each day of noncompliance, except that the total amount of a penalty with respect to a complaint or incident shall not exceed $50,000 per violation.

(e) INVESTIGATORY AUDIT.—The Commandant shall periodically perform an audit or other systematic review of the submissions made under this section to determine if there were any failures to comply with the requirements of this section.

(f) APPLICABILITY; REGULATIONS.—

(1) REGULATIONS.— The Secretary may issue regulations to implement the requirements of this section.

(2) INTERIM REPORTS.—Any report required to be made to the Commandant under this section shall be made to the Coast Guard National Command Center, until regulations implementing the procedures required by this section are issued.

(g) DEFINITION OF RESPONSIBLE ENTITY OF A VESSEL.—In this section, the term "responsible entity of a vessel" means—

(1) the owner, master, or managing operator of a documented vessel engaged in commercial service; or

(2) the employer of a seafarer on such a vessel.

(h) HARASSMENT DEFINED.—In this section, the term "harassment" means—

(1)(A) unwelcome remarks about an individual's race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age, disability, genetic information, or other physical or physiological attribute, or other unwelcome verbal or physical conduct towards an individual based on 1 or more of those categories, as prohibited by any Federal law, including—

(i) title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. 2000e et seq.);

(ii) the Age Discrimination in Employment Act of 1967 (29 U.S.C. 621 et seq.);

(iii) the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12101 et seq.); and

(iv) title II of the Genetic Information Nondisclosure Act [1] (42 U.S.C. 2000ff et seq.); and

(B)(i) submission to such remarks or conduct is made either explicitly or implicitly a term or condition of employment, pay, career, benefits, or entitlements of an individual; or

(ii) submission to or rejection of such remarks or conduct by an individual is used as the basis for decisions affecting that individual's job, pay, career, benefits, or entitlements; or

(iii) such remarks or conduct have the purpose or effect of unreasonably interfering with an individual's work performance; and

(C) such remarks or conduct are so severe or pervasive that a reasonable person would perceive, and the alleged harassed individual does perceive, the environment as hostile or offensive.

(i) RESPONSE TO INCIDENTS.—Nothing in this section shall be construed to impede the ability of the responsible entity of the vessel to take immediate personnel action in response to an incident described in subsection (a)(1) to preserve the safety and security of individuals on the vessel.

(j) EDUCATION AND OUTREACH.—Not later than 1 year after the date of the enactment of this Act, the Coast Guard, after consultation with the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (referred to in this subsection as the "Commission"), shall—

(1) develop and disseminate informational guidance to seafarers, vessel owners and operators, employers of seafarers, and other relevant stakeholders, which shall—

(A) describe, in general terms—

(i) the purpose, functions, and powers of the Commission;
(ii) the role of the Commission in addressing employment discrimination complaints; and

(B) identify the publicly available websites and contact information for the Commission; and

(2) make available trainings or other presentations to inform seafarers of employment and anti-discrimination rights under the laws administered by the Coast Guard and the Commission.

(Added Pub. L. 101–225, title II, §214(a)(2), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1914; amended Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11609, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4152; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7315, Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1762.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Title II of the Genetic Information Nondisclosure Act, referred to in subsec. (h)(1)(A)(iv), probably means title II of the Genetic Information Nondiscrimination Act of 2008, Pub. L. 110–233, May 21, 2008, 122 Stat. 905, which is classified to chapter 21F (§2000ff et seq.) of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare.

The date of the enactment of this Act, referred to in subsec. (j), probably means the date of enactment of Pub. L. 119–60, which enacted subsec. (j) of this section and was approved Dec. 18, 2025.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 10104, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 561, related to regulations, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 101–225, §214(a)(1).

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 119–60, §7315(1), substituted "sexual harassment or sexual assault in violation of employer policy or law or harassment" for "harassment, sexual harassment, or sexual assault in violation of employer policy or law".

Subsecs. (h) to (j). Pub. L. 119–60, §7315(2), added subsecs. (h) to (j).

2022—Pub. L. 117–263 added subsecs. (a) to (g) and struck out former subsecs. (a) and (b) which read as follows:

"(a) A master or other individual in charge of a documented vessel shall report to the Secretary a complaint of a sexual offense prohibited under chapter 109A of title 18, United States Code.

"(b) A master or other individual in charge of a documented vessel who knowingly fails to report in compliance with this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000."

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§10105. Reports to Congress

(a) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of the Don Young Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2022, and on an annual basis thereafter, the Commandant shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives a report that includes—

(1) the number of reports received under section 10104;

(2) the number of penalties issued under such section;

(3) the number of open investigations under such section, completed investigations under such section, and the outcomes of such open or completed investigations;

(4) the number of assessments or audits conducted under section 3203 and the outcome of those assessments or audits;

(5) a statistical analysis of compliance with the safety management system criteria under section 3203;

(6) the number of credentials denied or revoked due to sexual harassment, sexual assault, or

related offenses; and

(7) recommendations to support efforts of the Coast Guard to improve investigations and oversight of sexual harassment and sexual assault in the maritime sector, including funding requirements and legislative change proposals necessary to ensure compliance with title CXVI of the Don Young Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2022 and the amendments made by such title.

(b) PRIVACY.—In collecting the information required under subsection (a), the Commandant shall collect such information in a manner that protects the privacy rights of individuals who are subjects of such information.

(Added Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11611(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4155.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of the Don Young Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2022, referred to in subsec. (a), is the date of enactment of division K of Pub. L. 117–263, which was approved Dec. 23, 2022.

Title CXVI of the Don Young Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2022, referred to subsec. (a)(7), is title CXVI of division K of Pub. L. 117–263, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4145. For complete classification of title CXVI to the Code, see Tables.

CHAPTER 103—FOREIGN AND INTERCOASTAL VOYAGES

Sec.

10301. Application.
10302. Shipping articles agreements.
10303. Provisions.
10304. Form of agreement.
10305. Manner of signing agreement.
10306. Exhibiting merchant mariners' documents.
10307. Posting agreements.
10308. Foreign engagements.
10309. Engaging seamen to replace those lost by desertion or casualty.
10310. Discharge.
10311. Certificates of discharge.
10312. Settlements on discharge.
10313. Wages.
10314. Advances.
10315. Allotments.
10316. Trusts.
10317. Loss of lien and right to wages.
10318. Wages on discharge in foreign ports.
10319. Costs of a criminal conviction.
10320. Records of seamen.
10321. General penalty.

§10301. Application

(a) Except as otherwise specifically provided, this chapter applies to a vessel of the United States—

(1) on a voyage between a port in the United States and a port in a foreign country (except a port in Canada, Mexico, or the West Indies); or

(2) of at least 75 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title on a voyage between a port of the United States on the Atlantic Ocean and a port of the United States on the Pacific Ocean.

(b) This chapter does not apply to a vessel on which the seamen are entitled by custom or agreement to share in the profit or result of a voyage or to riding gang members.

(c) Unless otherwise provided, this chapter does not apply to a foreign vessel.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 561; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §737, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3941; Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §312(c)(2), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 533.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10301	46:564 46:566 46:574

Section 10301 specifies that vessels on foreign and intercoastal voyages (except for fishing vessels and foreign vessels) are subject to the seamen protection and relief provisions contained in chapter 103.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 109–241 inserted "or to riding gang members" after "voyage".

1996—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "75 gross tons".

§10302. Shipping articles agreements

(a) The owner, charterer, managing operator, master, or individual in charge shall make a shipping agreement in writing with each seaman before the seaman commences employment.

(b) The agreement shall contain the following:

(1) the nature, and, as far as practicable, the duration of the intended voyage, and the port or country in which the voyage is to end.

(2) the number and description of the crew and the capacity in which each seaman is to be engaged.

(3) the time at which each seaman is to be on board to begin work.

(4) the amount of wages each seaman is to receive.

(5) regulations about conduct on board, and information on fines, short allowance of provisions, and other punishment for misconduct provided by law.

(6) a scale of the provisions that are to be provided each seaman.

(7) any stipulation in reference to advances and allotments of wages.

(8) other matters not contrary to law.

(c) Each shipping agreement must be signed by the master or individual in charge or a representative of the owner, charterer, or managing operator, and by each seaman employed.

(d) The owner, charterer, managing operator, master, or individual in charge shall maintain the shipping agreement and make the shipping agreement available to the seaman.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 561; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §401, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2435.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*

Section 10302 requires the master to make a shipping agreement with each crew member and lists the information that must be included in the agreement.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–206, §401(1), amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as follows: "Before proceeding on a voyage, the master of a vessel to which this chapter applies shall make a shipping articles agreement in writing with each seaman in the crew."

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 103–206, §401(2), added subsecs. (c) and (d).

§10303. Provisions

(a) A seaman shall be served at least 3 meals a day that total at least 3,100 calories, including adequate water and adequate protein, vitamins, and minerals in accordance with the United States Recommended Daily Allowances.

(b) The text of subsection (a) of this section shall be included in the agreement required by section 10302 of this title. A copy of the text also shall be posted in a conspicuous place in the galley and forecastle of each vessel.

(c) This section does not apply to a fishing or whaling vessel or a yacht.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 562.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10303	46:713

Section 10303 requires that seamen be served adequate food and water and that the text of this requirement be posted in the galley. The provisions do not apply to fishing vessels, whaling vessels, or yachts.

§10304. Form of agreement

The form of the agreement required by section 10302 of this title shall be in substance as follows:

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

(Date and place of first signature of agreement):

It is agreed between the master and seamen of the , of which is at present master, or whoever shall go for master, now bound from the port of to (here the voyage is to be described, and the places named at which the vessel is to touch, or if that cannot be done, the general nature and probable length of the voyage is to be stated).

The seamen agree to conduct themselves in an orderly, faithful, honest, and sober manner, and to be at all times diligent in their respective duties, and to be obedient to the lawful commands of the master, or of an individual who lawfully succeeds the master, and of their superior officers in everything related to the vessel, and the stores and cargo of the vessel, whether on board, in boats, or on shore. In consideration of this service by the seamen to be performed, the master agrees to pay the crew, as wages, the amounts beside their names respectively expressed, and to supply them with provisions according to the annexed scale.

It is agreed that any embezzlement, or willful or negligent destruction of any part of the vessel's cargo or stores, shall be made good to the owner out of the wages of the person guilty of the embezzlement or destruction.

If an individual holds himself or herself out as qualified for a duty which the individual proves incompetent to perform, the individual's wages shall be reduced in proportion to the incompetency.

It also is agreed that if a seaman considers himself or herself to be aggrieved by any breach of this agreement or otherwise, the seaman shall present the complaint to the master or officer in charge of the vessel, in a quiet and orderly manner, who shall take steps that the case requires.

It also is agreed that (here any other stipulations may be inserted to which the parties agree, and that are not contrary to law).

In witness whereof, the parties have subscribed their names to this agreement, on the dates beside their respective signatures.

Signed by , master, on the day of , nineteen hundred and .

Signature of seaman	Time of service:
Birthplace	Months
Age	Days
Height:	Hospital money
Feet	Whole wages
Inches	Wages due
Description:	Place and time of entry
Complexion	Time at which seaman is to
Hair	be on board
Wages each month	In what capacity
Wages each voyage	Allotment payable to
Advance wages	Conduct qualifications
Amount of monthly allotment	

NOTE.—In the place for signature and descriptions of individuals engaged after the first departure of the vessel, the entries are to be made as above, except that the signature of the consul or vice consul, customs officer, or witness before whom the individual is engaged, is to be entered.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 562; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §402, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2436.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10304	46:713

Section 10304 provides the form of the shipping articles of agreement. While the exact format need not be followed, the form that is used must contain all the pertinent elements.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–206 struck out "Shipping commissioner's signature or initials" immediately below "In

what capacity" in the form.

§10305. Manner of signing agreement

The agreement required by section 10302 of this title shall be signed—

(1) first by the master and dated at that time, after which each seaman shall sign; and

(2) in the presence of the master or individual in charge.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 563; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §403, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2436.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10305	46:565

Section 10305 describes the procedures for signing the shipping agreement, and for keeping official records of the agreement. It also requires that the agreement include a statement that the seaman understand its provisions, and did so while sober.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–206 struck out "(a)" before "The agreement", substituted "the master or individual in charge" for "a shipping commissioner" in par. (2), and struck out subsecs. (b) and (c) which read as follows:

"(b) When the crew is first engaged, the agreement shall be signed in duplicate. One of the copies shall be retained by the shipping commissioner. The other copy shall contain space for the description and signatures of seamen engaged subsequent to the first making of the agreement, and shall be delivered to the master.

"(c) An agreement signed before a shipping commissioner shall be acknowledged and signed by the commissioner on the agreement in the manner and form prescribed by regulation. The acknowledgment and certification shall include a statement by the commissioner that the seaman—

"(1) has read the agreement;

"(2) is acquainted with and understands its conditions; and

"(3) has signed it freely and voluntarily when sober."

§10306. Exhibiting merchant mariners' documents

Before signing the agreement required by section 10302 of this title, each individual required by section 8701 of this title to have a merchant mariner's document shall exhibit to the master or individual in charge a document issued to the individual, appropriately endorsed for the capacity in which the individual is to serve.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 564; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §404, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2436.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10306	46:643(c)

Section 10306 requires a seaman to exhibit an appropriately endorsed merchant mariner's document to the shipping commissioner before signing a shipping agreement. When a master acts as a shipping commissioner, the same procedure applies.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–206 substituted "master or individual in charge" for "shipping commissioner".

§10307. Posting agreements

At the beginning of a voyage, the master shall have a legible copy of the agreement required by section 10302 of this title, omitting signatures, exhibited in a part of the vessel accessible to the crew.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 564; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §405, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2436.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10307	46:577

Section 10307 requires the master to post a copy of the shipping agreement in a part of the vessel accessible to the crew prior to the commencement of a voyage. The posting must be done in a manner that gives seamen adequate notice of the particulars of the pending voyage.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–206 struck out at end "A master violating this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $100."

§10308. Foreign engagements

When a seaman is engaged outside the United States, the agreement required by section 10302 of this title shall be signed in the presence of a consular officer. If a consular officer is not available at the port of engagement, the seaman may be engaged, and the agreement shall be signed in the next port at which a consular officer is available.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 564; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §406, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2436.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10308	46:570

Section 10308 requires that shipping agreements made in foreign ports be signed in the presence of a consular officer. The penalty for violation of this section is $100.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–206 struck out "(a)" before "When a seaman" and struck out subsec. (b) which read as follows: "A master engaging a seaman in violation of this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $100. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty."

§10309. Engaging seamen to replace those lost by desertion or casualty

(a) If a desertion or casualty results in the loss of at least one seaman, the master shall engage, if obtainable, a number equal to the number of seamen of whose services the master has been deprived. The new seaman must have at least the same grade or rating as the seaman whose place the new seaman fills. The master shall report the loss and replacement to a consular officer at the first port at which the master arrives.

(b) This section does not apply to a fishing or whaling vessel or a yacht.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 564; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §407, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2436.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10309	46:569

Section 10309 provides for the replacement of seamen lost by desertion or casualty. It does not apply to fishing vessels, whaling vessels, or yachts.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 103–206 redesignated subsec. (c) as (b) and struck out former subsec. (b) which read as follows: "The master is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $200 for each report not made. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty."

§10310. Discharge

A master shall deliver to a seaman a full and true account of the seaman's wages and all deductions at least 48 hours before paying off or discharging the seaman.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 564; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §408, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2436.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10310	46:641 46:642

Section 10310 requires the master of a vessel to give each seaman a full account of the seaman's wages 48 hours before discharge. The penalty for violation is $50.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–206 struck out "or a shipping commissioner" after "to a seaman" and struck out at end "A master failing to deliver the account is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $50."

§10311. Certificates of discharge

(a) On discharging a seaman and paying the seaman's wages, the master or individual in charge

shall provide the seaman with a certificate of discharge. The form of the certificate shall be prescribed by regulation. It shall contain—

(1) the name of the seaman;
(2) the citizenship or nationality of the seaman;
(3) the number of the seaman's merchant mariner's document;
(4) the name and official number of the vessel;
(5) the nature of the voyage (foreign, intercoastal, or coastwise);
(6) the propulsion class of the vessel;
(7) the date and place of engagement;
(8) the date and place of discharge; and
(9) the seaman's capacity on the voyage.

(b) The certificate of discharge may not contain a reference about the character or ability of the seaman. The certificate shall be signed by the master and the seaman.

(c) A certificate of discharge may not be issued if the seaman holds a continuous discharge book. The entries shall be made in the discharge book in the same manner as the entries required by subsection (a) of this section.

(d)(1) A record of each discharge shall be maintained by the owner, charterer, managing operator, master, or individual in charge in the manner and location prescribed by regulation. The records may not be open for general or public use or inspection.

(2) A duplicate of a record of discharge shall be issued to a seaman at the request of the seaman.

(e) This section does not apply to a fishing or whaling vessel or a yacht.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 564; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §409, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2436.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10311	46:643

Section 10311 requires a shipping commissioner, when discharging a seaman, either to provide the seaman with a certificate of discharge or to make an entry in the seaman's continuous discharge book. It requires that certain facts be included in the certificate or in the entry, prohibits other information from being included, and requires the Secretary to keep records of all discharges, copies of which must be furnished to seamen at cost upon request. These discharges are used to substantiate the nature and duration of the seaman's employment on a particular vessel. This section does not apply to fishing vessels, whaling vessels, or yachts.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–206, §409(1), substituted "master or individual in charge" for "shipping commissioner".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–206, §409(2), substituted "by the master and the seaman" for "by the master, the seaman, and the shipping commissioner as witness".

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 103–206, §409(3), substituted "owner, charterer, managing operator, master, or individual in charge" for "Secretary".

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 103–206, §409(4), substituted "at the request of the seaman" for "at a cost prescribed by regulation".

§10312. Settlements on discharge

When discharge and settlement are completed, the master, individual in charge, or owner and each seaman shall sign the agreement required by section 10302 of this title.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 565; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §410, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2437.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10312(a), (b), (d)–(f)	46:644
10312(c)	46:652

Section 10312 outlines the procedures for settlements upon discharge and for settling disputes over seamen's wages and discharges.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–206 amended heading and text of section generally, substituting text consisting of sentence relating to signing agreements on discharge and settlement for former subsecs. (a) to (f) relating to such agreements, proceedings before shipping commissioners to settle disputes, certified copies of agreements, evidence of release of claims, and statements of wages paid.

§10313. Wages

(a) A seaman's entitlement to wages and provisions begins when the seaman begins work or when specified in the agreement required by section 10302 of this title for the seaman to begin work or be present on board, whichever is earlier.

(b) Wages are not dependent on the earning of freight by the vessel. When the loss or wreck of the vessel ends the service of a seaman before the end of the period contemplated in the agreement, the seaman is entitled to wages for the period of time actually served. The seaman shall be deemed a destitute seaman under section 11104 of this title. This subsection applies to a fishing or whaling vessel but not a yacht.

(c) When a seaman who has signed an agreement is discharged improperly before the beginning of the voyage or before one month's wages are earned, without the seaman's consent and without the seaman's fault justifying discharge, the seaman is entitled to receive from the master or owner, in addition to wages earned, one month's wages as compensation.

(d) A seaman is not entitled to wages for a period during which the seaman—

(1) unlawfully failed to work when required, after the time fixed by the agreement for the seaman to begin work; or

(2) lawfully was imprisoned for an offense, unless a court hearing the case otherwise directs.

(e) After the beginning of the voyage, a seaman is entitled to receive from the master, on demand, one-half of the balance of wages earned and unpaid at each port at which the vessel loads or delivers cargo during the voyage. A demand may not be made before the expiration of 5 days from the beginning of the voyage, not more than once in 5 days, and not more than once in the same port on the same entry. If a master does not comply with this subsection, the seaman is released from the agreement and is entitled to payment of all wages earned. Notwithstanding a release signed by a seaman under section 10312 of this title, a court having jurisdiction may set aside, for good cause shown, the release and take action that justice requires. This subsection does not apply to a fishing or whaling vessel or a yacht.

(f) At the end of a voyage, the master shall pay each seaman the balance of wages due the seaman within 24 hours after the cargo has been discharged or within 4 days after the seaman is discharged,

whichever is earlier. When a seaman is discharged and final payment of wages is delayed for the period permitted by this subsection, the seaman is entitled at the time of discharge to one-third of the wages due the seaman.

(g)(1) Subject to paragraph (2), when payment is not made as provided under subsection (f) of this section without sufficient cause, the master or owner shall pay to the seaman 2 days' wages for each day payment is delayed.

(2) The total amount required to be paid under paragraph (1) with respect to all claims in a class action suit by seamen on a passenger vessel capable of carrying more than 500 passengers for wages under this section against a vessel master, owner, or operator or the employer of the seamen shall not exceed ten times the unpaid wages that are the subject of the claims.

(3) A class action suit for wages under this subsection must be commenced within three years after the later of—

(A) the date of the end of the last voyage for which the wages are claimed; or

(B) the receipt, by a seaman who is a claimant in the suit, of a payment of wages that are the subject of the suit that is made in the ordinary course of employment.

(h) Subsections (f) and (g) of this section do not apply to a fishing or whaling vessel or a yacht.

(i) This section applies to a seaman on a foreign vessel when in a harbor of the United States. The courts are available to the seaman for the enforcement of this section.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 566; Pub. L. 99–640, §10(b)(4), Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3550; Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §902(a)(1), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3008.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10313(a)	46:591
10313(b)	46:592
	46:593
10313(c)	46:594
10313(d)	46:595
10313(e)–(i)	46:596
	46:597
	46:598

Section 10313 provides that a seaman's entitlement to wages begins when the seaman begins work, or as specified in the shipping agreement. This section also qualifies a seaman's entitlement to wages if the vessel is lost or wrecked, if the seaman is discharged improperly, or if the seaman unlawfully failed to work or was imprisoned. It also establishes procedures for the payment of wages at each port the vessel loads or unloads cargo, and at the end of the voyage. This section applies to seamen on foreign vessels in United States harbors, but not to fishing vessels, whaling vessels or yachts.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111–281 designated existing provisions as par. (1), substituted "(1) Subject to paragraph (2), when" for "When", and added pars. (2) and (3).

1986—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 99–640 struck out last sentence which read as follows: "However, this subsection applies to a vessel taking oysters."

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 99–640 struck out last sentence which read as follows: "However, subsections (f) and (g) apply to a vessel taking oysters."

§10314. Advances

(a)(1) A person may not—

(A) pay a seaman wages in advance of the time when the seaman has earned the wages;

(B) pay advance wages of the seaman to another person; or

(C) make to another person an order, note, or other evidence of indebtedness of the wages, or pay another person, for the engagement of seamen when payment is deducted or to be deducted from the seaman's wage.

(2) A person violating this subsection is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $500. A payment made in violation of this subsection does not relieve the vessel or the master from the duty to pay all wages after they have been earned.

(b) A person demanding or receiving from a seaman or an individual seeking employment as a seaman, remuneration for providing the seaman or individual with employment, is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $500.

(c) This section applies to a foreign vessel when in waters of the United States. An owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, or master of a foreign vessel violating this section is liable to the Government for the same penalty as an owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, or master of a vessel of the United States for the same violation.

(d) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, or master of a vessel seeking clearance from a port of the United States shall present the agreement required by section 10302 of this title at the office of clearance. Clearance may be granted to a vessel only if this section has been complied with.

(e) This section does not apply to a fishing or whaling vessel or a yacht.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 567; Pub. L. 99–640, §10(b)(4), Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3550.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10314	46:599

Section 10314 forbids advance payment of wages to seamen prior to the commencement of the seaman's employment. It provides a civil penalty of $500 for any person making such a payment, and for any person demanding or receiving remuneration for providing a seaman with employment. This means that the use of employment agencies for hiring seamen is prohibited. It also requires compliance with section 10302 regarding the signing of articles of agreement before a vessel can be cleared from a United States port. This section applies to foreign vessels in United States waters but not to fishing vessels, whaling vessels or yachts.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 99–640 struck out last sentence which read as follows: "However, this section applies to a vessel taking oysters."

§10315. Allotments

(a) Under prescribed regulations, a seaman may stipulate as follows in the agreement required by section 10302 of this title for an allotment of any part of the wages the seaman may earn:

(1) to the seaman's grandparents, parents, spouse, sister, brother, or children;

(2) to an agency designated by the Secretary of the Treasury to handle applications for United States savings bonds, to purchase bonds for the seaman; and

(3) for deposits to be made in an account for savings or investment opened by the seaman and maintained in the seaman's name at a savings bank or a savings institution in which the accounts

are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation.

(b) An allotment is valid only if made in writing and signed by and approved by a shipping commissioner. The shipping commissioner shall examine allotments and the parties to them to enforce compliance with the law. Stipulations for allotments made at the beginning of a voyage shall be included in the agreement and shall state the amounts and times of payment and the person to whom payments are to be made.

(c) Only an allotment complying with this section is lawful. A person falsely claiming qualification as an allottee under this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $500.

(d) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, or master of a vessel seeking clearance from a port of the United States shall present the agreement at the office of clearance. Clearance may be granted to a vessel only if this section has been complied with.

(e) This section applies to a foreign vessel when in waters of the United States. An owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, or master of a foreign vessel violating this section is liable to the Government for the same penalty as an owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, or master of a vessel of the United States for the same violation.

(f) DEPOSITS IN SEAMAN ACCOUNT.—By written request signed by the seaman, a seaman employed on a passenger vessel capable of carrying more than 500 passengers may authorize the master, owner, or operator of the vessel, or the employer of the seaman, to make deposits of wages of the seaman into a checking, savings, investment, or retirement account, or other account to secure a payroll or debit card for the seaman if—

(1) the wages designated by the seaman for such deposit are deposited in a United States or international financial institution designated by the seaman;

(2) such deposits in the financial institution are fully guaranteed under commonly accepted international standards by the government of the country in which the financial institution is licensed;

(3) a written wage statement or pay stub, including an accounting of any direct deposit, is delivered to the seaman no less often than monthly; and

(4) while on board the vessel on which the seaman is employed, the seaman is able to arrange for withdrawal of all funds on deposit in the account in which the wages are deposited.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 567; Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §902(a)(2), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3009.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10315	46:599

Section 10315 lists the persons to whom a seaman may allot wages, specifies the conditions which make an allotment valid, and provides a civil penalty of $500 for falsely claiming qualification as an allottee. It also requires that this section be complied with before a vessel can be cleared from a United States port. This section applies to foreign vessels.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 111–281 added subsec. (f).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation abolished and functions transferred, see sections 401 to 406 of Pub. L. 101–73, set out as a note under section 1437 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

§10316. Trusts

Sections 10314 and 10315 of this title do not prevent an employer from making deductions from the wages of a seaman, with the written consent of the seaman, if—

(1) the deductions are paid into a trust fund established only for the benefit of seamen employed by that employer, and the families and dependents of those seamen (or of those seamen, families, and dependents jointly with other seamen employed by other employers, and the families and dependents of the other seamen); and

(2) the payments are held in trust to provide, from principal or interest, or both, any of the following benefits for those seamen and their families and dependents:

(A) medical or hospital care, or both.

(B) pensions on retirement or death of the seaman.

(C) life insurance.

(D) unemployment benefits.

(E) compensation for illness or injuries resulting from occupational activity.

(F) sickness, accident, and disability compensation.

(G) purchasing insurance to provide any of the benefits specified in this section.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 568.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10316	46:599(g)

Section 10316 qualifies the two previous sections by allowing an employer to make deductions from seamen's wages for the purpose of placing the wages into a trust fund or holding them in trust to provide for the seamen's benefit.

§10317. Loss of lien and right to wages

A master or seaman by any agreement other than one provided for in this chapter may not forfeit the master's or seaman's lien on the vessel or be deprived of a remedy to which the master or seaman otherwise would be entitled for the recovery of wages. A stipulation in an agreement inconsistent with this chapter, or a stipulation by which a seaman consents to abandon a right to wages if the vessel is lost, or to abandon a right the seaman may have or obtain in the nature of salvage, is void.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 568.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10317	46:600

Section 10317 prohibits a master or seaman from entering into an agreement which forfeits his or her lien on the vessel or other remedy for recovery of wages, and renders such agreements void.

§10318. Wages on discharge in foreign ports

(a) When a master or seaman applies to a consular officer for the discharge of the seaman, the

consular officer shall require the master to pay the seaman's wages if it appears that the seaman has carried out the agreement required by section 10302 of this title or otherwise is entitled to be discharged. Then the consular officer shall discharge the seaman. A consular officer shall require the payment of extra wages only as provided in this section or in chapter 109 of this title.

(b) When discharging a seaman, a consular officer who fails to require the payment of the wages due a seaman at the time, and of the extra wages due under subsection (a) of this section, is accountable to the United States Government for the total amount.

(c) A seaman discharged under this section with the consent of the seaman is entitled to wages up to the time of discharge, but not for any additional period.

(d) If the seaman is discharged involuntarily, and it appears that the discharge was not because of neglect of duty, incompetency, or injury incurred on the vessel, the master shall provide the seaman with employment on a vessel agreed to by the seaman or shall provide the seaman with one month's extra wages.

(e) Expenses for the maintenance and return of an ill or injured seaman to the United States shall be paid by the Secretary of State. If a seaman is incapacitated by illness or injury and prompt discharge is necessary, but a personal appearance of the master before a consular officer is impracticable, the master may provide transportation to the seaman to the nearest consular officer for discharge.

(f) A deduction from wages of the seaman is permitted only if the deduction appears in the account of the seaman required to be delivered under section 10310 of this title, except for matters arising after delivery of the account, in which case a supplementary account is required. During a voyage, the master shall record in the official logbook the matters about which deductions are to be made with the amounts of the deductions. The entries shall be made as the matters occur. The master shall produce the official logbook at the time of payment of wages, and also before a competent authority on the hearing of any complaint or question about the payment of wages.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 568.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10318	46:682 46:683

Section 10318 establishes consular officers' responsibilities in discharging seamen and the seamen's right to wages when discharged and when incapacitated by illness or injury. It also requires a master to record in the official logbook all matters for which deductions are to be made from seamen's wages.

§10319. Costs of a criminal conviction

In a proceeding about a seaman's wages, if it is shown that the seaman was convicted during the voyage of an offense by a competent tribunal and sentenced by the tribunal, the court hearing the case may direct that a part of the wages due the seaman, but not more than $15, be applied to reimburse the master for costs properly incurred in procuring the conviction and sentence.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 569.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10319	46:707

Section 10319 provides that if a seaman was convicted during a voyage by a tribunal, that the court may direct that up to $15 of the seaman's wages be used to reimburse the master for the costs incurred.

§10320. Records of seamen

The Secretary shall prescribe regulations requiring vessel owners to maintain records of seamen on matters of engagement, discharge, and service. A vessel owner shall make these records available to the seaman and the Coast Guard on request.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 569; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §411, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2437.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10320	.....

Section 10320 authorizes the Secretary to provide for the maintenance of records of the engagement, discharge, or service of seamen.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–206 amended heading and text of section generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Secretary may prescribe regulations for reporting by a master of matters about the engagement, discharge, or service of seamen that may be needed in keeping central records of seamen."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

§10321. General penalty

(a) A person violating any provision of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000.

(b) The vessel is liable in rem for any penalty assessed under this section.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 569; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §412, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2437.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10321	46:567 46:568 46:571 46:661 46:665

Section 10321 makes a vessel on which a seaman is carried to sea in violation of this chapter or regulation prescribed under this chapter liable in rem to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $200 for

each seaman carried in violation.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–206 amended heading and text of section generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, or master of a vessel on which a seaman is carried in violation of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $200 for each seaman carried in violation. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty."

CHAPTER 105—COASTWISE VOYAGES

Sec.

10501. Application.
10502. Shipping articles agreements.
10503. Exhibiting merchant mariners' documents.
10504. Wages.
10505. Advances.
10506. Trusts.
[10507. Repealed.]
10508. General penalties.
10509. Penalty for failing to begin voyage.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §415(b), Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2438, struck out item 10507 "Duties of shipping commissioners".

§10501. Application

(a) Except for a vessel to which chapter 103 of this title applies, this chapter applies to a vessel of at least 50 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title on a voyage between a port in one State and a port in another State (except an adjoining State).

(b) This chapter does not apply to a vessel on which the seamen are entitled by custom or agreement to share in the profit or result of a voyage.

(c) Unless otherwise provided, this chapter does not apply to a foreign vessel.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 570; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §738, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3941.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10501	46:574

Section 10501 specifies that vessels over 50 gross tons that are not subject to chapter 103 and are engaged on voyages between two states (except for adjoining states) are subject to the provisions of this chapter. Specifically excluded are foreign vessels and vessels on which seamen share the profits.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "50 gross tons".

§10502. Shipping articles agreements

(a) The owner, charterer, managing operator, master, or individual in charge shall make a shipping agreement in writing with each seaman before the seaman commences employment.

(b) The agreement shall include the date and hour on which the seaman must be on board to begin the voyage.

(c) The agreement may not contain a provision on the allotment of wages or a scale of provisions.

(d) Each shipping agreement must be signed by the master or individual in charge or a representative of the owner, charterer, or managing operator, and by each seaman employed.

(e) The owner, charterer, managing operator, master, or individual in charge shall maintain the shipping agreement and make the shipping agreement available to the seaman.

(f) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations requiring shipping companies to maintain records of seamen on matters of engagement, discharge, and service. The shipping companies shall make these records available to the seaman and the Coast Guard on request.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 570; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §413, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2437.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10502	46:574

Section 10502 requires the master on a vessel engaged on a coastwise voyage to sign a shipping agreement with each member of the crew and lists provisions which must be and provisions which may not be included in the agreement.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–206, §413(1), amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as follows: "Before proceeding on a voyage, the master of a vessel to which this chapter applies shall make a shipping articles agreement in writing with each seaman on board, declaring the nature of the voyage or the period of time for which the seaman is engaged."

Subsecs. (d) to (f). Pub. L. 103–206, §413(2), added subsecs. (d) to (f).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

§10503. Exhibiting merchant mariners' documents

Before signing the agreement required by section 10502 of this title, a seaman required by section

8701 of this title to have a merchant mariner's document shall exhibit to the master a document issued to the seaman and appropriately endorsed for the capacity in which the seaman is to serve.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 570.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10503	46:643

Under section 10503 seamen who are required to have a merchant mariner's document must exhibit it before signing a shipping agreement on a coastwise voyage.

§10504. Wages

(a) After the beginning of a voyage, a seaman is entitled to receive from the master, on demand, one-half of the balance of wages earned and unpaid at each port at which the vessel loads or delivers cargo during the voyage. A demand may not be made before the expiration of 5 days from the beginning of the voyage, not more than once in 5 days, and not more than once in the same port on the same entry. If a master does not comply with this subsection, the seaman is released from the agreement required by section 10502 of this title and is entitled to payment of all wages earned. Notwithstanding a release signed by a seaman under section 10312 of this title, a court having jurisdiction may set aside, for good cause shown, the release and take action that justice requires. This subsection does not apply to a fishing or whaling vessel or a yacht.

(b) The master shall pay a seaman the balance of wages due the seaman within 2 days after the termination of the agreement required by section 10502 of this title or when the seaman is discharged, whichever is earlier.

(c)(1) Subject to subsection (d), and except as provided in paragraph (2), when payment is not made as provided under subsection (b) of this section without sufficient cause, the master or owner shall pay to the seaman 2 days' wages for each day payment is delayed.

(2) The total amount required to be paid under paragraph (1) with respect to all claims in a class action suit by seamen on a passenger vessel capable of carrying more than 500 passengers for wages under this section against a vessel master, owner, or operator or the employer of the seamen shall not exceed ten times the unpaid wages that are the subject of the claims.

(3) A class action suit for wages under this subsection must be commenced within three years after the later of—

(A) the date of the end of the last voyage for which the wages are claimed; or

(B) the receipt, by a seaman who is a claimant in the suit, of a payment of wages that are the subject of the suit that is made in the ordinary course of employment.

(d) Subsections (b) and (c) of this section do not apply to:

(1) a vessel engaged in coastwise commerce.

(2) a yacht.

(3) a fishing vessel.

(4) a whaling vessel.

(e) This section applies to a seaman on a foreign vessel when in harbor of the United States. The courts are available to the seaman for the enforcement of this section.

(f) DEPOSITS IN SEAMAN ACCOUNT.—On written request signed by the seaman, a seaman employed on a passenger vessel capable of carrying more than 500 passengers may authorize, the master, owner, or operator of the vessel, or the employer of the seaman, to make deposits of wages of the seaman into a checking, savings, investment, or retirement account, or other account to secure a payroll or debit card for the seaman if—

(1) the wages designated by the seaman for such deposit are deposited in a United States or international financial institution designated by the seaman;

(2) such deposits in the financial institution are fully guaranteed under commonly accepted international standards by the government of the country in which the financial institution is licensed;

(3) a written wage statement or pay stub, including an accounting of any direct deposit, is delivered to the seaman no less often than monthly; and

(4) while on board the vessel on which the seaman is employed, the seaman is able to arrange for withdrawal of all funds on deposit in the account in which the wages are deposited.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 570; Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(5), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 67; Pub. L. 99–640, §10(b)(4), (5), Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3550; Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §902(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3009.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10504	46:596
	46:597
	46:598

Section 10504 specifies when seamen on coastwise voyages may obtain portions of their wages. The section does not apply to fishing vessels, whaling vessels or yachts, and portions of it do not apply to vessels taking oysters. It does apply to foreign vessels while in United States ports.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–281, §902(b)(1), designated existing provisions as par. (1), substituted "Subject to subsection (d), and except as provided in paragraph (2), when" for "When", and added pars. (2) and (3).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 111–281, §902(b)(2), added subsec. (f).

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99–640, §10(b)(4), struck out last sentence which read as follows: "However, this subsection applies to a vessel taking oysters."

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 99–640, §10(b)(5), struck out "(except a vessel taking oysters)" after "vessel".

1985—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99–36 amended subsec. (d) generally, thereby including reference to a vessel engaged in coastwise commerce.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 99–36, §1(b), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 68, provided that: "The effective date of subsection (a)(5) of this section [amending this section] is August 26, 1983."

§10505. Advances

(a)(1) A person may not—

(A) pay a seaman wages in advance of the time when the seaman has earned the wages;

(B) pay advance wages of the seaman to another person; or

(C) make to another person an order, note, or other evidence of indebtedness of the wages, or pay another person, for the engagement of seamen when payment is deducted or to be deducted from the seaman's wage.

(2) A person violating this subsection is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty

of not more than $5,000. A payment made in violation of this subsection does not relieve the vessel or the master from the duty to pay all wages after they have been earned.

(b) A person demanding or receiving from a seaman or an individual seeking employment as a seaman, remuneration for providing the seaman or individual with employment, is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000.

(c) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, or master of a vessel seeking clearance from a port of the United States shall present the agreement required by section 10502 of this title at the office of clearance. Clearance may be granted to a vessel only if this section has been complied with.

(d) This section does not apply to a fishing or whaling vessel or a yacht.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 571; Pub. L. 99–640, §10(b)(4), Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3550; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §414, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2437.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10505	46:598 46:599

Section 10505 prohibits any person from paying a seaman on a coastwise voyage advance wages, or to pay to another person any form of a seaman's wages prior to the commencement of the seaman's employment. It also prohibits a person from seeking or receiving remuneration for providing a seaman with employment. This section also requires that a vessel comply with this section before clearing port. It provides penalties for offenses of its provisions. The section does not apply to fishing vessels, whaling vessels, or yachts, but does apply to vessels taking oysters.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 103–206, §414(1), substituted "$5,000" for "$100".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–206, §414(2), substituted "$5,000" for "$500".

1986—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99–640 struck out last sentence which read as follows: "However, this section applies to a vessel taking oysters."

§10506. Trusts

Section 10505 of this title does not prevent an employer from making deductions from the wages of a seaman, with the written consent of the seaman, if—

(1) the deductions are paid into a trust fund established only for the benefit of seamen employed by that employer, and the families and dependents of those seamen (or of those seamen, families, and dependents jointly with other seamen employed by other employers, and the families and dependents of the other seamen); and

(2) the payments are held in trust to provide, from principal or interest, or both, any of the following benefits for those seamen and their families and dependents:

(A) medical or hospital care, or both.

(B) pensions on retirement or death of the seaman.

(C) life insurance.

(D) unemployment benefits.

(E) compensation for illness or injuries resulting from occupational activity.

(F) sickness, accident, and disability compensation.

(G) purchasing insurance to provide any of the benefits specified in this section.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 571.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10506	46:599

Section 10506 permits deductions to be made from wages of seamen on coastwise voyages if the deductions are to be used for the benefit of the seamen or their families.

[§10507. Repealed. Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §415(a), Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2438]

Section, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 571, related to duties of shipping commissioners.

§10508. General penalties

(a) A master who carries a seaman on a voyage without first making the agreement required by section 10502 of this title shall pay to the seaman the highest wage that was paid for a similar voyage within the 3 months before the time of engagement at the port or place at which the seaman was engaged. A seaman who has not signed an agreement is not bound by the applicable regulations, penalties, or forfeitures.

(b) A master engaging a seaman in violation of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 572; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §416, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2438.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10508	46:575

Section 10508 provides for a fair wage to be paid to a seaman who was engaged without a shipping agreement, and also exempts the seaman under certain conditions from applicable regulations, penalties or forfeitures. It also provides a penalty for violation of its provisions.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–206 substituted "not more than $5,000" for "$20".

§10509. Penalty for failing to begin voyage

(a) A seaman who fails to be on board at the time contained in the agreement required by section 10502 of this title, without having given 24 hours' notice of inability to do so, shall forfeit, for each hour's lateness, one-half of one day's pay to be deducted from the seaman's wages if the lateness is recorded in the official logbook on the date of the violation.

(b) A seaman who does not report at all or subsequently deserts forfeits all wages.

(c) This section does not apply to a fishing or whaling vessel or a yacht.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 572.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10509	46:576

This section provides for a reduction in the wages of seamen who arrive late for voyages, if their late arrival is noted in the official logbook. It does not apply to fishing vessels, whaling vessels or yachts.

CHAPTER 106—FISHING VOYAGES

Sec.
10601. Fishing agreements.
10602. Recovery of wages and shares of fish under agreement.
10603. Seaman's duty to notify employer regarding illness, disability, and injury.

§10601. Fishing agreements

(a) Before proceeding on a voyage, the owner, charterer, or managing operator, or a representative thereof, including the master or individual in charge, of a fishing vessel, fish processing vessel, or fish tender vessel shall make a fishing agreement in writing with each seaman employed on board if the vessel is—

(1) at least 20 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title; and

(2) on a voyage from a port in the United States.

(b) The agreement shall—

(1) state the period of effectiveness of the agreement;

(2) include the terms of any wage, share, or other compensation arrangement peculiar to the fishery in which the vessel will be engaged during the period of the agreement;

(3) in the case of a seaman employed on a vessel that is a catcher processor or fish processing vessel that employs more than 25 crewmembers, include a requirement that each crewmember shall be served not less than three meals a day that—

(A) total not less than 3,100 calories; and

(B) include adequate water and minerals in accordance with the United States Recommended Daily Allowances; and

(4) include other agreed terms.

(Pub. L. 100–424, §6(a), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1591; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §739, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3942; Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §441(a), (b), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2131; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11526, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4145.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10601	46:531

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (b)(3), (4). Pub. L. 117–263 added par. (3) and redesignated former par. (3) as (4).

2002—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 107–295, §441(a), (b)(1), in introductory provisions, inserted "owner, charterer,

or managing operator, or a representative thereof, including the" after "on a voyage, the" and comma after "individual in charge" and substituted "employed" for "enployed".

Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 107–295, §441(b)(2), (3), redesignated subsec. (c) as (b) and struck out former subsec. (b) which read as follows: "The agreement shall be signed also by the owner of the vessel."

1996—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "20 gross tons".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

AGREEMENTS DEEMED COMPLIANT

Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §441(c), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2131, as amended by Pub. L. 108–199, div. H, §137(a), Jan. 23, 2004, 118 Stat. 442, provided that: "An agreement that complies with the requirements of section 10601(a) of title 46, United States Code, as herein amended, is hereby deemed to have been in compliance with subsections (a) and (b) of section 10601 of title 46, United States Code, as in effect prior to November 25, 2002."

[Pub. L. 108–199, div. H, §137(b), Jan. 23, 2004, 118 Stat. 442, provided that: "The amendments made by subsection (a) [amending section 441(c) of Pub. L. 107–295, set out above] apply to all proceedings pending on or commenced after the date of enactment of this Act [Jan. 23, 2004]."]

§10602. Recovery of wages and shares of fish under agreement

(a) When fish caught under an agreement under section 10601 of this title are delivered to the owner of the vessel for processing and are sold, the vessel is liable in rem for the wages and shares of the proceeds of the seamen. An action under this section must be brought within six months after the sale of the fish.

(b)(1) In an action under this section, the owner shall produce an accounting of the sale and division of proceeds under the agreement. If the owner fails to produce the accounting, the vessel is liable for the highest value alleged for the shares.

(2) The owner may offset the value of general supplies provided for the voyage and other supplies provided the seaman bringing the action.

(c) This section does not affect a common law right of a seaman to bring an action to recover the seaman's share of the fish or proceeds.

(Pub. L. 100–424, §6(a), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1592.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10602	46:533, 534

§10603. Seaman's duty to notify employer regarding illness, disability, and injury

(a) A seaman on a fishing vessel, fish processing vessel, or fish tender vessel shall notify the master or individual in charge of the vessel or other agent of the employer regarding any illness, disability, or injury suffered by the seaman when in service to the vessel not later than seven days after the date on which the illness, disability, or injury arose.

(b) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations requiring that each fishing vessel, fish processing vessel, and fish tender vessel shall have on board a placard displayed in a prominent location accessible to the crew describing the seaman's duty under subsection (a) of this section.

(Pub. L. 100–424, §6(a), Sept. 9, 1988, 102 Stat. 1592.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10603	New

CHAPTER 107—EFFECTS OF DECEASED SEAMEN

Sec.

10701. Application.
10702. Duties of masters.
10703. Procedures of masters.
10704. Duties of consular officers.
10705. Disposition of money, property, and wages by consular officers.
10706. Seamen dying in the United States.
[10707. Repealed.]
10708. Sale of property.
10709. Distribution.
10710. Unclaimed money, property, and wages.
10711. Penalties.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §420(b), Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2438, struck out item 10707 "Delivery to district court".

§10701. Application

(a) Except as otherwise specifically provided, this chapter applies to a vessel on a voyage between—

(1) a port of the United States and a port in a foreign country (except a port in Canada, Mexico, and the West Indies); and

(2) a port of the United States on the Atlantic Ocean and a port of the United States on the Pacific Ocean.

(b) This chapter does not apply to a vessel on which a seaman by custom or agreement is entitled to share in the profit or result of a voyage.

(c) This chapter does not apply to a foreign vessel.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 572.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10701	46:621

Section 10701 provides that the provisions in chapter 107 apply to vessels on voyages between U.S. ports and foreign countries (except Canada, Mexico, or the West Indies) and between United States ports on the Atlantic and United States ports on the Pacific. It does not apply to foreign vessels or vessels on which the seamen share the profits.

§10702. Duties of masters

(a) When a seaman dies during a voyage, the master shall take charge of the seaman's money and property. An entry shall be made in the official logbook, signed by the master, the chief mate, and an

unlicensed crewmember containing an inventory of the money and property and a statement of the wages due the seaman, with the total of the deductions to be made.

(b) On compliance with this chapter, the master shall obtain a written certificate of compliance from the consular officer or court clerk. Clearance may be granted to a foreign-bound vessel only when the certificate is received at the office of customs.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 572; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §422(a), Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2438.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10702	46:621

Section 10702 requires a master to take charge of the property of a deceased seaman, make note in the official logbook that the property was taken and obtain a certificate of compliance from a shipping commissioner which must be exhibited for port clearance of foreign bound vessels.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–206 substituted "the consular officer or court clerk" for "a shipping commissioner".

§10703. Procedures of masters

(a) If the vessel is proceeding to the United States when a seaman dies, the master shall deliver the seaman's money, property, and wages when the agreement required by this part is ended, as provided in section 10706 of this title.

(b) If the vessel touches at a foreign port after the death of the seaman, the master shall report to the first available consular officer. The consular officer may require the master to deliver to the officer the money, property, and wages of the seaman. The consular officer shall give the master a receipt for the matters delivered and certify on the agreement the particulars of the delivery. When the agreement ends, the master shall deliver the receipt to a district court of the United States.

(c) If the consular officer does not require the master to deliver the seaman's money, property, and wages, the officer shall so certify on the agreement, and the master shall dispose of the money, property, and wages as provided under section 10706 of this title.

(d) A deduction from the account of a deceased seaman is valid only if certified by a proper entry in the official logbook.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 573; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §418, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2438.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10703	46:622

Section 10703 provides for the disposal by the master of the property and wages of deceased seamen who have died outside the United States.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–206, §418(1), substituted "in section 10706 of this title" for "by regulations prescribed by the Secretary".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–206, §418(2), substituted "to a district court of the United States" for "as prescribed by regulations".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 103–206, §418(3), substituted "section 10706 of this title" for "subsection (a) of this section".

§10704. Duties of consular officers

When a seaman dies outside the United States leaving money or property not on board a vessel, the consular officer nearest the place at which the money and property is located shall claim and take charge of it.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 573.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10704	46:624

Section 10704 requires consular officers to take charge of the property (not left on board a vessel) of deceased seamen who have died outside the United States.

§10705. Disposition of money, property, and wages by consular officers

When money, property, or wages of a deceased seaman comes into possession of a consular officer, the officer may—

(1) sell the property and remit the proceeds and other money or wages of the seaman the officer has received, to the district court of the United States for the district in which the voyage begins or ends; or

(2) deliver the money, property, and wages to the district court.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 573.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10705	46:624

Section 10705 instructs consular officers on the disposal of the property and wages of deceased seamen who have died outside the United States.

§10706. Seamen dying in the United States

When a seaman dies in the United States and is entitled at death to claim money, property, or wages from the master or owner of a vessel on which the seaman served, the master or owner shall deliver the money, property, and wages to a district court of the United States within one week of the seaman's death. If the seaman's death occurs at sea, such money, property, or wages shall be delivered to a district court or a consular officer within one week of the vessel's arrival at the first port call after the seaman's death.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 573; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §419, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2438.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10706	46:625

Section 10706 provides for the disposal by the master of the property and wages of deceased seamen who have died in the United States.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Pub. L. 103–206 substituted "to a district court of the United States within one week of the seaman's death. If the seaman's death occurs at sea, such money, property, or wages shall be delivered to a district court or a consular officer within one week of the vessel's arrival at the first port call after the seaman's death." for "as provided by regulations prescribed by the Secretary.".

[§10707. Repealed. Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §420(a), Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2438]

Section, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 573, related to delivery to district court of money, property, and wages of a deceased seaman.

§10708. Sale of property

A district court of the United States may direct the sale of any part of the property of a deceased seaman. Proceeds of the sale shall be held as wages of the seaman are held.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 574.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10708	46:628

Section 10708 permits a district court to sell a deceased seaman's property and treat the proceeds as wages.

§10709. Distribution

(a)(1) If the money, property, and wages of a seaman, including proceeds from the sale of property, are not more than $1,500 in value, the court, subject to deductions it allows for expenses and at least 60 days after receiving the money, property, and wages, may deliver the money, property, and wages to a claimant proving to be—

(A) the seaman's surviving spouse or child;

(B) entitled to the money, property, and wages under the seaman's will or under a law or at common law; or

(C) entitled to secure probate, or take out letters of administration, although no probate or letters of administration have been issued.

(2) The court is released from further liability for the money, property, and wages distributed under paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(3) Instead of acting under paragraphs (1) and (2) of this subsection, the court may require probate

or letters of administration to be taken out, and then deliver the money, property, and wages to the legal representative of the seaman.

(b) If the money, property, and wages are more than $1,500 in value, the court, subject to deductions for expenses, shall deliver the money, property, and wages to the legal representative of the seaman.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 574; Pub. L. 99–307, §1(15), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 446.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10709	46:627

Section 10709 instructs a district court to deliver a deceased seaman's property and wages to the proper claimant or legal representative. It also discharges the court from liability.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1986—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 99–307, in text preceding cl. (A), substituted "than $1,500 in value, the court," for "then $1,500 in value, and" and "wages, may" for "wages, the court may".

§10710. Unclaimed money, property, and wages

(a) When a claim for the money, property, or wages of a deceased seaman held by a district court of the United States has not been substantiated within 6 years after their receipt by the court, the court, if a subsequent claim is made, may allow or refuse the claim.

(b) If, after money, property, and wages have been held by the court for 6 years, it appears to the court that no claim will have to be satisfied, the property shall be sold. The money and wages and the proceeds from the sale shall be deposited in the Treasury trust fund receipt account "Unclaimed Moneys of Individuals Whose Whereabouts are Unknown".

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 574.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10710	46:628

Section 10710 provides that if no claim is made to a deceased seaman's property and wages within six years, the court shall sell the property and deposit the proceeds into the Treasury trust fund receipt account "Unclaimed Moneys of Individuals Whose Whereabouts are Unknown".

§10711. Penalties

An owner or master violating this chapter are each liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of 3 times the value of the seaman's money, property, and wages involved or, if the value is not determined, of $200.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 574.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*

Section 10711 provides penalties for masters and owners violating this chapter.

CHAPTER 109—PROCEEDINGS ON UNSEAWORTHINESS

Sec.
10901. Application.
10902. Complaints of unfitness.
10903. Proceedings on examination of vessel.
10904. Refusal to proceed.
10905. Complaints in foreign ports.
10906. Discharge of crew for unsuitability.
10907. Permission to make complaint.
10908. Penalty for sending unseaworthy vessel to sea.

§10901. Application

This chapter applies to a vessel of the United States except a fishing or whaling vessel or a yacht. (Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 575.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10901	46:653
	46:654
	46:655
	46:656
	46:658

Section 10901 provides that chapter 109 applies to all vessels of the United States except fishing vessels, whaling vessels or yachts.

§10902. Complaints of unfitness

(a)(1) If the chief and second mates or a majority of the crew of a vessel ready to begin a voyage discover, before the vessel leaves harbor, that the vessel is unfit as to crew, hull, equipment, tackle, machinery, apparel, furniture, provisions of food or water, or stores to proceed on the intended voyage and require the unfitness to be inquired into, the master immediately shall apply to the district court of the United States at the place at which the vessel is located, or, if no court is being held at the place at which the vessel is located, to a judge or justice of the peace, for the appointment of surveyors. At least 2 complaining seamen shall accompany the master to the judge or justice of the peace.

(2) A master failing to comply with this subsection is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $500.

(b)(1) Any 3 seamen of a vessel may complain that the provisions of food or water for the crew are, at any time, of bad quality, unfit for use, or deficient in quantity. The complaint may be made to the Secretary, commanding officer of a United States naval vessel, consular officer, or chief official of the Customs Service.

(2) The Secretary, officer, or official shall examine, or have examined, the provisions of food or

water. If the provisions are found to be of bad quality, unfit for use, or deficient in quantity, the person making the findings shall certify to the master of the vessel which provisions are of bad quality, unfit for use, or deficient.

(3) The Secretary, officer, or official to whom the complaint was made shall—

(A) make an entry in the official logbook of the vessel on the results of the examination; and

(B) submit a report on the examination to the district court of the United States at which the vessel is to arrive, with the report being admissible into evidence in any legal proceeding.

(4) The master is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $100 each time the master, on receiving the certification referred to in paragraph (2) of this subsection—

(A) does not provide other proper provisions of food or water, when available, in place of the provisions certified as of bad quality or unfit for use;

(B) does not obtain sufficient provisions when the certification includes a finding of a deficiency in quantity; or

(C) uses provisions certified to be of bad quality or unfit for use.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 575; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §422(b), Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2439.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10902(a)	46:653
10902(b)	46:662

Section 10902 instructs the crew on making complaints of unfitness of vessel with regard to equipment and provisions, and instructs the master on responding to those complaints, and provides a penalty for violations.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 103–206, §422(b)(1), inserted "Secretary," after "The complaint may be made to the" and struck out "Coast Guard shipping commissioner," after "consular officer,".

Subsec. (b)(2), (3). Pub. L. 103–206, §422(b)(2), substituted "The Secretary, officer," for "The officer, commissioner,".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions, personnel, assets, and liabilities of the United States Customs Service of the Department of the Treasury, including functions of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto, to the Secretary of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 203(1), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6. For establishment of U.S. Customs and Border Protection in the Department of Homeland Security, treated as if included in Pub. L. 107–296 as of Nov. 25, 2002, see section 211 of Title 6, as amended generally by Pub. L. 114–125, and section 802(b) of Pub. L. 114–125, set out as a note under section 211 of Title 6.

§10903. Proceedings on examination of vessel

(a) On application made under section 10902(a) of this title, the judge or justice of the peace shall appoint 3 experienced and skilled marine surveyors to examine the vessel for the defects or insufficiencies complained of. The surveyors have the authority to receive and consider evidence necessary to evaluate the complaint. When the complaint involves provisions of food or water, one

of the surveyors shall be a medical officer of the Public Health Service, if available. The surveyors shall make a report in writing, signed by at least 2 of them, stating whether the vessel is fit to proceed to sea or, if not, in what respect it is unfit, making appropriate recommendations about additional seamen, provisions, or stores, or about physical repairs, alterations, or additions necessary to make the vessel fit.

(b) On receiving the report, the judge or justice of the peace shall endorse on the report the judgment of the judge or justice on whether the vessel is fit to proceed on the voyage, and, if not, whether the vessel may proceed to another port at which the deficiencies can be corrected. The master and the crew shall comply with the judgment.

(c) The master shall pay all costs of the survey, report, and judgment. However, if the complaint of the crew appears in the report and judgment to have been without foundation, or if the complaint involved provisions of food or water, without reasonable grounds, the master or owner may deduct the amount of the costs and reasonable damages for the detention of the vessel, as determined by the judge or justice of the peace, from the wages of the complaining seamen.

(d) A master of a vessel violating this section who refuses to pay the costs and wages is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $100 and is liable in damages to each person injured by the refusal.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 575.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10903(a), (b)	46:654
10903(c)	46:659
10903(d)	46:660

Section 10903 provides for marine surveyors appointed by a judge or justice of the peace to inspect a vessel on which a complaint of unfitness was made, for a judge or justice of the peace to judge the fitness based on the findings, and for the payment of costs of the inspection by the master or the crew. It also includes a penalty for noncompliance.

§10904. Refusal to proceed

After a judgment under section 10903 of this title that a vessel is fit to proceed on the intended voyage, or after the order of a judgment to make up deficiencies is complied with, if a seaman does not proceed on the voyage, the unpaid wages of the seaman are forfeited.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 576.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10904	46:655

Section 10904 provides that if a vessel is found fit to proceed by a judge or justice of the peace and a seaman refuses to proceed, the seaman shall forfeit any unpaid wages.

§10905. Complaints in foreign ports

(a) When a complaint under section 10902(a) of this title is made in a foreign port, the procedures of this chapter shall be followed, with a consular officer performing the duties of the judge or justice of the peace.

(b) On review of the marine surveyors' report, the consular officer may approve and must certify any part of the report with which the officer agrees. If the consular officer dissents from any part of the report, the officer shall certify reasons for dissenting from that part.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 576.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10905	46:656 46:657

Section 10905 provides that if a complaint of unfitness is made in a foreign port, a consular officer shall perform the duties of a judge or justice of the peace.

§10906. Discharge of crew for unsuitability

When a survey is made at a foreign port, the surveyors shall state in the report whether, in their opinion, the vessel had been sent to sea unsuitably provided in any important particular, by neglect or design or through mistake or accident. If by neglect or design, and the consular officer approves the finding, the officer shall discharge a seaman requesting discharge and shall require the master to pay one month's wages to that seaman in addition to wages then due, or sufficient money for the return of the seaman to the nearest and most convenient port of the United States, whichever is the greater amount.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 576.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10906	46:658

Section 10906 provides that if a consular officer finds that a vessel has been sent to sea in an unsuitable state, a crew member requesting discharge must be paid one month's additional wages and passage to the United States.

§10907. Permission to make complaint

(a) A master may not refuse to permit, deny the opportunity to, or hinder a seaman who wishes to make a complaint authorized by this chapter.

(b) A master violating this section is liable to the United States Government for civil penalty of $500.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 577.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10907	46:653 46:664

Section 10907 prohibits a master from hindering a seaman from making a complaint authorized by this chapter and subjects the master to a fine for violation of this section.

§10908. Penalty for sending unseaworthy vessel to sea

A person that knowingly sends or attempts to send, or that is a party to sending or attempting to send, a vessel of the United States to sea, in an unseaworthy state that is likely to endanger the life of an individual, shall be fined not more than $1,000, imprisoned for not more than 5 years, or both.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 577.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
10908	46:658

Section 10908 provides a penalty for a person knowingly sending or attempting to send an unseaworthy vessel to sea.

CHAPTER 111—PROTECTION AND RELIEF

Sec.

11101. Accommodations for seamen.
11102. Medicine chests.
11103. Slop chests.
11104. Destitute seamen.
11105. Wages on discharge when vessel sold.
11106. Wages on justifiable complaint of seamen.
11107. Unlawful engagements void.
11108. Taxes.
11109. Attachment of wages.
11110. Seamen's clothing.
11111. Limit on amount recoverable on voyage.
11112. Master's lien for wages.
11113. Treatment of abandoned seafarers.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2014—Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §320(b), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3054, added item 11113.
1986—Pub. L. 99–307, §1(19)(A), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 446, added item 11112.

§11101. Accommodations for seamen

(a) On a merchant vessel of the United States the construction of which began after March 4, 1915 (except a yacht, pilot vessel, or vessel of less than 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title)—

(1) each place appropriated to the crew of the vessel shall have a space of at least 120 cubic feet and at least 16 square feet, measured on the floor or deck of that place, for each seaman or apprentice lodged in the vessel;

(2) each seaman shall have a separate berth and not more than one berth shall be placed one above another;

(3) the place or berth shall be securely constructed, properly lighted, drained, heated, and ventilated, properly protected from weather and sea, and, as far as practicable, properly shut off and protected from the effluvium of cargo or bilge water;

(4) crew space shall be kept free from goods or stores that are not the personal property of the crew occupying the place in use during the voyage; and

(5) each crew berthing area shall be equipped with information regarding—

(A) vessel owner or company policies prohibiting sexual assault and sexual harassment, retaliation, and drug and alcohol usage; and

(B) procedures and resources to report crimes, including sexual assault and sexual harassment, including information—

(i) on the telephone number, website address, and email address for reporting allegations of sexual assault and sexual harassment to the Coast Guard;

(ii) on vessel owner or company procedures to report violations of company policy and access resources;

(iii) on resources provided by outside organizations such as sexual assault hotlines and counseling;

(iv) on the retention period for surveillance video recording after an incident of sexual harassment or sexual assault is reported; and

(v) additional items specified in regulations issued by, and at the discretion of, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating.

(b) In addition to the requirements of subsection (a) of this section, a merchant vessel of the United States that in the ordinary course of trade makes a voyage of more than 3 days' duration between ports and carries a crew of at least 12 seamen shall have a hospital compartment, suitably separated from other spaces. The compartment shall have at least one bunk for each 12 seamen constituting the crew (but not more than 6 bunks may be required).

(c) A steam vessel of the United States operating on the Mississippi River or its tributaries shall provide, under the direction and approval of the Secretary, an appropriate place for the crew that shall conform to the requirements of this section, as far as they apply to the steam vessel, by providing a properly heated sleeping room in the engineroom of the steam vessel properly protected from the cold, wind, and rain by means of suitable awnings or screens on either side of the guards or sides and forward, reaching from the boiler deck to the lower or main deck.

(d) A merchant vessel of the United States, the construction of which began after March 4, 1915, having more than 10 seamen on deck, shall have at least one lighted, clean, and properly heated and ventilated washing place. There shall be provided at least one washing outfit for each 2 seamen of the watch. A separate washing place shall be provided for the fireroom and engineroom seamen, if their number is more than 10, that shall be large enough to accommodate at least one-sixth of them at the same time, and have a hot and cold water supply and a sufficient number of washbasins, sinks, and shower baths. In each washing space in a visible location there shall be information regarding procedures and resources to report crimes upon the vessel, including sexual assault and sexual harassment, and vessel owner or company policies prohibiting sexual assault and sexual harassment, retaliation, and drug and alcohol usage.

(e) Forecastles shall be fumigated at intervals provided by regulations prescribed by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, with the approval of the Secretary, and shall have at least 2 exits, one of which may be used in emergencies.

(f) The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, or licensed individual of a vessel not complying with this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of at least $50 but not more than $500.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 577; Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(6), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 67; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §740, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3942; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVI, §11604, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4148.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11101	46:660–1

Section 11101 provides mandatory standards for crew accommodations and a penalty for noncompliance with those standards.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 117–263, §11604(1)–(3), added par. (5).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 117–263, §11604(4), inserted at end "In each washing space in a visible location there shall be information regarding procedures and resources to report crimes upon the vessel, including sexual assault and sexual harassment, and vessel owner or company policies prohibiting sexual assault and sexual harassment, retaliation, and drug and alcohol usage."

1996—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons" in introductory provisions.

1985—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 99–36 substituted "lighted" for "light".

§11102. Medicine chests

(a) A vessel of the United States on a voyage from a port in the United States to a foreign port (except to a Canadian port), and a vessel of the United States of at least 75 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title on a voyage between a port of the United States on the Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean, shall be provided with a medicine chest.

(b) The owner and master of a vessel not equipped as required by subsection (a) of this section or a regulation prescribed under subsection (a) are liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $500. If the offense was due to the fault of the owner, a master penalized under this section has the right to recover the penalty and costs from the owner.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 578; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §741, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3942.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11102(a)	46:666
11102(b)	46:667

Section 11102 requires that a United States vessel on a foreign or intercoastal domestic voyage be equipped with a medicine chest, and provides a penalty for noncompliance. The Committee intends that regulation will provide for a well stocked medicine chest adequate for the crew of a vessel.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "75 gross tons".

§11103. Slop chests

(a) A vessel to which section 11102 of this title applies shall be provided with a slop chest containing sufficient clothing for the intended voyage for each seaman, including—

(1) boots or shoes;
(2) hats or caps;
(3) underclothing;
(4) outer clothing;
(5) foul weather clothing;
(6) everything necessary for the wear of a seaman; and
(7) a complete supply of tobacco and blankets.

(b) Merchandise in the slop chest shall be sold to a seaman desiring it, for the use of the seaman, at a profit of not more than 10 percent of the reasonable wholesale value of the merchandise at the port at which the voyage began.

(c) This section does not apply to a vessel on a voyage to Canada, Bermuda, the West Indies, Mexico, or Central America, or a fishing or whaling vessel.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 578.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11103	46:670 46:671

Section 11103 requires that a United States vessel on a foreign or intercoastal domestic voyage be equipped with a slop chest and lists the items the slop chest must contain.

§11104. Destitute seamen

(a) A consular officer shall provide, for a destitute seaman of the United States, subsistence and passage to a port of the United States in the most reasonable manner, at the expense of the United States Government and subject to regulations prescribed by the Secretary of State. A seaman, if able, shall be required to perform duties on the vessel giving the seaman passage, in accordance with the seaman's rating.

(b) A master of a vessel of the United States bound to a port of the United States shall take a destitute seaman on board at the request of a consular officer and transport the seaman to the United States. A master refusing to transport a destitute seaman when requested is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $100. The certificate signed and sealed by a consular officer is prima facie evidence of refusal. A master is not required to carry a destitute seaman if the seaman's presence would cause the number of individuals on board to exceed the number permitted in the certificate of inspection or if the seaman has a contagious disease.

(c) Compensation for the transportation of destitute seamen to the United States who are unable to work shall be agreed on by the master and the consular officer, under regulations prescribed by the Secretary of State. However, the compensation may be not more than the lowest passenger rate of the vessel, or 2 cents a mile, whichever is less.

(d) When a master of a vessel of the United States takes on board a destitute seaman unable to work, from a port or place not having a consular officer, for transportation to the United States or to a port at which there is a consular officer, the master or owner of the vessel shall be compensated reasonably under regulations prescribed by the Secretary of State.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 578.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11104(a)	46:678

Section 11104 provides for the return to the United States of destitute seamen of the United States at the expense of the United States Government.

§11105. Wages on discharge when vessel sold

(a) When a vessel of the United States is sold in a foreign country, the master shall deliver to the consular officer a certified crew list and the agreement required by this part. The master shall pay each seaman the wages due the seaman and provide the seaman with employment on board another vessel of the United States bound for the port of original engagement of the seaman or to another port agreed on. If employment cannot be provided, the master shall—

(1) provide the seaman with the means to return to the port of original engagement;

(2) provide the seaman passage to the port of original engagement; or

(3) deposit with the consular officer an amount of money considered sufficient by the officer to provide the seaman with maintenance and passage home.

(b) The consular officer shall endorse on the agreement the particulars of the payment, provision, or deposit made under this section.

(c) An owner of a vessel is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $500 if the master does not comply with this section.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 579.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11105	46:684

Section 11105 provides that when a United States vessel is sold in a foreign port, the seamen must be provided employment on another vessel, or passage to the port of original shipment.

§11106. Wages on justifiable complaint of seamen

(a) Before a seaman on a vessel of the United States is discharged in a foreign country by a consular officer on the seaman's complaint that the agreement required by this part has been breached because the vessel is badly provisioned or unseaworthy, or against the officers for cruel treatment, the officer shall inquire about the complaint. If satisfied of the justice of the complaint, the consular officer shall require the master to pay the wages due the seaman plus one month's additional wages and shall discharge the seaman. The master shall provide the seaman with employment on another vessel or provide the seaman with passage on another vessel to the port of original engagement, to the most convenient port of the United States, or to some port agreeable to the seaman.

(b) When a vessel does not have sufficient provisions for the intended voyage, and the seaman has been forced to accept a reduced ration or provisions that are bad in quality or unfit for use, the seaman is entitled to recover from the master or owner an allowance, as additional wages, that the court hearing the case considers reasonable.

(c) Subsection (b) of this section does not apply when the reduction in rations was for a period during which the seaman willfully and without sufficient cause failed to perform duties or was lawfully under confinement on board or on shore for misconduct, unless that reduction can be shown to have been unreasonable.

(d) Subsection (b) of this section does not apply to a fishing or whaling vessel or a yacht.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 579.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11106(a)	46:685
11106(b)–(d)	46:665

Section 11106 provides compensation to seamen on United States vessels when a shipping agreement is breached. It does not apply to fishing vessels, whaling vessels or yachts.

§11107. Unlawful engagements void

An engagement of a seaman contrary to a law of the United States is void. A seaman so engaged may leave the service of the vessel at any time and is entitled to recover the highest rate of wages at the port from which the seaman was engaged or the amount agreed to be given the seaman at the time of engagement, whichever is higher.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 580.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11107	46:578

Section 11107 entitles seamen engaged contrary to any United States law to leave the service of the vessel without loss of wages.

§11108. Taxes

(a) WITHHOLDING.—Wages due or accruing to a master or seaman on a vessel in the foreign, coastwise, intercoastal, interstate, or noncontiguous trade or an individual employed on a fishing vessel or any fish processing vessel may not be withheld under the tax laws of a State or a political subdivision of a State. However, this section does not prohibit withholding wages of a seaman on a vessel in the coastwise trade between ports in the same State if the withholding is under a voluntary agreement between the seaman and the employer of the seaman.

(b) LIABILITY.—

(1) LIMITATION ON JURISDICTION TO TAX.—An individual to whom this subsection applies is not subject to the income tax laws of a State or political subdivision of a State, other than the State and political subdivision in which the individual resides, with respect to compensation for the performance of duties described in paragraph (2).

(2) APPLICATION.—This subsection applies to an individual—

(A) engaged on a vessel to perform assigned duties in more than one State as a pilot licensed under section 7101 of this title or licensed or authorized under the laws of a State; or

(B) who performs regularly assigned duties while engaged as a master, officer, or crewman on a vessel operating on navigable waters in 2 or more States.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 580; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(14), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 450; Pub. L. 106–489, §1, Nov. 9, 2000, 114 Stat. 2207; Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §906, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3012.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*

Section 11108 prohibits the mandatory withholding of state or local taxes from crewmembers on certain specified vessels. It permits, however, voluntary withholding agreements.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–281 amended subpar. (B) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (B) read as follows: "who performs regularly-assigned duties while engaged as a master, officer, or crewman on a vessel operating on the navigable waters of more than one State."

2000—Pub. L. 106–489 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted heading, and added subsec. (b).

1984—Pub. L. 98–364 substituted "an individual employed on a fishing vessel or any fish processing vessel" for "a fisherman employed on a fishing vessel".

§11109. Attachment of wages

(a) Wages due or accruing to a master or seaman are not subject to attachment or arrestment from any court, except for an order of a court about the payment by a master or seaman of any part of the master's or seaman's wages for the support and maintenance of the spouse or minor children of the master or seaman, or both. A payment of wages to a master or seaman is valid, notwithstanding any prior sale or assignment of wages or any attachment, encumbrance, or arrestment of the wages.

(b) An assignment or sale of wages or salvage made before the payment of wages does not bind the party making it, except allotments authorized by section 10315 of this title.

(c) This section applies to an individual employed on a fishing vessel or any fish processing vessel.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 580; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(15), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 450.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11109	46:601

Section 11109 limits the attachment of a seaman's wages and establishes certain rules for the assignment of a seaman's wages. It also applies to fishermen on fishing vessels.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1984—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98–364 substituted "an individual employed on a fishing vessel or any fish processing vessel" for "a fisherman on a fishing vessel".

§11110. Seamen's clothing

The clothing of a seaman is exempt from attachments and liens. A person detaining a seaman's clothing shall be fined not more than $500, imprisoned for not more than 6 months, or both.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 580.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11110	46:563

Section 11110 exempts seamen's clothing from attachments and liens. It also provides a penalty for violations.

§11111. Limit on amount recoverable on voyage

When a seaman is on a voyage on which a written agreement is required under this part, not more than $1 is recoverable from the seaman by a person for a debt incurred by the seaman during the voyage for which the seaman is signed on until the voyage is ended.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 581.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11111	46:602

Section 11111 limits the amount of money recoverable from a seaman for a debt incurred while on a voyage on which a shipping agreement is required.

§11112. Master's lien for wages

The master of a documented vessel has the same lien against the vessel for the master's wages and the same priority as any other seaman serving on the vessel.

(Added Pub. L. 99–307, §1(19)(B), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 446.)

§11113. Treatment of abandoned seafarers

(a) ABANDONED SEAFARERS FUND.—

(1) ESTABLISHMENT.—There is established in the Treasury a separate account to be known as the Abandoned Seafarers Fund.

(2) AUTHORIZED USES.—Amounts in the Fund may be appropriated to the Secretary for use—

(A) to pay necessary support of a seafarer—

(i) who—

(I) was paroled into the United States under section 212(d)(5) of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1182(d)(5)), or for whom the Secretary has requested parole under such section; and

(II) is involved in an investigation, reporting, documentation, or adjudication of any matter that is related to the administration or enforcement of law by the Coast Guard; or

(ii) who—

(I) is physically present in the United States;

(II) the Secretary determines was abandoned in the United States; and

(III) has not applied for asylum under the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.); and

(B) to reimburse a vessel owner or operator for the costs of necessary support of a seafarer who has been paroled into the United States to facilitate an investigation, reporting,

documentation, or adjudication of any matter that is related to the administration or enforcement of law by the Coast Guard, if—

(i) the vessel owner or operator is not convicted of a criminal offense related to such matter; or

(ii) the Secretary determines that reimbursement is appropriate.

(3) CREDITING OF AMOUNTS TO FUND.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subparagraph (B), there shall be credited to the Fund the following:

(i) Penalties deposited in the Fund under section 9 of the Act to Prevent Pollution from Ships (33 U.S.C. 1908).

(ii) Amounts reimbursed or recovered under subsection (c).

(B) LIMITATION.—Amounts may be credited to the Fund under subparagraph (A) only if the unobligated balance of the Fund is less than $5,000,000.

(4) REPORT REQUIRED.—Except as provided in paragraph (5), on the date on which the President submits each budget for a fiscal year pursuant to section 1105 of title 31, the Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report that describes—

(A) the amounts credited to the Fund under paragraph (3) for the preceding fiscal year; and

(B) amounts in the Fund that were expended for the preceding fiscal year.

(5) NO REPORT REQUIRED.—A report under paragraph (4) shall not be required if there were no expenditures from the Fund in the preceding fiscal year. The Commandant shall notify Congress in the event a report is not required under paragraph (4) by reason of this paragraph.

(b) LIMITATION.—Nothing in this section shall be construed—

(1) to create a private right of action or any other right, benefit, or entitlement to necessary support for any person; or

(2) to compel the Secretary to pay or reimburse the cost of necessary support.

(c) REIMBURSEMENT; RECOVERY.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—A vessel owner or operator shall reimburse the Fund an amount equal to the total amount paid from the Fund for necessary support of a seafarer, if—

(A) the vessel owner or operator—

(i) during the course of an investigation, reporting, documentation, or adjudication of any matter that the Coast Guard referred to a United States attorney or the Attorney General, fails to provide necessary support of a seafarer who was paroled into the United States to facilitate the investigation, reporting, documentation, or adjudication; and

(ii) subsequently is—

(I) convicted of a criminal offense related to such matter; or

(II) required to reimburse the Fund pursuant to a court order or negotiated settlement related to such matter; or

(B) the vessel owner or operator abandons a seafarer in the United States, as determined by the Secretary based on substantial evidence.

(2) ENFORCEMENT.—If a vessel owner or operator fails to reimburse the Fund under paragraph (1) within 60 days after receiving a written, itemized description of reimbursable expenses and a demand for payment, the Secretary may—

(A) proceed in rem against the vessel on which the seafarer served in the Federal district

court for the district in which the vessel is found; and

(B) withhold or revoke the clearance required under section 60105 for the vessel and any other vessel operated by the same operator (as that term is defined in section 2(a)(9)(A) [1] of the Act to Prevent Pollution from Ships (33 U.S.C. 1901(a)(9)(A)) [2] as the vessel on which the seafarer served.

(3) OBTAINING CLEARANCE.—A vessel may obtain clearance from the Secretary after it is withheld or revoked under paragraph (2)(B) if the vessel owner or operator—

(A) reimburses the Fund the amount required under paragraph (1); or

(B) provides a bond, or other evidence of financial responsibility, sufficient to meet the amount required to be reimbursed under paragraph (1).

(4) NOTIFICATION REQUIRED.—The Secretary shall notify the vessel at least 72 hours before taking any action under paragraph (2)(B).

(d) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

(1) ABANDONS; ABANDONED.—Each of the terms "abandons" and "abandoned" means—

(A) a vessel owner's or operator's unilateral severance of ties with a seafarer; or

(B) a vessel owner's or operator's failure to provide necessary support of a seafarer.

(2) FUND.—The term "Fund" means the Abandoned Seafarers Fund established under this section.

(3) NECESSARY SUPPORT.—The term "necessary support" means normal wages and expenses the Secretary considers reasonable for lodging, subsistence, clothing, medical care (including hospitalization), repatriation, and any other support the Secretary considers to be appropriate.

(4) SEAFARER.—The term "seafarer" means an alien crew member who is employed or engaged in any capacity on board a vessel subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

(5) VESSEL SUBJECT TO THE JURISDICTION OF THE UNITED STATES.—The term "vessel subject to the jurisdiction of the United States" has the meaning given that term in section 70502(c), except that it does not include a vessel that is—

(A) owned, or operated under a bareboat charter, by the United States, a State or political subdivision thereof, or a foreign nation; and

(B) not engaged in commerce.

(Added Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §320(a), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3051; amended Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §306(a)(7), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 54; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(i), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2326; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXII [LXXXII], §8240(d), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4667.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Immigration and Nationality Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(A)(ii)(III), is act June 27, 1952, ch. 477, 66 Stat. 163, which is classified principally to chapter 12 (§1101 et seq.) of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1101 of Title 8 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 116–283, §8240(d)(1), substituted "Except as provided in paragraph (5), on the date" for "On the date" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 116–283, §8240(d)(2), added par. (5).

2018—Subsec. (a)(4)(A). Pub. L. 115–232, §3546(i)(1), substituted "paragraph (3)" for "paragraph (2)".

Subsec. (c)(2)(B). Pub. L. 115–232, §3546(i)(2), substituted "section 2(a)(9)(A)" for "section 2(9)(a)" and "33 U.S.C. 1901(a)(9)(A)" for "33 U.S.C. 1901(9)(a)".

2016—Subsec. (c)(1)(A)(i). Pub. L. 114–120 struck out "under this Act" after "any matter".

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "2(a)(9)(a)".*

[2] *So in original. Probably should be "33 U.S.C. 1901(a)(9)(a)))".*

CHAPTER 112—MERCHANT MARINER BENEFITS

Sec.
11201. Eligibility for veterans' burial and cemetery benefits.
11202. Qualified service.
11203. Documentation of qualified service.
11204. Processing fees.

§11201. Eligibility for veterans' burial and cemetery benefits

(a) ELIGIBILITY.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The qualified service of an individual referred to in paragraph (2) shall be considered to be active duty in the Armed Forces during a period of war for purposes of eligibility for benefits under the following provisions of title 38:

(A) Chapter 23 (relating to burial benefits).

(B) Chapter 24 (relating to interment in national cemeteries).

(2) COVERED INDIVIDUALS.—Paragraph (1) applies to an individual who—

(A) receives an honorable service certificate under section 11203 of this title; and

(B) is not eligible under any other provision of law for benefits under laws administered by the Secretary of Veterans Affairs.

(b) REIMBURSEMENT FOR BENEFITS PROVIDED.—The Secretary shall reimburse the Secretary of Veterans Affairs for the value of benefits that the Secretary of Veterans Affairs provides for an individual by reason of eligibility under this section.

(c) APPLICABILITY.—

(1) GENERAL RULE.—Benefits may be provided under the provisions of law referred to in subsection (a)(1) by reason of this chapter only for deaths occurring after the date of the enactment of this chapter.

(2) BURIALS, ETC. IN NATIONAL CEMETERIES.—Notwithstanding paragraph (1), in the case of an initial burial or columbarium placement after the date of the enactment of this chapter, benefits may be provided under chapter 24 of title 38 by reason of this chapter (regardless of the date of death), and in such a case benefits may be provided under section 2306 of such title.

(Added Pub. L. 105–368, title IV, §402(a), Nov. 11, 1998, 112 Stat. 3336; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8505(b)(11), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4751.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of this chapter, referred to in subsec. (c), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 105–368, which was approved Nov. 11, 1998.

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "an individual" for "a person" wherever appearing.

§11202. Qualified service

For purposes of this chapter, an individual shall be considered to have engaged in qualified service if, between August 16, 1945, and December 31, 1946, the individual—

(1) was a member of the United States merchant marine (including the Army Transport Service and the Naval Transport Service) serving as a crewmember of a vessel that was—

(A) operated by the War Shipping Administration or the Office of Defense Transportation (or an agent of the Administration or Office);

(B) operated in waters other than inland waters, the Great Lakes, and other lakes, bays, and harbors of the United States;

(C) under contract or charter to, or property of, the Government of the United States; and

(D) serving the Armed Forces; and

(2) while so serving, was licensed or otherwise documented for service as a crewmember of such a vessel by an officer or employee of the United States authorized to license or document the individual for such service.

(Added Pub. L. 105–368, title IV, §402(a), Nov. 11, 1998, 112 Stat. 3336; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8505(b)(12), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4752.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "an individual" for "a person" in introductory provisions and "the individual" for "the person" in introductory provisions and in par. (2).

§11203. Documentation of qualified service

(a) RECORD OF SERVICE.—The Secretary, or in the case of personnel of the Army Transport Service or the Naval Transport Service, the Secretary of Defense, shall, upon application—

(1) issue a certificate of honorable service to an individual who, as determined by that Secretary, engaged in qualified service of a nature and duration that warrants issuance of the certificate; and

(2) correct, or request the appropriate official of the Federal Government to correct, the service records of that individual to the extent necessary to reflect the qualified service and the issuance of the certificate of honorable service.

(b) TIMING OF DOCUMENTATION.—A Secretary receiving an application under subsection (a) shall act on the application not later than 1 year after the date of that receipt.

(c) STANDARDS RELATING TO SERVICE.—In making a determination under subsection (a)(1), the Secretary acting on the application shall apply the same standards relating to the nature and duration of service that apply to the issuance of honorable discharges under section 401(a)(1)(B) of the GI Bill Improvement Act of 1977 (38 U.S.C. 106 note).

(d) CORRECTION OF RECORDS.—An official who is requested under subsection (a)(2) to correct the service records of an individual shall make such correction.

(Added Pub. L. 105–368, title IV, §402(a), Nov. 11, 1998, 112 Stat. 3337; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8505(b)(13), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4752.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 401(a)(1)(B) of the GI Bill Improvement Act of 1977, referred to in subsec. (c), is section 401(a)(1)(B) of Pub. L. 95–202, which is set out as a note under section 106 of Title 38, Veterans' Benefits.

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, §8505(b)(13)(A), substituted "an individual" for "a person" in subsecs. (a)(1) and (d).

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 116–283, §8505(b)(13)(B), substituted "that individual" for "that person".

§11204. Processing fees

(a) COLLECTION OF FEES.—The Secretary, or in the case of personnel of the Army Transport Service or the Naval Transport Service, the Secretary of Defense, shall collect a fee of $30 from each applicant for processing an application submitted under section 11203(a) of this title.

(b) TREATMENT OF FEES COLLECTED.—Amounts received by the Secretary under this section shall be deposited in the General Fund of the Treasury as offsetting receipts of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating and ascribed to Coast Guard activities. Amounts received by the Secretary of Defense under this section shall be deposited in the General Fund of the Treasury as offsetting receipts of the Department of Defense. In either case, such amounts shall be available, subject to appropriation, for the administrative costs of processing applications under section 11203 of this title.

(Added Pub. L. 105–368, title IV, §402(a), Nov. 11, 1998, 112 Stat. 3337.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

CHAPTER 113—OFFICIAL LOGBOOKS

Sec.

11301. Logbook and entry requirements.
11302. Manner of making entries.
11303. Penalties.
11304. Additional logbook and entry requirements.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §607(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2967, added item 11304.

§11301. Logbook and entry requirements

(a) Except a vessel on a voyage from a port in the United States to a port in Canada, a vessel of the United States shall have an official logbook if the vessel is—

(1) on a voyage from a port in the United States to a foreign port; or

(2) of at least 100 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title and is on a voyage between a port of the United States on the Atlantic Ocean and on the Pacific Ocean.

(b) The master of the vessel shall make or have made in the official logbook the following entries:

(1) each legal conviction of a seaman of the vessel and the punishment inflicted.

(2) each offense committed by a seaman of the vessel for which it is intended to prosecute or to enforce under a forfeiture, together with statements about reading the entry and the reply made to the charge as required by section 11502 of this title.

(3) each offense for which punishment is inflicted on board and the punishment inflicted.

(4) a statement of the conduct, character, and qualifications of each seaman of the vessel or a statement that the master declines to give an opinion about that conduct, character, and qualifications.

(5) each illness of or injury to a seaman of the vessel, the nature of the illness or injury, and the medical treatment.

(6) each death on board, with the cause of death, and if a seaman, the information required by section 10702 of this title.

(7) each birth on board, with the sex of the infant and name of the parents.

(8) each marriage on board, with the names and ages of the parties.

(9) the name of each seaman who ceases to be a crewmember (except by death), with the place, time, manner, and the cause why the seaman ceased to be a crewmember.

(10) the wages due to a seaman who dies during the voyage and the gross amount of all deductions to be made from the wages.

(11) the sale of the property of a seaman who dies during the voyage, including a statement of each article sold and the amount received for the property.

(12) when a marine casualty occurs, a statement about the casualty and the circumstances under which it occurred, made immediately after the casualty when practicable to do so.

(13) when a vessel fails to carry out ballast water management requirements as applicable and pursuant to regulations promulgated by the Secretary, including when the vessel fails to carry out ballast water management requirements due to an allowed safety exemption, a statement regarding the failure to comply and the circumstances under which the failure occurred, made immediately after the failure, when practicable to do so.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 581; Pub. L. 98–557, §30, Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2875; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §742, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3942; Pub. L. 115–282, title IX, §903(d), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4357.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11301	46:201

Section 11301 requires United States vessels on certain types of voyages to have an official logbook and lists the types of entries that must be made in the logbook.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (b)(13). Pub. L. 115–282 added par. (13).

1996—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 104–324 inserted "as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title" after "100 gross tons".

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98–557 amended subsec. (a) generally, which prior to amendment read as follows: "A vessel of the United States on a voyage between a port in the United States and a port in a foreign country, and a vessel of the United States of at least 75 gross tons on a voyage between a port of the United States on the Atlantic Ocean and a port of the United States on the Pacific Ocean, shall have an official logbook."

§11302. Manner of making entries

Each entry made in the official logbook—

(1) shall be made as soon as possible after the occurrence;

(2) if not made on the day of the occurrence, shall be dated and state the date of the occurrence;

(3) if the entry is about an occurrence happening before the vessel's arrival at the final port of discharge, shall be made not later than 24 hours after the arrival;

(4) shall be signed by the master; and

(5) shall be signed by the chief mate or another seaman.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 581.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11302	46:202

Section 11302 describes the manner in which entries shall be made in the logbook, specifying when they shall be made, who shall sign them, and requiring that they shall be dated.

§11303. Penalties

(a) A master failing to maintain an official logbook as required by this part is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $200.

(b) A master failing to make an entry in the vessel's official logbook as required by this part is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of $200.

(c) A person is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of $150 when the person makes, procures to be made, or assists in making, an entry in the vessel's official logbook—

(1) later than 24 hours after the vessel's arrival at the final port of discharge; and

(2) that is about an occurrence that happened before that arrival.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 582.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11303	46:203

Section 11303 provides a penalty for violation of the provisions about logbooks in this part.

§11304. Additional logbook and entry requirements

(a) A vessel of the United States that is subject to inspection under section 3301 of this title, except a vessel on a voyage from a port in the United States to a port in Canada, shall have a logbook, which may be in any form, including electronic, and shall be kept available for review by the Secretary on request.

(b) The logbook required by subsection (a) shall include the following entries:

(1) The time when each seaman and each officer assumed or relieved the watch.

(2) The number of hours in service to the vessels of each seaman and each officer.

(3) Each illness of, and injury to, a seaman of the vessel, the nature of the illness or injury, and the medical treatment provided for the injury or illness.

(Added Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §607(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2967; amended Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §511, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4274.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 115–282, §511(a)(1), substituted "a logbook, which may be in any form, including electronic, and" for "an official logbook, which".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 115–282, §511(b), which directed amendment of section 11304(b), without specifying the title to be amended, by substituting "logbook" for "log book", was executed to this section in the introductory provisions of subsec. (b), to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 115–282, §511(a)(2), amended par. (3) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (3) read as follows: "An account of each accident, illness, and injury that occurs during each watch."

CHAPTER 115—OFFENSES AND PENALTIES

Sec.

11501. Penalties for specified offenses.
11502. Entry of offenses in logbook.
11503. Duties of consular officers related to insubordination.
11504. Enforcement of forfeitures.
11505. Disposal of forfeitures.
11506. Carrying sheath knives.
11507. Surrender of offending officers.

§11501. Penalties for specified offenses

When a seaman lawfully engaged commits any of the following offenses, the seaman shall be punished as specified:

(1) For desertion, the seaman forfeits any part of the money or property the seaman leaves on board and any part of earned wages.

(2) For neglecting or refusing without reasonable cause to join the seaman's vessel or to proceed to sea in the vessel, for absence without leave within 24 hours of the vessel's sailing from a port (at the beginning or during the voyage), or for absence without leave from duties and without sufficient reason, the seaman forfeits from the seaman's wages not more than 2 days' pay or a sufficient amount to defray expenses incurred in hiring a substitute.

(3) For quitting the vessel without leave after the vessel's arrival at the port of delivery and before the vessel is placed in security, the seaman forfeits from the seaman's wages not more than one month's pay.

(4) For willful disobedience to a lawful command at sea, the seaman, at the discretion of the master, may be confined until the disobedience ends, and on arrival in port forfeits from the seaman's wages not more than 4 days' pay or, at the discretion of the court, may be imprisoned for not more than one month.

(5) For continued willful disobedience to lawful command or continued willful neglect of duty at sea, the seaman, at the discretion of the master, may be confined, on water and 1,000 calories, with full rations every 5th day, until the disobedience ends, and on arrival in port forfeits, for each 24 hours' continuance of the disobedience or neglect, not more than 12 days' pay or, at the discretion of the court, may be imprisoned for not more than 3 months.

(6) For assaulting a master, mate, pilot, engineer, or staff officer, the seaman shall be imprisoned for not more than 2 years.

(7) For willfully damaging the vessel, or embezzling or willfully damaging any of the stores or cargo, the seaman forfeits from the seaman's wages the amount of the loss sustained and, at the discretion of the court, may be imprisoned for not more than 12 months.

(8) For smuggling for which a seaman is convicted causing loss or damage to the owner or master, the seaman is liable to the owner or master for the loss or damage, and any part of the seaman's wages may be retained to satisfy the liability. The seaman also may be imprisoned for

not more than 12 months.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 582.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11501	46:701

Section 11501 provides penalties for specific offenses committed by seamen.

§11502. Entry of offenses in logbook

(a) When an offense listed in section 11501 of this title is committed, an entry shall be made in the vessel's official logbook—

(1) on the day of the offense;
(2) stating the details;
(3) signed by the master; and
(4) signed by the chief mate or another seaman.

(b) Before arrival in port if the offense was committed at sea, or before departure if the offense was committed in port and the offender is still on the vessel—

(1) the entry shall be read to the offender;
(2) the offender shall be given a copy; and
(3) the offender shall be given the opportunity to reply.

(c) After subsection (b) of this section has been complied with, an entry shall be made in the official logbook—

(1) stating that the entry about the offense was read and a copy provided to the offender;
(2) stating the offender's reply;
(3) signed by the master; and
(4) signed by the chief mate or another seaman.

(d) In a subsequent legal proceeding, if the entries required by this section are not produced or proved, the court may refuse to receive evidence of the offense.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 583.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11502	46:702

Section 11502 describes the manner in which offenses must be recorded in the official logbook, and the use of the records by the court.

§11503. Duties of consular officers related to insubordination

(a) A consular officer shall use every means to discountenance insubordination on vessels of the United States, including employing the aid of local authorities.

(b) When a seaman is accused of insubordination, a consular officer shall inquire into the facts and proceed as provided in section 11106 of this title. If the consular officer discharges the seaman, the officer shall endorse the agreement required by this part and enter in the vessel's official logbook the

cause and particulars of the discharge.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 583.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11503	46:703

Section 11503 delegates to consular officers certain responsibilities related to insubordination of seamen on United States vessels.

§11504. Enforcement of forfeitures

When an offense by a seaman also is a criminal violation, it is not necessary that a criminal proceeding be brought to enforce a forfeiture.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 584.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11504	46:705

Section 11504 provides that when a seaman has committed a criminal offense, a forfeiture may be enforced through civil proceedings.

§11505. Disposal of forfeitures

(a) Money, property, and wages forfeited under this chapter for desertion may be applied to compensate the owner or master of the vessel for expenses caused by the desertion. The balance shall be transferred to the appropriate district court of the United States when the voyage is completed.

(b) If it appears to the district court that the forfeiture was imposed properly, the property transferred may be sold in the same manner prescribed for the disposition of the property of deceased seamen. The court shall deposit in the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts the proceeds of the sale and any money and wages transferred to the court.

(c) When an owner or master fails to transfer the balance as required under subsection (a) of this section, the owner or master is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of 2 times the amount of the balance, recoverable by the Secretary in the same manner that seaman's wages are recovered.

(d) In all other cases of forfeiture of wages, the forfeiture shall be for the benefit of the owner of the vessel.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 584; Pub. L. 103–206, title IV, §421, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2438.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11505	46:706

Section 11505 provides for the disposal of wages forfeited by deserting seamen.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–206, §421(1), substituted "The balance shall be transferred to the appropriate district court of the United States when the voyage is completed." for "The balance shall be transferred to the Secretary when the voyage is completed, as prescribed by the Secretary."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103–206, §421(2), struck out at beginning "Within one month of receiving the balance under subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary shall transfer the balance to the appropriate district court of the United States."

§11506. Carrying sheath knives

A seaman in the merchant marine may not wear a sheath knife on board a vessel without the consent of the master. The master of a vessel of the United States shall inform each seaman of this prohibition before engagement. A master failing to advise a seaman is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $50.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 584.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11506	46:710

Section 11506 prohibits a merchant seaman from carrying a sheath knife without permission of the master, and penalizes a master who does not advise a seaman of this provision.

§11507. Surrender of offending officers

When an officer of a vessel of the United States (except the master) has violated section 2191 of title 18, and the master has actual knowledge of the offense or if complaint is made within 3 days after reaching port, the master shall surrender the offending officer to the proper authorities. If the master fails to use diligence to comply with this section and the offender escapes, the owner, the master, and the vessel are liable for damages to the individual unlawfully punished.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 584.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
11507	46:712

Section 11507 requires a master of a vessel of the United States to surrender to the proper authorities any officer who has violated section 2191 of title 18 (which provides a penalty for cruelty to seamen by officers), and penalizes the master for noncompliance.

PART H—IDENTIFICATION OF VESSELS

CHAPTER 121—DOCUMENTATION OF VESSELS

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL

Sec.

12101. Definitions.
12102. Vessels requiring documentation.
12103. General eligibility requirements.
12104. Applications for documentation.
12105. Issuance of documentation.
12106. Surrender of title and number.
12107. Wrecked vessels.
12108. Authority to extend duration of vessel certificates.

SUBCHAPTER II—ENDORSEMENTS AND SPECIAL DOCUMENTATION

12111. Registry endorsement.
12112. Coastwise endorsement.
12113. Fishery endorsement.
12114. Recreational endorsement.
12115. Temporary endorsement for vessels procured outside the United States.
12116. Limited endorsements for Guam, American Samoa, and Northern Mariana Islands.
12117. Oil spill response vessels.
12118. Owners engaged primarily in manufacturing or mineral industry.
12119. Owners engaged primarily in leasing or financing transactions.
12120. Liquified gas tankers.
12121. Small passenger vessels and uninspected passenger vessels.

SUBCHAPTER III—MISCELLANEOUS

12131. Command of documented vessels.
12132. Loss of coastwise trade privileges.
12133. Duty to carry certificate on vessel and allow examination.
12134. Evidentiary uses of documentation.
12135. Invalidation of certificates of documentation.
12136. Surrender of certificates of documentation.
12137. Recording of vessels built in the United States.
12138. List of documented vessels.
12139. Reports.
12140. Investigations by Secretary.

SUBCHAPTER IV—PENALTIES

12151. Penalties.
12152. Denial or revocation of endorsement for non-payment of civil penalty.

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

This chapter was originally enacted by Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 584, and amended by Pub. L. 98–364, July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 440; Pub. L. 98–454, Oct. 5, 1984, 98 Stat. 1732; Pub. L. 99–36, May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 67; Pub. L. 99–307, May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 444; Pub. L. 99–509, Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1874; Pub. L. 99–570, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207; Pub. L. 100–239, Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1778; Pub. L. 100–710, Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4735; Pub. L. 101–225, Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1908; Pub. L. 101–380, Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 484; Pub. L. 101–595, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2979; Pub. L. 102–388, Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1520; Pub. L. 102–587, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5039; Pub. L. 104–208, Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009; Pub. L. 104–324, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3901; Pub. L. 105–277, Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681; Pub. L. 105–383, Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3411; Pub. L. 106–31, May 21, 1999, 113 Stat. 57; Pub. L. 107–20, July 24, 2001, 115 Stat. 155; Pub. L. 107–206, Aug. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 820; Pub. L. 107–295, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2064; Pub. L. 108–136, Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1392; Pub. L. 108–293, Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1028; Pub. L. 109–241, July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 516. This chapter is shown here, however, as having been enacted by Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1491, without reference to those intervening amendments because of the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304.

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8320(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4701, which directed amendment of "the analysis for subchapter I of chapter 121" of this title by adding at the end item

12108 "Authority to extend duration of vessel certificates", was executed by adding item 12108 after item 12107 in this analysis to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

2012—Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §308(b), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1566, added item 12140.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSPARENCY

Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §516(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4279, provided that: "The Commandant of the Coast Guard shall publish any letter of determination issued by the Coast Guard National Vessel Documentation Center after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 4, 2018] on the National Vessel Documentation Center website not later than 30 days after the date of issuance of such letter of determination."

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL

§12101. Definitions

(a) REBUILT IN THE UNITED STATES.—In this chapter, a vessel is deemed to have been rebuilt in the United States only if the entire rebuilding, including the construction of any major component of the hull or superstructure, was done in the United States.

(b) RELATED TERMS IN OTHER LAWS.—When the following terms are used in a law, regulation, document, ruling, or other official act referring to the documentation of a vessel, the following definitions apply:

(1) REGISTRY ENDORSEMENT.—The terms "certificate of registry", "register", and "registry" mean a certificate of documentation with a registry endorsement issued under this chapter.

(2) COASTWISE ENDORSEMENT.—The terms "license", "enrollment and license", "license for the coastwise (or coasting) trade", and "enrollment and license for the coastwise (or coasting) trade" mean a certificate of documentation with a coastwise endorsement issued under this chapter.

(3) YACHT.—The term "yacht" means a recreational vessel even if not documented.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1491.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12101(a)	46:12101(a)(2). 46 App.:883 (2d proviso related to meaning of "rebuilt").	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §27 (2d proviso related to meaning of "rebuilt"), 41 Stat. 999; July 2, 1935, ch. 355, 49 Stat. 442; July 14, 1956, ch. 600, §1, 70 Stat. 544; Pub. L. 86–583, §1, July 5, 1960, 74 Stat. 321; Pub. L. 100–239, §6(c)(1), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1782.
12101(b)	46:12101(b).	

In subsection (a), the words "its territories" and "or its possessions" are omitted because of the definition of "United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title. The words "(not including trust territories)" are omitted because the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands has terminated. See 48 U.S.C. 1681 note prec.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12101, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 585; Pub. L. 98–364, title IV, §402(16), July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 450; Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(7)(B), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 67; Pub. L. 100–239, §3(2), (3), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1778; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §301(a)(1), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1920; Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1115(b)(2), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3972, originally derived from section 65w of former Title 46, Shipping, related to definitions and related terms in other laws, prior to the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See this section and section 108 of this title.

§12102. Vessels requiring documentation

(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as otherwise provided, a vessel may engage in a trade only if the vessel has been issued a certificate of documentation with an endorsement for that trade under this chapter.

(b) VESSELS LESS THAN 5 NET TONS.—A vessel of less than 5 net tons may engage in a trade without being documented if the vessel otherwise satisfies the requirements to engage in the particular trade.

(c) BARGES.—A barge qualified to engage in the coastwise trade may engage in the coastwise trade, without being documented, on rivers, harbors, lakes (except the Great Lakes), canals, and inland waters.

(d) AQUACULTURE WAIVER.—

(1) PERMITTING OF NONQUALIFIED VESSELS TO PERFORM CERTAIN AQUACULTURE SUPPORT OPERATIONS.—Notwithstanding section 12113 and any other law, the Secretary of Transportation may issue a waiver allowing a documented vessel with a registry endorsement or a foreign flag vessel to be used in operations that treat aquaculture fish for or protect aquaculture fish from disease, parasitic infestation, or other threats to their health if the Secretary finds, after publishing a notice in the Federal Register, that a suitable vessel of the United States is not available that could perform those services.

(2) PROHIBITION.—Vessels operating under a waiver issued under this subsection may not engage in any coastwise transportation.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1492; Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §901(c)(1), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3008.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12102(a)	46:12106(b). 46:12108(b). 46:12110(a).	
12102(b)	46:12102(a) (related to tonnage).	
12102(c)	46:12110(b).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12102, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 585; Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5102(b)(6), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1927; Pub. L. 100–239, §7(a), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1782; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(a)(4), (5), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4750; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §301(a)(2), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1920; Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1136(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3986; Pub. L. 105–277, div. C, title II, §202(a), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–617; Pub. L. 105–383, title IV, §§401(a)(1), 421, Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3424, 3439; Pub. L. 107–20, title II, §2202(a), July 24, 2001, 115 Stat. 168; Pub. L. 107–206, title I,

§1103, Aug. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 884; Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3534(b)(1), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1818, originally derived from section 65b of former Title 46, Shipping, related to vessels eligible for documentation, prior to the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See this section and sections 12103, 12111, and 12113 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–281 added subsec. (d).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §901(c)(2), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3008, provided that: "The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall, in accordance with section 553 of title 5, United States Code, and after public notice and comment, promulgate regulations necessary and appropriate to implement this subsection [amending this section]. The Secretary may grant interim permits pending the issuance of such regulations upon receipt of applications containing the required information."

§12103. General eligibility requirements

(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as otherwise provided, a certificate of documentation for a vessel may be issued under this chapter only if the vessel is—

(1) wholly owned by one or more individuals or entities described in subsection (b);

(2) at least 5 net tons as measured under part J of this subtitle; and

(3) not documented under the laws of a foreign country.

(b) ELIGIBLE OWNERS.—For purposes of subsection (a)(1), the following are eligible owners:

(1) An individual who is a citizen of the United States.

(2) An association, trust, joint venture, or other entity if—

(A) each of its members is a citizen of the United States; and

(B) it is capable of holding title to a vessel under the laws of the United States or a State.

(3) A partnership if—

(A) each general partner is a citizen of the United States; and

(B) the controlling interest in the partnership is owned by citizens of the United States.

(4) A corporation if—

(A) it is incorporated under the laws of the United States or a State;

(B) its chief executive officer, by whatever title, and the chairman of its board of directors are citizens of the United States; and

(C) no more of its directors are noncitizens than a minority of the number necessary to constitute a quorum.

(5) The United States Government.

(6) The government of a State.

(c) TEMPORARY CERTIFICATES PRIOR TO MEASUREMENT.—Notwithstanding subsection (a)(2), the Secretary may issue a temporary certificate of documentation for a vessel before it is measured.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1492.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*

12103(a)	46:12102(a) (less ownership), (b) (1st sentence).	
12103(b)	46:12102(a) (related to ownership)	
12103(c)	46:12102(b) (last sentence).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12103, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 585; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(a)(4), (6), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4750; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §301(a)(3), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1920; Pub. L. 102–388, title III, §348(c)(1), Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1554; Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5213(a)(1), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5077; Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §422(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2125, originally derived from section 65e of former Title 46, Shipping, related to certificates of documentation, prior to the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See sections 12104, 12105, and 12133 of this title.

A prior section 12103a, added Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §422(b)(1), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2125, related to issuance of temporary certificate of documentation by third parties, prior to the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See section 12105 of this title.

§12104. Applications for documentation

(a) IN GENERAL.—An application for a certificate of documentation or endorsement under this chapter must be filed by the owner of the vessel. The application must be filed in the manner, be in the form, and contain the information prescribed by the Secretary.

(b) APPLICANT'S IDENTIFYING INFORMATION.—The Secretary shall require the applicant to provide—

(1) if the applicant is an individual, the individual's social security number; or

(2) if the applicant is an entity—

(A) the entity's taxpayer identification number; or

(B) if the entity does not have a taxpayer identification number, the social security number of an individual who is a corporate officer, general partner, or individual trustee of the entity and who signs the application.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1493.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12104(a)	46:12103(a) (related to filing by owner), (b)(1).	
12104(b)	46:12103(b)(2).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12104, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 586; Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(7)(B), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 67; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §301(a)(4), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1920, originally derived from section 65g of former Title 46, Shipping, related to effect of documentation, prior to the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See section 12134 of this title.

§12105. Issuance of documentation

(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in section 12152 of this title, the Secretary, on receipt of a proper application, shall issue a certificate of documentation or a temporary certificate of documentation for a vessel satisfying the requirements of section 12103 of this title. The certificate shall contain each endorsement under subchapter II of this chapter for which the owner applies and the vessel is eligible.

(b) TEMPORARY CERTIFICATES FOR RECREATIONAL VESSELS.—The Secretary may delegate, subject to the supervision and control of the Secretary and under terms prescribed by regulation, to private entities determined and certified by the Secretary to be qualified, the authority to issue a temporary certificate of documentation for a recreational vessel eligible under section 12103 of this title. A temporary certificate issued under this subsection is valid for not more than 30 days.

(c) INFORMATION TO BE INCLUDED IN CERTIFICATE.—A certificate of documentation shall—

(1) identify and describe the vessel;

(2) identify the owner of the vessel; and

(3) contain additional information prescribed by the Secretary.

(d) PROCEDURES TO ENSURE INTEGRITY AND ACCURACY.—The Secretary shall prescribe procedures to ensure the integrity of, and the accuracy of information contained in, certificates of documentation.

(e) EFFECTIVE PERIOD.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in paragraphs (2) and (3), a certificate of documentation issued under this part is valid for a 1-year period and may be renewed for additional 1-year periods.

(2) RECREATIONAL VESSELS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The owner or operator of a recreational vessel may choose a period of effectiveness of between 1 and 5 years for a certificate of documentation for a recreational vessel or the renewal thereof.

(B) FEES.—

(i) REQUIREMENT.—The Secretary shall assess and collect a fee—

(I) for the issuance of a certificate of documentation for a recreational vessel that is equivalent to the fee established for the issuance of a certificate of documentation under section 2110; and

(II) for the renewal of a certificate of documentation for a recreational vessel that is equivalent to the number of years of effectiveness of the certificate of documentation multiplied by the fee established for the renewal of a certificate of documentation under section 2110.

(ii) TREATMENT.—Fees collected under this subsection—

(I) shall be credited to the account from which the costs of such issuance or renewal were paid; and

(II) may remain available until expended.

(3) NOTICE OF CHANGE IN INFORMATION.—

(A) REQUIREMENT.—The owner of a vessel shall notify the Coast Guard of each change in the information on which the issuance of the certificate of documentation for the vessel is based that occurs before the expiration of the certificate under this subsection, by not later than 30 days after such change.

(B) TERMINATION OF CERTIFICATE.—The certificate of documentation for a vessel shall terminate upon the expiration of such 30-day period if the owner has not notified the Coast Guard of such change before the end of such period.

(4) STATE AND LOCAL AUTHORITY TO REMOVE ABANDONED AND DERELICT

VESSELS.—Nothing in this section shall be construed to limit the authority of a State or local authority from taking action to remove an abandoned or derelict vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1493; Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §512, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4275; Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3511, Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2238.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12105(a)	46:12103(a) (less filing by owner).	
12105(b)	46:12103a.	
12105(c)	46:12103(c).	
12105(d)	46:12103(d).	

In subsection (b), the words "eligible under" are substituted for "if the applicant for the certificate of documentation meets the requirements set out in" for consistency in the chapter and to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12105, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 586; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(a)(4), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4750; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §301(a)(5), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1920; Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §310, July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 529, originally derived from section 65h of former Title 46, Shipping, related to registry endorsements, prior to the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See section 12111 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (e)(2)(A). Pub. L. 117–81, §3511(1), added subpar. (A) and struck out former subpar. (A), which read as follows: "IN GENERAL.—A certificate of documentation for a recreational vessel and the renewal of such a certificate shall be effective for a 5-year period."

Subsec. (e)(2)(B), (C). Pub. L. 117–81, §3511, redesignated subpar. (C) as (B) and struck out former subpar. (B), which read as follows: "PHASE-IN PERIOD.—During the period beginning January 1, 2019, and ending December 31, 2021, the owner or operator of a recreational vessel may choose a period of effectiveness of between 1 and 5 years for such a certificate of documentation for such vessel or the renewal thereof."

2018—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 115–282 added subsec. (e).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

CERTIFICATES OF DOCUMENTATION FOR RECREATIONAL VESSELS

Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §311, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 57, provided that: "Not later than one year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Feb. 8, 2016], the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall issue regulations that—

"(1) make certificates of documentation for recreational vessels effective for 5 years; and

"(2) require the owner of such a vessel—

"(A) to notify the Coast Guard of each change in the information on which the issuance of the certificate of documentation is based, that occurs before the expiration of the certificate; and

"(B) [to] apply for a new certificate of documentation for such a vessel if there is any such change."

§12106. Surrender of title and number

(a) IN GENERAL.—A documented vessel may not be titled by a State or required to display

numbers under chapter 123 of this title, and any certificate of title issued by a State for a documented vessel shall be surrendered as provided by regulations prescribed by the Secretary.

(b) VESSELS COVERED BY PREFERRED MORTGAGE.—The Secretary may approve the surrender under subsection (a) of a certificate of title for a vessel covered by a preferred mortgage under section 31322(d) of this title only if the mortgagee consents.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1494.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12106	46:12124.	

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12106, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 586; Pub. L. 98–454, title III, §301(b), Oct. 5, 1984, 98 Stat. 1734; Pub. L. 100–239, §6(a)(2), (3), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1781; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §301(a)(6), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1921; Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4205, Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 533; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §743, title XI, §1113(d), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3942, 3971; Pub. L. 108–293, title VI, §608(a), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1054, originally derived from section 65i of former Title 46, Shipping, related to coastwise endorsements, prior to the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See sections 12102, 12112, 12116, 12117, and 12119 of this title.

§12107. Wrecked vessels

(a) REQUIREMENTS.—A vessel is a wrecked vessel under this chapter if it—

(1) was wrecked on a coast of the United States or adjacent waters; and

(2) has undergone repairs in a shipyard in the United States equal to at least 3 times the appraised salvage value of the vessel.

(b) APPRAISALS.—The Secretary may appoint a board of three appraisers to determine whether a vessel satisfies subsection (a)(2). The costs of the appraisal shall be paid by the owner of the vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1494.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12107	46 App.:14 (words before last proviso).	R.S. §4136 (words before last proviso); Feb. 24, 1915, ch. 57, 38 Stat. 812; Pub. L. 103–182, title VI, §686(a)(4), Dec. 8, 1993, 107 Stat. 2220.

The words "The Secretary of Transportation may issue a certificate of documentation with a coastwise endorsement" and "when purchased by a citizen or citizens of the United States" are omitted as unnecessary because section 12112, as revised by the bill, provides the requirements for a wrecked vessel to obtain a coastwise endorsement.

In subsection (c)(1), the words "or her possessions" are omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12107, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 587; Pub. L. 100–239, §6(a)(4), (5), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1782; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §301(a)(7), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1921, originally derived from section 65j of former Title 46, Shipping, related to Great Lakes endorsements, prior to being repealed by Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1115(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3972.

A prior section 12108, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 587; Pub. L. 98–454, title III, §301(c), Oct. 5, 1984, 98 Stat. 1734; Pub. L. 100–239, §§3(4), (5), 6(a)(6), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1779, 1782; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §301(a)(8), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1921; Pub. L. 104–208, div. A, title I, §101(a) [title II, §211(b)], Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009, 3009–41; Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §301(e), title VII, §744, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3917, 3942; Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §409, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2117, originally derived from section 65k of former Title 46, Shipping, related to fishery endorsements, prior to being omitted in the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See sections 12102, 12113, and 12116 of this title.

A prior section 12109, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 587; Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(7)(C), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 67; Pub. L. 99–570, title III, §3151, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207–94; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §106(b)(5), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4752; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §301(a)(9), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1921; Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §603(9), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2993, originally derived from section 65l of former Title 46, Shipping, related to recreational endorsements, prior to being omitted in the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See section 12114 of this title.

A prior section 12110, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 588; Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(7)(D), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 67; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(a)(4), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4750; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §301(a)(10), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1922; Pub. L. 102–388, title III, §348(b), Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1554; Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5213(a)(2), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5077; Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §301(c), (d)(1), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3916; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §404(a), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1043, originally derived from section 65m of former Title 46, Shipping, related to limitations on operations authorized by certificates, prior to being omitted in the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See sections 12102, 12114, and 12131 of this title.

§12108. Authority to extend duration of vessel certificates

(a) CERTIFICATES.—Provided a vessel is in compliance with inspection requirements in section 3313, the Secretary of the department in which in the Coast Guard is operating may, if the Secretary makes the determination described in subsection (b), extend, for a period of not more than 1 year, an expiring certificate of documentation issued for a vessel under chapter 121.

(b) DETERMINATION.—The determination referred to in subsection (a) is a determination that such extension is required to enable the Coast Guard to—

(1) eliminate a backlog in processing applications for such certificates; or

(2) act in response to a national emergency or natural disaster.

(c) MANNER OF EXTENSION.—Any extension granted under this section may be granted to individual vessels or to a specifically identified group of vessels.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8320(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4701.)

SUBCHAPTER II—ENDORSEMENTS AND SPECIAL DOCUMENTATION

§12111. Registry endorsement

(a) REQUIREMENTS.—A registry endorsement may be issued for a vessel that satisfies the requirements of section 12103 of this title.

(b) AUTHORIZED ACTIVITY.—A vessel for which a registry endorsement is issued may

engage in foreign trade or trade with Guam, American Samoa, Wake, Midway, or Kingman Reef.

(c) CERTAIN VESSELS OWNED BY TRUSTS.—

(1) NONAPPLICATION OF BENEFICIARY CITIZENSHIP REQUIREMENT.—For the issuance of a certificate of documentation with only a registry endorsement, the beneficiaries of a trust are not required to be citizens of the United States if the trust qualifies under paragraph (2) and the vessel is subject to a charter to a citizen of the United States.

(2) REQUIREMENTS FOR TRUST TO QUALIFY.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Subject to subparagraph (B), a trust qualifies under this paragraph with respect to a vessel only if—

(i) each trustee is a citizen of the United States; and

(ii) the application for documentation of the vessel includes the affidavit of each trustee stating that the trustee is not aware of any reason involving a beneficiary of the trust that is not a citizen of the United States, or involving any other person that is not a citizen of the United States, as a result of which the beneficiary or other person would hold more than 25 percent of the aggregate power to influence or limit the exercise of the authority of the trustee with respect to matters involving any ownership or operation of the vessel that may adversely affect the interests of the United States.

(B) AUTHORITY OF NON-CITIZENS.—If any person that is not a citizen of the United States has authority to direct or participate in directing a trustee for a trust in matters involving any ownership or operation of the vessel that may adversely affect the interests of the United States or in removing a trustee for a trust without cause, either directly or indirectly through the control of another person, the trust is not qualified under this paragraph unless the trust instrument provides that persons who are not citizens of the United States may not hold more than 25 percent of the aggregate authority to so direct or remove a trustee.

(C) OWNERSHIP BY NON-CITIZENS.—Subparagraphs (A) and (B) do not prohibit a person that is not a citizen of the United States from holding more than 25 percent of the beneficial interest in a trust.

(3) CITIZENSHIP OF PERSON CHARTERING VESSEL.—If a person chartering a vessel from a trust that qualifies under paragraph (2) is a citizen of the United States under section 50501 of this title, the vessel is deemed to be owned by a citizen of the United States for purposes of that section and related laws, except chapter 531 of this title.

(d) ACTIVITIES INVOLVING MOBILE OFFSHORE DRILLING UNITS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Only a vessel for which a certificate of documentation with a registry endorsement is issued may engage in—

(A) the setting, relocation, or recovery of the anchors or other mooring equipment of a mobile offshore drilling unit that is located over the outer Continental Shelf (as defined in section 2(a) of the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act (43 U.S.C. 1331(a))); or

(B) the transportation of merchandise or personnel to or from a point in the United States from or to a mobile offshore drilling unit located over the outer Continental Shelf that is not attached to the seabed.

(2) COASTWISE TRADE NOT AUTHORIZED.—Nothing in paragraph (1) authorizes the employment in the coastwise trade of a vessel that does not meet the requirements of section 12112 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1494; Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §310, July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 529; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3525(a)(1), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 600, 601.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12111(a)	46:12105(a).	
12111(b)	46:12105(b).	
12111(c)	46:12102(d).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12111, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 588; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §103(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4749; Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §301(d)(2)(A), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3916; Pub. L. 107–295, title II, §205(c), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2096, originally derived from section 65o of former Title 46, Shipping, related to surrender and invalidation of certificates of documentation, prior to the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See sections 12135 and 12136 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–241, §310. See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(a)(1), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–241, §310, into this section by adding subsec. (d). See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–241, §310, which directed the amendment of former section 12105 of this title from which this section was derived in part, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsec. (d) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§12112. Coastwise endorsement

(a) REQUIREMENTS.—A coastwise endorsement may be issued for a vessel that—

(1) satisfies the requirements of section 12103 of this title;

(2)(A) was built in the United States; or

(B) if not built in the United States—

(i) was captured in war by citizens of the United States and lawfully condemned as prize;

(ii) was adjudged to be forfeited for a breach of the laws of the United States; or

(iii) qualifies as a wrecked vessel under section 12107 of this title; and

(3) otherwise qualifies under the laws of the United States to engage in the coastwise trade.

(b) AUTHORIZED ACTIVITY.—Subject to the laws of the United States regulating the coastwise trade, a vessel for which a coastwise endorsement is issued may engage in the coastwise trade.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1495.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12112(a)	46:12106(a).	
12112(b)	46:12106(b).	

In subsection (b), the word "only" is omitted because section 12102(a), as revised by the bill, contains a general requirement for appropriate documentation to engage in any trade.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12112, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 588; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(a)(4), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4750; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §301(a)(11), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1922, originally derived from section 65p of former Title 46, Shipping, related to vessels procured outside the United States, prior to the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See section 12115 of this title.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

CERTAIN VESSELS ENGAGED IN ALASKA COASTWISE TRADE

Pub. L. 108–293, title VI, §608(b), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1056, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, a person shall be treated as a citizen of the United States under section 12102(a) [now section 12103(a), (b)] of title 46, United States Code, section 2 of the Shipping Act, 1916 ([former] 46 U.S.C. App. 802) [see 46 U.S.C. 50501], and section 27 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 ([former] 46 U.S.C. App. 883) [see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title], for purposes of issuance of a coastwise endorsement under section 12106(e) of title 46, United States Code (as that section was in effect on the day before the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 9, 2004]), for a vessel owned by the person on the date of enactment of this Act, or any replacement vessel of a similar size and function, if the person—

"(A) owned a vessel before January 1, 2001, that had a coastwise endorsement under [former] section 12106(e) of title 46, United States Code; and

"(B) as of the date of the enactment of this Act [Aug. 9, 2004], derives substantially all of its revenue from leasing vessels engaged in the transportation or distribution of petroleum products and other cargo in Alaska.

"(2) LIMITATION ON COASTWISE TRADE.—A vessel owned by a person described in paragraph (1) for which a coastwise endorsement is issued under [former] section 12106(e) of title 46, United States Code, may be employed in the coastwise trade only within Alaska and in the coastwise trade to and from Alaska.

"(3) TERMINATION.—The application of this subsection to a person described in paragraph (1) shall terminate if all of that person's vessels described in paragraph (1) are sold to a person eligible to document vessels under section 12106(a) [now section 12112(a)] of title 46, United States Code."

§12113. Fishery endorsement

(a) REQUIREMENTS.—A fishery endorsement may be issued for a vessel that—

(1) satisfies the requirements of section 12103 of this title and, if owned by an entity, the entity satisfies the ownership requirements in subsection (c);

(2) was built in the United States;

(3) if rebuilt, was rebuilt in the United States;

(4) was not forfeited to the United States Government after July 1, 2001, for a breach of the laws of the United States; and

(5) otherwise qualifies under the laws of the United States to engage in the fisheries.

(b) AUTHORIZED ACTIVITY.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Subject to the laws of the United States regulating the fisheries, a vessel for which a fishery endorsement is issued may engage in the fisheries.

(2) USE BY PROHIBITED PERSONS.—A fishery endorsement is invalid immediately if the vessel for which it is issued is used as a fishing vessel while it is chartered or leased to an individual who is not a citizen of the United States or to an entity that is not eligible to own a vessel with a fishery endorsement.

(c) OWNERSHIP REQUIREMENTS FOR ENTITIES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—A vessel owned by an entity is eligible for a fishery endorsement only if at least 75 percent of the interest in the entity, at each tier of ownership and in the aggregate, is owned and controlled by citizens of the United States.

(2) DETERMINING 75 PERCENT INTEREST.—In determining whether at least 75 percent of the interest in the entity is owned and controlled by citizens of the United States under paragraph

(1), the Secretary shall apply section 50501(d) of this title, except that for this purpose the terms "control" or "controlled"—

(A) include the right to—

(i) direct the business of the entity;

(ii) limit the actions of or replace the chief executive officer, a majority of the board of directors, any general partner, or any person serving in a management capacity of the entity; or

(iii) direct the transfer, operation, or manning of a vessel with a fishery endorsement; but

(B) do not include the right to simply participate in the activities under subparagraph (A), or the exercise of rights under loan or mortgage covenants by a mortgagee eligible to be a preferred mortgagee under section 31322(a) of this title, except that a mortgagee not eligible to own a vessel with a fishery endorsement may only operate such a vessel to the extent necessary for the immediate safety of the vessel or for repairs, drydocking, or berthing changes.

(3) EXCEPTIONS.—This subsection does not apply to a vessel when it is engaged in the fisheries in the exclusive economic zone under the authority of the Western Pacific Fishery Management Council established under section 302(a)(1)(H) of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1852(a)(1)(H)) or to a purse seine vessel when it is engaged in tuna fishing in the Pacific Ocean outside the exclusive economic zone or pursuant to the South Pacific Regional Fisheries Treaty, provided that the owner of the vessel continues to comply with the eligibility requirements for a fishery endorsement under the Federal law that was in effect on October 1, 1998. A fishery endorsement issued pursuant to this paragraph is valid for engaging only in the activities described in this paragraph.

(d) REQUIREMENTS BASED ON LENGTH, TONNAGE, OR HORSEPOWER.—

(1) APPLICATION.—This subsection applies to a vessel that—

(A) is greater than 165 feet in registered length;

(B) is more than 750 gross registered tons as measured under chapter 145 of this title or 1,900 gross registered tons as measured under chapter 143 of this title; or

(C) has an engine or engines capable of producing a total of more than 3,000 shaft horsepower.

(2) REQUIREMENTS.—A vessel subject to this subsection is not eligible for a fishery endorsement unless—

(A)(i) a certificate of documentation was issued for the vessel and endorsed with a fishery endorsement that was effective on September 25, 1997; and

(ii) the vessel is not placed under foreign registry after October 21, 1998;

(B) the owner of the vessel demonstrates to the Secretary that—

(i) the regional fishery management council of jurisdiction established under section 302(a)(1) of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1852(a)(1)) has recommended after October 21, 1998, and the Secretary of Commerce has approved, conservation and management measures in accordance with the American Fisheries Act (Public Law 105–277, div. C, title II) (16 U.S.C. 1851 note) [1] to allow the vessel to be used in fisheries under the council's authority; and

(ii) in the case of a vessel listed in paragraphs (1) through (20) of section 208(e) of the American Fisheries Act (title II of division C of Public Law 105–277; 112 Stat. 2681–625 et seq.), the vessel is neither participating in nor eligible to participate in the non-AFA trawl catcher processor subsector (as that term is defined under section 219(a)(7) of the Department of Commerce and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 2005 (Public Law 108–447; 118 Stat. 2887));

(C) the vessel—

(i) is either a rebuilt vessel or replacement vessel under section 208(g) of the American Fisheries Act (title II of division C of Public Law 105–277; 112 Stat. 2681–627);

(ii) is eligible for a fishery endorsement under this section; and

(iii) in the case of a vessel listed in paragraphs (1) through (20) of section 208(e) of the American Fisheries Act (title II of division C of Public Law 105–277; 112 Stat. 2681–625 et seq.), is neither participating in nor eligible to participate in the non-AFA trawl catcher processor subsector (as that term is defined under section 219(a)(7) of the Department of Commerce and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 2005 (Public Law 108–447; 118 Stat. 2887)); or

(D) the vessel is a fish tender vessel that is not engaged in the harvesting or processing of fish.

(e) VESSELS MEASURING 100 FEET OR GREATER.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Administrator of the Maritime Administration shall administer subsections (c) and (d) with respect to vessels 100 feet or greater in registered length. The owner of each such vessel shall file a statement of citizenship setting forth all relevant facts regarding vessel ownership and control with the Administrator on an annual basis to demonstrate compliance with those provisions.

(2) REGULATIONS.—Regulations to implement this subsection shall conform to the extent practicable with the regulations establishing the form of citizenship affidavit set forth in part 355 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on September 25, 1997, except that the form of the statement shall be written in a manner to allow the owner of the vessel to satisfy any annual renewal requirements for a certificate of documentation for the vessel and to comply with this subsection and subsections (c) and (d), and shall not be required to be notarized.

(3) TRANSFER OF OWNERSHIP.—Transfers of ownership and control of vessels subject to subsection (c) or (d), which are 100 feet or greater in registered length, shall be rigorously scrutinized for violations of those provisions, with particular attention given to—

(A) leases, charters, mortgages, financing, and similar arrangements;

(B) the control of persons not eligible to own a vessel with a fishery endorsement under subsection (c) or (d), over the management, sales, financing, or other operations of an entity; and

(C) contracts involving the purchase over extended periods of time of all, or substantially all, of the living marine resources harvested by a fishing vessel.

(f) VESSELS MEASURING LESS THAN 100 FEET.—The Secretary shall establish reasonable and necessary requirements to demonstrate compliance with subsections (c) and (d), with respect to vessels measuring less than 100 feet in registered length, and shall seek to minimize the administrative burden on individuals who own and operate those vessels.

(g) VESSELS PURCHASED THROUGH FISHING CAPACITY REDUCTION PROGRAM .—A vessel purchased by the Secretary of Commerce through a fishing capacity reduction program under the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1801 et seq.) or section 308 [2] of the Interjurisdictional Fisheries Act of 1986 (16 U.S.C. 4107) is not eligible for a fishery endorsement, and any fishery endorsement issued for that vessel is invalid.

(h) REVOCATION OF ENDORSEMENTS.—The Secretary shall revoke the fishery endorsement of any vessel subject to subsection (c) or (d) whose owner does not comply with those provisions.

(i) REGULATIONS.—Regulations to implement subsections (c) and (d) and sections 12151(c) and 31322(b) of this title shall prohibit impermissible transfers of ownership or control, specify any transactions that require prior approval of an implementing agency, identify transactions that do not require prior agency approval, and to the extent practicable, minimize disruptions to the commercial fishing industry, to the traditional financing arrangements of that industry, and to the opportunity to form fishery cooperatives.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1495; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV,

§3529(a)(2), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 603; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §602(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2959; Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §307, Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1565; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(j), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2326.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12113(a)	46:12108(a).	
12113(b)(1)	46:12108(b).	
12113(b)(2)	46:12102(c)(3).	
12113(c)(1)	46:12102(c)(1).	
12113(c)(2)	46:12102(c)(2).	
12113(c)(3)	46:12102(c)(4).	
12113(d)	46:12102(c)(5).	
12113(e)	46:12102 note.	Pub. L. 105–277, div. C, title II, §203(c), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–619.
12113(f)	46:12102 note.	Pub. L. 105–277, div. C, title II, §203(d), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–619.
12113(g)	46:12108(d).	
12113(h)	46:12102 note.	Pub. L. 105–277, div. C, title II, §203(e), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–619.
12113(i)	46:12102 note.	Pub. L. 105–277, div. C, title II, §203(b), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–619.

In subsection (b)(1), the word "only" is omitted because section 12102(a), as revised by the bill, contains a general requirement for appropriate documentation to engage in any trade.

In subsection (c)(1), the word "entity" is substituted for "corporation, partnership, association, trust, joint venture, limited liability company, limited liability partnership, or any other entity" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (e)(3), the words "After October 1, 2001" are omitted as obsolete.

In subsection (i), the first two sentences of section 203(b) of Public Law 105–277 are omitted as obsolete.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The American Fisheries Act (Public Law 105–277, div. C, title II) (16 U.S.C. 1851 note), referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(B)(i), probably should be a reference to the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (see note below). Introductory provisions and cl. (i) of subsec. (d)(2)(B) of this section were derived from former section 12102(c)(5)(B) of this title in the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1491. As part of that amendment, the reference to the American Fisheries Act was substituted for a reference to "such Act" which had been preceded by references to both of the above named Acts. See the Historical and Revision Notes above and section 2 of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

Section 208(e) and (g) of the American Fisheries Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(B)(ii), (C)(i), (iii), is section 208(e) and (g), respectively, of title II of div. C of Pub. L. 105–277, Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–625, 2681–627, which is set out in a note under section 1851 of Title 16, Conservation.

Section 219(a)(7) of the Department of Commerce and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 2005, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(B)(ii), (C)(iii), is section 219(a)(7) of Pub. L. 108–447, div. B, title II, Dec. 8, 2004, 118 Stat. 2887, which is not classified to the Code.

The Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act, referred to in subsec. (g), is Pub. L. 94–265, Apr. 13, 1976, 90 Stat. 331, which is classified principally to chapter 38 (§1801 et seq.) of Title 16, Conservation. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1801 of Title 16 and Tables.

Section 308 of the Interjurisdictional Fisheries Act of 1986 (16 U.S.C. 4107), referred to in subsec. (g), was repealed by Pub. L. 117–328, div. S, title II, §204(a), Dec. 29, 2022, 136 Stat. 5270.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12113, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 588, originally derived from section 65a of former Title 46, Shipping, related to ports of documentation, prior to being repealed by Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §§106(b)(5), 107(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4752, effective Jan. 1, 1989.

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (d)(2)(C)(iii). Pub. L. 115–232 substituted "118 Stat. 2887))" for "118 Stat. 2887)".

2012—Subsec. (d)(2)(B). Pub. L. 112–213, §307(1), substituted "Secretary that—" for "Secretary that", inserted cl. (i) designation before "the regional" and "and" after "authority;", and added cl. (ii).

Subsec. (d)(2)(C). Pub. L. 112–213, §307(2), amended subpar. (C) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (C) read as follows: "the vessel is either a rebuilt vessel or a replacement vessel under section 208(g) of the American Fisheries Act (title II of division C of Public Law 105–277; 112 Stat. 2681–627) and is eligible for a fishery endorsement under this section; or".

2010—Subsec. (d)(2)(A)(i). Pub. L. 111–281, §602(a)(1), inserted "and" at the end.

Subsec. (d)(2)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 111–281, §602(a)(2), struck out "and" at the end.

Subsec. (d)(2)(A)(iii). Pub. L. 111–281, §602(a)(3), struck out cl. (iii) which read as follows: "if the fishery endorsement is invalidated after October 21, 1998, application is made for a new fishery endorsement within 15 business days of the invalidation; or".

Subsec. (d)(2)(C), (D). Pub. L. 111–281, §602(a)(4), (5), added subpars. (C) and (D).

2008—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 110–181 inserted "and" after "Conservation".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

INAPPLICABILITY OF SUBSECTION (D) TO CERTAIN MENHADEN FISHERIES

Pub. L. 106–31, title III, §3027(c), May 21, 1999, 113 Stat. 102, provided that: "The limitation on registered length contained in section 12102(c)(6) [now section 12113(d)] of title 46, United States Code, shall not apply to a vessel used solely in any menhaden fishery which is located in the Gulf of Mexico or along the Atlantic coast south of the area under the authority of the New England Fishery Management Council for so long as such vessel is used in such fishery."

EXCEPTION TO BUILD REQUIREMENT FOR PRIOR VESSELS

Pub. L. 100–239, §4, Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1779, as amended by Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §310, Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1926, provided that:

"(a) Notwithstanding the requirements of section 12108(a)(2) and (3) [now section 12113(a)(2) and (3)] of title 46, United States Code, a fishery license may be issued to a vessel that before July 28, 1987—

"(1)(A) was documented under chapter 121 of that title; and

"(B) was operated as a fish processing or fish tender vessel in the navigable waters of the United States or the exclusive economic zone;

"(2) was a fish tender or fish processing vessel contracted to be purchased by a citizen of the United States, if the purchase is shown by contract or similarly reliable evidence acceptable to the Secretary to have been made for the purpose of using the vessel as a fish tender or fish processing vessel in the fisheries;

"(3) was documented under chapter 121 of that title and—

"(A) was rebuilt in a foreign country; or

"(B) is subsequently rebuilt in the United States for use as a fish processing vessel; or

"(4) was built in the United States and—

"(A) is rebuilt in a foreign country under a contract entered into before 6 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Jan. 11, 1988], and was purchased or contracted to be purchased before July 28, 1987 with the intent that the vessel be used in the fisheries, if that intent is evidenced by—

"(i) the contract itself; or

"(ii) a ruling letter by the Coast Guard before July 29, 1987 under 46 C.F.R. §67.21–1 or §67.27–3 pursuant to a ruling request evidencing that intent; or

"(B) is purchased for use as a fish processing vessel under a contract entered into after July 27, 1987, if—

"(i) a contract to rebuild the vessel for use as a fish processing vessel was entered into before September 1, 1987; and

"(ii) that vessel is part of a specific business plan involving the conversion in foreign shipyards of a series of three vessels and rebuilding work on at least one of the vessels had begun before July 28, 1987.

"(b) A vessel rebuilt under subsection (a)(3)(B) or (4) of this section must be redelivered to the owner before July 28, 1990. However, the Secretary may, on proof of circumstances beyond the control of the owner of a vessel affected by this section, extend the period for rebuilding in a foreign country permitted by this section.

"(c)(1) Any fishery license or registry issued to a vessel built in a foreign country under this section shall be endorsed to restrict the vessel from catching, taking, or harvesting.

"(2) Before being issued a fishery license, any vessel described in subsection (a)(2) of this section must be documented under an application for documentation acceptable to the Secretary filed before July 28, 1987, except that an alternative vessel of no greater tonnage than the vessel in the application may be substituted, if that substitution is made by the original applicant."

DEFINITIONS

Pub. L. 100–239, §6(d), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1782, provided that: "The terms in this Act [see Tables for classification] have the same meaning as in subtitle II [now also sections 114 and 115] of title 46, United States Code (as amended by this Act)."

[1] See References in Text note below.

[2] See References in Text note below.

§12114. Recreational endorsement

(a) REQUIREMENTS.—A recreational endorsement may be issued for a vessel that satisfies the requirements of section 12103 of this title.

(b) AUTHORIZED ACTIVITY.—A vessel operating under a recreational endorsement may be operated only for pleasure.

(c) APPLICATION OF CUSTOMS LAWS.—A vessel for which a recreational endorsement is issued may proceed between a port of the United States and a port of a foreign country without entering or clearing with the Secretary of Homeland Security. However, a recreational vessel is subject to the requirements for reporting arrivals under section 433 of the Tariff Act of 1930 (19 U.S.C. 1433), and individuals on the vessel are subject to applicable customs regulations.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1498.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12114(a)	46:12109(a).	
12114(b)	46:12109(c). 46:12110(c).	
12114(c)	46:12109(b).	

In subsection (c), the words "Secretary of Homeland Security" are substituted for "Customs Service" because the functions of the Customs Service and of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto were transferred to the Secretary of Homeland Security by section 403(1) of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–296, 116 Stat. 2178).

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12114, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 589; Pub. L. 99–36, §1(a)(8), May 15, 1985, 99 Stat. 67, originally derived from section 65c of former Title 46, Shipping, related to home ports, prior to being repealed by Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §§106(b)(5), 107(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4752, effective Jan. 1, 1989.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

DOCUMENTATION OF RECREATIONAL VESSELS

Pub. L. 115–282, title VIII, §826, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4314, provided that: "Coast Guard personnel performing nonrecreational vessel documentation functions under subchapter II of chapter 121 of title 46, United States Code, may perform recreational vessel documentation under section 12114 of such title in any fiscal year in which—

"(1) funds available for Coast Guard operating expenses may not be used for expenses incurred for recreational vessel documentation;

"(2) fees collected from owners of yachts and credited to such use are insufficient to pay expenses of recreational vessel documentation; and

"(3) there is a backlog of applications for recreational vessel documentation."

§12115. Temporary endorsement for vessels procured outside the United States

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—The Secretary and the Secretary of State, acting jointly, may provide for the issuance of a certificate of documentation with an appropriate endorsement for a vessel procured outside the United States and meeting the ownership requirements of section 12103 of this title.

(b) AUTHORIZED ACTIVITY.—Subject to limitations the Secretary may prescribe, a vessel documented under this section may proceed to the United States and engage en route in foreign trade or trade with Guam, American Samoa, Wake, Midway, or Kingman Reef.

(c) APPLICATION OF UNITED STATES JURISDICTION AND LAWS.—A vessel documented under this section is subject to the jurisdiction and laws of the United States. However, if the Secretary considers it to be in the public interest, the Secretary may suspend for a period of not more than 6 months the application of a vessel inspection law carried out by the Secretary or regulations prescribed under that law.

(d) SURRENDER OF CERTIFICATE.—On the vessel's arrival in the United States, the certificate of documentation shall be surrendered as provided by regulations prescribed by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1498.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12115(a)	46:12112(a).	
12115(b)	46:12112(b) (1st sentence).	
12115(c)	46:12112(c).	
12115(d)	46:12112(b) (last sentence).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12115, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 589, originally derived from section 65d of

former Title 46, Shipping, related to names of vessels, prior to being repealed by Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §§106(b)(5), 107(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4752, effective Jan. 1, 1989.

§12116. Limited endorsements for Guam, American Samoa, and Northern Mariana Islands

(a) ENDORSEMENTS.—A vessel satisfying the requirements of subsection (b) may be issued—

(1) a coastwise endorsement to engage in the coastwise trade of fisheries products between places in Guam, American Samoa, and the Northern Mariana Islands; or

(2) a fishery endorsement to engage in fishing in the territorial sea and fishery conservation zone adjacent to Guam, American Samoa, and the Northern Mariana Islands.

(b) REQUIREMENTS.—An endorsement may be issued under subsection (a) for a vessel that—

(1) satisfies the requirements of section 12103 of this title;

(2) was not built in the United States, except that for an endorsement under subsection (a)(2), the vessel must not have been built or rebuilt in the United States;

(3) is less than 200 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage as measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title; and

(4) otherwise qualifies under the laws of the United States to engage in the coastwise trade or the fisheries, as the case may be.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1499.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12116	46:12106(c). 46:12108(c).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12116, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 589, originally derived from section 65f of former Title 46, Shipping, related to numbers, signal letters, and identification markings, prior to being repealed by Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §§106(b)(5), 107(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4752, effective Jan. 1, 1989.

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TERRITORIAL SEA OF UNITED STATES

For extension of territorial sea of United States, see Proc. No. 5928, set out as a note under section 1331 of Title 43, Public Lands.

§12117. Oil spill response vessels

(a) REQUIREMENTS.—A coastwise endorsement may be issued for a vessel that—

(1) satisfies the requirements for a coastwise endorsement, except for the ownership requirement otherwise applicable without regard to this section;

(2) is owned by a not-for-profit oil spill response cooperative or by members of such a cooperative that dedicate the vessel to use by the cooperative;

(3) is at least 50 percent owned by individuals or entities described in section 12103(b) of this

title; and

(4) is to be used only for—

(i) deploying equipment, supplies, and personnel to recover, contain, or transport oil discharged into the navigable waters of the United States or the exclusive economic zone; or

(ii) training exercises to prepare to respond to such a discharge.

(b) DEEMED OWNED BY CITIZENS.—A vessel satisfying subsection (a) is deemed to be owned only by citizens of the United States under sections 12103, 12132, and 50501 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1499.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12117	46:12106(d).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12117, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 589; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(a)(4), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4750, originally derived from section 65q of former Title 46, Shipping, related to recording of United States built vessels, prior to the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See section 12137 of this title.

§12118. Owners engaged primarily in manufacturing or mineral industry

(a) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

(1) BOWATERS CORPORATION.—The term "Bowaters corporation" means a corporation that has filed a certificate under oath with the Secretary, in the form and at the times prescribed by the Secretary, establishing that—

(A) the corporation is incorporated under the laws of the United States or a State;

(B) a majority of the officers and directors of the corporation are individuals who are citizens of the United States;

(C) at least 90 percent of the employees of the corporation are residents of the United States;

(D) the corporation is engaged primarily in a manufacturing or mineral industry in the United States;

(E) the total book value of the vessels owned by the corporation is not more than 10 percent of the total book value of the assets of the corporation; and

(F) the corporation buys or produces in the United States at least 75 percent of the raw materials used or sold in its operations.

(2) PARENT.—The term "parent" means a corporation that has filed a certificate under oath with the Secretary, in the form and at the times prescribed by the Secretary, establishing that the corporation—

(A) is incorporated under the laws of the United States or a State; and

(B) controls, directly or indirectly, at least 50 percent of the voting stock of a Bowaters corporation.

(3) SUBSIDIARY.—The term "subsidiary" means a corporation that has filed a certificate under oath with the Secretary, in the form and at the times prescribed by the Secretary, establishing that the corporation—

(A) is incorporated under the laws of the United States or a State; and

(B) has at least 50 percent of its voting stock controlled, directly or indirectly, by a Bowaters corporation or its parent.

(b) DEEMED CITIZEN.—A Bowaters corporation is deemed to be a citizen of the United States for purposes of chapters 121, 551, and 561 and section 80104 of this title.

(c) ISSUANCE OF DOCUMENTATION.—A certificate of documentation and appropriate endorsement may be issued for a vessel that—

(1) is owned by a Bowaters corporation;

(2) was built in the United States; and

(3)(A) is self-propelled and less than 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title, or an alternate tonnage as measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title; or

(B) is not self-propelled.

(d) EFFECTS OF DOCUMENTATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Subject to paragraph (2)—

(A) a vessel documented under this section may engage in the coastwise trade; and

(B) the vessel and its owner and master are entitled to the same benefits and are subject to the same requirements and penalties as if the vessel were otherwise documented or exempt from documentation under this chapter.

(2) TRANSPORTATION OF PASSENGERS OR MERCHANDISE.—A vessel documented under this section may transport passengers or merchandise for hire in the coastwise trade only—

(A) as a service for a parent or subsidiary of the corporation owning the vessel; or

(B) when under a demise or bareboat charter, at prevailing rates for use not in the domestic noncontiguous trades, from the corporation owning the vessel to a carrier that—

(i) is subject to jurisdiction under subchapter II of chapter 135 of title 49;

(ii) otherwise qualifies as a citizen of the United States under section 50501 of this title; and

(iii) is not owned or controlled, directly or indirectly, by the corporation owning the vessel.

(e) VALIDITY OF CORPORATE CERTIFICATE.—A certificate filed by a corporation under this section remains valid only as long as the corporation continues to satisfy the conditions required of the corporation by this section. When a corporation no longer satisfies those conditions, the corporation loses its status under this section and immediately shall surrender to the Secretary any documents issued to it based on that status.

(f) PENALTIES.—

(1) FALSIFYING MATERIAL FACT.—If a corporation knowingly falsifies a material fact in a certificate filed under subsection (a), the vessel (or its value) documented or operated under this section shall be forfeited.

(2) TRANSPORTING MERCHANDISE.—If a vessel transports merchandise for hire in violation of this section, the merchandise shall be forfeited to the United States Government.

(3) TRANSPORTING PASSENGERS.—If a vessel transports passengers for hire in violation of this section, the vessel is liable for a penalty of $200 for each passenger so transported.

(4) REMISSION OR MITIGATION.—A penalty or forfeiture incurred under this subsection may be remitted or mitigated under section 2107(b) of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1500.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12118(a)(1)	46 App.:883–1 (1st par. words	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §27A, as added

	through cl. (e) less citizenship, 4th par. 1st sentence).	Pub. L. 85–902, Sept. 2, 1958, 72 Stat. 1736; Pub. L. 104–88, title III, §321(2), Dec. 29, 1995, 109 Stat. 950; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §706, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3934.
12118(a)(2), (3)	46 App.:883–1 (2d par., 4th par. 2d sentence).	
12118(b)	46 App.:883–1 (1st par. related to citizenship).	
12118(c)	46 App.:883–1 (3d par. words before 5th comma).	
12118(d)(1)	46 App.:883–1 (3d par. words after 5th comma).	
12118(d)(2)	46 App.:883–1 (1st par. words after cl. (e)).	
12118(e)	46 App.:883–1 (last par.).	
12118(f)	46 App.:883–1 (4th par. 3d–6th sentences).	

In this section, the word "Secretary" is substituted for "Secretary of the Treasury", thereby incorporating the definition of "Secretary" in section 2101 of title 46. The functions of the Secretary of the Treasury relating to the Coast Guard previously were transferred to the Secretary of Transportation by section 6(b) of the Department of Transportation Act (Pub. L. 89–670, Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 938). The Coast Guard and the functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating to the Coast Guard were again transferred to the Department of Homeland Security by section 888(b) of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–296, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2135).

In subsection (a)(1), the words "seeking hereunder to document a vessel under the laws of the United States or to operate a vessel exempt from documentation under the laws of the United States" are omitted as unnecessary because of the reorganization of the section.

Subsection (d)(1)(B) is substituted for "together with their owners or masters, shall be entitled to all the other benefits and privileges and shall be subject to the same requirements, penalties, and forfeitures as may be applicable in the case of vessels built in the United States and otherwise documented or exempt from documentation under the laws of the United States" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (d)(2), the words before subparagraph (A) are substituted for "no vessel owned by any such corporation shall engage in the fisheries or in the transportation of merchandise or passengers for hire between points in the United States, including Territories, Districts, and possessions thereof, embraced within the coastwise laws, except" to eliminate unnecessary words. See the definition of "United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12118, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 589, originally derived from section 65r of former Title 46, Shipping, related to registration of funnel marks and house flags, prior to being repealed by Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §§106(b)(5), 107(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4752, effective Jan. 1, 1989.

§12119. Owners engaged primarily in leasing or financing transactions

(a) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

(1) AFFILIATE.—The term "affiliate" means, with respect to any person, any other person that is—

(i) directly or indirectly controlled by, under common control with, or controlling that person; or

(ii) named as being part of the same consolidated group in any report or other document

submitted to the United States Securities and Exchange Commission or the Internal Revenue Service.

(2) CARGO.—The term "cargo" does not include cargo to which title is held for non-commercial reasons and primarily for the purpose of evading the requirements of subsection (c)(3).

(3) OIL.—The term "oil" has the meaning given that term in section 2101(28) of this title.

(4) PASSIVE INVESTMENT.—The term "passive investment" means an investment in which neither the investor nor any affiliate of the investor is involved in, or has the power to be involved in, the formulation, determination, or direction of any activity or function concerning the management, use, or operation of the asset that is the subject of the investment.

(5) QUALIFIED PROPRIETARY CARGO.—The term "qualified proprietary cargo" means—

(A) oil, petroleum products, petrochemicals, or liquefied natural gas cargo that is beneficially owned by the person that submits to the Secretary an application or annual certification under subsection (c)(3), or by an affiliate of that person, immediately before, during, or immediately after the cargo is carried in coastwise trade on a vessel owned by that person;

(B) oil, petroleum products, petrochemicals, or liquefied natural gas cargo not beneficially owned by the person that submits to the Secretary an application or an annual certification under subsection (c)(3), or by an affiliate of that person, but which is carried in coastwise trade by a vessel owned by that person and which is part of an arrangement in which vessels owned by that person and at least one other person are operated collectively as one fleet, to the extent that an equal amount of oil, petroleum products, petrochemicals, or liquefied natural gas cargo beneficially owned by that person, or by an affiliate of that person, is carried in coastwise trade on one or more other vessels, not owned by that person, or by an affiliate of that person, if the other vessel or vessels are also part of the same arrangement;

(C) in the case of a towing vessel associated with a non-self-propelled tank vessel where both vessels function as a single self-propelled vessel, oil, petroleum products, petrochemicals, or liquefied natural gas cargo that is beneficially owned by the person that owns both the towing vessel and the non-self-propelled tank vessel, or any United States affiliate of that person, immediately before, during, or immediately after the cargo is carried in coastwise trade on either of those vessels; or

(D) any oil, petroleum products, petrochemicals, or liquefied natural gas cargo carried on any vessel that is either a self-propelled tank vessel having a length of at least 210 meters or a tank vessel that is a liquefied natural gas carrier that—

(i) was delivered by the builder of the vessel to the owner of the vessel after December 31, 1999; and

(ii) was purchased by a person for the purpose, and with the reasonable expectation, of transporting on the vessel liquefied natural gas or unrefined petroleum beneficially owned by the owner of the vessel, or an affiliate of the owner, from Alaska to the continental United States.

(6) UNITED STATES AFFILIATE.—The term "United States affiliate" means, with respect to any person, an affiliate the principal place of business of which is located in the United States.

(b) REQUIREMENTS.—A coastwise endorsement may be issued for a vessel if—

(1) the vessel satisfies the requirements for a coastwise endorsement, except for the ownership requirement otherwise applicable without regard to this section;

(2) the person that owns the vessel (or, if the vessel is owned by a trust or similar arrangement, the beneficiary of the trust or similar arrangement) meets the requirements of subsection (c);

(3) the vessel is under a demise charter to a person that certifies to the Secretary that the person is a citizen of the United States under section 50501 of this title for engaging in the coastwise trade; and

(4) the demise charter is for a period of at least 3 years or a shorter period as may be prescribed

by the Secretary.

(c) OWNERSHIP CERTIFICATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—A person meets the requirements of this subsection if the person transmits to the Secretary each year the certification required by paragraph (2) or (3) with respect to a vessel.

(2) INVESTMENT CERTIFICATION.—To meet the certification requirement of this paragraph, a person shall certify that it—

(A) is a leasing company, bank, or financial institution;

(B) owns, or holds the beneficial interest in, the vessel solely as a passive investment;

(C) does not operate any vessel for hire and is not an affiliate of any person that operates any vessel for hire; and

(D) is independent from, and not an affiliate of, any charterer of the vessel or any other person that has the right, directly or indirectly, to control or direct the movement or use of the vessel.

(3) CERTAIN TANK VESSELS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—To meet the certification requirement of this paragraph, a person shall certify that—

(i) the aggregate book value of the vessels owned by the person and United States affiliates of the person does not exceed 10 percent of the aggregate book value of all assets owned by the person and its United States affiliates;

(ii) not more than 10 percent of the aggregate revenues of the person and its United States affiliates is derived from the ownership, operation, or management of vessels;

(iii) at least 70 percent of the aggregate tonnage of all cargo carried by all vessels owned by the person and its United States affiliates and documented with a coastwise endorsement is qualified proprietary cargo;

(iv) any cargo other than qualified proprietary cargo carried by all vessels owned by the person and its United States affiliates and documented with a coastwise endorsement consists of oil, petroleum products, petrochemicals, or liquified natural gas;

(v) no vessel owned by the person or any of its United States affiliates and documented with a coastwise endorsement carries molten sulphur; and

(vi) the person owned one or more vessels documented under this section as of August 9, 2004.

(B) APPLICATION ONLY TO CERTAIN VESSELS.—A person may make a certification under this paragraph only with respect to—

(i) a tank vessel having a tonnage of at least 6,000 gross tons, as measured under section 14502 of this title (or an alternative tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title); or

(ii) a towing vessel associated with a non-self-propelled tank vessel that meets the requirements of clause (i), where both vessels function as a single self-propelled vessel.

(d) FILING OF DEMISE CHARTER.—The demise charter and any amendments to the charter shall be filed with the certification required by subsection (b)(3) or within 10 days after filing an amendment to the charter. The charter and amendments shall be made available to the public.

(e) CONTINUATION OF ENDORSEMENT AFTER TERMINATION OF CHARTER.—When a charter required by subsection (b)(3) is terminated for default by the charterer, the Secretary may continue the coastwise endorsement for not more than 6 months on terms and conditions the Secretary may prescribe.

(f) DEEMED OWNED BY CITIZENS.—A vessel satisfying the requirements of this section is deemed to be owned only by citizens of the United States under sections 12103 and 50501 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1501; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3541(b)(15), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2324; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(k)(1)(F), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1759.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12119(a)	46:12106(f)(4).	
12119(b)	46:12106(e)(1).	
12119(c)	46:12106(f)(1)–(3).	
12119(d)	46:12106(e)(2).	
12119(e)	46:12106(e)(3).	
12119(f)	46:12106(e)(4).	

In subsection (b), in paragraph (1), the words "satisfies the requirements for a coastwise endorsement, except for the ownership requirement otherwise applicable without regard to this section" are substituted for "otherwise eligible for documentation under this section" in 46 U.S.C. 12106(e)(1)(E) for clarity. Subparagraph (A) of 46 U.S.C. 12106(e)(1) is omitted as redundant to the general requirements in revised section 12112 on coastwise endorsements.

In subsection (c)(3), the words "documented with a coastwise endorsement" are substituted for "documented under this section" because former section 12106 is being divided into multiple sections.

Subsection (e) is substituted for "(3) Upon termination by a demise charterer required under paragraph (1)(C), the coastwise endorsement of the vessel may, in the sole discretion of the Secretary, be continued after the termination for default of the demise charter for a period not to exceed 6 months on such terms and conditions as the Secretary may prescribe" for clarity and to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12119, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 589; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(a)(4), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4750, originally derived from sections 65s and 881 of former Title 46, Shipping, related to list of documented vessels, prior to the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See section 12138 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 119–60 substituted "section 2101(28)" for "section 2101(26)".

2018—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 115–232 substituted "section 2101(26)" for "section 2101(20)".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

APPLICATION TO CERTAIN CERTIFICATES

Pub. L. 108–293, title VI, §608(c), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1057, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The amendments made by this section [amending provisions from which this section was derived], and any regulations published after February 4, 2004, with respect to coastwise endorsements, shall not apply to a certificate of documentation, or renewal thereof, endorsed with a coastwise endorsement for a vessel under section 12106(e) [now section 12119(b), (d)–(f)] of title 46, United States Code, or a replacement vessel of a similar size and function, that was issued prior to the date of enactment of this Act [Aug. 9, 2004] as long as the vessel is owned by the person named therein, or by a subsidiary or affiliate of that person, and the controlling interest in such owner has not been transferred to a person that was not an affiliate of such owner as of the date of enactment of this Act. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, however, the amendments made by this section shall apply, beginning 3 years after the date of enactment of this Act, with respect to offshore supply vessels (as defined in section 2101(19) [now 2101(27)] of title 46, United States Code, as that section was in effect on the date of enactment of this Act) with a certificate of documentation endorsed with a coastwise endorsement as of the date of enactment of this Act, and the Secretary of the Department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall revoke any such certificate if the

vessel does not by then meet the requirements of section 12106(e) of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this section.

"(2) REPLACEMENT VESSEL.—For the purposes of this subsection, 'replacement vessel' means—

"(A) a temporary replacement vessel for a period of not to exceed 180 days if the vessel described in paragraph (1) is unavailable due to an act of God or a marine casualty; or

"(B) a permanent replacement vessel if—

"(i) the vessel described in paragraph (1) is unavailable for more than 180 days due to an act of God or a marine casualty; or

"(ii) a contract to purchase or construct such replacement vessel is executed not later than December 31, 2004."

WAIVER OF QUALIFIED PROPRIETARY CARGO REQUIREMENT

Pub. L. 108–293, title VI, §608(d), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1057, provided that: "The Secretary of Transportation shall waive or reduce the qualified proprietary cargo requirement of section 12106(f)(3)(A)(iii) [now section 12119(c)(3)(A)(iii)] of title 46, United States Code, for a vessel if the person that owns the vessel (or, if the vessel is owned by a trust or similar arrangement, the beneficiary of the trust or similar arrangement) notifies the Secretary that circumstances beyond the direct control of such person or its affiliates prevent, or reasonably threaten to prevent, such person from satisfying such requirement, and the Secretary does not, with good cause, determine otherwise. The waiver or reduction shall apply during the period of time that such circumstances exist."

§12120. Liquified gas tankers

Notwithstanding any agreement with the United States Government, the Secretary may issue a certificate of documentation with a coastwise endorsement for a vessel to transport liquified natural gas or liquified petroleum gas to Puerto Rico from other ports in the United States, if the vessel—

(1) is a foreign built vessel that was built before October 19, 1996; or

(2) was documented under this chapter before that date, even if the vessel is placed under a foreign registry and subsequently redocumented under this chapter for operation under this section.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1504.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12120	46 App.:883 note.	Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §1120(f), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3978.

The words "Notwithstanding section 27 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 (46 App. U.S.C. 883), section 12106 of title 46, United States Code, section 506 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 App. U.S.C. 1156)" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "the Commonwealth of" are omitted as unnecessary and for consistency in the revised title.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12120, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 589; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(a)(4), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4750; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §401, Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1042; Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §308, July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 528, originally derived from section 65t of former Title 46, Shipping, related to reports, prior to the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See section 12139 of this title.

§12121. Small passenger vessels and uninspected passenger vessels

(a) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

(1) ELIGIBLE VESSEL.—The term "eligible vessel" means a vessel that—

(A) was built in the United States;

(B) was not built in the United States and is at least 3 years old; or

(C) if rebuilt, was rebuilt—

(i) in the United States; or

(ii) outside the United States at least 3 years before the certificate requested under subsection (b) would take effect.

(2) SMALL PASSENGER VESSEL; UNINSPECTED PASSENGER VESSEL; PASSENGER FOR HIRE.—The terms "small passenger vessel", "uninspected passenger vessel", and "passenger for hire" have the meaning given those terms in section 2101 of this title.

(b) ISSUANCE OF CERTIFICATE AND ENDORSEMENT.—Notwithstanding sections 12112, 12113, 12132, 55102, and 55103 of this title, the Secretary may issue a certificate of documentation with an appropriate endorsement for employment in the coastwise trade as a small passenger vessel or an uninspected passenger vessel in the case of an eligible vessel authorized to carry no more than 12 passengers for hire if the Secretary of Transportation, after notice and an opportunity for public comment, determines that the employment of the vessel in the coastwise trade will not adversely affect—

(1) United States vessel builders; or

(2) the coastwise trade business of any person that employs vessels built in the United States in that business.

(c) REVOCATION.—

(1) FOR FRAUD.—The Secretary shall revoke a certificate or endorsement issued under subsection (b) if the Secretary of Transportation, after notice and an opportunity for a hearing, determines that the certificate or endorsement was obtained by fraud.

(2) OTHER PROVISIONS NOT AFFECTED.—Paragraph (1) does not affect—

(A) the criminal prohibition on fraud and false statements in section 1001 of title 18; or

(B) any other authority of the Secretary to revoke a certificate or endorsement issued under subsection (b).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1504; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8312, Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4697.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12121	46:12106 note.	Pub. L. 105–383, title V, §§502–504, Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3445; Pub. L. 107–295, title II, §207(c)(2), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2097.

The definition of "Secretary" is omitted for consistency in the chapter.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 116–283, §8312(1), added subpars. (A) to (C) and struck out former subpars. (A) and (B) which read as follows:

"(A) was not built in the United States and is at least 3 years old; or

"(B) if rebuilt, was rebuilt outside the United States at least 3 years before the certificate requested under subsection (b) would take effect."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 116–283, §8312(2), inserted "12132," after "12113," in introductory provisions.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 12121, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 589, originally derived from section 65v(2) of former Title 46, Shipping, related to the authority of the Secretary to prescribe regulations to carry out this chapter, prior to being repealed by Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §§106(b)(5), 107(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4752, effective Jan. 1, 1989.

A prior section 12122, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 590; Pub. L. 99–307, §1(16), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 446; Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §301(a), (b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3916; Pub. L. 105–277, div. C, title II, §203(f), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–620; Pub. L. 106–31, title III, §3027(b), May 21, 1999, 113 Stat. 101; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §404(b), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1043, originally derived from sections 65n and 65u(a) of former Title 46, Shipping, related to penalties, prior to the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See section 12151 of this title.

A prior section 12123, added Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5213(a)(3), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5077, related to denial and revocation of endorsements, prior to the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See section 12152 of this title.

Another prior section 12123, added Pub. L. 102–388, title III, §348(a), Oct. 6, 1992, 106 Stat. 1554, related to the denial and revocation of trade or recreational endorsement upon failure of vessel's owner to pay assessment of civil penalty for violation of law, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §746(a)(1), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3943.

A prior section 12124, added Pub. L. 105–383, title IV, §401(a)(2), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3424, related to surrender of title and number, prior to the general amendment of this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304. See section 12106 of this title.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECT OF REPEAL

Pub. L. 107–295, title II, §207(c)(1), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2097, provided that: "Section 505 of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 1998 [Pub. L. 105–383] ([formerly] 46 U.S.C. 12106 note) is repealed. The repeal of section 505 shall have no effect on the validity of any certificate or endorsement issued under section 502 of that Act [now 46 U.S.C. 12121(b)]."

SUBCHAPTER III—MISCELLANEOUS

§12131. Command of documented vessels

(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsection (b), a documented vessel may be placed under the command only of a citizen or noncitizen national (as such term is described in section 308 of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1408)) of the United States.

(b) EXCEPTIONS.—Subsection (a) does not apply to—

(1) a vessel with only a recreational endorsement; or

(2) an unmanned barge operating outside of the territorial waters of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1505; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3529(a)(3), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 603; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(b)(2)(C), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1752.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12131	46:12110(d).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 119–60 inserted "or noncitizen national (as such term is described in section 308 of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1408))" after "citizen".

2008—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 110–181 substituted "command" for "commmand".

§12132. Loss of coastwise trade privileges

(a) SOLD FOREIGN OR PLACED UNDER FOREIGN REGISTRY.—A vessel of more than 200 gross tons (as measured under chapter 143 of this title), eligible to engage in the coastwise trade, and later sold foreign in whole or in part or placed under foreign registry may not thereafter engage in the coastwise trade.

(b) REBUILT OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES.—A vessel eligible to engage in the coastwise trade and later rebuilt outside the United States may not thereafter engage in the coastwise trade.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1505.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12132(a)	46 App.:883 (1st proviso).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §27 (1st proviso, 2d proviso less meaning of "rebuilt"), 41 Stat. 999; July 2, 1935, ch. 355, 49 Stat. 442; July 14, 1956, ch. 600, §1, 70 Stat. 544; Pub. L. 86–583, §1, July 5, 1960, 74 Stat. 321; Pub. L. 100–239, §6(c)(1), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1782; Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1120(e), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3978.
12132(b)	46 App.:883 (2d proviso less meaning of "rebuilt").	

In subsection (a), the words "eligible to engage in the coastwise trade" are substituted for "having at any time acquired the lawful right to engage in the coastwise trade, either by virtue of having been built in, or documented under the laws of the United States", and the words "thereafter engage" are substituted for "hereafter acquire the right to engage", to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (b), the words "eligible to engage in the coastwise trade" are substituted for "which has acquired the lawful right to engage in the coastwise trade, by virtue of having been built in or documented under the laws of the United States", and the words "thereafter engage" are substituted for "have the right thereafter to engage", to eliminate unnecessary words. See section 12101 for the meaning of "rebuilt in the United States".

§12133. Duty to carry certificate on vessel and allow examination

(a) DUTY TO CARRY.—The certificate of documentation of a vessel shall be carried on the vessel unless the vessel is exempt by regulation from carrying the certificate.

(b) AVAILABILITY.—The owner or individual in charge of a vessel required to carry its certificate of documentation shall make the certificate available for examination at the request of an officer enforcing the revenue laws or as otherwise required by law or regulation.

(c) CRIMINAL PENALTY.—A person willfully violating subsection (b) shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for not more than one year, or both.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1505.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12133	46:12103(e). 46 App.:277.	R.S. §4336; Aug. 5, 1935, ch. 438, title III, §312, 49 Stat. 528; Pub. L. 85–237, §2, Aug. 30, 1957, 71 Stat. 518; Pub. L. 103–182, title VI, §686(a)(5), Dec. 8, 1993, 107 Stat. 2220.

This section consolidates and clarifies the requirements contained in the source provisions. The specific civil penalties are omitted as unnecessary because of the general civil penalty in section 12151(a) of the revised title. See also 19 U.S.C. 1581.

§12134. Evidentiary uses of documentation

A certificate of documentation is—

(1) conclusive evidence of nationality for international purposes, but not in a proceeding conducted under the laws of the United States;

(2) conclusive evidence of qualification to engage in a specified trade; and

(3) not conclusive evidence of ownership in a proceeding in which ownership is in issue.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1506.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12134	46:12104.	

§12135. Invalidation of certificates of documentation

A certificate of documentation or an endorsement on the certificate is invalid if the vessel for which it is issued—

(1) no longer meets the requirements of this chapter and regulations prescribed under this chapter applicable to the certificate or endorsement; or

(2) is placed under the command of an individual not a citizen or noncitizen national (as such term is described in section 308 of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1408)) of the United States in violation of section 12131 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1506; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(b)(2)(D), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1752.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12135	46:12111(a).	

In paragraph (2), the words "except for a recreational endorsement" are omitted as unnecessary because a recreational endorsement does not permit a vessel to engage in a trade.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Par. (2). Pub. L. 119–60 inserted "or noncitizen national (as such term is described in section 308 of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1408))" after "citizen".

§12136. Surrender of certificates of documentation

(a) SURRENDER.—An invalid certificate of documentation, or a certificate with an invalid endorsement, shall be surrendered as provided by regulations prescribed by the Secretary.

(b) CONDITIONS FOR SURRENDER.—

(1) VESSELS OVER 1,000 TONS.—The Secretary may condition approval of the surrender of the certificate of documentation for a vessel over 1,000 gross tons.

(2) VESSELS COVERED BY MORTGAGE.—The Secretary may approve the surrender of the certificate of documentation of a vessel covered by a mortgage filed or recorded under section 31321 of this title only if the mortgagee consents.

(3) NOTICE OF LIEN.—The Secretary may not refuse to approve the surrender of the certificate of documentation for a vessel solely on the basis that a notice of a claim of a lien on the vessel has been recorded under section 31343(a) of this title.

(c) CONTINUED APPLICATION OF CERTAIN LAWS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding subsection (a), until the certificate of documentation is surrendered with the approval of the Secretary, a documented vessel is deemed to continue to be documented under this chapter for purposes of—

(A) chapter 313 of this title for an instrument filed or recorded before the date of invalidation and an assignment after that date;

(B) sections 56101 and 56102(a)(2) and chapter 563 of this title; and

(C) any other law of the United States identified by the Secretary by regulation as a law to which the Secretary applies this subsection.

(2) EXCEPTION.—This subsection does not apply when a vessel is forfeited or sold by order of a district court of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1506.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12136(a)	46:12111(b).	
12136(b)(1)	46:12111(d)(2).	
12136(b)(2)	46:12111(c)(3).	
12136(b)(3)	46:12111(d)(1).	
12136(c)(1)	46:12111(c)(1).	
12136(c)(2)	46:12111(c)(2).	

In subsection (a), the words "or a certificate with an invalid endorsement" are added for clarity.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

DOCUMENTATION SURRENDER AND INVALIDATION

Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §301(b), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1922, provided that: "Section 12111(c)(3) [now section 12136(b)(2)] of title 46, United States Code, does not apply to a mortgage that—

"(1) was filed or recorded before January 1, 1989; and

"(2) was not a preferred mortgage (as that term is defined in section 31301(6) of that title) on that date."

§12137. Recording of vessels built in the United States

The Secretary may provide for recording and certifying information about vessels built in the United States that the Secretary considers to be in the public interest.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1507.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12137	46:12117.	

§12138. List of documented vessels

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall publish periodically a list of all documented vessels and information about those vessels that the Secretary considers pertinent or useful. The list shall contain a notation clearly indicating all vessels classed by the American Bureau of Shipping.

(b) VESSELS FOR CABLE LAYING, MAINTENANCE, AND REPAIR.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall develop, maintain, and periodically update an inventory of vessels that are documented under this chapter, are at least 200 feet in length, and have the capability to lay, maintain, or repair a submarine cable, without regard to whether a particular vessel is classed as a cable ship or cable vessel.

(2) INFORMATION TO BE INCLUDED.—For each vessel listed in the inventory, the Secretary of Transportation shall include in the inventory—

(A) the name, length, beam, depth, and other distinguishing characteristics of the vessel;

(B) the abilities and limitations of the vessel with respect to laying, maintaining, and repairing a submarine cable; and

(C) the name and address of the person to whom inquiries regarding the vessel may be made.

(3) PUBLICATION.—The Secretary of Transportation shall publish in the Federal Register an updated inventory every 6 months.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1507.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12138(a)	46:12119.	
12138(b)	46:12119 note.	Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §403, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2114.

In subsection (b), the word "Secretary" is substituted for "Secretary of Transportation" for consistency in the chapter.

§12139. Reports

(a) IN GENERAL.—To ensure compliance with this chapter and laws governing the qualifications of vessels to engage in the coastwise trade and the fisheries, the Secretary may require owners, masters, charterers, and mortgagees of documented vessels to submit reports in any reasonable form and manner the Secretary may prescribe.

(b) VESSELS REBUILT OUTSIDE UNITED STATES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Under regulations prescribed by the Secretary, if a vessel exceeding the tonnage specified in paragraph (2) and documented or last documented under the laws of the United States is rebuilt outside the United States, the owner or master shall submit a report of the rebuilding to the Secretary.

(2) TONNAGE.—The tonnage referred to in paragraph (1) is—

(A) 500 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title; or

(B) an alternate tonnage as measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title.

(3) TIMING OF SUBMISSION.—If the rebuilding is completed in the United States, the report shall be submitted when the rebuilding is completed. If the rebuilding is completed outside the United States, the report shall be submitted when the vessel first arrives at a port in the customs territory of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1507; Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §308, July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 528; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3525(a)(2), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 600, 601.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12139(a)	46:12120.	
12139(b)	46 App.:883a (1st sentence).	July 14, 1956, ch. 600, §2 (1st sentence), 70 Stat. 544; Pub. L. 86–583, §2, July 5, 1960, 74 Stat. 321; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §707, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3934.

In subsection (b)(1), the word "Secretary" is substituted for "Secretary of the Treasury", thereby incorporating the definition of "Secretary" in section 2101 of title 46. The functions of the Secretary of the Treasury relating to the Coast Guard previously were transferred to the Secretary of Transportation by section 6(b) of the Department of Transportation Act (Pub. L. 89–670, Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 938). The Coast Guard and the functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating to the Coast Guard were again transferred to the Department of Homeland Security by section 888(b) of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–296, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2135). The words "rebuilt outside the United States" are substituted for "and any part of the rebuilding, including the construction of major components of the hull and superstructure of the vessel, is not effected within the United States, its Territories (not including trust territories) or its possessions" because of the definition of "rebuilt" in section 12101, and the definition of "United States" in chapter 1, of the revised title.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–241, §308. See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(a)(2), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–241, §308, into this section by substituting "charterers, and mortgagees" for "and charterers". See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–241, §308, which directed the amendment of former section 12120 of this title from which subsec. (a) of this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsec. (a) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§12140. Investigations by Secretary

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may conduct investigations and inspections regarding

compliance with this chapter and regulations prescribed under this chapter.

(b) AUTHORITY TO OBTAIN EVIDENCE.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—For the purposes of any investigation conducted under this section, the Secretary may issue a subpoena to require the attendance of a witness or the production of documents or other evidence relevant to the matter under investigation if—

(A) before the issuance of the subpoena, the Secretary requests a determination by the Attorney General as to whether the subpoena—

(i) is reasonable; and

(ii) will interfere with a criminal investigation; and

(B) the Attorney General—

(i) determines that the subpoena is reasonable and will not interfere with a criminal investigation; or

(ii) fails to make a determination with respect to the subpoena before the date that is 30 days after the date on which the Secretary makes a request under subparagraph (A) with respect to the subpoena.

(2) ENFORCEMENT.—In the case of a refusal to obey a subpoena issued to any person under this section, the Secretary may invoke the aid of the appropriate district court of the United States to compel compliance.

(Added Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §308(a), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1566.)

SUBCHAPTER IV—PENALTIES

§12151. Penalties

(a) IN GENERAL.—

(1) CIVIL PENALTIES.—Except as provided in paragraph (2), a person that violates this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $15,000. Each day of a continuing violation is a separate violation.

(2) ACTIVITIES INVOLVING MOBILE OFFSHORE DRILLING UNITS.—A person that violates section 12111(d) or a regulation prescribed under that section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty in an amount that is $25,000 or twice the charter rate of the vessel involved in the violation (as determined by the Secretary), whichever is greater. Each day of a continuing violation is a separate violation.

(b) SEIZURE AND FORFEITURE OF VESSELS.—A vessel and its equipment are liable to seizure by and forfeiture to the Government if—

(1) the owner of the vessel or the representative or agent of the owner knowingly falsifies or conceals a material fact, or knowingly makes a false statement or representation, about the documentation of the vessel or in applying for documentation of the vessel;

(2) a certificate of documentation is knowingly and fraudulently used for the vessel;

(3) the vessel is operated after its endorsement has been denied or revoked under section 12152 of this title;

(4) the vessel is employed in a trade without an appropriate endorsement;

(5) the vessel has only a recreational endorsement and is operated other than for pleasure;

(6) the vessel is a documented vessel and is placed under the command of a person not a citizen of the United States, except as authorized by section 12131(b) of this title; or

(7) the vessel is rebuilt outside the United States and a report of the rebuilding is not submitted as required by section 12139(b) of this title.

(c) ENGAGING IN FISHING AFTER FALSIFYING ELIGIBILITY.—In addition to other penalties under this section, the owner of a documented vessel for which a fishery endorsement has been issued is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $100,000 for each day the vessel engages in fishing (as defined in section 3 of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1802)) within the exclusive economic zone, if the owner or the representative or agent of the owner knowingly falsified or concealed a material fact, or knowingly made a false statement or representation, about the eligibility of the vessel under section 12113(c) or (d) of this title in applying for or applying to renew the fishery endorsement.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1508; Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §309, Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1566.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12151(a)	46:12122(a).	
12151(b)	46:12122(b).	
	46 App.:14 (last proviso).	R.S. §4136 (last proviso); Feb. 24, 1915, ch. 57, 38 Stat. 812; Pub. L. 103–182, title VI, §686(a)(4), Dec. 8, 1993, 107 Stat. 2220.
	46 App.:883a (2d, last sentences).	July 14, 1956, ch. 600, §2 (2d, last sentences), 70 Stat. 544; Pub. L. 86–583, §2, July 5, 1960, 74 Stat. 321.
12151(c)	46:12122(c).	

In subsection (b), in restating 46 App. U.S.C. 883a (2d, last sentences), the penalty of $200 for the owner and master of the vessel is omitted because subsection (a) provides a general civil penalty for violation of this chapter. The authority to remit or mitigate a penalty under section 2107(b) is omitted because section 2107(b) applies to subtitle II and this section is in subtitle II.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2012—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 112–213 designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted par. (1) heading, substituted "Except as provided in paragraph (2), a person that violates" for "A person that violates" and "$15,000" for "$10,000", and added par. (2).

§12152. Denial or revocation of endorsement for non-payment of civil penalty

If the owner of a vessel fails to pay a civil penalty imposed by the Secretary, the Secretary may deny the issuance or renewal of an endorsement, or revoke the endorsement, on a certificate of documentation issued for the vessel under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §5, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1508.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
12152	46:12123.	

CHAPTER 123—NUMBERING UNDOCUMENTED VESSELS

Sec.

12301. Numbering vessels.
12302. Standard numbering system.
12303. Exemption from numbering requirements.
12304. Certificates of numbers.
12305. Displaying numbers.
12306. Safety certificates.
12307. Regulations on numbering and fees.
12308. Providing vessel numbering and registration information.
12309. Penalties.

§12301. Numbering vessels

(a) An undocumented vessel equipped with propulsion machinery of any kind shall have a number issued by the proper issuing authority in the State in which the vessel principally is operated.

(b) The Secretary may require an undocumented barge of more than 100 gross tons operating on the navigable waters of the United States to be numbered.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 590; Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5305, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5083; Pub. L. 115–282, title V, §513, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4276.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
12301	46:1466

Section 12301 requires that undocumented vessels that are propelled by machinery be issued an identification number by the proper issuing authority in the State in which the vessel is primarily operated.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 115–282 substituted "may" for "shall" and inserted "of" after "barge".

1992—Pub. L. 102–587 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

§12302. Standard numbering system

(a) The Secretary shall prescribe by regulation a standard numbering system for vessels to which this chapter applies. On application by a State, the Secretary shall approve a State numbering system that is consistent with the standard numbering system. In carrying out its numbering system, a State shall adopt any definitions of relevant terms prescribed by regulations of the Secretary.

(b) A State with an approved numbering system is the issuing authority within the meaning of this chapter. The Secretary is the issuing authority in a State in which a State numbering system has not been approved.

(c) When a vessel is numbered in a State, it is deemed in compliance with the numbering system of a State in which it temporarily is operated.

(d) When a vessel is removed to a new State of principal operation, the issuing authority of that State shall recognize the validity of the number issued by the original State for 60 days.

(e) If a State has a numbering system approved after the Secretary issues a number, the State shall recognize the validity of the number issued by the Secretary for one year.

(f) When the Secretary decides that a State numbering system is not being carried out consistent

with the standard numbering system or the State has changed the system without the Secretary's approval, the Secretary may withdraw approval after giving notice to the State, in writing, stating the reasons for the withdrawal.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 590.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
12302	46:1467

Section 12302 provides for a standard numbering system for undocumented vessels and for approval of State numbering systems by the Secretary. It also requires that a State, when implementing its numbering system, adopt any relevant terms required by the Secretary. In States without approved numbering systems, the Federal Government issues the numbers. This section also provides for the operation of a vessel in a State other than the one in which it was numbered.

§12303. Exemption from numbering requirements

(a) When the Secretary is the authority issuing a number under this chapter, the Secretary may exempt a vessel or class of vessels from the numbering requirements of this chapter under conditions the Secretary may prescribe.

(b) When a State is the issuing authority, it may exempt from the numbering requirements of this chapter a vessel or class of vessels exempted under subsection (a) of this section or otherwise as permitted by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 591.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
12303	46:1468

Section 12303 permits the Secretary and any State, when it is the issuing authority, to exempt vessels from the numbering requirements.

§12304. Certificates of numbers

(a) A certificate of number is granted for a number issued under this chapter. The certificate shall be at all times available for inspection on the vessel for which issued when the vessel is in operation, and may be in hard copy or digital form. Any certificate issued in hard copy under this section shall be pocketsized. The certificate shall be valid for not more than 3 years. The certificate of number for a vessel less than 26 feet in length and leased or rented to another for the latter's noncommercial operation of less than 7 days may be retained on shore by the vessel's owner or representative at the place from which the vessel departs or returns to the possession of the owner or the owner's representative. A vessel that does not have the certificate of number on board shall be identified when in operation, and comply with requirements, as the issuing authority prescribes.

(b) The owner of a vessel numbered under this chapter shall provide—

(1) the issuing authority notice of the transfer of any part of the owner's interest in the vessel or of the destruction or abandonment of the vessel, within a reasonable time after the transfer, destruction, or abandonment; and

(2) notice of a change of address within a reasonable time of the change, as prescribed by regulation.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 591; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11506, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4136.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
12304	46:1469

Section 12304 describes a certificate of number and stipulates when it must be carried on board a vessel. It also requires that the number issuing authority be notified when a boat is sold, transferred, destroyed, or abandoned, or when the owner's address changes.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 117–263 struck out "shall be pocketsized," after "this chapter. The certificate" and inserted "in hard copy or digital form. Any certificate issued in hard copy under this section shall be pocketsized. The certificate shall be" after "operation, and may be".

§12305. Displaying numbers

A number required by this chapter shall be painted on, or attached to, each side of the forward half of the vessel for which it was issued, and shall be the size, color, and type as may be prescribed by the Secretary. No other number may be carried on the forward half of the vessel.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 591.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
12305	46:1470

Section 12305 describes the manner in which a number must be displayed on a vessel, and prohibits the display of other numbers on the forward half of the vessel.

§12306. Safety certificates

When a State is the authority issuing a number under this chapter, it may require that the individual in charge of a numbered vessel have a valid safety certificate issued under conditions set by the issuing authority, except when the vessel is subject to manning requirements under part F of this subtitle.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 591.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
12306	46:1471

Section 12306 authorizes a State that is an issuing authority to require a numbered vessel operator to hold a valid safety certificate, unless the vessel is subject to manning requirements under part F of this subtitle.

§12307. Regulations on numbering and fees

The authority issuing a number under this chapter may prescribe regulations and establish fees to carry out the intent of this chapter. The fees shall apply equally to residents and nonresidents of the State. A State issuing authority may impose only conditions for vessel numbering that are—

(1) prescribed by this chapter or regulations of the Secretary about the standard numbering system; or

(2) related to proof of payment of State or local taxes.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 591.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
12307	46:1472

Section 12307 provides the States or the Secretary with the authority to prescribe regulations and establish fees for carrying out the requirements of this chapter. The fee must apply equally to residents and nonresidents of the State in which the vessel is numbered.

§12308. Providing vessel numbering and registration information

A person may request from an authority issuing a number under this chapter the numbering and registration information of a vessel that is retrievable from vessel numbering system records of the issuing authority. When the issuing authority is satisfied that the request is reasonable and related to a boating safety purpose, the information shall be provided on paying the cost of retrieving and providing the information requested.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 592.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
12308	46:1473

Section 12308 requires the number issuing authority to supply for a fee, numbering and registration information to any person, upon request, if the request is reasonable and related to boating safety.

§12309. Penalties

(a) A person willfully violating this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter shall be fined not more than $5,000, imprisoned for not more than one year, or both.

(b) A person violating this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $1,000. If the violation involves the operation of a vessel, the vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(c) When a civil penalty of not more than $200 has been assessed under this chapter, the Secretary may refer the matter of collection of the penalty directly to the United States magistrate judge of the jurisdiction in which the person liable may be found for collection procedures under supervision of the district court and under an order issued by the court delegating this authority under section 636(b) of title 28.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 592; Pub. L. 101–650, title III, §321, Dec. 1, 1990, 104 Stat. 5117.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
12309(a)	46:1483
12309(b)	46:1484(b)
12309(c)	46:1484(d)

Section 12309 provides for civil and criminal penalties for violation of the vessel numbering provisions in this title.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

CHANGE OF NAME

"United States magistrate judge" substituted for "United States magistrate" in subsec. (c) pursuant to section 321 of Pub. L. 101–650, set out as a note under section 631 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

CHAPTER 125—VESSEL IDENTIFICATION SYSTEM

Sec.
12501. Establishment of a vessel identification system.
12502. Identification numbers, signal letters, and markings.
12503. Information available to the system.
12504. Information available from the system.
12505. Fees.
12506. Delegation of authority.
12507. Penalties.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Section 101 of H.R. 3105, as amended, adds a new chapter 125 to title 46, United States Code, to establish a vessel identification system for all vessels of the United States. This would include vessels documented under chapter 121 of title 46, numbered under chapter 123 of that title, or titled under the law of a State. This new chapter consists of new sections 12501–12507 as follows.

§12501. Establishment of a vessel identification system

(a) The Secretary of Transportation shall establish a vessel identification system to make available information under section 12503 of this title for use by the public for law enforcement and other purposes relating to—

(1) the ownership of documented vessels;

(2) the ownership of vessels numbered under chapter 123 of this title; and

(3) the ownership of vessels titled under the law of a State.

(b) The vessel identification system shall include information prescribed by the Secretary including—

(1) identifying a vessel;

(2) identifying the owner of the vessel, including—

(A) the owner's social security number or, if that number is not available, other means of identification acceptable to the Secretary; or

(B) for an owner other than an individual—

(i) the owner's taxpayer identification number; or

(ii) if the owner does not have a taxpayer identification number, the social security number of an individual who is a corporate officer, general partner, or individual trustee of the owner and who signed the application for documentation or numbering for the vessel;

(3) identifying the State in which it is titled or numbered;
(4) indicating whether the vessel is numbered or titled, or both;
(5) if titled in a State, indicating where evidence of a lien or other security interest may be found against the vessel in that State; and
(6) information assisting law enforcement officials.

(c) The Secretary may maintain information under this chapter in connection with any other information system maintained by the Secretary.

(Added Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §101(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4735; amended Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §302(1), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1922; Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §603(10), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2993.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 12501

Subsection (a) of section 12501 requires the Secretary of Transportation to establish a system of information concerning vessels of the United States for law enforcement and other purposes. The Secretary is required to make available information from the system relating to the ownership of vessels documented under chapter 121 of title 46, numbered under chapter 123 of that title, and titled under the law of a State. The information is available under section 12503 for use by the public, similarly under the Ship Mortgage Act, 1920.

Subsection (b) lists the vessel identification information which is required to be maintained by the Secretary. The Secretary has the authority to prescribe other information to be maintained in addition to the items listed. For example, the Secretary may identify vessels issued fisheries permits by the Department of Commerce. The Secretary may also monitor transactions involving vessels that require approval by the Secretary under section 9 of the Shipping Act, 1916 (46 App. U.S.C. 808) before interest or control in the vessel may be transferred to a noncitizen.

Subsection (c) clarifies that the Secretary has the flexibility to maintain this system in connection with any other information system maintained by the Secretary, including the Federal Aviation Administration system containing aircraft ownership information. This would also permit the Secretary to combine various systems and data bases maintained by the Secretary such as documentation and numbering of vessels, and safety, casualty, and law enforcement statistics.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b)(2)(A). Pub. L. 101–595 amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows: "the owner's social security number; or".

1989—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 101–225 amended par. (2) generally, adding subpars. (A) and (B).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

RECORDS AND OTHER INFORMATION; ESTABLISHMENT, CENTRALIZATION AND COMPUTERIZATION

Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(e)(2), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4751, provided that: "To establish, centralize, and computerize records and other information maintained under chapters 121, 125, and 313 of title 46, United States Code, from the effective date of this title [Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title] through September 30, 1993, the Secretary of Transportation shall spend (out of amounts appropriated for the Department of Transportation under an appropriations law) not less than an amount that is equal to the amounts estimated to be—

"(A) collected under section 9701 of title 31, United States Code, for fees paid for services and things

of value provided under chapter 313 of title 46, United States Code (as enacted by section 101 of this Act), and for documenting vessels under chapter 121 of title 46; and

"(B) transferred to or collected by the Secretary under chapter 125 of title 46, United States Code (as enacted by section 101 of this Act)."

PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT; RECRUITMENT, COMPENSATION, TRAINING, PURCHASING, OR DEPLOYMENT

Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(g), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4751, provided that: "Nothing in this section [amending sections 2101, 2110, 12102, 12103, 12105, 12110, 12112, 12117, 12119, and 12120 of this title and sections 808, 1242, and 1271 of the Appendix to this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 12501, 12502, and 12505 of this title] requires the Coast Guard to recruit, compensate, train, purchase, or deploy any personnel or equipment to carry out chapter 125 of title 46, United States Code (as enacted by section 101 of this Act), except to the extent that appropriations are made available in an appropriations law for the Department of Transportation."

[For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.]

§12502. Identification numbers, signal letters, and markings

(a) For the identification of a vessel of the United States, the Secretary of Transportation—

(1) shall maintain a unique numbering system and assign a number to each vessel of the United States;

(2) may maintain a system of signal letters for a documented vessel;

(3) shall record a name selected by the owner of a documented vessel approved by the Secretary as the vessel's name of record; and

(4) may establish other identification markings.

(b) The manufacturer or owner of a vessel shall affix to the vessel and maintain in the manner prescribed by the Secretary the number assigned and any other markings the Secretary may require.

(c) Once a number is assigned under this section, it may not be used by another vessel.

(d) Once a documented vessel's name is established, the name may not be changed without the approval of the Secretary.

(e) A person may not tamper with or falsify a number or other marking required under this section.

(Added Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §101(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4736.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 12502

Subsection (a) of this section requires the Secretary to maintain a unique numbering system for vessels of the United States. The Secretary may use existing vessel numbering systems such as the hull identification number for this purpose, but must ensure that no two existing vessels of the United States have the same number. The Secretary should consider and propose the use of a 17-digit number to implement this requirement. This subsection also requires the Secretary to maintain a system of signal letters and to record vessel names for documented vessels. The Secretary is authorized to establish other vessel identification markings for vessels of the United States, such as hailing ports.

Subsections (b), (c), (d), and (e) contain other requirements and restrictions concerning vessel identification markings.

This section consolidates the requirements of sections 12114, 12115, 12116, and 12118 of title 46. For this reason, section 106 of this bill repeals those sections.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

VESSELS NOT HAVING UNIQUE NUMBER; APPLICABILITY OF PROVISIONS FOR NUMBER ASSIGNMENT

Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(f), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4751, provided that: "Section 12502(a)(1) of title 46, United States Code (as enacted by section 101 of this Act), applies to a vessel of the United States that does not have a unique number as prescribed by the Secretary of Transportation under that section until the earlier of the following:

"(1) the next time the vessel is documented, numbered, or titled.

"(2) January 1, 1995."

§12503. Information available to the system

(a) Except as provided in subsections (b) and (c) of this section, a State or a State's delegate approved by the Secretary of Transportation may make information available to the Secretary if, in a manner and form prescribed by the Secretary, the State—

(1) identifies the vessel;

(2) identifies the owner of the vessel, including by—

(A) the owner's social security number or, if that number is not available, other means of identification acceptable to the Secretary; or

(B) for an owner other than an individual—

(i) the owner's taxpayer identification number; or

(ii) if the owner does not have a taxpayer identification number, the social security number of an individual who is a corporate officer, general partner, or individual trustee of the owner and who signed the application for documentation or numbering for the vessel;

(3) identifies the State in which it is titled or numbered;

(4) indicates whether the vessel is numbered or titled, or both;

(5) if titled in a State, indicates where evidence of a lien or other security interest may be found against the vessel in that State;

(6) includes information to assist law enforcement; and

(7) includes other information agreed to by the Secretary and the State.

(b) Except as provided in subsection (c) of this section, the Secretary also may accept information under conditions and in a manner and form prescribed by the Secretary.

(c) The Secretary shall—

(1) retain information on a vessel with a preferred mortgage under section 31322(d) of this title that is no longer titled in a State making information available to the Secretary under this chapter until the mortgage is discharged or the vessel is sold; and

(2) accept information under section 31321(h) of this title only if that information cannot be provided to a State.

(Added Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §101(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4736; amended Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §302(2), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1922; Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §603(10), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2993; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(24), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1704.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 12503

Subsection (a) of section 12503 allows a State or approved State delegee to make vessel identification information available to the Secretary. Participation in the system is voluntary on the part of a State. A benefit to boat purchasers and financiers in States with approved titling systems participating in this system is that vessel mortgages or financing instruments made in those States are deemed to be preferred mortgages under chapter 313 of title 46, United States Code (as codified and enacted by this Act).

Under subsection (a), the Secretary may prescribe the manner and form in which the information is made

available by the States. In this regard, the Committee intends that the Secretary employ the most efficient, up-to-date computer technology in maintaining information made available from the States to avoid duplication of effort in maintaining information and to reduce the costs of the system. In addition to the vessel identification information made available by States under paragraphs (1)–(6), the Secretary and a State may agree that the State make available other information. For example, the purpose for which a vessel is routinely used would be valuable information for the system.

The Committee intends that most of the information in the system will become available directly and exclusively from the States to the greatest extent possible. However, under subsection (b), the Secretary may accept information from others under conditions and in a manner and form prescribed by the Secretary. Thus, if the Secretary discovers a valuable and reliable source of data that can be conveniently made available to the system, the Secretary can approve it.

Under paragraph (c)(1), the Secretary must maintain information on a State-titled vessel with a preferred mortgage that moves to a nonparticipating, nontitle State, until the mortgage is discharged or the vessel is sold. Under paragraph (c)(2), the Secretary must accept information submitted under section 31321 of title 46 (as enacted by this Act) concerning a discharge of a preferred mortgage on a vessel title under State law. This would be necessary if the vessel moves to a nonparticipating State, and information on that vessel would not be provided to the system by that State. This subsection will allow the Secretary to keep the vessel information system current on these matters and purge files no longer required to be maintained.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–304 substituted "delegate" for "delegee" in introductory provisions.

1990—Subsec. (a)(2)(A). Pub. L. 101–595 amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows: "the owner's social security number; or".

1989—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 101–225 amended par. (2) generally, adding subpars. (A) and (B).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§12504. Information available from the system

For law enforcement or other purposes and under conditions prescribed by the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary—

(1) shall make available information in the vessel identification system to a State making information available under section 12503(a) of this title; and

(2) may make available information in the vessel identification system to others.

(Added Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §101(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4736; amended Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §302(3), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1923.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 12504

This section requires that the Secretary make available information maintained in the vessel identification system to a State participating in the system for law enforcement or other purposes. The Secretary may make available information in the system to others, under conditions the Secretary may prescribe. At first, the Secretary may elect to deal only with the States. However, the Committee firmly expects that information will be made available through computer terminals in satellite offices or direct computer access by modem. In this manner, boating organizations or financial or documentation services could retrieve data without paper transactions for a fee.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1989—Pub. L. 101–225 substituted "Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary" for "Secretary, the Secretary of Transportation".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§12505. Fees

(a) The Secretary of Transportation may charge a fee under section 9701 of title 31 for providing information to or requesting information from the vessel identification system, except to—

(1) an agency; or

(2) a State making information available to the Secretary under section 12503(a) of this title.

(b) The Secretary shall deposit amounts transferred or collected under this section in the general fund of the Treasury as proprietary receipts of the Secretary and ascribed to the vessel identification system.

(Added Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §101(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4737; amended Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §603(11), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2993.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 12505

This section contains the authority for the Secretary to charge a fee under the user charge law, 31 U.S.C. 9701, for providing information to or requesting information from the vessel identification system. Fees may not be charged under this subsection to an agency or a State that is participating in the vessel identification system maintained by the Secretary.

Under subsection (b) of this section, the Secretary may collect an annual fee of not more than $1.00 from the owner of a vessel of the United States under 31 U.S.C. 9701 for the vessel identification system. Since vessel owners will benefit from the vessel identification system, such as from documentation of ownership data and stolen vessel tracking, this fee is designed as a maintenance charge to owners for this service. The collection of the annual fee may be delayed by the Secretary, and an agency, State, or person may be employed to collect the fee under subsection (c). The Committee expects that the Secretary will make agreements with States to collect this fee at the time of vessel registrations. The term of these registrations varies from one to three years as permitted by chapter 123 of title 46.

Under subsection (d) of this section, if a State is employed to collect the fee, the State may retain one-half of the amounts collected, and must transfer the remainder to the Secretary. The amounts retained by a State may be used to cover the costs of making vessel identification information available to the Secretary. This includes upgrading or establishing titling systems as well as making improvements and other changes to vessel numbering systems to make information available. Because States are allowed to make improvements to their vessel titling and numbering systems with the amounts retained under this section, the costs of those programs may decrease. This could result in a corresponding decrease in State numbering fees and offset vessel identification system fees paid by vessel owners.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101–595 redesignated subsec. (e) as (b) and struck out former subsec. (b) which read as follows: "In addition to any fee under subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary may collect an annual fee of not more than $1.00 from the owner of each vessel of the United States under section 9701 of title 31 for maintaining the vessel identification system. However, the collection of that fee may be delayed under conditions prescribed by the Secretary."

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 101–595 struck out subsecs. (c) and (d) which read as follows:

"(c) The Secretary may employ any agency, State, or person to collect the fee established under subsection (b) of this section.

"(d) If a State is employed to collect a fee under subsection (c) of this section, the State may retain one-half of the amounts collected. A State shall transfer one-half of the amounts collected under subsection (b) of this section to the Secretary."

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101–595 redesignated subsec. (e) as (b).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 101–595 struck out subsec. (f) which read as follows: "The amounts retained by a State under this section may be used to make information available to the Secretary and to pay incremental administrative costs."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

ANNUAL FEE PRIOR TO JAN. 1, 1992

Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(e)(1), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4751, provided that: "Before January 1, 1992, the annual fee under section 12505 of title 46, United States Code (as enacted by section 101 of this Act), is $1.00."

§12506. Delegation of authority

The Secretary of Transportation may delegate to an agency, a State, or a qualified person the authority to—

(1) establish and maintain the vessel identification system; and

(2) charge fees under section 12505 of this title to a person making information available to or requesting information from the vessel identification system.

(Added Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §101(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4737.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 12506

This section allows the Secretary to delegate the authority to establish and maintain the vessel identification system to an agency, a State, or a qualified person. The Secretary may also delegate the authority to charge fees under section 12505 for requesting information from or making information available to the vessel identification system.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§12507. Penalties

(a) A person shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for not more than 2 years, or both, if the person with the intent to defraud—

(1) provides false information to the Secretary of Transportation or a State issuing authority regarding the identification of a vessel under this chapter; or

(2) tampers with, removes, or falsifies the unique vessel identification number assigned to a vessel under section 12502 of this title.

(b) A person is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 if the person—

(1) provides false information to the Secretary or a State issuing authority regarding the identification of a vessel under this chapter;

(2) violates section 12502 of this title; or

(3) fails to comply with requirements prescribed by the Secretary under section 12505 of this title.

(c) A vessel involved in a violation of this chapter, or regulation under this chapter, and its equipment, may be seized by, and forfeited to, the Government.

(d) If a person, not an individual, is involved in a violation of this chapter, the president or chief executive of the person also is subject to any penalty provided under this section.

(Added Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §101(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4737.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 12507

This section establishes criminal and civil penalties for certain violations of chapter 125 of title 46 (as enacted by this Act).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

PART I—STATE BOATING SAFETY PROGRAMS

CHAPTER 131—RECREATIONAL BOATING SAFETY

Sec.
13101. Definitions.
13102. State recreational boating safety programs.
13103. Program acceptance.
13104. Allocations.
13105. Availability of allocations.
13106. Computation decisions about State amounts expended.
13107. Authorization of appropriations.
13108. Computing amounts allocated to States and State records requirements.
13109. Consultation, cooperation, and regulation.
[13110. Repealed.]

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

This Chapter establishes the recreational boating safety and facility program administered by the Coast Guard. The general purpose is to encourage State participation in boating safety education and enforcement activities.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(c)(4)(A), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4289, struck out item 13110 "National Boating Safety Advisory Council".

2006—Pub. L. 109–304, §16(b)(3), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1705, added item 13101 and redesignated former items 13101 to 13106 as 13102 to 13107, respectively.

1998—Pub. L. 105–178, title VII, §7405(c)(2), June 9, 1998, 112 Stat. 488, substituted "appropriations" for "contract spending" in item 13106.

1984—Pub. L. 98–369, div. A, title X, §1016(c)(2), July 18, 1984, 98 Stat. 1020, struck out item 13107 "National Recreational Boating Safety and Facilities Improvement Fund".

§13101. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) ELIGIBLE STATE.—The term "eligible State" means a State that has a State recreational boating safety program accepted by the Secretary.

(2) STATE RECREATIONAL BOATING SAFETY PROGRAM.—The term "State recreational boating safety program" means education, assistance, and enforcement activities conducted for maritime casualty prevention, reduction, and reporting for recreational boating.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §16(b)(2), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1705.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Section 16 of the bill [H.R. 1442, which became Pub. L. 109–304] moves the definitions relating to the recreational boating safety program from section 2102(a)(1) and (3) to chapter 131 because the terms only appear in chapter 131.

Section 16 of the bill also eliminates the special definitions of "State" and "United States" in section 2102(a)(2) as including the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands because the Trust Territory has been terminated. See the definitions of "State" and "United States" in section 2101, which are being moved to chapter 1 and being made applicable title-wide. Those definitions already include the Northern Mariana Islands, the only component of the former Trust Territory still under United States sovereignty.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 13101 was renumbered section 13102 of this title.

§13102. State recreational boating safety programs

(a) To encourage greater State participation and uniformity in boating safety efforts, and particularly to permit the States to assume the greater share of boating safety education, assistance, and enforcement activities, the Secretary shall carry out a national recreational boating safety program. Under this program, the Secretary shall make contracts with, and allocate and distribute amounts to, eligible States to assist them in developing, carrying out, and financing State recreational boating safety programs.

(b) The Secretary shall establish guidelines and standards for the program. In doing so, the Secretary—

(1) shall consider, among other things, factors affecting recreational boating safety by contributing to overcrowding and congestion of waterways, such as the increasing number of recreational vessels operating on those waterways and their geographic distribution, the availability and geographic distribution of recreational boating facilities in and among applying States, and State marine casualty and fatality statistics for recreational vessels;

(2) shall consult with the Secretary of the Interior to minimize duplication with the purposes and expenditures of chapter 2003 of title 54, United States Code,[1] the Federal Aid in Sport Fish Restoration Act of 1950 (16 U.S.C. 777–777k), and with the guidelines developed under those Acts; and

(3) shall maintain environmental standards consistent with the Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972 (16 U.S.C. 1451–1464) and other laws and policies of the United States intended to safeguard the ecological and esthetic quality of the waters and wetlands of the United States.

(c) A State whose recreational boating safety program has been approved by the Secretary is eligible for allocation and distribution of amounts under this chapter to assist that State in

developing, carrying out, and financing its program. Matching amounts shall be allocated and distributed among eligible States by the Secretary as provided by section 13104 of this title.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 592, §13101; Pub. L. 98–369, div. A, title X, §1011(b), July 18, 1984, 98 Stat. 1013; Pub. L. 101–595, title III, §312(a), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2987; renumbered §13102 and amended Pub. L. 109–304, §16(b)(1), (c)(3), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1705, 1706; Pub. L. 113–287, §5(n), Dec. 19, 2014, 128 Stat. 3272.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
13101	46:1474

Section 13101(a) authorizes the Secretary to make contracts with, and allocate amounts to eligible States to assist them in carrying out their recreational boating safety and facilities improvement programs.

Subsection (b) requires the Secretary to establish guidelines and standards for the program, and specifies specific conditions the Secretary must consider, requires consultation with the Secretary of the Interior, and to maintain environmental standards consistent with the Coastal Zone Management Act.

Subsection (c) makes the States who meet the standards prescribed by the Secretary eligible for the amounts authorized under this chapter.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Aid in Sport Fish Restoration Act of 1950, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is act Aug. 9, 1950, ch. 658, 64 Stat. 430, also known as the Dingell-Johnson Sport Fish Restoration Act, the Federal Aid in Fish Restoration Act, and the Fish Restoration and Management Projects Act, which is classified generally to chapter 10B (§777 et seq.) of Title 16. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 777 of Title 16 and Tables.

The Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972, referred to in subsec. (b)(3), is title III of Pub. L. 89–454 as added by Pub. L. 92–583, Oct. 27, 1972, 86 Stat. 1280, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 33 (§1451 et seq.) of Title 16. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1451 of Title 16 and Tables.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 13102 was renumbered section 13103 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 113–287, §5(n), substituted "chapter 2003 of title 54, United States Code," for "the Land and Water Conservation Fund Act of 1965 (16 U.S.C. 460l–4—460l–11)".

2006—Pub. L. 109–304, §16(b)(1), renumbered section 13101 of this title as this section.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 109–304, §16(c)(3), substituted "section 13104" for "section 13103".

1990—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 101–595 substituted "the Federal Aid in Sport Fish Restoration Act of 1950 (16 U.S.C. 777–777k), and with the guidelines developed under those Acts; and" for "and with the guidelines developed under that Act; and".

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98–369, §1011(b), struck out "and facility improvement" after "in boating safety", struck out "and facilities improvement" in two places after "recreational boating safety", and substituted "shall" for "may" in second sentence.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98–369, §1011(b)(1)(B), struck out "and facilities improvement" after "recreational boating safety".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 98–369, div. A, title X, subtitle B, part I, subpart A (§§1010–1013), §1013, July 18, 1984, 98 Stat. 1014, provided that: "The amendments made by this subpart [amending this section and sections 2102, 13102,

13103, 13105, 13106, 13108, and 13109 of this title and enacting a provision set out as a note under this section] shall take effect on October 1, 1984, and shall apply with respect to fiscal years beginning after September 30, 1984."

SURVEY OF FUEL USE BY RECREATIONAL VESSELS

Pub. L. 100–448, §6(d), Sept. 28, 1988, 102 Stat. 1841, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation and the Secretary of the Interior shall jointly conduct a survey of—

"(A) the number, size, and primary uses of recreational vessels operating on the waters of the United States; and

"(B) the amount and types of fuel used by those vessels.

"(2) AUTHORIZATION OF CONTRACTS.—The Secretary of Transportation and the Secretary of the Interior may enter into contracts for the performance of a survey pursuant to this subsection.

"(3) REPORT.—The Secretary of the Interior and the Secretary of Transportation shall jointly submit a report to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and to the President pro tempore of the Senate which describes the results of the survey conducted pursuant to this section not later than November 15, 1992.

"(4) FUNDING.—Activities under this subsection may be carried out—

"(A) using amounts available to the Secretary of the Interior for administrative expenses under the Act entitled 'An Act to provide that the United States shall aid the States in fish restoration and management projects, and for other purposes' (64 Stat. 430; 16 U.S.C. 777 et seq.); and

"(B) subject to appropriations, using amounts available to the Secretary of Transportation under section 13106(a)(1) [now section 13107(a)] of title 46, United States Code (as amended by this Act)."

CONGRESSIONAL DECLARATION OF POLICY FOR 1984 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 98–369, div. A, title X, subtitle B, part I (§§1010–1017), §1010, July 18, 1984, 98 Stat. 1012, provided that: "It is declared to be the policy of Congress and the purpose of this part [enacting sections 4162 and 9504 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code, amending this section, sections 2102, 13102, 13103, 13105, 13106, 13108, and 13109 of this title, sections 777, 777b to 777e, 777g, and 777k of Title 16, Conservation, and sections 4161 and 9503 of Title 26, repealing section 13107 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section, section 777 of Title 16, and sections 4161, 4162, and 9504 of Title 26] to improve recreational boating safety and to foster greater development, use, and enjoyment of all waters of the United States by encouraging and assisting participation by the States, the boating industry, and the boating public in activities related to increasing boating safety; by authorizing the establishment of national construction and performance standards for boats and associated equipment; by creating more flexible authority governing the use of boats and equipment; and by facilitating the provision of services by the United States Coast Guard on behalf of boating safety. It is further declared to be the policy of Congress to encourage greater and continuing uniformity of boating laws and regulations among the States and the Federal Government, to encourage and assist the States in exercising their authorities in boating safety, to foster greater cooperation and assistance between the Federal Government and the States in administering and enforcing Federal and State laws and regulations pertaining to boating safety, and to equitably utilize taxes paid on fuel use in motor boats in a manner which enhances boating safety."

[For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.]

[1] So in original. The words "United States Code," probably should not appear.

§13103. Program acceptance

(a) The Secretary shall make a contract with, and allocate and distribute amounts from the Sport Fish Restoration and Boating Trust Fund established by section 9504 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 9504) to, a State that has an approved State recreational boating safety program, if the State demonstrates to the Secretary's satisfaction that—

(1) the program submitted by that State is consistent with this chapter and chapters 61 and 123 of this title;

(2) amounts distributed will be used to develop and carry out a State recreational boating safety program containing the minimum requirements of subsection (c) of this section;

(3) sufficient State matching amounts are available from general State revenue, undocumented vessel numbering and license fees, State marine fuels taxes, or from a fund constituted from the proceeds of those taxes and established to finance a State recreational boating safety program; and

(4) the program submitted by that State designates a State lead authority or agency that will carry out or coordinate carrying out the State recreational boating safety program supported by financial assistance of the United States Government in that State, including the requirement that the designated State authority or agency submit required reports that are necessary and reasonable to carry out properly and efficiently the program and that are in the form prescribed by the Secretary.

(b) Amounts of the Government (except amounts from sources referred to in subsection (a)(3) of this section) may not be used to provide a State's share of the costs of the program described under this section. State matching amounts committed to a program under this chapter may not be used to constitute the State's share of matching amounts required by another program of the Government.

(c) The Secretary shall approve a State recreational boating safety program, and the program is eligible to receive amounts authorized to be expended under section 13107 of this title, if the program includes—

(1) a vessel numbering system approved or carried out by the Secretary under chapter 123 of this title;

(2) a cooperative boating safety assistance program with the Coast Guard in that State;

(3) sufficient patrol and other activity to ensure adequate enforcement of applicable State boating safety laws and regulations;

(4) an adequate State boating safety education program, that includes the dissemination of information concerning the hazards of operating a vessel when under the influence of alcohol or drugs; and

(5) a system, approved by the Secretary, for reporting marine casualties required under section 6102 of this title.

(d) The Secretary's approval under this section is a contractual obligation of the Government for the payment of a proportionate share of the cost of carrying out the program.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 593, §13102; Pub. L. 98–369, div. A, title X, §1011(c), July 18, 1984, 98 Stat. 1013; Pub. L. 98–557, §7(b)(3), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2862; Pub. L. 99–307, §1(17), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 446; Pub. L. 99–626, §4(a), (b), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3505; Pub. L. 100–448, §6(b)(3)–(5), Sept. 28, 1988, 102 Stat. 1840; Pub. L. 101–595, title III, §312(b), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2987; Pub. L. 109–59, title X, §10141, Aug. 10, 2005, 119 Stat. 1931; renumbered §13103 and amended Pub. L. 109–304, §§15(25), 16(b)(1), (c)(4), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1704–1706.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
13102	46:1475

Section 13102(a) authorizes the Secretary to contract with the States and allocate the amounts of them if they demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Secretary that they have a program consistent with this chapter and chapters 61 and 123, that the amounts received will be used to develop and carry out their recreational boating safety and facilities improvement programs, that they have sufficient matching amounts available from specified revenue sources to meet the objectives of the program, that they will submit required reports to the Secretary to ensure continued compliance with the objectives of this chapter.

Subsection (b) prohibits a State from using any other funds received from the Federal Government to meet their required State match.

Subsections (c) and (d) require the Secretary to approve a State's recreational boating safety and facilities improvement program if the program meets the specified requirements of this subsection.

Subsection (e) makes the approval of a State's program a contractual obligation of the Government to pay the Federal portion of the cost to carry out the program.

Subsection (f) allows a State to submit a combined boating safety and facility improvement program if it meets the requirements of all of the objectives of both programs.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 13103 was renumbered section 13104 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–304, §16(b)(1), renumbered section 13102 of this title as this section.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(25), inserted "(26 U.S.C. 9504)" after "Internal Revenue Code of 1986".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 109–304, §16(c)(4), substituted "section 13107" for "section 13106".

2005—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–59 substituted "the Sport Fish Restoration and Boating Trust Fund" for "the Boat Safety Account" in introductory provisions.

1990—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 101–595, §312(b)(1), inserted "State" after "general".

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 101–595, §312(b)(2), inserted "or drugs" after "alcohol".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101–595, §312(b)(3), substituted "a proportionate share" for "the proportional share".

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100–448, §6(b)(4), substituted "1986" for "1954." in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 100–448, §6(b)(5), amended par. (4) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (4) read as follows: "the program submitted by that State designates a State lead authority or agency that will carry out or coordinate carrying out out the State recreational boating safety program supported by financial assistance of the United States Government in that State, including the requirement that the designated State authority or agency submit required reports that are necessary and reasonable to carry out properly and efficiently the program and that are in the form prescribed by the Secretary."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100–448, §6(b)(3), substituted "(except amounts from" for "from sources (except".

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99–626, §4(a), substituted "Boat Safety Account established by section 9504 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954." for "Fund established under section 13107 of this title" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 99–626, §4(b), inserted "out" after "carrying".

Pub. L. 99–307 substituted "carrying out the State" for "carrying the State".

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98–369, §1011(c)(1), (2), in provisions preceding par. (1) substituted "shall" for "may" and struck out "and facilities improvement" after "boating safety".

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 98–369, §1011(c)(1), (3), struck out ", (d), or (f)" after "requirements of subsection (c)" and struck out "and facilities improvement" after "boating safety".

Subsec. (a)(3), (4). Pub. L. 98–369, §1011(c)(1), struck out "and facilities improvement" after "boating safety".

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 98–557 inserted provisions relating to dissemination of information concerning the hazards of operating a vessel when under the influence of alcohol.

Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 98–369, §1011(c)(4), redesignated subsec. (e) as (d). Former subsec. (d), which related to approval of a State recreational boating facilities improvement program by the Secretary, was struck out.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 98–369, §1011(c)(4), struck out subsec. (f) which related to submission by a State to the Secretary of a combined program for the improvement of recreational boating safety and recreational boating facilities.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2005 AMENDMENTS

From Aug. 10, 2005, to end of fiscal year 2005, subsec. (a) of this section considered to read as immediately before enactment of Pub. L. 109–59, see section 101(b) of Pub. L. 109–74, set out as a note under section 777b of Title 16, Conservation.

Amendment by Pub. L. 109–59 effective Oct. 1, 2005, see section 10102 of Pub. L. 109–59, set out as a note under section 777b of Title 16, Conservation.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100–448 effective Oct. 1, 1988, see section 6(e) of Pub. L. 100–448, set out as a note under section 777 of Title 16, Conservation.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–369 effective Oct. 1, 1984, to apply with respect to fiscal years beginning after Sept. 30, 1984, see section 1013 of Pub. L. 98–369, set out as a note under section 13101 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

§13104. Allocations

(a) The Secretary shall allocate amounts available for allocation and distribution under this chapter for State recreational boating safety programs as follows:

(1) One-third shall be allocated equally each fiscal year among eligible States.

(2) One-third shall be allocated among eligible States that maintain a State vessel numbering system approved under chapter 123 of this title and a marine casualty reporting system approved under this chapter so that the amount allocated each fiscal year to each eligible State will be in the same ratio as the number of vessels numbered in that State bears to the number of vessels numbered in all eligible States.

(3) One-third shall be allocated so that the amount allocated each fiscal year to each eligible State will be in the same ratio as the amount of State amounts expended by the State for the State recreational boating safety program during the prior fiscal year bears to the total State amounts expended during that fiscal year by all eligible States for State recreational boating safety programs.

(b) The amount received by a State under this section in a fiscal year may be not more than one-half of the total cost incurred by that State in developing, carrying out, and financing that State's recreational boating safety program in that fiscal year.

(c) The Secretary may allocate not more than 5 percent of the amounts available for allocation and distribution in a fiscal year for national boating safety activities of national nonprofit public service organizations.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 594, §13103; Pub. L. 98–369, div. A, title X, §1011(d), July 18, 1984, 98 Stat. 1013; Pub. L. 101–595, title III, §312(c), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2987; renumbered §13104, Pub. L. 109–304, §16(b)(1), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1705.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
13103	46:1476

Section 13103 requires the Secretary to allocate the amounts available for recreational boating safety and facilities improvement programs according to a specific formula:

(1) 1/3 shall be allocated equally to each eligible State:

(2) 1/3 shall be allocated to those States maintaining an approved numbering system; and

(3) 1/3 shall be allocated to the State in the proportion that the State obligated in the prior fiscal year to the total amount obligated by all of the States in the prior fiscal year.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 13104 was renumbered section 13105 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–304 renumbered section 13103 of this title as this section.

1990—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 101–595 struck out "or obligated" after "expended" in two places.

1984—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 98–369, §1011(d), redesignated subsec. (c) as (b), struck out "and facilities improvement" after "boating safety", and struck out former subsec. (b) which related to allocation of amounts for State recreational boating facilities improvement programs by the Secretary.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 98–369, §1011(d)(1), redesignated subsec. (e) as (c). Former subsec. (c) redesignated (b).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 98–369, §1011(d)(1), struck out subsec. (d) which provided that an allocation or distribution of amounts under this section may not be made to a State to maintain boating facilities under that State's approved recreational boating safety and facilities improvement program.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 98–369, §1011(d)(1), redesignated subsec. (e) as (c).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 98–369, §1011(d)(1), struck out subsec. (f) which provided that the Secretary could extend amounts necessary to carry out this chapter but that there was a limitation on the total amount allocable.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–369 effective Oct. 1, 1984, to apply with respect to fiscal years beginning after Sept. 30, 1984, see section 1013 of Pub. L. 98–369, set out as a note under section 13101 of this title.

PAYMENT OF ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS; RETENTION OF AMOUNT PRIOR TO ALLOCATIONS

Pub. L. 99–640, §7(d), Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3548, which related to retention of amounts appropriated for State recreational boating safety programs prior to making allocations for a fiscal year, was repealed by Pub. L. 100–448, §6(b)(1)(B), Sept. 28, 1988, 102 Stat. 1840.

§13105. Availability of allocations

(a)(1) Amounts allocated to a State shall be available for obligation by that State for a period of 3 years after the date of allocation.

(2) Amounts allocated to a State that are not obligated at the end of the 3-year period referred to in paragraph (1) shall be withdrawn and allocated by the Secretary in addition to any other amounts available for allocation in the fiscal year in which they are withdrawn or the following fiscal year.

(b) Amounts available to the Secretary for State recreational boating safety programs for a fiscal year that have not been allocated at the end of the fiscal year shall be allocated among States in the next fiscal year in addition to amounts otherwise available for allocation to States for that next fiscal year.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 595, §13104; Pub. L. 99–307, §1(18), May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 446; Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5101, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5070; Pub. L. 105–178, title VII, §7405(a), June 9, 1998, 112 Stat. 487; Pub. L. 109–59, title X, §10142, Aug. 10, 2005, 119 Stat. 1931; renumbered §13105, Pub. L. 109–304, §16(b)(1), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1705.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
13104	46:1477

Section 13104 allows a State to use any of the amounts received from the Secretary over a 3 year period. If

the State does not spend the money within that period, the amounts revert to the Secretary, who will make the amounts available along with the amounts available for that year.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 13105 was renumbered section 13106 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–304 renumbered section 13104 of this title as this section.

2005—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 109–59, §10142(1), substituted "3 years" for "2 years".

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 109–59, §10142(2), substituted "3-year" for "2-year".

1998—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 105–178, §7405(a)(1), substituted "2 years" for "3 years".

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 105–178, §7405(a)(2), substituted "2-year" for "3-year".

1992—Pub. L. 102–587 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows:

"(a) Amounts allocated to a State shall be available for obligation by that State for a period of 3 years after the date of allocation. Amounts unobligated by the State at the end of the 3 years shall be withdrawn by the Secretary and shall be available with other amounts to be allocated by the Secretary during that fiscal year.

"(b) Amounts available to the Secretary for State recreational boating safety programs that have not been allocated at the end of a fiscal year shall be carried forward as part of the total allocation of amounts for the next fiscal year that may be expended under this chapter."

1986—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99–307 inserted "for State recreational boating safety programs" after "Secretary".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2005 AMENDMENTS

From Aug. 10, 2005, to end of fiscal year 2005, subsec. (a) of this section considered to read as immediately before enactment of Pub. L. 109–59, see section 101(b) of Pub. L. 109–74, set out as a note under section 777b of Title 16, Conservation.

Amendment by Pub. L. 109–59 effective Oct. 1, 2005, see section 10102 of Pub. L. 109–59, set out as a note under section 777b of Title 16, Conservation.

§13106. Computation decisions about State amounts expended

(a) Consistent with regulations prescribed by the Secretary, the computation by a State of amounts expended for the State recreational boating safety program shall include—

(1) the acquisition, maintenance, and operating costs of land, facilities, equipment, and supplies;

(2) personnel salaries and reimbursable expenses;

(3) the costs of training personnel;

(4) public boat safety education;

(5) the costs of carrying out the program; and

(6) other expenses that the Secretary considers appropriate.

(b) The Secretary shall decide an issue arising out of the computation made under subsection (a) of this section.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 596, §13105; Pub. L. 98–369, div. A, title X, §1011(e), July 18, 1984, 98 Stat. 1013; Pub. L. 101–595, title III, §312(c), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2987; renumbered §13106, Pub. L. 109–304, §16(b)(1), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1705.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
13105	46:1478

Section 13105 prescribes what amounts expended or obligated by a State will be counted toward the State's share. This section also authorizes the Secretary to settle any dispute over the computations required by this section.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 13106 was renumbered section 13107 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–304 renumbered section 13105 of this title as this section.

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101–595 struck out "or obligated" after "expended" in provisions preceding par. (1).

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98–369 struck out "and facilities improvement" after "boating safety" in provisions preceding par. (1).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–369 effective Oct. 1, 1984, to apply with respect to fiscal years beginning after Sept. 30, 1984, see section 1013 of Pub. L. 98–369, set out as a note under section 13101 of this title.

§13107. Authorization of appropriations

(a) Subject to subsection (c), the Secretary shall expend in each fiscal year for State recreational boating safety programs, under contracts with States under this chapter, an amount equal to the amount transferred to the Secretary under subsections (a)(2) and (f) of section 4 of the Dingell-Johnson Sport Fish Restoration Act (16 U.S.C. 777c(a)(2) and (f)). The amount shall be allocated as provided under section 13104 of this title and shall be available for State recreational boating safety programs as provided under the guidelines established under subsection (b) of this section. Amounts authorized to be expended for State recreational boating safety programs shall remain available until expended and are deemed to have been expended only if an amount equal to the total amounts authorized to be expended under this section for the fiscal year in question and all prior fiscal years have been obligated. Amounts previously obligated but released by payment of a final voucher or modification of a program acceptance shall be credited to the balance of unobligated amounts and are immediately available for expenditure.

(b) The Secretary shall establish guidelines prescribing the purposes for which amounts available under this chapter for State recreational boating safety programs may be used. Those purposes shall include—

(1) providing facilities, equipment, and supplies for boating safety education and law enforcement, including purchase, operation, maintenance, and repair;

(2) training personnel in skills related to boating safety and to the enforcement of boating safety laws and regulations;

(3) providing public boating safety education, including educational programs and lectures, to the boating community and the public school system;

(4) acquiring, constructing, or repairing public access sites used primarily by recreational boaters;

(5) conducting boating safety inspections and marine casualty investigations;

(6) establishing and maintaining emergency or search and rescue facilities, and providing emergency or search and rescue assistance;

(7) establishing and maintaining waterway markers and other appropriate aids to navigation; and

(8) providing State recreational vessel numbering and titling programs.

(c)(1)(A) The Secretary may use amounts made available each fiscal year under section 4(b)(2) of the Dingell-Johnson Sport Fish Restoration Act (16 U.S.C. 777c(b)(2)) for payment of expenses of the Coast Guard for investigations, personnel, and activities directly related to—

(i) administering State recreational boating safety programs under this chapter; or

(ii) coordinating or carrying out the national recreational boating safety program under this title.

(B) Of the amounts used by the Secretary each fiscal year under subparagraph (A)—

(i) not less than $2,100,000 is available to ensure compliance with chapter 43 of this title; and

(ii) not more than $1,500,000 is available to conduct by grant or contract a survey of levels of recreational boating participation and related matters in the United States.

(2) On or after October 1, 2024, no funds available to the Secretary under this subsection may be used to replace funding provided through general appropriations, nor for any purposes except those purposes authorized by this section.

(3) Amounts made available by this subsection shall remain available during the 2 succeeding fiscal years. Any amount that is unexpended or unobligated at the end of the 3-year period during which it is available shall be withdrawn by the Secretary and allocated to the States in addition to any other amounts available for allocation in the fiscal year in which they are withdrawn or the following fiscal year.

(4) The Secretary shall publish annually in the Federal Register a detailed accounting of the projects, programs, and activities funded under this subsection.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 596, §13106; Pub. L. 98–369, div. A, title X, §1012, July 18, 1984, 98 Stat. 1013; Pub. L. 99–626, §4(c), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3505; Pub. L. 99–640, §7(b), (c), Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3548; Pub. L. 100–448, §6(b)(1)(A), (2), (6), Sept. 28, 1988, 102 Stat. 1839, 1840; Pub. L. 105–178, title VII, §7405(b), (c)(1), June 9, 1998, 112 Stat. 487, 488; Pub. L. 108–88, §9(c), Sept. 30, 2003, 117 Stat. 1126; Pub. L. 108–202, §7(c), Feb. 29, 2004, 118 Stat. 484; Pub. L. 108–224, §6(c), Apr. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 632; Pub. L. 108–263, §6(c), June 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 704; Pub. L. 108–280, §6(c), July 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 882; Pub. L. 108–310, §9(c), Sept. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 1159; Pub. L. 109–14, §8(c), May 31, 2005, 119 Stat. 335; Pub. L. 109–20, §8(c), July 1, 2005, 119 Stat. 357; Pub. L. 109–35, §8(c), July 20, 2005, 119 Stat. 390; Pub. L. 109–37, §8(c), July 22, 2005, 119 Stat. 405; Pub. L. 109–40, §8(c), July 28, 2005, 119 Stat. 421; Pub. L. 109–59, title X, §10143, Aug. 10, 2005, 119 Stat. 1931; Pub. L. 109–74, title I, §102, title II, §203, Sept. 29, 2005, 119 Stat. 2030, 2032; renumbered §13107 and amended Pub. L. 109–304, §16(b)(1), (c)(5), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1705, 1706; Pub. L. 114–94, div. A, title X, §10002, Dec. 4, 2015, 129 Stat. 1621; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(k), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2327; Pub. L. 117–58, div. B, title VIII, §28001(a)(4), Nov. 15, 2021, 135 Stat. 887.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
13106	46:1479

Section 13106 provides the Secretary with liquidating contract authority in an amount equal to the revenues received from the motor boat fuel tax. One third shall be used for State boating safety programs, and 2/3 shall be used for State facilities improvement programs. And as provided in Section 13102(f), the approval of a State's program makes it a contractual obligation of the United States Government to provide the amounts available.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 13107, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 596, established the National Recreational

Boating Safety and Facilities Improvement Fund, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 98–369, div. A, title X, §1016(c)(1), July 18, 1984, 98 Stat. 1020. See section 9504 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 117–58 substituted "On or after October 1, 2024, no funds available" for "No funds available".

2018—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 115–232 substituted "No" for "On and after October 1, 2016, no".

2015—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 114–94, §10002(1), substituted "Subject to subsection (c)," for "(1) Subject to paragraph (2) and subsection (c)," and struck out "the sum of (A) the amount made available from the Boat Safety Account for that fiscal year under section 15 of the Dingell-Johnson Sport Fish Restoration Act and (B)" after "an amount equal to" and par. (2) which read as follows: "The Secretary shall use not more than two percent of the amount available each fiscal year for State recreational boating safety programs under this chapter to pay the costs of investigations, personnel, and activities related to administering those programs."

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 114–94, §10002(2)(A), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: "Of the amount transferred to the Secretary under subsection (a)(2) of section 4 of the Dingell-Johnson Sport Fish Restoration Act (16 U.S.C. 777c(a)(2)), $5,500,000 is available to the Secretary for payment of expenses of the Coast Guard for personnel and activities directly related to coordinating and carrying out the national recreational boating safety program under this title, of which not less than $2,000,000 shall be available to the Secretary only to ensure compliance with chapter 43 of this title."

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 114–94, §10002(2)(B), substituted "On and after October 1, 2016, no funds" for "No funds" and struck out "traditionally" before "provided".

2006—Pub. L. 109–304, §16(b)(1), renumbered section 13106 of this title as this section.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 109–304, §16(c)(5), substituted "section 13104" for "section 13103".

2005—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 109–59, §10143(2), as amended by Pub. L. 109–74, §102(2), substituted "subsections (a)(2) and (f) of section 4 of the Dingell-Johnson Sport Fish Restoration Act (16 U.S.C. 777c(a)(2) and (f))" for "section 4(b) of the Act of August 9, 1950 (16 U.S.C. 777c(b))".

Pub. L. 109–59, §10143(1), as amended by Pub. L. 109–74, §102(1), substituted "the amount made available from the Boat Safety Account for that fiscal year under section 15 of the Dingell-Johnson Sport Fish Restoration Act" for "the amount appropriated from the Boat Safety Account for that fiscal year".

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 109–59, §10143(3), struck out "not less than one percent and" before "not more than two percent".

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 109–74, §203, substituted "$5,000,000" for "$4,150,685" and "$2,000,000" for "$1,660,274".

Pub. L. 109–59, §10143(4)(D), as amended by Pub. L. 109–74, §102(3)(B), amended par. (1) as amended by Pub. L. 109–74, §203, by inserting "not less than" before "$2,000,000". See Effective Date of 2005 Amendments note below.

Pub. L. 109–59, §10143(4)(C), as amended by Pub. L. 109–74, §102(3)(B), amended par. (1) as amended by Pub. L. 109–74, §203, by substituting "$5,500,000" for "$5,000,000". See Effective Date of 2005 Amendments note below.

Pub. L. 109–59, §10143(4)(B), as amended by Pub. L. 109–74, §102(3)(A), substituted "(16 U.S.C. 777c(a)(2))" for "(16 U.S.C. 777c(b))".

Pub. L. 109–59, §10143(4)(A), substituted "Secretary under subsection (a)(2) of section 4" for "Secretary of Transportation under paragraph (5)(C) of section 4(b)".

Pub. L. 109–40 substituted "$4,150,685" for "$4,100,000" and "$1,660,274" for "$1,643,836".

Pub. L. 109–37 substituted "$4,100,000" for "$4,050,000" and "$1,643,836" for "$1,620,003".

Pub. L. 109–35 substituted "$4,050,000" for "$4,000,000" and "$1,620,003" for "$1,600,000".

Pub. L. 109–20 substituted "$4,000,000" for "$3,750,003" and "$1,600,000" for "$1,500,003".

Pub. L. 109–14 substituted "$3,750,003" for "$3,333,336" and "$1,500,003" for "$1,333,336".

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 109–59, §10143(5), as amended by Pub. L. 109–74, §102(4), substituted "during the 2 succeeding fiscal years. Any amount that is unexpended or unobligated at the end of the 3-year period during which it is available shall be withdrawn by the Secretary and allocated to the States in addition to any other amounts available for allocation in the fiscal year in which they are withdrawn or the following fiscal year." for "until expended."

2004—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 108–310 amended subsec. (c) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (c) read as follows: "Of the amount transferred to the Secretary of Transportation under paragraph (4) of section 4(b) of the Dingell-Johnson Sport Fish Restoration Act (16 U.S.C. 777c(b)), $5,000,000 is available to the Secretary for payment of expenses of the Coast Guard for personnel and activities directly related to coordinating and carrying out the national recreational boating safety program under this title, of which $2,000,000 shall be

available to the Secretary only to ensure compliance with chapter 43 of this title. No funds available to the Secretary under this subsection may be used to replace funding traditionally provided through general appropriations, nor for any purposes except those purposes authorized by this section. Amounts made available by this subsection shall remain available until expended. The Secretary shall publish annually in the Federal Register a detailed accounting of the projects, programs, and activities funded under this subsection."

Pub. L. 108–280 substituted "$5,000,000" for "$4,166,668" and "$2,000,000" for "$1,666,668".

Pub. L. 108–263 substituted "$4,166,668" for "$3,750,001" and "$1,666,668" for "$1,500,001".

Pub. L. 108–224 substituted "$3,750,001" for "$2,916,667" and "$1,500,001" for "$1,166,667".

Pub. L. 108–202 substituted "$2,916,667" for "$2,083,333" and "$1,166,667" for "$833,333".

2003—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 108–88 amended first sentence generally. Prior to amendment, first sentence read as follows: "Of the amount transferred for each fiscal year to the Secretary of Transportation under paragraphs (2) and (3) of section 4(b) of the Act of August 9, 1950 (16 U.S.C. 777c(b)), $5,000,000 is available to the Secretary for payment of expenses of the Coast Guard for personnel and activities directly related to coordinating and carrying out the national recreational boating safety program under this title, of which $2,000,000 shall be available to the Secretary only to ensure compliance with chapter 43 of this title."

1998—Pub. L. 105–178, §7405(c)(1), substituted "appropriations" for "contract spending" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 105–178, §7405(b)(1), substituted "Subject to paragraph (2) and subsection (c), the Secretary shall expend in each fiscal year for State recreational boating safety programs, under contracts with States under this chapter, an amount equal to the sum of (A) the amount appropriated from the Boat Safety Account for that fiscal year and (B) the amount transferred to the Secretary under section 4(b) of the Act of August 9, 1950 (16 U.S.C. 777c(b))." for "Subject to paragraph (2), the Secretary may expend in each fiscal year, subject to amounts as are provided in appropriations laws for liquidation of contract authority, an amount equal to ½ of the amount transferred for such fiscal year to the Boat Safety Account under section 9503(c)(4) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 9503(c)(4))."

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 105–178, §7405(b)(2), substituted "available" for "appropriated".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 105–178, §7405(b)(3), added subsec. (c) and struck out former subsec. (c) which read as follows: "An amount equal to one-half of the amount transferred for each fiscal year to the Boat Safety Account under section 9503(c)(4) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 9503(c)(4)) is available to the Secretary for expenditures out of the operating expenses account of the Coast Guard for services provided by the Coast Guard for recreational boating safety, including services provided by the Coast Guard Auxiliary. Expenditures for a fiscal year under this subsection shall not exceed expenditures for the fiscal year under subsection (a). Amounts made available by this subsection shall remain available until expended."

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100–448, §61(b)(1)(A), designated existing provisions as par. (1), added par. (2), and amended first sentence of par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, first sentence read as follows: "The Secretary may expend in each of the fiscal years 1985, 1986, 1987, and 1988, subject to amounts as are provided in appropriations laws for liquidation of contract authority, an amount equal to one-half for Fiscal Year 1987 and two-thirds for each Fiscal Year thereafter of the amount transferred for such fiscal year to the Boat Safety Account under section 9503(c)(4) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 9503(c)(4))."

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100–448, §6(b)(2)(A), struck out "for Fiscal Year 1987 and one-third for each fiscal year thereafter." after "An amount equal to one-half" in first sentence.

Pub. L. 100–448, §6(b)(6), substituted "1986" for "1954" in first sentence.

Pub. L. 100–448, §6(b)(2)(B), inserted after first sentence "Expenditures for a fiscal year under this subsection shall not exceed expenditures for the fiscal year under subsection (a)."

1986—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 99–640, §7(c), substituted "one-half for Fiscal Year 1987 and two-thirds for each Fiscal Year thereafter" for "two-thirds".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99–626 substituted "shall" for "may" after "Those purposes" in introductory provisions and substituted "and" for "or" in par. (8).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 99–640, §7(b), substituted "one-half for Fiscal Year 1987 and one-third for each Fiscal Year thereafter." for "one-third".

1984—Pub. L. 98–369 amended section generally and, among other changes, struck out all references to a facilities improvement program, inserted provisions directing the Secretary to establish guidelines prescribing the purposes for which amounts available under this chapter for State recreational safety boating programs may be used, and made available to the Secretary an amount equal to one-third of the amount transferred for each fiscal year to the Boat Safety Account under section 9503(c)(4) of title 26 to be used for expenditures out of the operating expenses account of the Coast Guard for services provided by the Coast Guard for recreational boating safety, including services provided by the Coast Guard Auxiliary.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2015 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 114–94 effective Oct. 1, 2015, see section 1003 of Pub. L. 114–94, set out as a note under section 5313 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2005 AMENDMENTS

From Aug. 10, 2005, to end of fiscal year 2005, subsecs. (a) and (c)(1), (3) of this section considered to read as immediately before enactment of Pub. L. 109–59, except as provided by the amendments by section 203 of Pub. L. 109–74, see section 101(b) of Pub. L. 109–74, set out as a note under section 777b of Title 16, Conservation.

Amendment by Pub. L. 109–59 effective Oct. 1, 2005, see section 10102 of Pub. L. 109–59, set out as a note under section 777b of Title 16, Conservation.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100–448 effective Oct. 1, 1988, see section 6(e) of Pub. L. 100–448, set out as a note under section 777 of Title 16, Conservation.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–369 effective Oct. 1, 1984, to apply with respect to fiscal years beginning after Sept. 30, 1984, see section 1013 of Pub. L. 98–369, set out as a note under section 13101 of this title.

BOATING SAFETY FUND

Pub. L. 99–272, title VI, §6001, Apr. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 121, as amended by Pub. L. 99–514, §2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095, required that one-third of the amount transferred for fiscal year 1985 to the Boat Safety Account under former section 9503(c)(4) of Title 26, be deposited in the general fund of the Treasury as proprietary receipts of the department in which the Coast Guard was operating and ascribed to Coast Guard activities and that former section 13106(a) of this title be applied with respect to fiscal year 1985 by substituting "one-third" for "two-thirds" in the first sentence.

§13108. Computing amounts allocated to States and State records requirements

(a) Amounts allocated and distributed under section 13104 of this title shall be computed and paid to the States as follows:

(1) During the second quarter of a fiscal year and on the basis of computations made under section 13106 of this title and submitted by the States for the preceding fiscal year, the Secretary shall determine the percentage of the amounts available to which each eligible State is entitled for the next fiscal year.

(2) Notice of the percentage and of the dollar amount, if it can be determined, for each State shall be provided to the States at the earliest practicable time.

(3) If the Secretary determines that an amount made available to a State for a prior fiscal year is greater or less than the amount that should have been made available to the State for the prior fiscal year, because of later or more accurate State expenditure information, the amount for the current fiscal year may be increased or decreased by the appropriate amount.

(b) The Secretary shall schedule the payment of amounts, consistent with the program purposes and applicable regulations prescribed by the Secretary of the Treasury, to minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of amounts from the Treasury and the subsequent disbursement of the amounts by a State.

(c) The Secretary shall notify a State authority or agency that further payments will be made to the State only when the program complies with the prescribed standards or a failure to comply substantially with standards is corrected if the Secretary, after reasonable notice to the designated State authority or agency, finds that—

(1) the State recreational boating safety program submitted by the State and accepted by the Secretary has been so changed that it no longer complies with this chapter or standards prescribed by regulations; or

(2) in carrying out the State recreational boating safety program, there has been a failure to comply substantially with the standards prescribed by regulations.

(d) The Secretary shall provide for the accounting, budgeting, and other fiscal procedures that are necessary and reasonable to carry out this section properly and efficiently. Records related to amounts allocated under this chapter shall be made available to the Secretary and the Comptroller General to conduct audits.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 596; Pub. L. 98–369, div. A, title X, §1011(f), July 18, 1984, 98 Stat. 1013; Pub. L. 101–595, title III, §312(d), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2987; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §746(a)(3), (4), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3943; Pub. L. 109–304, §16(c)(6), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1706.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
13108	46:1480

Section 13108 sets forth the manner that the Secretary shall compute the amounts to be allocated to the States, State record requirements, and authority for the General Accounting Office to review the records when conducting audits.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–304 substituted "section 13104" for "section 13103" in introductory provisions and "section 13106" for "section 13105" in par. (1).

1996—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 104–324 substituted "preceding" for "proceeding" and "Secretary" for "Secertary".

1990—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 101–595 amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (1) read as follows: "During the last quarter of a fiscal year and on the basis of computations made under section 13105 of this title and submitted by the States, the Secretary shall determine the percentage of the amounts available for the next fiscal year to which each eligible State is entitled."

1984—Subsec. (c)(1), (2). Pub. L. 98–369 struck out "and facilities improvement" after "boating safety".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–369 effective Oct. 1, 1984, to apply with respect to fiscal years beginning after Sept. 30, 1984, see section 1013 of Pub. L. 98–369, set out as a note under section 13101 of this title.

§13109. Consultation, cooperation, and regulation

(a) In carrying out responsibilities under this chapter, the Secretary may consult with State and local governments, public and private agencies, organizations and committees, private industry, and other persons having an interest in boating safety.

(b) The Secretary may advise, assist, and cooperate with the States and other interested public and private agencies in planning, developing, and carrying out boating safety programs. Acting under section 141 [1] of title 14, the Secretary shall ensure the fullest cooperation between the State and United States Government authorities in promoting boating safety by making agreements and other arrangements with States when possible. Subject to chapter 23 [1] of title 14, the Secretary may make available, on request of a State, the services of members of the Coast Guard Auxiliary to assist the State in promoting boating safety on State waters.

(c) The Secretary may prescribe regulations to carry out this chapter.

(Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 597; Pub. L. 98–369, div. A, title X, §1011(g), July 18, 1984, 98 Stat. 1013.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
13109	46:1481

Section 13109 authorizes the Secretary to consult with State and local governments, public and private agencies, and any other persons that have an interest in boating safety.

This section also authorizes the Secretary to advise and assist the States and other public and private agencies in the planning and carrying out of their boating safety and facilities improvement programs.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 141 of title 14, referred to in subsec. (b), was redesignated section 701 of title 14 by Pub. L. 115–282, title I, §106(b), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4203, and references to section 141 of title 14 deemed to refer to such redesignated section, see section 123(b)(1) of Pub. L. 115–282, set out as a References to Sections of Title 14 as Redesignated by Pub. L. 115–282 note preceding section 101 of Title 14, Coast Guard.

Chapter 23 of title 14, referred to in subsec. (b), was comprised of sections 821 to 832 prior to the renumbering of such sections as sections 3901 to 3913, respectively, of title 14 by Pub. L. 115–282, title I, §119(b), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4236. After renumbering, such sections now comprise chapter 39 of Title 14.

AMENDMENTS

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98–369 struck out "and facilities improvement" after "boating safety".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 98–369 struck out "and facilities improvement" after "and carrying out boating safety".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–369 effective Oct. 1, 1984, to apply with respect to fiscal years beginning after Sept. 30, 1984, see section 1013 of Pub. L. 98–369, set out as a note under section 13101 of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

[§13110. Repealed. Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(c)(4)(A), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4289]

Section, Pub. L. 98–89, Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 598; Pub. L. 99–626, §3(a)(1), (b)(1), (2), Nov. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 3505; Pub. L. 100–448, §20(a), Sept. 28, 1988, 102 Stat. 1846; Pub. L. 102–241, §24, Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2217; Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §304(f), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3918; Pub. L. 107–295, title III, §335, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2105; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §418(f), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1049; Pub. L. 111–281, title VI, §621(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2976, established the National Boating Safety Advisory Council. See section 15105 of this title.

PART J—MEASUREMENT OF VESSELS

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Part J contains provisions that apply to the measurement of a vessel to determine its tonnage. Tonnage is a measurement of a vessel's volume and is used for international, customs, and regulatory purposes. This part implements the 1969 International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships and provides a framework

for phasing in the international system as the method of measuring ships domestically, to establish uniformity in ship measurement. The availability of an alternate domestic regulatory system of measurement is continued so that the application of domestic laws will be preserved in order that vessels engaged in domestic commerce will not be adversely affected.

CHAPTER 141—GENERAL

Sec.
14101. Definitions.
[14102. Repealed.]
14103. Delegation of authority.
14104. Measurement to determine application of a law.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1990—Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §603(12)(B), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2993, struck out item 14102 "Regulations".

§14101. Definitions

In this part—

(1) "Convention" means the International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships, 1969.

(2) "existing vessel" means a vessel the keel of which was laid or that was at a similar stage of construction before July 18, 1982.

(3) "Great Lakes" means—

(A) the Great Lakes; and

(B) the St. Lawrence River west of—

(i) a rhumb line drawn from Cap des Rosiers to West Point, Anticosti Island; and

(ii) on the north side of Anticosti Island, the meridian of longitude 63 degrees west.

(4) "vessel that engages on a foreign voyage" means a vessel—

(A) that arrives at a place under the jurisdiction of the United States from a place in a foreign country;

(B) that makes a voyage between places outside the United States;

(C) that departs from a place under the jurisdiction of the United States for a place in a foreign country; or

(D) that makes a voyage between a place within a territory or possession of the United States and another place under the jurisdiction of the United States not within that territory or possession.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1919; Pub. L. 111–281, title III, §303(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2923.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14101

Source: International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships.

Section 14101 contains definitions that are limited to Part J—Measurement of Vessels. The source of these definitions is the International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships in articles 2 and 4.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Par. (4). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(a)(1), substituted "that engages" for "engaged" in introductory provisions.

Par. (4)(A). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(a)(2), substituted "that arrives" for "arriving".

Par. (4)(B). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(a)(3), substituted "that makes" for "making" and struck out "(except a foreign vessel engaged on that voyage)" after "United States".

Par. (4)(C). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(a)(4), substituted "that departs" for "departing".

Par. (4)(D). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(a)(5), substituted "that makes" for "making".

[§14102. Repealed. Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §603(12)(A), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2993]

Section, Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1919, authorized Secretary to prescribe regulations to carry out this part.

§14103. Delegation of authority

(a) The Secretary may delegate to a qualified person the authority to measure a vessel and issue an International Tonnage Certificate (1969) or other appropriate certificate of measurement under this part.

(b) Under regulations prescribed by the Secretary, a decision of the person delegated authority under subsection (a) of this section related to measuring a vessel or issuing a certificate may be appealed to the Secretary.

(c) For a vessel that engages on a foreign voyage, the Secretary may delegate to another country that is a party to the Convention the authority to measure the vessel and issue an International Tonnage Certificate (1969) under chapter 143 of this title.

(d) The Secretary may terminate a delegation made under this section after giving written notice to the person.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1919; Pub. L. 111–281, title III, §303(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2924.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14103

Source: International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships.

Section 14103(a) authorizes the Secretary to delegate to a qualified person the authority to measure a vessel and issue an International Tonnage Certificate or other certificate of measurement. The term "qualified person" means an organization that the Secretary believes has the necessary qualifications to measure a vessel competently, such as the American Bureau of Shipping.

The conferees intend that in section 14103 the term "qualified person" includes not only organizations that the Secretary finds to be qualified to perform measurement duties, but any person as that term is defined in section 1 of title 1, United States Code (including individuals), that the Secretary determines qualified to perform measurement duties. The House and Senate conferees also agree that, where authorized, in addition to information required by the Secretary, regulatory tonnage should be used on all certificates and documents related to a vessel unless the owner otherwise requests.

Section 14103(b) provides for the appeal to the Secretary of a decision made by a person that has received delegated authority. This ensures that the Secretary has full oversight of delegated tonnage measurement functions.

Section 14103(c) authorizes the Secretary to delegate to a country that is a party to the International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships, 1969, the authority to measure a vessel and issue an International Tonnage Certificate.

Section 14103(d) clarifies the Secretary's authority to revoke at any time and without cause a delegation of authority to measure a vessel or issue a certificate. This authority is given so that no delay occurs administratively in revoking a delegation wherever the Secretary decides a revocation is warranted.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–281 substituted "that engages on" for "intended to be engaged on".

§14104. Measurement to determine application of a law

(a) When the application of a law of the United States to a vessel depends on the vessel's tonnage, the vessel shall be measured under this part.

(b) If a statute allows for an alternate tonnage to be prescribed under this section, the Secretary may prescribe it by regulation. Any such regulation shall be considered to be an interpretive regulation for purposes of section 553 of title 5. Until an alternate tonnage is prescribed, the statutorily established tonnage shall apply to vessels measured under chapter 143 or chapter 145 of this title.

(c) The head of each Federal agency shall ensure that regulations issued by the agency that specify particular tonnages comply with the alternate tonnages implemented by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1920; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §702, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3933.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14104

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 71.

Section 14104 requires that a vessel be measured under Part J of this subtitle when the application of a U.S. law to the vessel depends on its tonnage.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Pub. L. 104–324 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsecs. (b) and (c).

CHAPTER 143—CONVENTION MEASUREMENT

Sec.

14301. Application.
14302. Measurement.
14303. Tonnage Certificate.
14304. Remeasurement.
14305. Optional regulatory measurement.
14306. Reciprocity for foreign vessels.
14307. Inspection of foreign vessels.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Chapter 143 provides implementing legislation for the International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships (Convention) which came into effect in the United States on February 10, 1983. Chapter 143, therefore, is based primarily on the Convention, not on provisions in existing U.S. law.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Pub. L. 111–281, title III, §303(e)(3), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2925, substituted "Tonnage Certificate" for "International Tonnage Certificate (1969)" in item 14303.

§14301. Application

(a) Except as otherwise provided in this section, this chapter applies to any vessel for which the

application of an international agreement or other law of the United States to the vessel depends on the vessel's tonnage.

(b) This chapter does not apply to the following:

(1) a vessel of war, unless the government of the country to which the vessel belongs elects to measure the vessel under this chapter.

(2) a vessel of less than 24 meters (79 feet) overall in length.

(3) a vessel of United States or Canadian registry or nationality, or a vessel operated under the authority of the United States or Canada, and that is operating only on the Great Lakes, unless the owner requests.

(4) a vessel of United States registry or nationality, or one operated under the authority of the United States (except a vessel that engages on a foreign voyage) the keel of which was laid or that was at a similar stage of construction before January 1, 1986, unless—

(A) the owner requests; or

(B) the vessel undergoes a change that the Secretary finds substantially affects the vessel's gross tonnage.

(5) a barge of United States registry or nationality, or a barge operated under the authority of the United States (except a barge that engages on a foreign voyage) unless the owner requests.

(c) An existing vessel that has not undergone a change that the Secretary finds substantially affects the vessel's gross tonnage (or a vessel to which IMO Resolutions A.494 (XII) of November 19, 1981, A.540 (XIII) of November 17, 1983, or A.541 (XIII) of November 17, 1983, apply) may retain its tonnages existing on July 18, 1994, for the application of relevant requirements under international agreements (except the Convention) and other laws of the United States. However, if the vessel undergoes a change substantially affecting its tonnage after July 18, 1994, the vessel shall be remeasured under this chapter.

(d) This chapter does not affect an international agreement to which the United States Government is a party that is not in conflict with the Convention or the application of IMO Resolutions A.494 (XII) of November 19, 1981, A.540 (XIII) of November 17, 1983, and A.541 (XIII) of November 17, 1983.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1920; Pub. L. 101–595, title III, §305, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2985; Pub. L. 111–281, title III, §303(c), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2924.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14301

Source: International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships.

Section 14301 delineates which vessels must be measured in compliance with the standards of the Convention.

Section 14301(a) provides that a vessel must be measured under the standards of the Convention if it is documented or required by law to be documented under chapter 121 of this subtitle or if it is engaged on a foreign voyage, unless the vessel is specifically exempted under section 14301(b).

Section 14301(b) provides the following exemptions from the requirement in section 14301(a) to be measured under the Convention:

1. A vessel of war;

2. A vessel of less than 24 meters (79 feet) overall in length ("overall in length" is defined in section 2101);

3. A vessel that operates only on the Great Lakes (although the owner may request that it be measured under the Convention);

4. A vessel whose keel was laid or was at a similar stage of construction before January 1, 1986, and is on a domestic voyage, unless the vessel undergoes a change that significantly changes its tonnage or the owner requests that the vessel be measured under the Convention; and

5. A vessel whose keel was laid or was at a similar stage of construction before July 18, 1982, unless the vessel undergoes a change that significantly changes the vessel's tonnage or the owner requests that the vessel be measured under the Convention.

Together, subsections (b)(4) and (5) provide that, unless the owner requests measurement under the

Convention, unaltered vessels built before 1986 engaging only on domestic voyages do not have to be measured under the Convention or use Convention measurement for the application of any domestic laws. Further, these subsections provide that unaltered vessels that are built before July 18, 1982, engaging on foreign voyages do not have to be measured under the Convention until 1994 and are not required to use Convention measurement as a basis for the application of any domestic laws.

Section 14301(c) provides that if a vessel owner requests that the vessel be measured under the Convention, the vessel may only be remeasured under the Convention.

Section 14301(d) provides that after July 18, 1994, a vessel whose keel was laid or was at a similar stage of construction before July 18, 1982 may retain its regulatory tonnage for the application of requirements under U.S. laws or international agreements, except the International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships. However, if the vessel was not required to be measured under the Convention, but the vessel's owner requested that the vessel be measured under the Convention system before July 19, 1994, or if the vessel undergoes a change affecting its tonnage, the vessel may not use its regulatory tonnage for the application of U.S. laws or international agreements after July 19, 1994.

Section 14301(e) provides that this chapter does not affect any international agreement to which the United States is a party that is not in conflict with the International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships, 1969. It further provides that this chapter does not affect the application of the three interim schemes of the International Maritime Organization, which are discussed under section 14305 below.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(c)(1), amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as follows: "Except as otherwise provided in this section, this chapter applies to the following:

"(1) a documented vessel.

"(2) a vessel that is to be documented under chapter 121 of this title.

"(3) a vessel engaged on a foreign voyage."

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(c)(2)(A), substituted ", unless the government of the country to which the vessel belongs elects to measure the vessel under this chapter." for period at end.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(c)(2)(B), inserted "of United States or Canadian registry or nationality, or a vessel operated under the authority of the United States or Canada, and that is" after "a vessel".

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(c)(2)(C), substituted "a vessel of United States registry or nationality, or one operated under the authority of the United States (except a vessel that engages" for "a vessel (except a vessel engaged".

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(c)(2)(F), amended par. (5) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (5) read as follows: "a barge (except a barge engaged on a foreign voyage) unless the owner requests."

Pub. L. 111–281, §303(c)(2)(D), (E), redesignated par. (6) as (5) and struck out former par. (5) which read as follows: "before July 19, 1994, an existing vessel unless—

"(A) the owner requests; or

"(B) the vessel undergoes a change that the Secretary finds substantially affects the vessel's gross tonnage."

Subsec. (b)(6). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(c)(2)(E), redesignated par. (6) as (5). Former par. (5) struck out.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(c)(5), substituted "An existing vessel that has not undergone a change that the Secretary finds substantially affects the vessel's gross tonnage (or a vessel to which IMO Resolutions A.494 (XII) of November 19, 1981, A.540 (XIII) of November 17, 1983, or A.541 (XIII) of November 17, 1983, apply)" for "After July 18, 1994, an existing vessel (except an existing vessel referred to in subsection (b)(5)(A) or (B) of this section)".

Pub. L. 111–281, §303(c)(3), (4), redesignated subsec. (d) as (c) and struck out former subsec. (c) which read as follows: "A vessel made subject to this chapter at the request of the owner may be remeasured only as provided by this chapter."

Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(c)(4), redesignated subsec. (e) as (d). Former subsec. (d) redesignated (c).

1990—Subsec. (b)(6). Pub. L. 101–595 added par. (6).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

REPORT TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5103(g), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1927, provided that: "The Secretary of Transportation shall—

"(1) before July 19, 1990, submit to Congress—

"(A) a study of—

"(i) the impact of applying vessel tonnage determined under chapter 143 of title 46 (as enacted by section 5101 of this subtitle), United States Code, in laws of the United States that contain provisions based on tonnage, including an analysis of the number and types of vessels that would become subject to additional laws or more stringent requirements because of that application; and

"(ii) the extent to which the tonnage thresholds in laws of the United States whose application is based on tonnage would have to be raised so that additional vessels would not become subject to those laws if their application is based on tonnage determined under chapter 143; and

"(B) a recommendation of the levels to which the tonnage thresholds in laws of the United States whose application is based on tonnage should be raised if a complete conversion to the International Convention measurement system under chapter 143 is made;

"(2) in conducting the study under clause (1) of this subsection, consult with representatives of the private sector having experience with the operation of vessels likely to be affected by laws of the United States whose application is based on tonnage; and

"(3) before July 19, 1988, submit to Congress an interim progress report on the study conducted under clause (1) of this subsection."

§14302. Measurement

(a) The Secretary shall measure a vessel to which this chapter applies in the way provided by this chapter and the Convention.

(b) A vessel measured under this chapter may not be required to be measured under another law.

(c) Unless otherwise provided by law, the measurement of a vessel under this chapter applies to a law of the United States whose applicability depends on a vessel's tonnage, if that law—

(1) becomes effective after July 18, 1994; or

(2) is in effect before July 19, 1994, is not enumerated in section 14305 of this title, and is identified by the Secretary by regulation as a law to which this chapter applies.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1921; Pub. L. 111–281, title III, §303(d), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2924.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14302

Source: International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships.

Section 14302(a) requires the Secretary to measure a vessel to which this chapter applies, in the way provided by this chapter and by the Convention. Section 14302(b) provides that a vessel that is required to be measured under this chapter can not also be required to be measured under another law. The exception allows the Panama Canal Commission to continue to use the Canal measurement system for calculation of tolls. Section 14302(c) provides that the applicability of tonnage-based laws that become effective after July 18, 1994, will be based on Convention tonnage measurements. The applicability of tonnage-based laws in effect before July 19, 1994, which are listed by the Secretary, will also be based on Convention tonnage. Therefore, the laws that will be based on regulatory tonnage are those not listed by the Secretary by regulation and those listed in section 14305 of this legislation.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–281 amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: "Except as provided in section 1602(a) of the Panama Canal Act of 1979 (22 U.S.C. 3792(a)), a vessel measured under this chapter may not be required to be measured under another law."

§14303. Tonnage Certificate

(a) After measuring a vessel under this chapter, the Secretary shall issue, on request of the owner, an International Tonnage Certificate (1969) and deliver it to the owner or master of the vessel. For a vessel to which the Convention does not apply, the Secretary shall prescribe a certificate to be issued as evidence of a vessel's measurement under this chapter.

(b) The certificate issued under this section shall be maintained as required by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1921; Pub. L. 111–281, title III, §303(e)(1), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2925.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14303

Source: International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships.

Section 14303(a) requires the Secretary to issue, on the request of the owner, an International Tonnage Certificate after measuring a vessel under this chapter. Section 14303(b) requires that the certificate be maintained as required by the Secretary.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Pub. L. 111–281, §303(e)(1)(C), struck out "International" before "Tonnage" and "(1969)" after "Certificate" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(e)(1)(A), inserted at end "For a vessel to which the Convention does not apply, the Secretary shall prescribe a certificate to be issued as evidence of a vessel's measurement under this chapter."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(e)(1)(B), inserted "issued under this section" after "The certificate".

§14304. Remeasurement

(a) To the extent necessary, the Secretary shall remeasure a vessel to which this chapter applies if—

(1) the Secretary or the owner alleges an error in its measurement; or

(2) the vessel or the use of its space is changed in a way that substantially affects its tonnage.

(b) Except as provided in this chapter or section 14504 of this title, a vessel that has been measured does not have to be remeasured to obtain another document or endorsement under chapter 121 of this title.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1921.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14304

Source: International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships.

Section 14304(a) requires the Secretary to remeasure a vessel, to the extent necessary, if there is an alleged error regarding its measurement or if the vessel or its use undergoes a change substantially affecting its tonnage. The phrase "to the extent necessary" was included to indicate that a complete remeasurement of the vessel may not be necessary if, for example, an error was made in one portion of the vessel's measurement and only that portion needs to be remeasured.

Section 14304(b) provides that except as provided in section 14504, a vessel that has been measured does not have to be remeasured to obtain another document or endorsement under chapter 121 of this title.

§14305. Optional regulatory measurement

(a) On request of the owner of a vessel measured under this chapter that is of United States registry or nationality, or a vessel operated under the authority of the United States, the Secretary

also shall measure the vessel under chapter 145 of this title. The tonnages determined under that chapter shall be used in applying—

(1) parts A, B, C, E, F, and G of this subtitle and section 12116 of this title;

(2) section 3(d)(3) of the Longshore and Harbor Workers' Compensation Act (33 U.S.C. 903(d)(3));

(3) section 4 of the Bridge to Bridge Radiotelephone Act (33 U.S.C. 1203(a));

(4) section 4(a)(3) [1] of the Ports and Waterways Safety Act (33 U.S.C. 1223(a)(3));

(5) section 30524 of this title;

(6) sections 12118 and 12132 of this title;

(7) section 12139(b) of this title;

(8) sections 351, 352, 355, and 356 of the Ship Radio Act (47 U.S.C. 351, 352, 354, and 354a);

(9) section 403 of the Commercial Fishing Industry Vessel Act (46 U.S.C. 3302 note);

(10) the Officers' Competency Certificates Convention, 1936, and section 8304 of this title;

(11) the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea as provided by IMCO Resolution A.494 (XII) of November 19, 1981;

(12) the International Convention on Standards of Training, Certification, and Watchkeeping for Seafarers, 1978, as provided by IMO Resolution A.540 (XIII) of November 17, 1983;

(13) the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, as modified by the Protocol of 1978 Relating to the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, as provided by IMO Resolution A.541 (XIII) of November 17, 1983;

(14) provisions of law establishing the threshold tonnage levels at which evidence of financial responsibility must be demonstrated; or

(15) unless otherwise provided by law, any other law of the United States in effect before July 19, 1994, and not listed by the Secretary under section 14302(c) of this title.

(b) As long as the owner of a vessel has a request in effect under subsection (a) of this section, the tonnages determined under that request shall be used in applying the other provisions of law described in subsection (a) to that vessel.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1921; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(26), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1704; Pub. L. 111–281, title III, §303(f), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2925; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8503(a)(2), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4747; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11503(f)(1), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4131.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14305

Source: International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships.

Section 14305 requires that the Secretary measure a vessel under chapter 145 (Regulatory Measurement) of this title (in addition to measuring it under the Convention) at the request of the owner. For vessels that have obtained a regulatory tonnage measurement under this section, the Secretary is required to use the regulatory tonnage measurement to determine the application of those laws listed in section 14305(a) and those not listed by the Secretary by regulation, as provided in section 14302(c). It is the intent of the Committee to list in section 14305(a) certain U.S. tonnage-based laws that would impose increased regulatory burdens on industry if the Convention measurement were used for applicability determinations.

Clause (1) of section 14305(a) includes the following parts of subtitle II of title 46, U.S.C.:

Part A: General provisions (including definitions.)

Part B: Inspection and Regulation of Vessels.

Part C: Load Lines, which is enacted as part of this legislation. Although most load line requirements are based on vessel length, and not tonnage, a few requirements are based on tonnage. (It is only the tonnage based requirements to which this provision applies.)

Part E: Licenses, Certificates, and Merchant Mariners' Documents.

Part F: Manning of Vessels.

Part G: Merchant Seamen Protection and Relief.

Part H: Sections 12106(c) and 12108(c) only—Identification of Vessels.

The other U.S. laws listed in clause (2) through (10) of this section are self-explanatory. Clause (10) refers to domestic law as well as the Officers' Competency Certificates Convention, 1936.

In addition, three other international conventions are listed in clauses (11) through (13): (1) the Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, (2) the Convention on the Standards of Training, Certification, and Watchkeeping for Seafarers, and (3) the Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships. The International Maritime Organization has established interim schemes which address the use of the Convention tonnage measurement system as a basis for the applicability of these three conventions. The applicable sections of those schemes are the following:

The International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea: IMCO Resolution A.494 (XII) of November 19, 1981 provides "that at the request of a shipowner, the Administration may allow a ship required to be measured under the provisions of the International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships, 1969, to use the gross tonnage measured under the national tonnage rules which are in effect prior to the coming into force of the 1969 Tonnage Convention, for the purpose of application of the provisions of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, such tonnage, however, shall not be shown on the 1969 Tonnage Certificate." The resolution further provides that "the interim scheme shall not apply to ships the keels of which are laid after 31 December 1985 with the following exceptions:

> "(a) In respect of the requirements of Regulation 3 of Chapter IV of the 1974 SOLAS Convention for ships the keels of which are laid before 18 July 1994, the Administration may continue to apply the interim scheme, in which case the above-mentioned entry should be made in the Radio-telephony Certificate only; and
>
> "(b) In respect of the regulations for cargo ships of less than 1,600 tons gross tonnage (as measured under national systems), the keels of which are laid after 31 December 1985, the Administration may continue to apply the interim scheme until 18 July 1984."

The International Convention on Standards of Training, Certification, and Watchkeeping for Seafarers, 1978: IMO Resolution A.540 (XIII) of November 17, 1983, provides "that the revised interim scheme for tonnage measurement for certain ships adopted by resolution A.494 (XII), [described above] should also be applicable in respect of the provision of the International Convention, and Watchkeeping for Seafarers, 1978."

The International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, as modified by the Protocol of 1978 Relating to the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973: IMO Resolution A.541 (XIII) of November 17, 1983, provides that:

> At the request of a shipowner, the Administration may allow a ship of less than 400 tons gross tonnage (measured under the previous national tonnage rules) the keel of which is laid on or before 31 December 1985 and which is required to be measured under the provisions of the International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships, 1969, to use the gross tonnage measured under the national tonnage rules which were in effect prior to the coming into force of the 1969 Tonnage Convention, for the purpose of application of the provisions of MARPOL 73/78. Such tonnage, however, shall not be shown on the 1969 Tonnage Certificate.

It further provides that "the interim scheme shall not apply to ships the keels of which are laid after 31 December 1985, except that in respect of regulations for ships of less than 400 tons gross tonnage (as measured under previous national rules), the keels of which are laid after 31 December 1985, the Administration may continue to apply the interim scheme until 18 July 1994."

Clause (14) provides that the regulatory measurement system may be used to determine which vessels must demonstrate evidence of financial responsibility (when such a demonstration is required by law). If it is determined that a vessel must show evidence of financial responsibility, the limits of financial responsibility are determined using the vessel's Convention measurement.

Clause (15) provides that the regulatory measurement system may be used for the application of laws not identified by the Secretary under section 14302(c).

Section 14305(b) provides that if a vessel is measured under the regulatory tonnage measurement system for the application of one law listed in subsection (a), it must be measured under that system for the application of all laws listed in subsection (a).

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 4 of the Bridge to Bridge Radiotelephone Act (33 U.S.C. 1203(a)), referred to in subsec. (a)(3), probably means section 4(a) of the Vessel Bridge-to-Bridge Radiotelephone Act, which is classified to section 1203(a) of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

Section 4(a)(3) of the Ports and Waterways Safety Act (33 U.S.C. 1223(a)(3)), referred to in subsec. (a)(4), is section 4(a)(3) of Pub. L. 92–340, which was classified to section 1223(a)(3) of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §402(e), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4264. See

Transitional and Savings Provisions note preceding section 101 of this title and section 70001 of this title.

Sections 351, 352, 355, and 356 of the Ship Radio Act (47 U.S.C. 351, 352, 354, and 354a), referred to in subsec. (a)(8), probably means sections 351, 352, 355, and 356 of the Communications Act of 1934, June 19, 1934, ch. 652, 48 Stat. 1064, which are classified to sections 351, 352, 354, and 354a, respectively, of Title 47, Telecommunications.

The Officers' Competency Certificates Convention, 1936, referred to in subsec. (a)(10), is set out in 54 Stat. Pt. 2, p. 1683.

For provisions relating to International Conventions for the Safety of Life at Sea, referred to in subsec. (a)(11), to which the United States has been a party, see section 1602 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters, and notes thereunder.

For provisions relating to the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, as modified, referred to in subsec. (a)(13), see chapter 33 (§1901 et seq.) of Title 33.

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 117–263 substituted "section 30524" for "section 30506".

2021—Subsec. (a)(10). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "section 8304" for "sections 8303 and 8304".

2010—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–281 substituted "vessel measured under this chapter that is of United States registry or nationality, or a vessel operated under the authority of the United States," for "documented vessel measured under this chapter," in introductory provisions.

2006—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(26)(A), substituted "of this subtitle and section 12116" for "and sections 12106(c) and 12108(c)".

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(26)(B), substituted "section 30506 of this title" for "section 4283 of the Revised Statutes of the United States (46 App. U.S.C. 183)".

Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(26)(C), substituted "sections 12118 and 12132 of this title" for "sections 27 and 27A of the Act of June 5, 1920 (46 App. U.S.C. 883 and 883–1)".

Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(26)(D), substituted "section 12139(b) of this title" for "Act of July 14, 1956 (46 App. U.S.C. 883a)".

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§14306. Reciprocity for foreign vessels

(a) When the Secretary finds that the laws and regulations of a foreign country related to measurement of vessels are similar to those of this chapter and the regulations prescribed under this chapter, or when a foreign country is a party to the Convention, the Secretary shall accept the measurement and certificate of a vessel of that foreign country as complying with this chapter and the regulations prescribed under this chapter.

(b) Subsection (a) of this section does not apply to a vessel of a foreign country that does not recognize measurements under this chapter. The Secretary may apply measurement standards the Secretary considers appropriate to the vessel, subject to applicable international agreements to which the United States Government is a party.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1922.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14306

Source: International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships. Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 81.

Section 14306(a) requires that the Secretary accept the measurement and certificate of a vessel of a foreign country as evidence of compliance with this chapter when the Secretary finds that the laws and regulations of that foreign country that are related to measurement are similar to those of this chapter, or that that country is a party to the Convention.

Section 14306(b) provides that the Secretary does not have to accept the measurement and certificate of a vessel of a country that does not recognize United States measurements. It also authorizes the Secretary to apply appropriate measurement standards to such foreign vessels, subject to international agreements to which the United States is a party.

§14307. Inspection of foreign vessels

(a) The Secretary may inspect a vessel of a foreign country to verify that—

(1) the vessel has an International Tonnage Certificate (1969) and the main characteristics of the vessel correspond to the information in the certificate; or

(2) if the vessel is from a country not a party to the Convention, the vessel has been measured under laws and regulations similar to those of this chapter and the regulations prescribed under this chapter.

(b) For a vessel of a country that is a party to the Convention, if the inspection reveals that the vessel does not have an International Tonnage Certificate (1969) or that the main characteristics of the vessel differ from those stated on the certificate or other records in a way that increases the gross or net tonnage of the vessel, the Secretary promptly shall inform the country whose flag the vessel is flying.

(c) For a vessel of a country not a party to the Convention—

(1) if the vessel has been measured under laws and regulations that the Secretary finds are similar to those of this chapter and the regulations prescribed under this chapter, the vessel shall be deemed to have been issued an International Tonnage Certificate (1969); and

(2) if the vessel has not been measured as described in clause (1) of this subsection, the Secretary may measure the vessel.

(d) An inspection under this section shall be conducted in a way that does not delay a vessel of a country that is a party to the Convention.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1922.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14307

Source: International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships.

Section 14307(a) authorizes the Secretary to inspect a vessel of a foreign country to verify that the vessel has an International Tonnage Certificate and that the main characteristics of the vessel correspond to the information in the certificate. Section 14307(a) also authorizes the Secretary to inspect a vessel from a foreign country that is not a party to the Convention in order to verify that the vessel has been measured under laws and regulations similar to those of this chapter.

Section 14307(b) requires that if the Secretary inspects a vessel of a country that is a party to the Convention and finds that the vessel does not have an International Tonnage Certificate or that the main characteristics of the vessel differ from those stated on the certificate or other records in a way that increases the gross or net tonnage of the vessel, the Secretary must inform the country whose flag the vessel is flying.

Section 14307(c) provides that if the Secretary finds that a vessel of a country not a party to the Convention has been measured under laws and regulations similar to those of this chapter, that the vessel shall be deemed to have been issued an International Tonnage Certificate. It also provides that the Secretary may measure the vessel if the Secretary finds that the vessel has not been measured under laws and regulations similar to those of this chapter.

Section 14307(d) provides that an inspection under this section shall be conducted in a way that does not delay a vessel of a country that is a party to the Convention.

CHAPTER 145—REGULATORY MEASUREMENT

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL

Sec.

14501. Application.
14502. Measurement.
14503. Certificate of measurement.

14504. Remeasurement.

SUBCHAPTER II—FORMAL SYSTEMS

14511. Application.
14512. Standard tonnage measurement.
14513. Dual tonnage measurement.
14514. Reciprocity for foreign vessels.

SUBCHAPTER III—SIMPLIFIED SYSTEM

14521. Application.
14522. Measurement.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

This chapter provides for the measurement of vessels for the purpose of the application of domestic laws.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Pub. L. 111–281, title III, §303(j), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2926, added item 14514.

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

This subchapter contains the general provisions for implementing regulatory measurement systems.

§14501. Application

This chapter applies to the following:

(1) A vessel not measured under chapter 143 of this title if the application of an international agreement or other law of the United States to the vessel depends on the vessel's tonnage.

(2) A vessel measured under chapter 143 of this title if the owner requests that the vessel also be measured under this chapter as provided in section 14305 of this title.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1923; Pub. L. 111–281, title III, §303(g), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2925.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14501

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 71.

Section 14501 delineates the vessels that must be measured under this chapter, i.e. under the regulatory tonnage measurement system. Section 14501(1) states that a vessel must be measured under this chapter if the vessel has not been measured under the International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships, and if the vessel is to be documented as a vessel of the United States under chapter 121 of this subtitle, or if the application of a United States law depends on the vessels tonnage. Section 14501(2) states that a vessel must be measured under the regulatory measurement system if the owner requests.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Par. (1). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(g)(1), amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (1) read as follows: "a vessel not measured under chapter 143 of this title if—

"(A) the vessel is to be documented under chapter 121 of this title; or

"(B) the application of a law of the United States to the vessel depends on the vessel's tonnage."

Par. (2). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(g)(2), substituted "A vessel" for "a vessel".

§14502. Measurement

The Secretary shall measure a vessel to which this chapter applies in the way provided by this chapter.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1923.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14502

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 71, 77, 83.

Section 14502 requires the Secretary to measure a vessel to which this chapter applies as provided by this chapter.

§14503. Certificate of measurement

(a) The Secretary shall prescribe the certificate to be issued as evidence of a vessel's measurement under this chapter.

(b) The certificate shall be maintained as required by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1923; Pub. L. 111–281, title III, §303(e)(2), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2925.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14503

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 72.

Section 14503 requires the Secretary to issue a certificate, in a manner that is to be prescribed by the Secretary, as evidence of a vessel's regulatory measurement.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Pub. L. 111–281 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

§14504. Remeasurement

(a) To the extent necessary, the Secretary shall remeasure a vessel to which this chapter applies if—

(1) the Secretary or the owner alleges an error in its measurement;

(2) the vessel or the use of its space is changed in a way that substantially affects its tonnage;

(3) after being measured under subchapter III of this chapter, the vessel becomes subject to subchapter II of this chapter because the vessel or its use is changed; or

(4) although not required to be measured under subchapter II of this chapter, the vessel was measured under subchapter II and the owner requests that the vessel be measured under subchapter III of this chapter.

(b) Except as provided in this section and chapter 143 of this title, a vessel that has been measured does not have to be remeasured to obtain another document or endorsement under chapter 121 of this title.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1923.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14504

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 71.

Section 14504(a) provides that the Secretary shall remeasure a vessel that has been measured under the

regulatory measurement system if either the Secretary or the owner alleges an error in its measurement; if the vessel, or its use, undergoes a substantial change affecting its tonnage; if the vessel loses its eligibility for measurement under the simplified system because of a change in the vessel or its use; or if the vessel owner requests that the vessel be measured under the simplified system after having been measured under the standard regulatory measurement system. Section 14504(b) provides that a vessel that has been measured does not have to be remeasured to obtain another document or endorsement under chapter 121—"Documentation of Vessels"—except as provided above or in chapter 143 of this subtitle.

SUBCHAPTER II—FORMAL SYSTEMS

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

This subchapter provides for the standard regulatory measurement of vessels for vessels that do not qualify for the simplified measurement systems.

§14511. Application

This subchapter applies to a vessel described in section 14501 of this title if—

(1) the owner requests; or

(2) the vessel is—

(A) self-propelled;

(B) at least 24 meters (79 feet) overall in length; and

(C) not operated only for pleasure.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1924.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14511

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 71.

Section 14511 lists the types of vessels that are to be measured under the standard regulatory measurement system. They are vessels for which the owner requests a standard measurement or vessels which are self-propelled, at least 79 feet in length, and not operated only for pleasure.

§14512. Standard tonnage measurement

(a) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations for measuring the gross and net tonnages of a vessel under this subchapter. The regulations shall provide for tonnages comparable to the tonnages that could have been assigned under sections 4151 and 4153 of the Revised Statutes of the United States, as sections 4151 and 4153 existed immediately before the enactment of this section.

(b) On application of the owner or master of a vessel of the United States used in foreign trade, the Secretary may attach an appendix to the vessel's register stating the measurement of spaces that may be deducted from gross tonnage under laws and regulations of other countries but not under those of the United States.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1924.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14512

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 75, 77.

Section 14512(a) requires the Secretary to prescribe regulations for regulatory measurement systems. It further provides that the regulations must allow for the determination of tonnages similar to those that could have been found under the existing law (46 App. U.S.C. 75 & 77).

Section 14512(b) authorizes the Secretary to attach an appendix to a vessel's register stating the measurement of spaces that may be deducted from the gross tonnage under laws and regulations of other countries but not under the laws of the United States.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 4151 and 4153 of the Revised Statutes, referred to in subsec. (a), were classified to sections 75 and 77, respectively, of the former Appendix to this title and were repealed by Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5104(b), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1928.

§14513. Dual tonnage measurement

(a) On application by the owner and approval by the Secretary, the tonnage of spaces prescribed by the Secretary may be excluded in measuring under this section the gross tonnage of a vessel measured under section 14512 of this title. The spaces prescribed by the Secretary shall be comparable to the spaces that could have been excluded under section 2 of the Act of September 29, 1965 (Public Law 89–219, 79 Stat. 891), as section 2 existed immediately before the enactment of this section.

(b) The Secretary shall prescribe the design, location, and dimensions of the tonnage mark to be placed on a vessel measured under this section.

(c)(1) If a vessel is assigned two sets of gross and net tonnages under this section, each certificate stating the vessel's tonnages shall state the gross and net tonnages when the vessel's tonnage mark is submerged and when it is not submerged.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (1) of this subsection, a certificate stating a vessel's tonnages may state only one set of gross and net tonnages as assigned under this section.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1924; Pub. L. 111–281, title III, §303(h), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2925.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14513

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 83 to 83g.

Section 14513 gives discretionary authority to the Secretary to exclude certain spaces in measuring the regulatory tonnage of a vessel, and requires the Secretary to prescribe the design, location and dimensions of the tonnage mark to be placed on the vessel. Section 14513 further provides that if spaces are excluded by the Secretary, they shall be comparable to those the Secretary could have excluded in existing law (46 App. U.S.C. 83a). Section 14513(c) provides that if a vessel's tonnage mark is below the uppermost part of the load line mark, each certificate that states the vessel's tonnages must state the gross and net tonnages when the mark is submerged and when it is not submerged.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2 of the Act of September 29, 1965, referred to in subsec. (a), was classified to section 83a of the former Appendix to this title and was repealed by Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5104(b), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1928.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(h)(1), substituted "vessel is assigned two sets of gross and net tonnages under this section," for "vessel's tonnage mark is below the uppermost part of the load line marks," and inserted "vessel's tonnage" before "mark is submerged".

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 111–281, §303(h)(2), substituted "as assigned under this section." for period at end.

§14514. Reciprocity for foreign vessels

For a foreign vessel not measured under chapter 143, if the Secretary finds that the laws and

regulations of a foreign country related to measurement of vessels are substantially similar to those of this chapter and the regulations prescribed under this chapter, the Secretary may accept the measurement and certificate of a vessel of that foreign country as complying with this chapter and the regulations prescribed under this chapter.

(Added Pub. L. 111–281, title III, §303(i), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2925.)

SUBCHAPTER III—SIMPLIFIED SYSTEM

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

This subchapter provides for a simplified regulatory measurement of vessels that are either non-self-propelled, under 79 in length, or operated only for pleasure.

§14521. Application

This subchapter applies to a vessel described in section 14501 of this title that is not measured under subchapter II of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1925.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14521

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 71.

Section 14521 provides that vessels that are to be measured under the regulatory measurement system in this chapter, but are not measured under the standard regulatory measurement system in subchapter II, shall be measured under the simplified measurement system.

§14522. Measurement

(a) In this section, "length" means the horizontal distance of the hull between the foremost part of the stem and the aftermost part of the stern, excluding fittings and attachments.

(b)(1) The Secretary shall assign gross and net tonnages to a vessel based on its length, breadth, depth, other dimensions, and appropriate coefficients.

(2) The Secretary shall prescribe the way dimensions (except length) are measured and which coefficients are appropriate.

(c) The resulting gross tonnages, taken as a group, reasonably shall reflect the relative internal volumes of the vessels measured under this subchapter. The resulting net tonnages shall be in approximately the same ratios to corresponding gross tonnages as are the net and gross tonnages of comparable vessels measured under subchapter II of this chapter.

(d) Under regulations prescribed by the Secretary, the Secretary may determine the gross and net tonnages of a vessel representative of a designated class, model, or type, and then assign those gross and net tonnages to other vessels of the same class, model, or type.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1925.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14522

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 71.

Section 14522(a) defines the term "length" as it is used in the simplified measurement system.

Section 14522(b) requires the Secretary to assign gross and net tonnages under the simplified system, based on a vessel's length, breadth, depth, other dimensions and appropriate coefficients, as the Secretary deems appropriate.

Section 14522(c) provides that the gross tonnages as measured under this section shall reflect the relative internal volumes of vessels. It provides further that the net tonnages measured under this section shall be in

approximately the same ratio to corresponding gross tonnages as are the net and gross tonnages of comparable vessels measured under the standard regulatory measurement system.

CHAPTER 147—PENALTIES

Sec.
14701. General violation.
14702. False statements.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

This chapter provides for penalties for violations of Part J—Measurement of Vessels.

§14701. General violation

The owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, and individual in charge of a vessel violating this part or a regulation prescribed under this part are each liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $20,000. Each day of a continuing violation is a separate violation. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1925.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14701

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 83j.

Section 14701 provides that the owner, charterer, managing operator, agent, master, and individual in charge of a vessel violating Part J—Measurement of Vessels—are each liable to the U.S. Government for a civil penalty of not more than $20,000. It also provides that the vessel is liable in rem for the penalty and that each day of a continuing violation is a separate violation.

§14702. False statements

A person knowingly making a false statement or representation in a matter in which a statement or representation is required by this part or a regulation prescribed under this part is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $20,000 for each false statement or representation. The vessel also is liable in rem for the penalty.

(Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5101(3), Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1925.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

REVISED SECTION 14702

Source: Section (U.S. Code) 46 App. U.S.C. 83i.

Section 14702 provides that a person knowingly making a false statement or representation in a matter in which a statement or representation is required by this part or a regulation prescribed under this part is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $20,000 for each false statement or representation. It further provides that the vessel is liable in rem for the penalty. This penalty is increased from $1,000 in existing law and conforms with the level of similar penalties throughout the subtitle.

PART K—NATIONAL MARITIME TRANSPORTATION ADVISORY COMMITTEES

CHAPTER 151—NATIONAL MARITIME TRANSPORTATION ADVISORY COMMITTEES

Sec.
15101. National Chemical Transportation Safety Advisory Committee.
15102. National Commercial Fishing Safety Advisory Committee.
15103. National Merchant Marine Personnel Advisory Committee.
15104. National Merchant Mariner Medical Advisory Committee.
15105. National Boating Safety Advisory Committee.
15106. National Offshore Safety Advisory Committee.
15107. National Navigation Safety Advisory Committee.
15108. National Towing Safety Advisory Committee.
15109. Administration.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TREATMENT OF EXISTING COUNCILS AND COMMITTEES

Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(d), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4290, provided that: "Notwithstanding any other provision of law—

"(1) an advisory council or committee substantially similar to an advisory committee established under chapter 151 of title 46, United States Code, as added by this Act, and that was in force or in effect on the day before the date of enactment of this section [Dec. 4, 2018], including a council or committee the authority for which was repealed under subsection (c) [repealing sections 4508, 7115, 8108, and 13110 of this title and sections 1231a and 2073 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters], may remain in force or in effect for a period of 2 years from the date of enactment of this section, including that the charter, membership, and other aspects of the council or committee may remain in force or in effect; and

"(2) during the 2-year period referenced in paragraph (1)—

"(A) requirements relating to the applicable advisory committee established under chapter 151 of title 46, United States Code, shall be treated as satisfied by the substantially similar advisory council or committee; and

"(B) the enactment of this section [see Tables for classification], including the amendments made in this section, shall not be the basis—

"(i) to deem, find, or declare such council or committee, including the charter, membership, and other aspects thereof, void, not in force, or not in effect;

"(ii) to suspend the activities of such council or committee; or

"(iii) to bar the members of such council or committee from meeting."

§15101. National Chemical Transportation Safety Advisory Committee

(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—There is established a National Chemical Transportation Safety Advisory Committee (in this section referred to as the "Committee").

(b) FUNCTION.—The Committee shall advise the Secretary on matters relating to the safe and secure marine transportation of hazardous materials.

(c) MEMBERSHIP.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Committee shall consist of not more than 25 members appointed by the Secretary in accordance with this section and section 15109 of this chapter.

(2) EXPERTISE.—Each member of the Committee shall have particular expertise, knowledge, and experience in matters relating to the function of the Committee.

(3) REPRESENTATION.—Each member of the Committee shall represent 1 of the following:

(A) Chemical manufacturing entities.

(B) Entities related to marine handling or transportation of chemicals.

(C) Vessel design and construction entities.

(D) Marine safety or security entities.

(E) Marine environmental protection entities.

(4) DISTRIBUTION.—The Secretary shall, based on the needs of the Coast Guard, determine the number of members of the Committee who represent each entity specified in paragraph (3). Neither this paragraph nor any other provision of law shall be construed to require an equal distribution of members representing each entity specified in paragraph (3).

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4280.)

§15102. National Commercial Fishing Safety Advisory Committee

(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—There is established a National Commercial Fishing Safety Advisory Committee (in this section referred to as the "Committee").

(b) FUNCTION.—The Committee shall—

(1) advise and provide recommendations in writing to the Secretary on matters relating to the safe operation of vessels to which chapter 45 of this title applies, including the matters of—

(A) navigation safety;

(B) safety equipment and procedures;

(C) marine insurance;

(D) vessel design, construction, maintenance, and operation; and

(E) personnel qualifications and training;

(2) review regulations proposed under chapter 45 of this title (during preparation of the regulations); and

(3) review marine casualties and investigations of vessels covered by chapter 45 of this title and make recommendations to the Secretary to improve safety and reduce vessel casualties.

(c) MEMBERSHIP.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Committee shall consist of 18 members appointed by the Secretary in accordance with this section and section 15109 of this chapter.

(2) EXPERTISE.—Each member of the Committee shall have particular expertise, knowledge, and experience in matters relating to the function of the Committee.

(3) REPRESENTATION.—Members of the Committee shall be appointed as follows:

(A) 10 members shall represent the commercial fishing industry and—

(i) as a group, shall together reflect a regional and representational balance; and

(ii) as individuals, shall each have experience—

(I) in the operation of vessels to which chapter 45 of this title applies; or

(II) as a crew member or processing line worker on a fish processing vessel.

(B) 1 member shall represent naval architects and marine engineers.

(C) 1 member shall represent manufacturers of equipment for vessels to which chapter 45 of this title applies.

(D) 1 member shall represent education and training professionals related to fishing vessel, fish processing vessel, and fish tender vessel safety and personnel qualifications.

(E) 1 member shall represent underwriters that insure vessels to which chapter 45 of this title applies.

(F) 1 member shall represent owners of vessels to which chapter 45 of this title applies.

(G) 3 members shall represent the general public and, to the extent possible, shall include—

(i) an independent expert or consultant in maritime safety;

(ii) a marine surveyor who provides services to vessels to which chapter 45 of this title applies; and

(iii) a person familiar with issues affecting fishing communities and the families of fishermen.

(d) QUORUM.—A quorum of 10 members is required to send any written recommendations from the Committee to the Secretary.

(e) SAVINGS CLAUSE.—Nothing in this section shall preclude the Secretary from taking emergency action to ensure safety and preservation of life at sea.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4281; amended Pub. L. 116–283,

div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8335(a)(1), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4706.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 116–283, §8335(a)(1)(A)(i)(I), inserted "and provide recommendations in writing to" after "advise" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 116–283, §8335(a)(1)(A)(i)(II), (ii), added par. (3).

Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 116–283, §8335(a)(1)(B), added subsecs. (d) and (e).

§15103. National Merchant Marine Personnel Advisory Committee

(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—There is established a National Merchant Marine Personnel Advisory Committee (in this section referred to as the "Committee").

(b) FUNCTION.—The Committee shall advise the Secretary on matters relating to personnel in the United States merchant marine, including the training, qualifications, certification, documentation, and fitness of mariners.

(c) MEMBERSHIP.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Committee shall consist of 19 members appointed by the Secretary in accordance with this section and section 15109 of this chapter.

(2) EXPERTISE.—Each member of the Committee shall have particular expertise, knowledge, and experience in matters relating to the function of the Committee.

(3) REPRESENTATION.—Members of the Committee shall be appointed as follows:

(A) 9 members shall represent mariners and, of the 9—

(i) each shall—

(I) be a citizen of the United States; and

(II) hold an active license or certificate issued under chapter 71 of this title or a merchant mariner document issued under chapter 73 of this title;

(ii) 3 shall be deck officers who represent merchant marine deck officers and, of the 3—

(I) 2 shall be licensed for oceans any gross tons;

(II) 1 shall be licensed for inland river route with a limited or unlimited tonnage;

(III) 2 shall have a master's license or a master of towing vessels license;

(IV) 1 shall have significant tanker experience; and

(V) to the extent practicable—

(aa) 1 shall represent labor; and

(bb) 1 shall represent management;

(iii) 3 shall be engineering officers who represent merchant marine engineering officers and, of the 3—

(I) 2 shall be licensed as chief engineer any horsepower;

(II) 1 shall be licensed as either a limited chief engineer or a designated duty engineer; and

(III) to the extent practicable—

(aa) 1 shall represent labor; and

(bb) 1 shall represent management;

(iv) 2 shall be unlicensed seamen who represent merchant marine unlicensed seaman and, of the 2—

(I) 1 shall represent able-bodied seamen; and

(II) 1 shall represent qualified members of the engine department; and

(v) 1 shall be a pilot who represents merchant marine pilots.

(B) 6 members shall represent marine educators and, of the 6—

(i) 3 shall be marine educators who represent maritime academies and, of the 3—

(I) 2 shall represent State maritime academies (and are jointly recommended by such academies); and

(II) 1 shall represent either State maritime academies or the United States Merchant Marine Academy; and

(ii) 3 shall be marine educators who represent other maritime training institutions and, of the 3, 1 shall represent the small vessel industry.

(C) 2 members shall represent shipping companies employed in ship operation management.

(D) 2 members shall represent the general public.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4282.)

§15104. National Merchant Mariner Medical Advisory Committee

(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—There is established a National Merchant Mariner Medical Advisory Committee (in this section referred to as the "Committee").

(b) FUNCTION.—The Committee shall advise the Secretary on matters relating to—

(1) medical certification determinations for the issuance of licenses, certification of registry, and merchant mariners' documents with respect to merchant mariners;

(2) medical standards and guidelines for the physical qualifications of operators of commercial vessels;

(3) medical examiner education; and

(4) medical research.

(c) MEMBERSHIP.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Committee shall consist of 14 members appointed by the Secretary in accordance with this section and section 15109 of this chapter.

(2) EXPERTISE.—Each member of the Committee shall have particular expertise, knowledge, and experience in matters relating to the function of the Committee.

(3) REPRESENTATION.—Members of the Committee shall be appointed as follows:

(A) 9 shall represent health-care professionals and have particular expertise, knowledge, and experience regarding the medical examinations of merchant mariners or occupational medicine.

(B) 5 shall represent professional mariners and have particular expertise, knowledge, and experience in occupational requirements for mariners.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4283.)

§15105. National Boating Safety Advisory Committee

(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—There is established a National Boating Safety Advisory Committee (in this section referred to as the "Committee").

(b) FUNCTION.—The Committee shall advise the Secretary on matters relating to national boating safety.

(c) MEMBERSHIP.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Committee shall consist of 21 members appointed by the Secretary in accordance with this section and section 15109 of this chapter.

(2) EXPERTISE.—Each member of the Committee shall have particular expertise, knowledge, and experience in matters relating to the function of the Committee.

(3) REPRESENTATION.—Members of the Committee shall be appointed as follows:

(A) 7 members shall represent State officials responsible for State boating safety programs.

(B) 7 members shall represent recreational vessel and associated equipment manufacturers.

(C) 7 members shall represent the general public or national recreational boating organizations and, of the 7, at least 5 shall represent national recreational boating organizations.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4283.)

§15106. National Offshore Safety Advisory Committee

(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—There is established a National Offshore Safety Advisory Committee (in this section referred to as the "Committee").

(b) FUNCTION.—The Committee shall advise the Secretary on matters relating to activities directly involved with, or in support of, the exploration of offshore mineral and energy resources, to the extent that such matters are within the jurisdiction of the Coast Guard.

(c) MEMBERSHIP.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Committee shall consist of 15 members appointed by the Secretary in accordance with this section and section 15109 of this chapter.

(2) EXPERTISE.—Each member of the Committee shall have particular expertise, knowledge, and experience in matters relating to the function of the Committee.

(3) REPRESENTATION.—Members of the Committee shall be appointed as follows:

(A) 2 members shall represent entities engaged in the production of petroleum.

(B) 2 members shall represent entities engaged in offshore drilling.

(C) 2 members shall represent entities engaged in the support, by offshore supply vessels or other vessels, of offshore operations.

(D) 1 member shall represent entities engaged in the construction of offshore facilities.

(E) 1 member shall represent entities providing diving services to the offshore industry.

(F) 1 member shall represent entities providing safety and training services to the offshore industry.

(G) 1 member shall represent entities providing subsea engineering, construction, or remotely operated vehicle support to the offshore industry.

(H) 2 members shall represent individuals employed in offshore operations and, of the 2, 1 shall have recent practical experience on a vessel or offshore unit involved in the offshore industry.

(I) 1 member shall represent national environmental entities and entities providing environmental protection, compliance, or response services to the offshore industry.

(J) 1 member shall represent entities engaged in offshore oil exploration and production on the Outer Continental Shelf adjacent to Alaska.

(K) 1 member shall represent the general public (but not a specific environmental group).

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4284; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8331(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4702.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (c)(3)(C). Pub. L. 116–283, §8331(a)(1), substituted "operations" for "mineral and oil operations, including geophysical services".

Subsec. (c)(3)(D). Pub. L. 116–283, §8331(a)(2), struck out "exploration and recovery" before "facilities."

Subsec. (c)(3)(E). Pub. L. 116–283, §8331(a)(3), substituted "providing diving services to the offshore industry" for "engaged in diving services related to offshore construction, inspection, and maintenance".

Subsec. (c)(3)(F). Pub. L. 116–283, §8331(a)(4), substituted "providing safety and training services to the offshore industry" for "engaged in safety and training services related to offshore exploration and construction".

Subsec. (c)(3)(G). Pub. L. 116–283, §8331(a)(5), substituted "providing subsea engineering, construction, or remotely operated vehicle support to the offshore industry" for "engaged in pipelaying services related to offshore construction".

Subsec. (c)(3)(H). Pub. L. 116–283, §8331(a)(6), struck out "mineral and energy" before "industry."

Subsec. (c)(3)(I). Pub. L. 116–283, §8331(a)(7), inserted "and entities providing environmental protection, compliance, or response services to the offshore industry" after "national environmental entities".

Subsec. (c)(3)(J). Pub. L. 116–283, §8331(a)(8), substituted "entities engaged in offshore oil exploration and production on the Outer Continental Shelf adjacent to Alaska" for "deepwater ports".

§15107. National Navigation Safety Advisory Committee

(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—There is established a National Navigation Safety Advisory Committee (in this section referred to as the "Committee").

(b) FUNCTION.—The Committee shall advise the Secretary on matters relating to maritime collisions, rammings, and groundings, Inland Rules of the Road, International Rules of the Road, navigation regulations and equipment, routing measures, marine information, and aids to navigation systems.

(c) MEMBERSHIP.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Committee shall consist of not more than 21 members appointed by the Secretary in accordance with this section and section 15109 of this chapter.

(2) EXPERTISE.—Each member of the Committee shall have particular expertise, knowledge, and experience in matters relating to the function of the Committee.

(3) REPRESENTATION.—Each member of the Committee shall represent 1 of the following:

(A) Commercial vessel owners or operators.

(B) Professional mariners.

(C) Recreational boaters.

(D) The recreational boating industry.

(E) State agencies responsible for vessel or port safety.

(F) The Maritime Law Association.

(4) DISTRIBUTION.—The Secretary shall, based on the needs of the Coast Guard, determine the number of members of the Committee who represent each entity specified in paragraph (3). Neither this paragraph nor any other provision of law shall be construed to require an equal distribution of members representing each entity specified in paragraph (3).

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4285.)

§15108. National Towing Safety Advisory Committee

(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—There is established a National Towing Safety Advisory Committee (in this section referred to as the "Committee").

(b) FUNCTION.—The Committee shall advise the Secretary on matters relating to shallow-draft inland navigation, coastal waterway navigation, and towing safety.

(c) MEMBERSHIP.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Committee shall consist of 18 members appointed by the Secretary in accordance with this section and section 15109 of this chapter.

(2) EXPERTISE.—Each member of the Committee shall have particular expertise, knowledge, and experience in matters relating to the function of the Committee.

(3) REPRESENTATION.—Members of the Committee shall be appointed as follows:

(A) 7 members shall represent the barge and towing industry, reflecting a regional geographic balance.

(B) 1 member shall represent the offshore mineral and oil supply vessel industry.

(C) 1 member shall represent masters and pilots of towing vessels who hold active licenses and have experience on the Western Rivers and the Gulf Intracoastal Waterway.

(D) 1 member shall represent masters of towing vessels in offshore service who hold active licenses.

(E) 1 member shall represent masters of active ship-docking or harbor towing vessels.

(F) 1 member shall represent licensed and unlicensed towing vessel engineers with formal training and experience.

(G) 2 members shall represent port districts, authorities, or terminal operators.

(H) 2 members shall represent shippers and, of the 2, 1 shall be engaged in the shipment of oil or hazardous materials by barge.

(I) 2 members shall represent the general public.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4285.)

§15109. Administration

(a) MEETINGS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in paragraph (2), each committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies shall, at least once each year, meet at the call of the Secretary or a majority of the members of the committee.

(2) MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS.—The committee established under section 15102 shall—

(A) meet in-person, not less frequently than twice each year, at the call of the Secretary of a majority of the members of the committee;

(B) hold additional meetings as necessary;

(C) post the minutes of each meeting of the committee on a publicly available website not later than 2 weeks after the date on which a meeting concludes; and

(D) provide reasonable public notice of any meeting of the committee, and publish such notice in the Federal Register and on a publicly available website.

(b) EMPLOYEE STATUS.—A member of a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies shall not be considered an employee of the Federal Government by reason of service on such committee, except for the purposes of the following:

(1) Chapter 81 of title 5.

(2) Chapter 171 of title 28 and any other Federal law relating to tort liability.

(c) COMPENSATION.—Notwithstanding subsection (b), a member of a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies, when actually engaged in the performance of the duties of such committee, may—

(1) receive compensation at a rate established by the Secretary, not to exceed the maximum daily rate payable under section 5376 of title 5; or

(2) if not compensated in accordance with paragraph (1)—

(A) be reimbursed for actual and reasonable expenses incurred in the performance of such duties; or

(B) be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized by section 5703 of title 5.

(d) ACCEPTANCE OF VOLUNTEER SERVICES.—A member of a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies may serve on such committee on a voluntary basis without pay without regard to section 1342 of title 31 or any other law.

(e) STATUS OF MEMBERS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in paragraph (2), with respect to a member of a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies whom the Secretary appoints to represent an entity or group—

(A) the member is authorized to represent the interests of the applicable entity or group; and

(B) requirements under Federal law that would interfere with such representation and that apply to a special Government employee (as defined in section 202(a) of title 18), including requirements relating to employee conduct, political activities, ethics, conflicts of interest, and

corruption, do not apply to the member.

(2) EXCEPTION.—Notwithstanding subsection (b), a member of a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies shall be treated as a special Government employee for purposes of the committee service of the member if—

(A) the Secretary appointed the member to represent the general public; or

(B) the member, without regard to service on the committee, is a special Government employee.

(f) SERVICE ON COMMITTEE.—

(1) SOLICITATION OF NOMINATIONS.—Before appointing an individual as a member of a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies, the Secretary shall publish, in the Federal Register, a timely notice soliciting nominations for membership on such committee.

(2) APPOINTMENTS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—After considering nominations received pursuant to a notice published under paragraph (1), the Secretary may, as necessary, appoint a member to the applicable committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies.

(B) PROHIBITION.—The Secretary shall not seek, consider, or otherwise use information concerning the political affiliation of a nominee in making an appointment to any committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies.

(3) SERVICE AT PLEASURE OF THE SECRETARY.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Each member of a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies shall serve at the pleasure of the Secretary.

(B) EXCEPTION.—Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), a member of the committee established under section 15102 may only be removed prior to the end of the term of that member for just cause.

(4) SECURITY BACKGROUND EXAMINATIONS.—The Secretary may require an individual to have passed an appropriate security background examination before appointment to a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies.

(5) PROHIBITION.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subparagraph (B), a Federal employee may not be appointed as a member of a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies.

(B) SPECIAL RULE FOR NATIONAL MERCHANT MARINE PERSONNEL ADVISORY COMMITTEE.—The Secretary may appoint a Federal employee to serve as a member of the National Merchant Marine Personnel Advisory Committee to represent the interests of the United States Merchant Marine Academy and, notwithstanding paragraphs (1) and (2), may do so without soliciting, receiving, or considering nominations for such appointment.

(6) TERMS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The term of each member of a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies shall expire on December 31 of the third full year after the effective date of the appointment.

(B) CONTINUED SERVICE AFTER TERM.—When the term of a member of a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies ends, the member, for a period not to exceed 1 year, may continue to serve as a member until a successor is appointed.

(7) VACANCIES.—A vacancy on a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies shall be filled in the same manner as the original appointment.

(8) SPECIAL RULE FOR REAPPOINTMENTS.—

(A) REAPPOINTMENT.—Notwithstanding paragraphs (1) and (2), the Secretary may reappoint a member of a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies for any term, other than the first term of the member, without soliciting, receiving, or considering nominations for such appointment.

(B) LIMITATION.—With respect to the committee established under section 15102, members may serve not more than 3 terms.

(g) STAFF SERVICES.—The Secretary shall furnish to each committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies any staff and services considered by the Secretary to be necessary for the conduct of the committee's functions.

(h) CHAIRMAN; VICE CHAIRMAN.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Each committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies shall elect a Chairman and Vice Chairman from among the committee's members.

(2) VICE CHAIRMAN ACTING AS CHAIRMAN.—The Vice Chairman shall act as Chairman in the absence or incapacity of, or in the event of a vacancy in the office of, the Chairman.

(i) SUBCOMMITTEES AND WORKING GROUPS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Chairman of a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies may establish and disestablish subcommittees and working groups for any purpose consistent with the function of the committee.

(2) PARTICIPANTS.—Subject to conditions imposed by the Chairman, members of a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies and additional individuals drawn from entities or groups designated by this chapter to be represented on the committee or the general public may be assigned to subcommittees and working groups established under paragraph (1).

(3) CHAIR.—Only committee members may chair subcommittees and working groups established under paragraph (1).

(j) CONSULTATION, ADVICE, REPORTS, AND RECOMMENDATIONS.—

(1) CONSULTATION.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Before taking any significant action, the Secretary shall consult with, and consider the information, advice, and recommendations of, a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies if the function of the committee is to advise the Secretary on matters related to the significant action.

(B) INCLUSION.—For purposes of this paragraph, regulations proposed under chapter 45 of this title are significant actions.

(2) ADVICE, REPORTS, AND RECOMMENDATIONS.—Each committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies shall submit, in writing, to the Secretary its advice, reports, and recommendations, in a form and at a frequency determined appropriate by the committee.

(3) EXPLANATION OF ACTIONS TAKEN.—Not later than 60 days after the date on which the Secretary receives recommendations from a committee under paragraph (2), the Secretary shall—

(A) publish the recommendations on a website accessible at no charge to the public;

(B) if the recommendations are from the committee established under section 15102, establish a mechanism for the submission of public comments on the recommendations;

(C) respond, in writing, to the committee regarding the recommendations, including by providing an explanation of actions taken regarding the recommendations; and

(D) make all responses required by subparagraph (C) which are related to recommendations made by the committee established under section 15102 available to the public not later than 30 days after the date of response.

(4) SUBMISSION TO CONGRESS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate the advice, reports, and recommendations received from committees under paragraph (2).

(B) ADDITIONAL SUBMISSION.—With respect to a committee established under section 70112 and to which this section applies, the Secretary shall submit the advice, reports, and recommendations received from the committee under paragraph (2) to the Committee on Homeland Security of the House of Representatives in addition to the committees specified in subparagraph (A).

(k) OBSERVERS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Any Federal agency with matters under such agency's administrative jurisdiction related to the function of a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies may designate a representative to—

(A) attend any meeting of such committee; and

(B) participate as an observer at meetings of such committee that relate to such a matter.

(2) NATIONAL COMMERCIAL FISHING SAFETY ADVISORY COMMITTEE.—With respect to the committee established under section 15102, the Commandant of the Coast Guard shall designate a representative under paragraph (1).

(l) TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall provide technical assistance to the Committee if requested by the Chairman.

(2) COMMITTEE CONSULTATION.—With respect to the committee established under section 15102, the Chairman of the committee shall seek expertise from the fishing industry, marine safety experts, the shipbuilding industry, and others as the committee determines appropriate.

(m) TERMINATION.—Each committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies shall terminate on September 30, 2029.

(n) SAVINGS CLAUSE.—Nothing in this section shall preclude the Secretary from taking emergency action to ensure safety and preservation of life at sea.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §601(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4286; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §§8331(b), 8335(a)(2), title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8505(b)(14), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4703, 4707, 4752; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3535(e), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2315.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 118–159, §3535(e)(1), substituted "15102" for "15102," in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (k)(1). Pub. L. 118–159, §3535(e)(2), inserted "or to which this chapter applies" after "under this chapter" in introductory provisions.

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, §8331(b), inserted "or to which this chapter applies" after "committee established under this chapter" wherever appearing. The phrase "committee established under this chapter" in subsec. (k) was added subsequent to this amendment, and therefore the inserted phrase does not appear there. See subsec. (k) Amendment note below.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–283, §8335(a)(2)(A), designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted heading, substituted "Except as provided in paragraph (2), each" for "Each", and added par. (2).

Subsec. (f)(8). Pub. L. 116–283, §8335(a)(2)(B), designated existing provisions as subpar. (A), inserted

heading, and added subpar. (B).

Subsec. (i)(2). Pub. L. 116–283, §8505(b)(14), substituted "additional individuals" for "additional persons".

Subsec. (j)(3)(D). Pub. L. 116–283, §8335(a)(2)(C), added subpar. (D).

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 116–283, §8335(a)(2)(D), amended subsec. (k) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Any Federal agency with matters under such agency's administrative jurisdiction related to the function of a committee established under this chapter or to which this chapter applies may designate a representative to—

"(1) attend any meeting of such committee; and

"(2) participate as an observer at meetings of such committee that relate to such a matter."

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 116–283, §8335(a)(2)(G), added subsec. (l). Former subsec. (l) redesignated (m).

Pub. L. 116–283, §8335(a)(2)(E), substituted "2029" for "2027".

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 116–283, §8335(a)(2)(F), redesignated subsec. (l) as (m).

Subsec. (n). Pub. L. 116–283, §8335(a)(2)(H), added subsec. (n).

Subtitle III—Maritime Liability

Chapter		Sec.
301.	**General Liability Provisions**	**30101**
303.	**Death on the High Seas**	**30301**
305.	**Exoneration and Limitation of Liability**	**30501**
307.	**Liability of Water Carriers**	**30701**
309.	**Suits in Admiralty Against the United States**	**30901**
311.	**Suits Involving Public Vessels**	**31101**
313.	**Commercial Instruments and Maritime Liens**	**31301**

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–304, §6(a), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1509, amended subtitle analysis generally, substituting "General Liability Provisions" for "General" in item for chapter 301, striking out "[Chapters 303–311—Reserved]" after item for chapter 301, adding items for chapters 303, 305, 307, 309, and 311, and striking out "[Chapter 315—Reserved]" after item for chapter 313.

CHAPTER 301—GENERAL LIABILITY PROVISIONS

Sec.

30101. Extension of jurisdiction to cases of damage or injury on land.

30102. Liability to passengers.

30103. Liability of master, mate, engineer, and pilot.

30104. Personal injury to or death of seamen.

30105. Restriction on recovery by non-citizens and non-resident aliens for incidents in waters of other countries.

30106. Time limit on bringing maritime action for personal injury or death.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior chapter 301, consisting of section 30101, provided definitions for purposes of this subtitle, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 109–304, §6(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1509.

§30101. Extension of jurisdiction to cases of damage or injury on land

(a) IN GENERAL.—The admiralty and maritime jurisdiction of the United States extends to and includes cases of injury or damage, to person or property, caused by a vessel on navigable waters, even though the injury or damage is done or consummated on land.

(b) PROCEDURE.—A civil action in a case under subsection (a) may be brought in rem or in

personam according to the principles of law and the rules of practice applicable in cases where the injury or damage has been done and consummated on navigable waters.

(c) ACTIONS AGAINST UNITED STATES.—

(1) EXCLUSIVE REMEDY.—In a civil action against the United States for injury or damage done or consummated on land by a vessel on navigable waters, chapter 309 or 311 of this title, as appropriate, provides the exclusive remedy.

(2) ADMINISTRATIVE CLAIM.—A civil action described in paragraph (1) may not be brought until the expiration of the 6-month period after the claim has been presented in writing to the agency owning or operating the vessel causing the injury or damage.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1509.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30101	46 App.:740.	June 19, 1948, ch. 526, 62 Stat. 496.

In subsections (b) and (c), the words "civil action" are substituted for "suit" for consistency with rule 2 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.).

In subsection (c)(1), the words "for all causes of action arising after June 19, 1948, and for all causes of action where suit has not been hitherto filed under the Federal Tort Claims Act" are omitted as obsolete.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 30101, Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4738, provided definitions for purposes of this subtitle, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 109–304, §6(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1509.

SHORT TITLE

This section is popularly known as the Admiralty Extension Act.

§30102. Liability to passengers

(a) LIABILITY.—The owner and master of a vessel, and the vessel, are liable for personal injury to a passenger or damage to a passenger's baggage caused by—

(1) a neglect or failure to comply with part B or F of subtitle II of this title; or

(2) a known defect in the steaming apparatus or hull of the vessel.

(b) NOT SUBJECT TO LIMITATION.—A liability imposed under this section is not subject to limitation under chapter 305 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1509.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30102	46 App.:491 (words before semicolon).	R.S. §4493 (words before semicolon).

In subsection (a), before paragraph (1), the words "or either of them" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "are liable for personal injury to a passenger or damage to a passenger's baggage" are substituted for "Whenever damage is sustained by any passenger or his baggage" and "shall be liable to each and every person so injured" for clarity and to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "from explosion, fire, collision, or other cause" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "caused by" are substituted for "if it happens through" to eliminate unnecessary words. In paragraph (1), the words "part B or F of subtitle II of this title" are

substituted for "title 52 of the Revised Statutes" because of the prior codification of subtitle II of title 46. In paragraph (2), the word "imperfections" is omitted as included in "defect".

Subsection (b) is substituted for "to the full amount of damage" for clarity. See *Hines v. Butler*, 278 F. 877, 880, 881 (4th Cir. 1921), cert. denied, 257 U.S. 659 (1922); *The Annie Faxon*, 75 F. 312, 317–319 (9th Cir. 1896).

§30103. Liability of master, mate, engineer, and pilot

A person may bring a civil action against a master, mate, engineer, or pilot of a vessel, and recover damages, for personal injury or loss caused by the master's, mate's, engineer's, or pilot's—

(1) negligence or willful misconduct; or

(2) neglect or refusal to obey the laws governing the navigation of vessels.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1510.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30103	46 App.:491 (words after semicolon).	R.S. §4493 (words after semicolon).

Before paragraph (1), the words "bring a civil action" are substituted for "sue" for consistency with rule 2 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.). In paragraph (1), the word "carelessness" is omitted as included in "negligence".

§30104. Personal injury to or death of seamen

(a) IN GENERAL.—A seaman injured in the course of employment or, if the seaman dies from the injury, the personal representative of the seaman may elect to bring a civil action at law, with the right of trial by jury, against the employer. Laws of the United States regulating recovery for personal injury to, or death of, a railway employee apply to an action under this section.

(b) LIMITATION ON RECOVERY BY AQUACULTURE WORKERS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—For purposes of subsection (a), the term "seaman" does not include an individual who—

(A) is an aquaculture worker if State workers' compensation is available to such individual; and

(B) was, at the time of injury, engaged in aquaculture in a place where such individual had lawful access.

(2) AQUACULTURE WORKER DEFINED.—In this subsection, the term "aquaculture worker" means an individual who—

(A) is employed by a commercial enterprise that is involved in the controlled cultivation and harvest of aquatic plants and animals, including—

(i) the cleaning, processing, or canning of fish and fish products;

(ii) the cultivation and harvesting of shellfish; and

(iii) the controlled growing and harvesting of other aquatic species;

(B) does not hold a license issued under section 7101(c); and

(C) is not required to hold a merchant mariner credential under part F of subtitle II.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1510; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(a), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 596; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11520(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4142.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30104(a)	46 App.:688(a) (1st sentence).	Mar. 4, 1915, ch. 153, §20(a), 38 Stat. 1185; June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §33, 41 Stat. 1007; Pub. L. 97–389, title V, §503(a)(1), Dec. 29, 1982, 96 Stat. 1955.
30104(b)	46 App.:688(a) (last sentence).	

In subsection (a), the words "A seaman injured in the course of employment or, if the seaman dies from the injury, the personal representative of the seaman" are substituted for "Any seaman who shall suffer personal injury in the course of his employment" and "in case of the death of any seaman as a result of any such personal injury the personal representative" to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "bring a civil action" are substituted for "maintain an action" for consistency with rule 2 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.). The words "for damages" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "against the employer" are added for clarity. The words "Laws of the United States regulating recovery for personal injury to, or death of, a railway employee" are substituted for "all statutes of the United States modifying or extending the common-law right or remedy in cases of personal injury to railway employees" and "all statutes of the United States conferring or regulating the right of action for death in the case of railway employees" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (b), the words "An action under this section shall be brought" are substituted for "Jurisdiction in such actions shall be under" because 46 App. U.S.C. 688(a) (last sentence) provides for venue, not jurisdiction. *Panama R.R. Co. v. Johnson*, 264 U.S. 375 (1924). As to the relationship between 46 App. U.S.C. 688(a) (last sentence) and 28 U.S.C. 1391(c), see *Pure Oil Co. v. Suarez*, 384 U.S. 202 (1966).

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted heading, and added subsec. (b).

2008—Pub. L. 110–181 struck out subsec. (a) designation and heading before "A seaman injured" and struck out heading and text of subsec. (b). Text read as follows: "An action under this section shall be brought in the judicial district in which the employer resides or the employer's principal office is located."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2022 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11520(b), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4143, provided that: "The amendments made by this section [amending this section] shall apply to an injury incurred on or after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022]."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 596, provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall be effective as if included in the enactment of Public Law 109–304."

§30105. Restriction on recovery by non-citizens and non-resident aliens for incidents in waters of other countries

(a) DEFINITION.—In this section, the term "continental shelf" has the meaning given that term in article I of the 1958 Convention on the Continental Shelf.

(b) RESTRICTION.—Except as provided in subsection (c), a civil action for maintenance and cure or for damages for personal injury or death may not be brought under a maritime law of the United States if—

(1) the individual suffering the injury or death was not a citizen or permanent resident alien of the United States at the time of the incident giving rise to the action;

(2) the incident occurred in the territorial waters or waters overlaying the continental shelf of a country other than the United States; and

(3) the individual suffering the injury or death was employed at the time of the incident by a person engaged in the exploration, development, or production of offshore mineral or energy resources, including drilling, mapping, surveying, diving, pipelaying, maintaining, repairing, constructing, or transporting supplies, equipment, or personnel, but not including transporting those resources by a vessel constructed or adapted primarily to carry oil in bulk in the cargo spaces.

(c) NONAPPLICATION.—Subsection (b) does not apply if the individual bringing the action establishes that a remedy is not available under the laws of—

(1) the country asserting jurisdiction over the area in which the incident occurred; or

(2) the country in which the individual suffering the injury or death maintained citizenship or residency at the time of the incident.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1510.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30105(a)	46 App.:688(b)(1) (last sentence).	Mar. 4, 1915, ch. 153, §20(b), as added Pub. L. 97–389, title V, §503(a)(2), Dec. 29, 1982, 96 Stat. 1955.
30105(b)	46 App.:688(b)(1) (less last sentence).	
30105(c)	46 App.:688(b)(2).	

In subsection (b), before paragraph (1), the words "civil action" are substituted for "action" for consistency with rule 2 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.). The words "under subsection (a) of this section or under any other" are omitted as unnecessary. In paragraph (2), the words "its territories, or possessions" are omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title. In paragraph (3), the word "person" is substituted for "enterprise" for consistency in the revised title.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The 1958 Convention on the Continental Shelf, referred to in subsec. (a), was done at Geneva, April 29, 1958, and entered into force for the United States, June 10, 1964. See 15 UST 471; TIAS 5578.

§30106. Time limit on bringing maritime action for personal injury or death

Except as otherwise provided by law, a civil action for damages for personal injury or death arising out of a maritime tort must be brought within 3 years after the cause of action arose.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1511.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30106	46 App.:763a.	Pub. L. 96–382, §1, Oct. 6, 1980, 94 Stat. 1525.

The words "civil action" are substituted for "suit" for consistency with rule 2 of the Federal Rules or Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.). The words "or both" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "must be brought" are substituted for "shall not be maintained unless commenced" for clarity and consistency. The word "arose" is substituted for "accrued" for consistency in the revised title.

CHAPTER 303—DEATH ON THE HIGH SEAS

Sec.

30301. Short title.
30302. Cause of action.
30303. Amount and apportionment of recovery.
30304. Contributory negligence.
30305. Death of plaintiff in pending action.
30306. Foreign cause of action.
30307. Commercial aviation accidents.
30308. Nonapplication.

§30301. Short title

This chapter may be cited as the "Death on the High Seas Act".

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1511.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30301	46 App.:761 note.	

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

SHORT TITLE

Act Mar. 30, 1920, ch. 111, 41 Stat. 537, which enacted chapter 21 (§761 et seq.) of the former Appendix to this title, was popularly known as the "Death on the High Seas Act", prior to being repealed and restated in this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304, §§6(c), 19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1509, 1710.

§30302. Cause of action

When the death of an individual is caused by wrongful act, neglect, or default occurring on the high seas beyond 3 nautical miles from the shore of the United States, the personal representative of the decedent may bring a civil action in admiralty against the person or vessel responsible. The action shall be for the exclusive benefit of the decedent's spouse, parent, child, or dependent relative.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1511.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30302	46 App.:761(a).	Mar. 30, 1920, ch. 111, §1(a), 41 Stat. 537; Pub. L. 106–181, title IV, §404(a)(1), Apr. 5, 2000, 114 Stat. 131.

The words "Subject to subsection (b) of this section" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "3 nautical miles" are substituted for "a marine league" for clarity. The words "United States" are substituted for "any State, or the District of Columbia, or the Territories or dependencies of the United States" because of the definition of "United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title. The words "bring a civil action" are substituted for "maintain a suit" for consistency with rule 2 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.). The words "for damages" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "in the district courts of the United States" are omitted as unnecessary because of 28 U.S.C. 1333. The words "person or vessel" are substituted for "vessel, person, or corporation" because of 1 U.S.C. 1. The word "responsible" is substituted for "which would have been liable if death had not ensued" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§30303. Amount and apportionment of recovery

The recovery in an action under this chapter shall be a fair compensation for the pecuniary loss sustained by the individuals for whose benefit the action is brought. The court shall apportion the recovery among those individuals in proportion to the loss each has sustained.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1511.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30303	46 App.:762(a).	Mar. 30, 1920, ch. 111, §2(a), 41 Stat. 537; Pub. L. 106–181, title IV, §404(b)(1), Apr. 5, 2000, 114 Stat. 131.

The words "and just" are omitted as redundant to "fair". The words "each has sustained" are substituted for "they may severally have suffered by reason of the death of the person by whose representative the suit is brought" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§30304. Contributory negligence

In an action under this chapter, contributory negligence of the decedent is not a bar to recovery. The court shall consider the degree of negligence of the decedent and reduce the recovery accordingly.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1511.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30304	46 App.:766.	Mar. 30, 1920, ch. 111, §6, 41 Stat. 537.

§30305. Death of plaintiff in pending action

If a civil action in admiralty is pending in a court of the United States to recover for personal injury caused by wrongful act, neglect, or default described in section 30302 of this title, and the individual dies during the action as a result of the wrongful act, neglect, or default, the personal representative of the decedent may be substituted as the plaintiff and the action may proceed under this chapter for the recovery authorized by this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1511.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30305	46 App.:765.	Mar. 30, 1920, ch. 111, §5, 41 Stat. 537.

The words "If a civil action in admiralty is pending in a court of the United States to recover for personal injury caused by wrongful act, neglect, or default described in section 30302 of this title, and the individual dies during the action as a result of the wrongful act, neglect, or default" are substituted for "If a person die [sic] as the result of such wrongful act, neglect, or default as is mentioned in section 761 of this Appendix during the pendency in a court of admiralty of the United States of a suit to recover damages for personal injuries in respect of such act, neglect, or default" to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "the plaintiff" are substituted for "a party" to be more precise.

§30306. Foreign cause of action

When a cause of action exists under the law of a foreign country for death by wrongful act, neglect, or default on the high seas, a civil action in admiralty may be brought in a court of the United States based on the foreign cause of action, without abatement of the amount for which recovery is authorized.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1511.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30306	46 App.:764.	Mar. 30, 1920, ch. 111, §4, 41 Stat. 537.

The words "a civil action in admiralty may be brought in a court of the United States based on the foreign cause of action" are substituted for "such right may be maintained in an appropriate action in admiralty in the courts of the United States" for clarity and consistency. The words "any statute of the United States to the contrary notwithstanding" are omitted as unnecessary.

§30307. Commercial aviation accidents

(a) DEFINITION.—In this section, the term "nonpecuniary damages" means damages for loss of care, comfort, and companionship.

(b) BEYOND 12 NAUTICAL MILES.—In an action under this chapter, if the death resulted from a commercial aviation accident occurring on the high seas beyond 12 nautical miles from the shore of the United States, additional compensation is recoverable for nonpecuniary damages, but punitive damages are not recoverable.

(c) WITHIN 12 NAUTICAL MILES.—This chapter does not apply if the death resulted from a commercial aviation accident occurring on the high seas 12 nautical miles or less from the shore of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1512.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30307(a)	46 App.:762(b)(2).	Mar. 30, 1920, ch. 111, §§1(b), 2(b); as added Pub. L. 106–181, title IV, §404(a)(2), (b)(2), Apr. 5, 2000, 114

		Stat. 131.
30307(b)	46 App.:762(b)(1).	
30307(c)	46 App.:761(b).	

In subsections (b) and (c), the words "the United States" are substituted for "any State, or the District of Columbia, or the Territories or dependencies of the United States" because of the definition of "United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

In subsection (b), the words "of a decedent" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (c), the words "if the death resulted from a commercial aviation accident occurring on the high seas" are substituted for "In the case of a commercial aviation accident, whenever the death of a person shall be caused by wrongful act, neglect, or default occurring on the high seas" for consistency with subsection (b) and to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "and the rules applicable under Federal, State, and other appropriate law shall apply" are omitted as unnecessary.

§30308. Nonapplication

(a) STATE LAW.—This chapter does not affect the law of a State regulating the right to recover for death.

(b) INTERNAL WATERS.—This chapter does not apply to the Great Lakes or waters within the territorial limits of a State.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1512.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30308	46 App.:767.	Mar. 30, 1920, ch. 111, §7, 41 Stat. 538.

In subsection (a), the words "law of a State" are substituted for "any State statute" for consistency in the revised title. The words "regulating the right to recover for death" are substituted for "giving or regulating rights of action or remedies for death" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (b), the words "or to any navigable waters in the Panama Canal Zone" are omitted because the Panama Canal Zone was transferred to the Republic of Panama.

CHAPTER 305—EXONERATION AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PROVISIONS

Sec.
30501. Definitions.
30502. Application.

SUBCHAPTER II—EXONERATION AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

30521. Declaration of nature and value of goods.
30522. Loss by fire.
30523. General limit of liability.
30524. Limit of liability for personal injury or death.
30525. Apportionment of losses.
30526. Provisions requiring notice of claim or limiting time for bringing action.
30527. Provisions limiting liability for personal injury or death.
30528. Vicarious liability for medical malpractice with regard to crew.
30529. Action by owner for limitation.
30530. Liability as master, officer, or seaman not affected.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11503(e), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4131, inserted subchapter headings, added item 30501 and struck out former item 30501 "Definition", and renumbered items 30503 to 30512 as 30521 to 30530, respectively.

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL PROVISIONS

§30501. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) COVERED SMALL PASSENGER VESSEL.—The term "covered small passenger vessel"—

(A) means a small passenger vessel, as defined in section 2101, that is—

(i) not a wing-in-ground craft; and

(ii) carrying—

(I) not more than 49 passengers on an overnight domestic voyage; and

(II) not more than 150 passengers on any voyage that is not an overnight domestic voyage; and

(B) includes any wooden vessel constructed prior to March 11, 1996, carrying at least 1 passenger for hire.

(2) OWNER.—The term "owner" includes a charterer that mans, supplies, and navigates a vessel at the charterer's own expense or by the charterer's own procurement.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1512; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11503(b), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4130.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30501	46 App.:186.	R.S. §4286.

The words "In this chapter" are substituted for "within the meaning of the provisions of title 48 of the Revised Statutes relating to the limitation of the liability of the owners of vessels" because of the codification of title 46, United States Code. The word "supplies" is substituted for "victual" for clarity. The words "and such vessel, when so chartered, shall be liable in the same manner as if navigated by the owner thereof" are omitted as unnecessary.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "In this chapter, the term 'owner' includes a charterer that mans, supplies, and navigates a vessel at the charterer's own expense or by the charterer's own procurement."

§30502. Application

(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as otherwise provided, this chapter (except section 30521) applies to seagoing vessels and vessels used on lakes or rivers or in inland navigation, including canal boats, barges, and lighters.

(b) EXCEPTION.—This chapter (except for section 30526) shall not apply to covered small passenger vessels.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1512; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11503(c), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4130.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30502	46 App.:188.	R.S. §4289; Feb. 18, 1875, ch. 80, §1 (related to R.S. §4289), 18 Stat. 320; June 19, 1886, ch. 421, §4, 24 Stat. 80; June 5, 1936, ch. 521, §4, 49 Stat. 1481.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Except as otherwise provided, this chapter (except section 30503) applies to seagoing vessels and vessels used on lakes or rivers or in inland navigation, including canal boats, barges, and lighters."

SUBCHAPTER II—EXONERATION AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

§30521. Declaration of nature and value of goods

(a) IN GENERAL.—If a shipper of an item named in subsection (b), contained in a parcel, package, or trunk, loads the item as freight or baggage on a vessel, without at the time of loading giving to the person receiving the item a written notice of the true character and value of the item and having that information entered on the bill of lading, the owner and master of the vessel are not liable as carriers. The owner and master are not liable beyond the value entered on the bill of lading.

(b) ITEMS.—The items referred to in subsection (a) are precious metals, gold or silver plated articles, precious stones, jewelry, trinkets, watches, clocks, glass, china, coins, bills, securities, printings, engravings, pictures, stamps, maps, papers, silks, furs, lace, and similar items of high value and small size.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1512, §30503; renumbered §30521, Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11503(a)(3), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4130.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30503	46 App.:181.	R.S. §4281.

In subsection (a), the words "load" and "loading" are substituted for "lade" and "lading" to use more common terminology. The words "person receiving the item" are substituted for "master, clerk, agent, or owner of such vessel receiving the same" to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "thereof in any form or manner" and "and according to the character thereof so notified and" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (b), the words "precious metals" are substituted for "platina, gold, gold dust, silver, . . . or other precious metals, . . . gold or silver in a manufactured or unmanufactured state", the words "precious stones" are substituted for "diamonds, or other precious stones", the words "watches, clocks" are substituted

for "watches, clocks, or timepieces of any description", the words "coins, bills, securities" are substituted for "bullion, . . . coins, . . . bills of any bank or public body, . . . orders, notes, or securities for the payment of money", the word "papers" is substituted for "writings, title deeds", and the word "silks" is substituted for "silks in a manufactured or unmanufactured state, and whether wrought up or not wrought up with any other material", to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "and similar items of high value and small size" are added to ensure that any of the items specifically named in the source but omitted in the revised section, or similar items, will be covered by this section.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263 renumbered section 30503 of this title as this section.

§30522. Loss by fire

The owner of a vessel is not liable for loss or damage to merchandise on the vessel caused by a fire on the vessel unless the fire resulted from the design or neglect of the owner.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1513, §30504; renumbered §30522, Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11503(a)(3), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4130.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30504	46 App.:182.	R.S. §4282.

The words "liable for" are substituted for "liable to answer for or make good to any person", the words "merchandise on the vessel" are substituted for "any merchandise whatsoever, which shall be shipped, taken in, or put on board any such vessel", and the words "caused by a fire on the vessel" are substituted for "by reason or by means of any fire happening to or on board the vessel", to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263 renumbered section 30504 of this title as this section.

§30523. General limit of liability

(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in section 30524 of this title, the liability of the owner of a vessel for any claim, debt, or liability described in subsection (b) shall not exceed the value of the vessel and pending freight. If the vessel has more than one owner, the proportionate share of the liability of any one owner shall not exceed that owner's proportionate interest in the vessel and pending freight.

(b) CLAIMS SUBJECT TO LIMITATION.—Unless otherwise excluded by law, claims, debts, and liabilities subject to limitation under subsection (a) are those arising from any embezzlement, loss, or destruction of any property, goods, or merchandise shipped or put on board the vessel, any loss, damage, or injury by collision, or any act, matter, or thing, loss, damage, or forfeiture, done, occasioned, or incurred, without the privity or knowledge of the owner.

(c) WAGES.—Subsection (a) does not apply to a claim for wages.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1513, §30505; renumbered §30523 and amended Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11503(a)(3), (f)(2), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4130, 4131.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30505	46 App.:183(a).	R.S. §4283(a); Aug. 29, 1935, ch. 804, §1, 49 Stat. 960; June 5, 1936, ch. 521, §1, 49 Stat. 1479.
	46 App.:189	June 26, 1884, ch. 121, §18, 23 Stat. 57.

In subsection (a), the words "Except as provided in section 30506 of this title" are substituted for "except in the cases provided for in subsection (b) of this section" because 46 App. U.S.C. 183(b) is restated in section 30506 of the revised title. The words "whether American or foreign" are omitted as unnecessary because of section 30502 of the revised title. The words "shall not exceed the value of the vessel and pending freight" are substituted for "shall not . . . exceed the amount or value of . . . such vessel, and her freight then pending" in 46 App. U.S.C. 183(a) and for "the aggregate liabilities of all the owners of a vessel on account of the same shall not exceed the value of such vessels and freight pending" in 46 App. U.S.C. 189 for consistency and to eliminate unnecessary words. The last sentence is substituted for "the interest of such owner in" in 46 App. U.S.C. 183(a) and for "The individual liability of a shipowner shall be limited to the proportion of any or all debts and liabilities that his individual share of the vessel bears to the whole" in 46 App. U.S.C. 189 for clarity and consistency. The words "*Provided*, That this provision shall not prevent any claimant from joining all the owners in one action" in 46 App. U.S.C. 189 are omitted as unnecessary.

Subsection (c) is substituted for "nor shall the same apply to wages due to persons employed by said shipowners" in 46 App. U.S.C. 189 because of the reorganization of the source provisions.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, §11503(a)(3), renumbered section 30505 of this title as this section.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 117–263, §11503(f)(2), substituted "section 30524" for "section 30506".

§30524. Limit of liability for personal injury or death

(a) APPLICATION.—This section applies only to seagoing vessels, but does not apply to pleasure yachts, tugs, towboats, towing vessels, tank vessels, fishing vessels, fish tender vessels, canal boats, scows, car floats, barges, lighters, or nondescript vessels.

(b) MINIMUM LIABILITY.—If the amount of the vessel owner's liability determined under section 30523 of this title is insufficient to pay all losses in full, and the portion available to pay claims for personal injury or death is less than $420 times the tonnage of the vessel, that portion shall be increased to $420 times the tonnage of the vessel. That portion may be used only to pay claims for personal injury or death.

(c) CALCULATION OF TONNAGE.—Under subsection (b), the tonnage of a self-propelled vessel is the gross tonnage without deduction for engine room, and the tonnage of a sailing vessel is the tonnage for documentation. However, space for the use of seamen is excluded.

(d) CLAIMS ARISING ON DISTINCT OCCASIONS.—Separate limits of liability apply to claims for personal injury or death arising on distinct occasions.

(e) PRIVITY OR KNOWLEDGE.—In a claim for personal injury or death, the privity or knowledge of the master or the owner's superintendent or managing agent, at or before the beginning of each voyage, is imputed to the owner.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1513, §30506; renumbered §30524 and amended Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11503(a)(3), (f)(3), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4130, 4131.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*

30506(a)	46 App.:183(f) (related to 46 App.:183(b)–(e)).	
30506(b)	46 App.:183(b) (1st sentence).	R.S. §4283(b) (1st sentence); Aug. 29, 1935, ch. 804, §1, 49 Stat. 960; June 5, 1936, ch. 521, §1, 49 Stat. 1479; Pub. L. 98–498, title II, §213(a), Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2306.
30506(c)	46 App.:183(c).	R.S. §4283(c)–(f) (related to R.S. §4283(b)–(e)); Aug. 29, 1935, ch. 804, §1, 49 Stat. 960; June 5, 1936, ch. 521, §1, 49 Stat. 1480.
30506(d)	46 App.:183(d).	
30506(e)	46 App.:183(e).	

Subsection (a) is written as an application provision rather than as a definition to be more direct and to avoid having to repeat the word "seagoing" throughout the section. The words "fishing vessel, fish tender vessel" are substituted for "fishing vessels or their tenders" for clarity. The words "nondescript vessel" are substituted for "nondescript self-propelled vessels" and "nondescript non-self-propelled vessels" to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "self-propelled lighters" are omitted as covered by "lighter". The words "even though the same may be seagoing vessels within the meaning of such term as used in section 188 of this Appendix, as amended" are omitted as unnecessary. This provision is restated also at section 30508(a) of the revised title.

In subsection (b), the words "is such that the portion available to pay claims for personal injury or death" are substituted for "is insufficient to pay all losses in full, and the portion of such amount applicable to the payment of losses in respect of loss of life or bodily injury" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (c), the words "self-propelled vessel" are substituted for "steam or motor vessel", and the words "tonnage for documentation" are substituted for "registered tonnage", for consistency in the revised title. The words "space for the use of seamen" are substituted for "space occupied by seamen or apprentices and appropriated to their use" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (d), the words "Separate limits of liability apply" are substituted for "The owner . . . shall be liable . . . to the same extent as if no other loss of life or bodily injury had arisen" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (e), the words "the privity or knowledge . . . is imputed to the owner" are substituted for "shall be deemed conclusively the privity or knowledge of the owner" for consistency and to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, §11503(a)(3), renumbered section 30506 of this title as this section.
Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 117–263, §11503(f)(3), substituted "section 30523" for "section 30505".

§30525. Apportionment of losses

If the amounts determined under sections 30523 and 30524 of this title are insufficient to pay all claims—

(1) all claimants shall be paid in proportion to their respective losses out of the amount determined under section 30523 of this title; and

(2) personal injury and death claimants, if any, shall be paid an additional amount in proportion to their respective losses out of the additional amount determined under section 30524(b) of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1513, §30507; renumbered §30525 and amended Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11503(a)(3), (f)(4), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4130, 4131.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30507	46 App.:183(b) (last sentence).	R.S. §4283(b) (last sentence); Aug. 29, 1935, ch. 804, §1, 49 Stat. 960; June 5, 1936, ch. 521, §1, 49 Stat. 1479; Pub. L. 98–498, title II, §213(a), Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2306.
	46 App.:184.	R.S. §4284; Feb. 27, 1877, ch. 69, §1 (related to R.S. §4284), 19 Stat. 251.

This section is substituted for 46 App. U.S.C. 183(b) (last sentence) and 184 (words before semicolon) for clarity and consistency and to eliminate unnecessary words. The text of 46 App. U.S.C. 184 (words after semicolon) is omitted as unnecessary. See G. Gilmore & C. Black, *The Law of Admiralty*, §10–8 (2d ed. 1975).

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, §11503(f)(4)(A), substituted "sections 30523 and 30524" for "sections 30505 and 30506" in introductory provisions.

Pub. L. 117–263, §11503(a)(3), renumbered section 30507 of this title as this section.

Par. (1). Pub. L. 117–263, §11503(f)(4)(B), substituted "section 30523" for "section 30505".

Par. (2). Pub. L. 117–263, §11503(f)(4)(C), substituted "section 30524(b)" for "section 30506(b)".

§30526. Provisions requiring notice of claim or limiting time for bringing action

(a) APPLICATION.—This section applies only to seagoing vessels, but does not apply to pleasure yachts, tugs, towboats, towing vessels, tank vessels, fishing vessels, fish tender vessels, canal boats, scows, car floats, barges, lighters, or nondescript vessels.

(b) MINIMUM TIME LIMITS.—The owner, master, manager, or agent of a vessel transporting passengers or property between ports in the United States, or between a port in the United States and a port in a foreign country, may not limit by regulation, contract, or otherwise the period for—

(1) giving notice of, or filing a claim for, personal injury or death, in the case of seagoing vessels, to less than 6 months after the date of the injury or death, or in the case of covered small passenger vessels, to less than two years after the date of the injury or death; or

(2) bringing a civil action for personal injury or death, in the case of seagoing vessels, to less than one year after the date of the injury or death, or in the case of covered small passenger vessels, to less than two years after the date of the injury or death.

(c) EFFECT OF FAILURE TO GIVE NOTICE.—When notice of a claim for personal injury or death is required by a contract, the failure to give the notice is not a bar to recovery if—

(1) the court finds that the owner, master, or agent of the vessel had knowledge of the injury or death and the owner has not been prejudiced by the failure;

(2) the court finds there was a satisfactory reason why the notice could not have been given; or

(3) the owner of the vessel fails to object to the failure to give the notice.

(d) TOLLING OF PERIOD TO GIVE NOTICE.—If a claimant is a minor or mental incompetent, or if a claim is for wrongful death, any period provided by a contract for giving notice of the claim is tolled until the earlier of—

(1) the date a legal representative is appointed for the minor, incompetent, or decedent's estate; or

(2) 3 years after the injury or death.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1514, §30508; renumbered §30526 and amended Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11503(a)(3), (d), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4130, 4131.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30508(a)	46 App.:183(f) (related to 46 App.:183b).	R.S. §4283(f) (related to R.S. §4283A); Aug. 29, 1935, ch. 804, §1, 49 Stat. 960; June 5, 1936, ch. 521, §1, 49 Stat. 1480.
30508(b)	46 App.:183b(a).	R.S. §4283A, as added Aug. 29, 1935, ch. 804, §3, 49 Stat. 960.
30508(c)	46 App.:183b(b).	
30508(d)	46 App.:183b(c).	

For an explanation of subsection (a), see the revision notes for section 30506(a), where 46 App. U.S.C. 183(f) is also restated.

In subsection (b), before paragraph (1), the words "sea-going vessel (other than tugs, barges, fishing vessels and their tenders)" are omitted because of subsection (a) of this section. The word "merchandise" is omitted as covered by "property". The words "between ports in the United States, or between a port in the United States and a port in a foreign country" are substituted for "from or between ports of the United States and foreign ports" for clarity and for consistency with section 30509(a)(1) of the revised title. See *Burstein v. United States Lines Co.*, 43 F. Supp. 226 (S.D.N.Y. 1942), rev'd on other grounds, 134 F.2d 89 (2d Cir. 1943). The word "rule" is omitted as covered by "regulation". In paragraph (1), the words "after the date of the injury or death" are added for clarity and consistency with paragraph (2).

In subsection (c), before paragraph (1), the words "When notice of a claim for personal injury or death is required by a contract, the failure to give the notice" are substituted for "Failure to give such notice, where lawfully prescribed in such contract" for clarity. In paragraph (1), the words "the court finds" are stated at the beginning rather than the middle to be more precise. The word "damage" is omitted as unnecessary. In paragraph (2), the words "the court finds there was a satisfactory reason" are substituted for "the court excuses such failure on the ground that for some satisfactory reason" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (d), before paragraph (1), the word "claimant" is substituted for "person who is entitled to recover on any such claim" to eliminate unnecessary words. The word "lawful" is omitted as unnecessary. The words "is tolled until" are substituted for "shall not be applicable so long as" and "but shall be applicable from" for clarity and to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, §11503(a)(3), renumbered section 30508 of this title as this section.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 117–263, §11503(d)(1), inserted ", in the case of seagoing vessels," after "personal injury or death" and ", or in the case of covered small passenger vessels, to less than two years after the date of the injury or death" after "date of the injury or death".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 117–263, §11503(d)(2), inserted ", in the case of seagoing vessels," after "personal injury or death" and ", or in the case of covered small passenger vessels, to less than two years after the date of the injury or death" after "date of the injury or death".

§30527. Provisions limiting liability for personal injury or death

(a) PROHIBITION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The owner, master, manager, or agent of a vessel transporting passengers between ports in the United States, or between a port in the United States and a port in a foreign country, may not include in a regulation or contract a provision limiting—

(A) the liability of the owner, master, or agent for personal injury or death caused by the

negligence or fault of the owner or the owner's employees or agents; or

(B) the right of a claimant for personal injury or death to a trial by court of competent jurisdiction.

(2) VOIDNESS.—A provision described in paragraph (1) is void.

(b) EMOTIONAL DISTRESS, MENTAL SUFFERING, AND PSYCHOLOGICAL INJURY.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Subsection (a) does not prohibit a provision in a contract or in ticket conditions of carriage with a passenger that relieves an owner, master, manager, agent, operator, or crewmember of a vessel from liability for infliction of emotional distress, mental suffering, or psychological injury so long as the provision does not limit such liability when the emotional distress, mental suffering, or psychological injury is—

(A) the result of physical injury to the claimant caused by the negligence or fault of a crewmember or the owner, master, manager, agent, or operator;

(B) the result of the claimant having been at actual risk of physical injury, and the risk was caused by the negligence or fault of a crewmember or the owner, master, manager, agent, or operator; or

(C) intentionally inflicted by a crewmember or the owner, master, manager, agent, or operator.

(2) SEXUAL OFFENSES.—This subsection does not limit the liability of a crewmember or the owner, master, manager, agent, or operator of a vessel in a case involving sexual harassment, sexual assault, or rape.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1514, §30509; renumbered §30527, Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11503(a)(3), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4130.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30509	46 App.:183c.	R.S. §4283B, as added June 5, 1936, ch. 521, §2, 49 Stat. 1480; Oct. 19, 1996, Pub. L. 104–324, §1129(b), 110 Stat. 3984.

In subsection (a)(1), before subparagraph (A), the words "may not" are substituted for "It shall be unlawful" for consistency in the revised title and with other titles of the United States Code. The words "rule" and "agreement" are omitted as covered by "regulation" and "contract", respectively. The words "a provision limiting" are substituted for "any provision or limitation (1) purporting . . . to relieve . . . , or (2) purporting . . . to lessen, weaken, or avoid" to eliminate unnecessary words. In subparagraph (A), the words "the owner's employees or agents" are substituted for "his servants" for consistency in the revised title. In subparagraph (B), the words "on the question of liability for such loss or injury, or the measure of damages therefor" are omitted as unnecessary.

Subsection (b)(2) is substituted for 46 App. U.S.C. 183c (last sentence) for consistency and to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263 renumbered section 30509 of this title as this section.

§30528. Vicarious liability for medical malpractice with regard to crew

In a civil action by any person in which the owner or operator of a vessel or employer of a

crewmember is claimed to have vicarious liability for medical malpractice with regard to a crewmember occurring at a shoreside facility, and to the extent the damages resulted from the conduct of any shoreside doctor, hospital, medical facility, or other health care provider, the owner, operator, or employer is entitled to rely on any statutory limitations of liability applicable to the doctor, hospital, medical facility, or other health care provider in the State of the United States in which the shoreside medical care was provided.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1515, §30510; renumbered §30528, Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11503(a)(3), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4130.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30510	46 App.:183(g).	R.S. §4283(g); Pub. L. 104–324, §1129(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3984.

The words "civil action" are substituted for "suit" for consistency in the revised title. The words "is entitled to rely on any statutory" are substituted for "shall be entitled to rely upon any and all statutory" to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263 renumbered section 30510 of this title as this section.

§30529. Action by owner for limitation

(a) IN GENERAL.—The owner of a vessel may bring a civil action in a district court of the United States for limitation of liability under this chapter. The action must be brought within 6 months after a claimant gives the owner written notice of a claim.

(b) CREATION OF FUND.—When the action is brought, the owner (at the owner's option) shall—

(1) deposit with the court, for the benefit of claimants—

(A) an amount equal to the value of the owner's interest in the vessel and pending freight, or approved security; and

(B) an amount, or approved security, that the court may fix from time to time as necessary to carry out this chapter; or

(2) transfer to a trustee appointed by the court, for the benefit of claimants—

(A) the owner's interest in the vessel and pending freight; and

(B) an amount, or approved security, that the court may fix from time to time as necessary to carry out this chapter.

(c) CESSATION OF OTHER ACTIONS.—When an action has been brought under this section and the owner has complied with subsection (b), all claims and proceedings against the owner related to the matter in question shall cease.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1515, §30511; renumbered §30529, Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11503(a)(3), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4130.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*

30511	46 App.:185.	R.S. §4285; June 5, 1936, ch. 521, §3, 49 Stat. 1480.

In subsection (a), the words "bring a civil action . . . in a district court of the United States" are substituted for "petition a district court of the United States" for consistency in the revised title and with other titles of the United States Code. See rule 2 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.). The words "of competent jurisdiction" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (b), the word "pending" before "freight" is added for consistency in the chapter. The words "to carry out this chapter" are substituted for "to carry out the provisions of section 183 of this Appendix" because of the reorganization of the source provisions.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263 renumbered section 30511 of this title as this section.

§30530. Liability as master, officer, or seaman not affected

This chapter does not affect the liability of an individual as a master, officer, or seaman, even though the individual is also an owner of the vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1516, §30512; renumbered §30530, Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11503(a)(3), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4130.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30512	46 App.:187.	R.S. §4287.

This section is substituted for the source provision for consistency with the restatement of 46 App. U.S.C. 183(a) and 189 in section 30505 and to eliminate unnecessary words. The reference in the source to particular sections is extended to include the entire chapter to simplify the reference and to conform to the obvious original policy and intent of the source provision.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263 renumbered section 30512 of this title as this section.

CHAPTER 307—LIABILITY OF WATER CARRIERS

Sec.

30701. Definition.
30702. Application.
30703. Bills of lading.
30704. Loading, stowage, custody, care, and delivery.
30705. Seaworthiness.
30706. Defenses.
30707. Criminal penalty.

§30701. Definition

In this chapter, the term "carrier" means the owner, manager, charterer, agent, or master of a

vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1516.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30701	(no source).	

This chapter codifies the Act of February 13, 1893 (ch. 105, 27 Stat. 445) (commonly known as the Harter Act). Changes are made to simplify, clarify, and modernize the language and style, but the intent is that these changes should not result in changes in substance.

A definition of "carrier" is added based on language appearing in various provisions of the Harter Act. The definition avoids the need to repeat in various sections of this chapter the list of persons to whom the requirements and restrictions of this chapter apply, and it ensures that the list of persons is consistent in the chapter.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

CARRIAGE OF GOODS BY SEA ACT

Act Apr. 16, 1936, ch. 229, 49 Stat. 1207, as amended by Pub. L. 97–31, §12(146), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166, provided:

"That every bill of lading or similar document of title which is evidence of a contract for the carriage of goods by sea to or from ports of the United States, in foreign trade, shall have effect subject to the provisions of this Act.

"TITLE I

"SECTION 1. When used in this Act—

"(a) The term 'carrier' includes the owner or the charterer who enters into a contract of carriage with a shipper.

"(b) The term 'contract of carriage' applies only to contracts of carriage covered by a bill of lading or any similar document of title, insofar as such document relates to the carriage of goods by sea, including any bill of lading or any similar document as aforesaid issued under or pursuant to a charter party from the moment at which such bill of lading or similar document of title regulates the relations between a carrier and a holder of the same.

"(c) The term 'goods' includes goods, wares, merchandise, and articles of every kind whatsoever, except live animals and cargo which by the contract of carriage is stated as being carried on deck and is so carried.

"(d) The term 'ship' means any vessel used for the carriage of goods by sea.

"(e) The term 'carriage of goods' covers the period from the time when the goods are loaded on to the time when they are discharged from the ship.

"RISKS

"SEC. 2. Subject to the provisions of section 6, under every contract of carriage of goods by sea, the carrier in relation to the loading, handling, stowage, carriage, custody, care, and discharge of such goods, shall be subject to the responsibilities and liabilities and entitled to the rights and immunities hereinafter set forth.

"RESPONSIBILITIES AND LIABILITIES

"SEC. 3. (1) The carrier shall be bound, before and at the beginning of the voyage, to exercise due diligence to—

"(a) Make the ship seaworthy;

"(b) Properly man, equip, and supply the ship;

"(c) Make the holds, refrigerating and cooling chambers, and all other parts of the ship in which goods are carried, fit and safe for their reception, carriage, and preservation.

"(2) The carrier shall properly and carefully load, handle, stow, carry, keep, care for, and discharge the goods carried.

"(3) After receiving the goods into his charge the carrier, or the master or agent of the carrier, shall, on demand of the shipper, issue to the shipper a bill of lading showing among other things—

"(a) The leading marks necessary for identification of the goods as the same are furnished in writing by the shipper before the loading of such goods starts, provided such marks are stamped or otherwise shown clearly upon the goods if uncovered, or on the cases or coverings in which such goods are contained, in such a manner as should ordinarily remain legible until the end of the voyage.

"(b) Either the number of packages or pieces, or the quantity or weight, as the case may be, as furnished in writing by the shipper.

"(c) The apparent order and condition of the goods: *Provided*, That no carrier, master, or agent of the carrier, shall be bound to state or show in the bill of lading any marks, number, quantity, or weight which he has reasonable ground for suspecting not accurately to represent the goods actually received, or which he has had no reasonable means of checking.

"(4) Such a bill of lading shall be prima facie evidence of the receipt by the carrier of the goods as therein described in accordance with paragraphs (3)(a), (b), and (c), of this section: *Provided*, That nothing in this Act shall be construed as repealing or limiting the application of any part of the Act, as amended, entitled 'An Act relating to bills of lading in interstate and foreign commerce', approved August 29, 1916 (U.S.C., title 49, secs. 81–124), commonly known as the 'Pomerene Bills of Lading Act' [now chapter 801 of Title 49, Transportation].

"(5) The shipper shall be deemed to have guaranteed to the carrier the accuracy at the time of shipment of the marks, number, quantity, and weight, as furnished by him; and the shipper shall indemnify the carrier against all loss, damages, and expenses arising or resulting from inaccuracies in such particulars. The right of the carrier to such indemnity shall in no way limit his responsibility and liability under the contract of carriage to any person other than the shipper.

"(6) Unless notice of loss or damage and the general nature of such loss or damage be given in writing to the carrier or his agent at the port of discharge before or at the time of the removal of the goods into the custody of the person entitled to delivery thereof under the contract of carriage, such removal shall be prima facie evidence of the delivery by the carrier of the goods as described in the bill of lading. If the loss or damage is not apparent, the notice must be given within three days of the delivery.

"Said notice of loss or damage may be endorsed upon the receipt for the goods given by the person taking delivery thereof.

"The notice in writing need not be given if the state of the goods has at the time of their receipt been the subject of joint survey or inspection.

"In any event the carrier and the ship shall be discharged from all liability in respect of loss or damage unless suit is brought within one year after delivery of the goods or the date when the goods should have been delivered: *Provided*, That if a notice of loss or damage, either apparent or concealed, is not given as provided for in this section, that fact shall not affect or prejudice the right of the shipper to bring suit within one year after the delivery of the goods or the date when the goods should have been delivered.

"In the case of any actual or apprehended loss or damage the carrier and the receiver shall give all reasonable facilities to each other for inspecting and tallying the goods.

"(7) After the goods are loaded the bill of lading to be issued by the carrier, master, or agent of the carrier to the shipper shall, if the shipper so demands, be a 'shipped' bill of lading: *Provided*, That if the shipper shall have previously taken up any document of title to such goods, he shall surrender the same as against the issue of the 'shipped' bill of lading, but at the option of the carrier such document of title may be noted at the port of shipment by the carrier, master, or agent with the name or names of the ship or ships upon which the goods have been shipped and the date or dates of shipment, and when so noted the same shall for the purpose of this section be deemed to constitute a 'shipped' bill of lading.

"(8) Any clause, covenant, or agreement in a contract of carriage relieving the carrier or the ship from liability for loss or damage to or in connection with the goods, arising from negligence, fault, or failure in the duties and obligations provided in this section, or lessening such liability otherwise than as provided in this Act, shall be null and void and of no effect. A benefit of insurance in favor of the carrier, or similar clause, shall be deemed to be a clause relieving the carrier from liability.

"RIGHTS AND IMMUNITIES

"SEC. 4. (1) Neither the carrier nor the ship shall be liable for loss or damage arising or resulting from unseaworthiness unless caused by want of due diligence on the part of the carrier to make the ship seaworthy, and to secure that the ship is properly manned, equipped, and supplied, and to make the holds, refrigerating and cool chambers, and all other parts of the ship in which goods are carried fit and safe for their reception, carriage, and preservation in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1) of section 3. Whenever loss or

damage has resulted from unseaworthiness, the burden of proving the exercise of due diligence shall be on the carrier or other persons claiming exemption under this section.

"(2) Neither the carrier nor the ship shall be responsible for loss or damage arising or resulting from—

"(a) Act, neglect, or default of the master, mariner, pilot, or the servants of the carrier in the navigation or in the management of the ship;

"(b) Fire, unless caused by the actual fault or privity of the carrier;

"(c) Perils, dangers, and accidents of the sea or other navigable waters;

"(d) Act of God;

"(e) Act of war;

"(f) Act of public enemies;

"(g) Arrest or restraint of princes, rulers, or people, or seizure under legal process;

"(h) Quarantine restrictions;

"(i) Act or omission of the shipper or owner of the goods, his agent or representative;

"(j) Strikes or lockouts or stoppage or restraint of labor from whatever cause, whether partial or general: *Provided*, That nothing herein contained shall be construed to relieve a carrier from responsibility for the carrier's own acts;

"(k) Riots and civil commotions;

"(l) Saving or attempting to save life or property at sea;

"(m) Wastage in bulk or weight or any other loss or damage arising from inherent defect, quality, or vice of the goods;

"(n) Insufficiency of packing;

"(o) Insufficiency or inadequacy of marks;

"(p) Latent defects not discoverable by due diligence; and

"(q) Any other cause arising without the actual fault and privity of the carrier and without the fault or neglect of the agents or servants of the carrier, but the burden of proof shall be on the person claiming the benefit of this exception to show that neither the actual fault or privity of the carrier nor the fault or neglect of the agents or servants of the carrier contributed to the loss or damage.

"(3) The shipper shall not be responsible for loss or damage sustained by the carrier or the ship arising or resulting from any cause without the act, fault, or neglect of the shipper, his agents, or his servants.

"(4) Any deviation in saving or attempting to save life or property at sea, or any reasonable deviation shall not be deemed to be an infringement or breach of this Act or of the contract of carriage, and the carrier shall not be liable for any loss or damage resulting therefrom: *Provided, however*, That if the deviation is for the purpose of loading or unloading cargo or passengers it shall, prima facie, be regarded as unreasonable.

"(5) Neither the carrier nor the ship shall in any event be or become liable for any loss or damage to or in connection with the transportation of goods in an amount exceeding $500 per package lawful money of the United States, or in case of goods not shipped in packages, per customary freight unit, or the equivalent of that sum in other currency, unless the nature and value of such goods have been declared by the shipper before shipment and inserted in the bill of lading. This declaration, if embodied in the bill of lading, shall be prima facie evidence, but shall not be conclusive on the carrier.

"By agreement between the carrier, master, or agent of the carrier, and the shipper another maximum amount than that mentioned in this paragraph may be fixed: *Provided*, That such maximum shall not be less than the figure above named. In no event shall the carrier be liable for more than the amount of damage actually sustained.

"Neither the carrier nor the ship shall be responsible in any event for loss or damage to or in connection with the transportation of the goods if the nature or value thereof has been knowingly and fraudulently misstated by the shipper in the bill of lading.

"(6) Goods of an inflammable, explosive, or dangerous nature to the shipment whereof the carrier, master or agent of the carrier, has not consented with knowledge of their nature and character, may at any time before discharge be landed at any place or destroyed or rendered innocuous by the carrier without compensation, and the shipper of such goods shall be liable for all damages and expenses directly or indirectly arising out of or resulting from such shipment. If any such goods shipped with such knowledge and consent shall become a danger to the ship or cargo, they may in like manner be landed at any place, or destroyed or rendered innocuous by the carrier without liability on the part of the carrier except to general average, if any.

"SURRENDER OF RIGHTS AND IMMUNITIES AND INCREASE OF RESPONSIBILITIES AND LIABILITIES

"SEC. 5. A carrier shall be at liberty to surrender in whole or in part all or any of his rights and immunities or to increase any of his responsibilities and liabilities under this Act, provided such surrender or increase

shall be embodied in the bill of lading issued to the shipper.

"The provisions of this Act shall not be applicable to charter parties; but if bills of lading are issued in the case of a ship under a charter party, they shall comply with the terms of this Act. Nothing in this Act shall be held to prevent the insertion in a bill of lading of any lawful provision regarding general average.

"SPECIAL CONDITIONS

"SEC. 6. Notwithstanding the provisions of the preceding sections, a carrier, master or agent of the carrier, and a shipper shall, in regard to any particular goods be at liberty to enter into any agreement in any terms as to the responsibility and liability of the carrier for such goods, and as to the rights and immunities of the carrier in respect of such goods, or his obligation as to seaworthiness (so far as the stipulation regarding seaworthiness is not contrary to public policy), or the care or diligence of his servants or agents in regard to the loading, handling, stowage, carriage, custody, care, and discharge of the goods carried by sea: *Provided*, That in this case no bill of lading has been or shall be issued and that the terms agreed shall be embodied in a receipt which shall be a nonnegotiable document and shall be marked as such.

"Any agreement so entered into shall have full legal effect: *Provided*, That this section shall not apply to ordinary commercial shipments made in the ordinary course of trade but only to other shipments where the character or condition of the property to be carried or the circumstances, terms, and conditions under which the carriage is to be performed are such as reasonably to justify a special agreement.

"[AGREEMENT AS TO RESPONSIBILITY AND LIABILITY BEFORE LOADING OR AFTER DISCHARGE]

"SEC. 7. Nothing contained in this Act shall prevent a carrier or a shipper from entering into any agreement, stipulation, condition, reservation, or exemption as to the responsibility and liability of the carrier or the ship for the loss or damage to or in connection with the custody and care and handling of goods prior to the loading on and subsequent to the discharge from the ship on which the goods are carried by sea.

"[RIGHTS AND LIABILITIES UNDER OTHER OBLIGATIONS]

"SEC. 8. The provisions of this Act shall not affect the rights and obligations of the carrier under the provisions of the Shipping Act, 1916 [former 46 U.S.C. App. 801 et seq., see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title], or under the provisions of sections 4281 to 4289, inclusive, of the Revised Statutes of the United States [see chapter 305 of this title] or of any amendments thereto; or under the provisions of any other enactment for the time being in force relating to the limitation of the liability of the owners of seagoing vessels.

"TITLE II

"[DISCRIMINATION BETWEEN COMPETING SHIPPERS]

"SECTION. 9. Nothing contained in this Act shall be construed as permitting a common carrier by water to discriminate between competing shippers similarly placed in time and circumstances, either (a) with respect to their right to demand and receive bills of lading subject to the provisions of this Act; or (b) when issuing such bills of lading, either in the surrender of any of the carrier's rights and immunities or in the increase of any of the carrier's responsibilities and liabilities pursuant to section 5, title I, of this Act; or (c) in any other way prohibited by the Shipping Act, 1916, as amended [former 46 U.S.C. App. 801 et seq., see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title].

"[OMITTED]

"SEC. 10. [Amended section 25 of the Interstate Commerce Act (former 49 U.S.C. 25).]

"[WEIGHT OF BULK CARGO]

"SEC. 11. Where under the customs of any trade the weight of any bulk cargo inserted in the bill of lading is a weight ascertained or accepted by a third party other than the carrier or the shipper, and the fact that the weight is so ascertained or accepted is stated in the bill of lading, then, notwithstanding anything in this Act, the bill of lading shall not be deemed to be prima facie evidence against the carrier of the receipt of goods of the weight so inserted in the bill of lading, and the accuracy thereof at the time of shipment shall not be deemed to have been guaranteed by the shipper.

"[RELATIONSHIP TO OTHER LAW]

"SEC. 12. Nothing in this Act shall be construed as superseding any part of the Act entitled 'An Act relating to navigation of vessels, bills of lading, and to certain obligations, duties, and rights in connection with the carriage of property', approved February 13, 1893 [now this chapter], or of any other law which would be applicable in the absence of this Act, insofar as they relate to the duties, responsibilities, and liabilities of the ship or carrier prior to the time when the goods are loaded on or after the time they are discharged from the ship.

"[SCOPE OF ACT; "UNITED STATES"; "FOREIGN TRADE"]

"SEC. 13. This Act shall apply to all contracts for carriage of goods by sea to or from ports of the United States in foreign trade. As used in this Act the term 'United States' includes its districts, territories, and possessions: *Provided, however*, That the Philippine Legislature may by law exclude its application to transportation to or from ports of the Philippine Islands. The term 'foreign trade' means the transportation of goods between the ports of the United States and ports of foreign countries. Nothing in this Act shall be held to apply to contracts for carriage of goods by sea between any port of the United States or its possessions, and any other port of the United States or its possessions: *Provided, however*, That any bill of lading or similar document of title which is evidence of a contract for the carriage of goods by sea between such ports, containing an express statement that it shall be subject to the provisions of this Act, shall be subjected hereto as fully as if subject hereto by the express provisions of this Act: *Provided further*, That every bill of lading or similar document of title which is evidence of a contract for the carriage of goods by sea from ports of the United States, in foreign trade, shall contain a statement that it shall have effect subject to the provisions of this Act.

"[As to proviso in second sentence that Philippine Legislature may by law exclude its application to transportation to or from ports of the Philippine Islands, see Proc. No. 2695, set out under section 1394 of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse, which proclaimed the independence of the Philippines.]

"[SUSPENSION OF PROVISIONS BY PRESIDENT]

"SEC. 14. Upon the certification of the Secretary of Transportation that the foreign commerce of the United States in its competition with that of foreign nations is prejudiced by the provisions, or any of them, of title I of this Act, or by the laws of any foreign country or countries relating to the carriage of goods by sea, the President of the United States may, from time to time, by proclamation, suspend any or all provisions of said sections for such periods of time or indefinitely as may be designated in the proclamation. The President may at any time rescind such suspension of said sections, and any provisions thereof which may have been suspended shall thereby be reinstated and again apply to contracts thereafter made for the carriage of goods by sea. Any proclamation of suspension or rescission of any such suspension shall take effect on a date named therein, which date shall be not less than ten days from the issue of the proclamation.

"Any contract for the carriage of goods by sea, subject to the provisions of this Act, effective during any period when title I hereof, or any part thereof, are suspended, shall be subject to all provisions of law now or hereafter applicable to that part of title I which may have thus been suspended. [As amended Pub. L. 97–31, §12(146), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166.]

"[EFFECTIVE DATE]

"SEC. 15. This Act shall take effect ninety days after the date of its approval [April 16, 1936]; but nothing in this Act shall apply during a period not to exceed one year following its approval to any contract for the carriage of goods by sea, made before the date on which this Act is approved, nor to any bill of lading or similar document of title issued, whether before or after such date of approval in pursuance of any such contract as aforesaid.

"[SHORT TITLE]

"SEC. 16. This Act may be cited as the 'Carriage of Goods by Sea Act'."

§30702. Application

(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as otherwise provided, this chapter applies to a carrier engaged in the carriage of goods to or from any port in the United States.

(b) LIVE ANIMALS.—Sections 30703 and 30704 of this title do not apply to the carriage of live animals.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1516.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30702(a)	(no source).	
30702(b)	46 App.:195.	Feb. 13, 1893, ch. 105, §7, 27 Stat. 446.

Subsection (a) is added based on language appearing in various source provisions restated in this chapter. The word "carriage" is substituted for "transporting", and the word "goods" is substituted for "merchandise or property", to use the same terminology as in the Carriage of Goods By Sea Act (Apr. 16, 1936, ch. 229, 49 Stat. 1207). The words "to or from any port in the United States" are substituted for "from or between ports of the United States and foreign ports" in 46 App. U.S.C. 190 and 193, "from or between ports of the United States of America and foreign ports" in 46 App. U.S.C. 191, and "to or from any port in the United States of America" in 46 App. U.S.C. 192, for clarity and consistency. See *Knott v. Botany Mills*, 179 U.S. 69 (1900).

§30703. Bills of lading

(a) ISSUANCE.—On demand of a shipper, the carrier shall issue a bill of lading or shipping document.

(b) CONTENTS.—The bill of lading or shipping document shall include a statement of—

(1) the marks necessary to identify the goods;

(2) the number of packages, or the quantity or weight, and whether it is carrier's or shipper's weight; and

(3) the apparent condition of the goods.

(c) PRIMA FACIE EVIDENCE OF RECEIPT.—A bill of lading or shipping document issued under this section is prima facie evidence of receipt of the goods described.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1516.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30703	46 App.:193.	Feb. 13, 1893, ch. 105, §4, 27 Stat. 445.

In subsection (a), the words "On demand of a shipper" are added because of the reference to a demand in 46 App. U.S.C. 194. The words "transporting merchandise or property from or between ports of the United States and foreign ports" are omitted because of section 30702(a) of the revised title. The word "lawful" (which modifies "merchandise") is omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (b)(2), the words "or weight" are added for consistency with the requirement to state whether it is the carrier's or shipper's weight.

In subsection (b)(3), the word "order" is omitted as redundant to "condition". The words "delivered to and received by . . . for transportation" are omitted as unnecessary.

§30704. Loading, stowage, custody, care, and delivery

A carrier may not insert in a bill of lading or shipping document a provision avoiding its liability for loss or damage arising from negligence or fault in loading, stowage, custody, care, or proper delivery. Any such provision is void.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1516.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised

Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30704	46 App.:190.	Feb. 13, 1893, ch. 105, §1, 27 Stat. 445.

The words "transporting merchandise or property from or between ports of the United States and foreign ports" are omitted because of section 30702(a) of the revised title. The words "may not" are substituted for "It shall not be lawful . . . to", and the word "provision" is substituted for "clause, covenant, or agreement", to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "any and all lawful" and "committed to its or their charge" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "Any such provision is void" are substituted for "Any and all words or clauses of such import inserted in bills of lading or shipping receipts shall be null and void and of no effect" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§30705. Seaworthiness

(a) PROHIBITION.—A carrier may not insert in a bill of lading or shipping document a provision lessening or avoiding its obligation to exercise due diligence to—

(1) make the vessel seaworthy; and

(2) properly man, equip, and supply the vessel.

(b) VOIDNESS.—A provision described in subsection (a) is void.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1516.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30705	46 App.:191.	Feb. 13, 1893, ch. 105, §2, 27 Stat. 445.

In subsection (a), before paragraph (1), the words "transporting merchandise or property from or between ports of the United States of America and foreign ports" are omitted because of section 30702(a) of the revised title. The words "may not" are substituted for "It shall not be lawful . . . to", the word "provision" is substituted for "covenant or agreement", and the words "lessening or avoiding its obligation" are substituted for "whereby the obligations . . . shall in any wise be lessened, weakened, or avoided", to eliminate unnecessary words.

In paragraph (1), the words "and capable of performing her intended voyage" are omitted as unnecessary.

In paragraph (2), the word "supply" is substituted for "provision, and outfit" to eliminate unnecessary words.

The words "or whereby the obligations of the master, officers, agents, or servants to carefully handle and stow her cargo and to care for and properly deliver same" are omitted as covered by section 30704 of the revised title.

Subsection (b) is added for clarity and for consistency with section 30704 of the revised title.

§30706. Defenses

(a) DUE DILIGENCE.—If a carrier has exercised due diligence to make the vessel in all respects seaworthy and to properly man, equip, and supply the vessel, the carrier and the vessel are not liable for loss or damage arising from an error in the navigation or management of the vessel.

(b) OTHER DEFENSES.—A carrier and the vessel are not liable for loss or damage arising from—

(1) dangers of the sea or other navigable waters;

(2) acts of God;

(3) public enemies;

(4) seizure under legal process;

(5) inherent defect, quality, or vice of the goods;

(6) insufficiency of package;

(7) act or omission of the shipper or owner of the goods or their agent; or

(8) saving or attempting to save life or property at sea, including a deviation in rendering such a service.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1517.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30706	46 App.:192.	Feb. 13, 1893, ch. 105, §3, 27 Stat. 445.

This section is restated as two subsections to clarify that the exercise of due diligence in making the vessel seaworthy is a condition only to the defense of error in navigation or management restated in subsection (a). See *May v. Hamburg-Amerikanische Packetfahrt Aktiengesellschaft (The Isis)*, 290 U.S. 333, 353 (1933). The words "transporting merchandise or property to or from any port in the United States of America" are omitted because of section 30702(a) of the revised title.

§30707. Criminal penalty

(a) IN GENERAL.—A carrier that violates this chapter shall be fined under title 18.

(b) LIEN.—The amount of the fine and costs for the violation constitute a lien on the vessel engaged in the carriage. A civil action in rem to enforce the lien may be brought in the district court of the United States for any district in which the vessel is found.

(c) DISPOSITION OF FINE.—Half of the fine shall go to the person injured by the violation and half to the United States Government.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1517.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30707	46 App.:194.	Feb. 13, 1893, ch. 105, §5, 27 Stat. 446.

In subsection (a), the words "and who refuses to issue on demand the bill of lading herein provided for" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "shall be fined under title 18" are substituted for "shall be liable to a fine not exceeding $2,000" because of chapter 227 of title 18.

In subsection (b), the words "A civil action in rem to enforce the lien may be brought in the district court of the United States for any district in which the vessel is found" are substituted for "such vessel may be libeled therefor in any district court of the United States" for clarity and to modernize the language.

CHAPTER 309—SUITS IN ADMIRALTY AGAINST THE UNITED STATES

Sec.

30901. Short title.
30902. Definition.
30903. Waiver of immunity.
30904. Exclusive remedy.
30905. Period for bringing action.
30906. Venue.
30907. Procedure for hearing and determination.
30908. Exemption from arrest or seizure.
30909. Security.
30910. Exoneration and limitation.
30911. Costs and interest.
30912. Arbitration, compromise, or settlement.

30913. Payment of judgment or settlement.
30914. Release of privately owned vessel after arrest or attachment.
30915. Seizures and other proceedings in foreign jurisdictions.
30916. Recovery by the United States for salvage services.
30917. Disposition of amounts recovered by the United States.
30918. Reports.

§30901. Short title

This chapter may be cited as the "Suits in Admiralty Act".

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1517.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30901	46 App.:741 note.	

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

SHORT TITLE

Act Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, 41 Stat. 525, which enacted chapter 20 (§741 et seq.) of the former Appendix to this title, was popularly known as the "Suits in Admiralty Act", prior to being repealed and restated in this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304, §§6(c), 19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1509, 1710.

§30902. Definition

In this chapter, the term "federally-owned corporation" means a corporation in which the United States owns all the outstanding capital stock.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1517.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30902	46 App.:741 (11th–26th words).	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §1 (11th–26th words), 41 Stat. 525.

The term "federally-owned corporation" is defined in this section and used in this chapter to avoid repeating the substance of the definition in several sections in this chapter. The words "or its representatives" are omitted as unnecessary.

§30903. Waiver of immunity

(a) IN GENERAL.—In a case in which, if a vessel were privately owned or operated, or if cargo were privately owned or possessed, or if a private person or property were involved, a civil action in admiralty could be maintained, a civil action in admiralty in personam may be brought against the United States or a federally-owned corporation. In a civil action in admiralty brought by the United States or a federally-owned corporation, an admiralty claim in personam may be filed or a setoff claimed against the United States or corporation.

(b) NON-JURY.—A claim against the United States or a federally-owned corporation under this section shall be tried without a jury.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1518.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30903	46 App.:742 (1st, 3d sentences).	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §2 (1st, 3d sentences), 41 Stat. 525; Pub. L. 86–770, §3, Sept. 13, 1960, 74 Stat. 912; Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1105, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3967.

In subsection (a), the words "civil action" are substituted for "proceeding" and "libel" because of rule 2 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.) and for consistency in the chapter. The words "civil action in admiralty in personam" are substituted for "any appropriate nonjury proceeding in personam" for clarity. The words "in rem or in personam in any district" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "admiralty claim" are substituted for "cross libel" for consistency in this chapter and with the various means of asserting a claim (such as by counterclaim or cross-claim) allowed by the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. The words "with the same force and effect as if the libel had been filed by a private party" are omitted as unnecessary.

Subsection (b) is substituted for the word "nonjury" to clarify that the nonjury requirement applies to any claim against the United States or a federally-owned corporation under this section regardless of which party brings the action.

§30904. Exclusive remedy

If a remedy is provided by this chapter, it shall be exclusive of any other action arising out of the same subject matter against the officer, employee, or agent of the United States or the federally-owned corporation whose act or omission gave rise to the claim.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1518.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30904	46 App.:745 (1st proviso).	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §5 (1st proviso), 41 Stat. 526; June 30, 1932, ch. 315, 47 Stat. 420; Dec. 13, 1950, ch. 1136, 64 Stat. 1112.

The words "officer, employee, or agent of the United States or the federally-owned corporation" are substituted for "agent or employee of the United States or of any incorporated or unincorporated agency thereof" for consistency in this chapter and to eliminate unnecessary words.

§30905. Period for bringing action

A civil action under this chapter must be brought within 2 years after the cause of action arose.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1518.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30905	46 App.:745 (words before 1st proviso).	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §5 (words before 1st proviso), 41 Stat. 526; June 30, 1932, ch. 315, 47 Stat. 420; Dec. 13,

		1950, ch. 1136, 64 Stat. 1112.

§30906. Venue

(a) IN GENERAL.—A civil action under this chapter shall be brought in the district court of the United States for the district in which—

(1) any plaintiff resides or has its principal place of business; or

(2) the vessel or cargo is found.

(b) TRANSFER.—On a motion by a party, the court may transfer the action to any other district court of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1518.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30906(a)	46 App.:742 (2d sentence).	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §2 (2d, last sentences), 41 Stat. 526.
30906(b)	46 App.:742 (last sentence).	

In subsection (a)(1), the words "in the United States" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (a)(2), the words "charged with liability" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (b), the words "in the discretion of the court" are omitted as unnecessary. For general change of venue provision, see 28 U.S.C. 1404.

§30907. Procedure for hearing and determination

(a) IN GENERAL.—A civil action under this chapter shall proceed and be heard and determined according to the principles of law and the rules of practice applicable in like cases between private parties.

(b) IN REM.—

(1) REQUIREMENTS.—The action may proceed according to the principles of an action in rem if—

(A) the plaintiff elects in the complaint; and

(B) it appears that an action in rem could have been maintained had the vessel or cargo been privately owned and possessed.

(2) EFFECT ON RELIEF IN PERSONAM.—An election under paragraph (1) does not prevent the plaintiff from seeking relief in personam in the same action.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1518.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30907(a)	46 App.:743 (1st, 4th sentences).	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §3 (1st, 4th–6th sentences), 41 Stat. 526.
30907(b)	46 App.:743 (5th, 6th sentences).	

In subsection (a), the text of 46 App. U.S.C. 743 (4th sentence) is omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (b)(1)(A), the words "plaintiff" and "complaint" are substituted for "libelant" and "libel", respectively, for consistency with the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.).

In subsection (b)(2), the words "in any proper case" are omitted as unnecessary.

§30908. Exemption from arrest or seizure

The following are not subject to arrest or seizure by judicial process in the United States:

(1) A vessel owned by, possessed by, or operated by or for the United States or a federally-owned corporation.

(2) Cargo owned or possessed by the United States or a federally-owned corporation.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1518.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30908	46 App.:741 (less 11th–26th words).	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §1 (less 11th–26th words), 41 Stat. 525; Sept. 26, 1950, ch. 1049, §2(a)(2), 64 Stat. 1038; Pub. L. 96–70, §3(b)(5), Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 455.

The words "a federally-owned corporation" are substituted for "any corporation in which the United States or its representatives shall own the entire outstanding capital stock" because of the definition of "federally-owned corporation" in section 30902 of the revised title. The words "after March 9, 1920" are omitted as obsolete. The words "in view of the provision herein made for a libel in personam" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "or its possessions" are omitted because of the definition of "United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title. The words "*Provided*, That this chapter shall not apply to the Panama Canal Commission" are omitted because the Commission has been dissolved. See 22 U.S.C. 3714a.

§30909. Security

Neither the United States nor a federally-owned corporation may be required to give a bond or admiralty stipulation in a civil action under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1519.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30909	46 App.:743 (last sentence).	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §3 (last sentence), 41 Stat. 526; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(25)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 155.

The words "civil action" are substituted for "proceeding" for consistency in this chapter and with rule 2 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.).

§30910. Exoneration and limitation

The United States is entitled to the exemptions from and limitations of liability provided by law to an owner, charterer, operator, or agent of a vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1519.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised

Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30910	46 App.:746.	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §6, 41 Stat. 527.

§30911. Costs and interest

(a) IN GENERAL.—A judgment against the United States or a federally-owned corporation under this chapter may include costs and interest at the rate of 4 percent per year until satisfied. Interest shall run as ordered by the court, except that interest is not allowable for the period before the action is filed.

(b) CONTRACT PROVIDING FOR INTEREST.—Notwithstanding subsection (a), if the claim is based on a contract providing for interest, interest may be awarded at the rate and for the period provided in the contract.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1519.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30911	46 App.:743 (2d, 3d sentences).	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §3 (2d, 3d sentences), 41 Stat. 526.
	46 App.:745 (last proviso).	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §5 (last proviso), 41 Stat. 526; June 30, 1932, ch. 315, 47 Stat. 420; Dec. 13, 1950, ch. 1136, 64 Stat. 1112.

In subsection (a), the words "and when the decree is for a money judgment" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "except that interest is not allowable for the period before the action is filed" are substituted for "*And provided further*, That after June 30, 1932, no interest shall be allowed on any claim prior to the time when suit on such claim is brought as authorized by section 742 of this Appendix" to eliminate unnecessary words.

Subsection (b) is substituted for "or at any higher rate which shall be stipulated in any contract upon which such decree shall be based" in 46 App. U.S.C. 743 and "unless upon a contract expressly stipulating for the payment of interest" in 46 App. U.S.C. 745 (last proviso) for clarity and consistency.

§30912. Arbitration, compromise, or settlement

The Secretary of a department of the United States Government, or the board of trustees of a federally-owned corporation, may arbitrate, compromise, or settle a claim under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1519.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30912	46 App.:749.	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §9, 41 Stat. 527; Pub. L. 92–417, §3, Aug. 29, 1972, 86 Stat. 656; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(25)(C), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 155.

The words "claim under this chapter" are substituted for "claim in which suit will lie under the provisions of sections 742, 744, and 750 of this Appendix" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§30913. Payment of judgment or settlement

(a) IN GENERAL.—The proper accounting officer of the United States shall pay a final judgment, arbitration award, or settlement under this chapter on presentation of an authenticated copy.

(b) SOURCE OF PAYMENT.—Payment shall be made from an appropriation or fund available specifically for the purpose. If no appropriation or fund is specifically available, there is hereby appropriated, out of money in the Treasury not otherwise appropriated, an amount sufficient to pay the judgment, award, or settlement.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1519.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30913	46 App.:748.	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §8, 41 Stat. 527.

§30914. Release of privately owned vessel after arrest or attachment

If a privately owned vessel not in the possession of the United States or a federally-owned corporation is arrested or attached in a civil action arising or alleged to have arisen from prior ownership, possession, or operation by the United States or corporation, the vessel shall be released without bond or stipulation on a statement by the United States, through the Attorney General or other authorized law officer, that the United States is interested in the action, desires release of the vessel, and assumes liability for the satisfaction of any judgment obtained by the plaintiff. After the vessel is released, the action shall proceed against the United States in accordance with this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1519.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30914	46 App.:744.	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §4, 41 Stat. 526.

The words "on a statement" are substituted for "upon the suggestion" as more appropriate.

§30915. Seizures and other proceedings in foreign jurisdictions

(a) IN GENERAL.—If a vessel or cargo described in section 30908 or 30914 of this title is arrested, attached, or otherwise seized by judicial process in a foreign country, or if an action is brought in a court of a foreign country against the master of such a vessel for a claim arising from the ownership, possession, or operation of the vessel, or the ownership, possession, or carriage of such cargo, the Secretary of State, on request of the Attorney General or another officer authorized by the Attorney General, may direct the United States consul residing at or nearest the place at which the action was brought—

(1) to claim the vessel or cargo as immune from arrest, attachment, or other seizure, and to execute an agreement, stipulation, bond, or undertaking, for the United States or federally-owned corporation, for the release of the vessel or cargo and the prosecution of any appeal; or

(2) if an action has been brought against the master of such a vessel, to enter the appearance of the United States or corporation and to pledge the credit of the United States or corporation to the payment of any judgment and costs in the action.

(b) ARRANGING BOND OR STIPULATION.—The Attorney General may—

(1) arrange with a bank, surety company, or other person, whether in the United States or a

foreign country, to execute a bond or stipulation; and

(2) pledge the credit of the United States to secure the bond or stipulation.

(c) PAYMENT OF JUDGMENT.—The appropriate accounting officer of the United States or corporation may pay a judgment in an action described in subsection (a) on presentation of a copy of the judgment if certified by the clerk of the court and authenticated by—

(1) the certificate and seal of the United States consul claiming the vessel or cargo, or by the consul's successor; and

(2) the certificate of the Secretary as to the official capacity of the consul.

(d) RIGHT TO CLAIM IMMUNITY NOT AFFECTED.—This section does not affect the right of the United States to claim immunity of a vessel or cargo from foreign jurisdiction.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1519.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30915	46 App.:747.	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §7, 41 Stat. 527; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(25)(B), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 155.

In this section, references to the Maritime Administration are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (a), before paragraph (1), the words "or in connection with", "of the United States in his discretion", and "duly" are omitted as unnecessary. In paragraph (1), the words "as by said court required" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (b)(1), the words "firm, or corporation" are omitted as included in "person" as defined in 1 U.S.C. 1.

Subsection (b)(2) is substituted for "to pledge the credit of the United States to the indemnification of such surety or stipulator as may be required to secure the execution of such bond or stipulation" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (c), the words "may pay" are substituted for "presentation . . . shall be sufficient evidence . . . for the allowance and payment" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§30916. Recovery by the United States for salvage services

(a) CIVIL ACTION.—The United States, and the crew of a merchant vessel owned or operated by the United States, or a federally-owned corporation, may bring a civil action to recover for salvage services provided by the vessel and crew.

(b) DEPOSIT OF AMOUNTS RECOVERED.—Any amount recovered under this section by the United States for its own benefit, and not for the benefit of the crew, shall be deposited in the Treasury to the credit of the department of the United States Government, or the corporation, having control of the possession or operation of the vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1520.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30916	46 App.:750.	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §10, 41 Stat. 528; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(25)(D), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 155.

In subsection (a), the words "may bring a civil action to recover" are substituted for "shall have the right to collect and sue" for consistency in this chapter and to eliminate unnecessary words.

§30917. Disposition of amounts recovered by the United States

Amounts recovered in a civil action brought by the United States on a claim arising from the ownership, possession, or operation of a merchant vessel, or the ownership, possession, or carriage of cargo, shall be deposited in the Treasury to the credit of the department of the United States Government, or the federally-owned corporation, having control of the vessel or cargo, for reimbursement of the appropriation, insurance fund, or other fund from which the compensation for which the judgment was recovered was or will be paid.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1520.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30917	46 App.:751.	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §11, 41 Stat. 528; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(25)(D), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 155.

The words "or in connection with" and "with respect to which such cause of action arises" are omitted as unnecessary.

§30918. Reports

The Secretary of each department of the United States Government, and the board of trustees of each federally-owned corporation, shall report to Congress at each session thereof all arbitration awards and settlements agreed to under this chapter since the previous session, for which the time to appeal has expired or been waived.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1521.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
30918	46 App.:752.	Mar. 9, 1920, ch. 95, §12, 41 Stat. 528; Aug. 30, 1954, ch. 1076, §1(26), 68 Stat. 968; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(25)(E), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 155.

CHAPTER 311—SUITS INVOLVING PUBLIC VESSELS

Sec.

31101. Short title.
31102. Waiver of immunity.
31103. Applicable procedure.
31104. Venue.
31105. Security when counterclaim filed.
31106. Exoneration and limitation.
31107. Interest.
31108. Arbitration, compromise, or settlement.
31109. Payment of judgment or settlement.
31110. Subpoenas to officers or members of crew.

31111. Claims by nationals of foreign countries.
31112. Lien not recognized or created.
31113. Reports.

§31101. Short title

This chapter may be cited as the "Public Vessels Act".

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1521.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
31101	46 App.:781 note.	

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

SHORT TITLE

Act of March 3, 1925, ch. 428, 43 Stat. 1112, which enacted chapter 22 (§781 et seq.) of the former Appendix to this title, was popularly known as the "Public Vessels Act", prior to being repealed and restated in this chapter by Pub. L. 109–304, §§6(c), 19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1509, 1710.

§31102. Waiver of immunity

(a) IN GENERAL.—A civil action in personam in admiralty may be brought, or an impleader filed, against the United States for—

(1) damages caused by a public vessel of the United States; or

(2) compensation for towage and salvage services, including contract salvage, rendered to a public vessel of the United States.

(b) COUNTERCLAIM OR SETOFF.—If the United States brings a civil action in admiralty for damages caused by a privately owned vessel, the owner of the vessel, or the successor in interest, may file a counterclaim in personam, or claim a setoff, against the United States for damages arising out of the same subject matter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1521.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
31102(a)	46 App.:781.	Mar. 3, 1925, ch. 428, §1, 43 Stat. 1112.
31102(b)	46 App.:783 (words before proviso).	Mar. 3, 1925, ch. 428, §3 (words before proviso), 43 Stat. 1112.

In this section, the words "civil action" are substituted for "libel" because of rule 2 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.).

In subsection (a), the words "*Provided*, That the cause of action arose after the 6th day of April, 1920" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (b), the words "in rem or in personam" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "file a counterclaim in personam, or claim a setoff" are substituted for "file a cross libel in personam or claim a set-off or counterclaim" to conform to the terminolgy in the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure and to eliminate

unnecessary words. The words "for damages arising out of the same subject matter" are substituted for "in such suit for and on account of any damages arising out of the same subject matter or cause of action" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§31103. Applicable procedure

A civil action under this chapter is subject to the provisions of chapter 309 of this title except to the extent inconsistent with this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1521.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
31103	46 App.:782 (last sentence words before last comma).	Mar. 3, 1925, ch. 428, §2 (last sentence words before last comma), 43 Stat. 1112.

§31104. Venue

(a) IN GENERAL.—A civil action under this chapter shall be brought in the district court of the United States for the district in which the vessel or cargo is found within the United States.

(b) VESSEL OR CARGO OUTSIDE TERRITORIAL WATERS.—If the vessel or cargo is outside the territorial waters of the United States—

(1) the action shall be brought in the district court of the United States for any district in which any plaintiff resides or has an office for the transaction of business; or

(2) if no plaintiff resides or has an office for the transaction of business in the United States, the action may be brought in the district court of the United States for any district.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1521.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
31104	46 App.:782 (1st sentence).	Mar. 3, 1925, ch. 428, §2 (1st sentence), 43 Stat. 1112.

In subsection (a), the words "charged with creating the liability" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (b)(2), the words "in the United States" are omitted as unnecessary.

§31105. Security when counterclaim filed

If a counterclaim is filed for a cause of action for which the original action is filed under this chapter, the respondent to the counterclaim shall give security in the usual amount and form to respond to the counterclaim, unless the court for cause shown orders otherwise. The proceedings in the original action shall be stayed until the security is given.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1522.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
31105	46 App.:783 (proviso).	Mar. 3, 1925, ch. 428, §3 (proviso), 43

		Stat. 1112.

The word "counterclaim" is substituted for "cross-libel", and the words "original action" are substituted for "original libel", to conform to the terminolgy in the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.).

§31106. Exoneration and limitation

The United States is entitled to the exemptions from and limitations of liability provided by law to an owner, charterer, operator, or agent of a vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1522.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
31106	46 App.:789.	Mar. 3, 1925, ch. 428, §9, 43 Stat. 1113.

§31107. Interest

A judgment in a civil action under this chapter may not include interest for the period before the judgment is issued unless the claim is based on a contract providing for interest.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1522.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
31107	46 App.:782 (last sentence words after last comma).	Mar. 3, 1925, ch. 428, §2 (last sentence words after last comma), 43 Stat. 1112.

§31108. Arbitration, compromise, or settlement

The Attorney General may arbitrate, compromise, or settle a claim under this chapter if a civil action based on the claim has been commenced.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1522.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
31108	46 App.:786.	Mar. 3, 1925, ch. 428, §6, 43 Stat. 1113.

The words "claim under this chapter" are substituted for "claim on which a libel or cross libel would lie under the provisions of this chapter" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§31109. Payment of judgment or settlement

The proper accounting officer of the United States shall pay a final judgment, arbitration award, or settlement under this chapter on presentation of an authenticated copy. Payment shall be made from

any money in the Treasury appropriated for the purpose.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1522.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
31109	46 App.:787.	Mar. 3, 1925, ch. 428, §7, 43 Stat. 1113.

Reference to an arbitration award is added for consistency with sections 30912 and 31108 of the revised title.

§31110. Subpoenas to officers or members of crew

An officer or member of the crew of a public vessel may not be subpoenaed in a civil action under this chapter without the consent of—

(1) the Secretary of the department or the head of the independent establishment having control of the vessel at the time the cause of action arose; or

(2) the master or commanding officer of the vessel at the time the subpoena is issued.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1522.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
31110	46 App.:784.	Mar. 3, 1925, ch. 428, §4, 43 Stat. 1112.

§31111. Claims by nationals of foreign countries

A national of a foreign country may not maintain a civil action under this chapter unless it appears to the satisfaction of the court in which the action is brought that the government of that country, in similar circumstances, allows nationals of the United States to sue in its courts.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1522.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
31111	46 App.:785.	Mar. 3, 1925, ch. 428, §5, 43 Stat. 1113.

§31112. Lien not recognized or created

This chapter shall not be construed as recognizing the existence of or as creating a lien against a public vessel of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1522.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*

31112	46 App.:788.	Mar. 3, 1925, ch. 428, §8, 43 Stat. 1113.

§31113. Reports

The Attorney General shall report to Congress at each session thereof all claims settled under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §6(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1523.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
31113	46 App.:790.	Mar. 3, 1925, ch. 428, §10, 43 Stat. 1113; Aug. 30, 1954, ch. 1076, §1(26), 68 Stat. 968.

CHAPTER 313—COMMERCIAL INSTRUMENTS AND MARITIME LIENS

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL

Sec.
31301. Definitions.
31302. Availability of instruments, copies, and information.
31303. Certain civil actions not authorized.
31304. Liability for noncompliance.
31305. Waiver of lien rights.
31306. Declaration of citizenship.
31307. State statutes superseded.
31308. Secretary of Commerce or Transportation as mortgagee.
31309. General civil penalty.

SUBCHAPTER II—COMMERCIAL INSTRUMENTS

31321. Filing, recording, and discharge.
31322. Preferred mortgages.
31323. Disclosing and incurring obligations before executing preferred mortgages.
31324. Retention and examination of mortgages of vessels covered by preferred mortgages.
31325. Preferred mortgage liens and enforcement.
31326. Court sales to enforce preferred mortgage liens and maritime liens and priority of claims.
31327. Forfeiture of mortgagee interest.
[31328. Repealed.]
31329. Court sales of documented vessels.
31330. Penalties.

SUBCHAPTER III—MARITIME LIENS

31341. Persons presumed to have authority to procure necessaries.
31342. Establishing maritime liens.
31343. Recording and discharging notices of claim of maritime lien.

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Section 101 [102] of H.R. 3105 [became Pub. L. 100–710] revises, consolidates, and enacts certain general and permanent laws of the United States related to commercial instruments and liens and public vessels and goods. It amends subtitle III of title 46, United States Code by striking at the end "Chapters 313, 315—Reserved" and substituting "Chapter 313—Commercial Instruments and Maritime Liens". Chapter 313

is essentially a codification of the Ship Mortgage Act, 1920 (46 App. U.S.C. 911–984). H.R. 3105 is the second step in the process of enacting laws compiled in title 46 of the Code into positive law. The first step in the codification process began in 1983 when certain general and permanent laws related to vessels and seamen were enacted as subtitle II of the title 46, United States Code.

HOUSE FLOOR STATEMENT

Section 102 of this bill adds a new subtitle III to title 46, which contains a codification of the Ship Mortgage Act, 1920 and other related provisions. A previous version of this codification and the remaining sections of the bill were recently reported by the Merchant Marine and Fisheries Committee in H.R. 3105 (H. Rept. 100–918). The significant additions or changes by this provision to the version of H.R. 3105 reported by the Merchant Marine and Fisheries Committee are explained as follows: [see sections 31305, 31321, 31322, 31325, 31329, 31330, 31343 of this title].

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2002—Pub. L. 107–295, title II, §205(a)(2), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2096, substituted "notices of claim of maritime lien" for "liens on preferred mortgage vessels" in item 31343.

1996—Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1113(b)(3), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3970, struck out item 31328 "Limitations on parties serving as trustees of mortgaged vessel interests".

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL

§31301. Definitions

In this chapter—

(1) "acknowledge" means making—

(A) an acknowledgment or notarization before a notary public or other official authorized by a law of the United States or a State to take acknowledgments of deeds; or

(B) a certificate issued under the Hague Convention Abolishing the Requirement of Legalisation for Foreign Public Documents, 1961;

(2) "district court" means—

(A) a district court of the United States (as defined in section 451 of title 28);

(B) the District Court of Guam;

(C) the District Court of the Virgin Islands;

(D) the District Court for the Northern Mariana Islands;

(E) the High Court of American Samoa; and

(F) any other court of original jurisdiction of a territory or possession of the United States;

(3) "mortgagee" means—

(A) a person to whom property is mortgaged; or

(B) when a mortgage on a vessel involves a trust, the trustee that is designated in the trust agreement;

(4) "necessaries" includes repairs, supplies, towage, and the use of a dry dock or marine railway;

(5) "preferred maritime lien" means a maritime lien on a vessel—

(A) arising before a preferred mortgage was filed under section 31321 of this title;

(B) for damage arising out of maritime tort;

(C) for wages of a stevedore when employed directly by a person listed in section 31341 of this title;

(D) for wages of the crew of the vessel;
(E) for general average; or
(F) for salvage, including contract salvage;

(6) "preferred mortgage"—
(A) means a mortgage that is a preferred mortgage under section 31322 of this title; and
(B) also means in sections 31325 and 31326 of this title, a mortgage, hypothecation, or similar charge that is established as a security on a foreign vessel if the mortgage, hypothecation, or similar charge was executed under the laws of the foreign country under whose laws the ownership of the vessel is documented and has been registered under those laws in a public register at the port of registry of the vessel or at a central office; and

(7) "Secretary" means the Secretary of the Department of Homeland Security, unless otherwise noted.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4739; Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §913(a)(2)–(4), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3017.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31301(1), (2)	New
31301(3)	46:911(5)
31301(4)	Derived from 46:971–974
31301(5)	46:953(a)
31301(6)(A)	46:922(b)
31301(6)(B)	46:951 (2d par. less proviso)

Section 31301(1) defines the term "acknowledge". This paragraph makes a substantive change to law to expand the current law by allowing a notarization under State law, a form prescribed by the Secretary, as well as a certificate issued under the Hague Convention Abolishing the Requirement of Legalisation for Foreign Public Documents, 1961.

Section 31301(2) defines "district court". This paragraph makes a substantive change to law by including the District Court of Guam, the District Court of the Virgin Islands, the District Court of the Northern Mariana Islands, the High Court of American Samoa, and other Federal territorial courts as they are established. Under current law, only the district courts of the United States have jurisdiction under the Ship Mortgage Act, 1920.

Section 31301(3) defines "mortgagee" as a person to whom property is mortgaged and the trustee authorized under section 31328 that is designated in the trust agreement.

Section 31301(4) defines "necessaries" to include repairs, supplies, towage, and the use of a drydock and marine railway for a vessel. As in all codifications, the term "includes" means "includes but is not limited to" and, therefore, is not intended to be an exclusive listing of those items that a court has determined or may determine as falling within the meaning of the term "other necessaries" as contained in current law. The definition is new, is based on 46 App. U.S.C. 971–974, and makes no substantive change to law.

Section 31301(5) defines "preferred maritime lien" to mean a lien on a vessel that arises before a preferred mortgage was filed under section 31321 of this title for damages arising out of maritime tort, stevedore wages, crew wages, general average, and salvage. The definition is new and is based on 46 App. U.S.C. 953(a). The only substantive change to law made by this paragraph is to change the effective date from the day the preferred mortgage is recorded and endorsed to when it is filed. This change is in keeping with other changes with regard to filing. The term "duly and validly" that is in existing law is not used because it is unnecessary. An instrument that is not "duly and validly" executed is not executed under the laws of the foreign country. This makes no substantive change to law.

Section 31301(6)(A) defines "preferred mortgage" to mean a mortgage that meets the requirements of section 31322. This clause makes no substantive change to law.

Section 31301(6)(B) defines "preferred mortgage" to also mean a mortgage on a documented foreign vessel that is preferred under sections 31325 and 31326 for purposes of enforcement of the outstanding mortgage

indebtedness. Preference is only granted if the mortgage is executed under the laws of a foreign country, registered under those laws in a public register at the port of registry or at a central office. The use of the word "established" in place of "created" in the current law or "effective" as used in the treaties is not intended to make any substantive change to law. The only substantive changes to law made by this clause are the elimination of the exemption of foreign vessels of less than 200 gross tons, and clarification of the rule of interpretation that if a vessel is registered in one country, but is permitted to fly temporarily the flag of another country (such as through a demise charter), it is the law of the country in which the ownership of the vessel is documented that is used to determine when a mortgage attains preferred status.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Par. (7). Pub. L. 111–281 added par. (7).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §107, Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4752, provided that:

"(a) This title [see Tables for classification] and amendments made by this title take effect on January 1, 1989. However, sections 31321 and 31322 of title 46 (as enacted by section 102 of this Act), United States Code (as sections 31321 and 32322 [probably should be 31322] apply to vessels for which an application for documentation has been filed), take effect on January 1, 1990.

"(b) An instrument filed before January 1, 1989, but not recorded before that date, is deemed to comply with section 31321 of title 46, United States Code, if it is in substantial compliance with the provisions in that section that had corresponding requirements under the law on December 31, 1988. However, the mortgage may not become a preferred mortgage until the vessel is documented.

"(c) This title and the amendments made by this title do not affect the validity of any instrument filed or recorded before January 1, 1989, if there was a corresponding requirement under the law on December 31, 1988.

"(d) An instrument filed or recorded before January 1, 1989, is deemed to comply with any new requirement under chapter 313 of title 46, United States Code (as enacted by section 102 of this Act), affecting the validity of that instrument.

"(e) Section 102 of this Act and amendments made by that section [enacting former section 30101 and sections 31301 to 31309, 31321 to 31330, and 31341 to 31343 of this title and provisions set out as a note preceding section 2101 of this title] do not affect any civil action filed before January 1, 1989.

"(f) Section 104(b) of this Act and the amendments made by section 104(b) of this Act [amending section 808 of the former Appendix to this title] do not apply to any change in control resulting from, or which may at any time result from, any proposed plan of reorganization filed under the United States bankruptcy laws prior to the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 23, 1988], except that transactions undertaken as a result of such a plan shall continue to be governed by section 9 of the Shipping Act, 1916 ([former] 46 App. U.S.C. 808) [see 46 U.S.C. 56101, 57109], as it existed prior to the date of enactment of this Act, to the extent that such section 9 would have governed such transactions."

§31302. Availability of instruments, copies, and information

The Secretary shall—

(1) make any instrument filed or recorded with the Secretary under this chapter available for public inspection;

(2) on request, provide a copy, including a certified copy, of any instrument made available for public inspection under this chapter; and

(3) on request, provide a certificate containing information included in an instrument filed or recorded under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4740; Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §913(a)(1), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3017.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31302(1)	46:927 (1st sentence)
31302(2)	46:927 (2d sentence)
31302(3)	New

Section 31302(1) makes all instruments filed for recording or recorded with the Secretary of Transportation available for public inspection. The only substantive change to law made by this subsection is the inclusion of instruments filed for recording, which is in keeping with the new requirements on filing of instruments made in section 31321.

Section 31302(2) requires the Secretary to provide the public with a certified copy of the material made available to the public under subsection (a). This subsection makes no substantive change to law.

Section 31302(3) requires the Secretary, on request, to issue a certificate containing the information included in instruments on file, such as certificates of ownership.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Pub. L. 111–281 struck out "of Transportation" after "Secretary" in introductory provisions.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§31303. Certain civil actions not authorized

If a mortgage covers a vessel and additional property that is not a vessel, this chapter does not authorize a civil action in rem to enforce the rights of the mortgagee under the mortgage against the additional property.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4740.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31303	46:954(b)

Section 31303 makes it clear that, if a mortgage covers a vessel and additional property that is not a vessel, this chapter does not authorize a civil action *in rem* in admiralty to enforce rights against the additional property. This section makes no substantive change to law.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§31304. Liability for noncompliance

(a) If a person makes a contract secured by, or on the credit of, a vessel covered by a mortgage

filed or recorded under this chapter and sustains a monetary loss because the mortgagor or the master or other individual in charge of the vessel does not comply with a requirement imposed on the mortgagor, master, or individual under this chapter, the mortgagor is liable for the loss.

(b) A civil action may be brought to recover for losses referred to in subsection (a) of this section. The district courts have original jurisdiction of the action, regardless of the amount in controversy or the citizenship of the parties. If the plaintiff prevails, the court shall award costs and attorney fees to the plaintiff.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4740.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31304	46:941(c)

Section 31304 imposes liability on the mortgagor if the mortgagor, master, or other individual in charge of the vessel does not comply with the statutory requirements. A civil action may be brought in a district court of the United States for losses incurred. If the plaintiff prevails, the court shall award costs and attorneys fees to the plaintiff. This section makes two substantive changes to law. First, is the broadening of its coverage from documented vessels covered by a preferred mortgage to any vessel covered by a mortgage that is filed or recorded under the chapter. The second substantive change repeals the liability on the United States Government for losses caused because the Secretary did not comply with statutory requirements. This is covered by the Federal Tort Claims Act due to the nondiscretionary responsibility of the Secretary.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§31305. Waiver of lien rights

This chapter does not prevent a mortgagee or other lien holder from waiving or subordinating at any time by agreement or otherwise the lien holder's right to a lien, the priority or, if a preferred mortgage lien, the preferred status of the lien.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4741.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31305	46:974

Section 31305 provides for the waiver of lien rights by the mortgagee or a person performing or supplying necessaries. This section makes no substantive change to law and is included only because of a like provision in current law. Without this provision the Committee believes these waivers would be permissible as a matter of law as they do not violate any public policy and on their face reflect an arms length transaction between the parties. The inclusion of this provision should not raise the implication that a similar provision is required for other matters that may be waivable as a matter of law.

HOUSE FLOOR STATEMENT

Section 31305 has been changed to clarify that the chapter does not prevent a mortgagee or other lien holder from waiving by contract the right to a lien, or the priority of that lien.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§31306. Declaration of citizenship

(a) Except as provided by the Secretary, when an instrument transferring an interest in a vessel is presented to the Secretary for filing or recording, the transferee shall file with the instrument a declaration, in the form the Secretary may prescribe by regulation, stating information about citizenship and other information the Secretary may require to show the transaction involved does not violate section 56102 or 56103 of this title.

(b) A declaration under this section filed by a corporation must be signed by its president, secretary, treasurer, or other official authorized by the corporation to execute the declaration.

(c) Except as provided by the Secretary, an instrument transferring an interest in a vessel is not valid against any person until the declaration required by this section has been filed.

(d) A person knowingly making a false statement of a material fact in a declaration filed under this section shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for not more than 5 years, or both.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4741; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §303(1), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1923; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(27), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1704; Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §913(a)(1), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3017.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31306	46:838

Section 31306(a) requires that a person submitting an instrument transferring interest in a vessel to the Secretary for recording is also to file a declaration stating information about citizenship and other information to show that the transfer is not in violation of section 9 of the Shipping Act, or section 37 of that Act in a national emergency. This section makes no substantive change to law.

Section 31306(b) requires that a declaration filed by a corporation must be signed by the president, secretary, treasurer, or other official authorized by the corporation to execute the declaration. This section makes no substantive change to law.

Section 31306(c) invalidates any instrument transferring an interest until the declaration is filed. This section makes no substantive change to law.

Section 31306(d) provides for a criminal penalty for a violation of this section. The amount of the fine is prescribed under title 18, United States Code, and may include imprisonment for not more than 5 years, or both. This section makes no substantive change to law.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–281 struck out "of Transportation" after "provided by the Secretary".

2006—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–304 substituted "section 56102 or 56103 of this title" for "section 9 or 37 of the Shipping Act, 1916 (46 App. U.S.C. 808, 835)".

1989—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101–225, §303(1)(A), substituted "Except as provided by the Secretary of Transportation, when" for "When" and "Secretary for filing" for "Secretary of Transportation for filing".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101–225, §303(1)(B), substituted "Except as provided by the Secretary, an" for "An".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§31307. State statutes superseded

This chapter supersedes any State statute conferring a lien on a vessel to the extent the statute establishes a claim to be enforced by a civil action in rem against the vessel for necessaries.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4741.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31307	46:975

Section 31307 provides for preemption of State laws to the extent a claim for necessaries is enforced by a civil action *in rem* in admiralty against the vessel.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§31308. Secretary of Commerce or Transportation as mortgagee

The Secretary of Commerce or Transportation, as a mortgagee under this chapter, may foreclose on a lien arising from a right established under a mortgage under chapter 537 of this title, subject to section 362(b) of title 11.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4741; Pub. L. 101–595, title VI, §603(13), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2993; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(28), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1704; Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §913(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3017.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31308	46:952 (last sentence)

Section 31308 allows the Secretary of Commerce or Transportation to foreclose on a lien arising from a right established under a mortgage under title XI of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936. This section makes no substantive change to law.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Pub. L. 111–281 substituted "The Secretary of Commerce or Transportation, as a mortgagee under this chapter," for "When the Secretary of Commerce or Transportation is a mortgagee under this chapter, the Secretary".

2006—Pub. L. 109–304 substituted "chapter 537 of this title" for "title XI of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 App. U.S.C. 1271 et seq.)".

1990—Pub. L. 101–595 substituted "(46 App. U.S.C. 1271 et seq.)" for "(46 App. U.S.C. 1241 et seq.)".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§31309. General civil penalty

Except as otherwise provided in this chapter, a person violating this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $10,000.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4741.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31309	New

Section 31309 provides for a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 for a violation of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER II—COMMERCIAL INSTRUMENTS

§31321. Filing, recording, and discharge

(a)(1) A bill of sale, conveyance, mortgage, assignment, or related instrument, whenever made, that includes any part of a documented vessel or a vessel for which an application for documentation is filed, must be filed with the Secretary to be valid, to the extent the vessel is involved, against any person except—

(A) the grantor, mortgagor, or assignor;

(B) the heir or devisee of the grantor, mortgagor, or assignor; and

(C) a person having actual notice of the sale, conveyance, mortgage, assignment, or related instrument.

(2) Each bill of sale, conveyance, mortgage, assignment, or related instrument that is filed in substantial compliance with this section is valid against any person from the time it is filed with the Secretary.

(3) The parties to an instrument or an application for documentation shall use diligence to ensure that the parts of the instrument or application for which they are responsible are in substantial compliance with the filing and documentation requirements.

(4) A bill of sale, conveyance, mortgage, assignment, or related instrument may be filed electronically under regulations prescribed by the Secretary.

(b) To be filed, a bill of sale, conveyance, mortgage, assignment, or related instrument must—

(1) identify the vessel;

(2) state the name and address of each party to the instrument;

(3) state, if a mortgage, the amount of the direct or contingent obligations (in one or more units of account as agreed to by the parties) that is or may become secured by the mortgage, excluding interest, expenses, and fees;

(4) state the interest of the grantor, mortgagor, or assignor in the vessel;

(5) state the interest sold, conveyed, mortgaged, or assigned; and

(6) be signed and acknowledged.

(c) If a bill of sale, conveyance, mortgage, assignment, or related document is filed that involves a vessel for which an application for documentation is filed, and the Secretary decides that the vessel cannot be documented by an applicant—

(1) the Secretary shall send notice of the Secretary's decision, including reasons for the decision, to each interested party to the instrument filed for recording; and

(2) 90 days after sending the notice as provided under clause (1) of this subsection, the Secretary—

(A) may terminate the filing; and

(B) may return the instrument filed without recording it under subsection (e) of this section.

(d) A person may withdraw an application for documentation of a vessel for which a mortgage has been filed under this section only if the mortgagee consents.

(e) The Secretary shall—

(1) record the bills of sale, conveyances, mortgages, assignments, and related instruments of a documented vessel complying with subsection (b) of this section in the order they are filed; and

(2) maintain appropriate indexes, for use by the public, of instruments filed or recorded, or both.

(f) On full and final discharge of the indebtedness under a mortgage recorded under subsection (e)(1) of this section, a mortgagee, on request of the Secretary or mortgagor, shall provide the Secretary with an acknowledged certificate of discharge of the indebtedness in a form prescribed by the Secretary. The Secretary shall record the certificate.

(g) The mortgage or related instrument of a vessel covered by a preferred mortgage under section 31322(d) of this title, that is later filed under this section at the time an application for documentation is filed, is valid under this section from the time the mortgage or instrument representing financing became a preferred mortgage under section 31322(d).

(h) On full and final discharge of the indebtedness under a mortgage deemed to be a preferred mortgage under section 31322(d) of this title, a mortgagee, on request of the Secretary, a State, or mortgagor, shall provide the Secretary or the State, as appropriate, with an acknowledged certificate of discharge of the indebtedness in a form prescribed by the Secretary or the State, as applicable. If filed with the Secretary, the Secretary shall enter that information in the vessel identification system under chapter 125 of this title.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4741; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §303(2), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1923; Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §305, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3918; Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §420, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2124; Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §913(a)(1), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3017.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31321(a)(1)	46:921(a)
31321(a)(2)	46:1012
31321(a)(3)	New
31321(b)	46:926(a), (b)
31321(c), (d)	New
31321(e)	46:921(b)

31321(f)	46:925(b)
31321(g)	New
31321(h)	46:925(b)

Section 31321(a)(1) provides for the filing of a bill of sale, conveyance, mortgage, assignment, or related instrument of a vessel. This subsection makes substantive changes to law. The bill would allow a bill of sale, conveyance, mortgage, assignment, or related instrument to be filed at the same time an application for documentation under chapter 121 is filed. The Committee intends that the types of related instruments required to be filed be defined by regulations prescribed by the Secretary of Transportation. A major change the bill makes is that the instrument needs only be filed with the Secretary of Transportation to be valid. It is not necessary that it be recorded. This change is being made to eliminate a problem under existing law that prevents a person from recording an instrument when the vessel has not been yet documented. When filed with the Secretary, it is valid (to the extent the vessel is involved) against any person except the grantor, mortgagor, or assignor, their heirs or devisees, and a person having actual notice of that instrument. Clauses (A)–(C) make no substantive change to law.

Paragraph (2) provides that each bill of sale, conveyance, mortgage, assignment, or related instrument that is filed in substantial compliance with the requirements of this section is valid against any person from the time it is filed with the Secretary.

Paragraph (3) provides that it is the responsibility of the parties to an instrument to use diligence to ensure that the particulars of a filed instrument for which they are responsible are in substantial compliance. It is not the responsibility of the Secretary to validate the information in the instrument. If an instrument is later found to be invalid because it is not in substantial compliance, and the parties lose the benefits of a preferred mortgage, it is their fault, not the Secretary's.

Section 31321(b) sets out the requirements that an instrument must meet to be properly filed. To be filed the instruments must: (1) identify the vessel; (2) state the name and address of each party to the instrument; (3) state, if a mortgage, the amount of the direct or contingent obligations (in one or more units of account as agreed to by the parties) that is or may become secured by the mortgage, excluding interest, expenses, and fees; (4) state the interest of the grantor, mortgagor, or assignor; (5) state the interest sold, conveyed, mortgaged, or assigned; and (6) be signed and acknowledged. While most of these items are required under current law to be included in the index, and therefore required to be submitted to the Secretary to be recorded, this subsection makes a number of substantive changes to law. First, while vessel names are currently required to be submitted, this requirement has been broadened so that hull identification numbers and official numbers can be used to more specifically identify a vessel (since many vessels have the same name). Second, it requires the mortgage to state the maximum amount of the obligation, including principal, interest, fees, etc., that are secured by the mortgage. It also clarifies that the mortgage obligation may be payable in more than one unit of account, such as yen, franc, or special drawing right. Third, it recognizes that under some modern financing practices an instrument may not have a date of maturity. The requirement for supplying the date of maturity has been eliminated.

Section 31321(c) provides that if an instrument filed involves a vessel that has not yet been documented, and the Secretary decides that the vessel cannot be documented by the applicant, then the Secretary shall send notice of that denial to the parties, including the reasons for the Secretary's decision. If the parties have not corrected the deficiencies within 90 days, the Secretary may terminate the filing and return the instruments. This invalidates the instruments.

Section 31321(d) prohibits a person from withdrawing an application for documentation of a vessel for which a mortgage has been filed unless the mortgagee consents. Since the withdrawal will invalidate the mortgage, the mortgagee should be allowed to prohibit the withdrawal.

Section 31321(e) makes a substantive change to law. It requires the Secretary to record instruments in the order they are received for filing, not in the order in which they were received for recording. It also makes a substantive change by eliminating the specific indexes required under the law and substituting a general requirement for the Secretary to maintain indexes of instruments filed or recorded, or both, for use by the public. These indexes, prescribed by regulations, must be in keeping with U.S. obligations under treaties to which the United States is a party. Since section 104 [105] of this Act makes the existing rules and regulations applicable under this subsection, the current indexing system will be maintained that includes the names of the vessels; names of the parties to the instruments; time and date each instrument was received; the interest in the vessel that was sold, conveyed, mortgaged, or assigned; and the date of the maturity of the mortgage, if any. However, it allows the Secretary by regulation to automate the system with computers, as long as the new system provides the public with an adequate method of finding and examining these public records.

Section 31321(f) makes a substantive change to law by eliminating the requirement that a partial discharge of indebtedness be filed with the Secretary. The bill requires that on the full and final discharge of indebtedness the mortgagee, on request of the Secretary or mortgagor, shall provide the Secretary with a written, acknowledged certificate of discharge of the indebtedness. This subsection also makes a substantive change by requiring that the mortgagee, not the mortgagor, provide the certificate of discharge. The Secretary shall then record the certificate. However, this does not prohibit a person from submitting a certificate of discharge under subsection (a) since it is a related instrument. This subsection also makes a substantive change to law by eliminating the requirement that the discharge be endorsed on the vessel's certificate of documentation, and that the Customs Service only may clear a vessel after an endorsement has been made. This change is made because of the elimination of endorsements under section 31322.

HOUSE FLOOR STATEMENT

Section 31321 has been changed to clarify that a mortgage, whenever made, must be filed to be valid against third parties. This clarification allows mortgage closings to occur previous to filing of an instrument, and to eliminate the need for a fictional simultaneous closing and filing.

Subsection (g) clarifies that if an application for documentation is filed for a vessel covered by a preferred mortgage under section 31322(d) (as enacted by this Act), the preferred mortgage must be filed with the Secretary at the same time the application for documentation is filed to be valid against third parties. If the preferred mortgage is filed with the Secretary at the time the documentation application is filed, it is valid from the time it became a preferred mortgage under section 31322(d).

When a State preferred mortgage under section 31322(d) is finally discharged, subsection (h) of this section requires the mortgagee to provide upon request to the Secretary or a State, whichever is more appropriate, an acknowledged certificate of discharge of indebtedness. This is necessary when a vessel in the system moves from a participating titling State and is not retitled in another participating State. In this case, there is no way to update the status of the indebtedness through the original titling State. The Secretary is required to accept this information to be maintained in the vessel identification system under section 12503(c) of title 46 (as enacted by this Act).

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–281 struck out "of Transportation" after "Secretary" in introductory provisions.

2002—Subsec. (a)(4) Pub. L. 107–295 struck out subpar. (A) designation before "A bill of sale" and subpar. (B) which read as follows: "A filing made electronically under subparagraph (A) shall not be effective after the 10-day period beginning on the date of the filing unless the original instrument is provided to the Secretary within that 10-day period."

1996—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–324 added par. (4).

1989—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101–225 substituted "for which an application for documentation is filed" for "that has not yet been documented" in introductory provisions and "interested party to" for "party whose name and address is stated on" in par. (1).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, not to affect any civil action filed before that date, and, insofar as applicable to vessels for which an application for documentation has been filed, effective Jan. 1, 1990, with further provision for an instrument filed before Jan. 1, 1989, but not recorded before that date, and with other qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§31322. Preferred mortgages

(a) A preferred mortgage is a mortgage, whenever made, that—

(1) includes the whole of the vessel;

(2) is filed in substantial compliance with section 31321 of this title;

(3)(A) covers a documented vessel; or

(B) covers a vessel for which an application for documentation is filed that is in substantial compliance with the requirements of chapter 121 of this title and the regulations prescribed under that chapter; and

(4) with respect to a vessel with a fishery endorsement that is 100 feet or greater in registered length, has as the mortgagee—

(A) a person eligible to own a vessel with a fishery endorsement under section 12113(c) of this title;

(B) a State or federally chartered financial institution that is insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;

(C) a farm credit lender established under title 12, chapter 23 of the United States Code;

(D) a commercial fishing and agriculture bank established pursuant to State law;

(E) a commercial lender organized under the laws of the United States or of a State and eligible to own a vessel for purposes of documentation under section 12103 of this title; or

(F) a mortgage trustee under subsection (f) of this section.

(b) Any indebtedness secured by a preferred mortgage that is filed or recorded under this chapter, or that is subject to a mortgage, security agreement, or instruments granting a security interest that is deemed to be a preferred mortgage under subsection (d) of this section, may have any rate of interest to which the parties agree.

(c)(1) If a preferred mortgage includes more than one vessel or property that is not a vessel, the mortgage may provide for the separate discharge of each vessel and all property not a vessel by the payment of a part of the mortgage indebtedness.

(2) If a vessel covered by a preferred mortgage that includes more than one vessel or property that is not a vessel is to be sold on the order of a district court in a civil action in rem, and the mortgage does not provide for separate discharge as provided under paragraph (1) of this subsection—

(A) the mortgage constitutes a lien on that vessel in the full amount of the outstanding mortgage indebtedness; and

(B) an allocation of mortgage indebtedness for purposes of separate discharge may not be made among the vessel and other property covered by the mortgage.

(d)(1) A mortgage, security agreement, or instrument granting a security interest perfected under State law covering the whole of a vessel titled in a State is deemed to be a preferred mortgage if—

(A) the Secretary certifies that the State titling system complies with the Secretary's guidelines for a titling system under section 13107(b)(8) of this title; and

(B) information on the vessel covered by the mortgage, security agreement, or instrument is made available to the Secretary under chapter 125 of this title.

(2) This subsection applies to mortgages, security agreements, or instruments covering vessels titled in a State after—

(A) the Secretary's certification under paragraph (1)(A) of this subsection; and

(B) the State begins making information available to the Secretary under chapter 125 of this title.

(3) A preferred mortgage under this subsection continues to be a preferred mortgage even if the vessel is no longer titled in the State where the mortgage, security agreement, or instrument granting a security interest became a preferred mortgage under this subsection.

(e) If a vessel is already covered by a preferred mortgage when an application for titling or documentation is filed—

(1) the status of the preferred mortgage covering the vessel to be titled in the State is determined by the law of the jurisdiction where the vessel is currently titled or documented; and

(2) the status of the preferred mortgage covering the vessel to be documented under chapter 121 is determined by subsection (a) of this section.

(f)(1) A mortgage trustee may hold in trust, for an individual or entity, an instrument or evidence of indebtedness, secured by a mortgage of the vessel to the mortgage trustee, provided that the mortgage trustee—

(A) is eligible to be a preferred mortgagee under subsection (a)(4), subparagraphs (A)–(E) of this section;

(B) is organized as a corporation, and is doing business, under the laws of the United States or of a State;

(C) is authorized under those laws to exercise corporate trust powers;

(D) is subject to supervision or examination by an official of the United States Government or a State;

(E) has a combined capital and surplus (as stated in its most recent published report of condition) of at least $3,000,000; and

(F) meets any other requirements prescribed by the Secretary.

(2) If the beneficiary under the trust arrangement is not a commercial lender, a lender syndicate or eligible to be a preferred mortgagee under subsection (a)(4), subparagraphs (A)–(E) of this section, the Secretary must determine that the issuance, assignment, transfer, or trust arrangement does not result in an impermissible transfer of control of the vessel to a person not eligible to own a vessel with a fishery endorsement under section 12113(c) of this title.

(3) A vessel with a fishery endorsement may be operated by a mortgage trustee only with the approval of the Secretary.

(4) A right under a mortgage of a vessel with a fishery endorsement may be issued, assigned, or transferred to a person not eligible to be a mortgagee of that vessel under this section only with the approval of the Secretary.

(5) The issuance, assignment, or transfer of an instrument or evidence of indebtedness contrary to this subsection is voidable by the Secretary.

(g) For purposes of this section a "commercial lender" means an entity primarily engaged in the business of lending and other financing transactions with a loan portfolio in excess of $100,000,000, of which not more than 50 per centum in dollar amount consists of loans to borrowers in the commercial fishing industry, as certified to the Secretary by such lender.

(h) For purposes of this section a "lender syndicate" means an arrangement established for the combined extension of credit of not less than $20,000,000 made up of four or more entities that each have a beneficial interest, held through an agent, under a trust arrangement established pursuant to subsection (f), no one of which may exercise powers thereunder without the concurrence of at least one other unaffiliated beneficiary.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4743; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §303(3), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1923; Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1113(a), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3970; Pub. L. 105–277, div. C, title II, §202(b), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–618; Pub. L. 105–383, title IV, §401(c)(1)–(4), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3425; Pub. L. 106–31, title III, §3027(a)(1), May 21, 1999, 113 Stat. 101; Pub. L. 107–20, title II, §2202(b), (c), July 24, 2001, 115 Stat. 168, 169; Pub. L. 109–304, §§15(29), 16(c)(7), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1704, 1706; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(l), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2327.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31322(a)(1)	46:922(a), (b)
31322(a)(2)	New
31322(b)	46:926(d)
31322(c)(1)	46:922(e)
31322(c)(2)	46:922(f)
31322(d), (e)	New

Section 31322 sets out the conditions that must be met for a mortgage to be considered a preferred mortgage, and the types of endorsements that the Secretary must make on any certificate of documentation of a vessel that is to be covered by a preferred mortgage.

Subsection (a)(1) makes many substantive changes to law. While a preferred mortgage must still include the whole of a vessel, this subsection eliminates the exception of certain vessels under 25 gross tons. It allows a vessel for which an application for documentation has been filed to have a preferred mortgage. It allows a mortgage to be a preferred mortgage from the time all four conditions are met, rather than from when the vessel is finally documented. Therefore, a mortgage will usually attain its preferred status when the application for documentation and the instrument have been filed. This subsection changes the requirement that all documented vessels have as a mortgagee a person that is a citizen of the United States, as defined in section 2 of the Shipping Act, 1916, and allows a State, the United States Government, a federally insured depository institution, or any other person approved by the Secretary to be a mortgagee.

Subsection (a)(2) makes a substantive change to law exempting fishing, fish processing, and fish tender vessels, and vessels operated only for pleasure from the mortgagee restrictions, since these vessels do not have significant national defense use.

Subsection (b) permits a preferred mortgage to have any rate of interest that is agreeable to the parties to the mortgage. This subsection makes no substantive change to law.

Subsection (c)(1) applies to a mortgage that covers more than one vessel or additional property that is not a vessel. This subsection allows a preferred mortgage to include a separate discharge of the additional vessels and property.

Subsection (c)(2) applies when a preferred mortgage covers more than one vessel, does not provide for the separate discharge of a vessel, and is to be sold by court order. The amount of the mortgage indebtedness attributable to a vessel is that part of the indebtedness, increased by 20 percent, that the court determines approximates the value that the particular vessel bears to the value of all the vessels and property covered by the mortgage. In other words, the amount to be set by the court is the estimated value of the one vessel plus 20 percent of that value to assure sufficiency of collateral.

This section also makes a substantive change by eliminating the requirement that a vessel's certificate of documentation be endorsed with information from the mortgage. This change is made since most of the information is out of date when examined, and since a mortgage must be carried on self-propelled vessels under section 31324(b). This section also eliminates the requirement for the inclusion of an affidavit of good faith. However, both criminal and civil penalties have been added [in section 31330] to help ensure that there is not fraud. This section also eliminates the requirement that a preferred mortgage include a separate discharge for additional property that is not a vessel, the requirement that the mortgage does not stipulate that the mortgagee waives the mortgage's preferred status; and the requirement for clearing vessels with endorsed documents through Customs.

HOUSE FLOOR STATEMENT

Under section 31322(a)(2) a "vessel operated only for pleasure" is exempt from any restrictions on who can be a mortgagee. This standard is the same as used for the documentation of a recreational vessel under section 12109 of title 46. The Committee intends that vessels that have a recreational vessel license, or combined fisheries and recreational license, fall under this exemption. However, if the vessel has a Coastwise License, Great Lakes License, or Registry combined with a Recreational License, the vessel would not fall under this exemption.

Under subsection (c)(2), if a vessel covered by a preferred mortgage that includes more than one vessel or property that is not a vessel is to be sold on the order of a district court *in rem*, and there is not a separate discharge, then the mortgage constitutes a lien on that vessel in the full amount of the outstanding mortgage indebtedness, and an allocation of mortgage indebtedness for purposes of a separate discharge may not be made. This change is made to eliminate the formula that did not work and to allow the vessel to be sold free and clear, regardless of the amount of the sale.

Under subsection (d) of section 31322, a mortgage or other instrument representing financing of a vessel under State law that is made under applicable State law and covers the whole of a vessel titled in a State is deemed to be a preferred mortgage if two conditions are fulfilled. The first condition is that the Secretary must certify that the State in which the vessel is titled has a titling system that complies with the Secretary's vessel titling guidelines established under section 13106(b)(8) of title 46. Congress mandated the promulgation of these guidelines in the Recreational Boating Safety Act of 1986, Public Law 99–626. The second condition is that the State in which the vessel is titled must make information available to the Secretary for the vessel identification system established under chapter 125 of title 46 (as enacted by this Act) on the vessel covered by the mortgage or other instrument. This status only applies to vessels titled in the State after those two

conditions are met. The phrase "instrument representing financing of a vessel under State law" is used in addition to "mortgage" because State laws do not always use the term mortgage when referring to financing. It is intended, however, that the financing covered by this phrase would be the same as that covered by the concept of a mortgage under other Federal law.

Paragraph (2) of subsection (d) clarifies that mortgages or other financing instruments may obtain preferred status under subsection (d) if they cover vessels titled in a State after the Secretary certifies the compliance of the State's titling system, and the State begins making vessel identification information available to the Secretary. Preferred mortgage status can only be attained when these two conditions are in effect. Mortgages or financing instruments made prior to that are not preferred and, if these two conditions cease to exist, new mortgages or forecasting instruments made after that time cannot attain preferred status.

The law of the titling State controls the making of the preferred mortgage or financing instrument under this subsection. No additional Federal recording requirements may be imposed for the mortgage or instrument to obtain preferred status under this subsection.

Paragraph (3) of this subsection ensures that a preferred mortgage under this subsection retains that status if the vessel covered by the mortgage later relinquishes its title. If the vessel is subsequently documented, the continuing validity of the mortgage is determined by section 31321(g) (as enacted by this Act).

Subsection (e) of section 31322 clarifies the validity of preferred mortgages made under subsection (d). In the case of a State titled vessel covered by a preferred mortgage for which a new titling application is filed, the validity of the mortgage is governed by the law of the titling State in which the mortgage became preferred. In the case of a documented vessel covered by a preferred mortgage for which an application for a State title is filed, or a State titled vessel covered by a preferred mortgage for which an application for documentation is filed, the validity of the preferred mortgage is governed by section 31322(a) of title 46 (as enacted by this Act).

Information on vessels with preferred mortgages made under State law will be available to creditors from the vessel identification system under chapter 125 of title 46 (as enacted by this Act).

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (a)(4)(B). Pub. L. 115–232 substituted "State" for "state".

2006—Subsec. (a)(4)(A). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(29)(A), substituted "section 12113(c)" for "section 12102(c)".

Subsec. (a)(4)(E). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(29)(B), substituted "for purposes of documentation under section 12103" for "under section 12102(a)".

Subsec. (d)(1)(A). Pub. L. 109–304, §16(c)(7), substituted "section 13107(b)(8)" for "section 13106(b)(8)".

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(29)(C), substituted "section 12113(c)" for "section 12102(c)".

2001—Subsec. (a)(4)(B) to (F). Pub. L. 107–20, §2202(b), added subpars. (B) to (F) and struck out former subpars. (B) and (C) which read as follows:

"(B) a state or federally chartered financial institution that satisfies the controlling interest criteria of section 2(b) of the Shipping Act, 1916 (46 U.S.C. 802(b));

"(C) a person that complies with the provisions of section 12102(c)(4) of this title."

Subsecs. (f) to (h). Pub. L. 107–20, §2202(c), added subsecs. (f) to (h).

1999—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 106–31 made technical amendment to directory language of Pub. L. 105–277, §202(b). See 1998 Amendment note below.

1998—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 105–277, §202(b), as amended by Pub. L. 106–31, added par. (4).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 105–383, §401(c)(1), added subsec. (b) and struck out former subsec. (b) which read as follows: "A preferred mortgage filed or recorded under this chapter may have any rate of interest that the parties to the mortgage agree to."

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 105–383, §401(c)(2), substituted "mortgage, security agreement, or instrument" for "mortgage or instrument" in introductory provisions and subpar. (B).

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 105–383, §401(c)(4), substituted "mortgages, security agreements, or instruments" for "mortgages or instruments" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 105–383, §401(c)(3), added par. (3) and struck out former par. (3) which read as follows: "A preferred mortgage under this subsection continues to be a preferred mortgage if the vessel is no longer titled in the State where the mortgage was made."

1996—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–324 amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) consisted of 2 pars. with substantially similar provisions defining a preferred mortgage except that it included

a mortgage with a State, the United States Government, a federally insured depository institution, or specified individual as mortgagee.

1989—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 101–225, §303(3)(A), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "Paragraph (1)(D) of this subsection does not apply to a vessel operated only as a fishing vessel, fish processing vessel, or a fish tender vessel (as defined in section 2101 of this title) or to a vessel operated only for pleasure."

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 101–225, §303(3)(B), substituted "granting a security interest perfected under State law" for "representing financing of a vessel under State law that is made under applicable State law".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101–225, §303(3)(C), substituted "the status of the preferred mortgage" for "the validity of the preferred mortgage" in pars. (1) and (2).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2001 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 107–20, title II, §2202(d), July 24, 2001, 115 Stat. 170, provided that: "Section 31322 of title 46, United States Code as amended in this section, and as amended by section 202(b) of the American Fisheries Act (Public Law 105–277, division C, title II) shall not take effect until April 1, 2003, nor shall the Secretary of Transportation, in determining whether a vessel owner complies with the requirements of section 12102(c) of title 46, United States Code [now 46 U.S.C. 12113(b)(2) to (d)], consider the citizenship status of a lender, in its capacity as a lender with respect to that vessel owner, until after April 1, 2003."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 105–277, div. C, title II, §203(a), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–619, provided that: "The amendments made by section 202 [amending this section and former section 12102 of this title] shall take effect on October 1, 2001."

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, not to affect any civil action filed before that date, and, insofar as applicable to vessels for which an application for documentation has been filed, effective Jan. 1, 1990, with other exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§31323. Disclosing and incurring obligations before executing preferred mortgages

(a) On request of the mortgagee and before executing a preferred mortgage, the mortgagor shall disclose in writing to the mortgagee the existence of any obligation known to the mortgagor on the vessel to be mortgaged.

(b) After executing a preferred mortgage and before the mortgagee has had a reasonable time to file the mortgage, the mortgagor may not incur, without the consent of the mortgagee, any contractual obligation establishing a lien on the vessel except a lien for—

(1) wages of a stevedore when employed directly by a person listed in section 31341 of this title;

(2) wages for the crew of the vessel;

(3) general average; or

(4) salvage, including contract salvage.

(c) On conviction of a mortgagor under section 31330(a)(1)(A) or (B) of this title for violating this section, the mortgage indebtedness, at the option of the mortgagee, is payable immediately.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4744.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31323(a)	46:924(1)

31323(b)	46:924(2)
31323(c)	46:941(b) (last sentence)

Section 31323(a) requires the mortgagor to disclose any obligations on the vessel before executing a preferred mortgage. This subsection makes no substantive change to law.

Section 31323(b) provides that, after executing a preferred mortgage, the mortgagor may not incur, without consent of the mortgagee, any contractual obligations establishing a lien on the vessel—except a lien for stevedore wages, crew wages, general average, and salvage. The only substantive change to law made by this subsection is that the reasonable time to record a mortgage is changed to a reasonable time to file the mortgage, and the elimination of the reference to endorsements. These changes are in keeping with the changes made in section 31322.

Section 31323(c) provides that if a mortgagor is convicted of a violation of this section, then the mortgage indebtedness, at the option of the mortgagee, is payable immediately. This subsection makes no substantive change to law.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§31324. Retention and examination of mortgages of vessels covered by preferred mortgages

(a) On request, the owner, master, or individual in charge of a vessel covered by a preferred mortgage shall permit a person to examine the mortgage if the person has business with the vessel that may give rise to a maritime lien or the sale, conveyance, mortgage, or assignment of a mortgage of the vessel.

(b) A mortgagor of a preferred mortgage covering a self-propelled vessel shall use diligence in keeping a certified copy of the mortgage on the vessel.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4744.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31324	46:923

Section 31324(a) provides for examination of mortgages of a vessel that is covered by a preferred mortgage by persons that have business with the vessel that may give rise to a maritime lien or the sale, conveyance, mortgage, or assignment of the mortgage. This subsection makes no substantive change to law.

Section 31324(b) requires that a certified copy of the mortgage must be on board a self-propelled vessel. This subsection makes no substantive change to law.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§31325. Preferred mortgage liens and enforcement

(a) A preferred mortgage is a lien on the mortgaged vessel in the amount of the outstanding

mortgage indebtedness secured by the vessel.

(b) On default of any term of the preferred mortgage, the mortgagee may—

(1) enforce the preferred mortgage lien in a civil action in rem for a documented vessel, a vessel to be documented under chapter 121 of this title, a vessel titled in a State, or a foreign vessel;

(2) enforce a claim for the outstanding indebtedness secured by the mortgaged vessel in—

(A) a civil action in personam in admiralty against the mortgagor, maker, comaker, or guarantor for the amount of the outstanding indebtedness or any deficiency in full payment of that indebtedness; and

(B) a civil action against the mortgagor, maker, comaker, or guarantor for the amount of the outstanding indebtedness or any deficiency in full payment of that indebtedness; and

(3) enforce the preferred mortgage lien or a claim for the outstanding indebtedness secured by the mortgaged vessel, or both, by exercising any other remedy (including an extrajudicial remedy) against a documented vessel, a vessel for which an application for documentation is filed under chapter 121 of this title, a vessel titled in a State, a foreign vessel, or a mortgagor, maker, comaker, or guarantor for the amount of the outstanding indebtedness or any deficiency in full payment of that indebtedness, if—

(A) the remedy is allowed under applicable law; and

(B) the exercise of the remedy will not result in a violation of section 56101 or 56102 of this title.

(c) The district courts have original jurisdiction of a civil action brought under subsection (b)(1) or (2) of this section. However, for a documented vessel, a vessel to be documented under chapter 121 of this title, a vessel titled in a State, or a foreign vessel, this jurisdiction is exclusive of the courts of the States for a civil action brought under subsection (b)(1) of this section.

(d)(1) Actual notice of a civil action brought under subsection (b)(1) of this section, or to enforce a maritime lien, must be given in the manner directed by the court to—

(A) the master or individual in charge of the vessel;

(B) any person that recorded under section 31343(a) or (d) of this title an unexpired notice of a claim of an undischarged lien on the vessel; and

(C) a mortgagee of a mortgage filed or recorded under section 31321 of this title that is an undischarged mortgage on the vessel.

(2) Notice under paragraph (1) of this subsection is not required if, after search satisfactory to the court, the person entitled to the notice has not been found in the United States.

(3) Failure to give notice required by this subsection does not affect the jurisdiction of the court in which the civil action is brought. However, unless notice is not required under paragraph (2) of this subsection, the party required to give notice is liable to the person not notified for damages in the amount of that person's interest in the vessel terminated by the action brought under subsection (b)(1) of this section. A civil action may be brought to recover the amount of the terminated interest. The district courts have original jurisdiction of the action, regardless of the amount in controversy or the citizenship of the parties. If the plaintiff prevails, the court may award costs and attorney fees to the plaintiff.

(e) In a civil action brought under subsection (b)(1) of this section—

(1) the court may appoint a receiver and authorize the receiver to operate the mortgaged vessel and shall retain in rem jurisdiction over the vessel even if the receiver operates the vessel outside the district in which the court is located; and

(2) when directed by the court, a United States marshal may take possession of a mortgaged vessel even if the vessel is in the possession or under the control of a person claiming a possessory common law lien.

(f)(1) Before title to the documented vessel or vessel for which an application for documentation is filed under chapter 121 is transferred by an extrajudicial remedy, the person exercising the remedy

shall give notice of the proposed transfer to the Secretary, to the mortgagee of any mortgage on the vessel filed in substantial compliance with section 31321 of this title before notice of the proposed transfer is given to the Secretary, and to any person that recorded an unexpired notice of a claim of an undischarged lien on the vessel under section 31343(a) or (d) of this title before notice of the proposed transfer is given to the Secretary.

(2) Failure to give notice as required by this subsection shall not affect the transfer of title to a vessel. However, the rights of any holder of a maritime lien or a preferred mortgage on the vessel shall not be affected by a transfer of title by an extrajudicial remedy exercised under this section, regardless of whether notice is required by this subsection or given.

(3) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations establishing the time and manner for providing notice under this subsection.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4745; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §303(4), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1923; Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1124(a), (b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3980; Pub. L. 105–383, title IV, §401(c)(5)–(7), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3425; Pub. L. 107–295, title II, §205(b), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2096; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(30), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1704; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3529(b)(1)(B), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 603.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31325(a)	46:951 (1st sentence)
31325(b)(1)	46:951 (2d sentence)
31325(b)(2)	46:954(a)
31325(b)(3)	New
31325(c)	46:951 (3d sentence)
31325(d)	46:951 (4th to 6th sentences)
31325(e)	46:952 (1st, 2d sentences)

Section 31325 provides for the enforcement of a preferred mortgage lien.

Section 31325(a) makes a "preferred mortgage" a lien on the vessel in the amount of the mortgage indebtedness secured by the vessel outstanding at foreclosure. This subsection makes no substantive change to law.

Section 31325(b) provides that, on default of any term, the mortgagee may enforce the preferred mortgage lien in a civil action *in rem*, or *in personam* in admiralty against the mortgagor, comaker, or guarantor for the amount of the outstanding indebtedness secured by the vessel or any deficiency in paying off that indebtedness. This subsection makes a substantive change to law by allowing a nonadmiralty civil action to be brought against the mortgagor, comaker, or guarantor for the amount of the outstanding indebtedness secured by the vessel or any deficiency in paying off that indebtedness. This change allows an action to be brought even when the vessel is outside U.S. jurisdiction. This section will also allow the action to be brought against the comaker or guarantor of the mortgage.

Section 31325(c) provides for original and exclusive jurisdiction by a district court, to the exclusion of the courts of a State for civil actions brought *in rem*. It also provides for original jurisdiction for civil actions brought *in personam* in admiralty and civil actions brought under subsection (b)(3). This subsection makes a substantive change to law by broadening the jurisdiction to courts in the territories, as defined in section 31301, as well as giving original jurisdiction to the district courts in nonadmiralty civil actions brought to enforce the preferred mortgage lien.

Subsection (d) provides that actual notice of a civil action *in rem* to enforce a maritime lien must be given in a manner directed by the court to the master, individual in charge of the vessel, to any person that recorded a notice of a claim of an undischarged lien, and, for the first time, to the mortgagee of a mortgage filed with the Secretary. This notice is not required if, after a search is made that is satisfactory to the court, the person entitled to notice is not found in the United States. Failure to give notice does not affect the court's jurisdiction. However, the mortgagor is still liable to the person not notified for damages in the amount of that person's interest in the vessel that was terminated by the civil action *in rem*, and a civil action may still be brought to recover the amount of the terminated interest. The district courts have original jurisdiction of the

action, regardless of the amount in controversy or the citizenship of the parties. If plaintiff prevails, the court shall award costs and attorneys fees to the plaintiff.

Subsection (e) provides that, in a civil action *in rem*, the court may appoint a receiver and authorize operation of the vessel. When directed by the court, a United States marshal may take possession—even if the vessel is in the possession of or under the control of a person claiming a possessory common law lien. This subsection makes a substantive change to law by allowing the court to retain *in rem* jurisdiction over the vessel even if the receiver operates the vessel outside the district in which the court is located.

HOUSE FLOOR STATEMENT

Subsection (c) of this section clarifies that the district courts have original jurisdiction for a civil action under subsection (b) of this section, and exclusive jurisdiction in the case of vessels documented or to be documented under chapter 121 of title 46.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Subsec. (b)(3)(B). Pub. L. 110–181 amended Pub. L. 109–304, §15(30). See 2006 Amendment note below.

2006—Subsec. (b)(3)(B). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(30), as amended by Pub. L. 110–181, substituted "section 56101 or 56102 of this title" for "section 9 or 37 of the Shipping Act, 1916 (46 App. U.S.C. 808, 835)".

2002—Subsec. (d)(1)(B). Pub. L. 107–295, §205(b)(1), substituted "an unexpired notice of a claim" for "a notice of a claim".

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 107–295, §205(b)(2), substituted "an unexpired notice of a claim" for "a notice of a claim".

1998—Subsecs. (b)(1), (3), (c). Pub. L. 105–383 inserted "a vessel titled in a State," after "chapter 121 of this title,".

1996—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 104–324, §1124(a)(1), substituted "mortgagee may" for "mortgage may" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 104–324, §1124(a)(2)(A), substituted "preferred" for "perferred".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 104–324, §1124(a)(2)(B), (3), added par. (3).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 104–324, §1124(b), added subsec. (f).

1989—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 101–225 amended subsecs. (b) and (c) generally. Prior to amendment, subsecs. (b) and (c) read as follows:

"(b) On default of any term of the preferred mortgage, the mortgagee may enforce the preferred mortgage lien in—

"(1) a civil action in rem for a documented vessel or a vessel to be documented under chapter 121 of this title;

"(2) a civil action in personam in admiralty against the mortgagor, comaker, or guarantor for the amount of the outstanding indebtedness secured by the mortgaged vessel or any deficiency in full payment of that indebtedness; and

"(3) a civil action against the mortgagor, comaker, or guarantor for the amount of the outstanding indebtedness secured by the mortgaged vessel or any deficiency in full payment of that indebtedness.

"(c) The district courts have original jurisdiction of a civil action brought under subsection (b) of this section. However, for documented vessels or vessels to be documented under chapter 121 of this title, this jurisdiction is exclusive of the courts of the States for a civil action under subsection (b)(1) of this section."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–181 effective as if included in the enactment of Pub. L. 109–304, see section 3529(b)(2) of Pub. L. 110–181, set out as a note under section 3205 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 107–295, title II, §205(e), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2096, provided that: "This section [see Tables for classification] shall take effect January 1, 2003."

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

CONSTRUCTION OF 1996 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1124(c), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3981, provided that: "The amendments made by subsections (a) and (b) [amending this section] may not be construed to imply that remedies other than judicial remedies were not available before the date of enactment of this section [Oct. 19, 1996] to enforce claims for outstanding indebtedness secured by mortgaged vessels."

§31326. Court sales to enforce preferred mortgage liens and maritime liens and priority of claims

(a) When a vessel is sold by order of a district court in a civil action in rem brought to enforce a preferred mortgage lien or a maritime lien, any claim in the vessel existing on the date of sale is terminated, including a possessory common law lien of which a person is deprived under section 31325(e)(2) of this title, and the vessel is sold free of all those claims.

(b) Each of the claims terminated under subsection (a) of this section attaches, in the same amount and in accordance with their priorities to the proceeds of the sale, except that—

(1) the preferred mortgage lien, including a preferred mortgage lien on a foreign vessel whose mortgage has been guaranteed under chapter 537 of this title, has priority over all claims against the vessel (except for expenses and fees allowed by the court, costs imposed by the court, and preferred maritime liens); and

(2) for a foreign vessel whose mortgage has not been guaranteed under chapter 537 of this title, the preferred mortgage lien is subordinate to a maritime lien for necessaries provided in the United States.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4746; Pub. L. 103–160, div. A, title XIII, §1360, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1816; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(31), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1704.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31326(a)	46:953(b), 961(c)
31326(b)(1)	46:953(b)
31326(b)(2)	46:951 (2d par. proviso)

Section 31326(a) provides for a court-ordered sale to enforce a preferred mortgage lien or a maritime lien and the priority of claims. When a mortgaged vessel is sold by court order in a civil action *in rem*, any prior claim in the vessel is terminated—including any possessory common law lien. This subsection makes a substantive change to law by making the process the same for maritime liens as was provided for preferred mortgage liens. This eliminates the requirement for making a new mortgagee for a court sale to enforce a maritime lien. This section also broadens the jurisdiction to courts in the territories, as defined in section 31301.

Section 31326(b)(1) provides that each of these terminated claims attaches, in the same amount and priority, to the proceeds of sale—except that the preferred mortgage lien always has priority over these other claims. However, the preferred mortgage lien is still subordinated to expenses and fees allowed by the court, costs imposed by the court, and any preferred maritime liens. This may include statutory fees such as the fee of the United States Marshal under 28 U.S.C. 1921. Except for broadening its coverage under subsection (a), this makes no substantive change to law.

Section 31326(b)(2) provides in the case of a foreign vessel, the preferred mortgage lien is also subordinated to a maritime lien for necessaries performed or supplied for the vessel in the United States. "Provided" has been substituted for "provided or supplied" for consistency in usage. Except for broadening its coverage under subsection (a), this paragraph makes no substantive change to law.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(31)(A), substituted "chapter 537 of this title," for "title XI of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 App. U.S.C. 1101 et seq.)".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(31)(B), substituted "chapter 537 of this title" for "title XI of that Act".

1993—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 103–160, §1260(1), inserted ", including a preferred mortgage lien on a foreign vessel whose mortgage has been guaranteed under title XI of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 App. U.S.C. 1101 et seq.)" after "preferred mortgage lien".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 103–160, §1360(2), inserted "whose mortgage has not been guaranteed under title XI of that Act" after "foreign vessel".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§31327. Forfeiture of mortgagee interest

The interest of a mortgagee in a documented vessel or a vessel covered by a preferred mortgage under section 31322(d) of this title may be terminated by a forfeiture of the vessel for a violation of a law of the United States only if the mortgagee authorized, consented, or conspired to do the act, failure, or omission that is the basis of the violation.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4746.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31327	46:961(b)

Section 31327 provides for forfeiture of the mortgagee's interest if the mortgagee authorized, consented, or conspired to do the act, failure, or omission that is the basis of the violation that caused forfeiture of the vessel. This section makes no substantive change to law.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

[§31328. Repealed. Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1113(b)(1), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3970]

Section, Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4746, related to limitations on parties serving as trustees of mortgaged vessel interests.

§31329. Court sales of documented vessels

(a) A documented vessel may be sold by order of a district court only to—

(1) a person eligible to own a documented vessel under section 12103 of this title; or

(2) a mortgagee of that vessel.

(b) When a vessel is sold to a mortgagee not eligible to own a documented vessel—

(1) the vessel must be held by the mortgagee for resale;

(2) the vessel held by the mortgagee is subject to chapter 563 of this title; and

(3) the sale of the vessel to the mortgagee is not a sale to a person not a citizen of the United States under section 12132 of this title.

(c) Unless waived by the Secretary of Transportation, a person purchasing a vessel by court order under subsection (a)(1) of this section or from a mortgagee under subsection (a)(2) of this section must document the vessel under chapter 121 of this title.

(d) The vessel may be operated by the mortgagee not eligible to own a documented vessel only with the approval of the Secretary of Transportation.

(e) A sale of a vessel contrary to this section is void.

(f) This section does not apply to a documented vessel that has been operated only for pleasure.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4747; Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1118, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3973; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(32), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1704; Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §913(c), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3017.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31329	46:961(f)

Section 31329 sets out certain restrictions on the court sale of a documented vessel.

Section 31329(a) restricts the sale only to a person eligible to own a documented vessel under section 12102 of title 46 or to the mortgagee, which may be a trustee acting as a holder of a preferred mortgage on a documented vessel for the benefit of a person not eligible to be the holder of a preferred mortgage on that vessel.

Section 31329(b) sets out conditions on the sale to a trustee acting as a holder of a preferred mortgage on a documented vessel for the benefit of a person not eligible to be the holder of a preferred mortgage on that vessel. First, the vessel must be held by the trustee for resale. Second, while being held for resale, the vessel is subject to requisition or purchase during a national emergency under section 902 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 App. U.S.C. 1242). And third, the sale of the vessel to the trustee is not a sale foreign within the terms of the First Proviso of section 27 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 (46 App. U.S.C. 883).

Section 31329(c) requires a person that is eligible to document the vessel that purchases a vessel from the court to document the vessel. This subsection also requires the person purchasing the vessel from the trustee to document it, thereby restricting to whom the trustee can sell the vessel. Many documented vessels have no national defense utility, such as recreational vessels and fishing vessels. Therefore, both of these restrictions can be waived by the Secretary. As previously discussed, these waivers can be on a case-by-case basis or with a blanket waiver.

Section 31329(d) prohibits a trustee from operating the vessel without the approval of the Secretary.

Section 31329(e) voids any sale that is done contrary to this section.

HOUSE FLOOR STATEMENT

Under section 31329(d) a vessel may be operated by the trustee only with the approval of the Secretary. Under current law a vessel may be documented by a trust if all of the members of the trust are citizens of the United States. If the trust buying the vessel at the court sale includes foreign investors, the vessel cannot be documented. The Committee intends in this section that the vessel will only be "operated" in a maintenance manner, but not in a commercial service.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–281 substituted "Secretary of Transportation" for "Secretary".

2006—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(32)(A), substituted "section 12103" for "section 12102".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(32)(B)(i), substituted "chapter 563 of this title" for "section 902 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 App. U.S.C. 1242)".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(32)(B)(ii), substituted "sale to a person not a citizen of the United States under section 12132 of this title" for "sale foreign within the terms of the first proviso of section 27 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 (46 App. U.S.C. 883)".

1996—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 104–324 added subsec. (f).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§31330. Penalties

(a)(1) A mortgagor shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for not more than 2 years, or both, if the mortgagor—

(A) with intent to defraud, does not disclose an obligation on a vessel as required by section 31323(a) of this title;

(B) with intent to defraud, incurs a contractual obligation in violation of section 31323(b) of this title; or

(C) with intent to hinder or defraud an existing or future creditor of the mortgagor or a lienor of the vessel, files a mortgage with the Secretary.

(2) A mortgagor is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 if the mortgagor—

(A) does not disclose an obligation on a vessel as required by section 31323(a) of this title;

(B) incurs a contractual obligation in violation of section 31323(b) of this title; or

(C) files with the Secretary a mortgage made not in good faith.

(b)(1) A person that knowingly violates section 31329 of this title shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for not more than 3 years, or both.

(2) A person violating section 31329 of this title is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $25,000.

(3) A vessel involved in a violation under section 31329 of this title and its equipment may be seized by, and forfeited to, the Government.

(c) If a person not an individual violates this section, the president or chief executive of the person also is subject to any penalty provided under this section.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4747; Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1113(b)(2), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3970; Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §913(a)(1), (d), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3017.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31330(a)	46:941(b) (1st sentence)
31330(b)	New
31330(c)	46:941(b) (1st sentence)

Section 31330(a) provides for criminal penalties for not disclosing obligations, incurring contractual obligations in violation of section 31323(b), and filing a mortgage made not in good faith. This subsection makes a substantive change to law by adding civil penalties and by making it a crime to record with the Secretary of Transportation a mortgage made not in good faith with the intent to hinder an existing or future

creditor of the mortgagor or a lienor of the vessel. This is done since the affidavit of good faith has been eliminated from the elements of a preferred mortgage.

Section 31330(b) adds criminal and civil penalties for violating the sale and trust requirements under sections 31328 and 31329. It also makes a vessel and its equipment involved in those violations subject to seizure by the Government.

Section 31330(c) makes the president or chief executive officer of a corporation or association liable as a mortgagor for the penalties under this section.

HOUSE FLOOR STATEMENT

Subsection (a) of this section adds criminal and civil penalties for a preferred mortgagor's failure to carry out certain requirements under chapter 313 of title 46 (as enacted by this Act).

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (a)(1)(B). Pub. L. 111–281, §913(d)(1)(A), inserted "or" after semicolon.

Subsec. (a)(1)(C). Pub. L. 111–281, §913(d)(1)(B), substituted "Secretary." for "Secretary; or".

Pub. L. 111–281, §913(a)(1), struck out "of Transportation" after "Secretary".

Subsec. (a)(1)(D). Pub. L. 111–281, §913(d)(1)(C), struck out subpar. (D) which read as follows: "with intent to defraud, does not comply with section 31321(h) of this title."

Subsec. (a)(2)(B) to (D). Pub. L. 111–281, §913(d)(2), inserted "or" at end of subpar. (B), substituted "faith." for "faith; or" at end of subpar. (C), and struck out subpar. (D) which read as follows: "does not comply with section 31321(h) of this title."

1996—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 104–324 struck out "31328 or" before "31329" in pars. (1) to (3).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER III—MARITIME LIENS

§31341. Persons presumed to have authority to procure necessaries

(a) The following persons are presumed to have authority to procure necessaries for a vessel:

(1) the owner;

(2) the master;

(3) a person entrusted with the management of the vessel at the port of supply; or

(4) an officer or agent appointed by—

(A) the owner;

(B) a charterer;

(C) an owner pro hac vice; or

(D) an agreed buyer in possession of the vessel.

(b) A person tortiously or unlawfully in possession or charge of a vessel has no authority to procure necessaries for the vessel.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4748; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §303(5), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1924.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*

31341(a)	46:972 (1st sentence), 973
31341(b)	46:972 (2d sentence)

Section 31341(a) lists those persons who are presumed to have authority to procure necessaries for a vessel. These include the owner, master, or a manager at the port of supply; and an officer or agent appointed by the owner, charterer, owner *pro hac vice*, or buyer in possession of the vessel. This subsection makes no substantive change to law.

Section 31341(b) provides that any person that is tortiously or unlawfully in possession of or in charge of a vessel has no authority to procure necessaries. This subsection makes no substantive change to law.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1989—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 101–225 substituted "management" for "mangement".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§31342. Establishing maritime liens

(a) Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, a person providing necessaries to a vessel on the order of the owner or a person authorized by the owner—

(1) has a maritime lien on the vessel;

(2) may bring a civil action in rem to enforce the lien; and

(3) is not required to allege or prove in the action that credit was given to the vessel.

(b) This section does not apply to a public vessel.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4748; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §303(6), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1924.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31342	46:971

Section 31342 provides that any authorized person providing necessaries for a vessel has a maritime lien on the vessel, may bring a civil action *in rem* in admiralty to enforce the lien, and is not required to allege or prove that credit was given to the vessel. "Providing" has been substituted for "furnishing" for consistency with other laws. This section makes no substantive change to law. This section does not supersede the prohibition under the Public Vessels Act, the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act, or the Suits in Admiralty Act, on bringing an *in rem* action against a public vessel.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1989—Pub. L. 101–225 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), substituted "Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, a person providing necessaries to a vessel on the order of the owner" for "A person providing necessaries to a vessel (except a public vessel) on the order of a person listed in section 31341 of this title", and added subsec. (b).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

§31343. Recording and discharging notices of claim of maritime lien

(a) Except as provided under subsection (d) of this section, a person claiming a lien on a vessel documented, or for which an application for documentation has been filed, under chapter 121 may record with the Secretary a notice of that person's lien claim on the vessel. To be recordable, the notice must—

(1) state the nature of the lien;
(2) state the date the lien was established;
(3) state the amount of the lien;
(4) state the name and address of the person; and
(5) be signed and acknowledged.

(b)(1) The Secretary shall record a notice complying with subsection (a) of this section if, when the notice is presented to the Secretary for recording, the person having the claim files with the notice a declaration stating the following:

(A) The information in the notice is true and correct to the best of the knowledge, information, and belief of the individual who signed it.

(B) A copy of the notice, as presented for recordation, has been sent to each of the following:

(i) The owner of the vessel.

(ii) Each person that recorded under subsection (a) of this section an unexpired notice of a claim of an undischarged lien on the vessel.

(iii) The mortgagee of each mortgage filed or recorded under section 31321 of this title that is an undischarged mortgage on the vessel.

(2) A declaration under this subsection filed by a person that is not an individual must be signed by the president, member, partner, trustee, or other individual authorized to execute the declaration on behalf of the person.

(c)(1) On full and final discharge of the indebtedness that is the basis for a notice of claim of lien recorded under subsection (b) of this section, the person having the claim shall provide the Secretary with an acknowledged certificate of discharge of the indebtedness. The Secretary shall record the certificate.

(2) The district courts of the United States shall have jurisdiction over a civil action in Admiralty to declare that a vessel is not subject to a lien claimed under subsection (b) of this section, or that the vessel is not subject to the notice of claim of lien, or both, regardless of the amount in controversy or the citizenship of the parties. Venue in such an action shall be in the district where the vessel is found or where the claimant resides or where the notice of claim of lien is recorded. The court may award costs and attorneys fees to the prevailing party, unless the court finds that the position of the other party was substantially justified or other circumstances make an award of costs and attorneys fees unjust. The Secretary shall record any such declaratory order.

(d) A person claiming a lien on a vessel covered by a preferred mortgage under section 31322(d) of this title must record and discharge the lien as provided by the law of the State in which the vessel is titled.

(e)(1) A notice of claim of lien recorded under subsection (b) of this section shall expire 3 years after the date the lien was established, as such date is stated in the notice under subsection (a) of this section.

(2) On expiration of a notice of claim of lien under paragraph (1), and after a request by the vessel

owner, the Secretary shall annotate the abstract of title to reflect the expiration of the lien.

(f) This section does not alter in any respect the law pertaining to the establishment of a maritime lien, the remedy provided by such a lien, or the defenses thereto, including any defense under the doctrine of laches.

(Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §102(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4748; Pub. L. 107–295, title II, §205(a)(1), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2095; Pub. L. 111–281, title IX, §913(a)(1), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3017; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8333, Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4705.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised section	*Source section (U.S. Code)*
31343	46:925

Section 31343 provides that any person claiming a lien on a vessel covered by a preferred mortgage may record a notice of lien. This notice must state the nature of the lien, date it was established; the amount; and the name and address of the person claiming a lien, and it must be acknowledged. The Secretary must record a notice of lien if it complies with these requirements. When any part of the indebtedness is discharged, the claimant shall provide the Secretary with a written, acknowledged certificate of discharge of the indebtedness, and the Secretary shall record the certificate. This section makes no substantive change to law.

Section 31343(c) provides that, on the full and final discharge of an indebtedness that is the basis for a claim, the person having the claim shall provide the Secretary with an acknowledged certificate of discharge on the request of the Secretary or owner of the vessel. This subsection makes a substantive change to law by not requiring partial discharges to be filed, as well as making the filing of discharge certificates only at the request of the Secretary or owner of the vessel.

HOUSE FLOOR STATEMENT

Subsection (d) of this section requires a person claiming a lien on a vessel covered by a preferred mortgage under section 31322(d) to record and discharge the lien as provided by the law of the State in which the vessel is titled.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 116–283 designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

2010—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–281 struck out "of Transportation" after "Secretary" in introductory provisions.

2002—Pub. L. 107–295, §205(a)(1)(A), substituted "notices of claim of maritime lien" for "liens on preferred mortgage vessels" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 107–295, §205(a)(1)(B), substituted "documented, or for which an application for documentation has been filed, under chapter 121" for "covered by a preferred mortgage filed or recorded under this chapter" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 107–295, §205(a)(1)(C), amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows: "The Secretary shall record a notice complying with subsection (a) of this section."

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 107–295, §205(a)(1)(D), amended subsec. (c) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (c) read as follows: "On full and final discharge of the indebtedness that is the basis for a claim recorded under subsection (b) of this section, on request of the Secretary or owner, the person having the claim shall provide the Secretary with an acknowledged certificate of discharge of the indebtedness. The Secretary shall record the certificate."

Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 107–295, §205(a)(1)(E), added subsecs. (e) and (f).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 107–295 effective Jan. 1, 2003, see section 205(e) of Pub. L. 107–295, set out as a

note under section 31325 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 1989, with certain exceptions and qualifications, see section 107 of Pub. L. 100–710, set out as a note under section 31301 of this title.

Subtitle IV—Regulation of Ocean Shipping

PART A—OCEAN SHIPPING

Chapter		Sec.
401.	**General**	**40101**
403.	**Agreements**	**40301**
405.	**Tariffs, Service Contracts, Refunds, and Waivers**	**40501**
407.	**Controlled Carriers**	**40701**
409.	**Ocean Transportation Intermediaries**	**40901**
411.	**Prohibitions and Penalties**	**41101**
413.	**Enforcement**	**41301**
	PART B—ACTIONS TO ADDRESS FOREIGN PRACTICES	
421.	**Regulations Affecting Shipping in Foreign Trade**	**42101**
423.	**Foreign Shipping Practices**	**42301**
425.	**National Shipper Advisory Committee**	**42501** [1]
	PART C—MISCELLANEOUS	
441.	**Evidence of Financial Responsibility for Passenger Transportation**	**44101**
	PART D—FEDERAL MARITIME COMMISSION	
461.	**Federal Maritime Commission**	**46101**

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXVI [LXXXVI], §§8604(c), 8605(b)(5), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4764, 4765, added item for chapter 425 and item for part D. Item for chapter 425 was formatted to the style of this analysis to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

[1] *Section number editorially supplied.*

PART A—OCEAN SHIPPING

CHAPTER 401—GENERAL

Sec.
40101. Purposes.
40102. Definitions.
40103. Administrative exemptions.
40104. Reports filed with the Commission.

§40101. Purposes

The purposes of this part are to—

(1) establish a nondiscriminatory regulatory process for the common carriage of goods by water in the foreign commerce of the United States with a minimum of government intervention and regulatory costs;

(2) ensure an efficient, competitive, and economical transportation system in the ocean commerce of the United States;

(3) encourage the development of an economically sound and efficient liner fleet of vessels of the United States capable of meeting national security needs and supporting commerce; and

(4) promote the growth and development of United States exports through a competitive and efficient system for the carriage of goods by water in the foreign commerce of the United States, and by placing a greater reliance on the marketplace.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1523; Pub. L. 117–146, §2, June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1272.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40101	46 App.:1701.	Pub. L. 98–237, §2, Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 67; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §101, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1902.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Par. (2). Pub. L. 117–146, §2(1), added par. (2) and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: "provide an efficient and economic transportation system in the ocean commerce of the United States that is, insofar as possible, in harmony with, and responsive to, international shipping practices;".

Par. (3). Pub. L. 117–146, §2(2), inserted "and supporting commerce" after "needs".

Par. (4). Pub. L. 117–146, §2(3), added par. (4) and struck out former par. (4) which read as follows: "promote the growth and development of United States exports through competitive and efficient ocean transportation and by placing a greater reliance on the marketplace."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTS ON CERTAIN AGREEMENTS AND CONTRACTS

Pub. L. 98–237, §20(d), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 90; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §117(1), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1914, provided that: "All agreements, contracts, modifications, licenses, and exemptions previously issued, approved, or effective under the Shipping Act, 1916 [former 46 U.S.C. App. 801 et seq., see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title], or the Shipping Act of 1984 [former 46 U.S.C. App. 1701 et seq., see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title], shall continue in force and effect as if issued or effective under this Act, as amended by the Ocean Shipping Reform Act of 1998 [Pub. L. 105–258, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1902], and all new agreements, contracts, and modifications to existing, pending, or new contracts or agreements shall be considered under this Act, as amended by the Ocean Shipping Reform Act of 1998."

§40102. Definitions

In this part:

(1) AGREEMENT.—The term "agreement"—

(A) means a written or oral understanding, arrangement, or association, and any modification or cancellation thereof; but

(B) does not include a maritime labor agreement.

(2) ANTITRUST LAWS.—The term "antitrust laws" means—

(A) the Sherman Act (15 U.S.C. 1 et seq.);

(B) sections 73 and 74 of the Wilson Tariff Act (15 U.S.C. 8, 9);

(C) the Clayton Act (15 U.S.C. 12 et seq.);
(D) the Act of June 19, 1936 (15 U.S.C. 13, 13a, 13b, 21a);
(E) the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 41 et seq.);
(F) the Antitrust Civil Process Act (15 U.S.C. 1311 et seq.); and
(G) Acts supplementary to those Acts.

(3) ASSESSMENT AGREEMENT.—The term "assessment agreement" means an agreement, whether part of a collective bargaining agreement or negotiated separately, to the extent the agreement provides for the funding of collectively bargained fringe-benefit obligations on other than a uniform worker-hour basis, regardless of the cargo handled or type of vessel or equipment used.

(4) BULK CARGO.—The term "bulk cargo" means cargo that is loaded and carried in bulk without mark or count.

(5) CERTAIN COVERED SERVICES.—For purposes of sections 41105 and 41307, the term "certain covered services" means, with respect to a vessel—

(A) the berthing or bunkering of the vessel;

(B) the loading or unloading of cargo to or from the vessel to or from a point on a wharf or terminal;

(C) the positioning, removal, or replacement of buoys related to the movement of the vessel; and

(D) with respect to injunctive relief under section 41307, towing vessel services provided to such a vessel.

(6) CHEMICAL PARCEL-TANKER.—The term "chemical parcel-tanker" means a vessel that has—

(A) a cargo-carrying capability consisting of individual cargo tanks for bulk chemicals that—

(i) are a permanent part of the vessel; and

(ii) have segregation capability with piping systems to permit simultaneous carriage of several bulk chemical cargoes with minimum risk of cross-contamination; and

(B) a valid certificate of fitness under the International Maritime Organization Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk.

(7) COMMON CARRIER.—The term "common carrier"—

(A) means a person that—

(i) holds itself out to the general public to provide transportation by water of passengers or cargo between the United States and a foreign country for compensation;

(ii) assumes responsibility for the transportation from the port or point of receipt to the port or point of destination; and

(iii) uses, for all or part of that transportation, a vessel operating on the high seas or the Great Lakes between a port in the United States and a port in a foreign country; but

(B) does not include a carrier engaged in ocean transportation by ferry boat, ocean tramp, or chemical parcel-tanker, or by vessel when primarily engaged in the carriage of perishable agricultural commodities—

(i) if the carrier and the owner of those commodities are wholly-owned, directly or indirectly, by a person primarily engaged in the marketing and distribution of those commodities; and

(ii) only with respect to the carriage of those commodities.

(8) CONFERENCE.—The term "conference"—

(A) means an association of ocean common carriers permitted, pursuant to an approved or effective agreement, to engage in concerted activity and to use a common tariff; but

(B) does not include a joint service, consortium, pooling, sailing, or transshipment agreement.

(9) CONTROLLED CARRIER.—The term "controlled carrier" means an ocean common carrier that is, or whose operating assets are, directly or indirectly, owned or controlled by a government, with ownership or control by a government being deemed to exist for a carrier if—

(A) a majority of the interest in the carrier is owned or controlled in any manner by that government, an agency of that government, or a public or private person controlled by that government; or

(B) that government has the right to appoint or disapprove the appointment of a majority of the directors, the chief operating officer, or the chief executive officer of the carrier.

(10) DEFERRED REBATE.—The term "deferred rebate" means a return by a common carrier of any freight money to a shipper, where the return is—

(A) consideration for the shipper giving all or any portion of its shipments to that or any other common carrier over a fixed period of time;

(B) deferred beyond the completion of the service for which it was paid; and

(C) made only if the shipper has agreed to make a further shipment with that or any other common carrier.

(11) FOREST PRODUCTS.—The term "forest products" includes lumber in bundles, rough timber, ties, poles, piling, laminated beams, bundled siding, bundled plywood, bundled core stock or veneers, bundled particle or fiber boards, bundled hardwood, wood pulp in rolls, wood pulp in unitized bales, and paper and paper board in rolls or in pallet or skid-sized sheets.

(12) INLAND DIVISION.—The term "inland division" means the amount paid by a common carrier to an inland carrier for the inland portion of through transportation offered to the public by the common carrier.

(13) INLAND PORTION.—The term "inland portion" means the charge to the public by a common carrier for the non-ocean portion of through transportation.

(14) LOYALTY CONTRACT.—The term "loyalty contract" means a contract with an ocean common carrier or agreement providing for—

(A) a shipper to obtain lower rates by committing all or a fixed portion of its cargo to that carrier or agreement; and

(B) a deferred rebate arrangement.

(15) MARINE TERMINAL OPERATOR.—The term "marine terminal operator" means a person engaged in the United States in the business of providing wharfage, dock, warehouse, or other terminal facilities in connection with a common carrier, or in connection with a common carrier and a water carrier subject to subchapter II of chapter 135 of title 49.

(16) MARITIME LABOR AGREEMENT.—The term "maritime labor agreement"—

(A) means—

(i) a collective bargaining agreement between an employer subject to this part, or a group of such employers, and a labor organization representing employees in the maritime or stevedoring industry;

(ii) an agreement preparatory to such a collective bargaining agreement among members of a multi-employer bargaining group; or

(iii) an agreement specifically implementing provisions of such a collective bargaining agreement or providing for the formation, financing, or administration of a multi-employer bargaining group; but

(B) does not include an assessment agreement.

(17) NON-VESSEL-OPERATING COMMON CARRIER.—The term "non-vessel-operating common carrier" means a common carrier that—

(A) does not operate the vessels by which the ocean transportation is provided; and
(B) is a shipper in its relationship with an ocean common carrier.

(18) OCEAN COMMON CARRIER.—The term "ocean common carrier" means a vessel-operating common carrier.
(19) OCEAN FREIGHT FORWARDER.—The term "ocean freight forwarder" means a person that—
(A) in the United States, dispatches shipments from the United States via a common carrier and books or otherwise arranges space for those shipments on behalf of shippers; and
(B) processes the documentation or performs related activities incident to those shipments.

(20) OCEAN TRANSPORTATION INTERMEDIARY.—The term "ocean transportation intermediary" means an ocean freight forwarder or a non-vessel-operating common carrier.
(21) SERVICE CONTRACT.—The term "service contract" means a written contract, other than a bill of lading or receipt, between one or more shippers, on the one hand, and an individual ocean common carrier or an agreement between or among ocean common carriers, on the other, in which—
(A) the shipper or shippers commit to providing a certain volume or portion of cargo over a fixed time period; and
(B) the ocean common carrier or the agreement commits to a certain rate or rate schedule and a defined service level, such as assured space, transit time, port rotation, or similar service features.

(22) SHIPMENT.—The term "shipment" means all of the cargo carried under the terms of a single bill of lading.
(23) SHIPPER.—The term "shipper" means—
(A) a cargo owner;
(B) the person for whose account the ocean transportation of cargo is provided;
(C) the person to whom delivery is to be made;
(D) a shippers' association; or
(E) a non-vessel-operating common carrier that accepts responsibility for payment of all charges applicable under the tariff or service contract.

(24) SHIPPERS' ASSOCIATION.—The term "shippers' association" means a group of shippers that consolidates or distributes freight on a nonprofit basis for the members of the group to obtain carload, truckload, or other volume rates or service contracts.
(25) THROUGH RATE.—The term "through rate" means the single amount charged by a common carrier in connection with through transportation.
(26) THROUGH TRANSPORTATION.—The term "through transportation" means continuous transportation between origin and destination for which a through rate is assessed and which is offered or performed by one or more carriers, at least one of which is a common carrier, between a United States port or point and a foreign port or point.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1523; Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §704, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4294.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40102(1)	46 App.:1702(1).	Pub. L. 98–237, §3, Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 67; Pub. L. 99–307, §11, May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 447; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §102, Oct. 14, 1998,

		112 Stat. 1902; Pub. L. 105–383, title IV, §424(d), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3441.
40102(2)	46 App.:1702(2).	
40102(3)	46 App.:1702(3).	
40102(4)	46 App.:1702(4).	
40102(5)	46 App.:1702(6) (last sentence).	
40102(6)	46 App.:1702(6) (1st sentence).	
40102(7)	46 App.:1702(7).	
40102(8)	46 App.:1702(8).	
40102(9)	46 App.:1702(9).	
40102(10)	46 App.:1702(10).	
40102(11)	46 App.:1702(11).	
40102(12)	46 App.:1702(12).	
40102(13)	46 App.:1702(13).	
40102(14)	46 App.:1702(14).	
40102(15)	46 App.:1702(15).	
40102(16)	46 App.:1702(17)(B).	
40102(17)	46 App.:1702(16).	
40102(18)	46 App.:1702(17)(A).	
40102(19)	46 App.:1702(17) (1st sentence).	
40102(20)	46 App.:1702(19).	
40102(21)	46 App.:1702(20).	
40102(22)	46 App.:1702(21).	
40102(23)	46 App.:1702(22).	
40102(24)	46 App.:1702(23).	
40102(25)	46 App.:1702(24).	

In the definition of "service contract", the words "The contract may also specify provisions in the event of nonperformance on the part of any party" are omitted as unnecessary and inappropriate for a definition.

In the definition of "shipper", the words "non-vessel-operating common carrier" are substituted for "ocean transportation intermediary, as defined in paragraph (17)(B) of this section" because paragraph (17)(B) contains a definition of "non-vessel-operating common carrier" which is restated as a separate definition.

The definition of "Commission" is omitted because the full name of the Federal Maritime Commission is used the first time the Commission is referred to in each section. The definition of "person" is omitted as unnecessary because of 1 U.S.C. 1. The definition of "United States" is omitted because the term is defined in chapter 1 of the revised title for purposes of the title.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Sherman Act, referred to in par. (2)(A), is act July 2, 1890, ch. 647, 26 Stat. 209, which is classified to sections 1 to 7 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1 of Title 15 and Tables.

The Clayton Act, referred to in par. (2)(C), is act Oct. 15, 1914, ch. 323, 38 Stat. 730, which is classified generally to sections 12, 13, 14 to 19, 21, and 22 to 27 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and sections 52 and 53 of Title 29, Labor. For further details and complete classification of this Act to the Code, see References in Text note set out under section 12 of Title 15 and Tables.

Act of June 19, 1936, referred to in par. (2)(D), is act June 19, 1936, ch. 592, 49 Stat. 1526, popularly known as the Robinson-Patman Act, the Robinson-Patman Antidiscrimination Act, and the Robinson-Patman

Price Discrimination Act, which enacted sections 13a, 13b, and 21a of Title 15, Commerce and Trade, and amended section 13 of Title 15. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 13 of Title 15 and Tables.

The Federal Trade Commission Act, referred to in par. (2)(E), is act Sept. 26, 1914, ch. 311, 38 Stat. 717, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§41 et seq.) of chapter 2 of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 58 of Title 15 and Tables.

The Antitrust Civil Process Act, referred to in par. (2)(F), is Pub. L. 87–664, Sept. 19, 1962, 76 Stat. 548, which is classified principally to chapter 34 (§1311 et seq.) of Title 15, Commerce and Trade. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1311 of Title 15 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2018—Pars. (5) to (26). Pub. L. 115–282 added par. (5) and redesignated former pars. (5) to (25) as (6) to (26), respectively.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

AGREEMENTS UNAFFECTED

Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §714, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4299, provided that: "Nothing in this Act [probably should be "this title", enacting section 41105A of this title, amending sections 40102, 40104, 40304, 40307, 40901, 40902, 41104, 41105, 41307, 46103, 46106, and 46108 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 40304, 41104, 41307, and 46105 of this title] may be construed—

"(1) to limit or amend the definition of 'agreement' in section 40102(1) of title 46, United States Code, with respect to the exclusion of maritime labor agreements; or

"(2) to apply to a maritime labor agreement (as defined in section 40102(15) of that title)."

§40103. Administrative exemptions

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Federal Maritime Commission, on application or its own motion, may by order or regulation exempt for the future any class of agreements between persons subject to this part or any specified activity of those persons from any requirement of this part if the Commission finds that the exemption will not result in substantial reduction in competition or be detrimental to commerce. The Commission may attach conditions to an exemption and may, by order, revoke an exemption.

(b) OPPORTUNITY FOR HEARING.—An order or regulation of exemption or revocation of an exemption may be issued only if the Commission has provided an opportunity for a hearing to interested persons and departments and agencies of the United States Government.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1527.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40103	46 App.:1715.	Pub. L. 98–237, §16, Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 84; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §114, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1912.

§40104. Reports filed with the Commission

(a) REPORTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Federal Maritime Commission may require a common carrier or marine terminal operator, or an officer, receiver, trustee, lessee, agent, or employee of the common carrier or marine terminal operator to file with the Commission a periodical or special report, an account, record, rate, or charge, or a memorandum of facts and transactions related to the business of the common carrier or marine terminal operator, as applicable.

(2) REQUIREMENTS.—Any report, account, record, rate, charge, or memorandum required to be filed under paragraph (1) shall—

(A) be made under oath if the Commission requires; and

(B) be filed in the form and within the time prescribed by the Commission.

(3) LIMITATION.—The Commission shall—

(A) limit the scope of any filing ordered under this section to fulfill the objective of the order; and

(B) provide a reasonable period of time for respondents to respond based upon their capabilities and the scope of the order.

(b) CONFERENCE MINUTES.—Conference minutes required to be filed with the Commission under this section may not be released to third parties or published by the Commission.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1527; Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §705, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4294.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40104	46 App.:1714.	Pub. L. 98–237, §15, Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 84; Pub. L. 98–595, §3(b)(3), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3133; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §113, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1912.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 115–282 amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Federal Maritime Commission may require a common carrier or an officer, receiver, trustee, lessee, agent, or employee of the carrier to file with the Commission a periodical or special report, an account, record, rate, or charge, or a memorandum of facts and transactions related to the business of the carrier. The report, account, record, rate, charge, or memorandum shall be made under oath if the Commission requires, and shall be filed in the form and within the time prescribed by the Commission."

CHAPTER 403—AGREEMENTS

Sec.

40301. Application.
40302. Filing requirements.
40303. Content requirements.
40304. Commission action.
40305. Assessment agreements.
40306. Nondisclosure of information.
40307. Exemption from antitrust laws.

§40301. Application

(a) OCEAN COMMON CARRIER AGREEMENTS.—This part applies to an agreement between or among ocean common carriers to—

(1) discuss, fix, or regulate transportation rates, including through rates, cargo space

accommodations, and other conditions of service;

(2) pool or apportion traffic, revenues, earnings, or losses;

(3) allot ports or regulate the number and character of voyages between ports;

(4) regulate the volume or character of cargo or passenger traffic to be carried;

(5) engage in an exclusive, preferential, or cooperative working arrangement between themselves or with a marine terminal operator;

(6) control, regulate, or prevent competition in international ocean transportation; or

(7) discuss and agree on any matter related to a service contract.

(b) MARINE TERMINAL OPERATOR AGREEMENTS.—This part applies to an agreement between or among marine terminal operators, or between or among one or more marine terminal operators and one or more ocean common carriers, to—

(1) discuss, fix, or regulate rates or other conditions of service; or

(2) engage in exclusive, preferential, or cooperative working arrangements, to the extent the agreement involves ocean transportation in the foreign commerce of the United States.

(c) ACQUISITIONS.—This part does not apply to an acquisition by any person, directly or indirectly, of any voting security or assets of any other person.

(d) MARITIME LABOR AGREEMENTS.—This part does not apply to a maritime labor agreement. However, this subsection does not exempt from this part any rate, charge, regulation, or practice of a common carrier that is required to be set forth in a tariff or is an essential term of a service contract, whether or not the rate, charge, regulation, or practice arises out of, or is otherwise related to, a maritime labor agreement.

(e) ASSESSMENT AGREEMENTS.—This part (except sections 40305 and 40307(a)) does not apply to an assessment agreement.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1528.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40301(a)	46 App.:1703(a).	Pub. L. 98–237, §4, Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 70; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §103, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1904.
40301(b)	46 App.:1703(b).	
40301(c)	46 App.:1703(c).	
40301(d)	46 App.:1704(f).	Pub. L. 98–237, §5(e) (last sentence), (f), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 70; Pub. L. 104–88, title III, §335(c)(2), Dec. 29, 1995, 109 Stat. 954; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §104(a)(2), (b), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1904, 1905.
40301(e)	46 App.:1704(e) (last sentence).	

§40302. Filing requirements

(a) IN GENERAL.—A true copy of every agreement referred to in section 40301(a) or (b) of this title shall be filed with the Federal Maritime Commission. If the agreement is oral, a complete memorandum specifying in detail the substance of the agreement shall be filed.

(b) EXCEPTIONS.—Subsection (a) does not apply to—

(1) an agreement related to transportation to be performed within or between foreign countries; or

(2) an agreement among common carriers to establish, operate, or maintain a marine terminal in the United States.

(c) REGULATIONS.—The Commission may by regulation prescribe the form and manner in which an agreement shall be filed and any additional information and documents necessary to evaluate the agreement.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1528.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40302	46 App.:1704(a).	Pub. L. 98–237, §5(a), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 70; Pub. L. 98–595, §3(b)(1), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3132.

§40303. Content requirements

(a) OCEAN COMMON CARRIER AGREEMENTS.—

(1) RESTRICTIONS.—An ocean common carrier agreement may not—

(A) prohibit or restrict a member of the agreement from engaging in negotiations for a service contract with a shipper;

(B) require a member of the agreement to disclose a negotiation on a service contract, or the terms of a service contract, other than those terms required to be published under section 40502(d) of this title; or

(C) adopt mandatory rules or requirements affecting the right of an agreement member to negotiate and enter into a service contract.

(2) VOLUNTARY GUIDELINES.—An ocean common carrier agreement may provide authority to adopt voluntary guidelines relating to the terms and procedures of an agreement member's service contracts if the guidelines explicitly state the right of members of the agreement not to follow the guidelines. Any guidelines adopted shall be submitted confidentially to the Federal Maritime Commission.

(b) CONFERENCE AGREEMENTS.—Each conference agreement must—

(1) state its purpose;

(2) provide reasonable and equal terms for admission and readmission to conference membership for any ocean common carrier willing to serve the particular trade or route;

(3) permit any member to withdraw from conference membership on reasonable notice without penalty;

(4) at the request of any member, require an independent neutral body to police fully the obligations of the conference and its members;

(5) prohibit the conference from engaging in conduct prohibited by section 41105(1) or (3) of this title;

(6) provide for a consultation process designed to promote—

(A) commercial resolution of disputes; and

(B) cooperation with shippers in preventing and eliminating malpractices;

(7) establish procedures for promptly and fairly considering requests and complaints of shippers; and

(8) provide that—

(A) any member of the conference may take independent action on a rate or service item on

not more than 5 days' notice to the conference; and

(B) except for an exempt commodity not published in the conference tariff, the conference will include the new rate or service item in its tariff for use by that member, effective no later than 5 days after receipt of the notice, and by any other member that notifies the conference that it elects to adopt the independent rate or service item on or after its effective date, in lieu of the existing conference tariff provision for that rate or service item.

(c) INTERCONFERENCE AGREEMENTS.—Each agreement between carriers not members of the same conference must provide the right of independent action for each carrier. Each agreement between conferences must provide the right of independent action for each conference.

(d) VESSEL SHARING AGREEMENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—An ocean common carrier that is the owner, operator, or bareboat, time, or slot charterer of a liner vessel documented under section 12103 or 12111(c) of this title may agree with an ocean common carrier described in paragraph (2) to which it charters or subcharters the vessel or space on the vessel that the charterer or subcharterer may not use or make available space on the vessel for the carriage of cargo reserved by law for vessels of the United States.

(2) CARRIER DESCRIBED.—An ocean common carrier described in this paragraph is one that is not the owner, operator, or bareboat charterer for at least one year of liner vessels of the United States that are eligible to be included in the Maritime Security Fleet Program and are enrolled in an Emergency Preparedness Program under chapter 531 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1529.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40303(a)	46 App.:1704(c).	Pub. L. 98–237, §5(b)–(d), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 70; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §104(a), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1904.
40303(b)	46 App.:1704(b).	
40303(c)	46 App.:1704(d).	
40303(d)	46 App.:1704(g).	Pub. L. 98–237, §5(g), Mar. 20, 1984; as added Pub. L. 105–383, title IV, §424(a), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3440.

In subsection (c)(8), the word "calendar" is omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (d), the words "vessel of the United States" are substituted for "United States-flag vessel" (and similar variations) for consistency in the revised title.

§40304. Commission action

(a) NOTICE OF FILING.—Not later than 7 days after the date an agreement is filed, the Federal Maritime Commission shall—

(1) transmit a notice of the filing to the Federal Register for publication; and

(2) request interested persons to submit relevant information and documents.

(b) PRELIMINARY REVIEW AND REJECTION.—After preliminary review, the Commission shall reject an agreement that it finds does not meet the requirements of sections 40302 and 40303 of this title. The Commission shall notify in writing the person filing the agreement of the reason for rejection.

(c) REVIEW AND EFFECTIVE DATE.—Unless rejected under subsection (b), an agreement

(other than an assessment agreement) is effective—

(1) on the 45th day after filing, or on the 30th day after notice of the filing is published in the Federal Register, whichever is later; or

(2) if additional information or documents are requested under subsection (d)—

(A) on the 45th day after the Commission receives all the additional information and documents; or

(B) if the request is not fully complied with, on the 45th day after the Commission receives the information and documents submitted and a statement of the reasons for noncompliance with the request.

(d) REQUEST FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION.—Before the expiration of the period specified in subsection (c)(1), the Commission may request from the person filing the agreement any additional information and documents the Commission considers necessary to make the determinations required by this part.

(e) MODIFICATION OF REVIEW PERIOD.—

(1) SHORTENING.—On request of the party filing an agreement, the Commission may shorten a period specified in subsection (c), but not to a date that is less than 14 days after notice of the filing of the agreement is published in the Federal Register.

(2) EXTENSION.—The period specified in subsection (c)(2) may be extended only by the United States District Court for the District of Columbia in a civil action brought by the Commission under section 41307(c) of this title.

(f) FIXED TERMS.—The Commission may not limit the effectiveness of an agreement to a fixed term.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1530; Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §706(a), (b), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4295.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40304(a)	46 App.:1705(a).	Pub. L. 98–237, §6(a)–(f), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 72.
40304(b)	46 App.:1705(b).	
40304(c)	46 App.:1705(c) (1st sentence).	
40304(d)	46 App.:1705(d).	
40304(e)(1)	46 App.:1705(e).	
40304(e)(2)	46 App.:1705(c) (last sentence).	
40304(f)	46 App.:1705(f).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 115–282, §706(a), amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Within 7 days after an agreement is filed, the Federal Maritime Commission shall transmit a notice of the filing to the Federal Register for publication."

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 115–282, §706(b), substituted "part" for "section".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

SAVING CLAUSE

Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §706(c), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4295, provided that: "Nothing in this section

[amending this section], or the amendments made by this section, may be construed—

"(1) to prevent the Federal Maritime Commission from requesting from a person, at any time, any additional information or documents the Commission considers necessary to carry out chapter 403 of title 46, United States Code;

"(2) to prescribe a specific deadline for the submission of relevant information and documents in response to a request under section 40304(a)(2) of title 46, United States Code; or

"(3) to limit the authority of the Commission to request information under section 40304(d) of title 46, United States Code."

§40305. Assessment agreements

(a) FILING REQUIREMENT.—An assessment agreement shall be filed with the Federal Maritime Commission and is effective on filing.

(b) COMPLAINTS.—If a complaint is filed with the Commission within 2 years after the date of an assessment agreement, the Commission shall disapprove, cancel, or modify the agreement, or an assessment or charge pursuant to the agreement, that the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for a hearing, to be unjustly discriminatory or unfair as between carriers, shippers, or ports. The Commission shall issue its final decision in the proceeding within one year after the date the complaint is filed.

(c) ADJUSTMENTS OF ASSESSMENTS AND CHARGES.—To the extent that the Commission finds under subsection (b) that an assessment or charge is unjustly discriminatory or unfair as between carriers, shippers, or ports, the Commission shall adjust the assessment or charge for the period between the filing of the complaint and the final decision by awarding prospective credits or debits to future assessments and charges. However, if the complainant has ceased activities subject to the assessment or charge, the Commission may award reparations.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1531.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40305	46 App.:1704(e) (less last sentence).	Pub. L. 98–237, §5(e) (less last sentence), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 70; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §104(a)(2), (b)(1), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1904, 1905.

§40306. Nondisclosure of information

Information and documents (other than an agreement) filed with the Federal Maritime Commission under this chapter are exempt from disclosure under section 552 of title 5 and may not be made public except as may be relevant to an administrative or judicial proceeding. This section does not prevent disclosure to either House of Congress or to a duly authorized committee or subcommittee of Congress.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1531.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40306	46 App.:1705(j).	Pub. L. 98–237, §6(j), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 73.

The words "judicial proceeding" are substituted for "judicial action or proceeding" to eliminate unnecessary

words.

§40307. Exemption from antitrust laws

(a) IN GENERAL.—The antitrust laws do not apply to—

(1) an agreement (including an assessment agreement) that has been filed and is effective under this chapter;

(2) an agreement that is exempt under section 40103 of this title from any requirement of this part;

(3) an agreement or activity within the scope of this part, whether permitted under or prohibited by this part, undertaken or entered into with a reasonable basis to conclude that it is—

(A) pursuant to an agreement on file with the Federal Maritime Commission and in effect when the activity takes place; or

(B) exempt under section 40103 of this title from any filing or publication requirement of this part;

(4) an agreement or activity relating to transportation services within or between foreign countries, whether or not via the United States, unless the agreement or activity has a direct, substantial, and reasonably foreseeable effect on the commerce of the United States;

(5) an agreement or activity relating to the foreign inland segment of through transportation that is part of transportation provided in a United States import or export trade;

(6) an agreement or activity to provide wharfage, dock, warehouse, or other terminal facilities outside the United States; or

(7) an agreement, modification, or cancellation approved before June 18, 1984, by the Commission under section 15 of the Shipping Act, 1916, or permitted under section 14b of that Act, and any properly published tariff, rate, fare, or charge, or classification, rule, or regulation explanatory thereof implementing that agreement, modification, or cancellation.

(b) EXCEPTIONS.—This part does not extend antitrust immunity to—

(1) an agreement with or among air carriers, rail carriers, motor carriers, tug operators, or common carriers by water not subject to this part relating to transportation within the United States;

(2) a discussion or agreement among common carriers subject to this part relating to the inland divisions (as opposed to the inland portions) of through rates within the United States;

(3) an agreement among common carriers subject to this part to establish, operate, or maintain a marine terminal in the United States; or

(4) a loyalty contract.

(c) RETROACTIVE EFFECT OF DETERMINATIONS.—A determination by an agency or court that results in the denial or removal of the immunity to the antitrust laws under subsection (a) does not remove or alter the antitrust immunity for the period before the determination.

(d) RELIEF UNDER CLAYTON ACT.—A person may not recover damages under section 4 of the Clayton Act (15 U.S.C. 15), or obtain injunctive relief under section 16 of that Act (15 U.S.C. 26), for conduct prohibited by this part.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1531; Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §709(c), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4297.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40307	46 App.:1706.	Pub. L. 98–237, §7, Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 73; Pub. L. 105–258, title I,

		§105, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1905.

Subsection (a)(1) is substituted for "any agreement that has been filed under section 1704 of this Appendix and is effective under section 1704(d) [redesignated as (e)] or section 1705 of this Appendix" for clarity and to eliminate unnecessary words.

Subsection (a)(2) is substituted for "any agreement that . . . is exempt under section 1715 of this Appendix from any requirement of this chapter" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1706(a)(1) for clarity.

In subsection (a)(7), the words "subject to section 1719(e)(2) of this Appendix" are omitted as obsolete.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 15 of the Shipping Act, 1916, referred to in subsec. (a)(7), which was classified to section 814 of the former Appendix to this title, was repealed by Pub. L. 104–88, title III, §335(b)(3), Dec. 29, 1996, 109 Stat. 954.

Section 14b of the Shipping Act, 1916, referred to in subsec. (a)(7), which was classified to section 813a of former Title 46, Shipping, was repealed by Pub. L. 98–237, §20(a), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 88.

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 115–282 inserted "tug operators," after "motor carriers,".

CHAPTER 405—TARIFFS, SERVICE CONTRACTS, REFUNDS, AND WAIVERS

Sec.

40501. General rate and tariff requirements.
40502. Service contracts.
40503. Refunds and waivers.
40504. Shipping exchange registry.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–146, §4(c), June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1273, added item 40504.

§40501. General rate and tariff requirements

(a) AUTOMATED TARIFF SYSTEM.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Each common carrier and conference shall keep open to public inspection in an automated tariff system, tariffs showing all its rates, charges, classifications, rules, and practices between all points or ports on its own route and on any through transportation route that has been established. However, a common carrier is not required to state separately or otherwise reveal in tariffs the inland divisions of a through rate.

(2) EXCEPTIONS.—Paragraph (1) does not apply with respect to bulk cargo, forest products, recycled metal scrap, new assembled motor vehicles, waste paper, or paper waste.

(b) CONTENTS OF TARIFFS.—A tariff under subsection (a) shall—

(1) state the places between which cargo will be carried;

(2) list each classification of cargo in use;

(3) state the level of compensation, if any, of any ocean freight forwarder by a carrier or conference;

(4) state separately each terminal or other charge, privilege, or facility under the control of the carrier or conference and any rules that in any way change, affect, or determine any part or the total of the rates or charges;

(5) include sample copies of any bill of lading, contract of affreightment, or other document evidencing the transportation agreement; and

(6) include copies of any loyalty contract, omitting the shipper's name.

(c) ELECTRONIC ACCESS.—A tariff under subsection (a) shall be made available electronically to any person, without time, quantity, or other limitation, through appropriate access from remote locations. A reasonable fee may be charged for such access, except that no fee may be charged for access by a Federal agency.

(d) TIME-VOLUME RATES.—A rate contained in a tariff under subsection (a) may vary with the volume of cargo offered over a specified period of time.

(e) EFFECTIVE DATES.—

(1) INCREASES.—A new or initial rate or change in an existing rate that results in an increased cost to a shipper may not become effective earlier than 30 days after publication. However, for good cause, the Federal Maritime Commission may allow the rate to become effective sooner.

(2) DECREASES.—A change in an existing rate that results in a decreased cost to a shipper may become effective on publication.

(f) MARINE TERMINAL OPERATOR SCHEDULES.—A marine terminal operator may make available to the public a schedule of rates, regulations, and practices, including limitations of liability for cargo loss or damage, pertaining to receiving, delivering, handling, or storing property at its marine terminal. Any such schedule made available to the public is enforceable by an appropriate court as an implied contract without proof of actual knowledge of its provisions.

(g) REGULATIONS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Commission shall by regulation prescribe the requirements for the accessibility and accuracy of automated tariff systems established under this section. The Commission, after periodic review, may prohibit the use of any automated tariff system that fails to meet the requirements established under this section.

(2) REMOTE TERMINALS.—The Commission may not require a common carrier to provide a remote terminal for electronic access under subsection (c).

(3) MARINE TERMINAL OPERATOR SCHEDULES.—The Commission shall by regulation prescribe the form and manner in which marine terminal operator schedules authorized by this section shall be published.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1532.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40501(a)	46 App.:1707(a)(1) (1st, 2d sentences).	Pub. L. 98–237, §8(a), (b), (d), (f), (g), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 74; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §106(a), (c), (e), (f), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1905, 1907.
40501(b)	46 App.:1707(a)(1) (last sentence).	
40501(c)	46 App.:1707(a)(2).	
40501(d)	46 App.:1707(b).	
40501(e)	46 App.:1707(d).	
40501(f)	46 App.:1707(f).	
40501(g)	46 App.:1707(g).	

In subsection (b)(3), the words "ocean freight forwarder" are substituted for "ocean transportation intermediary, as defined in section 1702(17)(A) of this Appendix" because the definition of "ocean transportation intermediary" in section 1702(17)(A) contains a definition of "ocean freight forwarder" which

is restated as a separate definition.

In subsection (e), the word "calendar" is omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (f)(1), the words "subject to section 1709(d) of this Appendix" are omitted as unnecessary.

§40502. Service contracts

(a) IN GENERAL.—An individual ocean common carrier or an agreement between or among ocean common carriers may enter into a service contract with one or more shippers subject to the requirements of this part.

(b) FILING REQUIREMENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Each service contract entered into under this section by an individual ocean common carrier or an agreement shall be filed confidentially with the Federal Maritime Commission.

(2) EXCEPTIONS.—Paragraph (1) does not apply to contracts regarding bulk cargo, forest products, recycled metal scrap, new assembled motor vehicles, waste paper, or paper waste.

(c) ESSENTIAL TERMS.—Each service contract shall include—

(1) the origin and destination port ranges;

(2) the origin and destination geographic areas in the case of through intermodal movements;

(3) the commodities involved;

(4) the minimum volume or portion;

(5) the line-haul rate;

(6) the duration;

(7) service commitments;

(8) the liquidated damages for nonperformance, if any; and

(9) any other essential terms that the Federal Maritime Commission determines necessary or appropriate through a rulemaking process.

(d) PUBLICATION OF CERTAIN TERMS.—When a service contract is filed confidentially with the Commission, a concise statement of the essential terms specified in paragraphs (1), (3), (4), and (6) of subsection (c) shall be published and made available to the general public in tariff format.

(e) DISCLOSURE OF CERTAIN TERMS.—

(1) DEFINITIONS.—In this subsection, the terms "dock area" and "within the port area" have the same meaning and scope as in the applicable collective bargaining agreement between the requesting labor organization and the carrier.

(2) DISCLOSURE.—An ocean common carrier that is a party to or is otherwise subject to a collective bargaining agreement with a labor organization shall, in response to a written request by the labor organization, state whether it is responsible for the following work at a dock area or within a port area in the United States with respect to cargo transportation under a service contract:

(A) The movement of the shipper's cargo on a dock area or within the port area or to or from railroad cars on a dock area or within the port area.

(B) The assignment of intraport carriage of the shipper's cargo between areas on a dock or within the port area.

(C) The assignment of the carriage of the shipper's cargo between a container yard on a dock area or within the port area and a rail yard adjacent to the container yard.

(D) The assignment of container freight station work and container maintenance and repair work performed at a dock area or within the port area.

(3) WITHIN REASONABLE TIME.—The common carrier shall provide the information described in paragraph (2) to the requesting labor organization within a reasonable period of time.

(4) EXISTENCE OF COLLECTIVE BARGAINING AGREEMENT.—This subsection does not require the disclosure of information by an ocean common carrier unless there exists an

applicable and otherwise lawful collective bargaining agreement pertaining to that carrier. A disclosure by an ocean common carrier may not be deemed an admission or an agreement that any work is covered by a collective bargaining agreement. A dispute about whether any work is covered by a collective bargaining agreement and the responsibility of an ocean common carrier under a collective bargaining agreement shall be resolved solely in accordance with the dispute resolution procedures contained in the collective bargaining agreement and the National Labor Relations Act (29 U.S.C. 151 et seq.), and without reference to this subsection.

(5) EFFECT UNDER OTHER LAWS.—This subsection does not affect the lawfulness or unlawfulness under this part or any other Federal or State law of any collective bargaining agreement or element thereof, including any element that constitutes an essential term of a service contract.

(f) REMEDY FOR BREACH.—Unless the parties agree otherwise, the exclusive remedy for a breach of a service contract is an action in an appropriate court. The contract dispute resolution forum may not be controlled by or in any way affiliated with a controlled carrier or by the government that owns or controls the carrier.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1533; Pub. L. 117–146, §3, June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1272.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40502(a)	46 App.:1707(c)(1) (1st sentence).	Pub. L. 98–237, §8(c), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 75; restated Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §106(b), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1905.
40502(b)	46 App.:1707(c)(2) (1st sentence).	
40502(c)	46 App.:1707(c)(2) (last sentence).	
40502(d)	46 App.:1707(c)(3).	
40502(e)	46 App.:1707(c)(4).	
40502(f)	46 App.:1707(c)(1) (2d, last sentences).	

In subsection (e)(5), the words "the National Labor Relations Act [29 U.S.C. 151 et seq.], the Taft-Hartley Act [29 U.S.C. 141 et seq.], the Federal Trade Commission Act [15 U.S.C. 41 et seq.], the antitrust laws" are omitted as unnecessary because of the reference to "any other Federal or State law".

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The National Labor Relations Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(4), is act July 5, 1935, ch. 372, 49 Stat. 449, which is classified generally to subchapter II (§151 et seq.) of chapter 7 of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 167 of Title 29 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (c)(9). Pub. L. 117–146 added par. (9).

§40503. Refunds and waivers

The Federal Maritime Commission, on application of a carrier or shipper, may permit a common

carrier or conference to refund a portion of the freight charges collected from a shipper, or to waive collection of a portion of the charges from a shipper, if—

(1) there is an error in a tariff, a failure to publish a new tariff, or an error in quoting a tariff, and the refund or waiver will not result in discrimination among shippers, ports, or carriers;

(2) the common carrier or conference, before filing an application for authority to refund or waive any charges for an error in a tariff or a failure to publish a tariff, has published a new tariff setting forth the rate on which the refund or waiver would be based; and

(3) the application for the refund or waiver is filed with the Commission within 180 days from the date of shipment.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1535.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40503	46 App.:1707(e).	Pub. L. 98–237, §8(e), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 75; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §106(d), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1907.

In paragraph (1), the words "an error in a tariff, a failure to publish a new tariff" are substituted for "an error in a, in failing to publish a new tariff" to correct an obvious error in the underlying statute.

In paragraph (2), the words "or waive" are added for consistency with the reference to a waiver later in the paragraph.

§40504. Shipping exchange registry

(a) IN GENERAL.—No person may operate a shipping exchange involving ocean transportation in the foreign commerce of the United States unless the shipping exchange is registered as a national shipping exchange under the terms and conditions provided in this section and the regulations issued pursuant to this section.

(b) REGISTRATION.—A person shall register a shipping exchange by filing with the Federal Maritime Commission an application for registration in such form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe, containing the rules of the exchange and such other information and documents as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate to complete a shipping exchange's registration.

(c) EXEMPTION.—The Commission may exempt, conditionally or unconditionally, a shipping exchange from registration under this section if the Commission finds that the shipping exchange is subject to comparable, comprehensive supervision and regulation by the appropriate governmental authorities in a foreign country where the shipping exchange is headquartered.

(d) REGULATIONS.—Not later than 3 years after the date of enactment of the Ocean Shipping Reform Act of 2022, the Commission shall issue regulations pursuant to subsection (a), which shall set standards necessary to carry out subtitle IV of this title for registered national shipping exchanges. For consideration of a service contract entered into by a shipping exchange, the Commission shall be limited to the minimum essential terms for service contracts established under section 40502 of this title.

(e) DEFINITION OF SHIPPING EXCHANGE.—In this section, the term "shipping exchange" means a platform (digital, over-the-counter, or otherwise) that connects shippers with common carriers for the purpose of entering into underlying agreements or contracts for the transport of cargo, by vessel or other modes of transportation.

(Added Pub. L. 117–146, §4(a), June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1272.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of the Ocean Shipping Reform Act of 2022, referred to in subsec. (d), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 117–146, which was approved June 16, 2022.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

APPLICABILITY OF REGISTRATION REQUIREMENT

Pub. L. 117–146, §4(b), June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1273, provided that: "The registration requirement under section 40504 of title 46, United States Code (as added by subsection (a)), shall take effect on the date on which the Federal Maritime Commission states the rule is effective in the regulations issued under such section."

CHAPTER 407—CONTROLLED CARRIERS

Sec.

40701. Rates.
40702. Rate standards.
40703. Effective date of rates.
40704. Commission review.
40705. Presidential review of Commission orders.
40706. Exceptions.

§40701. Rates

(a) IN GENERAL.—A controlled carrier may not—

(1) maintain a rate or charge in a tariff or service contract, or charge or assess a rate, that is below a just and reasonable level; or

(2) establish, maintain, or enforce in a tariff or service contract a classification, rule, or regulation that results, or is likely to result, in the carriage or handling of cargo at a rate or charge that is below a just and reasonable level.

(b) COMMISSION PROHIBITION.—The Federal Maritime Commission, at any time after notice and opportunity for a hearing, may prohibit the publication or use of a rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation that a controlled carrier has failed to demonstrate is just and reasonable.

(c) BURDEN OF PROOF.—In a proceeding under this section, the burden of proof is on the controlled carrier to demonstrate that its rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation is just and reasonable.

(d) VOIDNESS.—A rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation that has been suspended or prohibited by the Commission is void and its use is unlawful.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1535.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40701	46 App.:1708(a).	Pub. L. 98–237, §9(a), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 76; Pub. L. 102–100, §5(a), Aug. 17, 1991, 105 Stat. 492; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §108(1)–(4), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1908.

§40702. Rate standards

(a) DEFINITION.—In this section, the term "constructive costs" means the costs of another carrier, other than a controlled carrier, operating similar vessels and equipment in the same or a similar trade.

(b) STANDARDS.—In determining whether a rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation of a controlled carrier is just and reasonable, the Federal Maritime Commission—

(1) shall take into account whether the rate or charge that has been published or assessed, or that would result from the pertinent classification, rule, or regulation, is below a level that is fully compensatory to the controlled carrier based on the carrier's actual costs or constructive costs; and

(2) may take into account other appropriate factors, including whether the rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation is—

(A) the same as, or similar to, those published or assessed by other carriers in the same trade;

(B) required to ensure movement of particular cargo in the same trade; or

(C) required to maintain acceptable continuity, level, or quality of common carrier service to or from affected ports.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1536.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40702	46 App.:1708(b).	Pub. L. 98–237, §9(b), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 76; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §108(5)–(7), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1908.

§40703. Effective date of rates

Notwithstanding section 40501(e) of this title and except for service contracts, a rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation of a controlled carrier may not become effective, without special permission of the Federal Maritime Commission, until the 30th day after publication.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1536.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40703	46 App.:1708(c) (1st sentence).	Pub. L. 98–237, §9(c) (1st sentence), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 76; Pub. L. 102–100, §5(b), Aug. 17, 1991, 105 Stat. 492; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §108(8), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1908.

§40704. Commission review

(a) REQUEST FOR JUSTIFICATION.—On request of the Federal Maritime Commission, a controlled carrier shall file with the Commission, within 20 days of the request, a statement of justification that sufficiently details the carrier's need and purpose for an existing or proposed rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation and upon which the Commission may reasonably base a determination of its lawfulness.

(b) DETERMINATION.—Within 120 days after receipt of information requested under

subsection (a), the Commission shall determine whether the rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation may be unjust and unreasonable.

(c) SHOW CAUSE ORDER.—Whenever the Commission is of the opinion that a rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation published or assessed by a controlled carrier may be unjust and unreasonable, the Commission shall issue an order to the controlled carrier to show cause why the rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation should not be prohibited.

(d) SUSPENSION PENDING DETERMINATION.—

(1) NOT YET EFFECTIVE.—Pending a determination of the lawfulness of a rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation in a proceeding under subsection (c), the Commission may suspend the rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation at any time before its effective date.

(2) ALREADY EFFECTIVE.—If a rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation has already become effective, the Commission, on issuance of an order to show cause, may suspend the rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation on at least 30 days' notice to the controlled carrier.

(3) MAXIMUM SUSPENSION.—A period of suspension under this subsection may not exceed 180 days.

(e) REPLACEMENT DURING SUSPENSION.—Whenever the Commission has suspended a rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation under this section, the controlled carrier may publish a new rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation to take effect immediately during the suspension in lieu of the suspended rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation. However, the Commission may reject the new rate, charge, classification, rule, or regulation if the Commission believes it is unjust and unreasonable.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1536.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40704	46 App.:1708(c) (last sentence), (d).	Pub. L. 98–237, §9(c) (last sentence), (d), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 76; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §108(9)–(15), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1908.

In subsection (d)(1), the words "in a proceeding under subsection (c)" are substituted for "in such a proceeding" for clarity.

§40705. Presidential review of Commission orders

(a) TRANSMISSION TO PRESIDENT.—The Federal Maritime Commission shall transmit to the President, concurrently with publication thereof, each order of suspension or final order of prohibition issued under section 40704 of this title.

(b) PRESIDENTIAL REQUEST AND COMMISSION ACTION.—Within 10 days after receipt or the effective date of a Commission order referred to in subsection (a), the President, in writing, may request the Commission to stay the effect of the order if the President finds that the stay is required for reasons of national defense or foreign policy. The reasons shall be specified in the request. The Commission shall immediately grant the request by issuing an order in which the President's request shall be described. During a stay, the President shall, whenever practicable, attempt to resolve the matter by negotiating with representatives of the applicable foreign governments.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1537.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised

Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40705	46 App.:1708(e).	Pub. L. 98–237, §9(e), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 77; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §108(16), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1909.

In subsection (b), the words "Notwithstanding any other law" are omitted as unnecessary.

§40706. Exceptions

This chapter does not apply to—

(1) a controlled carrier of a foreign country whose vessels are entitled by a treaty of the United States to receive national or most-favored-nation treatment; or

(2) a trade served only by controlled carriers.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1537.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40706	46 App.:1708(f).	Pub. L. 98–237, §9(f), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 77; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §108(17)–(19), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1909.

In paragraph (1), the words "foreign country" are substituted for "state" for clarity and consistency.

CHAPTER 409—OCEAN TRANSPORTATION INTERMEDIARIES

Sec.
40901. License requirement.
40902. Financial responsibility.
40903. Suspension or revocation of license.
40904. Compensation by common carriers.

§40901. License requirement

(a) IN GENERAL.—A person in the United States may not advertise, hold oneself out, or act as an ocean transportation intermediary unless the person holds an ocean transportation intermediary's license issued by the Federal Maritime Commission. The Commission shall issue a license to a person that the Commission determines to be qualified by experience and character to act as an ocean transportation intermediary.

(b) EXCEPTION.—A person whose primary business is the sale of merchandise may forward shipments of the merchandise for its own account without an ocean transportation intermediary's license.

(c) APPLICABILITY.—Subsection (a) and section 40902 do not apply to a person that performs ocean transportation intermediary services on behalf of an ocean transportation intermediary for which it is a disclosed agent.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1538; Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §707(a), (b), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4295.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40901(a)	46 App.:1718(a).	Pub. L. 98–237, §19(a), (d), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 87, 88; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §116, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1912.
40901(b)	46 App.:1718(d).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 115–282, §707(a), inserted "advertise, hold oneself out, or" after "may not". Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 115–282, §707(b), added subsec. (c).

§40902. Financial responsibility

(a) IN GENERAL.—A person may not advertise, hold oneself out, or act as an ocean transportation intermediary unless the person furnishes a bond, proof of insurance, or other surety—

(1) in a form and amount determined by the Federal Maritime Commission to insure financial responsibility; and

(2) issued by a surety company found acceptable by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(b) SCOPE OF FINANCIAL RESPONSIBILITY.—A bond, insurance, or other surety obtained under this section—

(1) shall be available to pay any penalty assessed under section 41109 of this title or any order for reparation issued under section 41305 of this title;

(2) may be available to pay any claim against an ocean transportation intermediary arising from its transportation-related activities—

(A) with the consent of the insured ocean transportation intermediary and subject to review by the surety company; or

(B) when the claim is deemed valid by the surety company after the ocean transportation intermediary has failed to respond to adequate notice to address the validity of the claim; and

(3) shall be available to pay any judgment for damages against an ocean transportation intermediary arising from its transportation-related activities, if the claimant has first attempted to resolve the claim under paragraph (2) and the claim has not been resolved within a reasonable period of time.

(c) REGULATIONS ON COURT JUDGMENTS.—The Commission shall prescribe regulations for the purpose of protecting the interests of claimants, ocean transportation intermediaries, and surety companies with respect to the process of pursuing claims against ocean transportation intermediary bonds, insurance, or sureties through court judgments. The regulations shall provide that a judgment for monetary damages may not be enforced except to the extent that the damages claimed arise from the transportation-related activities of the insured ocean transportation intermediary, as defined by the Commission.

(d) RESIDENT AGENT.—An ocean transportation intermediary not domiciled in the United States shall designate a resident agent in the United States for receipt of service of judicial and administrative process, including subpoenas.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1538; Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §707(c), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4295.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40902	46 App.:1718(b).	Pub. L. 98–237, §19(b), Mar. 20, 1984; added Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §116(4), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1913.

In subsection (b), in paragraphs (2) and (3), the words "described in section 1702(17) of this Appendix" are omitted as unnecessary.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 115–282 inserted "advertise, hold oneself out, or" after "may not" in introductory provisions.

§40903. Suspension or revocation of license

(a) FAILURE TO MAINTAIN QUALIFICATIONS OR TO COMPLY.—The Federal Maritime Commission, after notice and opportunity for a hearing, shall suspend or revoke an ocean transportation intermediary's license if the Commission finds that the ocean transportation intermediary—

(1) is not qualified to provide intermediary services; or

(2) willfully failed to comply with a provision of this part or with an order or regulation of the Commission.

(b) FAILURE TO MAINTAIN BOND, PROOF OF INSURANCE, OR OTHER SURETY.—The Commission may revoke an ocean transportation intermediary's license for failure to maintain a bond, proof of insurance, or other surety as required by section 40902(a) of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1539.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40903	46 App.:1718(c).	Pub. L. 98–237, §19(c), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 88; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §116, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1912.

In subsection (a)(2), the words "lawful" and "rule" are omitted as unnecessary.

§40904. Compensation by common carriers

(a) CERTIFICATION OF LICENSE AND SERVICES.—A common carrier may compensate an ocean freight forwarder for a shipment dispatched for others only when the ocean freight forwarder has certified in writing that it holds an ocean transportation intermediary's license (if required under section 40901 of this title) and has—

(1) engaged, booked, secured, reserved, or contracted directly with the carrier or its agent for space aboard a vessel or confirmed the availability of the space; and

(2) prepared and processed the ocean bill of lading, dock receipt, or other similar document for the shipment.

(b) DUAL COMPENSATION.—A common carrier may not pay compensation for services

described in subsection (a) more than once on the same shipment.

(c) BENEFICIAL INTEREST SHIPMENTS.—An ocean freight forwarder may not receive compensation from a common carrier for a shipment in which the ocean freight forwarder has a direct or indirect beneficial interest. A common carrier may not knowingly pay compensation on that shipment.

(d) LIMITS ON AUTHORITY OF CONFERENCE OR GROUP.—A conference or group of two or more ocean common carriers in the foreign commerce of the United States that is authorized to agree on the level of compensation paid to an ocean freight forwarder may not—

(1) deny a member of the conference or group the right, upon notice of not more than 5 days, to take independent action on any level of compensation paid to an ocean freight forwarder; or

(2) agree to limit the payment of compensation to an ocean freight forwarder to less than 1.25 percent of the aggregate of all rates and charges applicable under a tariff and assessed against the cargo on which the services of the ocean freight forwarder are provided.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1539.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
40904	46 App.:1718(e).	Pub. L. 98–237, §19(e), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 88; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §116, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1912.

In this section, the words "ocean freight forwarder" are substituted for "ocean transportation intermediary, as defined in section 1702(17)(A) of this Appendix" and "ocean transportation intermediary" because the definition of "ocean transportation intermediary" in section 1702(17)(A) contains a definition of "ocean freight forwarder" which is restated as a separate definition.

In subsection (d)(1), the word "calendar" is omitted as unnecessary.

CHAPTER 411—PROHIBITIONS AND PENALTIES

Sec.

41101. Joint ventures and consortiums.
41102. General prohibitions.
41103. Disclosure of information.
41104. Common carriers.
41105. Concerted action.
41105A. Authority.
41106. Marine terminal operators.
41107. Monetary penalties or refunds.
41108. Additional penalties.
41109. Assessment of penalties.
41110. Data collection.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3535(i), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2315, substituted "Monetary penalties or refunds" for "Monetary penalties" in item 41107.

2022—Pub. L. 117–146, §9(c), June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1277, added item 41110.

2018—Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §709(b)(2), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4296, added item 41105A.

§41101. Joint ventures and consortiums

In this chapter, a joint venture or consortium of two or more common carriers operating as a single entity is deemed to be a single common carrier.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1540.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41101	46 App.:1709(e).	Pub. L. 98–237, §10(e), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 80.

§41102. General prohibitions

(a) OBTAINING TRANSPORTATION AT LESS THAN APPLICABLE RATES.—A person may not knowingly and willfully, directly or indirectly, by means of false billing, false classification, false weighing, false report of weight, false measurement, or any other unjust or unfair device or means, obtain or attempt to obtain ocean transportation for property at less than the rates or charges that would otherwise apply.

(b) OPERATING CONTRARY TO AGREEMENT.—A person may not operate under an agreement required to be filed under section 40302 or 40305 of this title if—

(1) the agreement has not become effective under section 40304 of this title or has been rejected, disapproved, or canceled; or

(2) the operation is not in accordance with the terms of the agreement or any modifications to the agreement made by the Federal Maritime Commission.

(c) PRACTICES IN HANDLING PROPERTY.—A common carrier, marine terminal operator, or ocean transportation intermediary may not fail to establish, observe, and enforce just and reasonable regulations and practices relating to or connected with receiving, handling, storing, or delivering property.

(d) RETALIATION AND OTHER DISCRIMINATORY ACTIONS.—A common carrier, marine terminal operator, or ocean transportation intermediary, acting alone or in conjunction with any other person, directly or indirectly, may not—

(1) retaliate against a shipper, an agent of a shipper, an ocean transportation intermediary, or a motor carrier by refusing, or threatening to refuse, an otherwise-available cargo space accommodation; or

(2) resort to any other unfair or unjustly discriminatory action for—

(A) the reason that a shipper, an agent of a shipper, an ocean transportation intermediary, or motor carrier has—

(i) patronized another carrier; or

(ii) filed a complaint against the common carrier, marine terminal operator, or ocean transportation intermediary; or

(B) any other reason.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1540; Pub. L. 117–146, §5, June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1273.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41102(a)	46 App.:1709(a)(1).	Pub. L. 98–237, §10(a), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 77.
41102(b)	46 App.:1709(a)(2), (3).	

41102(c)	46 App.:1709(d)(1).	Pub. L. 98–237, §10(d)(1), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 77; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §109(c)(2), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1909.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 117–146 added subsec. (d).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

RULEMAKING ON DEMURRAGE OR DETENTION

Pub. L. 117–146, §7(b), June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1275, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 45 days after the date of enactment of this Act [June 16, 2022], the Federal Maritime Commission shall initiate a rulemaking further defining prohibited practices by common carriers, marine terminal operators, shippers, and ocean transportation intermediaries under section 41102(c) of title 46, United States Code, regarding the assessment of demurrage or detention charges. The Federal Maritime Commission shall issue a final rule defining such practices not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act.

"(2) CONTENTS.—The rule under paragraph (1) shall only seek to further clarify reasonable rules and practices related to the assessment of detention and demurrage charges to address the issues identified in the final rule published on May 18, 2020, entitled 'Interpretive Rule on Demurrage and Detention Under the Shipping Act' (or successor rule), including a determination of which parties may be appropriately billed for any demurrage, detention, or other similar per container charges."

§41103. Disclosure of information

(a) PROHIBITION.—A common carrier, marine terminal operator, or ocean freight forwarder, either alone or in conjunction with any other person, directly or indirectly, may not knowingly disclose, offer, solicit, or receive any information concerning the nature, kind, quantity, destination, consignee, or routing of any property tendered or delivered to a common carrier, without the consent of the shipper or consignee, if the information—

(1) may be used to the detriment or prejudice of the shipper, the consignee, or any common carrier; or

(2) may improperly disclose its business transaction to a competitor.

(b) EXCEPTIONS.—Subsection (a) does not prevent providing the information—

(1) in response to legal process;

(2) to the Federal Maritime Commission or an agency of the United States Government; or

(3) to an independent neutral body operating within the scope of its authority to fulfill the policing obligations of the parties to an agreement effective under this part.

(c) DISCLOSURE FOR DETERMINING BREACH OR COMPILING STATISTICS.—An ocean common carrier that is a party to a conference agreement approved under this part, a receiver, trustee, lessee, agent, or employee of the carrier, or any other person authorized by the carrier to receive information—

(1) may give information to the conference or any person or agency designated by the conference, for the purpose of—

(A) determining whether a shipper or consignee has breached an agreement with the conference or its member lines;

(B) determining whether a member of the conference has breached the conference agreement; or

(C) compiling statistics of cargo movement; and

(2) may not prevent the conference or its designee from soliciting or receiving information for any of those purposes.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1540.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41103(a)	46 App.:1709(b)(13), (d)(3) (related to (b)(13)), (5).	Pub. L. 98–237, §10(b)(13), (words after cl. (13)), (d)(3) (related to (b)(13)), (5), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 79, 80; Pub. L. 101–595, title VII, §710(c)(1), (2), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2997; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §109(a)(10), (11), (16), (17), (c)(3), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1910, 1911.
41103(b)	46 App.:1709(b) (next-to-last sentence).	
41103(c)	46 App.:1709(b) (last sentence).	

In subsection (a), the words "marine terminal operator, or ocean freight forwarder" are added because of 46 App. U.S.C. 1709(d)(3) and (5). The words "ocean freight forwarder" are substituted for "ocean transportation intermediaries, as defined by section 1702(17)(A) of this Appendix" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1709(d)(5) because the definition of "ocean transportation intermediary" in section 1702(17)(A) contains a definition of "ocean freight forwarder" which is restated as a separate definition.

In subsection (b), the words "does not prevent" are substituted for "Nothing . . . shall be construed to prevent" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (c)(1), the words "may give information" are substituted for "Nor shall it be prohibited . . . to give information" to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "firm, corporation" are omitted as unnecessary because firms and corporations are persons.

In subsection (c)(2), the words "may not prevent" are substituted for "Nor shall it be prohibited . . . to prevent" to reflect the probable intent of Congress. The words "but the use of such information for any other purpose prohibited by this chapter or any other Act is prohibited" are omitted as unnecessary.

§41104. Common carriers

(a) IN GENERAL.—A common carrier, either alone or in conjunction with any other person, directly or indirectly, shall not—

(1) allow a person to obtain transportation for property at less than the rates or charges established by the carrier in its tariff or service contract by means of false billing, false classification, false weighing, false measurement, or any other unjust or unfair device or means;

(2) provide service in the liner trade that is—

(A) not in accordance with the rates, charges, classifications, rules, and practices contained in a tariff published or a service contract entered into under chapter 405 of this title, unless excepted or exempted under section 40103 or 40501(a)(2) of this title; or

(B) under a tariff or service contract that has been suspended or prohibited by the Federal Maritime Commission under chapter 407 or 423 of this title;

(3) unreasonably refuse cargo space accommodations when available, or resort to other unfair or unjustly discriminatory methods;

(4) for service pursuant to a tariff, engage in any unfair or unjustly discriminatory practice in the matter of—

(A) rates or charges;
(B) cargo classifications;
(C) cargo space accommodations or other facilities, with due regard being given to the proper loading of the vessel and the available tonnage;
(D) loading and landing of freight; or
(E) adjustment and settlement of claims;

(5) for service pursuant to a service contract, engage in any unfair or unjustly discriminatory practice against any commodity group or type of shipment or in the matter of rates or charges with respect to any port;
(6) use a vessel in a particular trade for the purpose of excluding, preventing, or reducing competition by driving another ocean common carrier out of that trade;
(7) offer or pay any deferred rebates;
(8) for service pursuant to a tariff, give any undue or unreasonable preference or advantage or impose any undue or unreasonable prejudice or disadvantage;
(9) for service pursuant to a service contract, give any undue or unreasonable preference or advantage or impose any undue or unreasonable prejudice or disadvantage with respect to any port;
(10) unreasonably refuse to deal or negotiate, including with respect to vessel space accommodations provided by an ocean common carrier;
(11) knowingly and willfully accept cargo from or transport cargo for the account of a non-vessel-operating common carrier that does not have a tariff as required by section 40501 of this title, or an ocean transportation intermediary that does not have a bond, insurance, or other surety as required by section 40902 of this title;
(12) knowingly and willfully enter into a service contract with an ocean transportation intermediary that does not have a tariff as required by section 40501 of this title and a bond, insurance, or other surety as required by section 40902 of this title, or with an affiliate of such an ocean transportation intermediary;
(13) continue to participate simultaneously in a rate discussion agreement and an agreement to share vessels, in the same trade, if the interplay of the authorities exercised by the specified agreements is likely, by a reduction in competition, to produce an unreasonable reduction in transportation service or an unreasonable increase in transportation cost;
(14) assess any party for a charge that is inconsistent or does not comply with all applicable provisions and regulations, including subsection (c) of section 41102 or part 545 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations (or successor regulations);
(15) invoice any party for demurrage or detention charges unless the invoice includes information as described in subsection (d) showing that such charges comply with—
(A) all provisions of part 545 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations (or successor regulations); and
(B) applicable provisions and regulations, including the principles of the final rule published on May 18, 2020, entitled "Interpretive Rule on Demurrage and Detention Under the Shipping Act" (or successor rule); or

(16) for service pursuant to a service contract, give any undue or unreasonable preference or advantage or impose any undue or unreasonable prejudice or disadvantage against any commodity group or type of shipment.

(b) RULE OF CONSTRUCTION.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, there is no private right of action to enforce the prohibition under subsection (a)(13).
(c) AGREEMENT VIOLATION.—Participants in an agreement found by the Commission to violate subsection (a)(13) shall have 90 days from the date of such Commission finding to withdraw from the agreement as necessary to comply with that subsection.
(d) DETENTION AND DEMURRAGE INVOICE INFORMATION.—

(1) INACCURATE INVOICE.—If the Commission determines, after an investigation in response to a submission under section 41310, that an invoice under subsection (a)(15) was inaccurate or false, penalties or refunds under section 41107 shall be applied.

(2) CONTENTS OF INVOICE.—An invoice under subsection (a)(15), unless otherwise determined by subsequent Commission rulemaking, shall include accurate information on each of the following, as well as minimum information as determined by the Commission:

(A) Date that container is made available.

(B) The port of discharge.

(C) The container number or numbers.

(D) For exported shipments, the earliest return date.

(E) The allowed free time in days.

(F) The start date of free time.

(G) The end date of free time.

(H) The applicable detention or demurrage rule on which the daily rate is based.

(I) The applicable rate or rates per the applicable rule.

(J) The total amount due.

(K) The email, telephone number, or other appropriate contact information for questions or requests for mitigation of fees.

(L) A statement that the charges are consistent with any of Federal Maritime Commission rules with respect to detention and demurrage.

(M) A statement that the common carrier's performance did not cause or contribute to the underlying invoiced charges.

(e) SAFE HARBOR.—If a non-vessel operating common carrier passes through to the relevant shipper an invoice made by the ocean common carrier, and the Commission finds that the non-vessel operating common carrier is not otherwise responsible for the charge, then the ocean common carrier shall be subject to refunds or penalties pursuant to subsection (d)(1).

(f) ELIMINATION OF CHARGE OBLIGATION.—Failure to include the information required under subsection (d) on an invoice with any demurrage or detention charge shall eliminate any obligation of the charged party to pay the applicable charge.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1541; Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §708(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4295; Pub. L. 117–146, §7(a), June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1274.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41104	46 App.:1709(b) (1)–(12).	Pub. L. 98–237, §10(b)(1)–(12), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 77; Pub. L. 101–595, title VII, §710(c), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2997; Pub. L. 102–251, title II, §201(b), Mar. 9, 1992, 106 Stat. 60; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §109(a), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1909; Pub. L. 105–383, title IV, §424(b), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3441.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 117–146, §7(a)(1)(A), substituted "shall not" for "may not" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 117–146, §7(a)(1)(B), added par. (3) and struck out former par. (3) which read as follows: "retaliate against a shipper by refusing, or threatening to refuse, cargo space accommodations when available, or resort to other unfair or unjustly discriminatory methods because the shipper has patronized another carrier, or has filed a complaint, or for any other reason;".

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 117–146, §7(a)(1)(C), substituted "against any commodity group or type of shipment or in the matter of rates or charges" for "in the matter of rates or charges".

Subsec. (a)(10). Pub. L. 117–146, §7(a)(1)(D), inserted ", including with respect to vessel space accommodations provided by an ocean common carrier" after "negotiate".

Subsec. (a)(14) to (16). Pub. L. 117–146, §7(a)(1)(E)–(G), added pars. (14) to (16).

Subsecs. (d) to (f). Pub. L. 117–146, §7(a)(2), added subsecs. (d) to (f).

2018—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 115–282, §708(a)(1), designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and inserted heading.

Subsec. (a)(11). Pub. L. 115–282, §708(a)(2)(A), amended par. (11) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (11) read as follows: "knowingly and willfully accept cargo from or transport cargo for the account of an ocean transportation intermediary that does not have a tariff as required by section 40501 of this title and a bond, insurance, or other surety as required by section 40902 of this title; or".

Subsec. (a)(13). Pub. L. 115–282, §708(a)(2)(B), (C), added par. (13).

Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 115–282, §708(a)(3), added subsecs. (b) and (c).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2018 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §708(b), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4296, provided that: "Section 41104(a)(13) of title 46, United States Code, as amended, shall apply to any agreement filed or with an effective date before, on, or after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 4, 2018]."

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 117–146, §7(c), (d), June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1276, provided that:

"(c) RULEMAKING ON UNFAIR OR UNJUSTLY DISCRIMINATORY METHODS.—Not later than 60 days after the date of enactment of this Act [June 16, 2022], the Federal Maritime Commission shall initiate a rulemaking defining unfair or unjustly discriminatory methods under section 41104(a)(3) of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this section. The Federal Maritime Commission shall issue a final rule not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act.

"(d) RULEMAKING ON UNREASONABLE REFUSAL TO DEAL OR NEGOTIATE WITH RESPECT TO VESSEL SPACE ACCOMMODATIONS.—Not later than 30 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the Federal Maritime Commission, in consultation with the Commandant of the United States Coast Guard, shall initiate a rulemaking defining unreasonable refusal to deal or negotiate with respect to vessel space under section 41104(a)(10) of title 46, as amended by this section. The Federal Maritime Commission shall issue a final rule not later than 6 months after the date of enactment of this Act."

§41105. Concerted action

A conference or group of two or more common carriers may not—

(1) boycott or take any other concerted action resulting in an unreasonable refusal to deal;

(2) engage in conduct that unreasonably restricts the use of intermodal services or technological innovations;

(3) engage in any predatory practice designed to eliminate the participation, or deny the entry, in a particular trade of a common carrier not a member of the conference, a group of common carriers, an ocean tramp, or a bulk carrier;

(4) negotiate with a non-ocean carrier or group of non-ocean carriers (such as truck, rail, or air operators) on any matter relating to rates or services provided to ocean common carriers within the United States by those non-ocean carriers, unless the negotiations and any resulting agreements are not in violation of the antitrust laws and are consistent with the purposes of this part, except that this paragraph does not prohibit the setting and publishing of a joint through rate by a conference, joint venture, or association of ocean common carriers;

(5) negotiate with a tug or towing vessel service provider on any matter relating to rates or

services provided within the United States by those tugs or towing vessels;

(6) with respect to a vessel operated by an ocean common carrier within the United States, negotiate for the purchase of certain covered services, unless the negotiations and any resulting agreements are not in violation of the antitrust laws and are consistent with the purposes of this part, except that this paragraph does not prohibit the setting and publishing of a joint through rate by a conference, joint venture, or association of ocean common carriers;

(7) deny in the export foreign commerce of the United States compensation to an ocean freight forwarder or limit that compensation to less than a reasonable amount;

(8) allocate shippers among specific carriers that are parties to the agreement or prohibit a carrier that is a party to the agreement from soliciting cargo from a particular shipper, except as—

(A) authorized by section 40303(d) of this title;

(B) required by the law of the United States or the importing or exporting country; or

(C) agreed to by a shipper in a service contract;

(9) for service pursuant to a service contract, engage in any unjustly discriminatory practice in the matter of rates or charges with respect to any locality, port, or person due to the person's status as a shippers' association or ocean transportation intermediary; or

(10) for service pursuant to a service contract, give any undue or unreasonable preference or advantage or impose any undue or unreasonable prejudice or disadvantage with respect to any locality, port, or person due to the person's status as a shippers' association or ocean transportation intermediary.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1542; Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §709(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4296.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41105	46 App.:1709(c).	Pub. L. 98–237, §10(c), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 77; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §109(b), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1910; Pub. L. 105–383, title IV, §424(b), Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3441.

In paragraph (5), the words "ocean freight forwarder" are substituted for "ocean transportation intermediary, as defined by section 1702(17)(A) of this Appendix" because the definition of "ocean transportation intermediary" in section 1702(17)(A) contains a definition of "ocean freight forwarder" which is restated as a separate definition.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Pars. (5) to (10). Pub. L. 115–282 added pars. (5) and (6) and redesignated former pars. (5) to (8) as (7) to (10), respectively.

§41105A. Authority

Nothing in section 41105, as amended by the Federal Maritime Commission Authorization Act of 2017, shall be construed to limit the authority of the Department of Justice regarding antitrust matters.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §709(b)(1), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4296.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 41105, as amended by the Federal Maritime Commission Authorization Act of 2017, referred to in text, is section 41105 of this title as amended by title VII of Pub. L. 115–282.

§41106. Marine terminal operators

A marine terminal operator may not—

(1) agree with another marine terminal operator or with a common carrier to boycott, or unreasonably discriminate in the provision of terminal services to, a common carrier or ocean tramp;

(2) give any undue or unreasonable preference or advantage or impose any undue or unreasonable prejudice or disadvantage with respect to any person; or

(3) unreasonably refuse to deal or negotiate.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1543.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41106(1)	46 App.:1709(d)(2).	Pub. L. 98–237, §10(d)(2), (3) (related to (b)(10)), (4), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 77; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §109(c), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1910.
41106(2)	46 App.:1709(d)(4).	
41106(3)	46 App.:1709(d)(3) (related to (b)(10)).	

§41107. Monetary penalties or refunds

(a) IN GENERAL.—A person that violates this part or a regulation or order of the Federal Maritime Commission issued under this part is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty or, in addition to or in lieu of a civil penalty, is liable for the refund of a charge. Unless otherwise provided in this part, the amount of the penalty may not exceed $5,000 for each violation or, if the violation was willfully and knowingly committed, $25,000 for each violation. Each day of a continuing violation is a separate violation.

(b) LIEN ON CARRIER'S VESSELS.—The amount of a civil penalty or, in addition to or in lieu of a civil penalty, the refund of a charge, imposed on a common carrier under this section constitutes a lien on the vessels operated by the carrier. Any such vessel is subject to an action in rem to enforce the lien in the district court of the United States for the district in which it is found.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1543; Pub. L. 117–146, §8(a)(1), June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1276.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41107	46 App.:1712(a).	Pub. L. 98–237, §13(a), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 82; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §112(a), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1911.

In subsection (b), the words "is subject to an action in rem to enforce the lien" are substituted for "may be libeled therefore" to modernize the language.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–146, §8(a)(1)(A), inserted "or refunds" after "penalties" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 117–146, §8(a)(1)(B), inserted "or, in addition to or in lieu of a civil penalty, is liable for the refund of a charge" after "civil penalty".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 117–146, §8(a)(1)(C), inserted "or, in addition to or in lieu of a civil penalty, the refund of a charge," after "civil penalty".

§41108. Additional penalties

(a) SUSPENSION OF TARIFFS.—For a violation of paragraph (1), (2), or (7) of section 41104(a) of this title, the Federal Maritime Commission may suspend any or all tariffs of the common carrier, or that common carrier's right to use any or all tariffs of conferences of which it is a member, for a period not to exceed 12 months.

(b) OPERATING UNDER SUSPENDED TARIFF.—A common carrier that accepts or handles cargo for carriage under a tariff that has been suspended, or after its right to use that tariff has been suspended, is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $50,000 for each shipment.

(c) FAILURE TO PROVIDE INFORMATION.—

(1) PENALTIES.—If the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for a hearing, that a common carrier has failed to supply information ordered to be produced or compelled by subpoena under section 41303 of this title, the Commission may—

(A) suspend any or all tariffs of the carrier or the carrier's right to use any or all tariffs of conferences of which it is a member; and

(B) request the Secretary of Homeland Security to refuse or revoke any clearance required for a vessel operated by the carrier, and when so requested, the Secretary shall refuse or revoke the clearance.

(2) DEFENSE BASED ON FOREIGN LAW.—If, in defense of its failure to comply with a subpoena or discovery order, a common carrier alleges that information or documents located in a foreign country cannot be produced because of the laws of that country, the Commission shall immediately notify the Secretary of State of the failure to comply and of the allegation relating to foreign laws. On receiving the notification, the Secretary of State shall promptly consult with the government of the nation within which the information or documents are alleged to be located for the purpose of assisting the Commission in obtaining the information or documents.

(d) IMPAIRING ACCESS TO FOREIGN TRADE.—If the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for a hearing, that the action of a common carrier, acting alone or in concert with another person, or a foreign government has unduly impaired access of a vessel documented under the laws of the United States to ocean trade between foreign ports, the Commission shall take action that it finds appropriate, including imposing any of the penalties authorized by this section. The Commission also may take any of the actions authorized by sections 42304 and 42305 of this title.

(e) SUBMISSION OF ORDER TO PRESIDENT.—Before an order under this section becomes effective, it shall be submitted immediately to the President. The President, within 10 days after receiving it, may disapprove it if the President finds that disapproval is required for reasons of national defense or foreign policy.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1543; Pub. L. 117–146, §15(a), June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1279.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41108(a)	46 App.:1712(b)(1).	Pub. L. 98–237, §13(b), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 82; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §112(b), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1911.
41108(b)	46 App.:1712(b)(3).	
41108(c)	46 App.:1712(b)(2), (4), (5).	
41108(d)	46 App.:1712(b)(6).	
	46 App.:1710a(h) (related to 1712(b)(6)).	Pub. L. 100–418, title X, §10002(h) (related to §13(b)(6)), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1572; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §111(7), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1911.
41108(e)	46 App.:1712(b)(7).	

In subsection (c)(1)(B), the words "Secretary of Homeland Security" are substituted for "Secretary of the Treasury" because the functions of the Secretary of the Treasury relating to the Customs Service were transferred to the Secretary of Homeland Security by section 403(1) of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–296, 116 Stat. 2178).

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 117–146 substituted "paragraph (1), (2), or (7) of section 41104(a)" for "section 41104(1), (2), or (7)".

§41109. Assessment of penalties

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—Until a matter is referred to the Attorney General, the Federal Maritime Commission may—

(1) after notice and opportunity for a hearing, in accordance with this part—

(A) assess a civil penalty; or

(B) in addition to, or in lieu of, assessing a civil penalty under subparagraph (A), order a refund of money (including additional amounts in accordance with section 41305(c)), subject to subsection (b)(2); and

(2) compromise, modify, or remit, with or without conditions, a civil penalty or refund imposed under paragraph (1).

(b) DETERMINATION OF AMOUNT.—

(1) FACTORS FOR CONSIDERATION.—In determining the amount of a civil penalty assessed or refund of money ordered pursuant to subsection (a), the Federal Maritime Commission shall take into consideration—

(A) the nature, circumstances, extent, and gravity of the violation committed;

(B) with respect to the violator—

(i) the degree of culpability;

(ii) any history of prior offenses;

(iii) the ability to pay; and

(iv) such other matters as justice may require; and

(C) the amount of any refund of money ordered pursuant to subsection (a)(1)(B).

(2) COMMENSURATE REDUCTION IN CIVIL PENALTY.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—In any case in which the Federal Maritime Commission orders a refund of money pursuant to subsection (a)(1)(B) in addition to assessing a civil penalty pursuant to subsection (a)(1)(A), the amount of the civil penalty assessed shall be decreased by any additional amounts included in the refund of money in excess of the actual injury (as defined in section 41305(a)).

(B) TREATMENT OF REFUNDS.—A refund of money ordered pursuant to subsection (a)(1)(B) shall be—

(i) considered to be compensation paid to the applicable claimant; and

(ii) deducted from the total amount of damages awarded to that claimant in a civil action against the violator relating to the applicable violation.

(c) EXCEPTION.—A civil penalty or refund of money under subparagraph (A) or (B), respectively, of subsection (a)(1) may not be imposed for conspiracy to violate subsection (a) or (d) of section 41102 or paragraph (1) or (2) of section 41104(a) or to defraud the Commission by concealing such a violation.

(d) PROHIBITED BASIS OF PENALTY.—The Commission or a court may not order a person to pay the difference between the amount billed and agreed upon in writing with a common carrier or its agent and the amount set forth in a tariff or service contract by that common carrier for the transportation service provided.

(e) TIME LIMIT.—A proceeding to assess a civil penalty or order a refund of money under this section must be commenced within 5 years after the date of the violation.

(f) REVIEW OF CIVIL PENALTY.—A person against whom a civil penalty is assessed, or that is ordered to refund money, under this section may obtain review under chapter 158 of title 28.

(g) CIVIL ACTIONS TO COLLECT.—If a person does not pay an assessment of a civil penalty or a refund required under this section after it has become final or after the appropriate court has entered final judgment in favor of the Commission, the Attorney General at the request of the Commission may seek to collect the amount assessed in an appropriate district court of the United States. The court shall enforce the order of the Commission unless it finds that the order was not regularly made and duly issued.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1544; Pub. L. 117–146, §§8(a)(2), 15(b), June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1276, 1279.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41109(a)	46 App.:1712(c) (1st, last sentences).	Pub. L. 98–237, §13(c)–(f), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 82; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §112(c), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1912.
41109(b)	46 App.:1712(c) (2d sentence).	
41109(c)	46 App.:1712(f)(1) (1st sentence).	
41109(d)	46 App.:1712(f)(1) (last sentence).	
41109(e)	46 App.:1712(f)(2).	
41109(f)	46 App.:1712(d).	
41109(g)	46 App.:1712(e).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 117–146, §8(a)(2)(A), added subsecs. (a) and (b) and struck out former subsecs. (a) and (b) which related to general authority to assess a civil penalty and factors in determining the amount of a civil penalty.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 117–146, §15(b), substituted "subsection (a) or (d) of section 41102 or paragraph (1) or (2) of section 41104(a)" for "section 41102(a) or 41104(1) or (2) of this title".

Pub. L. 117–146, §8(a)(2)(B), substituted "or refund of money under subparagraph (A) or (B), respectively, of subsection (a)(1) may not be imposed" for "may not be imposed".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 117–146, §8(a)(2)(C), inserted "or order a refund of money" after "penalty".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 117–146, §8(a)(2)(D), inserted ", or that is ordered to refund money," after "assessed".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 117–146, §8(a)(2)(E), inserted "or a refund required under this section" after "penalty".

§41110. Data collection

The Federal Maritime Commission shall publish on its website a calendar quarterly report that describes the total import and export tonnage and the total loaded and empty 20-foot equivalent units per vessel (making port in the United States, including any territory or possession of the United States) operated by each ocean common carrier covered under this chapter. Ocean common carriers under this chapter shall provide to the Commission all necessary information, as determined by the Commission, for completion of this report.

(Added Pub. L. 117–146, §9(a), June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1277.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

RULE OF CONSTRUCTION

Pub. L. 117–146, §9(b), June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1277, provided that: "Nothing in this section [enacting this section], and the amendment made by this section, shall be construed to compel the public disclosure of any confidential or proprietary data, in accordance with section 552(b)(4) of title 5, United States Code."

CHAPTER 413—ENFORCEMENT

Sec.

41301. Complaints.
41302. Investigations.
41303. Discovery and subpoenas.
41304. Hearings and orders.
41305. Award of reparations.
41306. Injunctive relief sought by complainants.
41307. Injunctive relief sought by the Commission.
41308. Enforcement of subpoenas and orders.
41309. Enforcement of reparation orders.
41310. Charge complaints.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–146, §10(b), June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1278, added item 41310.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

FEDERAL MARITIME COMMISSION ACTIVITIES

Pub. L. 117–146, §17, June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1280, provided that:

"(a) PUBLIC SUBMISSIONS TO COMMISSION.—The Federal Maritime Commission shall—

"(1) establish on the public website of the Commission a webpage that allows for the submission of comments, complaints, concerns, reports of noncompliance, requests for investigation, and requests for alternative dispute resolution; and

"(2) direct each submission under the link established under paragraph (1) to the appropriate component office of the Commission.

"(b) AUTHORIZATION OF OFFICE OF CONSUMER AFFAIRS AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION SERVICES.—The Commission shall maintain an Office of Consumer Affairs and Dispute Resolution Services to provide nonadjudicative ombuds assistance, mediation, facilitation, and arbitration to resolve challenges and disputes involving cargo shipments, household good shipments, and cruises subject to the jurisdiction of the Commission.

"(c) ENHANCING CAPACITY FOR INVESTIGATIONS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Pursuant to section 41302 of title 46, United States Code, not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act [June 16, 2022], the Chairperson of the Commission shall staff within the Bureau of Enforcement, the Bureau of Certification and Licensing, the Office of the Managing Director, the Office of Consumer Affairs and Dispute Resolution Services, and the Bureau of Trade Analysis not fewer than 7 total positions to assist in investigations and oversight, in addition to the positions within the Bureau of Enforcement, the Bureau of Certification and Licensing, the Office of the Managing Director, the Office of Consumer Affairs and Dispute Resolution Services, and the Bureau of Trade Analysis on that date of enactment.

"(2) DUTIES.—The additional staff appointed under paragraph (1) shall provide support—

"(A) to Area Representatives of the Bureau of Enforcement;

"(B) to attorneys of the Bureau of Enforcement in enforcing the laws and regulations subject to the jurisdiction of the Commission;

"(C) for the alternative dispute resolution services of the Commission; or

"(D) for the review of agreements and activities subject to the authority of the Commission."

§41301. Complaints

(a) IN GENERAL.—A person may file with the Federal Maritime Commission a sworn complaint alleging a violation of this part, except section 41307(b)(1). If the complaint is filed within 3 years after the claim accrues, the complainant may seek reparations for an injury to the complainant caused by the violation.

(b) NOTICE AND RESPONSE.—The Commission shall provide a copy of the complaint to the person named in the complaint. Within a reasonable time specified by the Commission, the person shall satisfy the complaint or answer it in writing.

(c) IF COMPLAINT NOT SATISFIED.—If the complaint is not satisfied, the Commission shall investigate the complaint in an appropriate manner and make an appropriate order.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1545.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41301(a)	46 App.:1710(a), (g) (related to time limit).	Pub. L. 98–237, §11(a), (b), (g) (related to time limit), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 80; Pub. L. 98–595, §3(b)(2), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3132; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §110, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1911.
41301(b)	46 App.:1710(b) (1st sentence).	
41301(c)	46 App.:1710(b) (last sentence).	

In subsection (a), the words "If the complaint is filed within 3 years after the claim accrues" are substituted for "For any complaint filed within 3 years after the cause of action accrued" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1710(g) to

alert the reader to that time limitation.

§41302. Investigations

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Federal Maritime Commission, on complaint or its own motion, may investigate any conduct, agreement, fee, or charge that the Commission believes may be in violation of this part. The Commission may by order disapprove, cancel, or modify any agreement that operates in violation of this part.

(b) EFFECTIVENESS OF AGREEMENT, FEE, OR CHARGE DURING INVESTIGATION .—Unless an injunction is issued under section 41306 or 41307 of this title, an agreement, fee, or charge under investigation by the Commission remains in effect until the Commission issues its order.

(c) DATE FOR DECISION.—Within 10 days after the initiation of a proceeding under this section or section 41301 of this title, the Commission shall set a date by which it will issue its final decision. The Commission by order may extend the date for good cause.

(d) SANCTIONS FOR DELAY.—If, within the period for final decision under subsection (c), the Commission determines that it is unable to issue a final decision because of undue delay caused by a party to the proceeding, the Commission may impose sanctions, including issuing a decision adverse to the delaying party.

(e) REPORT.—The Commission shall make a written report of every investigation under this part in which a hearing was held, stating its conclusions, decisions, findings of fact, and order. The Commission shall provide a copy of the report to all parties and publish the report for public information. A published report is competent evidence in a court of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1545; Pub. L. 117–146, §11(a), June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1278; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3535(f), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2315.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41302(a)	46 App.:1710(c) (1st, 3d sentences).	Pub. L. 98–237, §11(c)–(f), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 80.
41302(b)	46 App.:1710(c) (2d sentence).	
41302(c)	46 App.:1710(d).	
41302(d)	46 App.:1710(e).	
41302(e)	46 App.:1710(f).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 118–159 substituted "conduct, agreement" for "conduct agreement".

2022—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 117–146, §11(a)(1), substituted "agreement, fee, or charge" for "or agreement".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 117–146, §11(a)(2)(B), inserted ", fee, or charge" after "agreement".

Pub. L. 117–146, §11(a)(2)(A), substituted "Agreement, Fee, or Charge" for "Agreement" in heading.

Quoted text appearing in directory language was conformed to the style used in this title to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

§41303. Discovery and subpoenas

(a) IN GENERAL.—In an investigation or adjudicatory proceeding under this part—

(1) the Federal Maritime Commission may subpoena witnesses and evidence; and

(2) a party may use depositions, written interrogatories, and discovery procedures under

regulations prescribed by the Commission that, to the extent practicable, shall conform to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.).

(b) WITNESS FEES.—Unless otherwise prohibited by law, a witness is entitled to the same fees and mileage as in the courts of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1545.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41303	46 App.:1711.	Pub. L. 98–237, §12, Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 81.

In subsection (a)(1), the words "may subpoena witnesses and evidence" are substituted for "may by subpena compel the attendance of witnesses and the production of books, papers, documents, and other evidence" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (a)(2), the words "shall conform to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.)" are substituted for "shall be in conformity with the rules applicable in civil proceedings in the district courts of the United States" for clarity.

§41304. Hearings and orders

(a) OPPORTUNITY FOR HEARING.—The Federal Maritime Commission shall provide an opportunity for a hearing before issuing an order relating to a violation of this part or a regulation prescribed under this part.

(b) MODIFICATION OF ORDER.—The Commission may reverse, suspend, or modify any of its orders.

(c) REHEARING.—On application of a party to a proceeding, the Commission may grant a rehearing of the same or any matter determined in the proceeding. Except by order of the Commission, a rehearing does not operate as a stay of an order.

(d) PERIOD OF EFFECTIVENESS.—An order of the Commission remains in effect for the period specified in the order or until suspended, modified, or set aside by the Commission or a court of competent jurisdiction.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1546.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41304(a)	46 App.:1713(a) (1st sentence).	Pub. L. 98–237, §14(a), (b), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 83.
41304(b)	46 App.:1713(b) (1st sentence 1st–12th words).	
41304(c)	46 App.:1713(b) (1st sentence 13th–last words, last sentence).	
41304(d)	46 App.:1713(a) (last sentence).	

In subsection (a), the words "upon sworn complaint or on its own motion" are omitted as unnecessary.

§41305. Award of reparations

(a) DEFINITION.—In this section, the term "actual injury" includes the loss of interest at

commercial rates compounded from the date of injury.

(b) BASIC AMOUNT.—If the complaint was filed within the period specified in section 41301(a) of this title, the Federal Maritime Commission shall direct the payment of reparations to the complainant for actual injury caused by a violation of this part.

(c) ADDITIONAL AMOUNTS.—On a showing that the injury was caused by an activity prohibited by subsection (b) or (c) of section 41102, paragraph (3) or (6) of section 41104(a), or paragraph (1) or (3) of section 41105, the Commission may order the payment of additional amounts, but the total recovery of a complainant may not exceed twice the amount of the actual injury.

(d) DIFFERENCE BETWEEN RATES.—If the injury was caused by an activity prohibited by subparagraph (A) or (B) of section 41104(a)(4), the amount of the injury shall be the difference between the rate paid by the injured shipper and the most favorable rate paid by another shipper.

(e) ATTORNEY FEES.—In any action brought under section 41301, the prevailing party may be awarded reasonable attorney fees.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1546; Pub. L. 113–281, title IV, §402, Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3056; Pub. L. 117–146, §§12, 15(c), June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1279; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3535(g), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2315.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41305	46 App.:1710(g) (less time limit).	Pub. L. 98–237, §11(g) (less time limit), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 80; Pub. L. 98–595, §3(b)(2), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3132; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §110, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1911.

In subsection (b), the words "within the period specified in section 41301(a) of this title" are substituted for "within 3 years after the cause of action accrued" because the time limit is restated in section 41301(a) instead of in this section. The words "upon petition of the complainant" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "after notice and hearing" are omitted as unnecessary because of section 41304(a) of the revised title.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 118–159 substituted "subsection" for "section subsection".

2022—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 117–146, §15(c)(1), substituted "paragraph (3) or (6) of section 41104(a), or paragraph (1) or (3) of section 41105" for "41104(3) or (6), or 41105(1) or (3) of this title".

Pub. L. 117–146, §12, substituted "subsection (b) or (c) of section 41102" for "41102(b)".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 117–146, §15(c)(2), substituted "subparagraph (A) or (B) of section 41104(a)(4)" for "section 41104(4)(A) or (B) of this title".

2014—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 113–281, §402(1), struck out ", plus reasonable attorney fees" before period at end.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 113–281, §402(2), added subsec. (e).

§41306. Injunctive relief sought by complainants

(a) IN GENERAL.—After filing a complaint with the Federal Maritime Commission under section 41301 of this title, the complainant may bring a civil action in a district court of the United States to enjoin conduct in violation of this part.

(b) VENUE.—The action must be brought in the judicial district in which—

(1) the Commission has brought a civil action against the defendant under section 41307(a) of this title; or

(2) the defendant resides or transacts business, if the Commission has not brought such an action.

(c) REMEDIES BY COURT.—After notice to the defendant, and a showing that the standards for granting injunctive relief by courts of equity are met, the court may grant a temporary restraining order or preliminary injunction for a period not to exceed 10 days after the Commission has issued an order disposing of the complaint.

(d) ATTORNEY FEES.—A defendant prevailing in a civil action under this section shall be allowed reasonable attorney fees to be assessed and collected as part of the costs of the action.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1546.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41306	46 App.:1710(h)(2).	Pub. L. 98–237, §11(h)(2), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 81.

§41307. Injunctive relief sought by the Commission

(a) GENERAL VIOLATIONS.—In connection with an investigation under section 41301 or 41302 of this title, the Federal Maritime Commission may bring a civil action to enjoin conduct in violation of this part. The action must be brought in the district court of the United States for any judicial district in which the defendant resides or transacts business. After notice to the defendant, and a showing that the standards for granting injunctive relief by courts of equity are met, the court may grant a temporary restraining order or preliminary injunction for a period not to exceed 10 days after the Commission has issued an order disposing of the issues under investigation.

(b) REDUCTION IN COMPETITION.—

(1) ACTION BY COMMISSION.—If, at any time after the filing or effective date of an agreement under chapter 403 of this title, the Commission determines that the agreement is likely, by a reduction in competition, to produce an unreasonable reduction in transportation service or an unreasonable increase in transportation cost or to substantially lessen competition in the purchasing of certain covered services, the Commission, after notice to the person filing the agreement, may bring a civil action in the United States District Court for the District of Columbia to enjoin the operation of the agreement. The Commission's sole remedy with respect to an agreement likely to have such an effect is an action under this subsection.

(2) REMEDIES BY COURT.—In an action under this subsection, the court may issue—

(A) a temporary restraining order or a preliminary injunction; and

(B) a permanent injunction after a showing that the agreement is likely to have the effect described in paragraph (1).

(3) BURDEN OF PROOF AND THIRD PARTIES.—In an action under this subsection, the burden of proof is on the Commission. The court may not allow a third party to intervene.

(4) COMPETITION FACTORS.—In making a determination under this subsection regarding whether an agreement is likely to substantially lessen competition in the purchasing of certain covered services, the Commission may consider any relevant competition factors in affected markets, including, without limitation, the competitive effect of agreements other than the agreement under review.

(c) FAILURE TO PROVIDE INFORMATION.—If a person filing an agreement, or an officer, director, partner, agent, or employee of the person, fails substantially to comply with a request for

the submission of additional information or documents within the period provided in section 40304(c) of this title, the Commission may bring a civil action in the United States District Court for the District of Columbia. At the request of the Commission, the Court—

(1) may order compliance;

(2) shall extend the period specified in section 40304(c)(2) of this title until there has been substantial compliance; and

(3) may grant other equitable relief that the court decides is appropriate.

(d) REPRESENTATION.—The Commission may represent itself in a proceeding under this section in—

(1) a district court of the United States, on notice to the Attorney General; and

(2) a court of appeals of the United States, with the approval of the Attorney General.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1547; Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §710(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4297.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41307(a)	46 App.:1710(h)(1).	Pub. L. 98–237, §11(c) (last sentence), (h)(1), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 80, 81.
41307(b)(1)	46 App.:1705(g), (h) (1st sentence). 46 App.:1710(c) (last sentence).	Pub. L. 98–237, §6(g)–(i), (k), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 72, 73.
41307(b)(2)	46 App.:1705(h) (2d sentence).	
41307(b)(3)	46 App.:1705(h) (3d, last sentences).	
41307(c)	46 App.:1705(i).	
41307(d)	46 App.:1705(k).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 115–282, §710(a)(1), inserted "or to substantially lessen competition in the purchasing of certain covered services" after "transportation cost".

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 115–282, §710(a)(2), added par. (4).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2018 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §710(b), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4297, provided that: "Section 41307(b) of title 46, United States Code, as amended, shall apply to any agreement filed or with an effective date before, on, or after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 4, 2018]."

§41308. Enforcement of subpoenas and orders

(a) CIVIL ACTION.—If a person does not comply with a subpoena or order of the Federal Maritime Commission, the Attorney General, at the request of the Commission, or an injured party, may seek enforcement in a district court of the United States having jurisdiction over the parties. If, after hearing, the court determines that the subpoena or order was regularly made and duly issued, the court shall enforce the subpoena or order.

(b) TIME LIMIT ON BRINGING ACTIONS.—An action under this section to enforce an order of the Commission must be brought within 3 years after the date the order was violated.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1548.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41308(a)	46 App.:1713(c).	Pub. L. 98–237, §14(c), (e), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 83, 84.
41308(b)	46 App.:1713(e).	

In subsection (a), the words "subpoena or" are added in the second sentence for consistency in the subsection. The words "by an appropriate injunction or other process, mandatory or otherwise" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "regularly made and duly issued" are substituted for "properly made and duly issued" for consistency in the subtitle.

§41309. Enforcement of reparation orders

(a) CIVIL ACTION.—If a person does not comply with an order of the Federal Maritime Commission for the payment of a refund of money or reparation, the person to which the refund or reparation was awarded may seek enforcement of the order in a district court of the United States having jurisdiction over the parties.

(b) PARTIES AND SERVICE OF PROCESS.—All parties in whose favor the Commission has ordered a refund of money or any other award of reparation by a single order may be joined as plaintiffs, and all other parties in the order (except for the Commission or any component of the Commission) may be joined as defendants, in a single action in a judicial district in which any one plaintiff could maintain an action against any one defendant. Service of process against a defendant not found in that district may be made in a district in which any office of that defendant is located or in which any port of call on a regular route operated by that defendant is located. Judgment may be entered for any plaintiff against the defendant liable to that plaintiff.

(c) NATURE OF REVIEW.—In an action under this section, the findings and order of the Commission are prima facie evidence of the facts stated in the findings and order.

(d) COSTS AND ATTORNEY FEES.—The plaintiff is not liable for costs of the action or for costs of any subsequent stage of the proceedings unless they accrue on the plaintiff's appeal. A prevailing plaintiff shall be allowed reasonable attorney fees to be assessed and collected as part of the costs of the action.

(e) TIME LIMIT ON BRINGING ACTIONS.—An action under this section to enforce an order of the Commission must be brought within 3 years after the date the order was violated.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1548; Pub. L. 117–146, §13, June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1279.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
41309(a)	46 App.:1713(d)(1).	Pub. L. 98–237, §14(d), (e), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 83, 84.
41309(b)	46 App.:1713(d)(3).	
41309(c)	46 App.:1713(d)(2) (1st sentence 1st–23d words).	
41309(d)	46 App.:1713(d)(2) (1st sentence 24th–last words, last	

	sentence).	
41309(e)	46 App.:1713(e).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 117–146, §13(1), substituted "a refund of money or reparation, the person to which the refund or reparation was awarded" for "reparation, the person to whom the award was made".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 117–146, §13(2), substituted "ordered a refund of money or any other award of reparation" for "made an award of reparation" and inserted "(except for the Commission or any component of the Commission)" after "parties in the order".

§41310. Charge complaints

(a) IN GENERAL.—A person may submit to the Federal Maritime Commission, and the Commission shall accept, information concerning complaints about charges assessed by a common carrier. The information submitted to the Commission shall include the bill of lading numbers and invoices, and may include any other relevant information.

(b) INVESTIGATION.—Upon receipt of a submission under subsection (a), with respect to a charge assessed by a common carrier, the Commission shall promptly investigate the charge with regard to compliance with section 41104(a) and section 41102. The common carrier shall—

(1) be provided an opportunity to submit additional information related to the charge in question; and

(2) bear the burden of establishing the reasonableness of any demurrage or detention charges pursuant to section 545.5 of title 46, Code of Federal Regulations (or successor regulations).

(c) REFUND.—Upon receipt of submissions under subsection (a), if the Commission determines that a charge does not comply with section 41104(a) or 41102, the Commission shall promptly order the refund of charges paid.

(d) PENALTIES.—In the event of a finding that a charge does not comply with section 41104(a) or 41102 after submission under subsection (a), a civil penalty under section 41107 shall be applied to the common carrier making such charge.

(e) CONSIDERATIONS.—If the common carrier assessing the charge is acting in the capacity of a non-vessel-operating common carrier, the Commission shall, while conducting an investigation under subsection (b), consider—

(1) whether the non-vessel-operating common carrier is responsible for the noncompliant assessment of the charge, in whole or in part; and

(2) whether another party is ultimately responsible in whole or in part and potentially subject to action under subsections (c) and (d).

(Added Pub. L. 117–146, §10(a), June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1278.)

PART B—ACTIONS TO ADDRESS FOREIGN PRACTICES

CHAPTER 421—REGULATIONS AFFECTING SHIPPING IN FOREIGN TRADE

Sec.

42101. Regulations of the Commission.
42102. Regulations of other agencies.
42103. No preference to Government-owned vessels.

42104. Information, witnesses, and evidence.
42105. Disclosure to public.
42106. Other actions to remedy unfavorable conditions.
42107. Refusal of clearance and entry.
42108. Penalty for operating under suspended tariff or service contract.
42109. Consultation with other agencies.

§42101. Regulations of the Commission

(a) UNFAVORABLE CONDITIONS.—To further the objectives and policy set forth in section 50101 of this title, the Federal Maritime Commission shall prescribe regulations affecting shipping in foreign trade, not in conflict with law, to adjust or meet general or special conditions unfavorable to shipping in foreign trade, whether in a particular trade or on a particular route or in commerce generally, including intermodal movements, terminal operations, cargo solicitation, agency services, ocean transportation intermediary services and operations, and other activities and services integral to transportation systems, and which arise out of or result from laws or regulations of a foreign country or competitive methods, pricing practices, or other practices employed by owners, operators, agents, or masters of vessels of a foreign country.

(b) INITIATION OF REGULATION.—A regulation under subsection (a) may be initiated by the Commission on its own motion or on the petition of any person, including another component of the United States Government.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1548.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
42101(a)	46 App.:876(a)(2).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §19(a)(2), (e), 41 Stat. 995; Ex. Ord. No. 6166, §12, eff. June 10, 1933; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(46), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 157; Pub. L. 101–595, title I, §103, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2979; Pub. L. 102–587, title VI, §6205(b), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5094; Pub. L. 105–258, title III, §301, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1915.
	46 App.:1710a(h) (related to 876(a)(2)).	Pub. L. 100–418, title X, §10002(h) (related to §19(b)(1)(b)), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1572; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §111(7), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1911.
42101(b)	46 App.:876(e).	

In subsection (a), the word "shall" is substituted for "is authorized and directed", and the words "prescribe regulations" are substituted for "make rules and regulations", for consistency in the revised title and to eliminate unnecessary words. The text of 46 App. U.S.C. 1710a(h), insofar as it relates to 46 App. U.S.C. 876(a)(2), is omitted as unnecessary because this chapter already provides for the same remedies as those authorized by the omitted provision.

In subsection (b), the words "on the petition of any person, including another component of the United States Government" are substituted for "pursuant to a petition. Any person, including a common carrier, tramp operator, bulk operator, shipper, shippers' association, ocean transportation intermediary, marine terminal

operator, or any component of the Government of the United States, may file a petition for relief under subsection (a)(2) of this section." for consistency with section 42302(b) of the revised title and to eliminate unnecessary words.

§42102. Regulations of other agencies

(a) REQUEST TO AGENCY.—To further the objectives and policy set forth in section 50101 of this title, the Federal Maritime Commission shall request the head of a department, agency, or instrumentality of the United States Government to suspend, modify, or annul any existing regulations, or to make new regulations, affecting shipping in the foreign trade, except regulations relating to the Public Health Service, the Consular Service, or the inspection of vessels.

(b) PRIOR REVIEW AND APPROVAL.—A department, agency, or instrumentality of the Government may not prescribe a regulation affecting shipping in the foreign trade (except a regulation affecting the Public Health Service, the Consular Service, or the inspection of vessels) until the regulation has been submitted to the Commission for its approval and final action has been taken by the Commission or the President.

(c) SUBMISSION TO PRESIDENT.—If the head of a department, agency, or instrumentality of the Government refuses to comply with a request under subsection (a) or objects to a decision of the Commission under subsection (b), the Commission or the head of the department, agency, or instrumentality may submit the facts to the President. The President may establish, suspend, modify, or annul the regulation.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1549.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
42102(a)	46 App.:876(a)(3).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §19(a)(3), (b), (c), 41 Stat. 995; Ex. Ord. No. 6166, §12, eff. June 10, 1933; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(46), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 157; Pub. L. 105–258, title III, §301, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1915.
42102(b)	46 App.:876(b).	
42102(c)	46 App.:876(c).	

In this section, the words "department, agency, or instrumentality" are substituted for "department, board, bureau, or agency" for consistency in the revised title. The words "the inspection of vessels" are substituted for "the steamboat inspection service" because the Steamboat Inspection Service has been abolished and its functions are now carried out by the Coast Guard.

In subsection (a), the word "shall" is substituted for "is authorized and directed" for consistency in the revised title and to eliminate unnecessary words.

§42103. No preference to Government-owned vessels

A regulation may not give a vessel owned by the United States Government a preference over a vessel owned by citizens of the United States and documented under the laws of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1549.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised

Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
42103	46 App.:876(d).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §19(d), 41 Stat. 995; Ex. Ord. No. 6166, §12, eff. June 10, 1933; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 105–258, title III, §301, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1915.

§42104. Information, witnesses, and evidence

(a) ORDER TO SUPPLY INFORMATION.—In carrying out section 42101 of this title, the Federal Maritime Commission may order any person (including a common carrier, tramp operator, bulk operator, shipper, shippers' association, ocean transportation intermediary, or marine terminal operator, or an officer, receiver, trustee, lessee, agent, or employee thereof) to file with the Commission a report, answers to questions, documentary material, or other information the Commission considers necessary or appropriate. The Commission may require the response to any such order to be made under oath. The response shall be provided in the form and within the time specified by the Commission.

(b) SUBPOENAS AND DISCOVERY.—In carrying out section 42101 of this title, the Commission may—

(1) subpoena witnesses and evidence; and

(2) authorize a party to use depositions, written interrogatories, and discovery procedures that, to the extent practicable, conform to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.).

(c) WITNESS FEES.—Unless otherwise prohibited by law, and subject to funds being appropriated, a witness in a proceeding under section 42101 of this title is entitled to the same fees and mileage as in the courts of the United States.

(d) PENALTIES.—For failure to supply information ordered to be produced or compelled by subpoena under this section, the Commission may—

(1) after notice and opportunity for a hearing, suspend tariffs and service contracts of a common carrier or the common carrier's right to use tariffs of conferences and service contracts of agreements of which it is a member; or

(2) assess a civil penalty of not more than $5,000 for each day that the information is not provided.

(e) ENFORCEMENT.—If a person does not comply with an order or subpoena of the Commission under this section, the Commission may seek enforcement in a district court of the United States having jurisdiction over the parties. If, after hearing, the court determines that the order or subpoena was regularly made and duly issued, the court shall enforce the order or subpoena.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1549.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
42104(a)	46 App.:876(f)(1)–(3).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §19(f), (g); as added Pub. L. 101–595, title I, §103(2), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2979; Pub. L. 102–587, title VI, §6205(b)(2), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5094; Pub. L. 105–258, title III, §301, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1915.

42104(b)	46 App.:876(g)(1), (2).	
42104(c)	46 App.:876(g)(3).	
42104(d)	46 App.:876(f)(4), (g)(4).	
42104(e)	46 App.:876(g)(5).	

In subsections (a) and (b), the words "In carrying out" are substituted for "In furtherance of the purposes of" and "In proceedings under" for clarity and consistency.

In subsection (b)(1), the words "subpoena witnesses and evidence" are substituted for "by subpoena compel the attendance of witnesses and the production of books, papers, documents, and other evidence" for consistency in the revised title and to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (b)(2), the words "conform to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.)" are substituted for "are in conformity with the rules applicable in civil proceedings in the district courts of the United States" for clarity.

In subsection (d)(2), the penalties from 46 App. U.S.C. 876(f)(4) and (g)(4)(B) are combined because they are redundant.

In subsection (e), the words "by an appropriate injunction or other process, mandatory or otherwise" are omitted as unnecessary.

§42105. Disclosure to public

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Federal Maritime Commission may refuse to disclose to the public a response or other information submitted to it under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1550.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
42105	46 App.:876(h).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §19(h); as added Pub. L. 101–595, title I, §103(2), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2979; Pub. L. 105–258, title III, §301, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1915.

§42106. Other actions to remedy unfavorable conditions

If the Federal Maritime Commission finds that conditions unfavorable to shipping in foreign trade as described in section 42101 of this title exist, the Commission may—

(1) limit voyages to and from United States ports or the amount or type of cargo carried;

(2) suspend, in whole or in part, tariffs and service contracts for carriage to or from United States ports, including a common carrier's right to use tariffs of conferences and service contracts of agreements in United States trades of which it is a member for any period the Commission specifies;

(3) suspend, in whole or in part, an ocean common carrier's right to operate under any agreement filed with the Commission, including any agreement authorizing preferential treatment at terminals, preferential terminal leases, space chartering, or pooling of cargo or revenue with other ocean common carriers;

(4) impose a fee not to exceed $1,000,000 per voyage; or

(5) take any other action the Commission finds necessary and appropriate to adjust or meet any condition unfavorable to shipping in the foreign trade of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1550.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
42106	46 App.:876(i).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §19(i); as added Pub. L. 101–595, title I, §103(2), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2979; Pub. L. 105–258, title III, §301, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1915.

§42107. Refusal of clearance and entry

At the request of the Federal Maritime Commission—

(1) the Secretary of Homeland Security shall—

(A) refuse the clearance required by section 60105 of this title to a vessel of a country that is named in a regulation prescribed by the Commission under section 42101 of this title; and

(B) collect any fees imposed by the Commission under section 42106(4) of this title; and

(2) the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall—

(A) deny entry, for purposes of oceanborne trade, of a vessel of a country that is named in a regulation prescribed by the Commission under section 42101 of this title, to a port or place in the United States or the navigable waters of the United States; or

(B) detain the vessel at the port or place in the United States from which it is about to depart for another port or place in the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1551.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
42107	46 App.:876(j).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §19(j); as added Pub. L. 101–595, title I, §103(2), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2979; Pub. L. 105–258, title III, §301, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1915.

In paragraph (1), the words "Secretary of Homeland Security" are substituted for "collector of customs at the port or place of destination in the United States" because the functions of the Customs Service and of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto were transferred to the Secretary of Homeland Security by section 403(1) of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–296, 116 Stat. 2178). The functions of the collector of customs previously were vested in the Secretary of the Treasury by Reorganization Plan No. 26 of 1950, and the office of collector of customs previously was abolished by Reorganization Plan No. 1 of 1965.

§42108. Penalty for operating under suspended tariff or service contract

A common carrier that accepts or handles cargo for carriage under a tariff or service contract that has been suspended under section 42104(d)(1) or 42106(2) of this title, or after its right to use another tariff or service contract has been suspended under those provisions, is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $50,000 for each day that it is found to be operating under a suspended tariff or service contract.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1551.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised

Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
42108	46 App.:876(k).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §19(k); as added Pub. L. 101–595, title I, §103(2), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2979; Pub. L. 105–258, title III, §301, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1915.

§42109. Consultation with other agencies

The Federal Maritime Commission may consult with, seek the cooperation of, or make recommendations to other appropriate agencies of the United States Government prior to taking any action under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1551.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
42109	46 App.:876(*l*).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §19(*l*); as added Pub. L. 101–595, title I, §103(2), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2979; Pub. L. 105–258, title III, §301, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1915.

CHAPTER 423—FOREIGN SHIPPING PRACTICES

Sec.

42301. Definitions.
42302. Investigations.
42303. Information requests.
42304. Action against foreign carriers.
42305. Refusal of clearance and entry.
42306. Submission of determinations to President.
42307. Review of regulations and orders.

§42301. Definitions

(a) DEFINED IN PART A.—In this chapter, the terms "common carrier", "marine terminal operator", "ocean common carrier", "ocean transportation intermediary", "shipper", and "shippers' association" have the meaning given those terms in section 40102 of this title.

(b) OTHER DEFINITIONS.—In this chapter:

(1) FOREIGN CARRIER.—The term "foreign carrier" means an ocean common carrier a majority of whose vessels are documented under the laws of a foreign country.

(2) MARITIME SERVICES.—The term "maritime services" means port-to-port transportation of cargo by vessels operated by an ocean common carrier.

(3) MARITIME-RELATED SERVICES.—The term "maritime-related services" means intermodal operations, terminal operations, cargo solicitation, agency services, ocean transportation intermediary services and operations, and all other activities and services integral to total transportation systems of ocean common carriers and their foreign domiciled affiliates for themselves and others.

(4) UNITED STATES CARRIER.—The term "United States carrier" means an ocean common carrier operating vessels documented under the laws of the United States.

(5) UNITED STATES OCEANBORNE TRADE.—The term "United States oceanborne trade" means the carriage of cargo between the United States and a foreign country, whether directly or indirectly, by an ocean common carrier.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1551.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
42301	46 App.:1710a(a).	Pub. L. 100–418, title X, §10002(a), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1570; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §111(1)–(3), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1911.

§42302. Investigations

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Federal Maritime Commission shall investigate whether any laws, rules, regulations, policies, or practices of a foreign government, or any practices of a foreign carrier or other person providing maritime or maritime-related services in a foreign country, result in the existence of conditions that—

(1) adversely affect the operations of United States carriers in United States oceanborne trade; and

(2) do not exist for foreign carriers of that country in the United States under the laws of the United States or as a result of acts of United States carriers or other persons providing maritime or maritime-related services in the United States.

(b) INITIATION OF INVESTIGATION.—An investigation under subsection (a) may be initiated by the Commission on its own motion or on the petition of any person, including another component of the United States Government.

(c) TIME FOR DECISION.—The Commission shall complete an investigation under this section and render a decision within 120 days after it is initiated. However, the Commission may extend this 120-day period for an additional 90 days if the Commission is unable to obtain sufficient information to determine whether a condition specified in subsection (a) exists. A notice providing an extension shall state clearly the reasons for the extension.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1552.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
42302(a)	46 App.:1710a(b).	Pub. L. 100–418, title X, §10002(b), (c), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1570; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §111(4), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1911.
42302(b)	46 App.:1710a(c)(1).	
42302(c)	46 App.:1710a(c)(2).	

In subsection (b), the words "including another component of the United States Government" are substituted for "including any common carrier, shipper, shippers' association, ocean transportation intermediary, or marine terminal operator, or any branch, department, agency, or other component of the Government of the United States" for consistency with section 42101(b) of the revised title and to eliminate unnecessary words.

§42303. Information requests

(a) IN GENERAL.—To further the purposes of section 42302(a) of this title, the Federal Maritime Commission may order any person (including a common carrier, shipper, shippers' association, ocean transportation intermediary, or marine terminal operator, or an officer, receiver, trustee, lessee, agent or employee thereof) to file with the Commission any periodic or special report, answers to questions, documentary material, or other information the Commission considers necessary or appropriate. The Commission may require the response to any such order to be made under oath. The response shall be provided in the form and within the time specified by the Commission.

(b) SUBPOENAS.—In an investigation under section 42302 of this title, the Commission may subpoena witnesses and evidence.

(c) NONDISCLOSURE.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission may determine that any information submitted to it in response to a request under this section, or otherwise, shall not be disclosed to the public.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1552.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
42303	46 App.:1710a(d)	Pub. L. 100–418, title X, §10002(d), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1571; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §111(4), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1911.

In subsection (b), the words "subpoena witnesses and evidence" are substituted for "issue subpoenas to compel the attendance and testimony of witnesses and the production of records or other evidence" for consistency in the revised title and to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (c), the words "in its discretion" are omitted as unnecessary.

§42304. Action against foreign carriers

(a) IN GENERAL.—Subject to section 42306 of this title, whenever the Federal Maritime Commission, after notice and opportunity for comment or hearing, determines that the conditions specified in section 42302(a) of this title exist, the Commission shall take such action to offset those conditions as it considers necessary and appropriate against any foreign carrier that is a contributing cause, or whose government is a contributing cause, to those conditions. The action may include—

(1) limitations on voyages to and from United States ports or on the amount or type of cargo carried;

(2) suspension, in whole or in part, of any or all tariffs and service contracts, including an ocean common carrier's right to use any or all tariffs and service contracts of conferences in United States trades of which it is a member for any period the Commission specifies;

(3) suspension, in whole or in part, of an ocean common carrier's right to operate under any agreement filed with the Commission, including any agreement authorizing preferential treatment at terminals, preferential terminal leases, space chartering, or pooling of cargo or revenue with other ocean common carriers; and

(4) a fee not to exceed $1,000,000 per voyage.

(b) CONSULTATION.—The Commission may consult with, seek the cooperation of, or make recommendations to other appropriate agencies of the United States Government prior to taking any action under subsection (a).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1553.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
42304(a)	46 App.:1710a(e)(1).	Pub. L. 100–418, title X, §10002(e)(1), (2), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1571; Pub. L. 105–258, title I, §111(5), (6), Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1911.
42304(b)	46 App.:1710a(e)(2).	

In subsection (a), the words "Subject to section 42306 of this title" are added to alert the reader to the application of that section.

§42305. Refusal of clearance and entry

Subject to section 42306 of this title, whenever the Federal Maritime Commission determines that the conditions specified in section 42302(a) of this title exist, then at the request of the Commission—

(1) the Secretary of Homeland Security shall refuse the clearance required by section 60105 of this title to a vessel of a foreign carrier that is identified by the Commission under section 42304 of this title; and

(2) the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall—

(A) deny entry, for purposes of oceanborne trade, of a vessel of a foreign carrier that is identified by the Commission under section 42304 of this title, to a port or place in the United States or the navigable waters of the United States; or

(B) detain the vessel at the port or place in the United States from which it is about to depart for another port or place in the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1553.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
42305	46 App.:1710a(f).	Pub. L. 100–418, title X, §10002(f), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1572.

Before paragraph (1), the words "Subject to section 42306 of this title" are added to alert the reader to the application of that section. The word "determines" is substituted for "finds" for consistency with section 42306 of the revised title.

In paragraph (1), the words "Secretary of Homeland Security" are substituted for "collector of customs at any port or place of destination in the United States" because the functions of the Customs Service and of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto were transferred to the Secretary of Homeland Security by section 403(1) of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–296, 116 Stat. 2178). The functions of the collector of customs previously were vested in the Secretary of the Treasury by Reorganization Plan No. 26 of 1950, and the office of collector of customs previously was abolished by Reorganization Plan No. 1 of 1965.

§42306. Submission of determinations to President

Before a determination under section 42304 of this title becomes effective or a request is made under section 42305 of this title, the determination shall be submitted immediately to the President. The President, within 10 days after receiving it, may disapprove it in writing, setting forth the reasons for the disapproval, if the President finds that disapproval is required for reasons of national defense or foreign policy.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1553.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
42306	46 App.:1710a(e)(3).	Pub. L. 100–418, title X, §10002(e)(3), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1572.

§42307. Review of regulations and orders

A regulation or final order of the Federal Maritime Commission under this chapter is reviewable exclusively in the same forum and in the same manner as provided in section 2342(3)(B) of title 28.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1554.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
42307	46 App.:1710a(i).	Pub. L. 100–418, title X, §10002(i), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1572.

CHAPTER 425—NATIONAL SHIPPER ADVISORY COMMITTEE

Sec.[1]

42501. Definitions.
42502. National Shipper Advisory Committee.
42503. Administration.

[1] *Editorially supplied.*

§42501. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) COMMISSION.—The term "Commission" means the Federal Maritime Commission.

(2) COMMITTEE.—The term "Committee" means the National Shipper Advisory Committee established under section 42502.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXVI [LXXXVI], §8604(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4762.)

§42502. National Shipper Advisory Committee

(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—There is established a National Shipper Advisory Committee.

(b) FUNCTION.—The Committee shall advise the Federal Maritime Commission on policies relating to the competitiveness, reliability, integrity, and fairness of the international ocean freight delivery system.

(c) MEMBERSHIP.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Committee shall consist of 24 members appointed by the Commission in accordance with this section.

(2) EXPERTISE.—Each member of the Committee shall have particular expertise, knowledge, and experience in matters relating to the function of the Committee.

(3) REPRESENTATION.—Members of the Committee shall be appointed as follows:

(A) Twelve members shall represent entities who import cargo to the United States using ocean common carriers.

(B) Twelve members shall represent entities who export cargo from the United States using ocean common carriers.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXVI [LXXXVI], §8604(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4762; amended Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3535(h), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2315.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 118–159 substituted "REPRESENTATION.—Members of the Committee shall be appointed as follows:" for "REPRESENTATION.—REPRESENTATION.—Members of the Committee shall be appointed as follows: —".

§42503. Administration

(a) MEETINGS.—The Committee shall, not less than once each year, meet at the call of the Commission or a majority of the members of the Committee.

(b) EMPLOYEE STATUS.—A member of the Committee shall not be considered an employee of the Federal Government by reason of service on such Committee, except for the purposes of the following:

(1) Chapter 81 of title 5.

(2) Chapter 171 of title 28 and any other Federal law relating to tort liability.

(c) VOLUNTEER SERVICES AND COMPENSATION.—

(1) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, a member of the Committee may serve on such committee on a voluntary basis without pay.

(2) No member of the Committee shall receive compensation for service on the Committee.

(d) STATUS OF MEMBERS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in paragraph (2), with respect to a member of the Committee whom the Commission appoints to represent an entity or group—

(A) the member is authorized to represent the interests of the applicable entity or group; and

(B) requirements under Federal law that would interfere with such representation and that apply to a special Government employee (as defined in section 202(a) of title 18), including requirements relating to employee conduct, political activities, ethics, conflicts of interest, and corruption, do not apply to the member.

(2) EXCEPTION.—Notwithstanding subsection (b), a member of the Committee shall be treated as a special Government employee for purposes of the committee service of the member if the member, without regard to service on the Committee, is a special Government employee.

(e) SERVICE ON COMMITTEE.—

(1) SOLICITATION OF NOMINATIONS.—Before appointing an individual as a member of the Committee, the Commission shall publish a timely notice in the Federal Register soliciting nominations for membership on such Committee.

(2) APPOINTMENTS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—After considering nominations received pursuant to a notice published under paragraph (1), the Commission may appoint a member to the Committee.

(B) PROHIBITION.—The Commission shall not seek, consider, or otherwise use information concerning the political affiliation of a nominee in making an appointment to the Committee.

(3) SERVICE AT PLEASURE OF COMMISSION.—Each member of the Committee shall serve at the pleasure of the Commission.

(4) SECURITY BACKGROUND EXAMINATIONS.—The Commission may require an individual to have passed an appropriate security background examination before appointment to the Committee.

(5) PROHIBITION.—A Federal employee may not be appointed as a member of the Committee.

(6) TERMS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The term of each member of the Committee shall expire on December 31 of the third full year after the effective date of the appointment.

(B) CONTINUED SERVICE AFTER TERM.—When the term of a member of the Committee ends, the member, for a period not to exceed 1 year, may continue to serve as a member until a successor is appointed.

(7) VACANCIES.—A vacancy on the Committee shall be filled in the same manner as the original appointment.

(8) SPECIAL RULE FOR REAPPOINTMENTS.—Notwithstanding paragraphs (1) and (2), the Commission may reappoint a member of a committee for any term, other than the first term of the member, without soliciting, receiving, or considering nominations for such appointment.

(f) STAFF SERVICES.—The Commission shall furnish to the Committee any staff and services considered by the Commission to be necessary for the conduct of the Committee's functions.

(g) CHAIR; VICE CHAIR.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Committee shall elect a Chair and Vice Chair from among the committee's members.

(2) VICE CHAIRMAN ACTING AS CHAIRMAN.—The Vice Chair shall act as Chair in the absence or incapacity of, or in the event of a vacancy in the office of, the Chair.

(h) SUBCOMMITTEES AND WORKING GROUPS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Chair of the Committee may establish and disestablish subcommittees and working groups for any purpose consistent with the function of the Committee.

(2) PARTICIPANTS.—Subject to conditions imposed by the Chair, members of the Committee may be assigned to subcommittees and working groups established under paragraph (1).

(i) CONSULTATION, ADVICE, REPORTS, AND RECOMMENDATIONS.—

(1) CONSULTATION.—Before taking any significant action, the Commission shall consult with, and consider the information, advice, and recommendations of, the Committee if the function of the Committee is to advise the Commission on matters related to the significant action.

(2) ADVICE, REPORTS, AND RECOMMENDATIONS.—The Committee shall submit, in writing, to the Commission its advice, reports, and recommendations, in a form and at a frequency determined appropriate by the Committee.

(3) EXPLANATION OF ACTIONS TAKEN.—Not later than 60 days after the date on which the Commission receives recommendations from the Committee under paragraph (2), the Commission shall—

(A) publish the recommendations on a public website; and

(B) respond, in writing, to the Committee regarding the recommendations, including by providing an explanation of actions taken regarding the recommendations.

(4) SUBMISSION TO CONGRESS.—The Commission shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate the advice, reports, and recommendations received from the Committee under paragraph (2).

(j) OBSERVERS.—The Commission may designate a representative to—

(1) attend any meeting of the Committee; and

(2) participate as an observer at such meeting.

(k) TERMINATION.—The Committee shall terminate on September 30, 2029.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXVI [LXXXVI], §8604(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4762.)

PART C—MISCELLANEOUS

CHAPTER 441—EVIDENCE OF FINANCIAL RESPONSIBILITY FOR PASSENGER TRANSPORTATION

Sec.
44101. Application.
44102. Financial responsibility to indemnify passengers for nonperformance of transportation.
44103. Financial responsibility to pay liability for death or injury.
44104. Civil penalty.
44105. Refusal of clearance.
44106. Conduct of proceedings.

§44101. Application

This chapter applies to a vessel that—

(1) has berth or stateroom accommodations for at least 50 passengers; and

(2) boards passengers at a port in the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1554.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
44101	46 App.:817d(a) (6th–28th words). 46 App.:817e(a) (15th–36th words).	Pub. L. 89–777, §§2(a) (6th–28th words), 3(a) (15th–36th words), Nov. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 1356, 1357.

§44102. Financial responsibility to indemnify passengers for nonperformance of transportation

(a) FILING REQUIREMENT.—A person in the United States may not arrange, offer, advertise, or provide transportation on a vessel to which this chapter applies unless the person has filed with the Federal Maritime Commission evidence of financial responsibility to indemnify passengers for nonperformance of the transportation.

(b) SATISFACTORY EVIDENCE.—To satisfy subsection (a), a person must file—

(1) information the Commission considers necessary; or

(2) a copy of a bond or other security, in such form as the Commission by regulation may require.

(c) AUTHORIZED ISSUER OF BOND.—If a bond is filed, it must be issued by a bonding company authorized to do business in the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1554.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
44102	46 App.:817e(a) (1st–14th, 37th–last words), (b).	Pub. L. 89–777, §3(a) (1st–14th, 37th–last words), (b), Nov. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 1357; Pub. L. 103–206, title III, §320, Dec. 20, 1993, 107 Stat. 2427.

In subsection (c), the words "or any State thereof, or the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands or any territory or possession of the United States" are omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

§44103. Financial responsibility to pay liability for death or injury

(a) GENERAL REQUIREMENT.—The owner or charterer of a vessel to which this chapter applies shall establish, under regulations prescribed by the Federal Maritime Commission, financial responsibility to meet liability for death or injury to passengers or other individuals on a voyage to or from a port in the United States.

(b) AMOUNTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The amount of financial responsibility required under subsection (a) shall be based on the number of passenger accommodations as follows:

(A) $20,000 for each of the first 500 passenger accommodations.

(B) $15,000 for each additional passenger accommodation between 501 and 1,000.

(C) $10,000 for each additional passenger accommodation between 1,001 and 1,500.

(D) $5,000 for each additional passenger accommodation over 1,500.

(2) MULTIPLE VESSELS.—If the owner or charterer is operating more than one vessel subject to this chapter, the amount of financial responsibility shall be based on the number of passenger accommodations on the vessel with the largest number of passenger accommodations.

(c) AVAILABILITY TO PAY JUDGMENT.—The amount determined under subsection (b) shall be available to pay a judgment for damages (whether less than or more than $20,000) for death or injury to a passenger or other individual on a voyage to or from a port in the United States.

(d) MEANS OF ESTABLISHING.—Financial responsibility under this section may be established by one or more of the following if acceptable to the Commission:

(1) Insurance.

(2) Surety bond issued by a bonding company authorized to do business in the United States.

(3) Qualification as a self-insurer.

(4) Other evidence of financial responsibility.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1554.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
44103	46 App.:817d(a) (1st–5th, 29th–last words), (b).	Pub. L. 89–777, §2(a) (1st–5th, 29th–last words), (b), Nov. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 1356.

In subsection (d)(2), the words "issued by a bonding company authorized to do business in the United

States" are substituted for 46 App. U.S.C. 817d(b) to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "or any State thereof or the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, or any territory or possession of the United States" are omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

§44104. Civil penalty

A person that violates section 44102 or 44103 of this title is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000, plus $200 for each passage sold, to be assessed by the Federal Maritime Commission. The Commission may remit or mitigate the penalty on terms the Commission considers proper.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1555.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
44104	46 App.:817d(c). 46 App.:817e(c).	Pub. L. 89–777, §§2(c), 3(c), Nov. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 1357.

§44105. Refusal of clearance

The Secretary of Homeland Security shall refuse the clearance required by section 60105 of this title, at the port or place of departure from the United States, of a vessel that is subject to this chapter and does not have evidence issued by the Federal Maritime Commission of compliance with sections 44102 and 44103 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1555.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
44105	46 App.:817d(e). 46 App.:817e(e).	Pub. L. 89–777, §§2(e), 3(e), Nov. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 1357, 1358; Pub. L. 103–182, title VI, §689(c), Dec. 8, 1993, 107 Stat. 2222.

The words "Secretary of Homeland Security" are substituted for "Customs Service" because the functions of the Customs Service and of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto were transferred to the Secretary of Homeland Security by section 403(1) of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–296, 116 Stat. 2178).

§44106. Conduct of proceedings

Part A of this subtitle applies to proceedings conducted by the Federal Maritime Commission under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §7, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1555.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised

Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
44106	46 App.:817d(d). 46 App.:817e(d).	Pub. L. 89–777, §§2(d), 3(d), Nov. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 1357, 1358; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §746(c), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3943.

The authority to prescribe regulations is omitted as unnecessary because it is already provided by section 305 of the revised title.

PART D—FEDERAL MARITIME COMMISSION

CHAPTER 461—FEDERAL MARITIME COMMISSION

Sec.

46101. General organization.
46102. Quorum.
46103. Meetings.
46104. Delegation of authority.
46105. Regulations.
46106. Annual report and public disclosure.
46107. Expenditures.
46108. Authorization of appropriations.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3535(j)(2), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2315, substituted "Annual report and public disclosure" for "Annual report" in item 46106.

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXVI [LXXXVI], §8605(b)(6), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4765, which directed the general amendment of the analysis for this chapter "as so redesignated" by section 8605(a)(2) of Pub. L. 116–283 (see note below) by setting out only new items 46101 to 46108 with no chapter heading, was executed by substituting items 46101 to 46108 for former items 301 to 308 and not including the redesignated chapter heading, to reflect the probable intent of Congress and the separate enactment of the heading for this chapter by section 8605(a)(1) of Pub. L. 116–283.

Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXVI [LXXXVI], §8605(a)(2), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4765, renumbered chapter 3 of this title as this chapter.

2018—Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §711(b), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4298, substituted "Meetings" for "Record of meetings and votes" in item 303.

2016—Pub. L. 114–120, title IV, §401(b), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 67, added item 308.

§46101. General organization

(a) ORGANIZATION.—The Federal Maritime Commission is an independent establishment of the United States Government.

(b) COMMISSIONERS.—

(1) COMPOSITION.—The Commission is composed of 5 Commissioners, appointed by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. Not more than 3 Commissioners may be appointed from the same political party.

(2) TERMS.—The term of each Commissioner is 5 years. When the term of a Commissioner ends, the Commissioner may continue to serve until a successor is appointed and qualified, but for a period not to exceed 2 years. Except as provided in paragraph (3), no individual may serve more than 3 terms.

(3) VACANCIES.—A vacancy shall be filled in the same manner as the original appointment.

An individual appointed to fill a vacancy is appointed only for the unexpired term to which such individual is appointed. An individual appointed to fill a vacancy may serve 3 terms in addition to the remainder of the term for which such individual was appointed.

(4) CONFLICTS OF INTEREST.—

(A) LIMITATION ON RELATIONSHIPS WITH REGULATED ENTITIES.—A Commissioner may not have a pecuniary interest in, hold an official relation to, or own stocks or bonds of any entity the Commission regulates under chapter 401 of this title.

(B) LIMITATION ON OTHER ACTIVITIES.—A Commissioner may not engage in another business, vocation, or employment.

(5) REMOVAL.—The President may remove a Commissioner for inefficiency, neglect of duty, or malfeasance in office.

(c) CHAIRMAN.—

(1) DESIGNATION.—The President shall designate one of the Commissioners as Chairman.

(2) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—The Chairman is the chief executive and administrative officer of the Commission. In carrying out the duties and powers of the Commission (other than under paragraph (3)), the Chairman is subject to the policies, regulatory decisions, findings, and determinations of the Commission.

(3) PARTICULAR DUTIES.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Chairman shall—

(i) appoint and supervise officers and employees of the Commission;

(ii) appoint the heads of major organizational units (with such appointments subject to the approval of the Commission);

(iii) distribute the business of the Commission among personnel and organizational units;

(iv) supervise the expenditure of money for administrative purposes;

(v) assign Commission personnel, including Commissioners, to perform duties and powers delegated by the Commission under section 46104 of this title; and

(vi) prepare and submit to the President and the Congress requests for appropriations for the Commission (with such requests subject to the approval of the Commission).

(B) NONAPPLICATION.—Subparagraph (A) (other than clause (v)) does not apply to personnel employed regularly and full-time in the offices of Commissioners other than the Chairman.

(4) DELEGATION.—The Chairman may designate officers and employees under the Chairman's jurisdiction to perform duties and powers of the Chairman, subject to the Chairman's supervision and direction.

(d) SEAL.—The Commission shall have a seal which shall be judicially recognized.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1488, §301; Pub. L. 113–281, title IV, §403(a), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3056; Pub. L. 114–120, title IV, §402, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 67; renumbered §46101 and amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXVI [LXXXVI], §8605(a)(3), (b)(1), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4765; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVIII, §11801(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4163.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
301(a)	46 App.:1111 note.	Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1961, eff. Aug. 12, 1961, §101, 75 Stat. 840.
301(b)	46 App.:1111 note.	Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1961, eff. Aug.

		12, 1961, §102(a), (c), 75 Stat. 840; Pub. L. 88–426, title III, §305(19)(A), Aug. 14, 1964, 78 Stat. 425.
	46 App.:1111 note.	Pub. L. 89–56, June 30, 1965, 79 Stat. 195.
301(c)	46 App.:1111 note.	Reorg. Plan No. 6 of 1949, eff. Aug. 20, 1949, 63 Stat. 1069.
	46 App.:1111 note.	Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1961, eff. Aug. 12, 1961, §§102(b), 104, 105(d), 75 Stat. 840, 841.
301(d)	46 App.:1111(c) (related to seal).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §201(c) (related to seal), 49 Stat. 1986.

In subsection (a), the words "is an independent establishment" are substituted for "shall not be a part of any executive department or under the authority of the head of any executive department" for consistency with other titles of the United States Code and to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (b)(2), the words "The term of each Commissioner is 5 years, with each term beginning one year apart" are substituted for the language about terms in section 102(c) of Reorganization Plan No. 7 of 1961 (46 App. U.S.C. 1111 note) and the Act of June 30, 1965 (Pub. L. 89–56, 79 Stat. 195), for clarity and to eliminate executed and obsolete language.

In subsection (c), section 104 of Reorganization Plan No. 7 of 1961 is omitted as executed.

Subsection (c)(1) is based on section 102(b) of Reorganization Plan No. 7 of 1961. The words "from time to time" are omitted as unnecessary.

Subsection (c)(2) is based on section 1 of Reorganization Plan No. 6 of 1949.

Subsection (c)(3) is based on section 2 of Reorganization Plan No. 6 of 1949 and section 105(d) of Reorganization Plan No. 7 of 1961.

Subsection (c)(4) is based on section 3 of Reorganization Plan No. 6 of 1949.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 117–263, §11801(a)(1), substituted "2 years" for "one year" and "3 terms" for "2 terms".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 117–263, §11801(a)(2), substituted "to which such individual is appointed" for "of the individual being succeeded", "3 terms" for "2 terms", and "such" for "the predecessor of that".

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, §8605(a)(3), renumbered section 301 of this title as this section.

Subsec. (c)(3)(A)(v). Pub. L. 116–283, §8605(b)(1), substituted "46104" for "304".

2016—Subsec. (c)(3)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 114–120, §402(1), substituted "units (with such appointments subject to the approval of the Commission);" for "units, but only after consultation with the other Commissioners;".

Subsec. (c)(3)(A)(vi). Pub. L. 114–120, §402(2)–(4), added cl. (vi).

2014—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 113–281, §403(a)(1), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The term of each Commissioner is 5 years, with each term beginning one year apart. An individual appointed to fill a vacancy is appointed only for the unexpired term of the individual being succeeded. A vacancy shall be filled in the same manner as the original appointment. When the term of a Commissioner ends, the Commissioner may continue to serve until a successor is appointed and qualified."

Subsec. (b)(3) to (5). Pub. L. 113–281, §403(a)(2), added pars. (3) and (4) and redesignated former par. (3) as (5).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2022 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVIII, §11801(b), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4163, provided that: "The amendments made by this section [amending this section] shall not apply to Commissioners to whom section 403(b) of the Howard Coble Coast Guard and Maritime Transportation Act of 2014 (Public Law 113–281)

[set out below] applies."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2014 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 113–281, title IV, §403(b), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3056, provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a)(1) [amending this section] does not apply with respect to a Commissioner of the Federal Maritime Commission appointed and confirmed by the Senate before the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 18, 2014]."

§46102. Quorum

A vacancy or vacancies in the membership of the Federal Maritime Commission do not impair the power of the Commission to execute its functions. The affirmative vote of a majority of the Commissioners serving on the Commission is required to dispose of any matter before the Commission.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1489, §302; renumbered §46102, Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXVI [LXXXVI], §8605(a)(3), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4765.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
302	46 App.:1111 note.	Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1961, eff. Aug. 12, 1961, §102(d), 75 Stat. 840; Pub. L. 105–258, title II, §202, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1915.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 renumbered section 302 of this title as this section.

§46103. Meetings

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Federal Maritime Commission shall be deemed to be an agency for purposes of section 552b of title 5.

(b) RECORD.—The Commission, through its secretary, shall keep a record of its meetings and the votes taken on any action, order, contract, or financial transaction of the Commission.

(c) NONPUBLIC COLLABORATIVE DISCUSSIONS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding section 552b of title 5, a majority of the Commissioners may hold a meeting that is not open to public observation to discuss official agency business if—

(A) no formal or informal vote or other official agency action is taken at the meeting;

(B) each individual present at the meeting is a Commissioner or an employee of the Commission;

(C) at least 1 Commissioner from each political party is present at the meeting, if applicable; and

(D) the General Counsel of the Commission is present at the meeting.

(2) DISCLOSURE OF NONPUBLIC COLLABORATIVE DISCUSSIONS.—Except as provided under paragraph (3), not later than 2 business days after the conclusion of a meeting under paragraph (1), the Commission shall make available to the public, in a place easily accessible to the public—

(A) a list of the individuals present at the meeting; and

(B) a summary of the matters discussed at the meeting, except for any matters the Commission properly determines may be withheld from the public under section 552b(c) of title 5.

(3) EXCEPTION.—If the Commission properly determines matters may be withheld from the public under section 552b(c) of title 5, the Commission shall provide a summary with as much general information as possible on those matters withheld from the public.

(4) ONGOING PROCEEDINGS.—If a meeting under paragraph (1) directly relates to an ongoing proceeding before the Commission, the Commission shall make the disclosure under paragraph (2) on the date of the final Commission decision.

(5) PRESERVATION OF OPEN MEETINGS REQUIREMENTS FOR AGENCY ACTION .—Nothing in this subsection may be construed to limit the applicability of section 552b of title 5 with respect to a meeting of the Commissioners other than that described in this subsection.

(6) STATUTORY CONSTRUCTION.—Nothing in this subsection may be construed—

(A) to limit the applicability of section 552b of title 5 with respect to any information which is proposed to be withheld from the public under paragraph (2)(B) of this subsection; or

(B) to authorize the Commission to withhold from any individual any record that is accessible to that individual under section 552a of title 5.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1489, §303; Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §711(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4297; renumbered §46103 and amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXVI [LXXXVI], §8605(a)(3), (c), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4765.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
303	46 App.:1111(c) (related to records).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §201(c) (related to records), 49 Stat. 1986.

The words "true" and "yea-and-nay" are omitted as unnecessary.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, §8605(a)(3), renumbered section 303 of this title as this section.

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 116–283, §8605(c), substituted "552b(c)" for "555b(c)".

2018—Pub. L. 115–282 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Federal Maritime Commission, through its secretary, shall keep a record of its meetings and the votes taken on any action, order, contract, or financial transaction of the Commission."

§46104. Delegation of authority

(a) DELEGATION.—The Federal Maritime Commission, by published order or regulation, may delegate to a division of the Commission, an individual Commissioner, an employee board, or an officer or employee of the Commission, any of its duties or powers, including those relating to hearing, determining, ordering, certifying, reporting, or otherwise acting on any matter. This subsection does not affect section 556(b) of title 5.

(b) REVIEW.—The Commission may review any action taken under a delegation of authority under subsection (a). The review may be taken on the Commission's own initiative or on the petition of a party to or an intervenor in the action, within the time and in the manner prescribed by the Commission. The vote of a majority of the Commission, less one member, is sufficient to bring an action before the Commission for review.

(c) DEEMED ACTION OF COMMISSION.—If the Commission declines review, or if review is not sought, within the time prescribed under subsection (b), the action taken under the delegation of

authority is deemed to be the action of the Commission.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1489, §304; renumbered §46104, Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXVI [LXXXVI], §8605(a)(3), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4765.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
304	46 App.:1111 note.	Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1961, eff. Aug. 12, 1961, §105(a)–(c), 75 Stat. 841.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 renumbered section 304 of this title as this section.

§46105. Regulations

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Federal Maritime Commission may prescribe regulations to carry out its duties and powers.

(b) TRANSPARENCY.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—In conjunction with the transmittal by the President to the Congress of the Budget of the United States for fiscal year 2021 and biennially thereafter, the Federal Maritime Commission shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives reports that describe the Commission's progress toward addressing the issues raised in each unfinished regulatory proceeding, regardless of whether the proceeding is subject to a statutory or regulatory deadline.

(2) FORMAT OF REPORTS.—Each report under paragraph (1) shall, among other things, clearly identify for each unfinished regulatory proceeding—

(A) the popular title;

(B) the current stage of the proceeding;

(C) an abstract of the proceeding;

(D) what prompted the action in question;

(E) any applicable statutory, regulatory, or judicial deadline;

(F) the associated docket number;

(G) the date the rulemaking was initiated;

(H) a date for the next action; and

(I) if a date for the next action identified in the previous report is not met, the reason for the delay.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1489, §305; renumbered §46105 and amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXVI [LXXXVI], §§8603, 8605(a)(3), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4761, 4765.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
305	46 App.:1111(c) (related to rules and regulations). 46 App.:1716.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §201(c) (related to rules and regulations), 49 Stat. 1986. Pub. L. 98–237, §17, Mar. 20, 1984, 98

		Stat. 84.

The words "to carry out its duties and powers" are substituted for "in regard to its procedure and the conduct of its business" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1111(c) and "to carry out this chapter" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1716(a) for consistency in the revised title. The text of 46 App. U.S.C. 1716(b) is omitted as executed and obsolete.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, §8605(a)(3), renumbered section 305 of this title as this section.

Pub. L. 116–283, §8603, designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted heading, and added subsec. (b).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSPARENCY IN UNFINISHED REGULATORY PROCEEDINGS

Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §712, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4298, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Beginning not later than 60 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 4, 2018], the Federal Maritime Commission shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives biannual reports that describe the Commission's progress toward addressing the issues raised in each unfinished regulatory proceeding, regardless of whether the proceeding is subject to a statutory or regulatory deadline.

"(b) FORMAT OF REPORTS.—Each report under subsection (a) shall, among other things, clearly identify for each unfinished regulatory proceeding—

"(1) the popular title;

"(2) the current stage of the proceeding;

"(3) an abstract of the proceeding;

"(4) what prompted the action in question;

"(5) any applicable statutory, regulatory, or judicial deadline;

"(6) the associated docket number;

"(7) the date the rulemaking was initiated;

"(8) a date for the next action; and

"(9) if a date for next action identified in the previous report is not met, the reason for the delay."

§46106. Annual report and public disclosure

(a) IN GENERAL.—Not later than April 1 of each year, the Federal Maritime Commission shall submit a report to Congress. The report shall include the results of its investigations, a summary of its transactions, the purposes for which all of its expenditures were made, and any recommendations for legislation.

(b) REPORT ON FOREIGN LAWS AND PRACTICES.—The Commission shall include in its annual report to Congress—

(1) a list of the 20 foreign countries that generated the largest volume of oceanborne liner cargo for the most recent calendar year in bilateral trade with the United States;

(2) an analysis of conditions described in section 42302(a) of this title being investigated or found to exist in foreign countries;

(3) any actions being taken by the Commission to offset those conditions;

(4) any recommendations for additional legislation to offset those conditions;

(5) a list of petitions filed under section 42302(b) of this title that the Commission rejected and the reasons for each rejection;

(6) an analysis of the impacts on competition for the purchase of certain covered services by alliances of ocean common carriers acting pursuant to an agreement under this part [1] between or among ocean common carriers, including a summary of actions, including corrective actions,

taken by the Commission to promote such competition; and

(7) an identification of any otherwise concerning practices by ocean common carriers, particularly such carriers that are controlled carriers, that are—

(A) State-owned or State-controlled enterprises; or

(B) owned or controlled by, a subsidiary of, or otherwise related legally or financially (other than a minority relationship or investment) to a corporation based in a country—

(i) identified as a nonmarket economy country (as defined in section 771(18) of the Tariff Act of 1930 (19 U.S.C. 1677(18))) as of the date of enactment of this paragraph;

(ii) identified by the United States Trade Representative in the most recent report required by section 182 of the Trade Act of 1974 (19 U.S.C. 2242) as a priority foreign country under subsection (a)(2) of that section; or

(iii) subject to monitoring by the United States Trade Representative under section 306 of the Trade Act of 1974 (19 U.S.C. 2416).

(c) DEFINITION OF CERTAIN COVERED SERVICES.—In this section, the term "certain covered services" has the meaning given the term in section 40102.

(d) PUBLIC DISCLOSURES.—The Federal Maritime Commission shall publish, and annually update, on the website of the Commission—

(1) all findings by the Commission of false detention and demurrage invoice information by common carriers under section 41104(a)(15) of this title; and

(2) all penalties imposed or assessed against common carriers, as applicable, under sections 41107, 41108, and 41109, listed by each common carrier.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1489, §306; Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §703, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4294; renumbered §46106, Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXVI [LXXXVI], §8605(a)(3), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4765; Pub. L. 117–146, §§6, 14, June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1274, 1279; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3535(j)(1), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2315.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
306(a)	46 App.:1118 (related to Commission).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §208 (related to Commission), 49 Stat. 1988; Pub. L. 94–273, §36, Apr. 21, 1976, 90 Stat. 380; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(65), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 159.
306(b)	46 App.:1710a(g).	Pub. L. 100–418, title X, §10002(g), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1572.

In subsection (a), the words "a statement of all receipts under this chapter" are omitted as inapplicable to the Commission.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The reference to "this part", referred to in subsec. (b)(6), was added when this section was numbered as section 306 of this title and was in subtitle I, which does not contain parts. After section 306 was renumbered as this section, it was transferred into part D of subtitle IV, but it is unclear whether the reference to "this part" was intended to take on the reference to such part D upon the transfer.

The date of enactment of this paragraph, referred to in subsec. (b)(7)(B)(i), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 117–146, which was approved June 16, 2022.

AMENDMENTS

2024—Pub. L. 118–159 inserted "and public disclosure" after "report" in section catchline.

2022—Subsec. (b)(7). Pub. L. 117–146, §14, added par. (7).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 117–146, §6, added subsec. (d).
2021—Pub. L. 116–283 renumbered section 306 of this title as this section.
2018—Subsec. (b)(6). Pub. L. 115–282, §703(1), added par. (6).
Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 115–282, §703(2), added subsec. (c).

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§46107. Expenditures

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Federal Maritime Commission may make such expenditures as are necessary in the performance of its functions from funds appropriated or otherwise made available to it, which appropriations are authorized.

(b) PROHIBITION.—Notwithstanding subsection (a), the Federal Maritime Commission may not expend any funds appropriated or otherwise made available to it to a non-Federal entity to issue an award, prize, commendation, or other honor that is not related to the purposes set forth in section 40101.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §4, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1490, §307; Pub. L. 114–120, title IV, §403, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 67; renumbered §46107, Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXVI [LXXXVI], §8605(a)(3), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4765.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
307	46 App.:1111(d) (related to Commission).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §201(d) (related to Commission), 49 Stat. 1986; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(58)(B), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 158.

The words "by this chapter", "after June 29, 1936", and "further" are omitted as unnecessary.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 renumbered section 307 of this title as this section.
2016—Pub. L. 114–120 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted heading, and added subsec. (b).

§46108. Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Federal Maritime Commission $32,869,000 for fiscal year 2022, $38,260,000 for fiscal year 2023, $43,720,000 for fiscal year 2024, and $49,200,000 for fiscal year 2025 for the activities of the Commission authorized under this chapter and subtitle IV.

(Added Pub. L. 114–120, title IV, §401(a), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 67, §308; amended Pub. L. 115–282, title VII, §702, Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4294; renumbered §46108 and amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXVI [LXXXVI], §§8602, 8605(a)(3), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4761, 4765; Pub. L. 117–146, §26, June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1286.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–146 substituted "$32,869,000 for fiscal year 2022, $38,260,000 for fiscal year 2023,

$43,720,000 for fiscal year 2024, and $49,200,000 for fiscal year 2025" for "$29,086,888 for fiscal year 2020 and $29,639,538 for fiscal year 2021".

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, §8605(a)(3), renumbered section 308 of this title as this section.

Pub. L. 116–283, §8602, substituted "$29,086,888 for fiscal year 2020 and $29,639,538 for fiscal year 2021" for "$28,012,310 for fiscal year 2018 and $28,544,543 for fiscal year 2019".

2018—Pub. L. 115–282 substituted "$28,012,310 for fiscal year 2018 and $28,544,543 for fiscal year 2019" for "$24,700,000 for each of fiscal years 2016 and 2017".

Subtitle V—Merchant Marine

PART A—GENERAL

Chapter		Sec.
501.	**Policy, Studies, and Reports**	**50101**
503.	**Administrative**	**50301**
504.	**Committees**	**50401**
505.	**Other General Provisions**	**50501**
	PART B—MERCHANT MARINE SERVICE	
511.	**General**	**51101**
513.	**United States Merchant Marine Academy**	**51301**
515.	**State Maritime Academy Support Program**	**51501**
517.	**Other Support for Merchant Marine Training**	**51701**
519.	**Merchant Marine Awards**	**51901**
521.	**Miscellaneous**	**52101**
	PART C—FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE PROGRAMS	
531.	**Maritime Security Fleet**	**53101**
532.	**Cable Security Fleet**	**53201**
533.	**Construction Reserve Funds**	**53301**
534.	**Tanker Security Fleet**	**53401**
535.	**Capital Construction Funds**	**53501**
537.	**Loans and Guarantees**	**53701**
539.	**War Risk Insurance**	**53901**
541.	**Miscellaneous**	**54101**
543.	**Port Infrastructure Development Program**	**54301**
	PART D—PROMOTIONAL PROGRAMS	
551.	**Coastwise Trade**	**55101**
553.	**Passenger and Cargo Preferences**	**55301**
[555.	**Transferred]**	
556.	**Marine Highways**	**55601**
	PART E—CONTROL OF MERCHANT MARINE CAPABILITIES	
561.	**Restrictions on Transfers**	**56101**
563.	**Emergency Acquisition of Vessels**	**56301**
565.	**Essential Vessels Affected by Neutrality Act**	**56501**
	PART F—GOVERNMENT-OWNED MERCHANT VESSELS	
571.	**General Authority**	**57101**
573.	**Vessel Trade-In Program**	**57301**
575.	**Construction, Charter, and Sale of Vessels**	**57501**
	PART G—RESTRICTIONS AND PENALTIES	
581.	**Restrictions and Penalties**	**58101**

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2023—Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(f), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 811, substituted "Marine

Highways" for "Short Sea Transportation" in item for chapter 556.

2021—Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §§3512(c)(2), 3513(d), Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2239, 2242, added items for chapters 504 and 543 and struck out item for chapter 555 "Miscellaneous".

Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4419, which directed amendment of this analysis by adding item for chapter 534 "at the end", was executed by adding the item for chapter 534 after the item for chapter 533 to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

2019—Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(b), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1997, added item for chapter 532.

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3523(a)(6)(E), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 600, added item for chapter 541.

2007—Pub. L. 110–140, title XI, §1121(b), Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1762, added item for chapter 556.

2006—Pub. L. 109–304, §8(a), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1555, amended subtitle analysis generally. Prior to amendment, analysis consisted of item for chapter 531 "Maritime Security Fleet".

PART A—GENERAL

CHAPTER 501—POLICY, STUDIES, AND REPORTS

Sec.
50101. Objectives and policy.
50102. Survey of merchant marine.
50103. Determinations of essential services.
50104. Studies of general maritime problems.
50105. Studies and cooperation relating to the construction of vessels.
50106. Studies on the operation of vessels.
50107. Studies on marine insurance.
50108. Studies on cargo carriage and cargo containers.
50109. Miscellaneous studies.
50110. Securing preference to vessels of the United States.
50111. Submission of annual MARAD authorization request.
50112. National Maritime Enhancement Institutes.
50113. Use and performance reports by operators of vessels.
50114. National maritime strategy.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3542(b)(3), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3098, added item 50114.

2015—Pub. L. 114–92, div. A, title X, §1074(c)(2), Nov. 25, 2015, 129 Stat. 997, substituted "Submission of annual MARAD authorization request" for "Reports to Congress" in item 50111.

§50101. Objectives and policy

(a) OBJECTIVES.—It is necessary for the national defense and the development of the domestic and foreign commerce of the United States that the United States have a merchant marine—

(1) sufficient to carry the waterborne domestic commerce and a substantial part of the waterborne export and import foreign commerce of the United States and to provide shipping service essential for maintaining the flow of the waterborne domestic and foreign commerce at all times;

(2) capable of serving as a naval and military auxiliary in time of war or national emergency;

(3) owned and operated as vessels of the United States by citizens of the United States;

(4) composed of the best-equipped, safest, and most suitable types of vessels constructed in the United States and manned with a trained and efficient citizen personnel; and

(5) supplemented by efficient facilities for building and repairing vessels.

(b) POLICY.—It is the policy of the United States to encourage and aid the development and maintenance of a merchant marine satisfying the objectives described in subsection (a).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1556; Pub. L. 111–84, div. C, title XXXV, §3511, Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2722.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50101	46 App.:861.	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §1, 41 Stat. 988; Exec. Order No. 6166, June 10, 1933, §12; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(33), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 156.
	46 App.:891.	May 22, 1928, ch. 675, §1, 45 Stat. 689.
	46 App.:1101.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title I, §101, 49 Stat. 1985; Pub. L. 91–469, §1, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1018.

This section consolidates the source provisions to eliminate repetition.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2009—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 111–84 inserted "constructed in the United States" after "vessels".

§50102. Survey of merchant marine

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall survey the merchant marine of the United States to determine whether replacements and additions are required to carry out the objectives and policy of section 50101 of this title. The Secretary shall study, perfect, and adopt a long-range program for replacements and additions that will result, as soon as practicable, in—

(1) an adequate and well-balanced merchant fleet, including vessels of all types, that will provide shipping service essential for maintaining the flow of foreign commerce by vessels designed to be readily and quickly convertible into transport and supply vessels in a time of national emergency;

(2) ownership and operation of the fleet by citizens of the United States insofar as practicable;

(3) vessels designed to afford the best and most complete protection for passengers and crew against fire and all marine perils; and

(4) an efficient capacity for building and repairing vessels in the United States with an adequate number of skilled personnel to provide an adequate mobilization base.

(b) COOPERATION WITH SECRETARY OF NAVY.—In carrying out subsection (a)(1), the Secretary of Transportation shall cooperate closely with the Secretary of the Navy as to national defense requirements.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1557.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50102	46 App.:1120.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §210, 49 Stat. 1989; Pub. L. 91–469, §§3, 35(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1018, 1035; Pub.L. 97–31, §12(67) (related to §210), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 159.

§50103. Determinations of essential services

(a) ESSENTIAL SERVICES, ROUTES, AND LINES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall investigate, determine, and keep current records of the ocean services, routes, and lines from ports in the United States, or in the territories and possessions of the United States, to foreign markets, which the Secretary determines to be essential for the promotion, development, expansion, and maintenance of the foreign commerce of the United States. In making such a determination, the Secretary shall consider and give due weight to—

(A) the cost of maintaining each line;

(B) the probability that a line cannot be maintained except at a heavy loss disproportionate to the benefit to foreign trade;

(C) the number of voyages and types of vessels that should be employed in a line;

(D) the intangible benefit of maintaining a line to the foreign commerce of the United States, the national defense, and other national requirements; and

(E) any other facts and conditions a prudent business person would consider when dealing with the person's own business.

(2) SAINT LAWRENCE SEAWAY.—For purposes of paragraph (1), the Secretary shall establish services, routes, and lines that reflect the seasonal closing of the Saint Lawrence Seaway and provide for alternate routing of vessels through a different range of ports during that closing to maintain continuity of service on a year-round basis.

(b) BULK CARGO CARRYING SERVICES.—The Secretary shall investigate, determine, and keep current records of the bulk cargo carrying services that should be provided by vessels of the United States (whether or not operating on particular services, routes, or lines) for the promotion, development, expansion, and maintenance of the foreign commerce of the United States and the national defense or other national requirements.

(c) TYPES OF VESSELS.—The Secretary shall investigate, determine, and keep current records of the type, size, speed, method of propulsion, and other requirements of the vessels, including express-liner or super-liner vessels, that should be employed in—

(1) the services, routes, or lines described in subsection (a), and the frequency and regularity of the voyages of the vessels, with a view to furnishing adequate, regular, certain, and permanent service; and

(2) the bulk cargo carrying services described in subsection (b).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1557.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50103(a)(1)	46 App.:1121(a).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §211(a)–(c), 49 Stat. 1989; Pub. L. 91–469, §§4, 35(a), (b), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1018, 1035; Pub. L.

		97–31, §12(67), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 159.
50103(a)(2)	46 App.:1213(a) (3d sentence related to 1121(a)).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VIII, §809(a) (3d sentence related to 211(a)), as added Pub. L. 97–35, title XVI, §1604, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 751.
50103(b)	46 App.:1121(b).	
50103(c)	46 App.:1121(c).	

§50104. Studies of general maritime problems

The Secretary of Transportation shall study all maritime problems arising in carrying out the policy in section 50101 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1558.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50104	46 App.:1122(a).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §212(a), 49 Stat. 1990; Aug. 6, 1981, Pub. L. 97–31, §12(69), 95 Stat. 159.

§50105. Studies and cooperation relating to the construction of vessels

(a) RELATIVE COSTS AND NEW DESIGNS.—The Secretary of Transportation shall investigate, determine, and keep current records of—

(1) the relative cost of construction of comparable vessels in the United States and in foreign countries; and

(2) new designs, new methods of construction, and new types of equipment for vessels.

(b) RULES, CLASSIFICATIONS, AND RATINGS.—The Secretary shall examine the rules under which vessels are constructed abroad and in the United States and the methods of classifying and rating the vessels.

(c) COLLABORATION WITH OWNERS AND BUILDERS.—The Secretary shall collaborate with vessel owners and shipbuilders in developing plans for the economical construction of vessels and their propelling machinery, of most modern economical types, giving thorough consideration to all well-recognized means of propulsion and taking into account the benefits from standardized production where practicable and desirable.

(d) EXPRESS-LINER AND SUPER-LINER VESSELS.—The Secretary shall study and cooperate with vessel owners in devising means by which there may be constructed, by or with the aid of the United States Government, express-liner or super-liner vessels comparable to those of other nations, especially with a view to their use in a national emergency, and the use of transoceanic aircraft service in connection with or in lieu of those vessels.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1558.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50105(a)(1)	46 App.:811 (1st sentence words	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §12 (1st

	before 1st comma).	sentence words before 1st comma, 2d sentence words before 2d comma), 39 Stat. 732; Ex. Ord. No. 6166, §12, eff. June 10, 1933; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(27), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 155.
	46 App.:1121(d).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §211(d), (j) (words before 1st semicolon), 49 Stat. 1989; Pub. L. 91–469, §§4(2), 35(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1018, 1035; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(67), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 159.
50105(a)(2)	46 App.:1121(j) (words before 1st semicolon).	
50105(b)	46 App.:811 (2d sentence words before 2d comma).	
50105(c)	46 App.:1122(c).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §212(b)(2), (c), 49 Stat. 1990; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(69), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 159.
50105(d)	46 App.:1122(b)(2).	

§50106. Studies on the operation of vessels

(a) RELATIVE COSTS.—The Secretary of Transportation shall investigate, determine, and keep current records of the relative cost of marine insurance, maintenance, repairs, wages and subsistence of officers and crews, and all other items of expense, in the operation of comparable vessels under the laws and regulations of the United States and those of the foreign countries whose vessels are substantial competitors of American vessels.

(b) SHIPYARDS.—The Secretary shall investigate, determine, and keep current records of the number, location, and efficiency of shipyards in the United States.

(c) NAVIGATION LAWS.—The Secretary shall examine the navigation laws and regulations of the United States and make such recommendations to Congress as the Secretary considers proper for the amendment, improvement, and revision of those laws and for the development of the merchant marine of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1559.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50106(a)	46 App.:811 (1st sentence words after 1st comma).	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §12 (1st sentence words after 1st comma, 3d sentence), 39 Stat. 732; Ex. Ord. No. 6166, §12, eff. June 10, 1933; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(27), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 155.
	46 App.:1121(e).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §211(e),

		(g), 49 Stat. 1989; Pub. L. 91–469, §§4(2), 5, 35(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1018, 1035; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(67), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 159.
50106(b)	46 App.:1121(g).	
50106(c)	46 App.:811 (3d sentence).	

In subsection (b), the words "existing on June 29, 1936, or thereafter built" are omitted as obsolete.

§50107. Studies on marine insurance

The Secretary of Transportation shall—

(1) examine into the subject of marine insurance, the number of companies in the United States, domestic and foreign, engaging in marine insurance, the extent of the insurance on hulls and cargoes placed or written in the United States, and the extent of reinsurance of American maritime risks in foreign companies; and

(2) ascertain what steps may be necessary to develop an ample marine insurance system as an aid in the development of the merchant marine of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1559.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50107	46 App.:811 (2d sentence words after 2d comma).	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §12 (2d sentence words after 2d comma), 39 Stat. 732; Ex. Ord. No. 6166, §12, eff. June 10, 1933; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(27), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 155.

§50108. Studies on cargo carriage and cargo containers

(a) STUDIES.—The Secretary of Transportation shall study—

(1) the methods of encouraging the development and implementation of new concepts for the carriage of cargo in the domestic and foreign commerce of the United States; and

(2) the economic and technological aspects of the use of cargo containers as a method of carrying out the policy in section 50101 of this title.

(b) RESTRICTION.—In carrying out subsection (a) and the policy in section 50101 of this title, the United States Government may not give preference as between carriers based on the length, height, or width of cargo containers or the length, height, or width of cargo container cells. This restriction applies to all existing container vessels and any container vessel to be constructed or rebuilt.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1559.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50108	46 App.:1122(f).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §212(f); as added Pub. L. 90–268, §1, Mar.

		16, 1968, 82 Stat. 49; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(69), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 159; Pub. L. 98–237, §20(c), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 90.

§50109. Miscellaneous studies

(a) FOREIGN SUBSIDIES.—The Secretary of Transportation shall investigate, determine, and keep current records of the extent and character of the governmental aid and subsidies granted by foreign governments to their merchant marine.

(b) LAWS APPLICABLE TO AIRCRAFT.—The Secretary shall investigate, determine, and keep current records of the provisions of law relating to shipping that should be made applicable to aircraft engaged in foreign commerce to further the policy in section 50101 of this title, and any appropriate legislation in this regard.

(c) AID FOR COTTON, COAL, LUMBER, AND CEMENT.—The Secretary shall investigate, determine, and keep current records of the advisability of enactment of suitable legislation authorizing the Secretary, in an economic or commercial emergency, to aid farmers and producers of cotton, coal, lumber, and cement in any section of the United States in the transportation and landing of their products in any foreign port, which products can be carried in dry-cargo vessels by reducing rates, by supplying additional tonnage to any American operator, or by operation of vessels directly by the Secretary, until the Secretary considers the special rate reduction and operation unnecessary for the benefit of those farmers and producers.

(d) INTERCOASTAL AND INLAND WATER TRANSPORTATION.—The Secretary shall investigate, determine, and keep current records of intercoastal and inland water transportation, including their relation to transportation by land and air.

(e) OBSOLETE TONNAGE AND TRAMP SERVICE.—The Secretary shall make studies and reports to Congress on—

(1) the scrapping or removal from service of old or obsolete merchant tonnage owned by the United States Government or in use in the merchant marine; and

(2) tramp shipping service and the advisability of citizens of the United States participating in that service with vessels under United States registry.

(f) MORTGAGE LOANS.—The Secretary shall investigate the legal status of mortgage loans on vessel property, with a view to the means of improving the security of those loans and of encouraging investment in American shipping.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1559.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50109(a)	46 App.:1121(f).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §211(f), (h), (i), (j) (words after 2d semicolon), 49 Stat. 1989; Pub. L. 91–469, §§4(2), 35(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1018, 1035; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(67), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 159.
50109(b)	46 App.:1121(h).	
50109(c)	46 App.:1121(i).	
50109(d)	46 App.:1121(j) (words after 2d semicolon).	
50109(e)	46 App.:1123.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §213, 49

		Stat. 1991; Pub. L. 87–877, §2(c), (d), Oct. 24, 1962, 76 Stat. 1201; Pub. L. 94–273, §27, Apr. 21, 1976, 90 Stat. 380; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(71), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 159; Pub. L. 105–85, div. C, title XXXVI, §3602, Nov. 18, 1997, 111 Stat. 2075.
50109(f)	46 App.:811 (4th sentence).	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §12 (4th sentence), 39 Stat. 732; Ex. Ord. No. 6166, §12, eff. June 10, 1933; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(27), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 155.

§50110. Securing preference to vessels of the United States

(a) POSSIBILITIES OF PROMOTING CARRIAGE.—The Secretary of Transportation shall investigate, determine, and keep current records of the possibilities of promoting the carriage of United States foreign trade in vessels of the United States.

(b) INDUCEMENTS TO IMPORTERS AND EXPORTERS.—The Secretary shall study and cooperate with vessel owners in devising means by which the importers and exporters of the United States can be induced to give preference to vessels of the United States.

(c) LIAISON WITH AGENCIES AND ORGANIZATIONS.—The Secretary shall establish and maintain liaison with such other agencies of the United States Government, and with such representative trade organizations throughout the United States, as may be concerned, directly or indirectly, with any movement of commodities in the waterborne export and import foreign commerce of the United States, for the purpose of securing preference to vessels of the United States in the shipment of those commodities.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1560.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50110(a)	46 App.:1121(j) (words between 1st and 2d semicolons).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §211(j) (words between 1st and 2d semicolons), 49 Stat. 1989; Pub. L. 91–469, §§4(2), 35(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1018, 1035; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(67), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 159.
50110(b)	46 App.:1122(b)(1).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §212(b)(1), (d), 49 Stat. 1990; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(69), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 159; Pub. L. 98–237, §20(c), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 90.
50110(c)	46 App.:1122(d).	

§50111. Submission of annual MARAD authorization request

(a) SUBMISSION OF LEGISLATIVE PROPOSAL.—Not later than 30 days after the date on which the President submits to Congress a budget for a fiscal year pursuant to section 1105 of title

31, the Secretary of Transportation shall submit to the Committee on Armed Services and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate the Maritime Administration authorization request for that fiscal year.

(b) MARITIME ADMINISTRATION REQUEST DEFINED.—In this section, the term "Maritime Administration authorization request" means a proposal for legislation that, for a fiscal year—

(1) recommends authorizations of appropriations for the Maritime Administration for that fiscal year, including with respect to matters described in subsection [1] 109(j) of title 49 or authorized in subtitle V of this title; and

(2) addresses any other matter with respect to the Maritime Administration that the Secretary determines is appropriate.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1560; Pub. L. 114–92, div. A, title X, §1074(c)(1), Nov. 25, 2015, 129 Stat. 996.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50111(a)	46 App.:811 (last sentence).	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §12 (last sentence), 39 Stat. 732; Ex. Ord. No. 6166, §12, eff. June 10, 1933; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(27), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 155.
	46 App.:1118 (related to Secretary).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §208 (related to Secretary), 49 Stat. 1988; Pub. L. 94–273, §36, Apr. 21, 1976, 90 Stat. 380; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(65), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 159.
	46 App.:1160(f).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §510(f), as added Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §7, 53 Stat. 1184; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(91)(A)–(C), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.
	46 App.:1291.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XII, §1211, as added Sept. 7, 1950, ch. 906, 64 Stat. 776; Pub. L. 89–348, §1(7), Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1310.
50111(b)	46 App.:1118 note.	Pub. L. 106–398, §1 [div. C, title XXXV, §3506], Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1654, 1654A–494.
50111(c)	46 App.:1122(g).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §212(g), 49 Stat. 1990; Pub. L. 90–268, §1, Mar. 16, 1968, 82 Stat. 49; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(69), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 159; Pub. L. 98–237, §20(c), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 90.

In subsection (a), the words "on or before the 1st day of December in each year" in 46 App. U.S.C. 811 (last sentence) are omitted for consistency with the April 1 date in 46 App.:1118. The words "and of the operations of any corporation in which the United States is a stockholder, and the names and compensation of all persons

employed by the Secretary of Transportation" in 46 App. U.S.C. 811 (last sentence) are omitted because the provision originally applied to the United States Shipping Board (which was abolished in 1933) and presumably is not intended to apply to the Secretary.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2015—Pub. L. 114–92 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section related to annual reports to Congress.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "section".*

§50112. National Maritime Enhancement Institutes

(a) DESIGNATION.—The Secretary of Transportation may designate National Maritime Enhancement Institutes.

(b) ACTIVITIES.—Activities undertaken by an institute may include—

(1) conducting research about methods to improve the performance of maritime industries;

(2) enhancing the competitiveness of domestic maritime industries in international trade;

(3) forecasting trends in maritime trade;

(4) assessing technological advancements;

(5) developing management initiatives and training;

(6) analyzing economic and operational impacts of regulatory policies and international negotiations or agreements pending before international bodies;

(7) assessing the compatibility of domestic maritime infrastructure systems with overseas transport systems;

(8) fostering innovations in maritime transportation pricing; and

(9) improving maritime economics and finance.

(c) APPLICATION FOR DESIGNATION.—An institution seeking designation as a National Maritime Enhancement Institute shall submit an application under regulations prescribed by the Secretary.

(d) CRITERIA FOR DESIGNATION.—The Secretary shall designate an institute under this section on the basis of the following criteria:

(1) The demonstrated research and extension resources available to the applicant for carrying out the activities specified in subsection (b).

(2) The ability of the applicant to provide leadership in making national and regional contributions to the solution of both long-range and immediate problems of the domestic maritime industry.

(3) The existence of an established program of the applicant encompassing research and training directed to enhancing maritime industries.

(4) The demonstrated ability of the applicant to assemble and evaluate pertinent information from national and international sources and to disseminate results of maritime industry research and educational programs through a continuing education program.

(5) The qualification of the applicant as a nonprofit institution of higher learning.

(e) FINANCIAL AWARDS.—The Secretary may make awards on an equal matching basis to an institute designated under subsection (a) from amounts appropriated. The aggregate annual amount of the Federal share of the awards by the Secretary may not exceed $500,000.

(f) UNIVERSITY TRANSPORTATION RESEARCH FUNDS.—The Secretary may make a grant under section 5505 of title 49 to an institute designated under subsection (a) for maritime and maritime intermodal research under that section as if the institute were a university transportation center. In making a grant, the Secretary, through the Office of the Assistant Secretary for Research

and Technology of the Department of Transportation, shall advise the Maritime Administration on the availability of funds for the grants and consult with the Administration on making the grants.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1561; Pub. L. 113–76, div. L, title I, Jan. 17, 2014, 128 Stat. 574.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50112	46 App.:1121–2.	Pub. L. 101–115, §8, Oct. 13, 1989, 103 Stat. 694; Pub. L. 101–595, title VII, §702, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2994; Pub. L. 102–241, §47, Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2227; Pub. L. 106–398, §1 [div. C, title XXXV, §3504], Oct. 30, 2000, 114 Stat. 1654, 1654A–493; Pub. L. 108–426, Nov. 30, 2004, §2(c)(4), 118 Stat. 2424.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

CHANGE OF NAME

"Office of the Assistant Secretary for Research and Technology of the Department of Transportation" substituted for "Research and Innovative Technology Administration" in subsec. (f) on authority of title I of div. L of Pub. L. 113–76, set out in part as a note under former section 112 of Title 49, Transportation.

§50113. Use and performance reports by operators of vessels

(a) FILING REQUIREMENT.—The Secretary of Transportation by regulation may require the operator of a vessel in the waterborne foreign commerce of the United States to file such report, account, record, or memorandum on the use and performance of the vessel as the Secretary considers desirable to assist in carrying out this subtitle. The report, account, record, or memorandum shall be signed and verified, and be filed at the times and in the manner, as provided by regulation.

(b) CIVIL PENALTY.—An operator not filing a report, account, record, or memorandum required by the Secretary under this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $50 for each day of the violation. A penalty imposed under this section on the operator of a vessel constitutes a lien on the vessel involved in the violation. A civil action in rem to enforce the lien may be brought in the district court of the United States for any district in which the vessel is found. The Secretary may remit or mitigate any penalty imposed under this section.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1562.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50113	46 App.:1122a.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §212(A), as added June 25, 1956, ch. 437, 70 Stat. 332; Aug. 6, 1981, Pub. L. 97–31, §12(70), 95 Stat. 159.

§50114. National maritime strategy

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating and the Commander of United States Transportation Command, shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate—

(1) a national maritime strategy; and

(2) not less often than once every five years after the submission of such strategy, an update to the strategy.

(b) CONTENTS.—The strategy required under subsection (a) shall include each of the following:

(1) An identification of—

(A) international policies and Federal regulations and policies that reduce the competitiveness of United States-documented vessels with foreign vessels in domestic and international transportation markets; and

(B) the impact of reduced cargo flow due to reductions in the number of members of the United States Armed Forces stationed or deployed outside of the United States.

(2) Recommendations to—

(A) make United States-documented vessels more competitive in shipping routes between United States and foreign ports;

(B) increase the use of United States-documented vessels to carry cargo imported to and exported from the United States;

(C) ensure compliance by Federal agencies with chapter 553;

(D) increase the use of short sea transportation routes, including routes designated under section 55601(b), to enhance intermodal freight movements;

(E) enhance United States shipbuilding capability;

(F) invest in, and identify gaps in, infrastructure needed to facilitate the movement of goods at ports and throughout the transportation system, including innovative physical and information technologies;

(G) enhance workforce training and recruitment for the maritime workforce, including training on innovative physical and information technologies;

(H) increase the resilience of ports and the marine transportation system;

(I) increase the carriage of government-impelled cargo on United States-documented vessels pursuant to chapter 553 of title 46, section 2631 of title 10, or otherwise; and

(J) maximize the cost effectiveness of Federal funding for carriage of non-defense government impelled cargo for the purposes of maintaining a United States flag fleet for national and economic security.

(c) UPDATE.—Upon the release of a strategy or update under subsection (a), the Secretary of Transportation shall make such strategy or update publicly available on the website of the Department of Transportation.

(d) IMPLEMENTATION PLAN.—Not later than six months after the submission of a strategy or update under subsection (a), the Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating and the Secretary of Defense, shall make publicly available on an appropriate website an implementation plan for such strategy or update.

(Added Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3542(b)(1), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3096.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

ACCOUNTABILITY FOR NATIONAL MARITIME STRATEGY

Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3537, Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 835, provided that:

"(a) BIANNUAL BRIEFING.—

"(1) REQUIREMENT.—Not less than twice annually, the Administrator of the Maritime Administration, in consultation with the National Security Council, the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Transportation, and the Secretary of Homeland Security, shall provide to the appropriate congressional committees briefings on the status of establishing the type of national maritime strategy required under section 50114 of title 46, United States Code. The Chief of Naval Operations, the Commandant of the Marine Corps, and the Commandant of the Coast Guard shall participate in each briefing required under this paragraph.

"(2) USE.—The Administrator shall use the briefings required under paragraph (1) to augment and influence the national maritime strategy discussion with national security focused stakeholders across the administration, until an updated strategy is published and endorsed by the President of the United States.

"(b) ELEMENTS.—As the national maritime strategy relates to national security, each briefing under subsection (a) shall include the following:

"(1) Recommendations for a whole-of-Government approach to orchestrating national instruments of power to shape all elements of the maritime enterprise of the United States, domestic and international, on the high seas or domestic waterways.

"(2) An assessment of great power competition in the maritime domain, to include opportunities for increased cooperation with allied and partner global maritime industry leaders to improve national shipbuilding and shipping, while promoting the international rules-based maritime order.

"(3) An analysis of existing shipyards to build and capitalize on the virtuous cycle between commercial and military shipbuilding and repair, including areas of improvement.

"(4) An analysis of opportunities for private or public financing to increase the capacity, efficiency, and effectiveness of United States shipyards, including infrastructure, labor force, technology, and global competitiveness.

"(5) An analysis of potential improvements to national or cooperative arrangements for sealift capacity and shipping, including for contested logistics.

"(c) APPROPRIATE CONGRESSIONAL COMMITTEES.—In this section, the term 'appropriate congressional committees' means—

"(1) the congressional defense committees [Committees on Armed Services and Appropriations of the Senate and the House of Representatives];

"(2) and [sic] the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives; and

"(3) the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate."

DEADLINE FOR SUBMISSION OF STRATEGY

Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3542(b)(2)(B), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3098, provided that: "The Secretary [of Transportation] shall submit the national maritime strategy required under section 50114(a)(1) of title 46, United States Code, as added by paragraph (1), not later than six months after the date on which the Secretary receives the study under subsection (a)."

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

EX. ORD. NO. 14269. RESTORING AMERICA'S MARITIME DOMINANCE

Ex. Ord. No. 14269, Apr. 9, 2025, 90 F.R. 15635, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, it is hereby ordered:

SECTION 1. *Purpose*. The commercial shipbuilding capacity and maritime workforce of the United States has been weakened by decades of Government neglect, leading to the decline of a once strong industrial base while simultaneously empowering our adversaries and eroding United States national security. Both our allies and our strategic competitors produce ships for a fraction of the cost needed in the United States. Recent data shows that the United States constructs less than one percent of commercial ships globally, while the People's Republic of China (PRC) is responsible for producing approximately half.

Rectifying these issues requires a comprehensive approach that includes securing consistent, predictable, and durable Federal funding, making United States-flagged and built vessels commercially competitive in international commerce, rebuilding America's maritime manufacturing capabilities (the Maritime Industrial Base), and expanding and strengthening the recruitment, training, and retention of the relevant workforce.

SEC. 2. *Policy*. It is the policy of the United States to revitalize and rebuild domestic maritime industries and workforce to promote national security and economic prosperity.

SEC. 3. *Maritime Action Plan*. (a) Within 210 days of the date of this order [Apr. 9, 2025], the Assistant to the President for National Security Affairs (APNSA), in coordination with the Secretary of State, the

Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Commerce, the Secretary of Labor, the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Homeland Security, the United States Trade Representative (USTR), and the heads of executive departments and agencies (agencies) the APNSA deems appropriate, shall submit a Maritime Action Plan (MAP) to the President, through the APNSA and the Director of the Office of Management and Budget (OMB Director) to achieve the policy set forth in this order.

(b) The OMB Director, in coordination with the APNSA, shall be responsible for all legislative, regulatory, and fiscal assessments related to the MAP.

(c) The MAP shall, to the extent permissible and consistent with applicable law, including the Buy American Act ([see] 41 U.S.C. 8301–8305), reflect actions taken pursuant to sections 4 through 21 of this order.

SEC. 4. *Ensure the Security and Resilience of the Maritime Industrial Base*. Within 180 days of the date of this order, the Secretary of Defense, in coordination with the Secretary of Commerce, the Secretary of Transportation, and the Secretary of Homeland Security, shall provide to the APNSA and the OMB Director for inclusion in the MAP an assessment of options both for the use of available authorities and resources, such as Defense Production Act Title III authorities [probably means 50 U.S.C. 4531 et seq.], and for the use of private capital to the maximum extent possible to invest in and expand the Maritime Industrial Base including, but not limited to, investment and expansion of commercial and defense shipbuilding capabilities, component supply chains, ship repair and marine transportation capabilities, port infrastructure, and the adjacent workforce. The Secretary of Defense shall pursue using the Office of Strategic Capital loan program to improve the shipbuilding industrial base. As part of their assessment, the Secretary of Commerce, the Secretary of Transportation, and the Secretary of Homeland Security shall:

(a) identify key maritime components in the supply chain that are essential for rebuilding and expanding the Maritime Industrial Base and that should be prioritized for investment;

(b) ensure that their recommendations of public and private investments are made according to a clear metric, derived in consultation with the Assistant to the President for Economic Policy, of return on invested capital for the United States taxpayer and to the economic and national security of the United States; and

(c) ensure that their recommendations take into consideration the projected increases to commercial and defense capabilities, the projected growth in economic activity, and the projected benefits for taxpayers and the workforce.

SEC. 5. *Actions in the Investigation of the PRC's Unfair Targeting of Maritime, Logistics, and Shipbuilding Sectors*. (a) With respect to the actions, if any, that the USTR determines to take consistent with the USTR's notice of public hearing entitled Proposed Action in Section 301 Investigation of the PRC's Targeting of the Maritime, Logistics, and Shipbuilding Sectors for Dominance, 90 Fed. Reg. 10843 (February 27, 2025), the USTR shall:

(i) coordinate with appropriate agencies to collect additional information, as appropriate and to the extent permitted by law, in support of administering such actions; and

(ii) coordinate with the Attorney General and Secretary of Homeland Security to take appropriate steps to enforce any restriction, fee, penalty, or duty imposed pursuant to such actions.

(b) Based on the USTR's determinations arising out of its Section 301 investigation into the PRC's targeting of the maritime, logistics, and shipbuilding sectors, the USTR shall also consider taking all necessary steps permitted by law to propose the following actions:

(i) tariffs on ship-to-shore cranes manufactured, assembled, or made using components of PRC origin, or manufactured anywhere in the world by a company owned, controlled, or substantially influenced by a PRC national; and

(ii) tariffs on other cargo handling equipment.

SEC. 6. *Enforce Collection of Harbor Maintenance Fee and Other Charges*. In order to prevent cargo carriers from circumventing the Harbor Maintenance Fee (HMF) on imported goods through the practice of making port in Canada or Mexico and sending their cargo into the United States through land borders, and to ensure the collection of other charges as applicable, the Secretary of Homeland Security shall take all necessary steps, including proposing new legislation, as permitted by law to:

(a) require all foreign-origin cargo arriving by vessel to clear the Customs and Border Protection (CBP) entry process at a United States port of entry for security and collection of all applicable duties, customs, taxes, fees, interest, and other charges; and

(b) ensure any foreign-origin cargo first arriving by vessel to North America clearing the CBP process at an inland location from the country of land transit (Canada or Mexico) is assessed applicable customs, duties, taxes, fees (including the HMF), interest, and other charges plus a 10 percent service fee for additional costs to

the CBP, so long as the cargo being shipped into the United States is not substantially transformed from its condition at the time of arrival into the country of land transit (with the discretion for such decisions to be determined by CBP).

SEC. 7. *Engage Allies and Partners to Align Trade Policies*. Within 90 days of the date of this order, the USTR, in consultation with the Secretary of State and the Secretary of Commerce, shall engage treaty allies, partners, and other like-minded countries around the world with respect to their potential imposition of any actions taken pursuant to sections 5 and 6 of this order. The USTR shall deliver an engagement plan and progress report on these engagements to the President.

SEC. 8. *Reduce Dependence on Adversaries through Allies and Partners*. Within 90 days of the date of this order, the Secretary of Commerce, in consultation with the Assistant to the President for Economic Policy, shall recommend to the APNSA and the OMB Director for inclusion in the MAP all available incentives to help shipbuilders domiciled in allied nations partner to undertake capital investment in the United States to help strengthen the shipbuilding capacity of the United States.

SEC. 9. *Launch a Maritime Security Trust Fund*. In conjunction with the formulation of the President's Budget, the OMB Director shall, in coordination with the Secretary of Transportation, develop a legislative proposal, which shall be described in detail in the MAP, to establish a Maritime Security Trust Fund that can serve as a reliable funding source to deliver consistent support for MAP programs. This proposal shall consider how new or existing tariff revenue, fines, fees, or tax revenue could further the goal of establishing a more reliable, dedicated funding source for programs support by the MAP.

SEC. 10. *Shipbuilding Financial Incentives Program*. In conjunction with the formulation of the President's Budget and consistent with the findings of the report required under section 12 of this order, the Secretary of Transportation shall submit a legislative proposal to the APNSA and the OMB Director, which shall be described in detail in the MAP, that establishes a financial incentives program with broad flexibility to incentivize private investment in the construction of commercial components, parts, and vessels; capital improvements to commercial vessel shipyards; capital improvements to commercial vessel repair facilities and drydocks through grants; and Federal Credit Reform Act-compliant [2 U.S.C. 661 et seq.] loans and loan guarantees. Such proposal may augment or replace existing programs with similar purpose including the Small Shipyard Grant Program and the Federal Ship Financing (Title XI) Program.

SEC. 11. *Establish Maritime Prosperity Zones*. Within 90 days of the date of this order, the Secretary of Commerce, in coordination with the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of Transportation, and the Secretary of Homeland Security, shall deliver a plan to the President through the APNSA for inclusion in the MAP that identifies opportunities to incentivize and facilitate domestic and allied investment in United States maritime industries and waterfront communities through establishment of maritime prosperity zones. The proposal shall:

(a) model these maritime prosperity zones on the opportunity zones established pursuant to section 13823 of the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017 (Public Law 115–97, 131 Stat. 2054) [enacting sections 1400Z–1 and 1400Z–2 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code, amending section 1016 of Title 26, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 1016 of Title 26], which I signed into law during my first Administration;

(b) include stipulations for appropriate regulatory relief in the establishment of such zones; and

(c) provide for zones that are outside of traditional coastal shipbuilding and ship repair centers and are geographically diverse, including river regions as well as the Great Lakes.

SEC. 12. *Report on Maritime Industry Needs*. Within 90 days of the date of this order, the Secretary of Transportation, in coordination with the Secretary of Homeland Security and the heads of other agencies as appropriate, shall deliver a report to the OMB Director and APNSA for inclusion in the MAP that inventories Federal programs that could be used to sustain and grow the supply of and demand for the United States maritime industry. The report and inventory shall include:

(a) any Federal programs that provide financial and regulatory incentives for United States shipping, shipbuilding, and shipbuilding supply chains, including the training of shipbuilders and United States-credentialed mariners;

(b) Maritime Administration programs such as the Tanker Security Program, Cable Security Fleet, Maritime Security Programs, Maritime Environmental and Technical Assistance Program, Title XI, Assistance to Small Shipyards, Port Infrastructure Development Program, the United States Merchant Marine Academy (USMMA), and programs that support the State Maritime Academies;

(c) existing domestic cargo preference laws, including the Military Cargo Preference Act of 1904, as amended, ([see] 10 U.S.C. 2631) and the Cargo Preference Act of 1954 [sic], as amended, (46 U.S.C. 55304), and whether and how they can be used to ensure that United States cargo is transported on United States-built and flagged vessels, including a review of the existing waiver process and all current waivers to ensure they are consistent with the promotion of American domestic shipping;

(d) other available means that could further support the industry, including modifications of existing programs, establishment of new programs, and tax and regulatory relief; and

(e) in coordination with the National Security Council and the Office of Management and Budget, the costs and benefits of increased cargo preference rates, including on liquid cargo carriers, tankers, and military useful vessels, and options for increasing cargo preference compliance and directing open market procurement of shipping to meet urgent military needs for maritime vessels.

SEC. 13. *Expand Mariner Training and Education*. Within 90 days of the date of this order, the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Labor, the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Education, and the Secretary of Homeland Security shall deliver a report to the President through the APNSA for inclusion in the MAP with recommendations to address workforce challenges in the maritime sector through maritime educational institutions and workforce transitions.

(a) In preparing their report, the Secretary of State, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Labor, the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Education, and the Secretary of Homeland Security shall consult, as needed, with industry stakeholders including private industry and labor organizations.

(b) The report shall:

(i) include the current number of credentialed mariners and estimate the additional credentialed mariners required to support the policies described in this order;

(ii) analyze the impact of establishing new and expanding existing merchant marine academies as a means of educating, training, and certifying the additional credentialed merchant mariners estimated under subsection (b)(i) of this section;

(iii) identify any requirements for credentialing mariners that are unnecessary, insufficient, or unduly burdensome and provide recommendations for reform;

(iv) inventory existing educational and technical training grants and scholarships to colleges and vocational-technical training institutions for critical shipbuilding specialties and other maritime studies, and provide recommendations for enhancement; and

(v) assess the United States Coast Guard credentialing program applicability to United States Navy Active Duty and Reserve sailors to increase opportunities for sailors to transfer into the Merchant Marine with validated skills.

(c) Consistent with the findings of the report and in conjunction with the formulation of the President's Budget, the Secretary of State, Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Labor, the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Education, and the Secretary of Homeland Security shall deliver a legislative proposal to the APNSA and the OMB Director that:

(i) reflects the recommendations of the report required under this section;

(ii) establishes national maritime scholarships to send promising maritime experts abroad to learn cutting edge techniques and subjects, such as innovative maritime logistics, clean fuels and advanced nuclear energy, human-machine teaming, and additive manufacturing and other advanced technologies; and

(iii) offers scholarships to maritime experts from allied countries to teach at United States institutions.

SEC. 14. *Modernize the United States Merchant Marine Academy*. (a) The Secretary of Transportation shall:

(i) within 30 days of this order consistent with applicable law and available appropriations, take action to hire the necessary facilities staff and reprogram budgetary resources needed to execute urgent deferred maintenance projects and any other mission critical repair works at the USMMA;

(ii) take immediate action to finalize a long-term master facilities plan (LMFP) for the modernization of the USMMA campus and submit such plan to the APNSA and OMB Director for concurrence; and

(iii) within 90 days of the concurrence described in subsection (a)(ii) of this section, in consultation with the Department of Government Efficiency, submit a 5-year capital improvement plan (CIP) consistent with the LMFP to the APNSA and OMB Director that includes capital project budgets, schedules, and sequencing, as well as an inventory of deferred maintenance items necessary to sustain campus operations through completion of the CIP.

(b) All actions taken pursuant to this section shall be detailed in the MAP.

SEC. 15. *Improve Procurement Efficiency*. Within 90 days of the date of this order, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Commerce, the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Homeland Security, and the Director of the National Science Foundation shall develop a proposal for improved acquisition strategies processes for United States Government vessels and submit such proposal to APNSA and the OMB Director for inclusion in the MAP. The proposal shall:

(a) have as its objective providing American shipbuilders with market forecasting needed to justify investments in infrastructure, workforce, and intellectual property to meet United States demand;(b) include reforms recommended by the Secretary of Defense and the Secretary of Homeland Security related to:

(i) staff structure and innovations in acquisition strategies that will improve Federal vessel procurement; and

(ii) reductions of the layers of approval needed to execute, build, and improve the vessel acquisition process, including by utilizing commercial acquisition and modular design practices that reduce complexity and prevent frequent changes to ship designs;

(c) identify for elimination excessive requirements, including the number of Government reviews and onerous regulations that add to ship design and acquisition delays; and

(d) consider use of broad industry standards and American-made readily available parts and components to drive up production volume while shrinking the iterative design process, which historically has led to delays and cost increases.

SEC. 16. *Improve Government Efficiency*. Within 90 days of the date of this order, the Department of Government Efficiency shall begin a separate review of the Department of Defense and Department of Homeland Security vessel procurement processes and deliver a proposal to the President, through the APNSA for inclusion in the MAP, to improve the efficiency and effectiveness of these processes.

SEC. 17. *Increase the Fleet of Commercial Vessels Trading Internationally under the flag [sic] of the United States*. Within 180 days of the date of this order, in conjunction with the formulation of the President's Budget and consistent with the findings of the report required under section 12 of this section, the Secretary of Transportation shall in coordination with the Secretary of Defense, deliver a legislative proposal to the APNSA and OMB Director for inclusion in the MAP that:

(a) is designed to ensure that adequate cubed footage and gross tonnage of United States-flagged commercial vessels can be called upon in times of crisis, while limiting the likelihood of Government waste;

(b) provides incentives that will:

(i) grow the fleet of United States built, crewed, and flagged vessels that serve as readily deployable assets for national security purposes; and

(ii) increase the participation of United States commercial vessels in international trade; and

(c) enhances existing subsidies to include coverage of certain construction or modification costs in a manner designed to enhance incentives for the commercial shipping industry to operate militarily useful ships that trade internationally under the flag of the United States.

SEC. 18. *Ensure the Security and Leadership of Arctic Waterways*. Within 90 days of the date of this order, the Secretary of Defense, in consultation with the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Homeland Security, and the Commandant of the Coast Guard shall develop a strategy that identifies the vision, goals, and objectives necessary to secure arctic waterways and enable American prosperity in the face of evolving arctic security challenges and associated risks, and deliver it to the APNSA for inclusion in the MAP.

SEC. 19. *Shipbuilding Review*. Within 45 days of the date of this order, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Commerce, the Secretary of Transportation, and the Secretary of Homeland Security shall conduct a review of shipbuilding for United States Government use and submit a report to the President with recommendations to increase the number of participants and competitors within United States shipbuilding, and to reduce cost overruns and production delays for surface, subsurface, and unmanned programs. This report must include separate itemized and prioritized lists of recommendations for the United States Army, Navy, and Coast Guard and shall be included in the MAP.

SEC. 20. *Deregulatory Initiatives*. Within 30 days of the date of this order, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Transportation, and the Secretary of Homeland Security shall conduct a review of their regulations, and implementation thereof, across all components pertaining to the domestic commercial maritime fleet and maritime port access to determine where each agency may be able to deregulate within the framework of Executive Order 14192 of January 31, 2025 (Unleashing Prosperity Through Deregulation) [5 U.S.C. 601 note], to reduce unnecessary costs and clear barriers to emerging technology and related efficiencies. Each agency will submit a report of its findings to the OMB Director and to the APNSA for inclusion in the MAP.

SEC. 21. *Inactive Reserve Fleet*. Within 90 days of the date of this order, the Secretary of Defense shall conduct a review and issue guidance on the funding, retention, support, and mobilization of a robust inactive reserve fleet. This review and guidance shall be delivered to the APNSA for inclusion in the MAP.

SEC. 22. *Coordination*. Unless otherwise specified in this order, the plans, reports, reviews, and recommendations that are required to be submitted to the President by this order shall be developed through interagency coordination in accordance with National Security Presidential Memorandum 1 of January 20, 2025 (Organization of the National Security Council and Subcommittees), or its successors.

SEC. 23. *Severability*. If any provision of this order, or the application of any provision to any person or circumstance, is held to be invalid, the remainder of this order and the application of its provisions to any other persons or circumstances shall not be affected thereby.

SEC. 24. *General Provisions*. (a) Nothing in this order shall be construed to impair or otherwise affect:

(i) the authority granted by law to an executive department or agency, or the head thereof; or

(ii) the functions of the Director of the Office of Management and Budget relating to budgetary, administrative, or legislative proposals.

(b) This order shall be implemented consistent with applicable law and subject to the availability of appropriations.

(c) This order is not intended to, and does not, create any right or benefit, substantive or procedural, enforceable at law or in equity by any party against the United States, its departments, agencies, or entities, its officers, employees, or agents, or any other person.

DONALD J. TRUMP.

CHAPTER 503—ADMINISTRATIVE

Sec.

50301. Vessel Operations Revolving Fund.
50302. Port development.
50303. Operating property and extending term of notes.
50304. Sale and transfer of property.
50305. Appointment of trustee or receiver and operation of vessels.
50306. Requiring testimony and records in investigations.
50307. Maritime environmental and technical assistance program.
50308. Maritime transportation system emergency relief program.
50309. Securing logistics information data of the United States.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2023—Pub. L. 118–31, div. A, title VIII, §825(b)(2), div. C, title XXXV, §3514(c), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 333, 810, substituted "Maritime transportation system emergency relief program" for "Port development; maritime transportation system emergency relief program" in item 50308 and added item 50309.

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3505(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4405, added item 50308.

2012—Pub. L. 112–213, title IV, §403(b), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1570, added item 50307.

§50301. Vessel Operations Revolving Fund

(a) IN GENERAL.—There is a "Vessel Operations Revolving Fund" for use by the Secretary of Transportation in carrying out duties and powers related to vessel operations, including charter, operation, maintenance, repair, reconditioning, and improvement of merchant vessels under the jurisdiction of the Secretary. The Fund has a working capital of $20,000,000, to remain available until expended.

(b) RELATIONSHIP TO OTHER LAWS.—Notwithstanding any other law, rates for shipping services provided under the Fund shall be prescribed by the Secretary and the Fund shall be credited with receipts from vessel operations conducted under the Fund. Sections 1(a) and (c), 3(c), and 4 of the Act of March 24, 1943 (50 U.S.C. 4701(a), (c), 4703(c), 4704), apply to those operations and to seamen employed through general agents as employees of the United States Government. Notwithstanding any other law on the employment of persons by the Government, the seamen may be employed in accordance with customary commercial practices in the maritime industry.

(c) ADVANCEMENTS.—With the approval of the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, the Secretary may advance amounts the Secretary considers necessary, but not more than 2 percent of vessel operating expenses, from the Fund to the appropriation "Salaries and Expenses" in carrying out duties and powers related to vessel operations, without regard to the limitations on amounts stated in that appropriation.

(d) TRANSFERS.—The unexpended balances of working funds or of allocation accounts established after January 1, 1951, for the activities provided for in subsection (a), and receipts

received from those activities, may be transferred to the Fund, which shall be available for the purposes of those working funds or allocation accounts.

(e) LIMITATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Amounts made available to the Secretary for maritime activities by this section or any other law may not be used to pay for a vessel described in paragraph (2) unless the compensation to be paid is computed under section 56303 of this title as that section is interpreted by the Comptroller General.

(2) APPLICABLE VESSELS.—Paragraph (1) applies to a vessel—

(A) the title to which is acquired by the Government by requisition or purchase;

(B) the use of which is taken by requisition or agreement; or

(C) lost while insured by the Government.

(3) NONAPPLICABLE VESSELS.—Paragraph (1) does not apply to a vessel under a construction-differential subsidy contract.

(f) AVAILABILITY FOR ADDITIONAL PURPOSES.—The Fund is available for—

(1) necessary expenses incurred in the protection, preservation, maintenance, acquisition, or use of vessels involved in mortgage foreclosure or forfeiture proceedings instituted by the Government, including payment of prior claims and liens, expenses of sale, or other related charges;

(2) necessary expenses incident to the redelivery and lay-up, in the United States, of vessels chartered as of June 20, 1956, under agreements not calling for their return to the Government;

(3) the activation, repair, and deactivation of merchant vessels chartered for limited emergency purposes during fiscal year 1957 under the jurisdiction of the Secretary; and

(4) payment of expenses of custody and maintenance of Government-owned vessels not in the National Defense Reserve Fleet.

(g) EXPENSES AND RECEIPTS RELATED TO CHARTER OPERATIONS.—The Fund is available for expenses incurred in activating, repairing, and deactivating merchant vessels chartered under the jurisdiction of the Secretary. Receipts from charter operations of Government-owned vessels under the jurisdiction of the Secretary shall be credited to the Fund.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1562; Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(d), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 810.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50301(a)	46 App.:1241a (1st sentence).	June 2, 1951, ch. 121 (pars. under heading "Vessel Operations Revolving Fund"), 65 Stat. 59; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(128), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165; Pub. L. 108–271, §8(b), July 7, 2004, 118 Stat. 814.
50301(b)	46 App.:1241a (2d sentence words before 2d proviso).	
50301(c)	46 App.:1241a (2d sentence 2d proviso).	
50301(d)	46 App.:1241a (2d sentence last proviso).	
50301(e)	46 App.:1241a (last sentence).	
50301(f)	46 App.:1241b.	June 20, 1956, ch. 415, title I, §101 (4th complete par. on p. 319), 70

		Stat. 319; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(129), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165.
	46 App.:1241b note.	
50301(g)	46 App.:1241c.	Aug. 1, 1956, ch. 846, 70 Stat. 897; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(130), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165.

In subsection (c), the words "Director of the Office of Management and Budget" are substituted for "Bureau of the Budget" in the Act of June 2, 1951 (ch. 121, 65 Stat. 59), because of sections 101 and 102 of Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1970 (5 App. U.S.C.) and 31 U.S.C. ch. 5. The words "for the purposes of that appropriation" are omitted for clarity and for consistency in the subsection.

In subsection (d), the words "notwithstanding any other provisions of law" and "and consolidated with" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (e), in paragraph (1), the words "Comptroller General" are substituted for "Government Accountability Office" for consistency in the revised title. Paragraph (3) is substituted for "(except in cases where section 1212 of this Appendix is applicable)" because section 1212 applies to all vessels under a construction-differential subsidy contract.

In subsection (f), the words "On and after June 20, 1956", and the last proviso in the 4th complete par. at 70 Stat. 319 (46 App. U.S.C. 1241b note), are omitted as obsolete.

In subsection (g), the words "beginning July 1, 1956" and "after July 1, 1956" are omitted as obsolete.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2023—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 118–31 substituted "(50 U.S.C. 4701(a), (c), 4703(c), 4704)" for "(50 App. U.S.C. 1291(a), (c), 1293(c), 1294)".

§50302. Port development

(a) GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.—With the objective of promoting, encouraging, and developing ports and transportation facilities in connection with water commerce over which the Secretary of Transportation has jurisdiction, the Secretary, in cooperation with the Secretary of the Army, shall—

(1) investigate territorial regions and zones tributary to ports, taking into consideration the economies of transportation by rail, water, and highway and the natural direction of the flow of commerce;

(2) investigate the causes of congestion of commerce at ports and applicable remedies;

(3) investigate the subject of water terminals, including the necessary docks, warehouses, and equipment, to devise and suggest the types most appropriate for different locations and for the most expeditious and economical transfer or interchange of passengers or property between water carriers and rail carriers;

(4) consult with communities on the appropriate location and plan of construction of wharves, piers, and water terminals;

(5) investigate the practicability and advantages of harbor, river, and port improvements in connection with foreign and coastwise trade; and

(6) investigate any other matter that may tend to promote and encourage the use by vessels of ports adequate to care for the freight that naturally would pass through those ports.

(b) SUBMISSION OF FINDINGS TO SURFACE TRANSPORTATION BOARD.—After an investigation under subsection (a), if the Secretary of Transportation believes that the rates or practices of a rail carrier subject to the jurisdiction of the Surface Transportation Board are detrimental to the objective specified in subsection (a), or that new rates or practices, new or

additional port terminal facilities, or affirmative action by a rail carrier is necessary to promote that objective, the Secretary may submit findings to the Board for action the Board considers appropriate under existing law.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1564; Pub. L. 111–84, div. C, title XXXV, §3512, Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2722; Pub. L. 113–66, div. C, title XXXV, §3505(b), Dec. 26, 2013, 127 Stat. 1086; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(b), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1980; Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3504, Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4399; Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3513(a)(2), Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2240.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50302(a)	46 App.:867 (words before proviso).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §8, 41 Stat. 992; Exec. Order No. 6166, June 10, 1933, §12; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(40), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 156; Pub. L. 104–88, §321(1), Dec. 29, 1995, 109 Stat. 949.
50302(b)	46 App.:867 (proviso).	

In subsection (a), before paragraph (1), the words "Secretary of the Army" are substituted for "Secretary of War" in section 8 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 (ch. 250, 41 Stat. 992) because of section 205(a) of the National Security Act of 1947 (ch. 343, 61 Stat. 501). See 10 U.S.C. 3011 et seq. In paragraph (3), the words "apparatus" and "appliances" are omitted as unnecessary. In paragraph (4), the words "consult with" are substituted for "advise with" as being more grammatical.

In subsection (b), the words "rates or practices" are substituted for "rates, charges, rules, or regulations" for consistency in the revised title and with other titles of the United States Code.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 117–81 redesignated subsec. (c) as section 54301(a) of this title.

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(A)(i), inserted "or subsection (d)" after "this subsection" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(2)(G). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(A)(ii), inserted ", including the owners or operators of a facility, or collection of facilities at a port" after "private entities".

Subsec. (c)(5)(A). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(B)(i), inserted "or subsection (d)" after "this subsection".

Subsec. (c)(5)(B). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(B)(ii), substituted "90" for "60" and inserted "or subsection (d)" after "this subsection".

Subsec. (c)(6)(C). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(C), struck out subpar. (C). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Secretary may waive the cost-benefit analysis under subparagraph (A)(ii), and establish a simplified, alternative basis for determining whether a project is cost effective, for a small project described in paragraph (7)(B)."

Subsec. (c)(7)(B). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(D)(i), substituted "18 percent" for "25 percent" and "subsection (d). The requirement under paragraph (6)(A)(ii) shall not apply to grants made under subsection (d)." for "paragraph (3)(A) that request the lesser of—

"(i) 10 percent of the amounts made available for grants under this subsection for a fiscal year; or

"(ii) $10,000,000."

Subsec. (c)(7)(C). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(D)(ii), added subpar. (C) and struck out former subpar. (C). Text read as follows: "Not more than 10 percent of the amounts made available for grants under this subsection for a fiscal year may be used to make grants for development phase activities under paragraph (3)(B)."

Subsec. (c)(8)(A). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(E)(i), inserted "or subsection (d)" after "a grant under this

subsection" and substituted "the project for which the grant is requested" for "a project under this subsection".

Subsec. (c)(8)(B)(i). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(E)(ii)(I), substituted "under this subsection or subsection (d)" for "under this subsection".

Subsec. (c)(8)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(E)(ii)(II), inserted "for which a grant is awarded under subsection (d) or that is" after "project".

Subsec. (c)(9). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(F), inserted "for grants made under this subsection and subsection (d)" after "procedures" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(10)(A). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(G), inserted "or subsection (d)" after "this subsection" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(11)(A). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(H)(i), substituted "to make grants for port development under this section" for "under this subsection" and "to make grants for port development under this section" for "to carry out this subsection".

Subsec. (c)(11)(B)(i). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(H)(ii)(I), substituted "to make grants for port development under this section" for "for carrying out this subsection".

Subsec. (c)(11)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(H)(ii)(II), substituted "for port development under this section" for "under this subsection", and inserted "or that are returned under paragraph (9)(C)" after "the award" and "Any such amount may only be expended to award a grant under the same subsection of this section under which the original grant was made." at end.

Subsec. (c)(12). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(I)(i), inserted "and subsection (d)" after "this subsection" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(12)(A) to (D). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(1)(I)(ii), redesignated subpars. (B) to (D) as (A) to (C), respectively, and struck out former subpar. (A) which defined "appropriate committees of Congress".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 117–81 redesignated subsec. (d) as section 54301(b) of this title.

Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(3), added subsec. (d). Former subsec. (d) redesignated (e).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 117–81 redesignated subsec. (e) as section 54301(c) of this title.

Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(2), redesignated subsec. (d) as (e).

Subsec. (e)(3). Pub. L. 116–283, §3504(4), inserted "or subsection (d)" after "subsection (c)" and substituted "to any eligible applicants as described in subsection (c)(2)" for "to port authorities or commissions or their subdivisions and agents".

2019—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 116–92 added subsecs. (c) and (d) and struck out former subsec. (c), which established and set out parameters for a port infrastructure development program.

2013—Subsec. (c)(2)(D). Pub. L. 113–66 inserted "and financial assistance, including grants," after "technical assistance".

2009—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–84 added subsec. (c).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

SAVINGS CLAUSE

Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(c), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1984, provided that:

"A repeal made by subsection (b) of this section [amending this section] shall not affect amounts apportioned or allocated before the effective date of the repeal. Such apportioned or allocated funds shall continue to be subject to the requirements to which the funds were subject under—

"(1) section 50302(c) of title 46, United States Code, as in effect on the day before the date of enactment of this title [Dec. 20, 2019];

"(2) section 9008 of the SAFETEA-LU Act (Public Law 109–59; 119 Stat. 1926);

"(3) section 10205 of the SAFETEA-LU Act (Public Law 109–59; 119 Stat. 1934); and

"(4) section 3512 of the Duncan Hunter National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2009 (48 U.S.C. 1421r)."

STRATEGIC SEAPORTS

Pub. L. 113–66, div. C, title XXXV, §3505(a), Dec. 26, 2013, 127 Stat. 1086, which established priority for funding to strategic seaports in support of national security requirements, was repealed by Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(a)(1)(C), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 810. See section 54301(a)(6)(C), (12)(E) of this title.

§50303. Operating property and extending term of notes

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—The Secretary of Transportation may—

(1) operate or lease docks, wharves, piers, vessels, or real property under the Secretary's control, except that the prior consent of the Secretary of Defense for such use shall be required with respect to any vessel in the Ready Reserve Force or in the National Defense Reserve Fleet which is maintained in a retention status for the Department of Defense; and

(2) make extensions and accept renewals of—

(A) promissory notes and other evidences of indebtedness on property; and

(B) mortgages and other contracts securing the property.

(b) TERMS OF TRANSACTIONS.—A transaction under subsection (a) shall be on terms the Secretary considers necessary to carry out the purposes of this subtitle, but consistent with sound business practice.

(c) AVAILABILITY OF AMOUNTS.—Amounts received by the Secretary from a transaction under this section are available for expenditure by the Secretary as provided in this subtitle.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1564; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3512, Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 594.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50303	46 App.:1112.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §202, 49 Stat. 1986; Aug. 26, 1937, ch. 822, §1, 50 Stat. 839; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §1, 52 Stat. 953; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(60), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 158.

In subsection (a), the words "Notwithstanding any other provision of law" are omitted as unnecessary. In paragraph (1), the word "lands" is omitted as included in "real property". In paragraph (2)(A), the word "promissory" is added for clarity. The words "hereby transferred", referring to the transfer under the first sentence of section 202 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (repealed by section 12(60)(A) of Public Law 97–31), are omitted as obsolete.

Subsection (b) is substituted for "in accordance with good business methods and on such terms and conditions as he determines to effectuate the policy of this chapter" and "upon such terms and conditions as he may prescribe in accordance with sound business practice" for consistency and to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 110–181 inserted "vessels," after "piers," and substituted "control, except that the prior consent of the Secretary of Defense for such use shall be required with respect to any vessel in the Ready Reserve Force or in the National Defense Reserve Fleet which is maintained in a retention status for the Department of Defense;" for "control;".

§50304. Sale and transfer of property

(a) AUTHORITY TO SELL.—The Secretary of Transportation may sell property (other than vessels transferred under section 4 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 (ch. 250, 41 Stat. 990)) on terms the Secretary considers appropriate.

(b) TRANSFERS FROM MILITARY TO CIVILIAN CONTROL.—When the President considers it in the interest of the United States, the President may transfer to the Secretary of

Transportation possession and control of property described in the second paragraph of section 17 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 (ch. 250, 41 Stat. 994), as originally enacted, that is possessed and controlled by the Secretary of a military department.

(c) TRANSFERS FROM CIVILIAN TO MILITARY CONTROL.—When the President considers it necessary, the President by executive order may transfer to the Secretary of a military department possession and control of property described in section 17 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 (ch. 250, 41 Stat. 994), as originally enacted, that is possessed and controlled by the Secretary of Transportation. The President's order shall state the need for the transfer and the period of the need. When the President decides that the need has ended, the possession and control shall revert to the Secretary of Transportation. The property may not be sold except as provided by law.

(d) VESSEL CHARTERS TO OTHER DEPARTMENTS.—On a reimbursable or nonreimbursable basis, as determined by the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary may charter or otherwise make available a vessel under the jurisdiction of the Secretary to any other department, upon the request by the Secretary of the Department that receives the vessel. The prior consent of the Secretary of Defense for such use shall be required with respect to any vessel in the Ready Reserve Force or in the National Defense Reserve Fleet which is maintained in a retention status for the Department of Defense.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1565; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3515, Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 595.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50304(a)	46 App.:872.	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §§13, 17, 41 Stat. 993, 994; Exec. Order No. 6166, June 10, 1933, §12; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(44), (45), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 157.
50304(b)	46 App.:875 (1st par.).	
50304(c)	46 App.:875 (last par.).	

In subsections (b) and (c), the words "property described in the second paragraph of section 17 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 (ch. 250, 41 Stat. 994), as originally enacted" are substituted for "such other docks, piers, warehouses, wharves and terminal equipment and facilities or parts thereof, including all leasehold easements, rights of way, riparian rights and other rights, estates or interests therein or appurtenant thereto which were acquired . . . for military or naval purposes during the war emergency", and the words "property described in section 17 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 (ch. 250, 41 Stat. 994), as originally enacted" are substituted for "property taken over by or transferred to . . . under this section", because the first paragraph of section 17 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920, was repealed in 1981 and reference to that paragraph is necessary for a complete understanding of these provisions. The words "Secretary of a military department" are substituted for "War Department or the Navy Department" and "Department of the Army, Department of the Air Force, or Department of the Navy" for consistency with other titles of the United States Code. For redesignation of the Department of War to the Department of the Army, and for transfer of certain functions to newly established Department of the Air Force, see sections 205(a) and 207(a) and (f) of the National Security Act of 1947 (ch. 343, 61 Stat. 501, 502, 503).

In subsection (b), the words "possessed and controlled by" are substituted for "acquired by" for clarity and for consistency in the section. The word "best" is omitted as unnecessary.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 4 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920, referred to in subsec. (a), is section 4 of act June 5, 1920, ch.

250, 41 Stat. 990, which was classified to section 863 of former Title 46, Shipping, and was repealed by Pub. L. 100–710, title II, §202(4), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4753.

Section 17 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 (ch. 250, 41 Stat. 994), as originally enacted, referred to in subsecs. (b) and (c), is section 17 of act June 5, 1920, ch. 250, 41 Stat. 994, which was classified to section 875 of the former Appendix to this title, was subsequently amended, and as amended, was repealed and restated in subsecs. (b) and (c) of this section by Pub. L. 109–304, §§8(b), 19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1556, 1710.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 110–181 added subsec. (d).

§50305. Appointment of trustee or receiver and operation of vessels

(a) APPOINTMENT OF TRUSTEES AND RECEIVERS.—

(1) APPOINTMENT OF SECRETARY.—In a proceeding in a court of the United States in which a trustee or receiver may be appointed for a corporation operating a vessel of United States registry between the United States and a foreign country, on which the United States Government holds a mortgage, the court may appoint the Secretary of Transportation as the sole trustee or receiver (subject to the direction of the court) if—

(A) the court finds that the appointment will—

(i) inure to the advantage of the estate and the parties in interest; and

(ii) tend to carry out the purposes of this subtitle; and

(B) the Secretary expressly consents to the appointment.

(2) APPOINTMENT OF OTHER PERSON.—The appointment of another person as trustee or receiver without a hearing becomes effective when ratified by the Secretary, but the Secretary may demand a hearing.

(b) OPERATION OF VESSELS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—If the court is unwilling to allow the trustee or receiver to operate the vessel in foreign commerce without financial aid from the Government pending termination of the proceeding, and the Secretary certifies to the court that the continued operation of the vessel is essential to the foreign commerce of the United States and is reasonably calculated to carry out the purposes of this subtitle, the court may allow the Secretary to operate the vessel, either directly or through a managing agent or operator employed by the Secretary. The Secretary must agree to comply with terms imposed by the court sufficient to protect the parties in interest. The Secretary also must agree to pay all operating losses resulting from the operation. The operation shall be for the account of the trustee or receiver.

(2) PAYMENT OF OPERATING LOSSES AND OTHER AMOUNTS.—The Secretary has no claim against the corporation, its estate, or its assets for operating losses paid by the Secretary, but the Secretary may pay amounts for depreciation the Secretary considers reasonable and other amounts the court considers just. The payment of operating losses and the other amounts and compliance with terms imposed by the court shall be in satisfaction of any claim against the Secretary resulting from the operation of the vessel.

(3) DEEMED OPERATION BY GOVERNMENT.—A vessel operated by the Secretary under this subsection is deemed to be a vessel operated by the United States under chapter 309 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1565.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*

50305	46 App.:1247.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §908, as added Pub. L. 95–598, title III, §334, Nov. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 2680; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(134), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165.

In subsection (a)(1), before subparagraph (A), the words "Notwithstanding any other provision of law" and "bankruptcy, equity, or admiralty" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (a)(2), the words "but the Secretary may demand a hearing" are substituted for "unless the Secretary shall deem a hearing necessary" for clarity.

In subsection (b)(1), the words "subject to the orders of the court" and "comply with the terms imposed by the court" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (b)(2), the words "operating losses paid by the Secretary" are substituted for "the amount of such payments" for clarity.

In subsection (b)(3), the words "vessel operated by the United States" are substituted for "vessel of the United States" for clarity and consistency with chapter 309.

§50306. Requiring testimony and records in investigations

(a) IN GENERAL.—In conducting an investigation that the Secretary of Transportation considers necessary and proper to carry out this subtitle, the Secretary may administer oaths, take evidence, and subpoena persons to testify and produce documents relevant to the matter under investigation. Persons may be required to attend or produce documents from any place in the United States at any designated place of hearing.

(b) FEES AND MILEAGE.—Persons subpoenaed by the Secretary under subsection (a) shall be paid the same fees and mileage paid to witnesses in the courts of the United States.

(c) ENFORCEMENT OF SUBPOENAS.—If a person disobeys a subpoena issued under subsection (a), the Secretary may seek an order enforcing the subpoena from the district court of the United States for the district in which the person resides or does business. Process may be served in the judicial district in which the person resides or is found. The court may issue an order to obey the subpoena and punish a refusal to obey as a contempt of court.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1566.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50306	46 App.:1124.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §214, 49 Stat. 1991; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §3, 52 Stat. 954; Pub. L. 91–452, title II, §241, Oct. 15, 1970, 84 Stat. 930; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(72), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 159; Pub. L. 98–237, §20(a), Mar. 20, 1984, 98 Stat. 89; Pub. L. 98–595, §2, Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3132.

In subsection (a), the word "affirmations" is omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "oath" in 1 U.S.C. 1. The words "or any territory, district, or possession thereof" are omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

Subsection (c) is substituted for the source provision to eliminate unnecessary words.

§50307. Maritime environmental and technical assistance program

(a) EMERGING MARINE TECHNOLOGIES AND PRACTICES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation, acting through the Maritime Administrator, shall engage in or support the study, research, development, assessment, and deployment of emerging marine technologies and practices related to the maritime transportation system through eligible entities.

(2) COMPONENTS.—Under this subsection, the Secretary of Transportation shall identify, study, evaluate, test, demonstrate, improve, or support efforts related to, emerging marine technologies and practices to improve—

(A) environmental performance to meet United States Federal and international standards and guidelines, including—

(i) reducing air emissions, water emissions, or other ship discharges;

(ii) increasing fuel economy or the use of alternative fuels and alternative energy (including the use of shore power); or

(iii) controlling aquatic invasive species; or

(iv) reducing incidental vessel-generated underwater noise, such as noise from propeller cavitation or hydrodynamic flow; and

(B) the efficiency and safety of domestic maritime industries.

(3) COORDINATION.—Coordination with other Federal agencies or with State, local, or Tribal governments, as appropriate, under paragraph (2)(B) may include—

(A) activities that are associated with the development or approval of validation and testing regimes; and

(B) certification or validation of emerging technologies or practices that demonstrate significant environmental or other benefits to domestic maritime industries.

(4) ASSISTANCE.—The Secretary of Transportation may accept gifts, or enter into cooperative agreements, contracts, or other agreements with eligible entities to carry out the activities authorized under this subsection.

(5) GRANTS.—Subject to the availability of appropriations, the Maritime Administrator, may establish and carry out a competitive grant program to award grants to eligible entities for projects in the United States consistent with the goals of this subsection to study, evaluate, test, demonstrate, or apply technologies and practices to improve environmental performance.

(b) USES.—The results of activities conducted under this section shall be used to inform—

(1) the policy decisions of the United States related to domestic regulations; and

(2) the position of the United States on matters before the International Maritime Organization.

(c) VESSELS.—Activities carried out under a grant or cooperative agreement made under this section may be conducted on public vessels under the control of the Maritime Administration, upon approval of the Maritime Administrator.

(d) ELIGIBLE ENTITY DEFINED.—In this section, the term "eligible entity" means—

(1) a private entity, including a nonprofit organization;

(2) a public entity, including a Federal, State, regional, or local government entity, including a special district;

(3) an Indian Tribe (as defined in section 4 of the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act (25 U.S.C. 5304)) or a consortium of Indian Tribes;

(4) an institution of higher education as defined under section 102 of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1002); or

(5) a partnership or collaboration of entities described in paragraphs (1) through (4).

(e) CENTER FOR MARITIME INNOVATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall, through a cooperative agreement,

establish a United States Center for Maritime Innovation (referred to in this subsection as the "Center") to support the study, research, development, assessment, and deployment of emerging marine technologies and practices related to the maritime transportation system.

(2) SELECTION.—The Center shall be—

(A) selected through a competitive process of eligible entities, and if a private entity, a domestic entity;

(B) based in the United States with technical expertise in emerging marine technologies and practices related to the maritime transportation system; and

(C) located in close proximity to eligible entities with expertise in United States emerging marine technologies and practices, including the use of alternative fuels and the development of both vessel and shoreside infrastructure.

(3) COORDINATION.—The Secretary of Transportation shall coordinate with other agencies critical for science, research, and regulation of emerging marine technologies for the maritime sector, including the Department of Energy, the Environmental Protection Agency, the National Science Foundation, and the Coast Guard, when establishing the Center.

(4) FUNCTIONS.—The Center shall—

(A) support eligible entities regarding the development and use of clean energy and necessary infrastructure to support the deployment of clean energy on vessels of the United States;

(B) monitor and assess, on an ongoing basis, the current state of knowledge regarding emerging marine technologies in the United States;

(C) identify any significant gaps in emerging marine technologies research specific to the United States maritime industry, and seek to fill those gaps;

(D) conduct research, development, testing, and evaluation for equipment, technologies, and techniques to address the components under subsection (a)(2);

(E) provide—

(i) guidance on best available technologies;

(ii) technical analysis;

(iii) assistance with understanding complex regulatory requirements; and

(iv) documentation of best practices in the maritime industry, including training and informational webinars on solutions for the maritime industry; and

(F) work with academic and private sector response training centers and Domestic Maritime Workforce Training and Education Centers of Excellence to develop maritime strategies applicable to various segments of the United States maritime industry, including the inland, deep water, and coastal fleets.

(Added Pub. L. 112–213, title IV, §403(a), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1569; amended Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3503, Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1969; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8504(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4747; Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3514, Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2243; Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3543(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3098; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3535(l), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2315.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 118–159 amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "a State, regional, or local government or entity, including special districts;".

2022—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 117–263, §3543(a)(1), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and inserted subsec. heading.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 117–263, §3543(a)(7)(A), inserted "or support" after "engage in" and substituted "eligible entities." for "the use of public vessels under the control of the Maritime Administration or private vessels under United States registry, and through partnerships and cooperative efforts with academic, public, private, and nongovernmental entities and facilities."

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 117–263, §3543(a)(4), (7)(B), redesignated subsec. (b) as par. (2), realigned

margins, and substituted "this subsection" for "this section" and "improve, or support efforts related to," for "or improve" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 117–263, §3543(a)(4), (7)(C), redesignated subsec. (c) as par. (3), realigned margins, and substituted "with other Federal agencies or with State, local, or Tribal governments, as appropriate, under paragraph (2)(B) may include" for "under subsection (b)(2) may include" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 117–263, §3543(a)(4), (7)(D), redesignated subsec. (d) as par. (4), realigned margins, and substituted "eligible entities" for "academic, public, private, and nongovernmental entities and facilities" and "this subsection" for "subsection (a)".

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 117–263, §3543(a)(7)(E), added par. (5).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 117–263, §3543(a)(8), substituted "this section" for "subsection (b)(1)" in introductory provisions.

Pub. L. 117–263, §3543(a)(5), redesignated subsec. (e) as (b). Former subsec. (b) redesignated (a)(2).

Pub. L. 117–263, §3543(a)(2)(B), redesignated pars. (1) and (2) as subpars. (A) and (B), respectively, and realigned margins.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 117–263, §3543(a)(2)(A), redesignated subpars. (A) to (D) as cls. (i) to (iv), respectively, realigned margins, and substituted "incidental vessel-generated underwater noise, such as noise from propeller cavitation or hydrodynamic flow" for "propeller cavitation" in cl. (iv).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 117–263, §3543(a)(9), added subsec. (c). Former subsec. (c) redesignated (a)(3).

Pub. L. 117–263, §3543(a)(3), redesignated pars. (1) and (2) as subpars. (A) and (B), respectively, and realigned margins.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 117–263, §3543(a)(9), added subsec. (d). Former subsec. (d) redesignated (a)(4).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 117–263, §3543(a)(9), added subsec. (e). Former subsec. (e) redesignated (b).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 117–263, §3543(a)(6), struck out subsec. (f). Text read as follows: "Not more than three percent of the funds appropriated to carry out this section may be used for administrative purposes."

2021—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "maritime transportation" for "marine transportation".

Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 117–81 added subsec. (e) and redesignated former subsec. (e) as (f).

2019—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–92, §3503(1), substituted "The Secretary of Transportation, acting through the Maritime Administrator, shall engage in the study" for "The Secretary of Transportation may engage in the environmental study".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 116–92, §3503(2), in introductory provisions of par. (1), substituted "shall identify, study, evaluate, test, demonstrate, or improve emerging marine technologies and practices to improve—" for "may—" and "environmental performance to meet United States Federal and international standards and guidelines, including—" for "(1) identify, study, evaluate, test, demonstrate, or improve emerging marine technologies and practices that are likely to achieve environmental improvements by—", in subpar. (C) of par. (1), substituted "species; or" for "species; and", added subpar. (D) of par. (1), and, in par. (2), substituted "the efficiency and safety of domestic maritime industries." for "coordinate with the Environmental Protection Agency, the Coast Guard, and other Federal, State, local, or tribal agencies, as appropriate."

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 116–92, §3503(3), substituted "or other benefits to domestic maritime industries" for "benefits".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 116–92, §3503(4), added subsec. (e).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

DEADLINE FOR IMPLEMENTATION

Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3543(b), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3100, provided that: "The Secretary of Transportation shall establish the United States Center for Maritime Innovation under subsection (e) of section 50307 of title 46, United States Code, as added by subsection (a), by not later than one year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022]."

§50308. Maritime transportation system emergency relief program

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—The Maritime Administrator may make grants to, and enter into contracts and agreement with, eligible State and Tribal entities and eligible entities for—

(1) the costs of capital projects to protect, repair, reconstruct, or replace equipment and facilities of the United States maritime transportation system that the Maritime Administrator determines is

in danger of suffering serious physical damage, or has suffered serious physical damage, as a result of an emergency; and

(2) eligible operating costs of United States maritime transportation equipment and facilities in an area directly affected by an emergency during—

(A) the one-year period beginning on the date of a declaration of an emergency referred to in subparagraph (A) or (B) of subsection (j)(4); and

(B) an additional one-year period beginning one year after the date of an emergency referred to in subparagraph (A) or (B) of subsection (j)(4), if the Maritime Administrator, in consultation with the Administrator of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, determines there is a compelling need arising out of the emergency for which the declaration is made.

(b) ALLOCATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Maritime Administrator shall determine an appropriate method for the equitable allocation and distribution of funds under this section to eligible State and Tribal entities and eligible entities.

(2) PRIORITY.—To the extent practicable, in allocating and distributing funds under this section, the Maritime Administrator shall give priority to applications submitted by eligible State or Tribal entities.

(c) APPLICATIONS.—An applicant for assistance under this section shall submit an application for such assistance to the Maritime Administrator at such time, in such manner, and containing such information and assurances as the Maritime Administrator may require.

(d) COORDINATION OF EMERGENCY FUNDS.—

(1) USE OF FUNDS.—Funds appropriated to carry out this section shall be in addition to any other funds available under this chapter.

(2) NO EFFECT ON OTHER GOVERNMENT ACTIVITY.—The provision of funds under this section shall not affect the ability of any other agency of the Government, including the Federal Emergency Management Agency, or a State agency, a local governmental entity, organization, or person, to provide any other funds otherwise authorized by law.

(e) GRANT REQUIREMENTS.—A grant awarded under this section that is made to address an emergency referred to in subsection (j)(4)(B) shall be—

(1) subject to the terms and conditions the Maritime Administrator determines are necessary;

(2) made only for expenses that are not reimbursed under the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5121 et seq.) or any Federal, State, or local assistance program; and

(3) made only for expenses that are not reimbursed under any type of marine insurance.

(f) FEDERAL SHARE OF COSTS.—The Federal share payable of the costs for which a grant is made under this section shall be 100 percent.

(g) ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—Of the amounts available to carry out this section, not more than two percent may be used for administration of this section.

(h) QUALITY ASSURANCE.—The Maritime Administrator shall institute adequate policies, procedures, and internal controls to prevent waste, fraud, abuse, and program mismanagement for the distribution of funds under this section.

(i) REPORTS.—On an annual basis, the Maritime Administrator shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives a report on the financial assistance provided under this section during the year covered by the report. Each such report shall include, for such year, a description of such assistance provided and of how such assistance—

(1) affected the United States maritime transportation system;

(2) mitigated the financial impact of the emergency on the recipient of the assistance; and

(3) protected critical infrastructure in the United States.

(j) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

(1) ELIGIBLE STATE OR TRIBAL ENTITY.—The term "eligible State or Tribal entity" means—

(A) a port authority; or

(B) a vessel owned and operated by a State or Tribal government and facilities associated with the operation of such vessel.

(2) ELIGIBLE ENTITY.—The term "eligible entity" means a public or private entity that is created or organized in the United States or under the laws of the United States, with significant operations in and a majority of its employees based in the United States, that is engaged in—

(A) vessel construction, transportation by water, or support activities for transportation by water with an assigned North American Industry Classification System code beginning with 3366, 483, 4883, or 6113, or in the case of such construction, transportation, or support activities conducted by a fish processing vessel, such an assigned code beginning with 3117; or

(B) as determined by the Secretary of Transportation—

(i) construction or water transportation related to activities described in subparagraph (A); or

(ii) maritime education and training.

(3) ELIGIBLE OPERATING COSTS.—The term "eligible operating costs" means costs relating to—

(A) emergency response;

(B) cleaning;

(C) sanitization;

(D) janitorial services;

(E) staffing;

(F) workforce retention;

(G) paid leave;

(H) procurement and use of protective health equipment, testing, and training for employees and contractors;

(I) debt service payments;

(J) infrastructure repair projects;

(K) fuel; and

(L) other maritime transportation system operations, as determined by the Secretary of Transportation;

(4) EMERGENCY.—The term "emergency" means a natural disaster affecting a wide area (such as a flood, hurricane, tidal wave, earthquake, severe storm, or landslide) or a catastrophic failure from any external cause, that impacts the United States maritime transportation system and as a result of which—

(A) the Governor of a State has declared an emergency and the Maritime Administrator, in consultation with the Administrator of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, has concurred in the declaration;

(B) the President has declared a major disaster under section 401 of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5170);

(C) national emergency declared by the President under the National Emergencies Act (50 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.) is in effect; or

(D) a public health emergency declared pursuant to section 319 of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 247d) is in effect.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3505(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4402; amended Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(e), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 811.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(2), is Pub. L. 93–288, May 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 143, which is classified principally to chapter 68 (§5121 et seq.) of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5121 of Title 42 and Tables.

The National Emergencies Act, referred to in subsec. (j)(4)(C), is Pub. L. 94–412, Sept. 14, 1976, 90 Stat. 1255, which is classified principally to chapter 34 (§1601 et seq.) of Title 50, War and National Defense. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1601 of Title 50 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2023—Subsec. (a)(2)(B). Pub. L. 118–31, §3514(e)(1), substituted "Federal Emergency Management Agency" for "Federal Emergency Management Administration".

Subsec. (j)(4)(A). Pub. L. 118–31, §3514(e)(2), substituted "Federal Emergency Management Agency" for "Federal Emergency Management Administration".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

INCLUSION OF COVID–19 PANDEMIC PUBLIC HEALTH EMERGENCY

Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3505(c), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4405, provided that: "For purposes of section 50308 of title 46, United States Code, as added by subsection (a), the public health emergency declared pursuant to section 319 of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 247d) resulting from the COVID–19 pandemic shall be treated as an emergency."

§50309. Securing logistics information data of the United States

(a) IN GENERAL.—

(1) PROHIBITION.—A covered entity shall not use a covered logistics platform.

(2) ELIGIBILITY.—A covered entity that is found to use a covered logistics platform shall not be eligible to receive any Federal grant funding as long as the covered entity uses a covered logistics platform.

(b) GUIDANCE.—The Secretary of Transportation shall—

(1) notify covered entities of the prohibition in subsection (a) as soon as practicable, including notice of funding opportunities for grant programs; and

(2) publish on a website of the Department of Transportation, and update regularly, a list of covered logistics platforms subject to the prohibition in subsection (a).

(c) CONSULTATION.—In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall consult with—

(1) the Secretary of Defense;

(2) the Secretary of the Department in which the Coast Guard is operating;

(3) the Secretary of State; and

(4) the Secretary of Commerce.

(d) WAIVER.—The Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense, may waive the provisions of this section for a specific contract if the Secretary of Transportation—

(1) makes a determination that such waiver is vital to the national security of the United States; and

(2) submits to Congress a report justifying the use of such waiver and the importance of such waiver to the national security of the United States.

(e) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

(1) COVERED LOGISTICS PLATFORM.—The term "covered logistics platform" means a

data exchange platform that utilizes or provides, in part or whole—

(A) the national transportation logistics public information platform (commonly referred to as "LOGINK") provided by the People's Republic of China, or departments, ministries, centers, agencies, or instrumentalities of the Government of the People's Republic of China;

(B) any national transportation logistics information platform provided by or sponsored by the People's Republic of China, or a controlled commercial entity; or

(C) a similar system provided by Chinese state-affiliated entities.

(2) COVERED ENTITY.—The term "covered entity" means—

(A) a port authority that receives funding after the date of the enactment of this section under—

(i) the port infrastructure development program under section 54301;

(ii) the maritime transportation system emergency relief program under section 50308; or

(iii) any Federal grant funding program;

(B) any marine terminal operator located on property owned by a port authority as described in subparagraph (A) or at a seaport described in subparagraph (D);

(C) any agency or instrumentality of the United States Government or that of a State; or

(D) a commercial strategic seaport within the National Port Readiness Network.

(Added Pub. L. 118–31, div. A, title VIII, §825(b)(1), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 332.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of this section, referred to in subsec. (e)(2)(A), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 118–31, which was approved Dec. 22, 2023.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

COUNTERING ADVERSARY LOGISTICS INFORMATION TECHNOLOGIES

Pub. L. 118–31, div. A, title VIII, §825, Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 332, provided that:

"(a) COUNTERING THE SPREAD OF COVERED LOGISTICS PLATFORMS.—

"(1) CONTRACTING PROHIBITION.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Defense may not enter into a contract with an entity that provides data to covered logistics platforms.

"(B) APPLICABILITY.—This paragraph shall apply with respect to any contract entered into on or after the date that is 180 days after the date of the enactment of this subsection [Dec. 22, 2023].

"(2) WAIVER.—The Secretary of Defense may waive the provisions of this subsection for a specific contract if the Secretary—

"(A) makes a determination that such waiver is vital to the national security of the United States; and

"(B) submits to Congress a report justifying the use of such waiver and the importance of such waiver to the national security of the United States.

"(3) REPORT.—Not later than one year after the date of the enactment of this subsection, and annually for three subsequent years, the Secretary of Defense shall submit to Congress a report on the implementation of this subsection.

"(b) POLICY WITH RESPECT TO PORTS ACCEPTING FEDERAL GRANT MONEY.—

"(1) [Enacted this section.]

"(2) [Amended analysis of chapter 503 of this title.]

"(3) APPLICABILITY.—Section 50309 of title 46, United States Code, as added by paragraph (1), shall apply with respect to any contract entered into on or after the date that is 180 days after the date of the enactment of this subsection [Dec. 22, 2023].

"(4) REPORTING.—Not later than one year after the date of the enactment of this subsection, and annually for three subsequent years, the Secretary of Transportation shall submit to Congress a report on the implementation of section 50309 of title 46, United States Code, as added by paragraph (1).

"(c) NEGOTIATIONS WITH ALLIES AND PARTNERS.—

"(1) NEGOTIATIONS REQUIRED.—The Secretary of State shall seek to enter into negotiations with United States ally and partner countries, including those described in paragraph (3), if the President determines that ports or other entities operating within the jurisdiction of such ally or partner countries are using or are considering using a covered logistics platform.

"(2) ELEMENTS.—As part of the negotiations described in paragraph (1), the President shall—

"(A) urge governments of such ally and partner countries to require entities within the jurisdiction of such governments to terminate the use of a covered logistics platform;

"(B) describe the threats posed by a covered logistics platform to United States military and strategic interests and the implications such threats may have for the presence of members of the Armed Forces of the United States in such countries;

"(C) urge governments to use their voice, influence, and vote to align with the United States and to counter attempts by foreign adversaries at international standards-setting bodies to adopt standards that incorporate a covered logistics platform; and

"(D) attempt to establish, through multilateral entities, bilateral or multilateral negotiations, military cooperation, and other relevant engagements or agreements, a prohibition on the use of a covered logistics platform.

"(3) ALLIES AND PARTNERS DESCRIBED.—The countries and entities with which the President shall conduct negotiations described in this subsection shall include—

"(A) all countries party to a collective defense treaty or other collective defense arrangement with the United States;

"(B) India; and

"(C) Taiwan.

"(4) REPORT.—Not later than one year after the date of the enactment of this subsection [Dec. 22, 2023], the Secretary of State shall submit a report to the appropriate congressional committees describing—

"(A) the efforts made by the United States Government as of the date of the submission of the report in the negotiations described in this subsection; and

"(B) the actions taken by the governments of ally and partner countries pursuant to the negotiation priorities described in this subsection.

"(d) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

"(1) APPROPRIATE CONGRESSIONAL COMMITTEES.—The term 'appropriate congressional committees' means—

"(A) the Committees on Armed Services, Foreign Affairs, and Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives; and

"(B) the Committees on Armed Services, Foreign Relations, and Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate.

"(2) COVERED LOGISTICS PLATFORM.—The term 'covered logistics platform' has the meaning given in section 50309 of title 46, United States Code, as added by this section.

"(3) FOREIGN ADVERSARY.—The term 'foreign adversary' means—

"(A) the People's Republic of China, including the Hong Kong and Macau Special Administrative Regions;

"(B) the Republic of Cuba;

"(C) the Islamic Republic of Iran;

"(D) the Democratic People's Republic of Korea;

"(E) the Russian Federation; and

"(F) the Bolivarian Republic of Venezuela under the regime of Nicolás Maduro Moros."

CHAPTER 504—COMMITTEES

Sec.

50401. United States Committee on the Marine Transportation System.
50402. Maritime Transportation System National Advisory Committee.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3512(c)(1), Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2239, amended chapter analysis generally, reenacting heading without change and substituting items 50401 "United States Committee

on the Marine Transportation System" and 50402 "Maritime Transportation System National Advisory Committee" for former items 55501 "United States Committee on the Marine Transportation System" and 55502 "Maritime Transportation System National Advisory Committee", respectively.

Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3512(a)(2), Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2239, substituted "COMMITTEES" for "MISCELLANEOUS" in chapter heading.

Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3512(a)(1), Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2239, which directed that chapter 555 of title 46 be redesignated as chapter 504 and transferred to appear after chapter 503, was executed by transferring the analysis preceding section 55501 of this title to precede section 50401 of this title, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8332(c), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4704, added item 55502.

2014—Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §301(3), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3042, added item 55501 and struck out former items 55501 "Mobile trade fairs" and 55502 "United States Committee on the Marine Transportation System".

2012—Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §310(b), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1568, added item 55502.

§50401. United States Committee on the Marine Transportation System

(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—There is established a United States Committee on the Marine Transportation System (in this section referred to as the "Committee").

(b) PURPOSE.—The Committee shall serve as a Federal interagency coordinating committee for the purpose of—

(1) assessing the adequacy of the marine transportation system (including ports, waterways, channels, and their intermodal connections);

(2) promoting the integration of the marine transportation system with other modes of transportation and other uses of the marine environment; and

(3) coordinating, improving the coordination of, and making recommendations with regard to Federal policies that impact the marine transportation system.

(c) MEMBERSHIP.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Committee shall consist of—

(A) the Secretary of Transportation;
(B) the Secretary of Defense;
(C) the Secretary of Homeland Security;
(D) the Secretary of Commerce;
(E) the Secretary of the Treasury;
(F) the Secretary of State;
(G) the Secretary of the Interior;
(H) the Secretary of Agriculture;
(I) the Attorney General;
(J) the Secretary of Labor;
(K) the Secretary of Energy;
(L) the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency;
(M) the Chairman of the Federal Maritime Commission;
(N) the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff; and
(O) the head of any other Federal agency who a majority of the voting members of the Committee determines can further the purpose and activities of the Committee.

(2) NONVOTING MEMBERS.—The Committee may include as many nonvoting members as a majority of the voting members of the Committee determines is appropriate to further the purpose and activities of the Committee.

(d) SUPPORT.—

(1) COORDINATING BOARD.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—There is hereby established, within the Committee, a Coordinating Board. Each member of the Committee may select a senior level representative to serve on such Board. The Board shall assist the Committee in carrying out its purpose and activities.

(B) CHAIR.—There shall be a Chair of the Coordinating Board. The Chair of the Coordinating Board shall rotate each year among the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Homeland Security, and the Secretary of Commerce. The order of rotation shall be determined by a majority of the voting members of the Committee.

(2) EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR.—The Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Homeland Security, and the Secretary of Commerce, shall appoint an Executive Director of the Committee.

(3) TRANSFERS.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the head of a Federal department or agency who is a member of the Committee may—

(A) provide, on a reimbursable or nonreimbursable basis, facilities, equipment, services, personnel, and other support services to carry out the activities of the Committee; and

(B) transfer funds to another Federal department or agency in order to carry out the activities of the Committee.

(e) MARINE TRANSPORTATION SYSTEM ASSESSMENT AND STRATEGY.—Not later than one year after the date of enactment of this Act and every 5 years thereafter, the Committee shall provide to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the Committee on Environment and Public Works of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives a report that includes—

(1) steps taken to implement actions recommended in the document titled "National Strategy for the Marine Transportation System: A Framework for Action" and dated July 2008;

(2) a conditions and performance analysis of the marine transportation system;

(3) a discussion of the challenges the marine transportation system faces in meeting user demand, including estimates of investment levels required to ensure system infrastructure meets such demand;

(4) a plan, with recommended actions, for improving the marine transportation system to meet current and future challenges;

(5) steps taken to implement actions recommended in previous reports required under this subsection; and

(6) a compendium of the Federal programs engaged in the maritime transportation system.

(f) CONSULTATION.—In carrying out its purpose and activities, the Committee may consult with marine transportation system-related advisory committees, interested parties, and the public.

(Added Pub. L. 112–213, title III, §310(a), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1567, §55502; renumbered §55501, Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §301(2), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3042; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8315, Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4699; renumbered §50401 and amended, Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3512(a)(3), (4), Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2239.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of this Act, referred to in subsec. (e), probably means the date of enactment of Pub. L. 112–213, which enacted this section and was approved Dec. 20, 2012.

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 117–81, §3512(a)(4), amended section catchline generally, substituting "United States Committee on the Marine Transportation System" for "United States Committee on the Marine Transportation System".

Pub. L. 117–81, §3512(a)(3), renumbered section 55501 of this title as this section.

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 116–283, §8315(1), substituted "a conditions and performance analysis" for "an assessment of the condition".

Subsec. (e)(6). Pub. L. 116–283, §8315(2)–(4), added par. (6).

2014—Pub. L. 113–281 renumbered section 55502 of this title as this section.

§50402. Maritime Transportation System National Advisory Committee

(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—There is established a Maritime Transportation System National Advisory Committee (in this section referred to as the "Committee").

(b) FUNCTION.—The Committee shall advise the Secretary of Transportation on matters relating to the United States maritime transportation system and its seamless integration with other segments of the transportation system, including the viability of the United States Merchant Marine.

(c) MEMBERSHIP.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Committee shall consist of 27 members appointed by the Secretary of Transportation in accordance with this section and section 15109.

(2) EXPERTISE.—Each member of the Committee shall have particular expertise, knowledge, and experience in matters relating to the function of the Committee.

(3) REPRESENTATION.—Members of the Committee shall be appointed as follows:

(A) At least one member shall represent the Environmental Protection Agency.

(B) At least one member shall represent the Department of Commerce.

(C) At least one member shall represent the Corps of Engineers.

(D) At least one member shall represent the Coast Guard.

(E) At least one member shall represent Customs and Border Protection.

(F) At least one member shall represent State and local governmental entities.

(G) Additional members shall represent private sector entities that reflect a cross-section of maritime industries, including port and water stakeholders, academia, and labor.

(H) The Secretary may appoint additional representatives from other Federal agencies as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(4) RESTRICTIONS ON MEMBERS REPRESENTING FEDERAL AGENCIES.—Members of the Committee that represent Federal agencies shall not—

(A) comprise more than one-third of the total membership of the Committee or of any subcommittee therein; or

(B) serve as the chair or co-chair of the Committee or of any subcommittee therein.

(5) ADMINISTRATION.—For purposes of section 15109—

(A) the Committee shall be treated as a committee established under chapter 151; and

(B) the Secretary of Transportation shall fulfill all duties and responsibilities and have all authorities of the Secretary of Homeland Security with regard to the Committee.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8332(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4703, §55502; renumbered §50402, Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3512(a)(3), Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2239.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 117–81 renumbered section 55502 of this title as this section.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TREATMENT OF EXISTING COMMITTEE

Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8332(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4704, as amended by Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3512(b), Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2239, provided that:

"Notwithstanding any other provision of law—

"(1) an advisory committee substantially similar to the Committee established by section 50402 of title 46, United States Code, and that was in force or in effect on the day before the date of the enactment of this Act [Jan. 1, 2021], including the charter, membership, and other aspects of such advisory committee, may remain in force or in effect for the 2-year period beginning on the date of the enactment of this section; and

"(2) during such 2-year period—

"(A) requirements relating the Maritime Transportation System National Advisory Committee established by such section shall be treated as satisfied by such substantially similar advisory committee; and

"(B) the enactment of this section shall not be the basis—

"(i) to deem, find, or declare such committee, including the charter, membership, and other aspects thereof, void, not in force, or not in effect;

"(ii) to suspend the activities of such committee; or

"(iii) to bar the members of such committee from a meeting."

CHAPTER 505—OTHER GENERAL PROVISIONS

Sec.

50501. Entities deemed citizens of the United States.
50502. Applicability to receivers, trustees, successors, and assigns.
50503. Oceanographic research vessels.
50504. Sailing school vessels.
50505. Consistent approval of existing categorical exclusions.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(b)(2), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2306, added item 50505.

§50501. Entities deemed citizens of the United States

(a) IN GENERAL.—In this subtitle, a corporation, partnership, or association is deemed to be a citizen of the United States only if the controlling interest is owned by citizens of the United States. However, if the corporation, partnership, or association is operating a vessel in the coastwise trade, at least 75 percent of the interest must be owned by citizens of the United States.

(b) ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CORPORATIONS.—In this subtitle, a corporation is deemed to be a citizen of the United States only if, in addition to satisfying the requirements in subsection (a)—

(1) it is incorporated under the laws of the United States or a State;

(2) its chief executive officer, by whatever title, and the chairman of its board of directors are citizens of the United States; and

(3) no more of its directors are noncitizens than a minority of the number necessary to constitute a quorum.

(c) DETERMINATION OF CONTROLLING CORPORATE INTEREST.—The controlling interest in a corporation is owned by citizens of the United States under subsection (a) only if—

(1) title to the majority of the stock in the corporation is vested in citizens of the United States free from any trust or fiduciary obligation in favor of a person not a citizen of the United States;

(2) the majority of the voting power in the corporation is vested in citizens of the United States;

(3) there is no contract or understanding by which the majority of the voting power in the corporation may be exercised, directly or indirectly, in behalf of a person not a citizen of the United States; and

(4) there is no other means by which control of the corporation is given to or permitted to be

exercised by a person not a citizen of the United States.

(d) DETERMINATION OF 75 PERCENT CORPORATE INTEREST.—At least 75 percent of the interest in a corporation is owned by citizens of the United States under subsection (a) only if—

(1) title to at least 75 percent of the stock in the corporation is vested in citizens of the United States free from any trust or fiduciary obligation in favor of a person not a citizen of the United States;

(2) at least 75 percent of the voting power in the corporation is vested in citizens of the United States;

(3) there is no contract or understanding by which more than 25 percent of the voting power in the corporation may be exercised, directly or indirectly, in behalf of a person not a citizen of the United States; and

(4) there is no other means by which control of more than 25 percent of any interest in the corporation is given to or permitted to be exercised by a person not a citizen of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1566.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50501(a)	46 App.:802(a) (words before 3d comma and after 11th comma).	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §2(a)–(c), 39 Stat. 729; July 15, 1918, ch. 152, §2, 40 Stat. 900; June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §38, 41 Stat. 1008; Pub. L. 86–327, §3, Sept. 21, 1959, 73 Stat. 597; Pub. L. 105–383, title IV, §421, Nov. 13, 1998, 112 Stat. 3439.
	46 App.:1244(c).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §905(c), 49 Stat. 2016; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §39(b), 52 Stat. 964; Pub. L. 86–327, §4, Sept. 21, 1959, 73 Stat. 597.
50501(b)	46 App.:802(a) (words between 3d and 11th commas).	
50501(c)	46 App.:802(b).	
50501(d)	46 App.:802(c).	

In subsection (a), the words "and with respect to a corporation under subchapter VI of this chapter, all directors of the corporation are citizens of the United States" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1244(c) are omitted because part A of subchapter VI contains the operating-differential subsidy program which, under 46 App. U.S.C. 1185a, is being phased out, and part B of subchapter VI contains the Maritime Security Fleet program which is being repealed (effective October 1, 2005) and replaced by chapter 531 of title 46 as enacted by the Maritime Security Act of 2003. Thus, subchapter VI is being omitted from the revised title and will instead appear as a note under section 53101. The words "and, in the case of a corporation, partnership, or association operating a vessel on the Great Lakes, or on bays, sounds, rivers, harbors, or inland lakes of the United States the amount of interest required to be owned by a citizen of the United States shall be not less than 75 per centum" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1244(c) are omitted as covered by the 75 percent ownership requirement for operation in the coastwise trade.

In subsection (b)(1), the words "Territory, District, or possession thereof" are omitted because of the definition of "State" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

§50502. Applicability to receivers, trustees, successors, and assigns

This subtitle applies to receivers, trustees, successors, and assigns of any person to whom this

subtitle applies.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1567.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50502	46 App.:803.	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §2(d), 39 Stat. 729; June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §38, 41 Stat. 1008.

§50503. Oceanographic research vessels

An oceanographic research vessel (as defined in section 2101 of this title) is deemed not to be engaged in trade or commerce.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1567.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50503	46 App.:441. 46 App.:443. 46 App.:444.	Pub. L. 89–99, §§1, 3, 4, July 30, 1965, 79 Stat. 424.

The definitions of "oceanographic research vessel" and "scientific personnel" in 46 App. U.S.C. 441 are omitted because substantially the same definitions are already in 46 U.S.C. 2101.

The text of 46 App. U.S.C. 444 is omitted because section 10101(3) of title 46, which defines "seaman" for purposes of part G of subtitle II of title 46, already contains an exception for scientific personnel. Title 53 of the Revised Statutes, referred to [in] 46 App. U.S.C. 444, was previously codified principally in part G of subtitle II of title 46.

§50504. Sailing school vessels

(a) DEFINITIONS.—In this section, the terms "sailing school instructor", "sailing school student", and "sailing school vessel" have the meaning given those terms in section 2101 of this title.

(b) NOT SEAMEN.—A sailing school student or sailing school instructor is deemed not to be a seaman under—

(1) parts B, F, and G of subtitle II of this title; or

(2) the maritime law doctrines of maintenance and cure or warranty of seaworthiness.

(c) NOT MERCHANT VESSEL OR ENGAGED IN TRADE OR COMMERCE.—A sailing school vessel is deemed not to be—

(1) a merchant vessel under section 11101(a)–(c) of this title; or

(2) a vessel engaged in trade or commerce.

(d) EVIDENCE OF FINANCIAL RESPONSIBILITY.—The owner or charterer of a sailing school vessel shall maintain evidence of financial responsibility to meet liability for death or injury to sailing school students and sailing school instructors on a voyage on the vessel. The amount of financial responsibility shall be at least $50,000 for each student and instructor. Financial responsibility under this subsection may be evidenced by insurance or other adequate financial resources.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1568.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
50504(a)	46 App.:446c.	Pub. L. 97–322, title II, §§204, 205, 207, Oct. 15, 1982, 96 Stat. 1589.
50504(b)	46 App.:446.	
50504(c)	46 App.:446b.	Pub. L. 97–322, title II, §206, Oct. 15, 1982, 96 Stat. 1590; Pub. L. 98–557, §34(b), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2876.
50504(d)	46 App.:446a.	

In subsection (b)(1), the words "parts B, F, and G of subtitle II of this title" are substituted for "the provisions of titles 52 and 53 of the Revised Statutes of the United States and any Act amendatory thereof or supplementary thereto" because the relevant provisions of titles 52 and 53 of the Revised Statutes were previously codified in parts B, F, and G of subtitle II of title 46.

In subsection (c), references to 46 App. U.S.C. 291 and 883 are omitted for consistency with section 50503 of the revised title.

§50505. Consistent approval of existing categorical exclusions

In accordance with section 139 of title 23, the Maritime Administrator may approve any action qualifying as a categorical exclusion applicable to the Federal Highway Administration, the Federal Transit Administration, or the Federal Railroad Administration when the applicable requirements of that categorical exclusion have been met that are in compliance with the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (42 U.S.C. 4321 et seq.), and any other applicable law. Nothing in this section shall be interpreted to limit any existing authority of the Maritime Administration to approve, promulgate, or publish categorical exclusions consistent with the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (42 U.S.C. 4321 et seq.) or any other applicable law.

(Added Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(b)(1), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2306.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The National Environmental Policy Act of 1969, referred to in text, is Pub. L. 91–190, Jan. 1, 1970, 83 Stat. 852, which is classified generally to chapter 55 (§4321 et seq.) of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4321 of Title 42 and Tables.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

ESTABLISHING APPLICABLE CATEGORICAL EXCLUSIONS

Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(c), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2306, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this section [Dec. 23, 2024], the Maritime Administrator shall issue a notice in the Federal Register including the categorical exclusions in use as of the date of enactment of this section by the Maritime Administration for actions or projects the Maritime Administration oversees. The Maritime Administrator may subsequently update such categorical exclusions. Nothing in this section shall be interpreted to limit any existing authority of the Maritime Administration to approve, promulgate, or publish categorical exclusions consistent with the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (42 U.S.C. 4321 et seq.) or any other applicable law.

"(2) SURVEY AND PROPOSED RULEMAKING.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this section, the Maritime Administrator shall—

"(A) survey the use of categorical exclusions by the Maritime Administration with respect to projects initiated during or after 2015;

"(B) publish on a public website the results of that survey, which shall include a description of the types of actions categorically excluded and any additional categorical exclusions that were legally available to the Maritime Administrator from other operating administrations and the Department of the Army but were or were not adopted; and

"(C) publish a notice of proposed rulemaking to propose new Maritime Administration categorical exclusions for projects and a process by which the Maritime Administration will update the list of categorical exclusions to reflect lessons learned in grant administration and project construction.

"(3) DEFINITIONS.—In this subsection:

"(A) CATEGORICAL EXCLUSIONS.—The term 'categorical exclusion' has the meaning given the term in section 111 of the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (42 U.S.C. 4336e).

"(B) PROJECT.—The term 'project' means an eligible project as described in section 54301(a)(3) of title 46, United States Code."

PART B—MERCHANT MARINE SERVICE

CHAPTER 511—GENERAL

Sec.

51101. Policy.
51102. Definitions.
51103. General authority of Secretary of Transportation.
51104. General authority of Secretary of the Navy.

§51101. Policy

It is the policy of the United States that merchant marine vessels of the United States should be operated by highly trained and efficient citizens of the United States and that the United States Navy and the merchant marine of the United States should work closely together to promote the maximum integration of the total seapower forces of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1568.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51101	46 App.:1126–1(a) (1st sentence). 46 App.:1295 (1st sentence).	Pub. L. 94–361, title VI, §603(a) (1st sentence), July 14, 1976, 90 Stat. 929. June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1301 (1st sentence), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1997.

§51102. Definitions

In this part:

(1) ACADEMY.—The term "Academy" means the United States Merchant Marine Academy located at Kings Point, New York, and maintained under chapter 513 of this title.

(2) COST OF EDUCATION PROVIDED.—The term "cost of education provided" means the financial costs incurred by the United States Government for providing training or financial

assistance to students at the Academy and the State maritime academies, including direct financial assistance, room, board, classroom academics, and other training activities.

(3) MERCHANT MARINE OFFICER.—The term "merchant marine officer" means an individual issued a license by the Coast Guard authorizing service as—

(A) a master, mate, or pilot on a documented vessel that—

(i) is of at least 1,000 gross tons as measured under section 14502 of this title or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 of this title as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104 of this title; and

(ii) operates on the oceans or the Great Lakes; or

(B) an engineer officer on a documented vessel propelled by machinery of at least 4,000 horsepower.

(4) STATE MARITIME ACADEMY.—The term "State maritime academy" means—

(A) a State maritime academy or college sponsored by a State and assisted under chapter 515 of this title; and

(B) a regional maritime academy or college sponsored by a group of States and assisted under chapter 515 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1568.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51102	46 App.:1295a.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1302, as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1997; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(143), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §708, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3934; Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3515(a), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1792.

The definition of "Secretary" is omitted as unnecessary because the full title is used the first time the term appears in each section.

In the definition of "merchant marine office", the words "documented vessel" are substituted for "vessel . . . which is documented under the laws of the United States" because of the definition of "documented vessel" in 46 U.S.C. 2101, which is being moved to chapter 1 of the revised title.

In the definition of "State maritime academy", the words "or territory of the United States" and "or territories of the United States" are omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "State" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

§51103. General authority of Secretary of Transportation

(a) EDUCATION AND TRAINING.—The Secretary of Transportation may provide for the education and training of citizens of the United States for the safe and efficient operation of the merchant marine of the United States at all times, including operation as a naval and military auxiliary in time of war or national emergency.

(b) PROPERTY FOR INSTRUCTIONAL PURPOSES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may cooperate with and assist the institutions named in paragraph (2) by making vessels, fuel, shipboard equipment, and other marine equipment, owned by the United States Government and determined by the entity having custody and control of such property to be excess or surplus, available to those institutions for instructional purposes, by gift,

loan, sale, lease, or charter on terms and conditions the Secretary considers appropriate. The consent of the Secretary of the Navy shall be obtained with respect to any property from National Defense Reserve Fleet vessels, if such vessels are either Ready Reserve Force vessels or other National Defense Reserve Fleet vessels determined to be of sufficient value to the Navy to warrant their further preservation and retention.

(2) INSTITUTIONS.—The institutions referred to in paragraph (1) are—

(A) the United States Merchant Marine Academy;

(B) a State maritime academy; and

(C) a nonprofit training institution or a training institution that is an instrumentality of a State, the District of Columbia, a territory or possession of the United States, or a unit of local government thereof jointly approved by the Secretary of Transportation and the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating as offering training courses that meet Federal regulations for maritime training.

(c) ASSISTANCE FROM OTHER AGENCIES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation may secure directly from an agency, on a reimbursable basis, information, facilities, and equipment necessary to carry out this part.

(2) DETAILING PERSONNEL.—At the request of the Secretary, the head of an agency (including a military department) may detail, on a reimbursable basis, personnel from the agency to the Secretary to assist in carrying out this part.

(d) ACADEMY PERSONNEL.—To carry out this part, the Secretary may—

(1) employ an individual as a professor, lecturer, or instructor at the Academy, without regard to the provisions of title 5 governing appointments in the competitive service; and

(2) pay the individual without regard to chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5.

(e) DONATION FOR HISTORICAL PURPOSES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may convey the right, title, and interest of the United States Government in any property administered by the Maritime Administration, except real estate or vessels, if—

(A) the Secretary determines that such property is not needed by the Maritime Administration; and

(B) the recipient—

(i) is a nonprofit organization, a State, or a political subdivision of a State;

(ii) agrees to hold the Government harmless for any claims arising from exposure to hazardous materials, including asbestos, polychlorinated biphenyls, or lead paint, after conveyance of the property;

(iii) provides a description and explanation of the intended use of the property to the Secretary for approval;

(iv) has provided to the Secretary proof, as determined by the Secretary, of resources sufficient to accomplish the intended use provided under clause (iii) and to maintain the property;

(v) agrees that when the recipient no longer requires the property, the recipient shall—

(I) return the property to the Secretary, at the recipient's expense and in the same condition as received except for ordinary wear and tear; or

(II) subject to the approval of the Secretary, retain, sell, or otherwise dispose of the property in a manner consistent with applicable law; and

(vi) agrees to any additional terms the Secretary considers appropriate.

(2) REVERSION.—The Secretary shall include in any conveyance under this subsection terms under which all right, title, and interest conveyed by the Secretary shall revert to the Government if the Secretary determines the property has been used other than as approved by the Secretary

under paragraph (1)(B)(iii).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1569; Pub. L. 112–213, title IV, §404, Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1570; Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §302, Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3042.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51103(a)	46 App.:1295 (last sentence cl. (1)).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1301 (last sentence cl. (1)), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1997; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(142)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166.
51103(b)	46 App.:1295g(b).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1308(b)–(d), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2007.
51103(c)	46 App.:1295g(c).	
51103(d)	46 App.:1295g(d).	

In subsection (c), the word "department" is omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "agency" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2014—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 113–281 added subsec. (e).

2012—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 112–213, §404(1), struck out "Surplus" before "Property" in heading.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 112–213, §404(2), amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Secretary may cooperate with and assist the institutions named in paragraph (2) by making vessels, shipboard equipment, and other marine equipment, owned by the United States Government and determined to be excess or surplus, available to those institutions for instructional purposes, by gift, loan, sale, lease, or charter on terms the Secretary considers appropriate."

Subsec. (b)(2)(C). Pub. L. 112–213, §404(3), inserted "or a training institution that is an instrumentality of a State, the District of Columbia, a territory or possession of the United States, or a unit of local government thereof" after "a nonprofit training institution".

§51104. General authority of Secretary of the Navy

The Secretary of the Navy, in cooperation with the Maritime Administrator and the head of each State maritime academy, shall ensure that—

(1) the training of future merchant marine officers at the United States Merchant Marine Academy and at State maritime academies includes programs for naval science training in the operation of merchant vessels as a naval and military auxiliary; and

(2) naval officer training programs for future officers, insofar as possible, are maintained at designated maritime academies consistent with Navy standards and needs.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1570.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51104	46 App.:1126–1(a) (last	Pub. L. 94–361, title VI, §603(a) (last

	sentence), (b).	sentence), (b), July 14, 1976, 90 Stat. 929; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(76), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 160.
	46 App.:1295 (last sentence cl. (2)).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1301 (last sentence cl. (2)), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1997; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(142)(B), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166.

CHAPTER 513—UNITED STATES MERCHANT MARINE ACADEMY

Sec.

51301. Maintenance of the Academy.
51302. Nomination and competitive appointment of cadets.
51302a. Nomination in event of death, resignation, or expulsion from office of Senator otherwise authorized to nominate.
51303. Non-competitive appointments.
51304. Additional appointments from particular areas.
51305. Prohibited basis for appointment.
51306. Cadet commitment agreements.
51307. Places of training.
51308. Uniforms, textbooks, and transportation allowances.
51309. Academic degree.
51310. Deferment of service obligation under cadet commitment agreements.
51311. Midshipman status in the Navy Reserve.
51312. Board of Visitors.
51313. Advisory Board.
51314. Limitation on charges and fees for attendance.
51315. Gifts to the Merchant Marine Academy.
51316. Temporary appointments to the Academy.
51317. Adjunct professors.
51318. Policy on sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking.
51319. Sexual assault response coordinators and sexual assault victim advocates.
51320. Acceptance of guarantees with gifts for major projects.
51321. Grants for scientific and educational research.
51322. Protection of cadets from sexual assault onboard vessels.
51323. United States Merchant Marine Academy Advisory Council.
51324. Unfilled vacancies.
51325. Sexual assault and sexual harassment prevention information management system.
51326. Student advisory board at the United States Merchant Marine Academy.
51327. Sexual Assault Advisory Council.
51328. Student support.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3537(b), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2316, added item 51302a.

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(c), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3087, added items 51325 to 51328.

2021—Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3501(c)(2), Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2238, added items 51323 and 51324.

2017—Pub. L. 115–91, div. C. title XXXV, §§3510(b), 3512(b), 3514(d)(2), 3516(b), Dec. 12, 2017, 131

Stat. 1918, 1919, 1923, 1928, added items 51318 and 51320 to 51322 and struck out former item 51318 "Policy on sexual harassment and sexual assault".

2016—Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §§3510(b), 3511(b), Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2785, 2786, added items 51318 and 51319.

2011—Pub. L. 111–383, div. A, title X, §1075(d)(25), Jan. 7, 2011, 124 Stat. 4374, amended Pub. L. 111–84, §3503(b)(1). See 2009 Amendment note below.

2009—Pub. L. 111–84, div. C, title XXXV, §3503(b)(1), Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2719, as amended by Pub. L. 111–383, div. A, title X, §1075(d)(25), Jan. 7, 2011, 124 Stat. 4374, added item 51317.

2008—Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(g)(2), (h)(2), Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4765, added items 51315 and 51316.

Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3523(a)(1), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598, substituted "Navy Reserve" for "Naval Reserve" in item 51311.

§51301. Maintenance of the Academy

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall maintain the United States Merchant Marine Academy as an institution of higher education to provide instruction to individuals to prepare them for service in the merchant marine of the United States, to conduct research with respect to maritime-related matters, and to provide such other appropriate academic support, assistance, training, and activities in accordance with the provisions of this chapter as the Secretary may authorize.

(b) RECRUITMENT.—The Secretary of Transportation may, subject to the availability of appropriations, expend funds available for United States Merchant Marine Academy operating expenses for recruiting activities, including advertising, in order to obtain recruits for the Academy and cadet applicants.

(c) SUPERINTENDENT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The immediate command of the United States Merchant Marine Academy shall be in the Superintendent of the Academy, subject to the direction of the Maritime Administrator under the general supervision of the Secretary of Transportation.

(2) APPOINTMENT.—The Secretary of Transportation shall appoint as the Superintendent—

(A) an individual who has—

(i) attained the rank of Captain, Chief Mate, or Chief Engineer in the merchant marine of the United States, or a general or flag officer rank in the Navy, Army, Air Force, Marine Corps, Coast Guard, or National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration; and

(ii) served at sea in any rank;

(B) an individual who has—

(i)(I) served at sea in the merchant marine, Navy, Army, Air Force, Marine Corps, Coast Guard, or National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration; or

(II) held a valid Coast Guard merchant mariner credential; and

(ii) demonstrated exemplary leadership in the education of individuals in the Armed Forces or United States merchant marine; or

(C) if a qualified individual described in subparagraph (A) or (B) does not apply for the position, an individual who has—

(i) attained the grade of captain or above in the merchant marine, Navy, Coast Guard, or National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration or colonel or above in the Army, Air Force, or Marine Corps; and

(ii) served at sea in any grade.

(3) RULE OF CONSTRUCTION.—Notwithstanding paragraph (2), the Secretary of Transportation may appoint an individual who is the best qualified candidate, even if such individual does not fully meet the criteria described in paragraph (2).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1570; Pub. L. 111–383, div. C, title XXXV, §3504, Jan. 7, 2011, 124 Stat. 4518; Pub. L. 112–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3503, Dec. 31, 2011, 125 Stat. 1716; Pub. L. 112–239, div. A, title X, §1076(i), Jan. 2, 2013, 126 Stat. 1955; Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(a), Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2777; Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3503(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4399.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51301	46 App.:1295b(a).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1303(a), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1998.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (c)(2)(A)(i). Pub. L. 116–283, §3503(b)(1), inserted "the rank of Captain, Chief Mate, or Chief Engineer in the merchant marine of the United States, or" after "attained".

Subsec. (c)(2)(B)(i)(I), (C)(i). Pub. L. 116–283, §3503(b)(2), inserted "merchant marine," before "Navy".

2016—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 114–328 added subsec. (c).

2013—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 112–239 substituted "IN GENERAL" for "IN GENERAL" in heading.

2011—Pub. L. 112–81 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted heading, and added subsec. (b).

Pub. L. 111–383 inserted "as an institution of higher education" after "Academy" and substituted "States, to conduct research with respect to maritime-related matters, and to provide such other appropriate academic support, assistance, training, and activities in accordance with the provisions of this chapter as the Secretary may authorize." for "States."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

SAVINGS CLAUSE

Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(b), Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2777, provided that: "Nothing in this section [amending this section] may be construed to require any change to the current leadership of the United States Merchant Marine Academy."

UNITED STATES MERCHANT MARINE ACADEMY AND COAST GUARD ACADEMY MATTERS; MARITIME ADMINISTRATION REQUIREMENTS

Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3533(a), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 828, as amended by Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXII, §7201(i)(3), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1686, provided that:

"(a) TRAINING COURSE ON WORKINGS OF CONGRESS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this section [Dec. 22, 2023], the Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Maritime Administrator, the Superintendent of the United States Merchant Marine Academy, and such other individuals and organizations as the Secretary of Transportation considers appropriate, shall develop a training course on the workings of Congress and offer that training course at least once each year. This course shall be similar in design to the training course required under section 333 of title 14, United States Code, as practicable.

"(2) COURSE SUBJECT MATTER.—The training course required by paragraph (1) shall provide an overview and introduction to Congress and the Federal legislative process, including—

"(A) the history and structure of Congress and the committee systems of the Senate and the House of Representatives, including the functions and responsibilities of the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives;

"(B) the documents produced by Congress, including bills, resolutions, committee reports, and conference reports, and the purposes and functions of those documents;

"(C) the legislative processes and rules of the Senate and the House of Representatives, including

similarities and differences between the processes and rules of each chamber, including—

"(i) the congressional budget process;

"(ii) the congressional authorization and appropriations processes;

"(iii) the Senate advice and consent process for Presidential nominees; and

"(iv) the Senate advice and consent process for treaty ratification;

"(D) the roles of Members of Congress and congressional staff in the legislative process; and

"(E) the concept and underlying purposes of congressional oversight within the governance framework of separation of powers of the United States.

"(3) LECTURERS AND PANELISTS.—

"(A) OUTSIDE EXPERTS.—The Secretary of Transportation shall ensure that not less than 60 percent of the lecturers, panelists, and other individuals providing education and instruction as part of the training course required by this subsection are bipartisan subject matter experts on Congress and the Federal legislative process who are not employed by the executive branch of the Federal Government.

"(B) AUTHORITY TO ACCEPT PRO BONO SERVICES.—In satisfying the requirement under subparagraph (A), the Secretary of Transportation shall seek, and may accept, educational and instructional services of lecturers, panelists, and other individuals and organizations provided to the Department of Transportation on a pro bono basis.

"(4) COMPLETION OF REQUIRED TRAINING.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 60 days after the date on which the Secretary of Transportation completes the development of the training course described in this section, and annually thereafter while serving in applicable positions, the covered individuals described in subparagraph (B) shall complete the training course described in this subsection.

"(B) COVERED INDIVIDUALS.—The covered individuals in this subsection are the following:

"(i) The Administrator of the Maritime Administration and the Deputy Administrator of the Maritime Administration.

"(ii) Any official of the Maritime Administration whose appointment is subject to the advice and consent of the Senate and Maritime Administration employees that are serving in a Senior Executive Service position (as defined in section 3132(a) of title 5, United States Code).

"(iii) Any Maritime Administration employees whose duties consist of engagement with congressional, governmental, or public affairs, who are appointed or assigned to a billet in the National Capital Region on the date on which the Secretary of Transportation completes the development of the training course described in this section.

"(iv) The Superintendent, Deputy Superintendent, Provost, Commandant of Midshipmen, Counsel, and Director of Public Affairs of the United States Merchant Marine Academy.

"(C) NEW OFFICIALS AND EMPLOYEES.—Any Maritime Administration official or employee or United States Merchant Marine Academy official or employee who is a covered individual described in subparagraph (B) who is newly appointed, newly employed in the National Capital Region, or newly employed by the United States Merchant Marine Academy after the date on which the Secretary of Transportation completes the development of the training course described in this subsection, shall complete a training course that meets the requirements of this subsection not later than 60 days after reporting for duty, and annually thereafter, while serving in applicable positions.

"(b) GOVERNMENT ACCOUNTABILITY OFFICE REPORT ON MARITIME ADMINISTRATION STAFFING REQUIREMENTS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than six months after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 2023], the Comptroller General of the United States shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives, a report that includes an analysis of the staffing requirements for effectively executing the mission of the Maritime Administration and an identification of any existing gaps that could impede its operations.

"(2) CONTENTS.—The report under paragraph (1) shall include—

"(A) an evaluation of the personnel requirements for the successful execution of the mission of the Maritime Administration, including such requirements for—

"(i) those offices that deal with infrastructure, shipbuilding, or student safety;

"(ii) those offices that have significant delays in meeting constituent needs, including offices involved in the processing of permits and grants, or which preform a communication or outreach function to the public, constituents, or Congress (including the Office of Public Affairs of the Maritime Administration);

"(iii) the United States Merchant Marine Academy; and

"(iv) other activities carried out by the Maritime Administration;

"(B) a thorough analysis of any deficiencies or inadequacies in staffing levels, at the time the report is submitted, that could hinder the efficient functioning of the Maritime Administration; and

"(C) recommendations for integrating the findings of the report into the policies and planning processes of the Maritime Administration, with the aim of addressing the identified gaps and enhancing the overall effectiveness of the Maritime Administration.

"(c) COAST GUARD ACADEMY IMPROVEMENT BRIEFING.—Not later than 30 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 2023], the Commandant of the Coast Guard shall provide to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a briefing on—

"(1) a plan, which shall include timelines and cost estimates, to—

"(A) remediate asbestos, lead, and mold from the Chase Hall of the Coast Guard Academy;

"(B) house not more than two students to a room in Chase Hall; and

"(C) upgrade electric outlet availability and storage space in student rooms at Chase Hall; and

"(2) the increased student housing capacity necessary to allow the Coast Guard to put through sufficient officers to eliminate the current portion of the officer shortfall due to space constraints at the Coast Guard Academy, including the Officer Candidate School and direct Commission Officer Program housed at the Academy."

REPORTS ON MATTERS RELATING TO THE UNITED STATES MERCHANT MARINE ACADEMY

Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3515, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3069, provided that:

"(a) REPORT ON IMPLEMENTATION OF NAPA RECOMMENDATIONS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—In accordance with paragraph (3), the Secretary of Transportation shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees reports on the status of the implementation of the recommendations specified in paragraph (4).

"(2) ELEMENTS.—Each report under paragraph (1) shall include the following:

"(A) A description of the status of the implementation of each recommendation specified in paragraph (4), including whether the Secretary—

"(i) concurs with the recommendation;

"(ii) partially concurs with the recommendation;

"(iii) does not concur with the recommendation; or

"(iv) determines the recommendation is not applicable to the Department of Transportation.

"(B) An explanation of—

"(i) with respect to a recommendation with which the Secretary concurs, the actions the Secretary intends to take to implement such recommendation, including—

"(I) any rules, regulations, policies, or other guidance that have been issued, revised, changed, or cancelled as a result of the implementation of the recommendation; and

"(II) any impediments to the implementation of the recommendation;

"(ii) with respect to a recommendation with which the Secretary partially concurs, the actions the Secretary intends to take to implement the portion of such recommendation with which the Secretary concurs, including—

"(I) intermediate actions, milestone dates, and the expected completion date for the implementation of the portion of the recommendation; and

"(II) any rules, regulations, policies, or other guidance that are expected to be issued, revised, changed, or cancelled as a result of the implementation of the portion of the recommendation;

"(iii) with respect to a recommendation with which the Secretary does not concur, an explanation of why the Secretary does not concur with such recommendation;

"(iv) with respect to a recommendation that the Secretary determines is not applicable to the Department of Transportation, an explanation of the reasons for the determination; and

"(v) any statutory changes that may be necessary—

"(I) to fully implement the recommendations specified in paragraph (4) with which the Secretary concurs; or

"(II) to partially implement the recommendations specified in such paragraph with which the Secretary partially concurs.

"(C) A visual depiction of the status of the completion of the recommendations specified in paragraph (4).

"(3) TIMING OF REPORTS.—The Secretary of Transportation shall submit an initial report under

paragraph (1) not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022]. Following the submittal of the initial report, the Secretary shall submit updated versions of the report not less frequently than once every 180 days until the date on which the Secretary submits to the appropriate congressional committees a certification that each recommendation specified in paragraph (4)—

"(A) with which the Secretary concurs—

"(i) has been fully implemented; or

"(ii) cannot be fully implemented, including an explanation of why; and

"(B) with which the Secretary partially concurs—

"(i) has been partially implemented; or

"(ii) cannot be partially implemented, including an explanation of why.

"(4) RECOMMENDATIONS SPECIFIED.—The recommendations specified in this paragraph are the recommendations set forth in the report prepared by a panel of the National Academy of Public Administration pursuant to section 3513 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2020 (Public Law 116–92; 133 Stat. 1979) titled 'Organizational Assessment of the U.S. Merchant Marine Academy: A Path Forward', dated November 2021.

"(b) REPORT ON IMPLEMENTATION OF POLICY RELATING TO SEXUAL HARASSMENT AND OTHER MATTERS.—Not later than one year after the date of the enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees a report on the status of the implementation of the policy on sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking at the United States Merchant Marine Academy, as required under section 51318 of title 46, United States Code.

"(c) INSPECTOR GENERAL AUDIT.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this Act, the Inspector General of the Department of Transportation shall initiate an audit of the actions taken by the Maritime Administration to address only the following recommendations identified by a National Academy of Public Administration panel in the November 2021 report titled 'Organizational Assessment of the United States Merchant Marine Academy: A Path Forward':

"(A) Recommendations 4.1 through 4.3.

"(B) Recommendations 4.7 through 4.11.

"(C) Recommendations 5.1 through 5.4.

"(D) Recommendations 5.6, 5.7, 5.11, 5.14, 5.15, 5.16, 6.6, and 6.7.

"(E) Recommendations 6.1 through 6.4.

"(2) REPORT.—After the completion of the audit required under paragraph (1), the Inspector General shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees, and make publicly available, a report containing the results of the audit.

"(d) IMPLEMENTATION OF RECOMMENDATIONS FROM THE NATIONAL ACADEMY OF PUBLIC ADMINISTRATION.—

"(1) AGREEMENT FOR STUDY BY NATIONAL ACADEMY OF PUBLIC ADMINISTRATION.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 30 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall seek to enter into an agreement with the National Academy of Public Administration (referred to in this section as the 'Academy') under which the Academy shall provide support for—

"(i) prioritizing and addressing the recommendations referred to subsection (c)(1) and establishing a process for prioritizing other recommendations in the future;

"(ii) the development of—

"(I) long-term processes and a timeframe for long-term process improvements; and

"(II) corrective actions and best practice criteria that can be implemented in the medium- and near-term;

"(iii) the establishment of a clear assignment of responsibility for the implementation of each recommendation referred to in subsection (c)(1), and a strategy for assigning other recommendations in the future; and

"(iv) a performance measurement system, including data collection and tracking and evaluating progress toward goals of the Merchant Marine Academy.

"(B) REPORT OF PROGRESS.—Not later than one year after the date of an agreement entered into pursuant to subparagraph (A), the Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Administrator of the Merchant Marine Academy, shall submit to the Maritime Administrator and the appropriate congressional committees a report on the progress made in implementing the recommendations referred to in subsection (c)(1).

"(2) PRIORITIZATION AND IMPLEMENTATION PLAN.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—Not later than one year after the date of enactment of this Act, the Maritime Administrator shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives a prioritization and implementation plan to assess, prioritize, and address the recommendations identified by the National Academy of Public Administration panel in the November 2021 report titled 'Organizational Assessment of the United States Merchant Marine Academy: A Path Forward' that Superintendent of the Merchant Marine Academy determines are relevant to the Maritime Administration, including the recommendations referred to in subsection (c)(1). The prioritization and implementation plan shall—

"(i) be developed using the strategies, processes, and systems developed pursuant to an agreement entered into under paragraph (1);

"(ii) include estimated timelines and cost estimates for the implementation of priority goals;

"(iii) include summaries of stakeholder and interagency engagement used to assess goals and timelines;

"(iv) with respect to any recommendation the Superintendent determines is not relevant to the Maritime Administration, include an explanation for the determination; and

"(v) submitted to the Inspector General of the Department of Transportation and the appropriate congressional committees and made publicly available.

"(B) AUDIT AND REPORT.—The Inspector General of the Department of Transportation shall—

"(i) not later than 180 days after the date on which the prioritization and implementation plan described in subparagraph (A) is made publicly available, initiate an audit of the actions taken by the Maritime Administration to address such plan;

"(ii) monitor the actions taken by the Maritime Administration to implement recommendations contained in the audit required under clause (i) and in prior audits of the Maritime Administration's implementation of National Academy of Public Administration recommendations and periodically initiate subsequent audits of the continued actions taken by the Maritime Administration to address the prioritization and implementation plan, as the Inspector General determines necessary; and

"(iii) after the completion of the audit required under clause (i), submit to the Administrator of the Maritime Administration and the appropriate congressional committees, and make publicly available, a report containing the results of the audit.

"(C) REPORT OF PROGRESS.—Not later than 180 days after the date on which the report required under clause (ii) is made publicly available, and annually thereafter, the Administrator of the Maritime Administration shall submit to the Inspector General of the Department of Transportation and the appropriate congressional committees a report that includes a description of—

"(i) the actions planned to be taken by the Maritime Administration, and estimated timeframes, to implement any open or unresolved recommendation—

"(I) included in the report of the Inspector General required under subsection (B)(iii); or

"(II) referred to in subsection (c)(1); and

"(ii) an identification of any recommendation referred to in clause (i) for which the Maritime Administration failed to meet a target action date, or for which the Maritime Administration requested an extension of time, and the reasons why such an extension was necessary.

"(3) AGREEMENT FOR PLAN ON CAPITAL IMPROVEMENTS.—Not later than 90 days after the date of the enactment of this Act, the Maritime Administrator shall seek to enter into an agreement with a Federal construction agent for the development of a plan to execute capital improvements at the United States Merchant Marine Academy.

"(e) APPROPRIATE CONGRESSIONAL COMMITTEES.—In this section, the term 'appropriate congressional committees' means—

"(1) the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate;

"(2) the Subcommittee on Transportation, Housing and Urban Development, and Related Agencies of the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate;

"(3) the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives;

"(4) the Subcommittee on Transportation, Housing and Urban Development, and Related Agencies of the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives; and

"(5) the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives."

CONCURRENT JURISDICTION

Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3506, Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2309, provided that: "Notwithstanding any other law, the Secretary of Transportation may relinquish, at the Secretary's discretion, to the State of New York, such measure of legislative jurisdiction over the lands constituting the United States Merchant Marine Academy in King's Point, New York, as is necessary to establish concurrent jurisdiction between the Federal Government and the State of New York. Such partial relinquishment of legislative jurisdiction shall be accomplished—

"(1) by filing with the Governor of New York a notice of relinquishment to take effect upon acceptance thereof; or

"(2) as the laws of that State may provide."

CLASS PROFILES

Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3516(b), Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2789, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than August 31 of each year, the Superintendent of the United States Merchant Marine Academy shall post on the Academy's public website a profile of each class at the Academy.

"(2) CONTENTS.—Each profile posted under paragraph (1) shall include, for the incoming class of the Academy and for the 4 classes that preceded that class at the Academy, the number and percentage of students by—

"(A) State;

"(B) country;

"(C) gender;

"(D) race and ethnicity; and

"(E) prior military service."

§51302. Nomination and competitive appointment of cadets

(a) REQUIREMENTS.—An individual may be nominated for a competitive appointment as a cadet at the United States Merchant Marine Academy only if the individual—

(1) is a citizen or national of the United States; and

(2) meets the minimum requirements that the Secretary of Transportation shall establish.

(b) NOMINATORS.—Nominations for competitive appointments for the positions allocated under subsection (c) may be made as follows:

(1) A Senator may nominate residents of the State represented by that Senator.

(2) A Member of the House of Representatives may nominate residents of the State in which the congressional district represented by that Member is located.

(3) A Delegate to the House of Representatives from the District of Columbia, the Virgin Islands, Guam, the Northern Mariana Islands, or American Samoa may nominate residents of the jurisdiction represented by that Delegate.

(4) The Resident Commissioner to the United States from Puerto Rico may nominate residents of Puerto Rico.

(5) The Panama Canal Commission may nominate—

(A) residents, or sons or daughters of residents, of an area or installation in Panama and made available to the United States under the Panama Canal Treaty of 1977, the agreements relating to and implementing that Treaty, signed September 7, 1977, and the Agreement Between the United States of America and the Republic of Panama Concerning Air Traffic Control and Related Services, concluded January 8, 1979; and

(B) sons or daughters of personnel of the United States Government and the Panama Canal Commission residing in Panama.

(c) ALLOCATION OF POSITIONS.—Positions for competitive appointments shall be allocated each year as follows:

(1) Positions shall be allocated for residents of each State nominated by the Members of Congress from that State in proportion to the representation in Congress from that State.

(2) Four positions shall be allocated for residents of the District of Columbia nominated by the Delegate to the House of Representatives from the District of Columbia.

(3) One position each shall be allocated for residents of the Virgin Islands, Guam, and American Samoa nominated by the Delegates to the House of Representatives from the Virgin Islands, Guam, and American Samoa, respectively.

(4) One position shall be allocated for a resident of Puerto Rico nominated by the Resident Commissioner to the United States from Puerto Rico.

(5) One position shall be allocated for a resident of the Northern Mariana Islands nominated by the Governor of the Northern Mariana Islands.

(6) Two positions shall be allocated for individuals nominated by the Panama Canal Commission.

(d) COMPETITIVE SYSTEM FOR APPOINTMENT.—

(1) ESTABLISHMENT OF SYSTEM.—The Secretary shall establish a competitive system for selecting individuals nominated under subsection (b) to fill the positions allocated under subsection (c). The system must determine the relative merit of each individual based on competitive examinations, an assessment of the individual's academic background, and other effective indicators of motivation and probability of successful completion of training at the Academy.

(2) APPOINTMENTS BY JURISDICTION.—The Secretary shall appoint individuals to fill the positions allocated under subsection (c) for each jurisdiction in the order of merit of the individuals nominated from that jurisdiction.

(3) REMAINING UNFILLED POSITIONS.—If positions remain unfilled after the appointments are made under paragraph (2), the Secretary shall appoint individuals to fill the positions in the order of merit of the remaining individuals nominated from all jurisdictions.

(e) CONGRESSIONAL NOTIFICATION IN ADVANCE OF APPOINTMENTS.—When a nominee of a Senator, Representative, or Delegate is selected for appointment as a cadet, the Senator, Representative, or Delegate shall be notified at least 48 hours before the official notification or announcement of the appointment is made.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1570; Pub. L. 111–383, div. C, title XXXV, §3503, Jan. 7, 2011, 124 Stat. 4518; Pub. L. 114–328, div. A, title V, §566(d), Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2139.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51302(a)	46 App.:1295b(b) (1)(A).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1303(b)(1)–(3)(A), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1998; Pub. L. 101–595, title VII, §708(1), (2), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2995.
	46 App.:1295b(b)(2) (A) (related to nominations).	
51302(b)	46 App.:1295b(b)(1) (less cl. (A)).	
	46 App.:1295b(b)(3) (A)(ii) (related to who may be nominated).	
51302(c)	46 App.:1295b(b)(3) (A) (less (ii) (related to who may be nominated)).	
51302(d)	46 App.:1295b(b)(2) (A) (related	

	to selection), (B), (3)(B), (C).

In subsection (b)(6)(A), the words "residents, or sons or daughters of residents, of an area or installation" are substituted for "a resident of the area or installation" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1295b(b)(1)(B) and "sons or daughters of residents of any area or installation" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1295b(b)(3)(A)(ii) to resolve an inconsistency in the source law and to conform to the probable intent of Congress. Although 46 App. U.S.C. 1295b(b)(1)(B) provides that a nominee must be a resident, 46 App. U.S.C. 1295b(b)(3)(A)(ii) allocates positions only for sons or daughters of residents.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 114–328 added subsec. (e).

2011—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 111–383, §3503(1), inserted "the Northern Mariana Islands," after "Guam,".

Subsec. (b)(5), (6). Pub. L. 111–383, §3503(2), redesignated par. (6) as (5) and struck out former par. (5) which read as follows: "The Governor of the Northern Mariana Islands may nominate residents of the Northern Mariana Islands."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2016 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 114–328 applicable with respect to the appointment of cadets and midshipmen to the United States Military Academy, the United States Naval Academy, the United States Air Force Academy, and the United States Merchant Marine Academy for classes entering these service academies after Jan. 1, 2018, see section 566(e) of Pub. L. 114–328, set out as a note under section 7442 of Title 10, Armed Forces.

§51302a. Nomination in event of death, resignation, or expulsion from office of Senator otherwise authorized to nominate

(a) SENATORS.—In the event a Senator does not submit nominations for cadets for an academic year in accordance with section 51302(b)(1) of this title due to death, resignation from office, or expulsion from office, and the date of the swearing-in of the Senator's successor as Senator occurs after the date of the deadline for submittal of nominations for cadets for the academic year, the nominations for cadets otherwise authorized to be made by the Senator pursuant to such section shall be made instead by the other Senator from the State concerned.

(b) CONSTRUCTION OF AUTHORITY.—Any nomination for cadets made by a Senator pursuant to this section is not a reallocation of a nomination. Such nominations are made in lieu of a Senator not submitting nominations for cadets for an academic year in accordance with section 51302 of this title due to death, resignation from office, or expulsion from office and the date of the swearing-in of the Senator's successor occurs after the date of the deadline for submittal of nominations for cadets for the academic year.

(Added Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3537(a), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2316.)

§51303. Non-competitive appointments

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation may appoint each year without competition as cadets at the United States Merchant Marine Academy not more than 50 qualified individuals with qualities the Secretary considers to be of special value to the Academy. In making these appointments, the Secretary shall try to achieve a national demographic balance at the Academy.

(b) APPOINTMENT OF CANDIDATES SELECTED FOR PREPARATORY SCHOOL SPONSORSHIP.—The Secretary of Transportation may appoint each year as cadets at the United

States Merchant Marine Academy not more than 40 qualified individuals sponsored by the Academy to attend preparatory school during the academic year prior to entrance in the Academy, and who have successfully met the terms and conditions of sponsorship set by the Academy.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1572; Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3516(a), Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2789; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3504, Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1970.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51303	46 App.:1295b(b) (3)(D).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1303(b)(3)(D), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1999.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2019—Pub. L. 116–92 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted heading, and added subsec. (b).

2016—Pub. L. 114–328 substituted "50" for "40".

§51304. Additional appointments from particular areas

(a) OTHER COUNTRIES IN WESTERN HEMISPHERE.—The President may appoint individuals from countries in the Western Hemisphere other than the United States to receive instruction at the United States Merchant Marine Academy. Not more than 12 individuals may receive instruction under this subsection at the same time, and not more than 2 individuals from the same country may receive instruction under this subsection at the same time.

(b) OTHER COUNTRIES GENERALLY.—

(1) APPOINTMENT.—The Secretary of Transportation, with the approval of the Secretary of State, may appoint individuals from countries other than the United States to receive instruction at the Academy. Not more than 30 individuals may receive instruction under this subsection at the same time.

(2) REIMBURSEMENT.—The Secretary of Transportation shall ensure that the country from which an individual comes under this subsection will reimburse the Secretary for the cost (as determined by the Secretary) of the instruction and allowances received by the individual.

(c) PANAMA.—

(1) APPOINTMENT.—The Secretary of Transportation, with the approval of the Secretary of State, may appoint individuals from Panama to receive instruction at the Academy. Individuals appointed under this subsection are in addition to those appointed under any other provision of this chapter.

(2) REIMBURSEMENT.—The Secretary of Transportation shall be reimbursed for the cost (as determined by the Secretary) of the instruction and allowances received by an individual appointed under this subsection.

(d) ALLOWANCES AND REGULATIONS.—Individuals receiving instruction under this section are entitled to the same allowances and are subject to the same regulations on admission, attendance, discipline, resignation, discharge, dismissal, and graduation, as cadets at the Academy appointed from the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1572.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51304(a)	46 App.:1295b(b) (5)(A), (B).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1303(b)(5)–(7), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1999; Pub. L. 99–368, §5, Aug. 1, 1986, 100 Stat. 776; Pub. L. 101–595, title VII, §708(3), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2995.
51304(b)	46 App.:1295b(b) (6)(A)–(C).	
51304(c)	46 App.:1295b(b) (7)(A), (B).	
51304(d)	46 App.:1295b(b) (5)(C), (6)(D), (7)(C).	

The word "appoint" is substituted for "designate" and "permit" for consistency in the chapter.

§51305. Prohibited basis for appointment

Preference may not be given to an individual for appointment as a cadet at the United States Merchant Marine Academy because one or more members of the individual's immediate family are alumni of the Academy.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1572.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51305	46 App.:1295b(b) (3)(E).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1303(b)(3)(E), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1999.

§51306. Cadet commitment agreements

(a) AGREEMENT REQUIREMENTS.—A citizen of the United States appointed as a cadet at the United States Merchant Marine Academy shall sign, as a condition of the appointment, an agreement to—

(1) complete the course of instruction at the Academy;

(2) obtain a merchant mariner license, unlimited as to horsepower or tonnage, issued by the Coast Guard as an officer in the merchant marine of the United States, accompanied by the appropriate national and international endorsements and certifications required by the Coast Guard for service aboard vessels on domestic and international voyages, without limitation, before graduation from the Academy;

(3) for at least 6 years after graduation from the Academy, maintain—

(A) a valid merchant mariner license, unlimited as to horsepower or tonnage, issued by the Coast Guard as an officer in the merchant marine of the United States, accompanied by the appropriate national and international endorsements and certifications required by the Coast Guard for service aboard vessels on domestic and international voyages, without limitation;

(B) a valid transportation worker identification credential; and

(C) a Coast Guard medical certificate;

(4) apply for, and accept if tendered, an appointment as a commissioned officer in the Navy Reserve (including the Strategic Sealift Officer Program, Navy Reserve), the Coast Guard Reserve, or any other reserve component of an armed force of the United States, and, if tendered the appointment, to serve, meet the participation requirements, and maintain active status in good standing, as determined by the program manager of the appropriate military service, for at least 8 years after the date of commissioning;

(5) serve the foreign and domestic commerce and the national defense of the United States for at least 5 years after graduation from the Academy—

(A) as a merchant marine officer on a documented vessel or a vessel owned and operated by the United States Government or by a State;

(B) as an employee in a United States maritime-related industry, profession, or marine science (as determined by the Secretary of Transportation), if the Secretary determines that service under subparagraph (A) is not available to the individual;

(C) as a commissioned officer on active duty in an armed force of the United States, as a commissioned officer in the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, or in other maritime-related Federal employment which serves the national security interests of the United States, as determined by the Secretary; or

(D) by a combination of the service alternatives referred to in subparagraphs (A)–(C); and

(6) report to the Secretary on compliance with this subsection.

(b) FAILURE TO COMPLETE COURSE OF INSTRUCTION.—

(1) ACTIVE DUTY.—If the Secretary of Transportation determines that an individual who has attended the Academy for at least 2 years has failed to fulfill the part of the agreement described in subsection (a)(1), the individual may be ordered by the Secretary of Defense to serve on active duty in one of the armed forces of the United States for a period of not more than 2 years. In cases of hardship as determined by the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Transportation may waive this paragraph in whole or in part.

(2) RECOVERY OF COST.—If the Secretary of Defense is unable or unwilling to order an individual to serve on active duty under paragraph (1), or if the Secretary of Transportation determines that reimbursement of the cost of education provided would better serve the interests of the United States, the Secretary of Transportation may recover from the individual the cost of education provided by the Government.

(c) FAILURE TO CARRY OUT OTHER REQUIREMENTS.—

(1) ACTIVE DUTY.—If the Secretary of Transportation determines that an individual has failed to fulfill any part of the agreement described in subsection (a)(2)–(6), the individual may be ordered to serve on active duty for a period of at least 3 years but not more than the unexpired period (as determined by the Secretary) of the service required by subsection (a)(5). The Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense, shall determine in which service the individual shall serve. In cases of hardship as determined by the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Transportation may waive this paragraph in whole or in part.

(2) RECOVERY OF COST.—If the Secretary of Defense is unable or unwilling to order an individual to serve on active duty under paragraph (1), or if the Secretary of Transportation determines that reimbursement of the cost of education provided would better serve the interests of the United States, the Secretary of Transportation may recover from the individual the cost of education provided. The Secretary may reduce the amount to be recovered to reflect partial performance of service obligations and other factors the Secretary determines merit a reduction.

(d) ACTIONS TO RECOVER COST.—To aid in the recovery of the cost of education provided by the Government under a commitment agreement under this section, the Secretary of

Transportation may—

(1) request the Attorney General to bring a civil action against the individual; and

(2) make use of the Federal debt collection procedures in chapter 176 of title 28 or other applicable administrative remedies.

(e) ALTERNATIVE SERVICE.—

(1) SERVICE AS COMMISSIONED OFFICER.—An individual who, for the 5-year period following graduation from the Academy, serves as a commissioned officer on active duty in an armed force of the United States or as a commissioned officer of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration or the Public Health Service shall be excused from the requirements of paragraphs (3) through (5) of subsection (a).

(2) MODIFICATION OR WAIVER.—The Secretary may modify or waive any of the terms and conditions set forth in subsection (a) through the imposition of alternative service requirements.

(f) SERVICE OBLIGATION PERFORMANCE REPORTING REQUIREMENT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Subject to any otherwise applicable restrictions on disclosure in section 552a of title 5, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating, the Administrator of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, and the Surgeon General of the Public Health Service—

(A) shall report the status of obligated service of an individual graduate of the Academy upon request of the Secretary; and

(B) may, in their discretion, notify the Secretary of any failure of the graduate to perform the graduate's duties, either on active duty or in the Ready Reserve component of their respective service, or as a commissioned officer of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration or the Public Health Service, respectively.

(2) INFORMATION TO BE PROVIDED.—A report or notice under paragraph (1) shall identify any graduate determined to have failed to comply with service obligation requirements and provide all required information as to why such graduate failed to comply.

(3) CONSIDERED AS IN DEFAULT.—Upon receipt of such a report or notice, such graduate may be considered to be in default of the graduate's service obligations by the Secretary, and subject to all remedies the Secretary may have with respect to such a default.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1572; Pub. L. 109–163, div. A, title V, §515(g)(2)(A), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 109–364, div. C, title XXXV, §§3505(a), 3506(a), Oct. 17, 2006, 120 Stat. 2516, 2517; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §§3523(a)(1), (b), 3526(b)(1), (c)(1), (g), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598, 600–602; Pub. L. 114–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3506, Nov. 25, 2015, 129 Stat. 1220.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51306(a)	46 App.:1295b(e)(1).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1303(e)(1)–(4), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2000; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(144)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 101–595, title VII, §707(a), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2995; Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3515(b), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1792.
51306(b)	46 App.:1295b(e)(2).	

51306(c)	46 App.:1295b(e)(3).	
51306(d)	46 App.:1295b(e)(4).	

In subsection (a), before paragraph (1), the words "after the date occurring 6 months after October 1, 1981" are omitted as obsolete. In paragraph (2), the words "before graduating" are substituted for "on or before the date of graduation" to eliminate unnecessary words. In paragraph (5)(A), the words "or territories" are omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "State" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

In subsection (d), the words "bring a civil action" are substituted for "begin court proceedings" for consistency in the revised title and with rule 2 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.).

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2015—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 114–92, §3506(1), substituted "shall sign" for "must sign" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 114–92, §3506(2), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "fulfill the requirements for a license as an officer in the merchant marine of the United States before graduation from the Academy;".

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 114–92, §3506(3), amended par. (3) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (3) read as follows: "maintain a valid license as an officer in the merchant marine of the United States for at least 6 years after graduation from the Academy, accompanied by the appropriate national and international endorsements and certification required by the Coast Guard for service aboard vessels on domestic and international voyages;".

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 114–92, §3506(4), amended par. (4) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (4) read as follows: "apply for, and accept if tendered, an appointment as a commissioned officer in the Navy Reserve (including the Merchant Marine Reserve, Navy Reserve), the Coast Guard Reserve, or any other reserve unit of an armed force of the United States, and, if tendered the appointment, to serve for at least 6 years after graduation from the Academy;".

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3526(g), repealed Pub. L. 109–364, §§3505(a) and 3506(a). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §515(g)(2)(A). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(a)(1), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §515(g)(2)(A), into this section by substituting "Navy Reserve" for "Naval Reserve" in two places. See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 110–181, §3526(b)(1), (c)(1), incorporated the substance of the amendments by Pub. L. 109–364, §§3505(a), 3506(a), into this section by adding subsecs. (e) and (f). See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–364, §§3505(a), 3506(a), which directed the amendment of section 1295b(e) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, were repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3526(g). See 2008 Amendment note for subsecs. (e) and (f) and Historical and Revision notes above.

Pub. L. 109–163, §515(g)(2)(A), which directed the amendment of section 1295b of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsec. (a)(4) and Historical and Revision notes above.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3526(b)(2), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 601, provided that: "Section 51306(e) of title 46, United States Code, as added by paragraph (1), applies only to an individual who enrolls as a cadet at the United States Merchant Marine Academy, and signs an agreement under section 51306(a) of title 46, after October 17, 2006."

Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3526(c)(2), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 602, provided that: "Section 51306(f) of title 46, United States Code, as added by paragraph (1), does not apply with respect to an agreement entered into under section 51306(a) of title 46, United States Code, before October 17, 2006."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2006 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 109–364, div. C, title XXXV, §3505(b), Oct. 17, 2006, 120 Stat. 2517, which provided that par. (6) of section 1295b(e) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, applied only to an individual who enrolled as a cadet at the United States Merchant Marine Academy and signed an agreement under par. (1) of that section after Oct. 17, 2006, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3526(g), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 602.

Pub. L. 109–364, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(b), Oct. 17, 2006, 120 Stat. 2517, which provided that the enactment of par. (7) of section 1295b(e) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, did not apply with respect to an agreement entered into under section 1295b(e) before Oct. 17, 2006, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3526(g), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 602.

§51307. Places of training

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation may provide for the training of cadets at the United States Merchant Marine Academy—

(1) on vessels owned, subsidized by, or contracted with the United States Government;

(2) on other documented vessels, with the permission of the owner;

(3) in shipyards or plants and with industrial or educational organizations; and

(4) on any other vessel considered by the Secretary to be necessary or appropriate or in the national interest.

(b) SEA YEAR CADETS ON CERTAIN VESSELS.—

(1) REQUIREMENTS.—The Secretary shall require an operator of a vessel participating in the Maritime Security Program under chapter 531 of this title, the Cable Security Fleet under chapter 532 of this title, or the Tanker Security Fleet under chapter 534 of this title to—

(A) carry on each Maritime Security Program vessel, Cable Security Fleet vessel, or Tanker Security Fleet vessel 2 United States Merchant Marine Academy cadets, if available, on each voyage; and

(B) implement and adhere to policies, programs, criteria, and requirements established pursuant to section 51322 of this title.

(2) FAILURE TO IMPLEMENT OR ADHERE TO REQUIREMENTS.—Failure to implement or adhere to the policies, programs, criteria, and requirements referred to in paragraph (1) may, as determined by the Maritime Administrator, constitute a violation of an operating agreement entered into under chapter 531, 532, or 534 of this title and the Maritime Administrator may—

(A) require the operator to take corrective actions; or

(B) withhold payment due to the operator until the violation, as determined by the Maritime Administrator, has been remedied.

(3) WITHHELD PAYMENTS.—Any payment withheld pursuant to paragraph (2)(B) may be paid, upon a determination by the Maritime Administrator that the operator is in compliance with the policies, programs, criteria, and requirements referred to in paragraph (1).

(c) MILITARY SEALIFT COMMAND VESSELS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in paragraph (2), the Commander of the Military Sealift Command shall require an operator of a vessel in the United States Navy's Military Sealift Command to carry on each such vessel 2 United States Merchant Marine Academy cadets, if available, on each voyage, if the vessel—

(A) is flagged in the United States; and

(B) is rated at 10,000 gross tons or higher.

(2) WAIVER.—The Commander of the Military Sealift Command may waive the requirement under paragraph (1) at any time if the Commander determines that carrying a cadet from the United States Merchant Marine Academy would place an undue burden on the vessel or the

operator of the vessel.

(d) DEFINITION OF OPERATOR.—In this section, the term "operator" includes a government operator and a non-government operator.

(e) SAVINGS CLAUSE.—Nothing in this section may be construed as affecting—

(1) the discretion of the Secretary to determine whether to place a United States Merchant Marine Academy cadet on a vessel;

(2) the authority of the Coast Guard regarding a vessel security plan approved under section 70103; or

(3) the discretion of the master of the vessel to ensure the safety of all crew members.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1574; Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §307, July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 528; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3525(a)(3), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 600, 601; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3512, Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2311; Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3506, Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4405; Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3517(a)(1), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3073.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51307	46 App.:1295b(f).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1303(f), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2002.

In paragraph (2), the words "with the permission of the owner" are substituted for "if the owner . . . cooperates in such use" for clarity.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 117–263 amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Secretary shall require an operator of a vessel participating in the Maritime Security Program under chapter 531 of this title, the Cable Security Fleet under chapter 532 of this title, or the Tanker Security Fleet under chapter 534 of this title to carry on each Maritime Security Program vessel, Cable Security Fleet vessel, or Tanker Security Fleet vessel 2 United States Merchant Marine Academy cadets, if available, on each voyage."

2021—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 116–283 added subsec. (b) and struck out former subsec. (b). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Secretary shall require an operator of a vessel participating in the Maritime Security Program under chapter 531 of this title to carry on each Maritime Security Program vessel 2 United States Merchant Marine Academy cadets, if available, on each voyage."

2018—Pub. L. 115–232, §3512(1), (3), designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted heading, and added subsecs. (b) to (e).

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 115–232, §3512(2), substituted "owned, subsidized by, or contracted with" for "owned or subsidized by".

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–241, §307. See 2006 Amendment note below.

Par. (4). Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(a)(3), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–241, §307, into this section by adding par. (4). See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–241, §307, which directed the amendment of section 1295b(f) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(b). See 2008 Amendment note for par. (4) and Historical and Revision notes above.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2022 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3517(a)(2), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3074, provided that: "Paragraph (2) of subsection (b) of section 51307, as amended by paragraph (1), shall apply with respect to any failure to implement or adhere to the policies, programs, criteria, and requirements referred to in paragraph (1)(B) of such subsection that occurs on or after the date that is one year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022]."

§51308. Uniforms, textbooks, and transportation allowances

The Secretary of Transportation shall provide cadets at the United States Merchant Marine Academy—

(1) all required uniforms and textbooks; and

(2) allowances for transportation (including reimbursement of traveling expenses) when traveling under orders as a cadet.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1574.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51308	46 App.:1295b(d).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1303(d), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2000.

§51309. Academic degree

(a) BACHELOR'S DEGREE.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Superintendent of the United States Merchant Marine Academy may confer the degree of bachelor of science on an individual who—

(A) has met the conditions prescribed by the Secretary of Transportation; and

(B) if a citizen of the United States, has passed the examination for a merchant marine officer's license.

(2) EFFECT OF PHYSICAL OR PSYCHOLOGICAL DISQUALIFICATION.—An individual not able or allowed to take the examination for a merchant marine officer's license solely due to a documented medical or psychological condition shall not be denied a degree for not taking the examination.

(b) MASTER'S DEGREE.—The Superintendent of the Academy may confer a master's degree on an individual who has met the conditions prescribed by the Secretary. A master's degree program may be funded through non-appropriated funds. To maintain the appropriate academic standards, the program shall be accredited by the appropriate accreditation body. Nonappropriated funds received for this purpose shall be credited to the Maritime Administration's Operations and Training appropriation, to remain available until expended, for those expenses directly related to the purpose of such receipts. The Superintendent shall maintain a separate and detailed accounting of nonappropriated fund receipts and all associated expenses. The Secretary may prescribe regulations necessary to administer such a program.

(c) GRADUATION NOT ENTITLEMENT TO HOLD LICENSE.—Graduation from the Academy does not entitle an individual to hold a license authorizing service on a merchant vessel.

(d) DEFINITION OF DOCUMENTED MEDICAL OR PSYCHOLOGICAL CONDITION.—In this section the term "documented medical or psychological condition" means, with respect to an individual, a physical disqualification or psychological condition, including a mental health condition arising from sexual assault or sexual harassment, for which the individual has been treated or is being treated by a medical or psychological provider.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1574; Pub. L. 111–84, div. C, title XXXV, §3514, Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2724; Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3511, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3065.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51309(a)	46 App.:1295b(g)(1).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1303(g), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2002; restated Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3515(c), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1794.
51309(b)	46 App.:1295b(g)(2).	
51309(c)	46 App.:1295b(b)(8).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1303(b)(8), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1997; Pub. L. 99–368, §5, Aug. 1, 1986, 100 Stat. 776.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 117–263, §3511(1), in heading, inserted "or psychological" after "physical", and, in text, inserted "able or" before "allowed" and substituted "solely due to a documented medical or psychological condition shall" for "only because of physical disqualification may".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 117–263, §3511(2), added subsec. (d).

2009—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–84 inserted before last sentence "Nonappropriated funds received for this purpose shall be credited to the Maritime Administration's Operations and Training appropriation, to remain available until expended, for those expenses directly related to the purpose of such receipts. The Superintendent shall maintain a separate and detailed accounting of nonappropriated fund receipts and all associated expenses."

§51310. Deferment of service obligation under cadet commitment agreements

The Secretary of Transportation may defer the service commitment of an individual under section 51306(a)(5) of this title (as specified in the cadet commitment agreement) for not more than 2 years if the individual is engaged in a graduate course of study approved by the Secretary. However, deferment of service as a commissioned officer under section 51306(a)(5) must be approved by the Secretary of the military department that has jurisdiction over the service or by the Secretary of Commerce for service with the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1575.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51310	46 App.:1295b(e)(5).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1303(e)(5), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2001; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(144)(B), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L.

		108–136, title XXXV, §3515(b)(6), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1793.

§51311. Midshipman status in the Navy Reserve

(a) APPLICATION REQUIREMENT.—Before being appointed as a cadet at the United States Merchant Marine Academy, a citizen of the United States must agree to apply for midshipman status in the Navy Reserve (including the Merchant Marine Reserve, Navy Reserve).

(b) APPOINTMENT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—A citizen of the United States appointed as a cadet at the Academy shall be appointed by the Secretary of the Navy as a midshipman in the Navy Reserve (including the Merchant Marine Reserve, Navy Reserve).

(2) RIGHTS AND PRIVILEGES.—The Secretary of the Navy shall provide for cadets of the Academy who are midshipmen in the United States Navy Reserve to be—

(A) issued an identification card (referred to as a "military ID card"); and

(B) entitled to all rights and privileges in accordance with the same eligibility criteria as apply to other members of the Ready Reserve of the reserve components of the armed forces.

(3) COORDINATION.—The Secretary of the Navy shall carry out paragraphs (1) and (2) in coordination with the Secretary of Transportation.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1575; Pub. L. 109–163, div. A, title V, §515(g)(2), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3523(a)(1), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598, 600.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51311(a)	46 App.:1295b(b) (3)(F).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1303(b)(3)(F), (c), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1999, 2000; Pub. L. 105–261, div. A, title V, §568, Oct. 17, 1998, 112 Stat. 2031; Pub. L. 106–65, div. A, title X, §1066(b)(5), Oct. 5, 1999, 113 Stat. 772.
51311(b)	46 App.:1295b(c).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §515(g)(2). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsecs. (a), (b)(1), (2). Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(a)(1), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §515(g)(2), into this section by substituting "Navy Reserve" for "Naval Reserve" wherever appearing in section catchline and text. See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §515(g)(2), which directed the amendment of section 1295b of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsecs. (a), (b)(1), (2) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§51312. Board of Visitors

(a) IN GENERAL.—There shall be a Board of Visitors to the United States Merchant Marine Academy (referred to in this section as the "Board" and the "Academy", respectively) to provide independent advice and recommendations on matters relating to the United States Merchant Marine Academy.

(b) MEMBERSHIP.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Board shall be composed of—

(A) 2 Senators appointed by the Chairman of the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate in consultation with the ranking member of such Committee;

(B) 3 Members of the House of Representatives appointed by the Chairman of the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives in consultation with the ranking member of such Committee;

(C) 1 Senator appointed by the Vice President, who shall be a member of the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate;

(D) 2 Members of the House of Representatives appointed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives, in consultation with the Minority Leader, at least 1 of whom shall be a member of the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives;

(E) 5 individuals appointed by the President; and

(F) as ex officio members—

(i) the Commander of the Military Sealift Command;

(ii) the Deputy Commandant for Operations of the Coast Guard;

(iii) the chairman of the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate;

(iv) the chairman of the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives;

(v) the chairman of the Advisory Board to the Academy established under section 51313; and

(vi) the Member of the House of Representatives for the congressional district in which the Academy is located, as a nonvoting member, unless such Member of the House of Representatives is appointed as a voting member of the Board under subparagraph (B) or (D).

(2) PRESIDENTIAL APPOINTEES.—Of the individuals appointed by the President under paragraph (1)(E)—

(A) at least 2 shall be graduates of the Academy;

(B) at least 1 shall be a senior corporate officer from a United States maritime shipping company that participates in the Maritime Security Program, or in any Maritime Administration program providing incentives for companies to register their vessels in the United States, and this appointment shall rotate biennially among such companies;

(C) at least 1 shall be a representative of a maritime labor organization; and

(D) 1 or more may be a Senate-confirmed Presidential appointee, a member of the Senior Executive Service, or an officer of flag-rank from the Coast Guard, the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, or any of the military services that commission graduates of the Academy, other than the individuals who are members of the Board under clauses (i) and (ii) of paragraph (1)(F).

(3) TERM OF SERVICE.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subparagraph (B), each member of the Board, other than an ex officio member under paragraph (1)(F), shall serve for a term of 2 years commencing at the beginning of each Congress.

(B) CONTINUATION OF SERVICE.—Any member described in subparagraph (A) whose term on the Board has expired, other than a member appointed under any of subparagraphs (A) through (D) of paragraph (1) who is no longer a Member of Congress, shall continue to serve until a successor is appointed.

(C) REPLACEMENT.—If a member of the Board is replaced, not later than 60 days after the

date of the replacement, the Designated Federal Officer selected under subsection (g)(2) shall notify that member.

(4) VACANCIES.—If a member of the Board is no longer able to serve on the Board or resigns, the Designated Federal Officer selected under subsection (g)(2) shall immediately notify the person who appointed such member. Not later than 60 days after that notification, such person shall designate a replacement to serve the remainder of such member's term.

(5) DESIGNATION AND RESPONSIBILITY OF SUBSTITUTE BOARD MEMBERS.—

(A) AUTHORITY TO DESIGNATE.—A member of the Board under clause (i) or (ii) of paragraph (1)(F) or appointed under subparagraph (B) or (C) of paragraph (2) may, if unable to attend or participate in an activity described in subsection (d), (e), or (f), designate another individual to serve as a substitute member of the Board, on a temporary basis, to attend or participate in such activity.

(B) REQUIREMENTS.—A substitute member of the Board designated under subparagraph (A) shall be—

(i) an individual serving in a position for which the individual was appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate;

(ii) a member of the Senior Executive Service; or

(iii) an officer of flag-rank who is employed by—

(I) the Coast Guard; or

(II) the Military Sealift Command.

(C) PARTICIPATION.—A substitute member of the Board designated under subparagraph (A)—

(i) shall be permitted by the Board to fully participate in the proceedings and activities of the Board;

(ii) shall report to the member that designated the substitute member on the Board's activities not later than 15 days following the substitute member's participation in such activities; and

(iii) shall be permitted by the Board to participate in the preparation of reports described in paragraph [1] (j) related to any proceedings or activities of the Board in which such substitute member participates.

(c) CHAIRPERSON.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—On a biennial basis and subject to paragraph (2), the Board shall select from among its members a Member of the House of Representatives or a Senator to serve as the Chairperson.

(2) ROTATION.—A Member of the House of Representatives and a Member of the Senate shall alternately be selected as the Chairperson of the Board.

(3) TERM.—An individual may not serve as Chairperson for consecutive terms.

(d) MEETINGS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Board shall meet as provided for in the Charter adopted under paragraph (2)(B), including at least 1 meeting held at the Academy and 2 additional meetings, which may be held in person or virtually.

(2) CHAIRPERSON AND CHARTER.—The Designated Federal Officer selected under subsection (g)(2) shall organize a meeting of the Board for the purposes of—

(A) selecting a Chairperson under subsection (c); and

(B) adopting an official Charter for the Board, which shall establish the schedule of meetings of the Board.

(3) SCHEDULING; NOTIFICATION.—When scheduling a meeting of the Board, the Designated Federal Officer shall coordinate, to the greatest extent practicable, with the members of the Board to determine the date and time of the meeting. Members of the Board shall be

notified of the date of each meeting not less than 30 days prior to the meeting date.

(e) VISITING THE ACADEMY.—

(1) ANNUAL VISIT.—The Board shall visit the Academy annually on a date selected by the Board, in consultation with the Secretary of Transportation and the Superintendent of the Academy.

(2) OTHER VISITS.—In cooperation with the Superintendent, the Board or its members may make other visits to the Academy in connection with the duties of the Board.

(3) ACCESS.—While visiting the Academy under this subsection, members of the Board shall have reasonable access to the grounds, facilities, midshipmen, faculty, staff, and other personnel of the Academy for the purpose of carrying out the duties of the Board.

(4) STAFF.—One or more staff of each member of the Board may accompany them on Academy visits.

(5) SCHEDULING; NOTIFICATION.—When scheduling a visit to the Academy, the Designated Federal Officer shall coordinate, to the greatest extent practicable, with the members of the Board to determine the date and time of the visit. Members of the Board shall be notified of the date of each visit not less than 30 days prior to the visit date.

(f) RESPONSIBILITY.—The Board shall inquire into the state of morale and discipline, the curriculum, instruction, physical equipment, fiscal affairs, and academic methods of the Academy, and other matters relating to the Academy that the Board decides to consider.

(g) DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION SUPPORT.—The Secretary of Transportation shall—

(1) provide support as deemed necessary by the Board for the performance of the Board's functions;

(2) select a Designated Federal Officer to support the performance of the Board's functions; and

(3) in cooperation with the Maritime Administrator and the Superintendent of the Academy, advise the Board of any institutional issues, consistent with applicable laws concerning the disclosure of information.

(h) STAFF.—Each of the chairman and ranking member of the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the chairman and ranking member of the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives may designate staff members of such Committee to serve, without additional reimbursement (except as provided in subsection (i)), as staff for the Board. Such staff may attend meetings and may visit the Academy.

(i) TRAVEL EXPENSES.—While serving away from his or her home or regular place of business, a member of the Board or a staff member designated under subsection (h) shall be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized under section 5703 of title 5, United States Code.

(j) REPORTS.—

(1) ANNUAL REPORT.—Not later than 60 days after each annual visit required under subsection (e)(1), the Board shall submit to the President a written report of its actions, views, and recommendations pertaining to the Academy.

(2) OTHER REPORTS.—If the members of the Board visit the Academy under subsection (e)(2), the Board may—

(A) prepare a report on such visit; and

(B) if approved by a majority of the members of the Board, submit such report to the President not later than 60 days after the date of the approval.

(3) ADVISORS.—The Board may call in advisers—

(A) for consultation regarding the execution of the Board's responsibility under subsection (f); or

(B) to assist in the preparation of a report described in paragraph (1) or (2).

(4) SUBMISSION.—A report submitted to the President under paragraph (1) or (2) shall be concurrently submitted to—

(A) the Secretary of Transportation;

(B) the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate; and

(C) the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1575; Pub. L. 113–291, div. C, title XXXV, §3504(a), Dec. 19, 2014, 128 Stat. 3905; Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3512, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3065.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51312	46 App.:1295b(h).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1303(h), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2002; Pub. L. 97–35, title XVI, §1607, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 752; Pub. L. 101–595, title VII, §703, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2994.

The words "Committee on Armed Services" are substituted for "Committee on Merchant Marine and Fisheries" to reflect changes in committee structure made by the 104th Congress.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (b)(2)(C). Pub. L. 117–263, §3512(1)(A)(iii), (iv), added subpar. (C). Former subpar. (C) redesignated (D).

Subsec. (b)(2)(D). Pub. L. 117–263, §3512(1)(A)(i), (ii), redesignated subpar. (C) as (D) and substituted "flag-rank" for "flag-rank who".

Subsec. (b)(3)(C). Pub. L. 117–263, §3512(1)(B), added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 117–263, §3512(2)(A), inserted "and 2 additional meetings, which may be held in person or virtually" after "Academy".

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 117–263, §3512(2)(B), added par. (3).

Subsec. (e)(4), (5). Pub. L. 117–263, §3512(3), added pars. (4) and (5).

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 117–263, §3512(4), inserted "and ranking member" after "chairman" in two places and inserted at end "Such staff may attend meetings and may visit the Academy."

2014—Pub. L. 113–291 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section related to the Board of Visitors and consisted of subsecs. (a) to (d) relating to establishment of the Board, appointment of board members, designation of staff members to the board, and travel expenses, respectively.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

DEADLINES; CONTINUATION OF SERVICE

Pub. L. 113–291, div. C, title XXXV, §3504(b), (c), Dec. 19, 2014, 128 Stat. 3909, provided that:

"(b) DEADLINES.—

"(1) SELECTION OF DESIGNATED FEDERAL OFFICER.—The Secretary of Transportation shall select a Designated Federal Officer under subsection (g)(2) of section 51312 of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this Act, by not later than 30 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 19, 2014].

"(2) APPOINTMENT OF MEMBERS.—Appointments under subsection (b)(1) of such section shall be completed by not later than 60 days after the date of the enactment of this Act.

"(3) ORGANIZATION OF FIRST MEETING.—Such Designated Federal Officer shall organize a meeting of the Board under section (d)(2) of such section by not later than 60 days after the date of the enactment of this Act.

"(c) CONTINUATION OF SERVICE OF CURRENT MEMBERS.—Each member of the Board of Visitors serving as a member of the Board on the date of the enactment of this Act shall continue to serve on the Board for the remainder of such member's term."

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "subsection".*

§51313. Advisory Board

(a) IN GENERAL.—An Advisory Board to the United States Merchant Marine Academy shall be established to visit the Academy at least once during each academic year, for the purpose of examining the course of instruction and management of the Academy and advising the Maritime Administrator and the Superintendent of the Academy.

(b) APPOINTMENT AND TERMS.—The Board shall be composed of not more than 7 individuals appointed by the Secretary of Transportation. The individuals must be distinguished in education and other fields related to the Academy. Members of the Board shall be appointed for terms of not more than 3 years and may be reappointed. The Secretary shall designate one of the members as chairman.

(c) TRAVEL EXPENSES.—When serving away from home or regular place of business, a member of the Board shall be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized by section 5703 of title 5.

(d) RELATIONSHIP TO OTHER LAW.—Chapter 10 of title 5 does not apply to the Board.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1576; Pub. L. 117–286, §4(a)(292), Dec. 27, 2022, 136 Stat. 4338.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51313	46 App.:1295b(i).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1303(i), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2002; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(144)(C), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 117–286 substituted "Chapter 10 of title 5" for "The Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 App. U.S.C.)".

§51314. Limitation on charges and fees for attendance

(a) PROHIBITION.—Except as provided in subsection (b), no charge or fee for tuition, room, or board for attendance at the United States Merchant Marine Academy may be imposed unless the charge or fee is specifically authorized by a law enacted after October 5, 1994.

(b) EXCEPTION.—The prohibition specified in subsection (a) does not apply with respect to any item or service provided to cadets for which a charge or fee is imposed as of October 5, 1994, or for calculators, computers, personal and academic supplies, midshipman services such as barber, tailor, or laundry services, and Coast Guard license fees. The Secretary of Transportation shall present at the next meeting of the Board of Visitors, and post on a publicly available website, any change made by the Academy in the amount of a charge or fee authorized under this subsection. Such fees shall be credited to the Maritime Administration's Operations and Training appropriation, to remain available

until expended, for those expenses directly related to the purposes of the fees. Fees collected in excess of actual expenses may be refunded to the Midshipmen through a mechanism approved by the Secretary. The Academy shall maintain a separate and detailed accounting of fee revenue and all associated expenses.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1576; Pub. L. 111–84, div. C, title XXXV, §3510, Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2722; Pub. L. 111–117, div. A, title I, §176, Dec. 16, 2009, 123 Stat. 3068; Pub. L. 115–420, §2, Jan. 3, 2019, 132 Stat. 5444.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51314	46 App.:1295b(j).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1303(j), as added Pub. L. 108–375, Oct. 28, 2004, div. A, title V, §545(e), 118 Stat. 1909.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2019—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 115–420 substituted "shall present at the next meeting of the Board of Visitors, and post on a publicly available website," for "shall notify Congress of".

2009—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–117 inserted at end "Such fees shall be credited to the Maritime Administration's Operations and Training appropriation, to remain available until expended, for those expenses directly related to the purposes of the fees. Fees collected in excess of actual expenses may be refunded to the Midshipmen through a mechanism approved by the Secretary. The Academy shall maintain a separate and detailed accounting of fee revenue and all associated expenses."

Pub. L. 111–84 substituted "1994, or for calculators, computers, personal and academic supplies, midshipman services such as barber, tailor, or laundry services, and Coast Guard license fees." for "1994."

§51315. Gifts to the Merchant Marine Academy

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Maritime Administrator may accept and use conditional or unconditional gifts of money or property for the benefit of the United States Merchant Marine Academy, including acceptance and use for non-appropriated fund instrumentalities of the Merchant Marine Academy. The Maritime Administrator may accept a gift of services in carrying out the Administrator's duties and powers. Property accepted under this section and proceeds from that property must be used, as nearly as possible, in accordance with the terms of the gift.

(b) ESTABLISHMENT OF ACADEMY GIFT FUND.—There is established in the Treasury a fund, to be known as the "Academy Gift Fund". Disbursements from the Fund shall be made on order of the Maritime Administrator. Unless otherwise specified by the terms of the gift, the Maritime Administrator may use monies in the Fund for appropriated or non-appropriated purposes at the Academy. The Fund consists of—

(1) gifts of money;
(2) income from donated property accepted under this section;
(3) proceeds from the sale of donated property; and
(4) income from securities under subsection (c) of this section.

(c) INVESTMENT OF FUND BALANCES.—On request of the Maritime Administrator, the Secretary of the Treasury may invest and reinvest amounts in the Fund in securities of, or in securities the principal and interest of which is guaranteed by, the United States Government.

(d) DISBURSEMENT AUTHORITY.—There are hereby authorized to be disbursed from the Fund such sums as may be on deposit, to remain available until expended.

(e) DEDUCTIBILITY OF GIFTS.—Gifts accepted under this section are a gift to or for the use of the Government under the Internal Revenue Code of 1986.

(f) PAYMENT OF EXPENSES.—The Maritime Administrator may pay all necessary expenses in connection with the conveyance or transfer of a gift, devise, or bequest accepted under this section.

(Added Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(g)(1), Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4764; amended Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3511, Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1918.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Internal Revenue Code of 1986, referred to in subsec. (e), is classified generally to Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

AMENDMENTS

2017—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 115–91 added subsec. (f).

§51316. Temporary appointments to the Academy

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Maritime Administrator may appoint any present employee of the United States Merchant Marine Academy non-appropriated fund instrumentality to a position on the General Schedule of comparable pay. Eligible personnel shall be engaged in work permissibly funded by annual appropriations, and such appointments to the Civil Service shall be without regard to competition, for a term not to exceed 2 years.

(Added Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(h)(1), Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4765.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The General Schedule, referred to in text, is set out under section 5332 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

§51317. Adjunct professors

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Maritime Administrator may establish a program for the purpose of contracting with individuals as personal services contractors to provide services as adjunct professors at the Academy, if the Maritime Administrator determines that there is a need for adjunct professors and the need is not of permanent duration.

(b) CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS.—Each contract under the program—

(1) must be approved by the Maritime Administrator;

(2) shall be for a duration, including options, of not to exceed one year unless the Maritime Administrator finds that exceptional circumstances justify an extension of up to one additional year; and

(3) shall be subject to the availability of appropriations.

(Added Pub. L. 111–84, div. C, title XXXV, §3503(a), Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2719; amended Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3509, Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1916.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2017—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 115–91, §3509(1)(A), struck out "and" at end.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 115–91, §3509(1)(B), substituted "; and" for period at end.

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 115–91, §3509(2), struck out subsecs. (c) and (d) which related to limitation on

number of contractors and reporting requirements, respectively.

§51318. Policy on sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking

(a) REQUIRED POLICY.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall direct the Superintendent of the United States Merchant Marine Academy to prescribe a policy on sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking applicable to the cadets and other personnel of the Academy.

(2) MATTERS TO BE SPECIFIED IN POLICY.—The policy on sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking prescribed under this subsection shall include—

(A) a program to promote awareness and prevention of the incidence of rape, acquaintance rape, domestic violence, dating violence, stalking, and other sexual offenses of a criminal nature that involve cadets or other Academy personnel;

(B) procedures for documenting, tracking, and maintaining the data required to conduct the annual assessments to determine the effectiveness of the policies, procedures, and training program of the Academy with respect to sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking involving cadets or other Academy personnel, as required by subsection (c);

(C) procedures that a cadet or other Academy personnel should follow in the case of an occurrence of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking, including—

(i) specifying the person or persons to whom an alleged occurrence of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking should be reported by the victim and the options for confidential reporting;

(ii) specifying any other person whom the victim should contact; and

(iii) procedures on the preservation of evidence potentially necessary for proof of a criminal sexual offense;

(D) procedures for investigating sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking involving a cadet or other Academy personnel to determine whether disciplinary action is necessary;

(E) a procedure for disciplinary action in cases of alleged criminal sexual assault involving a cadet or other Academy personnel;

(F) any other sanction authorized to be imposed in a substantiated case of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking involving a cadet or other Academy personnel in rape, acquaintance rape, or any other criminal sexual offense, whether forcible or nonforcible;

(G) procedures through which—

(i) questions regarding sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking can be confidentially asked and confidentially answered;

(ii) victims can report incidents of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking confidentially; and

(iii) the privacy of victims of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking will be protected; and

(H) required training on the policy for all cadets and other Academy personnel, including the specific training required for personnel who process allegations of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking involving Academy personnel.

(3) MINIMUM TRAINING REQUIREMENTS FOR CERTAIN INDIVIDUALS

REGARDING SEXUAL HARASSMENT, DATING VIOLENCE, DOMESTIC VIOLENCE, SEXUAL ASSAULT, AND STALKING.—

(A) REQUIREMENT.—The Maritime Administrator shall direct the Superintendent of the United States Merchant Marine Academy to develop a mandatory training program at the Academy for each individual who is involved in implementing the Academy's student disciplinary grievance procedures, including each individual who is responsible for—

(i) resolving complaints of reported sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking;

(ii) resolving complaints of reported violations of the sexual misconduct policy of the Academy; or

(iii) conducting an interview with a victim of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(B) CONSULTATION.—The Superintendent shall develop the training program described in subparagraph (A) in consultation with national, State, or local sexual assault, dating violence, domestic violence, or stalking victim advocacy, victim services, or prevention organizations.

(C) ELEMENTS.—The training required by subparagraph (A) shall include the following:

(i) Information on working with and interviewing persons subjected to sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(ii) Information on particular types of conduct that would constitute sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking, regardless of gender, including same-sex sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(iii) Information on consent and the effect that drugs or alcohol may have on an individual's ability to consent.

(iv) Information on the effects of trauma, including the neurobiology of trauma.

(v) Training regarding the use of trauma-informed interview techniques, which means asking questions of an individual who has been a victim of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking in a manner that is focused on the experience of the victim, does not judge or blame the victim, and is informed by evidence-based research on the neurobiology of trauma.

(vi) Training on cultural awareness regarding how dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking may impact midshipmen differently depending on their cultural background.

(vii) Information on sexual assault dynamics, sexual assault perpetrator behavior, and barriers to reporting.

(D) IMPLEMENTATION.—

(i) DEVELOPMENT AND APPROVAL SCHEDULE.—The training program required by subparagraph (A) shall be developed not later than 90 days after the date of the enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2018.

(ii) COMPLETION OF TRAINING.—Each individual who is required to complete the training described in subparagraph (A) shall complete such training not later than—

(I) 270 days after the date of the enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2018; or

(II) 180 days after starting a position with responsibilities that include the activities described in clause (i), (ii), or (iii) of subparagraph (A).

(4) AVAILABILITY OF POLICY.—The Secretary shall ensure that the policy developed under this subsection is available to—

(A) all cadets and employees of the Academy; and

(B) the public.

(5) CONSULTATION AND ASSISTANCE.—In developing the policy under this subsection,

the Secretary may consult with or receive assistance from such Federal, State, local, and national organizations and subject matter experts as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(6) CONSISTENCY WITH THE HIGHER EDUCATION ACT OF 1965.—The Secretary shall ensure that the policy developed under this subsection meets the requirements set out in section 485(f)(8) of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1092(f)(8)).

(b) DEVELOPMENT PROGRAM.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Maritime Administrator shall ensure that the development program of the Academy includes a section that—

(A) describes the relationship between honor, respect, and character development and the prevention of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking at the Academy;

(B) includes a brief history of the problem of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking in the merchant marine, in the Armed Forces, and at the Academy; and

(C) includes information relating to reporting sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking, victims' rights, and dismissal for offenders.

(2) MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS TO COMBAT RETALIATION.—

(A) REQUIREMENT FOR PLAN.—Not later than 90 days after the date of the enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2018, the Maritime Administrator shall direct the Superintendent of the United States Merchant Marine Academy to implement and maintain a plan to combat retaliation against cadets at the Academy and other Academy personnel who report sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(B) VIOLATION OF CODE OF CONDUCT.—The Superintendent shall consider an act of retaliation against a cadet at the Academy who reports sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking as a Class I violation of the Midshipman Regulations of the Academy or equivalent code of conduct.

(C) RETALIATION DEFINITION.—The Superintendent shall work with the sexual assault prevention and response staff of the Academy to define "retaliation" for purposes of this subsection.

(3) MINIMUM RESOURCE REQUIREMENTS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Maritime Administrator shall ensure the staff at the Academy are provided adequate and appropriate sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking prevention and response training materials and resources. Such resources shall include staff as follows:

(i) Sexual assault response coordinator.

(ii) Prevention educator.

(iii) Civil rights officer.

(iv) Staff member to oversee Sea Year.

(B) COMMUNICATION.—The Director of the Office of Civil Rights of the Maritime Administration shall create and maintain a direct line of communication to the sexual assault response staff of the Academy that is outside of the chain of command of the Academy.

(4) MINIMUM TRAINING REQUIREMENTS.—The Superintendent shall ensure that all cadets receive training on the sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking prevention and response sections of the development program of the Academy, as described in paragraph (1), as follows:

(A) An initial training session, which shall occur not later than 7 days after a cadet's initial arrival at the Academy.

(B) Additional training sessions, which shall occur biannually following the cadet's initial training session until the cadet graduates or leaves the Academy.

(c) ANNUAL ASSESSMENT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary, in cooperation with the Superintendent, shall conduct an assessment at the Academy, during each Academy program year, to determine the effectiveness of the policies, procedures, and training program of the Academy with respect to sexual harassment and sexual assault involving cadets or other Academy personnel.

(2) BIENNIAL SURVEY.—For each assessment of the Academy under paragraph (1) during an Academy program year that begins in an odd-numbered calendar year, the Secretary shall conduct a survey of cadets and other Academy personnel—

(A) to measure—

(i) the incidence, during that program year, of sexual harassment and sexual assault events involving cadets or other Academy personnel, on or off the Academy campus, that have been reported to officials of the Academy; and

(ii) the incidence, during that program year, of sexual harassment and sexual assault events involving cadets or other Academy personnel, on or off the Academy campus, that have not been reported to officials of the Academy; and

(B) to assess the perceptions of cadets and other Academy personnel on—

(i) the policies, procedures, and training programs of the Academy on sexual harassment and sexual assault involving cadets or other Academy personnel;

(ii) the enforcement of the policies described in clause (i);

(iii) the incidence of sexual harassment and sexual assault involving cadets or other Academy personnel; and

(iv) any other issues relating to sexual harassment and sexual assault involving cadets or other Academy personnel.

(3) FOCUS GROUPS FOR YEARS WHEN SURVEY NOT REQUIRED.—In any year in which the Secretary is not required to conduct the survey described in paragraph (2), the Secretary shall conduct focus groups at the Academy for the purposes of ascertaining information relating to sexual assault and sexual harassment issues at the Academy.

(d) ANNUAL REPORT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—For each Academy program year, the Superintendent shall submit to the Secretary a report that provides information about sexual harassment and sexual assault involving cadets or other Academy personnel.

(2) CONTENTS.—Each report submitted under paragraph (1) shall include, for the Academy program year covered by the report—

(A) the number of sexual assaults, rapes, and other sexual offenses, including sexual harassment, involving cadets or other Academy personnel that have been reported to Academy officials;

(B) the number of the reported cases described in subparagraph (A) that have been substantiated;

(C) the policies, procedures, and training implemented by the Superintendent and the leadership of the Academy in response to incidents of sexual harassment and sexual assault involving cadets and other Academy personnel; and

(D) a plan for the actions that will be taken in the following Academy program year regarding prevention of, and response to, incidents of sexual harassment and sexual assault involving cadets and other Academy personnel.

(3) SURVEY AND FOCUS GROUP RESULTS.—

(A) SURVEY RESULTS.—Each report under paragraph (1) for an Academy program year

that begins in an odd-numbered calendar year shall include the results of the survey conducted in that program year under subsection (c)(2).

(B) FOCUS GROUP RESULTS.—Each report under paragraph (1) for an Academy program year in which the Secretary is not required to conduct the survey described in subsection (c)(2) shall include the results of the focus group conducted in that program year under subsection (c)(3).

(4) REPORTING REQUIREMENT.—

(A) BY THE SUPERINTENDENT.—For each incident of sexual harassment or sexual assault reported to the Superintendent, the Superintendent shall provide to the Secretary and the Board of Visitors of the Academy a report that includes—

(i) the facts surrounding the incident, except for any details that would reveal the identities of the people involved; and

(ii) the Academy's response to the incident.

(B) BY THE SECRETARY.—Not later than January 15 of each year, the Secretary shall submit a copy of each report received under subparagraph (A) and the Secretary's comments on the report to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives.

(e) DATA FOR AGGREGATE REPORTING.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—No requirement related to confidentiality in this section or section 51319 of this title may be construed to prevent a sexual assault response coordinator from providing information for any report required by law regarding sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(2) IDENTITY PROTECTION.—Any information provided for a report referred to in paragraph (1) shall be provided in a manner that protects the identity of the victim or witness.

(f) DEFINITIONS.—In this section and section 51319 of this title:

(1) DATING VIOLENCE; DOMESTIC VIOLENCE; STALKING.—The terms "dating violence", "domestic violence", and "stalking" have the meanings given those terms is [1] section 40002(a) of the Violence Against Women Act of 1994 (42 U.S.C. 13925(a)).[2]

(2) SEXUAL ASSAULT.—The term "sexual assault" means an offense classified as a forcible or nonforcible sex offense under the uniform crime reporting system of the Federal Bureau of Investigation.

(Added Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3510(a), Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2782; amended Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(a)–(d)(1), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1920–1923; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2309.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2018, referred to in subsecs. (a)(3)(D)(i), (ii)(I) and (b)(2)(A), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 115–91, which was approved Dec. 12, 2017.

Section 40002 of the Violence Against Women Act of 1994, referred to in subsec. (f)(1), is section 40002 of title IV of Pub. L. 103–322, which was classified as section 13925 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, prior to editorial reclassification and renumbering as section 12291 of Title 34, Crime Control and Law Enforcement.

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (a)(2)(A). Pub. L. 115–232, §3507(a)(1)(A), inserted "and prevention" after "awareness".

Subsec. (a)(2)(B), (C). Pub. L. 115–232, §3507(a)(1)(B), (C), added subpar. (B) and redesignated former subpar. (B) as (C). Former subpar. (C) redesignated (E).

Subsec. (a)(2)(D) to (H). Pub. L. 115–232, §3507(a)(1)(B), (D), added subpar. (D) and redesignated former subpars. (C) to (F) as (E) to (H), respectively.

Subsec. (b)(2)(A). Pub. L. 115–232, §3507(a)(2), inserted "and other Academy personnel" after "cadets at the Academy".

Subsec. (d)(2)(A). Pub. L. 115–232, §3507(a)(3)(A), inserted ", including sexual harassment," after "sexual assaults, rapes, and other sexual offenses".

Subsec. (d)(4)(B). Pub. L. 115–232, §3507(a)(3)(B), substituted "Not later than January 15 of each year, the Secretary" for "The Secretary".

2017—Pub. L. 115–91, §3514(d)(1), substituted "Policy on sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking" for "Policy on sexual harassment and sexual assault" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 115–91, §3514(a)(1), substituted "harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking" for "harassment and sexual assault".

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 115–91, §3514(a)(2)(A), substituted "harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking" for "harassment and sexual assault" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(2)(A). Pub. L. 115–91, §3514(a)(2)(B), inserted "domestic violence, dating violence, stalking," after "acquaintance rape,".

Subsec. (a)(2)(B). Pub. L. 115–91, §3514(a)(2)(C)(i), substituted "harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking," for "harassment or sexual assault," in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(2)(B)(i). Pub. L. 115–91, §3514(a)(2)(C)(ii), substituted "harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking" for "harassment or sexual assault".

Subsec. (a)(2)(B)(iii). Pub. L. 115–91, §3514(a)(2)(C)(iii), substituted "a criminal sexual offense" for "criminal sexual assault".

Subsec. (a)(2)(D). Pub. L. 115–91, §3514(a)(2)(D), substituted "harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking" for "harassment or sexual assault".

Subsec. (a)(2)(E)(i). Pub. L. 115–91, §3514(a)(2)(E)(i), substituted "harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking" for "harassment or sexual assault".

Subsec. (a)(2)(E)(ii). Pub. L. 115–91, §3514(a)(2)(E)(ii), substituted "sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking" for "sexual assault".

Subsec. (a)(2)(E)(iii). Pub. L. 115–91, §3514(a)(2)(E)(iii), substituted "harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking" for "harassment and sexual assault".

Subsec. (a)(2)(F). Pub. L. 115–91, §3514(a)(2)(F), substituted "harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking" for "harassment or sexual assault".

Subsec. (a)(3) to (5). Pub. L. 115–91, §3514(a)(3), (4), added par. (3) and redesignated former pars. (3) and (4) as (4) and (5), respectively.

Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 115–91, §3514(a)(5), added par. (6).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 115–91, §3514(b), amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) related to development program and minimum training requirements regarding the prevention of sexual harassment and sexual assault.

Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 115–91, §3514(c), added subsecs. (e) and (f).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

UNITED STATES MERCHANT MARINE ACADEMY SEXUAL ASSAULT PREVENTION AND RESPONSE PROGRAM

Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3517, Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1986, provided that:

"(a) IMPLEMENTATION OF RECOMMENDATIONS.—The Secretary of Transportation shall ensure that, not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this title [Dec. 20, 2019], the recommendations in report of the Inspector General of the Department of Transportation on the effectiveness sexual assault prevention and response program of the United States Merchant Marine Academy (mandated under section 3512 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2017 (Public Law 114–328; 130 Stat. 2786)), are fully implemented.

"(b) REPORT.—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this title, the Secretary of Transportation shall submit to Congress a report that includes—

"(1) confirmation that the recommendations described in subsection (a) have been fully implemented, and explaining how those recommendations have been implemented; or

"(2) if such recommendations have not been fully implemented as of the date of the report, an explanation of why such recommendations have not been fully implemented and a description of the

resources that are needed to fully implement such recommendations."

IMPLEMENTATION

Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(b), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2310, provided that: "The Superintendent of the United States Merchant Marine Academy may implement the amendment to subsection (b)(2)(A) of section 51318 of title 46, United States Code, made by subsection (a)(2), by updating an existing plan issued pursuant to the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2018 (Public Law 115–91)."

ACCESS OF ACADEMY CADETS TO DOD SAFE OR EQUIVALENT HELPLINE

Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3515(b), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1926, which directed the Secretary of Transportation to provide cadets at the United States Merchant Marine Academy access to the Department of Defense SAFE Helpline or an equivalent helpline to report incidents of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking, was repealed by Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3513(c), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3068, which also redesignated section 3515(c) of Pub. L. 115–91 (amending section 51319 of this title) as section 3515(b) of Pub. L. 115–91.

SEA YEAR COMPLIANCE

Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3514, Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2788, as amended by Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3513, Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1919; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3515(a), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2312; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3516(b), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1986, which directed the Maritime Administrator to establish criteria for participation in the Sea Year program of the United States Merchant Marine Academy that addresses sexual harassment, sexual assault, and other inappropriate conduct and a process for verifying compliance, was repealed by Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3513(c)(1), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3068.

ACTIONS TO ADDRESS SEXUAL HARASSMENT AND VIOLENCE AT THE UNITED STATES MERCHANT MARINE ACADEMY

Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3507, Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4765, provided that:

"(a) REQUIRED POLICY.—The Secretary of Transportation shall direct the Superintendent of the United States Merchant Marine Academy to prescribe a policy on sexual harassment and sexual violence applicable to the cadets and other personnel of the Academy.

"(b) MATTERS TO BE SPECIFIED IN POLICY.—The policy on sexual harassment and sexual violence prescribed under this section shall include—

"(1) a program to promote awareness of the incidence of rape, acquaintance rape, and other sexual offenses of a criminal nature that involve cadets or other Academy personnel;

"(2) procedures that a cadet should follow in the case of an occurrence of sexual harassment or sexual violence, including—

"(A) a specification of the person or persons to whom an alleged occurrence of sexual harassment or sexual violence should be reported by a cadet and the options for confidential reporting;

"(B) a specification of any other person whom the victim should contact; and

"(C) procedures on the preservation of evidence potentially necessary for proof of criminal sexual assault;

"(3) a procedure for disciplinary action in cases of alleged criminal sexual assault involving a cadet or other Academy personnel;

"(4) any other sanction authorized to be imposed in a substantiated case of sexual harassment or sexual violence involving a cadet or other Academy personnel in rape, acquaintance rape, or any other criminal sexual offense, whether forcible or nonforcible; and

"(5) required training on the policy for all cadets and other Academy personnel, including the specific training required for personnel who process allegations of sexual harassment or sexual violence involving Academy personnel.

"(c) ANNUAL ASSESSMENT.—

"(1) The Secretary shall direct the Superintendent to conduct an assessment at the Academy during each Academy program year, to be administered by the Department of Transportation, to determine the effectiveness of the policies, training, and procedures of the Academy with respect to sexual harassment and sexual violence involving Academy personnel.

"(2) For the assessment at the Academy under paragraph (1) with respect to an Academy program year that begins in an odd-numbered calendar year, the Superintendent shall conduct a survey, to be administered by the Department, of Academy personnel—

"(A) to measure—

"(i) the incidence, during that program year, of sexual harassment and sexual violence events, on or off the Academy reservation, that have been reported to officials of the Academy; and

"(ii) the incidence, during that program year, of sexual harassment and sexual violence events, on or off the Academy reservation, that have not been reported to officials of the Academy; and

"(B) to assess the perceptions of Academy personnel of—

"(i) the policies, training, and procedures on sexual harassment and sexual violence involving Academy personnel;

"(ii) the enforcement of such policies;

"(iii) the incidence of sexual harassment and sexual violence involving Academy personnel; and

"(iv) any other issues relating to sexual harassment and sexual violence involving Academy personnel.

"(d) ANNUAL REPORT.—

"(1) The Secretary shall direct the Superintendent of the Academy to submit to the Secretary a report on sexual harassment and sexual violence involving cadets or other personnel at the Academy for each Academy program year.

"(2) Each report under paragraph (1) shall include, for the Academy program year covered by the report, the following:

"(A) The number of sexual assaults, rapes, and other sexual offenses involving cadets or other Academy personnel that have been reported to Academy officials during the program year and, of those reported cases, the number that have been substantiated.

"(B) The policies, procedures, and processes implemented by the Superintendent and the leadership of the Academy in response to sexual harassment and sexual violence involving cadets or other Academy personnel during the program year.

"(C) A plan for the actions that are to be taken in the following Academy program year regarding prevention of and response to sexual harassment and sexual violence involving cadets or other Academy personnel.

"(3) Each report under paragraph (1) for an Academy program year that begins in an odd-numbered calendar year shall include the results of the survey conducted in that program year under subsection (c)(2).

"(4)(A) The Superintendent shall transmit to the Secretary, and to the Board of Visitors of the Academy, each report received by the Superintendent under this subsection, together with the Superintendent's comments on the report.

"(B) The Secretary shall transmit each such report, together with the Secretary's comments on the report, to the Senate Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the House of Representatives Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure."

[1] So in original. Probably should be "in".

[2] See References in Text note below.

§51319. Sexual assault response coordinators and sexual assault victim advocates

(a) SEXUAL ASSAULT RESPONSE COORDINATORS.—

(1) REQUIREMENT FOR COORDINATORS.—The United States Merchant Marine Academy shall employ or contract with at least 1 full-time sexual assault response coordinator who shall reside at or near the Academy. The Secretary of Transportation may assign additional full-time or part-time sexual assault response coordinators at the Academy as necessary.

(2) SELECTION CRITERIA.—Each sexual assault response coordinator shall be selected based on—

(A) experience and a demonstrated ability to effectively provide victim services related to sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking; and

(B) protection of the individual under applicable law to provide privileged communication.

(3) CONFIDENTIALITY.—A sexual assault response coordinator shall, to the extent

authorized under applicable law, provide confidential services to a cadet at the Academy who reports being a victim of, or witness to, sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(4) TRAINING.—

(A) VERIFICATION.—Not later than 90 days after the date of the enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2018, the Maritime Administrator, in consultation with the Director of the Maritime Administration Office of Civil Rights, shall develop a process to verify that each sexual assault response coordinator has completed proper training.

(B) TRAINING REQUIREMENTS.—The training referred to in subparagraph (A) shall include training in—

(i) working with victims of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking;

(ii) the policies, procedures, and resources of the Academy related to responding to sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking; and

(iii) national, State, and local victim services and resources available to victims of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking.

(C) COMPLETION OF TRAINING.—A sexual assault response coordinator shall complete the training referred to in subparagraphs (A) and (B) not later than—

(i) 270 days after enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2018; or

(ii) 180 days after starting in the role of sexual assault response coordinator.

(5) DUTIES.—A sexual assault response coordinator shall—

(A) confidentially receive a report from a victim of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking;

(B) inform the victim of—

(i) the victim's rights under applicable law;

(ii) options for reporting an incident of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking to the Academy and law enforcement;

(iii) how to access available services, including emergency medical care, medical forensic or evidentiary examinations, legal services, services provided by rape crisis centers and other victim service providers, services provided by the volunteer sexual assault victim advocates at the Academy, and crisis intervention counseling and ongoing counseling;

(iv) such coordinator's ability to assist in arranging access to such services, with the consent of the victim;

(v) available accommodations, such as allowing the victim to change living arrangements and obtain accessibility services;

(vi) such coordinator's ability to assist in arranging such accommodations, with the consent of the victim;

(vii) the victim's rights and the Academy's responsibilities regarding orders of protection, no contact orders, restraining orders, or similar lawful orders issued by the Academy or a criminal, civil, or tribal court; and

(viii) privacy limitations under applicable law;

(C) represent the interests of any cadet at the Academy who reports being a victim of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking, even if such interests are in conflict with the interests of the Academy;

(D) advise the victim of, and provide written materials regarding, the information described in subparagraph (B);

(E) liaise with appropriate staff at the Academy, with the victim's consent, to arrange reasonable accommodations through the Academy to allow the victim to change living arrangements, obtain accessibility services, or access other accommodations;

(F) maintain the privacy and confidentiality of the victim, and shall not notify the Academy or any other authority of the identity of the victim or the alleged circumstances surrounding the reported incident unless—

(i) otherwise required by applicable law;

(ii) requested to do so by the victim who has been fully and accurately informed about what procedures shall occur if the information is shared; or

(iii) notwithstanding clause (i) or clause (ii), there is risk of imminent harm to other individuals;

(G) assist the victim in contacting and reporting an incident of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking to the Academy or law enforcement, if requested to do so by the victim who has been fully and accurately informed about what procedures shall occur if information is shared; and

(H) submit to the Director of the Maritime Administration Office of Civil Rights an annual report summarizing how the resources supplied to the coordinator were used during the prior year, including the number of victims assisted by the coordinator.

(b) OVERSIGHT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—

(A) REPORTING.—Each sexual assault response coordinator shall—

(i) report directly to the Superintendent; and

(ii) have concurrent reporting responsibility to the Executive Director of the Maritime Administration on matters related to the Maritime Administration and the Department of Transportation and upon belief that the Academy leadership is acting inappropriately regarding sexual assault prevention and response matters.

(B) SUPPORT.—The Maritime Administration Office of Civil Rights shall provide support to the sexual assault response coordinator at the Academy on all sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking prevention matters.

(2) PROHIBITION ON INVESTIGATION BY THE ACADEMY.—Any request by a victim for an accommodation, as described in subsection (a)(5)(E), made by a sexual assault response coordinator shall not trigger an investigation by the Academy, even if such coordinator deals only with matters relating to sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking.

(3) PROHIBITION ON RETALIATION.—A sexual assault response coordinator, victim advocate, or companion may not be disciplined, penalized, or otherwise retaliated against by the Academy for representing the interests of the victim, even if such interests are in conflict with the interests of the Academy.

(c) SPECIAL VICTIMS ADVISOR.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall designate an attorney (to be known as the "Special Victims Advisor") for the purpose of providing legal assistance to any cadet of the Academy who is the victim of an alleged sex-related offense regarding administrative and criminal proceedings related to such offense, regardless of whether the report of that offense is restricted or unrestricted.

(2) SPECIAL VICTIMS ADVISORY.—The Secretary shall ensure that the attorney designated as the Special Victims Advisor has knowledge of the Uniform Code of Military Justice, as well as criminal and civil law.

(3) PRIVILEGED COMMUNICATIONS.—Any communications between a victim of an alleged sex-related offense and the Special Victim Advisor, when acting in their capacity as such, shall have the same protection that applicable law provides for confidential attorney-client communications.

(d) VOLUNTEER SEXUAL ASSAULT VICTIM ADVOCATES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary, acting through the Superintendent of the Academy, shall designate from among volunteers 1 or more permanent employees of the Academy to serve as advocates for victims of sexual assaults involving cadets of the Academy or other Academy personnel.

(2) TRAINING; OTHER DUTIES.—Each victim advocate designated under this subsection shall—

(A) have or receive training in matters relating to sexual assault and the comprehensive policy developed under section 51318; and

(B) serve as a victim advocate voluntarily, in addition to the individual's other duties as an employee of the Academy.

(3) PRIMARY DUTIES.—While performing the duties of a victim advocate under this subsection, a designated employee shall—

(A) support victims of sexual assault by informing them of the rights and resources available to them as victims;

(B) identify additional resources to ensure the safety of victims of sexual assault; and

(C) connect victims of sexual assault to companions, as described in paragraph (4).

(4) COMPANIONS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—At least 1 victim advocate designated under this subsection, or a sexual assault response coordinator designated under subsection (a), while performing the duties of a victim advocate, shall act as a companion to a victim described in paragraph (1) in navigating investigative, medical, mental, and emotional health, and recovery processes relating to sexual assault.

(B) ALTERNATE VICTIM ADVOCATES.—If requested by the victim, an alternate victim advocate shall be designated under this subsection to act as a companion to the victim, as described in subparagraph (A).

(5) FORMAL RELATIONSHIPS WITH OTHER ENTITIES.—The Secretary may enter into formal relationships with other entities to make available additional victim advocates or to implement paragraphs (3) and (4).

(e) UNFILLED VACANCIES.—The Administrator of the Maritime Administration may appoint qualified candidates to positions under subsections (a) and (d) of this section without regard to sections 3309 through 3319 of title 5.

(Added Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(a), Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2785; amended Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3515(a), (b) (formerly §3515(c)), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1924, 1927, §3515(b) renumbered §3515(c), Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3513(c)(2), Dec. 22, 2022, 136 Stat. 3068; Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(e), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3088.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2018 and enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2018, referred to in subsec. (a)(4)(A), (C)(i), are the date of enactment of Pub. L. 115–91, which was approved Dec. 12, 2017.

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 117–263, §3531(e)(1), (2), added subsec. (c) and redesignated former subsec. (c) as (d).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 117–263, §3531(e)(3), added subsec. (e).

2017—Subsecs. (a) to (c). Pub. L. 115–91, §3515(a), added subsecs. (a) and (b), redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c), and struck out former subsec. (a) which read as follows: "SEXUAL ASSAULT RESPONSE

COORDINATORS.—The United States Merchant Marine Academy shall employ or contract with at least 1 full-time sexual assault response coordinator who shall reside at or near the Academy. The Secretary of Transportation may assign additional full-time or part-time sexual assault response coordinators at the Academy as necessary."

Subsec. (c)(5), (6). Pub. L. 115–91, §3515(b), formerly §3515(c), as renumbered by Pub. L. 117–263, §3513(c)(2), redesignated par. (6) as (5), substituted "paragraphs (3) and (4)" for "paragraphs (3), (4), and (5)", and struck out former par. (5) which read as follows: "HOTLINE.—The Secretary shall establish a 24-hour hotline through which the victim of a sexual assault described in paragraph (1) can receive victim support services."

§51320. Acceptance of guarantees with gifts for major projects

(a) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

(1) MAJOR PROJECT.—The term "major project" means a project estimated to cost at least $1,000,000 for—

(A) the purchase or other procurement of real or personal property; or

(B) the construction, renovation, or repair of real or personal property.

(2) MAJOR UNITED STATES COMMERCIAL BANK.—The term "major United States commercial bank" means a commercial bank that—

(A) is an insured bank (as defined in section 3(h) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(h)));

(B) is headquartered in the United States; and

(C) has total net assets of an amount considered by the Maritime Administrator to qualify the bank as a major bank.

(3) MAJOR UNITED STATES INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FIRM.—The term "major United States investment management firm" means—

(A) any broker or dealer (as such terms are defined in section 3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78c));

(B) any investment adviser or provider of investment supervisory services (as such terms are defined in section 202 of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80b–2)); or

(C) a major United States commercial bank that—

(i) is headquartered in the United States; and

(ii) holds for the account of others investment assets in a total amount considered by the Maritime Administrator to qualify the bank as a major investment management firm.

(4) QUALIFIED GUARANTEE.—The term "qualified guarantee", with respect to a major project, means a guarantee that—

(A) is made by 1 or more persons in connection with a donation for the project of a total amount in cash or securities that the Maritime Administrator determines is sufficient to defray a substantial portion of the total cost of the project;

(B) is made to facilitate or expedite the completion of the project in reasonable anticipation that other donors will contribute sufficient funds or other resources in amounts sufficient to pay for completion of the project;

(C) is set forth as a written agreement providing that the donor will furnish in cash or securities, in addition to the donor's other gift or gifts for the project, any additional amount that may become necessary for paying the cost of completing the project by reason of a failure to obtain from other donors or sources funds or other resources in amounts sufficient to pay the cost of completing the project; and

(D) is accompanied by—

(i) an irrevocable and unconditional standby letter of credit for the benefit of the United States Merchant Marine Academy that is in the amount of the guarantee and is issued by a major United States commercial bank; or

(ii) a qualified account control agreement.

(5) QUALIFIED ACCOUNT CONTROL AGREEMENT.—The term "qualified account control agreement", with respect to a guarantee of a donor, means an agreement among the donor, the Maritime Administrator, and a major United States investment management firm that—

(A) ensures the availability of sufficient funds or other financial resources to pay the amount guaranteed during the period of the guarantee;

(B) provides for the perfection of a security interest in the assets of the account for the United States for the benefit of the United States Merchant Marine Academy with the highest priority available for liens and security interests under applicable law;

(C) requires the donor to maintain in an account with the investment management firm assets having a total value that is not less than 130 percent of the amount guaranteed; and

(D) requires the investment management firm, whenever the value of the account is less than the value required to be maintained under subparagraph (C), to liquidate any noncash assets in the account and reinvest the proceeds in Treasury bills issued under section 3104 of title 31.

(b) ACCEPTANCE AUTHORITY.—Subject to subsection (d), the Maritime Administrator may accept a qualified guarantee from a donor or donors for the completion of a major project for the benefit of the United States Merchant Marine Academy.

(c) OBLIGATION AUTHORITY.—The amount of a qualified guarantee accepted under this section shall be considered as contract authority to provide obligation authority for purposes of Federal fiscal and contractual requirements. Funds available for a project for which such a guarantee has been accepted may be obligated and expended for the project without regard to whether the total amount of funds and other resources available for the project (not taking into account the amount of the guarantee) is sufficient to pay for completion of the project.

(d) NOTICE.—The Maritime Administrator may not accept a qualified guarantee under this section for the completion of a major project until 30 days after the date on which a report of the facts concerning the proposed guarantee is submitted to Congress.

(e) PROHIBITION ON COMMINGLING FUNDS.—The Maritime Administrator may not enter into any contract or other transaction involving the use of a qualified guarantee and appropriated funds in the same contract or transaction.

(Added Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3510(a), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1916.)

§51321. Grants for scientific and educational research

(a) DEFINED TERM.—In this section, the term "qualifying research grant" is a grant that—

(1) is awarded on a competitive basis by the Federal Government (except for the Department of Transportation), a State, a corporation, a fund, a foundation, an educational institution, or a similar entity that is organized and operated primarily for scientific or educational purposes; and

(2) is to be used to carry out a research project with a scientific or educational purpose.

(b) ACCEPTANCE OF QUALIFYING RESEARCH GRANTS.—The United States Merchant Marine Academy may compete for and accept qualifying research grants if the work under the grant is to be carried out by a professor or instructor of the United States Merchant Marine Academy.

(c) ADMINISTRATION OF GRANT FUNDS.—

(1) ESTABLISHMENT OF ACCOUNT.—The Maritime Administrator shall establish a separate account for administering funds received from research grants under this section.

(2) USE OF GRANT FUNDS.—The Superintendent shall use grant funds deposited into the account established pursuant to paragraph (1) in accordance with applicable regulations and the terms and conditions of the respective grants.

(d) RELATED EXPENSES.—Subject to such limitations as may be provided in appropriations

Acts, appropriations available for the United States Merchant Marine Academy may be used to pay expenses incurred by the Academy in applying for, and otherwise pursuing, a qualifying research grant.

(Added Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3512(a), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1918.)

§51322. Protection of cadets from sexual assault onboard vessels

(a) SAFETY CRITERIA.—The Maritime Administrator, after consulting with the Commandant of the Coast Guard, shall establish—

(1) criteria, to which an owner or operator of a vessel engaged in commercial service shall adhere prior to carrying a cadet performing their Sea Year service from the United States Merchant Marine Academy, that addresses prevention of, and response to, sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking; and

(2) a process for collecting pertinent information from such owners or operators and verifying their compliance with the criteria.

(3) TRAINING.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—As part of training that shall be provided not less than semiannually to all midshipmen of the Academy, pursuant to section 51318, the Maritime Administrator shall develop and implement comprehensive in-person sexual assault risk-reduction and response training that, to the extent practicable, conforms to best practices in the sexual assault prevention and response field and includes appropriate scenario-based training.

(B) DEVELOPMENT AND CONSULTATION WITH EXPERTS.—In developing the sexual assault risk-reduction and response training under subparagraph (A), the Maritime Administrator shall consult with and incorporate, as appropriate, the recommendations and views of experts in the sexual assault field.

(b) MINIMUM STANDARDS.—At a minimum, the criteria established under subsection (a) shall require the vessel owners or operators to have policies that address—

(1) communication between a cadet and an individual ashore who is trained in responding to incidents of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking;

(2) the safety and security of cadet staterooms while a cadet is onboard the vessel;

(3) requirements for crew to report complaints or incidents of sexual assault, sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, and stalking consistent with the requirements in section 10104;

(4) the maintenance of records of reports of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking onboard a vessel carrying a cadet;

(5) the maintenance of records of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking training as required under subsection (f);

(6) a requirement for the owner or operator provide each cadet a copy of the policies and procedures related to sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking policies that pertain to the vessel on which they will be employed; and

(7) any other issues the Maritime Administrator determines necessary to ensure the safety of cadets during Sea Year training.

(c) SELF-CERTIFICATION BY OWNERS OR OPERATORS.—The Maritime Administrator shall require the owner or operator of any commercial vessel that is carrying a cadet from the United States Merchant Marine Academy to annually certify that—

(1) the vessel owner or operator is in compliance with the criteria established under subsection (a); and

(2) the vessel is in compliance with the International Convention of Safety of Life at Sea, 1974 (32 UST 47) and sections 8106 and 70103(c).

(d) INFORMATION, TRAINING, AND RESOURCES.—The Maritime Administrator shall

ensure that a cadet participating in Sea Year—

(1) receives training specific to vessel safety, including sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking prevention and response training, prior to the cadet boarding a vessel for Sea Year training;

(2) is equipped with an appropriate means of communication and has been trained on its use;

(3) has access to a helpline to report incidents of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking that is monitored by trained personnel; and

(4) is informed of the legal requirements for vessel owners and operators to provide for the security of individuals onboard, including requirements under section 70103(c) and chapter 81.

(e) CHECKS OF COMMERCIAL VESSELS.—

(1) REQUIREMENT.—Not less frequently than biennially, staff of the Academy or staff of the Maritime Administration shall conduct both random and targeted unannounced checks of not less than 10 percent of the commercial vessels that host a cadet from the Academy.

(2) ACCESS TO INFORMATION.—The vessel operator shall make available to staff conducting a vessel check such information as the Maritime Administrator determines is necessary to determine whether the vessel is being operated in compliance with the criteria established under subsection (a).

(3) REMOVAL OF STUDENTS.—If staff of the Academy or staff of the Maritime Administration determine that a commercial vessel is not in compliance with the criteria established under subsection (a), the staff—

(A) may remove a cadet of the Academy from the vessel; and

(B) shall report such determination of non-compliance to the owner or operator of the vessel.

(f) MAINTENANCE OF SEXUAL ASSAULT TRAINING RECORDS.—The Maritime Administrator shall require the owner or operator of a commercial vessel, and the seafarer union for a commercial vessel, to maintain records of sexual assault training for any person required to have such training.

(g) SEA YEAR SURVEY.—

(1) REQUIREMENT.—The Maritime Administrator shall require each cadet from the Academy, upon completion of the cadet's Sea Year, to complete a survey regarding the environment and conditions during the Sea Year of the vessel to which the cadet was assigned.

(2) AVAILABILITY.—The Maritime Administrator shall make available to the public for each year—

(A) the questions used in the survey required by paragraph (1); and

(B) the aggregated data received from such surveys.

(h) NONCOMMERCIAL VESSELS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—A public vessel (as defined in section 2101) shall not be subject to the requirements of this section.

(2) REQUIREMENTS FOR PARTICIPATION.—The Maritime Administrator may establish criteria and requirements that the operators of public vessels shall meet to participate in the Sea Year program of the United States Merchant Marine Academy that addresses prevention of, and response to, sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking.

(i) SHARING OF BEST PRACTICES.—The Maritime Administrator shall share with State maritime academies best practices for, and lessons learned with respect to, the prevention of, and response to, sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking.

(Added Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3516(a), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1927; amended Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3515(b), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2312; Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §§3513(a), 3531(g), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3066, 3088.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 117–263, §3513(a)(1), added subsec. (a) and struck out former subsec. (a) which related to riding gangs.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 117–263, §3531(g), added par. (3).

Subsecs. (b) to (d). Pub. L. 117–263, §3513(a)(1), added subsecs. (b) to (d). Former subsecs. (b) to (d) redesignated (e) to (g), respectively.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 117–263, §3513(a)(2), redesignated subsec. (b) as (e).

Subsec. (e)(2), (3). Pub. L. 117–263, §3513(a)(3), added pars. (2) and (3) and struck out former par. (2), which related to removal of students.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 117–263, §3513(a)(2), (4), redesignated subsec. (c) as (f) and substituted "and the seafarer union" for "or the seafarer union".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 117–263, §3513(a)(2), redesignated subsec. (d) as (g).

Subsecs. (h), (i). Pub. L. 117–263, §3513(a)(5), added subsecs. (h) and (i).

2018—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 115–232 amended subsec. (c) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Maritime Administrator shall require the owner or operator of a commercial vessel, or the seafarer union for a commercial vessel, to maintain records of sexual assault training for the crew and passengers of any vessel hosting a cadet from the Academy."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3513(b), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3068, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Maritime Administrator may prescribe rules necessary to carry out the amendments made by this section [amending this section and section 51319 of this title and repealing provisions set out as notes under section 51318 of this title].

"(2) INTERIM RULES.—The Maritime Administrator may prescribe interim rules necessary to carry out the amendments made by this section. For this purpose, the Maritime Administrator in prescribing rules under paragraph (1) is excepted from compliance with the notice and comment requirements of section 553 of title 5, United States Code. All rules prescribed under the authority of the amendments made by this section shall remain in effect until superseded by a final rule."

§51323. United States Merchant Marine Academy Advisory Council

(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—The Secretary of Transportation shall establish an advisory council, to be known as the "United States Merchant Marine Academy Advisory Council" (in this section referred to as the "Council").

(b) MEMBERSHIP.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall select not fewer than 8 and not more than 14 individuals to serve as members of the Council. Such individuals shall have such expertise as the Secretary determines necessary and appropriate for providing advice and guidance on improving the Academy.

(2) GOVERNMENTAL EXPERTS.—The number of members of the Council who are employees of the Federal Government may not exceed the number of members of the Council who are not employees of the Federal Government.

(3) EMPLOYEE STATUS.—Members of the Council shall not be considered employees of the United States Government by reason of their membership on the Council for any purpose and shall not receive compensation other than reimbursement of travel expenses and per diem allowance in accordance with section 5703 of title 5.

(c) RESPONSIBILITIES.—The Council shall provide advice to the Secretary at the time and in the manner requested by the Secretary.

(d) PERSONALLY IDENTIFIABLE INFORMATION.—In carrying out its responsibilities under this subsection, the Council shall comply with the obligations of the Department of Transportation to

protect personally identifiable information.

(Added Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3501(c)(1), Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2238.)

§51324. Unfilled vacancies

(a) IN GENERAL.—In the event of an unfilled vacancy for any critical position at the United States Merchant Marine Academy, the Secretary of Transportation may appoint, without regard to the provisions of subchapter I of chapter 33 of title 5, other than sections 3303 and 3328 of that title, a qualified candidate for the purposes of filling up to 20 of such positions.

(b) CRITICAL POSITION DEFINED.—In this section, the term "critical position" means a position that contributes to the improvement of—

(1) the culture or infrastructure of the Academy;

(2) student health and well being;

(3) Academy governance; or

(4) any other priority areas identified by the Council.

(Added Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3501(c)(1), Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2238.)

§51325. Sexual assault and sexual harassment prevention information management system

(a) INFORMATION MANAGEMENT SYSTEM.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than January 1, 2023, the Maritime Administrator shall establish within the United States Merchant Marine Academy Sexual Assault prevention and Response Program, an information management system to track and maintain, in such a manner that patterns can be reasonably identified, information regarding claims and incidents involving cadets that are reportable pursuant to subsection (d) of section 51318 of this chapter.

(2) INFORMATION MAINTAINED IN THE SYSTEM.—Information maintained in the system established under paragraph (1) shall include the following information, to the extent that information is available:

(A) The overall number of sexual assault or sexual harassment incidents per fiscal year.

(B) The location of each such incident, including vessel name and the name of the company operating the vessel, if applicable.

(C) The standardized job title or position of the individuals involved in each such incident.

(D) The general nature of each such incident, to include copies of any associated reports completed on the incidents.

(E) The type of inquiry made into each such incident.

(F) A record of whether each such incident was substantiated by the relevant investigative process.

(3) PAST INFORMATION INCLUDED.—The information management system under this section shall include the relevant data listed in this subsection related to sexual assault and sexual harassment that the Maritime Administrator possesses, and shall not be limited to data collected after January 1, 2023.

(4) PRIVACY PROTECTIONS.—The Maritime Administrator and the Chief Information Officer of the Department of Transportation shall coordinate to ensure that the information management system under this section shall—

(A) be established and maintained in a secure fashion to ensure the protection of the privacy of any individuals whose information is entered in such system; and

(B) be free of personally identifiable information and maintain only the data required to satisfy the statistical purpose of such system.

(5) CYBERSECURITY AUDIT.—Ninety days after the implementation of the information management system, the Office of Inspector General of the Department of Transportation shall commence an audit of the cybersecurity of the system and shall submit a report containing the results of that audit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives.

(6) CORRECTING RECORDS.—In establishing the information management system, the Maritime Administrator shall create a process to ensure that if any incident report results in a final agency action or final judgement that acquits an individual of wrongdoing, all personally identifiable information about the acquitted individual is removed from that incident report in the system.

(b) SEA YEAR PROGRAM.—The Maritime Administrator shall provide for the establishment of in-person and virtual confidential exit interviews, to be conducted by personnel who are not involved in the assignment of the midshipmen to a Sea Year vessel, for midshipmen from the Academy upon completion of Sea Year and following completion by the midshipmen of the survey under section 51322(d).[1]

(c) DATA-INFORMED DECISIONMAKING.—The data maintained in the data management system under subsection (a) and through the exit interviews under subsection (b) shall be affirmatively referenced and used to inform the creation of new policy or regulation, or changes to any existing policy or regulation, in the areas of sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking.

(Added Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3083.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 51322(d), referred to in subsec. (b), probably should be a reference to section 51322(g) of this title. Subsec. (d) of section 51322, which relates to the completion of a survey by a cadet upon the completion of the cadet's Sea Year, was redesignated as subsec. (g) of section 51322 by Pub. L. 117–263, §3513(a)(2). Subsec. (d) of section 51322, as added by Pub. L. 117–263, §3513(a)(1), provides that the Maritime Administrator is to ensure that a cadet participating in Sea Year has certain information, training, and resources.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§51326. Student advisory board at the United States Merchant Marine Academy

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Maritime Administrator shall establish at the United States Merchant Marine Academy an advisory board to be known as the Advisory Board to the Secretary of Transportation (referred to in this section as the "Advisory Board").

(b) MEMBERSHIP.—The Advisory Board shall be composed of not fewer than 12 midshipmen of the Merchant Marine Academy who are enrolled at the Merchant Marine Academy at the time of the appointment, including not fewer than 3 cadets from each class.

(c) APPOINTMENT; TERM.—Midshipmen shall serve on the Advisory Board pursuant to appointment by the Maritime Administrator. Appointments shall be made not later than 60 days after the date of the swearing in of a new class of midshipmen at the Academy. The term of membership of a midshipmen on the Advisory Board shall be 1 academic year.

(d) REAPPOINTMENT.—The Maritime Administrator may reappoint not more than 6 cadets from the previous term to serve on the Advisory Board for an additional academic year if the Maritime Administrator determines such reappointment to be in the best interests of the Merchant Marine Academy.

(e) MEETINGS.—The Advisory Board shall meet with the Secretary of Transportation not less

than once each academic year to discuss the activities of the Advisory Board. The Advisory Board shall meet in person with the Maritime Administrator not less than 2 times each academic year to discuss the activities of the Advisory Board.

(f) DUTIES.—The Advisory Board shall—

(1) identify health and wellbeing, diversity, and sexual assault and harassment challenges and other topics considered important by the Advisory Board facing midshipmen at the Merchant Marine Academy, off campus, and while aboard ships during Sea Year or other training opportunities;

(2) discuss and propose possible solutions, including improvements to culture and leadership development at the Merchant Marine Academy; and

(3) periodically review the efficacy of the program in section 51325(b), as appropriate, and provide recommendations to the Maritime Administrator for improvement.

(g) WORKING GROUPS.—The Advisory Board may establish one or more working groups to assist the Advisory Board in carrying out its duties, including working groups composed in part of midshipmen at the Merchant Marine Academy who are not current members of the Advisory Board.

(h) REPORTS AND BRIEFINGS.—The Advisory Board shall regularly provide the Secretary of Transportation and the Maritime Administrator reports and briefings on the results of its duties, including recommendations for actions to be taken in light of such results. Such reports and briefings may be provided in writing, in person, or both.

(Added Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3085.)

§51327. Sexual Assault Advisory Council

(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—The Secretary of Transportation shall establish a Sexual Assault Advisory Council (in this section referred to as the "Council").

(b) MEMBERSHIP.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Council shall be composed of not fewer than 8 and not more than 14 individuals selected by the Secretary of Transportation who are alumni that have graduated within the last 4 years or current midshipmen of the United States Merchant Marine Academy (including midshipmen or alumni who were victims of sexual assault, to the maximum extent practicable, and midshipmen or alumni who were not victims of sexual assault) and governmental and nongovernmental experts and professionals in the sexual assault field.

(2) EXPERTS INCLUDED.—The Council shall include—

(A) not less than 1 member who is licensed in the field of mental health and has prior experience working as a counselor or therapist providing mental health care to survivors of sexual assault in a victim services agency or organization; and

(B) not less than 1 member who has prior experience developing or implementing sexual assault or sexual harassment prevention and response policies in an academic setting.

(3) RULES REGARDING MEMBERSHIP.—No employee of the Department of Transportation shall be a member of the Council. The number of governmental experts appointed to the Council shall not exceed the number of nongovernmental experts.

(c) DUTIES; AUTHORIZED ACTIVITIES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Council shall meet not less often than semiannually to—

(A) review—

(i) the policies on sexual harassment, dating violence, domestic violence, sexual assault, and stalking under section 51318 of this title;

(ii) the trends and patterns of data contained in the system described under section 51325 of this title; and

(iii) related matters the Council views as appropriate; and

(B) develop recommendations designed to ensure that such policies and such matters conform, to the extent practicable, to best practices in the field of sexual assault and sexual harassment response and prevention.

(2) AUTHORIZED ACTIVITIES.—To carry out this subsection, the Council may—

(A) interview current and former midshipmen of the United States Merchant Marine Academy (to the extent that such midshipmen provide the Department of Transportation express consent to be interviewed by the Council); and

(B) review surveys under section 51322(d).[1]

(3) PERSONALLY IDENTIFIABLE INFORMATION.—In carrying out this subsection, the Council shall comply with the obligations of the Department of Transportation to protect personally identifiable information.

(d) REPORTS.—On an annual basis for each of the 5 years after the date of enactment of this section, and at the discretion of the Council thereafter, the Council shall submit, to the President and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives, a report on the Council's findings based on the reviews conducted pursuant to subsection (c) and related recommendations.

(e) EMPLOYEE STATUS.—Members of the Council shall not be considered employees of the United States Government for any purpose and shall not receive compensation other than reimbursement of travel expenses and per diem allowance in accordance with section 5703 of title 5.

(f) NONAPPLICABILITY OF FACA.—The Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.) [1] shall not apply to the Council.

(Added Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3086.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 51322(d), referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(B), probably should be a reference to section 51322(g) of this title. Subsec. (d) of section 51322, which relates to the completion of a survey by a cadet upon the completion of the cadet's Sea Year, was redesignated as subsec. (g) of section 51322 by Pub. L. 117–263, §3513(a)(2). Subsec. (d) of section 51322, as added by Pub. L. 117–263, §3513(a)(1), provides that the Maritime Administrator is to ensure that a cadet participating in Sea Year has certain information, training, and resources.

The date of enactment of this section, referred to in subsec. (d), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 117–263, which was approved Dec. 23, 2022.

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (f), is Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, which was set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, and was substantially repealed and restated in chapter 10 (§1001 et seq.) of Title 5 by Pub. L. 117–286, §§3(a), 7, Dec. 27, 2022, 136 Stat. 4197, 4361. For disposition of sections of the Act into chapter 10 of Title 5, see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of Title 5.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§51328. Student support

The Maritime Administrator shall—

(1) require a biannual survey of midshipmen, faculty, and staff of the Academy assessing the environment of the Academy; and

(2) require an annual survey of faculty and staff of the Academy assessing the Sea Year

program.

(Added Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3087.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

UNITED STATES MERCHANT MARINE ACADEMY STUDENT SUPPORT PLAN

Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(d), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3087, provided that:

"(1) STUDENT SUPPORT PLAN.—Not later than January 1, 2023, the Maritime Administrator shall issue a Student Support Plan for the United States Merchant Marine Academy, in consultation with relevant mental health professionals in the Federal Government or experienced with the maritime industry or related industries. Such plan shall—

"(A) address the mental health resources available to midshipmen, both on-campus and during Sea Year;

"(B) establish a tracking system for suicidal ideations and suicide attempts of midshipmen, which excludes personally identifiable information;

"(C) create an option for midshipmen to obtain assistance from a professional care provider virtually; and

"(D) require an annual survey of faculty and staff assessing the adequacy of mental health resources for midshipmen of the Academy, both on campus and during Sea Year.

"(2) REPORT TO CONGRESS.—Not later than 30 days after the date of enactment of this section [Dec. 23, 2022], the Maritime Administrator shall provide Congress with a report on the resources necessary to properly implement this subsection."

CHAPTER 515—STATE MARITIME ACADEMY SUPPORT PROGRAM

Sec.
51501. General support program.
51502. Detailing of personnel.
51503. Regional maritime academies.
51504. Use of training vessels.
51505. Annual payments for maintenance and support.
51506. Conditions to receiving payments and use of vessels.
51507. Places of training.
51508. Allowances for students.
51509. Student incentive payment agreements.
51510. Deferment of service obligation under student incentive payment agreements.
51511. Midshipman status in the Navy Reserve.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3523(a)(1), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598, substituted "Navy Reserve" for "Naval Reserve" in item 51511.

§51501. General support program

(a) ASSISTANCE TO STATE MARITIME ACADEMIES.—The Secretary of Transportation shall cooperate with and assist State maritime academies in providing instruction to individuals to prepare them for service in the merchant marine of the United States.

(b) COURSE DEVELOPMENT.—The Secretary shall provide to each State maritime academy guidance and assistance in developing courses on the operation and maintenance of new vessels, on equipment, and on innovations being introduced to the merchant marine of the United States.

(c) AMERICAN MARITIME CENTERS OF EXCELLENCE.—The Secretary shall designate each State maritime academy as an American Maritime Center of Excellence.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1577; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3505, Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1970.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51501(a)	46 App.:1295c(a).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1304(a), (d)(2), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2003, 2004.
51501(b)	46 App.:1295c(d)(2).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2019—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 116–92 added subsec. (c).

§51502. Detailing of personnel

At the request of the Governor of a State, the President may detail, without reimbursement, personnel of the Navy, the Coast Guard, and the Maritime Service to a State maritime academy to serve as a superintendent, professor, lecturer, or instructor at the academy.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1577.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51502	46 App.:1295c(e).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1304(e), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2004.

The reference to territories is omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "State" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

§51503. Regional maritime academies

The Governors of the States cooperating to sponsor a regional maritime academy shall designate in writing one of those States to conduct the affairs of that academy. A regional maritime academy is eligible for assistance from the United States Government on the same basis as a State maritime academy sponsored by a single State.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1577.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51503	46 App.:1295c(b).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1304(b), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2003.

The reference to territories is omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "State" in chapter 1 of the

revised title.

§51504. Use of training vessels

(a) APPLICATIONS TO USE VESSELS.—The Governor of a State sponsoring a State maritime academy (or the Governor of the State designated to conduct the affairs of a regional maritime academy) may apply in writing to the Secretary of Transportation to obtain the use of a training vessel for the academy. A vessel provided under this section remains the property of the United States Government.

(b) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—Subject to subsection (c), the Secretary may provide to a State maritime academy, for use as a training vessel, a suitable vessel under the control of the Secretary or made available to the Secretary under subsection (e). If a suitable vessel is not available, the Secretary may build and provide a suitable vessel.

(c) APPROVAL REQUIREMENTS.—The Secretary may provide a vessel under this section only if—

(1) an application has been made under subsection (a);

(2) the State maritime academy satisfies section 51506(a) of this title; and

(3) a suitable port will be available for the safe mooring of the vessel while the academy is using the vessel.

(d) PREPARATION AND MAINTENANCE.—A vessel provided under this section shall be—

(1) repaired, reconditioned, and equipped (with all apparel, charts, books, and instruments of navigation) as necessary for use as a training vessel; and

(2) maintained in good repair by the Secretary.

(e) AGENCY VESSELS.—An agency may provide to the Secretary, for use by a State maritime academy, a vessel (including equipment) that—

(1) is suitable for training purposes; and

(2) can be provided without detriment to the service to which the vessel is assigned.

(f) FUEL COSTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Subject to the availability of appropriations, the Secretary shall pay to each State maritime academy the costs of fuel used by a vessel provided under this section while used for training.

(2) MAXIMUM AMOUNTS.—The amount of the payment to a State maritime academy under paragraph (1) may not exceed—

(A) $100,000 for fiscal year 2006;

(B) $200,000 for fiscal year 2007; and

(C) $300,000 for fiscal year 2008 and each fiscal year thereafter.

(g) VESSEL SHARING.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 90 days after the date of enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2019, the Secretary, acting through the Maritime Administrator, shall upon consultation with the maritime academies, and to the extent feasible with the consent of the maritime academies, implement a program of training vessel sharing, requiring maritime academies to share training vessel [1] provided by the Secretary among maritime academies, as necessary to ensure that training needs of each academy are met.

(2) PROGRAM OF VESSEL SHARING.—For purposes of this subsection, a program of vessel sharing shall include—

(A) ways to maximize the available underway training available in the fleet of training vessels;

(B) coordinating the dates and duration of training cruises with the academic calendars of maritime academies;

(C) coordinating academic programs designed to be implemented aboard training vessels among maritime academies; and

(D) identifying ways to minimize costs.

(3) ADDITIONAL FUNDING.—Subject to the availability of appropriations, the Maritime Administrator may provide additional funding to State maritime academies during periods of limited training vessel capacity, for costs associated with training vessel sharing.

(4) EVALUATION.—Not later than 30 days after the beginning of each fiscal year, the Secretary, acting through the Maritime Administrator, shall evaluate the vessel sharing program under this subsection to determine the optimal utilization of State maritime training vessels, and modify the program as necessary to improve utilization.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1577; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(b), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3548; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3523(a)(2), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 599, 600; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3505, Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2308.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51504(a)	46 App.:1295c(c)(1) (A)(ii), (v).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1304(c)(1), (2), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2003.
51504(b)	46 App.:1295c(c)(1) (A) (1st sentence words before "meeting the requirements").	
51504(c)(1)	46 App.:1295c(c)(1) (A)(ii).	
51504(c)(2)	46 App.:1295c(c)(1) (A) (1st sentence words beginning with "meeting the requirements").	
51504(c)(3)	46 App.:1295c(c)(1) (A)(iii).	
51504(d)(1)	46 App.:1295c(c)(1) (A)(i).	
51504(d)(2)	46 App.:1295c(c)(1) (A)(iv).	
51504(e)	46 App.:1295c(c)(1) (B).	
51504(f)	46 App.:1295c(c)(2).	
51504(g)	46 App.:1295c note.	Pub. L. 101–115, §4, Oct. 13, 1989, 103 Stat. 692; Pub. L. 101–595, title VII, §705, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2994.

In subsection (a), the reference to territories is omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "State" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

In subsection (e), before paragraph (1), the word "agency" is substituted for "department or agency of the United States" because of the definition of "agency" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

In subsection (g), the 1st–3d sentences of section 4 of Public Law 101–115 are omitted as obsolete.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2019, referred to in subsec. (g)(1), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 115–232, which was approved Aug. 13, 2018.

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 115–232 amended subsec. (g) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (g) related to removing vessels from service and vessel sharing.

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3502(b). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(a)(2), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3502(b), by amending heading and text of subsec. (f) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Secretary may pay to a State maritime academy the costs of fuel used by a vessel provided under this section while used for training." See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3502(b), which directed the amendment of section 1295c(c)(2) of the former Appendix to this title from which subsec. (f) of this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsec. (f) and Historical and Revision notes above.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be "vessels".*

§51505. Annual payments for maintenance and support

(a) PAYMENT AGREEMENTS.—The Secretary of Transportation may make an agreement (effective for not more than 4 years) with the following academies to provide annual payments to those academies for their maintenance and support:

(1) One State maritime academy in each State that satisfies section 51506(a) of this title.

(2) Each regional maritime academy that satisfies section 51506(a) of this title.

(b) PAYMENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Subject to paragraph (2), an annual payment to an academy under subsection (a) shall be at least equal to the amount given to the academy for its maintenance and support by the State in which it is located, or, for a regional maritime academy, by all States cooperating to sponsor the academy.

(2) MAXIMUM.—The amount under paragraph (1) may not be more than $25,000, unless the academy satisfies section 51506(b) of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1578; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(a), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3547; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3523(a)(3), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 599, 600; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3515(d), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2313.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51505	46 App.:1295c(d)(1).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1304(d)(1), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2004; Pub. L. 101–115, §5, Oct. 13, 1989, 103 Stat. 693.

In subsection (b)(1), the reference to territories is omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "State" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 115–232 amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The amount under paragraph (1) may not be more than $25,000. However, if the academy satisfies section 51506(b) of this title, the amount shall be—

"(A) $100,000 for a State maritime academy; and

"(B) $300,000 for fiscal year 2006, $400,000 for fiscal year 2007, and $500,000 for fiscal year 2008 and each fiscal year thereafter for a regional maritime academy."

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3502(a). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(a)(3), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3502(a), into this section by substituting "$300,000 for fiscal year 2006, $400,000 for fiscal year 2007, and $500,000 for fiscal year 2008 and each fiscal year thereafter" for "$200,000". See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3502(a), which directed the amendment of section 1295c(d)(1) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsec. (b)(2)(B) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§51506. Conditions to receiving payments and use of vessels

(a) GENERAL CONDITIONS.—As conditions of receiving an annual payment or the use of a vessel under this chapter, a State maritime academy shall—

(1) provide courses of instruction on navigation, marine engineering (including steam and diesel propulsion), the operation and maintenance of new vessels and equipment, and innovations being introduced to the merchant marine of the United States;

(2) agree in writing to conform to the standards for courses, training facilities, admissions, and instruction that the Secretary of Transportation may establish after consultation with the superintendents of State maritime academies, which shall include standards for a program described in subsection (c);

(3) agree in writing to require, as a condition for graduation, that each individual who is a citizen of the United States and who is attending the academy in a merchant marine officer preparation program pass the examination required for the issuance of a license under section 7101 of this title; and

(4) agree that any individual enrolled at such State maritime academy in a merchant marine officer preparation program—

(A) shall, not later than 9 months after such individual's date of enrollment, pass an examination in form and substance satisfactory to the Secretary that demonstrates that such individual meets the medical and physical requirements—

(i) required for the issuance of an original license under section 7101; or

(ii) set by the Coast Guard for issuing merchant mariners' documentation under section 7302, with no limit to the individual's operational authority;

(B) following passage of the examination under subparagraph (A), shall continue to meet the requirements described in subparagraph (A) throughout the remainder of the individual's enrollment at the State maritime academy; and

(C) if the individual has a medical or physical condition that disqualifies the individual from meeting the requirements referred to in subparagraph (A), shall be transferred to a program other than a merchant marine officer preparation program, or otherwise appropriately disenrolled from such State maritime academy, until the individual demonstrates to the Secretary that the individual meets such requirements.

(b) ADDITIONAL CONDITION TO PAYMENTS OF MORE THAN $25,000.—As a condition of receiving an annual payment of more than $25,000 under section 51505 of this title, a State maritime academy also must agree to admit each year a number of citizens of the United States who meet its admission requirements and reside in a State not supporting that academy. The Secretary shall determine the number of individuals to be admitted by each academy under this subsection. The number may not be more than one-third of the total number of individuals attending the academy at any time.

(c) ARMED FORCES MERCHANT MARINER OFFICER EXPEDITED PREPARATION

PROGRAM.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—A State maritime academy may offer a program under which an eligible individual may complete a merchant marine officer preparation program approved by the Secretary, and the requirements for the issuance of a license under section 7101 of this title, in less than 3 years, without a requirement to earn a baccalaureate or other degree from the State maritime academy.

(2) ELIGIBLE INDIVIDUALS.—For purposes of this subsection, an eligible individual is an individual—

(A) who is—

(i) a person who served in the Armed Forces, and who was discharged or released therefrom under honorable conditions; or

(ii) a member of the National Guard or Reserves who has performed at least six years of service therein; and

(B) who has earned a baccalaureate degree from an institution of higher education (as defined in section 102 of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1002)).

(d) SECRETARIAL WAIVER AUTHORITY.—The Secretary may modify or waive any of the terms set forth in subsection (a)(4) with respect to any individual or State maritime academy.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1579; Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3515, Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2788; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3534, Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2313.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51506	46 App.:1295c(f).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1304(f), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2004; Pub. L. 101–115, §3(a), Oct. 13, 1989, 103 Stat. 692.

In subsection (a)(3), the words "administered by the Coast Guard" are omitted as unnecessary.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 118–159, §3534(1), inserted before semicolon at end ", which shall include standards for a program described in subsection (c)".

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 118–159, §3534(2), (3), added subsec. (c) and redesignated former subsec. (c) as (d).

2016—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 114–328, §3515(1)(A), substituted "shall" for "must" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 114–328, §3515(1)(B)–(D), added par. (4).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 114–328, §3515(2), added subsec. (c).

§51507. Places of training

The Secretary of Transportation may provide for the training of students attending a State maritime academy—

(1) on vessels owned or subsidized by the United States Government;

(2) on other documented vessels, with the permission of the owner; and

(3) in shipyards or plants and with industrial or educational organizations.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1579.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51507	46 App.:1295c(c) (3)(A).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1304(c)(3)(A), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2003.

In paragraph (2), the words "with the permission of the owner" are substituted for "if the owner . . . cooperates in such use" for clarity.

§51508. Allowances for students

Under regulations prescribed by the Secretary of Transportation, a student at a State maritime academy shall receive from the Secretary allowances for transportation (including reimbursement of traveling expenses) when traveling under orders to receive training under section 51507 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1579.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51508	46 App.:1295c(c) (3)(B).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1304(c)(3)(B), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2004.

§51509. Student incentive payment agreements

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—If a State maritime academy has an agreement with the Secretary of Transportation under section 51505 of this title, the Secretary may make an agreement with a student at the academy who is a citizen of the United States to make student incentive payments to the individual. An agreement with a student may not be effective for more than 4 academic years. The Secretary shall allocate payments under this section among the various State maritime academies in an equitable manner.

(b) PAYMENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in paragraph (2), payments under an agreement under this section shall be equal to $16,000 each academic year and be paid in such installments as the Secretary shall determine while the individual is attending the academy, as prescribed by the Secretary.

(2) EXCEPTION.—The Secretary may modify the payments made to an individual under paragraph (1), but the total amount of payments to that individual may not exceed $64,000.

(3) AUTHORIZED USES.—The payments shall be used for uniforms, tuition, books, and subsistence.

(c) ENLISTED RESERVE STATUS.—An agreement under this section shall require the student to accept enlisted reserve status in the Navy Reserve (including the Strategic Sealift Officer Program, Navy Reserve) or the Coast Guard Reserve before receiving any payments under the agreement.

(d) AGREEMENT REQUIREMENTS.—An agreement under this section shall require the student to—

(1) complete the course of instruction at the academy the individual is attending;

(2) obtain a merchant mariner license, without limitation as to tonnage or horsepower, from the Coast Guard as an officer in the merchant marine of the United States, accompanied by the appropriate national and international endorsements and certification required by the Coast Guard for service aboard vessels on domestic and international voyages, without limitation, within three months of completion of the course of instruction at the academy the individual is attending;

(3) for at least 6 years after graduation from the academy, maintain—

(A) a valid merchant mariner license, unlimited as to horsepower or tonnage, issued by the Coast Guard as an officer in the merchant marine of the United States, accompanied by the appropriate national and international endorsements and certifications required by the Coast Guard for service aboard vessels on domestic and international voyages, without limitation;

(B) a valid transportation worker identification credential; and

(C) a Coast Guard medical certificate;

(4) apply for, and accept, if tendered, an appointment as a commissioned officer in the Navy Reserve (including the Strategic Sealift Officer Program, Navy Reserve), the Coast Guard Reserve, or any other reserve component of an armed force of the United States, and, if tendered the appointment, to serve and meet the participation requirements and to maintain active status in good standing, as determined by the program manager of the appropriate military service, for at least 8 years after the date of commissioning;

(5) serve the foreign and domestic commerce and the national defense of the United States for at least 3 years after graduation from the academy—

(A) as a merchant marine officer on a documented vessel or a vessel owned and operated by the United States Government or by a State;

(B) as an employee in a United States maritime-related industry, profession, or marine science (as determined by the Secretary), if the Secretary determines that service under subparagraph (A) is not available to the individual;

(C) as a commissioned officer on active duty in an armed force of the United States, as a commissioned officer in the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, or in other maritime-related Federal employment which serves the national security interests of the United States, as determined by the Secretary; or

(D) by a combination of the service alternatives referred to in subparagraphs (A)–(C); and

(6) report to the Secretary on compliance with this subsection.

(e) FAILURE TO COMPLETE COURSE OF INSTRUCTION.—

(1) ACTIVE DUTY.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Defense may order an individual to serve on active duty in the armed forces of the United States for a period of not more than 2 years if—

(i) the individual has attended an academy under this section for more than 2 academic years, but less than 3 academic years;

(ii) the individual has accepted the payments described in subsection (b) in an amount totaling at least $8,000; and

(iii) the Secretary of Transportation has determined that the individual has failed to fulfill the part of the agreement described in subsection (d)(1).

(B) 3 OR MORE YEARS.—The Secretary of Defense may order an individual to serve on active duty in the armed forces of the United States for a period of not more than 3 years if—

(i) the individual has attended an academy under this section for 3 or more academic years;

(ii) the individual has accepted the payments described in subsection (b) in an amount totaling at least $16,000; and

(iii) the Secretary of Transportation has determined that the individual has failed to fulfill the part of the agreement described in subsection (d)(1).

(C) HARDSHIP WAIVER.—In cases of hardship as determined by the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Transportation may waive this paragraph in whole or in part.

(2) RECOVERY OF COST.—If the Secretary of Defense is unable or unwilling to order an individual to serve on active duty under paragraph (1), or if the Secretary of Transportation determines that reimbursement of the cost of education provided would better serve the interests of the United States, the Secretary of Transportation may recover from the individual the amount of student incentive payments, plus interest and attorney fees. The Secretary may reduce the amount to be recovered to reflect partial performance of service obligations and other factors the Secretary determines merit a reduction.

(f) FAILURE TO CARRY OUT OTHER REQUIREMENTS.—

(1) ACTIVE DUTY.—If the Secretary of Transportation determines that an individual has failed to fulfill any part of the agreement described in subsection (d)(2)–(6), the individual may be ordered to serve on active duty for a period of at least 2 years but not more than the unexpired period (as determined by the Secretary) of the service required by subsection (d)(5). The Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense, shall determine in which service the individual shall serve. In cases of hardship as determined by the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Transportation may waive this paragraph in whole or in part.

(2) RECOVERY OF COST.—If the Secretary of Defense is unable or unwilling to order an individual to serve on active duty under paragraph (1), or if the Secretary of Transportation determines that reimbursement of the cost of education provided would better serve the interests of the United States, the Secretary of Transportation may recover from the individual the amount of student incentive payments, plus interest and attorney fees. The Secretary may reduce the amount to be recovered to reflect partial performance of service obligations and other factors the Secretary determines merit a reduction.

(g) ACTIONS TO RECOVER COST.—To aid in the recovery of the cost of education provided by the Government under a commitment agreement under this section, the Secretary of Transportation may—

(1) request the Attorney General to bring a civil action against the individual; and

(2) make use of the Federal debt collection procedures in chapter 176 of title 28 or other applicable administrative remedies.

(h) ALTERNATIVE SERVICE.—

(1) SERVICE AS COMMISSIONED OFFICER.—An individual who, for the 5-year period following graduation from an academy, serves as a commissioned officer on active duty in an armed force of the United States or as a commissioned officer of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration or the Public Health Service shall be excused from the requirements of paragraphs (3) through (5) of subsection (d).

(2) MODIFICATION OR WAIVER.—The Secretary may modify or waive any of the terms and conditions set forth in subsection (d) through the imposition of alternative service requirements.

(i) AGE REQUIREMENT.—The Secretary may make an agreement under this section only with a qualified student who will meet the age requirement for enlistment or commission in the Navy Reserve at the time of graduation from the academy.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1579; Pub. L. 109–163, div. A, title V, §515(g)(2)(A), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 109–364, div. C, title XXXV, §3508, Oct. 17, 2006, 120 Stat. 2517; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §§3523(a)(1), (b), 3526(d), (g), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598, 600, 602; Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3503, Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4762; Pub. L. 111–8, div. I, title I, §177, Mar. 11, 2009, 123 Stat. 944; Pub. L. 111–84, div. C, title XXXV, §3507, Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2721; Pub. L. 114–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3507, Nov. 25,

2015, 129 Stat. 1221; Pub. L. 118–7, §2, June 30, 2023, 137 Stat. 52; Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3501(b), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 808.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51509(a)	46 App.:1295c(g)(1) (words before 5th comma, cl. (A)), (8).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1304(g)(1)–(5), (8), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2004, 2006; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(145)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 101–115, §2(a)–(d), Oct. 13, 1989, 103 Stat. 691; Pub. L. 102–587, title VI, §6201(a)(1), (b), (c), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5093; Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3515(d), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1794.
51509(b)	46 App.:1295c(g)(1) (words between 5th comma and dash, cls. (B), (C)).	
51509(c)	46 App.:1295c(g)(2)	
51509(d)	46 App.:1295c(g)(3)	
51509(e)	46 App.:1295c(g)(4)	
51509(f)	46 App.:1295c(g)(5)	
51509(g)	46 App.:1295c(g)(6)	

In subsection (a), the text of 46 App. U.S.C. 1295c(g)(8) is omitted as obsolete.

In subsection (g), the words "bring a civil action" are substituted for "begin court proceedings" for consistency in the revised title and with rule 2 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.).

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2023—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 118–31, §3501(b)(1), substituted "$16,000" for "$8,000".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 118–31, §3501(b)(2), substituted "$64,000" for "$32,000".

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 118–7 added subsec. (i).

2015—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 114–92, §3507(1), designated first sentence as par. (1) and last sentence as par. (3), inserted headings, realigned margins, in par. (1), substituted "Except as provided in paragraph (2), payments" for "Payments", and added par. (2).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 114–92, §3507(2), substituted "Strategic Sealift Officer Program" for "Merchant Marine Reserve".

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 114–92, §3507(3)(A), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "take the examination for a license as an officer in the merchant marine of the United States before graduation from the academy and fulfill the requirements for such a license within 3 months after graduation from the academy;".

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 114–92, §3507(3)(B), amended par. (3) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (3) read as follows: "maintain a valid license as an officer in the merchant marine of the United States for at least 6 years after graduation from the academy, accompanied by the appropriate national and international endorsements and certification required by the Coast Guard for service aboard vessels on domestic and international voyages;".

Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 114–92, §3507(3)(C), amended par. (4) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (4) read as follows: "accept, if tendered, an appointment as a commissioned officer in the Navy Reserve (including the Merchant Marine Reserve, Navy Reserve), the Coast Guard Reserve, or any other reserve unit of an armed

force of the United States, and, if tendered the appointment, to serve for at least 6 years after graduation from the academy;".

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 114–92, §3507(4), amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "If the Secretary of Transportation determines that an individual who has accepted the payments described in subsection (b) for a minimum of 2 academic years has failed to fulfill the part of the agreement described in subsection (d)(1), the individual may be ordered by the Secretary of Defense to serve on active duty in the armed forces of the United States for a period of not more than 2 years. In cases of hardship as determined by the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of Transportation may waive this paragraph in whole or in part."

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 114–92, §3507(5), added subsec. (h).

2009—Pub. L. 111–84, §3507(a), substituted "and be paid in such installments as the Secretary shall determine" for "and be paid before the start of each academic year, as prescribed by the Secretary," and "academy, as prescribed by the Secretary." for "academy.".

Pub. L. 111–8, §177, which directed amendment identical to that made by Pub. L. 110–417, §3503(1), (2), was repealed by Pub. L. 111–84, §3507(b), with Pub. L. 111–8, §177, to have no force or effect. See 2008 Amendment note below.

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3526(g), repealed Pub. L. 109–364, §3508. See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §515(g)(2)(A). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 110–417, §3503(3), inserted "before the start of each academic year" after "and be paid".

Pub. L. 110–417, §3503(1), (2), substituted "$8,000" for "$4,000" and inserted "tuition," after "uniforms,".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 110–181, §3526(d), incorporated the substance of the amendments by Pub. L. 109–364, §3508, into this section by striking out "Midshipman and" before "Enlisted" in heading and "midshipman and" before "enlisted" in text and inserting "or the Coast Guard Reserve" after "Reserve)". See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(a)(1), incorporated the substance of the amendments by Pub. L. 109–163, §515(g)(2)(A), into this section by substituting "Navy Reserve" for "Naval Reserve" in two places. See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(a)(1), incorporated the substance of the amendments by Pub. L. 109–163, §515(g)(2)(A), into this section by substituting "Navy Reserve" for "Naval Reserve" in two places. See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–364, §3508, which directed the amendment of section 1295c(g)(2) of the former Appendix to this title from which subsec. (c) of this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3526(g). See 2008 Amendment note for subsec. (c) and Historical and Revision notes above.

Pub. L. 109–163, §515(g)(2)(A), which directed the amendment of section 1295c of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(b). See 2008 Amendment notes for subsecs. (c) and (d)(4) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§51510. Deferment of service obligation under student incentive payment agreements

The Secretary of Transportation may defer the service commitment of an individual under section 51509(d)(5) of this title (as specified in the agreement under section 51509) for not more than 2 years if the individual is engaged in a graduate course of study approved by the Secretary. However, deferment of service as a commissioned officer on active duty must be approved by the Secretary of the affected military department (or the Secretary of Commerce, for service with the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1581.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*

51510	46 App.:1295c(g)(7).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1304(g)(7), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2006; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(145)(B), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3515(d)(7), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1795.

The words "affected military department" are substituted for "military department . . . which has jurisdiction over such service" for clarity and to eliminate unnecessary words.

§51511. Midshipman status in the Navy Reserve

A citizen of the United States attending a State maritime academy may be appointed by the Secretary of the Navy as a midshipman in the Navy Reserve (including the Merchant Marine Reserve, Navy Reserve).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1582; Pub. L. 109–163, div. A, title V, §515(g)(2), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3523(a)(1), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598, 600.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51511	46 App.:1295c(h).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1304(h), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2006.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §515(g)(2). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(a)(1), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §515(g)(2), into this section by substituting "Navy Reserve" for "Naval Reserve" wherever appearing in section catchline and text. See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §515(g)(2), which directed the amendment of section 1295c of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(b). See 2008 Amendment notes and Historical and Revision notes above.

CHAPTER 517—OTHER SUPPORT FOR MERCHANT MARINE TRAINING

Sec.

51701. United States Maritime Service.
51702. Civilian nautical schools.
51703. Additional training.
51704. Training for maritime oil pollution prevention, response, and clean-up.
51705. Training for use of force against piracy.
51706. Center of excellence for domestic maritime workforce training and education.
51707. Merchant mariner recruitment, training, and retention strategic plan.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §§3507(b)(2), 3508(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4405, 4406, substituted "Training for use of force against piracy" for "Training program for use of force against piracy" in item 51705 and added items 51706 and 51707.

2012—Pub. L. 112–213, title V, §502(c), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1575, added item 51705.

§51701. United States Maritime Service

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—The Secretary of Transportation may establish and maintain a voluntary organization, to be known as the United States Maritime Service, for the training of citizens of the United States to serve on merchant vessels of the United States and to perform functions to assist the United States merchant marine, as determined necessary by the Secretary.

(b) SPECIFIC AUTHORITY.—The Secretary may—

(1) determine the number of individuals to be enrolled for training and reserve purposes in the Service;

(2) fix the rates of pay and allowances of the individuals without regard to chapter 51 or subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5;

(3) prescribe the course of study and the periods of training for the Service; and

(4) prescribe the uniform of the Service and the rules on providing and wearing the uniform.

(c) RANKS, GRADES, AND RATINGS.—The ranks, grades, and ratings for personnel of the Service shall be the same as those prescribed for personnel of the Coast Guard.

(d) MEDALS AND AWARDS.—The Secretary may establish and maintain a medals and awards program to recognize distinguished service, superior achievement, professional performance, and other commendable achievement by personnel of the Service.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1582; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3509, Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3557; Pub. L. 109–364, div. C, title XXXV, §3510(d)(1), Oct. 17, 2006, 120 Stat. 2520; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3523(a)(4), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 599, 600.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51701	46 App.:1295e.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1306, as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2006; Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3515(e), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1795.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3509. See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(a)(4), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3509, into this section by substituting "of the United States and to perform functions to assist the United States merchant marine, as determined necessary by the Secretary." for "of the United States." See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3509, as amended by Pub. L. 109–364, §3510(d)(1), which directed the amendment of section 1295e(a) of the former Appendix to this title from which subsec. (a) of this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsec. (a) and Historical and Revision notes above.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2006 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 109–364, div. C, title XXXV, §3510(d)(2), Oct. 17, 2006, 120 Stat. 2521, provided that: "This subsection [amending section 3509 of Pub. L. 109–163 which had amended section 1295e(a) of the former Appendix to this title, from which subsec. (a) of this section is derived] shall be effective immediately after section 3509 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2006 (119 Stat. 3557) [Pub. L. 109–163] takes effect [Jan. 6, 2006]."

§51702. Civilian nautical schools

(a) DEFINITION.—In this section, the term "civilian nautical school" means a school operated in the United States (except the United States Merchant Marine Academy, a State maritime academy, or another school operated by the United States Government) that offers instruction to individuals quartered on a vessel primarily to train them for service in the merchant marine.

(b) INSPECTION.—Each civilian nautical school is subject to inspection by the Secretary of Transportation.

(c) RATING AND CERTIFICATION.—The Secretary may, under regulations the Secretary may prescribe, provide for the rating and certification of civilian nautical schools as to the adequacy of their course of instruction, the competence of their instructors, and the suitability of the equipment used in their course of instruction.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1582.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51702	46 App.:1295f.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1307, as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2007; Pub. L. 98–89, §4(b), Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 603.

The text of 46 App. U.S.C. 1295f(d) is omitted because it apparently was intended to apply to former 46 App. U.S.C. 1295f(c), which was repealed in 1983.

§51703. Additional training

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—The Secretary of Transportation may provide additional training on maritime subjects to supplement other training opportunities and make the training available to the personnel of the merchant marine of the United States and individuals preparing for a career in the merchant marine of the United States.

(b) EQUIPMENT, SUPPLIES, AND CONTRACTS.—The Secretary may—

(1) prepare or buy equipment or supplies required for the additional training; and

(2) without regard to section 6101(b) to (d) of title 41, make contracts for services the Secretary considers necessary to prepare the equipment and supplies and to supervise and administer the additional training.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1583; Pub. L. 111–350, §5(n), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 3853.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*

51703	46 App.:1295d(a), (b).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1305(a), (b), as added Pub. L. 96–453, §2, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2006.

In subsection (a), before paragraph (1), the words "as the Secretary deems necessary" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (b), the words "with any person, partnership, firm, association, or corporation" and "the performance of" are omitted as unnecessary.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2011—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 111–350 substituted "section 6101(b) to (d) of title 41" for "section 3709 of the Revised Statutes (41 U.S.C. 5)".

§51704. Training for maritime oil pollution prevention, response, and clean-up

(a) ASSISTANCE IN ESTABLISHING PROGRAM.—The Secretary of Transportation shall assist maritime training institutions approved by the Secretary in establishing a training program for maritime oil pollution prevention, response, and clean-up.

(b) PROVIDING TRAINING VESSELS.—Subject to subsection (c), the Secretary may provide, with title free of all liens, to maritime training institutions that have a program established under subsection (a), offshore supply vessels and tug/supply vessels that were built in the United States and are in the possession of the Maritime Administration because of a default on a loan guaranteed under chapter 537 of this title.

(c) REQUIREMENTS.—In addition to any other requirements the Secretary considers appropriate, the following requirements apply to vessels provided under this section:

(1) The vessel shall be offered to the institution at a location selected by the Secretary.

(2) The institution shall use the vessel to train students and appropriate maritime industry personnel in oil spill prevention, response, clean-up, and related skills.

(3) The institution shall make the vessel and qualified students available to appropriate Federal, State, and local oil spill response authorities when there is a maritime oil spill.

(4) The institution may not sell, trade, charter, donate, scrap, or in any way alter or dispose of the vessel without prior approval of the Secretary.

(5) The institution may not use the vessel in competition with a privately-owned vessel documented under chapter 121 of this title or titled under the law of a State, unless necessary to carry out this section.

(6) When the institution can no longer use the vessel for its training program, the institution shall return the vessel to the Secretary. The Secretary shall take possession at the institution and thereafter may provide the vessel to another institution under this section or dispose of the vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1583.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51704(a)	46 App.:1295d(c)(1).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XIII, §1305(c), as added Pub. L. 101–595, title VII, §712, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2998.
51704(b)	46 App.:1295d(c) (2)(A), (4).	
51704(c)	46 App.:1295d(c) (2)(B), (3).	

In subsection (c)(5), the words "or titled under the law of a State" are substituted for "documented under the laws of . . . any State" for consistency with the terminology in 46 U.S.C. 2101(46) (which is being moved to chapter 1 of the revised title) and 46 U.S.C. ch. 125.

§51705. Training for use of force against piracy

The Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense and the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating, shall certify a training curriculum for United States mariners on the use of force against pirates. The curriculum shall include—

(1) information on waters designated as high-risk waters by the Commandant of the Coast Guard;

(2) information on current threats and patterns of attack by pirates;

(3) tactics for defense of a vessel, including instruction on the types, use, and limitations of security equipment;

(4) standard rules for the use of force for self-defense as developed by the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating under section 912(c) of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2010 (Public Law 111–281; 46 U.S.C. 8107 note), including instruction on firearm safety for crewmembers of vessels carrying cargo under section 55305 of this title; and

(5) procedures to follow to improve crewmember survivability if captured and taken hostage by pirates.

(Added Pub. L. 112–213, title V, §502(a), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1574.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

DEADLINE

Pub. L. 112–213, title V, §502(b), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1575, provided that: "The Secretary of Transportation shall certify the curriculum required under the amendment made by subsection (a) [enacting this section] not later than 270 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 20, 2012]."

§51706. Centers of excellence for domestic maritime workforce training and education

(a) DESIGNATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation, after consultation with the Coast Guard, may designate, for a 5-year period, as a center of excellence for domestic maritime workforce training and education an entity which is a covered training entity.

(2) WITHDRAWAL OF DESIGNATION.—The Secretary of Transportation may withdraw a designation as a center of excellence for domestic maritime workforce training and education of a covered training entity upon discovery of adverse information, including discovery of information that the covered training entity has engaged in fraudulent or unlawful activities, or has been subjected to disciplinary or adverse administrative action by Federal, State, or other regulatory bodies.

(b) GRANT PROGRAM.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may award a maritime career training grant to a center of excellence designated under subsection (a) for the purpose of developing, offering, or improving career and technical education or training programs related to the United States maritime industry for United States workers.

(2) GRANT PROPOSAL.—To be eligible to receive a grant under this subsection, a center of excellence designated under subsection (a) shall submit to the Secretary a grant proposal that includes a detailed description of—

(A) the specific project proposed to be funded by the grant, including a description of the

manner in which the grant will be used to develop, offer, or improve a career and technical education or training program that is suited to United States maritime industry workers;

(B) the extent to which the project for which the grant proposal is submitted will meet the educational or career training needs of United States maritime industry workers;

(C) any previous experience of the center of excellence in providing United States maritime industry career and technical education or training programs;

(D) how the project proposed to be funded by the grant would address shortcomings in existing educational or career training opportunities available to United States maritime industry workers; and

(E) the extent to which employers, including small and medium-sized firms, have demonstrated a commitment to employing United States maritime industry workers who would benefit from the project for which the grant proposal is submitted.

(3) CRITERIA FOR AWARD OF GRANTS.—Subject to the appropriation of funds to carry out this section, the Secretary shall award grants under this subsection to centers of excellence based on—

(A) an determination of the merits of a grant proposal submitted under paragraph (2) to develop, offer, or improve career and technical education or training programs to be made available to United States maritime industry workers;

(B) an evaluation of the likely employment opportunities available to United States maritime industry workers who complete a maritime career and technical education or training program that a center proposes to develop, offer, or improve; and

(C) an evaluation of prior demand for training programs by workers served by centers of excellence designated under subsection (a), as well as the availability and capacity of existing maritime training programs to meet future demand for training programs.

(4) COMPETITIVE AWARDS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall award grants under this subsection to centers of excellence designated under subsection (a) on a competitive basis.

(B) TIMING OF GRANT NOTICE.—The Secretary shall post a Notice of Funding Opportunity regarding grants awarded under this subsection not more than 90 days after the date of the enactment of the appropriations Act for the fiscal year concerned.

(C) TIMING OF GRANTS.—The Secretary shall award grants under this subsection not later than 270 days after the date of the enactment of the appropriations Act for the fiscal year concerned.

(D) REUSE OF UNEXPENDED GRANT FUNDS.—Notwithstanding subparagraph (C), amounts awarded as a grant under this subsection that are not expended by the grantee shall remain available to the Secretary for use for grants under this subsection.

(E) ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—Not more than 3 percent of amounts made available to carry out this subsection may be used for the necessary costs of grant administration.

(F) PROHIBITED USE.—A center of excellence designated under subsection (a) that has received funds awarded under section 54101(a)(2) for training purposes for a fiscal year shall not be eligible for grants under this subsection during the same fiscal year.

(5) ELIGIBLE USES OF GRANT FUNDS.—A center of excellence receiving a grant under this subsection shall—

(A) carry out activities that are identified as priorities for the purpose of developing, offering, or improving educational or career training programs for the United States maritime industry workforce; and

(B) provide training to upgrade the skills of the United States maritime industry workforce, including training to acquire covered requirements as well as technical skills training for jobs in the United States maritime industry.

(c) DEFINITIONS.—In this section,

(1) COVERED TRAINING ENTITY.—The term "covered training entity" means an entity that—

(A) is located in a State that borders on the—

(i) Gulf of Mexico;

(ii) Atlantic Ocean;

(iii) Long Island Sound;

(iv) Pacific Ocean;

(v) Great Lakes; or

(vi) Mississippi River System;

(B) is—

(i) a postsecondary educational institution (as such term is defined in section 3(39) of the Carl D. Perkins Career and Technical Education Act of 2006 (20 U.S.C. 2302));

(ii) a postsecondary vocational institution (as such term is defined in section 102(c) of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1002(c)); [1]

(iii) a public or private nonprofit entity that offers one or more other structured experiential learning training programs for United States workers in the United States maritime industry, including a program that is offered by a labor organization or conducted in partnership with a nonprofit organization or one or more employers in the United States maritime industry;

(iv) an entity sponsoring an apprenticeship program registered with the Office of Apprenticeship of the Employment and Training Administration of the Department of Labor or a State apprenticeship agency recognized by the Office of Apprenticeship pursuant to the Act of August 16, 1937 (commonly known as the 'National Apprenticeship Act'; 50 Stat. 664, chapter 663; 29 U.S.C. 50 et seq.); or

(v) a maritime training center designated prior to the date of enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2023;

(C) has a demonstrated record of success in maritime workforce training and education; and

(D) has—

(i) not been subject to a disciplinary or adverse administrative action by Federal, State, or other regulatory bodies;

(ii) no unresolved nonconformities from administrative audits by regulatory bodies; and

(iii) not been subject to any adverse criminal action by a Federal, State, or local law enforcement authority.

(2) ARCTIC.—The term "Arctic" has the meaning that term has under section 112 of the Arctic Research and Policy Act of 1984 (15 U.S.C. 4111).

(3) CAREER AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION.—The term "career and technical education" has the meaning given such term in section 3(5) of the Carl D. Perkins Career and Technical Education Act [2] (20 U.S.C. 2302).

(4) SECRETARY.—The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Transportation.

(5) TRAINING PROGRAM.—The term "training program" means a program that provides training services, as described in section 134(c)(3)(D) of the Workforce Innovation and Opportunity Act (Public Law 113–128; 29 U.S.C. 3174).

(6) UNITED STATES MARITIME INDUSTRY.—The term "United States maritime industry" means the design, construction, repair, operation, manning, and supply of vessels in all segments of the maritime transportation system of the United States, including—

(A) the domestic and foreign trade;

(B) the coastal, offshore, and inland trade;

(C) non-commercial maritime activities, including—

(i) recreational boating; and

(ii) oceanographic and limnological research as described in section 2101(26).

(Added Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1914, §54102; renumbered §51706, Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4405; amended Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3532(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3089; Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3534(k), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 834; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7301(k)(1)(G), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1759.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2023, referred to in subsec. (c)(1)(B)(v), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 117–263, also known as the James M. Inhofe National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2023, which was approved Dec. 23, 2022.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (c)(6)(C)(ii). Pub. L. 119–60 substituted "section 2101(26)" for "section 2101(24)".

2023—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 118–31, §3534(k)(1), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and inserted heading, inserted ", after consultation with the Coast Guard," after "Transportation" and ", for a 5-year period," after "designate", and added par. (2).

2023—Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 118–31, §3534(k)(2), added par. (5).

Subsec. (c)(1)(D). Pub. L. 118–31, §3534(k)(3), added subpar. (D).

2022—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 117–263, §3532(a)(1), added subsec. (a) and struck out former subsec. (a) which related to designation.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 117–263, §3532(a)(2), added subsec. (b) and struck out former subsec. (b) which related to assistance.

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 117–263, §3532(a)(3)(A), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which defined "covered training entity" in this section.

Subsec. (c)(3) to (6). Pub. L. 117–263, §3532(a)(3)(B), added pars. (3) to (6).

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 renumbered section 54102 of this title as this section.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

GUIDELINES

Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3532(c), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3092, provided that:

"Not later than one year after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022], the Secretary of Transportation shall—

"(1) prescribe guidelines for the submission of grant proposals under section 51706(b) of title 46, United States Code, as amended by subsection (a); and

"(2) publish and maintain such guidelines on the website of the Department of Transportation."

[1] So in original. Another closing parenthesis probably should precede the semicolon.

[2] The words "of 2006" probably should appear. See subsec. (c)(1)(B)(i).

§51707. Merchant mariner recruitment, training, and retention strategic plan

(a) [1] STRATEGIC PLAN.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than one year after the date of the enactment of this section, and at least once every five years thereafter until the termination date under paragraph (6), the Secretary of Transportation, acting through the Administrator of the Maritime Administration, shall publish in the Federal Register a plan to recruit, train, and retain merchant mariners for the five-year period following the date of publication of the most recently published plan under this paragraph.

(2) CONTENTS.—A plan published under paragraph (1) shall contain—

(A) a strategy to address merchant mariner recruitment, training, and retention issues in the

United States; and

(B) demonstration and research priorities concerning merchant mariner recruitment, training, and retention.

(3) FACTORS.—In developing a plan under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall take into account, at a minimum—

(A) the availability of existing research (as of the date of publication of the plan); and

(B) the need to ensure results that have broad applicability for the United States merchant marine workforce development.

(4) CONSULTATION.—In developing a plan under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall consult with representatives of the maritime industry, labor organizations, including the Commander of the Transportation Command and the Commander of the Military Sealift Command, and other governmental entities and stakeholders in the maritime industry.

(5) TRANSMITTAL TO CONGRESS.—The Secretary shall transmit copies of any plan published under paragraph (1) to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate.

(6) TERMINATION DATE.—The requirement to publish a plan under this paragraph shall terminate on the date that the Administrator of the Maritime Administration determines that there is an adequate number of United States mariners for sustained strategic sealift.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3508(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4405.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of this section, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 116–283, which was approved Jan. 1, 2021.

[1] So in original. No subsec. (b) has been enacted.

CHAPTER 519—MERCHANT MARINE AWARDS

Sec.

51901. Awards for individual acts or service.
51902. Gallant Ship Award.
51903. Multiple awards.
51904. Presentation to representatives.
51905. Flags and grave markers.
51906. Special certificates for civilian service to armed forces.
51907. Provision of decorations, medals, and replacements [1]
51908. Prohibition against unauthorized manufacture, sale, possession, or display of awards.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3523(a)(5)(B), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 599, substituted "Provision of decorations, medals, and replacements" for "Manufacture and sale of awards and replacements." in item 51907.

[1] So in original. Probably should be followed by a period.

§51901. Awards for individual acts or service

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—The Secretary of Transportation may award decorations and medals of appropriate design (including ribbons, ribbon bars, emblems, rosettes, miniature facsimiles, plaques, citations, or other suitable devices or insignia) for individual acts or service in the merchant marine of the United States. The design may be similar to the design of a decoration or medal authorized for members of the armed forces for similar acts or service.

(b) SPECIFIC AUTHORITY.—The Secretary may award—

(1) a Merchant Marine Distinguished Service Medal to an individual for outstanding acts, conduct, or valor beyond the line of duty;

(2) a Merchant Marine Meritorious Service Medal to an individual for meritorious acts, conduct, or valor in the line of duty, but not of the outstanding character that would warrant the award of the Merchant Marine Distinguished Service Medal;

(3) a decoration or medal to an individual for service during a war, national emergency proclaimed by the President or Congress, or operations by the armed forces outside the continental United States under conditions of danger to life and property; and

(4) a decoration or medal to an individual for other acts or service of conspicuous gallantry, intrepidity, and extraordinary heroism under conditions of danger to life and property that would warrant a similar decoration or medal for a member of the armed forces.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1584.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51901(a)	46 App.:2001. 46 App.:2004(d).	Pub. L. 100–324, §§2, 3, 5(d), May 30, 1988, 102 Stat. 576, 577.
51901(b)	46 App.:2002.	

§51902. Gallant Ship Award

(a) AWARDS TO VESSELS.—The Secretary of Transportation may award a Gallant Ship Award and a citation to a vessel (including a foreign vessel) participating in outstanding or gallant action in a marine disaster or other emergency to save life or property at sea. The Secretary may award a plaque to the vessel, and a replica of the plaque may be preserved as a permanent historical record.

(b) AWARDS TO CREWS.—The Secretary of Transportation may award an appropriate citation ribbon bar to the master and each individual serving, at the time of the action, on a vessel issued an award under subsection (a).

(c) CONSULTATION.—The Secretary of Transportation shall consult with the Secretary of State before awarding an award or citation to a foreign vessel or its crew under this section.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1584.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51902	46 App.:2003.	Pub. L. 100–324, §4, May 30, 1988, 102 Stat. 576.

In subsection (a), the words "a vessel (including a foreign vessel)" are substituted for "a United States vessel or to a foreign-flag vessel" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§51903. Multiple awards

An individual may not be awarded more than one of any type of decoration or medal under this chapter. For each succeeding act or service justifying the same decoration or medal, a suitable device may be awarded to be worn with the decoration or medal.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1585.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51903	46 App.:2004(a).	Pub. L. 100–324, §5(a), May 30, 1988, 102 Stat. 576.

§51904. Presentation to representatives

If an individual to be issued an award under this chapter is unable to accept the award personally, the Secretary of Transportation may present the award to an appropriate representative.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1585.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51904	46 App.:2004(b).	Pub. L. 100–324, §5(b), May 30, 1988, 102 Stat. 577.

§51905. Flags and grave markers

Except as authorized under another law, the Secretary of Transportation may issue, at no cost, a flag of the United States and a grave marker to the family or personal representative of a deceased individual who served in the merchant marine of the United States in support of the armed forces of the United States or its allies during a war or national emergency.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1585.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51905	46 App.:2005.	Pub. L. 100–324, §6, May 30, 1988, 102 Stat. 577.

§51906. Special certificates for civilian service to armed forces

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—The Maritime Administrator may issue a special certificate to an individual, or the personal representative of an individual, in recognition of service of that individual in the merchant marine of the United States, if the service has been determined to be active duty under section 401 of the GI Bill Improvement Act of 1977 (Public Law 95–202; 38 U.S.C. 106 note).

(b) RELATIONSHIP TO OTHER LAWS.—Issuance of a certificate under subsection (a) does not entitle an individual to any rights, privileges, or benefits under a law of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1585.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51906	46 App.:2006.	Pub. L. 100–324, §7, May 30, 1988, 102 Stat. 577.

§51907. Provision of decorations, medals, and replacements

The Secretary of Transportation may provide—

(1) the decorations and medals authorized by this chapter and replacements for those decorations and medals; and

(2) replacements for decorations and medals issued under a prior law.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1585; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3510, Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3557; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3523(a)(5)(A), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 599, 600.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51907	46 App.:2004(c).	Pub. L. 100–324, §5(c), May 30, 1988, 102 Stat. 577.

The Secretary's authority to provide decorations and medals at cost, or to authorize the sale of decorations and medals at reasonable prices, is restated to apply only to replacement awards because Congress probably did not intend that recipients being honored would pay for their decorations and medals.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3510. See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(a)(5)(A), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3510, into this section by amending section catchline and text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Secretary of Transportation may—

"(1) authorize private persons to manufacture decorations and medals authorized under this chapter or a prior law; and

"(2) provide at cost, or authorize private persons to sell at reasonable prices, replacements for those decorations and medals."

See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3510, which directed the amendment of section 2004(c) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3523(b). See 2008 Amendment notes and Historical and Revision notes above.

§51908. Prohibition against unauthorized manufacture, sale, possession, or display of awards

(a) PROHIBITION.—Except as authorized by this chapter or the Secretary of Transportation, a person may not manufacture, sell, possess, or display a decoration or medal provided for in this chapter.

(b) CIVIL PENALTY.—A person violating this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $2,000.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1585; Pub. L. 109–364, div. C, title XXXV, §3510(b), Oct. 17, 2006, 120 Stat. 2520; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3526(e), (g), Jan.

28, 2008, 122 Stat. 602.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
51908	46 App.:2007.	Pub. L. 100–324, §8, May 30, 1988, 102 Stat. 577.

In subsection (b), the words "not more than" are added for clarity and for consistency in the revised title.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3526(g), repealed Pub. L. 109–364, §3510(b). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 110–181, §3526(e), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–364, §3510(b), into this section by substituting "by this chapter or the Secretary of Transportation" for "under this chapter". See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–364, §3510(b), which directed the amendment of section 2007 of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3526(g). See 2008 Amendment note for subsec. (a) and Historical and Revision notes above.

CHAPTER 521—MISCELLANEOUS

Sec.
52101. Reemployment rights for certain merchant seamen.

§52101. Reemployment rights for certain merchant seamen

(a) IN GENERAL.—An individual who is certified by the Secretary of Transportation under subsection (c) shall be entitled to reemployment rights and other benefits substantially equivalent to the rights and benefits provided for by chapter 43 of title 38 for any member of a reserve component of the armed forces of the United States who is ordered to active duty.

(b) TIME FOR APPLICATION.—An individual may submit an application for certification under subsection (c) to the Secretary not later than 45 days after the date the individual completes a period of employment described in subsection (c)(1)(A) with respect to which the application is submitted.

(c) CERTIFICATION DETERMINATION.—Not later than 20 days after the date the Secretary receives from an individual an application for certification under this subsection, the Secretary shall—

(1) determine whether the individual—

(A) was employed in the activation or operation of a vessel—

(i) in the National Defense Reserve Fleet maintained under section 57100 in a period in which the vessel was in use or being activated for use under subsection (b) of that section;

(ii) requisitioned or purchased under chapter 563 of this title; or

(iii) owned, chartered, or controlled by the United States Government and used by the Government for a war, armed conflict, national emergency, or maritime mobilization need (including for training purposes or testing for readiness and suitability for mission performance); and

(B) during the period of that employment, possessed a valid license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner's document issued under chapter 71 or 73 of this title; and

(2) if the Secretary makes affirmative determinations under subparagraphs (A) and (B) of

paragraph (1), certify that individual under this subsection.

(d) EQUIVALENCE TO MILITARY SELECTIVE SERVICE ACT CERTIFICATE.—For purposes of reemployment rights and benefits provided by this section, a certification under subsection (c) shall be considered to be the equivalent of a certificate described in section 9(a) of the Military Selective Service Act (50 U.S.C. 3808(a)).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1585; Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(b)(4), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1910; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(m), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2327.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
52101	46 App.:1132.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title III, §302, as added Pub. L. 104–239, §10(a), Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3133.

In subsection (c)(1)(B), the words "(as applicable)" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (d), the words "certificate described in section 9(a) of the Military Selective Service Act (50 App. U.S.C. 459(a))" are substituted for "certificate referred to in paragraph (1) of section 4301(a) of title 38" because section 4301 of title 38 was amended generally by section 2(a) of Public Law 103–353, and before the amendment section 4301(a)(1) referred to a certificate described in section 9(a) of the Military Selective Service Act (50 App. U.S.C. 459(a)).

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 115–232 substituted "(50 U.S.C. 3808(a))" for "(50 App. U.S.C. 459(a))".

2017—Subsec. (c)(1)(A)(i). Pub. L. 115–91 substituted "section 57100" for "section 11 of the Merchant Ship Sales Act of 1946 (50 App. U.S.C. 1744)".

PART C—FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE PROGRAMS

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1586, inserted "Part C—Financial Assistance Programs".

CHAPTER 531—MARITIME SECURITY FLEET

Sec.

53101. Definitions.
53102. Establishment of Maritime Security Fleet.
53103. Award of operating agreements.
53104. Effectiveness of operating agreements.
53105. Obligations and rights under operating agreements.
53106. Payments.
53107. National security requirements.
53108. Regulatory relief.
[53109. Repealed.]
53110. Regulations.

53111. Authorization of appropriations.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(n), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2327, struck out item 53109 "Special rule regarding age of participating fleet vessel".

§53101. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) BULK CARGO.—The term "bulk cargo" means cargo that is loaded and carried in bulk without mark or count.

(2) CONTRACTOR.—The term "contractor" means an owner or operator of a vessel that enters into an operating agreement for the vessel with the Secretary under section 53103.

(3) FLEET.—The term "Fleet" means the Maritime Security Fleet established under section 53102(a).

(4) FOREIGN COMMERCE.—The term "foreign commerce" means—

(A) commerce or trade between the United States, its territories or possessions, or the District of Columbia, and a foreign country; and

(B) commerce or trade between foreign countries.

(5) PARTICIPATING FLEET VESSEL.—The term "participating fleet vessel" means any vessel that—

(A) on October 1, 2015—

(i) meets the requirements of paragraph (1), (2), (3), or (4) of section 53102(c); and

(ii) is less than 20 years of age if the vessel is a tank vessel, or is less than 25 years of age for all other vessel types; and

(B) on December 31, 2014, is covered by an operating agreement under this chapter.

(6) PERSON.—The term "person" includes corporations, partnerships, and associations existing under or authorized by the laws of the United States, or any State, Territory, District, or possession thereof, or of any foreign country.

(7) PRODUCT TANK VESSEL.—The term "product tank vessel" means a double hulled tank vessel capable of carrying simultaneously more than 2 separated grades of refined petroleum products.

(8) SECRETARY.—The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Transportation.

(9) TANK VESSEL.—The term "tank vessel" has the meaning that term has under section 2101 of this title.

(10) UNITED STATES.—The term "United States" includes the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Northern Mariana Islands, Guam, American Samoa, the Virgin Islands.

(11) UNITED STATES CITIZEN TRUST.—(A) Subject to subparagraph (C), the term "United States citizen trust" means a trust that is qualified under this paragraph.

(B) A trust is qualified under this paragraph with respect to a vessel only if—

(i) each of the trustees is a citizen of the United States; and

(ii) the application for documentation of the vessel under chapter 121 of this title includes the affidavit of each trustee stating that the trustee is not aware of any reason involving a beneficiary of the trust that is not a citizen of the United States, or involving any other person that is not a citizen of the United States, as a result of which the beneficiary or other person would hold more than 25 percent of the aggregate power to influence or limit the exercise of the authority of the trustee with respect to matters involving any ownership or operation of the vessel that may adversely affect the interests of the United States.

(C) If any person that is not a citizen of the United States has authority to direct or participate in directing a trustee for a trust in matters involving any ownership or operation of the vessel that may adversely affect the interests of the United States or in removing a trustee for a trust without cause, either directly or indirectly through the control of another person, the trust is not qualified under this paragraph unless the trust instrument provides that persons who are not citizens of the United States may not hold more than 25 percent of the aggregate authority to so direct or remove a trustee.

(D) This paragraph shall not be considered to prohibit a person who is not a citizen of the United States from holding more than 25 percent of the beneficial interest in a trust.

(12) UNITED STATES-DOCUMENTED VESSEL.—The term "United States-documented vessel" means a vessel documented under chapter 121 of this title.

(Added Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1803; amended Pub. L. 112–239, div. C, title XXXV, §3508(a), Jan. 2, 2013, 126 Stat. 2223.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2013—Par. (4). Pub. L. 112–239, §3508(a)(1), amended par. (4) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (4) defined "foreign commerce".

Par. (5). Pub. L. 112–239, §3508(a)(4), amended par. (5) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (5) defined "participating fleet vessel".

Pub. L. 112–239, §3508(a)(2), (3), redesignated par. (6) as (5) and struck out former par. (5). Prior to amendment, text of par. (5) read as follows: "The term 'LASH vessel' means a lighter aboard ship vessel."

Pars. (6) to (13). Pub. L. 112–239, §3508(a)(3), redesignated pars. (7) to (13) as (6) to (12), respectively. Former par. (6) redesignated (5).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 112–239, div. C, title XXXV, §3508(j), Jan. 2, 2013, 126 Stat. 2226, provided that: "The amendments made by—

"(1) paragraphs (2), (3), and (4) of subsection (a) [amending this section] take effect on December 31, 2014; and

"(2) subsection (f)(2) [amending section 53106 of this title] take effect on December 31, 2014."

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3537, Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1819, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsections (b) and (c), this subtitle [subtitle C (§§3531–3537) of title XXXV of div. C of Pub. L. 108–136, enacting this chapter, amending section 12102 of this title and sections 808 and 1162 of the former Appendix to this title, repealing sections 1187 to 1187e and 1222 of the former Appendix to this title, enacting provisions set out as a note under section 53110 of this title, and amending provisions set out as a note under section 53102 of this title] shall take effect October 1, 2004."

"(b) REPEALS AND CONFORMING AMENDMENTS.—Section 3534 [amending section 12102 of this title, repealing sections 1187 to 1187e and 1222 of the former Appendix to this title, and amending provisions set out as a note under section 1187 of the former Appendix to this title] shall take effect October 1, 2005."

"(c) OTHER PROVISIONS.—Sections 3533 [enacting provisions set out as a note under section 53110 of this title], 3535 [not classified to the Code], and this section shall take effect on the date of the enactment of this Act [Nov. 24, 2003]."

TEMPORARY PROGRAM AUTHORIZING CONTRACTS WITH ADJUNCT PROFESSORS AT THE UNITED STATES MERCHANT MARINE ACADEMY AND FOR OTHER PURPOSES

Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(a)–(f), Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4763, 4764, which authorized establishment of a temporary program for the purpose of contracting with not more than 25 individuals as

personal services contractors to provide services as adjunct professors at the United States Merchant Marine Academy, was repealed by Pub. L. 111–84, div. C, title XXXV, §3503(b)(2), Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2719. See section 51317 of this title.

ASSISTANCE FOR SMALL SHIPYARDS AND MARITIME COMMUNITIES

Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3506, Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3553, formerly set out as a note under this section, was transferred to and renumbered as section 54101 of this title by Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3523(a)(6)(B), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 599. Later, Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3508(b), Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4769, directed repeal of section 3506 of Pub. L. 109–163. Pub. L. 110–417, §3508(b), was itself amended generally by Pub. L. 111–84, div. A, title X, §1073(c)(14), Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2475, effective Oct. 14, 2008, and as if included in Pub. L. 110–417 as enacted, and, as so amended, Pub. L. 110–417, §3508(b), no longer directed the repeal of section 3506 of Pub. L. 109–163. Section 3506 of Pub. L. 109–163 was subsequently repealed by Pub. L. 111–383, div. A, title X, §1075(m), Jan. 7, 2011, 124 Stat. 4378.

MAINTENANCE AND REPAIR REIMBURSEMENT PILOT PROGRAM

Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3517, Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1796, as amended by Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3503, Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3548; Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3505, Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4763, provided that:

"(a) AUTHORITY TO ENTER AGREEMENTS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall carry out a pilot program under which the Secretary shall enter into an agreement with 1 or more contractors under chapter 531 of title 46, United States Code, regarding maintenance and repair of 1 or more vessels that are subject to an operating agreement under that chapter.

"(2) REQUIREMENT OF AGREEMENT.—The Secretary shall, subject to the availability of appropriations, require 1 or more persons to enter into an agreement under this section as a condition of awarding an operating agreement to the person under chapter 531 of title 46, United States Code, for 1 or more vessels that normally make port calls in the United States.

"(3) EXISTING OPERATING AGREEMENTS.—The Secretary of Transportation shall, subject to the availability of appropriations, seek to enter into an agreement under this section with one or more contractors under an operating agreement under that chapter that is in effect on the date of the enactment of this paragraph [Oct. 14, 2008], regarding maintenance and repair of all vessels that are subject to the operating agreement.

"(b) TERMS OF AGREEMENT.—An agreement under this section—

"(1) shall require that except as provided in subsection (c), all qualified maintenance or repair on the vessel shall be performed in the United States;

"(2) shall require that the Secretary shall reimburse the contractor in accordance with subsection (d) for the costs of qualified maintenance or repair performed in the United States; and

"(3) shall apply to qualified maintenance or repair performed during the 5-year period beginning on the date the vessel begins operating under the operating agreement under chapter 531 of title 46, United States Code.

"(c) EXCEPTION TO REQUIREMENT TO PERFORM WORK IN THE UNITED STATES.—A contractor shall not be required to have qualified maintenance or repair work performed in the United States under this section if—

"(1) the Secretary determines that there is no facility capable of meeting all technical requirements of the qualified maintenance or repair in the United States located in the geographic area in which the vessel normally operates available to perform the work in the time required by the contractor to maintain its regularly scheduled service;

"(2) the Secretary determines that there are insufficient funds to pay reimbursement under subsection (d) with respect to the work; or

"(3) the Secretary fails to make the certification described in subsection (e)(2).

"(d) REIMBURSEMENT.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall, subject to the availability of appropriations, reimburse a contractor for costs incurred by the contractor for qualified maintenance or repair performed in the United States under this section.

"(2) AMOUNT.—The amount of reimbursement shall be equal to the difference between—

"(A) the fair and reasonable cost of obtaining the qualified maintenance or repair in the United States; and

"(B) the fair and reasonable cost of obtaining the qualified maintenance or repair outside the

United States, in the country in which the contractor would otherwise undertake the qualified maintenance or repair.

"(3) DETERMINATION OF FAIR AND REASONABLE COSTS.—The Secretary shall determine fair and reasonable costs for purposes of paragraph (2).

"(e) NOTIFICATION REQUIREMENTS.—

"(1) NOTIFICATION BY CONTRACTOR.—The Secretary is not required to pay reimbursement to a contractor under this section for qualified maintenance or repair, unless the contractor—

"(A) notifies the Secretary of the intent of the contractor to obtain the qualified maintenance or repair, by not later than 90 days before the date of the performance of the qualified maintenance or repair; and

"(B) includes in such notification—

"(i) a description of all qualified maintenance or repair that the contractor should reasonably expect may be performed;

"(ii) a description of the vessel's normal route and port calls in the United States;

"(iii) an estimate of the cost of obtaining the qualified maintenance or repair described under clause (i) in the United States; and

"(iv) an estimate of the cost of obtaining the qualified maintenance or repair described under clause (i) outside the United States, in the country in which the contractor otherwise would undertake the qualified maintenance or repair.

"(2) CERTIFICATION BY SECRETARY.—

"(A) Not later than 30 days after the date of receipt of notification under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall certify to the contractor—

"(i) whether the cost estimates provided by the contractor are fair and reasonable;

"(ii) if the Secretary determines that such cost estimates are not fair and reasonable, the Secretary's estimate of fair and reasonable costs for such work;

"(iii) whether there are available to the Secretary sufficient funds to pay reimbursement under subsection (d) with respect to such work; and

"(iv) that the Secretary commits such funds to the contractor for such reimbursement, if such funds are available for that purpose.

"(B) If the contractor notification described in paragraph (1) does not include an estimate of the cost of obtaining qualified maintenance and repair in the United States, then not later than 30 days after the date of receipt of such notification, the Secretary shall—

"(i) certify to the contractor whether there is a facility capable of meeting all technical requirements of the qualified maintenance and repair in the United States located in the geographic area in which the vessel normally operates available to perform the qualified maintenance and repair described in the notification by the contractor under paragraph (1) in the time period required by the contractor to maintain its regularly scheduled service; and

"(ii) if there is such a facility, require the contractor to resubmit such notification with the required cost estimate for such facility.

"(f) REGULATIONS.—

"(1) REQUIREMENT TO ISSUE NOTICE OF PROPOSED RULE MAKING.—The Secretary shall—

"(A) by not later than 30 days after the effective date of this subsection [probably means effective date of Pub. L. 109–163, Jan. 6, 2006], issue a notice of proposed rule making to implement this section;

"(B) in such notice, solicit the submission of comments by the public regarding rules to implement this section; and

"(C) provide a period of at least 30 days for the submission of such comments.

"(2) INTERIM RULES.—Upon expiration of the period for submission of comments pursuant to paragraph (1)(C), the Secretary may prescribe interim rules necessary to carry out the Secretary's responsibilities under this section. For this purpose, the Secretary is excepted from compliance with the notice and comment requirements of section 553 of title 5, United States Code. At the time interim rules are issued, the Secretary shall solicit comments on the interim rules from the public and other interested persons. Such period for comment shall not be less than 90 days. All interim rules prescribed under the authority of this subsection that are not earlier superseded by final rules shall expire no later than 270 days after the effective date of this subsection.

"(g) QUALIFIED MAINTENANCE OR REPAIR DEFINED.—In this section the term 'qualified maintenance or repair'—

"(1) except as provided in paragraph (2), means—

"(A) any inspection of a vessel that is—

"(i) required under chapter 33 of title 46, United States Code; and

"(ii) performed in the period in which the vessel is subject to an agreement under this section;

"(B) any maintenance or repair of a vessel that is determined, in the course of an inspection referred to in subparagraph (A), to be necessary; and

"(C) any additional maintenance or repair the contractor intends to undertake at the same time as the work described in subparagraph (B); and

"(2) does not include—

"(A) maintenance or repair not agreed to by the contractor to be undertaken at the same time as the work described in paragraph (1); or

"(B) any emergency work that is necessary to enable a vessel to return to a port in the United States.

"(h) ANNUAL REPORT.—The Secretary shall submit to the Congress by not later than September 30 each year a report on the program under this section. The report shall include a listing of future inspection schedules for all vessels included in the Maritime Security Fleet under section 53102 of title 46, United States Code.

"(i) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—In addition to the other amounts authorized by this title [see Short Title of 2003 Amendment note set out under section 101 of this title], for reimbursement of costs of qualified maintenance or repair under this section there is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of Transportation $19,500,000 for each of fiscal years 2006 through 2011."

NATIONAL DEFENSE TANK VESSEL CONSTRUCTION ASSISTANCE

Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, subtitle D, Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1820, as amended by Pub. L. 108–375, div. C, title XXXV, §3503, Oct. 28, 2004, 118 Stat. 2195; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3504, Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3551; Pub. L. 109–364, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(b)(2), Oct. 17, 2006, 120 Stat. 2516, provided that:

"SEC. 3541. NATIONAL DEFENSE TANK VESSEL CONSTRUCTION PROGRAM.

"The Secretary of Transportation shall establish a program for the provision of financial assistance for the construction in the United States of a fleet of up to 5 privately owned product tank vessels—

"(1) to be operated in commercial service in foreign commerce; and

"(2) to be available for national defense purposes in time of war or national emergency pursuant to an Emergency Preparedness Plan approved by the Secretary of Defense pursuant to section 3543(e).

"SEC. 3542. APPLICATION PROCEDURE.

"(a) REQUEST FOR PROPOSALS.—Within 90 days after the date of the enactment of this subtitle [Nov. 24, 2003], and on an as-needed basis thereafter, the Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense, shall publish in the Federal Register a request for competitive proposals for the construction of new product tank vessels necessary to meet the commercial and national security needs of the United States and to be built with assistance under this subtitle.

"(b) QUALIFICATION.—Any citizen of the United States or any shipyard in the United States may submit a proposal to the Secretary of Transportation for purposes of constructing a product tank vessel with assistance under this subtitle.

"(c) REQUIREMENT.—The Secretary, with the concurrence of the Secretary of Defense, may enter into an agreement with the submitter of a proposal for assistance under this subtitle if the Secretary determines that—

"(1) the plans and specifications call for construction of a new product tank vessel of not less than 35,000 deadweight tons and not greater than 60,000 deadweight tons, that—

"(A) will meet the requirements of foreign commerce;

"(B) is capable of carrying militarily useful petroleum products, and will be suitable for national defense or military purposes in time of war, national emergency, or other military contingency; and

"(C) will meet the construction standards necessary to be documented under the laws of the United States;

"(2) the shipyard in which the vessel will be constructed has the necessary capacity and expertise to successfully construct the proposed number and type of product tank vessels in a reasonable period of time as determined by the Secretary of Transportation, taking into consideration the recent prior commercial shipbuilding history of the proposed shipyard in delivering a vessel or series of vessels on time and in accordance with the contract price and specifications; and

"(3) the person proposed to be the operator of the proposed vessel possesses the ability, experience,

financial resources, and any other qualifications determined to be necessary by the Secretary for the operation and maintenance of the vessel.

"(d) PRIORITY.—The Secretary—

"(1) subject to paragraph (2), shall give priority consideration to a proposal submitted by a person that is a citizen of the United States under section 2 of the Shipping Act, 1916 ([former] 46 U.S.C. App. 802) [see 46 U.S.C. 50501]; and

"(2) may give priority to consideration of proposals that provide the best value to the Government, taking into consideration—

"(A) the costs of vessel construction;

"(B) the commercial and national security needs of the United States; and

"(C) with respect to any proposal for financial assistance to be provided from amounts appropriated for a fiscal year after fiscal year 2005, acceptance of the vessel to be constructed with the assistance for participation in the Shipboard Technology Evaluation Program as outlined in Navigation and Vessel Inspection Circular 01–04, issued by the Commandant of the United States Coast Guard on January 2, 2004.

"SEC. 3543. AWARD OF ASSISTANCE.

"(a) IN GENERAL.—If after review of a proposal, the Secretary determines that the proposal fulfills the requirements under this subtitle, the Secretary may enter into a contract with the proposed purchaser and the proposed shipyard for the construction of a product tank vessel with assistance under this subtitle.

"(b) AMOUNT OF ASSISTANCE.—The contract shall provide that the Secretary shall pay, subject to the availability of appropriations, the actual construction cost of the vessel, but in no case more than $50,000,000 per vessel.

"(c) CONSTRUCTION IN UNITED STATES.—A contract under this section shall require that construction of a vessel with assistance under this subtitle shall be performed in a shipyard in the United States.

"(d) DOCUMENTATION OF VESSEL.—

"(1) CONTRACT REQUIREMENT.—A contract under this section shall require that, upon delivery of a vessel constructed with assistance under the contract, the vessel shall be documented under chapter 121 of title 46, United States Code, with a registry endorsement only.

"(2) RESTRICTION ON COASTWISE ENDORSEMENT.—A vessel constructed with assistance under this subtitle shall not be eligible for a certificate of documentation with a coastwise endorsement.

"(3) AUTHORITY TO REFLAG NOT APPLICABLE.—Section 9(g) [probably should be 9(e)] of the Shipping Act, 1916, ([former] 46 U.S.C. App. 808(g) [probably should be 808(e)]) [now 46 U.S.C. 56101(c)] shall not apply to a vessel constructed with assistance under this subtitle.

"(e) EMERGENCY PREPAREDNESS AGREEMENT.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—A contract under this section shall require that the person who will be the operator of a vessel constructed with assistance under the contract shall enter into an Emergency Preparedness Agreement for the vessel under section 53107 of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this Act.

"(2) TREATMENT AS CONTRACTOR.—For purposes of the application, under paragraph (1), of section 53107 of title 46, United States Code, to a vessel constructed with assistance under this subtitle, the term 'contractor' as used in that section means the person who will be the operator of a vessel constructed with assistance under this subtitle.

"(f) ADDITIONAL TERMS.—The Secretary shall incorporate in the contract the requirements set forth in this subtitle, and may incorporate in the contract any additional terms the Secretary considers necessary.

"SEC. 3544. PRIORITY FOR TITLE XI ASSISTANCE.

[Amended section 1273 of the former Appendix to this title.]

"SEC. 3545. DEFINITIONS.

"In this subtitle the definitions set forth in section 53101 of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this Act, shall apply.

"SEC. 3546. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.

"There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out this subtitle a total of $250,000,000 for fiscal years after fiscal year 2004."

SALE OF INACTIVE PASSENGER VESSELS UNDER OPERATING-DIFFERENTIAL SUBSIDY TO FOREIGN OWNERSHIP

Pub. L. 92–296, §1, May 16, 1972, 86 Stat. 140; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(38), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 156, provided that:

"Notwithstanding any other provision of law or of prior contract with the United States, any vessel heretofore operated as a passenger vessel, as defined in section 613(a) of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, as amended [act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, set out below], under an operating-differential subsidy contract with the United States and now in inactive or layup status, except the steamship Independence and the steamship United States, may be sold and transferred to foreign ownership, registry, and flag, with the prior approval of the Secretary of Transportation. Such approval shall require (1) approval of the purchaser; (2) payment of existing debt and private obligations related to the vessel; (3) approval of the price, including terms of payment, for the sale of the vessel; (4) the seller to enter into an agreement with the Secretary whereby an amount equal to the net proceeds received from such sale in excess of existing obligations and expenses incident to the sale shall within a reasonable period not to exceed twelve months of receipt be committed and thereafter be used as equity capital for the construction of new vessels which the Secretary determines are built to effectuate the purposes and policy of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, as amended [former 46 U.S.C. App. 1101 et seq., see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title]; and (5) the purchaser to enter into an agreement with the Secretary, binding upon such purchaser and any later owner of the vessel and running with title to the vessel, that (a) the vessel will not carry passengers or cargo in competition, as determined by the Secretary, with any United States-flag passenger vessel for a period of two years from the date the transferred vessel goes into operation; (b) the vessel will be made available to the United States in time of emergency and just compensation for title or use, as the case may be, shall be paid in accordance with section 902 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, as amended (46 App. U.S.C. 1242) [now 46 U.S.C. 56301 et seq.]; (c) the purchaser will comply with such further conditions as the Secretary may impose as authorized by sections 9, 37, and 41 of the Shipping Act, 1916, as amended ([former] 46 U.S.C. [App.] 808, 835, and 839) [see 46 U.S.C. 56101 to 56104 and 57109]; and (d) the purchaser will furnish a surety bond in an amount and with a surety satisfactory to the Secretary to secure performance of the foregoing agreements.

"In addition to any other provision such agreements may contain for enforcement of (4) and (5) above, the agreements therein required may be specifically enforced by decree for specific performance or injunction in any district court of the United States. In the agreement with the Secretary the purchaser shall irrevocably appoint a corporate agent within the United States for service of process upon such purchaser in any action to enforce the agreement."

OFF-SEASON CRUISES ADDITIONAL TO VOYAGES ON REGULAR SERVICE, ROUTE, OR LINE

Pub. L. 87–45, §7, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91, provided that: "The cruises authorized by section 613 [of act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, set out below] shall be in addition to and not in derogation of the right of an operator to make voyages on his regular service, route or line, including approved deviations within the general area of his essential service. There shall be no adjustment of subsidy in the event of such deviations if they are without prejudice to the adequacy of service."

MINIMUM MANNING, WAGE SCALES, AND WORKING CONDITIONS ON SUBSIDIZED VESSELS

Act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title III, §301, 49 Stat. 1992; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§5, 6, 52 Stat. 955; 1946 Reorg. Plan No. 3, §§101–104, eff. July 16, 1946, 11 F.R. 7875, 60 Stat. 1097; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(82), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 160; Pub. L. 109–163, div. A, title V, §515(g)(2)(A), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3236, provided that:

"(a) The Secretary of Transportation is authorized and directed to investigate the employment and wage conditions in ocean-going shipping and, after making such investigation and after appropriate hearings, to incorporate in the contracts authorized under titles VI and VII of this Act [former 46 U.S.C. App. 1171 et seq., 1191 et seq., see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title] minimum manning scales and minimum wage scales, and minimum working conditions for all officers and crews employed on all types of vessels receiving an operating-differential subsidy. After such minimum manning and wage scales, and working conditions shall have been adopted by the Secretary of Transportation, no change shall be made therein by the Secretary of Transportation except upon public notice of the hearing to be had, and a hearing by the Secretary of Transportation of all interested parties, under such rules as the Secretary of Transportation shall prescribe. The duly elected representatives of the organizations certified as the proper collective bargaining agencies shall have the right to represent the employees who are members of their organizations at any such hearings. Every contractor receiving an operating-differential subsidy shall post and keep posted in a conspicuous place on each such vessel operated by such contractor a printed copy of the minimum manning and wage scales, and

working conditions prescribed by his contract and applicable to such vessel: *Provided, however*, That any increase in the operating expenses of the subsidized vessel occasioned by any change in the wage or manning scales or working conditions as provided in this section shall be added to the operating-differential subsidy previously authorized for the vessel.

"(b) Every contract executed under authority of titles VI and VII of this Act shall require—

"(1) Insofar as is practicable, officers' living quarters shall be kept separate and apart from those furnished for members of the crew;

"(2) Licensed officers and unlicensed members of the crew shall be entitled to make complaints or recommendations to the Secretary of Transportation providing they file such complaint or recommendation directly with the Secretary of Transportation, or with their immediate superior officer who shall be required to forward such complaint or recommendation with his remarks to the Secretary of Transportation, or with the authorized representatives of the respective collective bargaining agencies;

"(3) Licensed officers who are members of the United States Navy Reserve shall wear on their uniforms such special distinguishing insignia as may be approved by the Secretary of the Navy; officers being those men serving under licenses issued by the Bureau of Marine Inspection and Navigation or the Coast Guard;

"(4) The uniform stripes, decoration, or other insignia shall be of gold braid or woven gold or silver material, to be worn by officers, and no member of the ship's crew other than licensed officers shall be allowed to wear any uniform with such officer's identifying insignia;

"(5) No discrimination shall be practiced against licensed officers, who are otherwise qualified, because of their failure to qualify as members of the United States Navy Reserve."

CONSTRUCTION-DIFFERENTIAL SUBSIDY

Act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, 49 Stat. 1995, as amended, provided as follows:

SUBSIDY AUTHORIZED FOR VESSELS TO BE OPERATED IN FOREIGN TRADE

"SEC. 501. (a) Any proposed ship purchaser who is a citizen of the United States or any shipyard of the United States may make application to the Secretary of Transportation for a construction-differential subsidy to aid in the construction of a new vessel to be used in the foreign commerce of the United States. No such application shall be approved by the Secretary of Transportation unless he determines that (1) the plans and specifications call for a new vessel which will meet the requirements of the foreign commerce of the United States, will aid in the promotion and development of such commerce, and be suitable for use by the United States for national defense or military purposes in time of war or national emergency; (2) if the applicant is the proposed ship purchaser, the applicant possesses the ability, experience, financial resources, and other qualifications necessary for the operation and maintenance of the proposed new vessel, and (3) the granting of the aid applied for is reasonably calculated to carry out effectively the purposes and policy of this Act [former 46 U.S.C. App. 1101 et seq., see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title]. The contract of sale, and the mortgage given to secure the payment of the unpaid balance of the purchase price shall not restrict the lawful or proper use or operation of the vessel except to the extent expressly required by law. The Secretary of Transportation may give preferred consideration to applications that will tend to reduce construction-differential subsidies and that propose the construction of ships of higher transport capability and productivity.

"(b) The Secretary of Transportation shall submit the plans and specifications for the proposed vessel to the Navy Department for examination thereof and suggestions for such changes therein as may be deemed necessary or proper in order that such vessel shall be suitable for economical and speedy conversion into a naval or military auxiliary, or otherwise suitable for the use of the United States Government in time of war or national emergency. If the Secretary of the Navy approves such plans and specifications as submitted, or as modified, in accordance with the provisions of this subsection, he shall certify such approval to the Secretary of Transportation.

"(c) Any citizen of the United States or any shipyard of the United States may make application to the Secretary of Transportation for a construction-differential subsidy to aid in reconstructing or reconditioning any vessel that is to be used in the foreign commerce of the United States. If the Secretary of Transportation, in the exercise of his discretion, shall determine that the granting of the financial aid applied for is reasonably calculated to carry out effectively the purposes and policy of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation may approve such application and enter into a contract or contracts with the applicant therefor providing for the payment by the United States of a construction-differential subsidy that is to be ascertained, determined, controlled, granted, and paid, subject to all the applicable conditions and limitations of this title and under such further conditions and limitations as may be prescribed in the rules and regulations of the Secretary of Transportation has adopted as provided in section 204(b) of this Act [former 46 U.S.C. App. 1114(b), repealed

by Pub. L. 109–304, §19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1710]; but the financial aid authorized by this subsection shall be extended to reconstruction or reconditioning only in exceptional cases and after a thorough study and a formal determination by the Secretary of Transportation that the proposed reconstruction or reconditioning is consistent with the purposes and policy of this Act."

(As amended June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §8, 52 Stat. 955; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§1, 2, 66 Stat. 760, 761; Pub. L. 91–469, §§6, 35(a), (c), (d), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1019, 1035; Pub. L. 91–603, §4(a), Dec. 31, 1970, 84 Stat. 1675; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(84), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.)

CONSTRUCTION OF VESSELS; BIDS; SUBSIDIES

"SEC. 502. (a) If the Secretary of the Navy certifies his approval under section 501(b) of this Act, and the Secretary of Transportation approves the application, he may secure bids for the construction of the proposed vessel according to the approved plans and specifications. If the bid of the shipbuilder who is the lowest responsible bidder is determined by the Secretary of Transportation to be fair and reasonable, the Secretary of Transportation may approve such bid, and if such approved bid is accepted by the proposed ship purchaser, the Secretary of Transportation is authorized to enter into a contract with the successful bidder for the construction, outfitting, and equipment of the proposed vessel, and for the payment by the Secretary of Transportation to the shipbuilder, on terms to be agreed upon in the contract, of the contract price of the vessel, out of the construction fund hereinbefore referred to, or out of other available funds. Notwithstanding the provisions of the first sentence of section 505 of this Act with respect to competitive bidding, the Secretary of Transportation is authorized to accept a price for the construction of the ship which has been negotiated between a shipyard and proposed ship purchaser if (1) the proposed ship purchaser and the shipyard submit backup cost details and evidence that the negotiated price is fair and reasonable; (2) the Secretary of Transportation finds that the negotiated price is fair and reasonable; and (3) the shipyard agrees that the Comptroller General of the United States or any of his duly authorized representatives shall, until the expiration of three years after final payment have access to and the right to examine any pertinent books, documents, papers, and records of the shipyard or any of its subcontractors related to the negotiation or performance of any contract or subcontract negotiated under this subsection and will include in its subcontracts a provision to that effect. Concurrently with entering into such contract with the shipbuilder, the Secretary of Transportation is authorized to enter into a contract for the sale of such vessel upon its completion, to the applicant if he is the proposed ship purchaser and if not to another citizen of the United States, if the Secretary of Transportation determines that such citizen possesses the ability, experience, financial resources, and other qualifications necessary for the operation and maintenance of the vessel at a price corresponding to the estimated cost, as determined by the Secretary of Transportation pursuant to the provisions of this Act [former 46 U.S.C. App. 1101 et seq., see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title], of building such vessel in a foreign shipyard.

"(b) The amount of the reduction in selling price which is herein termed 'construction differential subsidy' shall equal, but not exceed, the excess of the bid of the shipbuilder constructing the proposed vessel (excluding the cost of any features incorporated in the vessel for national defense uses, which shall be paid by the Secretary in addition to the subsidy), over the fair and reasonable estimate of cost, as determined by the Secretary, of the construction of that type vessel if it were constructed under similar plans and specifications (excluding national defense features as above provided) in a foreign shipbuilding center which is deemed by the Secretary to furnish a fair and representative example for the determination of the estimated foreign cost of construction of vessels of the type proposed to be constructed. The Secretary of Transportation shall recompute such estimated foreign cost annually unless, in the opinion of the Secretary, there has been a significant change in shipbuilding market conditions. The Secretary shall publish notice of his intention to compute or recompute such estimated foreign cost and shall give interested persons, including but not limited to shipyards and shipowners and associations thereof, an opportunity to file written statements. The Secretary's consideration shall include, but not be limited to, all relevant matter so filed, and his determination shall include or be accompanied by a concise explanation of the basis of his determination. The construction differential approved and paid by the Secretary shall not exceed 50 per centum of the cost of constructing, reconstructing, or reconditioning the vessel (excluding the cost of national defense features). If the Secretary finds that the construction differential exceeds, in any case, the foregoing percentage of such cost, the Secretary may negotiate with any bidder (whether or not such person is the lowest bidder) and may contract with such bidder (notwithstanding the first sentence of section 505) for the construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of the vessel involved in a domestic shipyard at a cost which will reduce the construction differential to such percentage or less. In the event that the Secretary has reason to believe that the bidding in any instance is collusive, he shall report all of the evidence on which he acted (1) to the Attorney General of the United States, and (2) to the President of the Senate and to the Speaker of the House of Representatives if

the Congress shall be in session or if the Congress shall not be in session, then to the Secretary of the Senate and Clerk of the House, respectively.

"(c) In such contract of sale between the purchaser and the Secretary of Transportation, the purchaser shall be required to make cash payments to the Secretary of Transportation of not less than 25 per centum of the price at which the vessel is sold to the purchaser. The cash payments shall be made at the time and in the same proportion as provided for the payments on account of the construction cost in the contract between the shipbuilder and the Secretary of Transportation. The purchaser shall pay, not less frequently than annually, interest on those portions of the Secretary of Transportation's payments as made to the shipbuilder which are chargeable to the purchaser's portion of the price of the vessel (after deduction of the purchaser's cash payments) at a rate not less than (i) a rate determined by the Secretary of the Treasury, taking into consideration the current average market yield on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States with remaining periods to maturity comparable to the average maturities of such loans, adjusted to the nearest one-eighth of 1 per centum, plus (ii) an allowance adequate in the judgment of the Secretary of Transportation to cover administrative costs. The balance of such purchase price shall be paid by the purchaser, within twenty-five years after delivery of the vessel and in not to exceed twenty-five equal annual installments, the first of which shall be payable one year after the delivery of the vessel by the Secretary of Transportation to the purchaser. Interest at the rate per annum applicable to payments that are chargeable to the purchaser's portion of the price of the vessel shall be paid on all such installments of the purchase price remaining unpaid.

"(d) [Repealed. Pub. L. 87–877, §2(a), Oct. 24, 1962, 76 Stat. 1200.]

"(e) If no bids are received for the construction, outfitting, or equipping of such vessel, or if it appears to the Secretary of Transportation that the bids received from privately owned shipyards of the United States are collusive, excessive, or unreasonable, and if a citizen of the United States agrees to purchase said vessel as provided in this section, then, to provide employment for citizens of the United States, the Secretary of Transportation may have such vessel constructed, outfitted, or equipped at not in excess of the actual cost thereof in a navy yard of the United States under such regulations as may be promulgated by the Secretary of the Navy and the Secretary of Transportation. In such event the Secretary of Transportation is authorized to pay for any such vessel so constructed from his construction fund. The Secretary of Transportation is authorized to sell any vessel so constructed, outfitted, or equipped in a navy yard to a citizen of the United States for the fair and reasonable value thereof, but at not less than the cost thereof less the equivalent to the construction differential subsidy determined as provided by subsection (b), such sale to be in accordance with all the provisions of this title.

"(f) The Secretary of Transportation, with the advice of and in coordination with the Secretary of the Navy, shall at least once each year, as required for purposes of this Act, survey the existing privately owned shipyards capable of merchant ship construction, or review available data on such shipyards if deemed adequate, to determine whether their capabilities for merchant ship construction, including facilities and skilled personnel, provide an adequate mobilization base at strategic points for purposes of national defense and national emergency. The Secretary of Transportation, in connection with ship construction, reconstruction, reconditioning, or remodeling under titles V and VII [former 46 U.S.C. App. 1191 et seq., see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title], upon a basis of a finding that the award of the proposed construction, reconstruction, reconditioning, or remodeling work will remedy an existing or impending inadequacy in such mobilization base as to the capabilities and capacities of a shipyard or shipyards at a strategic point, and after taking into consideration the benefits accruing from standardized construction, the conditions of unemployment, and the needs and reasonable requirements of all shipyards, may allocate such construction, reconstruction, reconditioning, or remodeling to such yard or yards in such manner as he may determine to be fair, just, and reasonable to all sections of the country, subject to the provisions of this subsection. In the allocation of construction work to such yards as herein provided, the Secretary of Transportation may, after first obtaining competitive bids for such work in compliance with the provisions of this Act, negotiate with the bidders and with other shipbuilders concerning the terms and conditions of any contract for such work, and is authorized to enter into such contract at a price deemed by the Secretary of Transportation to be fair and reasonable. Any contract entered into by the Secretary of Transportation under the provisions of this subsection shall be subject to all of the terms and conditions of this Act, excepting those pertaining to the awarding of contracts to the lowest bidder which are inconsistent with the provisions of this subsection. In the event that a contract is made providing for a price in excess of the lowest responsible bid which otherwise would be accepted, such excess shall be paid by the Secretary of Transportation as a part of the cost of national defense, and shall not be considered as a part of the construction-differential subsidy. In the event that a contract is made providing for a price lower than the lowest responsible bid which otherwise would be accepted, the construction-differential subsidy shall be computed on the contract price in lieu of such bid.

"If, as a result of allocation under this subsection, the purchaser incurs expenses for inspection and supervision of the vessel during construction and for the delivery voyage of the vessel in excess of the estimated expenses for the same services that he would have incurred if the vessel had been constructed by the lowest responsible bidder the Secretary of Transportation (with respect to construction under title V, except section 509) shall reimburse the purchaser for such excess, less one-half of any gross income the purchaser receives that is allocable to the delivery voyage minus one-half of the extra expenses incurred to produce such gross income, and such reimbursement shall not be considered part of the construction-differential subsidy: *Provided*, That no interest shall be paid on any refund authorized under this Act. If the vessel is constructed under section 509 the Secretary of Transportation shall reduce the price of the vessel by such excess, less one-half of any gross income (minus one-half of the extra expenses incurred to produce such gross income) the purchaser receives that is allocable to the delivery voyage. In the case of a vessel that is not to receive operating-differential subsidy, the delivery voyage shall be deemed terminated at the port where the vessel begins loading. In the case of a vessel that is to receive operating-differential subsidy, the delivery voyage shall be deemed terminated when the vessel begins loading at a United States port in an essential service. In either case, however, the vessel owner shall not be compensated for excess vessel delivery costs in an amount greater than the expenses that would have been incurred in delivering the vessel from the shipyard at which it was built to the shipyard of the lowest responsible bidder. If as a result of such allocation, the expenses the purchaser incurs with respect to such services are less than the expenses he would have incurred for such services if the vessel had been constructed by the lowest responsible bidder, the purchaser shall pay to the Secretary of Transportation an amount equal to such reduction and, if the vessel was built with the aid of construction-differential subsidy, such payment shall not be considered a reduction of the construction-differential subsidy.

"(g) Upon the application of any citizen of the United States to purchase any vessel acquired by the Secretary of Transportation under the provisions of section 215 [former 46 U.S.C. App. 1125, see 46 U.S.C. 57105], the Secretary of Transportation is authorized to sell such vessel to the applicant for the fair and reasonable value thereof, but at not less than the cost thereof to the Secretary of Transportation less depreciation at the rate of 4 per centum per annum from the date of completion, excluding the cost of national-defense features added by the Secretary of Transportation, less the equivalent of any applicable construction-differential subsidy as provided by subsection (b), such sale to be in accordance with all the provisions of this title. Such vessel shall thereupon be eligible for an operating-differential subsidy under title VI of this Act [former 46 U.S.C. App. 1171 et seq., see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title], notwithstanding the provisions of section 601(a)(1), and section 610(1) [set out below], or any other provision of law.

"(h) The Secretary of Transportation is authorized to construct, purchase, lease, acquire, store, maintain, sell, or otherwise dispose of national defense features intended for installation on vessels. The Secretary of Transportation is authorized to install or remove such national defense features on any vessel (1) which is in the National Defense Reserve Fleet as defined by section 11(a) of the Merchant Ship Sales Act of 1946 [former 50 U.S.C. 4405(a), now 46 U.S.C. 57100(a)], (2) which is requisitioned, purchased, or chartered under section 902 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 [former 46 U.S.C. App. 1242, now 46 U.S.C. 56301 et seq.], (3) which serves as security for the guarantee of an obligation by the Secretary of Transportation under title XI of this Act [former 46 U.S.C. App. 1271 et seq., see 46 U.S.C. 53701 et seq.], or (4) which is the subject of an agreement between the owner of such vessel and the Secretary of Transportation to install or remove such national defense features. Title to such national defense features which the Secretary of Transportation determines are not to be permanently incorporated in a vessel shall not be affected by such installation or removal unless otherwise transferred in accordance with the provisions of this title V.

"(i) The Secretary of Transportation shall submit the plans and specifications for such national defense features and the proposals for their acquisition, storage, utilization, or disposition to the Navy Department for examination thereof and suggestion for such changes therein as may be deemed necessary or proper in order that such features shall be suitable for the use of the United States Government in time of war or national emergency. If the Secretary of the Navy approves such plans, specifications, or proposals as submitted, or as modified in accordance with the provisions of this subsection, he shall certify such approval to the Secretary of Transportation."

(As amended June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§9–14, 52 Stat. 955–957; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §6, 53 Stat. 1183; July 26, 1956, ch. 737, 70 Stat. 657; Pub. L. 86–518, §§1, 2, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–607, §1, July 7, 1960, 74 Stat. 362; Pub. L. 87–877, §§1, 2(a), (e), (f), Oct. 24, 1962, 76 Stat. 1200, 1201; Pub. L. 88–370, July 11, 1964, 78 Stat. 313; Pub. L. 88–410, §1, Aug. 10, 1964, 78 Stat. 385; Pub. L. 89–127, Aug. 14, 1965, 79 Stat. 519; Pub. L. 89–589, Sept. 19, 1966, 80 Stat. 811; Pub. L. 90–572, Oct. 12, 1968, 82 Stat. 1004; Pub. L. 91–40, July 8, 1969, 83 Stat. 44; Pub. L. 91–469, §§7, 35(a), (e)–(g), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat.

1019, 1035, 1036; Pub. L. 91–603, §4(b), Dec. 31, 1970, 84 Stat. 1675; Pub. L. 93–71, July 10, 1973, 87 Stat. 169; Pub. L. 94–372, §§2, 3, July 31, 1976, 90 Stat. 1042; Pub. L. 96–210, Mar. 17, 1980, 94 Stat. 100; Pub. L. 96–387, §3, Oct. 7, 1980, 94 Stat. 1545; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(84), (85), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.)

DOCUMENTATION OF COMPLETED VESSEL UNDER LAWS OF UNITED STATES; DELIVERY TO PURCHASER; FIRST MORTGAGE TO SECURE DEFERRED PAYMENTS

"SEC. 503. Upon completion of the construction of any vessel in respect to which a construction-differential subsidy is to be allowed under this title and its delivery by the shipbuilder to the Secretary of Transportation, the vessel shall be documented under the laws of the United States, and concurrently therewith, or as soon thereafter as practicable, the vessel shall be delivered with a bill of sale to the purchaser with warranty against liens, pursuant to the contract of sale between the purchaser and the Secretary of Transportation. The vessel shall remain documented under the laws of the United States for not less than twenty-five years, or so long as there remains due the United States any principal or interest on account of the purchaser price, whichever is the longer period. At the time of delivery of the vessel the purchaser shall execute and deliver a first-preferred mortgage to the United States to secure payment of any sums due from the purchaser in respect to said vessel: *Provided*, That notwithstanding any other provisions of law, the payment of any sums due in respect to a passenger vessel purchased under section 4(b) of the Merchant Ship Sales Act of 1946 [former 50 U.S.C. App. 1737(b)], reconverted or restored for normal operation in commercial services, or in respect to a passenger vessel purchased under title V of this Act, which is delivered subsequent to March 8, 1946, and which (i) is of not less than ten thousand gross tons, (ii) has a designed speed approved by the Secretary of Transportation but not less than eighteen knots, (iii) has accommodations for not less than two hundred passengers, and, (iv) is approved by the Secretary of Defense as being desirable for national defense purposes, may, with the approval of the Secretary of Transportation be secured only by a first-preferred mortgage on said vessel. With the approval of the Secretary of Transportation, such preferred mortgage may provide that the sole recourse against the purchaser of such a passenger vessel under such mortgage, and any of the notes secured thereby, shall be limited to repossession of the vessel by the United States and the assignment of insurance claims, if the purchaser shall have complied with all provisions of the mortgage other than those relating to the payment of principal and interest when due, and the obligation of the purchaser shall be satisfied and discharged by the surrender of the vessel, and all right, title, and interest therein to the United States. Such vessel upon surrender shall be (i) free and clear of all liens and encumbrances whatsoever, except the lien of the preferred mortgage, (ii) in class, and (iii) in as good order and condition, ordinary wear and tear excepted, as when acquired by the purchaser, except that any deficiencies with respect to freedom from encumbrances, condition, and class, may, to the extent covered by valid policies of insurance, be satisfied by the assignment to the United States of claims of the purchaser under such policies of insurance. The purchaser shall also comply with all the provisions of section 9 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 [former 46 U.S.C. App. 868, repealed by Pub. L. 109–304, §19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1710]."

(As amended June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §15, 52 Stat. 957; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §3, 66 Stat. 761; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 91–469, §§8, 35(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1021, 1035; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(84), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.)

PURCHASE OF VESSEL CONSTRUCTED IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICATION FOR SUBSIDY; BID OR NEGOTIATED PRICE BASIS FOR SUBSIDY AND PAYMENTS FOR COST OF NATIONAL DEFENSE FEATURES; DOCUMENTATION

"SEC. 504. If a qualified purchaser under the terms of this title desires to purchase a vessel to be constructed in accordance with an application for construction-differential subsidy under this title, the Secretary of Transportation may, in lieu of contracting to pay the entire cost of the vessel under section 502, contract to pay only construction-differential subsidy and the cost of national defense features to the shipyard constructing such vessel. The construction-differential subsidy and payments for the cost of national defense features shall be based upon the lowest responsible domestic bid unless the vessel is constructed at a negotiated price as provided by section 502(a) or under a contract negotiated by the Secretary of Transportation as provided in section 502(b) in which event the construction-differential subsidy and payments for the cost of national defense features shall be based upon such negotiated price. No construction-differential subsidy, as provided in this section, shall be paid unless the said contract or contracts or other arrangements contain such provisions as are provided in this title to protect the interests of the United States as the Secretary of Transportation deems necessary. Such vessel shall be documented under the laws of

the United States as provided in section 503 of this title. The contract of sale, and the mortgage given to secure the payment of the unpaid balance of the purchase price, shall not restrict the lawful or proper use or operation of the vessel, except to the extent expressly required by law."

(As amended June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §16, 52 Stat. 958; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §4, 66 Stat. 761; Pub. L. 91–469, §§9, 35(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1021, 1035; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(84), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.)

ELIGIBLE SHIPYARDS; MATERIALS; CONDITIONS OF CONTRACTS; LIMITATION TO AMERICAN SHIPYARDS; AMERICAN MATERIALS, WAIVER; ABILITY OF BIDDERS; FILING BIDS AND DATA

"SEC. 505. All construction in respect of which a construction-differential subsidy is allowed under this title shall be performed in a shipyard of the United States as the result of competitive bidding, after due advertisement, with the right reserved in the Secretary of Transportation to disapprove, any or all bids. In all such construction the shipbuilder, subcontractors, materialmen, or suppliers shall use, so far as practicable, only articles, materials, and supplies of the growth, production, or manufacture of the United States as defined in paragraph K of section 401 of the Tariff Act of 1930 [now 19 U.S.C. 1401(h)]; *Provided, however*, That with respect to other than major components of the hull, superstructure, and any material used in the construction thereof, (1) if the Secretary of Transportation determines that the requirements of this sentence will unreasonably delay completion of any vessel beyond its contract delivery date, and (2) if such determination includes or is accompanied by a concise explanation of the basis therefor, then the Secretary of Transportation may waive such requirements to the extent necessary to prevent such delay. No shipbuilder shall be deemed a responsible bidder unless he possesses the ability, experience, financial resources, equipment, and other qualifications necessary properly to perform the proposed contract. Each bid submitted to the Secretary of Transportation shall be accompanied by all detailed estimates upon which it is based. The Secretary of Transportation may require that the bids of any subcontractors, or other pertinent data, accompany such bid. All such bids and data relating thereto shall be kept on file until disposed of as provided by law. For the purposes of this title V, the term 'shipyard of the United States' means shipyards within any of the United States and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico."

(As amended June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§17, 40(a), 52 Stat. 958, 964; Oct. 25, 1951, ch. 562, §3(4), 65 Stat. 639; Pub. L. 86–624, §35(a), July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 421; Pub. L. 91–469, §§10, 35(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1022, 1035; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(84), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.)

OPERATION OF SUBSIDY CONSTRUCTED VESSEL LIMITED TO FOREIGN TRADE; REPAYMENTS TO SECRETARY FOR DEVIATIONS

"SEC. 506. Every owner of a vessel for which a construction-differential subsidy has been paid shall agree that the vessel shall be operated exclusively in foreign trade, or on a round-the-world voyage, or on a round voyage from the west coast of the United States to a European port or ports which includes intercoastal ports of the United States, or a round voyage from the Atlantic coast of the United States to the Orient which includes intercoastal ports of the United States, or on a voyage in foreign trade on which the vessel may stop at the State of Hawaii, or an island possession or island territory of the United States, and that if the vessel is operated in the domestic trade on any of the above-enumerated services, he will pay annually to the Secretary of Transportation that proportion of one-twenty-fifth of the construction-differential subsidy paid for such vessel as the gross revenue derived from the domestic trade bears to the gross revenue derived from the entire voyages completed during the preceding year. The Secretary may consent in writing to the temporary transfer of such vessel to service other than the service covered by such agreement for periods not exceeding six months in any year, whenever the Secretary may determine that such transfer is necessary or appropriate to carry out the purposes of this Act [former 46 U.S.C. App. 1101 et seq., see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title]. Such consent shall be conditioned upon the agreement by the owner to pay to the Secretary, upon such terms and conditions as he may prescribe, an amount which bears the same proportion to the construction-differential subsidy paid by the Secretary as such temporary period bears to the entire economic life of the vessel. No operating-differential subsidy shall be paid for the operation of such vessel for such temporary period."

(As amended June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §18, 52 Stat. 958; Mar. 18, 1959, Pub. L. 86–3, §18(b)(1), 73 Stat. 12; Pub. L. 86–518, §3, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(87), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.)

CONSTRUCTION OF NEW VESSEL TO REPLACE OBSOLETE; PURCHASE OF OLD VESSEL BY SECRETARY; BOND OF SELLER AGAINST LIENS

"SEC. 507. If a contract is made by the Secretary of Transportation under authority of this title for the construction and sale of a new vessel to replace a vessel then operated in foreign trade or domestic trade, which in the judgment of the Secretary of Transportation should be replaced because it is obsolete or

inadequate for successful operation in such trade, the Secretary of Transportation is authorized, in his discretion, to buy such replaced vessel from the owner at a fair and reasonable valuation, which valuation shall not exceed the cost to the owner or any former owner plus the actual cost previously expended thereon for reconditioning, and less a reasonable and proper depreciation, based upon not more than twenty-five-year life of the vessel, and apply the purchase price agreed upon to that portion of the construction cost of such new vessel which is to be borne by the purchaser thereof: *Provided*, That the owner of such replaced vessel shall execute a bond, with one or more approved sureties, conditioned upon indemnifying the United States from all loss resulting from any existing lien against such vessel: *And provided further*, That such vessel has been documented under the laws of the United States for a period of at least ten years prior to the date of its purchase by the United States."

(As amended June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §19, 52 Stat. 959; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §5, 66 Stat. 761; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(88), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.)

DISPOSITION OF VESSELS TRANSFERRED TO MARITIME ADMINISTRATION OF DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

[Section 508 was classified to section 1158 of the former Appendix to this title and was repealed and restated as sections 57102 and 57103 of this title by Pub. L. 109–304, §§8(c), 19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1586, 1710.]

VESSELS TO BE OPERATED IN DOMESTIC TRADE; TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF CONSTRUCTION AID AND SALE TO PURCHASER

"SEC. 509. Any citizen of the United States may make application to the Secretary of Transportation for aid in the construction of a new vessel to be operated in the foreign or domestic trade (excepting vessels engaged solely in the transportation of property on inland rivers and canals exclusively). If such application is approved by the Secretary of Transportation, the vessel may be constructed under the terms and conditions of this title, but no construction-differential subsidy shall be allowed. The Secretary of Transportation shall pay for the cost of national-defense features incorporated in such vessel. In case the vessel is designed to be of not less than three thousand five hundred gross tons and to be capable of sustained speed of not less than ten knots, or in the case of a passenger vessel operating solely on the inland rivers and waterways which is designed to be of not less than one thousand gross tons and to be capable of sustained speed of not less than eight knots, or in the case of a ferry operating solely in point-to-point transportation which is designed to be of not less than seventy-five gross tons and to be capable of a sustained speed of not less than eight knots, in the case of an oceangoing tug of more than two thousand five hundred horsepower or oceangoing barge of more than two thousand five hundred gross tons, or in the case of a vessel of more than two thousand five hundred horsepower designed to be capable of sustained speed of not less than forty knots, the purchaser shall be required to pay the Secretary of Transportation not less than 12½ per centum of the cost of such vessel, and in the case of any other vessel the purchaser shall be required to pay the Secretary of Transportation not less than 25 per centum of the cost of such vessel (excluding from such cost, in either case, the cost of national defense features); and the balance of such purchase price shall be paid by the purchaser within twenty-five years in not to exceed twenty-five equal annual installments, with interest at a rate not less than (i) a rate determined by the Secretary of the Treasury, taking into consideration the current average market yield on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States with remaining periods to maturity comparable to the average maturities of such loans, adjusted to the nearest one-eighth of 1 per centum, plus (ii) an allowance adequate in the judgment of the Secretary of Transportation to cover administrative costs, the balance of such purchase price being secured by a preferred mortgage on the vessel sold and otherwise secured as the Secretary of Transportation may determine: *Provided*, That, notwithstanding any other provisions of law, the balance of the purchase price of a passenger vessel constructed under this section which is delivered subsequent to March 8, 1946, and which has the tonnage, speed, passenger accommodations, and other characteristics set forth in section 503 of this Act, may, with the approval of the Secretary of Transportation, be secured as provided in such section, and the obligation of the purchaser of such a vessel shall be satisfied and discharged as provided in such section."

(As amended June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §20, 52 Stat. 959; June 6, 1939, ch. 186, 53 Stat. 810; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §6, 66 Stat. 761; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–877, §2(b), Oct. 24, 1962, 76 Stat. 1200; Pub. L. 90–183, Dec. 10, 1967, 81 Stat. 559; Pub. L. 90–214, Dec. 18, 1967, 81 Stat. 660; Pub. L. 91–469, §11, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1022; Pub. L. 92–374, Aug. 10, 1972, 86 Stat. 528; Pub. L. 95–173, §8, Nov. 12, 1977, 91 Stat. 1360; Pub. L. 95–505, Oct. 24, 1978, 92 Stat. 1755; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(90), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.)

ACQUISITION OF OBSOLETE VESSELS

[Section 510 was classified to section 1160 of the former Appendix to this title and was primarily repealed and restated in subtitle V of this title by Pub. L. 109–304, §§8(b), (c), 19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1556, 1586, 1710. For disposition of sections of the former Appendix to this title, see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title.]

RESERVE FUNDS FOR CONSTRUCTION OR ACQUISITION OF VESSELS; TAXATION

[Section 511 was classified to section 1161 of the former Appendix to this title and was primarily repealed and restated as chapter 533 of this title by Pub. L. 109–304, §§8(c), 19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1586, 1710. For disposition of sections of the former Appendix to this title, see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title.]

LIMITATION ON RESTRICTIONS

"SEC. 512. (a) Except as provided in subsection (b), notwithstanding any other provision of law or contract, all restrictions and requirements under sections 503, 506, and 802 [set out below] applicable to a liner vessel constructed, reconstructed, or reconditioned with the aid of construction-differential subsidy shall terminate upon the expiration of the 25-year period beginning on the date of the original delivery of the vessel from the shipyard.

"(b)(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), the restrictions and requirements of section 506 shall terminate upon the expiration of the 20-year period beginning on the date of the original delivery of the vessel from the shipyard for operation of a vessel in any domestic trade in which it has operated at any time since 1996.

"(2) Paragraph (1) shall not affect any requirement to make payments under section 506."

(As added Pub. L. 104–239, §7, Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3133; amended Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3532(b), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1818.)

[Title V of act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, comprising this note, consisted of sections 501 to 512 which were classified to sections 1151 to 1162, respectively, of the former Appendix to this title, prior to the enactment of Pub. L. 109–304 and elimination of that Appendix. For complete disposition of those sections, see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title.]

[Pub. L. 87–877, §5, Oct. 24, 1962, 76 Stat. 1202, provided that: "The amendment made by the first section of this Act [amending section 502 of act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, set out above] shall be effective only with respect to contracts entered into with respect to (a) the construction of a vessel the keel of which was laid after June 30, 1959, or (b) the reconstruction or reconditioning of a vessel the shipyard contract for which was entered into after June 30, 1959, and the Secretary may, with the consent of the parties thereto, modify any such contract entered into prior to the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 24, 1962] to the extent authorized by the amendment made by this Act."]

[Pub. L. 86–607, §2, July 7, 1960, 74 Stat. 362, as amended by Pub. L. 87–222, Sept. 13, 1961, 75 Stat. 494, provided that: "The amendment made by this Act [amending section 502 of act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, set out above] shall be effective only with respect to any contract entered into not later than two years after the date of enactment of this Act [July 7, 1960] under the provisions of section 502 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 [act June 29, 1936, ch. 858], with respect to (a) the construction of a vessel the keel of which was laid, or (b) the reconstruction or reconditioning of a vessel the shipyard contract for which was entered into after June 30, 1959, and the Federal Maritime Board may, with the consent of the parties thereto, modify any such contract entered into prior to the date of enactment of the first amendment to Public Law 86–607 (74 Stat. 362) [Sept. 13, 1961], to the extent authorized by the amendment made by this Act, as amended."]

[Pub. L. 86–518, §8(a), June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216, provided that: "The amendments made by this Act [amending sections 502, 503, 506, 507, 509, 605, and 611 of act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, set out above and below] shall apply only to vessels delivered by the shipbuilder on or after January 1, 1946, and with respect to such vessels shall become effective on January 1, 1960. With respect to vessels delivered by the shipbuilder before January 1, 1946, the provisions of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 [act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, see Tables for classification], existing immediately before the date of enactment of this Act [June 12, 1960] shall continue in effect."]

OPERATING-DIFFERENTIAL SUBSIDY

Act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, 49 Stat. 2001, as amended, was repealed by Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §313(a), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 58.

[SUBTITLE A—OPERATING-DIFFERENTIAL SUBSIDY PROGRAM]

Section 601, amended Pub. L. 87–45, §2, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 90; Pub. L. 91–469, §§14, 35(a), (h), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1023, 1035, 1036; Pub. L. 91–603, §4(c), (d), Dec. 31, 1970, 84 Stat. 1675; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(93), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161, related to subsidy authorized for operation of vessels in foreign trade or

in off-season cruises.

Section 602, amended June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §40(b), 52 Stat. 964; Pub. L. 87–45, §3, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 91–469, §35(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(94), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161, related to determination of necessity of subsidy to meet competition.

Section 603, amended Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §8, 53 Stat. 1185; Pub. L. 87–45, §4, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–243, Sept. 14, 1961, 75 Stat. 513; Pub. L. 91–469, §§15–17, 35(a), (i), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1023, 1024, 1035, 1036; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(94), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161, related to contracts for payment of subsidy.

Section 604, amended June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §21, 52 Stat. 959; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §9, 53 Stat. 1185; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(95), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162, related to authorization of additional subsidy.

Section 605, amended July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §15, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 86–3, §18(b)(2), Mar. 18, 1959, 73 Stat. 12; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 89–348, §1(9), Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1310; Pub. L. 91–469, §§18, 19, 26(b), 35(a), (j), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1025, 1026, 1034–1036; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(96), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162; Pub. L. 104–239, §3(a), Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3126, related to vessels excluded from subsidy.

Section 606, amended June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §22, 52 Stat. 960; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §16, 66 Stat. 764; May 10, 1956, ch. 247, §1, 70 Stat. 148; Pub. L. 86–624, §35(b), July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 421; Pub. L. 87–45, §5, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 91–469, §§20, 35(a), (k), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1026, 1035, 1036; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(96), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162, related to readjustments, change in service, withdrawal from service, payment of excess profits, wages, etc., and American materials.

Section 607 was classified to section 1177 of the former Appendix to this title and was primarily repealed and restated as chapter 535 of this title by Pub. L. 109–304, §§8(c), 19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1586, 1710. For disposition of sections of the former Appendix to this title, see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title.

Section 608, amended Pub. L. 97–31, §12(98), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162, related to sale or assignment of contract, consent of Secretary, purchaser subject to terms of contract, and rescinding contract on transfer without consent.

Section 609, amended June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §29, 52 Stat. 961; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(99), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162, related to withholding payment to defaulting contractor.

Section 610, amended Pub. L. 97–31, §12(99), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162, related to vessels eligible for subsidy.

Section 611, added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §30, 52 Stat. 961; and amended Pub. L. 85–791, §17, Aug. 28, 1958, 72 Stat. 947; Pub. L. 86–518, §4, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(100), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162, related to transfer of vessels to foreign registry on default of United States.

Section 612 was classified to section 1182 of the former Appendix to this title and was repealed by Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §307(7), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1925.

Section 613, added Pub. L. 87–45, §1, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 89; and amended Pub. L. 90–358, §§1, 2, June 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 248; Pub. L. 91–250, May 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 215; Pub. L. 92–323, June 30, 1972, 86 Stat. 389; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(102), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162, related to off-season cruises by passenger vessels.

Section 614, added Pub. L. 97–35, title XVI, §1603, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 751, related to suspension of operating differential subsidy contracts by operator recipients.

Section 615, added Pub. L. 97–35, title XVI, §1610, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 753, related to construction, reconstruction, or acquisition of vessels over five thousand deadweight tons in foreign shipyards and preconditions.

Section 616, added Pub. L. 104–239, §3(b), Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3127, related to wind-up of program.

Title VI of act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, which comprised this note, consisted of sections 601 to 611 and 613 to 616 which were classified to sections 1171 to 1181 and 1183 to 1185a, respectively, of the former Appendix to this title, prior to the enactment of Pub. L. 109–304 and elimination of that Appendix. For complete disposition of those sections, see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title.

CONTRACT PROVISIONS

Act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VIII, §§801, 802, 809, 49 Stat. 2011, 2015, as amended, was repealed or transferred by Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §313(a), (c)(1)(A), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 58.

Section 801, amended Pub. L. 97–31, §12(119), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 164, which related to provision for books and records, filing balance sheets, inspection and auditing by Secretary, and rescission of contract on failure to comply with provisions, was transferred to section 57522 of this title by Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §313(c)(1)(A), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 58.

Section 802, amended June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VIII, §802, 49 Stat. 2011; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §33, 52 Stat. 962; Aug. 7, 1939, ch. 555, §2, 53 Stat. 1254; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(120), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 164, related to purchase or requisition of vessels by United States and amount of payment, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §313(a), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 58.

Section 809, amended Pub. L. 91–469, §26(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1034; Pub. L. 94–10, §3, Mar. 23, 1975, 89 Stat. 16; Pub. L. 94–127, §4, Nov. 13, 1975, 89 Stat. 680; Pub. L. 96–470, title II, §201(a), Oct. 19, 1980, 94 Stat. 2241; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(121), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 164; Pub. L. 97–35, title XVI, §1604, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 751; Pub. L. 109–304, §§14(b), 19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1702, 1710, which consisted of subsecs. (a) and (b), related to requirement that contracts designed equitably for all ports, minimum allocation of funds, report to Congress, and preference to citizens of United States, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §313(a), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 58. Subsec. (b) of section 809 had already been repealed by Pub. L. 109–304, §19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1710.

ENROLLMENT IN SEALIFT READINESS PROGRAM

Act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §909, as added by Pub. L. 97–35, title XVI, §1605, Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 752, provided that: "No vessel may receive construction differential subsidy or operating differential subsidy if it is not offered for enrollment in a sealift readiness program approved by the Secretary of Defense."

§53102. Establishment of Maritime Security Fleet

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense, shall establish a fleet of active, commercially viable, militarily useful, privately owned vessels to meet national defense and other security requirements and maintain a United States presence in international commercial shipping. The Fleet shall consist of privately owned, United States-documented vessels for which there are in effect operating agreements under this chapter, and shall be known as the Maritime Security Fleet.

(b) VESSEL ELIGIBILITY.—A vessel is eligible to be included in the Fleet if—

(1) the vessel meets the requirements of paragraph (1), (2), (3), or (4) of subsection (c);

(2) the vessel is operated (or in the case of a vessel to be constructed, will be operated) in providing transportation in foreign commerce;

(3) the vessel is self-propelled and—

(A) is a tank vessel that is 10 years of age or less on the date the vessel is included in the Fleet; or

(B) is any other type of vessel that is 15 years of age or less on the date the vessel is included in the Fleet;

(4) the vessel—

(A) is suitable for use by the United States for national defense or military purposes in time of war or national emergency, as determined by the Secretary of Defense; and

(B) is commercially viable, as determined by the Secretary; and

(5) the vessel—

(A) is a United States-documented vessel; or

(B) is not a United States-documented vessel, but—

(i) the owner of the vessel has demonstrated an intent to have the vessel documented under chapter 121 of this title if it is included in the Fleet; and

(ii) at the time an operating agreement for the vessel is entered into under this chapter, the vessel is eligible for documentation under chapter 121 of this title.

(c) REQUIREMENTS REGARDING CITIZENSHIP OF OWNERS, CHARTERERS, AND OPERATORS.—

(1) VESSEL OWNED AND OPERATED BY SECTION 50501 CITIZENS.—A vessel meets the requirements of this paragraph if, during the period of an operating agreement under this chapter that applies to the vessel, the vessel will be owned and operated by one or more persons

that are citizens of the United States under section 50501 of this title.

(2) VESSEL OWNED BY SECTION 50501 CITIZEN OR UNITED STATES CITIZEN TRUST, AND CHARTERED TO DOCUMENTATION CITIZEN.—A vessel meets the requirements of this paragraph if—

(A) during the period of an operating agreement under this chapter that applies to the vessel, the vessel will be—

(i) owned by a person that is a citizen of the United States under section 50501 of this title or that is a United States citizen trust; and

(ii) demise chartered to a person—

(I) that is eligible to document the vessel under chapter 121 of this title;

(II) the chairman of the board of directors, chief executive officer, and a majority of the members of the board of directors of which are citizens of the United States under section 50501 of this title, and are appointed and subjected to removal only upon approval by the Secretary; and

(III) that certifies to the Secretary that there are no treaties, statutes, regulations, or other laws that would prohibit the contractor for the vessel from performing its obligations under an operating agreement under this chapter;

(B) in the case of a vessel that will be demise chartered to a person that is owned or controlled by another person that is not a citizen of the United States under section 50501 of this title, the other person enters into an agreement with the Secretary not to influence the operation of the vessel in a manner that will adversely affect the interests of the United States; and

(C) the Secretary and the Secretary of Defense notify the Committee on Armed Services and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives that they concur with the certification required under subparagraph (A)(ii)(III), and have reviewed and agree that there are no other legal, operational, or other impediments that would prohibit the contractor for the vessel from performing its obligations under an operating agreement under this chapter.

(3) VESSEL OWNED AND OPERATED BY DEFENSE CONTRACTOR.—A vessel meets the requirements of this paragraph if—

(A) during the period of an operating agreement under this chapter that applies to the vessel, the vessel will be owned and operated by a person that—

(i) is eligible to document a vessel under chapter 121 of this title;

(ii) operates or manages other United States-documented vessels for the Secretary of Defense, or charters other vessels to the Secretary of Defense;

(iii) has entered into a special security agreement for purposes of this paragraph with the Secretary of Defense;

(iv) makes the certification described in paragraph (2)(A)(ii)(III); and

(v) in the case of a vessel described in paragraph (2)(B), enters into an agreement referred to in that paragraph; and

(B) the Secretary and the Secretary of Defense notify the Committee on Armed Services and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives that they concur with the certification required under subparagraph (A)(iv), and have reviewed and agree that there are no other legal, operational, or other impediments that would prohibit the contractor for the vessel from performing its obligations under an operating agreement under this chapter.

(4) VESSEL OWNED BY DOCUMENTATION CITIZEN AND CHARTERED TO SECTION 50501 CITIZEN.—A vessel meets the requirements of this paragraph if, during the period of an operating agreement under this chapter that applies to the vessel, the vessel will be—

(A) owned by a person that is eligible to document a vessel under chapter 121 of this title;

and

(B) demise chartered to a person that is a citizen of the United States under section 50501 of this title.

(d) REQUEST BY SECRETARY OF DEFENSE.—The Secretary of Defense shall request the Secretary of Homeland Security to issue any waiver under section 501 of this title that is necessary for purposes of this chapter.

(e) VESSEL STANDARDS.—

(1) CERTIFICATE OF INSPECTION.—A vessel used to provide oceangoing transportation which the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating determines meets the criteria of subsection (b) of this section but which, on the date of enactment of the Maritime Security Act of 2003, is not documented under chapter 121 of this title, shall be eligible for a certificate of inspection if the Secretary determines that—

(A) the vessel is classed by and designed in accordance with the rules of the American Bureau of Shipping, or another classification society accepted by the Secretary;

(B) the vessel complies with applicable international agreements and associated guidelines, as determined by the country in which the vessel was documented immediately before becoming documented under chapter 121; and

(C) that country has not been identified by the Secretary as inadequately enforcing international vessel regulations as to that vessel.

(2) CONTINUED ELIGIBILITY FOR CERTIFICATE.—Paragraph (1) does not apply to a vessel after any date on which the vessel fails to comply with the applicable international agreements and associated guidelines referred to in paragraph (1)(B).

(3) RELIANCE ON CLASSIFICATION SOCIETY.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may rely on a certification from the American Bureau of Shipping or, subject to subparagraph (B), another classification society accepted by the Secretary to establish that a vessel is in compliance with the requirements of paragraphs (1) and (2).

(B) FOREIGN CLASSIFICATION SOCIETY.—The Secretary may accept certification from a foreign classification society under subparagraph (A) only—

(i) to the extent that the government of the foreign country in which the society is headquartered provides access on a reciprocal basis to the American Bureau of Shipping; and

(ii) if the foreign classification society has offices and maintains records in the United States.

(f) AUTHORITY TO WAIVE AGE RESTRICTION FOR ELIGIBILITY OF A VESSEL TO BE INCLUDED IN FLEET.—The Secretary of Defense, in conjunction with the Secretary of Transportation, may waive the application of an age restriction under subsection (b)(3) if the Secretaries jointly determine that the waiver—

(1) is in the national interest;

(2) is appropriate to allow the maintenance of the economic viability of the vessel and any associated operating network; and

(3) is necessary due to the lack of availability of other vessels and operators that comply with the requirements of this chapter.

(g) AUTHORITY TO EXTEND MAXIMUM SERVICE AGE FOR VESSEL.—The Secretary of Defense, in conjunction with the Secretary of Transportation, may, for a particular participating fleet vessel, treat the ages specified in section 53101(5)(A)(ii) and section 53106(c)(3) as increased by up to 5 years if the Secretaries jointly determine that it is in the national interest to do so.

(Added Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1805; amended Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(1), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1700; Pub. L. 112–239, div. C, title XXXV, §3508(b), Jan. 2, 2013, 126 Stat. 2223; Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(a), Dec. 23,

2016, 130 Stat. 2774.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of the Maritime Security Act of 2003, referred to in subsec. (e)(1), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 108–136, which was approved Nov. 24, 2003.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 114–328, §3502(a)(2), substituted "Authority To Waive Age Restriction for Eligibility of a Vessel To Be Included in Fleet" for "Waiver of Age Restriction" in heading.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 114–328, §3502(a)(1), added subsec. (g).

2013—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 112–239 amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) related to vessel eligibility, including provisions for certain roll-on/roll-off and LASH vessels.

2006—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(1)(A), (B), substituted "section 50501" for "section 2" in the headings of pars. (1), (2), and (4) and substituted "section 50501 of this title" for "section 2 of the Shipping Act, 1916 (46 U.S.C. App. 802)" in pars. (1), (2)(A)(i), (ii)(II), (B), and (4)(B).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(1)(C), substituted "section 501 of this title" for "the first section of Public Law 81–891 (64 Stat. 1120; 46 U.S.C. App. note prec. 3)".

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(1)(D), substituted "documented under chapter 121 of this title," for "a documented vessel (as that term is defined in section 12101 of this title)" in introductory provisions and "documented under chapter 121" for "a documented vessel (as defined in that section)" in subpar. (B).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

VESSEL STANDARDS

Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1137, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3988, as amended by Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3534(b)(2), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1818, provided that:

"(a) CERTIFICATE OF INSPECTION.—A vessel used to provide transportation service as a common carrier which the Secretary of Transportation determines meets the criteria of section 53102(b) of title 46, United States Code, but which on the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 19, 1996] is not a documented vessel (as that term is defined in section 2101 [now section 106] of title 46, United States Code), shall be eligible for a certificate of inspection if the Secretary determines that—

"(1) the vessel is classed by and designed in accordance with the rules of the American Bureau of Shipping or another classification society accepted by the Secretary;

"(2) the vessel complies with applicable international agreements and associated guidelines, as determined by the country in which the vessel was documented immediately before becoming a documented vessel (as defined in that section); and

"(3) that country has not been identified by the Secretary as inadequately enforcing international vessel regulations as to that vessel.

"(b) CONTINUED ELIGIBILITY FOR CERTIFICATE.—Subsection (a) does not apply to a vessel after any date on which the vessel fails to comply with the applicable international agreements and associated guidelines referred to in subsection (a)(2).

"(c) RELIANCE ON CLASSIFICATION SOCIETY.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may rely on a certification from the American Bureau of Shipping or, subject to paragraph (2), another classification society accepted by the Secretary to establish that a vessel is in compliance with the requirements of subsections (a) and (b).

"(2) FOREIGN CLASSIFICATION SOCIETY.—The Secretary may accept certification from a foreign classification society under paragraph (1) only—

"(A) to the extent that the government of the foreign country in which the society is headquartered provides access on a reciprocal basis to the American Bureau of Shipping; and

"(B) if the foreign classification society has offices and maintains records in the United States."

§53103. Award of operating agreements

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall require, as a condition of including any vessel in the

Fleet, that the person that is the owner or operator of the vessel for purposes of section 53102(c) enter into an operating agreement with the Secretary under this section.

(b) EXTENSION OF EXISTING OPERATING AGREEMENTS.—

(1) OFFER TO EXTEND.—Not later than 60 days after the date of enactment of this paragraph, the Secretary shall offer, to an existing contractor, to extend, through September 30, 2040, an operating agreement that is in existence on the date of enactment of this paragraph. The terms and conditions of the extended operating agreement shall include terms and conditions authorized under this chapter, as amended from time to time.

(2) TIME LIMIT.—An existing contractor shall have not later than 120 days after the date the Secretary offers to extend an operating agreement to agree to the extended operating agreement.

(3) SUBSEQUENT AWARD.—The Secretary may award an operating agreement to an applicant that is eligible to enter into an operating agreement for fiscal years 2016 through 2040 if the existing contractor does not agree to the extended operating agreement under paragraph (2).

(c) PROCEDURE FOR AWARDING NEW OPERATING AGREEMENTS.—The Secretary may enter into a new operating agreement with an applicant that meets the requirements of section 53102(c) (for vessels that meet the qualifications of section 53102(b)) on the basis of priority for vessel type established by military requirements of the Secretary of Defense. The Secretary shall allow an applicant at least 30 days to submit an application for a new operating agreement. After consideration of military requirements, priority shall be given to an applicant that is a United States citizen under section 50501 of this title. The Secretary may not approve an application without the consent of the Secretary of Defense. The Secretary shall enter into an operating agreement with the applicant or provide a written reason for denying the application.

(d) LIMITATION.—The Secretary may not award operating agreements under this chapter that require payments under section 53106 for a fiscal year for more than 60 vessels.

(Added Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1808; amended Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(2), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1700; Pub. L. 109–364, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(b)(1), Oct. 17, 2006, 120 Stat. 2515; Pub. L. 112–239, div. C, title XXXV, §3508(c), Jan. 2, 2013, 126 Stat. 2224; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(a), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1969; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(a), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2304.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of this paragraph, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), probably means the date of enactment of Pub. L. 112–239, which amended subsec. (b) generally and was approved Jan. 2, 2013.

AMENDMENTS

2024—Subsec. (b)(1), (3). Pub. L. 118–159 substituted "2040" for "2035".

2019—Subsec. (b)(1), (3). Pub. L. 116–92 substituted "2035" for "2025".

2013—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 112–239, §3508(c)(1), amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) related to procedure for applications.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 112–239, §3508(c)(2), amended subsec. (c) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (c) related to priority for awarding agreements.

2006—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(2)(A)–(C), substituted "section 50501 of this title" for "section 2 of the Shipping Act, 1916 (46 U.S.C. App. 802)" in subpars. (A)(iii) and (C)(i) and (ii), "applying subparagraph" for "applying subparagraphs" in subpar. (B), and "section 50501" for "section 2" in subpar. (C) heading.

Subsec. (c)(3)(B). Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(2)(D), substituted "agreements" for "agreement".

Subsec. (c)(4)(A). Pub. L. 109–364, §3502(b)(1)(A)–(D), redesignated cls. (i) and (ii) as cl. (i), subcls. (I) and (II), respectively, in subcl. (II) substituted "; or" for period at end, and added cl. (ii).

Subsec. (c)(4)(B). Pub. L. 109–364, §3502(b)(1)(E), inserted "with respect to which a binding contract is entered into under subparagraph (A)(i)" after "existing tank vessel".

Subsec. (c)(4)(C), (D). Pub. L. 109–364, §3502(b)(1)(F), added subpars. (C) and (D).

§53104. Effectiveness of operating agreements

(a) EFFECTIVENESS, GENERALLY.—The Secretary may enter into an operating agreement under this chapter for fiscal year 2006. Except as provided in subsection (b), the agreement shall be effective only for 1 fiscal year, but shall be renewable, subject to the availability of appropriations, for each subsequent fiscal year through the end of fiscal year 2040.

(b) VESSELS UNDER CHARTER TO UNITED STATES.—Unless an earlier date is requested by the applicant, the effective date for an operating agreement with respect to a vessel that is, on the date of entry into an operating agreement, on charter to the United States Government, other than a charter pursuant to an Emergency Preparedness Agreement under section 53107, shall be the expiration or termination date of the Government charter covering the vessel, or any earlier date the vessel is withdrawn from that charter.

(c) TERMINATION.—

(1) TERMINATION BY SECRETARY.—If the contractor with respect to an operating agreement materially fails to comply with the terms of the agreement—

(A) the Secretary shall notify the contractor and provide a reasonable opportunity to comply with the operating agreement;

(B) the Secretary shall terminate the operating agreement if the contractor fails to achieve such compliance; and

(C) upon such termination, any funds obligated by the agreement shall be available to the Secretary to carry out this chapter.

(2) EARLY TERMINATION BY CONTRACTOR, GENERALLY.—An operating agreement under this chapter shall terminate on a date specified by the contractor if the contractor notifies the Secretary, by not later than 60 days before the effective date of the termination, that the contractor intends to terminate the agreement.

(d) NONRENEWAL FOR LACK OF FUNDS.—If, by the first day of a fiscal year, sufficient funds have not been appropriated under the authority provided by this chapter for that fiscal year, then the Secretary shall notify the Committee on Armed Services and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives that operating agreements authorized under this chapter for which sufficient funds are not available will not be renewed for that fiscal year if sufficient funds are not appropriated by the 60th day of that fiscal year.

(e) RELEASE OF VESSELS FROM OBLIGATIONS.—If funds are not appropriated for payments under an operating agreement under this chapter for any fiscal year by the 60th day of that fiscal year, then—

(1) each vessel covered by the operating agreement is thereby released from any further obligation under the operating agreement;

(2) the owner or operator of the vessel may transfer and register such vessel under a foreign registry that is acceptable to the Secretary of Transportation and the Secretary of Defense, notwithstanding section 56101 of this title; and

(3) if chapter 563 of this title is applicable to such vessel after registration of the vessel under such a registry, then the vessel is available to be requisitioned by the Secretary of Transportation pursuant to chapter 563.

(Added Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1810; amended Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(3), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1701; Pub. L. 111–383, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(1), Jan. 7, 2011, 124 Stat. 4518; Pub. L. 112–239, div. C, title XXXV, §3508(d), Jan. 2, 2013, 126 Stat. 2224; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(b), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1969; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(b), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2304.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 118–159 substituted "2040" for "2035".

2019—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–92 substituted "2035" for "2025".

2013—Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 112–239, §3508(d)(1), struck out par. (3) which related to early termination by contractor, with available replacement.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 112–239, §3508(d)(2), struck out "an operating agreement under this chapter is terminated under subsection (c)(3), or if" after "If" in introductory provisions.

2011—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–383 substituted "2025" for "2015".

2006—Subsec. (c)(3)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(3)(A), substituted "section 50501 of this title" for "section 2 of the Shipping Act, 1916 (46 U.S.C. App. 802)" in subcls. (I) and (II).

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(3)(B), substituted "section 56101 of this title" for "section 9 of the Shipping Act, 1916 (46 U.S.C. App. 808)".

Subsec. (e)(3). Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(3)(C), substituted "chapter 563 of this title" and "chapter 563" for "section 902 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 U.S.C. App. 1242)" and "section 902 of such Act", respectively.

§53105. Obligations and rights under operating agreements

(a) OPERATION OF VESSEL.—An operating agreement under this chapter shall require that, during the period a vessel is operating under the agreement—

(1) the vessel—

(A) shall be operated exclusively in the foreign commerce or, except as provided in paragraph (2), in mixed foreign commerce and domestic trade allowed under a registry endorsement issued under section 12111 of this title; and

(B) shall not otherwise be operated in the coastwise trade;

(2) in the case of a vessel, other than a replacement vessel under subsection (f), first covered by an operating agreement after the date of the enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2018, the vessel shall not be operated in the transportation of cargo between points in the United States and its territories either directly or via a foreign port; and

(3) the vessel shall be documented under chapter 121 of this title.

(b) ANNUAL PAYMENTS BY SECRETARY.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—An operating agreement under this chapter shall require, subject to the availability of appropriations, that the Secretary make a payment each fiscal year to the contractor in accordance with section 53106.

(2) OPERATING AGREEMENT IS OBLIGATION OF UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT .—An operating agreement under this chapter constitutes a contractual obligation of the United States Government to pay the amounts provided for in the agreement to the extent of actual appropriations.

(c) DOCUMENTATION REQUIREMENT.—Each vessel covered by an operating agreement (including an agreement terminated under section 53104(c)(2)) shall remain documented under chapter 121 of this title, until the date the operating agreement would terminate according to its terms.

(d) NATIONAL SECURITY REQUIREMENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—A contractor with respect to an operating agreement (including an agreement terminated under section 53104(c)(2)) shall continue to be bound by the provisions of section 53107 until the date the operating agreement would terminate according to its terms.

(2) EMERGENCY PREPAREDNESS AGREEMENT.—All terms and conditions of an Emergency Preparedness Agreement entered into under section 53107 shall remain in effect until the date the operating agreement would terminate according to its terms, except that the terms of such Emergency Preparedness Agreement may be modified by the mutual consent of the contractor, the Secretary of Transportation, and the Secretary of Defense.

(e) TRANSFER OF OPERATING AGREEMENTS.—A contractor under an operating agreement may transfer the agreement (including all rights and obligations under the operating agreement) to any person that is eligible to enter into the operating agreement under this chapter if the Secretary and the Secretary of Defense determine that the transfer is in the best interests of the United States. A transaction shall not be considered a transfer of an operating agreement if the same legal entity with the same vessels remains the contracting party under the operating agreement.

(f) REPLACEMENT VESSELS.—A contractor may replace a vessel under an operating agreement with another vessel that is eligible to be included in the Fleet under section 53102(b), if the Secretary, in conjunction with the Secretary of Defense, approves the replacement of the vessel.

(Added Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1812; amended Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(4), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1701; Pub. L. 109–364, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(a), Oct. 17, 2006, 120 Stat. 2514; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3526(f), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 602; Pub. L. 112–239, div. C, title XXXV, §3508(e), Jan. 2, 2013, 126 Stat. 2225; Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3503(a), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1911.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2018, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 115–91, which was approved Dec. 12, 2017.

AMENDMENTS

2017—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 115–91, §3503(a)(1), inserted ", except as provided in paragraph (2)," after "in the foreign commerce or".

Subsec. (a)(2), (3). Pub. L. 115–91, §3503(a)(2)–(4), added par. (2) and redesignated former par. (2) as (3).

2013—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 112–239, §3508(e)(1), amended subsec. (e) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (e) related to transfer of operating agreements, with limitation based on citizenship of recipient.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 112–239, §3508(e)(2), amended subsec. (f) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "A contractor may replace a vessel under an operating agreement with another vessel that is eligible to be included in the Fleet under section 53102(b), if the Secretary, in conjunction with the Secretary of Defense, approves replacement of the vessel."

2008—Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 110–181 substituted "section 50501 of this title" for "section 2 of the Shipping Act, 1916 (46 U.S.C. App. 802),".

2006—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(4)(A), substituted "section 12111" for "section 12105".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 109–364 designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted heading and aligned margins in par. (1), and added par. (2).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(4)(B), substituted "approves" for "approve".

§53106. Payments

(a) ANNUAL PAYMENT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary, subject to the availability of appropriations and the other provisions of this section, shall pay to the contractor for an operating agreement, for each vessel that is covered by the operating agreement, an amount equal to—

(A) $5,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2018, 2019, and 2020;

(B) $8,233,463 for fiscal year 2021;

(C) $5,300,000 for each of fiscal years 2022, 2023,,[1] and 2024;

(D) $6,500,000 for each of fiscal years 2025 and 2026;

(E) $6,675,500 for each of fiscal years 2027 and 2028;

(F) $6,855,000 for each of fiscal years 2029and 2030;

(G) $7,040,000 for each of fiscal years 2031 and 2032;

(H) $7,230,000 for each of fiscal years 2033 and 2034;

(I) $7,426,000 for each of fiscal years 2035 and 2036;

(J) $7,626,000 for each of fiscal years 2037 and 2038; and
(K) $7,832,000 for each of fiscal years 2039 and 2040.

(2) TIMING.—The amount shall be paid in equal monthly installments at the end of each month. The amount shall not be reduced except as provided by this section or section 51307(b).

(b) CERTIFICATION REQUIRED FOR PAYMENT.—As a condition of receiving payment under this section for a fiscal year for a vessel, the contractor for the vessel shall certify, in accordance with regulations issued by the Secretary, that the vessel has been and will be operated in accordance with paragraph (1) and (2) of section 53105(a), as otherwise applicable with respect to such vessel, for at least 320 days in the fiscal year. Days during which the vessel is drydocked, surveyed, inspected, or repaired shall be considered days of operation for purposes of this subsection.

(c) GENERAL LIMITATIONS.—The Secretary of Transportation shall not make any payment under this chapter for a vessel with respect to any days for which the vessel is—

(1) under a charter to the United States Government, other than a charter pursuant to an Emergency Preparedness Agreement under section 53107;
(2) not operated or maintained in accordance with an operating agreement under this chapter; or
(3) more than—
(A) 25 years of age, except as provided in subparagraph (B); or
(B) 20 years of age, in the case of a tank vessel.

(d) REDUCTIONS IN PAYMENTS.—With respect to payments under this chapter for a vessel covered by an operating agreement, the Secretary—

(1) except as provided in paragraph (2), shall not reduce any payment for the operation of the vessel to carry military or other preference cargoes under section 55302(a), 55304, 55305, or 55314 of this title, section 2631 of title 10, or any other cargo preference law of the United States;
(2) shall not make any payment for any day that the vessel is engaged in transporting more than 7,500 tons of civilian bulk preference cargoes pursuant to section 55302(a), 55305, or 55314 of this title that is bulk cargo; and
(3) shall make a pro rata reduction in payment for each day less than 320 in a fiscal year that the vessel is not operated in accordance with paragraph (1) and (2) of section 53105(a), as otherwise applicable with respect to such vessel, with days during which the vessel is drydocked or undergoing survey, inspection, or repair considered to be days on which the vessel is operated.

(e) LIMITATION REGARDING NONCONTIGUOUS DOMESTIC TRADE.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—No contractor shall receive payments pursuant to this chapter during a period in which it participates in noncontiguous domestic trade.
(2) LIMITATION ON APPLICATION.—Paragraph (1) shall not apply to any person that is a citizen of the United States within the meaning of section 50501 of this title, applying the 75 percent ownership requirement of that section.
(3) PARTICIPATES IN A NONCONTIGUOUS DOMESTIC TRADE DEFINED.—In this subsection the term "participates in a noncontiguous domestic trade" means directly or indirectly owns, charters, or operates a vessel engaged in transportation of cargo between a point in the contiguous 48 States and a point in Alaska, Hawaii, or Puerto Rico, other than a point in Alaska north of the Arctic Circle.

(Added Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1813; amended Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(5), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1701; Pub. L. 109–364, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(c), Oct. 17, 2006, 120 Stat. 2516; Pub. L. 111–383, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(2), Jan. 7, 2011, 124 Stat. 4518; Pub. L. 112–239, div. C, title XXXV, §3508(f), Jan. 2, 2013, 126 Stat. 2225; Pub. L. 114–113, div. O, title I, §101(e)(1), Dec. 18, 2015, 129 Stat. 2988; Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(b), Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2775; Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3503(b), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1911; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(o), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2327; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(c), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1969; Pub. L.

116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3501(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4397; Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3517(b)(1), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3074; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(c), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2304.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Subsec. (a)(1)(C). Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(c)(1), substituted ", and 2024" for "2024, and 2025".

Subsec. (a)(1)(D). Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(c)(3), added subpar. (D). Former subpar. (D) redesignated (E).

Subsec. (a)(1)(E). Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(c)(4), substituted "$6,675,500" for "$5,800,000" and "2026, 2027," for "2027".

Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(c)(2), redesignated subpar. (D) as (E). Former subpar. (E) redesignated (F).

Subsec. (a)(1)(F). Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(c)(5), substituted "$6,855,000" for "$6,300,000" and "and 2030;" for ", 2030, and 2031; and".

Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(c)(2), redesignated subpar. (E) as (F). Former subpar. (F) redesignated (G).

Subsec. (a)(1)(G). Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(c)(6), substituted "$7,040,000" for "$6,800,000" and "2032;" for "2032, 2033, 2034, and 2035.", and inserted "2031 and" before "2032".

Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(c)(2), redesignated subpar. (F) as (G).

Subsec. (a)(1)(H) to (K). Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(c)(7), added subpars. (H) to (K).

2022—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 117–263 inserted "or section 51307(b)" after "this section".

2021—Subsec. (a)(1)(B). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "$8,233,463" for "$5,233,463".

2019—Subsec. (a)(1)(C) to (F). Pub. L. 116–92 substituted "$5,300,000 for each of fiscal years 2022, 2023, 2024, and 2025;" for "$3,700,000 for each of fiscal years 2022, 2023, 2024, and 2025." in subpar. (C) and added subpars. (D) to (F).

2018—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 115–232 redesignated subpars. (E) to (G) as (A) to (C), respectively, and struck out former subpars. (A) to (D) which set out payment amounts for fiscal years 2006 to 2017.

2017—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 115–91, §3503(b)(1), substituted "paragraph (1) and (2) of section 53105(a), as otherwise applicable with respect to such vessel," for "section 53105(a)(1)".

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 115–91, §3503(b)(2), substituted "paragraph (1) and (2) of section 53105(a), as otherwise applicable with respect to such vessel" for "section 53105(a)(1)".

2016—Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 114–328 substituted "; or" for "or (C);" at end of subpar. (A) and a period for "; or" at end of subpar. (B) and struck out subpar. (C) which read as follows: "30 years of age, in the case of a lighter aboard ship vessel."

2015—Subsec. (a)(1)(B). Pub. L. 114–113, §101(e)(1)(A), struck out comma before "for each".

Subsec. (a)(1)(C). Pub. L. 114–113, §101(e)(1)(B), substituted "and 2015;" for "2015, 2016, 2017, and 2018;".

Subsec. (a)(1)(D) to (G). Pub. L. 114–113, §101(e)(1)(C), (D), added subpars. (D) to (F), redesignated former subpar. (E) as (G), and struck out former subpar. (D) which read as follows: "$3,500,000 for each of fiscal years 2019, 2020, and 2021; and".

2013—Subsec. (a)(1)(B) to (E). Pub. L. 112–239, §3508(f)(1), added subpars. (C) to (E) and struck out former subpar. (C) which read as follows: "$3,100,000 for each of fiscal years 2012 though 2025."

Subsec. (c)(3)(C). Pub. L. 112–239, §3508(f)(2), substituted "a lighter aboard ship vessel." for "a LASH vessel."

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 112–239, §3508(f)(3), struck out subsec. (f). Text read as follows: "If the amount available for a fiscal year for making payments under operating agreements under this chapter is not sufficient to pay the full amount authorized under each agreement pursuant to this section for such fiscal year, the amount available shall be allocated among such agreements in a manner that gives priority to payments for vessels that are subject to agreements under section 3517 of the Maritime Security Act of 2003 (46 U.S.C. 53101 note)."

2011—Subsec. (a)(1)(C). Pub. L. 111–383 substituted "for each of fiscal years 2012 though 2025" for "for each fiscal years 2012, 2013, 2014, and 2015".

2006—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(5)(A), substituted "section 55302(a), 55304, 55305, or 55314 of this title, section 2631 of title 10" for "section 2631 of title 10, United States Code, the Act of March 26, 1934 (46 U.S.C. App. 1241–1), section 901(a), 901(b), or 901b of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 U.S.C. App. 1241(a), 1241(b), or 1241f)".

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(5)(B), substituted "section 55302(a), 55305, or 55314 of this title" for "section 901(a), 901(b), or 901b of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 U.S.C. App. 1241(a), 1241(b), or

1241f),".

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(5)(C), substituted "section 50501 of this title, applying the 75 percent ownership requirement of that section" for "section 2(c) of the Shipping Act, 1916 (46 U.S.C. App. 802(c))".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 109–364 added subsec. (f).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 3508(f)(2) of Pub. L. 112–239 effective Dec. 31, 2014, see section 3508(j)(2) of Pub. L. 112–239, set out as a note under section 53101 of this title.

[1] *So in original. Second comma probably should not appear.*

§53107. National security requirements

(a) EMERGENCY PREPAREDNESS AGREEMENT REQUIRED.—The Secretary shall establish an Emergency Preparedness Program under this section that is approved by the Secretary of Defense. Under the program, the Secretary, in conjunction with the Secretary of Defense, shall include in each operating agreement under this chapter a requirement that the contractor enter into an Emergency Preparedness Agreement under this section with the Secretary. The Secretary shall negotiate and enter into an Emergency Preparedness Agreement with each contractor as promptly as practicable after the contractor has entered into an operating agreement under this chapter.

(b) TERMS OF AGREEMENT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—An Emergency Preparedness Agreement under this section shall require that a contractor for a vessel covered by an operating agreement under this chapter shall make commercial transportation resources (including services) available, upon request by the Secretary of Defense during a time of war or national emergency, or whenever the Secretary of Defense determines that it is necessary for national security or contingency operation (as that term is defined in section 101 of title 10, United States Code).

(2) BASIC TERMS.—(A) The basic terms of the Emergency Preparedness Agreement shall be established (subject to subparagraph (B)) by the Secretary and the Secretary of Defense.

(B) In any Emergency Preparedness Agreement, the Secretary and a contractor may agree to additional or modifying terms appropriate to the contractor's circumstances if those terms have been approved by the Secretary of Defense.

(3) DEFENSE MEASURES AGAINST UNAUTHORIZED SEIZURES.—(A) The Emergency Preparedness Agreement for any operating agreement that first takes effect or is renewed after the date of enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2010 shall require that any vessel operating under the agreement in the carriage of cargo for the Department of Defense in an area that is designated by the Coast Guard as an area of high risk of piracy shall be equipped with, at a minimum, appropriate non-lethal defense measures to protect the vessel, crew, and cargo from unauthorized seizure at sea.

(B) The Secretary of Defense and the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall jointly prescribe the non-lethal defense measures that are required under this paragraph.

(c) PARTICIPATION AFTER EXPIRATION OF OPERATING AGREEMENT.—Except as provided by section 53105(d), the Secretary may not require, through an Emergency Preparedness Agreement or operating agreement, that a contractor continue to participate in an Emergency Preparedness Agreement after the operating agreement with the contractor has expired according to its terms or is otherwise no longer in effect. After expiration of an Emergency Preparedness Agreement, a contractor may volunteer to continue to participate in such an agreement.

(d) RESOURCES MADE AVAILABLE.—The commercial transportation resources to be made

available under an Emergency Preparedness Agreement shall include vessels or capacity in vessels, intermodal systems and equipment, terminal facilities, intermodal and management services, and other related services, or any agreed portion of such nonvessel resources for activation as the Secretary of Defense may determine to be necessary, seeking to minimize disruption of the contractor's service to commercial shippers.

(e) COMPENSATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall include in each Emergency Preparedness Agreement provisions approved by the Secretary of Defense under which the Secretary of Defense shall pay fair and reasonable compensation for all commercial transportation resources provided pursuant to this section.

(2) SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS.—Compensation under this subsection—

(A) shall not be less than the contractor's commercial market charges for like transportation resources;

(B) shall be fair and reasonable considering all circumstances;

(C) shall be provided from the time that a vessel or resource is required by the Secretary of Defense until the time that it is redelivered to the contractor and is available to reenter commercial service; and

(D) shall be in addition to and shall not in any way reflect amounts payable under section 53106.

(f) TEMPORARY REPLACEMENT VESSELS.—Notwithstanding section 55302(a), 55304, 55305, or 55314 of this title, section 2631 of title 10, or any other cargo preference law of the United States—

(1) a contractor may operate or employ in foreign commerce a foreign-flag vessel or foreign-flag vessel capacity as a temporary replacement for a United States-documented vessel or United States-documented vessel capacity that is activated by the Secretary of Defense under an Emergency Preparedness Agreement or under a primary Department of Defense-approved sealift readiness program; and

(2) such replacement vessel or vessel capacity shall be eligible during the replacement period to transport preference cargoes subject to sections 55302(a), 55304, 55305, and 55314 of this title and section 2631 of title 10 to the same extent as the eligibility of the vessel or vessel capacity replaced.

(g) REDELIVERY AND LIABILITY OF UNITED STATES FOR DAMAGES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—All commercial transportation resources activated under an Emergency Preparedness Agreement shall, upon termination of the period of activation, be redelivered to the contractor in the same good order and condition as when received, less ordinary wear and tear, or the Secretary of Defense shall fully compensate the contractor for any necessary repair or replacement.

(2) LIMITATION ON LIABILITY OF U.S.—Except as may be expressly agreed to in an Emergency Preparedness Agreement, or as otherwise provided by law, the Government shall not be liable for disruption of a contractor's commercial business or other consequential damages to a contractor arising from activation of commercial transportation resources under an Emergency Preparedness Agreement.

(Added Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1814; amended Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(6), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1701; Pub. L. 111–84, div. C, title XXXV, §3505, Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2720; Pub. L. 112–239, div. C, title XXXV, §3508(g), Jan. 2, 2013, 126 Stat. 2225.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2010, referred to in

subsec. (b)(3)(A), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 111–84, which was approved Oct. 28, 2009.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 112–239 amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "An Emergency Preparedness Agreement under this section shall require that upon a request by the Secretary of Defense during time of war or national emergency, or whenever determined by the Secretary of Defense to be necessary for national security or contingency operation (as that term is defined in section 101 of title 10, United States Code), a contractor for a vessel covered by an operating agreement under this chapter shall make available commercial transportation resources (including services)."

2009—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 111–84 added par. (3).

2006—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 109–304 substituted "section 55302(a), 55304, 55305, or 55314 of this title, section 2631 of title 10" for "section 2631 of title 10, United States Code, the Act of March 26, 1934 (46 U.S.C. App. 1241–1), section 901(a), 901(b), or 901b of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 U.S.C. App. 1241(a), 1241(b), or 1241f)" in introductory provisions and "sections 55302(a), 55304, 55305, and 55314 of this title and section 2631 of title 10" for "section 2631 of title 10, United States Code, the Act of March 26, 1934 (46 U.S.C. App. 1241–1), and sections 901(a), 901(b), and 901b of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 U.S.C. App. 1241(a), 1241(b), and 1241b)" in par. (2).

§53108. Regulatory relief

(a) OPERATION IN FOREIGN COMMERCE.—A contractor for a vessel included in an operating agreement under this chapter may operate the vessel in the foreign commerce of the United States without restriction.

(b) OTHER RESTRICTIONS.—The restrictions of section 55305(a) of this title concerning the building, rebuilding, or documentation of a vessel in a foreign country shall not apply to a vessel for any day the operator of that vessel is receiving payments for operation of that vessel under an operating agreement under this chapter.

(c) TELECOMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT.—The telecommunications and other electronic equipment on an existing vessel that is redocumented under the laws of the United States for operation under an operating agreement under this chapter shall be deemed to satisfy all Federal Communications Commission equipment certification requirements, if—

(1) such equipment complies with all applicable international agreements and associated guidelines as determined by the country in which the vessel was documented immediately before becoming documented under the laws of the United States;

(2) that country has not been identified by the Secretary as inadequately enforcing international regulations as to that vessel; and

(3) at the end of its useful life, such equipment will be replaced with equipment that meets Federal Communications Commission equipment certification standards.

(Added Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1816; amended Pub. L. 109–304, §13(a)(7), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1701.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 109–304 substituted "section 55305(a) of this title" for "section 901(b)(1) of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 U.S.C. App. 1241(b)(1))".

[§53109. Repealed. Pub. L. 112–239, div. C, title XXXV, §3508(h), Jan. 2, 2013, 126 Stat. 2225]

Section, Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1817, related to special rule regarding age of participating fleet vessel.

§53110. Regulations

The Secretary and the Secretary of Defense may each prescribe rules as necessary to carry out their respective responsibilities under this chapter.

(Added Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1817.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

INTERIM RULES

Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3533, Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1818, provided that: "The Secretary of Transportation and the Secretary of Defense may each prescribe interim rules necessary to carry out their respective responsibilities under this subtitle [subtitle C (§§3531–3537) of title XXXV of div. C of Pub. L. 108–136, enacting this chapter, amending former section 12102 of this title and sections 808 and 1162 of the former Appendix to this title, repealing sections 1187 to 1187e and 1222 of the former Appendix to this title, enacting provisions set out as a note under section 53101 of this title, and amending provisions set out as a note under section 1187 of the former Appendix to this title] and the amendments made by this subtitle. For this purpose, the Secretaries are excepted from compliance with the notice and comment requirements of section 553 of title 5, United States Code. All interim rules prescribed under the authority of this section that are not earlier superseded by final rules shall expire no later than 270 days after the effective date of this subtitle [see Effective Date note set out under section 53101 of this title]."

§53111. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated for payments under section 53106, to remain available until expended—

(1) $300,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2018, 2019, and 2020;
(2) $494,008,000 for fiscal year 2021;
(3) $318,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2022, 2023, and 2024;
(4) $390,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2025 and 2026;
(5) $400,500,000 for each of fiscal years 2027 and 2028;
(6) $411,300,000 for each of fiscal years 2029and 2030;
(7) $422,400,000 for each of fiscal years 2031 and 2032.
(8) $433,800,000 for each of fiscal years 2033 and 2034;
(9) $445,560,000 for each of fiscal years 2035 and 2036;
(10) $457,560,000 for each of fiscal years 2037 and 2038; and
(11) $469,920,000 for each of fiscal years 2039 and 2040.

(Added Pub. L. 108–136, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1817; amended Pub. L. 111–383, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(3), Jan. 7, 2011, 124 Stat. 4518; Pub. L. 112–239, div. C, title XXXV, §3508(i), Jan. 2, 2013, 126 Stat. 2225; Pub. L. 114–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3504(b), Nov. 25, 2015, 129 Stat. 1219; Pub. L. 114–113, div. O, title I, §101(e)(2), Dec. 18, 2015, 129 Stat. 2988; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(p), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2327; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(d), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1969; Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3501(c)(1), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4397; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(d), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2305.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Par. (3). Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(d)(1), substituted "and 2024" for "2024, and 2025".

Par. (4). Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(d)(3), added par. (4). Former par. (4) redesignated (5).

Par. (5). Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(d)(4), substituted "$400,500,000" for "$348,000,000" and "2027" for "2026, 2027,".

Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(d)(2), redesignated par. (4) as (5). Former par. (5) redesignated (6).

Par. (6). Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(d)(5), substituted "$411,300,000" for "$378,000,000" and "and 2030;" for

", 2030, and 2031; and".

Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(d)(2), redesignated par. (5) as (6). Former par. (6) redesignated (7).

Par. (7). Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(d)(6), substituted "$422,400,000" for "$408,000,000" and "2031 and 2032" for "2032, 2033, 2034, and 2035".

Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(d)(2), redesignated par. (6) as (7).

Pars. (8) to (11). Pub. L. 118–159, §3502(d)(7), added pars. (8) to (11).

2021—Par. (2). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "$494,008,000" for "$314,007,780".

2019—Pars. (3) to (6). Pub. L. 116–92 substituted "$318,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2022, 2023, 2024, and 2025;" for "$222,000,000 for each fiscal year thereafter through fiscal year 2025." in par. (3) and added pars. (4) to (6).

2018—Pub. L. 115–232 redesignated pars. (5) to (7) as (1) to (3), respectively, and struck out former pars. (1) to (4) which set out authorized amounts for fiscal years 2006 to 2017.

2015—Par. (3). Pub. L. 114–113, §101(e)(2)(A), substituted "and 2015" for "2015, 2017, and 2018;".

Pub. L. 114–92 struck out "2016," after "2015,".

Pars. (4) to (7). Pub. L. 114–113, §101(e)(2)(B), (C), added pars. (4) to (6), redesignated former par. (5) as (7), and struck out former par. (4) which read as follows: "$210,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2019, 2020, and 2021; and".

2013—Par. (2). Pub. L. 112–239, §3508(i)(1), struck out "and" at end.

Pars. (3) to (5). Pub. L. 112–239, §3508(i)(2), which directed amendment of par. (3) "to read as follows" and then set out pars. (3) to (5), was executed by amending par. (3) generally and adding pars. (4) and (5) to reflect the probable intent of Congress. Prior to amendment, par. (3) read as follows: "$186,000,000 for each fiscal year thereafter through fiscal year 2025."

2011—Par. (3). Pub. L. 111–383 substituted "2025" for "2015".

CHAPTER 532—CABLE SECURITY FLEET

Sec.

53201. Definitions.
53202. Establishment of the Cable Security Fleet.
53203. Award of operating agreements.
53204. Effectiveness of operating agreements.
53205. Obligations and rights under operating agreements.
53206. Payments.
53207. National security requirements.
53208. Regulatory relief.
53209. Authorization of appropriations.

§53201. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) CABLE SERVICES.—The term "cable services" means the installation, maintenance, or repair of submarine cables and related equipment, and related cable vessel operations.

(2) CABLE VESSEL.—The term "cable vessel" means a vessel—

(A) classed as a cable ship or cable vessel by, and designed in accordance with the rules of, the American Bureau of Shipping, or another classification society accepted by the Secretary; and

(B) capable of installing, maintaining, and repairing submarine cables.

(3) CABLE FLEET.—The term "Cable Fleet" means the Cable Security Fleet established under section 53202(a).

(4) CONTINGENCY AGREEMENT.—The term "Contingency Agreement" means the agreement required by section 53207.

(5) CONTRACTOR.—The term "Contractor" means an owner or operator of a vessel that enters into an Operating Agreement for a cable vessel with the Secretary under section 53203.

(6) FISCAL YEAR.—The term "fiscal year" means any annual period beginning on October 1 and ending on September 30.

(7) OPERATING AGENCY.—The term "Operating Agency" means that agency or component of the Department of Defense so designated by the Secretary of Defense under this chapter.

(8) OPERATING AGREEMENT OR AGREEMENT.—The terms "Operating Agreement" or "Agreement" mean the agreement required by section 53203.

(9) PERSON.—The term "person" includes corporations, partnerships, and associations existing under or authorized by the laws of the United States, or any State, Territory, District, or possession thereof, or of any foreign country.

(10) SECRETARY.—The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Transportation.

(11) UNITED STATES.—The term "United States" includes the States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Northern Mariana Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Virgin Islands.

(12) UNITED STATES CITIZEN TRUST.—

(A) Subject to paragraph (C), the term "United States citizen trust" means a trust that is qualified under this paragraph.

(B) A trust is qualified under this paragraph with respect to a vessel only if—

(i) it was created under the laws of a state of the United States;

(ii) each of the trustees is a citizen of the United States; and

(iii) the application for documentation of the vessel under chapter 121 of this title includes the affidavit of each trustee stating that the trustee is not aware of any reason involving a beneficiary of the trust that is not a citizen of the United States, or involving any other person that is not a citizen of the United States, as a result of which the beneficiary or other person would hold more than 25 percent of the aggregate power to influence, or limit the exercise of the authority of, the trustee with respect to matters involving any ownership or operation of the vessel that may adversely affect the interests of the United States.

(C) If any person that is not a citizen of the United States has authority to direct, or participate in directing, the trustee for a trust in matters involving any ownership or operation of the vessel that may adversely affect the interests of the United States or in removing a trustee for a trust without cause, either directly or indirectly through the control of another person, the trust is not qualified under this paragraph unless the trust instrument provides that persons who are not citizens of the United States may not hold more than 25 percent of the aggregate authority to direct or remove a trustee.

(D) This paragraph shall not be considered to prohibit a person who is not a citizen of the United States from holding more than 25 percent of the beneficial interest in a trust.

(Added Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(a), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1988.)

§53202. Establishment of the Cable Security Fleet

(a) IN GENERAL.—(1) The Secretary, in consultation with the Operating Agency, shall establish a fleet of active, commercially viable, cable vessels to meet national security requirements. The fleet shall consist of privately owned, United States-documented cable vessels for which there are in effect Operating Agreements under this chapter, and shall be known as the Cable Security Fleet.

(2) The Fleet described under this section shall include two vessels.

(b) VESSEL ELIGIBILITY.—A cable vessel is eligible to be included in the Fleet if—

(1) the vessel meets the requirements of paragraph (1), (2), (3), or (4) of subsection (c);

(2) the vessel is operated (or in the case of a vessel to be constructed, will be operated) in commercial service providing cable services;

(3) the vessel is 40 years of age or less on the date the vessel is included in the Fleet;

(4) the vessel is—

(A) determined by the Operating Agency to be suitable for engaging in cable services by the

United States in the interest of national security; and

(B) determined by the Secretary to be commercially viable, whether independently or taking any payments which are the consequence of participation in the Cable Fleet into account; and

(5) the vessel—

(A) is a United States-documented vessel; or

(B) is not a United States-documented vessel, but—

(i) the owner of the vessel has demonstrated an intent to have the vessel documented under chapter 121 of this title if it is included in the Cable Fleet; and

(ii) at the time an Operating Agreement is entered into under this chapter, the vessel is eligible for documentation under chapter 121 of this title.

(c) REQUIREMENTS REGARDING CITIZENSHIP OF OWNERS AND OPERATORS.—

(1) VESSELS OWNED AND OPERATED BY SECTION 50501 CITIZENS.—A vessel meets the requirements of this paragraph if, during the period of an Operating Agreement under this chapter that applies to the vessel, the vessel will be owned and operated by one or more persons that are citizens of the United states [1] under section 50501 of this title.

(2) VESSELS OWNED BY A SECTION 50501 CITIZEN, OR UNITED STATES CITIZEN TRUST, AND CHARTERED TO A DOCUMENTATION CITIZEN.—A vessel meets the requirements of this paragraph if—

(A) during the period of an Operating Agreement under this chapter that applies to the vessel, the vessel will be—

(i) owned by a person that is a citizen of the United States under section 50501 of this title or that is a United States citizen trust; and

(ii) demise chartered to and operated by a person—

(I) that is eligible to document the vessel under chapter 121 of this title;

(II) the chairman of the board of directors, chief executive officer, and a majority of the members of the board of directors of which are citizens of the United States under section 50501 of this title, and are appointed and subject to removal only upon approval by the Secretary; and

(III) that certifies to the Secretary that there are no treaties, statutes, regulations, or other laws that would prohibit the Contractor for the vessel from performing its obligations under an Operating Agreement under this chapter;

(B) in the case of a vessel that will be demise chartered to a person that is owned or controlled by another person that is not a citizen of the United States under section 50501 of this title, the other person enters into an agreement with the Secretary not to influence the operation of the vessel in a manner that will adversely affect the interests of the United States; and

(C) the Secretary and the Operating Agency notify the Committee on Armed Services and the Committee on Commerce, Science and Transportation of the Senate, and the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives that they concur, and have reviewed the certification required under subparagraph (A)(ii)(III) and determined that there are no legal, operational, or other impediments that would prohibit the Contractor for the vessel from performing its obligations under an Operating Agreement under this chapter.

(3) VESSEL OWNED AND OPERATED BY A DEFENSE CONTRACTOR.—A vessel meets the requirements of this paragraph if—

(A) during the period of an Operating Agreement under this chapter that applies to the vessel, the vessel will be owned and operated by a person that—

(i) is eligible to document a vessel under chapter 121 of this title;

(ii) operates or manages other United States-documented vessels for the Secretary of Defense, or charters other vessels to the Secretary of Defense;

(iii) has entered into a special security agreement for purposes of this paragraph with the

Secretary of Defense;

(iv) makes the certification described in paragraph (2)(A)(ii)(III); and

(v) in the case of a vessel described in paragraph (2)(B), enters into an agreement referred to in that paragraph; and

(B) the Secretary and the Secretary of Defense notify the Committee on Armed Services and Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives that they have reviewed the certification required by subparagraph (A)(iv) and determined that there are no other legal, operational, or other impediments that would prohibit the Contractor for the vessel from performing its obligations under an Operating Agreement under this chapter.

(4) VESSEL OWNED BY A DOCUMENTATION CITIZEN AND CHARTERED TO A SECTION 50501 CITIZEN.—A vessel meets the requirements of this paragraph if, during the period of an Operating Agreement under this chapter that applies to the vessel, the vessel will be—

(A) owned by a person that is eligible to document a vessel under chapter 121 of this title; and

(B) demise chartered to a person that is a citizen of the United States under section 50501 of this title.

(d) VESSEL STANDARDS.—

(1) CERTIFICATE OF INSPECTION.—A cable vessel which the Secretary of the Department in which the Coast Guard is operating determines meets the criteria of subsection (b) of this section but which, on the date of enactment of the Act, is not documented under chapter 121 of this title, shall be eligible for a certificate of inspection if that Secretary determines that—

(A) the vessel is classed by, and designed in accordance with the rules of, the American Bureau of Shipping, or another classification society accepted by that Secretary;

(B) the vessel complies with applicable international agreements and associated guidelines, as determined by the country in which the vessel was documented immediately before becoming documented under chapter 121; and

(C) that country has not been identified by that Secretary as inadequately enforcing international vessel regulations as to that vessel.

(2) CONTINUED ELIGIBILITY FOR CERTIFICATE.—Paragraph (1) does not apply to a vessel after any date on which the vessel fails to comply with the applicable international agreements and associated guidelines referred to in paragraph (1)(B).

(3) RELIANCE ON CLASSIFICATION SOCIETY.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of the Department in which the Coast Guard is operating may rely on a certification from the American Bureau of Shipping or, subject to subparagraph (B), another classification society accepted by that Secretary to establish that a vessel is in compliance with the requirements of paragraphs (1) and (2).

(B) FOREIGN CLASSIFICATION SOCIETY.—The Secretary of the Department in which the Coast Guard is operating may accept certification from a foreign classification society under subparagraph (A) only—

(i) to the extent that the government of the foreign country in which the society is headquartered provides access on a reciprocal basis to the American Bureau of Shipping; and

(ii) if the foreign classification society has offices and maintains records in the United States.

(e) WAIVER OF AGE REGISTRATION.—The Secretary, in conjunction with the Operating Agency, may waive the application of the age restriction under subsection (b)(3) if they jointly determine that the waiver—

(1) is in the national interest;

(2) the subject cable vessel and any associated operating network is and will continue to be economically viable; and

(3) is necessary due to the lack of availability of other vessels and operators that comply with the requirements of this chapter.

(Added Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(a), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1989.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of the Act, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), means the date of enactment of Pub. L. 116–92, which was approved Dec. 20, 2019.

[1] *So in original. Probably should be capitalized.*

§53203. Award of operating agreements

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall require, as a condition of including any vessel in the Cable Fleet, that the person that is the owner or operator of the vessel for purposes of section 53202(c) enter into an Operating Agreement with the Secretary under this section.

(b) PROCEDURE FOR APPLICATIONS.—

(1) ACCEPTANCE OF APPLICATIONS.—Beginning no later than 60 days after the effective date of this chapter, the Secretary shall accept applications for enrollment of vessels in the Cable Fleet.

(2) ACTION ON APPLICATIONS.—Within 120 days after receipt of an application for enrollment of a vessel in the Cable Fleet, the Secretary shall approve the application in conjunction with the Operating Agency, and shall enter into an Operating Agreement with the applicant, or provide in writing the reason for denial of that application.

(c) Priority for Awarding Agreements.—Subject to the availability of appropriations, the Secretary shall enter into Operating Agreements with those vessels determined by the Operating Agency, in its sole discretion, to best meet the national security requirements of the United States. After consideration of national security requirements, priority shall be given to an applicant that is a United States citizen under section 50501 of this title.

(Added Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(a), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1992.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The effective date of this chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), probably means the date of enactment of Pub. L. 116–92, which enacted this chapter and was approved Dec. 20, 2019.

§53204. Effectiveness of operating agreements

(a) EFFECTIVENESS GENERALLY.—The Secretary may enter into an Operating Agreement under this chapter for fiscal year 2021. Except as provided in subsection (d), the agreement shall be effective only for one fiscal year, but shall be renewable, subject to available appropriations, for each subsequent year.

(b) VESSELS UNDER CHARTER TO THE UNITED STATES.—Vessels under charter to the United States are eligible to receive payments pursuant to their Operating Agreements.

(c) TERMINATION.—

(1) TERMINATION BY THE SECRETARY.—If the Contractor with respect to an Operating Agreement materially fails to comply with the terms of the Agreement—

(A) the Secretary shall notify the Contractor and provide a reasonable opportunity for it to comply with the Operating Agreement;

(B) the Secretary shall terminate the Operating Agreement if the Contractor fails to achieve such compliance; and

(C) upon such termination, any funds obligated by the Agreement shall be available to the Secretary to carry out this chapter.

(2) EARLY TERMINATION BY A CONTRACTOR.—An Operating Agreement under this chapter shall terminate on a date specified by the Contractor if the Contractor notifies the Secretary, not fewer than 60 days prior to the effective date of the termination, that the Contractor intends to terminate the Agreement.

(d) NONRENEWAL FOR LACK OF FUNDS.—If, by the first day of a fiscal year, sufficient funds have not been appropriated under the authority provided by this chapter for that fiscal year for all Operating Agreements, then the Secretary shall notify the Committee on Armed Services and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives that Operating Agreements authorized under this chapter for which sufficient funds are not available will not be renewed for that fiscal year if sufficient funds are not appropriated by the 60th day of that fiscal year. If only partial funding is appropriated by the 60th day of such fiscal year, then the Secretary, in consultation with the Operating Agency, shall select the vessels to retain under Operating Agreements, based on their determinations of which vessels are most useful for national security. In the event that no funds are appropriated, then no Operating Agreements shall be renewed and each Contractor shall be released from its obligations under the Operating Agreement. Final payments under an Operating Agreement that is not renewed shall be made in accordance with section 53206. To the extent that sufficient funds are appropriated in a subsequent fiscal year, an Operating Agreement that has not been renewed pursuant to this subsection may be reinstated if mutually acceptable to the Secretary, in consultation with the Operating Agency, and the Contractor, provided the vessel remains eligible for participation pursuant to section 53202, without regard to subsection 53202 (b)(3).

(e) RELEASE OF VESSELS FROM OBLIGATIONS.—If funds are not appropriated for payments under an Operating Agreement under this chapter for any fiscal year by the 60th day of a fiscal year, and the Secretary, in consultation with the Operating Agency determines to not renew a Contractor's Operating Agreement for a vessel, then—

(1) each vessel covered by the Operating Agreement that is not renewed is thereby released from any further obligation under the Operating Agreement;

(2) the owner or operator of the vessel whose Operating Agreement was not renewed may transfer and register such vessel under a foreign registry that is acceptable to the Secretary and the Operating Agency, notwithstanding section 56101 of this title; and

(3) if chapter 563 of this title is applicable to such vessel after registration, then the vessel is available to be requisitioned by the Secretary pursuant to chapter 563.

(Added Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(a), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1993.)

§53205. Obligations and rights under operating agreements

(a) OPERATION OF VESSEL.—An Operating Agreement under this chapter shall require that, during the period the vessel is operating under the Agreement, the vessel—

(1) shall be operated in the trade for Cable Services, or under a charter to the United States; and

(2) shall be documented under chapter 121 of this title.

(b) ANNUAL PAYMENTS BY THE SECRETARY.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—An Operating Agreement under this chapter shall require, subject to the availability of appropriations, that the Secretary make payment to the Contractor in accordance with section 53206.

(2) OPERATING AGREEMENT IS AN OBLIGATION OF THE UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT.—An Operating Agreement under this chapter constitutes a contractual obligation of the United States Government to pay the amounts provided for in the Operating Agreement to the extent of actual appropriations.

(c) DOCUMENTATION REQUIREMENT.—Each vessel covered by an Operating Agreement (including an Agreement terminated under section 53204(c)(2)) shall remain documented under chapter 121 of this title, until the date the Operating Agreement would terminate according to its own terms.

(d) NATIONAL SECURITY REQUIREMENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—A Contractor with respect to an Operating Agreement (including an Agreement terminated under section 53204(c)(2)) shall continue to be bound by the provisions of section 53207 until the date the Operating Agreement would terminate according to its terms.

(2) CONTINGENCY AGREEMENT WITH OPERATING AGENCY.—All terms and conditions of a Contingency Agreement entered into under section 53207 shall remain in effect until a date the Operating Agreement would terminate according to its terms, except that the terms of such Contingency Agreement may be modified by the mutual consent of the Contractor, and the Operating Agency.

(e) TRANSFER OF OPERATING AGREEMENTS.—Operating Agreements shall not be transferrable by the Contractor.

(f) REPLACEMENT VESSEL.—A Contractor may replace a vessel under an Operating Agreement with another vessel that is eligible to be included in the Fleet under section 53202(b), if the Secretary and the Operating Agency jointly determine that the replacement vessel meets national security requirements and approve the replacement.

(Added Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(a), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1994.)

§53206. Payments

(a) ANNUAL PAYMENT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary, subject to availability of appropriations and other provisions of this section, shall pay to the Contractor for an operating agreement, for each vessel that is covered by the operating agreement, an amount equal to $5,000,000 for each fiscal year 2021 through 2035.

(2) TIMING.—This amount shall be paid in equal monthly installments at the end of each month. The amount shall not be reduced except as provided by this section or section 51307(b).

(b) CERTIFICATION REQUIRED FOR PAYMENT.—As a condition of receiving payment under this section for a fiscal year for a vessel, the Contractor for the vessel shall certify that the vessel has been and will be operated in accordance with section 53205(a)(1) for 365 days in each fiscal year. Up to thirty (30) days during which the vessel is drydocked, surveyed, inspected, or repaired shall be considered days of operation for purposes of this subsection.

(c) GENERAL LIMITATIONS.—The Secretary shall not make any payment under this chapter for a vessel with respect to any days for which the vessel is—

(1) not operated or maintained in accordance with an Operating Agreement under this chapter; or

(2) more than 40 years of age.

(d) REDUCTIONS IN PAYMENTS.—With respect to payments under this chapter for a vessel

covered by an Operating Agreement, the Secretary shall make a pro rata reduction for each day less than 365 in a fiscal year that the vessel is not operated in accordance with section 53205(a)(1), with days during which the vessel is drydocked or undergoing survey, inspection or repair to be considered days on which the vessel is operated as provided in subsection (b).

(Added Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(a), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1995; amended Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3517(b)(2), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3074.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 117–263 inserted "or section 51307(b)" after "this section".

§53207. National security requirements

(a) CONTINGENCY AGREEMENT REQUIRED.—The Secretary shall include in each Operating Agreement under this chapter a requirement that the Contractor enter into a Contingency Agreement with the Operating Agency. The Operating Agency shall negotiate and enter into a Contingency Agreement with each Contractor as promptly as practicable after the Contractor has entered into an Operating Agreement under this chapter.

(b) TERMS OF CONTINGENCY AGREEMENT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—A Contingency Agreement under this section shall require that a Contractor for a vessel covered by an Operating Agreement under this chapter make the vessel, including all necessary resources to engage in Cable Services required by the Operating Agency, available upon request by the Operating Agency.

(2) TERMS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The basic terms of a Contingency Agreement shall be established (subject to subparagraph (B)) by the Operating Agency.

(B) ADDITIONAL TERMS.—The Operating Agency and a Contractor may agree to additional or modifying terms appropriate to the Contractor's circumstances.

(c) DEFENSE MEASURES AGAINST UNAUTHORIZED SEIZURES.—(1) The Contingency Agreement shall require that any vessel operating under the direction of the Operating Agency operating in area that is designated by the Coast Guard as an area of high risk of piracy shall be equipped with, at a minimum, appropriate non-lethal defense measures to protect the vessel and crew from unauthorized seizure at sea.

(2) The Secretary of Defense and the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall jointly prescribe the non-lethal defense measures that are required under this paragraph.

(d) PARTICIPATION AFTER EXPIRATION OF OPERATING AGREEMENT.—Except as provided by section 53205(d), the Operating Agency may not require, through a Contingency Agreement or an Operating Agreement, that a Contractor continue to participate in a Contingency Agreement after the Operating Agreement with the Contractor has expired according to its terms or is otherwise no longer in effect.

(e) RESOURCES MADE AVAILABLE.—The resources to be made available in addition to the vessel under a Contingency Agreement shall include all equipment, personnel, supplies, management services, and other related services as the Operating Agency may determine to be necessary to provide the Cable Services required by the Operating Agency.

(f) COMPENSATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Operating Agency shall include in each Contingency Agreement provisions under which the Operating Agency shall pay fair and reasonable compensation for use of the vessel and all Cable Services provided pursuant to this section and the Contingency Agreement.

(2) SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS.—Compensation under this subsection—

(A) shall be at the rate specified in the Contingency Agreement;

(B) shall be provided from the time that a vessel is required by the Operating Agency under the Contingency Agreement until the time it is made available by the Operating Agency available to reenter commercial service; and

(C) shall be in addition to and shall not in any way reflect amounts payable under section 53206.

(g) LIABILITY OF THE UNITED STATES FOR DAMAGES.—

(1) LIMITATION ON THE LIABILITY OF THE U.S.—Except as otherwise provided by law, the Government shall not be liable for disruption of a Contractor's commercial business or other consequential damages to a Contractor arising from the activation of the Contingency Agreement.

(2) AFFIRMATIVE DEFENSE.—In any action in any Federal or State court for breach of third-party contract, there shall be available as an affirmative defense that the alleged breach of contract was caused predominantly by action taken to carry out a Contingent Agreement. Such defense shall not release the party asserting it from any obligation under applicable law to mitigate damages to the greatest extent possible.

(Added Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(a), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1995.)

§53208. Regulatory relief

The telecommunications and other electronic equipment on an existing vessel that is redocumented under the laws of the United States for operation under an Operating Agreement under this chapter shall be deemed to satisfy all Federal Communication Commission equipment certification requirements, if—

(1) such equipment complies with all applicable international agreements and associated guidelines as determined by the country in which the vessel was documented immediately before becoming documented under the laws of the United States;

(2) that country has not been identified by the Secretary of the Department in which the Coast Guard is operating as inadequately enforcing international regulations as to that vessel; and

(3) at the end of its useful life, such equipment shall be replaced with equipment that meets Federal Communication Commission equipment certification standards.

(Added Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(a), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1997.)

§53209. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated for payments under section 53206, $10,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2021 through 2035.

(Added Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(a), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1997.)

CHAPTER 533—CONSTRUCTION RESERVE FUNDS

Sec.

53301. Definitions.
53302. Authority for construction reserve funds.
53303. Persons eligible to establish funds.
53304. Vessel ownership.
53305. Eligible fund deposits.
53306. Recognition of gain for tax purposes.
53307. Basis for determining gain or loss and for depreciating new vessels.

53308. Order and proportions of deposits and withdrawals.
53309. Accumulation of deposits.
53310. Obligation of deposits and period for construction of certain vessels.
53311. Taxation of deposits on failure of conditions.
53312. Assessment and collection of deficiency tax.

§53301. Definitions

(a) IN GENERAL.—In this chapter:

(1) CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT.—The term "construction contract" includes, for a taxpayer constructing a new vessel in a shipyard owned by that taxpayer, an agreement between the taxpayer and the Secretary of Transportation for that construction containing provisions the Secretary considers advisable to carry out this chapter.

(2) NEW VESSEL.—The term "new vessel" means—

(A) a vessel—

(i) constructed in the United States after December 31, 1939, constructed with a construction-differential subsidy under title V of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, or constructed with financing or a financing guarantee under chapter 537 or 575 of this title;

(ii) documented or agreed with the Secretary to be documented under the laws of the United States; and

(iii)(I) of a type, size, and speed that the Secretary determines is suitable for use on the high seas or Great Lakes in carrying out this subtitle, but not less than 2,000 gross tons or less than 12 knots speed unless the Secretary certifies in each case that a vessel of lesser tonnage or speed is desirable for use by the United States Government in case of war or national emergency; or

(II) constructed to replace a vessel bought or requisitioned by the Government; and

(B) a vessel reconstructed or reconditioned for use only on the Great Lakes, including the Saint Lawrence River and Gulf, if the Secretary finds that the reconstruction or reconditioning will promote the objectives of this subtitle.

(b) ADDITIONAL TAX-RELATED TERMS.—Other terms used in this chapter have the same meaning as in chapter 1 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. ch. 1).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1587.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53301(a)(1)	46 App.:1161(n).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §511(n), as added Dec. 23, 1944, ch. 714, §2, 58 Stat. 920; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(92)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.
53301(a) (2)(A)	46 App.:1161(a).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §511(a), as added Oct. 10, 1940, ch. 849, 54 Stat. 1106; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(92)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.
53301(a) (2)(B)	46 App.:1161(*o*).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §511(*o*), as added July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §14,

		66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(92)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.
53301(b)	46 App.:1161(m).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §511(m), as added Oct. 10, 1940, ch. 849, 54 Stat. 1108.

In subsection (a)(2)(A)(i), the words "constructed with a construction-differential subsidy under title V of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, or constructed with financing or a financing guarantee under chapter 537 or 575 of this title" are substituted for "the construction of which has been financed under subchapters V or VII of this chapter, or the construction of which has been aided by a mortgage insured under subchapter XI of this chapter" because of the reorganization of the material and the omission from the revised title of the provisions relating to the construction-differential subsidy program.

Subsection (a)(2)(B) is substituted for the source provision to state more directly that a vessel described in the source provision is a new vessel for purposes of this chapter.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Merchant Marine Act, 1936, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(A)(i), is act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, 49 Stat. 1985. Title V of the Act enacted provisions set out as notes under section 53101 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1936 Amendment note set out under section 101 of this title and Tables.

§53302. Authority for construction reserve funds

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—An eligible person under section 53303 of this title may establish a construction reserve fund for the construction, reconstruction, reconditioning, or acquisition of a new vessel or for other purposes authorized by this chapter.

(b) APPLICATION OF CERTAIN LAWS AND REGULATIONS.—The fund shall be established, maintained, expended, and used as provided by this chapter and regulations prescribed jointly by the Secretary of Transportation and the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1587.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53302(a)	46 App.:1161(b) (1st sentence words before 6th comma and between 10th and 16th commas).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §511(b) (1st sentence words before 6th comma and between 10th and 16th commas, last sentence), as added Oct. 10, 1940, ch. 849, 54 Stat. 1106; June 17, 1943, ch. 130, subdiv. (a), 57 Stat. 157; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §9, 66 Stat. 762; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(92)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.
53302(b)	46 App.:1161(b) (last sentence).	

In subsection (a), the words "necessary to carrying out the policy set forth in section 1101 of this Appendix" are omitted as unnecessary.

§53303. Persons eligible to establish funds

A construction reserve fund may be established by a citizen of the United States that—

(1) is operating a vessel in the foreign or domestic commerce of the United States or in the fisheries;

(2) owns, in whole or in part, a vessel being operated in the foreign or domestic commerce of the United States or in the fisheries;

(3) was operating a vessel in the foreign or domestic commerce of the United States or in the fisheries when it was bought or requisitioned by the United States Government;

(4) owned, in whole or in part, a vessel being operated in the foreign or domestic commerce of the United States or in the fisheries when it was bought or requisitioned by the Government; or

(5) had acquired or was having constructed a vessel to operate in the foreign or domestic commerce of the United States or in the fisheries when it was bought or requisitioned by the Government.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1587.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53303	46 App.:1161(b) (1st sentence words between 6th and 10th commas).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §511(b) (1st sentence words between 6th and 10th commas), as added Oct. 10, 1940, ch. 849, 54 Stat. 1106; June 17, 1943, ch. 130, subdiv. (a), 57 Stat. 157; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §9, 66 Stat. 762.

§53304. Vessel ownership

In this chapter, a vessel is deemed to be constructed or acquired by a taxpayer if constructed or acquired by a corporation when the taxpayer owns at least 95 percent of each class of stock of the corporation.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1588.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53304	46 App.:1161(*l*).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §511(*l*), as added Oct. 10, 1940, ch. 849, 54 Stat. 1108.

§53305. Eligible fund deposits

A construction reserve fund may include deposits of—

(1) the proceeds from the sale of a vessel;

(2) indemnities for the loss of a vessel;

(3) earnings from the operation of a documented vessel and from services incident to the operation; and

(4) interest or other amounts accrued on deposits in the fund.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1588.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53305	46 App.:1161(b) (1st sentence words after 16th comma).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §511(b) (1st sentence words after 16th comma), as added Oct. 10, 1940, ch. 849, 54 Stat. 1106; June 17, 1943, ch. 130, subdiv. (a), 57 Stat. 157; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §9, 66 Stat. 762.

In paragraph (3), the words "documented vessel" are substituted for "vessels documented under the laws of the United States" because of the definition of "documented vessel" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

In paragraph (4), the words "interest or other amounts accrued on deposits in the fund" are substituted for "receipts, in the form of interest or otherwise, with respect to amounts previously deposited" for clarity and to eliminate unnecessary words.

§53306. Recognition of gain for tax purposes

(a) DEFINITIONS.—In this section, the terms "net proceeds" and "net indemnity" mean the sum of—

(1) the adjusted basis of the vessel; and

(2) the amount of gain the taxpayer would recognize without regard to this section.

(b) RECOGNITION OF GAIN.—In computing net income under the income or excess profits tax laws of the United States, a taxpayer does not recognize a gain on the sale or the actual or constructive total loss of a vessel if the taxpayer—

(1) deposits an amount equal to the net proceeds of the sale or the net indemnity for the loss in a construction reserve fund within 60 days after receiving the payment of proceeds or indemnity; and

(2) elects under this section not to recognize the gain.

(c) WHEN ELECTION MUST BE MADE.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in paragraph (2), the taxpayer must make the election referred to in subsection (b) in the taxpayer's income tax return for the taxable year in which the gain was realized.

(2) RECEIPT AFTER TAXABLE YEAR.—If the vessel is bought or requisitioned by the United States Government, or is lost, and the taxpayer receives payment for the vessel or indemnity for the loss from the Government after the end of the taxable year in which it was bought, requisitioned, or lost, the taxpayer must make the election referred to in subsection (b) within 60 days after receiving the payment or indemnity, on a form prescribed by the Secretary of the Treasury.

(d) EFFECT OF STATUTE OF LIMITATION.—If the taxpayer makes an election under subsection (c)(2), and computation or recomputation under this section is otherwise allowable but is prevented by a statute of limitation on the date the election is made or within 6 months thereafter, the computation or recomputation nevertheless shall be made notwithstanding the statute if the taxpayer files a claim for the computation or recomputation within 6 months after the date of making the election.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1588.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53306	46 App.:1161(c).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §511(c), as added Oct. 10, 1940, ch. 849, 54 Stat. 1106; June 17, 1943, ch. 130, subdiv. (b), 57 Stat. 157; Dec. 23, 1944, ch. 714, §1, 58 Stat. 920; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §10, 66 Stat. 762.

In subsection (c)(2), the words "in any taxable year beginning after December 31, 1939" are omitted as obsolete. The words "prescribed by the Secretary of the Treasury" are substituted for "prescribed by the Commissioner of Internal Revenue with the approval of the Secretary of the Treasury" for consistency in the revised title and with other titles of the United States Code. See 26 U.S.C. 7805.

§53307. Basis for determining gain or loss and for depreciating new vessels

Under the income or excess profits tax laws of the United States, the basis for determining a gain or loss and for depreciation of a new vessel constructed, reconstructed, reconditioned, or acquired by the taxpayer, or for which purchase-money indebtedness is liquidated as provided in section 53310 of this title, with amounts from a construction reserve fund, shall be reduced by that part of the deposits in the fund expended in the construction, reconstruction, reconditioning, acquisition, or liquidation of purchase-money indebtedness of the new vessel that represents a gain not recognized for tax purposes under section 53306 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1589.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53307	46 App.:1161(d).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §511(d), as added Oct. 10, 1940, ch. 849, 54 Stat. 1106; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §11, 66 Stat. 763.

§53308. Order and proportions of deposits and withdrawals

In this chapter—

(1) if the net proceeds of a sale or the net indemnity for a loss is deposited in more than one deposit, the amount consisting of the gain shall be deemed to be deposited first;

(2) amounts expended, obligated, or otherwise withdrawn shall be applied against the amounts deposited in the fund in the order of deposit; and

(3) if a deposit consists in part of a gain not recognized under section 53306 of this title, any expenditure, obligation, or withdrawal applied against that deposit shall be deemed to be a gain in the proportion that the part of the deposit consisting of a gain bears to the total amount of the deposit.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1589.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53308	46 App.:1161(e).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §511(e), as added Oct. 10, 1940, ch. 849, 54

		Stat. 1107.

§53309. Accumulation of deposits

For any taxable year, amounts on deposit in a construction reserve fund on the last day of the taxable year, for which the requirements of section 53310 of this title have been satisfied (to the extent they apply on the last day of the taxable year), are deemed to have been retained for the reasonable needs of the business within the meaning of section 537(a) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 537(a)).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1589.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53309	46 App.:1161(f).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §511(f), as added Oct. 10, 1940, ch. 849, 54 Stat. 1107.

The words "are deemed to have been retained for the reasonable needs of the business within the meaning of section 537(a) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 537(a))" are substituted for "shall not constitute an accumulation of earnings or profits within the meaning of section 102 of the Internal Revenue Code" because section 102 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939 has been superseded by part 1 of subchapter G of chapter 1 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 531 et seq.). See also 46 C.F.R. §287.16 (2003).

§53310. Obligation of deposits and period for construction of certain vessels

(a) APPLICATION OF SECTIONS 53306 AND 53309.—Sections 53306 and 53309 of this title apply to a deposit in a construction reserve fund only if, within 3 years after the date of the deposit (and any extension under subsection (c))—

(1)(A) a contract is made for the construction or acquisition of a new vessel or, with the approval of the Secretary of Transportation, for a part interest in a new vessel or for the reconstruction or reconditioning of a new vessel;

(B) the deposit is expended or obligated for expenditure under that contract;

(C) at least 12.5 percent of the construction or contract price of the vessel is paid or irrevocably committed for payment; and

(D) the plans and specifications for the vessel are approved by the Secretary to the extent the Secretary considers necessary; or

(2) the deposit is expended or obligated for expenditure for the liquidation of existing or subsequently incurred purchase-money indebtedness to a person not a parent company of, or a company affiliated or associated with, the mortgagor on a new vessel.

(b) ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CERTAIN VESSELS.—In addition to the requirements of subsection (a)(1), for a vessel not constructed under a construction-differential subsidy contract or not bought from the Secretary of Transportation—

(1) at least 5 percent of the construction (or, if the contract covers more than one vessel, at least 5 percent of the construction of the first vessel) must be completed within 6 months after the date of the construction contract (or within the period of an extension under subsection (c)), as estimated by the Secretary and certified by the Secretary to the Secretary of the Treasury; and

(2) construction under the contract must be completed with reasonable dispatch thereafter.

(c) EXTENSIONS.—The Secretary of Transportation may grant extensions of the period within

which the deposits must be expended or obligated or within which the construction must have progressed to the extent of 5 percent completion under this section. However, the extensions may not be for a total of more than 2 years for the expenditure or obligation of deposits or one year for the progress of construction.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1589.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53310(a)	46 App.:1161(g) (less (1)(B)).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §511(g), (h), as added Oct. 10, 1940, ch. 849, 54 Stat. 1107; June 17, 1943, ch. 130, subdivs. (c), (d), 57 Stat. 158; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§12, 13(a), 66 Stat. 763; Pub. L. 86–237, §1, Sept. 8, 1959, 73 Stat. 471; Pub. L. 87–303, §3, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 661; Pub. L. 87–782, §1, Oct. 10, 1962, 76 Stat. 796; Pub. L. 88–227, §1, Dec. 23, 1963, 77 Stat. 470; Pub. L. 88–595, §1, Sept. 12, 1964, 78 Stat. 943; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(92), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.
53310(b)	46 App.:1161(g)(1)(B).	
53310(c)	46 App.:1161(h).	

In this section, the language about joint regulations in 46 App. U.S.C. 1161(g) and (h) is omitted as unnecessary because of section 53302(b) of the revised title.

In subsection (a), the words "(i) two years from the date of deposit or the date of any extension thereof which may be granted by the Secretary of Transportation pursuant to the provisions of subsection (h) of this section, in the case of deposits made prior to the date on which these amendatory provisions become effective, or" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1161(g)(1) and (2) are omitted as obsolete. In paragraph (1)(A), the words "or, with the approval of the Secretary of Transportation, for a part interest in a new vessel or for the reconstruction or reconditioning of a new vessel" are substituted for "(or in the discretion of the Secretary of Transportation, for a part interest therein), or, with the approval of the Secretary of Transportation, for the reconstruction or reconditioning of a new vessel or vessels" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (c), the proviso in 46 App. U.S.C. 1161(h) is omitted as obsolete.

§53311. Taxation of deposits on failure of conditions

A deposited gain, if otherwise taxable income under the law applicable to the taxable year in which the gain was realized, shall be included in gross income for that taxable year, except for purposes of the declared value excess profits tax and the capital stock tax, if—

(1) the deposited gain is not expended or obligated within the appropriate period under section 53310 of this title;

(2) the deposited gain is withdrawn before the end of that period;

(3) the construction related to that deposited gain has not progressed to the extent of 5 percent of completion within the appropriate period under section 53310 of this title; or

(4) the Secretary of Transportation finds and certifies to the Secretary of the Treasury that, for causes within the control of the taxpayer, the entire construction related to that deposited gain is not completed with reasonable dispatch.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1590.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53311	46 App.:1161(i).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §511(i), as added Oct. 10, 1940, ch. 849, 54 Stat. 1107; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §13(b), 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(92)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.

The last sentence of 46 App. U.S.C. 1161(i) is omitted as obsolete.

§53312. Assessment and collection of deficiency tax

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, a deficiency in tax for a taxable year resulting from the inclusion of an amount in gross income as provided by section 53311 of this title, and the amount to be treated as a deficiency under section 53311 instead of as an adjustment for the declared value excess profits tax, may be assessed or a civil action may be brought to collect the deficiency without assessment, at any time. Interest on a deficiency or amount to be treated as a deficiency does not begin until the date the deposited gain or part of the deposited gain in question is required to be included in gross income under section 51111.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1590.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53312	46 App.:1161(j).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §511(j), as added Oct. 10, 1940, ch. 849, 54 Stat. 1108.

CHAPTER 534—TANKER SECURITY FLEET

Sec.[1]
53401. Definitions.
53402. Establishment of the Tanker Security Fleet.
53403. Award of operating agreements.
53404. Effectiveness of operating agreements.
53405. Obligations and rights under operating agreements.
53406. Payments.
53407. National security requirements.
53408. Regulatory relief.
53409. Special rule regarding age of participating Fleet vessels.
53410. Regulations.
53411. Authorization of appropriations.
53412. Acquisition of Fleet vessels.

[1] *Editorially supplied.*

§53401. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) FOREIGN COMMERCE.—The term "foreign commerce" means—

(A) commerce or trade between the United States, its territories or possessions, or the District of Columbia, and a foreign country; and

(B) commerce or trade between foreign countries.

(2) PARTICIPATING FLEET VESSEL.—The term "participating Fleet vessel" means any product tank vessel covered by an operating agreement under this chapter on or after January 1, 2022, that—

(A) meets the requirements of one of paragraphs (1) through (4) of section 53402(b) of this title; and

(B) is no more than 20 years of age.

(3) PERSON.—The term "person" includes corporations, partnerships, and associations existing under, or authorized by, laws of the United States, or any State, territory, district, or possession thereof, or any foreign country.

(4) PRODUCT TANK VESSEL.—The term "product tank vessel" means a double-hulled tank vessel capable of carrying simultaneously more than 2 separated grades of refined petroleum products.

(5) PROGRAM PARTICIPANT.—The term "program participant" means an owner or operator of a vessel that enters into an operating agreement covering a participating fleet vessel with the Secretary under section 53403.

(6) SECRETARY.—The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Transportation, unless the context indicates otherwise.

(7) UNITED STATES CITIZEN TRUST.—The term "United States citizen trust"—

(A) means a trust for which—

(i) each of the trustees is a citizen of the United States; and

(ii) the application for documentation of the vessel under chapter 121 of this title includes an affidavit of each trustee stating that the trustee is not aware of any reason involving a beneficiary of the trust that is not a citizen of the United States, or involving any other person who is not a citizen of the United States, as a result of which the beneficiary or other person would hold more than 25 percent of the aggregate power to influence or limit the exercise of the authority of the trustee with respect to matters involving any ownership or operation of the vessel that may adversely affect the interests of the United States;

(B) does not include a trust for which any person that is not a citizen of the United States has authority to direct, or participate in directing, a trustee for a trust in matters involving any ownership or operation of the vessel that may adversely affect the interests of the United States or in removing a trustee without cause, either directly or indirectly through the control of another person, unless the trust instrument provides that persons who are not citizens of the United States may not hold more than 25 percent of the aggregate authority to so direct or remove a trustee; and

(C) may include a trust for which a person who is not a citizen of the United States holds more than 25 percent of the beneficial interest in the trust.

(8) LONG TERM CHARTER.—The term "long term charter" means any time charter of a product tank vessel to the United States Government that, together with options, occurs for a continuous period of more than 180 days.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4408; amended Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3515(a), Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2243.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Par. (8). Pub. L. 117–81 added par. (8).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(d), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4419, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—This section [enacting this chapter and provisions set out as a note under section 53402 of this title] shall take effect on the date on which the Secretary of Defense—

"(A) has completed the report on United States flagged fuel tanker vessel capacity as required by section 3519 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2020 [Pub. L. 116–92, 133 Stat. 1987];

"(B) has submitted that report to the appropriate committees of Congress;

"(C) publishes certification—

"(i) that a program for United States-flagged fuel tanker vessels as prescribed in chapter 534 of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this section, for the purpose of providing additional United States-flagged fuel tanker vessels is in the national security interest of the United State; and

"(ii) of the number of such additional tankers covered under such a program that could be necessary to meet Department of Defense wartime requirements.

"(2) APPROPRIATE COMMITTEES OF CONGRESS DEFINED.—In this section the term 'appropriate committees of Congress' means—

"(A) the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the Committee on Armed Services of the Senate; and

"(B) the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives."

§53402. Establishment of the Tanker Security Fleet

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense, shall establish a fleet of active, commercially viable, militarily useful, privately owned product tank vessels to meet national defense and other security requirements and maintain a United States presence in international commercial shipping. The fleet shall consist of privately owned vessels of the United States for which there are in effect operating agreements under this chapter, and shall be known as the "Tanker Security Fleet" (hereafter in this chapter referred to as the "Fleet").

(b) VESSEL ELIGIBILITY.—A vessel is eligible to be included in the Fleet if the vessel—

(1) meets the requirements under paragraph (1), (2), (3), or (4) of subsection (c);

(2) is operated (or in the case of a vessel to be constructed, will be operated) in providing transportation in United States foreign commerce;

(3) is self-propelled;

(4) is not more than 10 years of age on the date the vessel is first included in the Fleet;

(5) is determined by the Secretary of Defense to be suitable for use by the United States for national defense or military purposes in time of war or national emergency;

(6) is commercially viable, as determined by the Secretary of Transportation; and

(7) is—

(A) a vessel of the United States; or

(B) not a vessel of the United States, but—

(i) the owner of the vessel has demonstrated an intent to have the vessel documented under chapter 121 of this title if it is included in the Fleet; and

(ii) at the time an operating agreement is entered into under this chapter, the vessel is eligible for documentation under chapter 121 of this title.

(c) REQUIREMENTS REGARDING CITIZENSHIP OF OWNERS, CHARTERERS, AND OPERATORS.—

(1) VESSELS OWNED AND OPERATED BY SECTION 50501 CITIZENS.—A vessel meets

the requirements of this paragraph if, during the period of an operating agreement under this chapter that applies to the vessel, the vessel will be owned and operated by one or more persons that are citizens of the United States under section 50501 of this title.

(2) VESSELS OWNED BY A SECTION 50501 CITIZEN, OR UNITED STATES CITIZEN TRUST, AND CHARTERED TO A DOCUMENTATION CITIZEN.—A vessel meets the requirements of this paragraph if—

(A) during the period of an operating agreement under this chapter that applies to the vessel, the vessel will be—

(i) owned by a person that is a citizen of the United States under section 50501 of this title or that is a United States citizen trust; and

(ii) demise chartered to a person—

(I) that is eligible to document the vessel under chapter 121 of this title;

(II) the chairman of the board of directors, chief executive officer, and a majority of the members of the board of directors of which are citizens of the United States under section 50501 of this title, and are appointed and subjected to removal only upon approval by the Secretary of Transportation; and

(III) that certifies to the Secretary of Transportation that there are no treaties, statutes, regulations, or other laws that would prohibit the program participant for the vessel from performing its obligations under an operating agreement under this chapter;

(B) in the case of a vessel that will be demise chartered to a person that is owned or controlled by another person that is not a citizen of the United States under section 50501 of this title, the other person enters into an agreement with the Secretary of Transportation not to influence the operation of the vessel in a manner that will adversely affect the interests of the United States; and

(C) the Secretary of Transportation and the Secretary of Defense notify the Committee on Armed Services and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Armed Services and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives that the Secretaries concur with the certification required under subparagraph (A)(ii)(III), and have reviewed and agree that there are no legal, operational, or other impediments that would prohibit the owner or operator for the vessel from performing its obligations under an operating agreement under this chapter.

(3) VESSELS OWNED AND OPERATED BY A DEFENSE CONTRACTOR.—A vessel meets the requirements of this paragraph if—

(A) during the period of an operating agreement under this chapter that applies to the vessel, the vessel will be owned and operated by a person that—

(i) is eligible to document a vessel under chapter 121 of this title;

(ii) operates or manages other vessels of the United States for the Secretary of Defense, or charters other vessels to the Secretary of Defense;

(iii) has entered into a special security agreement for the purpose of this paragraph with the Secretary of Defense;

(iv) makes the certification described in paragraph (2)(A)(ii)(III); and

(v) in the case of a vessel described in paragraph (2)(B), enters into an agreement referred to in that paragraph; and

(B) the Secretary of Transportation and the Secretary of Defense notify the Committee on Armed Services and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Armed Services and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives that they concur with the certification required under subparagraph (A)(iv), and have reviewed and agree that there are no legal, operational, or other impediments that would prohibit the program participant for the vessel from performing its obligations under an operating agreement under this chapter.

(4) VESSELS OWNED BY DOCUMENTATION CITIZENS AND CHARTERED TO SECTION 50501 CITIZENS.—A vessel meets the requirements of this paragraph if, during the period of an operating agreement under this chapter, the vessel will be—

(A) owned by a person who is eligible to document a vessel under chapter 121 of this title; and

(B) demise chartered to a person that is a citizen of the United States under section 50501 of this title.

(d) REQUEST BY SECRETARY OF DEFENSE.—The Secretary of Defense shall request that the Secretary of Homeland Security issue any waiver under section 501 of this title that the Secretary of Defense determines is necessary for purposes of this chapter.

(e) VESSEL STANDARDS.—

(1) CERTIFICATE OF INSPECTION.—A vessel used to provide oceangoing transportation the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating determines meets the criteria of subsection (b) but which, on the date of enactment of this section, is not documented under chapter 121, shall be eligible for a certificate of inspection if the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating determines that—

(A) the vessel is classed by and designed in accordance with the rules of the American Bureau of Shipping, or another classification society accepted by the Commandant of the Coast Guard;

(B) the vessel complies with applicable international agreements and associated guidelines, as determined by the country in which the vessel was documented immediately before becoming documented under chapter 121 of this title; and

(C) the country has not been identified by the Commandant of the Coast Guard as inadequately enforcing international vessel regulations as to that vessel.

(2) CONTINUED ELIGIBILITY FOR CERTIFICATE.—Subsection (a) shall not apply to any vessel that has failed to comply with the applicable international agreements and associated guidelines referred to in paragraph (1)(B).

(3) RELIANCE ON CLASSIFICATION SOCIETY.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Commandant of the Coast Guard may rely on a certification from the American Bureau of Shipping or, subject to subparagraph (B), another classification society accepted by the Commandant of the Coast Guard, to establish that a vessel is in compliance with the requirements of paragraph (1).

(B) FOREIGN CLASSIFICATION SOCIETY.—The Commandant of the Coast Guard may accept certification from a foreign classification society under subparagraph (A) only—

(i) to the extent that the government of the foreign country in which the society is headquartered provides access on a reciprocal basis to the American Bureau of Shipping; and

(ii) if the foreign classification society has offices and maintains records in the United States.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4409.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

DEADLINE FOR ACCEPTING APPLICATIONS

Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(c), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4419, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall begin accepting applications for enrollment of vessels in the Tanker Security Fleet established under chapter 534 of title 46, United States Code, as added by subsection (a), by not later than 60 days after the date of the enactment of this title [Jan. 1, 2021].

"(2) APPROVAL.—Not later than 90 days after receipt of an application for the enrollment of a vessel in the Tanker Security Fleet, the Secretary of Transportation, in coordination with the Secretary of Defense shall—

"(A) approve the application and enter into an operating agreement with the applicant; or

"(B) provide to the applicant a written explanation for the denial of the application.

"(3) VESSELS OPERATING IN MARITIME SECURITY FLEET.—Notwithstanding the requirements of section 53402(b) of title 46, United States Code, the Secretary of Transportation shall approve an application submitted under chapter 534 of title 46, United State Code, for a product tank vessel for which there is, on the date of enactment of this title, an effective operating agreement under chapter 531 of title 46, United States Code."

§53403. Award of operating agreements

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall require, as a condition of including any vessel in the Fleet, that the program participant of the vessel enter into an operating agreement with the Secretary under this section.

(b) PROCEDURE FOR APPLICATIONS.—

(1) ELIGIBLE VESSELS.—The Secretary of Transportation shall accept an application for an operating agreement for an eligible product tank vessel under the priority under paragraph (2) only from a person that has authority to enter into an operating agreement under this chapter.

(2) ESTABLISHMENT OF PRIORITY.—The Secretary of Transportation may enter into a new operating agreement with an applicant that meets the requirements of section 53402(c) for a vessel that meets the qualifications of section 53402(b), and shall give priority to applications based on—

(A) vessel capabilities, as established by the Secretary of Defense; then

(B) after consideration of vessel type, according to an applicant's record of owning and operating vessels; then

(C) after consideration of ownership and operation, according to such additional priorities as the Secretary of Transportation may consider appropriate.

(3) CONCURRENCE OF AWARD.—The Secretary of Transportation may not approve an application for an operating agreement without the concurrence of the Secretary of Defense.

(c) LIMITATION.—The Secretary of Transportation may not award operating agreements under this chapter that require payments under section 53406 of this title for more than—.[1]

(1) for each of fiscal years 2022 and 2023, 10 vessels; and

(2) for any subsequent fiscal year, 20 vessels.

(d) JUDICIAL REVIEW.—No court shall have jurisdiction to review the Secretary's decision with respect to the award or non-award of an operating agreement issued under this chapter.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4412; amended Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3501(b)(2), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3064.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 117–263 substituted "The Secretary" for "For any fiscal year, the Secretary" and "more than—" for "more than 10 vessels", designated existing provisions as introductory provisions, and added pars. (1) and (2).

[1] *So in original. The period probably should not appear.*

§53404. Effectiveness of operating agreements

(a) IN GENERAL.—Subject to the availability of appropriations for such purpose, the Secretary

may enter into an operating agreement under this chapter for fiscal year 2022 and any subsequent fiscal year. The agreement shall be effective only for 1 fiscal year, but shall be renewable, subject to the availability of appropriations, for each fiscal year through the end of fiscal year 2040.

(b) VESSELS UNDER CHARTER TO THE UNITED STATES.—Any vessel under long term charter to the United States is not eligible to participate in the Fleet.

(c) TERMINATION.—

(1) TERMINATION BY SECRETARY FOR LACK OF PROGRAM PARTICIPANT COMPLIANCE.—If the program participant with respect to an operating agreement materially fails to comply with the terms of the agreement—

(A) the Secretary shall notify the program participant and provide a reasonable opportunity to comply with the operating agreement; and

(B) the Secretary shall terminate the operating agreement if the program participant fails to achieve such compliance.

(2) TERMINATION BY PROGRAM PARTICIPANT.—If a program participant provides notice of the intent to terminate an operating agreement under this chapter on a date specified by not later than 60 days prior to the date specified by the program participant for such termination, such agreement shall terminate on the date specified by the program participant.

(d) NONRENEWAL FOR LACK OF FUNDS.—If, by the first day of a fiscal year, sufficient funds have not been appropriated under the authority provided by this chapter for that fiscal year, then the Secretary shall notify the Committee on Armed Services and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Armed Services and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives that operating agreements authorized under this chapter for which sufficient funds are not available will not be renewed for that fiscal year if sufficient funds are not appropriated by the 60th day of that fiscal year.

(e) RELEASE OF VESSELS FROM OBLIGATIONS.—If funds are not appropriated for payments under an operating agreement under this chapter for any fiscal year by the 60th day of that fiscal year, then—

(1) each vessel covered by the operating agreement is thereby released from any further obligation under the operating agreement;

(2) the program participant for the vessel may transfer and register such vessel under a foreign registry that is acceptable to the Secretary of Transportation and the Secretary of Defense, notwithstanding section 56101 of this title; and

(3) if chapter 563 of this title is applicable to the vessel after registration, then the vessel is available to be requisitioned by the Secretary pursuant to chapter 563 of this title.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4413; amended Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3515(b), Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2243; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2312.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 118–159 substituted "2040" for "2035".

2021—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 117–81 substituted "Any" for "The program participant of a", inserted "long term" before "charter" and "not" before "eligible", and substituted "participate in the Fleet" for "receive payments pursuant to any operating agreement that covers such vessel".

§53405. Obligations and rights under operating agreements

(a) OPERATION OF VESSEL.—An operating agreement under this chapter shall require that, during the period the vessel covered by the agreement is operating under the agreement the vessel shall—

(1) be operated in the United States foreign commerce, mixed United States foreign commerce and domestic trade allowed under a registry endorsement issued under section 12111 of this title, in foreign-to-foreign commerce, or under a charter to the United States;

(2) not be operated in the coastwise trade except as described in paragraph (1); and

(3) be documented under chapter 121 of this title.

(b) ANNUAL PAYMENTS BY THE SECRETARY.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—An operating agreement under this chapter shall require, subject to the availability of appropriations, that the Secretary make a payment to the program participant in accordance with section 53406.

(2) OPERATING AGREEMENT IS AN OBLIGATION OF THE UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT.—An operating agreement under this chapter constitutes a contractual obligation of the United States Government to pay the amounts provided for in the agreement to the extent of actual appropriations.

(c) DOCUMENTATION REQUIREMENT.—Each vessel covered by the operating agreement, including an agreement terminated under section 53404(c)(2), shall remain documented under chapter 121 of this title until the date the operating agreement would terminate according to its terms.

(d) NATIONAL SECURITY REQUIREMENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—A program participant with respect to an operating agreement, including an agreement terminated under section 53404(c)(2), shall continue to be bound by the provisions of section 53407 until the date the operating agreement would terminate according to its terms.

(2) EMERGENCY PREPAREDNESS AGREEMENT.—All terms and conditions of an Emergency Preparedness Agreement entered into under section 53407 shall remain in effect until the date the operating agreement would terminate according to its terms, except that the terms of such Emergency Preparedness Agreement may be modified by the mutual consent of the program participant, the Secretary of Transportation, and the Secretary of Defense.

(e) TRANSFER OF OPERATING AGREEMENTS.—A program participant may transfer an operating agreement (including all rights and obligations under the agreement) to any person that is eligible to enter into that operating agreement under this chapter, if the Secretary of Transportation and the Secretary of Defense determine that the transfer is in the best interests of the United States.

(f) REPLACEMENT OF VESSELS COVERED BY AGREEMENTS.—A program participant may replace the vessel with another vessel that is eligible to be included in the Fleet under section 53402(b), if the Secretary of Transportation, in coordination with the Secretary of Defense, approves the replacement of the vessel. No court shall have jurisdiction to review a decision by the Secretary of Transportation or the Secretary of Defense pertaining to the replacement of a vessel under this section.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4414.)

§53406. Payments

(a) ANNUAL PAYMENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Subject to the availability of appropriations and the other provisions of this section, the Secretary shall pay to a program participant for an operating agreement under this chapter, for each vessel that is covered by the operating agreement, an amount equal to—

(A) $8,160,000 for each of fiscal years 2025 and 2026;

(B) $8,380,000 for each of fiscal years 2027 and 2028;

(C) $8,606,000 for each of fiscal years 2029 and 2030;

(D) $8,839,000 for each of fiscal years 2031 and 2032;

(E) $9,078,000 for each of fiscal years 2033 and 2034;

(F) $9,323,000 for each of fiscal years 2035 and 2036;

(G) $9,574,000 for each of fiscal years 2037 and 2038; and
(H) $9,833,000 for each of fiscal years 2039 and 2040.

(2) TIMING.—The amount payable to a program participant under paragraph (1) for a fiscal year shall be paid in 12 equal monthly installments at the end of each month during that fiscal year. The amount payable for any fiscal year may not be reduced except as provided by this section or section 51307(b).

(b) CERTIFICATION REQUIRED FOR PAYMENT.—As a condition of receiving payment under this section for a fiscal year for a vessel, the program participant shall certify, in accordance with regulations issued by the Secretary, that the vessel has been and will be operated in accordance with section 53405(a) of this title for at least 320 days during the fiscal year. Days during which the vessel is drydocked, surveyed, inspected, or repaired shall be considered days of operation for purposes of this subsection.

(c) GENERAL LIMITATIONS.—The Secretary may not make any payment under this chapter for a vessel with respect to any days for which the vessel is—

(1) not operated or maintained in accordance with an operating agreement under this chapter;
(2) more than 20 years of age; or
(3) simultaneously operating under an agreement pursuant to chapter 531 of this title.

(d) REDUCTIONS IN PAYMENTS.—With respect to payments under this chapter for a vessel covered by an operating agreement, the Secretary—

(1) except as provided in paragraph (2), may not reduce such a payment for—
(A) the operation of the vessel to carry military or other preference cargoes under section 55302(a), 55304, 55305, or 55314 of this title, section 2631 of title 10, or any other cargo preference law of the United States; or
(B) any days in which the vessel is operated under charter to the United States Government;

(2) may not make such a payment for any day that the vessel is engaged in transporting more than 7,500 tons of civilian bulk preference cargoes pursuant to section 55302(a), 55305, or 55314 of this title; and
(3) shall make a pro rata reduction for each day less than 320 in a fiscal year that the vessel is not operated in accordance with section 53405 of this title.

(e) LIMITATIONS REGARDING NONCONTIGUOUS DOMESTIC TRADE.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—No program participant shall receive payments pursuant to this chapter during a period in which it participates in noncontiguous domestic trade.
(2) LIMITATION ON APPLICATION.—Paragraph (1) shall not apply to a program participant that is a citizen of the United States within the meaning of section 50501 of this title, applying the 75 percent ownership requirement of that section.
(3) PARTICIPATES IN A NONCONTIGUOUS TRADE DEFINED.—In this subsection the term "participates in a noncontiguous domestic trade" means directly or indirectly owns, charters, or operates a vessel engaged in transportation of cargo between a point in the contiguous 48 States and a point in Alaska, Hawaii, or Puerto Rico, other than a point in Alaska north of the Arctic Circle.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4415; amended Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3517(b)(3), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3074; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(b), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2312.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 118–159 amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as

follows: "Subject to the availability of appropriations for such purpose and the other provisions of this chapter, the Secretary shall pay to program participant for an operating agreement under this chapter an amount equal to $6,000,000 for each vessel covered by the agreement for each fiscal year that the vessel is covered by the agreement. Such amount shall be paid in equal monthly installments on the last day of each month. The amount payable under this subsection may not be reduced except as provided by this section or section 51307(b)."

2022—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 117–263 inserted "or section 51307(b)" after "this section".

§53407. National security requirements

(a) EMERGENCY PREPAREDNESS AGREEMENT REQUIRED.—The Secretary of Transportation, in coordination with the Secretary of Defense, shall establish an emergency preparedness program under this section under which the program participant for an operating agreement under this chapter shall agree, as a condition of the operating agreement, to enter into an emergency preparedness agreement with the Secretary. The Secretary shall negotiate and enter into an Emergency Preparedness Agreement with each program participant as promptly as practicable after the program participant has entered into the operating agreement.

(b) TERMS OF AGREEMENT.—The terms of an agreement under this section—

(1) shall provide that upon request by the Secretary of Defense during time of war or national emergency, or whenever determined by the Secretary of Defense to be necessary for national security or contingency operation (as that term is defined in section 101 of title 10), the program participant shall make available commercial transportation resources (including services) described in subsection (d) to the Secretary of Defense;

(2) shall include such additional terms as may be established by the Secretary of Transportation and the Secretary of Defense; and

(3) shall allow for the modification or addition of terms upon agreement by the Secretary of Transportation and the program participant and the approval by the Secretary of Defense.

(c) PARTICIPATION AFTER EXPIRATION OF OPERATING AGREEMENT.—Except as provided by section 53406, the Secretary of Transportation may not require, through an emergency preparedness agreement or an operating agreement, that a program participant covered by an operating agreement continue to participate in an emergency preparedness agreement after the operating agreement has expired according to its terms or is otherwise no longer in effect. After the expiration of an emergency preparedness agreement, a program participant may voluntarily continue to participate in the agreement.

(d) RESOURCES MADE AVAILABLE.—The commercial transportation resources to be made available under an emergency preparedness agreement shall include vessels or capacity in vessels, terminal facilities, management services, and other related services, or any agreed portion of such nonvessel resources for activation as the Secretary of Defense may determine to be necessary, seeking to minimize disruption of the program participant's service to commercial customers.

(e) COMPENSATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall include in each Emergency Preparedness Agreement provisions approved by the Secretary of Defense under which the Secretary of Defense shall pay fair and reasonable compensation for all commercial transportation resources provided pursuant to this section.

(2) SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS.—Compensation under this subsection—

(A) shall not be less than the program participant's commercial market charges for like transportation resources;

(B) shall be fair and reasonable considering all circumstances;

(C) shall be provided from the time that a vessel or resource is required by the Secretary of Defense until the time it is redelivered to the program participant and is available to reenter commercial service; and

(D) shall be in addition to and shall not in any way reflect amounts payable under section

53406 of this title.

(f) TEMPORARY REPLACEMENT VESSELS.—Notwithstanding section 55302(a), 55304, 55305, or 55314 of this title, section 2631 of title 10, or any other cargo preference law of the United States—

(1) a program participant may operate or employ in foreign commerce a foreign-flag vessel or foreign-flag vessel capacity as a temporary replacement for a vessel of the United States or vessel of the United States capacity that is activated by the Secretary of Defense under an emergency preparedness agreement or a primary Department of Defense sealift-approved readiness program; and

(2) such replacement vessel or vessel capacity shall be eligible during the replacement period to transport preference cargoes subject to sections 55302(a), 55304, 55305, and 55314 of this title and section 2631 of title 10, United States Code, to the same extent as the eligibility of the vessel or vessel capacity replaced.

(g) REDELIVERY AND LIABILITY OF THE UNITED STATES FOR DAMAGES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—All commercial transportation resources activated under an emergency preparedness agreement shall, upon termination of the period of activation, be redelivered to the program participant in the same good order and condition as when received, less ordinary wear and tear, or the Secretary of Defense shall fully compensate the program participant for any necessary repair or replacement.

(2) LIMITATION ON UNITED STATES LIABILITY.—Except as may be expressly agreed in an emergency preparedness agreement, or as otherwise provided by law, the Government shall not be liable for disruption of a program participant's commercial business or other consequential damages to the program participant arising from the activation of commercial transportation resources under an emergency preparedness agreement.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4416.)

§53408. Regulatory relief

(a) OPERATION IN FOREIGN COMMERCE.—A program participant for a vessel included in an operating agreement under this chapter may operate the vessel in the foreign commerce of the United States without restriction.

(b) OTHER RESTRICTIONS.—The restrictions of section 55305(a) of this title concerning the building, rebuilding, or documentation of a vessel in a foreign country shall not apply to a vessel for any day the operator of the vessel is receiving payments for the operation of that vessel under an operating agreement under this chapter.

(c) TELECOMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT.—The telecommunications and other electronic equipment on an existing vessel that is redocumented under the laws of the United States for operation under an operating agreement under this chapter shall be deemed to satisfy all Federal Communications Commission equipment approval requirements, if—

(1) such equipment complies with all applicable international agreements and associated guidelines as determined by the country in which the vessel was documented immediately before becoming documented under the laws of the United States;

(2) that country has not been identified by the Secretary as inadequately enforcing international regulations as to that vessel; and

(3) at the end of its useful life, such equipment shall be replaced with equipment that meets Federal Communications Commission equipment approval standards.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4417.)

§53409. Special rule regarding age of participating Fleet vessels

Any age restriction under section 53402(b)(4) of this title shall not apply to a participating Fleet vessel during the 30-month period beginning on the date the vessel begins operating under an operating agreement under this chapter, if the Secretary determines that the program participant for the vessel has entered into an arrangement to obtain and operate under the operating agreement for the participating Fleet vessel a replacement vessel that, upon commencement of such operation, will be eligible to be included in the Fleet under section 53402(b) of this title.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4418.)

§53410. Regulations

The Secretary of Transportation and the Secretary of Defense may each prescribe rules as necessary to carry out their respective responsibilities under this chapter.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4418.)

§53411. Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated for payments under section 53406, amounts as follows, to remain available until expended:

(1) $122,400,000 for each of fiscal years 2025 and 2026.
(2) $167,600,000 for each of fiscal years 2027 and 2028.
(3) $172,120,000 for each of fiscal years 2029 and 2030.
(4) $176,780,000 for each of fiscal years 2031 and 2032.
(5) $181,560,000 for each of fiscal years 2033 and 2034.
(6) $186,460,000 for each of fiscal years 2035 and 2036.
(7) $191,480,000 for each of fiscal years 2037 and 2038.
(8) $196,660,000 for each of fiscal years 2039 and 2040.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4418; amended Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3501(b)(1), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3064; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(c), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2312.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Pub. L. 118–159 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "There is authorized to be appropriated for payments under section 53406, $60,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2022 and 2023, and $120,000,000 for fiscal years 2024 through 2035, to remain available until expended."

2022—Pub. L. 117–263 substituted "and 2023, and $120,000,000 for fiscal years 2024 through 2035" for "through 2035".

§53412. Acquisition of Fleet vessels

(a) IN GENERAL.—Upon replacement of a Fleet vessel under an operating agreement under this chapter, and subject to agreement by the program participant of the vessel, the Secretary of Transportation is authorized, subject to the concurrence of the Secretary of Defense, acquire the vessel being replaced for inclusion in the National Defense Reserve Fleet.

(b) REQUIREMENTS.—To be eligible for acquisition by the Secretary of Transportation under this section a vessel shall—

(1) have been covered by an operating agreement under this chapter for not less than 3 years; and

(2) meet recapitalization requirements for the Ready Reserve Force.

(c) FAIR MARKET VALUE.—A fair market value shall be established by the Maritime Administration for acquisition of an eligible vessel under this section.

(d) APPROPRIATIONS.—Vessel acquisitions under this section shall be subject to the availability of appropriations. Amounts made available to carry out this section shall be derived from amounts authorized to be appropriated for the National Defense Reserve Fleet. Amounts authorized to be appropriated to carry out the Maritime Security Program may not be use to carry out this section.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4418.)

CHAPTER 535—CAPITAL CONSTRUCTION FUNDS

Sec.

53501. Definitions.
53502. Regulations.
53503. Establishing a capital construction fund.
53504. Deposits and withdrawals.
53505. Ceiling on deposits.
53506. Investment and fiduciary requirements.
53507. Nontaxation of deposits.
53508. Separate accounts within a fund.
53509. Qualified withdrawals.
53510. Tax treatment of qualified withdrawals and basis of property.
53511. Tax treatment of nonqualified withdrawals.
53512. FIFO and LIFO withdrawals.
53513. Corporate reorganizations and partnership changes.
53514. Relationship of old fund to new fund.
53515. Records and reports.
53516. Termination of agreement after change in regulations.
53517. Reports.

§53501. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) AGREEMENT VESSEL.—The term "agreement vessel" means—

(A) an eligible vessel or a qualified vessel that is subject to an agreement under this chapter; and

(B) a barge or container that is part of the complement of a vessel described in subparagraph (A) if provided for in the agreement.

(2) ELIGIBLE VESSEL.—The term "eligible vessel" means—

(A) a vessel—

(i) constructed in the United States (and, if reconstructed, reconstructed in the United States), constructed outside the United States but documented under the laws of the United States on April 15, 1970, or constructed outside the United States for use in the United States foreign trade pursuant to a contract made before April 15, 1970;

(ii) documented under the laws of the United States; and

(iii) operated in the foreign or domestic trade of the United States or in the fisheries of the United States; and

(B) a commercial fishing vessel—

(i) constructed in the United States and, if reconstructed, reconstructed in the United States;

(ii) of at least 2 net tons but less than 5 net tons;
(iii) owned by a citizen of the United States;
(iv) having its home port in the United States; and
(v) operated in the commercial fisheries of the United States.

(3) JOINT REGULATIONS.—The term "joint regulations" means regulations prescribed jointly by the Secretary and the Secretary of the Treasury under section 53502(b) of this title.
(4) NONCONTIGUOUS TRADE.—The term "noncontiguous trade" means—
(A) trade between—
(i) one of the contiguous 48 States; and
(ii) Alaska, Hawaii, Puerto Rico, or an insular territory or possession of the United States; and

(B) trade between—
(i) a place in Alaska, Hawaii, Puerto Rico, or an insular territory or possession of the United States; and
(ii) another place in Alaska, Hawaii, Puerto Rico, or an insular territory or possession of the United States.

(5) QUALIFIED VESSEL.—The term "qualified vessel" means—
(A) a vessel—
(i) constructed in the United States (and, if reconstructed, reconstructed in the United States), constructed outside the United States but documented under the laws of the United States on April 15, 1970, or constructed outside the United States for use in the United States foreign trade pursuant to a contract made before April 15, 1970;
(ii) documented under the laws of the United States; and
(iii) agreed, between the Secretary and the person maintaining the capital construction fund established under section 53503 of this title, to be operated in the foreign or domestic trade of the United States or in the fisheries of the United States; and

(B) a commercial fishing vessel—
(i) constructed in the United States and, if reconstructed, reconstructed in the United States;
(ii) of at least 2 net tons but less than 5 net tons;
(iii) owned by a citizen of the United States;
(iv) having its home port in the United States; and
(v) operated in the commercial fisheries of the United States.

(6) SECRETARY.—The term "Secretary" means—
(A) the Secretary of Commerce with respect to an eligible vessel or a qualified vessel operated or to be operated in the fisheries of the United States; and
(B) the Secretary of Transportation with respect to other vessels.

(7) SHORT SEA TRANSPORTATION TRADE.—The term "short sea transportation trade" means the carriage by vessel of cargo—
(A) that is—
(i) contained in intermodal cargo containers and loaded by crane on the vessel; or
(ii) loaded on the vessel by means of wheeled technology; and

(B) that is—
(i) loaded at a port in the United States and unloaded either at another port in the United States or at a port in Canada located in the Great Lakes Saint Lawrence Seaway System; or
(ii) loaded at a port in Canada located in the Great Lakes Saint Lawrence Seaway System

and unloaded at a port in the United States.

(8) UNITED STATES FOREIGN TRADE.—The term "United States foreign trade" includes those areas in domestic trade in which a vessel built with a construction-differential subsidy is allowed to operate under the first sentence of section 506 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936.

(9) VESSEL.—The term "vessel" includes—

(A) cargo handling equipment that the Secretary determines is intended for use primarily on the vessel; and

(B) an ocean-going towing vessel, an ocean-going barge, or a comparable towing vessel or barge operated on the Great Lakes.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1591; Pub. L. 110–140, title XI, §1122(a), Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1762; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(q), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2327; Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3544, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3100.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53501(1)	46 App.:1177(b)(3), (k)(3).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, §607(b)(3), (k)(1)–(3), (5)–(9), 49 Stat. 2005; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§23–28, 52 Stat. 960; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §10, 53 Stat. 1185; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§17–19, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 85–637, Aug. 14, 1958, 72 Stat. 592; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–45, §6, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–271, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 570; restated Pub. L. 91–469, §21(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1027, 1031, 1032; Pub. L. 93–116, Oct. 1, 1973, 87 Stat. 421; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(97), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(q), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2327.
53501(2)	46 App.:1177(k)(1).	
	46 App.:1177–1.	Pub. L. 94–455, title VIII, §807, Oct. 4, 1976, 90 Stat. 1606.
53501(3)	46 App.:1177(k)(6).	
53501(4)	46 App.:1177(k)(8).	
53501(5)	46 App.:1177(k)(1) (last sentence), (2).	
	46 App.:1177–1.	
53501(6)	46 App.:1177(k)(9).	
53501(7)	46 App.:1177(k)(5).	
53501(8)	46 App.:1177(k)(7).	

The codification of the laws in this chapter is not intended to alter the existing jurisdictional relationship of the Secretaries who administer those laws.

In paragraph (2)(A)(iii), the word "trade" is substituted for "commerce" for consistency in the chapter.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 506 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, referred to in par. (8), is section 506 of act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, 49 Stat. 1985, which is set out as a note under section 53101 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2022—Par. (5)(A)(iii). Pub. L. 117–263 substituted "foreign or domestic trade of the United States" for "United States foreign, Great Lakes, noncontiguous domestic, or short sea transportation trade".

2018—Par. (5)(A)(iii). Pub. L. 115–232, §3546(q)(1), substituted "transportation trade or" for "transportation trade trade or".

Par. (7). Pub. L. 115–232, §3546(q)(3), struck out par. (7), as added by Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), which read as follows: "The term 'United States foreign trade' includes those areas in domestic trade in which a vessel built with a construction-differential subsidy is allowed to operate under the first sentence of section 506 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936."

Pars. (8), (9). Pub. L. 115–232, §3546(q)(2), (4), added par. (8) and redesignated former par. (8) as (9).

2007—Par. (5)(A)(iii). Pub. L. 110–140, §1122(a)(1), substituted "noncontiguous domestic, or short sea transportation trade" for "or noncontiguous domestic".

Par. (7). Pub. L. 110–140, §1122(a)(2), added par. (7) relating to short sea transportation trade.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–140 effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

§53502. Regulations

(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsection (b), the Secretary shall prescribe regulations to carry out this chapter.

(b) TAX LIABILITY.—The Secretary and the Secretary of the Treasury shall prescribe joint regulations for the determination of tax liability under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1593.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53502	46 App.:1177(*l*) (2d sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, §607(*l*) (2d sentence), 49 Stat. 2005; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§23–28, 52 Stat. 960; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §10, 53 Stat. 1185; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§17–19, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 85–637, Aug. 14, 1958, 72 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–45, §6, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–271, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 570; restated Pub. L. 91–469, §21(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1032; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(97)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162.

Subsection (a) is added for clarity because various provisions of the source language for this chapter imply

that the Secretary is to prescribe regulations individually (except for regulations affecting a determination of tax liability). See, e.g., 46 App. U.S.C. 1177(a) (last sentence), (f)(1) (last sentence), and (l) (last sentence).

In subsection (b), the words "not inconsistent with the foregoing provisions of this section, as may be necessary or appropriate" are omitted as surplus.

§53503. Establishing a capital construction fund

(a) IN GENERAL.—A citizen of the United States owning or leasing an eligible vessel may make an agreement with the Secretary under this chapter to establish a capital construction fund for the vessel.

(b) ALLOWABLE PURPOSE.—The purpose of the agreement shall be to provide replacement vessels, additional vessels, or reconstructed vessels, built in the United States and documented under the laws of the United States, for operation in the foreign or domestic trade of the United States or in the fisheries of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1593; Pub. L. 110–140, title XI, §1122(b), Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1762; Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3545, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3100.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53503(a)	46 App.:1177(a) (1st sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, §607(a) (1st sentence), (2d sentence related to purpose), 49 Stat. 2005; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§23–28, 52 Stat. 960; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §10, 53 Stat. 1185; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§17–19, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 85–637, Aug. 14, 1958, 72 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–45, §6, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–271, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 570; restated Pub. L. 91–469, §21(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1026; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(97)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162.
53503(b)	46 App.:1177(a) (2d sentence related to purpose).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 117–263 substituted "foreign or domestic trade of the United States" for "United States foreign, Great Lakes, noncontiguous domestic, or short sea transportation trade".

2007—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 110–140 substituted "noncontiguous domestic, or short sea transportation trade" for "or noncontiguous domestic trade".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–140 effective on the date that is 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

§53504. Deposits and withdrawals

(a) REQUIRED DEPOSITS.—An agreement to establish a capital construction fund shall provide for the deposit in the fund of the amounts agreed to be appropriate to provide for qualified withdrawals under section 53509 of this title.

(b) APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS.—Deposits in and withdrawals from the fund are subject to the requirements included in the agreement or prescribed by the Secretary by regulation. However, the Secretary may not require a person to deposit in the fund for a taxable year more than 50 percent of that portion of the person's taxable income for that year (as determined under section 53505(a)(1) of this title) that is attributable to the operation of an agreement vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1593.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53504(a)	46 App.:1177(a) (2d sentence related to deposits).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, §607(a) (2d sentence related to deposits), (last sentence), 49 Stat. 2005; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§23–28, 52 Stat. 960; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §10, 53 Stat. 1185; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§17–19, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 85–637, Aug. 14, 1958, 72 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–45, §6, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–271, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 570; restated Pub. L. 91–469, §21(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1026; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(97)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162.
53504(b)	46 App.:1177(a) (last sentence).	

In subsection (a), the words "agreed to be appropriate" are substituted for "agreed upon as necessary or appropriate" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§53505. Ceiling on deposits

(a) MAXIMUM DEPOSITS.—The amount deposited in a capital construction fund for a taxable year may not exceed the sum of—

(1) that portion of the taxable income of the owner or lessee for the taxable year (computed under chapter 1 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. ch. 1) but without regard to the carryback of net operating loss or net capital loss or this chapter) that is attributable to the operation of agreement vessels in the foreign or domestic trade of the United States or in the fisheries of the United States;

(2) the amount allowable as a deduction under section 167 of such Code (26 U.S.C. 167) for the taxable year for agreement vessels;

(3) if the transaction is not taken into account for purposes of paragraph (1), the net proceeds (as defined in joint regulations) from the disposition of an agreement vessel or from insurance or indemnity attributable to an agreement vessel; and

(4) the receipts from the investment or reinvestment of amounts held in the fund.

(b) REDUCTIONS FOR LESSEES.—For a lessee, the maximum amount that may be deposited for an agreement vessel under subsection (a)(2) for any period shall be reduced by any amount the owner is required or permitted, under the capital construction fund agreement, to deposit for that period for the vessel under subsection (a)(2).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1593.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53505	46 App.:1177(b)(1), (2).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, §607(b)(1), (2), 49 Stat. 2005; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§23–28, 52 Stat. 960; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §10, 53 Stat. 1185; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§17–19, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 85–637, Aug. 14, 1958, 72 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–45, §6, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–271, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 570; restated Pub. L. 91–469, §21(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1027.

In subsection (a)(1), the word "trade" is substituted for "commerce" for consistency in the chapter.

§53506. Investment and fiduciary requirements

(a) IN GENERAL.—Amounts in a capital construction fund shall be kept in the depository specified in the agreement and shall be subject to trustee and other fiduciary requirements prescribed by the Secretary. Except as provided in subsection (b), amounts in the fund may be invested only in interest-bearing securities approved by the Secretary.

(b) STOCK INVESTMENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—With the approval of the Secretary, an agreed percentage (but not more than 60 percent) of the assets of the fund may be invested in the stock of domestic corporations that—

(A) is fully listed and registered on an exchange registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission as a national securities exchange; and

(B) would be acquired by a prudent investor seeking a reasonable income and the preservation of capital.

(2) PREFERRED STOCK.—The preferred stock of a corporation is deemed to satisfy the requirements of this subsection, even though it may not be registered and listed because it is nonvoting stock, if the common stock of the corporation satisfies the requirements and the preferred stock otherwise would satisfy the requirements.

(c) MAINTAINING AGREED PERCENTAGE.—If at any time the fair market value of the stock in the fund is more than the agreed percentage of the assets in the fund, any subsequent investment of amounts deposited in the fund, and any subsequent withdrawal from the fund, shall be made in a way that tends to restore the fair market value of the stock to not more than the agreed percentage.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1594.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53506	46 App.:1177(c).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, §607(c), 49 Stat. 2005; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§23–28, 52 Stat. 960; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §10, 53 Stat. 1185; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§17–19, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 85–637, Aug. 14, 1958, 72 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–45, §6, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–271, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 570; restated Pub. L. 91–469, §21(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1027; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(97)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162.

In subsection (b)(1)(B), the words "prudent investor" are substituted for "prudent men of discretion and intelligence in such matters" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§53507. Nontaxation of deposits

(a) TAX TREATMENT.—Subject to subsection (b), under the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 1 et seq.)—

(1) taxable income (determined without regard to this chapter and section 7518 of such Code (26 U.S.C. 7518)) for the taxable year shall be reduced by the amount deposited for the taxable year out of amounts referred to in section 53505(a)(1) of this title;

(2) a gain from a transaction referred to in section 53505(a)(3) of this title shall not be taken into account if an amount equal to the net proceeds (as defined in joint regulations) from the transaction is deposited in the fund;

(3) the earnings (including gains and losses) from the investment and reinvestment of amounts held in the fund shall not be taken into account;

(4) the earnings and profits of a corporation (within the meaning of section 316 of such Code (26 U.S.C. 316)) shall be determined without regard to this chapter and section 7518 of such Code (26 U.S.C. 7518); and

(5) in applying the tax imposed by section 531 of such Code (26 U.S.C. 531), amounts held in the fund shall not be taken into account.

(b) CONDITION.—This section applies to an amount only if the amount is deposited in the fund under the agreement within the time provided in joint regulations.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1594.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53507	46 App.:1177(d).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, §607(d), 49 Stat. 2005; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§23–28, 52 Stat. 960; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §10, 53 Stat. 1185; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§17–19, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L.

		85–637, Aug. 14, 1958, 72 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–45, §6, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–271, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 570; restated Pub. L. 91–469, §21(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1028; Pub. L. 99–514, title II, §261(e)(1), (2), Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2215.

§53508. Separate accounts within a fund

(a) IN GENERAL.—A capital construction fund shall have three accounts:

(1) The capital account.

(2) The capital gain account.

(3) The ordinary income account.

(b) CAPITAL ACCOUNT.—The capital account shall consist of—

(1) amounts referred to in section 53505(a)(2) of this title;

(2) amounts referred to in section 53505(a)(3) of this title, except that portion representing a gain not taken into account because of section 53507(a)(2) of this title;

(3) the percentage applicable under section 243(a)(1) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 243(a)(1)) of any dividend received by the fund for which the person maintaining the fund would be allowed (were it not for section 53507(a)(3) of this title) a deduction under section 243 of such Code (26 U.S.C. 243); and

(4) interest income exempt from taxation under section 103 of such Code (26 U.S.C. 103).

(c) CAPITAL GAIN ACCOUNT.—The capital gain account shall consist of—

(1) amounts representing capital gains on assets held for more than 6 months and referred to in section 53505(a)(3) or (4) of this title; minus

(2) amounts representing capital losses on assets held in the fund for more than 6 months.

(d) ORDINARY INCOME ACCOUNT.—The ordinary income account shall consist of—

(1) amounts referred to in section 53505(a)(1) of this title;

(2)(A) amounts representing capital gains on assets held for not more than 6 months and referred to in section 53505(a)(3) or (4) of this title; minus

(B) amounts representing capital losses on assets held in the fund for not more than 6 months;

(3) interest (except tax-exempt interest referred to in subsection (b)(4)) and other ordinary income (except any dividend referred to in paragraph (5)) received on assets held in the fund;

(4) ordinary income from a transaction described in section 53505(a)(3) of this title; and

(5) that portion of any dividend referred to in subsection (b)(3) not taken into account under subsection (b)(3).

(e) WHEN LOSSES ALLOWED.—Except on termination of a fund, capital losses referred to in subsection (c) or (d)(2) shall be allowed only as an offset to gains referred to in subsection (c) or (d)(2), respectively.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1595.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53508	46 App.:1177(e).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI,

		§607(e), 49 Stat. 2005; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§23–28, 52 Stat. 960; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §10, 53 Stat. 1185; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§17–19, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 85–637, Aug. 14, 1958, 72 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–45, §6, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–271, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 570; restated Pub. L. 91–469, §21(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1028; Pub. L. 99–514, title II, §261(e)(3), (4), Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2215.

§53509. Qualified withdrawals

(a) IN GENERAL.—Subject to subsection (b), a withdrawal from a capital construction fund is a qualified withdrawal if it is made under the terms of the agreement and is for—

(1) the acquisition, construction, or reconstruction of a qualified vessel or a barge or container that is part of the complement of a qualified vessel; or

(2) the payment of the principal on indebtedness incurred in the acquisition, construction, or reconstruction of a qualified vessel or a barge or container that is part of the complement of a qualified vessel.

(b) BARGES AND CONTAINERS.—Except as provided in regulations prescribed by the Secretary, subsection (a) applies to a barge or container only if it is constructed in the United States.

(c) TREATMENT AS NONQUALIFIED WITHDRAWAL.—Under joint regulations, if the Secretary determines that a substantial obligation under an agreement is not being fulfilled, the Secretary, after notice and opportunity for a hearing to the person maintaining the fund, may treat any amount in the fund as an amount withdrawn from the fund in a nonqualified withdrawal.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1596.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53509	46 App.:1177(f).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, §607(f), 49 Stat. 2005; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§23–28, 52 Stat. 960; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §10, 53 Stat. 1185; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§17–19, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 85–637, Aug. 14, 1958, 72 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–45, §6, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–271, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 570; restated Pub. L. 91–469, §21(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1029; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(97)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162.

In subsection (c), the words "any amount in the fund" are substituted for "the entire fund or any portion thereof" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§53510. Tax treatment of qualified withdrawals and basis of property

(a) ORDER OF WITHDRAWALS.—A qualified withdrawal from a capital construction fund shall be treated as made—

(1) first from the capital account;

(2) second from the capital gain account; and

(3) third from the ordinary income account.

(b) ORDINARY INCOME ACCOUNT WITHDRAWALS.—If a portion of a qualified withdrawal for a vessel, barge, or container is made from the ordinary income account, the basis of the vessel, barge, or container shall be reduced by an amount equal to that portion.

(c) CAPITAL GAIN ACCOUNT WITHDRAWALS.—If a portion of a qualified withdrawal for a vessel, barge, or container is made from the capital gain account, the basis of the vessel, barge, or container shall be reduced by an amount equal to that portion.

(d) WITHDRAWALS TO PAY PRINCIPAL.—If a portion of a qualified withdrawal to pay the principal on indebtedness is made from the ordinary income account or the capital gain account, an amount equal to the total reduction that would be required by subsections (b) and (c) if the withdrawal were a qualified withdrawal for a purpose described in those subsections shall be applied, in the order provided in joint regulations, to reduce the basis of vessels, barges, and containers owned by the person maintaining the fund. The remaining amount of the withdrawal shall be treated as a nonqualified withdrawal.

(e) GAIN ON PROPERTY WITH REDUCED BASIS.—If property, the basis of which was reduced under subsection (b), (c), or (d), is disposed of, any gain realized on the disposition, to the extent it does not exceed the total reduction in the basis of the property under those subsections, shall be treated as an amount referred to in section 53511(c)(1) of this title withdrawn on the date of disposition of the property. Subject to conditions prescribed in joint regulations, this subsection does not apply to a disposition if there is a redeposit, in an amount determined under joint regulations, that restores the fund as far as practicable to the position it was in before the withdrawal.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1596.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53510	46 App.:1177(g).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, §607(g); 49 Stat. 2005; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§23–28, 52 Stat. 960; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §10, 53 Stat. 1185; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§17–19, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 85–637, Aug. 14, 1958, 72 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–45, §6, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–271, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 570; restated Pub. L. 91–469, §21(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1029; Pub. L. 99–514, title II, §261(e)(5), Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2215.

§53511. Tax treatment of nonqualified withdrawals

(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in section 53513 of this title, a withdrawal from a fund that is not a qualified withdrawal shall be treated as a nonqualified withdrawal.

(b) ORDER OF WITHDRAWALS.—A nonqualified withdrawal shall be treated as made—

(1) first from the ordinary income account;

(2) second from the capital gain account; and

(3) third from the capital account.

(c) TAX TREATMENT.—For purposes of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 1 et seq.)—

(1) a nonqualified withdrawal from the ordinary income account shall be included in income as an item of ordinary income for the taxable year in which the withdrawal is made;

(2) a nonqualified withdrawal from the capital gain account shall be included in income for the taxable year in which the withdrawal is made as an item of gain realized during that year from the disposition of an asset held for more than 6 months; and

(3) for the period through the last date prescribed for payment of tax for the taxable year in which the withdrawal is made—

(A) no interest shall be payable under section 6601 of such Code (26 U.S.C. 6601) and no addition to the tax shall be payable under section 6651 of such Code (26 U.S.C. 6651);

(B) interest on the amount of the additional tax attributable to an amount treated as a nonqualified withdrawal from the ordinary income account or the capital gain account shall be paid at the rate determined under subsection (d) from the last date prescribed for payment of the tax for the taxable year for which the amount was deposited in the fund; and

(C) no interest shall be payable on amounts treated as withdrawn on a last-in-first-out basis under section 53512 of this title.

(d) INTEREST RATE.—The rate of interest under subsection (c)(3)(B) for a nonqualified withdrawal made in a taxable year beginning after 1971 shall be determined and published jointly by the Secretary and the Secretary of the Treasury. The rate shall be such that its relationship to 8 percent is comparable, as determined by the Secretaries under joint regulations, to the relationship between—

(1) the money rates and investment yields for the calendar year immediately before the beginning of the taxable year; and

(2) the money rates and investment yields for the calendar year 1970.

(e) NONQUALIFIED WITHDRAWALS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The following applicable percentage of any amount that remains in a capital construction fund at the close of the following specified taxable year following the taxable year for which the amount was deposited shall be treated as a nonqualified withdrawal:

If the amount remains in the fund at the close of the—	The applicable percentage is—
26th taxable year	20 percent
27th taxable year	40 percent
28th taxable year	60 percent
29th taxable year	80 percent
30th taxable year	100 percent.

(2) EARNINGS.—The earnings of a capital construction fund for any taxable year (except net

gains) shall be treated under this subsection as an amount deposited for the taxable year.

(3) CONTRACT FOR QUALIFIED WITHDRAWAL.—Under paragraph (1), an amount shall not be treated as remaining in a capital construction fund at the close of a taxable year to the extent there is a binding contract at the close of the taxable year for a qualified withdrawal of the amount for an identified item for which the withdrawal may be made.

(4) EXCESS EARNINGS.—If the Secretary determines that the balance in a capital construction fund exceeds the amount appropriate to meet the vessel construction program objectives of the person that established the fund, the amount of the excess shall be treated as a nonqualified withdrawal under paragraph (1) unless the person develops appropriate program objectives within 3 years to dissipate the excess.

(5) AMOUNTS IN FUND ON JANUARY 1, 1987.—Under this subsection, amounts in a capital construction fund on January 1, 1987, shall be treated as having been deposited in that fund on that date.

(f) TAX DETERMINATIONS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—For a taxable year for which there is a nonqualified withdrawal (including an amount treated as a nonqualified withdrawal under subsection (e)), the tax imposed by chapter 1 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. ch. 1) shall be determined by—

(A) excluding the withdrawal from gross income; and

(B) increasing the tax imposed by chapter 1 of such Code by the product of the amount of the withdrawal and the highest tax rate specified in section 1 (or section 11 for a corporation) of such Code (26 U.S.C. 1, 11).

(2) MAXIMUM TAX RATE.—For that portion of a nonqualified withdrawal made from the capital gain account during a taxable year to which section 1(h) or 1201(a) [1] of such Code (26 U.S.C. 1(h), 1201(a)) applies, the tax rate used under paragraph (1)(B) may not exceed 20 percent (or 34 percent for a corporation).

(3) TAX BENEFIT RULE.—If any portion of a nonqualified withdrawal is properly attributable to deposits (except earnings on deposits) made by the taxpayer in a taxable year that did not reduce the taxpayer's liability for tax under chapter 1 of such Code (26 U.S.C. ch. 1) for a taxable year before the taxable year in which the withdrawal occurs—

(A) that portion shall not be taken into account under paragraph (1); and

(B) an amount equal to that portion shall be allowed as a deduction under section 172 of such Code (26 U.S.C. 172) for the taxable year in which the withdrawal occurs.

(4) COORDINATION WITH DEDUCTION FOR NET OPERATING LOSSES.—A nonqualified withdrawal excluded from gross income under paragraph (1) shall be excluded in determining taxable income under section 172(b)(2) of such Code (26 U.S.C. 172(b)(2)).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1597; Pub. L. 112–240, title I, §102(c)(1)(E), Jan. 2, 2013, 126 Stat. 2319.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53511	46 App.:1177(h) (less (2) (last sentence)).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, §607(h) (less (2) (last sentence)), 49 Stat. 2005; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§23–28, 52 Stat. 960; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §10, 53 Stat. 1185; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§17–19, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 85–637, Aug. 14, 1958, 72 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June

		12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–45, §6, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–271, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 570; restated Pub. L. 91–469, §21(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1030; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(97)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162; Pub. L. 99–514, title II, §261(e)(6), Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2215; Pub. L. 100–647, title I, §1002(m)(2), Nov. 10, 1988, 102 Stat. 3382; Pub. L. 101–508, title XI, §11101(d)(7)(B), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–405; Pub. L. 105–34, title III, §311(c)(2), Aug. 5, 1997, 111 Stat. 835; Pub. L. 108–27, title III, §301(a)(2)(E), May 28, 2003, 117 Stat. 758.

In subsection (c)(3)(C), the words "or in the case of any nonqualified withdrawal arising from the application of the recapture provision of section 1176(5) of this Appendix as in effect on December 31, 1969" are omitted as obsolete.

In subsection (d), the words "made in a taxable year beginning in 1970 or 1971 is 8 percent" are omitted as obsolete.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1201 of such Code, referred to in subsec. (f)(2), means section 1201 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, act Aug. 16, 1954, ch. 736, 68A Stat. 320, which was repealed by Pub. L. 115–97, title I, §13001(b)(2)(A), Dec. 22, 2017, 131 Stat. 2096, applicable to taxable years beginning after Dec. 31, 2017.

AMENDMENTS

2013—Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 112–240 substituted "20 percent" for "15 percent".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2013 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 112–240 applicable to taxable years beginning after Dec. 31, 2012, see section 102(d)(1) of Pub. L. 112–240, set out as a note under section 1 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

APPLICATION OF SUNSET PROVISION TO SUBSECTION (F)(2)

Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3528, Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 603, provided that: "For purposes of section 303 of the Jobs and Growth Tax Relief Reconciliation Act of 2003 (Public Law 108–27, [former] 26 U.S.C. 1 note), the amendment made by section 301(a)(2)(E) of that Act [which amended section 1177(h)(6)(A) of the former Appendix to this title from which subsec. (f)(2) of this section was derived by substituting "15 percent" for "20 percent"] shall be deemed to have been made to section 53511(f)(2) of title 46, United States Code."

[Section 303 of Pub. L. 108–27 was repealed by Pub. L. 112–240, title I, §102(a), Jan. 2, 2013, 126 Stat. 2318.]

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§53512. FIFO and LIFO withdrawals

(a) FIFO.—Except as provided in subsection (b), an amount withdrawn from an account under this chapter shall be treated as withdrawn on a first-in-first-out basis.

(b) LIFO.—An amount withdrawn from an account under this chapter shall be treated as withdrawn on a last-in-first-out basis if it is—

(1) a nonqualified withdrawal for research, development, and design expenses incident to new and advanced vessel design, machinery, and equipment; or

(2) an amount treated as a nonqualified withdrawal under section 53510(d) of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1599.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53512	46 App.:1177(h)(2) (last sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, §607(h)(2) (last sentence), 49 Stat. 2005; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§23–28, 52 Stat. 960; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §10, 53 Stat. 1185; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§17–19, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 85–637, Aug. 14, 1958, 72 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–45, §6, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–271, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 570; restated Pub. L. 91–469, §21(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1030.

§53513. Corporate reorganizations and partnership changes

Under joint regulations—

(1) a transfer of a capital construction fund from one person to another person in a transaction to which section 381 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 381) applies may be treated as if the transaction is not a nonqualified withdrawal; and

(2) a similar rule shall be applied to a continuation of a partnership (within the meaning of subchapter K of chapter 1 of such Code (26 U.S.C. 701 et seq.)).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1599.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53513	46 App.:1177(i).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, §607(i), 49 Stat. 2005; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§23–28, 52 Stat. 960; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §10, 53 Stat. 1185; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§17–19, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 85–637, Aug. 14, 1958, 72 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–45, §6, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–271, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 570;

		restated Pub. L. 91–469, §21(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1031.

§53514. Relationship of old fund to new fund

(a) DEFINITION.—In this section, the term "old fund" means a capital construction fund maintained before October 21, 1970.

(b) ELECTION TO MAINTAIN OLD FUND.—A person maintaining an old fund may elect to continue the old fund, but may not—

(1) hold amounts in the old fund beyond the expiration date provided in the agreement under which the old fund is maintained (determined without regard to an extension or renewal made after April 14, 1970); or

(2) maintain simultaneously the old fund and a new fund established under this chapter.

(c) APPLICATION OF NEW FUND AGREEMENT TO OLD FUND AMOUNTS.—If a person makes an agreement under this chapter to establish a new fund, the person may agree to extend the agreement to some or all of the amounts in an old fund. Each item in the old fund to be transferred shall be transferred in a nontaxable transaction to the appropriate account in the new fund. For purposes of section 53511(c)(3) of this title, the date of the deposit of an item so transferred shall be July 1, 1971, or the date of the deposit in the old fund, whichever is later.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1599.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53514	46 App.:1177(j).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, §607(j), 49 Stat. 2005; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§23–28, 52 Stat. 960; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §10, 53 Stat. 1185; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§17–19, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 85–637, Aug. 14, 1958, 72 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–45, §6, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–271, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 570; restated Pub. L. 91–469, §21(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1031.

§53515. Records and reports

A person maintaining a fund under this chapter shall keep records and make reports as required by the Secretary or the Secretary of the Treasury.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1599.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53515	46 App.:1177(*l*) (1st sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, §607(*l*) (1st sentence), 49 Stat. 2005; June

		23, 1938, ch. 600, §§23–28, 52 Stat. 960; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §10, 53 Stat. 1185; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§17–19, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 85–637, Aug. 14, 1958, 72 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–45, §6, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–271, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 570; restated Pub. L. 91–469, §21(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1032; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(97)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162.

§53516. Termination of agreement after change in regulations

If, after an agreement has been made under this chapter, a change is made either in the joint regulations or in the regulations prescribed by the Secretary under this chapter that could have a substantial effect on the rights or duties of a person maintaining a fund under this chapter, that person may terminate the agreement.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1600.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53516	46 App.:1177(*l*) (last sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, §607(*l*) (last sentence), 49 Stat. 2005; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§23–28, 52 Stat. 960; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §10, 53 Stat. 1185; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §§17–19, 66 Stat. 764; Pub. L. 85–637, Aug. 14, 1958, 72 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–45, §6, May 27, 1961, 75 Stat. 91; Pub. L. 87–271, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 570; restated Pub. L. 91–469, §21(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1032; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(97)(A), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162.

§53517. Reports

(a) IN GENERAL.—Within 120 days after the close of each calendar year, the Secretary of Transportation and the Secretary of Commerce each shall provide the Secretary of the Treasury a written report on the capital construction funds under the particular Secretary's jurisdiction for the calendar year.

(b) CONTENTS.—The report shall state the name and taxpayer identification number of each person—

(1) establishing a capital construction fund during the calendar year;

(2) maintaining a capital construction fund on the last day of the calendar year;

(3) terminating a capital construction fund during the calendar year;

(4) making a deposit to or withdrawal from a capital construction fund during the calendar year, and the amount of the deposit or withdrawal; or

(5) having been determined during the calendar year to have failed to fulfill a substantial obligation under a capital construction fund agreement to which the person is a party.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1600.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53517	46 App.:1177(m).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VI, §607(m), as added Pub. L. 99–514, §261(d), Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2214.

CHAPTER 537—LOANS AND GUARANTEES

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL

Sec.
53701. Definitions.
53702. General authority.
53703. Application and administration.
53704. Funding limits.
53705. Pledge of United States Government.
53706. Eligible purposes of obligations.
53707. Findings related to obligors and operators.
53708. Findings related to economic soundness.
53709. Amount of obligations.
53710. Contents of obligations.
53711. Security interest.
53712. Monitoring financial condition and operations of obligor.
53713. Administrative fees.
53714. Guarantee fees.
53715. Escrow fund.
53716. Deposit fund.
53717. Management of funds in the Treasury.
53718. Annual report to Congress.
53719. Best practices.

SUBCHAPTER II—DEFAULT PROVISIONS

53721. Rights of obligee.
53722. Actions by Secretary or Administrator.
53723. Payments by Secretary or Administrator and issuance of obligations.
53724. Rights to secured property.
53725. Actions against obligor.

SUBCHAPTER III—PARTICULAR PROJECTS

53731. Commercial demonstration ocean thermal energy conversion facilities and plantships.
[53732. Repealed.]
53733. Shipyard modernization and improvement.
53734. Replacement of vessels because of changes in operating standards.
53735. Fisheries financing and capacity reduction.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2023—Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(g), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 811, added item 53703 and struck out former item 53703 "Application procedures".

2019—Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(l), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1974, added item 53719 and struck out item 53732 "Eligible export vessels".

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(10)(A), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598, inserted "or Administrator" after "Secretary" in items 53722 and 53723.

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL

§53701. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) ACTUAL COST.—The term "actual cost" means the sum of—

(A) all amounts paid by or for the account of the obligor as of the date on which a determination is made under section 53715(d)(1) of this title; and

(B) all amounts that the Secretary or Administrator reasonably estimates the obligor will become obligated to pay from time to time thereafter, for the construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of the vessel, including guarantee fees that will become payable under section 53714 of this title in connection with all obligations issued for construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of the vessel or equipment to be delivered, and all obligations issued for the delivered vessel or equipment.

(2) ADMINISTRATOR.—The term "Administrator" means the Administrator of the Maritime Administration.

(3) CONSTRUCTION, RECONSTRUCTION, AND RECONDITIONING.—The terms "construction", "reconstruction", and "reconditioning" include designing, inspecting, outfitting, and equipping.

(4) DEPRECIATED ACTUAL COST.—The term "depreciated actual cost" of a vessel means—

(A) if the vessel was not reconstructed or reconditioned, the actual cost of the vessel depreciated on a straight line basis over the useful life of the vessel as determined by the Secretary or Administrator, not to exceed 25 years from the date of delivery by the builder; or

(B) if the vessel was reconstructed or reconditioned, the sum of—

(i) the actual cost of the vessel depreciated on a straight line basis from the date of delivery by the builder to the date of the reconstruction or reconditioning, using the original useful life of the vessel, and from the date of the reconstruction or reconditioning, using a useful life of the vessel determined by the Secretary or Administrator; and

(ii) any amount paid or obligated to be paid for the reconstruction or reconditioning, depreciated on a straight line basis using a useful life of the vessel determined by the Secretary or Administrator.

(5) FISHERY FACILITY.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Subject to subparagraph (B), the term "fishery facility" means—

(i) for operations on land—

(I) a structure or appurtenance thereto designed for the unloading and receiving from vessels, the processing, the holding pending processing, the distribution after processing, or the holding pending distribution, of fish from a fishery;

(II) the land necessary for the structure or appurtenance; and

(III) equipment that is for use with the structure or appurtenance and that is necessary

for performing a function referred to in subclause (I);

(ii) for operations not on land, a vessel built in the United States and used for, equipped to be used for, or of a type normally used for, the processing of fish; or

(iii) for aquaculture, including operations on land or elsewhere—

(I) a structure or appurtenance thereto designed for aquaculture;

(II) the land necessary for the structure or appurtenance;

(III) equipment that is for use with the structure or appurtenance and that is necessary for performing a function referred to in subclause (I); and

(IV) a vessel built in the United States and used for, equipped to be used for, or of a type normally used for, aquaculture.

(B) REQUIRED OWNERSHIP.—Under subparagraph (A), the structure, appurtenance, land, equipment, or vessel must be owned by—

(i) an individual who is a citizen of the United States; or

(ii) an entity that is a citizen of the United States under section 50501 of this title and that is at least 75 percent owned (as determined under that section) by citizens of the United States.

(6) FISHING VESSEL.—The term "fishing vessel" has the meaning given that term in section 3 of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1802), and any reference in this chapter to a vessel designed principally for commercial use in the fishing trade or industry is deemed to be a reference to a fishing vessel.

(7) HISTORICAL USES.—The term "historical uses" includes—

(A) refurbishing, repairing, rebuilding, or replacing equipment on a fishing vessel, without materially increasing harvesting capacity;

(B) purchasing a used fishing vessel;

(C) purchasing, constructing, expanding, or reconditioning a fishery facility;

(D) refinancing existing debt;

(E) reducing fishing capacity; and

(F) making upgrades to a fishing vessel, including upgrades in technology, gear, or equipment, that improve—

(i) collection and reporting of fishery-dependent data;

(ii) bycatch reduction or avoidance;

(iii) gear selectivity;

(iv) adverse impacts caused by fishing gear; or

(v) safety.

(8) MORTGAGE.—The term "mortgage" includes—

(A) a preferred mortgage as defined in section 31301 of this title; and

(B) a mortgage on a vessel that will become a preferred mortgage when filed or recorded under chapter 313 of this title.

(9) OBLIGATION.—The term "obligation" means an instrument of indebtedness issued for a purpose described in section 53706 of this title, except—

(A) an obligation issued by the Secretary or Administrator under section 53723 of this title; and

(B) an obligation eligible for investment of funds under section 53715(f) or 53717 of this title.

(10) OBLIGEE.—The term "obligee" means the holder of an obligation.

(11) OBLIGOR.—The term "obligor" means a party primarily liable for payment of the principal of or interest on an obligation.

(12) OCEAN THERMAL ENERGY CONVERSION FACILITY OR PLANTSHIP.—The term "ocean thermal energy conversion facility or plantship" means an at-sea facility or vessel, whether mobile, floating unmoored, moored, or standing on the seabed, that uses temperature differences in ocean water to produce electricity or another form of energy capable of being used directly to perform work, and includes—

(A) equipment installed on the facility or vessel to use the electricity or other form of energy to produce, process, refine, or manufacture a product;

(B) a cable or pipeline used to deliver the electricity, freshwater, or product to shore; and

(C) other associated equipment and appurtenances of the facility or vessel to the extent they are located seaward of the high water mark.

(13) SECRETARY.—The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Commerce with respect to fishing vessels and fishery facilities.

(14) VESSEL.—The term "vessel" means any type of vessel, whether in existence or under construction, including—

(A) a cargo vessel;

(B) a passenger vessel;

(C) a combination cargo and passenger vessel;

(D) a tanker;

(E) a tug or towboat;

(F) a barge;

(G) a dredge;

(H) a floating drydock with a capacity of at least 35,000 lifting tons and a beam of at least 125 feet between the wing walls;

(I) an oceanographic research vessel;

(J) an instruction vessel;

(K) a pollution treatment, abatement, or control vessel;

(L) a fishing vessel whose ownership meets the citizenship requirements under section 50501 of this title for documenting vessels to operate in the coastwise trade; and

(M) an ocean thermal energy conversion facility or plantship that is or will be documented under the laws of the United States.

(15) VESSEL OF NATIONAL INTEREST.—The term "Vessel of National Interest" means a vessel deemed to be of national interest that meets characteristics determined by the Administrator, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of the Department in which the Coast Guard is operating when it is not operating as a service in the Department of the Navy, or the heads of other Federal agencies, as described in section 53703(d).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1601; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(A), (b)(1), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(1), (10)(B), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 596, 598; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §302(a)(1), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 51; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(a), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1970.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53701(1)	46 App.:1271(f).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1101, as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 969; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §1, 68 Stat. 1267; Aug. 7, 1956, ch. 1026, §1(a), (b), 70 Stat. 1087; Pub. L. 86–127, §1(1), July 31, 1959, 73

		Stat. 272; Pub. L. 86–685, §1, Sept. 2, 1960, 74 Stat. 733; Pub. L. 87–303, §2, Sept. 26, 1961, 75 Stat. 661; Pub. L. 91–469, §29, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; Pub. L. 92–507, §1, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 909; Pub. L. 96–320, title II, §202(a), Aug. 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 992; Pub. L. 96–561, title II, §220(1), Dec. 22, 1980, 94 Stat. 3291; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(135), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(d), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4750; Pub. L. 102–567, title III, §304, Oct. 29, 1992, 106 Stat. 4283; Pub. L. 103–160, title XIII, §1356(1), 1357(b), Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1812, 1815; Pub. L. 104–208, title I, §101 [title II, §211(b)], Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009–41; Pub. L. 104–239, §11(1), Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3134; Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3521(b), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1799.
53701(2)	46 App.:1271(h).	
53701(3)	46 App.:1271(g).	
53701(4)	46 App.:1271(*o*).	
53701(5)	46 App.:1271(j), (k), (m).	
53701(6)	46 App.:1271(*l*).	
53701(7)	46 App.:1271(a).	
53701(8)	46 App.:1271(c).	
53701(9)	46 App.:1271(e).	
53701(10)	46 App.:1271(d).	
53701(11)	46 App.:1271(i).	
53701(12)	46 App.:1271(n).	
53701(13)	46 App.:1271(b).	

In paragraph (2), the words "but shall not be limited to" are omitted as unnecessary.

In paragraph (4)(B), the words "become or remain" are substituted for "be placed under or continued to be" for clarity.

In paragraph (5)(B)(i), the words "individual who is a citizen of the United States" are substituted for "individual who is a citizen or national of the United States or a citizen of the Northern Mariana Islands" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1271(k) because of the definition of "citizen of the United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title. Citizens of the Northern Mariana Islands became citizens or non-citizen nationals of the United States (either of which is a "citizen of the United States" as defined in chapter 1 of the revised title) when the Covenant establishing the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands became effective on November 4, 1986.

In paragraph (5)(B)(ii), the words "corporation, partnership, association, or other" are omitted as suplus [sic]. The words "the term 'State' as used therein includes any State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, American Samoa, the Virgin Islands of the United States, Guam, the Northern Mariana Islands, or any other Commonwealth, territory, or possession of the United States" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1271(k) are omitted as unnecessary because of the definitions of "State" and "United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title. The definition of "United States" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1271(m) is omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "United States" in chapter 1. The words "and nationals of the United States or citizens of the Northern Mariana Islands shall be treated as citizens of the United States in meeting such

ownership requirement" are omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "citizen of the United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

In paragraph (8), before subparagraph (A), the words "instrument of indebtedness" are substituted for "note, bond, debenture, or other evidence of indebtedness" to eliminate unnecessary words. In subparagraph (B), the reference to section 53717 is substituted for the reference to 46 App. U.S.C. 1272 because the accounts under section 53717 replace the Federal Ship Financing Fund. See the explanation for section 53717.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2019—Pars. (5) to (15). Pub. L. 116–92 redesignated pars. (6) to (15) as (5) to (14), respectively, added a new par. (15), and struck out former par. (5) which defined "eligible export vessel".

2016—Pars. (8) to (15). Pub. L. 114–120 added par. (8) and redesignated former pars. (8) to (14) as (9) to (15), respectively.

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(A), (b)(1). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(A), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" wherever appearing in pars. (1)(B), (4), and (9)(A). See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(1), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(b)(1), into this section by adding pars. (2) and (13), redesignating former pars. (2) to (13) as (3) to (14), respectively, and striking out former par. (13), which defined "Secretary". See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(A), (b)(1), which directed the amendment of section 1271 of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment notes and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53702. General authority

(a) IN GENERAL.—

(1) GUARANTEE OF PAYMENTS.—The Secretary or Administrator, on terms the Secretary or Administrator may prescribe, may guarantee or make a commitment to guarantee the payment of the principal of and interest on an obligation eligible to be guaranteed under this chapter. A guarantee or commitment to guarantee shall cover 100 percent of the principal and interest.

(2) PREFERRED ELIGIBLE LENDER.—The Federal Financing Bank shall be the preferred eligible lender of the principal and interest of the guaranteed obligations issued under this chapter.

(b) DIRECT LOANS FOR FISHERIES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, any obligation involving a fishing vessel, fishery facility, aquaculture facility, individual fishing quota, or fishing capacity reduction program issued under this chapter after October 11, 1996, shall be a direct loan obligation for which the Secretary shall be the obligee, rather than an obligation issued to an obligee other than the Secretary and guaranteed by the Secretary. A direct loan obligation under this subsection shall be treated in the same manner and to the same extent as an obligation guaranteed under this chapter except with respect to provisions of this chapter that by their nature can only be applied to obligations guaranteed under this chapter.

(2) INTEREST RATE.—Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, the annual rate of interest an obligor shall pay on a direct loan obligation under this subsection is 2 percent plus the additional percent the Secretary must pay as interest to borrow from the Treasury the funds to make the loan.

(3) MINIMUM OBLIGATIONS AVAILABLE FOR HISTORIC USES.—Of the direct loan obligations issued by the Secretary under this chapter, the Secretary shall make a minimum of

$59,000,000 available each fiscal year for historic uses.

(4) USE OF OBLIGATIONS IN LIMITED ACCESS FISHERIES.—In addition to the other eligible purposes and uses of direct loan obligations provided for in this chapter, the Secretary may issue direct loan obligations for the purpose of—

(A) financing the construction or reconstruction of a fishing vessel in a fishery managed under a limited access system; or

(B) financing the purchase of harvesting rights in a fishery that is federally managed under a limited access system.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1603; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(C), (d), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555, 3557; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(10)(B), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §302(a)(2), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 52; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(b), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1971.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53702(a)	46 App.:1273(a).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1103(a), as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 969; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §1, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §3, 68 Stat. 1268; June 25, 1956, ch. 438, 70 Stat. 332; Aug. 7, 1956, ch. 1026, §1(a), (c), (d), 70 Stat. 1087; Pub. L. 91–469, §30, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 910; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5002, Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1912; Pub. L. 103–160, div. A, title XIII, §1356(5), Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1814.
53702(b)	46 App.:1279g.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1112, as added Pub. L. 104–297, title III, §303(a), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3616.

In subsection (a), the words "on terms the Secretary may prescribe" are added based on language in 46 App. U.S.C. 1274(a) (before cl. (1)). The words "the unpaid balance of" are omitted as unnecessary.

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Subsec. (b) of this section was derived from section 1112 of act June 29, 1936, as added by Pub. L. 104–297, §303(a), which was classified to section 1279g of the former Appendix to this title. Section 1112 was renumbered section 1114 of the Act by Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(d), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3557, which was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598. See Historical and Revision notes above and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2019—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–92 amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Secretary or Administrator, on terms the Secretary or Administrator may prescribe, may guarantee or make a commitment to guarantee the payment of the principal of and interest on an obligation

eligible to be guaranteed under this chapter. A guarantee or commitment to guarantee shall cover 100 percent of the principal and interest."

2016—Subsec. (b)(3), (4). Pub. L. 114–120 added pars. (3) and (4).

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), (d). See 2006 Amendment note below and Codification note above.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" in two places. See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), which directed the amendment of section 1273(a) of the former Appendix to this title from which subsec. (a) of this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsec. (a) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53703. Application and administration

(a) TIME FOR DECISION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary or Administrator shall approve or deny an application for a loan guarantee under this chapter within 270 days after the date on which the signed application is received by the Secretary or Administrator.

(2) EXTENSION.—On request by an applicant, the Secretary or Administrator may extend the 270-day period in paragraph (1) to a date not later than 2 years after the date on which the signed application was received by the Secretary or Administrator.

(b) CERTIFICATION OF REVIEW.—The Secretary or Administrator may not guarantee or make a commitment to guarantee an obligation under this chapter unless the Secretary or Administrator certifies that a full and fair consideration of all the regulatory requirements, including economic soundness and financial requirements applicable to the obligor and related parties, and a thorough assessment of the technical, economic, and financial aspects of the loan application, has been made.

(c) INDEPENDENT ANALYSIS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—To assess and mitigate the risks due to factors associated with markets, technology, financial, or legal structures related to an application or guarantee under this chapter, the Secretary or Administrator may utilize third party experts, including legal counsel, to—

(A) process and review applications under this chapter, including conducting independent analysis and review of aspects of an application;

(B) represent the Secretary or Administrator in structuring and documenting the obligation guarantee;

(C) analyze and review aspects of, structure, and document the obligation guarantee during the term of the guarantee;

(D) recommend financial covenants or financial ratios to be met by the applicant during the time a guarantee under this chapter is outstanding that are—

(i) based on the financial covenants or financial ratios, if any, that are then applicable to the obligor under private sector credit agreements; and

(ii) in lieu of other financial covenants applicable to the obligor under this chapter with respect to requirements regarding long-term debt-to-equity, minimum working capital, or minimum amount of equity; and

(E) represent the Secretary or Administrator to protect the security interests of the Government relating to an obligation guarantee.

(2) PRIVATE SECTOR EXPERT.—Independent analysis, review, and representation conducted under this subsection shall be performed by a private sector expert in the applicable field who is selected by the Secretary or Administrator.

(d) VESSELS OF NATIONAL INTEREST.—

(1) NOTICE OF FUNDING.—The Secretary or Administrator may post a notice in the Federal Register regarding the availability of funding for obligation guarantees under this chapter for the construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of a Vessel of National Interest and include a timeline for the submission of applications for such vessels.

(2) VESSEL CHARACTERISTICS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary or Administrator, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of the Department in which the Coast Guard is operating when it is not operating as service in the Department of the Navy, or the heads of other Federal agencies, shall develop and publish a list of vessel types that would be considered Vessels of National Interest.

(B) REVIEW.—Such list shall be reviewed and revised every four years or as necessary, as determined by the Administrator.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1604; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(D), (2)(G), (b)(7), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555, 3556; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(10)(B), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(c), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1971.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53703(a)	46 App.:1274(n).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1104A(*l*), (n), as added Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §§3523(b), 3525, Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1800, 1801.
53703(b)	46 App.:1274(*l*).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2019—Pub. L. 116–92, §3506(c)(1), substituted "and administration" for "procedures" in section catchline. Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 116–92, §3506(c)(2), added subsecs. (c) and (d).

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), (2)(G), (b)(7). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), (2)(G), (b)(7), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" wherever appearing. See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), (2)(G), (b)(7), which directed the amendment of section 1274(l), (n) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment notes and Historical and Revision notes above.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EXPEDITED CONSIDERATION OF LOW-RISK APPLICATIONS

Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(j), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1974, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—In accordance with the requirements of this subsection, the Administrator shall establish an administrative process and issue guidance for the expedited consideration of low-risk applications submitted under chapter 537 of title 46, United States Code.

"(2) STAKEHOLDER COMMENT.—Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this section [Dec. 20, 2019], the Administrator of the Maritime Administration shall publish in the Federal Register a notice of a 45-day public comment period to request stakeholder input and recommendations to establish the administrative process required under this subsection, including proposals to assist applicants—

"(A) in the development and submission of initial applications;

"(B) in meeting requests for supplemental information made by the Administrator; and

"(C) to comply with other requirements made by the Administrator to ensure the expedited consideration of applications.

"(3) INDUSTRY BEST PRACTICES.—The administrative process established under this subsection shall utilize, to the extent practicable, relevant Federal and industry best practices found in the maritime and shipbuilding industries.

"(4) FINAL GUIDANCE.—Not later than 90 days after the conclusion of the public comment period required under paragraph (2), the Administrator shall publish in the Federal Register final guidance to assist applicants in the preparation and filing of applications under this subsection."

REVIEW OF APPLICATIONS FOR LOANS AND GUARANTEES

Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3517, Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 595, provided that:

"(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress makes the following findings:

"(1) The maritime loan guarantee program was established by the Congress through the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 [see Short Title of 1936 Amendment note set out under section 101 of this title] to encourage domestic shipbuilding by making available federally backed loan guarantees for new construction to ship owners and operators.

"(2) The maritime loan guarantee program has a long and successful history of ship construction with a low historical default rate.

"(3) The current process for review of applications for maritime loans in the Department of Transportation has effectively discontinued the program as envisioned by the Congress.

"(4) The President has requested no funding for the loan guarantee program despite the stated national policy to foster the development and encourage the maintenance of a merchant marine in section 50101 of title 46, United States Code.

"(5) United States commercial shipyards were placed at a competitive disadvantage in the world shipbuilding market by government subsidized foreign commercial shipyards.

"(6) The maritime loan guarantee program has the potential to modernize shipyards and the ships of the United States coastwise trade and restore a competitive position in the world shipbuilding market for United States shipyards.

"(7) The maritime loan guarantee program is a useful tool to encourage domestic shipbuilding, preserving a vital industrial capacity critical to the security of the United States.

"(b) REQUIREMENTS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Within 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Jan. 28, 2008], the Administrator of the Maritime Administration shall develop and implement a comprehensive plan for the review of applications for loan guarantees under chapter 537 of title 46, United States Code.

"(2) DEADLINE FOR ACTION ON APPLICATION.—

"(A) TRADITIONAL APPLICATIONS.—In the comprehensive plan the Administrator will ensure that within the 90-day period following receipt of all pertinent documentation required for review of a traditional loan application, the application shall be either accepted or rejected.

"(B) NONTRADITIONAL APPLICATIONS.—In the comprehensive plan the Administrator will ensure that within the 180-day period following receipt of all pertinent documentation required for review of a nontraditional loan application, the application shall be either accepted or rejected.

"(c) SUBMISSION TO CONGRESS.—The Administrator shall submit a copy of the comprehensive plan to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives within 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Jan. 28, 2008].

"(d) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

"(1) TRADITIONAL APPLICATION.—The term 'traditional application' means an application for a loan, guarantee, or commitment to guarantee submitted pursuant to chapter 537 of title 46, United States Code, that involves a market, technology, and financial structure of a type that has proven successful in previous applications and does not present an unreasonable risk to the United States, as determined by the Administrator of the Maritime Administration.

"(2) NONTRADITIONAL APPLICATION.—The term 'nontraditional application' means an application for a loan, guarantee, or commitment to guarantee submitted pursuant to chapter 537 of title 46, United States Code, that is not a traditional application, as determined by the Administrator of the Maritime Administration."

§53704. Funding limits

(a) GENERAL LIMITATIONS.—The total unpaid principal amount of obligations guaranteed under this chapter and outstanding at one time may not exceed $12,000,000,000. Of that amount, $850,000,000 shall be limited to obligations related to fishing vessels and fishery facilities.

(b) ADDITIONAL LIMITATIONS.—Additional limitations may not be imposed on new commitments to guarantee loans for any fiscal year, except in amounts established in advance by annual authorization laws. A vessel eligible for a guarantee under this chapter may not be denied eligibility because of its type.

(c) LIMITS BASED ON RISK FACTORS.—

(1) DEFINITION.—In this subsection, the term "cost" has the meaning given that term in section 502 of the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990 (2 U.S.C. 661a).

(2) SYSTEM OF RISK CATEGORIES.—The Secretary or Administrator shall—

(A) establish, and update annually, a system of risk categories for obligations guaranteed under this chapter that categorizes the relative risk of guarantees based on the risk factors set forth in paragraph (4);

(B) determine annually for each risk category a subsidy rate equivalent to the cost of obligations in the category, expressed as a percentage of the amount guaranteed for obligations in the category; and

(C) ensure that each risk category is comprised of loans that are relatively homogeneous in cost and share characteristics predictive of defaults and other costs, given the facts known at the time of obligation or commitment, using a risk category system that is based on historical analysis of program data and statistical evidence concerning the likely costs of defaults or other costs that are expected to be associated with the loans in the category.

(3) USE OF SYSTEM.—

(A) PLACING OBLIGATION IN CATEGORY.—Before making a guarantee under this chapter for an obligation, and annually for projects subject to a guarantee, the Secretary or Administrator shall apply the risk factors specified in paragraph (4) to place the obligation in a risk category established under paragraph (2).

(B) REDUCTION OF AVAILABLE AMOUNT.—The Secretary or Administrator shall consider the total amount available to the Secretary or Administrator for making guarantees under this chapter to be reduced by the amount determined by multiplying—

(i) the amount guaranteed under this chapter for an obligation; by

(ii) the subsidy rate for the category in which the obligation is placed under subparagraph (A).

(C) ESTIMATED COST.—The estimated cost to the United States Government of a guarantee under this chapter for an obligation is deemed to be the amount determined under subparagraph (B) for the obligation.

(D) RESTRICTION ON FURTHER GUARANTEES.—The Secretary or Administrator may not guarantee obligations under this chapter after the total amount available to the Secretary or Administrator under appropriations laws for the cost of loan guarantees is considered to be reduced to zero under subparagraph (B).

(4) RISK FACTORS.—The risk factors referred to in this subsection are—

(A) the period for which an obligation is guaranteed or to be guaranteed;

(B) the amount of an obligation guaranteed or to be guaranteed in relation to the total cost of the project financed or to be financed by the obligation;

(C) the financial condition of an obligor or applicant for a guarantee;

(D) if applicable, other guarantees related to the project;

(E) if applicable, the projected employment of each vessel or equipment to be financed with an obligation;

(F) if applicable, the projected market that will be served by each vessel or equipment to be financed with an obligation;

(G) the collateral provided for a guarantee for an obligation;

(H) the management and operating experience of an obligor or applicant for a guarantee;

(I) whether a guarantee under this chapter is or will be in effect during the construction period of the project; and

(J) the concentration risk presented by an unduly large percentage of loans outstanding by any one borrower or group of affiliated borrowers.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1604; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(C), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(10)(B), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(d), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1972.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53704(a)	46 App.:1273(f) (1st sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1103(f), as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 969; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §1, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §3, 68 Stat. 1268; June 25, 1956, ch. 438, 70 Stat. 332; Aug. 7, 1956, ch. 1026, §1(a), (c), (d), 70 Stat. 1087; Pub. L. 91–469, §30, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 910; Pub. L. 93–70, §3, July 10, 1973, 87 Stat. 168; Pub. L. 94–127, §5, Nov. 13, 1975, 89 Stat. 681; Pub. L. 95–298, §5, June 26, 1978, 92 Stat. 340; Pub. L. 96–320, title II, §203(b)(1), Aug. 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 994; Pub. L. 96–561, title II, §220(2), Dec. 22, 1980, 94 Stat. 3292; Pub. L. 97–35, title XVI, §1606(a), (b), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 752; Pub. L. 97–424, title IV, §425, Jan. 6, 1983, 96 Stat. 2167; Pub. L. 103–160, title XIII, §1356(2)(A), Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1812; Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3528(b), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1802.
53704(b)	46 App.:1273(f) (2d, last sentences).	
53704(c)	46 App.:1273(h).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1103(h), as added Pub. L. 104–239, §13(a), Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3134; Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3528(b), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1802.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2019—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–92, §3506(d)(1), substituted "that amount, $850,000,000 shall be limited to obligations related to fishing vessels and fishery facilities." for "that amount—" and pars. (1) and (2) which read as follows:

"(1) $850,000,000 shall be limited to obligations related to fishing vessels and fishery facilities; and

"(2) $3,000,000,000 shall be limited to obligations related to eligible export vessels."

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 116–92, §3506(d)(2), redesignated subpars. (B) to (K) as (A) to (J), respectively, and struck out former subpar. (A) which read as follows: "if applicable, the country risk for each eligible export vessel financed or to be financed by an obligation;".

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" wherever appearing. See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), which directed the amendment of section 1273(h) of the former Appendix to this title from which subsec. (c) of this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsec. (c) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53705. Pledge of United States Government

(a) FULL FAITH AND CREDIT.—The full faith and credit of the United States Government is pledged to the payment of a guarantee made under this chapter, for both principal and interest, including interest (as may be provided for in the guarantee) accruing between the date of default under a guaranteed obligation and the date of payment in full of the guarantee.

(b) INCONTESTABILITY.—A guarantee or commitment to guarantee made under this chapter is conclusive evidence of the eligibility of the obligation for the guarantee. The validity of a guarantee or commitment to guarantee made under this chapter is incontestable.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1606; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(C), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53705(a)	46 App.:1273(d).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1103(d), (e) (1st sentence), as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 969; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §1, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §3, 68 Stat. 1268; June 25, 1956, ch. 438, 70 Stat. 332; Aug. 7, 1956, ch. 1026, §1(a), (c), (d), 70 Stat. 1087; Pub. L. 91–469, §30, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 910; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 98–595, §1(1), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3130.
53705(b)	46 App.:1273(e) (1st sentence).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181 repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C). See 2006 Amendment note below.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), which directed the amendment of section 1273(e) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived in part by striking "Secretary" each place it appears and inserting "Secretary or Administrator", was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181. See Historical and Revision notes above.

§53706. Eligible purposes of obligations

(a) IN GENERAL.—To be eligible for a guarantee under this chapter, an obligation must aid in any of the following:

(1)(A) Financing (including reimbursement of an obligor for expenditures previously made for) the construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of a vessel designed principally for research, or for commercial use—

(i) in the coastwise or intercoastal trade;

(ii) on the Great Lakes, or on bays, sounds, rivers, harbors, or inland lakes of the United States;

(iii) in foreign trade as defined in section 109(b) of this title;

(iv) as an ocean thermal energy conversion facility or plantship; or

(v) as a floating drydock in the construction, reconstruction, reconditioning, or repair of vessels.

(B) A guarantee under subparagraph (A) may not be made more than one year after delivery of the vessel (or redelivery if the vessel was reconstructed or reconditioned) unless the proceeds of the obligation are used to finance the construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of a vessel or of facilities or equipment related to marine operations.

(2) Financing (including reimbursement of an obligor for expenditures previously made for) the construction, reconstruction, reconditioning, or purchase of a vessel owned by citizens of the United States and designed principally for research, or for commercial use in the fishing industry.

(3) Financing the purchase, reconstruction, or reconditioning of a vessel or fishery facility—

(A) for which an obligation was guaranteed under this chapter; and

(B) that, under subchapter II of this chapter—

(i) is a vessel or fishery facility for which an obligation was accelerated and paid;

(ii) was acquired by the Federal Ship Financing Fund or successor account under section 53717 of this title; or

(iii) was sold at foreclosure begun or intervened in by the Secretary or Administrator.

(4) Financing any part of the repayment to the United States Government of any amount of a construction-differential subsidy paid for a vessel.

(5) Refinancing an existing obligation (regardless of whether guaranteed under this chapter) issued for a purpose described in paragraphs (1)–(4), including a short-term obligation incurred to obtain temporary funds with the intention of refinancing.

(6) Financing or refinancing (including reimbursement of an obligor for expenditures previously made for) the construction, reconstruction, reconditioning, or purchase of a fishery facility.

(7) Financing or refinancing—

(A) the purchase of individual fishing quotas in accordance with section 303(d)(4) of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (including the reimbursement of obligors for expenditures previously made for such a purchase);

(B) activities that assist in the transition to reduced fishing capacity; or

(C) technologies or upgrades designed to improve collection and reporting of

fishery-dependent data, to reduce bycatch, to improve selectivity or reduce adverse impacts of fishing gear, or to improve safety.

(8) Financing (including reimbursement of an obligor for expenditures previously made for) the reconstruction, reconditioning, retrofitting, repair, reconfiguration, or similar work in a shipyard located in the United States.

(b) NON-VESSELS TREATED AS VESSELS.—An obligation guaranteed under subsection (a)(6) or (7) shall be treated, for purposes of this chapter, in the same manner and to the same extent as an obligation that aids in financing the construction, reconstruction, reconditioning, or purchase of a vessel, except with respect to provisions that by their nature can only be applied to vessels.

(c) PRIORITIES FOR CERTAIN VESSELS.—

(1) VESSELS.—In guaranteeing or making a commitment to guarantee an obligation under this chapter, the Administrator shall give priority to—

(A) a vessel that is otherwise eligible for a guarantee and is constructed with assistance under subtitle D of the Maritime Security Act of 2003 (46 U.S.C. 53101 note);

(B) after applying subparagraph (A), a vessel that is otherwise eligible for a guarantee and that the Secretary of Defense determines—

(i) is suitable for service as a naval auxiliary in time of war or national emergency; and

(ii) meets a shortfall in sealift capacity or capability; and

(C) after applying subparagraphs (A) and (B), Vessels of National Interest.

(2) TIME FOR DETERMINATION.—The Secretary of Defense shall determine whether a vessel satisfies paragraph (1)(B) not later than 30 days after receipt of a request from the Administrator for such a determination.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1606; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(D), (2)(A), (B), (b)(2), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555, 3556; Pub. L. 109–479, title II, §209, Jan. 12, 2007, 120 Stat. 3617; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(2), (10)(B), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 596, 598; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(e), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1972; Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3536(a), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 835.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53706(a)	46 App.:1274(a) (less last sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1104A(a) [§1104A formerly §1104], as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 970; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §14, 53 Stat. 1187; Sept. 28, 1950, ch. 1093, §4, 64 Stat. 1078; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §2, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §4, 68 Stat. 1269; Pub. L. 86–123, §§1(3), 2, July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 269, 271; Pub. L. 86–127, §1(3), (4), July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 273; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–685, §§2, 3, Sept. 2, 1960, 74 Stat. 733; Pub. L. 90–341, June 15, 1968, 82 Stat. 180; Pub. L. 91–469, §§31, 32, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat.

		1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 910; Pub. L. 96–320, title II, §202(b), Aug. 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 992; Pub. L. 96–561, title II, §220(3)(A), Dec. 22, 1980, 94 Stat. 3292; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 98–595, §1(2)–(5), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3130; §1104 renumbered as §1104A, Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4115(f)(1), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 521; Pub. L. 103–160, title XIII, §1356(3)(A), Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1813; Pub. L. 104–208, title I, §101 [title II, §211(b)], Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009–41; Pub. L. 104–297, title III, §302(a)(1)–(4), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3615.
53706(b)	46 App.:1274(a) (last sentence).	
53706(c)	46 App.:1273(i), (j).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1103(i), (j), as added Pub. L. 108–136, title X, §1014(a), title XXXV, §3544, Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1591, 1822.

In subsection (a), before paragraph (1), the words "To be eligible for a guarantee under this chapter, an obligation must aid in any of the following" are substituted for "Pursuant to the authority granted under section 1273(a) of this Appendix, the Secretary, upon such terms as he shall prescribe, may guarantee or make a commitment to guarantee, payment of the principal of and interest on an obligation which aids in" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (a)(2), the words "citizens of the United States" are substituted for "citizens or nationals of the United States or citizens of the Northern Mariana Islands" because of the definition of "citizen of the United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title. Citizens of the Northern Mariana Islands became citizens or non-citizen nationals of the United States (either of which is a "citizen of the United States" as defined in chapter 1 of the revised title) when the Covenant establishing the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands became effective November 4, 1986.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 303(d)(4) of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(7)(A), is section 303(d)(4) of Pub. L. 94–265, which is classified to section 1853(d)(4) of Title 16, Conservation.

The Maritime Security Act of 2003, referred to in subsec. (c)(1)(A), is title XXXV of div. C of Pub. L. 108–136, Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1788. Subtitle D of the Act amended section 1273 of the former Appendix to this title and enacted provisions set out as a note under section 53101 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2003 Amendment note set out under section 101 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2023—Subsec. (a)(8). Pub. L. 118–31 added par. (8).

2019—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 116–92, §3506(e)(1)(A), struck out "(including an eligible export vessel)" after "reconditioning of a vessel" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(1)(A)(vi). Pub. L. 116–92, §3506(e)(1)(B)–(D), struck out cl. (vi) which read as follows: "as an

eligible export vessel in worldwide trade."

Subsec. (c)(1)(C). Pub. L. 116–92, §3506(e)(2), added subpar. (C).

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), (2)(A), (B), (b)(2). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (a)(3)(B)(iii). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary". See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(2), incorporated the substance of the amendments by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(2)(A), (B), (b)(2), by amending subsec. (c) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (c) read as follows:

"PRIORITIES FOR CERTAIN VESSELS.—In guaranteeing or making a commitment to guarantee an obligation under this chapter, the Secretary shall give priority to—

"(1) a vessel that is otherwise eligible for a guarantee and is constructed with assistance under subtitle D of the Maritime Security Act of 2003 (46 U.S.C. 53101 note); and

"(2) after applying paragraph (1), a vessel that is otherwise eligible for a guarantee and that the Secretary of Defense determines—

"(A) is suitable for service as a naval auxiliary in time of war or national emergency; and

"(B) meets a shortfall in sealift capacity or capability."

See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2007—Subsec. (a)(7). Pub. L. 109–479 amended par. (7) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (7) read as follows: "Financing or refinancing (including reimbursement of an obligor for expenditures previously made for) the purchase of an individual fishing quota in accordance with section 303(d)(4) of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1853(d)(4))."

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), (2)(A), (B), (b)(2), which directed the amendment of sections 1273(i), (j) and 1274(a) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment notes for subsecs. (a)(3)(B)(iii) and (c) and Historical and Revision notes above.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

PROHIBITION OF NEW LOANS FOR CONSTRUCTION OF FISHING VESSELS UNDER CERTAIN CONDITIONS

Pub. L. 104–297, title III, §302(b)(2), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3615, as amended by Pub. L. 105–277, div. C, title II, §212, Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–635; Pub. L. 107–206, title I, §1103, Aug. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 884; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §302(b), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 52, provided that: "No loans may be provided or guaranteed by the Federal Government for the construction or rebuilding of a vessel intended for use as a fishing vessel (as defined in section 2101 of title 46, United States Code), if such vessel will be greater than 165 feet in registered length, of more than 750 gross registered tons (as measured under chapter 145 of title 46) or 1,900 gross registered tons [(]as measured under chapter 143 of that title), or have an engine or engines capable of producing a total of more than 3,000 shaft horsepower, after such construction or rebuilding is completed. This prohibition shall not apply to vessels to be used in the menhaden fishery, in tuna purse seine fisheries outside the exclusive economic zone of the United States or the area of the South Pacific Regional Fisheries Treaty, in fisheries that are under the jurisdiction of the North Pacific Fishery Management Council and managed under a fishery management plan issued under the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1801 et seq.), or in the Pacific whiting fishery that is under the jurisdiction of the Pacific Fishery Management Council and managed under a fishery management plan issued under that Act. Any fishing vessel operated in fisheries under the jurisdiction of the North Pacific Fishery Management Council and managed under a fishery management plan issued under the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1801 et seq.), or in the Pacific whiting fishery under the jurisdiction of the Pacific Fishery Management Council and managed under a fishery management plan issued under that Act, and that is replaced by a vessel that is constructed or rebuilt with a loan or loan guarantee provided by the Federal Government may not be used to harvest fish in any fishery under the jurisdiction of any regional fishery management council, other than a fishery under the jurisdiction of the North Pacific Fishery Management Council or the Pacific Fishery Management Council."

[Pub. L. 107–206, title I, §1103, Aug. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 884, which directed the amendment of title II of division C of Public Law 105–277 by substituting "of more than 750 gross registered tons (as measured under

chapter 145 of title 46) or 1,900 gross registered tons as measured under chapter 143 of that title)" for "of more than 750 gross registered tons", was executed to section 302(b)(2) of Pub. L. 104–297, set out above, as amended by section 212 of Pub. L. 105–277, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.]

§53707. Findings related to obligors and operators

(a) RESPONSIBLE OBLIGOR.—The Secretary or Administrator may not guarantee or make a commitment to guarantee an obligation under this chapter unless the Secretary or Administrator finds that the obligor is responsible and has the ability, experience, financial resources, and other qualifications necessary for the adequate operation and maintenance of each vessel that will serve as security for the guarantee.

(b) OPERATORS OF LINER VESSELS.—The Administrator may not guarantee or make a commitment to guarantee a loan for the construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of a liner vessel under this chapter unless the Chairman of the Federal Maritime Commission certifies that the operator of the vessel has not been found by the Commission to have committed, within the previous 5 years—

(1) a violation of part A of subtitle IV of this title that involves unjust or unfair discriminatory treatment or undue or unreasonable prejudice or disadvantage with respect to a United States shipper, ocean transportation intermediary, ocean common carrier, or port; or

(2) a violation of part B of subtitle IV of this title.

(c) OPERATORS OF FISHING VESSELS.—The Secretary may not guarantee or make a commitment to guarantee a loan for the construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of a fishing vessel under this chapter if the operator of the vessel has been—

(1) held liable, or the vessel has been held liable in rem, for a civil penalty under section 308 of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1858) and the operator has not paid the penalty;

(2) found guilty of an offense under section 309 of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1859) and not paid the assessed fine or served the assessed sentence;

(3) held liable for a civil or criminal penalty under section 105 of the Marine Mammal Protection Act of 1972 (16 U.S.C. 1375) and not paid the assessed fine or served the assessed sentence; or

(4) held liable for a civil penalty by the Coast Guard under this title or title 33 and not paid the assessed fine.

(d) WAIVERS CONCERNING FINANCIAL CONDITION.—The Secretary or Administrator shall prescribe regulations concerning circumstances under which waivers of, or exceptions to, otherwise applicable regulatory requirements concerning financial condition can be made. The regulations shall require that—

(1) the economic soundness requirements in section 53708(a) of this title are met after the waiver of the financial condition requirement; and

(2) if the Secretary or Administrator considers necessary, the waiver shall provide for the imposition of other requirements on the obligor designed to compensate for any significant increase in risk associated with the obligor's failure to meet regulatory requirements applicable to financial condition.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1607; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(D), (b)(3)(B), (C), (c)(1), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555, 3556; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(3), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 597, 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53707(a)	46 App.:1274(b)(1).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1104A(b)(1) [§1104A formerly §1104], as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 970; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §14, 53 Stat. 1187; Sept. 28, 1950, ch. 1093, §4, 64 Stat. 1078; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §2, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §4, 68 Stat. 1269; Pub. L. 86–123, §§1(3), 2, July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 269, 271; Pub. L. 86–127, §1(3), (4), July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 273; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–685, §§2, 3, Sept. 2, 1960, 74 Stat. 733; Pub. L. 90–341, June 15, 1968, 82 Stat. 180; Pub. L. 91–469, §§31, 32, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 911; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; §1104 renumbered as §1104A, Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4115(f)(1), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 521.
53707(b)	46 App.:1273a(a).	Pub. L. 105–258, title IV, §401, Oct. 14, 1998, 112 Stat. 1916.
53707(c)	46 App.:1273a(b).	
53707(d)	46 App.:1274(d)(4).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1104A(d)(4), as added Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3522, Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1800.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), (b)(3)(B), (C), (c)(1). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(3)(A), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" in two places. See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(3)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(c)(1), into this section by substituting "Administrator" for "Secretary of Transportation". See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(3)(C), struck out "of Commerce" after "The Secretary" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(3)(A), (D), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(b)(3)(B), (C), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" in introductory provisions and in par. (2) by inserting "if the Secretary or Administrator considers necessary,"

before "the waiver" and substituting "any significant increase in" for "the increased". See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), (b)(3)(B), (C), (c)(1), which directed the amendment of sections 1273a(a) and 1274(b)(1), (d)(4)(B) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived in part, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment notes for subsecs. (a), (b), and (d) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53708. Findings related to economic soundness

(a) BY ADMINISTRATOR.—The Administrator may not guarantee or make a commitment to guarantee an obligation under this chapter unless the Administrator finds that the property or project for which the obligation will be executed will be economically sound. In making that finding, the Administrator shall consider—

(1) the need in the particular segment of the maritime industry for new or additional capacity, including any impact on existing equipment for which a guarantee under this chapter is in effect;

(2) the market potential for employment of the vessel over the life of the guarantee;

(3) projected revenues and expenses associated with employment of the vessel;

(4) any charter, contract of affreightment, transportation agreement, or similar agreement or undertaking relevant to the employment of the vessel;

(5) other relevant criteria; and

(6) for inland waterways, the need for technical improvements, including increased fuel efficiency or improved safety.

(b) BY SECRETARY.—The Secretary may not guarantee or make a commitment to guarantee an obligation under this chapter unless the Secretary finds, at or prior to the time the commitment is made or the guarantee becomes effective, that—

(1) the property or project for which the obligation will be executed will be economically sound; and

(2) for a fishing vessel, the purpose of the financing or refinancing is consistent with—

(A) the wise use of the fisheries resources and the development, advancement, management, conservation, and protection of the fisheries resources; or

(B) the need for technical improvements, including increased fuel efficiency or improved safety.

(c) USED FISHING VESSELS AND FACILITIES.—The Secretary may not guarantee or make a commitment to guarantee an obligation under this chapter for the purchase of a used fishing vessel or used fishery facility unless the vessel or facility will be—

(1) reconstructed or reconditioned in the United States and will contribute to the development of the United States fishing industry; or

(2) used—

(A) in the harvesting of fish from an underused fishery; or

(B) for a purpose described in the definition of "fishery facility" in section 53701 of this title with respect to an underused fishery.

(d) INDEPENDENT ANALYSIS.—The Secretary or Administrator may make a determination that aspects of an application under this chapter require independent analysis to be conducted by third party experts due to risk factors associated with markets, technology, or financial structures. A third party independent analysis conducted under this subsection shall be performed by a private sector expert in assessing such risk factors who is selected by the Secretary or Administrator.

(e) ADDITIONAL EQUITY BECAUSE OF INCREASED RISKS.—Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, the Secretary or Administrator may make a determination that an application under this title requires additional equity because of increased risk factors associated with

markets, technology, or financial structures.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1608; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(D), (2)(D), (b)(3)(A), (4), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555, 3556; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(4), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 597, 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53708(a)	46 App.:1274(d)(1)(A).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1104A(d)(1), (2) [§1104A formerly §1104], as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 970; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §14, 53 Stat. 1187; Sept. 28, 1950, ch. 1093, §4, 64 Stat. 1078; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §2, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §4, 68 Stat. 1269; Pub. L. 86–123, §§1(3), 2, July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 269, 271; Pub. L. 86–127, §1(3), (4), July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 273; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–685, §§2, 3, Sept. 2, 1960, 74 Stat. 733; Pub. L. 90–341, June 15, 1968, 82 Stat. 180; Pub. L. 91–469, §§31, 32, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 910; Pub. L. 96–561, title II, §220(3)(C), Dec. 22, 1980, 94 Stat. 3293; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 97–35, title XVI, §1606(c), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 752; Pub. L. 98–595, §1(6), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3130; §1104 renumbered as §1104A, Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4115(f)(1), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 521.
53708(b)	46 App.:1274(d)(1)(B).	
53708(c)	46 App.:1274(d)(2).	
53708(d)	46 App.:1274(f)(2).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1104A(f)(2), (3), as added Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3526(2)(C), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1801.
53708(e)	46 App.:1274(f)(3).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), (2)(D), (b)(3)(A), (4). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(4)(A), (B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L.

109–163, §3507(a)(2)(D), (b)(3)(A), into this section by substituting in the heading, "Administrator" for "Secretary of Transportation" and, in introductory provisions, "Administrator may" for "Secretary of Transportation may", "Administrator finds" for "Secretary finds", and "Administrator shall" for "Secretary shall". See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(4)(C), (D), struck out "of Commerce" after "Secretary" in heading and the first time appearing in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(4)(D), struck out "of Commerce" after "Secretary".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(4)(E), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), (b)(4)(A), (C), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "The Secretary" and substituting "or financial structures. A third party independent analysis conducted under this subsection shall be performed by a private sector expert in assessing such risk factors who is selected by the Secretary or Administrator." for "financial structures, or other risk factors identified by the Secretary. Any independent analysis conducted under this subsection shall be performed by a party chosen by the Secretary." See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(4)(F), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), (b)(4)(B), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "chapter, the Secretary" and substituting "or financial structures" for "financial structures, or other risk factors identified by the Secretary". See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), (2)(D), (b)(3)(A), (4), which directed the amendment of section 1274(d)(1)(A), (f)(2), (3) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived in part, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment notes for subsecs. (a), (d), and (e) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53709. Amount of obligations

(a) IN GENERAL.—The principal of an obligation may not be guaranteed in an amount greater than the amount determined by multiplying the percentage applicable under subsection (b) by—

(1) the amount paid by or for the account of the obligor (as determined by the Secretary or Administrator, which determination shall be conclusive) for the construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of the vessel used as security for the guarantee; or

(2) if the obligor creates an escrow fund under section 53715 of this title, the actual cost of the vessel.

(b) LIMITATIONS ON AMOUNT BORROWED.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as otherwise provided, the principal amount of an obligation guaranteed under this chapter may not exceed 75 percent of the actual cost or depreciated actual cost, as determined by the Secretary or Administrator, of the vessel used as security for the guarantee.

(2) CERTAIN APPROVED VESSELS.—The principal amount may not exceed 87.5 percent of the actual cost or depreciated actual cost if—

(A) the size and speed of the vessel are approved by the Secretary or Administrator;

(B) the vessel is or would have been eligible for mortgage aid for construction under section 509 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, or would have been eligible except that the vessel was built with a construction-differential subsidy and the subsidy has been repaid; and

(C) the vessel is of a type described in that section for which the minimum down payment required by that section is 12.5 percent of the cost of the vessel.

(3) FISHING VESSELS AND FISHERY FACILITIES.—For a fishing vessel or fishery facility, the principal amount may not exceed 80 percent of the actual cost or depreciated actual cost. However, debt for the vessel or facility may not be placed through the Federal Financing Bank.

(4) OTEC.—For an ocean thermal energy conversion facility or plantship constructed without a

construction-differential subsidy, the principal amount may not exceed 87.5 percent of the actual cost or depreciated actual cost of the facility or plantship.

(c) SECURITY INVOLVING MULTIPLE VESSELS.—The principal amount of an obligation having more than one vessel as security for the guarantee may not exceed the sum of the principal amounts allowable for all the vessels.

(d) PROHIBITION ON UNIFORM PERCENTAGE LIMITATIONS.—The Secretary or Administrator may not establish a percentage under any provision of subsection (b) that is to be applied uniformly to all guarantees or commitments to guarantee made under that provision.

(e) PROHIBITION ON MINIMUM PRINCIPAL AMOUNT.—The Secretary may not establish, as a condition of eligibility for a guarantee under this chapter, a minimum principal amount for an obligation covering the reconstruction or reconditioning of a fishing vessel or fishery facility. For purposes of this chapter, the reconstruction or reconditioning of a fishing vessel or fishery facility does not include the routine minor repair or maintenance of the vessel or facility.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1609; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(C), (D), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(10)(B), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(f), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1972.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53709(a)	46 App.:1273(c).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1103(c), as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 969; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §1, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §3, 68 Stat. 1268; June 25, 1956, ch. 438, 70 Stat. 332; Aug. 7, 1956, ch. 1026, §1(a), (c), (d), 70 Stat. 1087; Pub. L. 91–469, §30, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 910; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166.
53709(b)	46 App.:1274(b)(2).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1104A(b)(2), (last 2 sentences), (c)(1) (last sentence) [§1104A formerly §1104], as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 970; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §14, 53 Stat. 1187; Sept. 28, 1950, ch. 1093, §4, 64 Stat. 1078; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §2, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §4, 68 Stat. 1269; Pub. L. 86–123, §§1(3), 2, July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 269, 271; Pub. L. 86–127, §1(3), (4), July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 273; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–685, §§2, 3, Sept. 2, 1960, 74 Stat. 733; Pub. L. 90–341, June 15, 1968, 82 Stat. 180; Pub. L. 91–469, §§31, 32,

		Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 910; Pub. L. 95–257, Apr. 7, 1978, 92 Stat. 194; Pub. L. 96–320, title II, §202(c), Aug. 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 992; Pub. L. 96–561, title II, §220(3)(B), Dec. 22, 1980, 94 Stat. 3293; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 99–509, title V, §5003, Oct. 21, 1986, 100 Stat. 1912; §1104 renumbered as §1104A, Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4115(f)(1), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 521; Pub. L. 103–160, div. A, title XIII, §1356(3)(B), (C), Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1813; Pub. L. 104–297, title III, §302(a)(5), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3615.
53709(c)	46 App.:1274(c)(1) (last sentence).	
53709(d)	46 App.:1274(i).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1104A(i), as added Pub. L. 103–160, div. A, title XIII, §1356(3)(E), Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1814.
53709(e)	46 App.:1274(b) (last 2 sentences).	

Subsections (a) and (d) are substituted for the source provisions for clarity and to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 509 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(B), is section 509 of act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, 49 Stat. 1985, which is set out as a note under section 53101 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2019—Subsec. (b)(3) to (6). Pub. L. 116–92 redesignated pars. (4) and (5) as (3) and (4), respectively, and struck out former par. (3) and par. (6) which read as follows:

"(3) BARGES.—For a barge constructed without a construction-differential subsidy or for which the subsidy has been repaid, the principal amount may not exceed 87.5 percent of the actual cost or depreciated actual cost.

"(6) ELIGIBLE EXPORT VESSELS.—For an eligible export vessel, the principal amount may not exceed 87.5 percent of the actual cost or depreciated actual cost."

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), (D). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsecs. (a)(1), (b)(1), (2)(A), (d). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), (D), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary". See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), (D), which directed the amendment of sections 1273(c) and 1274(b)(2), (c)(1), (i) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived in part, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsecs. (a)(1), (b)(1), (2)(A), (d) and

Historical and Revision notes above.

§53710. Contents of obligations

(a) IN GENERAL.—An obligation guaranteed under this chapter must—

(1) provide for payments by the obligor satisfactory to the Secretary or Administrator;

(2) provide for interest (exclusive of guarantee fees and other fees) at a rate not more than the annual rate on the unpaid principal that the Secretary or Administrator determines is reasonable, considering the range of interest rates prevailing in the private market for similar loans and the risks assumed by the Secretary or Administrator;

(3) have a maturity date satisfactory to the Secretary or Administrator, but—

(A) not more than 25 years after the date of delivery of the vessel used as security for the guarantee; or

(B) if the vessel has been reconstructed or reconditioned, not more than the later of—

(i) 25 years after the date of delivery of the vessel; or

(ii) the remaining years of useful life of the vessel as determined by the Secretary or Administrator; and

(4) provide, or a related agreement must provide, that if the vessel used as security for the guarantee is a delivered vessel, the vessel shall be—

(A) in class A–1, American Bureau of Shipping, or meet other standards acceptable to the Secretary or Administrator, with all required certificates, including marine inspection certificates of the Coast Guard, and with all outstanding requirements and recommendations necessary for class retention accomplished, unless the Secretary or Administrator permits a deferment of repairs necessary to meet these requirements;

(B) well equipped, in good repair, and in every respect seaworthy and fit for service; and

(C) documented under the laws of the United States for the term of the guarantee of the obligation or until the obligation is paid in full, whichever is sooner.

(b) PROVISIONS FOR CERTAIN PASSENGER VESSELS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—With the Administrator's approval, if the vessel used as security for the guarantee is a passenger vessel having the tonnage, speed, passenger accommodations, and other characteristics described in section 503 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, an obligation guaranteed under this chapter or a related agreement may provide that—

(A) the only recourse by the United States Government against the obligor for payments under the guarantee will be repossession of the vessel and assignment of insurance claims; and

(B) the obligor's liability for payments under the guarantee will be satisfied and discharged by the surrender of the vessel and all interest in the vessel to the Government in the condition described in paragraph (2).

(2) SURRENDER OF VESSEL.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—On surrender, the vessel must be—

(i) free and clear of all liens and encumbrances except the security interest conveyed to the Administrator under this chapter;

(ii) in class; and

(iii) in as good order and condition (ordinary wear and tear excepted) as when acquired by the obligor.

(B) COVERING DEFICIENCIES BY INSURANCE.—To the extent covered by insurance, a deficiency related to a requirement in subparagraph (A) may be satisfied by assignment of the obligor's insurance claims to the Government.

(c) OTHER PROVISIONS TO PROTECT SECURITY INTERESTS AND PROVIDE FOR THE

FINANCIAL STABILITY OF THE OBLIGOR.—An obligation guaranteed under this chapter and any related agreement must contain other provisions, which shall include—

(1) provisions for the protection of the security interests of the Government (including acceleration, assumption, and subrogation provisions and the issuance of notes by the obligor to the Secretary or Administrator), liens and releases of liens, payment of taxes; and

(2) any other provisions that the Secretary or Administrator may prescribe.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1610; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(D), (2)(C), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(5), (9)(A), (10)(B), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(g), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1972.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53710(a)(1)	46 App.:1274(b)(4).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1104A(b)(3)–(7), (h) [§1104A formerly §1104], as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 970; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §14, 53 Stat. 1187; Sept. 28, 1950, ch. 1093, §4, 64 Stat. 1078; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §2, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §4, 68 Stat. 1269; Pub. L. 86–123, §§1(3), 2, July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 269, 271; Pub. L. 86–127, §1(3), (4), July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 273; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–685, §§2, 3, Sept. 2, 1960, 74 Stat. 733; Pub. L. 90–341, June 15, 1968, 82 Stat. 180; Pub. L. 91–469, §§31, 32, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 911, 914; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 98–595, §1(7), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3131; §1104 renumbered as §1104A, Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4115(f)(1), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 521; Pub. L. 103–160, title XIII, §1356(3)(C), Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1813.
53710(a)(2)	46 App.:1274(b)(5).	
53710(a)(3)	46 App.:1274(b)(3).	
53710(a)(4)	46 App.:1274(b)(6).	
53710(b)	46 App.:1274(b)(7).	
53710(c)	46 App.:1274(h).	

During review of this bill, the American Bureau of Shipping, through counsel, explained that it disagrees with an existing interpretation by the Maritime Administration of language restated in subsection (a)(4)(A) of this section, and requested the Committee to clarify that this codification should not be construed as a ratification of that regulatory interpretation. The Committee therefore states that this codification should not be construed as an expression of any opinion whatsoever concerning any such administrative interpretation.

In subsection (a)(3), the words "subject to the provisions of paragraph (2) of subsection (c) of this section" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (a)(4)(B), the words "well equipped, in good repair, and in every respect seaworthy and fit for service" are substituted for "tight, stanch, strong, and well and sufficiently tackled, appareled, furnished, and equipped, and in every respect seaworthy and in good running condition and repair, and in all respects fit for service" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (b)(1), the reference to section 503 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, is substituted for the reference to "subchapter V of this chapter" because the relevant characteristics referred to in the text are contained in that section and because that section is part of the construction-differential subsidy program, which is not being restated.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 503 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), is section 503 of act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, 49 Stat. 1985, which is set out as a note under section 53101 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2019—Subsec. (a)(4)(A). Pub. L. 116–92, §3506(g)(1)(A)(i), struck out "or, in the case of an eligible export vessel, of the appropriate foreign authorities under a treaty, convention, or other international agreement to which the United States is a party" after "certificates of the Coast Guard".

Subsec. (a)(4)(C). Pub. L. 116–92, §3506(a)(1)(A)(ii)–(C), added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 116–92, §3506(g)(2), in heading, inserted "and Provide for the Financial Stability of the Obligor" after "Interests" and, in text, inserted "provisions, which shall include—" after "must contain other" and par. (1) designation before "provisions for the protection of", substituted "; and" for ", and other matters that the Secretary or Administrator may prescribe.", and added par. (2).

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), (2)(C). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" wherever appearing. See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(5), (9)(A), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(2)(C), into this section by substituting "Administrator's" for "Secretary's" in introductory provisions of par. (1) and "Administrator" for "Secretary" in par. (2)(A)(i). See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" in two places. See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), (2)(C), which directed the amendment of section 1274(b)(3)–(7), (h) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment notes for subsecs. (a), (b), and (c) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53711. Security interest

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary or Administrator may guarantee an obligation under this chapter only if the obligor conveys or agrees to convey to the Secretary or Administrator a security interest the Secretary or Administrator considers necessary to protect the interest of the United States Government.

(b) MULTIPLE VESSELS AND TYPES OF SECURITY.—The security interest may relate to more than one vessel and may consist of more than one type of security. If the security interest relates to more than one vessel, the obligation may have the latest maturity date allowable under section 53710(a)(3) of this title for any of the vessels used as security for the guarantee. However, the Secretary or Administrator may require such payments of principal prior to maturity, with respect

to all related obligations, as the Secretary or Administrator considers necessary to maintain adequate security for the guarantee.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1612; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(C), (D), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(10)(B), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53711(a)	46 App.:1273(b).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1103(b), as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 969; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §1, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §3, 68 Stat. 1268; June 25, 1956, ch. 438, 70 Stat. 332; Aug. 7, 1956, ch. 1026, §1(a), (c), (d), 70 Stat. 1087; Pub. L. 91–469, §30, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 910; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166.
53711(b)	46 App.:1274(c)(1) (1st sentence), (2).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1104A(c)(1) (1st sentence), (2) [§1104A formerly §1104], as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 970; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §14, 53 Stat. 1187; Sept. 28, 1950, ch. 1093, §4, 64 Stat. 1078; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §2, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §4, 68 Stat. 1269; Pub. L. 86–123, §§1(3), 2, July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 269, 271; Pub. L. 86–127, §1(3), (4), July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 273; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–685, §§2, 3, Sept. 2, 1960, 74 Stat. 733; Pub. L. 90–341, June 15, 1968, 82 Stat. 180; Pub. L. 91–469, §§31, 32, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 912; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; §1104 renumbered as §1104A, Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4115(f)(1), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 521.

In subsection (a), the words "a security interest the Secretary considers necessary" are substituted for "such security interest, which may include a mortgage or mortgages on a vessel or vessels, as the Secretary may reasonably require" to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), (D). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), (D), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" wherever appearing. See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), (D), which directed the amendment of sections 1273(b) and 1274(c) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived in part, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment notes and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53712. Monitoring financial condition and operations of obligor

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary or Administrator shall monitor the financial condition and operations of the obligor on a regular basis during the term of the guarantee. The Secretary or Administrator shall document the results of the monitoring on an annual or quarterly basis depending on the condition of the obligor. If the Secretary or Administrator determines that the financial condition of the obligor warrants additional protections to the Secretary or Administrator, the Secretary or Administrator shall take appropriate action under subsection (b). If the Secretary or Administrator determines that the financial condition of the obligor jeopardizes its continued ability to perform its responsibilities in connection with the guarantee of an obligation by the Secretary or Administrator, the Secretary or Administrator shall make an immediate determination whether default should take place and whether further measures described in subsection (b) should be taken to protect the interests of the Secretary or Administrator while ensuring that program objectives are met.

(b) CONTRACT PROVISIONS TO PROTECT SECRETARY OR ADMINISTRATOR.—The Secretary or Administrator shall include provisions in a loan agreement with an obligor that provides additional authority to the Secretary or Administrator to take action to limit potential losses in connection with a defaulted loan or a loan that is in jeopardy due to the deteriorating financial condition of the obligor. If the Secretary or Administrator has waived a requirement under section 53707(d) of this title, the loan agreement shall include requirements for additional payments, collateral, or equity contributions to meet the waived requirement upon the occurrence of verifiable conditions indicating that the obligor's financial condition enables the obligor to meet the waived requirement.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1612; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(D), (b)(6), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555, 3556; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(6), (10)(B), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53712(a)	46 App.:1274(k).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1104A(k), (m), as added Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3523, Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1800.
53712(b)	46 App.:1274(m).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), (b)(6). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(6), (10)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163,

§3507(a)(1)(D), (b)(6), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" wherever appearing and substituting "If the Secretary or Administrator has waived a requirement under section 53707(d) of this title, the loan agreement shall include requirements for additional payments, collateral, or equity contributions to meet the waived requirement upon the occurrence of verifiable conditions indicating that the obligor's financial condition enables the obligor to meet the waived requirement." for "These provisions include requirements for additional collateral or greater equity contributions that are effective upon the occurrence of verifiable conditions relating to the obligor's financial condition or the status of the vessel or shipyard project." See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), (b)(6), which directed the amendment of section 1274(k), (m) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment notes and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53713. Administrative fees

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary or Administrator shall charge and collect from the obligor fees the Secretary or Administrator considers reasonable for processing the application and monitoring the loan guarantee, including for—

(1) investigating an application for a guarantee;

(2) appraising property offered as security for a guarantee;

(3) issuing a commitment;

(4) providing services related to an escrow fund under section 53715 of this title or a deposit fund under section 53716 of this title;

(5) inspecting property during construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning; and

(6) monitoring and providing services related to the obligor's compliance with any terms related to the obligations, the guarantee, or maintenance of the Secretary or Administrator's security interests under this chapter.

(b) TOTAL FEE LIMITATION.—The total fees under subsection (a) may not exceed 0.5 percent of the original principal amount of the obligations to be guaranteed.

(c) FEES FOR INDEPENDENT ANALYSIS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary or Administrator may charge and collect fees to cover the costs of independent analysis under section 53703(c) of this title. Notwithstanding section 3302 of title 31, any fee collected under this subsection shall—

(A) be credited as an offsetting collection to the account that finances the administration of the loan guarantee program;

(B) be available for expenditure only to pay the costs of activities and services for which the fee is imposed; and

(C) remain available until expended.

(2) FEE LIMITATION INAPPLICABLE.—Fees collected under this subsection are not subject to the limitation of subsection (b).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1612; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(D), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(10)(B), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(h), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1973.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53713(a)	46 App.:1274(f)(1) (words before proviso).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1104A(f)(1), (4) [§1104A formerly §1104], as added June 23, 1938, ch.

		600, §46, 52 Stat. 970; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §14, 53 Stat. 1187; Sept. 28, 1950, ch. 1093, §4, 64 Stat. 1078; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §2, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §4, 68 Stat. 1269; Pub. L. 86–123, §§1(3), 2, July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 269, 271; Pub. L. 86–127, §1(3), (4), July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 273; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–685, §§2, 3, Sept. 2, 1960, 74 Stat. 733; Pub. L. 90–341, June 15, 1968, 82 Stat. 180; Pub. L. 91–469, §§31, 32, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 913; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; §1104 renumbered as §1104A, Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4115(f)(1), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 521; Pub. L. 107–314, title XXXV, §3503(2), Dec. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 2754; Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3526(2), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1801.
53713(b)	46 App.:1274(f)(1) (proviso).	
53713(c)	46 App.:1274(f)(4).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2019—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–92, §3506(h)(1)(A), substituted "reasonable for processing the application and monitoring the loan guarantee, including for—" for "reasonable for—" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 116–92, §3506(h)(1)(B), substituted "or a deposit fund under section 53716 of this title;" for "; and".

Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 116–92, §3506(h)(1)(C), (D), added par. (6).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 116–92, §3506(h)(2)(B)–(D), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and inserted heading, redesignated former pars. (1) to (3) as subpars. (A) to (C), respectively, of par. (1) and realigned margins, and added par. (2).

Pub. L. 116–92, §3506(h)(2)(A), which directed amendment of par. (1) of subsec. (c) by substituting "under section 53703(c) of this title" for "under section 53708(d) of this title", was executed by making the substitution in introductory provisions of subsec. (c) to reflect the probable intent of Congress and the subsequent designation of the provisions of subsec. (c) as subsec. (c)(1). See above.

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsecs. (a), (c). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), into this section, by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" wherever appearing in introductory provisions. See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), which directed the amendment of section 1274(f) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsecs. (a), (c) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53714. Guarantee fees

(a) REGULATIONS.—Subject to this section, the Secretary or Administrator shall prescribe regulations to assess a fee for guaranteeing an obligation under this chapter.

(b) COMPUTATION OF FEE.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The amount of the fee for a guarantee under this chapter shall be equal to the sum of the amounts determined under paragraph (2) for the years in which the guarantee is in effect.

(2) PRESENT VALUE FOR EACH YEAR.—The amount referred to in paragraph (1) for a year in which the guarantee is in effect is the present value of the amount calculated under paragraph (3). To determine the present value, the Secretary or Administrator shall apply a discount rate determined by the Secretary of the Treasury, considering current market yields on outstanding obligations of the United States Government having periods to maturity comparable to the period to maturity for the guaranteed obligation.

(3) CALCULATION OF AMOUNT.—The amount referred to in paragraph (2) shall be calculated by multiplying—

(A) the estimated average unpaid principal amount of the obligation that will be outstanding during the year (excluding the average amount, other than interest, on deposit during the year in an escrow fund under section 53715 of this title); by

(B) the fee rate set under paragraph (4).

(4) SETTING FEE RATES.—To set the fee rate referred to in paragraph (3)(B), the Secretary or Administrator shall establish a formula that—

(A) takes into account the security provided for the guaranteed obligation; and

(B) is a sliding scale based on the creditworthiness of the obligor, using—

(i) the lowest allowable rate under paragraph (5) for the most creditworthy obligors; and

(ii) the highest allowable rate under paragraph (5) for the least creditworthy obligors.

(5) PERMISSIBLE RANGE OF RATES.—The fee rate set under paragraph (4) shall be—

(A) for a delivered vessel or equipment, at least 0.5 percent and not more than 1 percent; and

(B) for a vessel to be constructed, reconstructed, or reconditioned or equipment to be delivered, at least 0.25 percent and not more than 0.5 percent.

(c) WHEN FEE COLLECTED.—A fee for the guarantee of an obligation under this chapter shall be collected not later than the date on which an amount is first paid on the obligation.

(d) FINANCING THE FEE.—A fee paid under this section is eligible to be financed under this chapter and shall be included in the actual cost of the obligation guaranteed.

(e) NOT REFUNDABLE.—A fee paid under this section is not refundable. However, an obligor shall receive credit for the amount paid for the remaining term of the obligation if the obligation is refinanced and guaranteed under this chapter after the refinancing.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1613; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(D), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(10)(B), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53714(a)	46 App.:1274(e)(1).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1104A(e) [§1104A formerly §1104], as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 970; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §14, 53 Stat. 1187; Sept. 28, 1950, ch. 1093, §4, 64 Stat. 1078;

		Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §2, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §4, 68 Stat. 1269; Pub. L. 86–123, §§1(3), 2, July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 269, 271; Pub. L. 86–127, §1(3), (4), July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 273; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–685, §§2, 3, Sept. 2, 1960, 74 Stat. 733; Pub. L. 90–341, June 15, 1968, 82 Stat. 180; Pub. L. 91–469, §§31, 32, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 913; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 98–595, §1(12), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3131; §1104 renumbered as §1104A, Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4115(f)(1), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 521; Pub. L. 104–239, §13(c), Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3136.
53714(b)	46 App.:1274(e)(2).	
53714(c)	46 App.:1274(e)(3).	
53714(d)	46 App.:1274(e)(5).	
53714(e)	46 App.:1274(e)(4).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsecs. (a), (b)(2), (4). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary", except the second place appearing in subsec. (b)(2). See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(D), which directed the amendment of section 1274(e) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsecs. (a), (b)(2), (4) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53715. Escrow fund

(a) IN GENERAL.—If the proceeds of an obligation guaranteed under this chapter are to be used to finance the construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of a vessel that will serve as security for a guarantee under this chapter, the Secretary or Administrator may accept and hold in escrow, under an escrow agreement with the obligor, a portion of the proceeds of all obligations guaranteed under this chapter whose proceeds are to be so used which is equal to—

(1) the excess of—

(A) the principal amount of all obligations whose proceeds are to be so used; over

(B) 75 percent or 87.5 percent, whichever is applicable under section 53709(b) of this title, of the amount paid by or for the account of the obligor for the construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of the vessel; plus

(2) any interest the Secretary or Administrator may require on the amount described in paragraph (1).

(b) SECURITY INVOLVING BOTH UNCOMPLETED AND DELIVERED VESSELS.—If the security for the guarantee of an obligation relates both to a vessel to be constructed, reconstructed, or reconditioned and to a delivered vessel, the principal amount of the obligation shall be prorated for purposes of subsection (a) under regulations prescribed by the Secretary or Administrator.

(c) DISBURSEMENT BEFORE TERMINATION OF AGREEMENT.—

(1) PURPOSES.—The Secretary or Administrator shall disburse amounts in the escrow fund, as specified in the escrow agreement, to—

(A) pay amounts the obligor is obligated to pay for—

(i) the construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of a vessel used as security for the guarantee; and

(ii) interest on the obligations;

(B) redeem the obligations under a refinancing guaranteed under this chapter; and

(C) pay any excess interest deposits to the obligor at times provided for in the escrow agreement.

(2) MANNER OF PAYMENT.—If a payment becomes due under the guarantee before the termination of the escrow agreement, the amount in the escrow fund at the time the payment becomes due, including realized income not yet paid to the obligor, shall be paid into the appropriate account under section 53717 of this title. The amount shall be credited against amounts due or to become due from the obligor to the Secretary or Administrator on the guaranteed obligations or, to the extent not so required, be paid to the obligor.

(d) PAYMENTS REQUIRED BEFORE DISBURSEMENT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—No disbursement shall be made under subsection (c) to any person until the total amount paid by or for the account of the obligor from sources other than the proceeds of the obligation equals at least 25 percent or 12.5 percent, whichever is applicable under section 53709(b) of this title, of the aggregate actual cost of the vessel, as previously approved by the Secretary or Administrator. If the aggregate actual cost of the vessel has increased since the Secretary's or Administrator's initial approval or if it increases after the first disbursement is permitted under this subsection, then no further disbursements shall be made under subsection (c) until the total amount paid by or for the account of the obligor from sources other than the proceeds of the obligation equals at least 25 percent or 12.5 percent, as applicable, of the increase, as determined by the Secretary or Administrator, in the aggregate actual cost of the vessel. This paragraph does not require the Secretary or Administrator to consent to finance any increase in actual cost unless the Secretary or Administrator determines that such an increase in the obligation meets all the terms and conditions of this chapter or other applicable law.

(2) DOCUMENTED PROOF OF PROGRESS REQUIREMENT.—The Secretary or Administrator shall, by regulation, establish a transparent, independent, and risk-based process for verifying and documenting the progress of projects under construction before disbursing guaranteed loan funds. At a minimum, the process shall require documented proof of progress in connection with the construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of a vessel or vessels before disbursements are made from the escrow fund. The Secretary or Administrator may require that the obligor provide a certificate from an independent party certifying that the requisite progress in construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning has taken place.

(e) DISBURSEMENT ON TERMINATION OF AGREEMENT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—If a payment has not become due under the guarantee before the termination of the escrow agreement, the balance of the escrow fund at the time of termination shall be disbursed to—

(A) prepay the excess of—

(i) the principal amount of all obligations whose proceeds are to be used to finance the construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of the vessel used or to be used as security for the guarantee; over

(ii) 75 percent or 87.5 percent, whichever is applicable under section 53709(b) of this title, of the actual cost of the vessel to the extent paid; and

(B) pay interest on that prepaid amount of principal.

(2) REMAINING BALANCE.—Any remaining balance of the escrow fund shall be paid to the obligor.

(f) INVESTMENT.—The Secretary or Administrator may invest and reinvest any part of an escrow fund in obligations of the United States Government with maturities such that the escrow fund will be available as required for purposes of the escrow agreement. Investment income shall be paid to the obligor when received.

(g) TERMS TO PROTECT GOVERNMENT.—The escrow agreement shall contain other terms the Secretary or Administrator considers necessary to protect fully the interests of the Government.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1614; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(H), (3), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(10)(B), (11), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53715(a)	46 App.:1279a(a) (less proviso).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1108, formerly §1111, as added Pub. L. 86–127, §1(2), July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 272; renumbered Pub. L. 92–507, §5, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 916; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3521(a), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1799.
53715(b)	46 App.:1279a(a) (proviso).	
53715(c)	46 App.:1279a(b).	
53715(d)	46 App.:1279a(g).	
53715(e)	46 App.:1279a(c).	
53715(f)	46 App.:1279a(d), (e).	
53715(g)	46 App.:1279a(f).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(H), (3). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), (11), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(H), (3), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" wherever appearing and "or Administrator's" after "Secretary's" in subsec. (d)(1). See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(H), (3), which directed the amendment of section 1279a of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See

2008 Amendment notes and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53716. Deposit fund

(a) IN GENERAL.—There is a deposit fund in the Treasury for purposes of this section. The Secretary or Administrator, in accordance with an agreement under subsection (b), may deposit into and hold in the fund cash belonging to an obligor to serve as collateral for a guarantee made under this chapter with respect to the obligor.

(b) AGREEMENT.—The Secretary or Administrator and an obligor shall make a reserve fund or other collateral account agreement to govern the deposit, withdrawal, retention, use, and reinvestment of cash of the obligor held in the fund. The agreement shall contain—

(1) terms and conditions required by this section;

(2) terms that grant to the United States Government a security interest in all amounts deposited into the fund; and

(3) any additional terms considered by the Secretary or Administrator to be necessary to protect fully the interests of the Government.

(c) INVESTMENT.—The Secretary or Administrator may invest and reinvest any part of the amounts in the fund in obligations of the Government with maturities such that amounts in the fund will be available as required for purposes of the agreement under subsection (b). Cash balances in the fund in excess of current requirements shall be maintained in a form of uninvested funds, and the Secretary of the Treasury shall pay interest on these funds.

(d) WITHDRAWALS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Cash deposited into the fund may not be withdrawn without the consent of the Secretary or Administrator.

(2) USE OF INCOME.—Subject to paragraph (3), the Secretary or Administrator may pay any income earned on cash of an obligor deposited into the fund in accordance with the agreement with the obligor under subsection (b).

(3) RETENTION AGAINST DEFAULT.—The Secretary or Administrator may retain and offset any or all of the cash of an obligor in the fund, and any income realized thereon, as part of the Secretary's or Administrator's recovery against the obligor in case of a default by the obligor on an obligation.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1616; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(H), (3), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(10)(B), (11), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53716	46 App.:1279b.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1109, as added Pub. L. 107–107, title XXXV, §3503, Dec. 28, 2001, 115 Stat. 1392.

In subsection (a), the word "established" is omitted for consistency with other codified titles of the United States Code.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(H), (3). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), (11), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163,

§3507(a)(1)(H), (3), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" wherever appearing, except the second place appearing in subsec. (c), and inserting "or Administrator's" after "Secretary's" in subsec. (d)(3). See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(H), (3), which directed the amendment of section 1279b of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment notes and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53717. Management of funds in the Treasury

(a) DEFINITION.—In this section, the term "FCRA" means the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990 (2 U.S.C. 661 et seq.).

(b) LOAN GUARANTEES BY ADMINISTRATOR.—

(1) WHEN NOT SUBJECT TO FCRA.—The Administrator shall account for payments and disbursements involving obligations guaranteed under this chapter and not subject to FCRA in an account in the Treasury entitled the Federal Ship Financing Fund Liquidating Account (a liquidating account as defined in FCRA).

(2) WHEN SUBJECT TO FCRA.—The Administrator shall account for payments and disbursements involving obligations guaranteed under this chapter and subject to FCRA in a separate account in the Treasury entitled the Federal Ship Financing Guaranteed Loan Financing Account (a financing account as defined in FCRA).

(c) LOAN GUARANTEES BY SECRETARY.—

(1) WHEN NOT SUBJECT TO FCRA.—The Secretary shall account for payments and disbursements involving obligations guaranteed under this chapter and not subject to FCRA in a separate account in the Treasury established for this purpose.

(2) WHEN SUBJECT TO FCRA.—The Secretary shall account for payments and disbursements involving obligations guaranteed under this chapter and subject to FCRA in a separate account in the Treasury established for this purpose.

(d) DIRECT LOANS BY SECRETARY.—The Secretary shall account for payments and disbursements involving direct loans made under this chapter in a separate account in the Treasury established for this purpose.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1616; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(B), (D), (c)(2), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555, 3556; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(7), (9)(B), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53717	46 App.:1272.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1102, as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 969; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §2, 68 Stat. 1268; Pub. L. 86–123, §1(2), July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 269; Pub. L. 92–507, §2, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 910; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166.
	46 App.:1274(g).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1104A(g) [§1104A formerly §1104], as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 970; Aug. 4, 1939,

		ch. 417, §14, 53 Stat. 1187; Sept. 28, 1950, ch. 1093, §4, 64 Stat. 1078; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §2, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §4, 68 Stat. 1269; Pub. L. 86–123, §§1(3), 2, July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 269, 271; Pub. L. 86–127, §1(3), (4), July 31, 1959, 73 Stat. 273; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 86–685, §§2, 3, Sept. 2, 1960, 74 Stat. 733; Pub. L. 90–341, June 15, 1968, 82 Stat. 180; Pub. L. 91–469, §§31, 32, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 914; Pub. L. 96–561, title II, §220(3)(D), Dec. 22, 1980, 94 Stat. 3294; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 97–35, title XVI, §1606(d), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 752; §1104 renumbered as §1104A, Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4115(f)(1), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 521.
	46 App.:1280.	Pub. L. 85–469, title I, §101 (par. under heading "Federal Ship Mortgage Insurance Fund"), June 25, 1958, 72 Stat. 231; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(137), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166.

The Federal Ship Financing Fund which had been created by 46 App. U.S.C. 1272 is obsolete as a result of the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990 (2 U.S.C. 661 et seq.). This section codifies the current requirements and practices for the management of funds under this chapter, based on the requirements of that Act.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990, referred to in subsec. (a), is title V of Pub. L. 93–344, as added by Pub. L. 101–508, title XIII, §13201(a), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–609, which is classified generally to subchapter III (§661 et seq.) of chapter 17A of Title 2, The Congress. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 621 of Title 2 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(B), (D), (c)(2). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(9)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(B), (D), (c)(2), into this section by substituting "Administrator" for "Secretary of Transportation" wherever appearing in heading and text. See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(7), struck out "of Commerce" after "Secretary" wherever appearing in headings and text.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(B), (D), (c)(2), which directed the amendment of sections 1272, 1274(g), and 1280 of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsec. (b) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53718. Annual report to Congress

The Administrator shall report to Congress annually on the loan guarantee program under this chapter. Each report shall include—

(1) the size, in dollars, of the portfolio of loans guaranteed;
(2) the size, in dollars, of projects in the portfolio facing financial difficulties;
(3) the number and type of projects covered;
(4) a profile of pending loan applications;
(5) the amount of appropriations available for new guarantees;
(6) a profile of each project approved since the last report; and
(7) a profile of any defaults since the last report.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1617; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(c)(3), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3556; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(9)(C), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53718	46 App.:1280b.	Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3527, Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1802.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(c)(3). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(9)(C), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(c)(3), into this section by substituting "Administrator" for "Secretary of Transportation" in introductory provisions. See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(c)(3), which directed the amendment of section 1280b of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment notes and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53719. Best practices

The Secretary or Administrator shall ensure that all standard documents and agreements that relate to loan guarantees made pursuant to this chapter are reviewed and updated every four years to ensure that such documents and agreements meet the current commercial best practices to the extent permitted by law.

(Added Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(i)(1), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1973.)

SUBCHAPTER II—DEFAULT PROVISIONS

§53721. Rights of obligee

(a) DEMANDS BY OBLIGEES.—Except as provided in subsection (c), if an obligor has continued in default for 30 days in the payment of principal or interest on an obligation guaranteed under this chapter, the obligee or the obligee's agent may demand that the Secretary or Administrator

pay the unpaid principal amount of the obligation and the unpaid interest on the obligation to the date of payment. The demand must be made within the earlier of—

(1) a period that may be specified in the guarantee or a related agreement; or

(2) 90 days from the date of the default.

(b) PAYMENTS BY SECRETARY OR ADMINISTRATOR.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—If a demand is made under subsection (a), the Secretary or Administrator shall pay to the obligee or the obligee's agent the unpaid principal amount of the obligation and the unpaid interest on the obligation to the date of payment. Payment shall be made within the earlier of—

(A) a period that may be specified in the guarantee or a related agreement; or

(B) 30 days from the date of the demand.

(2) IF NO EXISTING DEFAULT.—The Secretary or Administrator is not required to make payment under this subsection if, within the appropriate period under paragraph (1), the Secretary or Administrator finds that the obligor was not in default or that the default was remedied before the demand.

(c) ASSUMPTION OF RIGHTS AND OBLIGATIONS BEFORE DEMAND.—An obligee or the obligee's agent may not demand payment under this section if the Secretary or Administrator, before the demand and on terms that may be provided in the obligation or a related agreement, has assumed the obligor's rights and duties under the obligation and any related agreement and made any payment in default. However, the guarantee of the obligation remains in effect after the Secretary's or Administrator's assumption.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1617; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(C), (F), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(10)(B), (11), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53721(a)	46 App.:1275(a) (1st sentence less parenthetical).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1105(a), as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 971; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §3, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §5, 68 Stat. 1272; Aug. 7, 1956, ch. 1026, §1(e)–(g), 70 Stat. 1087; Pub. L. 85–520, July 15, 1958, 72 Stat. 358; Pub. L. 91–469, §33, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 914; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 98–595, §1(8), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3131.
53721(b)(1)	46 App.:1275(a) (last sentence less proviso).	
53721(b)(2)	46 App.:1275(a) (last sentence proviso).	
53721(c)	46 App.:1273(e) (last sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1103(e) (last sentence), as added Pub. L. 98–595, §1(1), Oct. 30,

	46 App.:1275(a) (1st sentence parenthetical).	1984, 98 Stat. 3130.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), (F). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), (11), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), (F), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" wherever appearing and "or Administrator's" after "Secretary's" in subsec. (c). See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), (F), which directed the amendment of sections 1273(e) and 1275(a) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment notes and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53722. Actions by Secretary or Administrator

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—On default under an obligation or related agreement between the Secretary or Administrator and the obligor, the Secretary or Administrator, on terms that may be provided in the obligation or agreement, may—

(1) assume the obligor's rights and duties under the obligation or agreement, make any payment in default, and notify the obligee or the obligee's agent of the default and the Secretary's or Administrator's assumption; or

(2) notify the obligee or the obligee's agent of the default.

(b) DEMANDS BY OBLIGEES.—

(1) DEMAND.—If the Secretary or Administrator proceeds under subsection (a)(2), the obligee or the obligee's agent may demand that the Secretary or Administrator pay the unpaid principal amount of the obligation and the unpaid interest on the obligation. The demand must be made within the earlier of—

(A) a period that may be specified in the guarantee or a related agreement; or

(B) 60 days from the date of the Secretary's or Administrator's notice.

(2) PAYMENT.—If a demand is made under paragraph (1), the Secretary or Administrator shall pay to the obligee or the obligee's agent the unpaid principal amount of the obligation and the unpaid interest on the obligation to the date of payment. Payment shall be made within the earlier of—

(A) a period that may be specified in the guarantee or a related agreement; or

(B) 30 days from the date of the demand.

(c) CONTINUED EFFECT OF GUARANTEE.—A guarantee of an obligation remains in effect after an assumption of the obligation by the Secretary or Administrator.

(d) ADDITIONAL RESPONSES.—If there is a default on an obligation, the Secretary or Administrator shall conduct operations under this chapter in a manner that—

(1) maximizes the net present value return from the sale or disposition of assets associated with the obligation, including prompt referral to the Attorney General for collection as appropriate;

(2) minimizes the amount of any loss realized in the resolution of the guarantee;

(3) ensures adequate competition and fair and consistent treatment of offerors; and

(4) requires appraisal of assets by an independent appraiser.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1618; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV,

§3507(a)(1)(C), (F), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(10)(B), (11), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53722(a), (b)	46 App.:1275(b).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1105(b), as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 971; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §3, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §5, 68 Stat. 1272; Aug. 7, 1956, ch. 1026, §1(e)–(g), 70 Stat. 1087; Pub. L. 85–520, July 15, 1958, 72 Stat. 358; Pub. L. 91–469, §33, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 914; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 98–595, §1(9), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3131.
53722(c)	46 App.:1273(e) (last sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1103(e) (last sentence), as added Pub. L. 98–595, §1(1), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3130.
53722(d)	46 App.:1275(f).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1105(f), as added Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3524, Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1801.

In subsection (a), before paragraph (1), the words "an obligation or related agreement" are substituted for "a mortgage, loan agreement, or other security agreement" for consistency in the revised chapter.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), (F). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, 3522(a)(10)(B), (11), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), (F), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" in section catchline and wherever appearing in subsecs. (a) to (c) and "or Administrator's" after "Secretary's" in subsecs. (a)(1) and (b)(1)(B). See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), inserted "or Administrator" after "Secretary" in introductory provisions.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(C), (F), which directed the amendment of sections 1273(e) and 1275(b) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived in part, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment notes and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53723. Payments by Secretary or Administrator and issuance of obligations

(a) CASH PAYMENT.—Amounts required to be paid by the Secretary or Administrator under section 53721 or 53722 of this title shall be paid in cash.

(b) ISSUANCE OF OBLIGATIONS.—If amounts in the appropriate account under section 53717

of this title are not sufficient to make a payment required under section 53721 or 53722 of this title, the Secretary or Administrator may issue obligations to the Secretary of the Treasury. The Secretary or Administrator, with the approval of the Secretary of the Treasury, shall prescribe the form, denomination, maturity, and other terms (except the interest rate) of the obligations. The Secretary of the Treasury shall set the interest rate for the obligations, considering the current average market yield on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States Government of comparable maturities during the month before the obligations are issued.

(c) PURCHASE OF OBLIGATIONS.—The Secretary of the Treasury shall purchase the obligations issued under this section. To purchase the obligations, the Secretary of the Treasury may use as a public debt transaction the proceeds from the sale of securities issued under chapter 31 of title 31. The purposes for which securities may be issued under that chapter are extended to include the purchase of obligations under this subsection. The Secretary of the Treasury may sell obligations purchased under this section. A redemption, purchase, or sale of the obligations by the Secretary of the Treasury is a public debt transaction of the Government.

(d) DEPOSITS AND REDEMPTIONS.—The Secretary or Administrator shall deposit amounts borrowed under this section in the appropriate account under section 53717 of this title and make redemptions of the obligations from that account.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1618; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(G), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(10)(B), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53723	46 App.:1275(d).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1105(d), as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 972; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §3, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §5, 68 Stat. 1272; Aug. 7, 1956, ch. 1026, §1(e)–(g), 70 Stat. 1087; Pub. L. 85–520, July 15, 1958, 72 Stat. 358; Pub. L. 91–469, §33, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 914; Pub. L. 96–561, title II, §220(4), Dec. 22, 1980, 94 Stat. 3294; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 97–35, title XVI, §1606(e), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 752.

In subsections (b) and (d), the words "appropriate account under section 53717 of this title" are substituted for "Federal Ship Financing Fund" because the accounts under section 53717 replace the Federal Ship Financing Fund. See the explanation for section 53717.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(G). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsecs. (a), (b), (d). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(G), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" in section catchline and wherever appearing in text, except when followed by "of the Treasury". See 2006 Amendment

note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(G), which directed the amendment of section 1275(d) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsecs. (a), (b), (d) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53724. Rights to secured property

(a) ACQUISITION OF SECURITY RIGHTS.—When the Secretary or Administrator makes a payment on, or assumes, an obligation under section 53721 or 53722 of this title, the Secretary or Administrator acquires the rights under the security agreement with the obligor in the security held by the Secretary or Administrator to guarantee the obligation.

(b) USE AND DISPOSITION OF SECURED PROPERTY.—Notwithstanding any other law relating to the acquisition, handling, or disposal of property by the United States Government, the Secretary or Administrator has the right, in the Secretary's or Administrator's discretion, to complete, reconstruct, recondition, renovate, repair, maintain, operate, charter, or sell any property acquired under a security agreement with an obligor, or to place a vessel so acquired in the National Defense Reserve Fleet. The terms of a sale under this subsection shall be as approved by the Secretary or Administrator.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1619; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(F), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(10)(B), (11), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53724	46 App.:1275(c).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1105(c), as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 971; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §3, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §5, 68 Stat. 1272; Aug. 7, 1956, ch. 1026, §1(e)–(g), 70 Stat. 1087; Pub. L. 85–520, July 15, 1958, 72 Stat. 358; Pub. L. 91–469, §33, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 914; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 98–595, §1(10), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3131.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(F). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), (11), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(F), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" wherever appearing and, in subsec. (b), "or Administrator's" after "Secretary's". See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(F), which directed the amendment of section 1275(c) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See

2008 Amendment notes and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53725. Actions against obligor

(a) IN GENERAL.—For a default under a guaranteed obligation or related agreement, the Secretary or Administrator may take any action against the obligor or another liable party that the Secretary or Administrator considers necessary to protect the interests of the United States Government. A civil action may be brought in the name of the United States or the obligee. The obligee shall make available to the Government all records and evidence necessary to prosecute the action.

(b) TITLE, POSSESSION, AND PURCHASE.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary or Administrator may—

(A) accept a conveyance of title to and possession of property from the obligor or another party liable to the Secretary or Administrator; and

(B) purchase the property for an amount not greater than the unpaid principal amount of the obligation and interest thereon.

(2) PAYMENT OF EXCESS.—If, through the sale of property, the Secretary or Administrator receives an amount of cash greater than the unpaid principal amount of the obligation, the unpaid interest on the obligation, and the expenses of collecting those amounts, the Secretary or Administrator shall pay the excess to the obligor.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1619; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(F), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(10)(B), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53725	46 App.:1275(e).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1105(e), as added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §46, 52 Stat. 971; Aug. 15, 1953, ch. 513, §3, 67 Stat. 626; Sept. 3, 1954, ch. 1265, §5, 68 Stat. 1272; Aug. 7, 1956, ch. 1026, §1(e)–(g), 70 Stat. 1087; Pub. L. 85–520, July 15, 1958, 72 Stat. 358; Pub. L. 91–469, §33, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; restated Pub. L. 92–507, §3, Oct. 19, 1972, 86 Stat. 915; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 98–595, §1(11), Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 3131.

In subsection (a), the words "may take any action" are substituted for "shall take such action . . . that, in his discretion, may be required" for clarity and to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(F). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(F), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" wherever appearing. See

2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(F), which directed the amendment of section 1275(e) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment notes and Historical and Revision notes above.

SUBCHAPTER III—PARTICULAR PROJECTS

§53731. Commercial demonstration ocean thermal energy conversion facilities and plantships

(a) IN GENERAL.—Under subchapter I of this chapter, the Administrator may guarantee or make a commitment to guarantee the payment of the principal of and interest on an obligation that aids in financing (including reimbursement of an obligor for expenditures previously made for) the construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of a commercial demonstration ocean thermal energy conversion facility or plantship. This section may be used to guarantee obligations for a total of not more than 5 separate facilities and plantships or a demonstrated 400 megawatt capacity, whichever comes first.

(b) APPLICABILITY OF OTHER PROVISIONS.—Except as otherwise provided in this section, a guarantee or commitment to guarantee under this section is subject to all the provisions applicable to a guarantee or commitment to guarantee under subchapter I of this chapter.

(c) ECONOMIC SOUNDNESS.—The required determination of economic soundness under section 53708 of this title applies to a guarantee or commitment to guarantee for that portion of a facility or plantship not to be supported with appropriated Federal funds.

(d) REASONABLENESS OF RISK.—A guarantee or commitment to guarantee may not be made under this section unless the Secretary of Energy, in consultation with the Administrator, certifies to the Administrator that, for the facility or plantship for which the guarantee or commitment to guarantee is sought, there is sufficient guarantee of performance and payment to lower the risk to the United States Government to a reasonable level. In deciding whether to issue such a certification, the Secretary of Energy shall consider—

(1) the successful demonstration of the technology to be used in the facility at a scale sufficient to establish the likelihood of technical and economic viability in the proposed market; and

(2) the need of the United States to develop new and renewable sources of energy and the benefits to be realized from the construction and successful operation of the facility or plantship.

(e) AMOUNT OF OBLIGATION.—The total principal amount of an obligation guaranteed under this section may not exceed 87.5 percent of—

(1) the actual cost or depreciated actual cost of the facility or plantship; or

(2) if the facility or plantship is supported with appropriated Federal funds, the total principal amount of that portion of the actual cost or depreciated actual cost for which the obligor is obligated to secure financing under the agreement between the obligor and the Department of Energy or other Federal agency.

(f) OTEC DEMONSTRATION FUND.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—There is a special subaccount, known as the OTEC Demonstration Fund, in the account established under section 53717(b)(1) of this title.

(2) USE AND OPERATION.—The OTEC Demonstration Fund shall be used for obligation guarantees authorized under this section that do not qualify under subchapter I of this chapter. Except as otherwise provided in this section, the OTEC Demonstration Fund shall be operated in the same manner as the parent account. However—

(A) amounts received by the Administrator under subchapter I of this chapter related to

guarantees or commitments to guarantee made under this section shall be deposited only in the OTEC Demonstration Fund; and

(B) when obligations issued by the Administrator under section 53723 of this title related to the OTEC Demonstration Fund are outstanding, any amount received by the Administrator under subchapter I of this chapter related to ocean thermal energy conversion facilities or plantships shall be deposited in the OTEC Demonstration Fund.

(3) TRANSFERS.—Assets in the OTEC Demonstration Fund may be transferred to the parent account when and to the extent the balance in the OTEC Demonstration Fund exceeds the total guarantees or commitments to guarantee made under this section then outstanding, plus obligations issued by the Administrator under section 53723 of this title related to the OTEC Demonstration Fund.

(4) LIABILITY.—The parent account is not liable for a guarantee or commitment to guarantee made under this section.

(5) MAXIMUM UNPAID PRINCIPAL AMOUNT.—The total unpaid principal amount of the obligations guaranteed with the backing of the OTEC Demonstration Fund and outstanding at any one time may not exceed $1,650,000,000.

(g) ISSUANCE AND PAYMENT OF OBLIGATIONS.—Section 53723 of this title applies to the OTEC Demonstration Fund. However, obligations issued by the Administrator under that section related to the OTEC Demonstration Fund shall be payable only from proceeds realized by the OTEC Demonstration Fund.

(h) TAXATION OF INTEREST.—Interest on an obligation guaranteed under this section shall be included in gross income under chapter 1 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. ch. 1).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1620; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(2)(H), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(9)(D), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53731(a)	46 App.:1279c(a) (1st sentence), (1), (4).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1110, as added Pub. L. 96–320, title II, §203(a), Aug. 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 992; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(136), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 97–35, title XVI, §1606(f), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 752; Pub. L. 99–514, §2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095; Pub. L. 104–239, §11(3), Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3134.
53731(b)	46 App.:1279c(a) (2d sentence words before (1)).	
53731(c)	46 App.:1279c(a)(2).	
53731(d)	46 App.:1279c(b).	
53731(e)	46 App.:1279c(a)(3).	
53731(f)	46 App.:1279c(c).	
53731(g)	46 App.:1279c(d).	
53731(h)	46 App.:1279c(e).	

In subsection (a), the words "upon such terms as he shall prescribe" are omitted as unnecessary because section 53702(a) of the revised title provides the Secretary authority to prescribe the terms. The text of 46

App. U.S.C. 1279c(a)(1) is omitted as obsolete.

In subsection (f)(1), the words "account established under section 53717(b)(1) of this title" are substituted for "Federal Ship Financing Fund" because the accounts under section 53717 replace the Federal Ship Financing Fund. See the explanation for section 53717.

In subsection (f)(2)(B), the word "conversion" is substituted for "conversional" to correct an apparent error.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(2)(H). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(9)(D), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(2)(H), into this section by substituting "Administrator" for "Secretary" wherever appearing, except when followed by "of Energy". See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(2)(H), which directed the amendment of section 1279c of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment notes and Historical and Revision notes above.

[§53732. Repealed. Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3506(i)(2), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1974]

Section, Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1621; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(C), (D), (2)(E), (F), (I), (J), (b)(3)(A), (5), (8), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555, 3556; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(8), (9)(E), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598, authorized the Administrator to guarantee an obligation for an eligible export vessel in accordance with certain laws and terms and established an interagency council.

§53733. Shipyard modernization and improvement

(a) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

(1) ADVANCED SHIPBUILDING TECHNOLOGY.—The term "advanced shipbuilding technology" includes—

(A) numerically controlled machine tools, robots, automated process control equipment, computerized flexible manufacturing systems, associated computer software, and other technology for improving shipbuilding and related industrial production that advance the state-of-the-art; and

(B) novel techniques and processes designed to improve shipbuilding quality, productivity, and practice, and to promote sustainable development, including engineering design, quality assurance, concurrent engineering, continuous process production technology, energy efficiency, waste minimization, design for recyclability or parts reuse, inventory management, upgraded worker skills, and communications with customers and suppliers.

(2) GENERAL SHIPYARD FACILITY.—The term "general shipyard facility" means—

(A) for operations on land—

(i) a structure or appurtenance thereto designed for the construction, reconstruction, repair, rehabilitation, or refurbishment of a vessel, including a graving dock, building way, ship lift, wharf, or pier crane;

(ii) the land necessary for the structure or appurtenance; and

(iii) equipment that is for use with the structure or appurtenance and that is necessary for performing a function referred to in clause (i); and

(B) for operations not on land, a vessel, floating drydock, or barge built in the United States

and used for, equipped to be used for, or of a type normally used for, performing a function referred to in subparagraph (A)(i).

(3) MODERN SHIPBUILDING TECHNOLOGY.—The term "modern shipbuilding technology" means the best available proven technology, techniques, and processes appropriate to enhancing the productivity of shipyards.

(b) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—Under subchapter I of this chapter, the Administrator may guarantee or make a commitment to guarantee the payment of the principal of and interest on an obligation for advanced shipbuilding technology and modern shipbuilding technology of a general shipyard facility in the United States. Only a private shipyard is eligible to receive a guarantee.

(c) APPLICABILITY OF OTHER PROVISIONS.—Except as otherwise provided in this section, a guarantee or commitment to guarantee under this section is subject to all the provisions applicable to a guarantee or commitment to guarantee under subchapter I of this chapter.

(d) AMOUNT OF OBLIGATION.—The principal amount of an obligation guaranteed under this chapter may not exceed 87.5 percent of the actual cost of the advanced shipbuilding technology or modern shipbuilding technology.

(e) TRANSFER OF AMOUNTS.—The Administrator may accept the transfer of amounts from a department, agency, or instrumentality of the United States Government and may use those amounts to cover the cost (as defined in section 502 of the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990 (2 U.S.C. 661a)) of making guarantees or commitments to guarantee under this section.

(f) BUY AMERICA.—Part I of subtitle A of title IX of division G of the Infrastructure Investment and Jobs Act (Public Law 117–58; 41 U.S.C. 8301 note) shall apply to any funds obligated by the Administrator under this section.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1623; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(2)(K), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(9)(F), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3536, Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2315.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53733(a)	46 App.:1279e(d).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1112, as added Pub. L. 103–160, div. A, title XIII, §1357(a), Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1814.
53733(b)	46 App.:1279e(a).	
	46 App.:1280a.	Pub. L. 103–160, title XIII, §1358, Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1816.
53733(c)	46 App.:1279e(b) (words before "except").	
53733(d)	46 App.:1279e(b) (words beginning with "except").	
53733(e)	46 App.:1279e(c).	

In subsection (a)(2)(A)(i), the words "(as defined in title 1)" are omitted as unnecessary because chapter 1 of the revised title contains a title-wide definition of "vessel" that incorporates the definition in title 1, United States Code.

In subsection (b), the words "and subject to the terms the Secretary shall be prescribe" are omitted as unnecessary because section 53702(a) of the revised title provides the Secretary authority to prescribe the terms. The words "Only a private shipyard is eligible to receive a guarantee" are substituted for 46 App. U.S.C. 1280a to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 118–159 added subsec. (f).

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(2)(K). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsecs. (b), (e). Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(9)(F), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(2)(K), into this section by substituting "Administrator" for "Secretary". See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(2)(K), which directed the amendment of section 1279e of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsecs. (b), (e) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53734. Replacement of vessels because of changes in operating standards

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, the Secretary or Administrator, on terms the Secretary or Administrator may prescribe, may guarantee or make a commitment to guarantee the payment of the principal of and interest on an obligation that aids in financing or refinancing (including reimbursement of an obligor for expenditures previously made for) a contract for the construction or reconstruction of a vessel if—

(1) the vessel is designed and to be used for commercial use in coastwise, intercoastal, or foreign trade;

(2) the construction or reconstruction is necessary to replace a vessel that cannot continue to be operated because of a change required by law in the standards for the operation of vessels, and the applicant for the guarantee or commitment would not otherwise legally be able to continue operating vessels in the trades in which the applicant operated vessels before the change;

(3) the applicant is presently engaged in transporting cargoes in vessels of the type and class that will be constructed or reconstructed under this section and agrees to employ vessels constructed or reconstructed under this section as replacements only for vessels made obsolete by the change in operating standards;

(4) the capacity of the vessels to be constructed or reconstructed under this section will not increase the cargo carrying capacity of the vessels being replaced;

(5) the Secretary or Administrator has not determined that the market demand for the vessel over its useful life will diminish so as to make granting the guarantee fiduciarily imprudent;

(6) the vessel, if to be reconstructed, will have a useful life of at least 15 years after the reconstruction; and

(7) the Secretary or Administrator has considered the criteria specified in section 53708(a)(3)–(5) of this title.

(b) TERM AND AMOUNT OF OBLIGATION.—

(1) TERM.—The term of an obligation guaranteed under this section may not exceed 25 years.

(2) AMOUNT.—The amount of an obligation guaranteed under this section may not exceed 87.5 percent of the actual cost or depreciated actual cost to the applicant for the construction or reconstruction of the vessel. The Secretary or Administrator may not establish a percentage under this paragraph that is to be applied uniformly to all guarantees or commitments to guarantee made under this section.

(c) APPLICABILITY OF OTHER PROVISIONS.—A guarantee or commitment to guarantee under this section is also subject to sections 53701, 53702(a), 53704, 53705, 53707(a), 53708(d) and (e), 53709(a), 53710(a)(1), (2), and (4) and (c), 53711(a), 53713, 53714, 53717, and 53721–53725 of this title.

(d) SECURITY AGAINST DEFAULT.—The Secretary or Administrator shall require by regulation that an applicant under this section provide adequate security against default.

(e) GUARANTEE FEES.—The Secretary or Administrator may establish a fee for the guarantee of an obligation under this section that is in addition to the fee established under section 53714 of this title. The fee may be—

(1) an annual fee of not more than an additional 1 percent added to the fee established under section 53714 of this title; or

(2) a fee based on the amount of the obligation versus the percentage of the obligor's fleet being replaced by vessels constructed or reconstructed under this section.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1624; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(E), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(a)(10)(B), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53734(a)	46 App.:1274a(a), (b)(3).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1104B, as added Pub. L. 101–380, title IV, §4115(f)(2), Aug. 18, 1990, 104 Stat. 521; amended Pub. L. 102–587, title VI, §6204, Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5094; Pub. L. 103–160, div. A, title XIII, §1356(4), Nov. 30, 1993, 107 Stat. 1814; Pub. L. 104–239, §11(2), Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3134.
53734(b)	46 App.:1274a(b) (less (3)).	
53734(c)	46 App.:1274a(d).	
53734(d)	46 App.:1274a(c)(1) (1st sentence).	
53734(e)	46 App.:1274a(c)(1) (2d sentence), (2).	

In subsection (a), in paragraph (1), the words "as defined in section 1244 of this Appendix" are omitted because the definition of "foreign commerce or trade" in chapter 1 of the revised title applies without having to say so specifically. Paragraph (6) is substituted for 46 App. U.S.C. 1274a(b)(3) to improve the organization of the source provisions.

In subsection (b)(2), the words "by rule, regulation, or procedure" are omitted as unnecessary and for consistency with section 53709(d) of the revised title.

In subsections (c) and (e), the language concerning the Vessel Replacement Guarantee Fund and the Federal Ship Financing Fund is omitted as obsolete. See the explanation for section 53717.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(E). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(a)(10)(B), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(E), into this section by inserting "or Administrator" after "Secretary" wherever appearing. See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(E), which directed the amendment of section 1274a of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See 2008 Amendment notes and Historical and Revision notes above.

§53735. Fisheries financing and capacity reduction

(a) DEFINITION.—In this section, the term "program" means a fishing capacity reduction program established under section 312 of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1861a).

(b) GUARANTEE AUTHORITY.—The Secretary may guarantee the repayment of debt obligations issued by entities under this section. Debt obligations to be guaranteed may be issued by any entity that has been approved by the Secretary and has agreed with the Secretary to conditions the Secretary considers necessary for this section to achieve the objective of the program and to protect the interest of the United States.

(c) REQUIREMENTS OF OBLIGATIONS.—A debt obligation guaranteed under this section shall—

(1) be treated in the same manner and to the same extent as other obligations guaranteed under this chapter, except with respect to provisions of this chapter that by their nature cannot be applied to obligations guaranteed under this section;

(2) have the fishing fees established under the program paid into a separate subaccount of the fishing capacity reduction fund established under this section;

(3) not exceed $100,000,000 in an unpaid principal amount outstanding at any one time for a program;

(4) have such maturity (not to exceed 20 years), take such form, and contain such conditions as the Secretary determines necessary for the program to which they relate;

(5) have as the exclusive source of repayment (subject to the second sentence of subsection (d)(2)) and as the exclusive payment security, the fishing fees established under the program; and

(6) at the discretion of the Secretary be issued in the public market or sold to the Federal Financing Bank.

(d) FISHING CAPACITY REDUCTION FUND.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—There is a separate account in the Treasury, known as the Fishing Capacity Reduction Fund. Within the Fund, at least one subaccount shall be established for each program into which shall be paid all fishing fees established under the program and other amounts authorized for the program.

(2) AVAILABILITY OF AMOUNTS.—Amounts in the Fund shall be available, without appropriation or fiscal year limitation, to the Secretary to pay the cost of the program, including payments to financial institutions to pay debt obligations incurred by entities under this section. Funds available for this purpose from other amounts available for the program may also be used to pay those debt obligations.

(3) INVESTMENT.—Amounts in the Fund that are not currently needed for the purpose of this section shall be kept on deposit or invested in obligations of the United States Government.

(e) REGULATIONS.—The Secretary shall prescribe regulations the Secretary considers necessary to carry out this section.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1625; Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a)(1)(H), (d), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3555, 3557; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53735(a)	46 App.:1279f(e).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XI, §1111, as added Pub. L. 104–297, title III, §303, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3616;

		Pub. L. 104–208, title I, §101 [title II, §211(b)], Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009–41.
53735(b)	46 App.:1279f(a).	
53735(c)	46 App.:1279f(b).	
53735(d)	46 App.:1279f(c).	
53735(e)	46 App.:1279f(d).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

This section was derived from section 1111 of act June 29, 1936, as added by Pub. L. 104–297, §303, which was classified to section 1279f of the former Appendix to this title. Section 1111 was renumbered section 1113 of the Act by Pub. L. 109–163, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(d), Jan. 6, 2006, 119 Stat. 3557, which was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3522(b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 598. See Historical and Revision notes above and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181 repealed Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(H), (d). See 2006 Amendment note below and Codification note above.

2006—Pub. L. 109–163, §3507(a)(1)(H), which directed the amendment of section 1279f of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived by substituting "Secretary or Administrator" for "Secretary" wherever appearing, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3522(b). See Historical and Revision notes above.

CHAPTER 539—WAR RISK INSURANCE

Sec.

53901. Definitions.
53902. Authority to provide insurance.
53903. Insurable interests.
53904. Liability insurance for persons involved in war or defense efforts.
53905. Agency insurance.
53906. Hull insurance valuation.
53907. Reinsurance.
53908. Additional insurance privately obtained.
53909. War risk insurance revolving fund.
53910. Administrative.
53911. Civil actions for losses.
[53912. Repealed.]

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3504(b), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2308, struck out item 53912 "Expiration date".

§53901. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) AMERICAN VESSEL.—The term "American vessel" includes—

(A) a documented vessel with a registry or coastwise endorsement under chapter 121 of this

title;

(B) an undocumented vessel owned or chartered by or made available to the United States Government; and

(C) a tug, barge, or other watercraft (whether or not documented) owned by a citizen of the United States and used in essential water transportation or in the fisheries, except only for sport fishing.

(2) CARGO.—The term "cargo" includes a loaded or empty container on a vessel.

(3) TRANSPORTATION IN THE WATERBORNE COMMERCE OF THE UNITED STATES.—The term "transportation in the waterborne commerce of the United States" includes the operation of a vessel in the fisheries, except only for sport fishing.

(4) WAR RISKS.—The term "war risks" includes, to the extent the Secretary of Transportation determines—

(A) any part of a loss excluded from marine insurance coverage under a "free of capture or seizure" clause or analogous clause; and

(B) any other loss from a hostile act, including confiscation, expropriation, nationalization, or deprivation.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1626.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53901(1)	46 App.:1281(a).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XII, §§1201(a), (b), as added Sept. 7, 1950, ch. 906, 64 Stat. 773.
53901(2)	46 App.:1283(b) (last sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XII, §1203(b) (last sentence), as added Sept. 7, 1950, ch. 906, 64 Stat. 774; Pub. L. 94–523, §2, Oct. 17, 1976, 90 Stat. 2474.
53901(3)	46 App.:1281(b).	
53901(4)	46 App.:1281(c).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XII, §1201(c), as added Sept. 7, 1950, ch. 906, 64 Stat. 773; restated Pub. L. 107–107, title XXXV, §3502, Dec. 28, 2001, 115 Stat. 1392.

In paragraph (1)(A), the words "a documented vessel with a registry or coastwise endorsement under chapter 121 of this title" are substituted for "any vessel registered, enrolled, or licensed under the laws of the United States" because of 46 U.S.C. 12101(b).

In paragraph (1)(B). the words "or any department or agency thereof" are omitted as surplus.

In paragraph (1)(C), the word "fisheries" is substituted for "fishing trade or industry" because of the definition of "fisheries" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

§53902. Authority to provide insurance

(a) IN GENERAL.—With the approval of the President, and after such consultation with interested agencies of United States Government as the President may require, the Secretary of Transportation may provide insurance and reinsurance against loss or damage from war risks as provided by this chapter whenever it appears to the Secretary that insurance adequate for the needs of the waterborne commerce of the United States cannot be obtained on reasonable terms and conditions from companies authorized to do insurance business in a State of the United States.

(b) CONSIDERATION OF RISK.—Insurance or reinsurance under this chapter shall be based, insofar as practicable, on consideration of the risk involved.

(c) AVAILABILITY OF VESSEL DURING WAR OR NATIONAL EMERGENCY.—Insurance or reinsurance for a vessel may be provided under this chapter only on the condition that the vessel will be available to the Government in time of war or national emergency.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1627.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53902	46 App.:1282.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XII, §1202, as added Sept. 7, 1950, ch. 906, 64 Stat. 773; Pub. L. 101–115, §7(a), Oct. 13, 1989, 103 Stat. 694.

§53903. Insurable interests

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation may provide insurance and reinsurance under this chapter for—

(1) an American vessel, including a vessel under construction;

(2) a foreign vessel—

(A) owned by a citizen of the United States; or

(B) engaged in transportation in the waterborne commerce of the United States or in such other transportation by water or such other services as the Secretary considers to be in the interest of the national defense or national economy of the United States, when so engaged;

(3) cargo—

(A) shipped or to be shipped on a vessel insurable under this section, including by express or registered mail;

(B) owned by a citizen or resident of the United States;

(C) imported to or exported from the United States, or sold or purchased by a citizen or resident of the United States, under a contract of sale or purchase the terms of which provide that the risk of loss by war risks or the obligation to provide insurance against war risks is on a citizen or resident of the United States; or

(D) shipped between ports in the United States;

(4) disbursements, including advances to masters and general average disbursements, and freight and passage money of a vessel insurable under this section;

(5) personal effects of an individual on a vessel insurable under this section;

(6) loss of life, injury, or detention by an enemy of the United States after capture, with respect to an individual on a vessel insurable under this section; and

(7) statutory or contractual obligations or other liabilities of a vessel insurable under this section or of the owner or charterer of such a vessel, of a nature customarily covered by insurance.

(b) CONSIDERATIONS FOR FOREIGN VESSELS.—In determining whether to provide insurance or reinsurance for a foreign vessel, the Secretary shall consider the characteristics, employment, and general management of the vessel by the owner or charterer.

(c) NON-WAR RISKS.—Insurance of a risk under subsection (a)(5)–(7), insofar as it involves a liability related to an individual on the vessel, may include risks other than war risks to the extent the Secretary considers advisable.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1627.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53903(a)	46 App.:1283(a) (1st sentence), (b) (1st sentence), (c)–(f).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XII, §1203(a) (1st, 2d sentences), (b) (1st sentence), (c)–(f), as added Sept. 7, 1950, ch. 906, 64 Stat. 773, 774; Pub. L. 94–523, §§1–3, Oct. 17, 1976, 90 Stat. 2474.
53903(b)	46 App.:1283(a) (2d sentence).	
53903(c)	46 App.:1284.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XII, §1204, as added Sept. 7, 1950, ch. 906, 64 Stat. 774.

In subsections (a)(2) and (b), the words "foreign vessel" are substituted for "foreign-flag vessels" because of the definition of "foreign vessel" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

In paragraph (3), references to the territories and possessions of the United States are omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

In paragraph (5), the words "individual on a vessel insurable under this section" are substituted for "masters, officers, and crews of such vessels, and of other persons transported on such vessels" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In paragraph (6), the words "individual on a vessel insurable under this section" are substituted for "Masters, officers, members of the crews of such vessels and other persons employed or transported thereon" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§53904. Liability insurance for persons involved in war or defense efforts

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation may provide insurance under this chapter against legal liability that a person may incur in providing services or facilities for a vessel if, in the opinion of the Secretary, the insurance—

(1) is required in prosecuting a war or for national defense; and

(2) cannot be obtained at reasonable rates or on reasonable terms and conditions from approved companies authorized to do insurance business in a State of the United States.

(b) LIMITATIONS.—Employer liability insurance and worker compensation insurance against legal liability to employees may not be provided under this section.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1628.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53904	46 App.:1286.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XII, §1206, as added Sept. 7, 1950, ch. 906, 64 Stat. 774; Aug. 3, 1956, ch. 929, §5, 70 Stat. 986.

In subsection (a), the words "a vessel" are substituted for "any American- or foreign-flag vessel, public or private" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§53905. Agency insurance

(a) IN GENERAL.—With the approval of the President, an agency of the United States

Government may obtain insurance provided for by this chapter from the Secretary of Transportation, except as provided in sections 17302 and 17303 of title 40.

(b) PREMIUM WAIVERS.—With the approval of the President, the Secretary of Transportation may provide insurance under this chapter at the request of the Secretary of Defense and other agencies the President may prescribe, without payment of an insurance premium if the Secretary of Defense or agency agrees to indemnify the Secretary of Transportation against loss covered by the insurance. The Secretary of Defense and agencies may make such an indemnity agreement.

(c) PRESIDENTIAL APPROVAL.—The signature of the President (or an official designated by the President) on the agreement shall be treated as the approval required by section 53902(a) of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1628.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53905	46 App.:1285.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XII, §1205, as added Sept. 7, 1950, ch. 906, 64 Stat. 774; Pub. L. 105–261, div. A, title X, §1071(a), Oct. 17, 1998, 112 Stat. 2137.

§53906. Hull insurance valuation

(a) STATED VALUATION.—The valuation in a hull insurance policy for actual or constructive total loss of the insured vessel shall be a stated valuation determined by the Secretary of Transportation. The stated valuation—

(1) shall exclude national defense features paid for by the United States Government; and

(2) may not exceed the amount that would be payable if the ownership of the vessel had been requisitioned under chapter 563 of this title at the time the insurance attached under the policy.

(b) REJECTING STATED VALUATION.—Within 60 days after the insurance attaches under a policy referred to in subsection (a) or within 60 days after the Secretary determines the valuation, whichever is later, the insured may reject the valuation and pay, at the rate provided in the policy, premiums based on the asserted valuation the insured specifies at the time of rejection. However, the asserted valuation is not binding on the Government in any subsequent action on the policy.

(c) AMOUNT OF CLAIM.—If a vessel is actually or constructively totally lost and the insured under a policy referred to in subsection (a) has not rejected the stated valuation determined by the Secretary, the amount of a claim adjusted, compromised, settled, adjudged, or paid may not exceed the stated valuation. However, if the insured has rejected the valuation, the insured—

(1) shall be paid, as a tentative advance only, 75 percent of the stated valuation; and

(2) may bring a civil action against the United States in a court having jurisdiction of the claim to recover a valuation equal to the just compensation the court determines would have been payable if the ownership of the vessel had been requisitioned under chapter 563 of this title at the time the insurance attached under the policy.

(d) ADJUSTING PREMIUMS.—If a court makes a determination as provided under subsection (c)(2), premiums paid under the policy shall be adjusted based on the court's determination and the rates provided for in the policy.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1629.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53906	46 App.:1289(a)(2).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XII, §1209(a)(2), as added Sept. 7, 1950, ch. 906, 64 Stat. 775; Aug. 3, 1956, ch. 929, §1, 70 Stat. 984; Pub. L. 88–478, §1, Aug. 22, 1964, 78 Stat. 587.

In subsection (c), the words "*Provided*, That in the event of an election by the insured to reject the stated valuation fixed by the Secretary and to sue in the courts, the amount of the judgment will be payable without regard to the limitations contained in section 1242–1 of this Appendix, although the excess of any amounts advanced on account of just compensation over the amount of the court judgment will be required to be refunded" are omitted as obsolete because the section referred to, which was from the Department of Commerce and Related Agencies Appropriation Act, 1959 (Pub. L. 85–469, 72 Stat. 231), has been omitted from the United States Code as obsolete.

§53907. Reinsurance

(a) IN GENERAL.—To the extent the Secretary of Transportation is authorized to provide insurance under this chapter, the Secretary may provide reinsurance to a company authorized to do insurance business in a State of the United States. The Secretary may obtain reinsurance from such a company for any insurance provided by the Secretary under this chapter.

(b) RATES.—The Secretary may not provide reinsurance at rates less than, nor obtain reinsurance at rates more than, the rates established by the Secretary on the same or similar risks or the rates charged by the insurance company for the insurance reinsured, whichever is more advantageous to the Secretary. However, the Secretary may provide an allowance to the insurance company for the costs of services and facilities the company provides, in an amount the Secretary considers reasonable according to good business practice. The allowance to the company may not include any amount for soliciting or stimulating insurance business.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1629.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53907	46 App.:1287.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XII, §1207, as added Sept. 7, 1950, ch. 906, 64 Stat. 775.

In subsection (a), the words "insurance under this chapter" are substituted for "marine, war risk, and liability insurance" for consistency in this chapter. The words "in whole or in part" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "obtain reinsurance from" are substituted for "reinsure with, or cede or retrocede to" for clarity and to eliminate unnecessary words.

§53908. Additional insurance privately obtained

With the approval of the Secretary of Transportation, a person having an insurable interest in a vessel may obtain insurance on the vessel with other underwriting agents in addition to the insurance with the Secretary. The Secretary is not entitled to the benefit of the additional insurance.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1630.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53908	46 App.:1293.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XII, §1213, as added Sept. 7, 1950, ch. 906, 64 Stat. 777; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(141), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166.

§53909. War risk insurance revolving fund

(a) IN GENERAL.—There is a war risk insurance revolving fund in the Treasury.

(b) DEPOSITS.—There shall be deposited in the fund amounts appropriated to carry out this chapter and amounts received in carrying out this chapter.

(c) PAYMENTS.—There shall be paid from the fund amounts for return premiums, losses, settlements, judgments, and all liabilities incurred by the United States Government under this chapter.

(d) INVESTMENT.—The Secretary of Transportation may request the Secretary of the Treasury to invest such portion of the fund as is not, in the judgment of the Secretary of Transportation, required to meet the current needs of the fund. These investments shall be made by the Secretary of the Treasury in public debt securities of the Government, with maturities suitable to the needs of the fund, and bearing interest rates determined by the Secretary of the Treasury, taking into consideration current market yields on outstanding marketable obligations of the Government of comparable maturity. Interest and benefits from the securities shall be deposited in the fund.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1630; Pub. L. 109–364, div. C, title XXXV, §3510(a)(1), Oct. 17, 2006, 120 Stat. 2520; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3526(g), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 602.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53909	46 App.:1288.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XII, §1208, as added Sept. 7, 1950, ch. 906, 64 Stat. 775; Pub. L. 87–743, Oct. 3, 1962, 76 Stat. 740; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(139), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 108–375, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(b), Oct. 28, 2004, 118 Stat. 2195.
	46 App.:1288a.	Nov. 1, 1951, ch. 664, par. under heading "War–Risk Insurance Revolving Fund", 65 Stat. 746; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(140), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 166.

In subsection (c), the reference to the Fiscal Service [previously Division of Disbursement] in the Treasury Department is omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (d), the amendment by section 3502(b) of Public Law 108–375, which struck the third sentence in 46 App. U.S.C. 1288 and inserted new material, was executed as if it were intended to strike the fourth sentence instead, to reflect probably [sic] intent.

The text of 46 App. U.S.C. 1288(b) is omitted as unnecessary because enactment of a law authorizing certain governmental functions is itself an authorization of appropriations to carry out those functions. The text of 46 App. U.S.C. 1288a is omitted as executed and impliedly repealed by 46 App. U.S.C. 1119.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181 repealed Pub. L. 109–364, §3510(a)(1). See 2006 Amendment note below.

2006—Pub. L. 109–364, §3510(a)(1), which directed the amendment of section 1288(a) of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived in part, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181. The substance of the amendment was incorporated in this section as enacted by Pub. L. 109–304. See Historical and Revision notes above.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2006 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 109–364, div. C, title XXXV, §3510(a)(2), Oct. 17, 2006, 120 Stat. 2520, which provided that the amendments made by paragraph (1) [amending section 1288(a) of the former Appendix to this title, from which this section was derived in part] were to be effective as if enacted by section 3502 of Pub. L. 108–375, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3526(g), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 602.

§53910. Administrative

(a) ACCORDANCE WITH COMMERCIAL PRACTICE.—In carrying out this chapter, the Secretary of Transportation may act in accordance with commercial practice in the marine insurance business.

(b) REGULATIONS.—The Secretary may prescribe regulations the Secretary considers appropriate to carry out this chapter.

(c) POLICIES, RATES, AND ANNUAL FEES.—The Secretary may prescribe and change forms and policies, and fix and change the amounts insured and rates of premium, under this chapter.

(d) ANNUAL FEES.—The Secretary may charge and collect an annual fee in an amount calculated to cover the expenses of processing applications for insurance, employing underwriting agents, and appointing experts under this chapter.

(e) PAYMENT OF CLAIMS AND JUDGMENTS.—The Secretary may settle and pay claims, and pay judgments against the United States, related to insurance under this chapter.

(f) UNDERWRITING AGENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may, and when the Secretary finds it practical to do so shall, employ a domestic company or group of domestic companies, authorized to do marine insurance business in a State of the United States, to act as underwriting agent for the Secretary. The services of an underwriting agent may be used in adjusting claims, but a claim may not be paid until approved by the Secretary.

(2) COMPENSATION.—The Secretary may allow the company or group of companies reasonable compensation for services as the underwriting agent. The compensation may include an allowance for expenses reasonably incurred by the agent, but may not include any amount for soliciting or stimulating business.

(g) FEES FOR ARRANGING INSURANCE.—Except as provided in subsection (f)(2), the Secretary may not pay an insurance broker or other person acting in a similar intermediary capacity a fee or other consideration for participating in arranging insurance when the Secretary directly insures any of the risk.

(h) EMPLOYMENT OF MARINE INSURANCE EXPERTS.—The Secretary, without regard to the laws and regulations on the employment of Federal employees, may appoint and prescribe the duties of experts in marine insurance as the Secretary considers necessary to carry out this chapter.

(i) SERVICES OF OTHER GOVERNMENT AGENCIES.—With the consent of another agency of the United States Government, the Secretary may use information, services, facilities, officers, and employees of the agency in carrying out this chapter.

(j) VESSEL LOCATION REPORTING.—The Secretary may prescribe by regulation vessel location reporting requirements for a vessel insured under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1630.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53910(a)	46 App.:1289(c) (1st sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XII, §1209(a)(1), (b)–(f), as added Sept. 7, 1950, ch. 906, 64 Stat. 775; Aug. 3, 1956, ch. 929, §1, 70 Stat. 984; Pub. L. 94–523, §4, Oct. 17, 1976, 90 Stat. 2474.
53910(b)	46 App.:1289(a)(1) (1st–19th words).	
53910(c)	46 App.:1289(b) (1st sentence).	
53910(d)	46 App.:1289(b) (last sentence).	
53910(e)	46 App.:1289(a)(1) (20th–last words).	
53910(f)	46 App.:1289(d).	
53910(g)	46 App.:1289(c) (last sentence).	
53910(h)	46 App.:1289(e).	
53910(i)	46 App.:1289(f).	
53910(j)	46 App.:1283(a) (last sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XII, §1203(a) (last sentence), as added Sept. 7, 1950, ch. 906, 64 Stat. 774; Pub. L. 94–523, §1, Oct. 17, 1976, 90 Stat. 2474.

Subsection (e) is substituted for "may adjust and pay losses, compromise and settle claims, whether in favor of or against the United States and pay the amount of any judgment rendered against the United States in any suit, or the amount of any settlement agreed upon, in respect of any claim under insurance authorized by this subchapter" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§53911. Civil actions for losses

(a) IN GENERAL.—If there is a disagreement about a loss insured under this chapter, a civil action in admiralty may be brought against the United States in the district court of the United States for the district in which the plaintiff or the plaintiff's agent resides. If the plaintiff has no residence in the United States, the action may be brought in the United States District Court for the District of Columbia or in the district court for any district in which the Attorney General agrees to accept service. Any person who may have an interest in the insurance may be made a party, either initially or on the motion of either party.

(b) EXCLUSIVE REMEDY.—A civil action against the United States under this section is exclusive of any other action by reason of the same subject matter against an officer, employee, or agent employed or retained by the Government under this chapter.

(c) PROCEDURE.—A civil action under this section shall be heard and determined under chapter 309 of this title.

(d) TOLLING OF LIMITATIONS PERIOD.—If a claim is filed with the Secretary of Transportation, the running of the limitations period for bringing a civil action is suspended until the Secretary denies the claim, and for 60 days thereafter. The Secretary is deemed to have denied the claim if the Secretary does not act on the claim within 6 months after the claim is filed, unless the Secretary for good cause shown agrees with the claimant on a different period for the Secretary to act on the claim.

(e) INTERPLEADER.—If the Secretary acknowledges the indebtedness of the Government under the insurance and there is a dispute about the persons entitled to receive payment, the Government may bring a civil action interpleading those persons. The action shall be brought in the United States District Court for the District of Columbia or in the district court for the district in which any of those persons resides. A person not residing or found in the district may be made a party by service in any reasonable manner the court directs. If the court is satisfied that unknown persons might make a claim under the insurance, the court may direct service on those unknown persons by publication in the Federal Register. Judgment after service by publication in the Federal Register discharges the Government from further liability to all persons.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1631.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
53911	46 App.:1292.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title XII, §1212, as added Sept. 7, 1950, ch. 906, 64 Stat. 776.

[§53912. Repealed. Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3504(a), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2308]

Section, Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1632; Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3509, Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4769; Pub. L. 113–66, div. C, title XXXV, §3502, Dec. 26, 2013, 127 Stat. 1085, set an expiration date of authority to provide insurance and reinsurance under this chapter.

CHAPTER 541—MISCELLANEOUS

Sec.
54101. Assistance for small shipyards.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior chapter 541, Miscellaneous, consisting of section 54101 and relating to assistance for small shipyards and maritime communities, added by Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3523(a)(6)(A), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 599, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3508(b), Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4769, as amended by Pub. L. 111–84, div. A, title X, §1073(c)(14), Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2475, effective Oct. 14, 2008, and as if included in Pub. L. 110–417 as enacted.

AMENDMENTS

2023—Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(h), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 811, amended chapter analysis generally, reenacting heading and item 54101 without change and inserting a period after "Sec".

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(b)(1), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4405, struck out item 54102 "Centers of excellence for domestic maritime workforce training and education".

2017—Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §§3505(b), 3507(b), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1914, 1915, substituted "Assistance for small shipyards" for "Assistance for small shipyards and maritime communities" in item 54101 and added item 54102.

§54101. Assistance for small shipyards

(a) ESTABLISHMENT OF PROGRAM.—Subject to the availability of appropriations, the Administrator of the Maritime Administration shall execute agreements with shipyards to provide assistance—

(1) in the form of grants, loans, and loan guarantees to small shipyards for capital improvements; and

(2) for maritime training programs to foster technical skills and operational productivity relating to shipbuilding, ship repair, and associated industries.

(b) AWARDS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—In providing assistance under the program, the Administrator shall consider projects that foster—

(A) efficiency, competitive operations, and quality ship construction, repair, and reconfiguration; and

(B) employee skills and enhanced productivity related to shipbuilding, ship repair, and associated industries.

(2) TIMING OF GRANT NOTICE.—The Administrator shall post a Notice of Funding Opportunity regarding grants awarded under this section not more than 15 days after the date of enactment of the appropriations Act for the fiscal year concerned.

(3) TIMING OF GRANTS.—The Administrator shall award grants under this section not later than 120 days after the date of the enactment of the appropriations Act for the fiscal year concerned.

(4) REUSE OF UNEXPENDED GRANT FUNDS.—Notwithstanding paragraph (3), amounts awarded as a grant under this section that are not expended by the grantee shall remain available to the Administrator for use for grants under this section.

(c) USE OF FUNDS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Assistance provided under this section may be used to—

(A) make capital and related improvements in small shipyards; and

(B) provide training for workers in shipbuilding, ship repair, and associated industries.

(2) ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—Not more than 2 percent of amounts made available to carry out the program may be used for the necessary costs of grant administration.

(d) PROHIBITED USES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Grants awarded under this section may not be used to construct buildings or other physical facilities or to acquire land.

(2) BUY AMERICA.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Subject to subparagraph (B), no funds may be obligated by the Administrator of the Maritime Administration under this section, unless each product and material purchased with those funds (including products and materials purchased by a grantee), and including any commercially available off-the-shelf item, is—

(i) an unmanufactured article, material, or supply that has been mined or produced in the United States; or

(ii) a manufactured article, material, or supply that has been manufactured in the United States substantially all from articles, materials, or supplies mined, produced, or manufactured in the United States.

(B) EXCEPTIONS.—

(i) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), the requirements of that subparagraph shall not apply with respect to a particular product or material if the Administrator determines—

(I) that the application of those requirements would be inconsistent with the public interest;

(II) that such product or material is not available in the United States in sufficient and reasonably available quantities, of a satisfactory quality, or on a timely basis; or

(III) that inclusion of a domestic product or material will increase the cost of that product or material by more than 25 percent, with respect to a certain contract between a grantee and that grantee's supplier.

(ii) FEDERAL REGISTER.—A determination made by the Administrator under this subparagraph shall be published in the Federal Register.

(C) DEFINITIONS.—ln this paragraph:

(i) The term "commercially available off-the-shelf item" means—

(I) any item of supply (including construction material) that is—

(aa) a commercial item, as defined by section 2.101 of title 48, Code of Federal Regulations (as in effect on the date of the enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2020); and

(bb) sold in substantial quantities in the commercial marketplace; and

(II) does not include bulk cargo, as defined in section 40102(4) of this title, such as agricultural products and petroleum products.

(ii) The term "product or material" means an article, material, or supply brought to the site by the recipient for incorporation into the building, work, or project. The term also includes an item brought to the site preassembled from articles, materials, or supplies. However, emergency life safety systems, such as emergency lighting, fire alarm, and audio evacuation systems, that are discrete systems incorporated into a public building or work and that are produced as complete systems, are evaluated as a single and distinct construction material regardless of when or how the individual parts or components of those systems are delivered to the construction site.

(iii) The term "United States" includes the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Northern Mariana Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Virgin Islands.

(e) MATCHING REQUIREMENTS; ALLOCATION.—

(1) FEDERAL FUNDING.—Federal funds for any eligible project under this section shall not exceed 75 percent of the total cost of such project.

(2) ALLOCATION OF FUNDS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Administrator may not award more than 25 percent of the funds made available to carry out this section for any fiscal year to any small shipyard in one geographic location that has more than 600 employees.

(B) INELIGIBILITY.—A maritime training center that has received funds awarded under section 51706 of title 46, United States Code, shall not be eligible for grants under this subsection for training purposes in the same fiscal year.

(f) APPLICATIONS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—To be eligible for assistance under this section, an applicant shall submit an application, in such form, and containing such information and assurances as the Administrator may require, within 60 days after the date of enactment of the appropriations Act for the fiscal year concerned.

(2) MINIMUM STANDARDS FOR PAYMENT OR REIMBURSEMENT.—Each application submitted under paragraph (1) shall include a comprehensive description of—

(A) the need for the project;

(B) the methodology for implementing the project; and

(C) any existing programs or arrangements that can be used to supplement or leverage assistance under the program.

(3) PROCEDURAL SAFEGUARDS.—The Administrator, in consultation with the Office of

the Inspector General, shall issue guidelines to establish appropriate accounting, reporting, and review procedures to ensure that—

(A) grant funds are used for the purposes for which they were made available;

(B) grantees have properly accounted for all expenditures of grant funds; and

(C) grant funds not used for such purposes and amounts not obligated or expended are returned.

(4) PROJECT APPROVAL REQUIRED.—The Administrator may not award a grant under this section unless the Administrator determines that—

(A) sufficient funding is available to meet the matching requirements of subsection (e);

(B) the project will be completed without unreasonable delay; and

(C) the recipient has authority to carry out the proposed project.

(g) AUDITS AND EXAMINATIONS.—All grantees under this section shall maintain such records as the Administrator may require and make such records available for review and audit by the Administrator.

(h) SMALL SHIPYARD DEFINED.—In this section, the term "small shipyard" means a shipyard facility in one geographic location that does not have more than 1,200 employees.

(Added Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3508(a), Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4767; amended Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §303, Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3043; Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §§3501(b), 3505(a), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1909, 1913; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §§3511, 3546(r), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2311, 2327; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3507(a), (b), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1974, 1976; Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3501(c)(2), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4397; Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3532(d), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3092; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3535(b), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2314.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2020, referred to in subsec. (d)(2)(C)(i)(I)(aa), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 116–92, which was approved Dec. 20, 2019.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 54101, added and amended Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3523(a)(6)(B)–(D), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 599, which related to assistance for small shipyards and maritime communities, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3508(b), Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4769, as amended by Pub. L. 111–84, div. A, title X, §1073(c)(14), Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2475, effective Oct. 14, 2008, and as if included in Pub. L. 110–417 as enacted.

AMENDMENTS

2024—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 118–159 struck out subsec. (i). Text read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to the Administrator of the Maritime Administration for fiscal year 2021 to carry out this section $20,000,000."

2022—Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 117–263 added par. (2) and struck out former par. (2). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Administrator may not award more than 25 percent of the funds appropriated to carry out this section for any fiscal year to any small shipyard in one geographic location that has more than 600 employees."

2021—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "for fiscal year 2021 to carry out this section $20,000,000" for "for each of fiscal years 2020 and 2021 to carry out this section $40,000,000".

2019—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 116–92, §3507(a), designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted heading, and added par. (2).

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 116–92, §3507(b), substituted "2020 and 2021" for "2018, 2019, and 2020" and "$40,000,000" for "$35,000,000".

2018—Subsec. (b)(2) to (4). Pub. L. 115–232, §3511, added par. (2), redesignated former pars. (2) and (3)

as (3) and (4), respectively, and, in par. (4), substituted "paragraph (3)" for "paragraph (2)".

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 115–232, §3546(r), added par. (2) and struck out former par. (2) consisting of subpar. (A) and cls. (i) to (iii) which related to minimum standards for payment or reimbursement.

2017—Pub. L. 115–91, §3505(a)(1), struck out "and maritime communities" after "shipyards" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 115–91, §3505(a)(2), substituted "relating to shipbuilding, ship repair, and associated industries." for "in communities whose economies are related to or dependent upon the maritime industry."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 115–91, §3505(a)(3), amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows:

"(b) AWARDS.—In providing assistance under the program, the Administrator shall—

"(1) take into account—

"(A) the economic circumstances and conditions of maritime communities;

"(B) projects that would be effective in fostering efficiency, competitive operations, and quality ship construction, repair, and reconfiguration; and

"(C) projects that would be effective in fostering employee skills and enhancing productivity; and

"(2) make grants within 120 days after the date of enactment of the appropriations Act for the fiscal year concerned."

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 115–91, §3505(a)(4), inserted "to" after "may be used" in introductory provisions, added subpars. (A) and (B), and struck out former subpars. (A) to (C) which read as follows:

"(A) to make capital and related improvements in small shipyards located in or near maritime communities;

"(B) to provide training for workers in communities whose economies are related to the maritime industry; and

"(C) for such other purposes as the Administrator determines to be consistent with and supplemental to such activities."

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 115–91, §3505(a)(5), struck out "unless such use is specifically approved by the Administrator in support of subsection (c)(1)(C)" before period at end.

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 115–91, §3505(a)(6)(C), struck out "Except as provided in paragraph (2)," before "Federal funds".

Subsec. (e)(2), (3). Pub. L. 115–91, §3505(a)(6)(A), (B), redesignated par. (3) as (2) and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: "EXCEPTION.—If the Administrator determines that a proposed project merits support and cannot be undertaken without a higher percentage of Federal financial assistance, the Administrator may award a grant for such project with a lesser matching requirement than is described in paragraph (1)."

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 115–91, §3501(b), substituted "2018, 2019, and 2020 to carry out this section $35,000,000" for "2015 through 2017 to carry out this section—

"(1) $5,000,000 for training grants; and

"(2) $25,000,000 for capital and related improvements".

2014—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 113–281 substituted "2015 through 2017" for "2009 through 2013" in introductory provisions.

[§54102. Renumbered §51706]

CHAPTER 543—PORT INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT PROGRAM

Sec.

54301. Port infrastructure development program.

§54301. Port infrastructure development program

(a) PORT AND INTERMODAL IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM.—

(1) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—Subject to the availability of appropriations, the Secretary of Transportation shall make grants, on a competitive basis, to eligible applicants to assist in funding eligible projects for the purpose of improving the safety, efficiency, or reliability of the movement

of goods through ports and intermodal connections to ports.

(2) ELIGIBLE APPLICANT.—The Secretary may make a grant under this subsection or subsection (b) to the following:

(A) A State.

(B) A political subdivision of a State, or a local government.

(C) A public agency or publicly chartered authority established by 1 or more States.

(D) A special purpose district with a transportation function.

(E) An Indian Tribe (as defined in section 4 of the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act (25 U.S.C. 5304), without regard to capitalization), or a consortium of Indian Tribes.

(F) A multistate or multijurisdictional group of entities described in this paragraph.

(G) A lead entity described in subparagraph (A), (B), (C), (D), (E), or (F) jointly with a private entity or group of private entities, including the owners or operators of a facility, or collection of facilities at a port.

(3) ELIGIBLE PROJECTS.—The Secretary may make a grant under this subsection—

(A) for a project, or package of projects, that—

(i) is either—

(I) within the boundary of a port; or

(II) outside the boundary of a port, but is directly related to port operations or to an intermodal connection to a port; and

(ii) will be used to improve the safety, efficiency, or reliability of—

(I) the loading and unloading of goods at the port, such as for marine terminal equipment;

(II) the movement of goods into, out of, around, or within a port, such as for highway or rail infrastructure, intermodal facilities, freight intelligent transportation systems, and digital infrastructure systems;

(III) operational improvements, including projects to improve port resilience;

(IV) environmental and emission mitigation measures; including projects for—

(aa) port electrification or electrification master planning;

(bb) harbor craft or equipment replacements or retrofits;

(cc) development of port or terminal microgrids;

(dd) providing idling reduction infrastructure;

(ee) purchase of cargo handling equipment and related infrastructure;

(ff) worker training to support electrification technology;

(gg) installation of port bunkering facilities from oceangoing vessels for fuels;

(hh) electric vehicle charge or hydrogen refueling infrastructure for drayage and medium or heavy duty trucks and locomotives that service the port and related grid upgrades; or

(ii) other related port activities, including charging infrastructure, electric rubber-tired gantry cranes, and anti-idling technologies; or

(V) port and port-related infrastructure that supports seafood and seafood-related businesses, including the loading and unloading of commercially harvested fish and fish products, seafood processing, cold storage, and other related infrastructure.

(B) notwithstanding paragraph (6)(A)(v), to provide financial assistance to 1 or more projects under subparagraph (A) for development phase activities, including planning, feasibility analysis, revenue forecasting, environmental review, permitting, and preliminary engineering and design work.

(4) PROHIBITED USES.—A grant award under this subsection may not be used—

(A) to finance or refinance the construction, reconstruction, reconditioning, or purchase of a vessel that is eligible for such assistance under chapter 537, unless the Secretary determines such vessel—

(i) is necessary for a project described in paragraph (3)(A)(ii)(III) of this subsection; and

(ii) is not receiving assistance under chapter 537; or

(B) for any project within a small shipyard (as defined in section 54101).

(5) APPLICATIONS AND PROCESS.—

(A) APPLICATIONS.—

(i) IN GENERAL.—To be eligible for a grant under this subsection or subsection (b), an eligible applicant shall submit to the Secretary an application in such form, at such time, and containing such information as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(ii) ENSURING CYBERSECURITY.—If a covered applicant for a grant under this subsection is applying to use the grant to acquire digital infrastructure or a software component, such applicant shall—

(I) certify the facility for which a covered applicant is applying for a grant has an approved facility security plan pursuant to section 70103(c) of this title that addresses the cybersecurity risks of such digital infrastructure or software component; or

(II) if the approved facility security plan of a facility for which a covered applicant is applying for a grant does not address such cybersecurity risks, provide a brief description in the application of how such applicant will address the cybersecurity risks of such digital infrastructure or software component.

(iii) UPDATE OF FACILITY SECURITY PLAN.—If the approved facility security plan required under section 70103(c) of this title of a facility for which a covered applicant is applying for a grant under this subsection does not address the cybersecurity risks of digital infrastructure or a software component to be acquired by such grant and such applicant provides a brief description to address such cybersecurity risks under clause (ii)(II), the covered applicant shall ensure that such security plan is updated to address the cybersecurity risks described in clause (ii)(II) in the next update required under paragraph (3)(G) of such section.

(iv) COVERED APPLICANT DEFINED.—In this paragraph, the term "covered applicant" means an applicant under this subsection that is not otherwise eligible under subsection (b).

(B) SOLICITATION PROCESS.—Not later than 90 days after the date that amounts are made available for grants under this subsection or subsection (b) for a fiscal year, the Secretary shall solicit grant applications for eligible projects in accordance with this subsection.

(C) DELAYED NOTICE OF FUNDING OPPORTUNITY.—If the Secretary amends a published solicitation for grant applications such that an applicant would need the information contained in the amendment to draft an application, other than an amendment of the amount of grant funding available, the Secretary shall extend the application deadline by the number of days between the initial solicitation and the amendment.

(6) PROJECT SELECTION CRITERIA.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may select a project described in paragraph (3) for funding under this subsection if the Secretary determines that—

(i) the project improves the safety, efficiency, or reliability of the movement of goods through a port or intermodal connection to a port;

(ii) the project is cost effective (except in the case of a project described under subparagraph (D));

(iii) the eligible applicant has authority to carry out the project;

(iv) the eligible applicant has sufficient funding available to meet the matching requirements under paragraph (8);

(v) the project will be completed without unreasonable delay; and

(vi) the project cannot be easily and efficiently completed without Federal funding or financial assistance available to the project sponsor.

(B) ADDITIONAL CONSIDERATIONS.—In selecting projects described in paragraph (3) for funding under this subsection, the Secretary shall give substantial weight to—

(i) the utilization of non-Federal contributions;

(ii) the net benefits of the funds awarded under this subsection, considering the cost-benefit analysis of the project, as applicable (except in the case of a project described under subparagraph (D)); and

(iii) a port's increased resilience as a result of the project.

(C) IN GENERAL.—In selecting projects described in paragraph (3), the Maritime Administrator, in consultation with the Secretary of Defense, may give priority to providing funding to strategic seaports in support of national security requirements.

(D) NONCONTIGUOUS STATES AND TERRITORIES.—The requirements under subparagraphs (A)(ii) and (B)(ii) shall not apply in the case of a project described in paragraph (3) in a noncontiguous State or territory.

(7) ALLOCATION OF FUNDS.—

(A) GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION.—Not more than 25 percent of the amounts made available for grants under this subsection for a fiscal year may be used to make grants for projects in any 1 State.

(B) SMALL PROJECTS.—The Secretary shall reserve 25 percent of the amounts made available for grants under this subsection each fiscal year to make grants for eligible projects described in subsection (b). The requirement under paragraph (6)(A)(ii) shall not apply to grants made under subsection (b).

(C) DEVELOPMENT PHASE ACTIVITIES.—Of the amounts made available for grants under this section for a fiscal year—

(i) not more than 10 percent may be used to make grants for development phase activities under paragraph (3)(B); and

(ii) not more than 10 percent may be used to make grants for development phase activities under subsection (b)(5)(A)(ii)(III).

(8) FEDERAL SHARE OF TOTAL PROJECT COSTS.—

(A) TOTAL PROJECT COSTS.—To be eligible for a grant under this subsection or subsection (b), an eligible applicant shall submit to the Secretary an estimate of the total costs of the project for which the grant is requested based on the best available information, including any available engineering studies, studies of economic feasibility, environmental analyses, and information on the expected use of equipment or facilities.

(B) FEDERAL SHARE.—

(i) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in clause (ii), the Federal share of the total costs of a project under this subsection or subsection (b) shall not exceed 80 percent.

(ii) RURAL AREAS.—The Secretary may increase the Federal share of costs above 80 percent for a project for which a grant is awarded under subsection (b) or that is located in a rural area.

(9) PROCEDURAL SAFEGUARDS.—The Secretary shall issue guidelines to establish appropriate accounting, reporting, and review procedures for grants made under this subsection and subsection (b) to ensure that—

(A) grant funds are used for the purposes for which those funds were made available;

(B) each grantee properly accounts for all expenditures of grant funds;
(C) grant funds not used for such purposes and amounts not obligated or expended are returned; and
(D) grant contracts are approved efficiently by the Secretary, minimizing delays for minor adjustments to project scopes and budgets, including due to inflationary effects on projects.

(10) GRANT CONDITIONS.—
(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall require as a condition of making a grant under this subsection or subsection (b) that a grantee—
(i) maintain such records as the Secretary considers necessary;
(ii) make the records described in clause (i) available for review and audit by the Secretary; and
(iii) periodically report to the Secretary such information as the Secretary considers necessary to assess progress.

(B) EFFICIENT USE OF NON-FEDERAL FUNDS.—
(i) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law and subject to approval by the Secretary, in the case of any grant for a project under this section, during the period beginning on the date on which the grant recipient is selected and ending on the date on which the grant agreement is signed—
(I) the grant recipient may obligate and expend non-Federal funds with respect to the project for which the grant is provided; and
(II) any non-Federal funds obligated or expended in accordance with subclause (I) shall be credited toward the non-Federal cost share for the project for which the grant is provided.

(ii) REQUIREMENTS.—
(I) APPLICATION.—In order to obligate and expend non-Federal funds under clause (i), the grant recipient shall submit to the Secretary a request to obligate and expend non-Federal funds under that clause, including—
(aa) a description of the activities the grant recipient intends to fund;
(bb) a justification for advancing the activities described in item (aa), including an assessment of the effects to the project scope, schedule, and budget if the request is not approved; and
(cc) the level of risk of the activities described in item (aa).

(II) APPROVAL.—The Secretary shall approve or disapprove each request submitted under subclause (I).
(III) COMPLIANCE WITH APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS.—Any obligation or expenditure of non-Federal funds under clause (i) shall be in compliance with all applicable requirements, including any requirements included in the grant agreement.

(iii) EFFECT.—The obligation or expenditure of any non-Federal funds in accordance with this subparagraph shall not—
(I) affect the signing of a grant agreement or other applicable grant procedures with respect to the applicable grant;
(II) create an obligation on the part of the Federal Government to repay any non-Federal funds if the grant agreement is not signed; or
(III) affect the ability of the recipient of the grant to obligate or expend non-Federal funds to meet the non-Federal cost share for the project for which the grant is provided after the period described in clause (i).

(C) CONSTRUCTION, REPAIR, OR ALTERATION OF VESSELS.—With regard to the

construction, repair, or alteration of vessels, the same requirements of section 117(k) of title 23, United States Code, shall apply regardless of whether the location of contract performance is known when bids for such work are solicited.

(11) ADMINISTRATION.—

(A) ADMINISTRATIVE AND OVERSIGHT COSTS.—The Secretary may retain not more than 2 percent of the amounts appropriated for each fiscal year to make grants for port development under this section for the administrative and oversight costs incurred by the Secretary to make grants for port development under this section.

(B) AVAILABILITY.—

(i) IN GENERAL.—Amounts appropriated to make grants for port development under this section shall remain available until expended.

(ii) UNEXPENDED FUNDS.—Amounts awarded as a grant for port development under this section that are not expended by the grantee during the 5-year period following the date of the award or that are returned under paragraph (9)(C) shall remain available to the Secretary for use for grants under this subsection in a subsequent fiscal year. Any such amount may only be expended to award a grant under the same subsection of this section under which the original grant was made.

(12) DEFINITIONS.—In this subsection and subsection (b):

(A) PORT.—The term "port" includes—

(i) any port on the navigable waters of the United States; and

(ii) any harbor, marine terminal, or other shore side facility used principally for the movement of goods on inland waters (including the Great Lakes).

(B) PROJECT.—The term "project" includes construction, reconstruction, environmental rehabilitation, acquisition of property, including land related to the project and improvements to the land, equipment acquisition, and operational improvements.

(C) RURAL AREA.—The term "rural area" means an area that is outside an urbanized area.

(D) RESILIENCE.—The term "resilience" means the ability to anticipate, prepare for, adapt to, withstand, respond to, and recover from operational disruptions and sustain critical operations at ports, including disruptions caused by natural or manmade hazards, such as sea level rise, flooding, earthquakes, hurricanes, tsunami inundation or other extreme weather events.

(E) STRATEGIC SEAPORT DEFINED.—In this subsection the term "strategic seaport" means a military port or commercial port that is subject to a port planning order or Basic Ordering Agreement (or both) that is projected to be used for the deployment of forces and shipment of ammunition or sustainment supplies in support of military operations.

(b) ASSISTANCE FOR SMALL INLAND RIVER AND COASTAL PORTS AND TERMINALS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—From amounts reserved under subsection (a)(7)(B), the Secretary, acting through the Administrator of the Maritime Administration, shall make grants under this subsection to eligible applicants for eligible projects at a port, to and from which the average annual tonnage of cargo for the immediately preceding 3 calendar years from the time an application is submitted is less than 8,000,000 short tons, as determined using United States Army Corps of Engineers data or data provided by an independent audit.

(2) INDEPENDENT AUDIT.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—If an eligible applicant provides data by an independent audit for purposes of paragraph (1), the Secretary shall use such data to make a tonnage determination if the Secretary determines that it is acceptable to use such data instead of using Corps of Engineers data.

(B) ACCEPTABLE USE OF DATA.—For purposes of subparagraph (A), an acceptable use

of data means that the Secretary has determined such data is a reasonable substitute for Army Corps data.

(C) JUSTIFICATION.—If the Secretary makes a determination pursuant to subparagraph (A) that it is not acceptable to use independent audit data provided by an eligible applicant, the Secretary shall provide the eligible applicant with notification of, and justification for, such determination.

(3) TONNAGE DETERMINATION.—In making a determination of the average annual tonnage of cargo using Corps of Engineers data for purposes of evaluating an application of an eligible applicant pursuant to paragraph (1), the Secretary shall use data that is specific to the eligible applicant.

(4) AWARDS.—In providing assistance under this subsection, the Secretary shall—

(A) take into account—

(i) the economic advantage and the contribution to freight transportation at a port; and

(ii) the competitive disadvantage of such a port;

(B) not make more than 1 award per applicant under this subsection for each fiscal year appropriation; and

(C) take into consideration the degree to which a project would promote the enhancement and efficiencies of a port.

(5) USE OF FUNDS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Assistance provided under this subsection may be used for a project that—

(i) is—

(I) within the boundary of a port; or

(II) outside the boundary of a port, but is directly related to port operations or to an intermodal connection to a port; and

(ii) for—

(I) making capital improvements, including to piers, wharves, docks, terminals, and similar structures used principally for the movement of goods;

(II) acquiring, improving, repairing, or maintaining transportation or physical infrastructure, buildings, or equipment;

(III) performing development phase activities described in subsection (a)(3)(B) related to carrying out an activity described in this clause; and

(IV) otherwise fulfilling the purposes for which such assistance is provided.

(B) ACQUISITION METHODS.—The Secretary may not require as a condition of issuing a grant under this subsection—

(i) direct ownership of either a facility or equipment to be procured using funds awarded under this subsection; or

(ii) that equipment procured using such funds be new.

(6) PROHIBITED USES.—Funds provided under this subsection may not be used for—

(A) projects conducted on property outside the boundary of a port unless such property is directly related to port operations or to an intermodal connection to a port;

(B) any single grant award more than 10 percent of total allocation of funds to carry out this subsection per fiscal year appropriation; or

(C) activities, including channel improvements or harbor deepening that is part of a Federal channel or an access channel associated with a Federal channel, authorized, as of the date of the application for assistance under this subsection, to be carried out by of the United States Army Corps of Engineers.

(7) MATCHING REQUIREMENTS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Any costs of the project to be paid by the recipient's matching share pursuant to subsection (a)(8)(B) may—

(i) be incurred prior to the date on which assistance is provided; and

(ii) include a loan agreement, a commitment from investors, cash on balance sheet, or other contributions determined acceptable by the Secretary.

(B) DETERMINATION OF EFFECTIVENESS.—In determining whether a project meets the criteria under clauses (i), (iii), (iv), (v), and (vi) of subsection (a)(6)(A), the Secretary shall accept documentation used to obtain a commitment of the matching funds covered by this paragraph, including feasibility studies, business plans, investor prospectuses, loan applications, or similar documentation.

(c) ADDITIONAL AUTHORITY OF THE SECRETARY.—In carrying out this section, the Secretary may—

(1) coordinate with other Federal agencies to expedite the process established under the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (42 U.S.C. 4321 et seq.) for the improvement of port facilities to improve the efficiency of the transportation system, to increase port security, or to provide greater access to port facilities;

(2) seek to coordinate all reviews or requirements with appropriate Federal, State, and local agencies; and

(3) in addition to any financial assistance provided under subsection (a) or subsection (b), provide such technical assistance to any eligible applicants as described in subsection (a)(2).

(Added and amended Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3513(a), (b), Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2240; Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §§3511, 3512, 3513(b), 3514(a), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 808–810; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §§3511(a)(3), (d)–(f), 3535(a), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2306, 2307, 2314.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The National Environmental Policy Act of 1969, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), is Pub. L. 91–190, Jan. 1, 1970, 83 Stat. 852, which is classified generally to chapter 55 (§4321 et seq.) of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4321 of Title 42 and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Subsec. (a)(1) and (2) of section 3505 of Pub. L. 113–66, which were transferred to this section, redesignated as subsec. (a)(6)(C) and (12)(E), respectively, and amended by Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(a)(1)(A), (B), were based on Pub. L. 113–66, div. C, title XXXV, §3505(a), Dec. 26, 2013, 127 Stat. 1086, formerly set out as a note under section 50302 of this title.

Subsecs. (c) to (e) of section 50302 of this title, which were transferred to this section, redesignated as subsecs. (a) to (c), repsectively, and amended by Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(a)(2), (b), were based on Pub. L. 109–304, §8(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1564; Pub. L. 111–84, div. C, title XXXV, §3512, Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2722; Pub. L. 113–66, div. C, title XXXV, §3505(b), Dec. 26, 2013, 127 Stat. 1086; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(b), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1980; Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3504, Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4399.

AMENDMENTS

2024—Subsec. (a)(5)(A). Pub. L. 118–159, §3511(f), designated existing provisions as cl. (i), inserted cl. (i) heading, and added cls. (ii) to (iv).

Subsec. (a)(5)(C). Pub. L. 118–159, §3511(d), added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (a)(6)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 118–159, §3535(a)(1)(A), substituted "subparagraph (D)" for "subparagraph (C)".

Subsec. (a)(6)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 118–159, §3535(a)(1)(B), substituted "subparagraph (D)" for "subparagraph (C)".

Subsec. (a)(6)(C), (D). Pub. L. 118–159, §3535(a)(1)(C), redesignated subpar. (C) relating to noncontiguous states and territories as (D).

Subsec. (a)(9)(D). Pub. L. 118–159, §3511(e), added subpar. (D).

Subsec. (a)(10)(B)(i). Pub. L. 118–159, §3535(a)(2)(A), substituted "law and" for "law ans".

Subsec. (a)(10)(C), (D). Pub. L. 118–159, §3535(a)(2)(B), redesignated subpar. (D) as (C) and struck out former subpar. (C). Prior to amendment, text of subpar. (C) read as follows: "The Secretary shall apply the same requirements of section 117(k) of title 23, United States Code, to a port project assisted in whole or in part under this section as the Secretary does a port-related freight project under section 117 of title 23, United States Code."

Subsec. (a)(12)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 118–159, §3511(a)(3), substituted "inland waters (including the Great Lakes)" for "inland waters".

Subsec. (a)(12)(E). Pub. L. 118–159, §3535(a)(3), struck out "and" before "commercial port".

2023—Subsec. (a)(3)(A)(ii)(V). Pub. L. 118–31, §3511, added subcl. (V).

Subsec. (a)(6)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 118–31, §3513(b)(1), inserted "(except in the case of a project described under subparagraph (C))" after "effective".

Subsec. (a)(6)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 118–31, §3513(b)(2), inserted "(except in the case of a project described under subparagraph (C))" after "as applicable".

Subsec. (a)(6)(C). Pub. L. 118–31, §3514(a)(1)(A)(iii), which directed substitution of "In selecting projects described in paragraph (3)" for "Under the port infrastructure development grant program established under section 50302(c) of title 46, United States Code", was executed by making the substitution for "Under the port infrastructure development program established under section 50302(c) of title 46, United States Code" to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 118–31, §3514(a)(1)(A)(i), (ii), transferred the text of section 3505(a)(1) of Pub. L. 113–66 to this section and redesignated it as subsec. (a)(6)(C) relating to priority funding for strategic seaports. See Codification note above.

Pub. L. 118–31, §3513(b)(3), added subpar. (C) relating to noncontiguous states and territories.

Subsec. (a)(7)(C)(ii). Pub. L. 118–31, §3512(b), substituted "subsection (b)(5)(A)(ii)(III)" for "subsection (b)(3)(A)(ii)(III)".

Subsec. (a)(12)(E). Pub. L. 118–31, §3514(a)(1)(B), transferred the text of section 3505(a)(2) of Pub. L. 113–66 to this section and redesignated it as subsec. (a)(12)(E). See Codification note above.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 118–31, §3512(a)(1), struck out "the findings of which are acceptable to the Secretary" before period at end.

Subsec. (b)(2), (3). Pub. L. 118–31, §3512(a)(3), added pars. (2) and (3). Former pars. (2) and (3) redesignated (4) and (5), respectively.

Subsec. (b)(4) to (7). Pub. L. 118–31, §3512(a)(2), redesignated pars. (2) to (5) as (4) to (7), respectively.

Subsec. (b)(7)(B). Pub. L. 118–31, §3514(a)(2), which directed substitution of "subsection (a)(6)(A)" for "subsection (c)(6)(A)" in par. (5)(B), was executed to par. (7)(B) to reflect the probable intent of Congress and the intervening redesignation made by section 3512(a)(2) of Pub. L. 118–31. See Amendment note above.

2021—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(a)(2), redesignated subsec. (c) of section 50302 of this title as subsec. (a) of this section. See Codification note above.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(1)(A), substituted "or subsection (b)" for "or subsection (d)".

Subsec. (a)(3)(A)(ii)(III), (IV). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(1)(B), added subcls. (III) and (IV) and struck out former subcl. (III), which read as follows: "environmental mitigation measures and operational improvements directly related to enhancing the efficiency of ports and intermodal connections to ports; or".

Subsec. (a)(5)(A). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(1)(C)(i), substituted "or subsection (b)" for "or subsection (d)".

Subsec. (a)(5)(B). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(1)(C)(ii), substituted "subsection (b)" for "subsection (d)".

Subsec. (a)(6)(B)(iii). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(1)(D), added cl. (iii).

Subsec. (a)(7)(B). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(1)(E)(i), substituted "subsection (b)" for "subsection (d)" in two places and "25 percent" for "18 percent".

Subsec. (a)(7)(C)(ii). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(1)(E)(ii), substituted "subsection (b)(3)(A)(ii)(III)" for "subsection (d)(3)(A)(ii)(III)".

Subsec. (a)(8)(A). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(1)(F)(i), substituted "or subsection (b)" for "or subsection (d)".

Subsec. (a)(8)(B). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(1)(F)(ii), substituted "subsection (b)" for "subsection (d)" in cls. (i) and (ii).

Subsec. (a)(9), (10)(A). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(1)(G), (H)(i), substituted "subsection (b)" for "subsection

(d)" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(10)(B) to (D). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(1)(H)(ii), (iii), added subpar. (B) and redesignated former subpars. (B) and (C) as (C) and (D), respectively.

Subsec. (a)(12). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(1)(I)(i), substituted "subsection (b)" for "subsection (d)" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(12)(D). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(1)(I)(ii), added subpar. (D).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(2)(A), substituted "Inland River" for "Inland" in heading.

Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(a)(2), redesignated subsec. (d) of section 50302 of this title as subsec. (b) of this section. See Codification note above.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(2)(B), substituted "subsection (a)(7)(B)" for "subsection (c)(7)(B)".

Subsec. (b)(3)(A)(ii)(III). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(2)(C), substituted "subsection (a)(3)(B)" for "subsection (c)(3)(B)".

Subsec. (b)(5)(A). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(2)(D), substituted "subsection (a)(8)(B)" for "subsection (c)(8)(B)" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(a)(2), redesignated subsec. (e) of section 50302 of this title as subsec. (c) of this section. See Codification note above.

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 117–81, §3513(b)(3), substituted "subsection (a) or subsection (b)" for "subsection (c) or subsection (d)" and "subsection (a)(2)" for "subsection (c)(2)".

PART D—PROMOTIONAL PROGRAMS

CHAPTER 551—COASTWISE TRADE

Sec.

55101. Application of coastwise laws.
55102. Transportation of merchandise.
55103. Transportation of passengers.
55104. Transportation of passengers between Puerto Rico and other ports in the United States.
55105. Transportation of hazardous waste.
55106. Merchandise transferred between barges.
55107. Empty cargo containers and barges.
55108. Platform jackets.
55109. Dredging.
55110. Transportation of valueless material or dredged material.
55111. Towing.
55112. Vessel escort operations and towing assistance.
55113. Use of foreign documented oil spill response vessels.
55114. Unloading fish from foreign vessels.
55115. Supplies on fish processing vessels.
55116. Canadian rail lines.
55117. Great Lakes rail route.
55118. Foreign railroads whose road enters by ferry, tugboat, or towboat.
55119. Yukon River.
55120. Transshipment of imported merchandise intended for immediate exportation.
55121. Transportation of merchandise and passengers on Canadian vessels.
55122. Floating dry docks.
55123. Priority loading for coal.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, div. A, title X, §1024(b)(1)(B)(ii), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 3842, added item 55123.

2014—Pub. L. 113–291, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(b), Dec. 19, 2014, 128 Stat. 3904, added item 55122.

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3527(b)(2), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 602, inserted "valueless

material or" before "dredged material" in item 55110.

§55101. Application of coastwise laws

(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsection (b), the coastwise laws apply to the United States, including the island territories and possessions of the United States.

(b) EXCEPTIONS.—The coastwise laws do not apply to—

(1) American Samoa;

(2) the Northern Mariana Islands, except as provided in section 502(b) of the Covenant To Establish a Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands in Political Union With the United States of America (48 U.S.C. 1801 note); or

(3) the Virgin Islands until the President declares by proclamation that the coastwise laws apply to the Virgin Islands.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1632; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3527(a), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 602.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55101(a)	46 App.:877 (words before last proviso).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §21, 41 Stat. 997; Apr. 16, 1936, ch. 228, 49 Stat. 1207; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(47), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 157.
55101(b)(1)	48:1664.	June 14, 1934, ch. 523, 48 Stat. 963.
55101(b)(2)	48:1801 note (Covenant §503(b)).	Pub. L. 94–241, §1, Mar. 24, 1976, 90 Stat. 263; Pub. L. 98–213, §9, Dec. 8, 1983, 97 Stat. 1461; Pub. L. 104–208, div. A, title I, §101(d) [title I], Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009–196.
55101(b)(3)	46 App.:877 note.	Proc. No. 3215, Dec. 12, 1957, 72 Stat. c19.
55101(b)(4)	46 App.:877 (last proviso).	

In subsection (a), the words "apply to the United States, including" are substituted for "extend to" for clarity. The words "From and after February 1, 1922" and "not covered thereby on June 5, 1920" are omitted as obsolete. The requirement to establish adequate steamship service to the island Territories and possessions is omitted as obsolete.

Subsection (b)(2) is based on section 503(b) of the Covenant To Establish a Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands in Political Union With the United States of America (48 U.S.C. 1801 note).

Subsection (b)(3) is based on Proc. No. 3215, Dec. 12, 1957, 72 Stat. c19, which provided that the President, "under and by virtue of the authority vested in me by the aforesaid section 21 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 [46 App. U.S.C. 877], do hereby declare and proclaim that the period for the establishment of an adequate shipping service for Canton Island is extended until further notice by proclamation of the President, and that the extension of the coastwise laws of the United States to Canton Island is deferred until it is declared by proclamation of the President that such adequate shipping service has been established".

In subsection (b)(4), the words "and fix a date for the going into effect of same" are omitted as surplus.

The provisos of 46 App. U.S.C. 877 relating to the Philippine Islands are omitted as obsolete because of the independence of the Philippine Islands. See Proc. No. 2695, July 4, 1946, 60 Stat. 1352 (22 U.S.C. 1394 note).

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 502(b) of the Covenant To Establish a Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands in Political Union With the United States of America, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), is contained in section 1 of Pub. L. 94–241, set out as a note under section 1801 of Title 48, Territories and Insular Possessions.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 110–181 inserted "or" after semicolon at end of par. (2), redesignated par. (4) as (3), and struck out former par. (3) which read as follows: "Canton Island until the President declares by proclamation that the coastwise laws apply to Canton Island; or".

§55102. Transportation of merchandise

(a) DEFINITION.—In this section, the term "merchandise" includes—

(1) merchandise owned by the United States Government, a State, or a subdivision of a State; and

(2) valueless material.

(b) REQUIREMENTS.—Except as otherwise provided in this chapter or chapter 121 of this title, a vessel may not provide any part of the transportation of merchandise by water, or by land and water, between points in the United States to which the coastwise laws apply, either directly or via a foreign port, unless the vessel—

(1) is wholly owned by citizens of the United States for purposes of engaging in the coastwise trade; and

(2) has been issued a certificate of documentation with a coastwise endorsement under chapter 121 or is exempt from documentation but would otherwise be eligible for such a certificate and endorsement.

(c) PENALTY.—Merchandise transported in violation of subsection (b) is liable to seizure by and forfeiture to the Government. Alternatively, an amount equal to the value of the merchandise (as determined by the Secretary of Homeland Security) or the actual cost of the transportation, whichever is greater, may be recovered from any person transporting the merchandise or causing the merchandise to be transported.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1632.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55102	46 App.:883 (words before 1st proviso, 11th proviso).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §27 (words before 1st proviso, 11th proviso), 41 Stat. 999; July 2, 1935, ch. 355, 49 Stat. 442; Pub. L. 95–410, title II, §213, Oct. 3, 1978, 92 Stat. 904; Pub. L. 101–329 [100–329], §1(a)(1), [§1(a)] June 7, 1988, 102 Stat. 588; Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5501(b), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5085.

In subsection (a)(1), the words "(as defined in section 2101 of the [sic] title 46)" are omitted because the definition of "State" is being moved to chapter 1 and will apply to the entire title.

In subsection (b), the words "may not provide any part of the transportation of" are substituted for "No . . . shall be transported" and "or for any part of the transportation" because of the reorganization of the language. The words "including Districts, Territories, and possessions thereof" are omitted because of the definition of "United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title. The words "to which the coastwise laws apply" are substituted for "embraced within the coastwise laws" for consistency with section 55101. The words "is wholly owned by

citizens of the United States for purposes of engaging in the coastwise trade" are substituted for "owned by persons who are citizens of the United States", and the words "has been issued a certificate of documentation with a coastwise endorsement under chapter 121" are substituted for "documented under the laws of the United States", for clarity and consistency in the revised title. The words "or is exempt from documentation but would otherwise be eligible for such a certificate and endorsement" are added for consistency with section 12102 as revised by the bill. The requirement that the vessel be built in the United States is omitted from this section for consistency with the requirements for a coastwise endorsement, which also require that the vessel be built in the United States except in certain circumstances. The words "or vessels to which the privilege of engaging in the coastwise trade is extended by section 808 of this Appendix or section 22 of this Act" are omitted because the relevant portion of section 808, and section 22, have been repealed.

In subsection (c), the words "any person" are substituted for "any consignor, seller, owner, importer, consignee, agent, or other person or persons" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§55103. Transportation of passengers

(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as otherwise provided in this chapter or chapter 121 of this title, a vessel may not transport passengers between ports or places in the United States to which the coastwise laws apply, either directly or via a foreign port, unless the vessel—

(1) is wholly owned by citizens of the United States for purposes of engaging in the coastwise trade; and

(2) has been issued a certificate of documentation with a coastwise endorsement under chapter 121 or is exempt from documentation but would otherwise be eligible for such a certificate and endorsement.

(b) PENALTY.—The penalty for violating subsection (a) is $300 for each passenger transported and landed.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1633.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55103	46 App.:289.	June 19, 1886, ch. 421, §8, 24 Stat. 81; Feb. 17, 1898, ch. 26, §2, 30 Stat. 248.

This section is substituted for the source provision for consistency with section 55102. See 19 C.F.R. §§4.80, 4.80a (2004).

In subsection (b), the penalty amount reflects the adjustment for inflation pursuant to the Federal Civil Penalties Inflation Adjustment Act of 1990 (28 U.S.C. 2461 note). See 19 C.F.R. §4.80(b)(2) (2004).

§55104. Transportation of passengers between Puerto Rico and other ports in the United States

(a) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

(1) CERTIFICATE.—The term "certificate" means a certificate of financial responsibility for indemnification of passengers for nonperformance of transportation issued by the Federal Maritime Commission under section 44102 of this title.

(2) PASSENGER VESSEL.—The term "passenger vessel" means a vessel of similar size, or offering similar service, as any other vessel transporting passengers under subsection (b).

(b) EXEMPTION.—Except as otherwise provided in this section, a vessel not qualified to engage in the coastwise trade may transport passengers between a port in Puerto Rico and another port in the United States.

(c) EXPIRATION OF EXEMPTION.—

(1) WHEN COASTWISE-QUALIFIED VESSEL OFFERING SERVICE.—On a showing to the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating, by the vessel owner or charterer, that a United States passenger vessel qualified to engage in the coastwise trade is offering or advertising passenger service between a port in Puerto Rico and another port in the United States pursuant to a certificate, the Secretary shall notify the owner or operator of each vessel transporting passengers under subsection (b) to terminate that transportation within 270 days after the Secretary's notification. Except as provided in subsection (d), the authority to transport passengers under subsection (b) expires at the end of that 270-day period.

(2) WHEN NON-COASTWISE-QUALIFIED VESSEL OFFERING SERVICE.—On a showing to the Secretary, by the vessel owner or charterer, that a United States passenger vessel not qualified to engage in the coastwise trade is offering or advertising passenger service between a port in Puerto Rico and another port in the United States pursuant to a certificate, the Secretary shall notify the owner or operator of each foreign vessel transporting passengers under subsection (b) to terminate that transportation within 270 days after the Secretary's notification. Except as provided in subsection (d), the authority of a foreign vessel to transport passengers under subsection (b) expires at the end of that 270-day period.

(d) DELAYING EXPIRATION.—If the vessel offering or advertising the service described in subsection (c) has not begun that service within 270 days after the Secretary's notification, the expiration provided by subsection (c) is delayed until 90 days after the vessel offering or advertising the service begins that service.

(e) REINSTATEMENT OF EXPIRATION.—If the Secretary finds that the service on which an expiration was based is no longer available, the expired authority to transport passengers is reinstated.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1633.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55104(a)(1)	46 App.:289c(b) (related to meaning of certificate).	Pub. L. 98–563, Oct. 30, 1984, 98 Stat. 2916.
55104(a)(2)	46 App.:289c(e).	
55104(b)	46 App.:289c(a).	
55104(c)	46 App.:289c(b).	
55104(d)	46 App.:289c(c).	
55104(e)	46 App.:289c(d).	

In subsection (a), the definition of "certificate" is added based on the language in 46 App. U.S.C. 289c(b)(1) and (2) to avoid repeating the substance of the definition twice in the section.

In subsection (b), the words "Notwithstanding any other provision of law" and "directly or by way of a foreign port" are omitted as unnecessary.

§55105. Transportation of hazardous waste

(a) IN GENERAL.—The transportation of hazardous waste, as defined in section 1004(5) of the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976 (42 U.S.C. 6903(5)), from a point in the United States to sea for incineration is deemed to be transportation of merchandise under section 55102 of this title.

(b) NONAPPLICATION TO CERTAIN FOREIGN VESSELS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Subsection (a) does not apply to transportation performed by a foreign ocean incineration vessel owned by or under construction on May 1, 1982, for a corporation

wholly owned by citizens of the United States under section 50501(a)–(c) of this title.

(2) STANDARDS FOR INCINERATION EQUIPMENT.—Incineration equipment on a vessel described in paragraph (1) must meet standards of the Coast Guard and the Environmental Protection Agency.

(3) INSPECTION.—A vessel described in paragraph (1) shall be inspected by the Coast Guard, regardless of whether inspected by the nation in which it is registered. The inspection shall be the same as would be required of a vessel of the United States, including drydock inspection and internal examination of tanks and void spaces. The inspection may be made concurrently with an inspection by that nation or within one year after the initial issuance or next scheduled issuance of the Safety of Life at Sea Safety Construction Certificate. In making the inspection, the Coast Guard shall refer to the condition of the hull and superstructure established by the initial foreign certification as the basis for evaluating the current condition of the hull and superstructure. The Coast Guard shall allow the substitution of fittings, material, apparatus, equipment, and appliances different from those required for vessels of the United States if satisfied they are equivalent and at least as effective as those required for vessels of the United States. A satisfactory inspection under this paragraph shall be certified in writing by the Secretary of Homeland Security.

(c) EFFECTIVE DATE.—Subsection (a) is not effective until an appropriate vessel has been built and documented under chapter 121 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1634; Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §902(o), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 569; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3525(a)(4), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 601.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55105	46 App.:883 (2d–6th sentences, last sentence less provisos).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §27 (2d–6th sentences, last sentence less provisos), 41 Stat. 999; July 2, 1935, ch. 355, 49 Stat. 442; Pub. L. 97–389, title V, §502, Dec. 29, 1982, 96 Stat. 1954.

In subsection (a), the words "after December 31, 1983" are omitted as obsolete. The words "transportation of merchandise under section 55102 of this title" are substituted for "For the purposes of this section" and "transportation by water of merchandise between points in the United States" for consistency with section 55102.

In subsection (b)(2), the words "all current" are omitted as surplus.

Subsection (c) is substituted for "or after such time as an appropriate vessel has been constructed and documented as a vessel of the United States" to improve the organization.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 1004(5) of the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976 (42 U.S.C. 6903(5)), referred to in subsec. (a), probably means section 1004(5) of the Solid Waste Disposal Act (42 U.S.C. 6903(5)), as added by section 2 of the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94–580.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–241, §902(o). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(a)(4), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–241, §902(o), into this section by substituting "Secretary of Homeland Security" for "Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating". See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–241, §902(o), which directed the amendment of section 883 of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsec. (b)(3) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§55106. Merchandise transferred between barges

(a) IN GENERAL.—On terms and conditions the Secretary of Homeland Security may prescribe by regulation, the Secretary may suspend the application of section 55102 of this title to the transportation of merchandise that is transferred, when moving in the foreign trade of the United States, from a barge certified by the owner or operator as designed specifically for carriage on a vessel and carried regularly on a vessel in foreign trade, to another such barge owned or leased by the same owner or operator. However, this subsection does not apply to transportation between the continental United States and noncontiguous States, territories, or possessions to which the coastwise laws apply.

(b) RECIPROCITY REQUIREMENT FOR FOREIGN VESSELS.—This section applies to a vessel of foreign registry only if the Secretary of Homeland Security finds, based on information from the Secretary of State, that the government of the nation of registry extends reciprocal privileges to vessels of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1635.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55106	46 App.:883 (7th proviso).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §27 (7th proviso), 41 Stat. 999; July 2, 1935, ch. 355, 49 Stat. 442; Pub. L. 92–163, §1, Nov. 23, 1971, 85 Stat. 486.

In subsection (a), the words "non-self-propelled" are omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "barge" in chapter 1 of the revised title. The words "between points in the United States" and "without regard to whether any such barge is under foreign registry or qualified to engage in the coastwise trade" are omitted as surplus.

§55107. Empty cargo containers and barges

(a) IN GENERAL.—Subject to subsections (b) and (c), and on terms and conditions the Secretary of Homeland Security may prescribe by regulation, section 55102 of this title does not apply to the transportation of—

(1) empty cargo vans, empty lift vans, or empty shipping tanks;

(2) equipment for use with cargo vans, lift vans, or shipping tanks;

(3) empty barges specifically designed for carriage aboard a vessel and equipment (except propulsion equipment) for use with those barges;

(4) empty instruments for international traffic exempted from the customs laws under section 322(a) of the Tariff Act of 1930 (19 U.S.C. 1322(a)); or

(5) stevedoring equipment and material.

(b) CONDITIONS.—

(1) PARAGRAPHS (1)–(4).—Paragraphs (1)–(4) of subsection (a) apply only if the items named are owned or leased by the owner or operator of the vessel and transported for its use in handling its cargo in foreign trade.

(2) PARAGRAPH (5).—Paragraph (5) of subsection (a) applies only if the items named are—

(A) owned or leased by the owner or operator of the vessel or by the stevedoring company having the contract for the loading or unloading of the vessel; and

(B) transported without charge for use in the handling of cargo in foreign trade.

(c) RECIPROCITY REQUIREMENT FOR FOREIGN VESSELS.—This section applies to a vessel of foreign registry only if the Secretary of Homeland Security finds, based on information from the Secretary of State, that the government of the nation of registry extends reciprocal privileges to vessels of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1635.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55107	46 App.:883 (6th proviso).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §27 (6th proviso), 41 Stat. 999; July 2, 1935, ch. 355, 49 Stat. 442; Pub. L. 89–194, Sept. 21, 1965, 79 Stat. 823; Pub. L. 90–474, Aug. 11, 1968, 80 Stat. 700; Pub. L. 92–163, §1, Nov. 23, 1971, 85 Stat. 486.

In subsection (a), before paragraph (1), the words "by vessels of the United States not qualified to engage in the coastwise trade, or by vessels of foreign registry" are omitted as unnecessary. In paragraph (4), the words "by the Secretary of the Treasury" are omitted as unnecessary because the section referred to provides who administers it.

§55108. Platform jackets

(a) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

(1) COASTWISE QUALIFIED VESSEL.—The term "coastwise qualified vessel" means a vessel that has been issued a certificate of documentation with a coastwise endorsement under chapter 121 of this title.

(2) PLATFORM JACKET.—The term "platform jacket" refers to a single physical component and includes any type of offshore exploration, development, or production structure or component thereof, including—

(A) platform jackets;

(B) tension leg or SPAR platform superstructures (including the deck, drilling rig and support utilities, and supporting structure);

(C) hull (including vertical legs and connecting pontoons or vertical cylinder);

(D) tower and base sections of a platform jacket;

(E) jacket structures; and

(F) deck modules (known as "topsides").

(b) AUTHORIZED TRANSPORTATION.—Section 55102 of this title does not apply to the transportation of a platform jacket in or on a non-coastwise qualified launch barge between two points in the United States, at one of which there is an installation or other device within the meaning of section 4(a) of the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act (43 U.S.C. 1333(a)), if—

(1) the launch barge was built before December 31, 2000, and has a launch capacity of at least 12,000 long tons; and

(2) the Secretary of Transportation makes a determination, in accordance with procedures established under subsection (c), that a suitable coastwise qualified vessel is not available for use in the transportation and, if needed, launch or installation of a platform jacket.

(c) PROCEDURES TO MAXIMIZE USE OF COASTWISE QUALIFIED VESSELS.—The Secretary of Transportation shall adopt procedures implementing this section that are reasonably designed to provide timely information so as to maximize the use of coastwise qualified vessels. The procedures shall, among other things, establish that for purposes of this section, a coastwise qualified vessel shall be deemed to be not available only if—

(1) on application by an owner or operator for the use of a non-coastwise qualified launch barge for transportation of a platform jacket under this section (which application shall include all relevant information, including engineering details and timing requirements), the Secretary promptly publishes a notice in the Federal Register—

(A) describing the project and the platform jacket involved;

(B) advising that all relevant information reasonably needed to assess the transportation requirements for the platform jacket will be made available to interested parties on request; and

(C) requesting that information on the availability of coastwise qualified vessels be submitted within 30 days after publication of that notice; and

(2)(A) no information is submitted to the Secretary within that 30 day period; or

(B) the owner or operator of a coastwise qualified vessel submits information to the Secretary asserting that the owner or operator has a suitable coastwise qualified vessel available for the transportation, but the Secretary determines, within 90 days after the notice is first published, that the coastwise qualified vessel is not suitable or reasonably available for the transportation.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1636.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55108	46 App.:883 (last proviso).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §27 (last proviso), 41 Stat. 999; July 2, 1935, ch. 355, 49 Stat. 442; Pub. L. 101–329 [100–329], §1(a)(2), June 7, 1988, 102 Stat. 588; Pub. L. 107–295, title II, §213(c), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2100; Pub. L. 108–293, title IV, §417, Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1048.

In subsection (a), the words "coastwise endorsement under chapter 121" are substituted for "coastwise endorsement under section 12106" because section 12106 is being restated in various sections in revised chapter 121.

In subsection (b), the words "Section 55102 of this title does not apply" are substituted for "shall not be deemed transportation subject to this section" for consistency in the chapter.

§55109. Dredging

(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsection (b), a vessel may engage in dredging in the navigable waters of the United States only if—

(1) the vessel is wholly owned by citizens of the United States for purposes of engaging in the coastwise trade;

(2) the charterer, if any, is a citizen of the United States for purposes of engaging in the coastwise trade; and

(3) the vessel has been issued a certificate of documentation with a coastwise endorsement under chapter 121 of this title or is exempt from documentation but would otherwise be eligible for such a certificate and endorsement.

(b) DREDGING OF GOLD IN ALASKA.—A documented vessel with a registry endorsement may engage in the dredging of gold in Alaska.

(c) PENALTY.—If a vessel is operated in knowing violation of this section, the vessel and its equipment are liable to seizure by and forfeiture to the United States Government.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1637.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55109	46 App.:292.	May 28, 1906, ch. 2566, §1, 34 Stat. 204; Pub. L. 102–87, title V, §5501(a)(1), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5084.

Subsection (a)(1) is substituted for "(1) the vessel meets the requirements of section 883 of this Appendix and sections 802 and 803 of this Appendix for engaging in the coastwise trade" for consistency with other sections of the revised title and to eliminate unnecessary words. Section 883 requires (among other things) that the vessel be owned by citizens of the United States, and section 802 contains the requirements for certain entities to qualify as citizens. Those requirements are restated in section 50501 which applies to this section. Section 883 also requires that the vessel be built in and documented under the laws of the United States. Those latter two requirements are covered by subsection (a)(3). Note that the build requirement is a requirement for a coastwise endorsement.

In subsection (a)(3), the words "or is exempt from documentation but would otherwise be eligible for such a certificate and endorsement" are added for consistency with section 12102 as revised by the bill.

[H.R. Rep. No. 109–170, at 180 (2005) provided: Section 17(i) of the bill [H.R. 1442, enacted as Pub. L. 109–304] amends section 5501(a) of the Oceans Act of 1992 (Public Law 102–587, 106 Stat. 5084) [see note above] by adding a new paragraph (3). The intent of this amendment is to maintain the status quo under paragraph (2) of section 5501(a) of that Act, as it exists prior to the enactment of this codification legislation. Section 55109 of title 46, United States Code, as contained in this bill, is intended as a codification without substantive change of section 1 of the Act of May 28, 1906, as amended (46 App. U.S.C. 292). Therefore, the exceptions from that latter provision, which currently exist under such paragraph (2), are intended to continue to exist to the same extent under new section 55109 of title 46. In addition, if the original intent of such paragraph (2) was that the restriction contained in the pre-1992 amended version of that 1906 provision continues to apply to the vessels, persons, and entities described in such paragraph (2), then that outcome is intended to remain unchanged by this legislation, despite the repeal by this legislation of that 1906 provision. No expression as to the original intent of such paragraph (2) is intended by this legislation.]

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

NONAPPLICABILITY TO CERTAIN VESSELS

Pub. L. 109–304, §19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1711, repealed section 1 of act May 28, 1906, ch. 2566, 34 Stat. 204 (section 292 of the former Appendix to this title, from which this section was derived), except as may be applicable under section 5501(a)(2) of Pub. L. 102–587, set out below.

Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5501(a)(2), (3), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5084, as amended by Pub. L. 109–304, §17(i), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1709, provided that:

"(2) The amendment made by paragraph (1) [amending section 292 of the former Appendix to this title, from which this section was derived] does not apply to—

"(A)(i) the vessel STUYVESANT, official number 648540;

"(ii) any other hopper dredging vessel documented under chapter 121 of title 46, United States Code before the effective date of this Act [Nov. 4, 1992] and chartered to Stuyvesant Dredging Company or to an entity in which it has an ownership interest; however, this exception expires on December 3, 2022 or when the vessel STUYVESANT ceases to be documented under chapter 121, whichever first occurs; and

"(iii) any other non-hopper dredging vessel documented under chapter 121 and chartered to Stuyvesant Dredging Company or to an entity in which it has an ownership interest, as is necessary (a) to fulfill dredging obligations under a specific contract, including any extension periods; or (b) as temporary replacement capacity for a vessel which has become disabled but only for so long as the disability shall last

and until the vessel is in a position to fully resume dredging operations; however, this exception expires on December 8, 2022 or when the vessel STUYVESANT ceases to be documented under chapter 121, whichever first occurs;

"(B) the vessel COLUMBUS, official number 590658, except that the vessel's certificate of documentation shall be endorsed to prohibit the vessel from engaging in the transportation of merchandise (except valueless material), including dredge material of value, between places within the navigable waters of the United States;

"(C) a vessel that is engaged in dredged material excavation if that excavation is not more than a minority of the total cost of the construction contract in which the excavation is a single, integral part, and the vessel is—

"(i) built in the United States;

"(ii) a non-self-propelled mechanical clamshell dredging vessel; and

"(iii) owned or chartered by a corporation that had on file with the Secretary of Transportation, on August 1, 1989, the certificate specified in section 27A of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 (46 App. U.S.C. 883–1) [now 46 U.S.C. 12118]; or

"(D) any other documented vessel engaged in dredging and time chartered to an entity that, on August 1, 1989, was, and has continuously remained, the parent of a corporation that had on file with the Secretary of Transportation on August 1, 1989, a certificate specified in section 27A of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 (46 App. U.S.C. 883–1) [now 46 U.S.C. 12118] if the vessel is—

"(i) not engaged in a federally funded navigation dredging project; and

"(ii) engaged only in dredging associated with, and integral to, accomplishment of that parent's regular business requirements.

"(3) The exceptions provided by paragraph (2) shall apply under section 55109 of title 46, United States Code, to the same extent as under former section 1 of the Act of May 28, 1906 [section 292 of the former Appendix to this title, from which this section was derived], as amended by paragraph (1)."

§55110. Transportation of valueless material or dredged material

Section 55102 of this title applies to the transportation of valueless material or dredged material, regardless of whether it has commercial value, from a point in the United States or on the high seas within the exclusive economic zone, to another point in the United States or on the high seas within the exclusive economic zone.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1637; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3527(b)(1), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 602.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55110	46 App.:883 (12th proviso).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §27 (12th proviso), 41 Stat. 999; Pub. L. 100–329, §1(a), June 7, 1988, 102 Stat. 588.

The words "or place" are omitted as surplus. The words "as defined in the Presidential Proclamation of March 10, 1983" are omitted because "exclusive economic zone" is defined in chapter 1 of the revised title.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181 inserted "valueless material or" before "dredged material" in section catchline.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

NONAPPLICABILITY OF PUB. L. 100–329 TO CERTAIN VESSELS

Pub. L. 102–587, title V, §5501(c), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5085, provided that: "The Act of June 7, 1988 (Public Law 100–329; 102 Stat. 588) [amending sections 316 and 883 (from which this section was derived) of the former Appendix to this title and enacting provisions set out below], including the amendments made by that Act, does not apply to a vessel—

"(1) engaged in the transportation of valueless material or valueless dredged material; and

"(2) owned or chartered by a corporation that had on file with the Secretary of Transportation on August 1, 1989, the certificate specified in section 27A of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 (46 App. U.S.C. 883–1) [now 46 U.S.C. 12118]."

TRANSPORTATION OF MUNICIPAL SEWAGE SLUDGE

Pub. L. 100–329, §3, June 7, 1988, 102 Stat. 589, provided that: "Notwithstanding the provisions of section 1 of this Act [amending section 883 of the former Appendix to this title, from which this section was derived], a vessel may transport municipal sewage sludge if that vessel, regardless of where it was built, is documented under the laws of the United States and, on the date of enactment of this Act [June 7, 1988], that vessel—

"(1) is in use by a municipality for the transportation of sewage sludge; or

"(2) is under contract with a municipality for the transportation of sewage sludge."

VESSEL UNDER CONTRACT WITH MUNICIPALITY FOR TRANSPORTATION OF SEWAGE SLUDGE: APPLICABILITY OF PROVISIONS

Pub. L. 100–329, §4, June 7, 1988, 102 Stat. 589, provided that: "For purposes of the first paragraph of section 805(a) of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 App. U.S.C. 1223(a)) [now 46 U.S.C. 58101], a vessel described in section 3(2) of this Act [set out as a note above] is not a vessel engaged in domestic intercoastal or coastwise service, but the prohibitions in the second paragraph apply to that vessel."

CERTIFICATE OF DOCUMENTATION TO VESSEL TRANSPORTING VALUELESS MATERIAL IN COASTWISE TRADE, OR DREDGED MATERIAL, WHETHER OR NOT OF VALUE; ISSUANCE, ENDORSEMENT, ETC.

Pub. L. 100–329, §5, June 7, 1988, 102 Stat. 589, provided that: "Notwithstanding the provisions of section 1 of this Act [amending section 883 of the former Appendix to this title, from which this section was derived], the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating may issue a certificate of documentation under section 12106 [see section 12112] of title 46, United States Code, to a vessel that—

"(1) is engaged in transporting only valueless material in the coastwise trade or transporting dredged material, whether or not of value, (A) from a point or place on the high seas within the Exclusive Economic Zone as defined in the Presidential Proclamation of March 10, 1983 [16 U.S.C. 1453 note], to a point or place in the United States or to another point or place on the high seas within such Exclusive Economic Zone or (B) from a point or place within the United States to a point or place on the high seas within such Exclusive Economic Zone;

"(2) had a certificate of documentation issued under section 12105 [see section 12111] of that title on October 1, 1987;

"(3) had been sold foreign or placed under a foreign registry before that certificate was issued; and

"(4) was built in the United States;

except that such certificate of documentation shall be endorsed to restrict the use of such vessel to the transportation of valueless material in the coastwise trade, and to the transportation of dredged material, whether or not of value, (i) from a point or place on the high seas within such Exclusive Economic Zone to a point or place in the United States or to another point or place on the high seas within such Exclusive Economic Zone, or (ii) from a point or place within the United States to a point or place on the high seas within such Exclusive Economic Zone."

§55111. Towing

(a) IN GENERAL.—Except when towing a vessel in distress, a vessel may not do any part of any towing described in subsection (b) unless the towing vessel—

(1) is wholly owned by citizens of the United States for purposes of engaging in the coastwise trade; and

(2) has been issued a certificate of documentation with a coastwise endorsement under chapter 121 of this title or is exempt from documentation but would otherwise be eligible for such a certificate and endorsement.

(b) APPLICABLE TOWING.—Subsection (a) applies to the towing of—

(1) a vessel between ports or places in the United States to which the coastwise laws apply, either directly or via a foreign port or place;

(2) a vessel from point to point within the harbors of ports or places to which the coastwise laws apply; or

(3) a vessel transporting valueless material or dredged material, regardless of whether it has commercial value, from a point in the United States or on the high seas within the exclusive economic zone, to another point in the United States or on the high seas within the exclusive economic zone.

(c) PENALTIES.—

(1) OWNER AND MASTER.—The owner and master of a vessel towing another vessel in violation of this section are each liable for a penalty of at least $350 but not more than $1,100. A penalty under this paragraph constitutes a lien on the vessel. The lien is enforceable in a district court of the United States for any district in which the vessel is found. Clearance may not be granted to the vessel until the penalties have been paid.

(2) VESSEL.—In addition to the penalties under paragraph (1), the towing vessel is liable for a penalty of $60 per ton based on the tonnage of each towed vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1637.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55111	46 App.:316(a), (b).	R.S. §4370; June 11, 1940, ch. 324, 54 Stat. 304; Pub. L. 99–307, §10, May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 447; Pub. L. 100–329, §2, June 7, 1988, 102 Stat. 589; Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1115(b)(3), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3972.

In subsection (a), the words "or to do any part of such towing" and "other than a vessel in distress" in the source provision are made applicable to all the towing described in subsection (b) for clarity and consistency. In paragraph (1), the words "wholly owned by citizens of the United States for purposes of engaging in the coastwise trade" are substituted for "wholly owned by a person who is a citizen of the United States within the meaning of the laws respecting the documentation of vessels" for consistency in this chapter.

Subsection (a)(2) is substituted for "having in force a certificate of documentation issued under section 12106 of title 46" for consistency in this chapter and with section 12102(b) as revised by the bill.

In subsection (b)(1), the words "in the United States to which the coastwise laws apply" are substituted for "in the United States, its Territories or possessions, embraced within the coastwise laws of the United States" because of the definition of "United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title and because of section 55101 of the revised title.

In subsection (b)(3), the words "or place" are omitted as surplus. The words "as defined in the Presidential Proclamation of March 10, 1983" are omitted because "exclusive economic zone" is defined in chapter 1 of the revised title.

In subsection (c), the penalty amounts reflect the adjustment for inflation pursuant to the Federal Civil Penalties Inflation Adjustment Act of 1990 (28 U.S.C. 2461 note). See 19 C.F.R. §4.92 (2004). In paragraph (2), the words "which sum may be recovered by way of libel or suit" are omitted as surplus.

The text of 46 App. U.S.C. 316(b) is omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "person" in section 1 of title 1.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

NONAPPLICABILITY OF PUB. L. 100–329 TO CERTAIN VESSEL

Amendment by Pub. L. 100–329 to section 316 of the former Appendix to this title, from which this section was derived, not applicable to a vessel engaged in the transportation of valueless material or valueless dredged material and owned or chartered by a corporation that had on file with Secretary of Transportation on Aug. 1, 1989, the certificate specified in section 883–1 of the former Appendix to this title (now section 12118 of this title), see section 5501(c) of Pub. L. 102–587, set out as a note under section 55110 of this title.

§55112. Vessel escort operations and towing assistance

(a) IN GENERAL.—Except in the case of a vessel in distress, only a vessel of the United States may perform the following escort vessel operations within the navigable waters of the United States:

(1) Operations that commence or terminate at a port or place in the United States.

(2) Operations required by United States law or regulation.

(3) Operations provided in whole or in part within or through navigation facilities owned, maintained, or operated by the United States Government or the approaches to those facilities, other than facilities operated by the Great Lakes St. Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation on the St. Lawrence River portion of the Seaway.

(b) ESCORT VESSELS.—For purposes of this section, an escort vessel is—

(1) any vessel that is assigned and dedicated to assist another vessel, whether or not tethered to that vessel, solely as a safety precaution to assist in controlling the speed or course of the assisted vessel in the event of a steering or propulsion equipment failure, or any other similar emergency circumstance, or in restricted waters where additional assistance in maneuvering the vessel is required to ensure its safe operation; and

(2) in the case of a vessel being towed under section 55111 of this title, any vessel that is assigned and dedicated to the vessel being towed in addition to any towing vessel required under that section.

(c) RELATIONSHIP TO OTHER LAW.—This section does not affect section 55111 of this title.

(d) PENALTY.—A person violating this section is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 for each day during which the violation occurs.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1638; Pub. L. 116–260, div. AA, title V, §512(c)(6)(D), Dec. 27, 2020, 134 Stat. 2757.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55112	46 App.:316a.	Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §404, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2114.

In subsection (a), the words "(as that term is defined in section 2101 of title 46, United States Code)" are omitted because the definition of "vessel of the United States" is being moved from section 2101 to chapter 1 of the revised title and will apply title-wide.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2020—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 116–260 substituted "Great Lakes St. Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation" for "St. Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation".

§55113. Use of foreign documented oil spill response vessels

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, an oil spill response vessel documented under the laws of a foreign country may operate in waters of the United States on an emergency and temporary basis, for the purpose of recovering, transporting, and unloading in a United States port oil discharged as a result of an oil spill in or near those waters, if—

(1) an adequate number and type of oil spill response vessels documented under the laws of the United States cannot be engaged to recover oil from an oil spill in or near those waters in a timely manner, as determined by the Federal On-Scene Coordinator for a discharge or threat of a discharge of oil; and

(2) the foreign country has by its laws accorded to vessels of the United States the same privileges accorded to vessels of the foreign country under this section.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1638.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55113	46:12101 note.	Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1117, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3973.

§55114. Unloading fish from foreign vessels

(a) PROHIBITIONS.—Except as otherwise provided by this section or a treaty or convention to which the United States is a party, a foreign vessel may not unload, in a port of the United States—

(1) its catch of fish taken on board on the high seas or fish products processed from that catch of fish; or

(2) fish or fish products taken on board that vessel on the high seas from a vessel engaged in fishing operations or the processing of fish or fish products.

(b) REGULATIONS ON OBTAINING INFORMATION.—The Secretary of Commerce may prescribe regulations the Secretary considers necessary to obtain information on the transportation of fish products by vessels of the United States for foreign fish processing vessels to points in the United States.

(c) VIRGIN ISLANDS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—A foreign vessel of not more than 50 feet overall in length may unload its catch of fresh fish (whole or with the heads, viscera, or fins removed, but not frozen, otherwise processed, or further advanced) in a port of the Virgin Islands for immediate consumption in those islands. Fish unloaded under this paragraph may be sold or transferred only for immediate consumption. In the absence of satisfactory evidence that a sale or transfer to an agent, representative, or employee of a freezer or cannery is for immediate consumption, the sale or transfer is deemed not to be for immediate consumption. This paragraph does not prohibit the freezing, smoking, or other processing of fresh fish by the ultimate consumer of the fish.

(2) SEIZURE, FORFEITURE, AND PENALTY.—Fish unloaded in the Virgin Islands that are retained, sold, or transferred, except as allowed by paragraph (1), are liable to seizure by and forfeiture to the United States Government. A person retaining, selling, transferring, buying, or receiving the fish is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $1,000 for each violation. A penalty or forfeiture under this paragraph may be compromised, modified, or remitted under section 2107(b) of this title.

(d) NORTHERN MARIANA ISLANDS.—Subsection (a) does not apply to the Northern Mariana Islands.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1639.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55114(a)	46 App.:251(a) (1st sentence).	R.S. §4311; Sept. 2, 1950, ch. 842, 64 Stat. 577; Pub. L. 87–220, §1, Sept. 13, 1961, 75 Stat. 493; Pub. L. 96–61, §2, Aug. 15, 1979, 93 Stat. 407; Pub. L. 96–594, title I, §126(b), Dec. 24, 1980, 94 Stat. 3459; Pub. L. 100–239, §8(a), Jan. 11, 1988, 101 Stat. 1783.
55114(b)	46 App.:251(a) (last sentence).	
55114(c)(1)	46 App.:251(b).	
55114(c)(2)	46 App.:251(c).	
	46 App.:251a.	Pub. L. 87–220, §2, Sept. 13, 1961, 75 Stat. 493.
55114(d)	48:1801 note (Covenant §503(b)).	

In subsection (a), before paragraph (1), the words "whether documented as a cargo vessel or otherwise" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (c)(2), the words "severally" and "in addition to any other penalty provided in law" are omitted as unnecessary. The last sentence is substituted for 46 App. U.S.C. 251a.

Subsection (d) is based on section 503(b) of the Covenant to Establish a Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands in Political Union With the United States of America (48 U.S.C. 1801 note).

§55115. Supplies on fish processing vessels

Section 55102 of this title does not apply to supplies aboard a United States documented fish processing vessel that are necessary and used for processing or assembling fishery products aboard such a vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1640.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55115	46 App.:883 (10th proviso).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §27 (10th proviso), 41 Stat. 999; July 2, 1935, ch. 355, 49 Stat. 442; Pub. L. 97–389, title V, §504, Dec. 29, 1982, 96 Stat. 1956.

The words "Section 55102 of this title does not apply to" are substituted for "for the purposes of this section" and "shall be considered ship's equipment and not merchandise" for consistency in the chapter.

§55116. Canadian rail lines

Section 55102 of this title does not apply to the transportation of merchandise between points in the continental United States, including Alaska, over through routes in part over Canadian rail lines and connecting water facilities if the routes are recognized by the Surface Transportation Board and rate tariffs for the routes have been filed with the Board.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1640.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55116	46 App.:883 (3d proviso).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §27 (3d proviso), 41 Stat. 999; July 2, 1935, ch. 355, 49 Stat. 442; Pub. L. 85–508, §27(a), July 7, 1958, 72 Stat. 351; Pub. L. 104–324, title VII, §747(1), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3943.

§55117. Great Lakes rail route

Section 55102 of this title does not apply to the transportation of merchandise loaded on a railroad car or to a motor vehicle with or without a trailer, and with its passengers or contents when accompanied by the operator, when the railroad car or motor vehicle is transported in a railroad car ferry operated between fixed terminals on the Great Lakes as part of a rail route, if—

(1) the car ferry is owned by a common carrier by water and operated as part of a rail route with the approval of the Surface Transportation Board;

(2) the stock of the common carrier by water, or its predecessor, was owned or controlled by a common carrier by rail prior to June 5, 1920;

(3) the stock of the common carrier owning the car ferry is, with the approval of the Board, now owned or controlled by a common carrier by rail; and

(4) the car ferry is built in and documented under the laws of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1640.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55117	46 App.:883 (5th proviso).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §27, as added Apr. 11, 1935, ch. 58, 49 Stat. 154.

§55118. Foreign railroads whose road enters by ferry, tugboat, or towboat

A foreign railroad, whose road enters the United States by ferry, tugboat, or towboat, may own and operate a vessel not having a coastwise endorsement in connection with the water transportation of the passenger, freight, express, baggage, and mail cars used by that road, together with the passengers, freight, express matter, baggage, and mails transported in those cars. However, the foreign railroad is subject to the same restrictions imposed by law on a vessel of the United States entering a port of the United States from the same foreign country. Except as otherwise authorized by this chapter, the ferry, tugboat, or towboat may not, under penalty of forfeiture, be used in the transportation of merchandise between ports or places in the United States to which the coastwise laws apply.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1640.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55118	46 App.:316(c).	R.S. §4370(c); restated June 11, 1940, ch. 324, 54 Stat. 304.

The words "company or corporation" after "foreign railroad" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "vessel not having a coastwise endorsement" are substituted for "such vessel" (referring to a vessel described in 46 App. U.S.C. 316(a)) for clarity and because of the reorganization of the source material in the revised title. The words "However, the foreign railroad is subject to the same restrictions imposed by law on a vessel of the United States entering a port of the United States from the same foreign country" are substituted for "without being subject to any other or different restrictions than those imposed by law on any vessel of the United States entering ports of the United States from ports in the same foreign country" to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "Except as otherwise authorized by this chapter" are substituted for "except as authorized by section 883 of this Appendix" because of the reorganization of the source material in the revised title. The words "its Territories or possessions" are omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

§55119. Yukon River

Section 55102 of this title does not apply to the transportation of merchandise on the Yukon River until the Alaska Railroad is completed and the Secretary of Transportation finds that proper facilities will be available for transportation by citizens of the United States to properly handle the traffic.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1640.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55119	46 App.:883 (4th proviso).	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §27 (4th proviso), 41 Stat. 999; Exec. Order No. 6166, June 10, 1933, §12; July 2, 1935, ch. 355, 49 Stat. 442; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Reorg. Plan No. 21 of 1950, eff. May 24, 1950, §204, 64 Stat. 1276; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(49), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 157.

§55120. Transshipment of imported merchandise intended for immediate exportation

The Secretary of Homeland Security may prescribe regulations for the transshipment and transportation of merchandise that is imported into the United States by sea for immediate exportation to a foreign port by sea, or by a river, the right to ascend or descend which for the purposes of commerce is secured by treaty to the citizens of the United States and the subjects of a foreign power.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1641.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55120	46 App.:291.	Feb. 17, 1898, ch. 26, §3, 30 Stat. 248.

§55121. Transportation of merchandise and passengers on Canadian vessels

(a) BETWEEN ROCHESTER AND ALEXANDRIA BAY.—Until passenger service is established by vessels of the United States between the port of Rochester, New York, and the port of Alexandria Bay, New York, the Secretary of Homeland Security may issue annually permits to Canadian passenger vessels to transport passengers between those ports. Canadian vessels holding such a permit are not subject to section 55103 of this title.

(b) WITHIN ALASKA OR BETWEEN ALASKA AND OTHER POINTS IN THE UNITED STATES.—Until the Secretary of Transportation determines that service by vessels of the United States is available to provide the transportation described in paragraph (1) or (2), sections 55102 and 55103 of this title do not apply to the transportation on Canadian vessels of—

(1) passengers between ports in southeastern Alaska; or

(2) passengers or merchandise between Hyder, Alaska, and other points in southeastern Alaska or in the United States outside Alaska.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1641.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55121(a)	46 App.:289a.	Apr. 26, 1938, ch. 174, 52 Stat. 223; 1946 Reorg. Plan No. 3, §§101–104, eff. July 16, 1946, 11 F.R. 7875, 60 Stat. 1097.
55121(b)	46 App.:289b.	Pub. L. 87–77, June 30, 1961, 75 Stat. 196; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(22), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 155.

In subsection (a), the Secretary of Homeland Security is substituted for the Commissioner of Customs because the functions of the Customs Service and of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto were transferred to the Secretary of Homeland Security by section 403(1) of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–296, 116 Stat. 2178). The functions of the Commissioner of Customs previously were vested in the Secretary of the Treasury under section 321(c) of title 31. For prior related transfers of functions, see the transfer of functions note under 46 App. U.S.C. 289a.

§55122. Floating dry docks

(a) IN GENERAL.—Section 55102 of this title does not apply to the movement of a floating dry dock if—

(1) the floating dry dock—

(A) is being used to launch or raise a vessel in connection with the construction, maintenance, or repair of that vessel;

(B) is owned and operated by—

(i) a shipyard located in the United States that is an eligible owner specified under section 12103(b) of this title; or

(ii) an affiliate of such a shipyard; and

(C)(i) was owned or contracted for purchase by such shipyard or affiliate prior to the date of the enactment of the Carl Levin and Howard P. "Buck" McKeon National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2015; or

(ii) had a letter of intent for purchase by such shipyard or affiliate signed prior to such date of enactment; and

(2) the movement occurs within 5 nautical miles of the shipyard or affiliate that owns and operates such floating dry dock or, in the case of a dry dock described in paragraph (1)(C)(ii), occurs between Honolulu, Hawaii, and Pearl Harbor, Hawaii.

(b) DRY DOCKS FOR CONSTRUCTION OF CERTAIN NAVAL VESSELS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—In applying subsection (a) to a floating dry dock used for the construction of naval vessels in a shipyard located in the United States, the ownership and operation requirement in paragraph (1)(B) of that subsection shall be treated as satisfied and "December 19, 2017" shall be substituted for the date referred to in paragraph (1)(C) of that subsection if the Secretary of the Navy determines that—

(A) such dry dock is necessary for the timely completion of such construction; and

(B) such dry dock—

(i) is owned and operated by—

(I) a shipyard located in the United States that is an eligible owner specified under section 12103(b); or

(II) an affiliate of such a shipyard; or

(ii) is—

(I) owned by the State in which the shipyard is located or a political subdivision of that State; and

(II) operated by a shipyard located in the United States that is an eligible owner specified under section 12103(b).

(2) NOTICE TO CONGRESS.—Not later than 30 days after making a determination under paragraph (1), the Secretary of the Navy shall notify the Committee on Armed Services and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Armed Services and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate of such determination.

(c) DEFINITION.—In this section, the term "floating dry dock" means equipment with wing walls and a fully submersible deck.

(Added Pub. L. 113–291, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(a), Dec. 19, 2014, 128 Stat. 3904; amended Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3508, Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2780; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11525, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4145.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of the Carl Levin and Howard P. "Buck" McKeon National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2015, referred to in subsec. (a)(1)(C), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 113–291, which was approved Dec. 19, 2014.

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (a)(1)(C). Pub. L. 117–263, §11525(1), designated existing provisions as cl. (i), substituted "2015; or" for "2015; and", and added cl. (ii).

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 117–263, §11525(2), inserted "or, in the case of a dry dock described in paragraph (1)(C)(ii), occurs between Honolulu, Hawaii, and Pearl Harbor, Hawaii" before period at end.

2016—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 114–328 added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c).

§55123. Priority loading for coal

A vessel engaged in the coastwise transportation of coal produced in the United States, from a port in the United States to another port in the United States, shall be given priority in loading at any of those ports ahead of a waiting vessel engaged in the export transportation of coal produced in the

United States. However, if the Secretary of Transportation finds that it is in the national interest, the Secretary may eliminate this priority loading at any port. The Secretary shall report to Congress within 30 days an action eliminating priority loading under this section.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1642, §55301; renumbered §55123, Pub. L. 116–283, div. A, title X, §1024(b)(1)(A), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 3842.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55301	46 App.:1121–1.	Pub. L. 96–387, §5, Oct. 7, 1980, 94 Stat. 1546; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(68), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 159; Pub. L. 99–662, title IX, §947, Nov. 17, 1986, 100 Stat. 4200.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 renumbered section 55301 of this title as this section.

CHAPTER 553—PASSENGER AND CARGO PREFERENCES

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL [1]

Sec.
55301. Report on administration of programs by other Federal departments and agencies.
55302. Transportation of United States Government personnel.
55303. Motor vehicles owned by United States Government personnel.
55304. Exports financed by the United States Government.
55305. Cargoes procured, furnished, or financed by the United States Government.
SUBCHAPTER II—EXPORT TRANSPORTATION OF AGRICULTURAL COMMODITIES
55311. Findings and purposes.
55312. Determining prevailing world market price.
55313. Exemption of certain agricultural exports from cargo preference provisions.
55314. Transportation requirements for certain exports sponsored by the Secretary of Agriculture.
55315. Minimum tonnage.
[55316, 55317. Repealed.]
55318. Effect on other law.
SUBCHAPTER III—AMERICAN GREAT LAKES VESSELS
55331. Definitions.
55332. Designating American Great Lakes vessels.
55333. Exemption from restriction on transporting certain cargo.
55334. Restrictions on operations.
55335. Revocations and terminations of designations.
55336. Civil penalty.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2023—Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(a)(2), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 819, added item 55301.

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, div. A, title X, §1024(b)(1)(B)(i), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 3842, which directed

amendment of the analysis for subchapter I of this chapter by striking out item 55301, was executed by striking item 55301 "Priority loading for coal" from this analysis to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

2013—Pub. L. 113–67, div. A, title VI, §602(b), Dec. 26, 2013, 127 Stat. 1188, struck out items 55316 "Financing the transportation of agricultural commodities" and 55317 "Termination of subchapter".

[1] *So in original. Does not conform to subchapter heading.*

SUBCHAPTER I—GOVERNMENT IMPELLED TRANSPORTATION

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, div. A, title X, §1024(b)(2), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 3842, substituted "GOVERNMENT IMPELLED TRANSPORTATION" for "GENERAL" in heading.

§55301. Report on administration of programs by other Federal departments and agencies

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Administrator of the Maritime Administration shall annually submit to Congress a report on the administration by—

(1) the Department of Defense of section 2631 of title 10; and

(2) other Federal departments and agencies of programs the Administrator determines are subject to section 55305 of this title.

(b) CONTENTS.—Each annual report required under subsection (a) shall include, for each Federal department or agency that administers a program covered by the report—

(1) the gross tonnage of cargo (equipment, materials, or agricultural products), expressed by type of cargo, transported on United States flag vessels as compared to on foreign vessels; and

(2) the total number of United States flag vessels and total number of foreign vessels contracted by each department or agency.

(c) AGENCY REPORTING REQUIREMENTS.—Not later than January 31 of each year, the head of each Federal department or agency that administers a program covered by a report required under subsection (a) shall submit to the Administrator of the Maritime Administration the information described in subsection (b) for that department or agency.

(Added Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(a)(1), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 819.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 55301 was renumbered section 55123 of this title.

§55302. Transportation of United States Government personnel

(a) IN GENERAL.—An officer or employee of the United States Government traveling by sea on official business overseas or to or from a territory or possession of the United States shall travel and transport personal effects on a vessel documented under the laws of the United Sates if such a vessel is available, unless the necessity of the mission requires the use of a foreign vessel.

(b) REGULATIONS.—The Administrator of General Services shall prescribe regulations under which agencies may not pay for or reimburse an officer or employee for travel or transportation

expenses incurred on a foreign vessel in the absence of satisfactory proof of the necessity of using the vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1642.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55302	46 App.:1241(a).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §901(a), 49 Stat. 2015; Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 936, 68 Stat. 832; Pub. L. 104–316, title I, §125, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3839.

In subsection (a), the words "by sea" are added for clarity. The words "a territory or possession of the United States" are substituted for "any of the possessions of the United States" for consistency in the revised title.

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

EXEMPTIONS

Functions authorized by Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 as exempt, see Ex. Ord. No. 11223, eff. May 12, 1965, 30 F.R. 6635, set out under section 2393 of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse.

§55303. Motor vehicles owned by United States Government personnel

Notwithstanding any other law, privately-owned American shipping services may be used to transport motor vehicles owned by personnel of the United States Government whenever transportation of those vehicles at Government expense is otherwise authorized by law.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1642.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55303	46 App.:1241(c).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §901(c), as added May 28, 1956, ch. 325, 70 Stat. 187.

§55304. Exports financed by the United States Government

It is the sense of Congress that any loans made by an instrumentality of the United States Government to foster the exporting of agricultural or other products shall provide that the products may be transported only on vessels of the United States unless, as to any or all of those products, the Secretary of Transportation, after investigation, certifies to the instrumentality that vessels of the United States are not available in sufficient number, in sufficient tonnage capacity, on necessary schedules, or at reasonable rates.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1642.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*

55304	46 App.:1241–1.	Mar. 26, 1934, ch. 90, 48 Stat. 500; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, §204, 49 Stat. 1987; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(127), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165.

This section codifies the Joint Resolution of March 26, 1934 (ch. 90, 48 Stat. 500) (also commonly known as Public Resolution 17). The codification of this provision is not intended to change its status as a "Sense of Congress" provision in any way. The words "Reconstruction Finance Corporation or" are omitted as obsolete because the Reconstruction Finance Corporation was abolished by section 6 of Reorganization Plan No. 1 of 1957 (5 App. U.S.C.).

§55305. Cargoes procured, furnished, or financed by the United States Government

(a) MINIMUM TONNAGE.—When the United States Government procures, contracts for, or otherwise obtains for its own account, or furnishes to or for the account of a foreign country, organization, or persons without provision for reimbursement, any equipment, materials, or commodities, or provides financing in any way with Federal funds for the account of any persons unless otherwise exempted, within or without the United States, or advances funds or credits, or guarantees the convertibility of foreign currencies in connection with the furnishing or obtaining of the equipment, materials, or commodities, the appropriate agencies shall take steps necessary and practicable to ensure that at least 50 percent of the gross tonnage of the equipment, materials, or commodities (computed separately for dry bulk carriers, dry cargo liners, and tankers) which may be transported on ocean vessels is transported on privately-owned commercial vessels of the United States, as provided under subsection (b), to the extent those vessels are available at fair and reasonable rates for commercial vessels of the United States, in a manner that will ensure a fair and reasonable participation of commercial vessels of the United States in those cargoes by geographic areas.

(b) ELIGIBLE VESSELS.—To be eligible to carry cargo as provided under subsection (a), a privately-owned commercial vessel shall be documented under the laws of the United States—

(1) for not less than three years; or

(2) after January 1, 2030, for less than three years, if the vessel owner signs an agreement with the Secretary providing that—

(A) the vessel shall remain documented under the laws of the United States for not less than three years; and

(B) the vessel owner shall, upon request of the Secretary, agree to enroll the vessel in an emergency preparedness agreement or voluntary agreement authorized under section 708 of the Defense Production Act of 1950 (50 U.S.C. 4558) and shall ensure the vessel remains so enrolled until the vessel ceases to be documented under the laws of the United States.

(c) VIOLATION OF AGREEMENT.—A vessel under an agreement executed pursuant to subsection (b)(2) may be seized by, and forfeited to, the United States if, in violation of that agreement—

(1) the vessel owner places the vessel under foreign registry; or

(2) a person operates the vessel under the authority of a foreign country.

(d) WAIVERS.—(1) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, when the President, the Secretary of Defense, or the Secretary of Transportation declares the existence of an emergency justifying a temporary waiver of this section or section 55314 of this title, the President, the Secretary of Defense, or the Secretary of Transportation, following a determination by the Maritime Administrator, acting in the Administrator's capacity as Director, National Shipping Authority, of the non-availability of qualified United States flag capacity at fair and reasonable rates for commercial vessels of the United States to meet the requirements of this section or section 55314 of this title,

may waive compliance with such section to the extent, in the manner, and on the terms the Maritime Administrator, acting in such capacity, prescribes, and no other waivers of the requirements of this section or section 55314 of this title shall be authorized.

(2)(A) Subject to subparagraphs (B) and (C), a waiver issued under this subsection shall be for a period of not more than 60 days.

(B) Upon termination of the period of a waiver issued under this subsection, the Maritime Administrator may extend the waiver for an additional period of not more than 30 days, if the Maritime Administrator makes the determinations described in paragraph (1).

(C) The aggregate duration of the period of all waivers and extensions of waivers under this subsection with respect to any one set of events shall not exceed three months in a fiscal year.

(3) The Maritime Administrator shall—

(A) for each determination referred to in paragraph (1), identify any actions that could be taken to enable qualified United States flag capacity to meet the requirements of this section or section 55314 at fair and reasonable rates for commercial vessels of the United States;

(B) provide notice of each determination referred to in paragraph (1) to the Secretary of Transportation and, as applicable, the President or the Secretary of Defense; and

(C) publish each determination referred to in paragraph (1)—

(i) on the website of the Maritime Administration not later than 24 hours after notice of the determination is provided to the Secretary of Transportation; and

(ii) in the Federal Register.

(4) The Maritime Administrator shall notify—

(A) the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives of—

(i) any request for a waiver (or an extension thereof) made by the Secretary of Transportation of this section or section 55314(a) [1] of this title by not later than 72 hours after receiving such a request; and

(ii) the issuance of any such waiver (or an extension thereof), and why such waiver or extension was necessary, by not later than 72 hours after such issuance; and

(B) the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the Committee on Armed Services of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives of—

(i) any request for a waiver (or an extension thereof) made by the Secretary of Defense of this section or section 55314(a) [1] of this title by not later than 72 hours after receiving such a request; and

(ii) the issuance of any such waiver (or an extension thereof), and why such waiver or extension was necessary, by not later than 72 hours after such issuance.

(e) PROGRAMS OF OTHER AGENCIES.—

(1) Each department or agency that has responsibility for a program under this section shall administer that program with respect to this section under regulations and guidance issued by the Secretary of Transportation. The Secretary, after consulting with the department or agency or organization or person involved, shall have the sole responsibility for determining if a program is subject to the requirements of this section.

(2) The Secretary—

(A) shall conduct an annual review of the administration of programs determined pursuant to paragraph (1) as subject to the requirements of this section and annually submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report on the administration of such programs;

(B) may direct agencies to require the transportation on United States-flagged vessels of cargo shipments not otherwise subject to this section in equivalent amounts to cargo determined

to have been shipped on foreign carriers in violation of this section;

(C) may impose on any person that violates this section, or a regulation prescribed under this section, a civil penalty of not more than $25,000 for each violation willfully and knowingly committed, with each day of a continuing violation following the date of shipment to be a separate violation; and

(D) may take other measures as appropriate under the Federal Acquisition Regulations issued pursuant to section 25(c)(1) [1] of the Office of Federal Procurement Policy Act (41 U.S.C. 1303(a)(1)) or contract with respect to each violation.

(f) SECURITY OF GOVERNMENT-IMPELLED CARGO.—

(1) In order to ensure the safety of vessels and crewmembers transporting equipment, materials, or commodities under this section, the Secretary of Transportation shall direct each department or agency (except the Department of Defense), when responsible for the carriage of such equipment, materials, or commodities, to reimburse, subject to the availability of appropriations, the owners or operators of vessels of the United States carrying such equipment, materials, or commodities for the cost of providing armed personnel aboard such vessels if the vessels are transiting high-risk waters.

(2) In this subsection, the term "high-risk waters" means waters so designated by the Commandant of the Coast Guard in the maritime security directive issued by the Commandant and in effect on the date on which an applicable voyage begins, if the Secretary of Transportation—

(A) determines that an act of piracy occurred in the 12-month period preceding the date the voyage begins; or

(B) in such period, issued an advisory warning that an act of piracy is possible in such waters.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1642; Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(a), (b), Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4769; Pub. L. 112–213, title V, §503, Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1575; Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §306, Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3044; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(s), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2327; Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(b), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3065; Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3531(a), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 825.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55305(a)	46 App.:1241(b)(1) (2d, last provisos).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §901(b), as added Aug. 26, 1954, ch. 936, 68 Stat. 832; Pub. L. 87–266, Sept. 21, 1961, 75 Stat. 565; Pub. L. 91–469, §27, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1034; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(126), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165.
55305(b)	46 App.:1241(b)(1) (words before 1st proviso).	
55305(c)	46 App.:1241(b)(1) (1st proviso).	
55305(d)	46 App.:1241(b)(2).	

In this section, the words "commercial vessels of the United States" are substituted for "United States-flag commercial vessels" for consistency in the revised title.

In subsection (a), the words "the provisions of this subsection shall not apply to cargoes carried in the vessels of the Panama Canal Company" are omitted as obsolete. The words "Nothing herein shall repeal or otherwise modify the provisions of section 1241–1 of this Appendix" are omitted as unnecessary. The last proviso in 46 App. U.S.C. 1241(b)(1) is omitted as obsolete.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 55314(a), referred to in subsec. (d)(4)(A)(i), (B)(i), was repealed by Pub. L. 112–141, div. F, title I, §100124(a)(1), July 6, 2012, 126 Stat. 915.

Section 25(c)(1) of the Office of Federal Procurement Policy Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(2)(D), was classified to section 421(c)(1) of former Title 41, Public Contracts, and was repealed and restated as section 1303(a)(1) of Title 41, Public Contracts, by Pub. L. 111–350, §§3, 7(b), Jan. 4, 2011, 124 Stat. 3677, 3855. For disposition of sections of former Title 41, see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of Title 41.

AMENDMENTS

2023—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 118–31, §3531(a)(1), (2)(A), (3), redesignated subsec. (b) as (a), substituted "privately-owned commercial vessels of the United States, as provided under subsection (b)," for "privately-owned commercial vessels of the United States,", and struck out former subsec. (a). Prior to amendment, text of subsec. (a) read as follows: "In this section, the term 'privately-owned commercial vessel of the United States' does not include a vessel that, after September 21, 1961, was built or rebuilt outside the United States or documented under the laws of a foreign country, until the vessel has been documented under the laws of the United States for at least 3 years."

Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 118–31, §3531(a)(4), added subsecs. (b) and (c). Former subsecs. (b) and (c) redesignated (a) and (d), respectively.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 118–31, §3531(a)(2)(B), (5), redesignated subsec. (c) as (d), struck it out, and added a new subsec. (d). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The President, the Secretary of Defense, or Congress (by concurrent resolution or otherwise) may waive this section temporarily by—

"(1) declaring the existence of an emergency justifying a waiver; and

"(2) notifying the appropriate agencies of the waiver."

Former subsec. (d) redesignated (e).

Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 118–31, §3531(a)(2)(B), redesignated subsecs. (d) and (e) as (e) and (f), respectively.

2022—Subsec. (d)(2)(A). Pub. L. 117–263 inserted "and annually submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report on the administration of such programs" after "section".

2018—Subsec. (d)(2)(D). Pub. L. 115–232 substituted "1303(a)(1))" for "421(c)(1)".

2014—Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 113–281, §306(1), substituted "reimburse, subject to the availability of appropriations, the owners or operators of vessels" for "provide armed personnel aboard vessels" and "commodities for the cost of providing armed personnel aboard such vessels" for "commodities".

Subsec. (e)(2), (3). Pub. L. 113–281, §306(2), added par. (2) and struck out former pars. (2) and (3) which read as follows:

"(2) The Secretary of Transportation shall direct each department or agency responsible to provide armed personnel under paragraph (1) to reimburse, subject to the availability of appropriations, the owners or operators of applicable vessels for the cost of providing armed personnel.

"(3) In this subsection, the term 'high-risk waters' means waters so designated by the Commandant of the Coast Guard in the Port Security Advisory in effect on the date on which an applicable voyage begins."

2012—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 112–213 added subsec. (e).

2008—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 110–417, §3511(a), substituted "foreign country, organization, or persons" for "foreign country", "commodities, or provides financing in any way with Federal funds for the account of any persons unless otherwise exempted, within" for "commodities, within", and "furnishing or obtaining" for "furnishing".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 110–417, §3511(b), reenacted heading without change and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "An agency having responsibility under this section shall administer its programs with respect to this section under regulations prescribed by the Secretary of Transportation. The Secretary shall review the administration of those programs and report annually to Congress on their administration."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(c), Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4770, provided that: "The

Secretary of Transportation shall prescribe such rules as are necessary to carry out section 55305(d) of title 46, United States Code. The Secretary may prescribe interim rules necessary to carry out section 55305(d) of such title. An interim rule prescribed under this subsection shall remain in effect until superseded by a final rule."

SECRETARY OF TRANSPORTATION RESPONSIBILITY WITH RESPECT TO CARGOES PROCURED, FURNISHED, OR FINANCED BY OTHER FEDERAL DEPARTMENTS AND AGENCIES

Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3065, provided that: "Not later than 270 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022], the Administrator of the Maritime Administration shall issue a final rule to implement and enforce section 55305(d) of title 46, United States Code."

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

SUBCHAPTER II—EXPORT TRANSPORTATION OF AGRICULTURAL COMMODITIES

§55311. Findings and purposes

(a) FINDINGS.—Congress finds that—

(1) a productive and healthy agricultural industry and a strong and active United States maritime industry are vitally important to the economic well-being and security of the United States;

(2) both industries must compete in international markets increasingly dominated by foreign trade barriers and the subsidization practices of foreign governments; and

(3) increased agricultural exports and the use of merchant vessels of the United States contribute positively to the United States balance of trade and generate employment opportunities in the United States.

(b) PURPOSES.—The purposes of this subchapter are to—

(1) enable the Secretary of Agriculture to plan export programs effectively, by clarifying the ocean transportation requirements applicable to those programs;

(2) take immediate and positive steps to promote the growth of the cargo-carrying capacity of the United States merchant marine;

(3) expand international trade in United States agricultural commodities and products and develop, maintain, and expand markets for United States agricultural exports;

(4) improve the efficiency of administration of both the commodity purchasing and selling activities and the ocean transportation activities associated with export programs sponsored by the Secretary;

(5) stimulate and promote the agricultural and maritime industries of the United States and encourage cooperative efforts by both industries to address their common problems; and

(6) provide for the appropriate disposition of these findings and purposes.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1643.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55311	46 App.:1241d.	Pub. L. 99–198, title XI, §1141, Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1490.

In subsection (a)(1), the word "security" is substituted for "national security objectives" to eliminate

unnecessary words.

In subsection (b), the words "Secretary of Agriculture" in paragraph (1) and "Secretary" in paragraph (4) are substituted for "Department of Agriculture" because all functions of the Department are vested in the Secretary under 7 U.S.C. 2202 and 6911 and Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1953 (5 App. U.S.C.).

§55312. Determining prevailing world market price

(a) AGRICULTURAL COMMODITIES AND PRODUCTS.—The prevailing world market price for agricultural commodities or their products shall be determined under this subchapter under procedures prescribed by the Secretary of Agriculture. The Secretary shall prescribe the procedures by regulation, with notice and opportunity for public comment under section 553 of title 5.

(b) SERVICES AND NON-AGRICULTURAL COMMODITIES AND PRODUCTS.—If a determination of the prevailing world market price of any other type of materials, goods, equipment, or service is required to determine whether a barter or exchange transaction is subject to section 55314(b)(6) or (7) of this title, the determination shall be made by the Secretary of Agriculture in consultation with the heads of other appropriate agencies.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1644.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55312	46 App.:1241f(e).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §901b(e), as added Pub. L. 99–198, title XI, §1142, Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1492.

§55313. Exemption of certain agricultural exports from cargo preference provisions

Sections 55304 and 55305 of this title do not apply to export activities of the Secretary of Agriculture or the Commodity Credit Corporation under which—

(1) agricultural commodities or their products acquired by the Corporation are made available to United States exporters, users, processors, or foreign purchasers for the purpose of developing, maintaining, or expanding export markets for United States agricultural commodities or their products at prevailing world market prices;

(2) payments are made available to United States exporters, users, or processors or, except as provided in section 55314 of this title, cash grants are made available to foreign purchasers, for the purpose described in paragraph (1);

(3) commercial credit guarantees are blended with direct credits from the Corporation to reduce the effective rate of interest on export sales of United States agricultural commodities or their products;

(4) credit or credit guarantees for not more than 3 years are extended by the Corporation to finance or guarantee export sales of United States agricultural commodities or their products; or

(5) agricultural commodities or their products owned or controlled by or under loan from the Corporation are exchanged or bartered for materials, goods, equipment, or services at least equal in value to the agricultural commodities or their products for which they are exchanged or bartered (determined on the basis of prevailing world market prices at the time of the exchange or barter), but this paragraph does not exempt from the cargo preference provisions referred to in section 55314(b) of this title any requirement otherwise applicable to the materials, goods, equipment, or services imported under the transaction.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1644.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55313	46 App.:1241e.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §901a, as added Pub. L. 99–198, title XI, §1142, Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1490.

§55314. Transportation requirements for certain exports sponsored by the Secretary of Agriculture

[(a) Repealed. Pub. L. 112–141, div. F, title I, §100124(a)(1), July 6, 2012, 126 Stat. 915.]

(b) APPLICABLE EXPORT ACTIVITY.—The activities specified in this subsection are export activities (except inspection or weighing activities, other activities carried out for health or safety, or technical assistance provided in the handling of commercial transactions) of the Secretary of Agriculture or the Commodity Credit Corporation—

(1) carried out under the Food for Peace Act (7 U.S.C. 1691 et seq.);

(2) carried out under section 416 of the Agricultural Act of 1949 (7 U.S.C. 1431);

(3) carried out under the Bill Emerson Humanitarian Trust Act (7 U.S.C. 1736f–1);

(4) under which agricultural commodities or their products are—

(A) donated through foreign governments or private or public agencies, including intergovernmental organizations; or

(B) sold for foreign currencies or for dollars on credit terms of more than 10 years;

(5) under which agricultural commodities or their products are made available for emergency food relief at less than prevailing world market prices;

(6) under which a cash grant is made directly or through an intermediary to a foreign purchaser to enable the purchaser to obtain United States agricultural commodities or their products in an amount greater than the difference between the prevailing world market price and the United States market price, free along side vessel at a United States port; or

(7) under which agricultural commodities owned or controlled by or under loan from the Corporation are exchanged or bartered for materials, goods, equipment, or services produced in foreign countries, except export activities described in section 55313(5) of this title.

[(c) Repealed. Pub. L. 112–141, div. F, title I, §100124(a)(1), July 6, 2012, 126 Stat. 915.]

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1645; Pub. L. 110–246, title III, §3001(b)(1)(A), (2)(Y), June 18, 2008, 122 Stat. 1820, 1821; Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(d), Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4770; Pub. L. 111–84, div. A, title X, §1073(c)(15), Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2475; Pub. L. 112–141, div. F, title I, §100124(a), July 6, 2012, 126 Stat. 915.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55314(a)(1)	46 App.:1241f(a).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §901b(a)–(d), as added Pub. L. 99–198, title XI, §1142, Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1491; Pub. L. 101–624, title XV, §1525, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 3667; Pub. L. 104–239, §17, Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3138; Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV,

		§3514, Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1792.
	46 App.:1241*o*.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §901k, as added Pub. L. 99–198, title XI, §1142, Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1496.
55314(a)(2)	46 App.:1241f(c)(2).	
55314(b)	46 App.:1241f(b), (d).	
55314(c)	46 App.:1241f(c)(1), (3), (4).	

In this section, the words "commercial vessels of the United States" are substituted for "United States-flag commercial vessels" for consistency in the revised title.

In subsection (a)(1), before subparagraph (A), the text of 46 App. U.S.C. 1241f(a)(2)(A) and (B) is omitted as obsolete. Subparagraphs (A) and (B) are substituted for 46 App. U.S.C. 1241o to improve the organization and to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (a)(2), the words "the 12-month period beginning October 1 of each year" are substituted for "12 month periods commencing April 1, 1986, the 18-month period beginning April 1, 2002, and the 12-month period beginning October 1, 2003, and each year thereafter" to eliminate obsolete and unnecessary language.

In subsection (c)(4), before subparagraph (A), the words "or instrumentality" are omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "agency" in chapter 1.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Food for Peace Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), is act July 10, 1954, ch. 469, 68 Stat. 454, which is classified generally to chapter 41 (§1691 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. Title II of the Act is classified generally to subchapter III (§1721 et seq.) of chapter 41 of Title 7. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1691 of Title 7 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2012—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 112–141, §100124(a)(1), struck out subsec. (a), which related to minimum tonnage of agricultural commodities and their products.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 112–141, §100124(a)(2), substituted "The activities specified in this subsection are export activities" for "This section applies to export activity" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 112–141, §100124(a)(1), struck out subsec. (c), which related to additional requirements for this section and section 55305 of this title.

2009—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–84 amended directory language of Pub. L. 110–417, §3511(d). See 2008 Amendment notes below.

2008—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 110–417, §3511(d), as amended by Pub. L. 111–84, substituted "fiscal" for "calendar" in two places in text.

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 110–417, §3511(d), as amended by Pub. L. 111–84, which directed substitution of " FISCAL" for "CALENDAR" in heading, was executed by substituting "FISCAL" for "CALENDAR" to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsecs. (b)(1), (c)(2). Pub. L. 110–246 substituted "Food for Peace Act" for "Agricultural Trade Development and Assistance Act of 1954".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111–84, div. A, title X, §1073(c), Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2474, provided that the amendment made by section 1073(c)(15) is effective as of Oct. 14, 2008, and as if included in Pub. L. 110–417 as enacted.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–246 effective May 22, 2008, see section 4(b) of Pub. L. 110–246, set out as an Effective Date note under section 8701 of Title 7, Agriculture.

§55315. Minimum tonnage

(a) DEFINITION.—In this section, the term "base period" means the 5-year period running from the sixth through the second prior fiscal years.

(b) REQUIREMENT.—For each fiscal year, the minimum quantity of agricultural commodities to be exported under programs specified in section 55314(b) of this title is the average of the tonnage exported under those programs during the base period, discarding the high and low years.

(c) WAIVERS.—The President may waive the minimum quantity for a fiscal year under this section if the President determines and reports to Congress, together with reasons, that the quantity cannot be used effectively for the purposes of those programs or, based on a certification by the Secretary of Agriculture, that the commodities are not available for reasons that include the unavailability of funds.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1646; Pub. L. 112–141, div. F, title I, §100124(c)(1), July 6, 2012, 126 Stat. 915.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55315	46 App.:1241g.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §901c, as added Pub. L. 99–198, title XI, §1142, Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1493.

In subsection (b), the words "For fiscal year 1986 and" are omitted as obsolete.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2012—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 112–141 substituted "specified in section 55314(b)" for "subject to section 55314".

[§§55316, 55317. Repealed. Pub. L. 113–67, div. A, title VI, §602(a), Dec. 26, 2013, 127 Stat. 1188]

Section 55316, Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1647; Pub. L. 110–246, title III, §3001(b)(1)(A), (2)(Y), June 18, 2008, 122 Stat. 1820, 1821; Pub. L. 112–141, div. F, title I, §100124(b), (c)(2), July 6, 2012, 126 Stat. 915, related to financing the transportation of agricultural commodities.

Section 55317, Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1648; Pub. L. 112–141, div. F, title I, §100124(c)(3), July 6, 2012, 126 Stat. 915, provided for the termination of this subchapter 90 days after the notification under section 55316(f) of this title is made, subject to certain exceptions.

§55318. Effect on other law

This subchapter does not affect chapter 5 of title 5.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1648.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55318	46 App.:1241p.	Pub. L. 99–198, title XI, §1143, Dec. 23, 1985, 99 Stat. 1496.

The words "section 1707a(b)(8) of title 7" are omitted because the provision referred to has been repealed.

SUBCHAPTER III—AMERICAN GREAT LAKES VESSELS

§55331. Definitions

In this subchapter:

(1) AMERICAN GREAT LAKES VESSEL.—The term "American Great Lakes vessel" means a vessel so designated under section 55332 of this title, but only during the period the designation is in effect.

(2) GREAT LAKES.—The term "Great Lakes" means Lake Superior, Lake Michigan, Lake Huron, Lake Erie, Lake Ontario, the Saint Lawrence River west of Saint Regis, New York, and their connecting and tributary waters.

(3) GREAT LAKES SHIPPING SEASON.—The term "Great Lakes shipping season" means the period each year during which the Saint Lawrence Seaway is open for navigation by vessels, as declared by the Great Lakes St. Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1648; Pub. L. 116–260, div. AA, title V, §512(c)(6)(E), Dec. 27, 2020, 134 Stat. 2757.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55331	46 App.:1241v.	Pub. L. 101–624, title XV, §1527, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 3668.

In paragraph (1), the words "but only during the period the designation is in effect" are added for clarity.

In paragraph (3), the words "created by the Act of May 13, 1954 (33 U.S.C. 981 et seq.)" are omitted as unnecessary.

The definition of "Secretary" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1241v(4) is omitted as unnecessary because the full title of the Secretary of Transportation is used the first time the Secretary is referred to in each section.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2020—Par. (3). Pub. L. 116–260 substituted "Great Lakes St. Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation" for "Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation".

§55332. Designating American Great Lakes vessels

(a) DESIGNATIONS.—The Secretary of Transportation shall designate a vessel as an American Great Lakes vessel if—

(1) an application for designation is submitted to the Secretary under regulations prescribed by the Secretary;

(2) the vessel is documented under the laws of the United States;

(3) the vessel, on the effective date of the designation, is—

(A) at least 1, but not more than 6, years old; or

(B) at least 1, but not more than 11, years old if the Secretary finds that suitable vessels are not available to provide the type of service for which the vessel will be used after the designation;

(4) the vessel has not previously been designated as an American Great Lakes vessel; and

(5) the owner makes an agreement as provided under subsection (b).

(b) AGREEMENTS.—A vessel may be designated as an American Great Lakes vessel only if the person that will be the owner of the vessel at the time of the designation makes an agreement with the Secretary providing that if the Secretary determines that the vessel is necessary to the defense of the United States, the United States Government will have an exclusive right, during the 120-day period following the date of a revocation of the designation under section 55335 of this title, to purchase the vessel for a price equal to the greater of—

(1) the approximate world market value of the vessel; or

(2) the cost of the vessel to the owner less a reasonable amount for depreciation.

(c) CERTAIN FOREIGN DOCUMENTATION AND SALE NOT PROHIBITED .—Notwithstanding any other law, if the Government does not exercise its right of purchase under an agreement under subsection (b), the owner of the vessel is not prohibited from—

(1) documenting the vessel under the laws of a foreign country; or

(2) selling the vessel to a person not a citizen of the United States.

(d) REGULATIONS.—The Secretary shall prescribe regulations establishing requirements for submitting applications under this section.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1649.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55332	46 App.:1241r.	Pub. L. 101–624, title XV, §1522, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 3665.

In subsection (a), the words "for purposes of sections 1241q to 1241v of this Appendix" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (c), before paragraph (1), the words "construction and purchase" before "agreement" are omitted because the source provision for subsection (b) does not say anything about construction.

In subsection (d), the words "Not later than 60 days after November 28, 1990" are omitted as obsolete.

§55333. Exemption from restriction on transporting certain cargo

The 3-year documentation requirement of section 55305(a) of this title does not apply to a vessel designated as an American Great Lakes vessel during the period of its designation.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1649.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55333	46 App.:1241q.	Pub. L. 101–624, title XV, §1521, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 3665.

This section is substituted for the source provisions to eliminate unnecessary words.

§55334. Restrictions on operations

(a) PROHIBITIONS.—Except as provided in subsection (b), an American Great Lakes vessel may not be used to—

(1) engage in trade—

(A) from a port in the United States that is not located on the Great Lakes; or
(B) between ports in the United States;

(2) transport bulk cargo (as defined in section 40102 of this title) that is subject to section 55305 or 55314 of this title or section 2631 of title 10; or
(3) provide a service (except ocean freight service) as—
(A) a contract carrier; or
(B) a common carrier on a fixed advertised schedule offering frequent sailings at regular intervals in the foreign trade of the United States.

(b) OFF-SEASON EXCEPTION.—An American Great Lakes vessel may be used for not more than 90 days during any 12-month period to engage in trade prohibited by subsection (a)(1)(A), except during the Great Lakes shipping season.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1649.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55334	46 App.:1241s.	Pub. L. 101–624, title XV, §1523, Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 3666.

§55335. Revocations and terminations of designations

(a) REVOCATIONS.—After notice and an opportunity for a hearing, the Secretary of Transportation may revoke a designation of a vessel as an American Great Lakes vessel if the Secretary finds that—
(1) the vessel does not meet a requirement for the designation;
(2) the vessel has been operated in violation of this subchapter; or
(3) the owner or operator of the vessel has violated an agreement made under section 55332(b) of this title.

(b) TERMINATIONS.—On petition and a showing of good cause by the owner of a vessel, the Secretary may terminate the designation of a vessel as an American Great Lakes vessel. The Secretary may impose conditions in a termination order to prevent significant adverse effects on other operators of vessels of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1650.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55335	46 App.:1241t(a), (c).	Pub. L. 101–624, title XV, §1524(a), (c), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 3667.

In subsection (a)(3), the words "construction and purchase" before "agreement" are omitted because the source provision for section 55332(b) of the revised title does not say anything about construction.

In subsection (b), the words "vessels of the United States" are substituted for "United States-flag vessel" for consistency in the revised title.

§55336. Civil penalty

After notice and an opportunity for a hearing, the Secretary of Transportation may impose a civil

penalty of not more than $1,000,000 on the owner of an American Great Lakes vessel for any act for which the designation may be revoked under section 55335 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1650.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
55336	46 App.:1241t(b).	Pub. L. 101–624, title XV, §1524(b), Nov. 28, 1990, 104 Stat. 3667.

[CHAPTER 555—TRANSFERRED]

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Pub. L. 117–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3512(a)(1), (3), Dec. 27, 2021, 135 Stat. 2239, renumbered this chapter as chapter 504 and transferred it to appear after chapter 503 of this title and renumbered sections 55501 and 55502 as sections 50401 and 50402 of this title, respectively.

[§§55501, 55502. Renumbered §§50401, 50402]

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 55501, Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1650, related to mobile trade fairs to show and sell United States products at foreign ports and other global commercial centers, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §301(1), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3042.

A prior section 55502 was renumbered section 55501 of this title.

CHAPTER 556—MARINE HIGHWAYS

Sec.

55601. United States marine highway program.
55602. Cargo and shippers.
55603. Multistate, State, Tribal, and regional transportation planning.
55604. Research on marine highway transportation.
55605. Definitions.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(a)(2), (b)(2), (d)(2), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3078, 3079, added items 55601, 55603, and 55605 and struck out former items 55601 "Marine highways transportation program" and 55605 "Marine highway transportation defined".

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8332(d)(1), (2), (7), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4704, 4705, amended chapter heading similarly, substituting "MARINE HIGHWAYS" for "SHORT SEA TRANSPORTATION", struck out item 55603 "Interagency coordination", and substituted "Marine highways transportation program" for "Short sea transportation program" in item 55601, "Research on marine highway transportation" for "Research on short sea transportation" in item 55604, and "Marine highway transportation defined" for "Short sea transportation defined" in item 55605.

§55601. United States marine highway program

(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—There is in the Department of Transportation a program, to be known as the "United States marine highway program".

(2) ADDITIONAL PROGRAM ACTIVITIES.—In carrying out the program established under this subsection, the Secretary of Transportation may—

(A) coordinate with ports, State departments of transportation, localities, other public agencies, and appropriate private sector entities on the development of landside facilities and infrastructure to support marine highway transportation; and

(B) develop performance measures for the program.

(b) MARINE HIGHWAY TRANSPORTATION ROUTES.—

(1) DESIGNATION.—The Secretary may designate a route as a marine highway transportation route, or modify such a designation, if—

(A) such route—

(i) provides a coordinated and capable alternative to landside transportation;

(ii) mitigates or relieves landside congestion;

(iii) promotes marine highway transportation; or

(iv) uses vessels documented under chapter 121; and

(B) such designation or modification is requested by—

(i) the government of a State or territory;

(ii) a metropolitan planning organization;

(iii) a port authority;

(iv) a non-Federal navigation district; or

(v) a Tribal government.

(2) DETERMINATION.—Not later than 180 days after the date on which the Maritime Administrator receives a request for the designation or modification of a marine highway route under paragraph (1), the Maritime Administrator shall make a determination of whether to make the requested designation or modification.

(3) NOTIFICATION.—Not later than 14 days after the date on which the Maritime Administrator makes a determination under paragraph (2), the Maritime Administrator shall notify the requester of the determination.

(c) MAP OF MARINE HIGHWAY PROGRAM ROUTES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Maritime Administrator shall make publicly available a map showing the location of marine highway routes, including such routes along the coasts, in the inland waterways, and at sea and update that map when a marine highway route is designated or modified pursuant to subsection (b).

(2) COORDINATION.—The Maritime Administrator shall coordinate with the Administrator of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration to incorporate the map referred to in paragraph (1) into the Marine Cadastre.

(d) ASSISTANCE.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may make grants to, or enter into contracts or cooperative agreements with, eligible entities to implement a marine highway transportation project or a component of such a project if the Secretary determines that the project or component—

(A) meets the criteria referred to in subsection (b)(1)(A); and

(B) develops, expands, or promotes—

(i) marine highway transportation; or

(ii) shipper use of marine highway transportation.

(2) APPLICATION.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—To be eligible to receive a grant or to enter into a contract or cooperative agreement under this subsection, an eligible entity shall submit to the Secretary an application in such form and manner, and at such time, as the Secretary may require. Such an application shall include the following:

(i) A comprehensive description of—

(I) the marine highway route to be served by the marine highway transportation project;

(II) the supporters of the marine highway transportation project, which may include business affiliations, private sector stakeholders, State departments of transportation, metropolitan planning organizations, municipalities, or other governmental entities (including Tribal governments), as applicable;

(III) the need for such project; and

(IV) the performance measure for the marine highway transportation project, such as volumes of cargo or passengers moved, or contribution to environmental mitigation, safety, reduced vehicle miles traveled, or reduced maintenance and repair costs.

(ii) A demonstration, to the satisfaction of the Secretary, that—

(I) the marine highway transportation project is financially viable; and

(II) the funds or other assistance provided under this subsection will be spent or used efficiently and effectively.

(iii) Such other information as the Secretary may require.

(B) PRE-PROPOSAL.—

(i) IN GENERAL.—Prior to accepting a full application under subparagraph (A), the Secretary may require that an eligible entity first submit a pre-proposal that contains a brief description of the item referred to in clauses (i) through (iii) of such subparagraph.

(ii) FEEDBACK.—Not later than 30 days after receiving a pre-proposal under clause (i) from an eligible entity, the Secretary shall provide to the eligible entity feedback to encourage or discourage the eligible entity from submitting a full application. An eligible entity may still submit a full application even if that eligible entity is not encouraged to do so after submitting a pre-proposal.

(C) PROHIBITION.—The Secretary may not require separate applications for project designation and for assistance under this section.

(D) GRANT APPLICATION FEEDBACK.—Following the award of assistance under this subsection for a particular fiscal year, the Secretary may provide feedback to an applicant to help such applicant improve future applications if the feedback is requested by that applicant.

(3) TIMING.—

(A) NOTICE OF FUNDING OPPORTUNITY.—The Secretary shall post a notice of funding opportunity regarding grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements under this subsection not more than 60 days after the date of the enactment of the appropriations Act for the fiscal year concerned.

(B) AWARDING OF ASSISTANCE.— The Secretary shall award grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements under this subsection not later than 270 days after the date of the enactment of the appropriations Act for the fiscal year concerned.

(4) NON-FEDERAL SHARE.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subparagraph (B), not more than 80 percent of the funding for any project for which funding is provided under this subsection may come from

Federal sources.

(B) TRIBAL GOVERNMENTS AND RURAL AREAS.—The Secretary may increase the Federal share of funding for the project to an amount above 80 percent in the case of an award of assistance under this subsection—

(i) to an eligible entity that is a Tribal government; or

(ii) for a project located in a rural area.

(5) PREFERENCE FOR FINANCIALLY VIABLE PROJECTS.— In awarding grants or entering into contracts or cooperative agreements under this subsection, the Secretary shall give a preference to a project or component of a project that presents the most financially viable transportation service and require the lowest percentage of Federal share of the funding.

(6) TREATMENT OF UNEXPENDED FUNDS.—Notwithstanding paragraph (3)(B), amounts awarded under this subsection that are not expended by the recipient within five years after obligation of funds or that are returned shall remain available to the Secretary to make grants and enter into contracts and cooperative agreements under this subsection.

(7) CONDITIONS ON PROVISION OF ASSISTANCE.—The Secretary may not provide assistance to an eligible entity under this subsection unless the Secretary determines that—

(A) sufficient funding is available to meet the non-Federal share requirement under paragraph (4);

(B) the marine highway project for which such assistance is provided will be completed without unreasonable delay; and

(C) the eligible entity has the authority to implement the proposed marine highway project.

(8) PROHIBITED USES.—Assistance provided under this subsection may not be used—

(A) to improve port or land-based infrastructure outside the United States; or

(B) unless the Secretary determines that such activities are necessary to carry out the marine highway project for which such assistance is provided, to raise sunken vessels, construct buildings or other physical facilities, or acquire land.

(9) GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION.—In making grants, contracts, and cooperative agreements under this section the Secretary shall take such measures so as to ensure an equitable geographic distribution of funds.

(10) ELIGIBLE ENTITY.—In this subsection, the term "eligible entity" means—

(A) a State, a political subdivision of a State, or a local government;

(B) a United States metropolitan planning organization;

(C) a United States port authority;

(D) a Tribal government; or

(E) a United States private sector operator of marine highway projects or private sector owners of facilities, including an Alaska Native Corporation, with an endorsement letter from the requester of a marine highway route designation or modification referred to in subsection (b)(1)(B).

(Added Pub. L. 110–140, title XI, §1121(a), Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1760; amended Pub. L. 111–84, div. C, title XXXV, §3515, Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2724; Pub. L. 112–213, title IV, §405(a), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1571; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8332(d)(3), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4704; Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(a)(1), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3074.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section related to Marine highways transportation program.

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, §8332(d)(3)(B), substituted "marine highway" for "short sea" wherever appearing.

Pub. L. 116–283, §8332(d)(3)(A), substituted "Marine highways" for "Short sea" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–283, §8332(d)(3)(C)(ii), which directed amendment of subsec. (a) by substituting "provide a coordinated and capable alternative to landside transportation or to promote marine highway transportation" for "mitigate landside congestion or to promote short sea transportation", was executed by making the substitution for "mitigate landside congestion or to promote marine highway transportation" to reflect the probable intent of Congress and the intervening amendment by Pub. L. 116–283, §8332(d)(3)(B).

Pub. L. 116–283, §8332(d)(3)(C)(i), substituted "transportation program to be known as the 'America's Marine highway program' " for "transportation program".

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 116–283, §8332(d)(3)(D)(ii), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: "documented vessels;".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 116–283, §8332(d)(3)(D)(i), which directed amendment of subsec. (b) by substituting "Marine Highway Transportation" for "Short Sea Transportation" in heading, was executed by making the amendment to subsec. (c) to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

2012—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 112–213, §405(a)(1), substituted "landside congestion or to promote short sea transportation." for "landside congestion."

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 112–213, §405(a)(2), substituted "coastal corridors or to promote short sea transportation" for "coastal corridors".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 112–213, §405(a)(3), substituted "that the project uses documented vessels and—" for "that the project may—" in introductory provisions, added pars. (1) and (2), and struck out former pars. (1) and (2) which read as follows:

"(1) offer a waterborne alternative to available landside transportation services using documented vessels; and

"(2) provide transportation services for passengers or freight (or both) that may reduce congestion on landside infrastructure using documented vessels."

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 112–213, §405(a)(4), substituted "may" for "shall" in two places in introductory provisions.

2009—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111–84 added subsec. (g).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as a note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 110–140, title XI, §1121(c), Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1762, provided that:

"(1) INTERIM REGULATIONS.—Not later than 90 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 19, 2007], the Secretary of Transportation shall issue temporary regulations to implement the program under this section. Subchapter II of chapter 5 of title 5, United States Code, does not apply to a temporary regulation issued under this paragraph or to an amendment to such a temporary regulation.

"(2) FINAL REGULATIONS.—Not later than October 1, 2008, the Secretary of Transportation shall issue final regulations to implement the program under this section."

REPORT ON INCREASING EFFECTIVENESS OF MARINE HIGHWAYS

Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(d), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 820, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than one year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 22, 2023], the Administrator of the Maritime Administration shall complete and make publicly available on an appropriate website a study that identifies opportunities for, and barriers to, increasing the effectiveness of marine highways designated under section 55601 of title 46, United States Code, in addressing two or more of the components described in clauses (i), (ii), and (iv) of subparagraphs [sic] (A) and subparagraph (B) of section 50307(a)(2) of title 46, United States Code.

"(2) PILOT PROGRAM.—Beginning on the date that is 120 days after the date of the completion of the study required under paragraph (1), the Administrator shall carry out a one-year pilot program under which the Administrator shall select one marine highway project and implement the findings of the study with respect to that project.

"(3) FINAL REPORT.—Not later than 90 days after the completion of the pilot program under paragraph (3), the Administrator shall provide to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives, a briefing on

the lessons learned from the pilot program, any recommendations based on feedback from maritime stakeholders, States, Indian Tribes, nonprofit organizations, and other stakeholders, and recommendations for establishing future marine highways in the United States."

DEADLINE FOR PUBLIC AVAILABILITY OF MAP

Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(f), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3080, provided that: "Not later than 120 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022], the Maritime Administration shall make publicly available the map of marine highway program routes required to be made publicly available under subsection (c) of section 55601 of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this section."

§55602. Cargo and shippers

(a) MEMORANDUMS OF AGREEMENT.—The Secretary of Transportation shall enter into memorandums of understanding with the heads of other Federal entities to transport federally owned or generated cargo using a marine highway transportation project designated under section 55601 when practical or available.

(b) SHORT-TERM INCENTIVES.—The Secretary shall consult shippers and other participants in transportation logistics and develop proposals for short-term incentives to encourage the use of marine highway transportation.

(Added Pub. L. 110–140, title XI, §1121(a), Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1761; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8332(d)(4), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4705.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "marine highway" for "short sea" in subsecs. (a) and (b).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as a note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

§55603. Multistate, State, Tribal, and regional transportation planning

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary, in consultation with Federal entities, State and local governments, Tribal governments, and appropriate private sector entities, may develop strategies to encourage the use of marine highway transportation for transportation of passengers and cargo.

(b) STRATEGIES.—If the Secretary develops strategies under subsection (a), the Secretary may—

(1) assess the extent to which States, local governments, and Tribal governments include marine highway transportation and other marine transportation solutions in transportation planning;

(2) encourage State and Tribal departments of transportation to develop strategies, where appropriate, to incorporate marine highway transportation, ferries, and other marine transportation solutions for regional and interstate transport of freight and passengers in transportation planning; and

(3) encourage groups of States, Tribal governments, and multistate transportation entities to determine how marine highways can address congestion, bottlenecks, and other interstate transportation challenges.

(Added Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(b)(1), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3078.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 55603, added Pub. L. 110–140, title XI, §1121(a), Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1761, which related to an interagency board to identify and seek solutions to impediments hindering effective use of short sea transportation, was repealed by Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8332(d)(1), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4704.

§55604. Research on marine highway transportation

The Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, may conduct research on marine highway transportation, regarding—

(1) the economic effects of marine highway transportation on the United States economy;

(2) the effects of marine highway transportation, including with respect to the provision of additional transportation options, on rural areas;

(3) the environmental and transportation benefits to be derived from marine highway transportation alternatives for other forms of transportation;

(4) technology, vessel design, and other improvements that would reduce emissions, increase fuel economy, and lower costs of marine highway transportation and increase the efficiency of intermodal transfers; and

(5) solutions to impediments to marine highway transportation projects designated under section 55601.

(Added Pub. L. 110–140, title XI, §1121(a), Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1761; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8332(d)(4), (5), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4705; Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(c), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3078.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pars. (1) to (5). Pub. L. 117–263 added pars. (1) and (2) and redesignated former pars. (1) to (3) as (3) to (5), respectively.

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "marine highway" for "short sea" in section catchline and wherever appearing in text.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as a note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

§55605. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) The term "marine highway transportation" means the carriage by a documented vessel of cargo (including such carriage of cargo and passengers), if such cargo—

(A) is—

(i) contained in intermodal cargo containers and loaded by crane on the vessel;

(ii) loaded on the vessel by means of wheeled technology, including roll-on roll-off cargo;

(iii) shipped in discrete units or packages that are handled individually, palletized, or unitized for purposes of transportation;

(iv) bulk, liquid, or loose cargo loaded in tanks, holds, hoppers, or on deck; or

(v) freight vehicles carried aboard commuter ferry boats; and

(B) is—

(i) loaded at a port in the United States and unloaded either at another port in the United States or at a port in Canada or Mexico; or

(ii) loaded at a port in Canada or Mexico and unloaded at a port in the United States.

(2) The term "Tribal government" means the recognized governing body of any Indian or Alaska Native Tribe, band, nation, pueblo, village, community, component band, or component reservation, individually identified (including parenthetically) in the list published most recently, as of the date of enactment of the James M. Inhofe National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2023, pursuant to section 104 of the Federally Recognized Indian Tribe List Act of 1994 (25 U.S.C. 5131).

(3) The term "Alaska Native Corporation" has the meaning given the term "Native Corporation" under section 3 of the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. 1602).

(Added Pub. L. 110–140, title XI, §1121(a), Dec. 19, 2007, 121 Stat. 1761; amended Pub. L. 112–213, title IV, §405(b), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1571; Pub. L. 114–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3508, Nov. 25, 2015, 129 Stat. 1223; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8332(d)(6), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4705; Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3521(d)(1), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3079.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of the James M. Inhofe National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2023, referred to in par. (2), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 117–263, which was approved Dec. 23, 2022.

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section defined the term "marine highway transportation" as used in this chapter.

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "Marine highway" for "Short sea" in section catchline and "marine highway transportation" for "short sea transportation" in introductory provisions.

2015—Par. (1)(C), (D). Pub. L. 114–92 added subpars. (C) and (D).

2012—Pub. L. 112–213, which directed amendment of section 55605, without specifying the title to be amended, by substituting "by a documented vessel" for "by vessel" in the matter preceding par. (1), was executed to this section, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 1 day after Dec. 19, 2007, see section 1601 of Pub. L. 110–140, set out as a note under section 1824 of Title 2, The Congress.

PART E—CONTROL OF MERCHANT MARINE CAPABILITIES

CHAPTER 561—RESTRICTIONS ON TRANSFERS

Sec.

56101. Approval required to transfer vessel to noncitizen.
56102. Additional controls during war or national emergency.
56103. Conditional approvals.
56104. Penalty for false statements.
56105. Forfeiture procedure.

§56101. Approval required to transfer vessel to noncitizen

(a) RESTRICTIONS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as otherwise provided in this section, section 12119 of this title, or section 611 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, a person may not, without the approval of the Secretary of Transportation—

(A) sell, lease, charter, deliver, or in any other manner transfer, or agree to sell, lease, charter, deliver, or in any other manner transfer, to a person not a citizen of the United States, an interest in or control of—

(i) a documented vessel owned by a citizen of the United States; or

(ii) a vessel last documented under the laws of the United States; or

(B) place under foreign registry, or operate under the authority of a foreign country, a documented vessel or a vessel last documented under the laws of the United States.

(2) EXCEPTIONS.—Paragraph (1)(A) does not apply to a vessel that has been operated only for pleasure or only as a fishing vessel, fish processing vessel, or fish tender vessel (as defined in section 2101 of this title).

(b) APPROVAL BEFORE DOCUMENTATION.—To promote financing with respect to a vessel to be documented under chapter 121 of this title, the Secretary may grant approval under subsection (a) before the vessel is documented.

(c) EXCEPTIONS.—Notwithstanding any other provision of this subtitle, the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, or any contract with the Secretary made under this subtitle or that Act, a person may place a vessel under foreign registry without the approval of the Secretary if—

(1)(A) the Secretary, in conjunction with the Secretary of Defense, determines that at least one replacement vessel of equal or greater military capability and of a capacity that is equivalent or greater, as measured by deadweight tons, gross tons, or container equivalent units, as appropriate, is documented under chapter 121 of this title by the owner of the vessel placed under foreign registry; and

(B) the replacement vessel is not more than 10 years old on the date of that documentation; or

(2) an operating agreement covering the vessel under chapter 531 of this title has expired.

(d) STATUS OF PROHIBITED TRANSACTION.—A charter, sale, or transfer of a vessel, or of an interest in or control of a vessel, in violation of this section is void.

(e) PENALTIES.—

(1) CRIMINAL PENALTY.—A person that knowingly sells, charters, or transfers a vessel, or an interest in or control of a vessel, in violation of this section shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for not more than 5 years, or both.

(2) CIVIL PENALTY.—A person that sells, charters, or transfers a vessel, or an interest in or control of a vessel, in violation of this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 for each violation.

(3) FORFEITURE.—A documented vessel may be seized by and forfeited to the Government if, in violation of this section, a person—

(A) knowingly sells, charters, or transfers the vessel or an interest in or control of the vessel; or

(B) places the vessel under foreign registry or operates the vessel under the authority of a foreign country.

(f) FOREIGN VESSEL CHARTERS FOR PASSENGER VESSELS.—The Maritime Administrator shall make publicly available on an appropriate website of the Maritime Administration—

(1) a detailed summary of each request for a determination, approval, or confirmation that a vessel charter for a passenger vessel is encompassed by the general approval of time charters

issued pursuant to this section or regulations prescribed pursuant to such section; and

(2) the final action of the Administration with respect to such request, after the provision of notice and opportunity for public comment.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1651; Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(b)(2), (3), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 810.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
56101(a)	46 App.:808(c).	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §9(c), (d), 39 Stat. 730; July 15, 1918, ch. 152, §3, 40 Stat. 900; June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §18, 41 Stat. 994; Exec. Order No. 6166, §12, eff. June 10, 1933; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §42, 52 Stat. 964; Pub. L. 89–346, §1, Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1305; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(26), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 155; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(b)(3), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4750; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §304(a), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1924; Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, [§]1113(c), (e), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3970, 3971; Pub. L. 107–295, title II, §205(d), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2096.
	46 App.:808a.	Pub. L. 98–454, title III, §302, Oct. 5, 1984, 98 Stat. 1734.
56101(b)	46 App.:808(f)	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §9(f), as added Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1136(b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3987; Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3532(a)(1), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1817.
56101(c)	46 App.:808(e)	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §9(e), as added Pub. L. 104–239, §6, Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3132; Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3532(a)(2), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1817.
56101(d)	46 App.:808(d)(1).	
56101(e)	46 App.:808(d)(2)–(4).	

In subsection (a), the text of 46 App. U.S.C. 808a is omitted as unnecessary. In paragraph (1), the words "owned by a citizen of the United States" are omitted as unnecessary because ownership by a citizen is a requirement for documentation. See section 12103 as revised by the bill.

In subsection (c), before paragraph (1), the words "Notwithstanding any other provision of this subtitle, the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, or any contract with the Secretary made under this subtitle or that Act" are substituted for "Notwithstanding subsection (c)(2) of this section, the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 [46 App. U.S.C. 1101 et seq.], or any contract entered into with the Secretary of Transportation under that Act" because the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, is restated principally in this subtitle, but other provisions of that Act are being neither restated nor repealed.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Merchant Marine Act, 1936, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1) and (c), is act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, 49 Stat. 1985, which was classified principally to chapter 27 (§1101 et seq.) of the former Appendix to this title. The Act, with the exception of title V, most of title VI, and sections 301, 801, 802, 809(a), and 909 thereof, was repealed and restated, mainly in this subtitle, by Pub. L. 109–304, §§8, 19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1555, 1710. Title V and sections 301 and 909 of the Act are set out as notes under section 53101 of this title. Those portions of title VI not repealed by Pub. L. 109–304 and sections 802 and 809(a) of the Act were repealed by Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §313(a), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 58. Section 801 of the Act was transferred to section 57522 of this title by Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §313(c)(1)(A), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 58. For complete classification of the Act to the Code, see Tables. For disposition of sections of the former Appendix to Title 46, see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title.

CODIFICATION

The text of section 3502(b) of Pub. L. 116–283, which was formerly set out as a note under this section and was transferred to subsec. (f) of this section by Pub. L. 118–31, was based on Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4398; Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(b)(1), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 810.

AMENDMENTS

2023—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 118–31 transferred section 3502(b) of Pub. L. 116–283 to this section and redesignated it as subsec. (f). See Codification note above.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

FOREIGN VESSEL CHARTERS FOR PASSENGER VESSELS

Pub. L. 116–283, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4398, as amended by Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(b)(1), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 810, which directed the Maritime Administrator to make publicly available certain requests relating to vessel charters for passenger vessels, was transferred to subsec. (f) of this section by Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(b)(2), (3), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 810.

§56102. Additional controls during war or national emergency

(a) IN GENERAL.—During war, or a national emergency declared by Presidential proclamation, a person may not, without the approval of the Secretary of Transportation—

(1) place under foreign registry a vessel owned in whole or in part by a citizen of the United States or a corporation incorporated under the laws of the United States or of a State;

(2) sell, mortgage, lease, charter, deliver, or in any other manner transfer, or agree to sell, mortgage, lease, charter, deliver, or in any other manner transfer, to a person not a citizen of the United States—

(A) a vessel owned as described in paragraph (1), or an interest therein;

(B) a vessel documented under the laws of the United States, or an interest therein; or

(C) a facility for building or repairing vessels, or an interest therein;

(3) issue, assign, or transfer to a person not a citizen of the United States an instrument of indebtedness secured by a mortgage of a vessel to a trustee, by an assignment of an owner's interest in a vessel under construction to a trustee, or by a mortgage of a facility for building or repairing vessels to a trustee, unless the trustee or a substitute trustee is approved by the Secretary under subsection (b);

(4) enter into an agreement or understanding to construct a vessel in the United States for, or to be delivered to, a person not a citizen of the United States without expressly stipulating that construction will not begin until after the war or national emergency has ended;

(5) enter into an agreement or understanding whereby there is vested in, or for the benefit of, a person not a citizen of the United States the controlling interest in a corporation that is incorporated under the laws of the United States or a State and that owns a vessel or facility for building or repairing vessels; or

(6) cause or procure a vessel, constructed in whole or in part in the United States and never cleared for a foreign port, to depart from a port of the United States before it has been documented under the laws of the United States.

(b) TRUSTEES.—

(1) APPROVAL.—The Secretary shall approve a trustee or substitute trustee under subsection (a)(3) if and only if the trustee is a bank or trust company that—

(A) is organized as a corporation, and is doing business, under the laws of the United States or a State;

(B) is authorized under those laws to exercise corporate trust powers;

(C) is a citizen of the United States;

(D) is subject to supervision or examination by Federal or State authority; and

(E) has a combined capital and surplus (as set forth in its most recent published report of condition) of at least $3,000,000.

(2) DISAPPROVAL.—If a trustee or substitute trustee ceases to meet the conditions in paragraph (1), the Secretary shall disapprove the trustee or substitute trustee. After the disapproval, the restrictions on transfer or assignment without the Secretary's approval in subsection (a)(3) apply.

(3) OPERATION OF VESSEL.—During a period when subsection (a) applies, a trustee referred to in subsection (a)(3), even though approved as a trustee by the Secretary, may not operate the vessel under the mortgage or assignment without the Secretary's approval.

(c) STATUS OF PROHIBITED TRANSACTION.—A transaction in violation of this section is void.

(d) RECOVERY OF CONSIDERATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—A person that deposited or paid consideration in connection with a transaction prohibited by this section may recover the consideration after tender of the vessel, facility, stock, or other security, or interest therein, to the person entitled to it, or the forfeiture thereof to the United States Government.

(2) EXCEPTION.—Paragraph (1) does not apply if the person in whose interest the consideration was deposited, or to whom it was paid, entered into the transaction in the belief that the person depositing or paying the consideration was a citizen of the United States.

(e) PENALTIES.—

(1) CRIMINAL PENALTY.—A person that violates, or attempts or conspires to violate, this section shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for not more than 5 years, or both.

(2) FORFEITURE.—The following shall be forfeited to the Government:

(A) A vessel, a facility for building or repairing vessels, or an interest in a vessel or such a facility, that is sold, mortgaged, leased, chartered, delivered, transferred, or documented, or agreed to be sold, mortgaged, leased, chartered, delivered, transferred, or documented, in violation of this section.

(B) Stock and other securities sold or transferred, or agreed to be sold or transferred, in violation of this section.

(C) A vessel departing in violation of subsection (a)(6).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1652.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
56102(a)	46 App.:835(a)–(c) (less provisos), (d)–(f).	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §37, as added July 15, 1918, ch. 152, §4, 40 Stat. 901; Exec. Order No. 6166, §12, eff. June 10, 1933; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 89–346, §2, Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1306; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(30), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 156.
56102(b)	46 App.:835(c) (provisos).	
56102(c)	46 App.:835 (2d par. after cl. (f), last par. words before 9th comma).	
56102(d)	46 App.:835 (last par. words after 9th comma).	
56102(e)	46 App.:835 (1st, 3d pars. after cl. (f)).	

In this section, the words "facility for building or repairing vessels" are substituted for "shipyard, dry dock, shipbuilding or ship-repairing plant or facility" (or similar language) to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (a)(1), the words "transfer to" and "or flag" are omitted as surplus. The words "Territory, District, or possession thereof" are omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "State" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

In subsection (a)(3), the words "instrument of indebtedness" are substituted for "bond, note, or other evidence of indebtedness" to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "right, title, or" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (a)(5), the words "or the majority of the voting power" are omitted as covered by "controlling interest".

In subsection (b)(1), before subparagraph (A), the words "and only if" are added for clarity because the Secretary is required to disapprove a trustee that ceases to meet the specified conditions.

Subsections (c) and (d) are substituted for the source provisions to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (e)(1), the words "guilty of a misdemeanor" are omitted, and the words "fined under title 18" are substituted for "punishable by a fine of not more than $5000", because of chapter 227 of title 18.

§56103. Conditional approvals

(a) IN GENERAL.—In approving an act or transaction under section 56101 or 56102 of this title, the Secretary of Transportation may do so absolutely or upon conditions the Secretary considers advisable. The Secretary shall state the conditions in the notice of approval.

(b) VIOLATIONS.—A violation of a condition of approval is subject to the same penalties as a violation resulting from an act done without the required approval. The violation occurs at the time the condition is violated.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1654.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
56103	46 App.:839 (1st par.).	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §41 (1st par.), as added July 15, 1918, ch. 152, §4, 40 Stat. 902; Exec. Order No. 6166, June 10, 1933, §12; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904,

		49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(32), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 156.

This section is substituted for the source provision to eliminate unnecessary words.

§56104. Penalty for false statements

A person that knowingly makes a false statement of a material fact to the Secretary of Transportation or another officer, employee, or agent of the Department of Transportation, to obtain the Secretary's approval under section 56101 or 56102 of this title, shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for not more than 5 years, or both.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1654.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
56104	46 App.:839 (last par.).	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §41 (last par.), as added July 15, 1918, ch. 152, §4, 40 Stat. 903; Exec. Order No. 6166, June 10, 1933, §12; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(32), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 156.

The words "guilty of a misdemeanor" are omitted, and the words "fined under title 18" are substituted for "subject to a fine of not more than $5000", because of chapter 227 of title 18.

§56105. Forfeiture procedure

(a) IN GENERAL.—A forfeiture under this chapter may be enforced in the same way as a forfeiture under the laws on the collection of duties. However, such a forfeiture may be remitted without seizure of the vessel.

(b) PRIOR CONVICTIONS.—In a proceeding under this chapter to enforce a forfeiture, a prior criminal conviction of a person for a violation of this chapter with respect to the subject matter of the forfeiture is prima facie evidence of the violation against the person convicted.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1654.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
56105(a)	46 App.:836.	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §38, as added July 15, 1918, ch. 152, §4, 40 Stat. 902; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §304(b), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1924.
56105(b)	46 App.:837.	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §39, as added July 15, 1918, ch. 152, §4, 40 Stat. 902.

CHAPTER 563—EMERGENCY ACQUISITION OF VESSELS

Sec.

56301. General authority.
56302. Charter terms.
56303. Compensation.
56304. Disputed compensation.
56305. Vessel encumbrances.
56306. Use and transfer of vessels.
56307. Return of vessels.
56308. Transfer of substitute vessels.
56309. Emergency foreign vessel acquisition; purchase or requisition of vessels lying idle in United States waters [1]
56310. Voluntary purchase or charter agreements [1]
56311. Requisitioned vessels [1]
56312. Documented defined [1]

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2017—Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §§3502(b)(8), 3504(e), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1911, 1913, added items 56308 to 56312.

[1] So in original. Probably should be followed by a period.

§56301. General authority

During a national emergency declared by Presidential proclamation, or a period for which the President has proclaimed that the security of the national defense makes it advisable, the Secretary of Transportation may requisition or purchase, or requisition or charter the use of, a vessel owned by citizens of the United States, a documented vessel, or a vessel under construction in the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1654.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
56301	46 App.:1242(a) (1st, 2d sentences).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §902(a) (1st, 2d sentences), 49 Stat. 2015; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(131), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4750.

The words "or other watercraft" are omitted because of the definition of "vessel" in chapter 1 of the revised title. The words "The termination of any emergency so declared shall be announced by a further proclamation by the President" are omitted as superseded by the National Emergencies Act (50 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.).

§56302. Charter terms

(a) IN GENERAL.—If a vessel is requisitioned for use but not ownership under this chapter, the Secretary of Transportation, at the time of requisition or as soon thereafter as the situation allows, shall offer the person entitled to possession of the vessel a charter containing—

(1) the terms the Secretary believes should govern the relationship between the United States Government and the person; and

(2) the rate of hire the Secretary considers just compensation for the use of the vessel and the services required under the charter.

(b) REFUSAL TO ACCEPT.—If the person does not accept the charter and rate of hire, the parties shall proceed as provided in section 56304 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1654.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
56302	46 App.:1242(c) (1st sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §902(c) (1st sentence); as added Aug. 7, 1939, ch. 555, §3, 53 Stat. 1255; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(131), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165.

In subsection (a), the words "requisitioned for use but not ownership under this chapter" are substituted for "taken and used under authority of this section, but the ownership thereof is not required by the United States" to eliminate unnecessary words. The word "requisition" is substituted for "taking", and the word "vessel" is substituted for "such property", for consistency.

Subsection (b) is added because the provisions about disputed compensation, for both charter use and other takings, are consolidated in section 56304 of the revised title to avoid repetition.

§56303. Compensation

(a) IN GENERAL.—As soon as practicable, the Secretary of Transportation shall determine and pay just compensation for a vessel requisitioned under this chapter.

(b) FACTORS NOT AFFECTING VALUE.—The value of a vessel may not be considered enhanced by the circumstances requiring its requisition. Consequential damages arising from the requisition may not be paid.

(c) EFFECT OF CONSTRUCTION-DIFFERENTIAL SUBSIDY.—

(1) IF PAID.—If a construction-differential subsidy has been paid for the vessel, the value of the vessel at the time of requisition shall be determined under section 802 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936.

(2) IF NOT PAID.—If a construction-differential subsidy has not been paid for the vessel, the value of any national defense features previously paid for by the United States Government shall be excluded.

(d) LOSS OR DAMAGE DURING CHARTER.—If a vessel is lost or damaged by a risk assumed by the Government under the charter, but a valuation for the vessel or a means of compensation has not been agreed to, the Secretary shall pay just compensation for the loss or damage, to the extent the person is not reimbursed through insurance.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1655.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
56303(a)	46 App.:1242(a) (3d sentence words before 2d comma), (d) (1st par. words before 2d	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §902(a) (3d, last sentences), (b), (d) (1st par. words before 2d comma), 49 Stat.

	comma).	2015, 2016; Aug. 7, 1939, ch. 555, §3, 53 Stat. 1255; Aug. 3, 1956, ch. 929, §3, 70 Stat. 985; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(131), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165.
56303(b)	46 App.:1242(a) (3d sentence words after 2d comma, last sentence).	
56303(c)	46 App.:1242(b).	
56303(d)	46 App.:1242(c) (last sentence).	

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 802 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), is section 802 of act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, 49 Stat. 1985, which is set out as a note under section 53101 of this title.

§56304. Disputed compensation

If the person entitled to compensation disputes the amount of just compensation determined by the Secretary of Transportation under this chapter, the Secretary shall pay the person, as a tentative advance, 75 percent of the amount determined. The person may bring a civil action against the United States to recover just compensation. If the tentative advance paid under this section is greater than the amount of the court's judgment, the person shall refund the difference.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1655.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
56304	46 App.:1242(c) (2d sentence), (d) (1st par. words after 2d comma).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §902(c) (2d sentence), (d) (1st par. words after 2d comma); as added Aug. 7, 1939, ch. 555, §3, 53 Stat. 1256; Aug. 3, 1956, ch. 929, §§2, 3, 70 Stat. 985; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(131), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165.

This section is substituted for the source provisions to eliminate unnecessary words.

§56305. Vessel encumbrances

(a) IN GENERAL.—The existence of an encumbrance on a vessel does not prevent the requisition of the vessel under this chapter.

(b) DEPOSIT IN TREASURY.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—If an encumbrance exists, the Secretary of Transportation may deposit part of the compensation or advance of compensation to be paid under this chapter (but not more than the total amount of all encumbrances) in a fund in the Treasury. The Secretary shall publish notice of the creation of the fund in the Federal Register.

(2) AVAILABILITY OF AMOUNTS DEPOSITED.—Amounts deposited in the fund shall be available to pay the compensation or any of the encumbrances (including encumbrances stipulated to in a court of the United States or a State) existing at the time the vessel was requisitioned.

(c) CIVIL ACTION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Within 6 months after publication of notice under subsection (b), the holder of an encumbrance may bring a civil action in admiralty, according to the principles of libels in rem, against the fund.

(2) VENUE.—The action must be brought in the district court of the United States—

(A) from whose custody the vessel was or may be requisitioned; or

(B) in whose district the vessel was located when it was requisitioned.

(3) SERVICE OF PROCESS.—Service of process shall be made on the appropriate United States Attorney, the Attorney General, and the Secretary, in the manner provided by the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (28 App. U.S.C.). Notice of the action shall be given to all interested persons as ordered by the court.

(4) AS BETWEEN PRIVATE PARTIES.—The action shall proceed and be determined according to the principles of law and the rules of practice applicable in like cases between private parties.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1655.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
56305	46 App.:1242(d) (last par.).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §902(d) (last par.), as added Mar. 24, 1943, ch. 26, §3(d), 57 Stat. 49; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(131), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165.

In this section, the words "encumbrance" and "encumbrances" are substituted for "any valid claim by way of mortgage or maritime claim or attachment lien" and "any valid claim by way of mortgage or maritime lien or attachment lien" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (b)(1), the words "The Secretary shall publish notice of the creation of the fund in the Federal Register" are added for clarity, based on language barring a civil action not brought within 6 months after publication of such a notice.

In subsection (c)(1), the words "Within 6 months after publication of notice under subsection (b)" are substituted for "prior to June 30, 1943, or within six months after the first such deposit with the Treasurer and publication of notice thereof in the Federal Register, whichever date is later" for clarity and to eliminate obsolete language.

Subsection (c)(3) is substituted for "and such suit shall be commenced in the manner provided by section 742 of this Appendix and service of process shall be made in the manner therein provided by service upon the United States attorney and by mailing by registered mail to the Attorney General and the Secretary of Transportation and due notice shall under order of the court be given to all interested persons" because the relevant sentences in 46 App. U.S.C. 742 were struck by an amendment in 1996. See generally *Henderson v. United States*, 517 U.S. 654, 116 S. Ct. 1638 (1996).

In subsection (c)(4), the words "any decree in said suit shall be paid out of the first and all subsequent deposits of compensation" and "any decree shall be subject to appeal and revision as now provided in other cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction" are omitted as surplus.

§56306. Use and transfer of vessels

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation may repair, recondition, reconstruct, operate, or charter for operation, a vessel acquired under this chapter.

(b) TRANSFER TO OTHER AGENCIES.—The Secretary may transfer the possession or control of a vessel acquired under this chapter to another department or agency of the United States

Government on terms and conditions approved by the President. The department or agency shall promptly reimburse the Secretary for expenditures for just compensation, purchase price, charter hire, repairs, reconditioning, or reconstruction.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1656.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
56306	46 App.:1242(e).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §902(e); as added Aug. 7, 1939, ch. 555, §3, 53 Stat. 1256; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(131), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165.

In this section, the word "vessel" is substituted for "property" for consistency in the chapter.

In subsection (b), the words "Such reimbursements shall be deposited in the construction fund established by section 1116 of this Appendix" are omitted as impliedly repealed by 46 App. U.S.C. 1119 as amended in 1967.

§56307. Return of vessels

When a vessel requisitioned for use but not ownership is returned to the owner, the Secretary of Transportation shall—

(1) return the vessel in a condition at least as good as when taken, less ordinary wear and tear; or

(2) pay the owner an amount sufficient to recondition the vessel to that condition, less ordinary wear and tear.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1656.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
56307	46 App.:1242(a) (4th sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title IX, §902(a) (4th sentence), 49 Stat. 2015; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(131), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165.

The words "requisitioned for use but not ownership" are substituted for "taken and used under authority of this section, but the ownership thereof is not required by the United States" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§56308. Transfer of substitute vessels

In the case of any vessel constructed in the United States after January 1, 1937, which has been taken by the United States for use in any manner, the Secretary of Transportation, if in his opinion the transfer would aid in carrying out the policies of this Act,[1] is authorized to transfer to the owner of such vessel another vessel which is deemed by the Secretary to be of comparable type with adjustments for depreciation and difference in design or speed, and to the extent applicable, such other adjustments and terms and conditions, including transfer of mortgage obligations in favor of the United States binding upon the old vessel, as the Secretary may prescribe.

(Added and amended Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(a)(2), (b)(5), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1910.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, means act Mar. 8, 1946, ch. 82, 60 Stat. 41, known as the Merchant Ship Sales Act of 1946, which was classified principally to chapter 54 (§4401 et seq.) of Title 50, War and National Defense. The Act has been repealed, except for sections 8(d) and 11, which were transferred to this section and section 57100 of this title, respectively, by Pub. L. 115–91. Provisions relating to the policies of the Act were contained in section 4401 of Title 50 prior to repeal by Pub. L. 115–91.

CODIFICATION

Section, as added and amended by Pub. L. 115–91, is based on act Mar. 8, 1946, ch. 82, §8(d), 60 Stat. 46, as amended by Pub. L. 97–31, §12(154), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 167, which was formerly classified to section 4404(d) of Title 50, War and National Defense, before being transferred to this chapter and renumbered as this section.

AMENDMENTS

2017—Pub. L. 115–91, §3502(b)(5)(C), which directed striking out "adjustments with respect to the retained vessels as provided for in section 9, and", was executed by striking out "adjustments with respect to the retained vessel as provided for in section 9, and" after "extent applicable," to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 115–91, §3502(b)(5)(B), which directed insertion of "of Transportation" after "Secretary", was executed by making the insertion after "Secretary" the first time appearing to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 115–91, §3502(b)(5)(A), inserted section enumerator and catchline.

Pub. L. 115–91, §3502(a)(2), transferred section 8(d) of act Mar. 8, 1946, to this chapter and renumbered it as this section. See Codification note above.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§56309. Emergency foreign vessel acquisition; purchase or requisition of vessels lying idle in United States waters

During any period in which vessels may be requisitioned under this chapter, the President is authorized and empowered through the Secretary of Transportation to purchase, or to requisition, or for any part of such period to charter or requisition the use of, or to take over the title to or possession of, for such use or disposition as he shall direct, any merchant vessel not owned by citizens of the United States which is lying idle in waters within the jurisdiction of the United States and which the President finds to be necessary to the national defense. Just compensation shall be determined and made to the owner or owners of any such vessel in accordance with the applicable provisions of this chapter. Such compensation hereunder, or advances on account thereof, shall be deposited with the Treasurer of the United States in a separate deposit fund. Payments for such compensation and also for payment of any valid claim upon such vessel in accord with the provisions of section 56305, shall be made from such fund upon the certificate of the Secretary of Transportation.

(Added and amended Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3504(a), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1911.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Section, as added and amended by section 3504(a) of Pub. L. 115–91, is based on act Aug. 9, 1954, ch. 659, §1, 68 Stat. 675; Pub. L. 96–70, title III, §3302(c), Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 498; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(152), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 167, which was formerly classified to section 196 of Title 50, War and National Defense, before being transferred to this chapter and renumbered as this section.

AMENDMENTS

2017—Pub. L. 115–91, §3504(a)(2), inserted section enumerator and catchline and, in text, substituted "this chapter" for "section 902 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, as amended" in two places and "section 56305" for "the second paragraph of subsection (d) of such section 902, as amended".

Pub. L. 115–91, §3504(a)(1), transferred section 1 of act Aug. 9, 1954, to this chapter and renumbered it as this section. See Codification note above.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

REFERENCES

Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3504(f), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1913, provided that: "Any reference in a law, regulation, document, paper, or other record of the United States to a section that is redesignated and transferred by this section [sections 1 to 3 of act Aug. 9, 1954, former 50 U.S.C. 196 to 198] is deemed to refer to such section as so redesignated and transferred [now 46 U.S.C. 56309 to 56311]."

§56310. Voluntary purchase or charter agreements

During any period in which vessels may be requisitioned under this chapter as amended,[1] the President is authorized through the Secretary of Transportation to acquire by voluntary agreement of purchase or charter the ownership or use of any merchant vessel not owned by citizens of the United States.

(Added and amended Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3504(b), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1912.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Section, as added and amended by section 3504(b) of Pub. L. 115–91, is based on act Aug. 9, 1954, ch. 659, §2, 68 Stat. 675; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(152), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 167, which was formerly classified to section 197 of Title 50, War and National Defense, before being transferred to this chapter and renumbered as this section.

AMENDMENTS

2017—Pub. L. 115–91, §3504(b)(2), inserted section enumerator and catchline and, in text, substituted "this chapter" for "section 902 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936,".

Pub. L. 115–91, §3504(b)(1), transferred section 2 of act Aug. 9, 1954, to this chapter and renumbered it as this section. See Codification note above.

[1] *So in original.*

§56311. Requisitioned vessels

(a) Any vessel not documented under the laws of the United States, acquired by or made available to the Secretary of Transportation under section 56309 or 56310, as applicable, or otherwise, may, notwithstanding any other provision of law, in the discretion of the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating be documented as a vessel of the United States under such rules and regulations or orders, and with such limitations, as the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating may prescribe or issue as necessary or appropriate to carry out the purposes and provisions of section 56309 or 56310, as applicable, and in accordance with the provisions of subsection (c), engage in the coastwise trade when so documented. Any document issued to a vessel under the provisions of this subsection shall be surrendered at any time that such surrender may be ordered by the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating. No vessel, the surrender of the documents of which has been so ordered, shall, after the effective date of such order, have the status of a vessel of the United States unless documented anew.

(b) The President may, notwithstanding any other provisions of law, by rules and regulations or orders, waive compliance with any provision of law relating to masters, officers, members of the crew, or crew accommodations on any vessel documented under authority of this section to such extent and upon such terms as he finds necessary because of the lack of physical facilities on such vessels, and because of the need to employ aliens for their operation. No vessel shall cease to enjoy the benefits and privileges of a vessel of the United States by reason of the employment of any person in accordance with the provisions of this subsection.

(c) Any vessel while documented under the provisions of this section, when chartered under section 56309 or 56310, as applicable, by the Secretary of Transportation to Government agencies or departments or to private operators, may engage in the coastwise trade under permits issued by the Secretary of Transportation, who is authorized to issue permits for such purpose pursuant to such rules and regulations as he may prescribe. The Secretary of Transportation is authorized to prescribe such rules and regulations as he may deem necessary or appropriate to carry out the purposes and provisions of this section. Section 57109 shall not apply with respect to vessels chartered to Government agencies or departments or to private operators or otherwise used or disposed of under section 56309 or 56310, as applicable. Existing laws covering the inspection of steam vessels are made applicable to vessels documented under this section only to such extent and upon such conditions as may be required by regulations of the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating: *Provided*, That in determining to what extent those laws should be made applicable, due consideration shall be given to the primary purpose of transporting commodities essential to the national defense.

(d) The Secretary of Transportation without regard to the [1] section 6101 of title 41 may repair, reconstruct, or recondition any vessels to be utilized under section 56309 or 56310, as applicable. The Secretary of Transportation and any other Government department or agency by which any vessel is acquired or chartered, or to which any vessel is transferred or made available under section 56309 or 56310, as applicable, may, with the aid of any funds available and without regard to the provisions of section 6101 of title 41, repair, reconstruct, or recondition any such vessels to meet the needs of the services intended, or provide facilities for such repair, reconstruction, or reconditioning. The Secretary of Transportation may operate or charter for operation any vessel to be utilized under section 56309 or 56310, as applicable [2] to private operators, citizens of the United States, or to any department or agency of the United States Government, without regard to the provisions of chapter 575, and any department or agency of the United States Government is authorized to enter into such charters.

(e) In case of any voyage of a vessel documented under the provisions of this section begun before the date of termination of an effective period of section 196 of this title, but is completed after such date, the provisions of this section shall continue in effect with respect to such vessel until such voyage is completed.

(Added and amended Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3504(c), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1912.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Section, as added and amended by section 3504(c) of Pub. L. 115–91, is based on act Aug. 9, 1954, ch. 659, §3, 68 Stat. 675; Pub. L. 89–670, §6(b)(1), (2), Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 938; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(152), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 167, which was formerly classified to section 198 of Title 50, War and National Defense, before being transferred to this chapter and renumbered as this section.

AMENDMENTS

2017—Pub. L. 115–91, §3504(c)(3)(A), substituted "section 56309 or 56310, as applicable" for "this Act" wherever appearing, except in first sentence of subsec. (c) and second sentence of subsec. (d).

Pub. L. 115–91, §3504(c)(2), inserted section enumerator and catchline.

Pub. L. 115–91, §3504(c)(1), transferred section 3 of act Aug. 9, 1954, to this chapter and renumbered it as this section. See Codification note above.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 115–91, §3504(c)(3)(B), substituted "section 56309 or 56310, as applicable," for "this

Act" in first sentence and "Section 57109" for "The second paragraph of section 9 of the Shipping Act, 1916, as amended," in third sentence.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 115–91, §3504(c)(3)(C)(i)–(iii), substituted, in first sentence, "section 6101 of title 41" for "provisions of section 3709 of the Revised Statutes", in second sentence, "section 56309 or 56310, as applicable," for "this Act" and "section 6101 of title 41" for "said section 3709", and, in third sentence, "chapter 575" for "title VII of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 115–91, §3504(c)(3)(C)(iv), struck out subsec. (f) which read as follows: "When used in this Act, the term 'documented' means 'registered', 'enrolled and licensed', or 'licensed'." See section 56312 of this title.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

"Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating" substituted in subsec. (a) for "Secretary of the Treasury" pursuant to section 6(b)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 89–670, which transferred Coast Guard to Department of Transportation and transferred to and vested in Secretary of Transportation functions, powers, and duties relating to Coast Guard, of Secretary of the Treasury and of all other officers and offices of Department of the Treasury, and which provided that notwithstanding such transfer Coast Guard shall operate as part of Navy in time of war or when President directs as provided in former section 3 (now 103) of Title 14, Coast Guard. See section 108 of Title 49, Transportation.

[1] So in original. The word "the" probably should not appear.

[2] So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.

§56312. Documented defined

In sections 56309 through 56311, the term "documented" means, with respect to a vessel, that a certificate of documentation has been issued for the vessel under chapter 121.

(Added Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3504(d), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1913.)

CHAPTER 565—ESSENTIAL VESSELS AFFECTED BY NEUTRALITY ACT

Sec.

56501. Definition.
56502. Adjusting obligations and arranging maintenance.
56503. Types of adjustments and arrangements.
56504. Changes in adjustments and arrangements.

§56501. Definition

In this chapter, the term "essential vessel" means a vessel that is—

(1)(A) security for a mortgage indebtedness to the United States Government; or

(B) constructed under this subtitle or required by a contract under this subtitle to be operated on a certain essential foreign trade route; and

(2) necessary in the interests of commerce and national defense to be maintained in condition for prompt use.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1656.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
56501	46 App.:1242a(a).	June 29, 1940, ch. 442, subdiv. (a), 54 Stat. 684.

§56502. Adjusting obligations and arranging maintenance

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—On written application, the Secretary of Transportation may adjust obligations and arrange for maintenance of an essential vessel as provided in this chapter if the Secretary determines, after any investigation or proceeding the Secretary considers desirable, that—

(1) the operation of the vessel in the service, route, or line to which it is assigned under this subtitle, or in which it otherwise would be operated, is not—

(A) lawful under the Neutrality Act of 1939 (22 U.S.C. 441 et seq.) or a proclamation issued under that Act; or

(B) compatible with maintaining the availability of the vessel for national defense and commerce;

(2) it is not feasible under existing law to employ the vessel in any other service or operation in foreign or domestic trade (except temporary or emergency operation under section 56503(b)(5) of this title); and

(3) the applicant, because of the restrictions of the Neutrality Act of 1939 (22 U.S.C. 441 et seq.) or the withdrawal of vessels for national defense under paragraph (1), is not earning or will not earn a reasonable return on the capital necessarily employed in its business.

(b) EFFECTIVE PERIOD.—Adjustments and arrangements under subsection (a) shall continue in effect only as long as the circumstances described in subsection (a) continue to exist.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1657.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
56502	46 App.:1242a(b), (e).	June 29, 1940, ch. 442, subdivs. (b), (e), 54 Stat. 684, 686; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(132), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165.

The text of 46 App. U.S.C. 1242a(b) (1st sentence) is omitted as surplus. The text of 46 App. U.S.C. 1242a(e) is omitted as obsolete.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Neutrality Act of 1939, referred to in subsec. (a)(1)(A), (3), is act Nov. 4, 1939, ch. 2, 54 Stat. 4, which is classified generally to subchapter II (§441 et seq.) of chapter 9 of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 441 of Title 22 and Tables.

§56503. Types of adjustments and arrangements

(a) SUSPENSION REQUIREMENTS.—An adjustment or arrangement under this chapter shall include suspension of—

(1) the requirement to operate the vessel in foreign trade under the applicable operating-differential or construction-differential subsidy contract or mortgage or other agreement; and

(2) the right to operating-differential subsidy for the vessel.

(b) DISCRETIONARY ADJUSTMENTS AND ARRANGEMENTS.—To the extent the Secretary of Transportation considers appropriate to carry out the purposes of this subtitle, an adjustment or arrangement under this chapter may include any of the following:

(1) Lay-up of the vessel by the owner or in the custody of the Secretary, with payment or reimbursement by the Secretary of necessary and proper expenses (including reasonable overhead and insurance) or a fixed periodic allowance instead of payment or reimbursement.

(2) Postponement, for not more than the total period of the lay-up, of the maturity date of each installment of the principal of obligations to the United States Government for the vessel (regardless of whether the maturity date is during a lay-up period), or rearrangement of those maturities.

(3) Postponement or cancellation of interest accruing on the obligations during a lay-up period.

(4) Extension, for not more than the total period of the lay-up, of the 20-year life limitation for the vessel and other limitations and provisions of this subtitle based on a 20-year life.

(5) Provision for temporary or emergency employment of the vessel (instead of lay-up) as may be practicable, with such arrangements for management of the vessel, payment of expenses, and application of the proceeds of the employment, as the Secretary may approve, with any period of operation being included as part of the lay-up period.

(6) Payment to the Secretary, on termination of the arrangements with the applicant, of the applicant's net profits (earned while the arrangements were in effect) in excess of 10 percent a year on the capital necessarily employed in the applicant's business, as reimbursement for obligations postponed or canceled and expenses incurred or paid by the Secretary under this section.

(c) LAID-UP VESSELS.—Under subsection (b)(6), capital of the applicant represented by a vessel of the applicant laid-up or operated under this section shall be included in capital necessarily employed in the applicant's business. The Secretary may require a vessel laid-up or operated under this section to be security for reimbursement.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1657.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
56503	46 App.:1242a(c).	June 29, 1940, ch. 442, subdiv. (c), 54 Stat. 685; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(132), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165.

§56504. Changes in adjustments and arrangements

The Secretary of Transportation may change an adjustment or arrangement made under this chapter as the Secretary considers necessary to carry out this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1658.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*

56504	46 App.:1242a(d).	June 29, 1940, ch. 442, subdiv. (d), 54 Stat. 686; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(132), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 165.

PART F—GOVERNMENT-OWNED MERCHANT VESSELS

CHAPTER 571—GENERAL AUTHORITY

Sec.
57100. National Defense Reserve Fleet.
57101. Placement of vessels in National Defense Reserve Fleet.
57102. Disposition of vessels.
57103. Donation of vessels in the National Defense Reserve Fleet.
57104. Acquisition of vessels from sale of obsolete vessels.
57105. Acquisition of vessels for essential services, routes, or lines.
57106. Maintenance, improvement, and operation of vessels.
57107. Vessels for other agencies.
57108. Consideration of ballast and equipment in determining selling price.
57109. Operation of vessels purchased, chartered, or leased from Secretary of Transportation.
57110. Salvage recoveries for subrogated ownership of vessels and cargoes.
57111. Definition of obsolete vessel.
57112. Requirements for purchasing federally auctioned vessels.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2024—Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3532(b), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2313, added item 57112.

2023—Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(j)(6), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 812, added items 57102, 57103, and 57111, struck out former items 57102 "Disposition of vessels not worth preserving" and 57103 "Donation of nonretention vessels in the National Defense Reserve Fleet", and renumbered former item 57111 as 57110.

2019—Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3509(b), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1977, added item 57111.

2017—Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(b)(9), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1911, added item 57100.

2012—Pub. L. 112–213, title IV, §408(b), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1571, substituted "Donation of nonretention vessels in the National Defense Reserve Fleet" for "Sale of obsolete vessels in National Defense Reserve Fleet" in item 57103.

§57100. National Defense Reserve Fleet

(a) FLEET COMPONENTS.—The Secretary of Transportation shall maintain a National Defense Reserve Fleet, including any vessel assigned by the Secretary to the Ready Reserve Force component of the fleet, consisting of those vessels owned or acquired by the United States Government that the Secretary of Transportation, after consultation with the Secretary of the Navy, determines are of value for national defense purposes and that the Secretary of Transportation decides to place and maintain in the fleet. Vessels in the National Defense Reserve Fleet, including vessels loaned to State maritime academies, shall be considered public vessels of the United States.

(b) PERMITTED USES.—Except as otherwise provided by law, a vessel in the fleet may be used—

(1) for an account of an agency of the United States Government in a period during which vessels may be requisitioned under chapter 563; or

(2) on the request of the Secretary of Defense, and in accordance with memoranda of agreement between the Secretary of Transportation and the Secretary of Defense, for—

(A) testing for readiness and suitability for mission performance;

(B) defense sealift functions for which other sealift assets are not reasonably available; and

(C) support of the deployment of the United States armed forces in a military contingency, for military contingency operations, or for civil contingency operations upon orders from the National Command Authority;

(3) for otherwise lawfully permitted storage or transportation of non-defense-related cargo as directed by the Secretary of Transportation with the concurrence of the Secretary of Defense;

(4) for training purposes to the extent authorized by the Secretary of Transportation with the concurrence of the Secretary of Defense;

(5) on a reimbursable basis, for charter to the government of any State, locality, or Territory of the United States, except that the prior consent of the Secretary of Defense for such use shall be required with respect to any vessel in the Ready Reserve Force or in the National Defense Reserve Fleet which is maintained in a retention status for the Department of Defense; or

(6) for civil contingency operations and Maritime Administration promotional and media events, in accordance with subsection (f).

(c) READY RESERVE FORCE MANAGEMENT.—

(1) MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS.—To ensure the readiness of vessels in the Ready Reserve Force component of the National Defense Reserve Fleet, the Secretary of Transportation shall, at a minimum—

(A) maintain all of the vessels in a manner that will enable each vessel to be activated within a period specified in plans for mobilization of the vessels;

(B) activate and conduct sea trials on each vessel at a frequency that is considered by the Secretary to be necessary;

(C) maintain and adequately crew, as necessary, in an enhanced readiness status those vessels that are scheduled to be activated in 5 or less days;

(D) locate those vessels that are scheduled to be activated near embarkation ports specified for those vessels; and

(E) notwithstanding section 2109 of title 46, United States Code, have each vessel inspected by the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating to determine if the vessel meets the safety standards that would apply under part B of subtitle II of that title if the vessel were not a public vessel.

(2) VESSEL MANAGERS.—

(A) ELIGIBILITY FOR CONTRACT.—A person, including a shipyard, is eligible for a contract for the management of a vessel in the Ready Reserve Force if the Secretary determines, at a minimum, that the person has—

(i) experience in the operation of commercial-type vessels or public vessels owned by the United States Government; and

(ii) the management capability necessary to operate, maintain, and activate the vessel at a reasonable price.

(B) CONTRACT REQUIREMENT.—The Secretary of Transportation shall include in each contract for the management of a vessel in the Ready Reserve Force a requirement that each seaman who performs services on any vessel covered by the contract hold the license or merchant mariner's document that would be required under chapter 71 or chapter 73 of title 46, United States Code, for a seaman performing that service while operating the vessel if the vessel were not a public vessel.

(d) APPLICABILITY OF LIMITATIONS ON OVERHAUL, REPAIR, AND MAINTENANCE IN FOREIGN SHIPYARDS.—

(1) APPLICATION OF LIMITATION.—The provisions of section 8680 of title 10 shall apply to vessels specified in subsection (b), and to the Secretary of Transportation with respect to those

vessels, in the same manner as those provisions apply to vessels specified in subsection (b) of such section, and to the Secretary of the Navy, respectively.

(2) COVERED VESSELS.—Vessels specified in this paragraph are vessels maintained by the Secretary of Transportation in support of the Department of Defense, including any vessel assigned by the Secretary of Transportation to the Ready Reserve Force that is owned by the United States.

(e) EXEMPTION FROM TANK VESSEL CONSTRUCTION STANDARDS.—Vessels in the National Defense Reserve Fleet are exempt from the provisions of section 3703a.

(f) USE OF NDRF VESSELS FOR CIVIL CONTINGENCY OPERATIONS AND PROMOTIONAL AND MEDIA EVENTS.—With the concurrence of the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Transportation may allow the use of vessels in the National Defense Reserve Fleet (NDRF) for civil contingency operations requested by another Federal agency, and for Maritime Administration promotional and media events relating to demonstration projects and research and development supporting the Administration's mission, if the Secretary of Transportation determines such use is in the best interest of the Government after considering the following factors:

(1) AVAILABILITY.—The availability of NDRF or Ready Reserve Force (RRF) resources and the impact of such use on NDRF and RRF mission support to the defense and homeland security requirements of the Government.

(2) INTERFERENCE.—Whether the use of such of [1] vessels will support the mission of the Maritime Administration and not significantly interfere with NDRF vessel maintenance, repair, safety, readiness, and resource availability.

(3) SAFETY.—Whether safety precautions will be taken, including indemnification of liability when applicable.

(4) COST.—Whether any costs incurred by such use will be funded as a reimbursable transaction between Federal agencies, as applicable.

(5) OTHER MATTERS.—Any other matters the Maritime Administrator considers appropriate.

(g) VESSEL STATUS.—A vessel in the National Defense Reserve Fleet determined by the Maritime Administration to be an obsolete vessel shall remain a vessel within the meaning of that term in section 3 of title 1, United States Code, and subject to the rights and responsibilities of a vessel under admiralty law at least until such time as the vessel is delivered to a dismantling facility or is disposed of otherwise from the National Defense Reserve Fleet.

(Added and amended Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(a)(3), (b)(6), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1910; Pub. L. 115–232, div. A, title VIII, §809(q), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 1844; Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(j)(2), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 811; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3535(c), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2314.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Section, as added and amended by Pub. L. 115–91, is based on act Mar. 8, 1946, ch. 82, §11, 60 Stat. 49; June 28, 1947, ch. 161, §1, 61 Stat. 190; Feb. 27, 1948, ch. 78, §1(a), 62 Stat. 38; Feb. 28, 1949, ch. 12, 63 Stat. 9; June 29, 1949, ch. 281, §1, 63 Stat. 349; June 30, 1950, ch. 427, §2, 64 Stat. 308; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(157), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 167; Pub. L. 101–115, §6, Oct. 13, 1989, 103 Stat. 693; Pub. L. 101–225, title III, §307(12), Dec. 12, 1989, 103 Stat. 1925; Pub. L. 102–241, §57, Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2234; Pub. L. 102–587, title VI, §6205(a), Nov. 4, 1992, 106 Stat. 5094; Pub. L. 104–106, div. A, title X, §1014(b), Feb. 10, 1996, 110 Stat. 424; Pub. L. 104–239, §9, Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3133; Pub. L. 109–364, div. C, title XXXV, §3503, Oct. 17, 2006, 120 Stat. 2516; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §§3513, 3516, Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 594, 595; Pub. L. 112–81, div. C, title XXXV, §3502, Dec. 31, 2011, 125 Stat. 1716; Pub. L. 112–213, title IV, §410, Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1572; Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3504, Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2776, which was formerly classified to section 4405 of Title 50, War and National Defense, before being transferred to this chapter and renumbered as this section.

AMENDMENTS

2024—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 118–159, §3535(c)(1), substituted "chapter 563" for "section 902 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 (46 App. U.S.C. 1242)".

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 118–159, §3535(c)(2), substituted "the use of such" for "the such use".

2023—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 118–31 substituted "an obsolete vessel" for "of insufficient value to remain in the National Defense Reserve Fleet".

2018—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 115–232 substituted "section 8680 of title 10" for "section 7310 of title 10, United States Code,".

2017—Pub. L. 115–91, §3502(b)(6)(A), inserted section enumerator and catchline.

Pub. L. 115–91, §3502(a)(3), transferred section 11 of act Mar. 8, 1946, to this chapter and renumbered it as this section. See Codification note above.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 115–91, §3502(b)(6)(A), inserted heading.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 115–91, §3502(b)(6)(B), inserted heading.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 115–91, §3502(b)(6)(C), inserted heading and struck out "of title 46, United States Code" after "section 3703a" in text.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2018 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 115–232 effective Feb. 1, 2019, with provision for the coordination of amendments and special rule for certain redesignations, see section 800 of Pub. L. 115–232, set out as a note preceding section 3001 of Title 10, Armed Forces.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION OF MISSILE INSTRUMENTATION RANGE SAFETY VESSELS

Pub. L. 119–60, div. A, title XVI, §1656, Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1196, provided that:

"(a) VESSEL CONSTRUCTION.—

"(1) COMPLETION OF DESIGN.—Subject to the availability of appropriations, the Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Director of the Missile Defense Agency, shall complete the design of missile instrumentation range safety vessels for the National Defense Reserve Fleet to allow for the construction of such vessels to begin in fiscal year 2027.

"(2) AGREEMENT WITH VESSEL CONSTRUCTION MANAGER.—Notwithstanding section 8679 of title 10, United States Code, and subject to the availability of appropriations, the Secretary of the Transportation, in consultation with the Director of the Missile Defense Agency, shall seek to enter into an agreement with an appropriate vessel construction manager under which the vessel construction manager shall enter into a contract for the construction of not more than two such vessels in accordance with this section.

"(3) DESIGN STANDARDS AND CONSTRUCTION PRACTICES.—Subject to paragraph (2), a vessel constructed pursuant to this section shall be constructed using commercial design standards and commercial construction practices that are consistent with the best interests of the Federal Government.

"(b) CONSULTATION WITH OTHER FEDERAL ENTITIES.—The Secretary of Transportation shall consult and coordinate with the Director of the Missile Defense Agency and may consult with the heads of other appropriate Federal agencies regarding the vessel referred to in subsection (a) and activities associated with such vessel.

"(c) PROHIBITION ON USE OF FUNDS FOR USED VESSELS.—None of the funds authorized to be appropriated by this Act [see Tables for classification] or otherwise made available to carry out this section may be used for the procurement of any used vessel.

"(d) MISSILE DEFENSE AGENCY TRANSFER AUTHORITY.—The Director of the Missile Defense Agency may transfer amounts authorized to be appropriated for the Missile Defense Agency to the Secretary of Transportation, to be used for the purposes authorized by this section. Any amount transferred pursuant to this subsection shall retain its original period of availability."

CONSIDERATION OF LIFE-CYCLE COST ESTIMATES FOR ACQUISITION AND PROCUREMENT OF VESSELS

Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3535, Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 835, provided that: "In carrying out the acquisition and procurement of vessels in the National Defense Reserve Fleet, the Secretary of Transportation, acting through the Administrator of the Maritime Administration, shall consider the life-cycle cost estimates of vessels during the design and evaluation processes to the maximum extent practicable."

RECAPITALIZATION OF NATIONAL DEFENSE RESERVE FLEET

Pub. L. 117–263, div. C, title XXXV, §3546, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3100, as amended by Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3532, Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 827; Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3533, Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2313, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—

"(1) VESSEL CONSTRUCTION.—Subject to the availability of appropriations, the Secretary of Transportation, in consultation with the Chief of Naval Operations and the Commandant of the Coast Guard, shall complete the design of a sealift vessel for the National Defense Reserve Fleet to allow for the construction of such vessel to begin in fiscal year 2025.

"(2) AGREEMENT WITH VESSEL CONSTRUCTION MANAGER.—Notwithstanding section 8679 of title 10, United States Code, and subject to the availability of appropriations made specifically available for reimbursements to the Ready Reserve Force, Maritime Administration account of the Department of Transportation for programs, projects, activities, and expenses related to the National Defense Reserve Fleet, the Secretary of the Transportation, in consultation with the Secretary of the Navy, shall seek to enter into an agreement with an appropriate vessel construction manager under which the vessel construction manager shall enter into a contract for the construction of not more than ten such vessels in accordance with this section.

"(b) CONSTRUCTION AND DOCUMENTATION REQUIREMENTS.—A vessel constructed pursuant to this section shall meet the requirements for, and be issued a certificate of, documentation and a coastwise endorsement under chapter 121 of title 46, United States Code.

"(c) DESIGN STANDARDS AND CONSTRUCTION PRACTICES.—Subject to subsection (b), a vessel constructed pursuant to this section shall be constructed using commercial design standards and commercial construction practices that are consistent with the best interests of the Federal Government.

"(d) CONSULTATION WITH OTHER FEDERAL ENTITIES.—The Secretary of Transportation shall consult and coordinate with the Secretary of the Navy and may consult with the heads of other appropriate Federal agencies regarding the vessel described in subsection (a) and activities associated with such vessel.

"(e) LIMITATION ON USE OF FUNDS FOR USED VESSELS.—None of the funds authorized to be appropriated by this Act or otherwise made available to carry out this section may be used for the procurement of any used vessel.

"(f) LIMITATION.—Of the amounts authorized to be appropriated by this Act [see Tables for classification] or otherwise made available for fiscal year 2024 for the Secretary of the Navy for travel expenses, not more than 50 percent may be obligated or expended until the Secretary of the Navy submits to the congressional defense committees [Committee on Armed Services and Committee on Appropriations of the Senate and House of Representatives] a report that includes a detailed description of the acquisition strategy for the execution of the authority under subsection (a)."

VESSEL REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE PILOT PROGRAM

Pub. L. 104–239, §16, Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3138, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall conduct a pilot program to evaluate the feasibility of using renewable contracts for the maintenance and repair of outported vessels in the Ready Reserve Force to enhance the readiness of those vessels. Under the pilot program, the Secretary, subject to the availability of appropriations and within 6 months after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 8, 1996], shall award 9 contracts for this purpose.

"(b) USE OF VARIOUS CONTRACTING ARRANGEMENTS.—In conducting a pilot program under this section, the Secretary of Transportation shall use contracting arrangements similar to those used by the Department of Defense for procuring maintenance and repair of its vessels.

"(c) CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS.—Each contract with a shipyard under this section shall—

"(1) subject to subsection (d), provide for the procurement from the shipyard of all repair and maintenance (including activation, deactivation, and drydocking) for 1 vessel in the Ready Reserve Force that is outported in the geographical vicinity of the shipyard;

"(2) be effective for 1 fiscal year; and

"(3) be renewable, subject to the availability of appropriations, for each subsequent fiscal year through fiscal year 1998.

"(d) LIMITATION OF WORK UNDER CONTRACTS.—A contract under this section may not provide for the procurement of operation or manning for a vessel that may be procured under another contract for the vessel to which section 11(d)(2) of the Merchant Ship Sales Act of 1946 (50 U.S.C. App. 1774(d)(2)) [probably means "(50 U.S.C. App. 1744(d)(2))", now 46 U.S.C. 57100(c)(2)] applies.

"(e) GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION.—The Secretary shall seek to distribute contract awards under this section to shipyards located throughout the United States.

"(f) REPORTS.—The Secretary shall submit to the Congress—

"(1) an interim report on the effectiveness of each contract under this section in providing for economic and efficient repair and maintenance of the vessel included in the contract, no later than 20 months after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 8, 1996]; and

"(2) a final report on that effectiveness no later than 6 months after the termination of all contracts awarded pursuant to this section."

[1] *So in original.*

§57101. Placement of vessels in National Defense Reserve Fleet

(a) IN GENERAL.—Any vessel acquired by the Maritime Administration of 1,500 gross tons or more or such other vessels as the Secretary of Transportation determines are appropriate shall be placed in the National Defense Reserve Fleet.

(b) REMOVAL FROM FLEET.—A vessel placed in the Fleet under subsection (a) may not be traded out or sold from the Fleet, except as provided in section 57102, 57103, or 57104 or chapter 533, 537, 573, or 575 of this title, or section 308704 of title 54.

(c) AUTHORITY OF FEDERAL ENTITIES TO TRANSFER VESSELS.—All Federal entities are authorized to transfer vessels to the National Defense Reserve Fleet without reimbursement subject to the approval of the Secretary of Transportation and the Secretary of the Navy with respect to Ready Reserve Force vessels and the Secretary of Transportation with respect to all other vessels.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1658; Pub. L. 112–213, title IV, §§406, 407, Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1571; Pub. L. 115–91, div. C, title XXXV, §3502(b)(7), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1911; Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(j)(3), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 811.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57101	46 App.:1160(j).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §510(j), as added Pub. L. 89–254, §2, Oct. 10, 1965, 79 Stat. 980; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(91), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.

In subsection (a), the words "vessel acquired by the Maritime Administration" are substituted for "vessel heretofore or hereafter acquired under this section, or otherwise acquired by the Maritime Administration of the Department of Transportation under any other authority" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (b), the words "except as provided in section 57102, 57103, or 57104 or chapter 533, 537, 573, or 575 of this title" are substituted for "except as provided for in subsections (g) and (i) of this section. This limitation shall not affect the rights of the Secretary of Transportation to dispose of a vessel as provided in other sections of this subchapter or in subchapters VII or XI of this chapter" because of the restatement.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2023—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 118–31 inserted ", or section 308704 of title 54" before period at end.

2017—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 115–91, which directed striking out "maintained under section 11 of the Merchant Ship Sales Act of 1946 (50 App. 1744)", was executed by striking out "maintained under section 11 of the Merchant Ship Sales Act of 1946 (50 App. U.S.C. 1744)" before period at end, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

2012—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 112–213, §406, inserted "of 1,500 gross tons or more or such other vessels as the Secretary of Transportation determines are appropriate" after "Administration".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 112–213, §407, added subsec. (c).

§57102. Disposition of vessels

(a) IN GENERAL.—If the Secretary of Transportation determines that a vessel is an obsolete vessel, the Secretary may dispose of such vessel (by sale or by purchase of disposal services).

(b) SELLING PROCEDURE.—The sale of a vessel under subsection (a) shall be made on a best value basis. The purchaser does not have to be a citizen of the United States. The purchaser shall provide a surety bond, with a surety approved by the Secretary, to ensure that the vessel will not be operated in the foreign trade of the United States at any time within 10 years after the sale, in competition with a vessel owned by a citizen of the United States and documented under the laws of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1658; Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(j)(4), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 811.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57102	46 App.:1158(a).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §508(a), 49 Stat. 2000; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(89), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161; Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3512(1), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1789.

In subsection (a), the words "vessel owned by the Maritime Administration" are substituted for "vessel transferred to the Maritime Administration of the Department of Transportation by section 1112 of this Appendix, or hereafter acquired" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (b), the words "The sale of a vessel under section (a) shall be made on the basis of competitive sealed bids, after an appraisal and due advertisement. The purchaser does not have to be a citizen of the United States." are substituted for "after appraisement and due advertisement, and upon competitive sealed bids, either to citizens of the United States or to aliens" for clarity. The words "provide a surety bond, with a surety approved by the Secretary, to ensure that" are substituted for "enter into an undertaking with sureties approved by the Secretary of Transportation that" for clarity.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2023—Pub. L. 118–31, §3514(j)(4)(A), struck out "not worth preserving" after "Disposition of vessels" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 118–31, §3514(j)(4)(B), substituted "is an obsolete vessel, the Secretary may dispose of such vessel (by sale or by purchase of disposal services)." for "owned by the Maritime Administration is of insufficient value for commercial or military operation to warrant its further preservation, the Secretary may scrap the vessel or sell the vessel for cash."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 118–31, §3514(j)(4)(C), substituted "on a best value basis" for "on the basis of competitive sealed bids, after an appraisal and due advertisement".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

LIMITATION ON EXPORT OF VESSELS OWNED BY THE GOVERNMENT OF THE UNITED STATES FOR THE PURPOSE OF DISMANTLING, RECYCLING, OR SCRAPPING

Pub. L. 110–417, div. C, title XXXV, §3502, Oct. 14, 2008, 122 Stat. 4761, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsection (b), no vessel that is owned by the Government of the United States shall be approved for export to a foreign country for purposes of dismantling, recycling, or scrapping.

"(b) EXCEPTION.—Subsection (a) shall not apply with respect to a vessel if the Administrator of the Maritime Administration certifies to the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate that—

"(1) a compelling need for dismantling, recycling, or scrapping the vessel exists;

"(2) there is no available capacity in the United States to conduct the dismantling, recycling, or scrapping of the vessel;

"(3) any dismantling, recycling, or scrapping of the vessel in a foreign country will be conducted in full compliance with environmental, safety, labor, and health requirements for ship dismantling, recycling, or scrapping that are equivalent to the laws of the United States; and

"(4) the export of the vessel under this section will only be for dismantling, recycling, or scrapping of the vessel.

"(c) UNITED STATES DEFINED.—In this section the term 'United States' means the States of the United States, Puerto Rico, and Guam."

VESSEL DISPOSAL PROGRAM

Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3503, Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 592, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Within 30 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Jan. 28, 2008], the Secretary of Transportation shall convene a working group to review and make recommendations on best practices for the storage and disposal of obsolete vessels owned or operated by the Federal Government. The Secretary shall invite senior representatives from the Maritime Administration, the Coast Guard, the Environmental Protection Agency, the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, and the United States Navy to participate in the working group. The Secretary may request the participation of senior representatives of any other Federal department or agency, as appropriate, and may also request participation from concerned State environmental agencies.

"(b) SCOPE.—Among the vessels to be considered by the working group are Federally owned or operated vessels that are—

"(1) to be scrapped or recycled;

"(2) to be used as artificial reefs; or

"(3) to be used for the Navy's SINKEX program.

"(c) PURPOSE.—The working group shall—

"(1) examine current storage and disposal policies, procedures, and practices for obsolete vessels owned or operated by Federal agencies;

"(2) examine Federal and State laws and regulations governing such policies, procedures, and practices and any applicable environmental laws; and

"(3) within 90 days after the date of enactment of the [this] Act [Jan. 28, 2008], submit a plan to the Committee on Armed Services and the Committee on Commerce, Science and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Armed Services of the House of Representatives to improve and harmonize practices for storage and disposal of such vessels, including the interim transportation of such vessels.

"(d) CONTENTS OF PLAN.—The working group shall include in the plan submitted under subsection (c)(3)—

"(1) a description of existing measures for the storage, disposal, and interim transportation of obsolete vessels owned or operated by Federal agencies in compliance with Federal and State environmental laws in a manner that protects the environment;

"(2) a description of Federal and State laws and regulations governing the current policies, procedures, and practices for the storage, disposal, and interim transportation of such vessels;

"(3) recommendations for environmental best practices that meet or exceed, and harmonize, the requirements of Federal environmental laws and regulations applicable to the storage, disposal, and interim transportation of such vessels;

"(4) recommendations for environmental best practices that meet or exceed the requirements of State laws and regulations applicable to the storage, disposal, and interim transportation of such vessels;

"(5) procedures for the identification and remediation of any environmental impacts caused by the storage, disposal, and interim transportation of such vessels; and

"(6) recommendations for necessary steps, including regulations if appropriate, to ensure that best environmental practices apply to all such vessels.

"(e) IMPLEMENTATION OF PLAN.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—As soon as practicable after the date of enactment of the [this] Act [Jan. 28, 2008], the head of each Federal department or agency participating in the working group, in consultation with the other Federal departments and agencies participating in the working group, shall take such action as may be necessary, including the promulgation of regulations, under existing authorities to ensure that the implementation of the plan provides for compliance with all Federal and State laws and for the protection of the environment in the storage, interim transportation, and disposal of obsolete vessels owned or operated by Federal agencies.

"(2) ARMED SERVICES VESSELS.—The Secretary and the Secretary of Defense, in consultation with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, shall each ensure that environmental best practices are observed with respect to the storage, disposal, and interim transportation of obsolete vessels owned or operated by the Department of Defense.

"(f) RULE OF CONSTRUCTION.—Nothing in this section shall be construed to supersede, limit, modify, or otherwise affect any other provision of law, including environmental law."

§57103. Donation of vessels in the National Defense Reserve Fleet

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation may convey the right, title, and interest of the United States Government in any vessel of the National Defense Reserve Fleet that has been identified by the Secretary as an obsolete vessel, if the recipient—

(1) is a non-profit organization, a State, or a municipal corporation or political subdivision of a State;

(2) agrees not to use, or allow others to use, the vessel for commercial transportation purposes;

(3) agrees to make the vessel available to the Government whenever the Secretary indicates that it is needed by the Government;

(4) agrees to hold the Government harmless for any claims arising from exposure to asbestos, polychlorinated biphenyls, lead paint, or other hazardous substances after conveyance of the vessel, except for claims arising from use of the vessel by the Government;

(5) has a conveyance plan and a business plan that describes the intended use of the vessel, each of which has been submitted to and approved by the Secretary;

(6) has provided proof, as determined by the Secretary, of resources sufficient to accomplish the transfer, necessary repairs and modifications, and initiation of the intended use of the vessel; and

(7) agrees that when the recipient no longer requires the vessel for use as described in the business plan required under paragraph (5)—

(A) the recipient will, at the discretion of the Secretary, reconvey the vessel to the Government in good condition except for ordinary wear and tear; or

(B) if the Board of Trustees of the recipient has decided to dissolve the recipient according to the laws of the State in which the recipient is incorporated, then—

(i) the recipient shall distribute the vessel, as an asset of the recipient, to a person that has been determined exempt from taxation under section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 501(c)(3)), or to the Federal Government or a State or local government for a public purpose; and

(ii) the vessel shall be disposed of by a court of competent jurisdiction of the county in which the principal office of the recipient is located, for such purposes as the court shall determine, or to such organizations as the court shall determine are organized exclusively for public purposes.

(b) OTHER EQUIPMENT.—At the Secretary's discretion, additional equipment from other obsolete vessels of the Fleet may be conveyed to assist the recipient with maintenance, repairs, or modifications.

(c) ADDITIONAL TERMS.—The Secretary may require any additional terms the Secretary considers appropriate.

(d) DELIVERY OF VESSEL.—If conveyance is made under this section, the vessel shall be delivered to the recipient at a time and place to be determined by the Secretary. The vessel shall be conveyed in an "as is" condition.

(e) LIMITATIONS.—If at any time prior to delivery of the vessel to the recipient, the Secretary determines that a different disposition of the vessel would better serve the interests of the Government, the Secretary shall pursue the more favorable disposition of the obsolete vessel and shall not be liable for any damages that may result from an intended recipient's reliance upon a proposed transfer.

(f) REVERSION.—The Secretary shall include in any conveyance under this section terms under which all right, title, and interest conveyed by the Secretary shall revert to the Government if the Secretary determines the vessel has been used other than as described in the business plan required under subsection (a)(5).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1659; Pub. L. 112–213, title IV, §408(a), Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1571; Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(j)(5), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 812.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57103	46 App.:1158(b).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §508(b), as added Pub. L. 108–136, title XXXV, §3512(2), Nov. 24, 2003, 117 Stat. 1789.

In subsection (a), before paragraph (1), the words "Notwithstanding section 1160(j) of this title" are omitted as unnecessary because section 46 App. U.S.C. 1160(j) is restated in section 57101 of the revised title and that section contains an exception which includes this section. In paragraph (1), the words "Commonwealth, or possession of the United States" and "or the District of Columbia" are omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "State" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2023—Pub. L. 118–31, §3514(j)(5)(A), struck out "nonretention" before "vessels" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 118–31, §3514(j)(5)(B), struck out "of insufficient value to warrant its further preservation" after "obsolete vessel".

2012—Pub. L. 112–213 substituted "Donation of nonretention vessels in the National Defense Reserve Fleet" for "Sale of obsolete vessels in National Defense Reserve Fleet" in section catchline.

§57104. Acquisition of vessels from sale of obsolete vessels

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation may acquire suitable documented vessels with amounts in the Vessel Operations Revolving Fund derived from the sale of obsolete vessels in the National Defense Reserve Fleet.

(b) VALUATION.—The acquired and obsolete vessels shall be valued at their scrap value in domestic or foreign markets as of the date of the acquisition for or sale from the Fleet. However, the value assigned to those vessels shall be determined on the same basis, with consideration given to the fair value of the cost of moving the vessel sold from the Fleet to the place of scrapping.

(c) COSTS INCIDENT TO LAY-UP.—Costs incident to the lay-up of the vessel acquired under this section may be paid from amounts in the Fund.

(d) TRANSFERS TO NON-CITIZENS.—A vessel sold from the Fleet under this section may be

scrapped in an approved foreign market without obtaining additional separate approval from the Secretary to transfer the vessel to a person not a citizen of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1660.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57104	46 App.:1160(i).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §510(i), as added Pub. L. 86–575, July 5, 1960, 74 Stat. 312; Pub. L. 89–254, §1, Oct. 10, 1965, 79 Stat. 980; Pub. L. 91–469, §13, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1022; Pub. L. 93–605, §1, Jan. 2, 1975, 88 Stat. 1965; Pub. L. 95–177, Nov. 15, 1977, 91 Stat. 1368; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(91), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161; Pub. L. 101–595, title VII, §704, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2994.

In subsection (b), the words "vessel sold from the Fleet" are substituted for "traded-out vessel" for clarity and consistency.

In subsection (d), the words "without obtaining additional separate approval from the Secretary to transfer the vessel to a person not a citizen of the United States" are substituted for "Notwithstanding the provisions of sections 808 and 835 of this Appendix" for clarity and to avoid the cross references.

§57105. Acquisition of vessels for essential services, routes, or lines

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation may acquire a vessel, by purchase or otherwise, if—

(1) the Secretary considers the vessel necessary to establish, maintain, improve, or serve as a replacement on an essential service, route, or line in the foreign commerce of the United States, as determined under section 50103 of this title;

(2) the vessel was constructed in the United States; and

(3) the Secretary of the Navy has certified to the Secretary of Transportation that the vessel is suitable for economical and speedy conversion into a naval or military auxiliary or otherwise suitable for use by the United States Government in time of war or national emergency.

(b) PRICE.—The price paid for the vessel shall be based on a fair and reasonable valuation. However, the price may not exceed by more than 5 percent the cost of the vessel to the owner (excluding any construction-differential subsidy and the cost of national defense features paid by the Secretary of Transportation) plus the actual cost previously expended for reconditioning, less depreciation based on a 25-year life for a dry-cargo or passenger vessel and a 20-year life for a tanker or other liquid bulk carrier vessel.

(c) DOCUMENTATION.—A vessel acquired under this section that is not documented under the laws of the United States at the time of acquisition shall be so documented as soon as practicable.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1660.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57105	46 App.:1125.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §215, as

		added June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §4, 52 Stat. 954; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(73), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 160.
	46 App.:1125 note.	Pub. L. 86–518, §9, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 217.

In subsection (a), the words "and to pay for the same out of his construction fund" are omitted as obsolete because the construction fund established under 46 App. U.S.C. 1116 was impliedly abolished by 46 App. U.S.C. 1119, as amended.

In subsection (b), the words "less depreciation based on a 25-year life for a dry-cargo or passenger vessel and a 20-year life for a tanker or other liquid bulk carrier vessel" are substituted for "less depreciation based upon a twenty-five year life expectancy of the vessel" because of section 9 of Public Law 86–518 (June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 217), which provided that "Nothing in any amendment made by this Act [including section 1 substituting 'twenty-five' for 'twenty' in 46 App. U.S.C. 1125] shall operate or be interpreted to change from twenty to twenty-five years the provisions of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, as amended, relating to the commercial expectancy or period of depreciation of any tanker or other liquid bulk carrier."

§57106. Maintenance, improvement, and operation of vessels

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation may maintain, repair, recondition, remodel, and improve vessels owned by the United States Government and in the possession or under the control of the Secretary, to equip them adequately for competition in the foreign trade of the United States. The Secretary may operate such a vessel or charter the vessel on terms and conditions the Secretary considers appropriate to carry out the purposes of this subtitle.

(b) DOCUMENTATION AND RESTRICTIONS ON OPERATION.—A vessel reconditioned, remodeled, or improved under subsection (a) shall be documented under the laws of the United States and remain so documented for at least 5 years after completion of the reconditioning, remodeling, or improvement. During that period, it shall be operated on voyages that are not exclusively coastwise.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1661.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57106	46 App.:871.	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §12, 41 Stat. 993; June 6, 1924, ch. 273, §2, 43 Stat. 468; Feb. 11, 1927, ch. 104, §1 (last par. under heading "United States Shipping Board"), 44 Stat. 1083; Exec. Order No. 6166, §12, eff. June 10, 1933; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(43), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 157.
	46 App.:891b.	May 22, 1928, ch. 675, title II, §202, 45 Stat. 690; Exec. Order No. 6166, §12, eff. June 10, 1933; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(51), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 157.

This section is substituted for the source provisions to eliminate obsolete and unnecessary provisions.

§57107. Vessels for other agencies

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation may construct, reconstruct, repair, equip, and outfit, by contract or otherwise, vessels or parts thereof, for any other department or agency of the United States Government to the extent the other department or agency is authorized by law to do so for its own account.

(b) EFFECT ON CONTRACT AUTHORIZATION.—An obligation incurred or expenditure made by the Secretary under this section does not affect any contract authorization of the Secretary, but instead shall be charged against the existing appropriation or contract authorization of the department or agency.

(c) SALVAGING CARGOES.—

(1) REIMBURSABLE AGREEMENTS.—The Secretary of Transportation, acting through the Administrator of the Maritime Administration, may enter into reimbursable agreements with other Federal entities to provide legal services to such entities relating to the salvaging of cargoes for which such entities have custody, or control, or for which for such entities have trustee responsibilities from vessels in the custody or control of the Maritime Administration or its predecessor agencies. The Secretary may receive and retain reimbursement from such entities for all costs incurred related to the provision of such services.

(2) AMOUNTS RECEIVED.—Amounts received as reimbursements under this subsection shall be credited to the fund or account that was used to cover the costs incurred by the Secretary or, if the period of availability of obligations for that appropriation has expired, to the appropriation of funds that is currently available to the Secretary for substantially the same purpose. Amounts so credited shall be merged with amounts in such fund or account and shall be available for the same purposes, and subject to the same conditions and limitations, as amounts in such fund or account.

(3) ADVANCE PAYMENTS.—Payments made in advance shall be for any part of the estimated cost as determined by the Secretary of Transportation. Adjustments to the amounts paid in advance shall be made as agreed to by the Secretary of Transportation and the head of the ordering agency or unit based on the actual cost of goods or services provided.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1661; Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3508, Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1976.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57107	46 App.:1125a.	Feb. 6, 1941, ch. 5, §4, 55 Stat. 6; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(74), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 160.

In subsection (b), the words "heretofore or hereafter", "diminish or otherwise", and "and, to the amount of such obligation or expenditure, diminish" are omitted as unnecessary.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2019—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 116–92 added subsec. (c).

§57108. Consideration of ballast and equipment in determining selling price

The Maritime Administration may not sell a vessel until its ballast and equipment have been

inventoried and their value considered in determining the selling price of the vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1661.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57108	46 App.:864b.	June 29, 1949, ch. 281, §1 (proviso), 63 Stat. 349; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(36), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 156.

§57109. Operation of vessels purchased, chartered, or leased from Secretary of Transportation

Unless otherwise authorized by the Secretary of Transportation, a vessel purchased, chartered, or leased from the Secretary may be operated only under a certificate of documentation with a registry or coastwise endorsement. Such a vessel, while employed solely as a merchant vessel, is subject to the laws, regulations, and liabilities governing merchant vessels, whether the United States Government has an interest in the vessel as an owner or holds a mortgage, lien, or other interest.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1661.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57109	46 App.:808(b).	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §9(b), 39 Stat. 730; July 15, 1918, ch. 152, §3, 40 Stat. 900; restated June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §18, 41 Stat. 994; Ex. Ord. No. 6166, §12, eff. June 10, 1933; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §204, title IX, §904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(26), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 155; Pub. L. 100–710, title I, §104(b)(2), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4750.

The words "only under a certificate of documentation with a registry or coastwise endorsement" are substituted for "only under such registry or enrollment and license" for clarity and to use the appropriate current language.

§57110. Salvage recoveries for subrogated ownership of vessels and cargoes

(a) SALVAGE AGREEMENTS.—The Secretary of Transportation is authorized to enter into marine salvage agreements for the recoveries, sale, and disposal of sunken or damaged vessels, cargoes, or properties owned or insured by or on behalf of the Maritime Administration, the United States Shipping Board, the U.S. Shipping Bureau, the United States Maritime Commission, or the War Shipping Administration.

(b) MILITARY CRAFT.—The Secretary of Transportation shall consult with the Secretary of the military department concerned prior to engaging in or authorizing any activity under subsection (a) that will disturb sunken military craft, as such term is defined in section 1408(3) of the Ronald W. Reagan National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2005 (Public Law 108–375; 10 U.S.C. 113 note).

(c) RECOVERIES.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the net proceeds from salvage agreements entered into as authorized in subsection (a) shall remain available until expended and be distributed as follows:

(1) Fifty percent shall be available to the Administrator of the Maritime Administration for the payment or reimbursement of expenses incurred by or on behalf of State maritime academies or the United States Merchant Marine Academy for facility and training ship maintenance, repair, and modernization, and for the purchase of simulators and fuel.

(2) The remainder shall be distributed for maritime heritage preservation to the Department of the Interior for grants as authorized by section 308703 of title 54.

(Added Pub. L. 116–92, div. C, title XXXV, §3509(a), Dec. 20, 2019, 133 Stat. 1977, §57111; renumbered §57110, Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(j)(1)(A), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 811.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2023—Pub. L. 118–31 renumbered section 57111 of this title as this section.

§57111. Definition of obsolete vessel

In this chapter, the term "obsolete vessel" means a vessel that—

(1) is or will be in the custody and control of the Maritime Administration for purposes of disposing of the vessel; and

(2) has been determined by the Secretary of Transportation to be of insufficient value, with respect to the programs of the Maritime Administration, to warrant—

(A) preserving for future use or spare parts harvesting; or

(B) retaining in the National Defense Reserve Fleet.

(Added Pub. L. 118–31, div. C, title XXXV, §3514(j)(1)(B), Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 811.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 57111 was renumbered section 57110 of this title.

§57112. Requirements for purchasing federally auctioned vessels

(a) IN GENERAL.—To be eligible to purchase a covered vessel from the Federal Government, a person shall provide proof of—

(1) liability insurance for the operator of such covered vessel;

(2) financial resources sufficient to cover maintenance costs of such covered vessel; and

(3) with respect to a covered vessel requiring documentation under chapter 121, an admiralty bond or stipulation.

(b) COVERED VESSEL DEFINED.—In this section, the term "covered vessel" means—

(1) a government owned vessel disposed of in accordance with this part and section 548 of title 40;

(2) a vessel seized or forfeited pursuant to any law, and auctioned by the Federal Government, including a vessel seized or forfeited pursuant to section 7301 or 7302 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986; or

(3) a fishing vessel seized or forfeited pursuant to section 310 of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1860).

(Added Pub. L. 118–159, div. C, title XXXV, §3532(a), Dec. 23, 2024, 138 Stat. 2312.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 7301 and 7302 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), are classified to sections 7301 and 7302, respectively, of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

CHAPTER 573—VESSEL TRADE-IN PROGRAM

Sec.
57301. Definitions.
57302. Authority to acquire vessels.
57303. Utility value and tonnage requirements.
57304. Eligible acquisition dates.
57305. Determination of trade-in allowance.
57306. Payment of trade-in allowance.
57307. Recognition of gain for tax purposes.
57308. Use of vessels at least 25 years old.

§57301. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) NEW VESSEL.—The term "new vessel" means a vessel—

(A) constructed under this subtitle and acquired within 2 years after the date of completion; or

(B) constructed in a domestic shipyard on private account and not under this subtitle, and documented under the laws of the United States.

(2) OBSOLETE VESSEL.—The term "obsolete vessel" means a vessel that—

(A) is of at least 1,350 gross tons;

(B) the Secretary of Transportation believes should, because of its age, obsolescence, or other reasons, be replaced in the public interest; and

(C) has been owned by a citizen of the United States for at least 3 years immediately before its acquisition under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1662.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57301	46 App.:1160(a).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §510(a), as added Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §7, 53 Stat. 1183; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §7, 66 Stat. 762; Pub. L. 85–332, Feb. 20, 1958, 72 Stat. 17; Pub. L. 87–755, Oct. 5, 1962, 76 Stat. 751; Pub. L. 91–469, §12(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1022; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(91), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.

In paragraph (1)(A), the words "or is purchased under section 1204 of this Appendix, as amended, by the person turning in an obsolete vessel under this section" are omitted because the purchase authority under 46

App. U.S.C. 1204 was impliedly repealed by section 14 of the Merchant Ship Sales Act of 1946 (50 App. U.S.C. 1735 note).

§57302. Authority to acquire vessels

To promote the construction of new, safe, and efficient vessels to carry the domestic and foreign waterborne commerce of the United States, the Secretary of Transportation may acquire an obsolete vessel in exchange for an allowance of credit toward the cost of construction or purchase of a new vessel as provided in this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1662.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57302	46 App.:1160(b) (1st, last sentences).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §510(b) (1st, last sentences), as added Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §7, 53 Stat. 1184; Pub. L. 87–401, subdiv. (1), Oct. 5, 1961, 75 Stat. 833; Pub. L. 91–469, §35(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(91), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.

The words "toward the cost of construction or purchase of a new vessel" are added for clarity. The text of 46 App. U.S.C. 1160(b) (last sentence) is omitted as obsolete.

§57303. Utility value and tonnage requirements

(a) UTILITY VALUE.—The utility value of a new vessel to be acquired under this chapter for operation in the domestic or foreign commerce of the United States may not be substantially less than that of the obsolete vessel acquired in exchange under this chapter.

(b) TONNAGE.—If the Secretary of Transportation finds that the new vessel will have a utility value at least equal to that of the obsolete vessel, the new vessel may be of lesser gross tonnage than the obsolete vessel. However, the gross tonnage of the new vessel must be at least one-third the gross tonnage of the obsolete vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1662.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57303	46 App.:1160(c).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §510(c), as added Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §7, 53 Stat. 1184; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(91), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.

§57304. Eligible acquisition dates

At the option of the owner, the acquisition of an obsolete vessel under this chapter shall occur—

(1) when the owner contracts for the construction or purchase of a new vessel; or

(2) within 5 days of the actual date of delivery of the new vessel to the owner.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1662.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57304	46 App.:1160(b) (2d sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §510(b) (2d sentence), as added Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §7, 53 Stat. 1184; Pub. L. 87–401, subdiv. (1), Oct. 5, 1961, 75 Stat. 833; Pub. L. 91–469, §35(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(91), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.

The words "At the option of the owner" are substituted for "if the owner so requests" for clarity.

§57305. Determination of trade-in allowance

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall determine the trade-in allowance for an obsolete vessel at the time of acquisition of the vessel. The allowance shall be the fair value of the vessel. In determining the value, the Secretary shall consider—

(1) the scrap value of the obsolete vessel in American and foreign markets;

(2) the depreciated value based on a 20-year or 25-year life, whichever applies to the obsolete vessel; and

(3) the market value of the obsolete vessel for operation in world commerce or in the domestic or foreign commerce of the United States.

(b) USE OF OBSOLETE VESSELS.—If acquisition of the obsolete vessel occurs when the owner contracts for the construction of the new vessel, and the owner uses the obsolete vessel during the period of construction of the new vessel, the Secretary shall reduce the trade-in allowance by an amount representing the fair value of that use. The Secretary shall establish the rate for use of the obsolete vessel when the contract for construction of the new vessel is made.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1663.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57305(a)	46 App.:1160(b) (3d sentence), (d) (1st, 2d sentences).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §510(b) (3d sentence), (d), as added Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §7, 53 Stat. 1184; July 17, 1952, ch. 939, §8, 66 Stat. 762; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 87–401, Oct. 5, 1961, 75 Stat. 833; Pub. L. 91–469, §35(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1035; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(91), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.
57305(b)	46 App.:1160(d) (3d, last sentences).	

In subsection (a), the words "fair value" are substituted for "fair and reasonable value" to eliminate unnecessary words. In paragraph (3), the word "commerce" is substituted for "trade" for consistency in the

chapter.

In subsection (b), the words "for the entire period of such use" are omitted as unnecessary.

§57306. Payment of trade-in allowance

(a) ACQUISITION AT TIME OF CONTRACT.—If acquisition of an obsolete vessel under this chapter occurs when the owner contracts for the construction or purchase of the new vessel, the Secretary of Transportation shall apply the trade-in allowance to the purchase price of the new vessel rather than paying it to the owner. If the new vessel is constructed under this subtitle, the Secretary may apply the trade-in allowance to the required cash payments on terms and conditions the Secretary may prescribe. If the new vessel is not constructed under this subtitle, the Secretary shall pay the trade-in allowance to the builder of the vessel for the account of the owner when the Secretary acquires the obsolete vessel.

(b) ACQUISITION AT TIME OF DELIVERY.—If acquisition of the obsolete vessel occurs when the new vessel is delivered to the owner, the Secretary shall deposit the trade-in allowance in the owner's capital construction fund.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1663.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57306	46 App.:1160(b) (4th–7th sentences).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §510(b) (4th–7th sentences), as added Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §7, 53 Stat. 1184; Pub. L. 87–401, subdiv. (1), Oct. 5, 1961, 75 Stat. 833; Pub. L. 91–469, §§12(b), 35(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1022, 1035; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(91), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.

In subsection (b), the words "acquisition of the obsolete vessel occurs" are substituted for "title to the obsolete vessel is acquired" for consistency in the chapter.

§57307. Recognition of gain for tax purposes

The owner of an obsolete vessel does not recognize a gain under the Federal income tax laws when the vessel is transferred to the Secretary of Transportation in exchange for a trade-in allowance under this chapter. The basis of the new vessel acquired with the allowance is the same as the basis of the obsolete vessel—

(1) increased by the difference between the cost of the new vessel and the trade-in allowance of the obsolete vessel; and

(2) decreased by the amount of loss recognized on the transfer.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1663.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57307	46 App.:1160(e).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §510(e), as added Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §7, 53 Stat. 1184; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(91), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.

The words "for gain or loss upon a sale or exchange and for depreciation under the applicable Federal income-tax laws" and "or vessels exchanged for credit upon the acquisition of such new vessel" are omitted as unnecessary. In paragraph (1), the words "the difference between the cost of the new vessel and the trade-in allowance of the obsolete vessel" are substituted for "the amount of the cost of such vessel (other than the cost represented by such obsolete vessel or vessels)" for clarity.

§57308. Use of vessels at least 25 years old

An obsolete vessel acquired under this chapter that is or becomes at least 25 years old may not be used for commercial operation. However, the vessel may be used—

(1) during a period in which vessels may be requisitioned under chapter 563 of this title; or

(2) except as otherwise provided in this subtitle, on trade routes serving only the foreign trade of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1664.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57308	46 App.:1160(g).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title V, §510(g), as added Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §7, 53 Stat. 1185; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(91), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 161.

The words "and vessels presently in the Secretary's laid-up fleet which are or become twenty-five years old or more" and "or any such vessel in the laid-up fleet" are omitted as obsolete. In paragraph (2), the words "for the employment of the Secretary's vessels in steamship lines" are omitted as unnecessary.

CHAPTER 575—CONSTRUCTION, CHARTER, AND SALE OF VESSELS

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL

Sec.
57501. Completion of long-range program.
57502. Construction, reconditioning, and remodeling of vessels.
57503. Competitive bidding.
57504. Charter or sale of vessels acquired by Department of Transportation.
57505. Employment of vessels on foreign trade routes.
57506. Minimum selling price of vessels.

SUBCHAPTER II—CHARTERS

57511. Demise charters.
57512. Competitive bidding.
57513. Minimum bid.
57514. Qualifications of bidders.
57515. Awarding of charters.
57516. Operating-differential subsidies.
57517. Recovery of excess profits.
57518. Performance bond.
57519. Insurance.
57520. Vessel maintenance.
57521. Termination of charter during national emergency.

57522. Books and records, balance sheets, and inspection and auditing.

SUBCHAPTER III—MISCELLANEOUS

57531. Construction and charter of vessels for unsuccessful routes.
57532. Operation of experimental vessels.
57533. Vessel chartering authority.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(t), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2327, inserted period at end of item 57533.

2016—Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §313(c)(2), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 59, added item 57522.

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 594, added item 57533.

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL

§57501. Completion of long-range program

Whenever the Secretary of Transportation determines that the objectives and policies declared in sections 50101 and 50102 of this title cannot be fully realized within a reasonable time under title V of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, and the President approves the determination, the Secretary, in accordance with this chapter, shall complete the long-range program described in section 50102 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1664; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §313(b)(1), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 58.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57501	46 App.:1191.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §701, 49 Stat. 2008; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(103), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162.

The words "find and", "finding and", "in whole or in part", and "previously adopted" are omitted as unnecessary. The word "shall" is substituted for "is authorized and directed to" to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Merchant Marine Act, 1936, referred to in text, is act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, 49 Stat. 1985. Title V of the Act enacted provisions set out as a note under section 53101 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1936 Amendment note set out under section 101 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Pub. L. 114–120 substituted "title V" for "titles V and VI".

§57502. Construction, reconditioning, and remodeling of vessels

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation may have new vessels constructed, and have old vessels reconditioned or remodeled, as the Secretary determines necessary to carry out the objectives of this subtitle.

(b) PLACE OF WORK.—Construction, reconditioning, and remodeling of vessels under subsection (a) shall take place in shipyards in the continental United States (including Alaska and Hawaii). However, if satisfactory contracts cannot be obtained from private shipbuilders, the Secretary may have the work done in navy yards.

(c) APPLICABILITY OF CONSTRUCTION-DIFFERENTIAL SUBSIDY PROVISIONS .—Contracts for the construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of a vessel by a private shipbuilder under this chapter are subject to the provisions of title V of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, applicable to a contract with a private shipbuilder for the construction of a vessel under title V of that Act.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1664.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57502(a), (b)	46 App.:1192.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §702, 49 Stat. 2008; Pub. L. 85–191, Aug. 28, 1957, 71 Stat. 471; Pub. L. 86–624, §35(c), July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 421; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(104), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 162.
57502(c)	46 App.:1193(b).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §703(b), 49 Stat. 2008.

In subsection (b), the words "for such new construction or reconstruction, in accordance with the provisions of this chapter" are omitted as unnecessary.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Merchant Marine Act, 1936, referred to in subsec. (c), is act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, 49 Stat. 1985. Title V of the Act enacted provisions set out as notes under section 53101 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1936 Amendment note set out under section 101 of this title and Tables.

§57503. Competitive bidding

(a) ADVERTISEMENT AND BIDDING.—The Secretary of Transportation may make a contract with a private shipbuilder for the construction of a new vessel, or for the reconstruction or reconditioning of an existing vessel, only after due advertisement and upon sealed competitive bids.

(b) OPENING OF BIDS.—Bids required under this section shall be opened at the time and place stated in the advertisement for bids. All interested persons, including representatives of the press, shall be permitted to attend. The results of the bidding shall be publicly announced.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1665.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57503(a)	46 App.:1193(a).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §703(a), (c) (related to construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning), 49 Stat. 2008; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(105), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 163.

57503(b)	46 App.:1193(c) (related to construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning).	

In subsection (b), the words "Bids required under this section" are substituted for "All bids required by the Secretary of Transportation for the construction, reconstruction, or reconditioning of vessels" to eliminate unnecessary words. The word "hour" is omitted as covered by "time".

§57504. Charter or sale of vessels acquired by Department of Transportation

Vessels transferred to or otherwise acquired by the Department of Transportation in any manner may be chartered or sold by the Secretary of Transportation as provided in this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1665.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57504	46 App.:1194.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §704, 49 Stat. 2008; Apr. 1, 1937, ch. 64, 50 Stat. 57; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(106), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 163.

§57505. Employment of vessels on foreign trade routes

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall arrange for the employment of the Department of Transportation's vessels in steamship lines on such trade routes, exclusively serving the foreign trade of the United States, as the Secretary determines are essential for the development and maintenance of the commerce of the United States and the national defense. However, the Secretary shall first determine that those routes are not being adequately served by existing steamship lines privately owned and operated by citizens of the United States and documented under the laws of the United States.

(b) POLICY TO ENCOURAGE PRIVATE OPERATION.—The Secretary shall have a policy of encouraging private operation of each essential steamship line now owned by the United States Government by—

(1) selling the line to a citizen of the United States; or

(2) demising the Secretary's vessels on bareboat charter to citizens of the United States who agree to maintain the line in the manner provided in this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1665.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57505(a)	46 App.:1195 (1st sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §705 (1st, 2d sentences), 49 Stat. 2009; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(107), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 163.
57505(b)	46 App.:1195 (2d sentence).	

In subsection (a), the words "As soon as practicable after June 29, 1936, and continuing thereafter" are omitted as obsolete. The words "However, the Secretary shall first determine that those routes are not being adequately served" are substituted for "*Provided*, That such needs are not being adequately served" for clarity and because provisos are disfavored in modern drafting.

In subsection (b)(1), the words "in the manner provided in section 7 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1920 [46 App. U.S.C. 866], and in strict accordance with the provisions of section 5 of said Act" are omitted because section 5 of that Act was repealed in 1988, and section 7 is being repealed as obsolete by this bill without being restated.

§57506. Minimum selling price of vessels

(a) IN GENERAL.—A vessel constructed under this subtitle or the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, may not be sold by the Secretary of Transportation for less than the price specified in this section.

(b) OPERATION IN FOREIGN TRADE.—If the vessel is to be operated in foreign trade, the minimum price is the estimated foreign construction cost (exclusive of national defense features) determined as of the date the construction contract is executed, less depreciation under subsection (d).

(c) OPERATION IN DOMESTIC TRADE.—If the vessel is to be operated in domestic trade, the minimum price is the cost of construction in the United States (exclusive of national defense features), less depreciation under subsection (d).

(d) DEPRECIATION.—Depreciation under subsections (b) and (c) shall be based on—

(1) a 25-year life for dry-cargo and passenger vessels; and

(2) a 20-year life for tankers and other bulk liquid carrier vessels.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1665.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57506	46 App.:1195 (last sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §705 (last sentence), as added Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §11(a), 53 Stat. 1185; Pub. L. 86–518, §1, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(107), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 163.
	46 App.:1125 note.	Pub. L. 86–518, §9, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 217.

Subsection (d) is substituted for "less depreciation based on a twenty-five year life" because of section 9 of Public Law 86–518 (June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 217), which provided that "Nothing in any amendment made by this Act [including section 1 substituting 'twenty-five' for 'twenty' in 46 App. U.S.C. 1195] shall operate or be interpreted to change from twenty to twenty-five years the provisions of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, as amended, relating to the commercial expectancy or period of depreciation of any tanker or other liquid bulk carrier."

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Merchant Marine Act, 1936, referred to in subsec. (a), is act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, 49 Stat. 1985, which was classified principally to chapter 27 (§1101 et seq.) of the former Appendix to this title. The Act, with the exception of title V, most of title VI, and sections 301, 801, 802, 809(a), and 909 thereof, was repealed and restated, mainly in this subtitle, by Pub. L. 109–304, §§8, 19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1555, 1710. Title V and sections 301 and 909 of the Act are set out as notes under section 53101 of this title. Those portions of title VI not repealed by Pub. L. 109–304 and sections 802 and 809(a) of the Act were repealed by Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §313(a), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 58. Section 801 of the Act was transferred to section 57522 of this title by Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §313(c)(1)(A), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 58. For complete classification of the Act to the Code, see Tables. For disposition of sections of the former Appendix to Title 46, see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title.

SUBCHAPTER II—CHARTERS

§57511. Demise charters

A charter by the Secretary of Transportation under this chapter shall demise the vessel to the charterer subject to all usual conditions contained in a bareboat charter. The charter shall be for a term the Secretary considers to be in the best interest of the United States Government and the merchant marine.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1666.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57511	46 App.:1201.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §711, 49 Stat. 2010; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(113), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 163.

The words "for a term the Secretary considers to be" are substituted for "until January 1, 1940, shall be for terms of three years or less as the Secretary of Transportation may decide: *Provided*, That after January 1, 1940, charters may be executed by the Secretary of Transportation for such terms as the experience gained by the Secretary of Transportation shall indicate are" to eliminate unnecessary and obsolete words.

§57512. Competitive bidding

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation may charter a vessel of the Department of Transportation to a private operator only on the basis of competitive sealed bidding. The bids must be submitted in strict compliance with the terms and conditions of a public advertisement soliciting the bids.

(b) ADVERTISEMENT FOR BIDS.—An advertisement for bids shall state—

(1) the number, type, and tonnage of the vessels being offered for bareboat charter for operation as a steamship line on a designated trade route;

(2) the minimum number of sailings required;

(3) the length of time of the charter;

(4) the right of the Secretary to reject all bids; and

(5) other information the Secretary considers necessary for the information of prospective bidders.

(c) OPENING OF BIDS.—Bids required under this section shall be opened at the time and place stated in the advertisement for bids. All interested persons, including representatives of the press, shall be permitted to attend. The results of the bidding shall be publicly announced.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1666.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57512(a)	46 App.:1196(a) (1st sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §706(a), (b) (1st sentence related to

		announcement), 49 Stat. 2009; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(108), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 163.
57512(b)	46 App.:1196(a) (last sentence), (b) (1st sentence related to announcement).	
57512(c)	46 App.:1193(c) (related to chartering).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §703(c) (related to chartering), 49 Stat. 2008; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(105), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 163.

Subsection (b)(4) is substituted for "announce in his advertisements for bids that the Secretary of Transportation reserves the right to, reject any and all bids submitted" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1196(b) to improve the organization.

In subsection (c), the words "Bids required under this section" are substituted for "All bids required by the Secretary of Transportation . . . and for the chartering of the Secretary's vessels hereinafter provided for" to eliminate unnecessary words. The word "hour" is omitted as covered by "time".

§57513. Minimum bid

The Secretary of Transportation shall reject any bid for the charter under this subchapter of a vessel constructed under this subtitle or the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, if the charter hire offered is lower than the minimum charter hire would be if the vessel were chartered under section 57531 of this title.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1666.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57513	46 App.:1196(b) (last sentence).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §706(b) (last sentence), as added Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §11(b), 53 Stat. 1186; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(108), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 163.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Merchant Marine Act, 1936, referred to in text, is act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, 49 Stat. 1985, which was classified principally to chapter 27 (§1101 et seq.) of the former Appendix to this title. The Act, with the exception of title V, most of title VI, and sections 301, 801, 802, 809(a), and 909 thereof, was repealed and restated, mainly in this subtitle, by Pub. L. 109–304, §§8, 19, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1555, 1710. Title V and sections 301 and 909 of the Act are set out as notes under section 53101 of this title. Those portions of title VI not repealed by Pub. L. 109–304 and sections 802 and 809(a) of the Act were repealed by Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §313(a), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 58. Section 801 of the Act was transferred to section 57522 of this title by Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §313(c)(1)(A), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 58. For complete classification of the Act to the Code, see Tables. For disposition of sections of the former Appendix to Title 46, see Disposition Table preceding section 101 of this title.

§57514. Qualifications of bidders

(a) CONSIDERATIONS.—In deciding whether to award a charter to a bidder, the Secretary of

Transportation shall consider—

(1) the bidder's financial resources, credit standing, and practical experience in operating vessels; and

(2) other factors a prudent business person would consider in entering into a transaction involving a large capital investment.

(b) DISQUALIFICATIONS.—The Secretary may not charter a vessel to a person appearing to lack sufficient capital, credit, and experience to operate the vessel successfully over the period covered by the charter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1666.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57514	46 App.:1203.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §713, 49 Stat. 2010; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(115), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 164.

§57515. Awarding of charters

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall award the charter to the bidder proposing to pay the highest monthly charter hire. However, the Secretary may reject the highest or most advantageous or any other bid if the Secretary considers the charter hire offered too low or determines that the bidder lacks the qualifications required by section 57514 of this title.

(b) HIGHEST BID REJECTED.—If the Secretary rejects the highest bid, the Secretary may—

(1) award the charter to the next highest bidder; or

(2) reject all bids and either readvertise the line or operate the line until conditions appear more favorable to reoffer the line for private charter.

(c) REASON FOR REJECTION.—On request of a bidder, the reason for rejection shall be stated in writing to the bidder.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1667.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57515	46 App.:1196(b) (1st sentence related to authority). 46 App.:1197.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §§706(b) (1st sentence related to authority), 707, 49 Stat. 2009; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(108), (109), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 163.

In subsection (a), the words "if the Secretary considers the charter hire offered too low" are substituted for "if, in the Secretary's discretion, the charter hire offered is deemed too low" to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "lacks the qualifications required by section 57514 of this title" are substituted for "lacks sufficient capital, credit, or experience to operate successfully the line" to avoid repeating the qualifications in more than one place.

§57516. Operating-differential subsidies

If the Secretary of Transportation considers it necessary, the Secretary may make a contract with a charterer of a vessel owned by the Secretary for payment of an operating-differential subsidy, on the same terms and conditions, and subject to the same limitations and restrictions, as otherwise provided with respect to payment of operating-differential subsidies to operators of privately-owned vessels.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1667.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57516	46 App.:1198.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §708, 49 Stat. 2009; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §31, 52 Stat. 962; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(110), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 163.

§57517. Recovery of excess profits

(a) IN GENERAL.—A charter under this chapter shall provide that if, at the end of a calendar year subsequent to the execution of the charter, the cumulative net voyage profit (after payment of the charter hire reserved in the charter and payment of the charterer's fair and reasonable overhead expenses applicable to operation of the chartered vessel) exceeds 10 percent a year of the charterer's capital necessarily employed in the business of the chartered vessel, the charterer shall pay to the Secretary of Transportation, as additional charter hire, half the cumulative net voyage profit in excess of 10 percent a year. However, any cumulative net voyage profit accounted for under this subsection is not to be included in the calculation of cumulative net voyage profit in any subsequent year.

(b) TERMS TO BE DEFINED AND USED.—The Secretary shall define the terms "net voyage profit", "fair and reasonable overhead expenses", and "capital necessarily employed" for this section. Each advertisement for bids and each charter shall contain these definitions, stating the formula for determining each of these three amounts.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1667.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57517	46 App.:1199.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §709, 49 Stat. 2010; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(111), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 163.

§57518. Performance bond

The Secretary of Transportation shall require a charterer of a vessel of the Secretary to deposit with the Secretary an undertaking, with approved sureties, in such amount as the Secretary may require as security for the faithful performance of the terms of the charter, including indemnity against liens on the chartered vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1667.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised

Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57518	46 App.:1200.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §710, 49 Stat. 2010; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(112), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 163.

§57519. Insurance

A charter under this chapter shall require the charterer to carry, at the charterer's expense, insurance on the chartered vessel covering all marine and port risks, protection and indemnity risks, and all other hazards and liabilities, adequate to cover damages claimed against and losses sustained by the chartered vessel arising during the term of the charter. The insurance shall be in such form, in such amount, and with such companies as the Secretary of Transportation may require. In accordance with law, any of the insurance risks may be underwritten by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1667.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57519	46 App.:1202(a).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §712(a), 49 Stat. 2010; Aug. 7, 1939, ch. 555, §1, 53 Stat. 1254; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(114), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 163.

§57520. Vessel maintenance

(a) IN GENERAL.—A charter under this chapter shall require the charterer, at the charterer's expense, to—

(1) keep the chartered vessel in good repair and efficient operating condition; and

(2) make any repairs required by the Secretary of Transportation.

(b) INSPECTION.—The charter shall provide that the Secretary has the right to inspect the vessel at any time to ascertain its condition.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1668.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57520	46 App.:1202(b), (c).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §712(b), (c), 49 Stat. 2010; Aug. 7, 1939, ch. 555, §1, 53 Stat. 1254; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(114), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 163.

§57521. Termination of charter during national emergency

A charter under this chapter shall provide that during a national emergency proclaimed by the President or a period for which the President has proclaimed that the security of the national defense makes it advisable, the Secretary of Transportation may terminate the charter without cost to the

United States Government on such notice to the charterer as the President determines.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1668.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57521	46 App.:1202(d).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §712(d), 49 Stat. 2010; Aug. 7, 1939, ch. 555, §1, 53 Stat. 1254; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(114), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 163.

§57522. Books and records, balance sheets, and inspection and auditing

Every contract executed by the Secretary of Transportation under this chapter shall contain provisions requiring (1) that, the contractor and every affiliate, domestic agent, subsidiary, or holding company connected with, or directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by, the contractor, to keep its books, records, and accounts, relating to the maintenance, operation, and servicing of the vessels, services, routes, and lines covered by the contract, in such form and under such regulations as may be prescribed by the Secretary of Transportation; (2) that the contractor and every affiliate, domestic agent, subsidiary, or holding company connected with, or directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by, the contractor, to file, upon notice from the Secretary of Transportation, balance sheets, profit and loss statements, and such other statements of financial operations, special report, memoranda of any facts and transactions, which in the opinion of the Secretary of Transportation affect the financial results in, the performance of, or transactions or operations under, such contract; (3) that the Secretary of Transportation shall be authorized to examine and audit the books, records, and accounts of all persons referred to in this section whenever he may deem it necessary or desirable; and (4) that upon the willful failure or refusal of any person described in this section to comply with the contract provisions required by this section, the Secretary of Transportation shall have the right to rescind the contract, and upon such rescission, the United States shall be relieved of all further liability on such contract.

(Added and amended Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §313(c)(1), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 58.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Section consists of text of act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VIII, §801, 49 Stat. 2011, as amended by Pub. L. 97–31, §12(119), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 164. Section 801 of act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, which was formerly set out as a note under section 53101 of this title, was transferred to this section by Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §313(c)(1)(A), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 58.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Pub. L. 114–120, §313(c)(1)(B)(i), inserted "Books and records, balance sheets, and inspection and auditing" in section catchline.

Pub. L. 114–120, §313(c)(1)(B)(ii), which directed substitution of "this chapter" for "the provision of title VI or VII of this Act", was executed by making the substitution for "the provisions of title VI or VII of this Act" to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 114–120, §313(c)(1)(B)(iii), struck out ": *Provided*, That the provisions of this paragraph shall not require the duplication of books, records, and accounts required to be kept in some other form by the Interstate Commerce Commission" after "prescribed by the Secretary of Transportation".

SUBCHAPTER III—MISCELLANEOUS

§57531. Construction and charter of vessels for unsuccessful routes

(a) IN GENERAL.—If the Secretary of Transportation finds that a trade route determined to be essential under section 50103 of this title cannot be successfully developed and maintained and the Secretary's replacement program cannot be achieved under private operation of the trade route by a citizen of the United States with vessels documented under chapter 121 of this title, without further aid by the United States Government in addition to the financial aid authorized under title V of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, the Secretary, without advertisement or competition, may—

(1) have constructed, in private shipyards or in navy yards, vessels of the types necessary for the trade route; and

(2) demise charter those new vessels to the operator of vessels of the United States established on the trade route.

(b) AMOUNT OF CHARTER HIRE.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The annual charter hire under subsection (a) shall be at least 4 percent of the price (referred to in this section as the "foreign cost") at which the vessel would be sold if constructed under title V of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, plus—

(A) a percentage of the depreciated foreign cost computed annually determined by the Secretary of the Treasury, taking into consideration the current average market yield on outstanding marketable obligations of the Government with remaining periods to maturity comparable to the term of the charter, adjusted to the nearest one-eighth percent; and

(B) an allowance adequate in the judgment of the Secretary of Transportation to cover administrative costs.

(2) DEPRECIATION.—Depreciation under paragraph (1)(A) shall be based on—

(A) a 25-year life for dry-cargo and passenger vessels; and

(B) a 20-year life for tankers and other bulk liquid carrier vessels.

(c) OPTION TO PURCHASE.—The charter may contain an option to the charterer to purchase the vessels from the Secretary of Transportation within 5 years after delivery under the charter, on the same terms and conditions as provided in title V of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, for the purchase of new vessels from the Secretary. However—

(1) the purchase price shall be the foreign cost less depreciation to the date of purchase based on the useful life specified in subsection (b)(2);

(2) the required cash payment payable at the time of the purchase shall be 25 percent of the purchase price;

(3) the charter may provide that any part of the charter hire paid in excess of the minimum charter hire provided for in this section may be credited against the cash payment payable at the time of the purchase;

(4) the balance of the purchase price shall be paid within the remaining years of useful life (as specified in subsection (b)(2)) after the date of delivery of the vessel under the charter and in approximately equal annual installments, except that the first installment, which shall be payable on the next ensuing anniversary date of the delivery under the charter, shall be a proportionate part of the annual installment; and

(5) interest shall be payable on the unpaid balances from the date of purchase, at a rate not less than—

(A) a rate determined by the Secretary of the Treasury, taking into consideration the current average market yield on outstanding marketable obligations of the Government with remaining periods to maturity comparable to the average maturities of the loans, adjusted to the nearest one-eighth percent; plus

(B) an allowance adequate in the judgment of the Secretary of Transportation to cover

administrative costs.

(d) OPERATION OF VESSEL.—

(1) PERMISSIBLE VOYAGES.—The charter shall provide for operation of the vessel exclusively—

(A) in foreign trade;

(B) on a round-the-world voyage;

(C) on a round voyage from the west coast of the United States to a European port that includes an intercoastal port of the United States;

(D) on a round voyage from the Atlantic coast of the United States to the Orient that includes an intercoastal port of the United States; or

(E) on a voyage in foreign trade on which the vessel may stop at Hawaii or an island territory or possession of the United States.

(2) DOMESTIC TRADE.—The charter shall provide if the vessel is operated in domestic trade on any of the services specified in paragraph (1), the charterer will pay annually to the Secretary of Transportation that proportion of 1/25 of the difference between the domestic and foreign cost of the vessel as the gross revenue derived from the domestic trade bears to the gross revenue derived from the entire voyages completed during the preceding year.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1668; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §313(b)(2), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 58.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57531	46 App.:1204.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §714, 49 Stat. 2011; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §32, 52 Stat. 962; Aug. 4, 1939, ch. 417, §12, 53 Stat. 1186; Pub. L. 86–3, §18(b)(3), Mar. 18, 1959, 73 Stat. 12; Pub. L. 86–518, §5, June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 216; Pub. L. 91–469, §22, Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1032; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(116), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 164.

In subsection (a)(2), the words "demise charter" are substituted for "demise . . . or bare-boat charter" to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "operator of vessels of the United States" are substituted for "American-flag operator" for consistency in the revised title.

Subsection (b)(2) is substituted for "Upon the basis of a twenty-five year life of the vessel" because of section 9 of Public Law 86–518 (June 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 217), which provided that "Nothing in any amendment made by this Act [including section 5 substituting 'twenty-five' for 'twenty' in 46 App. U.S.C. 1204] shall operate or be interpreted to change from twenty to twenty-five years the provisions of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936, as amended, relating to the commercial expectancy or period of depreciation of any tanker or other liquid bulk carrier."

In subsection (c), in paragraphs (1) and (4), references to the useful life specified in subsection (b)(2) are substituted for references to the twenty-five year useful life for the reason stated in explaining subsection (b)(2).

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Merchant Marine Act, 1936, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b)(1), (c), is act June 29, 1936, ch. 858, 49 Stat. 1985. Title V of the Act enacted provisions set out as a note under section 53101 of this title. For

complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 1936 Amendment note set out under section 101 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 114–120 substituted "title V" for "titles V and VI" in introductory provisions.

§57532. Operation of experimental vessels

(a) DEFINITION.—In this section, the term "experimental vessel" means a vessel owned by the United States Government (including a vessel in the National Defense Reserve Fleet) that has been constructed, reconditioned, or remodeled for experimental or testing purposes.

(b) AUTHORITY TO OPERATE.—The Secretary of Transportation, for the purpose of practical development, trial, and testing, may operate an experimental vessel under a bareboat charter or general agency agreement in the foreign or domestic trade of the United States or for use for the account of a department or agency of the Government, without regard to other provisions of this subtitle and other laws related to chartering and general agency operations. Not more than 10 vessels may be operated and tested under this section in any one year.

(c) TERMS OF OPERATION.—Operation of a vessel under this section shall be on terms the Secretary considers appropriate to carry out the purposes of this subtitle. A bareboat charter under this section shall be at reasonable rates and include restrictions the Secretary considers appropriate to protect the public interest, including provisions for recapture of profits under section 57517 of this title. A charter or general agency agreement under this section shall be reviewed annually to determine whether conditions exist to justify continuance of the charter or agreement.

(d) RIGHTS OF SEAMEN.—A seaman engaged in vessel operations of the Secretary under this section and employed through a general agent in connection with a charter or agreement under this section is entitled to all the rights and remedies provided in sections 1(a) and (c), 3(c), and 4 of the Act of March 24, 1943 (50 U.S.C. 4701(a), (c), 4703(c), and 4704).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1670; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(u), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2327.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
57532	46 App.:1205.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VII, §715, as added July 11, 1956, ch. 574, 70 Stat. 531; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(117), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 164.

Subsection (d) is substituted for "Those provisions of law prescribed or incorporated under section 1241a of this Appendix, which relate to vessel operating activities of the Secretary of Transportation and to employment of seamen through general agents, shall be applicable in connection with charters and agreements entered into under this section" for clarity.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 115–232 substituted "(50 U.S.C. 4701(a), (c), 4703(c), and 4704)" for "(50 App. U.S.C. 1291(a), (c), 1293(c), 1294)".

§57533. Vessel chartering authority

The Secretary of Transportation may enter into contracts or other agreements on behalf of the United States to purchase, charter, operate, or otherwise acquire the use of any vessels documented

under chapter 121 of this title and any other related real or personal property. The Secretary is authorized to use this authority as the Secretary deems appropriate.

(Added Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3511(a), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 593.)

PART G—RESTRICTIONS AND PENALTIES

CHAPTER 581—RESTRICTIONS AND PENALTIES

Sec.
58101. Operating in domestic intercoastal or coastwise service.
58102. Default on payment or maintenance of reserves.
58103. Employing another person as managing or operating agent.
58104. Willful violation constitutes breach of contract or charter.
58105. Preferences for cargo in which charterer has interest.
58106. Concerted discriminatory activities.
58107. Discrimination at ports by water common carriers.
58108. Charges for transportation subject to subtitle IV of title 49.
58109. Penalties.

§58101. Operating in domestic intercoastal or coastwise service

(a) PROHIBITION.—A subsidy may not be awarded or paid to a contractor under the operating-differential subsidy program, and a vessel may not be chartered to a person under chapter 575 of this title, if the contractor or charterer, or a holding company, subsidiary, affiliate, or associate of the contractor or charterer, or an officer, director, agent, or executive thereof, directly or indirectly—

(1) owns, charters, or operates a vessel engaged in the domestic intercoastal or coastwise service; or

(2) owns a pecuniary interest in a person that owns, charters, or operates a vessel in the domestic intercoastal or coastwise service.

(b) WAIVER.—A person may apply to the Secretary of Transportation for a waiver of subsection (a). Before deciding on the waiver, the Secretary shall give the applicant and other interested persons an opportunity for a hearing. The Secretary may not grant the waiver if the Secretary finds it would—

(1) result in unfair competition to a person operating exclusively in the domestic intercoastal or coastwise service; or

(2) be prejudicial to the objectives and policy of this subtitle.

(c) CONTINUOUS OPERATION SINCE 1935.—The Secretary shall grant an application under subsection (b) without requiring further proof that the public interest and convenience will be served and without further proceedings as to the competition in the route or trade, if the contractor or other person, or a predecessor in interest, was in bona-fide operation as a common carrier by water in the domestic intercoastal or coastwise trade in 1935 over the route or in the trade for which the application is made and has so operated since that time or, if engaged in furnishing seasonal service only, was in bona-fide operation in 1935 during the season ordinarily covered by its operation, except in either event as to interruptions of service over which the applicant or its predecessor in interest had no control.

(d) DIVERSION INTO INTERCOASTAL OR COASTWISE OPERATIONS.—If an application under subsection (b) is approved, a person referred to in this section may not divert, directly or indirectly, money, property, or any other thing of value, used in a foreign-trade operation for which a subsidy is paid by the United States Government, into intercoastal or coastwise operations.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1670.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
58101	46 App.:1223(a).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VIII, §805(a), 49 Stat. 2012; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(122), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 164; Pub. L. 104–239, §4(b)(1), Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3131.

In this chapter, references to the "operating-differential subsidy program" are substituted for references to "part A of subchapter VI of this chapter", meaning 46 App. U.S.C. 1171–1185a, because part A of subchapter VI contains the operating-differential subsidy program and under 46 App. U.S.C. 1185a that program is being phased out. Consequently, part A is being omitted from the revised title and will instead appear as a note under section 53101, except for 46 App. U.S.C. 1177 and 1177–l which are restated in chapter 535. References to "chapter 575 of this title" are substituted for references to "subchapter VII of this chapter", meaning 46 App. U.S.C. 1191–1205, because those sections are restated in chapter 575.

In subsection (b), the words "A person may apply to the Secretary of Transportation for a waiver of subsection (a). Before deciding on the waiver, the Secretary shall give the applicant and other interested persons an opportunity for a hearing." are substituted for "without the written permission of the Secretary of Transportation. Every person, firm, or corporation having any interest in such application shall be permitted to intervene and the Secretary of Transportation shall give a hearing to the applicant and the intervenors." for clarity.

In subsection (c), the words "domestic intercoastal or coastwise trade" are substituted for "domestic, intercoastal, or coastwise trade" for consistency in the section.

In subsection (d), the words "and whosoever shall violate this provision shall be guilty of a misdemeanor" are omitted because section 3559 of title 18 provides for the classification of offenses. See the revision notes for section 58109 of the revised title.

§58102. Default on payment or maintenance of reserves

The Secretary of Transportation may supervise the number and compensation of all officers and employees of a contractor under the operating-differential subsidy program or a charterer under chapter 575 of this title, receiving an operating-differential subsidy, if the contractor or charterer—

(1) is in default on a mortgage, note, purchase contract, or other obligation to the Secretary; or

(2) has not maintained, in a manner satisfactory to the Secretary, all of the reserves provided for in this subtitle.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1671.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
58102	46 App.:1223(b).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VIII, §805(b), 49 Stat. 2012; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(122), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 164; Pub. L. 104–239, §4(b)(2), Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3131.

The words "contractor under the operating-differential subsidy program or a charterer under chapter 575 of this title, receiving an operating-differential subsidy" are substituted for "contractor under part A of subchapter VI of this chapter or subchapter VII of this chapter receiving an operating-differential subsidy" for the reasons explained under section 58101.

§58103. Employing another person as managing or operating agent

(a) PROHIBITION.—Except with the written consent of the Secretary of Transportation, a contractor holding a contract under the operating-differential subsidy program or under chapter 575 of this title may not—

(1) employ another person as the managing or operating agent of the operator; or

(2) charter a vessel, on which an operating-differential subsidy is to be paid, for operation by another person.

(b) APPLICABILITY OF PROVISIONS TO CHARTERER.—If a charter prohibited by this section is made, the person operating the chartered vessel is subject to all the provisions of this subtitle and the operating-differential subsidy program, including limitations of profits and salaries.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1671.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
58103	46 App.:1223(d).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VIII, §805(d), 49 Stat. 2013; June 23, 1938, ch. 600, §§36, 37, 52 Stat. 963; Pub. L. 91–603, §4(e), Dec. 31, 1970, 84 Stat. 1675; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(122), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 164; Pub. L. 104–239, §4(b)(2), Oct. 8, 1996, 110 Stat. 3131.

In subsection (a), the words "contractor holding a contract under the operating-differential subsidy program or under chapter 575 of this title" are substituted for "contractor holding a contract authorized under part A of subchapter VI or VII of this chapter" for the reasons explained under section 58101.

§58104. Willful violation constitutes breach of contract or charter

A willful violation of any provision of sections 58101–58103 of this title constitutes a breach of the contract or charter. On determining that a violation has occurred, the Secretary of Transportation may declare the contract or charter rescinded.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1672.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
58104	46 App.:1223(f).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VIII, §805(f), 49 Stat. 2014; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(122), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 164.

The words "in force under this chapter" and "forthwith" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "and any person willfully violating the provisions of this section shall be guilty of a misdemeanor" are omitted because section 3559 of title 18 provides for the classification of offenses. See the revision notes for section 58109 of the revised title.

§58105. Preferences for cargo in which charterer has interest

A contractor receiving an operating-differential subsidy, or a charterer under chapter 575 of this title, may not unjustly discriminate in any manner so as to give preference, directly or indirectly, to cargo in which the contractor or charterer has a direct or indirect ownership, purchase, or vending interest.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1672.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
58105	46 App.:1226.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VIII, §808, 49 Stat. 2015.

The words "and whosoever shall violate this provision shall be guilty of a misdemeanor" are omitted because section 3559 of title 18 provides for the classification of offenses. See the revision notes for section 58109 of the revised title.

§58106. Concerted discriminatory activities

(a) PROHIBITION.—A contractor receiving an operating-differential subsidy, or a charterer under chapter 575 of this title, may not continue as a party to or conform to an agreement with another carrier by water, or engage in a practice in concert with another carrier by water, that is unjustly discriminatory or unfair to any other citizen of the United States operating a common carrier by water employing only vessels documented under the laws of the United States on an established trade route from and to a United States port.

(b) GOVERNMENT PAYMENT PROHIBITED.—No payment or subsidy of any kind may be paid, directly or indirectly, out of funds of the United States Government to a contractor or charterer that has violated subsection (a).

(c) CIVIL ACTION.—A person whose business or property is injured by a violation of subsection (a) may bring a civil action in the district court of the United States for the district in which the defendant resides, is found, or has an agent. If the person prevails, the person shall be awarded—

(1) 3 times the damages; and

(2) costs, including reasonable attorney fees.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1672.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
58106	46 App.:1227.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VIII, §810, 49 Stat. 2015.

In subsection (b), the words "United States Government" are substituted for "United States or any agency of the United States" for consistency and to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (c), the words "bring a civil action" are substituted for "sue" for consistency in the revised title. The words "without respect to the amount in controversy" are omitted because section 1331 of title 28 no longer contains a requirement of any particular amount in controversy for jurisdiction of civil actions arising under the laws of the United States. The words "If the person prevails" are added for clarity.

§58107. Discrimination at ports by water common carriers

(a) PROHIBITION.—A common carrier by water may not, directly or indirectly, through an agreement, conference, association, understanding, or otherwise, prevent or attempt to prevent any other common carrier by water from serving any port described in subsection (b) at the same rates

the first carrier charges at the nearest port already regularly served by it.

(b) PORTS.—A port referred to in subsection (a) is one that is—

(1) designed for the accommodation of ocean-going vessels;

(2) located on an improvement project authorized by law or by a Federal agency; and

(3) located within the continental limits of the United States.

(c) OTHER AUTHORITY NOT LIMITED.—This section does not limit the authority otherwise vested in the Secretary of Transportation and the Federal Maritime Commission.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1672.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
58107	46 App.:1115.	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title II, §205, 49 Stat. 1987; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(62), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 159.

§58108. Charges for transportation subject to subtitle IV of title 49

(a) PROHIBITION.—A carrier may not charge, collect, or receive for transportation subject to subtitle IV of title 49 of persons or property, under any joint rate, fare, or charge, or under any export, import, or other proportional rate, fare, or charge, that is based in whole or in part on the fact that the persons or property affected are to be transported to, or have been transported from, a port in a territory or possession of the United States or in a foreign country, by a carrier by water in foreign commerce, any lower rate, fare, or charge than the carrier charges, collects, or receives for the transportation of persons or similar property for the same distance, in the same direction, and over the same route, in commerce wholly within the United States, unless the vessel used for the transportation is or was at the time of the transportation documented under the laws of the United States.

(b) SUSPENSION OF PROHIBITION.—Whenever the Secretary of Transportation believes that adequate shipping facilities to or from any port in a territory or possession of the United States or a foreign country are not being provided by vessels documented under the laws of the United States, the Secretary shall certify this fact to the Surface Transportation Board. On receiving the certification, the Board may by order suspend the operation of subsection (a) with respect to the rates, fares, and charges for the transportation by rail of persons and property transported from or to be transported to those ports, for such time and under such terms and conditions as the Secretary may specify in the order or in any supplemental order.

(c) TERMINATION OF SUSPENSION.—Whenever the Secretary believes that adequate shipping facilities are being provided to those ports by vessels documented under the laws of the United States, and certifies that fact to the Board, the Board may order the termination of the suspension.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1673.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
58108	46 App.:884.	June 5, 1920, ch. 250, §28, 41 Stat. 999; Ex. Ord. No. 6166, §12, eff. June 10, 1933; June 29, 1936, ch. 858, §§204, 904, 49 Stat. 1987, 2016; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(50), Aug.

		6, 1981, 95 Stat. 157; Pub. L. 104–88, title III, §321(3), Dec. 29, 1995, 109 Stat. 950.

The words "territory or possession" are substituted for "possession or dependency" for consistency in the revised title.

§58109. Penalties

(a) INDIVIDUALS.—An individual convicted of violating section 58101(d), 58103, or 58105 of this title shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for at least one year but not more than 5 years, or both.

(b) ORGANIZATIONS.—An organization convicted of committing an act prohibited by this subtitle shall be fined under title 18.

(c) INELIGIBILITY TO RECEIVE BENEFITS.—An individual or organization convicted of violating a section referred to in subsection (a) is ineligible, at the discretion of the Secretary of Transportation, to receive any benefit under the construction-differential subsidy or operating-differential subsidy programs, or a charter under chapter 575 of this title, for 5 years after the conviction.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §8(c), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1673.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
58109	46 App.:1228 (1st, 2d pars.).	June 29, 1936, ch. 858, title VIII, §806(b), (c), 49 Stat. 2014; Pub. L. 97–31, §12(125), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 164.

In subsection (a), the word "individual" is substituted for "natural person" for consistency in the revised title. The words "convicted of violating section 58101(d), 58103, or 58105 of this title" are substituted for "found guilty of any act or acts declared in this chapter to constitute a misdemeanor" because the sections referred to restate the provisions which declare certain acts to be misdemeanors and because the restatement of those provisions does not use the word "misdemeanor". The words "in any district court of the United States" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for at least one year but not more than five years, or both" are substituted for "shall be punished by a fine of not more than $10,000, or by imprisonment for not less than one year or more than five years, or by both fine and imprisonment" because of chapter 227 of title 18. See 18 U.S.C. 3559 (which classifies offenses based on the maximum term of imprisonment) and 3571 (which establishes fines based on those classifications).

In subsection (b), the word "organization" is substituted for "corporation" to reflect the probable intent that the penalty should apply to other organizations in addition to corporations. The words "convicted of committing an act prohibited by this subtitle" are substituted for "found guilty of any act or acts declared in this chapter to be unlawful" for clarity and consistency. The words "shall be fined under title 18" are substituted for "shall be punished by a fine of not more than $25,000" for consistency with subsection (a).

In subsection (c), the words "An individual or organization convicted of violating a section referred to in subsection (a)" are substituted for "any person or corporation convicted of a misdemeanor under the provisions of this chapter" for consistency in the section. Reference to the Federal Maritime Commission is omitted because the Commission does not administer any of the provisions referred to.

Subtitle VI—Clearance, Tonnage Taxes, and Duties

Chapter		Sec.
601.	**Arrival and Departure Requirements**	**60101**
603.	**Tonnage Taxes and Light Money**	**60301**
605.	**Discriminating Duties and Reciprocal Privileges**	**60501**

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior subtitle VI, consisting of chapter 701, was redesignated subtitle VII of this title by Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(k)(1), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 564. An identical amendment was made by Pub. L. 109–304, §9(a), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1674, prior to its repeal by Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3529(c)(1), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 603.

CHAPTER 601—ARRIVAL AND DEPARTURE REQUIREMENTS

Sec.
60101. Boarding arriving vessels before inspection.
60102. Production of certificate on entry.
60103. Oath of ownership on entry.
60104. Depositing certificates of documentation with consular officers.
60105. Clearance of vessels.
60106. State inspection laws.
60107. Payment of fees on departing vessel.
60108. Duty to transport tendered cargo.
60109. Duty to transport money and securities of the United States Government.

§60101. Boarding arriving vessels before inspection

(a) REGULATIONS.—The Secretary of Homeland Security shall prescribe and enforce regulations on the boarding of a vessel arriving at a port of the United States before the vessel has been inspected and secured.

(b) CRIMINAL PENALTY.—A person violating a regulation prescribed under this section shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for not more than 6 months, or both.

(c) RELATIONSHIP TO OTHER LAW.—This section shall be construed as supplementary to section 2279 of title 18.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1674.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60101	46 App.:163.	Mar. 31, 1900, ch. 120, §§1–3, 31 Stat. 58.

In subsection (a), the Secretary of Homeland Security is substituted for the Commissioner of Customs because the functions of the Customs Service and of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto were transferred to the Secretary of Homeland Security by section 403(1) of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–296, 116 Stat. 2178). The functions of the Commissioner of Customs previously were vested in the Secretary of the Treasury under section 321(c) of title 31. For prior related transfers of functions, see the transfer of functions note under 46 App. U.S.C. 163. The word "shall" is substituted for "is authorized and directed to" for consistency in the revised title and to eliminate unnecessary words. The word "port" is substituted for "seaports" for consistency in the revised title. The word "secured" is substituted for "placed in security" to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "from time to time", "properly", and "and for that purpose to employ any of the officers of the United States Customs Service" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (b), the words "fined under title 18, imprisoned for not more than 6 months, or both" are substituted for "subject to a penalty of not more than $100 or imprisonment not to exceed six months, or both" because of chapter 227 of title 18. The words "in the discretion of the court" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (c), the words "section 2279 of title 18" are substituted for "section forty-six hundred and six of the Revised Statutes" in the Act of Mar. 31, 1900, because R.S. §4606 (formerly classified to 46 U.S.C. 708 (1946 ed.)) was replaced by 18 U.S.C. 2279 in the codification of title 18 by the Act of June 25, 1948 (ch.

645, 62 Stat. 683). The words "section 9 of act August 2, 1882 (22 Stat. 189)" are omitted because that law was repealed by section 4(b) of Public Law 98–89 (Aug. 26, 1983, 97 Stat. 600).

§60102. Production of certificate on entry

On entry of a vessel documented under chapter 121 of this title, the master or other individual in charge of the vessel shall produce the certificate of documentation to the customs officer at the place where the vessel is entered. If the certificate is not produced, the vessel is not entitled to the privileges of a documented vessel.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1674.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60102	46 App.:57.	R.S. §4184.

The words "vessel documented under chapter 121 of this title" are substituted for "vessel, recorded in pursuance of title 48 of the Revised Statutes", and the words "certificate of documentation" are substituted for "certificate of such record", for consistency with chapter 121 of title 46. The words "in charge" are substituted for "having the command or charge" to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "customs officer" are substituted for "collector of the district" because the office of collector of customs was abolished by Reorganization Plan No. 1 of 1965. For additional requirements relating to entry of vessels, see 19 U.S.C. 1434.

§60103. Oath of ownership on entry

(a) REQUIRED STATEMENT.—On entry of a vessel of the United States from a foreign port, the individual designated under subsection (b) shall state under oath that—

(1) the vessel's certificate of documentation contains the names of all the owners of the vessel; or

(2) part of the ownership has been transferred since the certificate was issued and, to the best of the individual's knowledge and belief, the vessel is still owned only by citizens of the United States.

(b) PERSON TO MAKE STATEMENT.—The statement under subsection (a) shall be made by—

(1) an owner if one resides at the port of entry; or

(2) the master if an owner does not reside at the port of entry.

(c) CONSEQUENCE OF NOT MAKING STATEMENT.—If the appropriate individual does not make the statement required by this section, the vessel is not entitled to the privileges of a vessel of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1674.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60103	46 App.:42.	R.S. §4173.

In subsection (a), the words "certificate of documentation" and "certificate" are substituted for "register" for consistency with chapter 121 of the revised title. In paragraph (2), the words "sold or" are omitted as

unnecessary. The words "owned only by citizens of the United States" are substituted for "no foreign subject or citizen has . . . any share, by way of trust, confidence, or otherwise" for consistency in the revised title and to eliminate unnecessary words.

§60104. Depositing certificates of documentation with consular officers

(a) REQUIREMENT OF MASTER.—When a vessel owned by citizens of the United States, on a voyage from a port in the United States, arrives at a foreign port, the master of the vessel shall deposit the vessel's certificate of documentation with a consular officer at the foreign port if there is a consular officer at that port.

(b) RETURN OF CERTIFICATE.—When the master produces a clearance from the appropriate officer of the foreign port, the consular officer shall return the certificate of documentation to the master if the master has complied with the provisions of law related to the discharge of seamen in a foreign country and the payment of fees of consular officers.

(c) CIVIL PENALTY AND COLLECTION.—The master of a vessel failing to deposit the certificate of documentation as required by subsection (a) is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of $500. The consular officer shall bring an action to recover the penalty in any court of competent jurisdiction. The action shall be brought in the name of the consular officer for the benefit of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1675.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60104	46 App.:354.	R.S. §4309; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §3, 34 Stat. 100.
	46 App.:355.	R.S. §4310; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §3, 34 Stat. 100.

In this section, the words "certificate of documentation" are substituted for "register" and "papers" for consistency with chapter 121 of title 46. The words "sea-letter, and Mediterranean passport" in R.S. §4309 are omitted because the use of those documents was discontinued by Presidential proclamation on April 10, 1815. The words "consular officer" are substituted for "consul or vice consul" for consistency with 22 U.S.C. 4205. The words "commercial agent, or vice commercial agent" in R.S. §§4309 and 4310 are omitted because of the abolition of the grade of commercial agent by the Act of Apr. 5, 1906 (ch. 1366, 34 Stat. 99).

In subsection (b), the words "or commander" are omitted as unnecessary and for consistency in the section.

In subsection (c), the word "failing" is substituted for "refuses or neglects" to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty" are substituted for "liable to a penalty" for clarity and for consistency in the revised title.

§60105. Clearance of vessels

(a) VESSELS OF THE UNITED STATES.—Except as otherwise provided by law, a vessel of the United States shall obtain clearance from the Secretary of Homeland Security before proceeding from a port or place in the United States—

(1) for a foreign port or place;

(2) for another port or place in the United States if the vessel has on board foreign merchandise for which entry has not been made; or

(3) outside the territorial sea to visit a hovering vessel or to receive merchandise while outside the territorial sea.

(b) OTHER VESSELS.—Except as otherwise provided by law, a vessel that is not a vessel of the United States shall obtain clearance from the Secretary before proceeding from a port or place in the

United States—

(1) for a foreign port or place;

(2) for another port or place in the United States; or

(3) outside the territorial sea to visit a hovering vessel or to receive or deliver merchandise while outside the territorial sea.

(c) REGULATIONS.—The Secretary may by regulation—

(1) prescribe the manner in which clearance under this section is to be obtained, including the documents, data, or information which shall be submitted or transmitted, pursuant to an authorized data interchange system, to obtain the clearance;

(2) permit clearance to be obtained before all requirements for clearance are complied with, but only if the owner or operator of the vessel files a bond in an amount set by the Secretary conditioned on the compliance by the owner or operator with all specified requirements for clearance within a time period (not exceeding 4 business days) established by the Secretary; and

(3) permit clearance to be obtained at a place other than a designated port of entry, under conditions the Secretary may prescribe.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1675.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60105	46 App.:91.	R.S. §4197; Aug. 5, 1935, ch. 438, title II, §209, 49 Stat. 526; June 16, 1938, ch. 476, §1, 52 Stat. 758; Sept. 1, 1954, ch. 1213, title V, §501(a), 68 Stat. 1140; Pub. L. 103–182, title VI, §686(b), Dec. 8, 1993, 107 Stat. 2221; Pub. L. 106–476, title I, §1452(a)(3), Nov. 9, 2000, 114 Stat. 2167.

The Secretary of Homeland Security is substituted for the Customs Service and for the Secretary of the Treasury because the functions of the Customs Service and of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto were transferred to the Secretary of Homeland Security by section 403(1) of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–296, 116 Stat. 2178).

§60106. State inspection laws

When State law requires a certificate of inspection for goods carried on a vessel, a vessel transporting the goods may not be cleared until the certificate is produced.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1676.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60106	46 App.:97.	R.S. §4202.

This section is substituted for the source provision to eliminate unnecessary words.

§60107. Payment of fees on departing vessel

A departing vessel may be cleared only when all legal fees that have accrued on the vessel are

paid and proof of payment is presented to the individual granting the clearance.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1676.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60107	46 App.:100.	R.S. §4206.

This section is substituted for the source provision to eliminate unnecessary words.

§60108. Duty to transport tendered cargo

Clearance may be refused to a vessel or vehicle transporting cargo destined for a domestic or foreign port when the owner, master, or other individual in charge refuses to accept cargo tendered in good condition, with proper charges, for the same or an intermediate port by a citizen of the United States. This section does not apply if the vessel or vehicle is already fully loaded (giving appropriate consideration to its proper loading) or is not adaptable to transport the tendered cargo.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1676.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60108	46 App.:834.	Sept. 7, 1916, ch. 451, §36, 39 Stat. 738.

Only the word "cargo" is used, instead of "merchandise", "freight", and "cargo", for consistency in the section.

§60109. Duty to transport money and securities of the United States Government

Before being given clearance, a vessel owned by a citizen of the United States and bound on a voyage from a port in the United States to another port in the United States or in a foreign country, or on a voyage from a port in a foreign country to a port in the United States, shall receive on board any bullion, coin, notes, bonds, or other securities of the United States Government that an agency, consular officer, or other agent of the Government offers. The vessel shall transport the items securely and deliver them promptly to the proper authorities or consignees on arriving at the port of destination. Compensation shall be paid for services provided under this section that is equal to compensation paid to other carriers in the ordinary transaction of business.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1676.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60109	46 App.:98.	R.S. §4204; Apr. 5, 1906, ch. 1366, §3, 34 Stat. 100.

This section is substituted for the source provision to eliminate unnecessary words.

CHAPTER 603—TONNAGE TAXES AND LIGHT MONEY

Sec.
60301. Regular tonnage taxes.
60302. Special tonnage taxes.
60303. Light money.
60304. Presidential suspension of tonnage taxes and light money.
60305. Vessels in distress.
60306. Vessels not engaged in trade.
60307. Vessels engaged in coastwise trade or the fisheries.
60308. Vessels engaged in Great Lakes trade.
60309. Passenger vessels making trips between ports of the United States and foreign ports.
60310. Vessels making daily trips on interior waters.
60311. Hospital vessels in time of war.
60312. Rights under treaties preserved.

§60301. Regular tonnage taxes

(a) LOWER RATE.—A tax is imposed at the rate of 4.5 cents per ton, not to exceed a total of 22.5 cents per ton per year, for fiscal years 2006 through 2010, and 2 cents per ton, not to exceed a total of 10 cents per ton per year, for each fiscal year thereafter, at each entry in a port of the United States of—

(1) a vessel entering from a foreign port or place in North America, Central America, the West Indies Islands, the Bahama Islands, the Bermuda Islands, or the coast of South America bordering the Caribbean Sea; or

(2) a vessel returning to the same port or place in the United States from which it departed, and not entering the United States from another port or place, except—

(A) a vessel of the United States;

(B) a recreational vessel (as defined in section 2101 of this title); or

(C) a barge.

(b) HIGHER RATE.—A tax is imposed at the rate of 13.5 cents per ton, not to exceed a total of 67.5 cents per ton per year, for fiscal years 2006 through 2010, and 6 cents per ton, not to exceed a total of 30 cents per ton per year, for each fiscal year thereafter, on a vessel at each entry in a port of the United States from a foreign port or place not named in subsection (a)(1).

(c) EXCEPTION FOR VESSELS ENTERING OTHER THAN BY SEA.—Subsection (a) does not apply to a vessel entering other than by sea from a foreign port or place at which tonnage, lighthouse, or other equivalent taxes are not imposed on vessels of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1677; Pub. L. 109–171, title IV, §4001, Feb. 8, 2006, 120 Stat. 27; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3524, Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 600.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60301(a)	46 App.:121 (2d sentence words before semicolon).	Aug. 5, 1909, ch. 6, §36 (1st sentence), 36 Stat. 111; Pub. L. 101–508, title X, §10402(a), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–398; Pub. L. 103–66, title IX, §9001(a)(1), (2), (c)(1), Aug. 10, 1993, 107 Stat. 402; Pub. L. 105–33, title IX, §9201(a), Aug. 5, 1997, 111 Stat. 671.
60301(b)	46 App.:121 (2d sentence words after semicolon).	
60301(c)	46 App.:132.	Mar. 8, 1910, ch. 86, 36 Stat. 234; Pub.

		L. 101–508, title X, §10402(b), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–399; Pub. L. 103–66, title IX, §9001(b), Aug. 10, 1993, 107 Stat. 402; Pub. L. 105–33, title IX, §9201(b), Aug. 5, 1997, 111 Stat. 671.

In this section, the tax rates for fiscal years 1991 through 2002 are omitted as obsolete.

In subsection (a)(1), the words "West Indies Islands" are substituted for "West India Islands" to conform to current geographic terminology. The word "Newfoundland" is omitted because Newfoundland is now part of Canada.

In subsection (a)(2), the reference to the definitions in section 2101 is confined to "recreational vessel" because the definitions of "vessel of the United States" and "barge" are being moved to chapter 1 of the revised title and being made applicable title-wide.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3524(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–171, §4001. See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 110–181, §3524(a)(1), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–171, §4001, into this section by substituting "4.5 cents per ton, not to exceed a total of 22.5 cents per ton per year, for fiscal years 2006 through 2010, and 2 cents per ton, not to exceed a total of 10 cents per ton per year, for each fiscal year thereafter," for "2 cents per ton (but not more than a total of 10 cents per ton per year)" in subsec. (a) and "13.5 cents per ton, not to exceed a total of 67.5 cents per ton per year, for fiscal years 2006 through 2010, and 6 cents per ton, not to exceed a total of 30 cents per ton per year, for each fiscal year thereafter," for "6 cents per ton (but not more than a total of 30 cents per ton per year)" in subsec. (b). See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–171, §4001, which directed the amendment of sections 121 and 132 of the former Appendix to this title from which this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3524(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsecs. (a), (b) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§60302. Special tonnage taxes

(a) ENTRY FROM FOREIGN PORT OR PLACE.—Regardless of whether a tax is imposed under section 60301 of this title, a tax is imposed on a vessel at each entry in a port of the United States from a foreign port or place at the following rates:

(1) 30 cents per ton on a vessel built in the United States but owned in any part by a subject of a foreign country.

(2) 50 cents per ton on other vessels not of the United States.

(3) 50 cents per ton on a vessel of the United States having an officer who is not a citizen of the United States.

(4) $2 per ton on a foreign vessel entering from a foreign port or place at which vessels of the United States are not ordinarily allowed to enter and trade.

(b) VESSELS NOT OF THE UNITED STATES TRANSPORTING PROPERTY BETWEEN DISTRICTS.—Regardless of whether a tax is imposed under section 60301 of this title, a tax of 50 cents per ton is imposed on a vessel not of the United States at each entry in one customs district from another district when transporting goods loaded in one district to be delivered in another district.

(c) EXCEPTION FOR VESSELS BECOMING DOCUMENTED.—The tax of 50 cents per ton under this section does not apply to a vessel that—

(1) is owned only by citizens of the United States; and

(2) after entering a port of the United States, becomes documented as a vessel of the United States before leaving that port.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1677.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60302(a)	46 App.:121 (1st sentence, 5th sentence words before semicolon, last sentence words after semicolon).	R.S. §4219 (1st, 2d sentences, 4th sentence words before semicolon, last sentence words before 1st semicolon and after last semicolon); Feb. 27, 1877, ch. 69, §1, 19 Stat. 250.
60302(b)	46 App.:121 (4th sentence words before proviso).	
60302(c)	46 App.:121 (4th sentence proviso).	Mar. 4, 1915, ch. 171, §1, 38 Stat. 1193.

In subsections (a) and (b), the words "Regardless of whether a tax is imposed under section 60301 of this title" are added for clarity. See 19 C.F.R. §4.20(c) (2003).

In subsection (a)(1), the word "owned" is substituted for "belonging" for consistency in the revised title.

In subsection (a)(3), the words "vessel of the United States" are substituted for "vessel" for clarity.

In subsection (c), the words "The tax of 50 cents per ton" are substituted for "no such duty" in 46 App. U.S.C. 121 to conform more closely to the language in section 1 of the Act of March 4, 1915 (ch. 171, 38 Stat. 1193). The word "documented" is substituted for "registered" for consistency in the revised title.

The words "In addition to the tonnage-duty above imposed, there shall be paid a tax, at the rate of thirty cents per ton, on vessels which shall be entered at any custom-house within the United States from any foreign port or place" in R.S. §4219 were omitted from the original codification of R.S. §4219 in 46 U.S.C. 121 (1926 edition, 44 Stat. 1467). A codification note which first appeared in the 1958 edition of the United States Code for 46 U.S.C. 121 says that the words apparently were omitted as superseded and repealed by section 14 of the Act of June 26, 1884 (ch. 121, 23 Stat. 57), as amended by section 11 of the Act of June 19, 1886 (ch. 421, 24 Stat. 81), and section 1 of the Act of April 4, 1888 (ch. 61, 25 Stat. 80).

§60303. Light money

(a) IMPOSITION OF TAX.—A tax of 50 cents per ton, to be called "light money", is imposed on a vessel not of the United States at each entry in a port of the United States. This tax shall be imposed and collected under the same regulations that apply to tonnage taxes.

(b) EXCEPTION FOR VESSELS OWNED BY CITIZENS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Subsection (a) does not apply to a vessel owned only by citizens of the United States if—

(A) the vessel is carrying a regular document issued by a customhouse of the United States proving the vessel to be owned only by citizens of the United States; and

(B) on entry of the vessel from a foreign port, the individual designated under paragraph (2) states under oath that—

(i) the document contains the names of all the owners of the vessel; or

(ii) part of the ownership has been transferred since the document was issued and, to the best of that individual's knowledge and belief, the vessel is still owned only by citizens of the United States.

(2) PERSON TO MAKE STATEMENT.—The statement under paragraph (1)(B) shall be made by—

(A) an owner if one resides at the port of entry; or

(B) the master if an owner does not reside at the port of entry.

(c) EXCEPTION FOR VESSELS BECOMING DOCUMENTED.—Subsection (a) does not apply to a vessel that—

(1) is owned only by citizens of the United States; and

(2) after entering a port of the United States, becomes documented as a vessel of the United States before leaving that port.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1678; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3546(v), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2327.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60303(a)	46 App.:128 (words before proviso).	R.S. §4225.
60303(b)	46 App.:129.	R.S. §4226.
60303(c)	46 App.:128 (proviso).	Mar. 4, 1915, ch. 171, §1, 38 Stat. 1193.

In subsection (a), the word "tax" is substituted for "duty", and the word "imposed" is substituted for "levied and collected", for consistency in the chapter. The words "in the same manner" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (b)(1), before subparagraph (A), the words "does not apply to" are substituted for "shall not be deemed to operate upon" to eliminate unnecessary words. The word "unregistered" is omitted as unnecessary. The word "only" is added for clarity and for consistency in the revised title. In subparagraph (A), the words "owned only by citizens of the United States" are substituted for "American property" for consistency. In subparagraph (B)(ii), the words "sold or" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "owned only by citizens of the United States" are substituted for "no foreign subject or citizen has . . . any share, by way of trust, confidence, or otherwise" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (b)(2), subparagraph (A) is substituted for "if the same shall be at the port at which the owner or any of the part owners reside", and subparagraph (B) is substituted for "If the owner or any part owner does not reside at the port or place at which such vessel shall enter, then the master shall make oath to the like effect", to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 115–232 substituted "Subsection (a) does" for "Subsection (a) section does".

§60304. Presidential suspension of tonnage taxes and light money

If the President is satisfied that the government of a foreign country does not impose discriminating or countervailing duties to the disadvantage of the United States, the President shall suspend the imposition of special tonnage taxes and light money under sections 60302 and 60303 of this title on vessels of that country.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1678.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60304	46 App.:121 (5th sentence words after semicolon).	R.S. §4219 (4th sentence words after semicolon); Feb. 27, 1877, ch. 69, §1, 19 Stat. 250.

The words "If the President is satisfied . . . the President shall suspend the imposition" are substituted for "none of the duties . . . shall be levied . . . if the President of the United States shall be satisfied", the words

"does not impose" are substituted for "have been abolished", and the words "special tonnage taxes and light money" are substituted for "duties on tonnage above mentioned", for clarity.

§60305. Vessels in distress

A vessel is exempt from tonnage taxes and light money when it enters because it is in distress.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1678.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60305	46 App.:121 (3d sentence related to distress).	Aug. 5, 1909, ch. 6, §36 (2d sentence related to distress), 36 Stat. 111; Pub. L. 101–508, title X, §10402(a), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–398; Pub. L. 103–66, title IX, §9001(a)(3), (c)(1), Aug. 10, 1993, 107 Stat. 402.

The words "and light money" are added for clarity and consistency. See 19 C.F.R. §4.21 (2003).

§60306. Vessels not engaged in trade

A vessel is exempt from tonnage taxes and light money when not engaged in trade.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1678.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60306	46 App.:121 (3d sentence related to trade).	Aug. 5, 1909, ch. 6, §36 (2d sentence related to trade), 36 Stat. 111; Pub. L. 101–508, title X, §10402(a), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388–398; Pub. L. 103–66, title IX, §9001(a)(3), (c)(1), Aug. 10, 1993, 107 Stat. 402.

The words "and light money" are added for clarity and consistency. See 19 C.F.R. §4.21 (2003).

§60307. Vessels engaged in coastwise trade or the fisheries

A vessel with a registry endorsement or a coastwise endorsement, trading from one port in the United States to another port in the United States or employed in the bank, whale, or other fisheries, is exempt from tonnage taxes and light money.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1678.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60307	46 App.:122.	R.S. §4220.

The words "with a registry endorsement or a coastwise endorsement" are substituted for "if such vessel be licensed, registered, or enrolled" for consistency with chapter 121 of the revised title. The words "belonging to

any citizen of the United States" are omitted as unnecessary because, under chapter 121 as amended by this bill, ownership by a citizen of the United States is a requirement for documentation. The words "and light money" are added for clarity and consistency. See 19 C.F.R. §4.21 (2003).

§60308. Vessels engaged in Great Lakes trade

A documented vessel with a registry endorsement, engaged in foreign trade on the Great Lakes or their tributary or connecting waters in trade with Canada, does not become subject to tonnage taxes or light money because of that trade.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1679.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60308	46 App.:123.	R.S. §2793; Sept. 25, 1941, ch. 423, 55 Stat. 733; Pub. L. 103–182, title VI, §686(a)(1), Dec. 8, 1993, 107 Stat. 2220; Pub. L. 104–324, title XI, §1115(b)(4), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3972.

The words "or light money" are added for clarity and consistency. See 19 C.F.R. §4.21 (2003).

The statutory source for this section, R.S. §2793, is amended by section 13(a) of this bill. See the explanation in this report for that amendment.

§60309. Passenger vessels making trips between ports of the United States and foreign ports

A passenger vessel making at least 3 trips per week between a port of the United States and a foreign port is exempt from tonnage taxes and light money.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1679.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60309	46 App.:124.	R.S. §2792; May 28, 1908, ch. 212, §1, 35 Stat. 424.

The words "at least 3 trips per week" are substituted for "triweekly or oftener" for clarity. The words "and light money" are added for clarity and consistency. See 19 C.F.R. §4.21 (2003). The words "while such service triweekly or oftener is maintained" are omitted as unnecessary.

§60310. Vessels making daily trips on interior waters

A vessel making regular daily trips between a port of the United States and a port of Canada only on interior waters not navigable to the ocean is exempt from tonnage taxes and light money, except on its first clearing each year.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1679.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised

Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60310	46 App.:125.	R.S. §4221.

The words "is exempt from tonnage taxes" are substituted for "no tonnage fees shall be charged" for consistency in the revised chapter. The words "and light money" are added for clarity and consistency. See 19 C.F.R. §4.21 (2003). The words "by the officers of the United States" are omitted as unnecessary.

§60311. Hospital vessels in time of war

In time of war, a hospital vessel is exempt from tonnage taxes, light money, and pilotage charges in the ports of the United States if the vessel is one for which the conditions of the international convention for the exemption of hospital ships from taxation in time of war, concluded at The Hague on December 21, 1904, are satisfied. The President by proclamation shall name the vessels for which the conditions are satisfied and state when the exemption begins and ends.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1679.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60311	46 App.:133. 46 App.:134.	Mar. 24, 1908, ch. 96, 35 Stat. 46.

The words "and possessions thereof" are omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

§60312. Rights under treaties preserved

This chapter and chapter 605 of this title do not affect a right or privilege of a foreign country relating to tonnage taxes or other duties on vessels under a law or treaty of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1679.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60312	46 App.:121 (last sentence words before semicolon).	R.S. §4219 (last sentence words between 1st and last semicolons); Feb. 27, 1877, ch. 69, §1, 19 Stat. 250.
	46 App.:135.	R.S. §4227.

The words "This chapter and chapter 605 of this title" are substituted for "title 48 of the Revised Statutes" in 46 App. U.S.C. 135 because the provisions of title 48 of the Revised Statutes which are still alive and relate to tonnage or other duties on vessels are restated in these two chapters. Although these two chapters restate other provisions which are not from title 48 of the Revised Statutes, expansion of the reference to include those provisions is done for consistency.

CHAPTER 605—DISCRIMINATING DUTIES AND RECIPROCAL PRIVILEGES

Sec.

60501. Vessels allowed to import.

60502. Discriminating duty on goods imported in foreign vessels or from contiguous countries.
60503. Reciprocal suspension of discriminating duties.
60504. Reciprocal privileges for recreational vessels.
60505. Retaliatory suspension of commercial privileges.
60506. Retaliation against British dominions of North America.
60507. Suspension of free passage through Saint Marys Falls Canal.

§60501. Vessels allowed to import

(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as otherwise provided by treaty, goods may be imported into the United States from a foreign port or place only in—

(1) a vessel of the United States; or

(2) a foreign vessel owned only by citizens or subjects of the country—

(A) in which the goods are grown, produced, or manufactured; or

(B) from which the goods can only be, or most usually are, first shipped for transportation.

(b) EXCEPTION FOR VESSELS OF COUNTRIES NOT MAINTAINING SIMILAR RESTRICTIONS.—Subsection (a) does not apply to a vessel of a foreign country that does not maintain a similar restriction against United States documented vessels.

(c) EXCEPTION FOR VESSELS BECOMING DOCUMENTED.—Subsection (a) does not apply to a vessel that—

(1) is owned only by citizens of the United States; and

(2) after entering a port of the United States, becomes documented as a vessel of the United States before leaving that port.

(d) SEIZURE AND FORFEITURE.—If goods are imported in violation of this section, the goods and the vessel in which they are imported, along with its equipment and other cargo, may be seized by and forfeited to the United States Government.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1679.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60501(a)	19:130 (1st sentence).	Oct. 3, 1913, ch. 16, §IV(J)(2), (3), 38 Stat. 196; Mar. 15, 1915, ch. 171, §1, 38 Stat. 1193; Pub. L. 103–182, title VI, §689(a)(2), Dec. 8, 1993, 107 Stat. 2222.
60501(b)	19:131 (words before "nor").	
60501(c)	19:131 (words beginning with "nor").	
60501(d)	19:130 (last sentence related to 19:130).	

In this section, the word "goods" is substituted for "goods, wares, or merchandise" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (a)(2), before subparagraph (A), the words "owned only by" are substituted for "truly and wholly belong to" for consistency in the revised title.

In subsection (b), the words "or goods, wares, or merchandise imported in vessels" are omitted as unnecessary because of the wording of subsection (a) of the revised section. The word "restriction" is substituted for "regulation" as being more appropriate.

Subsection (d) is substituted for "All goods, wares, or merchandise imported contrary to this section or section 128 of this title, and the vessel wherein the same shall be imported, together with her cargo, tackle,

apparel, and furniture, shall be forfeited to the United States; and such goods, wares, or merchandise, ship, or vessel, and cargo shall be liable to be seized, prosecuted, and condemned in like manner, and under the same regulations, restrictions, and provisions as have been heretofore established for the recovery, collection, distribution, and remission of forfeitures to the United States by the several revenue laws" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§60502. Discriminating duty on goods imported in foreign vessels or from contiguous countries

(a) IMPOSITION OF DUTY.—A discriminating duty of 10 percent ad valorem (in addition to other duties imposed by law) is imposed on goods—

(1) imported in a vessel not of the United States unless the vessel—

(A) is entitled by law or treaty to enter the ports of the United States on payment of the same duties as are payable on goods imported in a vessel of the United States; or

(B)(i) is owned only by citizens of the United States; and

(ii) after entering a port of the United States, becomes documented as a vessel of the United States before leaving that port; or

(2) produced or manufactured in a foreign country not contiguous to the United States and imported from a country contiguous to the United States, unless imported in the usual course of strictly retail trade.

(b) SEIZURE AND FORFEITURE.—If goods are imported without payment of the duty required by this section, the goods and the vessel in which they are imported may be seized by, and forfeited to, the United States Government.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1680.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60502(a)	19:128. 46 App.:146.	Oct. 3, 1913, ch. 16, §IV(J)(1), 38 Stat. 196; Mar. 15, 1915, ch. 171, §1, 38 Stat. 1193; Pub. L. 103–182, title VI, §689(a)(1), Dec. 8, 1993, 107 Stat. 2222.
60502(b)	19:130 (last sentence related to 19:128).	Oct. 3, 1913, ch. 16, §IV(J)(2), 38 Stat. 196.

In this section, the word "goods" is substituted for "goods, wares, or merchandise" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (a)(1), subparagraphs (A) and (B) are substituted for "but this discriminating duty shall not apply to goods, wares, or merchandise which shall be imported in vessels not of the United States entitled at the time of such importation by treaty or convention or Act of Congress to be entered in the ports of the United States on payment of the same duties as shall then be payable on goods, wares, and merchandise imported in vessels of the United States, nor to goods, wares, and merchandise imported in a vessel owned by citizens of the United States but not a vessel of the United States if such vessel after entering an American port shall, before leaving the same, be documented under chapter 121 of title 46" to eliminate unnecessary words.

Subsection (a)(2) is substituted for "or which being the production or manufacture of any foreign country not contiguous to the United States, shall come into the United States from such contiguous country" and "but this discriminating duty shall not apply . . . nor to such products or manufactures as shall be imported from such contiguous countries in the usual course of strictly retail trade" to eliminate unnecessary words.

Subsection (b) is substituted for the source provision for consistency with section 60501(d) and to eliminate unnecessary words. See note for section 60501(d) in this report.

§60503. Reciprocal suspension of discriminating duties

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—On receiving satisfactory proof from the government of a foreign country that it has suspended, in any part, the imposition of discriminating duties for any class of vessels owned by citizens of the United States or goods imported in those vessels, the President may proclaim a reciprocal suspension of discriminating duties for the same class of vessels owned by citizens of that country or goods imported in those vessels.

(b) EFFECTIVE AND EXPIRATION DATES.—A suspension under this section takes effect retroactively from the date the President received the proof from the foreign government, and expires when that government stops granting the reciprocal suspension.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1680.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60503	46 App.:141.	R.S. §4228; July 24, 1897, ch. 13, 30 Stat. 214.

In this section, the word "goods" is substituted for "produce, manufactures, or merchandise", "merchandise", and "cargoes" for consistency in the chapter. Other changes are made to eliminate unnecessary words.

§60504. Reciprocal privileges for recreational vessels

When the President is satisfied that yachts owned by residents of the United States and used only for pleasure are allowed to arrive at, depart from, and cruise in the waters of a foreign port without entering, clearing, or paying any duties or fees (including cruising license fees), the Secretary of Homeland Security may allow yachts from that foreign port used only for pleasure to arrive at and depart from the ports of the United States and to cruise in the waters of the United States without paying any duties or fees. However, the Secretary may require foreign yachts to obtain a license to cruise in the waters of the United States. The license shall be in the form prescribed by the Secretary and contain limitations about length of time, direction, place of cruising and action, and other matters the Secretary considers appropriate. The license shall be issued without cost to the yacht.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1680.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60503	46 App.:104.	May 28, 1908, ch. 212, §5, 35 Stat. 425; Aug. 5, 1909, ch. 6, §37 (3d par.), 36 Stat. 112; June 26, 1948, ch. 673, 62 Stat. 1051.

The Secretary of Homeland Security is substituted for the Commissioner of Customs because the functions of the Customs Service and of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto were transferred to the Secretary of Homeland Security by section 403(1) of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–296, 116 Stat. 2178). The functions of the Commissioner of Customs previously were vested in the Secretary of the Treasury under section 321(c) of title 31. For prior related transfers of functions, see the transfer of functions note under 46 App. U.S.C. 104.

§60505. Retaliatory suspension of commercial privileges

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—The President may proclaim a suspension of commercial privileges to vessels of a foreign country when—

(1) vessels of that country have been given the same commercial privileges in the ports and waters of the United States given to vessels of the United States (except the privilege of engaging in coastwise commerce); and

(2) vessels of the United States are denied commercial privileges in the ports or waters of that country given to vessels of that country.

(b) APPLICATION.—A suspension under this section shall apply to the same commercial privileges denied to vessels of the United States in the ports or waters of the foreign country, and to the same class of vessels of that country as the class of vessels of the United States denied the privileges.

(c) EFFECTIVE DATE.—The President shall designate the effective date of the suspension in the proclamation.

(d) PENALTIES.—

(1) SEIZURE AND FORFEITURE.—If the master, officer, or agent of a vessel of a foreign country does an act for the vessel in the ports or waters of the United States in violation of a proclamation issued under this section, the vessel and the goods on the vessel may be seized by, and forfeited to, the United States Government.

(2) FINE OR IMPRISONMENT.—A person opposing an official of the Government enforcing this section shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for not more than 2 years, or both.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1681.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60505	46 App.:142.	June 19, 1886, ch. 421, §17, 24 Stat. 82.

In this section, the words "vessels of the United States" are used instead of both "vessels of the United States" and "American vessels" for consistency in the section. The words "vessels of a foreign country" and "vessels of that country" are substituted for "foreign country whose vessels", "national vessels", "vessels of such foreign country", and similar references, for consistency. The words "ports and waters" and "ports or waters" are substituted for "ports", "harbors, ports, or waters", and "ports, harbors, or waters" for consistency.

In subsection (a), before paragraph (1), the words "on receiving satisfactory information of the continuance of such discriminations against any vessels of the United States" are omitted as unnecessary. In paragraph (1), the words "given the same commercial privileges" are substituted for "placed on the same footing" for clarity and for consistency in the section.

Subsection (b) is substituted for "excluding . . . from the exercise of such commercial privileges in the ports of the United States as are denied to American vessels in the ports of such foreign country, all vessels of such foreign country of a similar character to the vessels of the United States thus discriminated against" for clarity and to eliminate unnecessary words.

Subsection (c) is substituted for "on and after such time as he may indicate" for clarity.

Subsection (d)(1) is substituted for "and on and after the date named in such proclamation for it to take effect, if the master, officer, or agent of any vessel of such foreign country excluded by said proclamation from the exercise of any commercial privileges shall do any act prohibited by said proclamation in the ports, harbors, or waters of the United States for or on account of such vessel, such vessel, and its rigging, tackle, furniture, and boats, and all the goods on board, shall be liable to seizure and to forfeiture to the United States" for consistency in the revised title and to eliminate unnecessary words.

Subsection (d)(2) is substituted for "any person opposing any officer of the United States in the enforcement of this section, or aiding and abetting any other person in such opposition, shall forfeit $800, and shall be guilty of a misdemeanor, and, upon conviction, shall be liable to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years" because of chapter 227 of title 18.

§60506. Retaliation against British dominions of North America

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—The President by proclamation may prohibit vessels of the British dominions of North America, their masters and crews, and products of or coming from those dominions, from entering waters, ports, or places of the United States when the President is satisfied that—

(1) fishermen or fishing vessels of the United States in waters, ports, or places of the British dominions of North America are being or recently have been—

(A) denied rights provided by law or treaty;

(B) subjected to unreasonable restrictions in the exercise of those rights; or

(C) otherwise harassed;

(2) fishermen or fishing vessels of the United States, having a permit under the laws of the United States to dock or trade at a port or place in the British dominions of North America, are being or recently have been—

(A) denied the privilege of entering the port or place in the same manner and under the same regulations applicable to trading vessels of the most-favored-nation;

(B) prevented from buying supplies allowed to be sold to trading vessels of the most-favored-nation; or

(C) otherwise harassed; or

(3) other vessels of the United States or their masters or crews in waters, ports, or places of the British dominions of North America are being or recently have been—

(A) denied privileges given to vessels of the most-favored-nation or their masters or crews; or

(B) otherwise harassed.

(b) COVERAGE AND EXCEPTIONS.—The President may apply a proclamation under this section to any of the subjects named, and may include exceptions for vessels in distress or need of supplies. The President may change, revoke, and renew the proclamation.

(c) PENALTIES.—A person violating a proclamation issued under this section shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for not more than 2 years, or both. A vessel or goods found in waters, ports, or places of the United States in violation of the proclamation may be seized by, and forfeited to, the United States Government.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1681.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60506	46 App.:143.	Mar. 3, 1887, ch. 339, 24 Stat. 475.

In this section, the words "fishermen or fishing vessels of the United States" are substituted for "American fishing vessels or American fishermen" for consistency in the revised title. The words "are or recently have been denied" are substituted for "are or then lately have been denied or abridged" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (a), the words before paragraph (1) are substituted for "Whenever the President of the United States shall be satisfied . . . then, and in either or all of such cases, it shall be lawful, and it shall be the duty of the President of the United States, in his discretion, by proclamation to that effect, to deny vessels, their masters and crews, of the British dominions of North America, any entrance into the waters, ports, or places of or within the United States . . . whether such vessel shall have come directly from said dominions on such destined voyage or by way of some port or place in such destined voyage elsewhere; and also to deny entry into any port or place of the United States of fresh fish or salt fish or any other product of said dominions, or other goods coming from said dominions to the United States" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (a)(1)(B), the words "regulations, or requirements" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (a)(1)(C), the words "otherwise harassed" are substituted for "unjustly vexed or harassed in the enjoyment of such rights, . . . or otherwise unjustly vexed or harassed" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (a)(2), before subparagraph (A), the word "dock" is substituted for "touch" for clarity. In subparagraph (C), the words "otherwise harassed" are substituted for "unjustly vexed or harassed, in respect thereof, or otherwise be unjustly vexed or harassed therein" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (a)(3)(B), the words "otherwise harassed" are substituted for "unjustly vexed or harassed in respect of the same, or unjustly vexed or harassed therein" to eliminate unnecessary words.

Subsection (b) is substituted for "(with such exceptions in regard to vessels in distress, stress of weather, or needing supplies as to the President shall seem proper)" and "The President may, in his discretion, apply such proclamation to any part or to all of the foregoing named subjects, and may revoke, qualify, limit, and renew such proclamation from time to time as he may deem necessary to the full and just execution of the purposes of this section" to eliminate unnecessary words.

Subsection (c) is substituted for "Every violation of any such proclamation, or any part thereof, is declared illegal, and all vessels and goods so coming or being within the waters, ports, or places of the United States contrary to such proclamation shall be forfeited to the United States; and such forfeiture shall be enforced and proceeded upon in the same manner and with the same effect as in the case of vessels or goods whose importation or coming to or being in the waters or ports of the United States contrary to law may be enforced and proceeded upon. Every person who shall violate any of the provisions of this section, or such proclamation of the President made in pursuance hereof, shall be deemed guilty of a misdemeanor, and, on conviction thereof, shall be punished by a fine not exceeding $1,000, or by imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years, or by both said punishments, in the discretion of the court." for consistency in the revised title and with chapter 227 of title 18 and to eliminate unnecessary words.

§60507. Suspension of free passage through Saint Marys Falls Canal

(a) PURPOSE.—The purpose of this section is to secure reciprocal advantages for the citizens, ports, and vessels of the United States.

(b) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—When the President is satisfied that vessels of the United States, or passengers or cargo being transported to a port of the United States, are prohibited from passing through a canal or lock connected with the navigation of the Saint Lawrence River, the Great Lakes, or their connecting waterways, or burdened in that passage by tolls or other means that are unreasonable in view of the free passage through the Saint Marys Falls Canal allowed to vessels of all countries, the President by proclamation may suspend the right of free passage through the Saint Marys Falls Canal for vessels owned by subjects of the country imposing the prohibition, tolls, or other burdens and for passengers and cargo being transported to the ports of that country, even when carried in vessels of the United States. The suspension shall apply to the extent and for the time the President considers appropriate.

(c) IMPOSITION OF TOLL.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—During a suspension under this section, the President shall impose a toll of not more than $2 per ton on cargo and not more than $5 on each passenger.

(2) EXCEPTIONS.—Notwithstanding paragraph (1), a toll may not be imposed on passengers or cargo landed at Ogdensburg, New York, or any port west of Ogdensburg and south of a line drawn from the northern boundary of New York through the Saint Lawrence River, the Great Lakes, and their connecting channels to the northern boundary of Minnesota.

(d) COLLECTION OF TOLL.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—A toll imposed under this section shall be collected under regulations prescribed by the Secretary of Homeland Security. The Secretary may require the master of a vessel to provide a sworn statement of the amount and kind of cargo, the number of passengers, and the destination of the passengers and cargo.

(2) PROOF OF LANDING.—When applicable, the Secretary also may require satisfactory proof that the passengers and cargo were landed at a port described in subsection (c)(2). Until that proof is provided, the Secretary may assume the passengers and cargo were not landed at such a port, and the amount of a toll that otherwise would be imposed is a lien enforceable against the vessel when found in the waters of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §9(b), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1682.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
60507(a)	46 App.:144 (1st par. words before 3d comma).	July 26, 1892, ch. 248, 27 Stat. 267.
60507(b)	46 App.:144 (1st par. words after 3d comma).	
60507(c)	46 App.:144 (last par.).	
60507(d)	46 App.:145.	

In this section, the word "cargo" is substituted for "cargo", "cargoes", "portions or cargoes", "freight", and "freight of whatever kind or description" for consistency and to eliminate unnecessary words.

Subsection (a) is substituted for "With a view of securing reciprocal advantages for the citizens, ports, and vessels of the United States" to improve the organization of the section.

In subsection (b), the words "and so often as" are omitted as unnecessary. The word "burdened" is substituted for "made difficult or burdensome", the word "unreasonable" is substituted for "reciprocally unjust and unreasonable", the words "the President by proclamation may suspend" are substituted for "he shall have the power, and it shall be his duty, to suspend by proclamation to that effect", the words "even when carried in vessels of the United States" are substituted for "whether carried in vessels of the United States or of other nations", and the words "The suspension shall apply to the extent and for the time the President considers appropriate" are substituted for "for such time and to such extent (including absolute prohibition) as he shall deem just", to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (c)(1), the words "the President shall impose a toll of" are substituted for "tolls shall be levied, collected, and paid as follows, to wit: . . . as shall be from time to time determined by the President" for clarity and to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (c)(2), the word "landed" is substituted for "carried to and landed" to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (d), the Secretary of Homeland Security is substituted for the Commissioner of Customs because the functions of the Customs Service and of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto were transferred to the Secretary of Homeland Security by section 403(1) of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–296, 116 Stat. 2178). The functions of the Commissioner of Customs previously were vested in the Secretary of the Treasury under section 321(c) of title 31. For prior related transfers of functions, see the transfer of functions note under 46 App. U.S.C. 145.

In subsection (d)(2), the words "a port described in subsection (c)(2) of this section" are substituted for "some port or place within the limits above named" for clarity.

Subtitle VII—Security and Drug Enforcement

Chapter		Sec.
700.	**Ports and Waterways Safety**	**70001**
701.	**Port Security**	**70101**
703.	**Maritime Security**	**70301**
705.	**Maritime Drug Law Enforcement**	**70501**

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXVII, §7701(f)(3), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1835, struck out period after "70001" in item for chapter 700.

2018—Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §401(b), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4263, added item for chapter 700.

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3529(c)(1), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 603, repealed Pub. L. 109–304, §9(a). See 2006 Amendment note below.

2006—Pub. L. 109–304, §10(1), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1683, amended analysis generally, substituting "Security and Drug Enforcement" for "Miscellaneous" in subtitle heading and adding items for chapters 703 and 705.

Pub. L. 109–304, §9(a), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1674, which directed amendment identical to that made by Pub. L. 109–241, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3529(c)(1), with Pub. L. 109–304, §9(a), to be treated as if never enacted. See note below.

Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(k)(1), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 564, redesignated subtitle VI of this title as subtitle VII.

CHAPTER 700—PORTS AND WATERWAYS SAFETY

SUBCHAPTER I—VESSEL OPERATIONS

Sec.
70001. Vessel traffic services.
70002. Special powers.
70003. Port access routes.
70004. Considerations by Secretary.
70005. International agreements.
70006. Establishment by Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating of anchorage grounds and regulations generally.
70007. Anchorage grounds.

SUBCHAPTER II—PORTS AND WATERWAYS SAFETY

70011. Waterfront safety.
70012. Navigational hazards.
70013. Requirement to notify Coast Guard of release of objects into the navigable waters of the United States.
70014. Aiming laser pointer at vessel.

SUBCHAPTER III—CONDITIONS FOR ENTRY INTO PORTS IN THE UNITED STATES

70021. Conditions for entry into ports in the United States.
70022. Prohibition on entry and operation.

SUBCHAPTER IV—DEFINITIONS, REGULATIONS, ENFORCEMENT, INVESTIGATORY POWERS, APPLICABILITY

70031. Definitions.
70032. Delegation of ports and waterways authorities in Saint Lawrence Seaway.
70033. Limitation on application to foreign vessels.
70034. Regulations.
70035. Investigatory powers.
70036. Enforcement.

SUBCHAPTER V—REGATTAS AND MARINE PARADES

70041. Regattas and marine parades.

SUBCHAPTER VI—REGULATION OF VESSELS IN TERRITORIAL WATERS OF UNITED STATES

70051. Regulation of anchorage and movement of vessels during national emergency.
70052. Seizure and forfeiture of vessel; fine and imprisonment.
70053. Enforcement provisions.
70054. Definitions.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7321(h), title LXXVII, §7701(f)(4)–(6), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1767, 1835, 1836, substituted "Establishment by Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating of anchorage grounds and regulations generally" for "Establishment by the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating of anchorage grounds and regulations generally" in item 7006, "Delegation of ports and waterways authorities in Saint Lawrence Seaway" for "Saint Lawrence

Seaway" in item 70032, "DEFINITIONS," for "DEFINITIONS" in subchapter IV heading, and "OF UNITED" for "OF THE UNITED" in subchapter VI heading.

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXIII, §11318(d), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4091, added item 70007.

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8342(b), title LVXXXV, §§8501(b)(5), 8507(a)(3), 8508(2)(C), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4709, 4746, 4753, 4755, inserted "Sec." before item 70001, added items 70006, 70014, and 70022, and substituted "Conditions for entry into ports in the United States" for "Conditions for entry to ports in the united states" in item 70021, "SUBCHAPTER I" for "SUBCHAPTER A", "SUBCHAPTER II" for "SUBCHAPTER B", "SUBCHAPTER III" for "SUBCHAPTER C", "SUBCHAPTER IV" for "SUBCHAPTER D", "SUBCHAPTER V" for "SUBCHAPTER E", and "SUBCHAPTER VI" for "SUBCHAPTER F". Items 70014 and 70022 were added to this analysis after items 70013 and 70021, respectively, to reflect the probable intent of Congress, notwithstanding errors in directory language.

2018—Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §§406(b), 407(e), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4266, 4267, added items for subchapters E and F and items 70041 and 70051 to 70054.

SUBCHAPTER I—VESSEL OPERATIONS

§70001. Vessel traffic services

(a) IN GENERAL.—Subject to the requirements of section 70004, the Secretary—

(1) in any port or place under the jurisdiction of the United States, in the navigable waters of the United States, or in any area covered by an international agreement negotiated pursuant to section 70005, may construct, operate, maintain, improve, or expand vessel traffic services, that consist of measures for controlling or supervising vessel traffic or for protecting navigation and the marine environment and that may include one or more of reporting and operating requirements, surveillance and communications systems, routing systems, and fairways;

(2) shall require appropriate vessels that operate in an area of a vessel traffic service to utilize or comply with that service;

(3) may require vessels to install and use specified navigation equipment, communications equipment, electronic relative motion analyzer equipment, or any electronic or other device necessary to comply with a vessel traffic service or that is necessary in the interests of vessel safety, except that the Secretary shall not require fishing vessels under 300 gross tons as measured under section 14502, or an alternate tonnage measured under section 14302 as prescribed by the Secretary under section 14104, or recreational vessels 65 feet or less to possess or use the equipment or devices required by this subsection solely under the authority of this chapter;

(4) may control vessel traffic in areas subject to the jurisdiction of the United States that the Secretary determines to be hazardous, or under conditions of reduced visibility, adverse weather, vessel congestion, or other hazardous circumstances, by—

(A) specifying times of entry, movement, or departure;

(B) establishing vessel traffic routing schemes;

(C) establishing vessel size, speed, or draft limitations and vessel operating conditions; and

(D) restricting operation, in any hazardous area or under hazardous conditions, to vessels that have particular operating characteristics or capabilities that the Secretary considers necessary for safe operation under the circumstances;

(5) may require the receipt of prearrival messages from any vessel, destined for a port or place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, in sufficient time to permit advance vessel traffic planning before port entry, which shall include any information that is not already a matter of record and that the Secretary determines necessary for the control of the vessel and the safety of the port or the marine environment; and

(6) may prohibit the use on vessels of electronic or other devices that interfere with communication and navigation equipment, except that such authority shall not apply to electronic

or other devices certified to transmit in the maritime services by the Federal Communications Commission and used within the frequency bands 157.1875–157.4375 MHz and 161.7875–162.0375 MHz.

(b) NATIONAL POLICY.—

(1) ESTABLISHMENT AND UPDATE OF NATIONAL POLICY.—

(A) ESTABLISHMENT OF POLICY.—Not later than one year after the date of enactment of this section, the Secretary shall establish a national policy which is inclusive of local variances permitted under subsection (c), to be applied to all vessel traffic service centers and publish such policy in the Federal Register.

(B) UPDATE.—The Secretary shall periodically update the national policy established under subparagraph (A) and shall publish such update in the Federal Register or on a publicly available website.

(2) ELEMENTS.—The national policy established and updated under paragraph (1) shall include, at a minimum, the following:

(A) Standardization of titles, roles, and responsibilities for all personnel assigned, working, or employed in a vessel traffic service center.

(B) Standardization of organizational structure within vessel traffic service centers, to include supervisory and reporting chain and processes.

(C) Establishment of directives for the application of authority provided to each vessel traffic service center, specifically with respect to directing or controlling vessel movement when such action is justified in the interest of safety.

(D) Establishment of thresholds and measures for monitoring, informing, recommending, and directing vessel traffic.

(E) Establishment of national procedures and protocols for vessel traffic management.

(F) Standardization of training for all vessel traffic service directors, operators, and watchstanders.

(G) Establishment of certification and competency evaluation for all vessel traffic service directors, operators, and watchstanders.

(H) Establishment of standard operating language when communicating with vessel traffic users.

(I) Establishment of data collection, storage, management, archiving, and dissemination policies and procedures for vessel incidents and near-miss incidents.

(c) LOCAL VARIANCES.—

(1) DEVELOPMENT.—In this section, the Secretary may provide for such local variances as the Secretary considers appropriate to account for the unique vessel traffic, waterway characteristics, and any additional factors that are appropriate to enhance navigational safety in any area where vessel traffic services are provided.

(2) REVIEW AND APPROVAL BY SECRETARY.—The Captain of the Port covered by a vessel traffic service center may develop and submit to the Secretary regional policies in addition to the national policy established and updated under subsection (b) to account for variances from that national policy with respect to local vessel traffic conditions and volume, geography, water body characteristics, waterway usage, and any additional factors that the Captain considers appropriate.

(3) REVIEW AND IMPLEMENTATION.—Not later than 180 days after receiving regional policies under paragraph (2)—

(A) the Secretary shall review such regional policies; and

(B) the Captain of the port concerned shall implement the policies that the Secretary approves.

(4) MAINTENANCE.—The Secretary shall maintain a central depository for all local variances

approved under this section.

(d) COOPERATIVE AGREEMENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may enter into cooperative agreements with public or private agencies, authorities, associations, institutions, corporations, organizations, or other persons to carry out the functions under subsection (a)(1).

(2) INTERNATIONAL COORDINATION.—With respect to vessel traffic service areas that cross international boundaries, the Secretary may enter into bilateral or cooperative agreements with international partners to jointly carry out the functions under subsection (a)(1) and to jointly manage such areas to collect, share, assess, and analyze information in the possession or control of the international partner.

(3) LIMITATION.—

(A) INHERENTLY GOVERNMENTAL FUNCTION.—A nongovernmental entity may not under this subsection carry out an inherently governmental function.

(B) DEFINITION OF INHERENTLY GOVERNMENTAL FUNCTION.—In this paragraph, the term "inherently governmental function" means any activity that is so intimately related to the public interest as to mandate performance by an officer or employee of the Federal Government, including an activity that requires either the exercise of discretion in applying the authority of the Government or the use of judgment in making a decision for the Government.

(4) DISCLOSURE.—The Commandant of the Coast Guard shall de-identify information prior to release to the public, including near miss incidents.

(e) PERFORMANCE EVALUATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall develop and implement a standard method for evaluating the performance of vessel traffic service centers.

(2) ELEMENTS.—The standard method developed and implemented under paragraph (1) shall include, at a minimum, analysis and collection of data with respect to the following within a vessel traffic service area covered by each vessel traffic service center:

(A) Volume of vessel traffic, categorized by type of vessel.

(B) Total volume of flammable, combustible, or hazardous liquid cargo transported, categorized by vessel type as provided in the Notice of Arrival, if applicable, or as determined by other means.

(C) Data on near-miss incidents.

(D) Data on marine casualties.

(E) Application by vessel traffic operators of traffic management authority during near-miss incidents and marine casualties.

(F) Other additional methods as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(3) REPORT.—Not later than 1 year after the date of the enactment of this paragraph, and biennially thereafter, the Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives a report on the evaluation conducted under paragraph (1) of the performance of vessel traffic service centers, including—

(A) recommendations to improve safety and performance; and

(B) data regarding marine casualties and near-miss incidents that have occurred during the period covered by the report.

(f) RISK ASSESSMENT PROGRAM.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall develop a continuous risk assessment program to evaluate and mitigate safety risks for each vessel traffic service area to improve safety and reduce the risks of oil and hazardous material discharge in navigable waters.

(2) METHOD FOR ASSESSMENT.—The Secretary, in coordination with stakeholders and the

public, shall develop a standard method for conducting risk assessments under paragraph (1) that includes the collection and management of all information necessary to identify and analyze potential hazardous navigational trends within a vessel traffic service area.

(3) INFORMATION TO BE ASSESSED.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall ensure that a risk assessment conducted under paragraph (1) includes an assessment of the following:

(i) Volume of vessel traffic, categorized by type of vessel.

(ii) Total volume of flammable, combustible, or hazardous liquid cargo transported, categorized by vessel type as provided in the Notice of Arrival, if applicable, or as determined by other means.

(iii) Data on near-miss events incidents.

(iv) Data on marine casualties.

(v) Geographic locations for near-miss events incidents and marine casualties, including latitude and longitude.

(vi) Cyclical risk factors such as weather, ice cover, seasonal water body currents, tides, bathymetry, and topography.

(vii) Weather data and information, in coordination with the Administrator of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

(B) INFORMATION STORAGE AND MANAGEMENT POLICIES.—The Secretary shall retain all information collected under subparagraph (A) and ensure policies and procedures are in place to standardize the format in which that information is retained to facilitate statistical analysis of that information to calculate within a vessel traffic service area, at a minimum, the incident rate, intervention rate, and casualty prevention rate.

(4) PUBLIC AVAILABILITY.—

(A) ASSESSMENTS AND INFORMATION.—In accordance with section 552 of title 5, the Secretary shall make any risk assessments conducted under paragraph (1) and any information collected under paragraph (3)(A) available to the public.

(B) INFORMATION IN POSSESSION OR CONTROL OF INTERNATIONAL PARTNERS.—The Secretary shall endeavor to coordinate with international partners as described in subsection (d)(2) to enter into agreements to make information collected, shared, and analyzed under that paragraph available to the public.

(C) DISCLOSURE.—The Commandant of the Coast Guard shall de-identify information prior to release to the public, including near-miss incidents.

(g) VESSEL TRAFFIC SERVICE TRAINING.—

(1) TRAINING PROGRAM.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall develop a comprehensive nationwide training program for all vessel traffic service directors, operators, and watchstanders.

(B) ELEMENTS.—The comprehensive nationwide training program under subparagraph (A) and any variances to that program under subsection (c) shall include, at a minimum, the following:

(i) Realistic vessel traffic scenarios to the maximum extent practicable that integrate—

(I) the national policy developed under subsection (b);

(II) international rules under the International Navigational Rules Act of 1977 (33 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.);

(III) inland navigation rules under part 83 of title 33, Code of Federal Regulations;

(IV) the application of vessel traffic authority; and

(V) communication with vessel traffic service users.

(ii) Proficiency training with respect to use, interpretation, and integration of available data on vessel traffic service display systems such as radar, and vessel automatic identification

system feeds.

(iii) Practical application of—

(I) the international rules under the International Navigational Rules Act of 1977 (33 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.); and

(II) the inland navigation rules under part 83 of title 33, Code of Federal Regulations.

(iv) Proficiency training with respect to the operation of radio communications equipment and any other applicable systems necessary to execute vessel traffic service authorities.

(v) Incorporation of the Standard Marine Communication Phrases adopted by the International Maritime Organization by resolution on April 4, 2000, as amended and consolidated, or any successor resolution.

(vi) Incorporation to the maximum extent possible of guidance and recommendations contained in vessel traffic services operator training, vessel traffic services supervisor training, or other relevant training set forth by the International Association of Marine Aids to Navigation and Lighthouse Authorities.

(vii) A minimum number of hours of training for an individual to complete before the individual is qualified to fill a vessel traffic services position without supervision.

(viii) Local area geographic and operational familiarization.

(ix) Such additional components as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(2) STANDARD COMPETENCY QUALIFICATION PROCESS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall develop a standard competency qualification process to be applied to all personnel assigned, employed, or working in a vessel traffic service center.

(B) APPLICATION OF PROCESS.—The competency qualification process developed under subparagraph (A) shall include measurable thresholds for determining proficiency.

(3) INTERNATIONAL AND INLAND NAVIGATION RULES TEST.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—All personnel assigned, employed, or working in a vessel traffic service center with responsibilities that include communicating, interacting, or directing vessels within a vessel traffic service area, as determined under the national policy developed under subsection (b), shall be required to pass a United States international and inland navigation rules test developed by the Secretary.

(B) ELEMENTS OF TEST.—The Secretary shall determine the content and passing standard for the rules test developed under subparagraph (A).

(C) TESTING FREQUENCY.—The Secretary shall establish a frequency, not to exceed once every 5 years, for personnel described in subparagraph (A) to be required to pass the rules test developed under such subparagraph.

(h) RESEARCH ON VESSEL TRAFFIC.—

(1) VESSEL COMMUNICATION.—The Secretary shall conduct research, in consultation with subject matter experts identified by the Secretary, to develop more effective procedures for monitoring vessel communications on radio frequencies to identify and address unsafe situations in a vessel traffic service area. The Secretary shall consider data collected under subparagraph (A) of subsection (f)(3).

(2) PROFESSIONAL MARINER REPRESENTATION.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall conduct research, in consultation with local stakeholders and subject matter experts identified by the Secretary, to evaluate and determine the feasibility, costs and benefits of representation by professional mariners on the vessel traffic service watchfloor at each vessel traffic service center.

(B) IMPLEMENTATION.—The Secretary shall implement representation by professional mariners on the vessel traffic service watchfloor at those vessel traffic service centers for which it is determined feasible and beneficial pursuant to research conducted under subparagraph (A).

(i) INCLUSION OF IDENTIFICATION SYSTEM ON CERTAIN VESSELS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The National Navigation Safety Advisory Committee shall advise and provide recommendations to the Secretary on matters relating to the practicability, economic costs, regulatory burden, and navigational impact of outfitting vessels lacking independent means of propulsion that carry flammable, combustible, or hazardous liquid cargo with vessel automatic identification systems.

(2) REGULATIONS.—Based on the evaluation under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall prescribe such regulations as the Secretary considers appropriate to establish requirements relating to the outfitting of vessels described in such subparagraph with vessel automatic identification systems.

(j) PERIODIC REVIEW OF VESSEL TRAFFIC SERVICE NEEDS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Based on the performance evaluation conducted under subsection (e) and the risk assessment conducted under subsection (f), the Secretary shall periodically review vessel traffic service areas to determine—

(A) if there are any additional vessel traffic service needs in those areas; and

(B) if a vessel traffic service area should be moved or modified.

(2) INFORMATION TO BE ASSESSED.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall ensure that a review conducted under paragraph (1) includes an assessment of the following:

(i) Volume of vessel traffic, categorized by type of vessel.

(ii) Total volume of flammable, combustible, or hazardous liquid cargo transported, categorized by vessel type as provided in the Notice of Arrival, if applicable, or as determined by other means.

(iii) Data on near miss incidents.

(iv) Data on marine casualties.

(v) Geographic locations for near-miss incidents and marine casualties, including latitude and longitude.

(vi) Cyclical risk factors such as weather, ice cover, seasonal water body currents, tides, bathymetry, and topography.

(vii) Weather data and information, in coordination with the Administrator of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

(3) STAKEHOLDER INPUT.—In conducting the periodic reviews under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall seek input from port and waterway stakeholders to identify areas of increased vessel conflicts or marine casualties that could benefit from the use of routing measures or vessel traffic service special areas to improve safety, port security, and environmental protection.

(4) DISCLOSURE.—The Commandant of the Coast Guard shall de-identify information prior to release to the public, including near miss incidents.

(k) LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR COAST GUARD VESSEL TRAFFIC SERVICE PILOTS AND NON-FEDERAL VESSEL TRAFFIC SERVICE OPERATORS.—

(1) COAST GUARD VESSEL TRAFFIC SERVICE PILOTS.—Any pilot, acting in the course and scope of his or her duties while at a Coast Guard Vessel Traffic Service Center, who provides information, advice, or communication assistance while under the supervision of a Coast Guard officer, member, or employee shall not be liable for damages caused by or related to such assistance unless the acts or omissions of such pilot constitute gross negligence or willful misconduct.

(2) NON-FEDERAL VESSEL TRAFFIC SERVICE OPERATORS.—An entity operating a non-Federal vessel traffic information service or advisory service pursuant to a duly executed written agreement with the Coast Guard, and any pilot acting on behalf of such entity, is not liable

for damages caused by or related to information, advice, or communication assistance provided by such entity or pilot while so operating or acting unless the acts or omissions of such entity or pilot constitute gross negligence or willful misconduct.

(l) The regulations required under section 109(a) of the Security and Accountability For Every Port Act of 2006 (46 U.S.C. 70001 note) dealing with notice of arrival requirements for foreign vessels on the Outer Continental Shelf shall not apply to a vessel documented under section 12105 unless the vessel arrives from a foreign port or place.

(m) EXISTING AUTHORITY.—Nothing in this section shall be construed to alter the existing authorities of the Secretary to enhance navigation, vessel safety, marine environmental protection, and to ensure safety and preservation of life and property at sea.

(n) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

(1) HAZARDOUS LIQUID CARGO.—The term "hazardous liquid cargo" has the meaning given that term in regulations prescribed under section 5103 of title 49.

(2) MARINE CASUALTY.—The term "marine casualty" has the meaning given that term in regulations prescribed under section 6101(a).

(3) VESSEL TRAFFIC SERVICE AREA.—The term "vessel traffic service area" means an area specified in subpart C of part 161 of title 33, Code of Federal Regulations, or any successor regulation.

(4) VESSEL TRAFFIC SERVICE CENTER.—The term "vessel traffic service center" means a center for the provision of vessel traffic services in a vessel traffic service area.

(5) NEAR MISS INCIDENT.—The term "near miss incident" means any occurrence or series of occurrences having the same origin, involving one or more vessels, facilities, or any combination thereof, resulting in the substantial threat of a marine casualty.

(6) DE-IDENTIFIED.—The term "de-identified" means the process by which all information that is likely to establish the identity of the specific persons or entities noted in the reports, data, or other information is removed from the reports, data, or other information.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §401(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4253; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8345, Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4711; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7321(b)(1), title LXXVII, §7701(e)(1), (2)(C), (D), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1765, 1835.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of this section, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(A), probably means the date of enactment of Pub. L. 116–283, which amended this section generally and was approved Jan. 1, 2021.

The date of the enactment of this paragraph, referred to in subsec. (e)(3), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 116–283, which was approved Jan. 1, 2021.

The International Navigational Rules Act of 1977, referred to in subsec. (g)(1)(B)(i)(II), (iii)(I), is Pub. L. 95–75, July 27, 1977, 91 Stat. 308, which is classified principally to chapter 30 (§1601 et seq.) of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1601 of Title 33 and Tables.

CODIFICATION

The text of section 704 of Pub. L. 112–213, which was set out as a note below and was transferred to this section and redesignated as subsec. (l), was based on Pub. L. 112–213, title VII, §704, Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1580, as amended by Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXVII, §7701(e)(2)(A), (B), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1835.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (f)(3)(A)(vi). Pub. L. 119–60, §7321(b)(1)(A)(i), inserted "ice cover," after "weather,".

Subsec. (f)(3)(A)(vii). Pub. L. 119–60, §7321(b)(1)(A)(ii), substituted "Weather data and information, in coordination with the Administrator of" for "Weather data, in coordination with".

Subsec. (j)(2)(A)(vi). Pub. L. 119–60, §7321(b)(1)(B)(i), inserted "ice cover," after "weather,".

Subsec. (j)(2)(A)(vii). Pub. L. 119–60, §7321(b)(1)(B)(ii), substituted "Weather data and information, in

coordination with the Administrator of" for "Weather data, in coordination with".

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 119–60, §7701(e)(2)(C), (D), transferred section 704 of Pub. L. 112–213 to this section and renumbered it as subsec. (l). Former subsec. (l) redesignated (m). See Codification note above.

Subsecs. (m), (n). Pub. L. 119–60, §7701(e)(1), redesignated subsecs. (l) and (m) as (m) and (n), respectively.

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section consisted of subsecs. (a) to (c) relating to establishment of vessel traffic services, cooperative agreements, and limitation of liability for Coast Guard Vessel Traffic Service pilots and non-federal vessel traffic service operators, respectively.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

GREAT LAKES AND SAINT LAWRENCE RIVER COOPERATIVE VESSEL TRAFFIC SERVICE

Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7321(g), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1767, provided that: "Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 18, 2025], the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall issue or amend such regulations as are necessary to address any applicable arrangements with the Canadian Coast Guard regarding vessel traffic services cooperation and vessel traffic management data exchanges within the Saint Lawrence Seaway and the Great Lakes."

NO WAKE ZONES IN NAVIGATION CHANNELS

Pub. L. 114–322, title I, §1149, Dec. 16, 2016, 130 Stat. 1660, as amended by Pub. L. 116–260, div. AA, title III, §347, Dec. 27, 2020, 134 Stat. 2715, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—At the request of a State or local official, the Secretary [of the Army], in consultation with the Commandant of the Coast Guard, shall promptly identify and, subject to the considerations in subsection (b), allow the implementation of measures for addressing navigation safety hazards in a covered navigation channel resulting from wakes created by covered vessels identified by such official, while maintaining the navigability of the channel.

"(b) CONSIDERATIONS.—In identifying measures under subsection (a) with respect to a covered navigation channel, the Secretary shall consider, at a minimum, whether—

"(1) State or local law enforcement officers have documented the existence of safety hazards in the channel that are the direct result of excessive wakes from covered vessels present in the channel;

"(2) the Secretary has made a determination that safety concerns exist in the channel and that the proposed measures will remedy those concerns without significant impacts to the navigable capacity of the channel; and

"(3) the measures are consistent with any recommendations made by the Commandant of the Coast Guard to ensure the safety of vessels operating in the channel and the safety of the passengers and crew aboard such vessels.

"(c) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

"(1) COVERED NAVIGATION CHANNEL.—The term 'covered navigation channel' means a navigation channel that—

"(A) is federally marked or maintained;

"(B) is part of the Atlantic Intracoastal Waterway; and

"(C) is adjacent to a marina.

"(2) COVERED VESSEL.—The term 'covered vessel' means a recreational vessel or an uninspected passenger vessel, as such terms are defined in section 2101 of title 46, United States Code.

"(d) SAVINGS CLAUSE.—Nothing in this section shall be construed to relieve the master, pilot, or other person responsible for determining the speed of a vessel from the obligation to comply with the inland navigation regulations promulgated pursuant to section 3 of the Inland Navigational Rules Act of 1980 (33 U.S.C. 2071) or any other applicable laws or regulations governing the safe navigation of a vessel."

NOTICE OF ARRIVAL FOR FOREIGN VESSELS ON THE OUTER CONTINENTAL SHELF

Pub. L. 112–213, title VII, §704, Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1580, as amended by Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXVII, §7701(e)(2)(A), (B), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1835, formerly set out as a note under this section, was transferred to subsec. (l) of this section.

Pub. L. 109–347, title I, §109, Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1893, provided that:

"(a) NOTICE OF ARRIVAL.—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 13, 2006], the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall update and finalize the rulemaking on notice of arrival for foreign vessels on the Outer Continental Shelf.

"(b) CONTENT OF REGULATIONS.—The regulations promulgated pursuant to subsection (a) shall be

consistent with information required under the Notice of Arrival under section 160.206 of title 33, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 13, 2006]."

§70002. Special powers

The Secretary may order any vessel, in a port or place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States or in the navigable waters of the United States, to operate or anchor in a manner the Secretary directs if—

(1) the Secretary has reasonable cause to believe such vessel does not comply with any regulation issued under section 70034 or any other applicable law or treaty;

(2) the Secretary determines such vessel does not satisfy the conditions for port entry set forth in section 70021 or 70022 of this title; or

(3) by reason of weather, visibility, sea conditions, port congestion, other hazardous circumstances, or the condition of such vessel, the Secretary is satisfied such direction is justified in the interest of safety.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §401(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4255; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8508(2)(A), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4755.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Par. (2). Pub. L. 116–283 inserted "or 70022" after "section 70021".

§70003. Port access routes

(a) AUTHORITY TO DESIGNATE.—Except as provided in subsection (b) and subject to the requirements of subsection (c), in order to provide safe access routes for the movement of vessel traffic proceeding to or from ports or places subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, the Secretary shall designate necessary fairways and traffic separation schemes for vessels operating in the territorial sea of the United States and in high seas approaches, outside the territorial sea, to such ports or places. Such a designation shall recognize, within the designated area, the paramount right of navigation over all other uses.

(b) LIMITATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—No designation may be made by the Secretary under this section if—

(A) the Secretary determines such a designation, as implemented, would deprive any person of the effective exercise of a right granted by a lease or permit executed or issued under other applicable provisions of law; and

(B) such right has become vested before the time of publication of the notice required by paragraph (1) of subsection (c).

(2) CONSULTATION REQUIRED.—The Secretary shall make the determination under paragraph (1)(A) after consultation with the head of the agency responsible for executing the lease or issuing the permit.

(c) CONSIDERATION OF OTHER USES.—Before making a designation under subsection (a), and in accordance with the requirements of section 70004, the Secretary shall—

(1) undertake a study of the potential traffic density and the need for safe access routes for vessels in any area for which fairways or traffic separation schemes are proposed or that may otherwise be considered and publish notice of such undertaking in the Federal Register;

(2) in consultation with the Secretary of State, the Secretary of the Interior, the Secretary of Commerce, the Secretary of the Army, and the Governors of affected States, as their responsibilities may require, take into account all other uses of the area under consideration,

including, as appropriate, the exploration for, or exploitation of, oil, gas, or other mineral resources, the construction or operation of deepwater ports or other structures on or above the seabed or subsoil of the submerged lands or the Outer Continental Shelf of the United States, the establishment or operation of marine or estuarine sanctuaries, and activities involving recreational or commercial fishing; and

(3) to the extent practicable, reconcile the need for safe access routes with the needs of all other reasonable uses of the area involved.

(d) STUDY.—In carrying out the Secretary's responsibilities under subsection (c), the Secretary shall—

(1) proceed expeditiously to complete any study undertaken; and

(2) after completion of such a study, promptly—

(A) issue a notice of proposed rulemaking for the designation contemplated; or

(B) publish in the Federal Register a notice that no designation is contemplated as a result of the study and the reason for such determination.

(e) IMPLEMENTATION OF DESIGNATION.—In connection with a designation made under this section, the Secretary—

(1) shall issue reasonable rules and regulations governing the use of such designated areas, including rules and regulations regarding the applicability of rules 9 and 10 of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, relating to narrow channels and traffic separation schemes, respectively, in waters where such regulations apply;

(2) to the extent that the Secretary finds reasonable and necessary to effectuate the purposes of the designation, make the use of designated fairways and traffic separation schemes mandatory for specific types and sizes of vessels, foreign and domestic, operating in the territorial sea of the United States and for specific types and sizes of vessels of the United States operating on the high seas beyond the territorial sea of the United States;

(3) may, from time to time, as necessary, adjust the location or limits of designated fairways or traffic separation schemes in order to accommodate the needs of other uses that cannot be reasonably accommodated otherwise, except that such an adjustment may not, in the judgment of the Secretary, unacceptably adversely affect the purpose for which the existing designation was made and the need for which continues; and

(4) shall, through appropriate channels—

(A) notify cognizant international organizations of any designation, or adjustment thereof; and

(B) take action to seek the cooperation of foreign States in making it mandatory for vessels under their control to use, to the same extent as required by the Secretary for vessels of the United States, any fairway or traffic separation scheme designated under this section in any area of the high seas.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §401(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4255.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, referred to in subsec. (e)(1), came into effect pursuant to the Convention on the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972. See International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972 note under section 1602 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

PORT ACCESS ROUTES

Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7349, Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1782, provided that:

"(a) REGULATION.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 18, 2025], the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall issue a regulation for nearshore and offshore shipping safety fairways, to include a minimum appropriate width of not less than the width proposed in the proposed rule of the Coast Guard titled 'Shipping Safety Fairways Along the Atlantic Coast', issued on January 19, 2024 (89 Fed. Reg. 3587).

"(b) EXCEPTION.—The minimum appropriate width under subsection (a) shall not apply to connector, cutacross, or cutoff fairways, Traffic Separation Schemes, or precautionary areas.

"(c) APPLICABILITY.—In issuing the regulation under subsection (a), the Secretary shall apply the regulation to the geographic area covered by the proposed rule of the Coast Guard titled 'Shipping Safety Fairways Along the Atlantic Coast', issued on January 19, 2024 (89 Fed. Reg. 3587).

"(d) EFFECTIVE DATE.—The regulation issued under subsection (a) shall take effect on December 31, 2026."

§70004. Considerations by Secretary

In carrying out the duties of the Secretary under sections 70001, 70002, and 70003, the Secretary shall—

(1) take into account all relevant factors concerning navigation and vessel safety, protection of the marine environment, and the safety and security of United States ports and waterways, including—

(A) the scope and degree of the risk or hazard involved;

(B) vessel traffic characteristics and trends, including traffic volume, the sizes and types of vessels involved, potential interference with the flow of commercial traffic, the presence of any unusual cargoes, and other similar factors;

(C) port and waterway configurations and variations in local conditions of geography, climate, and other similar factors;

(D) the need for granting exemptions for the installation and use of equipment or devices for use with vessel traffic services for certain classes of small vessels, such as self-propelled fishing vessels and recreational vessels;

(E) the proximity of fishing grounds, oil and gas drilling and production operations, or any other potential or actual conflicting activity;

(F) environmental factors;

(G) economic impact and effects;

(H) existing vessel traffic services; and

(I) local practices and customs, including voluntary arrangements and agreements within the maritime community; and

(2) at the earliest possible time, consult with and receive and consider the views of representatives of the maritime community, ports and harbor authorities or associations, environmental groups, and other persons who may be affected by the proposed actions.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §401(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4257.)

§70005. International agreements

(a) TRANSMITTAL OF REGULATIONS.—The Secretary shall transmit, via the Secretary of State, to appropriate international bodies or forums, any regulations issued under this subchapter, for consideration as international standards.

(b) AGREEMENTS.—The President is authorized and encouraged to—

(1) enter into negotiations and conclude and execute agreements with neighboring nations, to establish compatible vessel standards and vessel traffic services, and to establish, operate, and maintain international vessel traffic services, in areas and under circumstances of mutual concern; and

(2) enter into negotiations, through appropriate international bodies, and conclude and execute

agreements to establish vessel traffic services in appropriate areas of the high seas.

(c) OPERATIONS.—The Secretary, pursuant to any agreement negotiated under subsection (b) that is binding upon the United States in accordance with constitutional requirements, may—

(1) require vessels operating in an area of a vessel traffic service to utilize or to comply with the vessel traffic service, including the carrying or installation of equipment and devices as necessary for the use of the service; and

(2) waive, by order or regulation, the application of any United States law or regulation concerning the design, construction, operation, equipment, personnel qualifications, and manning standards for vessels operating in waters over which the United States exercises jurisdiction if such vessel is not en route to or from a United States port or place, and if vessels en route to or from a United States port or place are accorded equivalent waivers of laws and regulations of the neighboring nation, when operating in waters over which that nation exercises jurisdiction.

(d) SHIP REPORTING SYSTEMS.—The Secretary, in cooperation with the International Maritime Organization, may implement and enforce two mandatory ship reporting systems, consistent with international law, with respect to vessels subject to such reporting systems entering the following areas of the Atlantic Ocean:

(1) Cape Cod Bay, Massachusetts Bay, and Great South Channel (in the area generally bounded by a line starting from a point on Cape Ann, Massachusetts at 42 deg. 39 N., 70 deg. 37 W; then northeast to 42 deg. 45 N., 70 deg. 13 W; then southeast to 42 deg. 10 N., 68 deg. 31 W, then south to 41 deg. 00 N., 68 deg. 31 W; then west to 41 deg. 00 N., 69 deg. 17 W; then northeast to 42 deg. 05 N., 70 deg. 02 W, then west to 42 deg. 04 N., 70 deg. 10 W; and then along the Massachusetts shoreline of Cape Cod Bay and Massachusetts Bay back to the point on Cape Ann at 42 deg. 39 N., 70 deg. 37 W).

(2) In the coastal waters of the Southeastern United States within about 25 nm along a 90 nm stretch of the Atlantic seaboard (in an area generally extending from the shoreline east to longitude 80 deg. 51.6 W with the southern and northern boundary at latitudes 30 deg. 00 N., 31 deg. 27 N., respectively).

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §401(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4257.)

§70006. Establishment by Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating of anchorage grounds and regulations generally

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Homeland Security is authorized, empowered, and directed to define and establish anchorage grounds for vessels in all harbors, rivers, bays, and other navigable waters of the United States whenever it is manifest to the said Secretary that the maritime or commercial interests of the United States require such anchorage grounds for safe navigation and the establishment of such anchorage grounds shall have been recommended by the Chief of Engineers, and to adopt suitable rules and regulations in relation thereto; and such rules and regulations shall be enforced by the Coast Guard under the direction of the Secretary of Transportation: *Provided*, That at ports or places where there is no Coast Guard vessel available such rules and regulations may be enforced by the Chief of Engineers under the direction of the Secretary of Homeland Security. In the event of the violation of any such rules and regulations by the owner, master, or person in charge of any vessel, such owner, master, or person in charge of such vessel shall be liable to a penalty of up to $10,000. Each day during which a violation continues shall constitute a separate violation. The said vessel may be holden for the payment of such penalty, and may be seized and proceeded against summarily by libel for the recovery of the same in any United States district court for the district within which such vessel may be and in the name of the officer designated by the Secretary of Homeland Security.

(b) DEFINITION.—As used in this section "navigable waters of the United States" includes all waters of the territorial sea of the United States as described in Presidential Proclamation No. 5928

of December 27, 1988.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8501(a)(6), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4745.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Presidential Proclamation No. 5928, referred to in subsec. (b), is set out under section 1331 of Title 43, Public Lands.

CODIFICATION

Section, as added and amended by Pub. L. 116–283, is based on section 7 of act Mar. 4, 1915, ch. 142, 38 Stat. 1053; act Aug. 4, 1949, ch. 393, §§1, 20, 63 Stat. 496, 561; Pub. L. 89–670, §6(b)(1), Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 938; Pub. L. 97–449, §2(d)(1), Jan. 12, 1983, 96 Stat. 2440; Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §902(j), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 568; Pub. L. 111–281, title III, §301, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2923, which was formerly classified to section 471 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters, before being transferred to this title and renumbered as this section.

Section was originally from the Rivers and Harbors Appropriation Act of 1915.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

Section probably supersedes acts May 16, 1888, ch. 257, §§1, 2, 25 Stat. 151, relative to anchorage grounds in port of New York, Mar. 3, 1899, ch. 424, §1, 30 Stat. 1074, extending anchorage regulations for port of New York, Feb. 6, 1893, ch. 64, §§1, 2, 27 Stat. 431, relative to anchorage grounds in port of Chicago, and June 6, 1900, ch. 819, §§1, 2, 31 Stat. 682, relative to anchorage grounds in Kennebec River.

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, §8501(a)(6), transferred section 7 of act Mar. 4, 1915, ch. 142, to this title and renumbered it as this section, substituted "Establishment by Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating of anchorage grounds and regulations generally" for "Establishment by Secretary of Homeland Security of anchorage grounds and regulations generally" in section catchline, and realigned margins. See Codification note above.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

"Coast Guard" and "Coast Guard vessel" substituted in text for "Revenue Cutter Service" and "revenue cutter", respectively, the Revenue Cutter Service and Life-Saving Service having been combined to form the Coast Guard by act Jan. 28, 1915, ch. 20, §1, 38 Stat. 800. That act was repealed by act Aug. 4, 1949, ch. 393, §20, 63 Stat. 561, section 1 of which reestablished the Coast Guard by enacting Title 14, Coast Guard.

"Secretary of Transportation" substituted for "Secretary of the Treasury" in provision covering enforcement of rules and regulations by Coast Guard pursuant to section 6(b)(1) of Pub. L. 89–670, which transferred to Secretary of Transportation functions, powers, and duties of Secretary of the Treasury and of other offices and officers of Department of the Treasury relating to Coast Guard. Section 6(b)(2) of Pub. L. 89–670, however, provided that notwithstanding such transfer of functions, the Coast Guard shall operate as part of the Navy in time of war or when President directs as provided in former section 3 (now 103) of Title 14, Coast Guard. See section 108 of Title 49, Transportation. For subsequent transfers relating to the Secretary of Transportation and the Coast Guard, see below.

Section 6(g)(1)(A) of Pub. L. 89–670, transferred functions, powers, and duties of Secretary of the Army [formerly War] and other officers and offices of Department of the Army [formerly War] relating generally to water vessel anchorages under this section to Secretary of Transportation. Pub. L. 97–449 amended this section to reflect the transfer made by section 6(g)(1)(A) of Pub. L. 89–670, and repealed section 6(g)(1)(A).

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

§70007. Anchorage grounds

(a) ANCHORAGE GROUNDS.—

(1) ESTABLISHMENT.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall define and establish anchorage grounds in the navigable waters of the United States for vessels operating in such waters.

(2) RELEVANT FACTORS FOR ESTABLISHMENT.—In carrying out paragraph (1), the Secretary shall take into account all relevant factors concerning navigational safety, protection of the marine environment, proximity to undersea pipelines and cables, safe and efficient use of Marine Transportation System, and national security.

(b) VESSEL REQUIREMENTS.—Vessels, of certain sizes or type determined by the Secretary, shall—

(1) set and maintain an anchor alarm for the duration of an anchorage;

(2) comply with any directions or orders issued by the Captain of the Port; and

(3) comply with any applicable anchorage regulations.

(c) PROHIBITIONS.—A vessel may not—

(1) anchor in any Federal navigation channel unless authorized or directed to by the Captain of the Port;

(2) anchor in near proximity, within distances determined by the Coast Guard, to an undersea pipeline or cable, unless authorized or directed to by the Captain of the Port; and

(3) anchor or remain anchored in an anchorage ground during any period in which the Captain of the Port orders closure of the anchorage ground due to inclement weather, navigational hazard, a threat to the environment, or other safety or security concern.

(d) SAFETY EXCEPTION.—Nothing in this section shall be construed to prevent a vessel from taking actions necessary to maintain the safety of the vessel or to prevent the loss of life or property.

(Added Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXIII, §11318(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4090.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

SAVINGS CLAUSE

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXIII, §11318(c), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4091, provided that: "Nothing in this section [enacting this section and provisions set out as a note under this section] shall limit any authority available, as of the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022], to the captain of a port with respect to safety measures or any other authority as necessary for the safety of vessels located in anchorage grounds in the navigable waters of the United States."

CONSTRUCTION; APPLICABILITY OF REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXIII, §11318(e), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4091, provided that: "The amendments made by subsection (a) [enacting this section] may not be construed to alter any existing rules, regulations, or final agency actions issued under section 70006 of title 46, United States Code, as in effect on the day before the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2022], until all regulations required under subsection (b) [136 Stat. 4091] take effect."

SUBCHAPTER II—PORTS AND WATERWAYS SAFETY

§70011. Waterfront safety

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may take such action as is necessary to—

(1) prevent damage to, or the destruction of, any bridge or other structure on or in the navigable waters of the United States, or any land structure or shore area immediately adjacent to such waters, including damage or destruction resulting from cyber incidents, transnational organized crime, or foreign state threats; and

(2) protect the navigable waters and the resources therein from harm resulting from vessel or structure damage, destruction, or loss or harm resulting from cyber incidents, transnational organized crime, or foreign state threats.

(b) ACTIONS AUTHORIZED.—Actions authorized by subsection (a) include—

(1) establishing procedures, measures, and standards for the handling, loading, unloading, storage, stowage, and movement on a structure (including the emergency removal, control, and disposition) of explosives or other dangerous articles and substances, including oil or hazardous material as those terms are defined in section 2101;

(2) prescribing minimum safety equipment requirements for a structure to assure adequate protection from fire, explosion, natural disaster, and other serious accidents or casualties;

(3) establishing water or waterfront safety zones, or other measures, for limited, controlled, or conditional access and activity when necessary for the protection of any vessel, structure, waters, or shore area;

(4) establishing procedures for examination to assure compliance with the requirements prescribed under this section; and

(5) prohibiting a representative of a government of country that the Secretary of State has determined has repeatedly provided support for acts of international terrorism under section 620A of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2371) from visiting a facility for which a facility security plan is required under section 70103(c).

(c) STATE LAW.—Nothing in this section, with respect to structures, prohibits a State or political subdivision thereof from prescribing higher safety equipment requirements or safety standards than those that may be prescribed by regulations under this section.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §401(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4258; amended Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7321(c), (d), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1766.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 119–60, §7321(c)(1), inserted ", including damage or destruction resulting from cyber incidents, transnational organized crime, or foreign state threats" after "adjacent to such waters".

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 119–60, §7321(c)(2), inserted "or harm resulting from cyber incidents, transnational organized crime, or foreign state threats" after "loss".

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 119–60, §7321(d), added par. (5).

§70012. Navigational hazards

(a) REPORTING PROCEDURE.—The Secretary shall establish a program to encourage fishermen and other vessel operators to report potential or existing navigational hazards involving pipelines to the Secretary through Coast Guard field offices.

(b) SECRETARY'S RESPONSE.—

(1) NOTIFICATION BY THE OPERATOR OF A PIPELINE.—Upon notification by the operator of a pipeline of a hazard to navigation with respect to that pipeline, the Secretary shall immediately notify Coast Guard headquarters, the Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration, other affected Federal and State agencies, and vessel owners and operators in the pipeline's vicinity.

(2) NOTIFICATION BY OTHER PERSONS.—Upon notification by any other person of a hazard or potential hazard to navigation with respect to a pipeline, the Secretary shall promptly

determine whether a hazard exists, and if so shall immediately notify Coast Guard headquarters, the Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration, other affected Federal and State agencies, vessel owners and operators in the pipeline's vicinity, and the owner and operator of the pipeline.

(c) PIPELINE DEFINED.—For purposes of this section, the term "pipeline" has the meaning given the term "pipeline facility" in section 60101(a)(18) of title 49.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §401(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4259.)

§70013. Requirement to notify Coast Guard of release of objects into the navigable waters of the United States

(a) REQUIREMENT.—As soon as a person has knowledge of any release from a vessel or facility into the navigable waters of the United States of any object that creates an obstruction prohibited under section 10 of the Act of March 3, 1899, popularly known as the Rivers and Harbors Appropriations Act of 1899 (33 U.S.C. 403), such person shall notify the Secretary and the Secretary of the Army of such release.

(b) RESTRICTION ON USE OF NOTIFICATION.—Any notification provided by an individual in accordance with subsection (a) may not be used against such individual in any criminal case, except a prosecution for perjury or for giving a false statement.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §401(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4259.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 10 of the Act of March 3, 1899, popularly known as the Rivers and Harbors Appropriations Act of 1899, referred to in subsec. (a), means section 10 of act Mar. 3, 1899, ch. 425, 30 Stat. 1151, known as the Rivers and Harbors Appropriation Act of 1899, which is classified to section 403 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

§70014. Aiming laser pointer at vessel

(a) PROHIBITION.—It shall be unlawful to cause the beam of a laser pointer to strike a vessel operating on the navigable waters of the United States.

(b) EXCEPTIONS.—This section shall not apply to a member or element of the Department of Defense or Department of Homeland Security acting in an official capacity for the purpose of research, development, operations, testing, or training.

(c) LASER POINTER DEFINED.—In this section the term "laser pointer" means any device designed or used to amplify electromagnetic radiation by stimulated emission that emits a beam designed to be used by the operator as a pointer or highlighter to indicate, mark, or identify a specific position, place, item, or object.

(Added Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII, §8342(a), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4709.)

SUBCHAPTER III—CONDITION FOR ENTRY INTO PORTS IN THE UNITED STATES

§70021. Conditions for entry to ports in the United States

(a) IN GENERAL.—No vessel that is subject to chapter 37 shall operate in the navigable waters

of the United States or transfer cargo or residue in any port or place under the jurisdiction of the United States, if such vessel—

(1) has a history of accidents, pollution incidents, or serious repair problems that, as determined by the Secretary, creates reason to believe that such vessel may be unsafe or may create a threat to the marine environment;

(2) fails to comply with any applicable regulation issued under section 70034, chapter 37, or any other applicable law or treaty;

(3) discharges oil or hazardous material in violation of any law of the United States or in a manner or quantities inconsistent with any treaty to which the United States is a party;

(4) does not comply with any applicable vessel traffic service requirements;

(5) is manned by one or more officers who are licensed by a certificating State that the Secretary has determined, pursuant to section 9101 of title 46, does not have standards for licensing and certification of seafarers that are comparable to or more stringent than United States standards or international standards that are accepted by the United States;

(6) is not manned in compliance with manning levels as determined by the Secretary to be necessary to insure the safe navigation of the vessel; or

(7) while underway, does not have at least one licensed deck officer on the navigation bridge who is capable of clearly understanding English.

(b) EXCEPTIONS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may allow provisional entry of a vessel that is not in compliance with subsection (a), if the owner or operator of such vessel proves, to the satisfaction of the Secretary, that such vessel is not unsafe or a threat to the marine environment, and if such entry is necessary for the safety of the vessel or persons aboard.

(2) PROVISIONS NOT APPLICABLE.—Paragraphs (1), (2), (3), and (4) of subsection (a) of this section shall not apply to a vessel allowed provisional entry under paragraph (1) if the owner or operator of such vessel proves, to the satisfaction of the Secretary, that such vessel is no longer unsafe or a threat to the marine environment, and is no longer in violation of any applicable law, treaty, regulation, or condition, as appropriate.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §401(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4260.)

§70022. Prohibition on entry and operation

(a) PROHIBITION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as otherwise provided in this section, no vessel described in subsection (b) may enter or operate in the navigable waters of the United States or transfer cargo in any port or place under the jurisdiction of the United States.

(2) LIMITATIONS ON APPLICATION.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The prohibition under paragraph (1) shall not apply with respect to—

(i) a vessel described in subsection (b)(1), if the Secretary of State determines that—

(I) the vessel is owned or operated by or on behalf of a country the government of which the Secretary of State determines is closely cooperating with the United States with respect to implementing the applicable United Nations Security Council resolutions (as such term is defined in section 3 of the North Korea Sanctions and Policy Enhancement Act of 2016); or

(II) it is in the national security interest not to apply the prohibition to such vessel; or

(ii) a vessel described in subsection (b)(2), if the Secretary of State determines that the vessel is no longer registered as described in that subsection.

(B) NOTICE.—Not later than 15 days after making a determination under subparagraph (A), the Secretary of State shall submit to the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on

Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate written notice of the determination and the basis upon which the determination was made.

(C) PUBLICATION.—The Secretary of State shall publish a notice in the Federal Register of each determination made under subparagraph (A).

(b) VESSELS DESCRIBED.—A vessel referred to in subsection (a) is a foreign vessel for which a notice of arrival is required to be filed under section 70001(a)(5), and that—

(1) is on the most recent list of vessels published in the Federal Register under subsection (c)(2); or

(2) more than 180 days after the publication of such list, is knowingly registered, pursuant to the 1958 Convention on the High Seas entered into force on September 30, 1962, by a government the agents or instrumentalities of which are maintaining a registration of a vessel that is included on such list.

(c) INFORMATION AND PUBLICATION.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating, with the concurrence of the Secretary of State, shall—

(1) maintain timely information on the registrations of all foreign vessels over 300 gross tons that are known to be—

(A) owned or operated by or on behalf of the Government of North Korea or a North Korean person;

(B) owned or operated by or on behalf of any country in which a sea port is located, the operator of which the President has identified in the most recent report submitted under section 205(a)(1)(A) of the North Korea Sanctions and Policy Enhancement Act of 2016; or

(C) owned or operated by or on behalf of any country identified by the President as a country that has not complied with the applicable United Nations Security Council resolutions (as such term is defined in section 3 of such Act); and

(2) periodically publish in the Federal Register a list of the vessels described in paragraph (1).

(d) NOTIFICATION OF GOVERNMENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of State shall notify each government, the agents or instrumentalities of which are maintaining a registration of a foreign vessel that is included on a list published under subsection (c)(2), not later than 30 days after such publication, that all vessels registered under such government's authority are subject to subsection (a).

(2) ADDITIONAL NOTIFICATION.—In the case of a government that continues to maintain a registration for a vessel that is included on such list after receiving an initial notification under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall issue an additional notification to such government not later than 120 days after the publication of a list under subsection (c)(2).

(e) NOTIFICATION OF VESSELS.—Upon receiving a notice of arrival under section 70001(a)(5) from a vessel described in subsection (b), the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall notify the master of such vessel that the vessel may not enter or operate in the navigable waters of the United States or transfer cargo in any port or place under the jurisdiction of the United States, unless—

(1) the Secretary of State has made a determination under subsection (a)(2); or

(2) the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating allows provisional entry of the vessel, or transfer of cargo from the vessel, under subsection (f).

(f) PROVISIONAL ENTRY OR CARGO TRANSFER.—Notwithstanding any other provision of this section, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating may allow provisional entry of, or transfer of cargo from, a vessel, if such entry or transfer is necessary for the safety of the vessel or persons aboard.

(g) RIGHT OF INNOCENT PASSAGE AND RIGHT OF TRANSIT PASSAGE.—This section shall not be construed as authority to restrict the right of innocent passage or the right of transit passage as recognized under international law.

(Added and amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8508(1), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4755; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXVII, §7701(a), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1835.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 3 and 205(a)(1)(A) of the North Korea Sanctions and Policy Enhancement Act of 2016, referred to in subsecs. (a)(2)(A)(i)(I) and (c)(1)(B), (C), are classified to sections 9202 and 9225(a)(1)(A), respectively, of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse.

CODIFICATION

Section, as added and amended by Pub. L. 116–283, is based on section 16 of Pub. L. 92–340, as added Pub. L. 115–44, title III, §315(a), Aug. 2, 2017, 131 Stat. 948, which was formerly classified to section 1232c of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters, repealed by Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §402(e), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4264, then transferred to this title and renumbered as this section effective upon the enactment of such Pub. L. 115–282 and notwithstanding such repeal.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 119–60 substituted "the Federal Register" for "Federal Register".

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, §8508(1)(A), transferred section 16 of Pub. L. 92–340 to this title and renumbered it as this section. See Codification note above.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 116–283, §8508(1)(B)(i), substituted "section 70001(a)(5)" for "section 4(a)(5)" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 116–283, §8508(1)(B)(ii), substituted "periodically" for "not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this section, and periodically thereafter,".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 116–283, §8508(1)(B)(i), substituted "section 70001(a)(5)" for "section 4(a)(5)" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 116–283, §8508(1)(B)(iii), struck out subsec. (h). Text read as follows: "In this section, the term 'foreign vessel' has the meaning given that term in section 110 of title 46, United States Code."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

PROHIBITION ON ENTRY AND OPERATION OF RUSSIAN VESSELS

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11524, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4143, provided that:

"(a) PROHIBITION.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as otherwise provided in this section, during the period in which Executive Order 14065 (87 Fed. Reg. 10293, relating to blocking certain Russian property or transactions), or any successor Executive Order is in effect, no vessel described in subsection (b) may enter or operate in the navigable waters of the United States or transfer cargo in any port or place under the jurisdiction of the United States.

"(2) LIMITATIONS ON APPLICATION.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—The prohibition under paragraph (1) shall not apply with respect to a vessel described in subsection (b) if the Secretary of State determines that—

"(i) the vessel is owned or operated by a Russian national or operated by the government of the Russian Federation; and

"(ii) it is in the national security interest not to apply the prohibition to such vessel.

"(B) NOTICE.—Not later than 15 days after making a determination under subparagraph (A), the Secretary of State shall submit to the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate written notice of the determination and the basis upon which the determination was made.

"(C) PUBLICATION.—The Secretary of State shall publish a notice in the Federal Register of each determination made under subparagraph (A).

"(3) SAVINGS CLAUSE.—The prohibition under paragraph (1) shall not apply with respect to

vessels engaged in passage permitted under international law.

"(b) VESSELS DESCRIBED.—A vessel referred to in subsection (a) is a vessel owned or operated by a Russian national or operated by the government of the Russian Federation.

"(c) INFORMATION AND PUBLICATION.—The Secretary, with the concurrence of the Secretary of State, shall—

"(1) maintain timely information on the registrations of all foreign vessels owned or operated by or on behalf of the Government of the Russian Federation, a Russian national, or a entity organized under the laws of the Russian Federation or any jurisdiction within the Russian Federation; and

"(2) periodically publish in the Federal Register a list of the vessels described in paragraph (1).

"(d) NOTIFICATION OF GOVERNMENTS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of State shall notify each government, the agents or instrumentalities of which are maintaining a registration of a foreign vessel that is included on a list published under subsection (c)(2), not later than 30 days after such publication, that all vessels registered under such government's authority are subject to subsection (a).

"(2) ADDITIONAL NOTIFICATION.—In the case of a government that continues to maintain a registration for a vessel that is included on such list after receiving an initial notification under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall issue an additional notification to such government not later than 120 days after the publication of a list under subsection (c)(2).

"(e) NOTIFICATION OF VESSELS.—Upon receiving a notice of arrival under section 70001(a)(5) of title 46, United States Code, from a vessel described in subsection (b), the Secretary shall notify the master of such vessel that the vessel may not enter or operate in the navigable waters of the United States or transfer cargo in any port or place under the jurisdiction of the United States, unless—

"(1) the Secretary of State has made a determination under subsection (a)(2); or

"(2) the Secretary allows provisional entry of the vessel, or transfer of cargo from the vessel, under subsection (f).

"(f) PROVISIONAL ENTRY OR CARGO TRANSFER.—Notwithstanding any other provision of this section, the Secretary may allow provisional entry of, or transfer of cargo from, a vessel, if such entry or transfer is necessary for the safety of the vessel or persons aboard."

[For definition of "Secretary" as used in section 11524 of Pub. L. 117–263, set out above, see section 11002 of Pub. L. 117–263, set out as a note under section 106 of Title 14, Coast Guard.]

SUBCHAPTER IV—DEFINITIONS, REGULATIONS, ENFORCEMENT, INVESTIGATORY POWERS, APPLICABILITY

§70031. Definitions

As used in subchapters I through III and this subchapter, unless the context otherwise requires:

(1) The term "marine environment" means—

(A) the navigable waters of the United States and the land and resources therein and thereunder;

(B) the waters and fishery resources of any area over which the United States asserts exclusive fishery management authority;

(C) the seabed and subsoil of the Outer Continental Shelf of the United States, the resources thereof, and the waters superjacent thereto; and

(D) the recreational, economic, and scenic values of such waters and resources.

(2) The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating, except that such term means the Secretary of Transportation with respect to the application of this chapter to the Saint Lawrence Seaway.

(3) The term "navigable waters of the United States" includes all waters of the territorial sea of the United States as described in Presidential Proclamation No. 5928 of December 27, 1988.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §401(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4261; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8507(a)(4), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4753.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Presidential Proclamation No. 5928, referred to in par. (3), is set out under section 1331 of Title 43, Public Lands.

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "I through III" for "A through C" in introductory provisions.

§70032. Delegation of ports and waterways authorities in Saint Lawrence Seaway

(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsection (b), the authority granted to the Secretary under sections 70001, 70002, 70003, 70004, and 70011 may not be delegated with respect to the Saint Lawrence Seaway to any agency other than the Great Lakes St. Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation. Any other authority granted the Secretary under subchapters I through III and this subchapter shall be delegated by the Secretary to the Great Lakes St. Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation to the extent the Secretary determines such delegation is necessary for the proper operation of the Saint Lawrence Seaway.

(b) EXCEPTION.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating, after consultation with the Secretary or the head of an agency to which the Secretary has delegated the authorities in subsection (a), may—

(1) issue and enforce special orders in accordance with section 70002;

(2) establish water or waterfront safety zones, or other measures, for limited, controlled, or conditional access and activity when necessary for the protection of any vessel structure, waters, or shore area, as permitted in section 70011(b)(3); and

(3) take actions for port, harbor, and coastal facility security in accordance with section 70116.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §401(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4261; amended Pub. L. 116–260, div. AA, title V, §512(c)(6)(F), Dec. 27, 2020, 134 Stat. 2757; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8507(a)(5), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4753; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7321(e), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1767.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The authority granted to the Secretary under sections 70001, 70002, 70003, 70004, and 70011 may not be delegated with respect to the Saint Lawrence Seaway to any agency other than the Great Lakes St. Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation. Any other authority granted the Secretary under subchapters I through III and this subchapter shall be delegated by the Secretary to the Great Lakes St. Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation to the extent the Secretary determines such delegation is necessary for the proper operation of the Saint Lawrence Seaway."

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "I through III" for "A through C".

2020—Pub. L. 116–260 substituted "Great Lakes St. Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation" for "Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation" in two places.

§70033. Limitation on application to foreign vessels

Except pursuant to international treaty, convention, or agreement, to which the United States is a party, subchapters I through III and this subchapter shall not apply to any foreign vessel that is not destined for, or departing from, a port or place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States and that is in—

(1) innocent passage through the territorial sea of the United States; or

(2) transit through the navigable waters of the United States that form a part of an international strait.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §401(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4261; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8507(a)(6), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4753.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "I through III" for "A through C" in introductory provisions.

§70034. Regulations

(a) IN GENERAL.—In accordance with section 553 of title 5, the Secretary shall issue, and may from time to time amend or repeal, regulations necessary to implement subchapters I through III and this subchapter.

(b) CONSULTATION.—In the exercise of the regulatory authority under subchapters I through III and this subchapter, the Secretary shall consult with, and receive and consider the views of all interested persons, including—

(1) interested Federal departments and agencies;

(2) officials of State and local governments;

(3) representatives of the maritime community;

(4) representatives of port and harbor authorities or associations;

(5) representatives of environmental groups;

(6) any other interested persons who are knowledgeable or experienced in dealing with problems involving vessel safety, port and waterways safety, and protection of the marine environment; and

(7) advisory committees consisting of all interested segments of the public when the establishment of such committees is considered necessary because the issues involved are highly complex or controversial.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §401(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4261; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8507(a)(7), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4753.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "I through III" for "A through C" in subsecs. (a) and (b).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

SAFETY OF SPECIAL ACTIVITIES

Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8343, Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4710, as amended by Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7321(a), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1765, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall conduct a pilot program to establish and implement a process to—

"(1) establish safety zones to address special activities in the exclusive economic zone;

"(2) account for the number of safety zones established for special activities;

"(3) differentiate whether an applicant who requests a safety zone for such activities is—

"(A) an individual;

"(B) an organization; or

"(C) a government entity; and

"(4) account for Coast Guard resources utilized to enforce safety zones established for special activities, including—

"(A) the number of Coast Guard or Coast Guard Auxiliary vessels used; and

"(B) the number of Coast Guard or Coast Guard Auxiliary patrol hours required.

"(b) BRIEFING.—Not later than 180 days after the expiration of the pilot program, the Commandant [of the Coast Guard] shall brief the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate regarding—

"(1) the process required under subsection (a); and

"(2) whether the authority to establish safety zones to address special activities in the exclusive economic zone should be extended or made permanent in the interest of safety.

"(c) AUTHORIZATION.—The pilot program under subsection (a) is authorized for fiscal years 2026, 2027, 2028, 2029, 2030, 2031, and 2032.

"(d) DEFINITIONS.—In this section:

"(1) SAFETY ZONE.—The term 'safety zone' has the meaning given such term in section 165.20 of title 33, Code of Federal Regulations.

"(2) SPECIAL ACTIVITIES.—The term 'special activities' includes—

"(A) space activities, including launch and reentry, as such terms are defined in section 50902 of title 51, United States Code, carried out by United States citizens; and

"(B) offshore energy development activities, as described in section 8(p)(1)(C) of the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act (43 U.S.C. 1337(p)(1)(C)), on or near a fixed platform.

"(3) UNITED STATES CITIZEN.—The term 'United States citizen' has the meaning given the term 'eligible owners' in section 12103 of title 46, United States Code.

"(4) FIXED PLATFORM.—The term 'fixed platform' means an artificial island, installation, or structure permanently attached to the sea-bed for the purpose of exploration or exploitation of resources or for other economic purposes."

[Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7321(a)(1), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1765, which directed amendment of section 8343 of Pub. L. 116–283, by striking "2-year pilot program" and inserting "pilot program", was executed by making the substitution in two places to reflect the probable intent of Congress.]

SAFETY ZONES FOR PERMITTED MARINE EVENTS

Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §305, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 54, provided that: "Not later than 6 months after the date of the enactment of this Act [Feb. 8, 2016], the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall establish and implement a process to—

"(1) account for the number of safety zones established for permitted marine events;

"(2) differentiate whether the event sponsor who requested a permit for such an event is—

"(A) an individual;

"(B) an organization; or

"(C) a government entity; and

"(3) account for Coast Guard resources utilized to enforce safety zones established for permitted marine events, including for—

"(A) the number of Coast Guard or Coast Guard Auxiliary vessels used; and

"(B) the number of Coast Guard or Coast Guard Auxiliary patrol hours required."

§70035. Investigatory powers

(a) SECRETARY.—The Secretary may investigate any incident, accident, or act involving the loss or destruction of, or damage to, any structure subject to subchapters I through III and this subchapter, or that affects or may affect the safety or environmental quality of the ports, harbors, or navigable waters of the United States.

(b) POWERS.—In an investigation under this section, the Secretary may issue subpoenas to require the attendance of witnesses and the production of documents or other evidence relating to such incident, accident, or act. If any person refuses to obey a subpoena, the Secretary may request the Attorney General to invoke the aid of the appropriate district court of the United States to compel compliance with the subpoena. Any district court of the United States may, in the case of refusal to obey a subpoena, issue an order requiring compliance with the subpoena, and failure to obey the order may be punished by the court as contempt. Witnesses may be paid fees for travel and attendance at rates not exceeding those allowed in a district court of the United States.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §401(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4262; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8507(a)(8), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4753.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "I through III" for "A through C".

§70036. Enforcement

(a) CIVIL PENALTY.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Any person who is found by the Secretary, after notice and an opportunity for a hearing, to have violated subchapters I through III or this subchapter or a regulation issued under subchapters I through III or this subchapter shall be liable to the United States for a civil penalty, not to exceed $25,000 for each violation. Each day of a continuing violation shall constitute a separate violation. The amount of such civil penalty shall be assessed by the Secretary, or the Secretary's designee, by written notice. In determining the amount of such penalty, the Secretary shall take into account the nature, circumstances, extent, and gravity of the prohibited acts committed and, with respect to the violator, the degree of culpability, any history of prior offenses, ability to pay, and such other matters as justice may require.

(2) COMPROMISE, MODIFICATION, OR REMISSION.—The Secretary may compromise, modify, or remit, with or without conditions, any civil penalty that is subject to imposition or that has been imposed under this section.

(3) FAILURE TO PAY PENALTY.—If any person fails to pay an assessment of a civil penalty after it has become final, the Secretary may refer the matter to the Attorney General of the United States, for collection in any appropriate district court of the United States.

(b) CRIMINAL PENALTY.—

(1) CLASS D FELONY.—Any person who willfully and knowingly violates subchapters I through III or this subchapter or any regulation issued thereunder commits a class D felony.

(2) CLASS C FELONY.—Any person who, in the willful and knowing violation of subchapters I through III or this subchapter or of any regulation issued thereunder, uses a dangerous weapon, or engages in conduct that causes bodily injury or fear of imminent bodily injury to any officer authorized to enforce the provisions of such a subchapter or the regulations issued under such subchapter, commits a class C felony.

(c) IN REM LIABILITY.—Any vessel that is used in violation of subchapters I, II, or III or this subchapter, or any regulations issued under such subchapter, shall be liable in rem for any civil penalty assessed pursuant to subsection (a) and may be proceeded against in the United States district court for any district in which such vessel may be found.

(d) INJUNCTION.—The United States district courts shall have jurisdiction to restrain violations of subchapter I, II, or III or this subchapter or of regulations issued under such subchapter, for cause shown.

(e) DENIAL OF ENTRY.—Except as provided in section 70021 or 70022, the Secretary may, subject to recognized principles of international law, deny entry by any vessel that is not in compliance with subchapter I, II, or III or this subchapter or the regulations issued under such subchapter—

(1) into the navigable waters of the United States; or

(2) to any port or place under the jurisdiction of the United States.

(f) WITHHOLDING OF CLEARANCE.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—If any owner, operator, or individual in charge of a vessel is liable for a penalty or fine under this section, or if reasonable cause exists to believe that the owner, operator,

or individual in charge may be subject to a penalty or fine under this section, the Secretary of the Treasury, upon the request of the Secretary, shall with respect to such vessel refuse or revoke any clearance required by section 60105 of title 46.

(2) GRANTING CLEARANCE REFUSED OR REVOKED.—Clearance refused or revoked under this subsection may be granted upon filing of a bond or other surety satisfactory to the Secretary.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §401(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4262; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §§8507(a)(9), 8508(2)(B), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4753, 4755.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, §8507(a)(9), substituted "I through III" for "A through C" and "I, II, or III" for "A, B, or C" wherever appearing.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 116–283, §8508(2)(B), inserted "or 70022" after "section 70021" in introductory provisions.

SUBCHAPTER V—REGATTAS AND MARINE PARADES

§70041. Regattas and marine parades

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Commandant of the Coast Guard may issue regulations to promote the safety of life on navigable waters during regattas or marine parades.

(b) DETAIL AND USE OF VESSELS.—To enforce regulations issued under this section—

(1) the Commandant may detail any public vessel in the service of the Coast Guard and make use of any private vessel tendered gratuitously for that purpose; and

(2) upon the request of the Commandant, the head of any other Federal department or agency may enforce the regulations by means of any public vessel of such department and any private vessel tendered gratuitously for that purpose.

(c) TRANSFER OF AUTHORITY.—The authority of the Commandant under this section may be transferred by the President for any special occasion to the head of another Federal department or agency whenever in the President's judgment such transfer is desirable.

(d) PENALTIES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—For any violation of regulations issued pursuant to this section the following penalties shall be incurred:

(A) A licensed officer shall be liable to suspension or revocation of license in the manner prescribed by law for incompetency or misconduct.

(B) Any person in charge of the navigation of a vessel other than a licensed officer shall be liable to a penalty of $5,000.

(C) The owner of a vessel (including any corporate officer of a corporation owning the vessel) actually on board shall be liable to a penalty of $5,000, unless the violation of regulations occurred without the owner's knowledge.

(D) Any other person shall be liable to a penalty of $2,500.

(2) MITIGATION OR REMISSION.—The Commandant may mitigate or remit any penalty provided for in this subsection in the manner prescribed by law for the mitigation or remission of penalties for violation of the navigation laws.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §406(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4265.)

SUBCHAPTER VI—REGULATION OF VESSELS IN TERRITORIAL WATERS OF UNITED STATES

§70051. Regulation of anchorage and movement of vessels during national emergency

Whenever the President by proclamation or Executive order declares a national emergency to exist by reason of actual or threatened war, insurrection, or invasion, or disturbance or threatened disturbance of the international relations of the United States, or whenever the Attorney General determines that an actual or anticipated mass migration of aliens en route to, or arriving off the coast of, the United States presents urgent circumstances requiring an immediate Federal response, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating may make, subject to the approval of the President, rules and regulations governing the anchorage and movement of any vessel, foreign or domestic, in the territorial waters of the United States, may inspect such vessel at any time, place guards thereon, and, if necessary in his opinion in order to secure such vessels from damage or injury, or to prevent damage or injury to any harbor or waters of the United States, or to secure the observance of the rights and obligations of the United States, may take, by and with the consent of the President, for such purposes, full possession and control of such vessel and remove therefrom the officers and crew thereof and all other persons not specially authorized by him to go or remain on board thereof.

Whenever the President finds that the security of the United States is endangered by reason of actual or threatened war, or invasion, or insurrection, or subversive activity, or cyber incidents, or transnational organized crime, or foreign state threats, or of disturbances or threatened disturbances of the international relations of the United States, the President is authorized to institute such measures and issue such rules and regulations—

(a) to govern the anchorage and movement of any foreign-flag vessels in the territorial waters of the United States, to inspect such vessels at any time, to place guards thereon, and, if necessary in his opinion in order to secure such vessels from damage or injury, or to prevent damage or injury to any harbor or waters of the United States, or to secure the observance of rights and obligations of the United States, may take for such purposes full possession and control of such vessels and remove therefrom the officers and crew thereof, and all other persons not especially authorized by him to go or remain on board thereof;

(b) to safeguard against destruction, loss, or injury from sabotage or other subversive acts, accidents, or other causes of similar nature, vessels, harbors, ports, and waterfront facilities in the United States and all territory and water, continental or insular, subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

The President may delegate the authority to issue such rules and regulations to the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating. Any appropriation available to any of the Executive Departments shall be available to carry out the provisions of this subchapter.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §407(b)(5), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4267; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8507(a)(10), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4753; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7321(f), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1767.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Section, as added by Pub. L. 115–282, is based on acts June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title II, §1, 40 Stat. 220; Aug. 9, 1950, ch. 656, §1, 64 Stat. 427; Sept. 26, 1950, ch. 1049, §2(b), 64 Stat. 1038; Pub. L. 96–70, title III, §3302(a), Sept. 27, 1979, 93 Stat. 498; Pub. L. 104–208, div. C, title VI, §649, Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009–711; Pub. L. 108–293, title II, §223, Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1040; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV,

§3548(a), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2328; Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §407(b)(1)–(4), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4267, which was formerly classified to section 191 of Title 50, War and National Defense, before being transferred to this chapter and renumbered as this section. Prior to such renumbering and transfer, section 3548(a) of Pub. L. 115–232 amended section 1 of title II of act June 15, 1917, by substituting "the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating" for "the Secretary of the Treasury" in the first par. Subsequently, section 407(b)(2) of Pub. L. 115–282 directed striking out "of the Treasury" but could not be executed because of the amendment by Pub. L. 115–232. Section 407(b)(3) of Pub. L. 115–282 further directed striking out "of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating", which appeared in two places following the amendment by Pub. L. 115–232, but the amendment did not specify where the deletion should occur. The amendment was executed by striking out such phrase following "regulations to the Secretary" in concluding provisions, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Pub. L. 119–60 inserted "or cyber incidents, or transnational organized crime, or foreign state threats," after "threatened war, or invasion, or insurrection, or subversive activity," in introductory provisions.

2021—Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "immediate Federal response, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating may make, subject to the approval" for "immediate Federal response, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating may make, subject to the approval" in introductory provisions and "authority to issue such rules and regulations to the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating. Any appropriation" for "authority to issue such rules and regulations to the Secretary. Any appropriation" in concluding provisions. See Codification note above.

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

PROC. NO. 6867. DECLARATION OF NATIONAL EMERGENCY AND INVOCATION OF EMERGENCY AUTHORITY RELATING TO REGULATION OF ANCHORAGE AND MOVEMENT OF VESSELS

Proc. No. 6867, Mar. 1, 1996, 61 F.R. 8843, provided:

WHEREAS, on February 24, 1996, Cuban military aircraft intercepted and destroyed two unarmed U.S.-registered civilian aircraft in international airspace north of Cuba;

WHEREAS the Government of Cuba has demonstrated a ready and reckless willingness to use excessive force, including deadly force, in the ostensible enforcement of its sovereignty;

WHEREAS, on July 13, 1995, persons in U.S.-registered vessels who entered into Cuban territorial waters suffered injury as a result of the reckless use of force against them by the Cuban military; and

WHEREAS the entry of U.S.-registered vessels into Cuban territorial waters could again result in injury to, or loss of life of, persons engaged in that conduct, due to the potential use of excessive force, including deadly force, against them by the Cuban military, and could threaten a disturbance in international relations;

NOW, THEREFORE, I, WILLIAM J. CLINTON, President of the United States of America, by the authority vested in me by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including section 1 of title II of Public Law 65-24, ch. 30, June 15, 1917, as amended (50 U.S.C. 191) [see 46 U.S.C. 70051], sections 201 and 301 of the National Emergencies Act (50 U.S.C. 1601 *et seq.*) [50 U.S.C. 1621, 1631], and section 301 of title 3, United States Code, find and do hereby proclaim that a national emergency does exist by reason of a disturbance or threatened disturbance of international relations. In order to address this national emergency and to secure the observance of the rights and obligations of the United States, I hereby authorize and direct the Secretary of Transportation (the "Secretary") to make and issue such rules and regulations as the Secretary may find appropriate to regulate the anchorage and movement of vessels, and delegate to the Secretary my authority to approve such rules and regulations, as authorized by the Act of June 15, 1917 [see Tables for classification].

SECTION 1. The Secretary may make rules and regulations governing the anchorage and movement of any vessel, foreign or domestic, in the territorial waters of the United States, which may be used, or is susceptible of being used, for voyage into Cuban territorial waters and that may create unsafe conditions and threaten a disturbance of international relations. Any rule or regulation issued pursuant to this proclamation may be effective immediately upon issuance as such rule or regulation shall involve a foreign affairs function of the United States.

SEC. 2. The Secretary is authorized to inspect any vessel, foreign or domestic, in the territorial waters of the United States, at any time; to place guards on any such vessel; and, with my consent expressly hereby granted,

take full possession and control of any such vessel and remove the officers and crew, and all other persons not specifically authorized by the Secretary to go or remain on board the vessel when necessary to secure the rights and obligations of the United States.

SEC. 3. The Secretary may request assistance from such departments, agencies, officers, or instrumentalities of the United States as the Secretary deems necessary to carry out the purposes of this proclamation. Such departments, agencies, officers, or instrumentalities shall, consistent with other provisions of law and to the extent practicable, provide requested assistance.

SEC. 4. The Secretary may seek assistance from State and local authorities in carrying out the purposes of this proclamation. Because State and local assistance may be essential for an effective response to this emergency, I urge all State and local officials to cooperate with Federal authorities and to take all actions within their lawful authority necessary to prevent the unauthorized departure of vessels intending to enter Cuban territorial waters.

SEC. 5. All powers and authorities delegated by this proclamation to the Secretary may be delegated by the Secretary to other officers and agents of the United States Government unless otherwise prohibited by law.

SEC. 6. This proclamation shall be immediately transmitted to the Congress and published in the Federal Register.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my hand this first day of March, in the year of our Lord nineteen hundred and ninety-six, and of the Independence of the United States of America the two hundred and twentieth.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

[Provisions of Proc. No. 6867 superseded to the extent of inconsistency with provisions of Procs. No. 7757, 9398, and 9699, see Sec. 6 of Proc. No. 7757, Sec. 6 of Proc. No. 9398, and Sec. 6 of Proc. No. 9699, set out below.]

CONTINUATION OF NATIONAL EMERGENCY DECLARED BY PROC. NO. 6867

Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 20, 2025, 90 F.R. 10571, provided:

On March 1, 1996, by Proclamation 6867, a national emergency was declared to address the disturbance or threatened disturbance of international relations caused by the February 24, 1996, destruction by the Cuban government of two unarmed, United States-registered civilian aircraft in international airspace north of Cuba. On February 26, 2004, by Proclamation 7757 [46 U.S.C. 70051 note], the national emergency was expanded to deny monetary and material support to the Cuban government. On February 24, 2016, by Proclamation 9398, and on February 22, 2018, by Proclamation 9699 [46 U.S.C. 70051 notes], the national emergency was further modified based on continued disturbances or threatened disturbances of the international relations of the United States related to Cuba. The Cuban government has not demonstrated that it will refrain from the use of excessive force against United States vessels or aircraft that may engage in memorial activities or peaceful protest north of Cuba.

Further, the unauthorized entry of any United States-registered vessel into Cuban territorial waters continues to be detrimental to the foreign policy of the United States because such entry could facilitate a mass migration from Cuba. It continues to be United States policy that a mass migration from Cuba would endanger United States national security by posing a disturbance or threatened disturbance of the international relations of the United States.

Therefore, in accordance with section 202(d) of the National Emergencies Act (50 U.S.C. 1622(d)), I am continuing the national emergency with respect to Cuba and the emergency authority relating to the regulation of the anchorage and movement of vessels set out in Proclamation 6867, as amended by Proclamation 7757, Proclamation 9398, and Proclamation 9699.

This notice shall be published in the Federal Register and transmitted to the Congress.

DONALD J. TRUMP.

Prior continuations of national emergency declared by Proc. No. 6867 were contained in the following:

Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 21, 2024, 89 F.R. 13967.

Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 17, 2023, 88 F.R. 10821.

Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 23, 2022, 87 F.R. 10685.

Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 24, 2021, 86 F.R. 11601.

Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 25, 2020, 85 F.R. 11825.

Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 19, 2019, 84 F.R. 5579.

Notice of President of the United States, dated Jan. 13, 2017, 82 F.R. 6185.

Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 25, 2015, 80 F.R. 11075.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 25, 2014, 79 F.R. 10949.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 22, 2013, 78 F.R. 13209.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 23, 2012, 77 F.R. 11379.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 24, 2011, 76 F.R. 11073.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 23, 2010, 75 F.R. 8793.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Jan. 15, 2009, 74 F.R. 3959.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 6, 2008, 73 F.R. 7459.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 26, 2007, 72 F.R. 9231.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Jan. 10, 2006, 71 F.R. 2133.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 18, 2005, 70 F.R. 8919.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 26, 2004, 69 F.R. 9513.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 27, 2003, 68 F.R. 9849.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 26, 2002, 67 F.R. 9387.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 27, 2001, 66 F.R. 12841.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 25, 2000, 65 F.R. 10929.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 24, 1999, 64 F.R. 9903.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 25, 1998, 63 F.R. 9923.
Notice of President of the United States, dated Feb. 27, 1997, 62 F.R. 9347.

PROC. NO. 7757. EXPANDING THE SCOPE OF THE NATIONAL EMERGENCY AND INVOCATION OF EMERGENCY AUTHORITY RELATING TO THE REGULATION OF THE ANCHORAGE AND MOVEMENT OF VESSELS INTO CUBAN TERRITORIAL WATERS

Proc. No. 7757, Feb. 26, 2004, 69 F.R. 9515, provided:

By the authority vested in me by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, in order to expand the scope of the national emergency declared in Proclamation 6867 of March 1, 1996 [set out above], based on the disturbance or threatened disturbance of the international relations of the United States caused by actions taken by the Cuban government, and in light of steps taken over the past year by the Cuban government to worsen the threat to United States international relations, and,

WHEREAS the United States has determined that Cuba is a state-sponsor of terrorism and it is subject to the restrictions of [former] section 6(j)(1)(A) of the Export Administration Act of 1979 [former 50 U.S.C. 4605(j)(1)(A)], section 620A of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 [22 U.S.C. 2371], and section 40 of the Arms Export Control Act [22 U.S.C. 2780];

WHEREAS the Cuban government has demonstrated a ready and reckless willingness to use excessive force, including deadly force, against U.S. citizens, in the ostensible enforcement of its sovereignty, including the February 1996 shoot-down of two unarmed U.S.-registered civilian aircraft in international airspace, resulting in the deaths of three American citizens and one other individual;

WHEREAS the Cuban government has demonstrated a ready and reckless willingness to use excessive force, including deadly force, against U.S. citizens and its own citizens, including on July 13, 1995, when persons in U.S.-registered vessels that entered into Cuban territorial waters suffered injury as a result of the reckless use of force against them by the Cuban military, and including the July 1994 sinking of an unarmed Cuban-registered vessel, resulting in the deaths of 41 Cuban citizens;

WHEREAS the Cuban government has impounded U.S.-registered vessels in Cuban ports and forced the owners, as a condition of release, to violate U.S. law by requiring payments to be made to the Cuban government;

WHEREAS the entry of any U.S.-registered vessels into Cuban territorial waters could result in injury to, or loss of life of, persons engaged in that conduct, due to the potential use of excessive force, including deadly force, against them by the Cuban military, and could threaten a disturbance of international relations;

WHEREAS the unauthorized entry of vessels subject to the jurisdiction of the United States into Cuban territorial waters is in violation of U.S. law and contrary to U.S. policy;

WHEREAS the objectives of U.S. policy regarding Cuba are the end of the dictatorship and a rapid, peaceful transition to a representative democracy respectful of human rights and characterized by an open market economic system;

WHEREAS a critical initiative by the United States to advance these U.S. objectives is to deny resources to the repressive Cuban government, resources that may be used by that government to support terrorist activities and carry out excessive use of force against innocent victims, including U.S. citizens;

WHEREAS the unauthorized entry of U.S.-registered vessels into Cuban territorial waters is detrimental to the foreign policy of the United States, which is to deny monetary and material support to the repressive

Cuban government, and, therefore, such unauthorized entries threaten to disturb the international relations of the United States by facilitating the Cuban government's support of terrorism, use of excessive force, and continued existence;

WHEREAS the Cuban government has over the course of its 45-year existence repeatedly used violence and the threat of violence to undermine U.S. policy interests. This same regime continues in power today, and has since 1959 maintained a pattern of hostile actions contrary to U.S. policy interests. Among other things, the Cuban government established a military alliance with the Soviet Union, and invited Soviet forces to install nuclear missiles in Cuba capable of attacking the United States, and encouraged Soviet authorities to use those weapons against the United States; it engaged in military adventurism in Africa; and it helped to form and provide material and political support to terrorist organizations that sought the violent overthrow of democratically elected governments in Central America and elsewhere in the hemisphere allied with the United States, thereby causing repeated disturbances of U.S. international relations;

WHEREAS the Cuban government has recently and over the last year taken a series of steps to destabilize relations with the United States, including threatening to abrogate the Migration Accords with the United States and to close the U.S. Interests Section, and Cuba's most senior officials repeatedly asserting that the United States intended to invade Cuba, despite explicit denials from the U.S. Secretaries of State and Defense that such action is planned, thereby causing a sudden and worsening disturbance of U.S. international relations;

WHEREAS U.S. concerns about these unforeseen Cuban government actions that threaten to disturb international relations were sufficiently grave that on May 8, 2003, the United States warned the Cuban government that political manipulations that resulted in a mass migration would be viewed as a "hostile act;"

NOW, THEREFORE, I, GEORGE W. BUSH, President of the United States of America, by the authority vested in me by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including section 1 of title II of Public Law 65–24, ch. 30, June 15, 1917, as amended (50 U.S.C. 191) [see 46 U.S.C. 70051], sections 201 and 301 of the National Emergencies Act (50 U.S.C. 1601 *et seq*.) [50 U.S.C. 1621, 1631], and section 301 of title 3, United States Code, in order to expand the scope of the national emergency declared in Proclamation 6867 of March 1, 1996 [set out above], and to secure the observance of the rights and obligations of the United States, hereby authorize and direct the Secretary of Homeland Security (the "Secretary") to make and issue such rules and regulations as the Secretary may find appropriate to regulate the anchorage and movement of vessels, and authorize and approve the Secretary's issuance of such rules and regulations, as authorized by the Act of June 15, 1917 [see Tables for classification].

SECTION 1. The Secretary may make rules and regulations governing the anchorage and movement of any vessel, foreign or domestic, in the territorial waters of the United States, which may be used, or is susceptible of being used, for voyage into Cuban territorial waters and that may create unsafe conditions, or result in unauthorized transactions, and thereby threaten a disturbance of international relations. Any rule or regulation issued pursuant to this proclamation may be effective immediately upon issuance as such rule or regulation shall involve a foreign affairs function of the United States.

SEC. 2. The Secretary is authorized to inspect any vessel, foreign or domestic, in the territorial waters of the United States, at any time; to place guards on any such vessel; and, with my consent expressly hereby granted, take full possession and control of any such vessel and remove the officers and crew and all other persons not specifically authorized by the Secretary to go or remain on board the vessel when necessary to secure the rights and obligations of the United States.

SEC. 3. The Secretary may request assistance from such departments, agencies, officers, or instrumentalities of the United States as the Secretary deems necessary to carry out the purposes of this proclamation. Such departments, agencies, officers, or instrumentalities shall, consistent with other provisions of law and to the extent practicable, provide requested assistance.

SEC. 4. The Secretary may seek assistance from State and local authorities in carrying out the purposes of this proclamation. Because State and local assistance may be essential for an effective response to this emergency, I urge all State and local officials to cooperate with Federal authorities and to take all actions within their lawful authority necessary to prevent the unauthorized departure of vessels intending to enter Cuban territorial waters.

SEC. 5. All powers and authorities delegated by this proclamation to the Secretary may be delegated by the Secretary to other officers and agents of the United States Government unless otherwise prohibited by law.

SEC. 6. Any provisions of Proclamation 6867 [set out above] that are inconsistent with the provisions of this proclamation are superseded to the extent of such inconsistency.

SEC. 7. This proclamation shall be immediately transmitted to the Congress and published in the Federal Register.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my hand this twenty-sixth day of February, in the year of

our Lord two thousand four, and of the Independence of the United States of America the two hundred and twenty-eighth.

GEORGE W. BUSH.

[Provisions of Proc. No. 7757 superseded to the extent of inconsistency with provisions of Procs. No. 9398 and 9699, see Sec. 6 of Proc. No. 9398 and Sec. 6 of Proc. No. 9699, set out below.]

PROC. NO. 9398. MODIFYING AND CONTINUING THE NATIONAL EMERGENCY WITH RESPECT TO CUBA AND CONTINUING TO AUTHORIZE THE REGULATION OF THE ANCHORAGE AND MOVEMENT OF VESSELS

Proc. No. 9398, Feb. 24, 2016, 81 F.R. 9737, provided:

By the authority vested in me by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, in order to modify and continue the national emergency declared in Proclamation 6867 of March 1, 1996, and expanded by Proclamation 7757 of February 26, 2004 [both set out above], in light of the need to continue the national emergency based on a disturbance or threatened disturbance of the international relations of the United States related to Cuba, and,

WHEREAS the descriptions of the national emergency set forth in Proclamations 6867 and 7757 no longer reflect the international relations of the United States related to Cuba;

WHEREAS longstanding U.S. policy towards Cuba had, at times, tended to isolate the United States from regional and international partners, constrained our ability to influence outcomes throughout the Western Hemisphere, and impaired the use of the full range of tools available to the United States to promote positive change in Cuba;

WHEREAS the following descriptions accurately describe the national emergency with respect to Cuba;

WHEREAS the United States and Cuba reestablished diplomatic relations and opened embassies in each other's capitals on July 20, 2015, and the United States continues to pursue the progressive normalization of relations while aspiring towards a peaceful, prosperous, and democratic Cuba;

WHEREAS the United States has committed to work with the Government of Cuba on matters of mutual concern that advance U.S. national interests, such as migration, human rights, counter-narcotics, environmental protection, and trafficking in persons, among other issues;

WHEREAS the United States is committed to supporting safe, orderly, and legal migration from Cuba through the effective implementation of the 1994–95 U.S.-Cuba Migration Accords;

WHEREAS the Cuban economy is in a relatively weak state, contributing to an outflow of its nationals towards the United States and neighboring countries;

WHEREAS the overarching objective of U.S. policy is stability in the region, and the outflow of Cuban nationals may have a destabilizing effect on the United States and its neighboring countries;

WHEREAS it is United States policy that a mass migration from Cuba would endanger the security of the United States by posing a disturbance or threatened disturbance of the international relations of the United States;

WHEREAS the United States continues to maintain an embargo with respect to Cuba;

WHEREAS the unauthorized entry of vessels subject to the jurisdiction of the United States into Cuban territorial waters is in violation of U.S. law and contrary to U.S. policy;

WHEREAS the unauthorized entry of United States-registered vessels into Cuban territorial waters is detrimental to the foreign policy of the United States, and counter to the purpose of Executive Order 12807 [8 U.S.C. 1182 note], which is to ensure, among other things, safe, orderly, and legal migration;

WHEREAS the possibility of large-scale unauthorized entries of United States-registered vessels would disturb the international relations of the United States by facilitating a possible mass migration of Cuban nationals;

NOW, THEREFORE, I, BARACK OBAMA, President of the United States of America, by the authority vested in me by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including section 1 of title II of Public Law 65–24, ch. 30, June 15, 1917, as amended (50 U.S.C. 191) [see 46 U.S.C. 70051], sections 201, 202, and 301 of the National Emergencies Act (50 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.), and section 301 of title 3, United States Code, in order to modify the scope of the national emergency declared in Proclamations 6867 and 7757, and to secure the observance of the rights and obligations of the United States, hereby continue the national emergency with regard to Cuba as set forth above and authorize and direct the Secretary of Homeland Security (the "Secretary") to make and issue such rules and regulations as the Secretary may find appropriate to regulate the anchorage and movement of vessels, and authorize and approve the Secretary's issuance of such rules and regulations, as authorized by the Act of June 15, 1917. Accordingly, I hereby direct:

SECTION 1. The Secretary may make rules and regulations governing the anchorage and movement of any

vessel, foreign or domestic, in the territorial waters of the United States, which may be used, or is susceptible of being used, for voyage into Cuban territorial waters and that may create unsafe conditions, or result in unauthorized transactions, and thereby threaten a disturbance of international relations. Any rule or regulation issued pursuant to this proclamation may be effective immediately upon issuance as such rule or regulation shall involve a foreign affairs function of the United States.

SEC. 2. The Secretary is authorized, to the extent consistent with international law, to inspect any vessel, foreign or domestic, in the territorial waters of the United States, at any time; to place guards on any such vessel; and, with my consent expressly hereby granted, take full possession and control of any such vessel and remove the officers and crew and all other persons not specifically authorized by the Secretary to go or remain on board the vessel when necessary to secure the rights and obligations of the United States.

SEC. 3. The Secretary may request assistance from such departments, agencies, officers, or instrumentalities of the United States as the Secretary deems necessary to carry out the purposes of this proclamation. Such departments, agencies, officers, or instrumentalities shall, consistent with other provisions of law and to the extent practicable, provide requested assistance.

SEC. 4. The Secretary may seek assistance from State and local authorities in carrying out the purposes of this proclamation. Because State and local assistance may be essential for an effective response to this emergency, I urge all State and local officials to cooperate with Federal authorities and to take all actions within their lawful authority necessary to prevent the unauthorized departure of vessels intending to enter Cuban territorial waters.

SEC. 5. All powers and authorities delegated by this proclamation to the Secretary may be delegated by the Secretary to other officers and agents of the United States Government unless otherwise prohibited by law.

SEC. 6. Any provisions of Proclamation 6867 of March 1, 1996, and expanded by Proclamation 7757 of February 26, 2004, that are inconsistent with the provisions of this proclamation are superseded to the extent of such inconsistency.

SEC. 7. This proclamation shall be immediately transmitted to the Congress and published in the Federal Register.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my hand this twenty-fourth day of February, in the year of our Lord two thousand sixteen, and of the Independence of the United States of America the two hundred and fortieth.

BARACK OBAMA.

[Provisions of Proc. No. 9398 superseded to the extent of inconsistency with provisions of Proc. No. 9699, see Sec. 6 of Proc. No. 9699, set out below.]

PROC. NO. 9699. MODIFYING AND CONTINUING THE NATIONAL EMERGENCY WITH RESPECT TO CUBA AND CONTINUING TO AUTHORIZE THE REGULATION OF THE ANCHORAGE AND MOVEMENT OF VESSELS

Proc. No. 9699, Feb. 22, 2018, 83 F.R. 8161, provided:

In order to modify and continue the ongoing national emergency declared in Proclamation 6867 of March 1, 1996, expanded by Proclamation 7757 of February 26, 2004, and modified by Proclamation 9398 of February 24, 2016 [all set out above], in light of the need to continue the national emergency based on a disturbance or threatened disturbance of the international relations of the United States related to Cuba, and,

WHEREAS it is the policy of the United States that a mass migration from Cuba would endanger our security by posing a disturbance or threatened disturbance of the international relations of the United States;

WHEREAS the Cuban economy is in a relatively weak state, contributing to an outflow of its nationals toward the United States and neighboring countries;

WHEREAS the overarching objective of our policy is stability with our immediate neighboring countries and an outflow of Cuban nationals may have a destabilizing effect on the United States and its neighboring countries;

WHEREAS it is the policy of the United States to ensure that engagement between the United States and Cuba advances the interests of the United States and of the Cuban people as described in National Security Presidential Memorandum–5 of June 16, 2017 (Strengthening the Policy of the United States Toward Cuba) [not set out in the Code];

WHEREAS the United States continues to maintain an embargo with respect to Cuba;

WHEREAS the unauthorized entry of vessels subject to the jurisdiction of the United States into Cuban territorial waters is in violation of the law of the United States and contrary to the policy of the United States;

WHEREAS the unauthorized entry of United States-registered vessels into Cuban territorial waters is detrimental to the foreign policy of the United States and counter to the purpose of Executive Order 12807 of

May 24, 1992 [8 U.S.C. 1182 note], which is to ensure, among other things, safe, orderly, and legal migration;

WHEREAS the possibility of large-scale unauthorized entries of United States-registered vessels into Cuban territorial waters would disturb the international relations of the United States by facilitating a possible mass migration of Cuban nationals;

NOW, THEREFORE, I, DONALD J. TRUMP, President of the United States of America, by the authority vested in me by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including section 1 of title II of Public Law 65–24, ch. 30, June 15, 1917, as amended (50 U.S.C. 191) [see 46 U.S.C. 70051], sections 201, 202, and 301 of the National Emergencies Act (50 U.S.C. 1601 *et seq.*), and section 301 of title 3, United States Code, in order to modify the scope of the national emergency declared in Proclamations 6867, 7757, and 9398, and to secure the observance of the rights and obligations of the United States, hereby continue the national emergency declared in Proclamations 6867, 7757, and 9398, and authorize and direct the Secretary of Homeland Security (the "Secretary") to make and issue such rules and regulations as the Secretary may find appropriate to regulate the anchorage and movement of vessels, and delegate to the Secretary my authority to approve such rules and regulations, as authorized by the Act of June 15, 1917. Accordingly, I hereby direct as follows:

SECTION 1. The Secretary may make rules and regulations governing the anchorage and movement of any vessel, foreign or domestic, in the territorial waters of the United States, that may be used, or is susceptible of being used, for voyage into Cuban territorial waters and that may create unsafe conditions, or result in unauthorized transactions, thereby threatening a disturbance of international relations. A rule or regulation issued pursuant to this proclamation may be effective immediately upon issuance if it involves a foreign affairs function of the United States.

SEC. 2. The Secretary is authorized, to the extent consistent with international law, to inspect any vessel, foreign or domestic, in the territorial waters of the United States, at any time; to place guards on any such vessel; and, with my consent expressly hereby granted, take full possession and control of any such vessel and remove the officers and crew and all other persons not specifically authorized by the Secretary to go or remain on board the vessel, when necessary to secure the rights and obligations of the United States.

SEC. 3. The Secretary may request assistance from such departments, agencies, officers, or instrumentalities of the United States as necessary to carry out the purposes of this proclamation. Such departments, agencies, officers, or instrumentalities shall, consistent with other provisions of law and to the extent practicable, provide the assistance requested.

SEC. 4. The Secretary may seek assistance from State and local authorities in carrying out the purposes of this proclamation. Because State and local assistance may be essential for an effective response to this emergency, I urge all State and local officials to cooperate with Federal authorities and to take all actions within their lawful authority necessary to prevent the unauthorized departure of vessels intending to enter Cuban territorial waters.

SEC. 5. All powers and authorities delegated by this proclamation to the Secretary may be delegated by the Secretary to other officers and agents of the United States Government consistent with applicable law.

SEC. 6. Any provisions of Proclamations 6867, 7757, or 9398 that are inconsistent with the provisions of this proclamation are superseded to the extent of such inconsistency.

SEC. 7. This proclamation shall be immediately transmitted to the Congress and published in the Federal Register.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my hand this twenty-second day of February, in the year of our Lord two thousand eighteen, and of the Independence of the United States of America the two hundred and forty-second.

DONALD J. TRUMP.

PROC. NO. 10371. DECLARATION OF NATIONAL EMERGENCY AND INVOCATION OF EMERGENCY AUTHORITY RELATING TO THE REGULATION OF THE ANCHORAGE AND MOVEMENT OF RUSSIAN-AFFILIATED VESSELS TO UNITED STATES PORTS

Proc. No. 10371, Apr. 21, 2022, 87 F.R. 24265, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including the National Emergencies Act (50 U.S.C. 1601 *et seq.*) and section 1 of title II of Public Law 65–24, ch. 30, June 15, 1917, as amended (Magnuson Act) (46 U.S.C. 70051), I, JOSEPH R. BIDEN JR., President of the United States of America, hereby find and proclaim that:

The policies and actions of the Government of the Russian Federation to continue the premeditated, unjustified, unprovoked, and brutal war against Ukraine constitute a national emergency by reason of a disturbance or threatened disturbance of international relations of the United States. In order to address this national emergency and secure the observance of the rights and obligations of the United States, I hereby

authorize the Secretary of Homeland Security (Secretary) to make and issue such rules and regulations as the Secretary may find appropriate to regulate the anchorage and movement of Russian-affiliated vessels, and delegate to the Secretary my authority to approve such rules and regulations, as authorized by the Magnuson Act.

SECTION 1. I hereby prohibit Russian-affiliated vessels from entering into United States ports.

SEC. 2. The prohibition of section 1 of this proclamation applies except:

(a) to Russian-affiliated vessels used in the transport of source material, special nuclear material, and nuclear byproduct material for which, and for such time as, the Secretary of Energy, in consultation with the Secretary of State and the Secretary of Commerce, determines that no viable source of supply is available that would not require transport by Russian-affiliated vessels; and

(b) to Russian-affiliated vessels requesting only to enter United States ports due to force majeure, solely to allow seafarers of any nationality to disembark or embark for purposes of conducting crew changes, emergency medical care, or for other humanitarian need.

SEC. 3. For the purposes of this proclamation:

(a) the term "Russian-affiliated vessels" means:

(i) vessels of Russian registry (i.e., the vessel is Russian flagged);

(ii) vessels that are Russian owned (i.e., the legal title of ownership of the vessel that appears on the ship's registration documents is the Government of the Russian Federation or a Russian company, citizen, or permanent resident); or

(iii) vessels that are Russian operated (i.e., a Russian company, citizen, or permanent resident is responsible for the commercial decisions concerning the employment of a ship and decides how and where that asset is employed).

(b) the term "byproduct material" has the same meaning given to that term in section 11(e) of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended (AEA) (42 U.S.C. 2014(e)).

(c) the term "source material" has the same meaning given to that term in section 11(z) of the AEA (42 U.S.C. 2014(z)).

(d) the term "special nuclear material" has the same meaning given to that term in section 11(aa) of the AEA (42 U.S.C. 2014(aa)).

SEC. 4. The prohibition set forth in this proclamation shall be effective as of 12:01 a.m. eastern daylight time on April 28, 2022, and shall be immediately transmitted to the Congress and published in the Federal Register.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my hand this twenty-first day of April, in the year of our Lord two thousand twenty-two, and of the Independence of the United States of America the two hundred and forty-sixth.

J.R. BIDEN, JR.

CONTINUATION OF NATIONAL EMERGENCY DECLARED BY PROC. NO. 10371

Notice of President of the United States, dated Apr. 15, 2025, 90 F.R. 16431, provided:

On April 21, 2022, by Proclamation 10371, the President declared a national emergency by reason of a disturbance or threatened disturbance of international relations of the United States and authorized the Secretary of Homeland Security to regulate the anchorage and movement of Russian-affiliated vessels, pursuant to the National Emergencies Act (50 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.) and section 1 of title II of Public Law 65–24, ch. 30, June 15, 1917, as amended (Magnuson Act) (46 U.S.C. 70051).

The policies and actions of the Government of the Russian Federation continue to constitute a national emergency by reason of a disturbance or threatened disturbance of international relations of the United States. Therefore, in accordance with section 202(d) of the National Emergencies Act (50 U.S.C. 1622(d)), I am continuing for 1 year the national emergency with respect to the Russian Federation and the emergency authority relating to the regulation of the anchorage and movement of Russian-affiliated vessels to United States ports set out in Proclamation 10371.

This notice shall be published in the Federal Register and transmitted to the Congress.

DONALD J. TRUMP.

Prior continuation of national emergency declared by Proc. No. 10371 was contained in the following:

Notice of President of the United States, dated Apr. 16, 2024, 89 F.R. 27649.

§70052. Seizure and forfeiture of vessel; fine and imprisonment

(a) IN GENERAL.—If any owner, agent, master, officer, or person in charge, or any member of the crew of any such vessel fails to comply with any regulation or rule issued or order given under the provisions of this subchapter, or obstructs or interferes with the exercise of any power conferred by this subchapter, the vessel, together with her tackle, apparel, furniture, and equipment, shall be subject to seizure and forfeiture to the United States in the same manner as merchandise is forfeited for violation of the customs revenue laws; and the person guilty of such failure, obstruction, or interference shall be punished by imprisonment for not more than ten years and may, in the discretion of the court, be fined not more than $10,000.

(b) APPLICATION TO OTHERS.—If any other person knowingly fails to comply with any regulation or rule issued or order given under the provisions of this subchapter, or knowingly obstructs or interferes with the exercise of any power conferred by this subchapter, he shall be punished by imprisonment for not more than ten years and may, at the discretion of the court, be fined not more than $10,000.

(c) CIVIL PENALTY.—A person violating this subchapter, or a regulation prescribed under this subchapter, shall be liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $25,000 for each violation. Each day of a continuing violation shall constitute a separate violation.

(d) IN REM LIABILITY.—Any vessel that is used in violation of this subchapter, or of any regulation issued under this subchapter, shall be liable in rem for any civil penalty assessed pursuant to subsection (c) and may be proceeded against in the United States district court for any district in which such vessel may be found.

(e) WITHHOLDING OF CLEARANCE.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—If any owner, agent, master, officer, or person in charge of a vessel is liable for a penalty or fine under subsection (c), or if reasonable cause exists to believe that the owner, agent, master, officer, or person in charge may be subject to a penalty or fine under this section, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating may, with respect to such vessel, refuse or revoke any clearance required by section 60105.

(2) CLEARANCE UPON FILING OF BOND OR OTHER SURETY.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating may require the filing of a bond or other surety as a condition of granting clearance refused or revoked under this subsection.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §407(c)(3), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4267; amended Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8507(a)(11), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4754; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXVII, §7701(f)(7), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1836.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Section, as added by Pub. L. 115–282, is based on acts June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title II, §2, 40 Stat. 220; Mar. 28, 1940, ch. 72, §3(a), 54 Stat. 79; Nov. 15, 1941, ch. 471, §3, 55 Stat. 763; Aug. 9, 1950, ch. 656, §3, 64 Stat. 428; Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §104(b), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2085; Pub. L. 108–293, title VIII, §802(b), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1079; Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §407(c)(1), (2), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4267, which was formerly classified to section 192 of Title 50, War and National Defense, before being transferred to this chapter and renumbered as this section.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 119–60 substituted "section 60105" for "section 4197 of the Revised Statutes of the United States (46 U.S.C. App. 91)".

2021—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating" for "Secretary" in pars. (1) and (2).

§70053. Enforcement provisions

The President may employ such departments, agencies, officers, or instrumentalities of the United

States as he may deem necessary to carry out this subchapter.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §407(d)(3), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4267.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Section, as added by Pub. L. 115–282, is based on acts June 15, 1917, ch. 30, title II, §4, 40 Stat. 220; Aug. 9, 1950, ch. 656, §2, 64 Stat. 428; Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §407(d)(1), (2), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4267, which was formerly classified to section 194 of Title 50, War and National Defense, before being transferred to this chapter and renumbered as this section.

§70054. Definitions

In this subchapter:

(1) UNITED STATES.—The term "United States" includes all territory and waters, continental or insular, subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

(2) TERRITORIAL WATERS.—The term "territorial waters of the United States" includes all waters of the territorial sea of the United States as described in Presidential Proclamation 5928 of December 27, 1988.

(Added Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §407(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4266.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Presidential Proclamation Number 5928, referred to in par. (2), is Proc. No. 5928, Dec. 27, 1988, 54 F.R. 777, which is set out as a note under section 1331 of Title 43, Public Lands.

CHAPTER 701—PORT SECURITY

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL

Sec.

70101. Definitions.
70102. United States facility and vessel vulnerability assessments.
[70102a. Repealed.]
70103. Maritime transportation security plans.
70104. Transportation security incident response.
70105. Transportation worker identification credentials.
70106. Deployable, specialized forces.
70107. Grants.
[70107A. Repealed.]
70108. Foreign port assessment.
70109. Notifying foreign authorities.
70110. Actions and assistance for foreign ports or facilities and United States territories.
70111. Enhanced crewmember identification.
70112. Maritime Security Advisory Committees.
70113. Maritime intelligence.
70114. Automatic identification systems.
70115. Long-range vessel tracking system.
70116. Port, harbor, and coastal facility security.
[70117. Repealed.]
70118. Enforcement by State and local officers.

70119. Civil penalty.
70120. In rem liability for civil penalties and certain costs.
70121. Withholding of clearance.
70122. Waterway Watch Program.
70123. Mobile biometric identification.
70124. Regulations.
70125. Port security training for facility security officers.

SUBCHAPTER II—PORT SECURITY ZONES

70131. Definitions.
70132. Credentialing standards, training, and certification for State and local support for the enforcement of security zones for the transportation of especially hazardous cargo.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVIII, §11804(b), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4164, added item 70105 and struck out former item 70105 "Transportation security cards".

2021—Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8507(d)(1), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4754, repealed amendment by Pub. L. 115–282, §408(c), and further provided that the provisions of law amended by section 408 of Pub. L. 115–282 are amended to read as if such section were not enacted. See 2018 Amendment note below.

2018—Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §408(c), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4268, added item 70102a "Port, harbor, and coastal facility security", prior to repeal by Pub. L. 116–283.

Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §402(b)(3), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4264, added item 70116.

2016—Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §306(a)(8), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 54, inserted a period at end of item 70107A and substituted "Security Advisory Committees" for "security advisory committees" in item 70112 and "Watch Program" for "watch program" in item 70122.

2010—Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §828(c)(2), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3007, as amended by Pub. L. 111–330, §1(17)(B)–(D), Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3570, added items for subchapters I and II and items 70131 and 70132.

Pub. L. 111–281, title II, §208(b), title VIII, §§801(b), 804(b), 806(c)(2)(C), 807(b), 820(b), 821(c), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2912, 2989, 2991, 2993, 3001, 3003, substituted "Deployable, specialized forces" for "Maritime safety and security teams" in item 70106 and "Actions and assistance for foreign ports or facilities and United States territories" for "Actions and assistance for foreign ports and United States territories" in item 70110, struck out item 70117 "Firearms, arrests, and seizure of property", and added items 70122 to 70125.

2006—Pub. L. 109–347, title I, §108(d), title II, §233(d), Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1893, 1918, added item 70107A and substituted "Actions and assistance for foreign ports and United States territories" for "Actions when foreign ports not maintaining effective antiterrorism measures" in item 70110.

Pub. L. 109–304, §15(33)(E), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1705, which directed the substitution of items 70117 to 70121 for items 70117 to 70119, was executed by making the substitution for items 70117 "Civil penalty", 70118 "Enforcement", 70117 "In rem liability for civil penalties and certain costs", 70118 "Enforcement by injunction or withholding of clearance", and 70119 "Civil penalty" to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 109–241, §901(l)(5), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 565, which directed amendment of analysis by striking items 70117 through the second 70119 and inserting items 70117 "Firearms, arrests, and seizure of property", 70118 "Enforcement by State and local officers", 70119 "Civil penalty", 70120 "In rem liability for civil penalties and certain costs", and 70121 "Withholding of clearance", could not be executed because only one item 70119 appeared.

2004—Pub. L. 108–293, title VIII, §802(c), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1080, added items 70117 "In rem liability for civil penalties and certain costs", 70118 "Enforcement by injunction or withholding of clearance", and 70119 "Civil penalty", and struck out former item 70119 "Enforcement by State and local officers".

Pub. L. 108–293, title VIII, §801(b), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1078, added items 70118 "Enforcement" and 70119 "Enforcement by State and local officers".

SUBCHAPTER I—GENERAL

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 111–330, §1(17)(A), Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3570, amended Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §828(c)(1), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3007, which added subchapter I heading.

§70101. Definitions

For the purpose of this chapter:

(1) The term "Area Maritime Transportation Security Plan" means an Area Maritime Transportation Security Plan prepared under section 70103(b).

(2) The term "cybersecurity risk" has the meaning given the term in section 2200 of the Homeland Security Act of 2002.

(3) The term "facility" means any structure or facility of any kind located in, on, under, or adjacent to any waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

(4) The term "National Maritime Transportation Security Plan" means the National Maritime Transportation Security Plan prepared and published under section 70103(a).

(5) The term "owner or operator" means—

(A) in the case of a vessel, any person owning, operating, or chartering by demise, such vessel; and

(B) in the case of a facility, any person owning, leasing, or operating such facility.

(6) The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating.

(7) The term "transportation security incident" means a security incident resulting in a significant loss of life, environmental damage, transportation system disruption, or economic disruption in a particular area. In this paragraph, the term "economic disruption" does not include a work stoppage or other employee-related action not related to terrorism and resulting from an employee-employer dispute.

(Added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2068; amended Pub. L. 109–347, title I, §124, Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1900; Pub. L. 115–254, div. J, §1805(b), Oct. 5, 2018, 132 Stat. 3534; Pub. L. 117–263, div. G, title LXXI, §7143(d)(10), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3664.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 2200 of the Homeland Security Act of 2002, referred to in par. (2), is classified to section 650 of Title 6, Domestic Security.

AMENDMENTS

2022—Par. (2). Pub. L. 117–263 substituted "section 2200 of the Homeland Security Act of 2002" for "section 227 of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (6 U.S.C. 148)".

2018—Pars. (2) to (7). Pub. L. 115–254 added par. (2) and redesignated former pars. (2) to (6) as (3) to (7), respectively.

2006—Par. (6). Pub. L. 109–347 inserted at end "In this paragraph, the term 'economic disruption' does not include a work stoppage or other employee-related action not related to terrorism and resulting from an employee-employer dispute."

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(d), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2084, provided that:

"(1) INTERIM FINAL RULE AUTHORITY.—The Secretary shall issue an interim final rule as a temporary regulation implementing this section [enacting this subtitle and provisions set out as notes under sections 70104 and 70114 of this title] (including the amendments made by this section) as soon as practicable after the date of enactment of this section [Nov. 25, 2002], without regard to the provisions of chapter 5 of title 5, United States Code. All regulations prescribed under the authority of this subsection that are not earlier superseded by final regulations shall expire not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 25, 2002].

"(2) INITIATION OF RULEMAKING.—The Secretary may initiate a rulemaking to implement this section (including the amendments made by this section) as soon as practicable after the date of enactment of this section. The final rule issued pursuant to that rulemaking may supersede the interim final rule promulgated under this subsection."

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

MARITIME BORDER SECURITY COOPERATION

Pub. L. 115–254, div. J, §1814, Oct. 5, 2018, 132 Stat. 3540, provided that: "The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall, in accordance with law—

"(1) partner with other Federal, State, and local government agencies to leverage existing technology, including existing sensor and camera systems and other sensors, in place along the maritime border to facilitate monitoring of high-risk maritime borders, as determined by the Secretary; and

"(2) subject to the availability of appropriations, enter into such agreements as the Secretary considers necessary to ensure the monitoring described in paragraph (1)."

INTEGRATED CROSS-BORDER MARITIME LAW ENFORCEMENT OPERATIONS BETWEEN THE UNITED STATES AND CANADA

Pub. L. 112–213, title VII, §711, Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1581, provided that:

"(a) AUTHORIZATION.—The Secretary of Homeland Security, acting through the Commandant of the Coast Guard, may establish an Integrated Cross-Border Maritime Law Enforcement Operations Program to coordinate the maritime security operations of the United States and Canada (in this section referred to as the 'Program').

"(b) PURPOSE.—The Secretary, acting through the Commandant, shall administer the Program in a manner that results in a cooperative approach between the United States and Canada to strengthen border security and detect, prevent, suppress, investigate, and respond to terrorism and violations of law related to border security.

"(c) TRAINING.—The Secretary, acting through the Commandant and in consultation with the Secretary of State, may—

"(1) establish, as an element of the Program, a training program for individuals who will serve as maritime law enforcement officers; and

"(2) conduct training jointly with Canada to enhance border security, including training—

"(A) on the detection and apprehension of suspected terrorists and individuals attempting to unlawfully cross or unlawfully use the international maritime border between the United States and Canada;

"(B) on the integration, analysis, and dissemination of port security information by and between the United States and Canada;

"(C) on policy, regulatory, and legal considerations related to the Program;

"(D) on the use of force in maritime security;

"(E) on operational procedures and protection of sensitive information; and

"(F) on preparedness and response to maritime terrorist incidents.

"(d) COORDINATION.—The Secretary, acting through the Commandant, shall coordinate the Program with other similar border security and antiterrorism programs within the Department of Homeland Security.

"(e) MEMORANDA OF AGREEMENT.—The Secretary may enter into any memorandum of agreement necessary to carry out the Program."

WATERSIDE SECURITY OF ESPECIALLY HAZARDOUS CARGO

Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §812, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2995, provided that:

"(a) NATIONAL STUDY.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall—

"(A) initiate a national study to identify measures to improve the security of maritime transportation of especially hazardous cargo; and

"(B) coordinate with other Federal agencies, the National Maritime Security Advisory Committee, and appropriate State and local government officials through the Area Maritime Security Committees and other existing coordinating committees, to evaluate the waterside security of vessels carrying, and waterfront facilities handling, especially hazardous cargo.

"(2) MATTERS TO BE INCLUDED.—The study conducted under this subsection shall include—

"(A) an analysis of existing risk assessment information relating to waterside security generated by the Coast Guard and Area Maritime Security Committees as part of the Maritime Security Risk Analysis Model;

"(B) a review and analysis of appropriate roles and responsibilities of maritime stakeholders, including Federal, State, and local law enforcement and industry security personnel, responsible for waterside security of vessels carrying, and waterfront facilities handling, especially hazardous cargo, including—

"(i) the number of ports in which State and local law enforcement entities are providing any services to enforce Coast Guard-imposed security zones around vessels transiting to, through, or from United States ports or to conduct security patrols in United States ports;

"(ii) the number of formal agreements entered into between the Coast Guard and State and local law enforcement entities to engage State and local law enforcement entities in the enforcement of Coast Guard-imposed security zones around vessels transiting to, through, or from United States ports or the conduct of port security patrols in United States ports, the duration of those agreements, and the aid that State and local entities are engaged to provide through such agreements;

"(iii) the extent to which the Coast Guard has set national standards for training, equipment, and resources to ensure that State and local law enforcement entities engaged in enforcing Coast Guard-imposed security zones around vessels transiting to, through, or from United States ports or in conducting port security patrols in United States ports (or both) can deter to the maximum extent practicable a transportation security incident;

"(iv) the extent to which the Coast Guard has assessed the ability of State and local law enforcement entities to carry out the security assignments that they have been engaged to perform, including their ability to meet any national standards for training, equipment, and resources that have been established by the Coast Guard in order to ensure that those entities can deter to the maximum extent practicable a transportation security incident;

"(v) the extent to which State and local law enforcement entities are able to meet national standards for training, equipment, and resources established by the Coast Guard to ensure that those entities can deter to the maximum extent practicable a transportation security incident;

"(vi) the differences in law enforcement authority, and particularly boarding authority, between the Coast Guard and State and local law enforcement entities, and the impact that these differences have on the ability of State and local law enforcement entities to provide the same level of security that the Coast Guard provides during the enforcement of Coast Guard-imposed security zones and the conduct of security patrols in United States ports; and

"(vii) the extent of resource, training, and equipment differences between State and local law enforcement entities and the Coast Guard units engaged in enforcing Coast Guard-imposed security zones around vessels transiting to, through, or from United States ports or conducting security patrols in United States ports;

"(C) recommendations for risk-based security measures to improve waterside security of vessels carrying, and waterfront facilities handling, especially hazardous cargo; and

"(D) identification of security funding alternatives, including an analysis of the potential for cost-sharing by the public and private sectors as well as any challenges associated with such cost-sharing.

"(3) INFORMATION PROTECTION.—In carrying out the coordination necessary to effectively complete the study, the Commandant shall implement measures to ensure the protection of any sensitive security information, proprietary information, or classified information collected, reviewed, or shared during collaborative engagement with maritime stakeholders and other Government entities, except that nothing in this paragraph shall constitute authority to withhold information from—

"(A) the Congress; or

"(B) first responders requiring such information for the protection of life or property.

"(4) REPORT.—Not later than 12 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 15, 2010], the Secretary of the Department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall submit to the Committees on Homeland Security and Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report on the results of the study under this subsection.

"(b) NATIONAL STRATEGY.—Not later than 6 months after submission of the report required by subsection (a), the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall develop, in conjunction with appropriate Federal agencies, a national strategy for the waterside security of vessels carrying, and waterfront facilities handling, especially hazardous cargo. The strategy shall utilize the results of the study required by subsection (a).

"(c) SECURITY OF ESPECIALLY HAZARDOUS CARGO.—[Amended section 70103 of this title.]

"(d) DEFINITIONS.—For the purposes of this section, the follow[ing] definitions apply:

"(1) ESPECIALLY HAZARDOUS CARGO.—The term 'especially hazardous cargo' means anhydrous ammonia, ammonium nitrate, chlorine, liquefied natural gas, liquiefied petroleum gas, and any other substance, material, or group or class of material, in a particular amount and form that the Secretary determines by regulation poses a significant risk of creating a transportation security incident while being transported in maritime commerce.

"(2) AREA MARITIME SECURITY COMMITTEE.—The term 'Area Maritime Security Committee' means each of those committees responsible for producing Area Maritime Transportation Security Plans under chapter 701 of title 46, United States Code.

"(3) TRANSPORTATION SECURITY INCIDENT.—The term 'transportation security incident' has the same meaning as that term has in section 70101 of title 46, United States Code."

RISK BASED RESOURCE ALLOCATION

Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §827, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3004, provided that:

"(a) NATIONAL STANDARD.—Within 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 15, 2010], in carrying out chapter 701 of title 46, United States Code, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall develop and utilize a national standard and formula for prioritizing and addressing assessed security risks at United State ports and facilities on or adjacent to the waterways of the United States, such as the Maritime Security Risk Assessment Model that has been tested by the Department of Homeland Security.

"(b) USE BY MARITIME SECURITY COMMITTEES.—Within 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary shall require each Area Maritime Security Committee to use this standard to regularly evaluate each port's assessed risk and prioritize how to mitigate the most significant risks.

"(c) OTHER USES OF STANDARD.—The Secretary shall utilize the standard when considering departmental resource allocations and grant making decisions.

"(d) USE OF MARITIME RISK ASSESSMENT MODEL.—Within 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall make the United States Coast Guard's Maritime Security Risk Assessment Model available, in an unclassified version, on a limited basis to regulated vessels and facilities to conduct true risk assessments of their own facilities and vessels using the same criteria employed by the Coast Guard when evaluating a port area, facility, or vessel."

WATCH LISTS FOR PASSENGERS ABOARD VESSELS

Pub. L. 108–458, title IV, §4071, Dec. 17, 2004, 118 Stat. 3729, provided that:

"(a) WATCH LISTS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—As soon as practicable but not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 17, 2004], the Secretary of Homeland Security shall—

"(A) implement a procedure under which the Department of Homeland Security compares information about passengers and crew who are to be carried aboard a cruise ship with a comprehensive, consolidated database containing information about known or suspected terrorists and their associates;

"(B) use the information obtained by comparing the passenger and crew information with the information in the database to prevent known or suspected terrorists and their associates from boarding such ships or to subject them to specific additional security scrutiny, through the use of 'no transport' and 'automatic selectee' lists or other means.

"(2) WAIVER.—The Secretary may waive the requirement in paragraph (1)(B) with respect to cruise ships embarking at foreign ports if the Secretary determines that the application of such requirement to such cruise ships is impracticable.

"(b) COOPERATION FROM OPERATORS OF CRUISE SHIPS.—The Secretary of Homeland Security shall by rulemaking require operators of cruise ships to provide the passenger and crew information necessary

to implement the procedure required by subsection (a).

"(c) MAINTENANCE OF ACCURACY AND INTEGRITY OF 'NO TRANSPORT' AND 'AUTOMATIC SELECTEE' LISTS.—

"(1) WATCH LIST DATABASE.—The Secretary of Homeland Security, in consultation with the Terrorist Screening Center, shall develop guidelines, policies, and operating procedures for the collection, removal, and updating of data maintained, or to be maintained, in the 'no transport' and 'automatic selectee' lists described in subsection (a)(1) that are designed to ensure the accuracy and integrity of the lists.

"(2) ACCURACY OF ENTRIES.—In developing the 'no transport' and 'automatic selectee' lists under subsection (a)(1)(B), the Secretary shall establish a simple and timely method for correcting erroneous entries, for clarifying information known to cause false hits or misidentification errors, and for updating relevant information that is dispositive in the passenger and crew screening process. The Secretary shall also establish a process to provide an individual whose name is confused with, or similar to, a name in the watch list database with a means of demonstrating that such individual is not the person named in the database.

"(d) CRUISE SHIP DEFINED.—In this section, the term 'cruise ship' means a vessel on an international voyage that embarks or disembarks passengers at a port of United States jurisdiction to which subpart C of part 160 of title 33, Code of Federal Regulations, applies and that provides overnight accommodations."

VESSEL AND INTERMODAL SECURITY REPORTS

Pub. L. 108–293, title VIII, §809(g), (i), formerly §809(g)–(i), (k), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1087, 1088, renumbered and amended by Pub. L. 113–284, §2(a)(1), (2)(B), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3089, which required an annual report on compliance and steps taken to ensure compliance by ports, terminals, vessel operators, and shippers with security standards established pursuant to section 70103 of this title, was repealed by Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXII [LXXXII], §8240(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4666.

FINDINGS

Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §101, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2066, provided that:

"The Congress makes the following findings:

"(1) There are 361 public ports in the United States that are an integral part of our Nation's commerce.

"(2) United States ports handle over 95 percent of United States overseas trade. The total volume of goods imported and exported through ports is expected to more than double over the next 20 years.

"(3) The variety of trade and commerce carried out at ports includes bulk cargo, containerized cargo, passenger transport and tourism, and intermodal transportation systems that are complex to secure.

"(4) The United States is increasingly dependent on imported energy for a substantial share of its energy supply, and a disruption of that share of supply would seriously harm consumers and our economy.

"(5) The top 50 ports in the United States account for about 90 percent of all the cargo tonnage. Twenty-five United States ports account for 98 percent of all container shipments. Cruise ships visiting foreign destinations embark from at least 16 ports. Ferries in the United States transport 113,000,000 passengers and 32,000,000 vehicles per year.

"(6) Ports often are a major locus of Federal crime, including drug trafficking, cargo theft, and smuggling of contraband and aliens.

"(7) Ports are often very open and exposed and are susceptible to large scale acts of terrorism that could cause a large loss of life or economic disruption.

"(8) Current inspection levels of containerized cargo are insufficient to counter potential security risks. Technology is currently not adequately deployed to allow for the nonintrusive inspection of containerized cargo.

"(9) The cruise ship industry poses a special risk from a security perspective.

"(10) Securing entry points and other areas of port facilities and examining or inspecting containers would increase security at United States ports.

"(11) Biometric identification procedures for individuals having access to secure areas in port facilities are important tools to deter and prevent port cargo crimes, smuggling, and terrorist actions.

"(12) United States ports are international boundaries that—

"(A) are particularly vulnerable to breaches in security;

"(B) may present weaknesses in the ability of the United States to realize its national security objectives; and

"(C) may serve as a vector or target for terrorist attacks aimed at the United States.

"(13) It is in the best interests of the United States—

"(A) to have a free flow of interstate and foreign commerce and to ensure the efficient movement of cargo;

"(B) to increase United States port security by establishing improving communication among law enforcement officials responsible for port security;

"(C) to formulate requirements for physical port security, recognizing the different character and nature of United States port facilities, and to require the establishment of security programs at port facilities;

"(D) to provide financial assistance to help the States and the private sector to increase physical security of United States ports;

"(E) to invest in long-term technology to facilitate the private sector development of technology that will assist in the nonintrusive timely detection of crime or potential crime at United States ports;

"(F) to increase intelligence collection on cargo and intermodal movements to address areas of potential threat to safety and security; and

"(G) to promote private sector procedures that provide for in-transit visibility and support law enforcement efforts directed at managing the security risks of cargo shipments.

"(14) On April 27, 1999, the President established the Interagency Commission on Crime and Security in United States Ports to undertake a comprehensive study of the nature and extent of the problem of crime in our ports, as well as the ways in which governments at all levels are responding. The Commission concluded that frequent crimes in ports include drug smuggling, illegal car exports, fraud, and cargo theft. Internal conspiracies are an issue at many ports and contribute to Federal crime. Criminal organizations are exploiting weak security at ports to commit a wide range of cargo crimes. Intelligence and information sharing among law enforcement agencies needs to be improved and coordinated at many ports. A lack of minimum physical and personnel security standards at ports and related facilities leaves many ports and port users very vulnerable. Access to ports and operations within ports is often uncontrolled. Security-related and detection-related equipment, such as small boats, cameras, large-scale x-ray machines, and vessel tracking devices, are lacking at many ports.

"(15) The International Maritime Organization and other similar international organizations are currently developing a new maritime security system that contains the essential elements for enhancing global maritime security. Therefore, it is in the best interests of the United States to implement new international instruments that establish such a system."

MARITIME SECURITY PROFESSIONAL TRAINING

Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §109, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2090, as amended by Pub. L. 117–286, §4(a)(293), Dec. 27, 2022, 136 Stat. 4338, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—

"(1) DEVELOPMENT OF STANDARDS.—Not later than 6 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 25, 2002], the Secretary of Transportation shall develop standards and curriculum to allow for the training and certification of maritime security professionals. In developing these standards and curriculum, the Secretary shall consult with the National Maritime Security Advisory Committee established under section 70112 of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this Act.

"(2) SECRETARY TO CONSULT ON STANDARDS.—In developing standards under this section, the Secretary may, without regard to chapter 10 of title 5, United States Code, consult with the Federal Law Enforcement Training Center, the United States Merchant Marine Academy's Global Maritime and Transportation School, the Maritime Security Council, the International Association of Airport and Port Police, the National Cargo Security Council, and any other Federal, State, or local government or law enforcement agency or private organization or individual determined by the Secretary to have pertinent expertise.

"(b) MINIMUM STANDARDS.—The standards established by the Secretary under subsection (a) shall include the following elements:

"(1) The training and certification of maritime security professionals in accordance with accepted law enforcement and security guidelines, policies, and procedures, including, as appropriate, recommendations for incorporating a background check process for personnel trained and certified in foreign ports.

"(2) The training of students and instructors in all aspects of prevention, detection, investigation, and reporting of criminal activities in the international maritime environment.

"(3) The provision of off-site training and certification courses and certified personnel at United States and foreign ports used by United States-flagged vessels, or by foreign-flagged vessels with United States citizens as passengers or crewmembers, to develop and enhance security awareness and practices.

"(c) TRAINING PROVIDED TO LAW ENFORCEMENT AND SECURITY PERSONNEL.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary is authorized to make the training opportunities provided under this section available to any Federal, State, local, and private law enforcement or maritime security

personnel in the United States or to personnel employed in foreign ports used by vessels with United States citizens as passengers or crewmembers.

"(2) ACADEMIES AND SCHOOLS.—The Secretary may provide training under this section at—

"(A) each of the 6 State maritime academies;

"(B) the United States Merchant Marine Academy;

"(C) the Appalachian Transportation Institute; and

"(D) other security training schools in the United States.

"(d) USE OF CONTRACT RESOURCES.—The Secretary may employ Federal and contract resources to train and certify maritime security professionals in accordance with the standards and curriculum developed under this Act [see Tables for classification].

"(e) ANNUAL REPORT.—The Secretary shall transmit an annual report to the Senate Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the House of Representatives Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure on the expenditure of appropriated funds and the training under this section.

"(f) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out this section $5,500,000 for each of fiscal years 2003 through 2008."

[For transfer of functions, personnel, assets, and liabilities of the Federal Law Enforcement Training Center of the Department of the Treasury to the Secretary of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 203(4), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.]

REPORT ON TRAINING CENTER

Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §110(b), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2091, provided that: "The Commandant of the United States Coast Guard, in conjunction with the Secretary of the Navy, shall submit to Congress a report, at the time they submit their fiscal year 2005 budget, on the life cycle costs and benefits of creating a Center for Coastal and Maritime Security. The purpose of the Center would be to provide an integrated training complex to prevent and mitigate terrorist threats against coastal and maritime assets of the United States, including ports, harbors, ships, dams, reservoirs, and transport nodes."

PERFORMANCE STANDARDS

Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §111, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2092, provided that: "Not later than January 1, 2004, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating, in consultation with the Transportation Security Oversight Board, shall—

"(1) develop and maintain an antiterrorism cargo identification, tracking, and screening system for containerized cargo shipped to and from the United States either directly or via a foreign port; and

"(2) develop performance standards to enhance the physical security of shipping containers, including standards for seals and locks."

REPORT ON FOREIGN-FLAG VESSELS

Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §112, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2092, which required the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating to provide an annual report regarding all nations whose flag vessels have entered United States ports in the previous year, a separate list of those nations whose registered flag vessels present certain irregularities, actions taken to improve transparency and security of vessel registration procedures in those nations, and recommendations for legislative or other actions to improve security of United States ports, was repealed by Pub. L. 111–207, §4(a)(2), July 27, 2010, 124 Stat. 2251.

§70102. United States facility and vessel vulnerability assessments

(a) INITIAL ASSESSMENTS.—The Secretary shall conduct an assessment of vessel types and United States facilities on or adjacent to the waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States to identify those vessel types and United States facilities that pose a high risk of being involved in a transportation security incident.

(b) FACILITY AND VESSEL ASSESSMENTS.—(1) Based on the information gathered under subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary shall conduct a detailed vulnerability assessment of the facilities and vessels that may be involved in a transportation security incident. The vulnerability assessment shall include the following:

(A) Identification and evaluation of critical assets and infrastructures.

(B) Identification of the threats to those assets and infrastructures.

(C) Identification of weaknesses in physical security, security against cybersecurity risks, passenger and cargo security, structural integrity, protection systems, procedural policies, communications systems, transportation infrastructure, utilities, contingency response, and other areas as determined by the Secretary.

(2) Upon completion of an assessment under this subsection for a facility or vessel, the Secretary shall provide the owner or operator with a copy of the vulnerability assessment for that facility or vessel.

(3) The Secretary shall update each vulnerability assessment conducted under this section at least every 5 years.

(4) In lieu of conducting a facility or vessel vulnerability assessment under paragraph (1), the Secretary may accept an alternative assessment conducted by or on behalf of the owner or operator of the facility or vessel if the Secretary determines that the alternative assessment includes the matters required under paragraph (1).

(c) SHARING OF ASSESSMENT INTEGRATION OF PLANS AND EQUIPMENT.—The owner or operator of a facility, consistent with any Federal security restrictions, shall—

(1) make a current copy of the vulnerability assessment conducted under subsection (b) available to the port authority with jurisdiction of the facility and appropriate State or local law enforcement agencies; and

(2) integrate, to the maximum extent practical, any security system for the facility with compatible systems operated or maintained by the appropriate State, law enforcement agencies, and the Coast Guard.

(Added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2068; amended Pub. L. 108–458, title IV, §4072(b), Dec. 17, 2004, 118 Stat. 3730; Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §822, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3003; Pub. L. 115–254, div. J, §1805(d)(1), Oct. 5, 2018, 132 Stat. 3535.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 115–254, §1805(d)(1)(A), struck out "and by not later than December 31, 2004" after "subsection (a) of this section" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(1)(C). Pub. L. 115–254, §1805(d)(1)(B), inserted "security against cybersecurity risks," after "physical security,".

2010—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–281 added subsec. (c).

2004—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 108–458 substituted "and by not later than December 31, 2004, the Secretary" for ", the Secretary" in introductory provisions.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2018 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 115–254, div. J, §1805(d)(3), Oct. 5, 2018, 132 Stat. 3535, provided that: "The amendments made by this subsection [amending this section and section 70103 of this title] shall apply to assessments or security plans, or updates to such assessments or plans, submitted after the date that the cybersecurity risk assessment model is developed under subsection (a) [46 U.S.C. 70112 note]."

COORDINATION WITH TSA ON MARITIME FACILITIES

Pub. L. 115–254, div. J, §1803, Oct. 5, 2018, 132 Stat. 3533, provided that: "The Secretary of Homeland Security shall—

"(1) provide the Administrator of the TSA [Transportation Security Administration] with updates to vulnerability assessments required under section 70102(b)(3) of title 46, United States Code, to avoid any duplication of effort between the Coast Guard and the TSA; and

"(2) identify any security gaps between authorities of operating entities within the Department of Homeland Security that a threat could exploit to cause a transportation security incident (as defined in

section 70101 of title 46, United States Code)."

DEFINITIONS

Pub. L. 115–254, div. J, §1802, Oct. 5, 2018, 132 Stat. 3533, provided that: "In this division [see section 1801 of Pub. L. 115–254, set out as a Short Title of 2018 Amendment note under section 101 of this title]:

"(1) APPROPRIATE COMMITTEES OF CONGRESS.—The term 'appropriate committees of Congress' means—

"(A) the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate;

"(B) the Committee on Homeland Security and Governmental Affairs of the Senate;

"(C) the Committee on Homeland Security of the House of Representatives; and

"(D) the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives.

"(2) TSA.—The term 'TSA' means the Transportation Security Administration."

[§70102a. Repealed. Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8507(d)(1), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4754]

Section, as added and amended Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §408(a), (b), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4268, related to port, harbor, and coastal facility security.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Dec. 4, 2018, and as if included in Pub. L. 115—282, see section 8507(d)(7) of Pub. L. 116—283, set out as an Effective Date of 2021 Amendment note under section 1226 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

§70103. Maritime transportation security plans

(a) NATIONAL MARITIME TRANSPORTATION SECURITY PLAN.—(1) The Secretary shall prepare a National Maritime Transportation Security Plan for deterring and responding to a transportation security incident.

(2) The National Maritime Transportation Security Plan shall provide for efficient, coordinated, and effective action to deter and minimize damage from a transportation security incident, and shall include the following:

(A) Assignment of duties and responsibilities among Federal departments and agencies and coordination with State and local governmental agencies.

(B) Identification of security resources.

(C) Procedures and techniques to be employed in deterring a national transportation security incident.

(D) Establishment of procedures for the coordination of activities of—

(i) Coast Guard maritime security teams established under this chapter; and

(ii) Federal Maritime Security Coordinators required under this chapter.

(E) A system of surveillance and notice designed to safeguard against as well as ensure earliest possible notice of a transportation security incident and imminent threats of such a security incident to the appropriate State and Federal agencies.

(F) Establishment of criteria and procedures to ensure immediate and effective Federal identification of a transportation security incident, or the substantial threat of such a security incident.

(G) Designation of—

(i) areas for which Area Maritime Transportation Security Plans are required to be prepared under subsection (b); and

(ii) a Coast Guard official who shall be the Federal Maritime Security Coordinator for each

such area.

(H) A risk-based system for evaluating the potential for violations of security zones designated by the Secretary on the waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States.

(I) A recognition of certified systems of intermodal transportation.

(J) A plan for ensuring that the flow of cargo through United States ports is reestablished as efficiently and quickly as possible after a transportation security incident.

(K) A plan to detect, respond to, and recover from cybersecurity risks that may cause transportation security incidents.

(3) The Secretary shall, as the Secretary considers advisable, revise or otherwise amend the National Maritime Transportation Security Plan.

(4) Actions by Federal agencies to deter and minimize damage from a transportation security incident shall, to the greatest extent possible, be in accordance with the National Maritime Transportation Security Plan.

(5) The Secretary shall inform vessel and facility owners or operators of the provisions in the National Transportation Security Plan that the Secretary considers necessary for security purposes.

(b) AREA MARITIME TRANSPORTATION SECURITY PLANS.—(1) The Federal Maritime Security Coordinator designated under subsection (a)(2)(G) for an area shall—

(A) submit to the Secretary an Area Maritime Transportation Security Plan for the area; and

(B) solicit advice from the Area Security Advisory Committee required under this chapter, for the area to assure preplanning of joint deterrence efforts, including appropriate procedures for deterrence of a transportation security incident.

(2) The Area Maritime Transportation Security Plan for an area shall—

(A) when implemented in conjunction with the National Maritime Transportation Security Plan, be adequate to deter a transportation security incident in or near the area to the maximum extent practicable;

(B) describe the area and infrastructure covered by the plan, including the areas of population or special economic, environmental, or national security importance that might be damaged by a transportation security incident;

(C) describe in detail how the plan is integrated with other Area Maritime Transportation Security Plans, and with facility security plans and vessel security plans under this section;

(D) include consultation and coordination with the Department of Defense on matters relating to Department of Defense facilities and vessels;

(E) establish area response and recovery protocols to prepare for, respond to, mitigate against, and recover from a transportation security incident consistent with section 202 of the SAFE Port Act of 2006 (6 U.S.C. 942) and subsection (a) of this section;

(F) include any other information the Secretary requires;

(G) include a salvage response plan—

(i) to identify salvage equipment capable of restoring operational trade capacity; and

(ii) to ensure that the waterways are cleared and the flow of commerce through United States ports is reestablished as efficiently and quickly as possible after a maritime transportation security incident;

(H) include a plan for detecting, responding to, and recovering from cybersecurity risks that may cause transportation security incidents; and

(I) be updated at least every 5 years by the Federal Maritime Security Coordinator.

(3) The Secretary shall review and approve Area Maritime Transportation Security Plans and updates under this subsection.

(4) In security zones designated by the Secretary in each Area Maritime Transportation Security Plan, the Secretary shall consider—

(A) the use of public/private partnerships to enforce security within the security zones, shoreside protection alternatives, and the environmental, public safety, and relative effectiveness of such alternatives; and

(B) technological means of enhancing the security zones of port, territorial waters, and waterways of the United States.

(c) VESSEL AND FACILITY SECURITY PLANS.—(1) Within 6 months after the prescription of interim final regulations on vessel and facility security plans, an owner or operator of a vessel or facility described in paragraph (2) shall prepare and submit to the Secretary a security plan for the vessel or facility, for deterring a transportation security incident to the maximum extent practicable.

(2) The vessels and facilities referred to in paragraph (1)—

(A) except as provided in subparagraph (B), are vessels and facilities that the Secretary believes may be involved in a transportation security incident; and

(B) do not include any vessel or facility owned or operated by the Department of Defense.

(3) A security plan required under this subsection shall—

(A) be consistent with the requirements of the National Maritime Transportation Security Plan and Area Maritime Transportation Security Plans;

(B) identify the qualified individual having full authority to implement security actions, and require immediate communications between that individual and the appropriate Federal official and the persons providing personnel and equipment pursuant to subparagraph (C);

(C) include provisions for—

(i) establishing and maintaining physical security, passenger and cargo security, and personnel security;

(ii) establishing and controlling access to secure areas of the vessel or facility, including access by persons engaged in the surface transportation of intermodal containers in or out of a port facility;

(iii) procedural security policies;

(iv) communications systems;

(v) detecting, responding to, and recovering from cybersecurity risks that may cause transportation security incidents; and

(vi) other security systems;

(D) identify, and ensure by contract or other means approved by the Secretary, the availability of security measures necessary to deter to the maximum extent practicable a transportation security incident or a substantial threat of such a security incident;

(E) describe the training, periodic unannounced drills, and security actions of persons on the vessel or at the facility, to be carried out under the plan to deter to the maximum extent practicable a transportation security incident, or a substantial threat of such a security incident;

(F) provide a strategy and timeline for conducting training and periodic unannounced drills;

(G) be updated at least every 5 years;

(H) be resubmitted for approval of each change to the vessel or facility that may substantially affect the security of the vessel or facility; and

(I) in the case of a security plan for a facility, be resubmitted for approval of each change in the ownership or operator of the facility that may substantially affect the security of the facility.

(4) The Secretary shall—

(A) promptly review each such plan or update;

(B) require amendments to any plan or update that does not meet the requirements of this subsection;

(C) approve any plan or update that meets the requirements of this subsection; and

(D) subject to the availability of appropriations, periodically, but not less than one time per year, conduct a risk-based, no notice facility inspection to verify the effectiveness of each such facility

security plan or update.

(5) A vessel or facility for which a plan is required to be submitted under this subsection may not operate after the end of the 12-month period beginning on the date of the prescription of interim final regulations on vessel and facility security plans, unless—

(A) the plan has been approved by the Secretary; and

(B) the vessel or facility is operating in compliance with the plan.

(6) Notwithstanding paragraph (5), the Secretary may authorize a vessel or facility to operate without a security plan approved under this subsection, until not later than 1 year after the date of the submission to the Secretary of a plan for the vessel or facility, if the owner or operator of the vessel or facility certifies that the owner or operator has ensured by contract or other means approved by the Secretary to deter to the maximum extent practicable a transportation security incident or a substantial threat of such a security incident.

(7) The Secretary shall require each owner or operator of a vessel or facility located within or adjacent to waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States to implement any necessary interim security measures, including cargo security programs, to deter to the maximum extent practicable a transportation security incident until the security plan for that vessel or facility operator is approved.

(8)(A) The Secretary shall require that the qualified individual having full authority to implement security actions for a facility described in paragraph (2) shall be a citizen of the United States.

(B) The Secretary may waive the requirement of subparagraph (A) with respect to an individual if the Secretary determines that it is appropriate to do so based on a complete background check of the individual and a review of all terrorist watch lists to ensure that the individual is not identified on any such terrorist watch list.

(9) The Secretary may conduct no-notice exercises in Captain of the Port Zones (as described in part 3 of title 33, Code of Federal Regulations as in effect on the date of enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2025 [Dec. 18, 2025]) involving a facility or vessel required to maintain a security plan under this subsection.

(d) NONDISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Information developed under this section or sections 70102, 70104, and 70108 is not required to be disclosed to the public, including—

(A) facility security plans, vessel security plans, and port vulnerability assessments; and

(B) other information related to security plans, procedures, or programs for vessels or facilities authorized under this section or sections 70102, 70104, and 70108.

(2) LIMITATIONS.—Nothing in paragraph (1) shall be construed to authorize the designation of information as sensitive security information (as defined in section 1520.5 of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations)—

(A) to conceal a violation of law, inefficiency, or administrative error;

(B) to prevent embarrassment to a person, organization, or agency;

(C) to restrain competition; or

(D) to prevent or delay the release of information that does not require protection in the interest of transportation security, including basic scientific research information not clearly related to transportation security.

(e) ESPECIALLY HAZARDOUS CARGO.—

(1) ENFORCEMENT OF SECURITY ZONES.—Consistent with other provisions of Federal law, the Coast Guard shall coordinate and be responsible for the enforcement of any Federal security zone established by the Coast Guard around a vessel containing especially hazardous cargo. The Coast Guard shall allocate available resources so as to deter and respond to a transportation security incident, to the maximum extent practicable, and to protect lives or protect property in danger.

(2) ESPECIALLY HAZARDOUS CARGO DEFINED.—In this subsection, the term

"especially hazardous cargo" means anhydrous ammonia, ammonium nitrate, chlorine, liquefied natural gas, liquefied petroleum gas, and any other substance, material, or group or class of material, in a particular amount and form that the Secretary determines by regulation poses a significant risk of creating a transportation security incident while being transported in maritime commerce.

(f) NONDISCLOSURE OF PORT SECURITY PLANS.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, information related to security plans, procedures, or programs for passenger vessels or passenger terminals authorized under this chapter is not required to be disclosed to the public.

(Added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2069; amended Pub. L. 108–458, title IV, §4072(a), Dec. 17, 2004, 118 Stat. 3730; Pub. L. 109–347, title I, §§101–103, 113(c), Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1887, 1888, 1896; Pub. L. 111–83, title V, §561(b), Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2182; Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §§812(c), 826, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2997, 3004; Pub. L. 115–254, div. J, §§1805(d)(2), 1806, Oct. 5, 2018, 132 Stat. 3535, 3536; Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §§402(c), 408(d), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4264, 4268; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXII [LXXXII], §8240(a), title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8344, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8507(d)(1), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4666, 4710, 4754; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7325, Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1770.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Section 1226(c) of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters, which was transferred and redesignated as subsec. (f) of this section by Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §§402(c)(1), 408(d)(1), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4264, 4268, was based on section 7(c) of Pub. L. 92–340, as added by Pub. L. 104–324, title III, §302, Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3917.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (c)(9). Pub. L. 119–60 added par. (9).

2021—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 116–283, §8344(1), amended par. (3) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (3) read as follows: "The Secretary shall—

"(A) review and approve Area Maritime Transportation Security Plans under this subsection; and

"(B) periodically review previously approved Area Maritime Transportation Security Plans."

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 116–283, §8344(2), inserted "or update" after "plan" wherever appearing.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 116–283, §8240(a), amended subsec. (e) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (e) consisted of pars. (1) and (2) relating to enforcement of security zones and resource deficiency reporting, respectively.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 116–283, §8507(d)(1), repealed amendments by Pub. L. 115–282, §408(d). See 2018 Amendment notes below.

2018—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 115–254, §1805(d)(2)(A), substituted "The" for "Not later than April 1, 2005, the".

Subsec. (a)(2)(K). Pub. L. 115–254, §1805(d)(2)(B), added subpar. (K).

Subsec. (b)(2)(H), (I). Pub. L. 115–254, §1805(d)(2)(C), added subpar. (H) and redesignated former subpar. (H) as (I).

Subsec. (c)(3)(v), (vi). Pub. L. 115–254, §1805(d)(2)(D), added cl. (v) and redesignated former cl. (v) as (vi).

Subsec. (c)(4)(D). Pub. L. 115–254, §1806, amended subpar. (D) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (D) read as follows: "subject to the availability of appropriations, verify the effectiveness of each such facility security plan periodically, but not less than 2 times per year, at least 1 of which shall be an inspection of the facility that is conducted without notice to the facility."

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 115–282, §408(d)(2), which directed substitution of "this chapter" for "this Act" identical to amendment made by section 402(c)(2) of Pub. L. 115–282, was repealed by Pub. L. 116–283, §8507(d)(1).

Pub. L. 115–282, §402(c)(2), substituted "this chapter" for "this Act".

Pub. L. 115–282, §408(d)(1), which directed redesignation and transfer of subsec. (c) of section 7 of Pub. L. 92–340 to subsec. (f) of this section identical to amendment made by section 402(c)(1) of Pub. L. 115–282, was repealed by Pub. L. 116–283, §8507(d)(1).

Pub. L. 115–282, §402(c)(1), redesignated and transferred subsec. (c) of section 7 of Pub. L. 92–340 to subsec. (f) of this section. See Codification note above.

2010—Subsec. (b)(2)(E) to (H). Pub. L. 111–281, §826, added subpar. (E) and redesignated former subpars. (E) to (G) as (F) to (H), respectively.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 111–281, §812(c), added subsec.(e).

2009—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–83 amended subsec. (d) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Notwithstanding any other provision of law, information developed under this chapter is not required to be disclosed to the public, including—

"(1) facility security plans, vessel security plans, and port vulnerability assessments; and

"(2) other information related to security plans, procedures, or programs for vessels or facilities authorized under this chapter."

2006—Subsec. (b)(2)(F), (G). Pub. L. 109–347, §101, added subpar. (F) and redesignated former subpar. (F) as (G).

Subsec. (c)(3)(C)(ii). Pub. L. 109–347, §102(1)(A), substituted "facility, including access by persons engaged in the surface transportation of intermodal containers in or out of a port facility" for "facility".

Subsec. (c)(3)(F), (G). Pub. L. 109–347, §113(c), added subpar. (F) and redesignated former subpar. (F) as (G). Former subpar. (G) redesignated (H).

Subsec. (c)(3)(H). Pub. L. 109–347, §113(c)(1), redesignated subpar. (G) as (H). Former subpar. (H) redesignated (I).

Pub. L. 109–347, §102(1)(B)–(D), added subpar. (H).

Subsec. (c)(3)(I). Pub. L. 109–347, §113(c)(1), redesignated subpar. (H) as (I).

Subsec. (c)(4)(D). Pub. L. 109–347, §103, amended subpar. (D) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (D) read as follows: "review each plan periodically thereafter."

Subsec. (c)(8). Pub. L. 109–347, §102(2), added par. (8).

2004—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 108–458 substituted "Not later than April 1, 2005, the Secretary" for "The Secretary".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2021 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 8507(d)(1) of div. G of Pub. L. 116–283 effective Dec. 4, 2018, as if included in Pub. L. 115—282, see section 8507(d)(7) of Pub. L. 116—283, set out as a note under section 1226 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2018 AMENDMENT

Amendment of section by section 1805(d) of Pub. L. 115–254 applicable to assessments or security plans, or updates to such assessments or plans, submitted after the date that the cybersecurity risk assessment model is developed under subsection 1805(a) of Pub. L. 115–254, set out as a note under section 70112 of this title, see section 1805(d)(3) of Pub. L. 115–254, set out as a note under section 70102 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

SEAMEN'S SHORESIDE ACCESS

Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §811, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2995, provided that: "Each facility security plan approved under section 70103(c) of title 46, United States Code, shall provide a system for seamen assigned to a vessel at that facility, pilots, and representatives of seamen's welfare and labor organizations to board and depart the vessel through the facility in a timely manner at no cost to the individual."

RISK ASSESSMENT TOOL

Pub. L. 109–347, title I, §111, Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1894, provided that: "In updating Area Maritime Security Plans required under section 70103(b)(2)(F) [now section 70103(b)(2)(G)] of title 46, United States Code, and in applying for grants under section 70107 of such title, the Secretary of the Department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall make available, and Area Maritime Security Committees may use a risk

assessment tool that uses standardized risk criteria, such as the Maritime Security Risk Assessment Tool used by the Coast Guard."

REVISION OF PORT SECURITY PLANNING GUIDE

Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §113, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2093, provided that: "The Secretary of Transportation, acting through the Maritime Administration and after consultation with the National Maritime Security Advisory Committee and the Coast Guard, shall publish a revised version of the document entitled 'Port Security: A National Planning Guide', incorporating the requirements prescribed under chapter 701 of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this Act, within 3 years after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 25, 2002], and make that revised document available on the Internet."

§70104. Transportation security incident response

(a) FACILITY AND VESSEL RESPONSE PLANS.—The Secretary shall—

(1) establish security incident response plans for vessels and facilities that may be involved in a transportation security incident; and

(2) make those plans available to the Administrator of the Federal Emergency Management Agency for inclusion in the Administrator's response plan for United States ports and waterways.

(b) CONTENTS.—Response plans developed under subsection (a) shall provide a comprehensive response to an emergency, including notifying and coordinating with local, State, and Federal authorities, including the Administrator of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, securing the facility or vessel, and evacuating facility and vessel personnel.

(c) INCLUSION IN SECURITY PLAN.—A response plan required under this subsection for a vessel or facility may be included in the security plan prepared under section 70103(c).

(Added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2072; amended Pub. L. 109–295, title VI, §612(c), Oct. 4, 2006, 120 Stat. 1410.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

CHANGE OF NAME

"Administrator of the Federal Emergency Management Agency" and "Administrator's" substituted for "Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency" and "Director's", respectively, on authority of section 612(c) of Pub. L. 109–295, set out as a note under section 313 of Title 6, Domestic Security. Any reference to the Administrator of the Federal Emergency Management Agency in title VI of Pub. L. 109–295 or an amendment by title VI to be considered to refer and apply to the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency until Mar. 31, 2007, see section 612(f)(2) of Pub. L. 109–295, set out as a note under section 313 of Title 6.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of all functions, personnel, assets, components, authorities, grant programs, and liabilities of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, including the functions of the Under Secretary for Federal Emergency Management relating thereto, to the Federal Emergency Management Agency, see section 315(a)(1) of Title 6, Domestic Security.

For transfer of functions, personnel, assets, and liabilities of the Federal Emergency Management Agency, including the functions of the Director of the Federal Emergency Management Agency relating thereto, to the Secretary of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see former section 313(1) and sections 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

DEADLINE

Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(c), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2084, provided that: "The Secretary shall establish the plans required under section 70104(a)(1) of title 46, United States Code, as enacted by this Act, before April 1, 2003."

§70105. Transportation worker identification credentials

(a) PROHIBITION.—(1) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations to prevent an individual from entering an area of a vessel or facility that is designated as a secure area by the Secretary for purposes of a security plan for the vessel or facility that is approved by the Secretary under section 70103 of this title unless the individual—

(A) holds a transportation worker identification credential issued under this section and is authorized to be in the area in accordance with the plan; or

(B) is accompanied by another individual who holds a transportation worker identification credential issued under this section and is authorized to be in the area in accordance with the plan.

(2) A person shall not admit an individual into such a secure area unless the entry of the individual into the area is in compliance with paragraph (1).

(b) ISSUANCE OF CREDENTIALS.—(1) The Secretary shall issue a biometric transportation worker identification credential to an individual specified in paragraph (2), unless the Secretary determines under subsection (c) that the individual poses a security risk warranting denial of the credential.

(2) This subsection applies to—

(A) an individual allowed unescorted access to a secure area designated in a vessel or facility security plan approved under section 70103 of this title;

(B) an individual issued a license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariners document under part E of subtitle II of this title allowed unescorted access to a secure area designated in a vessel security plan approved under section 70103 of this title;

(C) a vessel pilot;

(D) an individual engaged on a towing vessel that pushes, pulls, or hauls alongside a tank vessel allowed unescorted access to a secure area designated in a vessel security plan approved under section 70103 of this title;

(E) an individual with access to security sensitive information as determined by the Secretary;

(F) other individuals engaged in port security activities as determined by the Secretary;

(G) a member of the Armed Forces who—

(i) is undergoing separation, discharge, or release from the Armed Forces under honorable conditions;

(ii) applies for a transportation worker identification credential; and

(iii) is otherwise eligible for such a credential; and

(H) other individuals as determined appropriate by the Secretary including individuals employed at a port not otherwise covered by this subsection.

(3) The Secretary may extend for up to one year the expiration of a biometric transportation worker identification credential required by this section to align the expiration with the expiration of a license, certificate of registry, or merchant mariner document required under chapter 71 or 73.

(c) DETERMINATION OF TERRORISM SECURITY RISK.—

(1) DISQUALIFICATIONS.—

(A) PERMANENT DISQUALIFYING CRIMINAL OFFENSES.—Except as provided under paragraph (2), an individual is permanently disqualified from being issued a biometric transportation worker identification credential under subsection (b) if the individual has been convicted, or found not guilty by reason of insanity, in a civilian or military jurisdiction of any of the following felonies:

(i) Espionage or conspiracy to commit espionage.

(ii) Sedition or conspiracy to commit sedition.

(iii) Treason or conspiracy to commit treason.

(iv) A Federal crime of terrorism (as defined in section 2332b(g) of title 18), a crime under a comparable State law, or conspiracy to commit such crime.

(v) A crime involving a transportation security incident.

(vi) Improper transportation of a hazardous material in violation of section 5104(b) of title 49, or a comparable State law.

(vii) Unlawful possession, use, sale, distribution, manufacture, purchase, receipt, transfer, shipment, transportation, delivery, import, export, or storage of, or dealing in, an explosive or explosive device. In this clause, an explosive or explosive device includes—

(I) an explosive (as defined in sections 232(5) and 844(j) of title 18);

(II) explosive materials (as defined in subsections (c) through (f) of section 841 of title 18); and

(III) a destructive device (as defined in 921(a)(4) of title 18 or section 5845(f) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986).

(viii) Murder.

(ix) Making any threat, or maliciously conveying false information knowing the same to be false, concerning the deliverance, placement, or detonation of an explosive or other lethal device in or against a place of public use, a State or other government facility, a public transportation system, or an infrastructure facility.

(x) A violation of chapter 96 of title 18, popularly known as the Racketeer Influenced and Corrupt Organizations Act, or a comparable State law, if one of the predicate acts found by a jury or admitted by the defendant consists of one of the crimes listed in this subparagraph.

(xi) Attempt to commit any of the crimes listed in clauses (i) through (iv).

(xii) Conspiracy or attempt to commit any of the crimes described in clauses (v) through (x).

(B) INTERIM DISQUALIFYING CRIMINAL OFFENSES.—Except as provided under paragraph (2), an individual is disqualified from being issued a biometric transportation worker identification credential under subsection (b) if the individual has been convicted, or found not guilty by reason of insanity, during the 7-year period ending on the date on which the individual applies for such credential, or was released from incarceration during the 5-year period ending on the date on which the individual applies for such credential, of any of the following felonies:

(i) Unlawful possession, use, sale, manufacture, purchase, distribution, receipt, transfer, shipment, transportation, delivery, import, export, or storage of, or dealing in, a firearm or other weapon. In this clause, a firearm or other weapon includes—

(I) firearms (as defined in section 921(a)(3) of title 18 or section 5845(a) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986); and

(II) items contained on the U.S. Munitions Import List under section 447.21 of title 27, Code of Federal Regulations.

(ii) Extortion.

(iii) Dishonesty, fraud, or misrepresentation, including identity fraud and money laundering if the money laundering is related to a crime described in this subparagraph or subparagraph (A). In this clause, welfare fraud and passing bad checks do not constitute dishonesty, fraud, or misrepresentation.

(iv) Bribery.

(v) Smuggling.

(vi) Immigration violations.

(vii) Distribution of, possession with intent to distribute, or importation of a controlled substance.

(viii) Arson.

(ix) Kidnaping or hostage taking.

(x) Rape or aggravated sexual abuse.

(xi) Assault with intent to kill.

(xii) Robbery.

(xiii) Conspiracy or attempt to commit any of the crimes listed in this subparagraph.

(xiv) Fraudulent entry into a seaport in violation of section 1036 of title 18, or a comparable State law.

(xv) A violation of the chapter 96 of title 18 (popularly known as the Racketeer Influenced and Corrupt Organizations Act) or a comparable State law, other than any of the violations listed in subparagraph (A)(x).

(C) UNDER WANT, WARRANT, OR INDICTMENT.—An applicant who is wanted, or under indictment, in any civilian or military jurisdiction for a felony listed in paragraph (1)(A), is disqualified from being issued a biometric transportation worker identification credential under subsection (b) until the want or warrant is released or the indictment is dismissed.

(D) OTHER POTENTIAL DISQUALIFICATIONS.—Except as provided under subparagraphs (A) through (C), an individual may not be denied a transportation worker identification credential under subsection (b) unless the Secretary determines that individual—

(i) has been convicted within the preceding 7-year period of a felony or found not guilty by reason of insanity of a felony—

(I) that the Secretary believes could cause the individual to be a terrorism security risk to the United States; or

(II) for causing a severe transportation security incident;

(ii) has been released from incarceration within the preceding 5-year period for committing a felony described in clause (i);

(iii) may be denied admission to the United States or removed from the United States under the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.); or

(iv) otherwise poses a terrorism security risk to the United States.

(E) MODIFICATION OF LISTED OFFENSES.—The Secretary may, by rulemaking, add to or modify the list of disqualifying crimes described in paragraph (1)(B).

(2) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations that establish a waiver process for issuing a transportation worker identification credential to an individual found to be otherwise ineligible for such a credential under subparagraph (A), (B), or (D) of paragraph (1). In deciding to issue a credential to such an individual, the Secretary shall—

(A) give consideration to the circumstances of any disqualifying act or offense, restitution made by the individual, Federal and State mitigation remedies, and other factors from which it may be concluded that the individual does not pose a terrorism risk warranting denial of the credential; and

(B) issue a waiver to an individual without regard to whether that individual would otherwise be disqualified if the individual's employer establishes alternate security arrangements acceptable to the Secretary.

(3) DENIAL OF WAIVER REVIEW.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall establish a review process before an administrative law judge for individuals denied a waiver under paragraph (2).

(B) SCOPE OF REVIEW.—In conducting a review under the process established pursuant to subparagraph (A), the administrative law judge shall be governed by the standards of section 706 of title 5. The substantial evidence standard in section 706(2)(E) of title 5 shall apply whether or not there has been an agency hearing. The judge shall review all facts on the record of the agency.

(C) CLASSIFIED EVIDENCE.—The Secretary, in consultation with the Director of National Intelligence, shall issue regulations to establish procedures by which the Secretary, as part of a review conducted under this paragraph, may provide to the individual adversely affected by the determination an unclassified summary of classified evidence upon which the denial of a waiver by the Secretary was based.

(D) REVIEW OF CLASSIFIED EVIDENCE BY ADMINISTRATIVE LAW JUDGE.—

(i) REVIEW.—As part of a review conducted under this section, if the decision of the Secretary was based on classified information (as defined in section 1(a) of the Classified Information Procedures Act (18 U.S.C. App.)), such information may be submitted by the Secretary to the reviewing administrative law judge, pursuant to appropriate security procedures, and shall be reviewed by the administrative law judge ex parte and in camera.

(ii) SECURITY CLEARANCES.—Pursuant to existing procedures and requirements, the Secretary, in coordination (as necessary) with the heads of other affected departments or agencies, shall ensure that administrative law judges reviewing negative waiver decisions of the Secretary under this paragraph possess security clearances appropriate for such review.

(iii) UNCLASSIFIED SUMMARIES OF CLASSIFIED EVIDENCE.—As part of a review conducted under this paragraph and upon the request of the individual adversely affected by the decision of the Secretary not to grant a waiver, the Secretary shall provide to the individual and reviewing administrative law judge, consistent with the procedures established under clause (i), an unclassified summary of any classified information upon which the decision of the Secretary was based.

(E) NEW EVIDENCE.—The Secretary shall establish a process under which an individual may submit a new request for a waiver, notwithstanding confirmation by the administrative law judge of the Secretary's initial denial of the waiver, if the request is supported by substantial evidence that was not available to the Secretary at the time the initial waiver request was denied.

(4) The Secretary shall establish an appeals process under this section for individuals found to be ineligible for a transportation worker identification credential that includes notice and an opportunity for a hearing.

(5) Upon application, the Secretary may issue a transportation worker identification credential to an individual if the Secretary has previously determined, under section 5103a of title 49, that the individual does not pose a security risk.

(d) BACKGROUND RECORDS CHECK.—(1) On request of the Secretary, the Attorney General shall—

(A) conduct a background records check regarding the individual; and

(B) upon completing the background records check, notify the Secretary of the completion and results of the background records check.

(2) A background records check regarding an individual under this subsection shall consist of the following:

(A) A check of the relevant criminal history databases.

(B) In the case of an alien, a check of the relevant databases to determine the status of the alien under the immigration laws of the United States.

(C) As appropriate, a check of the relevant international databases or other appropriate means.

(D) Review of any other national security-related information or database identified by the Attorney General for purposes of such a background records check.

(e) RESTRICTIONS ON USE AND MAINTENANCE OF INFORMATION.—(1) Information obtained by the Attorney General or the Secretary under this section may not be made available to the public, including the individual's employer.

(2) Any information constituting grounds for denial of a transportation worker identification credential under this section shall be maintained confidentially by the Secretary and may be used only for making determinations under this section. The Secretary may share any such information with other Federal law enforcement agencies. An individual's employer may only be informed of whether or not the individual has been issued the credential under this section.

(f) DEFINITION.—In this section, the term "alien" has the meaning given the term in section 101(a)(3) of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1101(a)(3)).

(g) APPLICATIONS FOR MERCHANT MARINERS' DOCUMENTS.—The Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration and the Commandant of the Coast Guard shall—

(1) develop and, no later than 2 years after the date of enactment of the Elijah E. Cummings Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2020, implement a joint application for merchant mariner's documents under chapter 73 and for a transportation worker identification credential issued under this section; and

(2) upon receipt of a joint application developed under paragraph (1) concurrently process an application from an individual for merchant mariner's documents under chapter 73 and an application from such individual for a transportation worker identification credential under this section.

(h) FEES.—The Secretary shall ensure that the fees charged each individual applying for a transportation worker identification credential under this section who has passed a background check under section 5103a(d) of title 49, United States Code, and who has a current hazardous materials endorsement in accordance with section 1572 of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, and each individual with a current merchant mariners' document who has passed a criminal background check under section 7302(d)—

(1) are for costs associated with the issuance, production, and management of the transportation worker identification credential, as determined by the Secretary; and

(2) do not include costs associated with performing a background check for that individual, except for any incremental costs in the event that the scope of such background checks diverge.

(i) PRIORITY PROCESSING FOR SEPARATING SERVICE MEMBERS.—(1) The Secretary and the Secretary of Defense shall enter into a memorandum of understanding regarding the submission and processing of applications for transportation worker identification credentials under subsection (b)(2)(G).

(2) Not later than 30 days after the submission of such an application by an individual who is eligible to submit such an application, the Secretary shall process and approve or deny the application unless an appeal or waiver applies or further application documentation is necessary.

(j) DEPLOYMENT OF TRANSPORTATION WORKER IDENTIFICATION CREDENTIAL READERS.—

(1) PILOT PROGRAM.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall conduct a pilot program to test the business processes, technology, and operational impacts required to deploy transportation worker identification credential readers at secure areas of the marine transportation system.

(B) GEOGRAPHIC LOCATIONS.—The pilot program shall take place at not fewer than 5 distinct geographic locations, to include vessels and facilities in a variety of environmental settings.

(C) COMMENCEMENT.—The pilot program shall commence not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of the SAFE Port Act.

(2) CORRELATION WITH WORKER IDENTIFICATION CREDENTIAL.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The pilot program described in paragraph (1) shall be conducted concurrently with the issuance of the transportation worker identification credentials described in subsection (b) to ensure credential and credential reader interoperability.

(B) FEE.—An individual charged a fee for a transportation worker identification credential issued under this section may not be charged an additional fee if the Secretary determines different transportation worker identification credentials are needed based on the results of the pilot program described in paragraph (1) or for other reasons related to the technology requirements for the transportation worker identification credential program.

(3) REGULATIONS.—Not later than 2 years after the commencement of the pilot program under paragraph (1)(C), the Secretary, after a notice and comment period that includes at least 1 public hearing, shall promulgate final regulations that require the deployment of transportation worker identification credential readers that are consistent with the findings of the pilot program and build upon the regulations prescribed under subsection (a).

(k) LIMITATION.—The Secretary may not require the placement of an electronic reader for transportation worker identification credentials on a vessel unless—

(1) the vessel has more individuals on the crew that are required to have a transportation worker identification credential than the number the Secretary determines, by regulation issued under subsection (j)(3), warrants such a reader; or

(2) the Secretary determines that the vessel is at risk of a severe transportation security incident.

(l) The Secretary may use a secondary authentication system to verify the identification of individuals using transportation worker identification credentials when the individual's fingerprints are not able to be taken or read.

(m) ESCORTING.—The Secretary shall coordinate with owners and operators subject to this section to allow any individual who has a pending application for a transportation worker identification credential under this section or is waiting for reissuance of such credential, including any individual whose credential has been lost or stolen, and who needs to perform work in a secure or restricted area to have access to such area for that purpose through escorting of such individual in accordance with subsection (a)(1)(B) by another individual who holds a transportation worker identification credential. Nothing in this subsection shall be construed as requiring or compelling an owner or operator to provide escorted access.

(n) PROCESSING TIME.—The Secretary shall review an initial transportation worker identification credential application and respond to the applicant, as appropriate, including the mailing of an Initial Determination of Threat Assessment letter, within 30 days after receipt of the initial application. The Secretary shall, to the greatest extent practicable, review appeal and waiver requests submitted by a transportation worker identification credential applicant, and send a written decision or request for additional information required for the appeal or waiver determination, within 30 days after receipt of the applicant's appeal or waiver written request. For an applicant that is required to submit additional information for an appeal or waiver determination, the Secretary shall send a written decision, to the greatest extent practicable, within 30 days after receipt of all requested information.

(o) RECEIPT AND ACTIVATION OF TRANSPORTATION WORKER IDENTIFICATION CREDENTIAL.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than one year after the date of publication of final regulations required by subsection (j)(3) of this section the Secretary shall develop a plan to permit the receipt and activation of transportation worker identification credentials at any vessel or facility described in subsection (a) of this section that desires to implement this capability. Such receipt and activation shall comply, to the extent possible, with all appropriate requirements of Federal standards for personal identity verification and credential.

(2) LIMITATION.—The Secretary may not require any such vessel or facility to provide on-site receipt and activation of transportation worker identification credentials.

(Added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2073; amended Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §309, July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 528; Pub. L. 109–347, title I, §104(a), (b), Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1888, 1890; Pub. L. 110–53, title XIII, §1309(a), Aug. 3, 2007, 121 Stat. 397; Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §§809, 814, 818(a), 819, 823, title IX, §903(c)(2), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2995, 2999–3001, 3003, 3011; Pub. L. 111–330, §1(13), Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3570; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §306(a)(9), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 54; Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3509(a), Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2780; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8346, Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4718; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVIII, §11804(a), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4163.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 5845 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, referred to in subsec. (c)(1)(A)(vii)(III), (B)(i)(I), is classified to section 5845 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

The Immigration and Nationality Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(1)(D)(iii), is act June 27, 1952, ch. 477, 66 Stat. 163, which is classified principally to chapter 12 (§1101 et seq.) of Title 8, Aliens and Nationality. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1101 of Title 8 and Tables.

The Classified Information Procedures Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(3)(D)(i), is Pub. L. 96–456, Oct. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 2025, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

The date of enactment of the Elijah E. Cummings Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2020, referred to in subsec. (g)(1), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 116–283 which was approved Jan. 1, 2021.

The date of the enactment of the SAFE Port Act, referred to in subsec. (j)(1)(C), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 109–347, which was approved Oct. 13, 2006.

AMENDMENTS

2022—Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(1), substituted "worker identification credentials" for "security cards" in section catchline.

Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(2)–(4), substituted "transportation worker identification credential" for "transportation security card", "transportation worker identification credentials" for "transportation security cards", and "credential" for "card" wherever appearing.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(5), substituted "Credentials" for "Cards" in heading.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(6), substituted "Administrator of" for "Assistant Secretary of Homeland Security for" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(7), redesignated subsec. (j) as (i) and struck out former subsec. (i) which related to implementation schedule.

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(9), substituted "Worker Identification Credential" for "Security Card", in subsec. heading, and "worker identification credential" for "security cards", in par. (2) heading.

Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(7), redesignated subsec. (k) as (j). Former subsec. (j) redesignated (i).

Subsec. (j)(4). Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(11), which directed amendment of subsec. (k), as so redesignated, by striking par. (4), was executed to subsec. (j) to reflect the probable intent of Congress and amendment by Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(8), which redesignated subsec. (k) as (j). Prior to amendment, par. (4) related to report on the pilot program.

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(8), redesignated subsec. (m) as (k). Former subsec. (k) redesignated (j).

Subsec. (k)(1). Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(10), substituted "subsection (j)(3)" for "subsection (k)(3)".

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(8), redesignated subsec. (n) as (l) and struck out former subsec. (l). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Not later than 6 months after the date of the enactment of the SAFE Port Act, and every 6 months thereafter until the requirements under this section are fully implemented, the Secretary shall submit a report on progress being made in implementing such requirements to the appropriate congressional committees (as defined in section 2(1) of the SAFE Port Act)."

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(8), redesignated subsec. (o) as (m). Former subsec. (m) redesignated (k).

Subsec. (n). Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(8), redesignated subsec. (p) as (n). Former subsec. (n) redesignated (l).

Subsec. (o). Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(12)(A), substituted "Worker Identification Credential" for "Security Card" in the subsec. heading.

Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(8), redesignated subsec. (q) as (o). Former subsec. (o) redesignated (m).

Subsec. (o)(1). Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(12)(B), substituted "subsection (j)(3)" for "subsection (k)(3)" and "Such receipt and activation shall" for "This plan shall".

Subsec. (o)(2). Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(12)(C), substituted "on-site receipt and activation of transportation worker identification credentials" for "on-site activation capability".

Subsec. (p). Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(8), redesignated subsec. (p) as (n).

Subsec. (q). Pub. L. 117–263, §11804(a)(8), redesignated subsec. (q) as (o).

2021—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "shall—" and pars. (1) and (2) for "shall concurrently process an application from an individual for merchant mariner's documents under chapter 73 of title 46, United States Code, and an application from that individual for a transportation security card under this

section."

2016—Subsec. (b)(2)(G), (H). Pub. L. 114–328, §3509(a)(1), added subpar. (G) and redesignated former subpar. (G) as (H).

Subsec. (c)(1)(B)(xv). Pub. L. 114–120, §306(a)(9)(A), substituted "18 (popularly" for "18, popularly" and "Act)" for "Act".

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 114–120, §306(a)(9)(B), substituted "(D) of paragraph" for "(D) paragraph" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 114–328, §3509(a)(2), amended subsec. (j) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Not later than January 1, 2009, the Secretary shall process and issue or deny each application for a transportation security card under this section for individuals with current and valid merchant mariners' documents on the date of the enactment of the SAFE Port Act."

2010—Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–281, §809(1), inserted "allowed unescorted access to a secure area designated in a vessel security plan approved under section 70103 of this title" after "subtitle II of this title".

Subsec. (b)(2)(D). Pub. L. 111–281, §809(2), inserted "allowed unescorted access to a secure area designated in a vessel security plan approved under section 70103 of this title" after "tank vessel".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 111–281, §819, as amended by Pub. L. 111–330, added par. (3).

Subsec. (c)(3)(C). Pub. L. 111–281, §903(c)(2), substituted "Director of National Intelligence" for "National Intelligence Director".

Subsec. (n). Pub. L. 111–281, §814, added subsec. (n).

Subsecs. (o), (p). Pub. L. 111–281, §818(a), added subsecs. (o) and (p).

Subsec. (q). Pub. L. 111–281, §823, added subsec. (q).

2007—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 110–53, §1309(a)(1), substituted "determines under subsection (c) that the individual poses a security risk" for "decides that the individual poses a security risk under subsection (c)".

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 110–53, §1309(a)(2), inserted heading and amended text of par. (1) generally, substituting provisions relating to disqualifications, consisting of subpars. (A) to (E), for former provisions relating to when individuals may be denied transportation security cards, consisting of subpars. (A) to (D).

2006—Subsec. (b)(2)(G). Pub. L. 109–347, §104(b)(1), added subpar. (G).

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 109–347, §104(b)(2), inserted "subparagraph (A), (B), or (D)" before "paragraph (1)".

Subsec. (c)(3) to (5). Pub. L. 109–241 added par. (3) and redesignated former pars. (3) and (4) as (4) and (5), respectively.

Subsecs. (g) to (m). Pub. L. 109–347, §104(a), added subsecs. (g) to (m).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2016 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3509(c), Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2781, provided that: "Section 70105(j)(2) of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this section, shall apply to applications for transportation security cards submitted after the expiration of the 180-day period beginning on the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2016]."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111–330, §1, Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3569, provided that the amendment made by section 1(13) is effective with the enactment of Pub. L. 111–281.

TRANSPORTATION WORKER IDENTIFICATION CREDENTIAL READER REQUIREMENTS RULE IMPLEMENTATION

Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXVIII, §11804(c), (d), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4164, provided that:

"(c) LIMITATION ON IMPLEMENTATION.—The Secretary may not implement the rule entitled 'Transportation Worker Identification Credential (TWIC)–Reader Requirements' (81 Fed. Reg. 57651) for covered facilities before May 8, 2026.

"(d) COVERED FACILITIES DEFINED.—In this section, the term 'covered facilities' means—

"(1) facilities that handle Certain Dangerous Cargoes in bulk and transfer such cargoes from or to a vessel;

"(2) facilities that handle Certain Dangerous Cargoes in bulk, but do not transfer it from or to a vessel; and

"(3) facilities that receive vessels carrying Certain Dangerous Cargoes in bulk but, during the vessel-to-facility interface, do not transfer it from or to the vessel."

[For definition of "Secretary" as used in section 11804(c) of Pub. L. 117–263, set out above, see section 11002 of Pub. L. 117–263, set out as a note under section 106 of Title 14, Coast Guard.]

DEADLINE FOR SECTION 70105 REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 109–347, title I, §104(c), Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1891, provided that: "Not later than January 1, 2007, the Secretary [of Homeland Security] shall promulgate final regulations implementing the requirements for issuing transportation security cards under section 70105 of title 46, United States Code. The regulations shall include a background check process to enable newly hired workers to begin working unless the Secretary makes an initial determination that the worker poses a security risk. Such process shall include a check against the consolidated and integrated terrorist watch list maintained by the Federal Government."

TRANSPORTATION WORKER IDENTIFICATION CREDENTIALS

Pub. L. 117–146, §23, June 16, 2022, 136 Stat. 1284, provided that:

"(a) DEFINITION OF DIRECT ASSISTANCE TO A UNITED STATES PORT.—In this section:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The term 'direct assistance to a United States port' means the transportation of cargo directly to or from a United States port.

"(2) EXCLUSIONS.—The term 'direct assistance to a United States port' does not include—

"(A) the transportation of a mixed load of cargo that includes—

"(i) cargo that does not originate from a United States port; or

"(ii) a container or cargo that is not bound for a United States port;

"(B) any period during which a motor carrier or driver is operating in interstate commerce to transport cargo or provide services not in support of transportation to or from a United States port; or

"(C) the period after a motor carrier dispatches the applicable driver or commercial motor vehicle of the motor carrier to another location to begin operation in interstate commerce in a manner that is not in support of transportation to or from a United States port.

"(b) TRANSPORTATION WORKER IDENTIFICATION CREDENTIALS.—The Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration and the Commandant of the Coast Guard shall jointly prioritize and expedite the consideration of applications for a Transportation Worker Identification Credential with respect to applicants that reasonably demonstrate that the purpose of the Transportation Worker Identification Credential is for providing, within the interior of the United States, direct assistance to a United States port."

DEADLINE FOR MEMORANDUM

Pub. L. 114–328, div. C, title XXXV, §3509(b), Dec. 23, 2016, 130 Stat. 2781, provided that: "The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating and the Secretary of Defense shall enter into the memorandum of understanding required by the amendment made by subsection (a)(2) by not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 23, 2016]."

TRANSPORTATION WORKER IDENTIFICATION CREDENTIAL SECURITY CARD PROGRAM IMPROVEMENTS AND ASSESSMENT

Pub. L. 114–278, §1, Dec. 16, 2016, 130 Stat. 1410, provided that:

"(a) CREDENTIAL IMPROVEMENTS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 60 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 16, 2016], the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration shall commence actions, consistent with section 70105 of title 46, United States Code, to improve the Transportation Security Administration's process for vetting individuals with access to secure areas of vessels and maritime facilities.

"(2) REQUIRED ACTIONS.—The actions described under paragraph (1) shall include—

"(A) conducting a comprehensive risk analysis of security threat assessment procedures, including—

"(i) identifying those procedures that need additional internal controls; and

"(ii) identifying best practices for quality assurance at every stage of the security threat assessment;

"(B) implementing the additional internal controls and best practices identified under subparagraph (A);

"(C) improving fraud detection techniques, such as—

"(i) by establishing benchmarks and a process for electronic document validation;

"(ii) by requiring annual training for Trusted Agents; and

"(iii) by reviewing any security threat assessment-related information provided by Trusted Agents and incorporating any new threat information into updated guidance under subparagraph (D);

"(D) updating the guidance provided to Trusted Agents regarding the vetting process and related

regulations;

"(E) finalizing a manual for Trusted Agents and adjudicators on the vetting process; and

"(F) establishing quality controls to ensure consistent procedures to review adjudication decisions and terrorism vetting decisions.

"(3) REPORT.—Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act, the Inspector General of the Department of Homeland Security shall submit a report to Congress that evaluates the implementation of the actions described in paragraph (1).

"(b) COMPREHENSIVE SECURITY ASSESSMENT OF THE TRANSPORTATION SECURITY CARD PROGRAM.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 60 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 16, 2016], the Secretary of Homeland Security shall commission an assessment of the effectiveness of the transportation security card program (referred to in this section as 'Program') required under section 70105 of title 46, United States Code, at enhancing security and reducing security risks for facilities and vessels regulated under chapter 701 of that title.

"(2) LOCATION.—The assessment commissioned under paragraph (1) shall be conducted by a research organization with significant experience in port or maritime security, such as—

"(A) a national laboratory;

"(B) a university-based center within the Science and Technology Directorate's centers of excellence network; or

"(C) a qualified Federally-funded research and development center.

"(3) CONTENTS.—The assessment commissioned under paragraph (1) shall—

"(A) review the credentialing process by determining—

"(i) the appropriateness of vetting standards;

"(ii) whether the fee structure adequately reflects the current costs of vetting;

"(iii) whether there is unnecessary redundancy or duplication with other Federal- or State-issued transportation security credentials; and

"(iv) the appropriateness of having varied Federal and State threat assessments and access controls;

"(B) review the process for renewing applications for Transportation Worker Identification Credentials, including the number of days it takes to review application, appeal, and waiver requests for additional information; and

"(C) review the security value of the Program by—

"(i) evaluating the extent to which the Program, as implemented, addresses known or likely security risks in the maritime and port environments;

"(ii) evaluating the potential for a non-biometric credential alternative;

"(iii) identifying the technology, business process, and operational impacts of the use of the transportation security card and transportation security card readers in the maritime and port environments;

"(iv) assessing the costs and benefits of the Program, as implemented; and

"(v) evaluating the extent to which the Secretary of Homeland Security has addressed the deficiencies in the Program identified by the Government Accountability Office and the Inspector General of the Department of Homeland Security before the date of enactment of this Act.

"(4) DEADLINES.—The assessment commissioned under paragraph (1) shall be completed not later than 1 year after the date on which the assessment is commissioned.

"(5) SUBMISSION TO CONGRESS.—Not later than 60 days after the date that the assessment is completed, the Secretary of Homeland Security shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the Committee on Homeland Security and Governmental Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Homeland Security and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives the results of the assessment commissioned under this subsection.

"(c) CORRECTIVE ACTION PLAN; PROGRAM REFORMS.—If the assessment commissioned under subsection (b) identifies a deficiency in the effectiveness of the Program, the Secretary of Homeland Security, not later than 60 days after the date on which the assessment is completed, shall submit a corrective action plan to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the Committee on Homeland Security and Governmental Affairs of the Senate, the Committee on Homeland Security and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives that—

"(1) responds to findings of the assessment;

"(2) includes an implementation plan with benchmarks;

"(3) may include programmatic reforms, revisions to regulations, or proposals for legislation; and

"(4) shall be considered in any rulemaking by the Department of Homeland Security relating to the Program.

"(d) INSPECTOR GENERAL REVIEW.—If a corrective action plan is submitted under subsection (c), the Inspector General of the Department of Homeland Security shall—

"(1) not later than 120 days after the date of such submission, review the extent to which such plan implements the requirements under subsection (c); and

"(2) not later than 18 months after the date of such submission, and annually thereafter for 3 years, submit a report to the congressional committees set forth in subsection (c) that describes the progress of the implementation of such plan."

TRANSPORTATION WORKER IDENTIFICATION CREDENTIAL PROCESS REFORM

Pub. L. 112–213, title VII, §709, Dec. 20, 2012, 126 Stat. 1581, provided that: "Not later than 270 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 20, 2012], the Secretary of Homeland Security shall reform the process for Transportation Worker Identification Credential enrollment, activation, issuance, and renewal to require, in total, not more than one in-person visit to a designated enrollment center except in cases in which there are extenuating circumstances, as determined by the Secretary, requiring more than one such in-person visit."

PILOT PROGRAM FOR FINGERPRINTING OF MARITIME WORKERS

Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §808, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2994, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Within 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 15, 2010], the Secretary of Homeland Security shall establish procedures providing for an individual who is required to be fingerprinted for purposes of obtaining a transportation security card under section 70105 of title 46, United States Code, the ability to be fingerprinted at any of not less than 20 facilities operated by or under contract with an agency of the Department of Homeland Security that fingerprints the public for the Department. These facilities shall be in addition to facilities established under section 70105 of title 46, United States Code.

"(b) EXPIRATION.—The requirement made by subsection (a) expires 1 year after the date the Secretary establishes the facilities required under that subsection."

ASSESSMENT OF TRANSPORTATION SECURITY CARD ENROLLMENT SITES

Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §815, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2999, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 15, 2010], the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall prepare an assessment of the enrollment sites for transportation security cards issued under section 70105 of title 46, United States Code, including—

"(1) the feasibility of keeping those enrollment sites open after the date of enactment of this Act; and

"(2) the quality of customer service, including the periods of time individuals are kept on hold on the telephone, whether appointments are kept, and processing times for applications.

"(b) TIMELINES AND BENCHMARKS.—The Secretary shall develop timelines and benchmarks for implementing the findings of the assessment as the Secretary deems necessary."

RECEIPT OF CARDS

Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §818(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3000, provided that:

"(1) REPORT BY COMPTROLLER GENERAL.—Within 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 15, 2010], the Comptroller General of the United States shall submit to the Committee on Homeland Security of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report assessing the costs, technical feasibility, and security measures associated with implementing procedures to deliver a transportation security card to an approved applicant's place of residence in a secure manner or to allow an approved applicant to receive the card at an enrollment center of the individual's choosing.

"(2) PROCESS FOR ALTERNATIVE MEANS OF RECEIPT.—If the Comptroller General finds in the final report under paragraph (1) that it is feasible for a transportation security card to be sent to an approved applicant's place of residence in a secure manner, the Secretary shall, within 1 year after the date of issuance of the final report by the Comptroller General, implement a secure process to permit an individual approved for a transportation security card to receive the card at the applicant's place of residence or at the enrollment center of the individual's choosing. The individual shall be responsible for any additional cost associated with the secure delivery of a transportation security card."

PROHIBITION OF ISSUANCE OF TRANSPORTATION SECURITY CARDS TO PERSONS

CONVICTED OF CERTAIN FELONIES

Pub. L. 109–347, title I, §106, Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1891, provided that: "The Secretary [of Homeland Security], in issuing a final rule pursuant to section 70105 of title 46, United States Code, shall provide for the disqualification of individuals who have been found guilty or have been found not guilty by reason of insanity of a felony, involving—

"(1) treason, or conspiracy to commit treason;

"(2) espionage, or conspiracy to commit espionage;

"(3) sedition, or conspiracy to commit sedition; or

"(4) a crime listed in chapter 113B of title 18, United States Code, a comparable State law, or conspiracy to commit such crime."

§70106. Deployable, specialized forces

(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—To enhance the domestic maritime security capability of the United States, the Secretary shall establish deployable specialized forces of varying capabilities as are needed to safeguard the public and protect vessels, harbors, ports, facilities, and cargo in waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States from destruction, loss or injury from crime, or sabotage due to terrorist activity, and to respond to such activity in accordance with the transportation security plans developed under section 70103.

(2) ENHANCED TEAMS.—Such specialized forces shall include no less than two enhanced teams to serve as deployable forces capable of combating terrorism, engaging in interdiction, law enforcement, and advanced tactical maritime security operations to address known or potentially armed security threats (including non-compliant actors at sea), and participating in homeland security, homeland defense, and counterterrorism exercises in the maritime environment.

(b) MISSION.—The combined force of the specialized forces established under subsection (a) shall be trained, equipped, and capable of being deployed to—

(1) deter, protect against, and rapidly respond to threats of maritime terrorism;

(2) conduct maritime operations to protect against and disrupt illegal use, access to, or proliferation of weapons of mass destruction;

(3) enforce moving or fixed safety or security zones established pursuant to law;

(4) conduct high speed intercepts;

(5) board, search, and seize any article or thing on or at, respectively, a vessel or facility found to present a risk to the vessel or facility, or to a port;

(6) rapidly deploy to supplement United States armed forces domestically or overseas;

(7) respond to criminal or terrorist acts so as to minimize, insofar as possible, the disruption caused by such acts;

(8) assist with facility vulnerability assessments required under this chapter; and

(9) carry out any other missions of the Coast Guard as are assigned to it by the Secretary.

(c) MINIMIZATION OF RESPONSE TIMES.—The enhanced teams established under subsection (a)(2) shall, to the extent practicable, be stationed in such a way so as to minimize the response time to maritime terrorist threats and potential or actual transportation security incidents.

(d) COORDINATION WITH OTHER AGENCIES.—To the maximum extent feasible, the combined force of the specialized forces established under subsection (a) shall coordinate their activities with other Federal, State, and local law enforcement and emergency response agencies.

(Added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2074; amended Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §305, July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 528; Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §804(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2990.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Pub. L. 111–281 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section related to maritime safety and security teams.

2006—Subsec. (b)(8). Pub. L. 109–241 substituted "any other missions of the Coast Guard" for "other security missions".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

COAST GUARD DETECTION CANINE TEAM PROGRAM EXPANSION

Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §805, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2991, provided that:

"(a) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section:

"(1) CANINE DETECTION TEAM.—The term 'detection canine team' means a canine and a canine handler that are trained to detect narcotics or explosives, or other threats as defined by the Secretary.

"(2) SECRETARY.—The term 'Secretary' means the Secretary of Homeland Security.

"(b) DETECTION CANINE TEAMS.—

"(1) INCREASED CAPACITY.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 15, 2010], and subject to the availability of appropriations, the Secretary shall—

"(A) begin to increase the number of detection canine teams certified by the Coast Guard for the purposes of maritime-related security by no fewer than 10 canine teams annually through fiscal year 2012; and

"(B) encourage owners and operators of port facilities, passenger cruise liners, oceangoing cargo vessels, and other vessels identified by the Secretary to strengthen security through the use of highly trained detection canine teams.

"(2) CANINE PROCUREMENT.—The Secretary, acting through the Commandant of the Coast Guard, shall procure detection canine teams as efficiently as possible, including, to the greatest extent possible, through increased domestic breeding, while meeting the performance needs and criteria established by the Commandant.

"(c) DEPLOYMENT.—The Secretary shall prioritize deployment of the additional canine teams to ports based on risk, consistent with the Security and Accountability For Every Port Act of 2006 (Public Law 109–347) [see Tables for classification]."

§70107. Grants

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall establish a grant program for the allocation of funds based on risk to implement Area Maritime Transportation Security Plans and facility security plans among port authorities, facility operators, and State and local government agencies required to provide port security services and to train public safety personnel under section 70132 of this title. Before awarding a grant under the program, the Secretary shall provide for review and comment by the appropriate Federal Maritime Security Coordinators and the Maritime Administrator. In administering the grant program, the Secretary shall take into account national economic, energy, and strategic defense concerns based upon the most current risk assessments available.

(b) ELIGIBLE COSTS.—The following costs of funding the correction of Coast Guard identified vulnerabilities in port security and ensuring compliance with Area Maritime Transportation Security Plans and facility security plans are eligible to be funded:

(1) Salary, benefits, overtime compensation, retirement contributions, and other costs of additional Coast Guard mandated security personnel.

(2) The cost of acquisition, operation, and maintenance of security equipment or facilities to be used for security monitoring and recording, security gates and fencing, marine barriers for designated security zones, security-related lighting systems, remote surveillance, concealed video systems, security vessels, and other security-related infrastructure or equipment that contributes to the overall security of passengers, cargo, or crewmembers. Grants awarded under this section may not be used to construct buildings or other physical facilities, except those which are constructed under terms and conditions consistent with the requirements under section 611(j)(8) of the Robert

T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5196(j)(8)), including those facilities in support of this paragraph, and specifically approved by the Secretary. Costs eligible for funding under this paragraph may not exceed the greater of—

(A) $1,000,000 per project; or

(B) such greater amount as may be approved by the Secretary, which may not exceed 10 percent of the total amount of the grant.

(3) The cost of screening equipment, including equipment that detects weapons of mass destruction and conventional explosives, and of testing and evaluating such equipment, to certify secure systems of transportation.

(4) The cost of conducting vulnerability assessments to evaluate and make recommendations with respect to security.

(5) The cost of conducting exercises or training for prevention and detection of, preparedness for, response to, or recovery from terrorist attacks.

(6) The cost of establishing or enhancing mechanisms for sharing terrorism threat information and ensuring that the mechanisms are interoperable with Federal, State, and local agencies.

(7) The cost of equipment (including software) required to receive, transmit, handle, and store classified information.

(8) The cost of training public safety personnel—

(A) to enforce a security zone under section 70132 of this title; or

(B) assist in the enforcement of a security zone.

(c) MATCHING REQUIREMENTS.—

(1) 75-PERCENT FEDERAL FUNDING.—Except as provided in paragraph (2), Federal funds for any eligible project under this section shall not exceed 75 percent of the total cost of such project.

(2) EXCEPTIONS.—

(A) SMALL PROJECTS.—There are no matching requirements for grants under subsection (a) for projects costing not more than $25,000.

(B) HIGHER LEVEL OF SUPPORT REQUIRED.—If the Secretary determines that a proposed project merits support and cannot be undertaken without a higher rate of Federal support, then the Secretary may approve grants under this section with a matching requirement other than that specified in paragraph (1).

(C) TRAINING.—There are no matching requirements for grants under subsection (a) to train public safety personnel in the enforcement of security zones under section 70132 of this title or in assisting in the enforcement of such security zones.

(d) COORDINATION AND COOPERATION AGREEMENTS.—The Secretary shall ensure that projects paid for, or the costs of which are reimbursed, under this section within any area or port are coordinated with other projects, and may require cooperative agreements among users of the port and port facilities with respect to projects funded under this section.

(e) MULTIPLE-YEAR PROJECTS.—

(1) LETTERS OF INTENT.—The Secretary may execute letters of intent to commit funding to such authorities, operators, and agencies.

(2) LIMITATION.—Not more than 20 percent of the grant funds awarded under this subsection in any fiscal year may be awarded for projects that span multiple years.

(f) CONSISTENCY WITH PLANS.—The Secretary shall ensure that each grant awarded under subsection (e)—

(1) is used to supplement and support, in a consistent and coordinated manner, the applicable Area Maritime Transportation Security Plan; and

(2) is coordinated with any applicable State or Urban Area Homeland Security Plan.

(g) APPLICATIONS.—Any entity subject to an Area Maritime Transportation Security Plan may submit an application for a grant under this section, at such time, in such form, and containing such information and assurances as the Secretary may require.

(h) REPORTS.—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of the SAFE Port Act, the Secretary, acting through the Commandant of the Coast Guard, shall submit a report to Congress, in a secure format, describing the methodology used to allocate port security grant funds on the basis of risk.

(i) ADMINISTRATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall require eligible port authorities, facility operators, and State and local agencies required to provide security services, to submit an application, at such time, in such form, and containing such information and assurances as the Secretary may require, and shall include appropriate application, review, and delivery mechanisms.

(2) MINIMUM STANDARDS FOR PAYMENT OR REIMBURSEMENT.—Each application for payment or reimbursement of eligible costs shall include, at a minimum, the following:

(A) A copy of the applicable Area Maritime Transportation Security Plan or facility security plan.

(B) A comprehensive description of the need for the project, and a statement of the project's relationship to the applicable Area Maritime Transportation Security Plan or facility security plan.

(C) A determination by the Captain of the Port that the security project addresses or corrects Coast Guard identified vulnerabilities in security and ensures compliance with Area Maritime Transportation Security Plans and facility security plans.

(3) PROCEDURAL SAFEGUARDS.—The Secretary shall by regulation establish appropriate accounting, reporting, and review procedures to ensure that amounts paid or reimbursed under this section are used for the purposes for which they were made available, all expenditures are properly accounted for, and amounts not used for such purposes and amounts not obligated or expended are recovered.

(4) PROJECT APPROVAL REQUIRED.—The Secretary may approve an application for the payment or reimbursement of costs under this section only if the Secretary is satisfied that—

(A) the project is consistent with Coast Guard vulnerability assessments and ensures compliance with Area Maritime Transportation Security Plans and facility security plans;

(B) enough money is available to pay the project costs that will not be reimbursed by the United States Government under this section;

(C) the project will be completed without unreasonable delay; and

(D) the recipient has authority to carry out the project as proposed.

(j) AUDITS AND EXAMINATIONS.—A recipient of amounts made available under this section shall keep such records as the Secretary may require, and make them available for review and audit by the Secretary, the Comptroller General of the United States, or the Inspector General of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating.

(k) REPORTS ON SECURITY FUNDING AND COMPLIANCE.—

(1) INITIAL REPORT.—Within 6 months after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary shall transmit an unclassified report to the Senate Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the House of Representatives Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure, that—

(A) includes a funding proposal and rationale to fund the correction of Coast Guard identified vulnerabilities in port security and to help ensure compliance with Area Maritime Transportation Security Plans and facility security plans for fiscal years 2003 through 2008; and

(B) includes projected funding proposals for fiscal years 2003 through 2008 for the following security programs:

(i) The Sea Marshall program.

(ii) The Automated Identification System and a system of polling vessels on entry into

United States waters.

(iii) The maritime intelligence requirements in this Act.

(iv) The issuance of transportation security cards required by section 70105.

(v) The program of certifying secure systems of transportation.

(2) OTHER EXPENDITURES.—The Secretary shall, as part of the report required by paragraph (1) report, in coordination with the Commissioner of Customs, on projected expenditures of screening and detection equipment and on cargo security programs over fiscal years 2003 through 2008.

(3) ANNUAL REPORTS.—Annually, beginning 1 year after transmittal of the report required by paragraph (1) until October 1, 2009, the Secretary shall transmit an unclassified annual report to the Senate Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the House of Representatives Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure, on progress in achieving compliance with the correction of Coast Guard identified vulnerabilities in port security and compliance with Area Maritime Transportation Security Plans and facility security plans that—

(A) identifies any modifications necessary in funding to ensure the correction of Coast Guard identified vulnerabilities and ensure compliance with Area Maritime Transportation Security Plans and facility security plans;

(B) includes an assessment of progress in implementing the grant program established by subsection (a);

(C) includes any recommendations the Secretary may make to improve these programs; and

(D) with respect to a port selected by the Secretary, describes progress and enhancements of applicable Area Maritime Transportation Security Plans and facility security plans and how the Maritime Transportation Security Act of 2002 has improved security at that port.

(l) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There are authorized to be appropriated $400,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2007 through 2013 to carry out this section.

(m) INVESTIGATIONS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall conduct investigations, fund pilot programs, and award grants, to examine or develop—

(A) methods or programs to increase the ability to target for inspection vessels, cargo, crewmembers, or passengers that will arrive or have arrived at any port or place in the United States;

(B) equipment to detect accurately explosives, chemical, or biological agents that could be used in a transportation security incident against the United States;

(C) equipment to detect accurately nuclear or radiological materials, including scintillation-based detection equipment capable of signalling the presence of nuclear or radiological materials;

(D) improved tags and seals designed for use on shipping containers to track the transportation of the merchandise in such containers, including sensors that are able to track a container throughout its entire supply chain, detect hazardous and radioactive materials within that container, and transmit that information to the appropriate law enforcement authorities;

(E) tools, including the use of satellite tracking systems, to increase the awareness of maritime areas and to identify potential transportation security incidents that could have an impact on facilities, vessels, and infrastructure on or adjacent to navigable waterways, including underwater access;

(F) tools to mitigate the consequences of a transportation security incident on, adjacent to, or under navigable waters of the United States, including sensor equipment, and other tools to help coordinate effective response to a transportation security incident;

(G) applications to apply existing technologies from other areas or industries to increase overall port security;

(H) improved container design, including blast-resistant containers; and

(I) methods to improve security and sustainability of port facilities in the event of a maritime

transportation security incident, including specialized inspection facilities.

(2) IMPLEMENTATION OF TECHNOLOGY.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—In conjunction with ongoing efforts to improve security at United States ports, the Secretary may conduct pilot projects at United States ports to test the effectiveness and applicability of new port security projects, including—

(i) testing of new detection and screening technologies;

(ii) projects to protect United States ports and infrastructure on or adjacent to the navigable waters of the United States, including underwater access; and

(iii) tools for responding to a transportation security incident at United States ports and infrastructure on or adjacent to the navigable waters of the United States, including underwater access.

(B) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary $35,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2005 through 2009 to carry out this subsection.

(3) NATIONAL PORT SECURITY CENTERS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may make grants or enter into cooperative agreements with eligible nonprofit institutions of higher learning to conduct investigations in collaboration with ports and the maritime transportation industry focused on enhancing security of the Nation's ports in accordance with this subsection through National Port Security Centers.

(B) APPLICATIONS.—To be eligible to receive a grant under this paragraph, a nonprofit institution of higher learning, or a consortium of such institutions, shall submit an application to the Secretary in such form and containing such information as the Secretary may require.

(C) COMPETITIVE SELECTION PROCESS.—The Secretary shall select grant recipients under this paragraph through a competitive process on the basis of the following criteria:

(i) Whether the applicant can demonstrate that personnel, laboratory, and organizational resources will be available to the applicant to carry out the investigations authorized in this paragraph.

(ii) The applicant's capability to provide leadership in making national and regional contributions to the solution of immediate and long-range port and maritime transportation security and risk mitigation problems.

(iii) Whether the applicant can demonstrate that the applicant has an established, nationally recognized program in disciplines that contribute directly to maritime transportation safety and education.

(iv) Whether the applicant's investigations will involve major United States ports on the East Coast, the Gulf Coast, and the West Coast, and Federal agencies and other entities with expertise in port and maritime transportation.

(v) Whether the applicant has a strategic plan for carrying out the proposed investigations under the grant.

(4) ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS.—

(A) NO DUPLICATION OF EFFORT.—Before making any grant, the Secretary shall coordinate with other Federal agencies to ensure the grant will not duplicate work already being conducted with Federal funding.

(B) ACCOUNTING.—The Secretary shall by regulation establish accounting, reporting, and review procedures to ensure that funds made available under paragraph (1) are used for the purpose for which they were made available, that all expenditures are properly accounted for, and that amounts not used for such purposes and amounts not expended are recovered.

(C) RECORDKEEPING.—Recipients of grants shall keep all records related to expenditures and obligations of funds provided under paragraph (1) and make them available upon request to the Inspector General of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating and the Secretary

for audit and examination.

(5) ANNUAL REVIEW AND REPORT.—The Inspector General of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall annually review the programs established under this subsection to ensure that the expenditures and obligations of funds are consistent with the purposes for which they are provided, and report the findings to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives.

(Added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2075; amended Pub. L. 108–293, title VIII, §§804(a), (b), 808(a), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1081, 1083; Pub. L. 109–347, title I, §112, Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1894; Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §828(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3007; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §306(a)(10), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 54; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8314(1), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4699.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of the SAFE Port Act, referred to in subsec. (h), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 109–347, which was approved Oct. 13, 2006.

The date of enactment of this Act, referred to in subsec. (k)(1), probably means the date of enactment of Pub. L. 107–295, which enacted this section and was approved Nov. 25, 2002.

This Act, referred to in subsec. (k)(1)(B)(iii), probably means the Maritime Transportation Security Act of 2002, which enacted this subtitle, see note below.

With respect to "transportation security cards required by section 70105", referred to in subsec. (k)(1)(B)(iv), amendments made by Pub. L. 117–263 to section 70105 of this title are such that section 70105 now refers to "transportation worker identification credential" rather than "transportation security card". See section 70105 of this title.

The Maritime Transportation Security Act of 2002, referred to in subsec. (k)(3)(D), is Pub. L. 107–295, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2064. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–283, §8314(1)(A), substituted "public safety personnel" for "law enforcement personnel".

Subsec. (b)(8). Pub. L. 116–283, §8314(1)(B), substituted "public safety personnel—" for "law enforcement personnel—" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(2)(C). Pub. L. 116–283, §8314(1)(C), substituted "public safety personnel" for "law enforcement agency personnel".

2016—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 114–120, §306(a)(10)(A), substituted "5196(j)(8))," for "5121(j)(8))," in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (m)(3)(C)(iii). Pub. L. 114–120, §306(a)(10)(B), substituted "that the applicant" for "that is".

2010—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–281, §828(b)(1), substituted "services and to train law enforcement personnel under section 70132 of this title." for "services." in first sentence.

Subsec. (b)(8). Pub. L. 111–281, §828(b)(2), added par.(8).

Subsec. (c)(2)(C). Pub. L. 111–281, §828(b)(3), added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 111–281, §828(b)(4), substituted "2013" for "2011".

2006—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–347, §112(a), (e), substituted "for the allocation of funds based on risk" for "for making a fair and equitable allocation of funds" and "national economic, energy, and strategic defense concerns based upon the most current risk assessments available" for "national economic and strategic defense concerns".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 109–347, §112(b)(1), inserted at end "Grants awarded under this section may not be used to construct buildings or other physical facilities, except those which are constructed under terms and conditions consistent with the requirements under section 611(j)(8) of the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5121(j)(8)), including those facilities in support of this paragraph, and specifically approved by the Secretary. Costs eligible for funding under this paragraph may not exceed the greater of—" and subpars. (A) and (B).

Subsec. (b)(5) to (7). Pub. L. 109–347, §112(b)(2), added pars. (5) to (7).

Subsecs. (e) to (i). Pub. L. 109–347, §112(c)(1), added subsecs. (e) to (h). Former subsecs. (e) to (i) redesignated (i) to (m), respectively.

Subsec. (i)(1). Pub. L. 109–347, §112(c)(2), substituted "Secretary shall require" for "program shall require".

Subsecs. (j), (k). Pub. L. 109–347, §112(c)(1), redesignated subsecs. (f) and (g) as (j) and (k), respectively.

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 109–347, §112(d), amended subsec. (l) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (l) read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary for each of fiscal years 2003 through 2008 such sums as are necessary to carry out subsections (a) through (g)."

Pub. L. 109–347, §112(c)(1), redesignated subsec. (h) as (l).

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 109–347, §112(c)(1), redesignated subsec. (i) as (m).

2004—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 108–293, §804(a), reenacted heading without change and amended text of subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Secretary of Transportation, acting through the Maritime Administrator, shall establish a grant program for making a fair and equitable allocation among port authorities, facility operators, and State and local agencies required to provide security services of funds to implement Area Maritime Transportation Security Plans and facility security plans. The program shall take into account national economic and strategic defense considerations."

Subsec. (c)(2)(B). Pub. L. 108–293, §804(b)(1), substituted "Secretary determines" for "Secretary of Transportation determines".

Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 108–293, §804(b)(1), substituted "Secretary" for "Secretary of Transportation" wherever appearing.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 108–293, §804(b), substituted "Secretary" for "Secretary of Transportation" in two places and "department in which the Coast Guard is operating" for "Department of Transportation".

Subsecs. (g), (h). Pub. L. 108–293, §804(b)(1), substituted "Secretary" for "Secretary of Transportation" wherever appearing.

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 108–293, §808(a), added subsec. (i) and struck out former subsec. (i) which related to research and development grants for port security.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2004 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 108–293, title VIII, §804(c), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1081, provided that: "Subsections (a) and (b) [amending this section]—

"(1) shall take effect October 1, 2004; and

"(2) shall not affect any grant made before that date."

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.

For transfer of functions, personnel, assets, and liabilities of the United States Customs Service of the Department of the Treasury, including functions of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto, to the Secretary of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 203(1), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6. For establishment of U.S. Customs and Border Protection in the Department of Homeland Security, treated as if included in Pub. L. 107–296 as of Nov. 25, 2002, see section 211 of Title 6, as amended generally by Pub. L. 114–125, and section 802(b) of Pub. L. 114–125, set out as a note under section 211 of Title 6.

[§70107A. Repealed. Pub. L. 115–254, div. J, §1809(a)(1), Oct. 5, 2018, 132 Stat. 3537]

Section, added Pub. L. 109–347, title I, §108(a), Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1892; amended Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §§803, 824, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2990, 3003, related to interagency operational centers for port security.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

SAVINGS CLAUSE

Pub. L. 115–254, div. J, §1809(a)(2), Oct. 5, 2018, 132 Stat. 3537, provided that: "A repeal made by this subsection [repealing this section] shall not affect an interagency operational center established before the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 5, 2018]."

NOTICE TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 115–254, div. J, §1809(a)(3), Oct. 5, 2018, 132 Stat. 3537, provided that: "The Secretary of Homeland Security shall notify the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Homeland Security and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives at least 1 year before ceasing operations of any interagency operational center established before the date of enactment of the Security and Accountability for Every Port Act of 2006 (Public Law 109–347; 120 Stat. 1884) [Oct. 13, 2006]."

REPORT REQUIREMENT

Pub. L. 109–347, title I, §108(b), Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1893, as amended by Pub. L. 115–254, div. J, §1809(c)(2), Oct. 5, 2018, 132 Stat. 3538, related to continued compliance with requirements of section 807 of Pub. L. 108–293 (118 Stat. 1082). Amendment by Pub. L. 115–254 substituted "[Reserved]." for text of subsec. (b).

§70108. Foreign port assessment

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall assess the effectiveness of the antiterrorism measures maintained at—

(1) a foreign port—

(A) served by vessels documented under chapter 121 of this title; or

(B) from which foreign vessels depart on a voyage to the United States; and

(2) any other foreign port the Secretary believes poses a security risk to international maritime commerce.

(b) PROCEDURES.—In conducting an assessment under subsection (a), the Secretary shall assess the effectiveness of—

(1) screening of containerized and other cargo and baggage;

(2) security measures to restrict access to cargo, vessels, and dockside property to authorized personnel only;

(3) additional security on board vessels;

(4) licensing or certification of compliance with appropriate security standards;

(5) the security management program of the foreign port; and

(6) other appropriate measures to deter terrorism against the United States.

(c) CONSULTATION.—In carrying out this section, the Secretary shall consult with—

(1) the Secretary of Defense and the Secretary of State—

(A) on the terrorist threat that exists in each country involved; and

(B) to identify foreign ports that pose a high risk of introducing terrorism to international maritime commerce;

(2) appropriate authorities of foreign governments; and

(3) operators of vessels.

(d) PERIODIC REASSESSMENT.—The Secretary, acting through the Commandant of the Coast Guard, shall reassess the effectiveness of antiterrorism measures maintained at ports as described under subsection (a) and of procedures described in subsection (b) not less than once every 3 years.

(e) LIMITATION ON STATUTORY CONSTRUCTION.—The absence of an inspection of a foreign port shall not bar the Secretary from making a finding that a port in a foreign country does not maintain effective antiterrorism measures.

(f) RECOGNITION OF ASSESSMENT CONDUCTED BY OTHER ENTITIES.—

(1) CERTIFICATION AND TREATMENT OF ASSESSMENTS.—For the purposes of this section and section 70109, the Secretary may treat an assessment that a foreign government (including, for the purposes of this subsection, an entity of or operating under the auspices of the European Union) or international organization has conducted as an assessment that the Secretary has conducted for the purposes of subsection (a), if—

(A) the Secretary certifies that the foreign government or international organization—

(i) has conducted the assessment in accordance with subsection (b); and

(ii) has provided the Secretary with sufficient information pertaining to its assessment (including information regarding the outcome of the assessment); and

(B) the foreign government that conducted the assessment is not a state sponsor of terrorism (as defined in section 3316(h)).

(2) AUTHORIZATION TO ENTER INTO AN AGREEMENT.—For the purposes of this section and section 70109, the Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of State, may enter into an agreement with a foreign government (including, for the purposes of this subsection, an entity of or operating under the auspices of the European Union) or international organization, under which parties to the agreement—

(A) conduct an assessment, required under subsection (a);

(B) share information pertaining to such assessment (including, but not limited to, information on the outcome of the assessment); or

(C) both.

(3) LIMITATIONS.—Nothing in this section may be construed—

(A) to require the Secretary to treat an assessment conducted by a foreign government or an international organization as an assessment that satisfies the requirement under subsection (a);

(B) to limit the discretion or ability of the Secretary to conduct an assessment under this section;

(C) to limit the authority of the Secretary to repatriate aliens to their respective countries of origin; or

(D) to prevent the Secretary from requesting security and safety measures that the Secretary considers necessary to safeguard Coast Guard personnel during the repatriation of aliens to their respective countries of origin.

(4) NOTIFICATION TO CONGRESS.—Not later than 30 days before entering into an agreement or arrangement with a foreign government under paragraph (2), the Secretary shall notify the Committee on Homeland Security and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate of the proposed terms of such agreement or arrangement.

(g) STATE SPONSORS OF TERRORISM AND INTERNATIONAL TERRORIST ORGANIZATIONS.—The Secretary—

(1) may not enter into an agreement under subsection (f)(2) with—

(A) a foreign government that is a state sponsor of terrorism (as defined in section 3316(h)); or

(B) an entity designated by the Secretary of State as a foreign terrorist organization pursuant to section 219 of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1189); and

(2) shall—

(A) deem any port that is under the jurisdiction of a foreign government that is a state sponsor of terrorism as not having effective antiterrorism measures for purposes of this section and section 70109; and

(B) immediately apply the sanctions described in section 70110(a) to such port.

(Added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2079; amended Pub. L. 109–347, title II, §234, Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1918; Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §806(a)(1), (c)(2)(B), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2992, 2993; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §317, Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 62; Pub. L. 118–31, div. E, title LVI, §5603, Dec. 22, 2023, 137 Stat. 959.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2023—Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 118–31, §5603(1)(A), substituted "if—" and subpars. (A) and (B) for "provided that the Secretary certifies that the foreign government or international organization has—

"(A) conducted the assessment in accordance with subsection (b); and

"(B) provided the Secretary with sufficient information pertaining to its assessment (including, but not limited to, information on the outcome of the assessment)."

Subsec. (f)(3). Pub. L. 118–31, §5603(1)(B), amended par. (3) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to—

"(A) require the Secretary to recognize an assessment that a foreign government or an international organization has conducted; or

"(B) limit the discretion or ability of the Secretary to conduct an assessment under this section."

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 118–31, §5603(2), added subsec. (g).

2016—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 114–120 added subsec. (f).

2010—Subsec. (c)(2) to (4). Pub. L. 111–281, §806(c)(2)(B), redesignated pars. (3) and (4) as (2) and (3), respectively, and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: "the Secretary of the Treasury;".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 111–281, §806(a)(1), added subsec. (e).

2006—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 109–347 added subsec. (d).

§70109. Notifying foreign authorities

(a) IN GENERAL.—Unless the Secretary finds that a port in a foreign country maintains effective antiterrorism measures, the Secretary shall notify the appropriate authorities of the government of the foreign country of the finding and recommend the steps necessary to improve the antiterrorism measures in use at the port.

(b) TRAINING PROGRAM.—The Secretary, in cooperation with the Secretary of State, shall operate a port security training program for ports in foreign countries that are found under section 70108 to lack effective antiterrorism measures.

(Added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2080; amended Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §806(a)(2), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2992.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–281 substituted "Unless the Secretary finds that a port in a foreign country maintains effective antiterrorism measures," for "If the Secretary, after conducting an assessment under section 70108, finds that a port in a foreign country does not maintain effective antiterrorism measures,".

§70110. Actions and assistance for foreign ports or facilities and United States territories

(a) IN GENERAL.—Unless the Secretary finds that a foreign port or facility maintains effective antiterrorism measures, the Secretary—

(1) may prescribe conditions of entry into the United States for any vessel arriving from that port or facility, or any vessel carrying cargo or passengers originating from or transshipped through that port or facility;

(2) may deny entry into the United States to any vessel that does not meet such conditions; and

(3) shall provide public notice for passengers of the ineffective antiterrorism measures.

(b) EFFECTIVE DATE FOR SANCTIONS.—Any action taken by the Secretary under subsection (a) for a particular port or facility shall take effect—

(1) 90 days after the government of the foreign country with jurisdiction over or control of that port or facility is notified under section 70109 unless the Secretary finds that the government has brought the antiterrorism measures at the port or facility up to the security level the Secretary used in making an assessment under section 70108 before the end of that 90-day period; or

(2) immediately upon the finding of the Secretary under subsection (a) if the Secretary finds, after consulting with the Secretary of State, that a condition exists that threatens the safety or security of passengers, vessels, or crew traveling to or from the port or facility.

(c) STATE DEPARTMENT TO BE NOTIFIED.—The Secretary immediately shall notify the Secretary of State of a finding that a port or facility does not maintain effective antiterrorism measures.

(d) ACTION CANCELED.—An action required under this section is no longer required if the Secretary decides that effective antiterrorism measures are maintained at the port or facility.

(e) ASSISTANCE FOR FOREIGN PORTS, FACILITIES, AND UNITED STATES TERRITORIES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of Transportation, the Secretary of State, and the Secretary of Energy, shall identify assistance programs that could facilitate implementation of port or facility security antiterrorism measures in foreign countries and territories of the United States. The Secretary shall establish a strategic plan to utilize those assistance programs to assist ports and facilities that are found by the Secretary under subsection (a) not to maintain effective antiterrorism measures in the implementation of port or facility security antiterrorism measures.

(2) CARIBBEAN BASIN.—The Secretary, in coordination with the Secretary of State and in consultation with the Organization of American States and the Commandant of the Coast Guard, shall place particular emphasis on utilizing programs to facilitate the implementation of port or facility security antiterrorism measures at the ports located in the Caribbean Basin, as such ports pose unique security and safety threats to the United States due to—

(A) the strategic location of such ports between South America and the United States;

(B) the relative openness of such ports; and

(C) the significant number of shipments of narcotics to the United States that are moved through such ports.

(f) COAST GUARD ASSISTANCE PROGRAM.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may lend, lease, donate, or otherwise provide equipment, and provide technical training and support, to the owner or operator of a foreign port or facility—

(A) to assist in bringing the port or facility into compliance with applicable International Ship and Port Facility Code standards; and

(B) to assist the port or facility in correcting deficiencies identified in periodic port assessments and reassessments required under section 70108 of this title.

(2) CONDITIONS.—The Secretary—

(A) may provide such assistance based upon an assessment of the risks to the security of the United States and the inability of the owner or operator of the port or facility to bring the port or facility into compliance with those standards and to maintain compliance with, or exceed, such standards;

(B) may not provide such assistance unless the port or facility has been subjected to a comprehensive port security assessment by the Coast Guard; and

(C) may only lend, lease, or otherwise provide equipment that the Secretary has first determined is not required by the Coast Guard for the performance of its missions.

(Added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2080; amended Pub. L. 109–347, title II, §233(b), Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1917; Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §806(a)(3)–(c)(2)(A), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2992, 2993; Pub. L. 111–330, §1(12), Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3570.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Pub. L. 111–281, §806(c)(2)(A)(i), as amended by Pub. L. 111–330, inserted "or facilities" after "ports" in section catchline.

Pub. L. 111–281, §806(c)(2)(A)(ii), inserted "or facility" after "port" wherever appearing except in subsec. (f), which was added by Pub. L. 111–281, §806(b), to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–281, §806(a)(3), substituted "Unless the Secretary finds that a foreign port maintains effective antiterrorism measures," for "If the Secretary finds that a foreign port does not maintain effective antiterrorism measures,".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 111–281, §806(c)(2)(A)(iii), substituted "Ports, Facilities," for "Ports" in heading.

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 111–281, §806(c)(1), substituted "The Secretary shall establish a strategic plan to utilize those assistance programs to assist ports and facilities that are found by the Secretary under subsection (a) not to maintain effective antiterrorism measures in the implementation of port security antiterrorism measures." for "The Secretary shall establish a program to utilize the programs that are capable of implementing port security antiterrorism measures at ports in foreign countries and territories of the United States that the Secretary finds to lack effective antiterrorism measures."

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 111–281, §806(b), added subsec. (f).

2006—Pub. L. 109–347, §233(b)(1), substituted "Actions and assistance for foreign ports and United States territories" for "Actions when foreign ports not maintaining effective antiterrorism measures" in section catchline.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 109–347, §233(b)(2), added subsec. (e).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111–330, §1, Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3569, provided that the amendment made by section 1(12) is effective with the enactment of Pub. L. 111–281.

§70111. Enhanced crewmember identification

(a) REQUIREMENT.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of the SAFE Port Act, the Secretary, in consultation with the Attorney General and the Secretary of State, shall require crewmembers on vessels calling at United States ports to carry and present on demand any identification that the Secretary decides is necessary.

(b) FORMS AND PROCESS.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of the SAFE Port Act, the Secretary, in consultation with the Attorney General and the Secretary of State, shall establish the proper forms and process that shall be used for identification and verification of crewmembers.

(Added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2080; amended Pub. L. 109–347, title I, §110, Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1893.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of enactment of the SAFE Port Act, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 109–347, which was approved Oct. 13, 2006.

AMENDMENTS

2006—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 109–347 substituted "Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of the SAFE Port Act, the" for "The".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

INTERNATIONAL SEAFARER IDENTIFICATION

Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §103, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2084, provided that:

"(a) TREATY INITIATIVE.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating is encouraged to negotiate an international agreement, or an amendment to an international agreement, that provides for a uniform, comprehensive, international system of identification for seafarers that will enable the United States and another country to establish authoritatively the identity of any seafarer aboard a vessel within the jurisdiction, including the territorial waters, of the United States or such other country.

"(b) LEGISLATIVE ALTERNATIVE.—If the Secretary fails to complete a negotiation process undertaken under subsection (a) within 24 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 25, 2002], the Secretary shall transmit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives a draft of legislation that, if enacted, would establish a uniform, comprehensive system of identification for seafarers."

[For transfer of authorities, functions, personnel, and assets of the Coast Guard, including the authorities and functions of the Secretary of Transportation relating thereto, to the Department of Homeland Security, and for treatment of related references, see sections 468(b), 551(d), 552(d), and 557 of Title 6, Domestic Security, and the Department of Homeland Security Reorganization Plan of November 25, 2002, as modified, set out as a note under section 542 of Title 6.]

§70112. Maritime Security Advisory Committees

(a) NATIONAL MARITIME SECURITY ADVISORY COMMITTEE.—

(1) ESTABLISHMENT.—There is established a National Maritime Security Advisory Committee (in this subsection referred to as the "Committee").

(2) FUNCTION.—The Committee shall advise the Secretary on matters relating to national maritime security, including on enhancing the sharing of information related to cybersecurity risks that may cause a transportation security incident, between relevant Federal agencies and—

(A) State, local, and tribal governments;

(B) relevant public safety and emergency response agencies;

(C) relevant law enforcement and security organizations;

(D) maritime industry;

(E) port owners and operators; and

(F) terminal owners and operators.

(3) MEMBERSHIP.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Committee shall consist of at least 8 members, but not more than 21 members, appointed by the Secretary in accordance with this subsection and section 15109 of this title.

(B) EXPERTISE.—Each member of the Committee shall have particular expertise, knowledge, and experience in matters relating to the function of the Committee.

(C) REPRESENTATION.—Each of the following shall be represented by at least 1 member of the Committee:

(i) Port authorities.

(ii) Facilities owners and operators.

(iii) Terminal owners and operators.

(iv) Vessel owners and operators.

(v) Maritime labor organizations.

(vi) The academic community.
(vii) State and local governments.
(viii) The maritime industry.

(D) DISTRIBUTION.—If the Committee consists of at least 8 members who, together, satisfy the minimum representation requirements of subparagraph (C), the Secretary shall, based on the needs of the Coast Guard, determine the number of additional members of the Committee who represent each entity specified in that subparagraph. Neither this subparagraph nor any other provision of law shall be construed to require an equal distribution of members representing each entity specified in subparagraph (C).

(4) ADMINISTRATION.—For purposes of section 15109 of this title, the Committee shall be treated as a committee established under chapter 151 of such title.

(b) AREA MARITIME SECURITY ADVISORY COMMITTEES.—
(1) IN GENERAL.—
(A) ESTABLISHMENT.—The Secretary may—
(i) establish an Area Maritime Security Advisory Committee for any port area of the United States; and
(ii) request such a committee to review the proposed Area Maritime Transportation Security Plan developed under section 70103(b) and make recommendations to the Secretary that the committee considers appropriate.

(B) ADDITIONAL FUNCTIONS AND MEETINGS.—A committee established under this subsection for an area—
(i) may advise, consult with, report to, and make recommendations to the Secretary on matters relating to maritime security in that area;
(ii) may make available to the Congress recommendations that the committee makes to the Secretary; and
(iii) shall meet at the call of—
(I) the Secretary, who shall call such a meeting at least once during each calendar year; or
(II) a majority of the committee.

(2) MEMBERSHIP.—
(A) IN GENERAL.—Each committee established under this subsection shall consist of at least 7 members appointed by the Secretary, each of whom has at least 5 years practical experience in maritime security operations.
(B) TERMS.—The term of each member of a committee established under this subsection shall be for a period of not more than 5 years, specified by the Secretary.
(C) NOTICE.—Before appointing an individual to a position on a committee established under this subsection, the Secretary shall publish a notice in the Federal Register soliciting nominations for membership on the committee.
(D) BACKGROUND EXAMINATIONS.—The Secretary may require an individual to have passed an appropriate security background examination before appointment to a committee established under this subsection.
(E) REPRESENTATION.—Each committee established under this subsection shall be composed of individuals who represent the interests of the port industry, terminal operators, port labor organizations, and other users of the port areas.

(3) CHAIRPERSON AND VICE CHAIRPERSON.—
(A) IN GENERAL.—Each committee established under this subsection shall elect 1 of the committee's members as the Chairperson and 1 of the committee's members as the Vice

Chairperson.

(B) VICE CHAIRPERSON ACTING AS CHAIRPERSON.—The Vice Chairperson shall act as Chairperson in the absence or incapacity of the Chairperson, or in the event of a vacancy in the office of the Chairperson.

(4) OBSERVERS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall, and the head of any other interested Federal agency may, designate a representative to participate as an observer with a committee established under this subsection.

(B) ROLE.—The Secretary's designated representative to a committee established under this subsection shall act as the executive secretary of the committee and shall perform the duties set forth in section 1009(c) of title 5.

(5) CONSIDERATION OF VIEWS.—The Secretary shall consider the information, advice, and recommendations of each committee established under this subsection in formulating policy regarding matters affecting maritime security.

(6) COMPENSATION AND EXPENSES.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—A member of a committee established under this subsection, when attending meetings of the committee or when otherwise engaged in the business of the committee, is entitled to receive—

(i) compensation at a rate fixed by the Secretary, not exceeding the daily equivalent of the current rate of basic pay in effect for GS–15 of the General Schedule under section 5332 of title 5 including travel time; and

(ii) travel or transportation expenses under section 5703 of title 5.

(B) STATUS.—A member of a committee established under this subsection shall not be considered to be an officer or employee of the United States for any purpose based on the receipt of any payment under this paragraph.

(7) CHAPTER 10 OF TITLE 5.—Chapter 10 of title 5 does not apply to a committee established under this subsection.

(Added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2081; amended Pub. L. 108–293, title VIII, §806, Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1082; Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(m), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 565; Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §810, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2995; Pub. L. 115–254, div. J, §1805(c)(1), Oct. 5, 2018, 132 Stat. 3534; Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §602(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4290; Pub. L. 117–286, §4(a)(294), (295), Dec. 27, 2022, 136 Stat. 4338.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (b)(4)(B). Pub. L. 117–286, §4(a)(294), substituted "section 1009(c) of title 5." for "section 10(c) of the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.)."

Subsec. (b)(7). Pub. L. 117–286, §4(a)(295), substituted "Chapter 10 of title 5" for "FACA" in heading and "Chapter 10 of title 5" for "The Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.)" in text.

2018—Pub. L. 115–282, §602(a), amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section required Secretary to establish a National Maritime Security Advisory Committee and authorized Secretary to establish an Area Maritime Security Advisory Committee for any port area of the United States.

Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 115–254 inserted ", including on enhancing the sharing of information related to cybersecurity risks that may cause a transportation security incident, between relevant Federal agencies and—" in introductory provisions and added cls. (i) to (vi).

2010—Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 111–281, §810(1), amended par. (5) generally. Prior to amendment par. (5) read as follows: "The membership of an Area Maritime Security Advisory Committee shall include representatives of the port industry, terminal operators, port labor organizations, and other users of the port areas."

Subsec. (g)(1)(A). Pub. L. 111–281, §810(2)(A), substituted "2020;" for "2008;".
Subsec. (g)(2). Pub. L. 111–281, §810(2)(B), substituted "2018" for "2006".
2006—Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 109–241 realigned margins.
2004—Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 108–293 added par. (5).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

TREATMENT OF EXISTING COMMITTEE

Pub. L. 115–282, title VI, §602(b), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4293, provided that: "Notwithstanding any other provision of law—

"(1) an advisory committee substantially similar to the National Maritime Security Advisory Committee established under section 70112(a) of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this section, and that was in force or in effect on the day before the date of enactment of this section [Dec. 4, 2018], may remain in force or in effect for a period of 2 years from the date of enactment of this section, including that the charter, membership, and other aspects of the committee may remain in force or in effect; and

"(2) during the 2-year period referenced in paragraph (1)—

"(A) requirements relating to the National Maritime Security Advisory Committee established under section 70112(a) of title 46, United States Code, as amended by this section, shall be treated as satisfied by the substantially similar advisory committee; and

"(B) the enactment of this section, including the amendments made in this section, shall not be the basis—

"(i) to deem, find, or declare such committee, including the charter, membership, and other aspects thereof, void, not in force, or not in effect;

"(ii) to suspend the activities of such committee; or

"(iii) to bar the members of such committee from meeting."

CYBERSECURITY INFORMATION SHARING AND COORDINATION IN PORTS

Pub. L. 115–254, div. J, §1805(a), Oct. 5, 2018, 132 Stat. 3533, provided that:

"(a) MARITIME CYBERSECURITY RISK ASSESSMENT MODEL.—The Secretary of Homeland Security, through the Commandant of the Coast Guard and the Under Secretary responsible for overseeing the critical infrastructure protection, cybersecurity, and other related programs of the Department of Homeland Security, shall—

"(1) not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 5, 2018], coordinate with the National Maritime Security Advisory Committee, the Area Maritime Security Advisory Committees, and other maritime stakeholders, as necessary, to develop and implement a maritime cybersecurity risk assessment model, consistent with the activities described in section 2(e) of the National Institute of Standards and Technology Act (15 U.S.C. 272(e)), to evaluate current and future cybersecurity risks that have the potential to affect the marine transportation system or that would cause a transportation security incident (as defined in section 70101 of title 46, United States Code) in ports; and

"(2) not less than biennially thereafter, evaluate the effectiveness of the cybersecurity risk assessment model established under paragraph (1)."

INFORMATION SHARING

Pub. L. 115–254, div. J, §1805(c)(2), Oct. 5, 2018, 132 Stat. 3534, provided that: "The Commandant of the Coast Guard and the Under Secretary responsible for overseeing the critical infrastructure protection, cybersecurity, and other related programs of the Department of Homeland Security shall—

"(A) ensure there is a process for each Area Maritime Security Advisory Committee established under section 70112 of title 46, United States Code—

"(i) to facilitate the sharing of information related to cybersecurity risks that may cause transportation security incidents;

"(ii) to timely report transportation security incidents to the national level; and

"(iii) to disseminate such reports across the entire maritime transportation system via the National Cybersecurity and Communications Integration Center; and

"(B) issue voluntary guidance for the management of such cybersecurity risks in each Area Maritime Transportation Security Plan and facility security plan required under section 70103 of title 46, United States Code, approved after the date that the cybersecurity risk assessment model is developed under subsection (a) of this section [set out as a note above]."

§70113. Maritime intelligence

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall implement a system to collect, integrate, and analyze information concerning vessels operating on or bound for waters subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, including information related to crew, passengers, cargo, and intermodal shipments. The system may include a vessel risk profiling component that assigns incoming vessels a terrorism risk rating.

(b) CONSULTATION.—In developing the information system under subsection (a), the Secretary shall consult with the Transportation Security Oversight Board and other departments and agencies, as appropriate.

(c) INFORMATION INTEGRATION.—To deter a transportation security incident, the Secretary may collect information from public and private entities to the extent that the information is not provided by other Federal departments and agencies.

(Added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2082; amended Pub. L. 108–293, title VIII, §803(a), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1080.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2004—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 108–293 inserted at end "The system may include a vessel risk profiling component that assigns incoming vessels a terrorism risk rating."

§70114. Automatic identification systems

(a) SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS.—(1) Subject to paragraph (2), the following vessels, while operating on the navigable waters of the United States, shall be equipped with and operate an automatic identification system under regulations prescribed by the Secretary:

(A) A self-propelled commercial vessel of at least 65 feet overall in length.

(B) A vessel carrying more than a number of passengers for hire determined by the Secretary.

(C) A towing vessel of more than 26 feet overall in length and 600 horsepower.

(D) Any other vessel for which the Secretary decides that an automatic identification system is necessary for the safe navigation of the vessel.

(2) The Secretary may—

(A) exempt a vessel from paragraph (1) if the Secretary finds that an automatic identification system is not necessary for the safe navigation of the vessel on the waters on which the vessel operates; and

(B) waive the application of paragraph (1) with respect to operation of vessels on navigable waters of the United States specified by the Secretary if the Secretary finds that automatic identification systems are not needed for safe navigation on those waters.

(b) REGULATIONS.—The Secretary shall prescribe regulations implementing subsection (a), including requirements for the operation and maintenance of the automatic identification systems required under subsection (a).

(Added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2082.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(e), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2084, provided that:

"(1) SCHEDULE.—Section 70114 of title 46, United States Code, as enacted by this Act, shall apply as follows:

"(A) On and after January 1, 2003, to any vessel built after that date.

"(B) On and after July 1, 2003, to any vessel built before the date referred to in subparagraph (A) that is—

"(i) a passenger vessel required to carry a certificate under the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974 (SOLAS) [see 33 U.S.C. 1602 and notes thereunder];

"(ii) a tanker; or

"(iii) a towing vessel engaged in moving a tank vessel.

"(C) On and after December 31, 2004, to all other vessels built before the date referred to in subparagraph (A).

"(2) DEFINITION.—The terms in this subsection have the same meaning as those terms have under section 2101 [now also 115] of title 46, United States Code."

§70115. Long-range vessel tracking system

Not later than April 1, 2007, the Secretary shall, consistent with international treaties, conventions, and agreements to which the United States is a party, develop and implement a long-range automated vessel tracking system for all vessels in United States waters that are equipped with the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System or equivalent satellite technology. The system shall be designed to provide the Secretary the capability of receiving information on vessel positions at interval positions appropriate to deter transportation security incidents. The Secretary may use existing maritime organizations to collect and monitor tracking information under the system.

(Added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2083; amended Pub. L. 108–293, title VIII, §803(b), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1080; Pub. L. 109–347, title I, §107(a), Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1891.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–347, in first sentence, substituted "Not later than April 1, 2007, the Secretary" for "The Secretary".

2004—Pub. L. 108–293, in first sentence, substituted "shall, consistent with international treaties, conventions, and agreements to which the United States is a party," for "may".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 109–347, title I, §107(b), Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1891, provided that: "The Secretary [of Homeland Security] may issue regulations to establish a voluntary long-range automated vessel tracking system for vessels described in section 70115 of title 46, United States Code, during the period before regulations are issued under such section."

LONG-RANGE VESSEL TRACKING SYSTEM

Pub. L. 109–241, title IV, §404, July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 535, provided that:

"(a) PILOT PROJECT.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating, acting through the Commandant of the Coast Guard, shall conduct a 3-year pilot program for long-range tracking of up to 2,000 vessels using satellite systems with a nonprofit maritime organization that has a demonstrated capability of operating a variety of satellite communications systems providing data to vessel tracking software and hardware that provides long-range vessel information to the Coast Guard to aid maritime security and response to maritime emergencies.

"(b) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary $4,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2006, 2007, and 2008 to carry out subsection (a)."

§70116. Port, harbor, and coastal facility security

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—The Secretary may take actions described in subsection (b) to prevent or respond to an act of terrorism, cyber incidents, transnational organized crime, and foreign state threats against—

(1) an individual, vessel, or public or commercial structure, that is—

(A) subject to the jurisdiction of the United States; and

(B) located within or adjacent to the marine environment; or

(2) a vessel of the United States or an individual on board that vessel.

(b) SPECIFIC AUTHORITY.—Under subsection (a), the Secretary may—

(1) carry out or require measures, including inspections, port and harbor patrols, the establishment of security and safety zones, and the development of contingency plans and procedures, to prevent or respond to acts of terrorism, cyber incidents, transnational organized crime, and foreign state threats;

(2) recruit members of the Regular Coast Guard and the Coast Guard Reserve and train members of the Regular Coast Guard and the Coast Guard Reserve in the techniques of preventing and responding to acts of terrorism, cyber incidents, transnational organized crime, and foreign state threats; and

(3) dispatch properly trained and qualified, armed (as needed), Coast Guard personnel on vessels and public or commercial structures on or adjacent to waters subject to United States jurisdiction to deter or respond to acts of terrorism, cyber incidents, transnational organized crime, foreign state threats, or transportation security incidents, as defined in section 70101 of title 46, United States Code.

(c) DEFINITIONS, ADMINISTRATION, AND ENFORCEMENT.—This section shall be treated as part of chapter 700 for purposes of sections 70031, 70032, 70033, 70035, and 70036. When preventing or responding to acts of terrorism, cyber incidents, transnational organized crime, or foreign state threats, the Secretary may carry out this section without regard to chapters 5 and 6 of title 5 or Executive Order Nos. 12866 and 13563.

(Added and amended Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §402(b)(1), (2), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4264; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8341, Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4709; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXVII, §7701(b), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1835.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Executive Order Nos. 12866 and 13563, referred to in subsec. (c), are set out as notes under section 601 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

CODIFICATION

Section, as added and amended by Pub. L. 115–282, is based on subsecs. (a) and (b) of Pub. L. 92–340, §7, as added Pub. L. 99–399, title IX, §906, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 890; amended Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §107(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2088, which was formerly classified to section 1226(a), (b) of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters, before being transferred to this chapter and renumbered as this section. Subsections (a) and (b) of section 7 of Pub. L. 92–340 were also renumbered as section 70102a of this title by Pub. L. 115–282, title IV, §408(a), Dec. 4, 2018, 132 Stat. 4268.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 70116, added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2083, related to secure systems of transportation, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 115–254, div. J, §1809(b), Oct. 5, 2018, 132 Stat. 3538.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 119–60, §7701(b)(1), substituted "terrorism, cyber" for "terrorism cyber".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 119–60, §7701(b)(2), inserted a comma after "acts of terrorism".

2021—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–283, §8341(1), inserted ", cyber incidents, transnational organized crime, and foreign state threats" after "an act of terrorism" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(1), (2). Pub. L. 116–283, §8341(2)(A), inserted "cyber incidents, transnational organized crime, and foreign state threats" after "terrorism".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 116–283, §8341(2)(B), substituted ", armed (as needed)," for "armed" and "terrorism, cyber incidents, transnational organized crime, foreign state threats, or transportation security incidents," for "terrorism or transportation security incidents,".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 116–283, §8341(3), substituted "70033," for "70034," and inserted at end "When preventing or responding to acts of terrorism, cyber incidents, transnational organized crime, or foreign state threats, the Secretary may carry out this section without regard to chapters 5 and 6 of title 5 or Executive Order Nos. 12866 and 13563."

2018—Pub. L. 115–282, §402(b)(1), transferred section catchline and subsecs. (a) and (b) of section 7 of Pub. L. 92–340 to this chapter and redesignated them as this section. See Codification note above. Catchline text was editorially conformed to the style used in this title.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 115–282, §402(b)(2), added subsec. (c).

[§70117. Repealed. Pub. L. 111–281, title II, §208(b), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2912]

Section, added Pub. L. 108–293, title VIII, §801(a), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1078, §70118; renumbered §70117, Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(l)(1), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 565; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(33)(A), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1705; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3529(c)(1), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 603, related to firearms, arrests, and seizure of property.

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 70117 was renumbered section 70120 of this title.

Another prior section 70117 was renumbered section 70119 of this title.

§70118. Enforcement by State and local officers

(a) IN GENERAL.—Any State or local government law enforcement officer who has authority to enforce State criminal laws may make an arrest for violation of a security zone regulation prescribed under section 70051 or security or safety zone regulation under section 70116(b) or a safety zone regulation prescribed under section 10(d) of the Deepwater Port Act of 1974 (33 U.S.C. 1509(d)) by a Coast Guard official authorized by law to prescribe such regulations, if—

(1) such violation is a felony; and

(2) the officer has reasonable grounds to believe that the person to be arrested has committed or is committing such violation.

(b) OTHER POWERS NOT AFFECTED.—The provisions of this section are in addition to any power conferred by law to such officers. This section shall not be construed as a limitation of any power conferred by law to such officers, or any other officer of the United States or any State. This section does not grant to such officers any powers not authorized by the law of the State in which those officers are employed.

(Added Pub. L. 108–293, title VIII, §801(a), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1078, §70119; renumbered §70118, Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(l)(1), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 565; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(33)(A), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1705; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3529(c)(1), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 603; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXVII, §7701(c), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1835.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 70118 was renumbered section 70117 of this title and subsequently repealed.

Another prior section 70118 was renumbered section 70121 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 119–60 substituted "section 70051" for "section 1 of title II of the Act of June 15, 1917 (chapter 30; 50 U.S.C. 191)" and "section 70116(b)" for "section 7(b) of the Ports and Waterways Safety Act (33 U.S.C. 1226(b))".

2008—Pub. L. 110–181 repealed Pub. L. 109–304, §15(33)(A). See 2006 Amendment note below.

2006—Pub. L. 109–304, §15(33)(A), which directed renumbering identical to that made by Pub. L. 109–241, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181. See Amendment note and Construction of 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 109–241 renumbered section 70119 of this title, as added by Pub. L. 108–293, §801(a), as this section.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

CONSTRUCTION OF 2006 AMENDMENT

Provisions of Pub. L. 109–304 repealed by section 3529(c)(1) of Pub. L. 110–181 to be treated as if never enacted, see section 3529(c)(2) of Pub. L. 110–181, set out as a note under section 9504 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

§70119. Civil penalty

(a) IN GENERAL.—Any person that violates this chapter or any regulation under this chapter shall be liable to the United States for a civil penalty of not more than $25,000 for each day during which the violation continues.

(b) CONTINUING VIOLATIONS.—The maximum amount of a civil penalty for a violation under this section shall not exceed $50,000.

(Added Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §102(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2084, §70117; renumbered §70119, Pub. L. 108–293, title VIII, §802(a)(1), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1078; amended Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §306(a), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 528.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Another section 70119 was renumbered section 70118 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2006—Pub. L. 109–241 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted heading, substituted "day during which the violation continues" for "violation", and added subsec. (b).

§70120. In rem liability for civil penalties and certain costs

(a) CIVIL PENALTIES.—Any vessel operated in violation of this chapter or any regulations prescribed under this chapter shall be liable in rem for any civil penalty assessed pursuant to section 70119 for such violation, and may be proceeded against for such liability in the United States district court for any district in which the vessel may be found.

(b) REIMBURSABLE COSTS OF SERVICE PROVIDERS.—A vessel shall be liable in rem for the reimbursable costs incurred by any service provider related to implementation and enforcement of this chapter and arising from a violation by the operator of the vessel of this chapter or any regulations prescribed under this chapter, and may be proceeded against for such liability in the United States district court for any district in which such vessel may be found.

(c) DEFINITIONS.—In this subsection—

(1) the term "reimbursable costs" means costs incurred by any service provider acting in conformity with a lawful order of the Federal government or in conformity with the instructions of the vessel operator; and

(2) the term "service provider" means any port authority, facility or terminal operator, shipping agent, Federal, State, or local government agency, or other person to whom the management of the vessel at the port of supply is entrusted, for—

(A) services rendered to or in relation to vessel crew on board the vessel, or in transit to or from the vessel, including accommodation, detention, transportation, and medical expenses; and

(B) required handling of cargo or other items on board the vessel.

(Added Pub. L. 108–293, title VIII, §802(a)(2), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1078, §70117; renumbered §70120 and amended Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(l)(2), (3), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 565; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(33)(B), (C), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1705; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3529(c)(1), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 603.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181 repealed Pub. L. 109–304, §15(33)(B), (C). See 2006 Amendment notes below.

2006—Pub. L. 109–304, §15(33)(B), which directed renumbering identical to that made by Pub. L. 109–241, §901(l)(2), was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181. See Amendment note and Construction of 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 109–241, §901(l)(2), renumbered section 70117 of this title, as added by Pub. L. 108–293, §802(a)(2), as this section.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(33)(C), which directed amendment identical to that made by Pub. L. 109–241, §901(l)(3), was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181. See Amendment note and Construction of 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 109–241, §901(l)(3), substituted "section 70119" for "section 70120".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

CONSTRUCTION OF 2006 AMENDMENT

Provisions of Pub. L. 109–304 repealed by section 3529(c)(1) of Pub. L. 110–181 to be treated as if never enacted, see section 3529(c)(2) of Pub. L. 110–181, set out as a note under section 9504 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

§70121. Withholding of clearance

(a) REFUSAL OR REVOCATION OF CLEARANCE.—If any owner, agent, master, officer, or person in charge of a vessel is liable for a penalty under section 70119, or if reasonable cause exists to believe that the owner, agent, master, officer, or person in charge may be subject to a penalty under section 70119, the Secretary may, with respect to such vessel, refuse or revoke any clearance required by section 60105 of this title.

(b) CLEARANCE UPON FILING OF BOND OR OTHER SURETY.—The Secretary may require the filing of a bond or other surety as a condition of granting clearance refused or revoked under this subsection.

(Added Pub. L. 108–293, title VIII, §802(a)(2), Aug. 9, 2004, 118 Stat. 1079, §70118; renumbered §70121 and amended Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(l)(2), (4), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 565; Pub. L. 109–304, §15(33)(B), (D), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1705; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3529(c)(1), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 603.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181 repealed Pub. L. 109–304, §15(33)(B), (D)(i). See 2006 Amendment notes below.

2006—Pub. L. 109–304, §15(33)(B), which directed renumbering identical to that made by Pub. L. 109–241, §901(l)(2), was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181. See Amendment note and Construction of 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 109–241, §901(l)(2), renumbered section 70118 of this title, as added by Pub. L. 108–293, §802(a)(2), as this section.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–304, §15(33)(D)(ii), substituted "section 60105 of this title" for "section 4197 of the Revised Statutes of the United States (46 U.S.C. App. 91)".

Pub. L. 109–304, §15(33)(D)(i), which directed amendment identical to that made by Pub. L. 109–241, §901(l)(4), was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181. See Amendment note and Construction of 2006 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 109–241, §901(l)(4), substituted "section 70119" for "section 70120".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

CONSTRUCTION OF 2006 AMENDMENT

Provisions of Pub. L. 109–304 repealed by section 3529(c)(1) of Pub. L. 110–181 to be treated as if never enacted, see section 3529(c)(2) of Pub. L. 110–181, set out as a note under section 9504 of Title 26, Internal Revenue Code.

§70122. Waterway Watch Program

(a) PROGRAM ESTABLISHED.—There is hereby established, within the Coast Guard, the America's Waterway Watch Program.

(b) PURPOSE.—The Secretary shall administer the Program in a manner that promotes voluntary reporting of activities that may indicate that a person or persons may be preparing to engage or engaging in a violation of law relating to a threat or an act of terrorism (as that term is defined in section 3077 of title 18) against a vessel, facility, port, or waterway.

(c) INFORMATION; TRAINING.—

(1) INFORMATION.—The Secretary may establish, as an element of the Program, a network of individuals and community-based organizations that encourage the public and industry to recognize activities referred to in subsection (b), promote voluntary reporting of such activity, and enhance the situational awareness within the Nation's ports and waterways. Such network shall, to the extent practicable, be conducted in cooperation with Federal, State, and local law enforcement agencies.

(2) TRAINING.—The Secretary may provide training in—

(A) observing and reporting on covered activities; and

(B) sharing such reports and coordinating the response by Federal, State, and local law enforcement agencies.

(d) VOLUNTARY PARTICIPATION.—Participation in the Program—

(1) shall be wholly voluntary;

(2) shall not be a prerequisite to eligibility for, or receipt of, any other service or assistance from, or to participation in, any other program of any kind; and

(3) shall not require disclosure of information regarding the individual reporting covered activities or, for proprietary purposes, the location of such individual.

(e) COORDINATION.—The Secretary shall coordinate the Program with other like watch programs. The Secretary shall submit, concurrent with the President's budget submission for each fiscal year, a report on coordination of the Program and like watch programs within the Department of Homeland Security to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Homeland Security of the House of Representatives.

(f) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There are authorized to be appropriated for

the purposes of this section $3,000,000 for each of fiscal years 2011 through 2016. Such funds shall remain available until expended.

(Added Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §801(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2988; amended Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §306(a)(11), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 55.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2016—Pub. L. 114–120 substituted "Watch Program" for "watch program" in section catchline.

§70123. Mobile biometric identification

(a) IN GENERAL.—Within one year after the date of the enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2010, the Secretary shall conduct, in the maritime environment, a program for the mobile biometric identification of suspected individuals, including terrorists, to enhance border security and for other purposes.

(b) REQUIREMENTS.—The Secretary shall ensure the program required in this section is coordinated with other biometric identification programs within the Department of Homeland Security.

(c) DEFINITION.—For the purposes of this section, the term "biometric identification" means use of fingerprint and digital photography images and facial and iris scan technology and any other technology considered applicable by the Department of Homeland Security.

(Added Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §807(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2993.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The date of the enactment of the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 2010, referred to in subsec. (a), is the date of enactment of Pub. L. 111–281, which was approved Oct. 15, 2010.

§70124. Regulations

Unless otherwise provided, the Secretary may issue regulations necessary to implement this chapter.

(Added Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §820(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3001.)

§70125. Port security training for facility security officers

(a) FACILITY SECURITY OFFICERS.—The Secretary shall establish comprehensive facility security officer training requirements designed to provide full security training that would lead to certification of such officers. In establishing the requirements, the Secretary shall—

(1) work with affected industry stakeholders; and

(2) evaluate—

(A) the requirements of subsection (b);

(B) existing security training programs employed at marine terminal facilities; and

(C) existing port security training programs developed by the Federal Government.

(b) REQUIREMENTS.—The training program shall provide validated training that—

(1) provides training at the awareness, performance, management, and planning levels;

(2) utilizes multiple training mediums and methods;

(3) establishes a validated provisional on-line certification methodology;

(4) provide for continuing education and training for facility security officers beyond certification requirements, including a program to educate on the dangers and issues associated with the shipment of hazardous and especially hazardous cargo;

(5) addresses port security topics, including—

(A) facility security plans and procedures, including how to develop security plans and security procedure requirements when threat levels are elevated;

(B) facility security force operations and management;

(C) physical security and access control at facilities;

(D) methods of security for preventing and countering cargo theft;

(E) container security;

(F) recognition and detection of weapons, dangerous substances, and devices;

(G) operation and maintenance of security equipment and systems;

(H) security threats and patterns;

(I) security incident procedures, including procedures for communicating with governmental and nongovernmental emergency response providers; and

(J) evacuation procedures;

(6) is consistent with, and supports implementation of, the National Incident Management System, the National Response Plan, the National Infrastructure Protection Plan, the National Preparedness Guidance, the National Preparedness Goal, the National Maritime Transportation Security Plan, and other such national initiatives;

(7) is evaluated against clear and consistent performance measures;

(8) addresses security requirements under facility security plans;

(9) addresses requirements under the International Code for the Security of Ships and Port Facilities to address shore leave for mariners and access to visitors, representatives of seafarers' welfare organizations, and labor organizations; and

(10) such other subject matters as may be prescribed by the Secretary.

(c) CONTINUING SECURITY TRAINING.—The Secretary, in coordination with the Secretary of Transportation, shall work with State and local law enforcement agencies and industry stakeholders to develop and certify the following additional security training requirements for Federal, State, and local officials with security responsibilities at United States seaports:

(1) A program to familiarize them with port and shipping operations, requirements of the Maritime Transportation Security Act of 2002 (Public Law 107–295), and other port and cargo security programs that educates and trains them with respect to their roles and responsibilities.

(2) A program to familiarize them with dangers and potential issues with respect to shipments of hazardous and especially hazardous cargoes.

(3) A program of continuing education as deemed necessary by the Secretary.

(d) TRAINING PARTNERS.—In developing curriculum and delivering training established pursuant to subsections (a) and (c), the Secretary, in coordination with the Maritime Administrator of the Department of Transportation and consistent with section 109 of the Maritime Transportation Security Act of 2002 (46 U.S.C. 70101 note), shall work with institutions with maritime expertise and with industry stakeholders with security expertise to develop appropriate training capacity to ensure that training can be provided in a geographically balanced manner to personnel seeking certification under subsection (a) or education and training under subsection (c).

(e) ESTABLISHED GRANT PROGRAM.—The Secretary shall issue regulations or grant solicitations for grants for homeland security or port security to ensure that activities surrounding the development of curriculum and the provision of training and these activities are eligible grant activities under both grant programs.

(Added Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §821(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3001; amended Pub. L. 111–330, §1(14), Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3570.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Maritime Transportation Security Act of 2002, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), is Pub. L. 107–295, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2064. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Pub. L. 111–330 amended Pub. L. 111–281, §821(a), which enacted this section.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111–330, §1, Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3569, provided that the amendment made by section 1(12) is effective with the enactment of Pub. L. 111–281.

SUBCHAPTER II—PORT SECURITY ZONES

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 111–330, §1(16), Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3570, amended Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §828(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3005, which added subchapter II heading.

§70131. Definitions

In this subchapter:

(1) LAW ENFORCEMENT AGENCY.—The term "law enforcement agency" means an agency of a State, a political subdivision of a State, or a Federally recognized tribe that is authorized by law to supervise the prevention, detection, investigation, or prosecution of any violation of criminal law.

(2) SECURITY ZONE.—The term "security zone" means a security zone, established by the Commandant of the Coast Guard or the Commandant's designee pursuant to section 70051 or section 70116(b), for a vessel carrying especially hazardous cargo when such vessel—

(A) enters, or operates within, the internal waters of the United States and the territorial sea of the United States; or

(B) transfers such cargo or residue in any port or place, under the jurisdiction of the United States, within the territorial sea of the United States or the internal waters of the United States.

(Added Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §828(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3005; amended Pub. L. 111–330, §1(16), Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3570; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXVII, §7701(d), Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1835.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Par. (2). Pub. L. 119–60 subtituted "section 70051" for "section 1 of title II of the Act of June 15, 1917 (50 U.S.C. 191)" and "section 70116(b)" for "section 7(b) of the Ports and Waterways Safety Act (33 U.S.C. 1226(b))" in introductory provisions.

2010—Pub. L. 111–330 amended Pub. L. 111–281, §828(a), which enacted this section.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111–330, §1, Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3569, provided that the amendment made by section 1(16) is effective with the enactment of Pub. L. 111–281.

§70132. Credentialing standards, training, and certification for State and local support for the enforcement of security zones for the transportation of especially hazardous cargo

(a) STANDARD.—The Commandant of the Coast Guard shall establish, by regulation, national standards for training and credentialing of public safety personnel—

(1) to enforce a security zone; or

(2) to assist in the enforcement of a security zone.

(b) TRAINING.—

(1) The Commandant of the Coast Guard—

(A) shall develop and publish a training curriculum for—

(i) public safety personnel to enforce a security zone;

(ii) public safety personnel to enforce or assist in the enforcement of a security zone; and

(iii) personnel who are employed or retained by a facility or vessel owner to assist in the enforcement of a security zone; and

(B) may—

(i) test and deliver such training, the curriculum for which is developed pursuant to subparagraph (A);

(ii) enter into an agreement under which a public entity (including a Federal agency) or private entity may test and deliver such training, the curriculum for which has been developed pursuant to subparagraph (A); and

(iii) may accept a program, conducted by a public entity (including a Federal agency) or private entity, through which such training is delivered the curriculum for which is developed pursuant to subparagraph (A).

(2) Any Federal agency that provides such training, and any public or private entity that receives moneys, pursuant to section 70107(b)(8) of this title, to provide such training, shall provide such training—

(A) to public safety personnel who enforce or assist in the enforcement of a security zone; and

(B) on an availability basis to—

(i) public safety personnel who assist in the enforcement of a security zone; and

(ii) personnel who are employed or retained by a facility or vessel owner or operator to assist in the enforcement of a security zone.

(3) If a Federal agency provides the training, the head of such agency may, notwithstanding any other provision of law, accept payment from any source for such training, and any amount received as payment shall be credited to the appropriation, current at the time of collection, charged with the cost thereof and shall be merged with, and available for, the same purposes of such appropriation.

(4) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, any moneys, awarded by the Department of Homeland Security in the form of awards or grants, may be used by the recipient to pay for training of personnel to assist in the enforcement of security zones and limited access areas.

(c) CERTIFICATION; TRAINING PARTNERS.—In developing and delivering training under the training program, the Secretary, in coordination with the Maritime Administrator of the

Department of Transportation, and consistent with section 109 of the Maritime Transportation Security Act of 2002 (46 U.S.C. 70101 note), shall—

(1) work with government training facilities, academic institutions, private organizations, employee organizations, and other entities that provide specialized, state-of-the-art training for governmental and nongovernmental emergency responder providers or commercial seaport personnel and management;

(2) utilize, as appropriate, government training facilities, courses provided by community colleges, public safety academies, State and private universities, and other facilities; and

(3) certify organizations that offer the curriculum for training and certification.

(d) PUBLIC SAFETY PERSONNEL DEFINED.—For the purposes of this section, the term "public safety personnel" includes any Federal, State (or political subdivision thereof), territorial, or Tribal law enforcement officer, firefighter, or emergency response provider.

(Added Pub. L. 111–281, title VIII, §828(a), Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 3005; amended Pub. L. 111–330, §1(16), Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3570; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXIII [LXXXIII], §8314(2), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4699.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 109 of the Maritime Transportation Security Act of 2002, referred to in subsec. (c), is section 109 of title I of Pub. L. 107–295, which is set out as a note under section 70101 of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 116–283, §8314(2)(A), substituted "public safety personnel—" for "law enforcement personnel—" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 116–283, §8314(2)(B), substituted "public safety personnel" for "law enforcement personnel" wherever appearing.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 116–283, §8314(2)(C), added subsec. (d).

2010—Pub. L. 111–330 amended Pub. L. 111–281, §828(a), which enacted this section.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111–330, §1, Dec. 22, 2010, 124 Stat. 3569, provided that the amendment made by section 1(16) is effective with the enactment of Pub. L. 111–281.

CHAPTER 703—MARITIME SECURITY

Sec.

70301. Definitions.
70302. International measures for seaport and vessel security.
70303. Security standards at foreign ports.
70304. Travel advisories on security at foreign ports.
70305. Suspension of passenger services.
70306. Report on terrorist threats.

§70301. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) COMMON CARRIER.—The term "common carrier" has the meaning given that term in section 40102 of this title.

(2) PASSENGER VESSEL.—The term "passenger vessel" has the meaning given that term in

section 2101 of this title.

(3) SECRETARY.—The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §10(2), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1683.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
70301	46 App.:1807.	Pub. L. 99–399, title IX, §911, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 892.

In paragraph (2), the term "vessel of the United States" is omitted because the definition of that term in 46 U.S.C. 2101 is being moved to chapter 1 of the revised title and will apply generally throughout the title.

In paragraph (3), the definition of "Secretary" is new. The functions of the Secretary of Transportation under this chapter were carried out by the Coast Guard, and its functions have been transferred to the Department of Homeland Security (except when operating as a service in the Navy) by section 888 of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–296, 116 Stat. 2249).

§70302. International measures for seaport and vessel security

Congress encourages the President to continue to seek agreement on international seaport and vessel security through the International Maritime Organization. In developing an agreement, each member country of the International Maritime Organization should consult with appropriate private sector interests in that country. The agreement would establish seaport and vessel security measures and could include—

(1) seaport screening of cargo and baggage similar to that done at airports;

(2) security measures to restrict access to cargo, vessels, and dockside property to authorized personnel only;

(3) additional security on board vessels;

(4) licensing or certification of compliance with appropriate security standards; and

(5) other appropriate measures to prevent unlawful acts against passengers and crews on vessels.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §10(2), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1683.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
70302	46 App.:1801.	Pub. L. 99–399, title IX, §902, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 889.

The word "vessel" is substituted for "shipboard" for consistency in the revised title. The words "and commends him on his efforts to date" are omitted as unnecessary.

§70303. Security standards at foreign ports

(a) GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.—The Secretary shall develop and implement a plan to assess the effectiveness of the security measures maintained at foreign ports that the Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of State, determines pose a high risk of acts of terrorism against passenger vessels. In carrying out this subsection, the Secretary shall consult with the Secretary of State about the terrorist threat that exists in each country and poses a high risk of acts of terrorism against passenger vessels.

(b) NOTICE AND RECOMMENDATIONS TO OTHER COUNTRIES.—If the Secretary, after

implementing the plan under subsection (a), determines that a port does not maintain and administer effective security measures, the Secretary of State (after being informed by the Secretary) shall—

(1) notify the appropriate government authorities of the country in which the port is located of the determination; and

(2) recommend steps necessary to bring the security measures at that port up to the standard used by the Secretary in making the assessment under subsection (a).

(c) ANTITERRORISM ASSISTANCE.—The President is encouraged to provide antiterrorism assistance related to maritime security under chapter 8 of part II of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2349aa et seq.) to foreign countries, especially for a port that the Secretary determines under subsection (b) does not maintain and administer effective security measures.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §10(2), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1684.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
70303	46 App.:1803.	Pub. L. 99–399, title IX, §907(a), (b), (d), (e), Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 891.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, referred to in subsec. (c), is Pub. L. 87–195, Sept. 4, 1961, 75 Stat. 424. Chapter 8 of part II of the Act is classified generally to part VIII (§2349aa et seq.) of subchapter II of chapter 32 of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2151 of Title 22 and Tables.

§70304. Travel advisories on security at foreign ports

(a) GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.—On being notified by the Secretary that the Secretary has determined that a condition exists that threatens the safety or security of passengers, passenger vessels, or crew traveling to or from a foreign port that the Secretary has determined under section 70303(b) of this title does not maintain and administer effective security measures, the Secretary of State immediately shall issue a travel advisory for that port. The Secretary of State shall take the necessary steps to widely publicize the travel advisory.

(b) LIFTING ADVISORIES.—A travel advisory issued under subsection (a) may be lifted only if the Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of State, has determined that effective security measures are maintained and administered at the port.

(c) NOTICE TO CONGRESS.—The Secretary of State shall notify Congress immediately of any change in the status of a travel advisory issued under this section.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §10(2), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1684.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
70304	46 App.:1804.	Pub. L. 99–399, title IX, §908, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 891; Pub. L. 105–277, div. G, title XXII, §2224(b), Oct. 21, 1998, 112 Stat. 2681–819.

In subsection (b), the words "with respect to which the Secretary of Transportation had made the determination described in section 1803(d) of this Appendix" are omitted as unnecessary.

§70305. Suspension of passenger services

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—Whenever the President determines that a foreign nation permits the use of territory under its jurisdiction as a base of operations or training for, or as a sanctuary for, or in any way arms, aids, or abets, a terrorist or terrorist group that knowingly uses the illegal seizure of passenger vessels or the threat thereof as an instrument of policy, the President may suspend the right of any passenger vessel common carrier to operate to or from, and the right of any passenger vessel of the United States to use, a port in that foreign nation for passenger service. The suspension may be without notice or hearing and for as long as the President determines is necessary to ensure the security of passenger vessels against unlawful seizure.

(b) PROHIBITION.—A passenger vessel common carrier, or a passenger vessel of the United States, may not operate in violation of a suspension under this section.

(c) PENALTIES.—

(1) DENIAL OF ENTRY.—If a person operates a vessel in violation of this section, the Secretary may deny the vessels of that person entry to ports of the United States.

(2) CIVIL PENALTY.—A person violating this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $50,000. Each day a vessel uses a prohibited port is a separate violation.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §10(2), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1684.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
70305	46 App.:1805.	Pub. L. 99–399, title IX, §909, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 892.

§70306. Report on terrorist threats

(a) CONTENT.—The Secretary shall submit an annual report to Congress on the threat from acts of terrorism to United States ports and vessels operating from those ports. The Secretary shall include a description of activities undertaken under title I of the Maritime Transportation Security Act of 2002 (Public Law 107–295, 116 Stat. 2066) and an analysis of the effect of those activities on port security against acts of terrorism.

(b) SUBMISSION.—The report shall be submitted to the Committee on International Relations and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate. Any classified information in the report shall be submitted separately as an addendum.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §10(2), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1685; Pub. L. 109–241, title IX, §901(q), July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 566; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3525(a)(5), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 601.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
70306(a)	46 App.:1802.	Pub. L. 99–399, title IX, §§905, 913, Aug. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 890, 892; Pub. L. 107–295, title I, §110(a), title

		IV, §408(c)(3), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2091, 2117.
70306(b)	46 App.:1809.	

In subsection (a), the words "February 28 of each year" are substituted for "February 28, 1987, and annually thereafter" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1802 to eliminate obsolete language. The words "Beginning with the first report submitted under this section after the date of enactment of the Maritime Transportation Security Act of 2002" are omitted as obsolete.

In subsection (b), the words "To the extent practicable, the reports required under sections 903, 905, and 907 [46 App. U.S.C. 1801 note, 1802, 1803] shall be consolidated into a single document before being submitted to the Congress" in 46 App. U.S.C. 1809(a) are omitted as unnecessary and obsolete because sections 903 and 907 are being omitted from the revised title and repealed as obsolete. The words "Committee on International Relations" are substituted for "Committee on Foreign Affairs" to reflect changes in committee structure made by the 104th Congress.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Maritime Transportation Security Act of 2002, referred to in subsec. (a), is Pub. L. 107–295, Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2064. Title I of the Act enacted subtitle VI (now subtitle VII) of this title, amended section 1802 of the former Appendix to this title, sections 661 (now 4903) and 724 (now 3735) of Title 14, Coast Guard, section 1431a of Title 19, Customs Duties, sections 1226, 1501 to 1504, 1507, and 1520 of Title 33, Navigation and Navigable Waters, and former section 192 and section 195 of Title 50, War and National Defense, enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 70101, 70103, 70104, 70111, 70114, and former section 70116 of this title and former section 1226 and section 1504 of Title 33, amended provisions set out as a note under section 2071 of Title 19, and repealed provisions set out as a note under section 2071 of Title 19. For complete classification of title I to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–241, §901(q). See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(a)(5), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–241, §901(q), into this section by substituting "The Secretary shall submit an annual report" for "Not later than February 28 of each year, the Secretary shall submit a report". See 2006 Amendment note below and section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

2006—Pub. L. 109–241, §901(q), which directed the amendment of section 1802 of the former Appendix to this title from which subsec. (a) of this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsec. (a) and Historical and Revision notes above.

CHAPTER 705—MARITIME DRUG LAW ENFORCEMENT

Sec.

70501. Findings and declarations.
70502. Definitions.
70503. Prohibited acts.
70504. Jurisdiction and venue.
70505. Failure to comply with international law as a defense.
70506. Penalties.
70507. Forfeitures.
70508. Operation of submersible vessel or semi-submersible vessel without nationality.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2016—Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §§306(a)(12), 314(e)(2), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 55, 59, inserted period at end of item 70508, added item 70503, and struck out former item 70503 "Manufacture, distribution, or possession of controlled substances on vessels".

2008—Pub. L. 110–407, title II, §202(b)(1), Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4300, added item 70508.

§70501. Findings and declarations

Congress finds and declares that (1) trafficking in controlled substances aboard vessels is a serious international problem, is universally condemned, and presents a specific threat to the security and societal well-being of the United States and (2) operating or embarking in a submersible vessel or semi-submersible vessel without nationality and on an international voyage is a serious international problem, facilitates transnational crime, including drug trafficking, and terrorism, and presents a specific threat to the safety of maritime navigation and the security of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §10(2), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1685; Pub. L. 110–407, title II, §201, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4299.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
70501	46 App.:1902.	Pub. L. 96–350, §2, Sept. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1160; Pub. L. 99–307, §7, May 19, 1986, 100 Stat. 447; Pub. L. 99–570, title III, §3202, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207–95; Pub. L. 99–640, §17, Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3552.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–407 inserted cl. (1) designation after "declares that", substituted "States and" for "States.", and added cl. (2).

§70502. Definitions

(a) APPLICATION OF OTHER DEFINITIONS.—The definitions in section 102 of the Comprehensive Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Act of 1970 (21 U.S.C. 802) apply to this chapter.

(b) VESSEL OF THE UNITED STATES.—In this chapter, the term "vessel of the United States" means—

(1) a vessel documented under chapter 121 of this title or numbered as provided in chapter 123 of this title;

(2) a vessel owned in any part by an individual who is a citizen of the United States, the United States Government, the government of a State or political subdivision of a State, or a corporation incorporated under the laws of the United States or of a State, unless—

(A) the vessel has been granted the nationality of a foreign nation under article 5 of the 1958 Convention on the High Seas; and

(B) a claim of nationality or registry for the vessel is made by the master or individual in charge at the time of the enforcement action by an officer or employee of the United States who is authorized to enforce applicable provisions of United States law; and

(3) a vessel that was once documented under the laws of the United States and, in violation of the laws of the United States, was sold to a person not a citizen of the United States, placed under foreign registry, or operated under the authority of a foreign nation, whether or not the vessel has

been granted the nationality of a foreign nation.

(c) VESSEL SUBJECT TO THE JURISDICTION OF THE UNITED STATES.—
(1) IN GENERAL.—In this chapter, the term "vessel subject to the jurisdiction of the United States" includes—
(A) a vessel without nationality;
(B) a vessel assimilated to a vessel without nationality under paragraph (2) of article 6 of the 1958 Convention on the High Seas;
(C) a vessel registered in a foreign nation if that nation has consented or waived objection to the enforcement of United States law by the United States;
(D) a vessel in the customs waters of the United States;
(E) a vessel in the territorial waters of a foreign nation if the nation consents to the enforcement of United States law by the United States; and
(F) a vessel in the contiguous zone of the United States, as defined in Presidential Proclamation 7219 of September 2, 1999 (43 U.S.C. 1331 note), that—
(i) is entering the United States;
(ii) has departed the United States; or
(iii) is a hovering vessel as defined in section 401 of the Tariff Act of 1930 (19 U.S.C. 1401).

(2) CONSENT OR WAIVER OF OBJECTION.—Consent or waiver of objection by a foreign nation to the enforcement of United States law by the United States under paragraph (1)(C) or (E)—
(A) may be obtained by radio, telephone, or similar oral or electronic means; and
(B) is proved conclusively by certification of the Secretary of State or the Secretary's designee.

(d) VESSEL WITHOUT NATIONALITY.—
(1) IN GENERAL.—In this chapter, the term "vessel without nationality" includes—
(A) a vessel aboard which the master or individual in charge makes a claim of registry that is denied by the nation whose registry is claimed;
(B) a vessel aboard which the master or individual in charge fails, on request of an officer of the United States authorized to enforce applicable provisions of United States law, to make a claim of nationality or registry for that vessel;
(C) a vessel aboard which the master or individual in charge makes a claim of registry and for which the claimed nation of registry does not affirmatively and unequivocally assert that the vessel is of its nationality; and
(D) a vessel aboard which no individual, on request of an officer of the United States authorized to enforce applicable provisions of United States law, claims to be the master or is identified as the individual in charge, and that has no other claim of nationality or registry under paragraph (1) or (2) of subsection (e).

(2) RESPONSE TO CLAIM OF REGISTRY.—The response of a foreign nation to a claim of registry under paragraph (1)(A) or (C) may be made by radio, telephone, or similar oral or electronic means, and is proved conclusively by certification of the Secretary of State or the Secretary's designee.

(e) CLAIM OF NATIONALITY OR REGISTRY.—A claim of nationality or registry under this section includes only—
(1) possession on board the vessel and production of documents evidencing the vessel's nationality as provided in article 5 of the 1958 Convention on the High Seas;
(2) flying its nation's ensign or flag; or
(3) a verbal claim of nationality or registry by the master or individual in charge of the vessel.

(f) SEMI-SUBMERSIBLE VESSEL; SUBMERSIBLE VESSEL.—In this chapter:

(1) SEMI-SUBMERSIBLE VESSEL.—The term "semi-submersible vessel" means any watercraft constructed or adapted to be capable of operating with most of its hull and bulk under the surface of the water, including both manned and unmanned watercraft.

(2) SUBMERSIBLE VESSEL.—The term "submersible vessel" means a vessel that is capable of operating completely below the surface of the water, including both manned and unmanned watercraft.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §10(2), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1685; Pub. L. 109–241, title III, §303, July 11, 2006, 120 Stat. 527; Pub. L. 110–181, div. C, title XXXV, §3525(a)(6), (b), Jan. 28, 2008, 122 Stat. 601; Pub. L. 110–407, title II, §203, Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4300; Pub. L. 117–263, div. K, title CXV, §11519, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 4142.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
70502(a)	46 App.:1903(i).	Pub. L. 96–350, §3(b), (c), (i), Sept. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1160; Pub. L. 99–570, title III, §3202, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207–95, 3207–97; Pub. L. 99–640, §17, Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3552, 3554; Pub. L. 100–690, title VII, §7402(b), Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4483; Pub. L. 104–324, §1138(a)(1)–(3), (b), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3988, 3989; Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §418(a), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2123.
70502(b)	46 App.:1903(b).	
70502(c)	46 App.:1903(c)(1).	
70502(d)	46 App.:1903(c)(2).	
70502(e)	46 App.:1903(c)(3).	

In subsection (b)(2), before subparagraph (A), the words "individual who is a citizen of the United States" are substituted for "a citizen or national of the United States" because of the definition of "citizen of the United States" in chapter 1 of the revised title. The words "or a territory, commonwealth, or possession of the United States" and "the District of Columbia, or any territory, commonwealth, or possession of the United States" are omitted as unnecessary because of the definition of "State" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

In subsection (b)(3), the words "placed under foreign registry, or operated under the authority of a foreign nation" are substituted for "placed under foreign registry or foreign flag" because of the definition of "foreign vessel" in chapter 1 of the revised title.

In subsection (d)(1)(B), the word "authorized" is substituted for "empowered" for consistency with subsection (b)(2)(B).

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (d)(1)(D). Pub. L. 117–263 added subpar. (D).

2008—Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(b), repealed Pub. L. 109–241, §303. See 2006 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(a)(6), incorporated the substance of the amendment by Pub. L. 109–241, §303, into this section by amending heading and text of par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "A claim of registry under paragraph (1)(A) or (C) may be verified or denied by radio, telephone, or similar oral or electronic means. The denial of such a claim is proved conclusively by certification of the Secretary of State or the Secretary's designee." See 2006 Amendment note below and

section 18(a) of Pub. L. 109–304, set out as a Legislative Purpose and Construction note preceding section 101 of this title.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 110–407 added subsec. (f).

2006—Pub. L. 109–241, §303, which directed the amendment of section 1903(c)(2) of the former Appendix to this title from which subsec. (d) of this section was derived, was repealed by Pub. L. 110–181, §3525(b). See 2008 Amendment note for subsec. (d)(2) and Historical and Revision notes above.

§70503. Prohibited acts

(a) PROHIBITIONS.—An individual may not knowingly or intentionally—

(1) manufacture or distribute, possess with intent to manufacture or distribute, or place or cause to be placed with intent to manufacture or distribute a controlled substance on board a covered vessel;

(2) destroy (including jettisoning any item or scuttling, burning, or hastily cleaning a vessel), or attempt or conspire to destroy, property that is subject to forfeiture under section 511(a) of the Comprehensive Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Act of 1970 (21 U.S.C. 881(a)) on board a covered vessel; or

(3) conceal, or attempt or conspire to conceal, more than $100,000 in currency or other monetary instruments on the person of such individual while on board a covered vessel or in any conveyance, article of luggage, merchandise, or other container, or compartment of or aboard the covered vessel if that vessel is outfitted for smuggling.

(b) EXTENSION BEYOND TERRITORIAL JURISDICTION.—Subsection (a) applies even though the act is committed outside the territorial jurisdiction of the United States.

(c) NONAPPLICATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Subject to paragraph (2), subsection (a) does not apply to—

(A) a common or contract carrier or an employee of the carrier who possesses or distributes a controlled substance in the lawful and usual course of the carrier's business; or

(B) a public vessel of the United States or an individual on board the vessel who possesses or distributes a controlled substance in the lawful course of the individual's duties.

(2) ENTERED IN MANIFEST.—Paragraph (1) applies only if the controlled substance is part of the cargo entered in the vessel's manifest and is intended to be imported lawfully into the country of destination for scientific, medical, or other lawful purposes.

(d) BURDEN OF PROOF.—The United States Government is not required to negative a defense provided by subsection (c) in a complaint, information, indictment, or other pleading or in a trial or other proceeding. The burden of going forward with the evidence supporting the defense is on the person claiming its benefit.

(e) COVERED VESSEL DEFINED.—In this section the term "covered vessel" means—

(1) a vessel of the United States or a vessel subject to the jurisdiction of the United States; or

(2) any other vessel if the individual is a citizen of the United States or a resident alien of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §10(2), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1687; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §314(a), (b), (e)(1), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 59; Pub. L. 119–60, div. G, title LXXIII, §7324, Dec. 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 1770.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
70503(a)	46 App.:1903(a).	Pub. L. 96–350, §3(a), (e), (h), Sept. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1160; Pub. L.

		99–570, title III, §3202, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207–95, 3207–96, 3207–97; Pub. L. 99–640, §17, Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3552, 3554; Pub. L. 100–690, title VII, §7402(a), Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4483.
70503(b)	46 App.:1903(h).	
70503(c)	46 App.:1903(e) (1st sentence).	
70503(d)	46 App.:1903(e) (last sentence).	

In subsection (a), before paragraph (1), the words "may not" are substituted for "It is unlawful for" for consistency in the revised title and to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsection (b), the words "applies to" are substituted for "is intended to reach" for clarity and to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2025—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 119–60, §7324(1), substituted "An" for "While on board a covered vessel, an" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 119–60, §7324(2), amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (1) read as follows: "manufacture or distribute, or possess with intent to manufacture or distribute, a controlled substance;".

Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 119–60, §7324(3), inserted "on board a covered vessel" after "(21 U.S.C. 881(a))".

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 119–60, §7324(4), inserted "while on board a covered vessel" after "such individual".

2016—Pub. L. 114–120, §314(e)(1), substituted "Prohibited acts" for "Manufacture, distribution, or possession of controlled substances on vessels" in section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 114–120, §314(a), amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "An individual may not knowingly or intentionally manufacture or distribute, or possess with intent to manufacture or distribute, a controlled substance on board—

"(1) a vessel of the United States or a vessel subject to the jurisdiction of the United States; or

"(2) any vessel if the individual is a citizen of the United States or a resident alien of the United States."

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 114–120, §314(b), added subsec. (e).

§70504. Jurisdiction and venue

(a) JURISDICTION.—Jurisdiction of the United States with respect to a vessel subject to this chapter is not an element of an offense. Jurisdictional issues arising under this chapter are preliminary questions of law to be determined solely by the trial judge.

(b) VENUE.—A person violating section 70503 or 70508—

(1) shall be tried in the district in which such offense was committed; or

(2) if the offense was begun or committed upon the high seas, or elsewhere outside the jurisdiction of any particular State or district, may be tried in any district.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §10(2), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1688; Pub. L. 110–407, title II, §202(b)(2), Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4300; Pub. L. 115–91, div. A, title X, §1012(a), Dec. 12, 2017, 131 Stat. 1546.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
70504	46 App.:1903(f).	Pub. L. 96–350, §3(f), Sept. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1160; Pub. L. 99–570, title

		III, §3202, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207–97; Pub. L. 99–640, §17, Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3554; Pub. L. 104–324, §1138(a)(5), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3989.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2017—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 115–91 amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) read as follows:

"(b) VENUE.—A person violating section 70503 or 70508 of this title shall be tried in the district court of the United States for—

"(1) the district at which the person enters the United States; or

"(2) the District of Columbia."

2008—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 110–407 inserted "or 70508" after "70503" in introductory provisions.

§70505. Failure to comply with international law as a defense

A person charged with violating section 70503 of this title, or against whom a civil enforcement proceeding is brought under section 70508, does not have standing to raise a claim of failure to comply with international law as a basis for a defense. A claim of failure to comply with international law in the enforcement of this chapter may be made only by a foreign nation. A failure to comply with international law does not divest a court of jurisdiction and is not a defense to a proceeding under this chapter.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §10(2), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1688; Pub. L. 110–407, title II, §202(b)(3), Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4300.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
70505	46 App.:1903(d).	Pub. L. 96–350, §3(d), Sept. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1160; Pub. L. 99–570, title III, §3202, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207–96; Pub. L. 99–640, §17, Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3553; Pub. L. 104–324, §1138(a)(4), Oct. 19, 1996, 110 Stat. 3989.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–407 substituted "this title, or against whom a civil enforcement proceeding is brought under section 70508," for "this title".

§70506. Penalties

(a) VIOLATIONS.—A person violating paragraph (1) of section 70503(a) of this title shall be punished as provided in section 1010 of the Comprehensive Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Act of 1970 (21 U.S.C. 960). However, if the offense is a second or subsequent offense as provided in

section 1012(b) of that Act (21 U.S.C. 962(b)), the person shall be punished as provided in section 1012 of that Act (21 U.S.C. 962).

(b) ATTEMPTS AND CONSPIRACIES.—A person attempting or conspiring to violate section 70503 of this title is subject to the same penalties as provided for violating section 70503.

(c) SIMPLE POSSESSION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Any individual on a vessel subject to the jurisdiction of the United States who is found by the Secretary, after notice and an opportunity for a hearing, to have knowingly or intentionally possessed a controlled substance within the meaning of the Controlled Substances Act (21 U.S.C. 812) shall be liable to the United States for a civil penalty of not to exceed $5,000 for each violation. The Secretary shall notify the individual in writing of the amount of the civil penalty.

(2) DETERMINATION OF AMOUNT.—In determining the amount of the penalty, the Secretary shall consider the nature, circumstances, extent, and gravity of the prohibited acts committed and, with respect to the violator, the degree of culpability, any history of prior offenses, ability to pay, and other matters that justice requires.

(3) TREATMENT OF CIVIL PENALTY ASSESSMENT.—Assessment of a civil penalty under this subsection shall not be considered a conviction for purposes of State or Federal law but may be considered proof of possession if such a determination is relevant.

(d) PENALTY.—A person violating paragraph (2) or (3) of section 70503(a) shall be fined in accordance with section 3571 of title 18, imprisoned not more than 15 years, or both.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §10(2), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1688; Pub. L. 111–281, title III, §302, Oct. 15, 2010, 124 Stat. 2923; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §314(c), Feb. 8, 2016, 130 Stat. 59.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
70506(a)	46 App.:1903(g).	Pub. L. 96–350, §3(g), (j), Sept. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1160; Pub. L. 99–570, title III, §3202, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207–97; Pub. L. 99–640, §17, Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3554; Pub. L. 101–647, title XII, §1203, Nov. 29, 1990, 104 Stat. 4830.
70506(b)	46 App.:1903(j).	

In subsection (b), the words "the commission of which was the object of the attempt or conspiracy" are omitted as unnecessary.

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Controlled Substances Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), is title II of Pub. L. 91–513, Oct. 27, 1970, 84 Stat. 1242, which is classified principally to subchapter I (§801 et seq.) of chapter 13 of Title 21, Food and Drugs. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 801 of Title 21 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 114–120, §314(c)(1), substituted "A person violating paragraph (1) of section 70503(a)" for "A person violating section 70503".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 114–120, §314(c)(2), added subsec. (d).

2010—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–281 added subsec. (c).

§70507. Forfeitures

(a) IN GENERAL.—Property described in section 511(a) of the Comprehensive Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Act of 1970 (21 U.S.C. 881(a)) that is used or intended for use to commit, or to facilitate the commission of, an offense under section 70503 or 70508 of this title may be seized and forfeited in the same manner that similar property may be seized and forfeited under section 511 of that Act (21 U.S.C. 881).

(b) PRIMA FACIE EVIDENCE OF VIOLATION.—Practices commonly recognized as smuggling tactics may provide prima facie evidence of intent to use a vessel to commit, or to facilitate the commission of, an offense under section 70503 of this title, and may support seizure and forfeiture of the vessel, even in the absence of controlled substances aboard the vessel. The following indicia, among others, may be considered, in the totality of the circumstances, to be prima facie evidence that a vessel is intended to be used to commit, or to facilitate the commission of, such an offense:

(1) The construction or adaptation of the vessel in a manner that facilitates smuggling, including—

(A) the configuration of the vessel to ride low in the water or present a low hull profile to avoid being detected visually or by radar;

(B) the presence of any compartment or equipment that is built or fitted out for smuggling, not including items such as a safe or lock-box reasonably used for the storage of personal valuables;

(C) the presence of an auxiliary tank not installed in accordance with applicable law or installed in such a manner as to enhance the vessel's smuggling capability;

(D) the presence of engines that are excessively over-powered in relation to the design and size of the vessel;

(E) the presence of materials used to reduce or alter the heat or radar signature of the vessel and avoid detection;

(F) the presence of a camouflaging paint scheme, or of materials used to camouflage the vessel, to avoid detection; or

(G) the display of false vessel registration numbers, false indicia of vessel nationality, false vessel name, or false vessel homeport.

(2) The presence or absence of equipment, personnel, or cargo inconsistent with the type or declared purpose of the vessel.

(3) The presence of excessive fuel, lube oil, food, water, or spare parts, inconsistent with legitimate vessel operation, inconsistent with the construction or equipment of the vessel, or inconsistent with the character of the vessel's stated purpose.

(4) The operation of the vessel without lights during times lights are required to be displayed under applicable law or regulation and in a manner of navigation consistent with smuggling tactics used to avoid detection by law enforcement authorities.

(5) The failure of the vessel to stop or respond or heave to when hailed by government authority, especially where the vessel conducts evasive maneuvering when hailed.

(6) The declaration to government authority of apparently false information about the vessel, crew, or voyage or the failure to identify the vessel by name or country of registration when requested to do so by government authority.

(7) The presence of controlled substance residue on the vessel, on an item aboard the vessel, or on an individual aboard the vessel, of a quantity or other nature that reasonably indicates manufacturing or distribution activity.

(8) The use of petroleum products or other substances on the vessel to foil the detection of controlled substance residue.

(9) The presence of a controlled substance in the water in the vicinity of the vessel, where given the currents, weather conditions, and course and speed of the vessel, the quantity or other nature is such that it reasonably indicates manufacturing or distribution activity.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §10(2), Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1688; Pub. L. 114–120, title III, §314(d), Feb. 8,

2016, 130 Stat. 59.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
70507	46 App.:1904.	Pub. L. 96–350, §4, Sept. 15, 1980, 94 Stat. 1160; Pub. L. 99–570, title III, §3202, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207–97; Pub. L. 99–640, §17, Nov. 10, 1986, 100 Stat. 3554; Pub. L. 107–295, title IV, §418(b), Nov. 25, 2002, 116 Stat. 2123.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2016—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 114–120 substituted "section 70503 or 70508" for "section 70503".

§70508. Operation of submersible vessel or semi-submersible vessel without nationality

(a) IN GENERAL.—An individual may not operate by any means or embark in any submersible vessel or semi-submersible vessel that is without nationality and that is navigating or has navigated into, through, or from waters beyond the outer limit of the territorial sea of a single country or a lateral limit of that country's territorial sea with an adjacent country, with the intent to evade detection.

(b) EVIDENCE OF INTENT TO EVADE DETECTION.—In any civil enforcement proceeding for a violation of subsection (a), the presence of any of the indicia described in paragraph (1)(A), (E), (F), or (G), or in paragraph (4), (5), or (6), of section 70507(b) may be considered, in the totality of the circumstances, to be prima facie evidence of intent to evade detection.

(c) DEFENSES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—It is a defense in any civil enforcement proceeding for a violation of subsection (a) that the submersible vessel or semi-submersible vessel involved was, at the time of the violation—

(A) a vessel of the United States or lawfully registered in a foreign nation as claimed by the master or individual in charge of the vessel when requested to make a claim by an officer of the United States authorized to enforce applicable provisions of United States law;

(B) classed by and designed in accordance with the rules of a classification society;

(C) lawfully operated in government-regulated or licensed activity, including commerce, research, or exploration; or

(D) equipped with and using an operable automatic identification system, vessel monitoring system, or long range identification and tracking system.

(2) PRODUCTION OF DOCUMENTS.—The defenses provided by this subsection are proved conclusively by the production of—

(A) government documents evidencing the vessel's nationality at the time of the offense, as provided in article 5 of the 1958 Convention on the High Seas;

(B) a certificate of classification issued by the vessel's classification society upon completion of relevant classification surveys and valid at the time of the offense; or

(C) government documents evidencing licensure, regulation, or registration for research or exploration.

(d) CIVIL PENALTY.—A person violating this section shall be liable to the United States for a civil penalty of not more than $1,000,000.

(Added Pub. L. 110–407, title II, §202(a), Oct. 13, 2008, 122 Stat. 4299.)

Subtitle VIII—Miscellaneous

Chapter		Sec.
801.	**Wrecks and Salvage**	**80101**
803.	**Ice and Derelicts**	**80301**
805.	**Safe Containers for International Cargo**	**80501**

CHAPTER 801—WRECKS AND SALVAGE

Sec.
80101. Vessel stranded on foreign coast.
[80102. Repealed.]
80103. Property on Florida coast to be taken to port of entry.
80104. Salvaging operations by foreign vessels.
80105. Canadian vessels aiding vessels in United States waters.
80106. International agreement on derelicts.
80107. Salvors of life to share in remuneration.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2008—Pub. L. 110–375, §1(2), Oct. 8, 2008, 122 Stat. 4055, struck out item 80102 "License to salvage on Florida coast".

§80101. Vessel stranded on foreign coast

(a) DUTIES OF CONSULAR OFFICER.—When a vessel of the United States is stranded on a coast of a foreign country, the consular officer in that country shall take proper measures, to the extent the laws of that country allow, to—

(1) save and secure the vessel and property on the vessel; and

(2) prepare an inventory of the property that is saved.

(b) DELIVERY TO OWNER.—After deducting the expenses, the consular officer shall deliver the property, with an inventory, to the owner of the property.

(c) LIMITATION ON TAKING POSSESSION.—A consular officer may not take possession of property under this section when the owner, master, or consignee is present or able to take possession of the property.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1690.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80101	46 App.:721.	R.S. §4238.

In this section, the words "consular officer" are substituted for "Consuls and vice consuls" and "consul or vice consul" for consistency in the revised title.

Subsection (a)(1) is substituted for "as well for the purpose of saving the vessels, their cargoes and appurtenances, as for storing and securing the effects and merchandise saved" to eliminate unnecessary words.

[§80102. Repealed. Pub. L. 110–375, §1(1), Oct. 8, 2008, 122 Stat. 4055]

Section, Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1690, related to license to salvage on Florida coast.

§80103. Property on Florida coast to be taken to port of entry

(a) IN GENERAL.—Property taken from a wreck, the sea, or a key or shoal, on the coast of Florida and within the jurisdiction of the United States, shall be brought to a port of entry of the United States.

(b) SEIZURE AND FORFEITURE.—A vessel transporting property described in subsection (a) to a foreign port may be seized by, and forfeited to, the United States Government. A forfeiture under this subsection accrues half to the informer and half to the Government.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1690.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80103	46 App.:722. 46 App.:723.	R.S. §4239. R.S. §4240.

In subsection (a), the words "of any description whatsoever" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (b), the words "transporting property described in subsection (a) of this section" are substituted for "which shall be engaged or employed in carrying or transporting any property whatsoever, taken from any wreck, from the sea, or from any of the keys or shoals, within the jurisdiction of the United States, on the coast of Florida" to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "may be seized by, and forfeited to, the United States Government" are substituted for "shall . . . be forfeited" for consistency in the revised title. The words "together with her tackle, apparel, and furniture" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "accrues half to the informer and half to the Government" are substituted for "one moiety to the informer and the other to the United States" to use more commonly understood language.

§80104. Salvaging operations by foreign vessels

(a) PROHIBITION.—Except as provided in this section or section 80105 of this title, a foreign vessel may not, under penalty of forfeiture, engage in salvaging operations on the Atlantic or Pacific coast of the United States, in any portion of the Great Lakes or their connecting or tributary waters, including any portion of the Saint Lawrence River through which the international boundary line extends, or in territorial waters of the United States on the Gulf of Mexico.

(b) WHEN SUITABLE VESSEL NOT AVAILABLE.—The Secretary of Homeland Security may authorize a foreign vessel to engage in salvaging operations in a particular locality if, on investigation, the Secretary is satisfied that there is not available in that locality a suitable vessel that is—

(1) owned only by citizens of the United States (including a Bowaters corporation under section 12118 of this title); and

(2) documented under chapter 121 of this title or numbered under chapter 123 of this title.

(c) OPERATIONS AUTHORIZED BY TREATY.—This section does not prohibit or restrict assistance to vessels or salvaging operations authorized by treaty, including—

(1) article II of the Treaty between the United States and Great Britain concerning reciprocal rights for United States and Canada in the conveyance of prisoners and wrecking and salvage, signed at Washington, May 18, 1908 (35 Stat. 2036); or

(2) the Treaty between the United States of America and Mexico to facilitate assistance to and salvage of vessels in territorial waters, signed at Mexico City, June 13, 1935 (49 Stat. 3359).

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1691.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80104(a)	46 App.:316(d) (words before proviso).	R.S. §4370(d), (e); June 11, 1940, ch. 324, 54 Stat. 305.
80104(b)	46 App.:316(d) (proviso).	
80104(c)	46 App.:316(e).	

In subsection (a), the words "authorized by a treaty" are omitted because they are restated in subsection (c).

In subsection (b), before paragraph (1), the Secretary of Homeland Security is substituted for the Commissioner of Customs because the functions of the Customs Service and of the Secretary of the Treasury relating thereto were transferred to the Secretary of Homeland Security by section 403(1) of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–296, 116 Stat. 2178). The functions of the Commissioner of Customs previously were vested in the Secretary of the Treasury under section 321(c) of title 31. For prior related transfers of functions, see the transfer of functions note under 46 App. U.S.C. 316. The words "and no penalty shall be incurred for such authorized use" are omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (b)(1), the words "(including a Bowaters corporation under section 12118 of this title)" are added because the source for section 12118 (46 App. U.S.C. 883–1) provides that a corporation meeting the requirements of that section is also a citizen of the United States under 46 App. U.S.C. 316, restated in part in this section.

Subsection (b)(2) is substituted for "documented under the laws of the United States or numbered pursuant to the Act of June 7, 1918, as amended (46 U.S.C. 288)" to refer to the current provisions on documentation and numbering.

In subsection (c), the words "authorized by treaty, including" are added because the words "authorized by a treaty" are omitted from subsection (a).

§80105. Canadian vessels aiding vessels in United States waters

(a) IN GENERAL.—Canadian vessels and wrecking equipment may give aid to Canadian or other vessels and property wrecked, disabled, or in distress in the waters of the United States contiguous to Canada, including—

(1) the canal and improvement of the waters between Lake Erie and Lake Huron; and

(2) the Saint Marys River and canal.

(b) RECIPROCITY.—This section does not apply after the President proclaims that privileges reciprocal to those under subsection (a) have been withdrawn or rendered inoperative by the Government of Canada.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1691.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80105	46 App.:725.	June 19, 1878, ch. 324, 20 Stat. 175; May 24, 1890, ch. 292, 26 Stat. 120; Mar. 3, 1893, ch. 211, §1 (last par. under heading "Department of State"), 27 Stat. 683.

In subsection (a), before paragraph (1), the word "equipment" is substituted for "appurtenance" to use more commonly understood language. The words "and assistance" are omitted as unnecessary.

Subsection (b) is substituted for "this section shall cease to be in force and effect from and after the date of the proclamation of the President of the United States to the effect that said reciprocol privilege has been withdrawn, revoked, or rendered inoperative by the said Government of the Dominion of Canada" to eliminate unnecessary words.

§80106. International agreement on derelicts

The President may make an international agreement with other governments interested in the navigation of the North Atlantic Ocean, providing for the reporting, marking, and removal of dangerous wrecks, derelicts, and other menaces to navigation outside the coast waters of the countries bordering the North Atlantic Ocean.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1691.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80106	46 App.:726.	Oct. 31, 1893, No. 13, 28 Stat. 13.

§80107. Salvors of life to share in remuneration

(a) ENTITLEMENT OF SALVORS.—A salvor of human life, who gave aid following an accident giving rise to salvage, is entitled to a fair share of the payment awarded to the salvor for salvaging the vessel or other property or preventing or minimizing damage to the environment.

(b) COMMON OWNERSHIP OF VESSELS.—The right to remuneration for aid or salvage services is not affected by common ownership of the vessels giving and receiving the aid or salvage services.

(c) TIME LIMIT ON BRINGING ACTIONS.—A civil action to recover remuneration for giving aid or salvage services must be brought within 2 years after the date the aid or salvage services were given, unless the court in which the action is brought is satisfied that during that 2-year period there had not been a reasonable opportunity to seize the aided or salvaged vessel within the jurisdiction of the court or within the territorial waters of the country of the plaintiff's residence or principal place of business.

(d) NONAPPLICATION.—This section does not apply to a vessel of war or a vessel owned by the United States Government appropriated only to a public service.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1691.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80107(a)	46 App.:729.	Aug. 1, 1912, ch. 268, §§1, 3–5, 37 Stat. 242; Pub. L. 102–241, §40, Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2225.
80107(b)	46 App.:727.	
80107(c)	46 App.:730.	
80107(d)	46 App.:731.	

In subsection (c), the words "civil action" are substituted for "suit", the words "must be brought within 2 years after" are substituted for "shall not be maintainable if brought later than two years from", and the word "seize" is substituted for "arresting", for consistency in the revised title. The words "of the plaintiff's residence or principal place of business" are substituted for "in which the libelant resides or has his principal place of business" for consistency and to eliminate unnecessary words.

In subsectoin [sic] (d), the reference to section 2304 of title 46 is omitted because of the amendment to section 2304 in section 14(8) of the bill.

CHAPTER 803—ICE AND DERELICTS

Sec.
80301. International agreements.
80302. Patrol services.
80303. Speed of vessel in ice region.
80304. Limitation on ice patrol data.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2014—Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §314(b), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3049, added item 80304.

§80301. International agreements

(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—The President may make agreements with interested maritime countries to—

(1) maintain in the North Atlantic Ocean a service of ice patrol, of study and observation of ice and current conditions, and of assistance to vessels and their crews requiring assistance within the limits of the patrol;

(2) maintain a service of study and observation of ice and current conditions in the waters affecting the set and drift of ice in the North Atlantic Ocean; and

(3) take all practicable steps to ensure the destruction or removal of derelicts in the northern part of the Atlantic Ocean, east of the line drawn from Cape Sable to a point in latitude 34 degrees north, longitude 70 degrees west, if the destruction or removal is necessary.

(b) PAYMENT BETWEEN COUNTRIES.—The President may include in an agreement under subsection (a) a provision for—

(1) payment to the United States Government by other countries for their proportionate share of the expense of maintaining the services; or

(2) contribution by the Government for its proportionate share if the agreement provides for another country to maintain the services.

(c) PAYMENTS.—Payments received pursuant to subsection (b)(1) shall be credited to the appropriation for operations and support of the Coast Guard.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1692; Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §314(a)(1), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3049; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8513(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4761.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80301	46 App.:738.	June 25, 1936, ch. 807, §1, 49 Stat. 1922.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "operations and support" for "operating expenses".
2014—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 113–281 added subsec. (c).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2014 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §314(c), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3049, provided that: "This section [enacting section 80304 of this title and amending this section and section 80302 of this title] shall take effect on January 1, 2017."

§80302. Patrol services

(a) GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.—Unless the agreements made under section 80301 of this title provide otherwise, an ice patrol shall be maintained during the entire ice season in guarding the southeastern, southern, and southwestern limits of the region of icebergs in the vicinity of the Grand Banks of Newfoundland. The patrol shall inform trans-Atlantic and other passing vessels by radio and other available means of the ice conditions and the extent of the dangerous region. During the ice season, there shall be maintained a service of study of ice and current conditions, a service of providing assistance to vessels and crews requiring assistance, and a service of removing and destroying derelicts. Any of these services may be maintained during the remainder of the year as may be advisable.

(b) WARNINGS TO VESSELS.—The ice patrol shall warn any vessel known to be approaching a dangerous area and recommend safe routes.

(c) RECORDING AND REPORTING INCIDENTS.—

(1) RECORDING.—The ice patrol shall record the name of a vessel and the facts of the case when the patrol observes or knows that the vessel—

(A) is on other than a regular recognized or advertised route crossing the North Atlantic Ocean;

(B) has crossed the fishing banks of Newfoundland north of latitude 43 degrees north during the fishing season; or

(C) has passed through regions known or believed to be endangered by ice when proceeding to and from ports of North America.

(2) REPORTING.—The name of the vessel and all pertinent information about the incident shall be reported to the government of the country to which the vessel belongs if that government requests.

(d) ADMINISTRATION.—The Commandant, under the direction of the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating, shall carry out the services provided for in this section and shall assign necessary aircraft, material, and personnel of the Coast Guard. On request of such Secretary, the head of an agency may detail personnel, lend or contribute material or equipment, or otherwise assist in carrying out the services provided for in this section.

(e) ANNUAL REPORT.—The Commandant shall publish an annual report of the activities of the services provided for in this section. A copy of the report shall be provided to each interested foreign government and to each agency assisting in the work.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1692; Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §314(a)(2), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3049; Pub. L. 115–232, div. C, title XXXV, §3541(b)(16), Aug. 13, 2018, 132 Stat. 2324.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80302	46 App.:738a.	June 25, 1936, ch. 807, §2, 49 Stat. 1922; Pub. L. 89–670, §6(b)(1), Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 938.

In subsection (d), the words "Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating" are substituted for "Secretary of Transportation" because of the transfer of the Coast Guard to the Department of

Homeland Security (except when operating as a service in the Navy) by section 888 of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–296, 116 Stat. 2249). See also sections 1 and 3 of title 14, as amended by section 1704(a) of such Act (116 Stat. 2314).

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2018—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 115–232 struck out "of the Coast Guard" after "The Commandant".

2014—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 113–281, §314(a)(2)(A), substituted "The ice patrol" for "An ice patrol vessel".

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 113–281, §314(a)(2)(B), substituted "The ice patrol" for "An ice patrol vessel" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 113–281, §314(a)(2)(C), substituted "aircraft" for "vessels".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2014 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 113–281 effective Jan. 1, 2017, see section 314(c) of Pub. L. 113–281, set out as a note under section 80301 of this title.

§80303. Speed of vessel in ice region

(a) REQUIREMENT.—The master of a vessel of the United States, when ice is reported on or near the vessel's course, shall proceed at a moderate speed or change the course of the vessel to go well clear of the danger zone.

(b) CIVIL PENALTY.—A master violating this section is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $500.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1693.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80303	46 App.:738c.	June 25, 1936, ch. 807, §4, 49 Stat. 1923.

In subsection (b), the words "liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty" are substituted for "liable to a fine" for clarity and for consistency in the revised title. The words "for each offense" are omitted as unnecessary.

§80304. Limitation on ice patrol data

Notwithstanding sections 80301 and 80302, data collected by an ice patrol conducted by the Coast Guard under this chapter may not be disseminated to a vessel unless such vessel is—

(1) documented under the laws of the United States; or

(2) documented under the laws of a foreign country that made the payment or contribution required under section 80301(b) for the year preceding the year in which the data is collected.

(Added Pub. L. 113–281, title III, §314(a)(3), Dec. 18, 2014, 128 Stat. 3049.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Jan. 1, 2017, see section 314(c) of Pub. L. 113–281, set out as an Effective Date of 2014 Amendment note under section 80301 of this title.

CHAPTER 805—SAFE CONTAINERS FOR INTERNATIONAL CARGO

Sec.
80501. Definitions.
80502. Application of Convention.
80503. General authority of the Secretary.
80504. Approval and examination.
80505. Enforcement.
80506. Delegation of authority.
80507. Employee protection.
80508. Amendments to Convention.
80509. Civil penalty.

§80501. Definitions

In this chapter:

(1) CONTAINER.—The term "container" has the meaning given that term in the Convention.

(2) CONVENTION.—The term "Convention" means the International Convention for Safe Containers, and its annexes, done at Geneva, Switzerland, December 2, 1972.

(3) INTERNATIONAL TRANSPORT.—The term "international transport" means the transportation of a container between—

(A) a place in a foreign country and a place in the jurisdiction of the United States; or

(B) two places outside the United States by United States carriers.

(4) OWNER.—The term "owner" includes the lessee or bailee of a container if a written lease or bailment provides for the lessee or bailee to exercise the owner's responsibility for maintaining and examining the container.

(5) SAFETY APPROVAL PLATE.—The term "safety approval plate" has the meaning given that term in annex I of the Convention.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1694.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80501	46 App.:1501.	Pub. L. 95–208, §2, Dec. 13, 1977, 91 Stat. 1475.

In the definition of "international transport", subparagraphs (A) and (B) are substituted for 46 App. U.S.C. 1501(d)(1)–(3) to eliminate unnecessary words.

In the definition of "owner", the words "includes the lessee or bailee of a container if a written lease or bailment provides for the lessee or bailee to exercise the owner's responsibility for maintaining and examining the container" are substituted for "means a person who owns a container, or, if a written lease or bailment provides for the lessee or bailee to exercise the owner's responsibility for maintaining and examining the container, the lessee or bailee of a container, to the extent such agreement so provides" to eliminate unnecessary words.

The definition of "Secretary" is omitted because a complete reference to the appropriate Secretary is used the first time the Secretary is named in each section. Throughout this chapter, the phrase "Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating" is substituted for "Secretary of Transportation" because the Coast Guard has been transferred to the Department of Homeland Security (except when operating as a service in the Navy) by section 888 of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (Pub. L. 107–296, 116 Stat. 2249).

The definition of "United States" is omitted because "United States" is defined in chapter 1 of the revised title. The definitions of "new container" and "existing container" are omitted as obsolete.

§80502. Application of Convention

The Convention applies to an owner of a container used in international transport if the owner is domiciled or has its principal office in the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1694.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80502	46 App.:1502(a) (related to application of Convention).	Pub. L. 95–208, §3(a) (related to application of Convention), Dec. 13, 1977, 91 Stat. 1476.

This section restates the applicability criteria of 46 App.:1502(a)(1) and (2) to improve the organization of the chapter.

§80503. General authority of the Secretary

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall carry out the Convention and this chapter in the United States.

(b) REGULATIONS.—The Secretary shall prescribe regulations to carry out this chapter. The regulations shall—

(1) establish procedures for testing, inspecting, and initially approving containers and designs for containers, including procedures for attaching, invalidating, and removing safety approval plates for containers;

(2) establish procedures to be followed by the owners of containers for the periodic examination of containers as provided in the Convention; and

(3) provide a method for developing, collecting, and disseminating information about container safety and the international transport of containers.

(c) SAFETY APPROVAL PLATES.—If the owner of a container without a safety approval plate establishes that the container satisfies the standards of the Convention, the Secretary may authorize a safety approval plate to be attached to the container.

(d) SCHEDULE OF FEES.—The Secretary may prescribe a schedule of fees for services performed by the Secretary, or by a person delegated authority under section 80506 of this title, for the testing, inspection, and initial approval of containers and container designs.

(e) ENCOURAGING INTERMODAL TRANSPORT.—To the maximum extent possible, the Secretary shall encourage the development and use of intermodal transport, using containers built to facilitate economical, safe, and expeditious handling of containerized cargo without intermediate reloading when it is being transported over land, air, and sea areas.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1694.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80503(a)	46 App.:1503(a).	Pub. L. 95–208, §4(a), (b), (c)(1), (3), (e), Dec. 13, 1977, 91 Stat. 1476, 1477.
80503(b)	46 App.:1503(b).	
80503(c)	46 App.:1503(c)(1).	
80503(d)	46 App.:1503(c)(3).	

80503(e)	46 App.:1503(e).	

In subsection (a), the words "On and after the date the instrument of ratification is deposited by the United States in accordance with the provisions of article VII of the Convention," and "and, unless an earlier date is specifically provided," are omitted as obsolete.

In subsection (b), before paragraph (1), the words "as soon as practicable after December 13, 1977" are omitted as obsolete. The word "prescribe" is substituted for "promulgate, and from time to time, amend" for consistency in the revised title and with other titles of the United States Code and to eliminate unnecessary words. The words "he deems necessary for such enforcement" and "among other things" are omitted as unnecessary. In paragraph (1), the words "existing" and "new" are omitted as obsolete.

In subsections (c) and (d), the words "At any time after December 13, 1977" are omitted as obsolete.

§80504. Approval and examination

(a) DOMICILE AND PRINCIPAL OFFICE IN UNITED STATES.—A container owner domiciled and having its principal office in the United States shall have the container—

(1) approved initially under procedures prescribed by the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating or by the government of another country that is a party to the Convention; and

(2) examined periodically as provided in the Convention under procedures prescribed by the Secretary.

(b) DOMICILE OR PRINCIPAL OFFICE IN UNITED STATES.—A container owner domiciled or having its principal office in the United States shall have the container—

(1) approved initially under procedures prescribed by the Secretary or by the government of another country that is a party to the Convention; and

(2) examined periodically as provided in the Convention, under procedures prescribed by the government of the country in which the owner is domiciled or has its principal office, as long as that country is a party to the Convention.

(c) NEITHER DOMICILE NOR PRINCIPAL OFFICE IN UNITED STATES.—A container owner neither domiciled nor having its principal office in the United States or another country that is a party to the Convention may submit a container for initial approval and periodic examination under procedures prescribed by the Secretary.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1695.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80504.	46 App.:1502(a) (related to approval and examination).	Pub. L. 95–208, §3(a) (related to approval and examination), Dec. 13, 1977, 91 Stat. 1476.

In this section, the words "Beginning on the date the instrument of ratification is deposited by the United States in accordance with the provisions of article VII of the Convention, for new containers, and beginning on September 6, 1982, for existing containers" are omitted as obsolete.

In subsections (a)(1) and (b)(1), the words "government of another country that is a party to the Convention" are substituted for "administration of another contracting party to the Convention" for clarity.

In subsection (c), the word "initial" is added for consistency in the section.

§80505. Enforcement

(a) IN GENERAL.—To enforce the Convention, this chapter, and regulations prescribed under

this chapter, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating may—

(1) examine, or require to be examined, containers in international transport;

(2) approve designs for containers;

(3) inspect and test containers being manufactured;

(4) issue a detention order removing or excluding a container from service until the container owner satisfies the Secretary that the container meets the standards of the Convention, if the container—

(A) does not have a safety approval plate attached to it; or

(B) has a safety approval plate attached but there is significant evidence that the container is in a condition that creates an obvious risk to safety;

(5) take other appropriate action, including issuing necessary orders, to remove a container from service or restrict its use if the container is not in compliance with the Convention, this chapter, or regulations prescribed under this chapter, but does not present an obvious risk to safety; and

(6) allow a container found to be unsafe or without a safety approval plate to be moved to another location for repair or other disposition, under restrictions consistent with the intent of the Convention.

(b) PAYMENT OF EXPENSES.—

(1) EXAMINATION.—The owner of a container involved in an action by the Secretary under this section related to an examination of the container shall pay or reimburse the Secretary for the expenses arising from that action, except for the costs of routine examinations of the container or a safety approval plate.

(2) TESTING, INSPECTION, AND INITIAL APPROVAL.—The owner of a container submitted to the procedure established by the Secretary for testing, inspection, and initial approval, and the manufacturer of a container that submits a design to the procedure established by the Secretary for testing, inspection, and initial approval, shall pay or reimburse the Secretary for the expenses arising from the testing, inspection, or approval.

(3) CREDIT TO APPROPRIATION.—Amounts received by the Secretary as reimbursement shall be credited to the appropriation for operations and support of the Coast Guard.

(c) PRESUMPTION BASED ON SAFETY APPROVAL PLATE.—A container bearing a safety approval plate authorized by a country that is a party to the Convention is presumed to be in a safe condition unless there is significant evidence that the container is in a condition that creates an obvious risk to safety.

(d) NOTICE OF ORDERS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—When the Secretary issues a detention or other order under this section, the Secretary promptly shall notify in writing—

(A) the owner of the container;

(B) the owner's agent; or

(C) if the identity of the owner is not apparent from the container or shipping documents, the custodian.

(2) INFORMATION TO INCLUDE.—The notification shall identify the container involved, give the location of the container, and describe the condition or situation giving rise to the order.

(e) DURATION OF ORDERS.—An order issued by the Secretary under this section remains in effect until—

(1) the Secretary declares the container to be in compliance with the standards of the Convention; or

(2) the container is removed permanently from service.

(f) NOTICE OF DEFECTIVE CONTAINER TO COUNTRY ISSUING SAFETY APPROVAL

PLATE.—If the Secretary has reason to believe that a container bearing a safety approval plate issued by another country was defective at the time of approval, the Secretary shall notify that country.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1695; Pub. L. 116–283, div. G, title LVXXXV [LXXXV], §8513(b), Jan. 1, 2021, 134 Stat. 4761.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80505	46 App.:1504.	Pub. L. 95–208, §5, Dec. 13, 1977, 91 Stat. 1477; Pub. L. 97–249, §1(2), Sept. 8, 1982, 96 Stat. 708.

In subsection (a), before paragraph (1), the words "On and after the date the instrument of ratification is deposited by the United States in accordance with the provisions of article VII of the Convention" are omitted as obsolete. The words "and regulations prescribed under this chapter" are added for clarity. In paragraph (1), the words "new . . . and existing containers which are subject to this chapter" are omitted as obsolete. Paragraphs (2) and (3) are substituted for "test, inspect, and approve designs for new containers and new containers being manufactured" to eliminate unnecessary words. In paragraph (4), before subparagraph (A), the words "is subject to this chapter" are omitted as unnecessary. In subparagraph (A), the word "valid" is omitted as unnecessary. In paragraph (5), the words "or regulations prescribed under this chapter" are added for consistency. In paragraph (6), the word "valid" is omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (b)(3), the words "appropriation for the operating expenses of the Coast Guard" are substituted for "appropriations bearing the cost thereof" for clarity.

In subsection (d)(2), the word "reasonably" is omitted as unnecessary.

In subsection (e), the words "which first occurs" are omitted as unnecessary. In paragraph (1), the words "the Secretary declares" are substituted for "is declared by the Secretary, or under regulations promulgated by the Secretary" to eliminate unnecessary words.

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2021—Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 116–283 substituted "operations and support" for "operating expenses".

§80506. Delegation of authority

(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating may delegate to any person, including a public or private agency or nonprofit organization, authority to grant initial approval for containers and designs and to attach safety approval plates.

(b) REGULATIONS.—Before making a delegation under this section, the Secretary shall prescribe regulations establishing—

(1) criteria to be followed in selecting a person to whom authority is to be delegated;

(2) a detailed description of the duties and powers to be carried out by the person to whom authority is delegated, including the records the person shall keep; and

(3) the review the Secretary will conduct to decide whether the person is carrying out the delegated duties and powers properly.

(c) INSPECTION OF RECORDS.—A person delegated authority under this section shall make available to the Secretary for inspection, on request, records the person is required to keep.

(d) PENALTIES AND ORDERS.—A person delegated authority under this section may not—

(1) assess or collect, or attempt to assess or collect, a penalty for violation of the Convention, this chapter, or an order issued by the Secretary under this chapter; or

(2) issue or attempt to issue a detention or other order.

(e) PUBLICATION.—The Secretary shall publish in the Federal Register or other appropriate publication—

(1) the name and address of each person to whom authority is delegated;

(2) the duties and powers delegated; and

(3) the period of the delegation.

(f) REVOCATION.—The Secretary may revoke a delegation of authority under this section at any time.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1696.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80506	46 App.:1503(c)(2), (d).	Pub. L. 95–208, §4(c)(2), (d), Dec. 13, 1977, 91 Stat. 1477.

Subsections (a) and (f) are substituted for 46 App. U.S.C. 1503(c)(2) and (d) (1st sentence) to improve the organization of the section.

In subsection (b)(1), the words "person to whom authority is to be delegated" are substituted for "person, public or private agency, or nonprofit organization as a recipient of delegated functions under such subsection" to eliminate unnecessary words.

Subsection (b)(2) is substituted for "the manner in which such recipient shall carry out such delegated functions, including the records such recipient must keep, and a detailed description of the exact functions such recipient may exercise" to eliminate unnecessary words.

Subsections (c)–(e) are substituted for 46 App. U.S.C. 1503(d) (last par.) to improve the organization of the section and to eliminate unnecessary words.

§80507. Employee protection

(a) PROHIBITION.—A person may not discharge or discriminate against an employee because the employee has reported the existence of an unsafe container or a violation of this chapter or a regulation prescribed under this chapter.

(b) COMPLAINTS.—An employee alleging to have been discharged or discriminated against in violation of subsection (a) may file a complaint with the Secretary of Labor. The complaint must be filed within 60 days after the violation.

(c) ENFORCEMENT.—The Secretary of Labor may investigate the complaint. If the Secretary of Labor finds there has been a violation, the Secretary of Labor may bring a civil action in an appropriate district court of the United States. The court has jurisdiction to restrain violations of subsection (a) and order appropriate relief, including reinstatement of the employee to the employee's former position with back pay.

(d) NOTICE TO COMPLAINANT.—Within 30 days after receiving a complaint under this section, the Secretary of Labor shall notify the complainant of the intended action on the complaint.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1697.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80507	46 App.:1506.	Pub. L. 95–208, §7, Dec. 13, 1977, 91 Stat. 1479.

In subsection (a), the words "in any manner" and "to the Secretary or his agents" are omitted as unnecessary. The words "or a regulation prescribed under this chapter" are added for consistency.

§80508. Amendments to Convention

(a) PROPOSALS BY UNITED STATES.—The Secretary of State, with the concurrence of the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating, may propose amendments to the Convention or request a conference for amending the Convention as provided in article IX of the Convention.

(b) PROPOSALS BY OTHER COUNTRIES.—An amendment communicated to the United States under article IX(2) of the Convention may be accepted for the United States by the President, with the advice and consent of the Senate. The President may declare that the United States does not accept an amendment.

(c) AMENDMENTS TO ANNEXES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of State, with the concurrence of the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating—

(A) may propose amendments to the annexes to the Convention;

(B) may propose a conference for amending annexes to the Convention; and

(C) shall consider and act on amendments to the annexes to the Convention adopted by the Maritime Safety Committee of the International Maritime Organization and communicated to the United States under article X(2) of the Convention.

(2) ACTION FOLLOWING APPROVAL OR OBJECTION.—If a proposed amendment to an annex is approved by the United States, the amendment shall enter into force as provided in article X of the Convention. If a proposed amendment is objected to, the Secretary of State promptly shall communicate the objection as provided in article X(3) of the Convention.

(d) APPOINTMENT OF ARBITRATOR.—The Secretary of State, with the concurrence of the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating, shall appoint an arbitrator when one is required to resolve a dispute within the meaning of article XIII of the Convention.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1697.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80508	46 App.:1507.	Pub. L. 95–208, §8, Dec. 13, 1977, 91 Stat. 1479.

§80509. Civil penalty

(a) IN GENERAL.—An owner, agent, or custodian who has been notified of an order issued under section 80505 of this title and fails to take reasonable and prompt action to prevent or stop a container subject to the order from being moved in violation of the order is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than $5,000 for each container moved. Each day the container remains in service while the order is in effect is a separate violation.

(b) ASSESSMENT AND COLLECTION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—After notice and an opportunity for a hearing, the Secretary of the department in which the Coast Guard is operating shall assess and collect any penalty under this section.

(2) FACTORS TO CONSIDER.—In determining the amount of the penalty, the Secretary shall consider the gravity of the violation, the hazards involved, and the record of the person charged with respect to violations of the Convention, this chapter, or regulations prescribed under this chapter.

(3) REMISSION, MITIGATION, OR COMPROMISE.—The Secretary may remit, mitigate, or

compromise a penalty under this section.

(4) ENFORCEMENT.—If a person fails to pay a penalty under this section, the Secretary shall refer the matter to the Attorney General for collection in an appropriate district court of the United States.

(Pub. L. 109–304, §11, Oct. 6, 2006, 120 Stat. 1698.)

HISTORICAL AND REVISION NOTES

Revised Section	*Source (U.S. Code)*	*Source (Statutes at Large)*
80509	46 App.:1505.	Pub. L. 95–208, §6, Dec. 13, 1977, 91 Stat. 1478.

In subsection (a), the words "On and after the date the instrument of ratification is deposited by the United States in accordance with the provisions of article VII of the Convention" are omitted as obsolete. The words "liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty" are substituted for "subject to a civil penalty" for consistency in the revised title.

In subsection (b)(2), the words "In determining the amount of" are substituted for "In assessing, remitting, mitigating, or compromising" to eliminate unnecessary words.